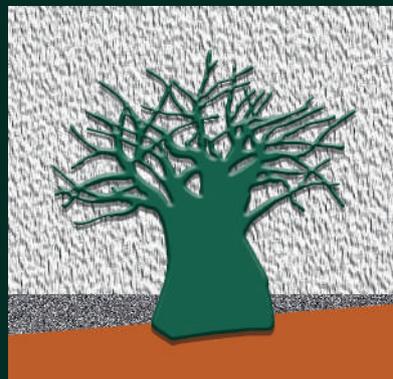
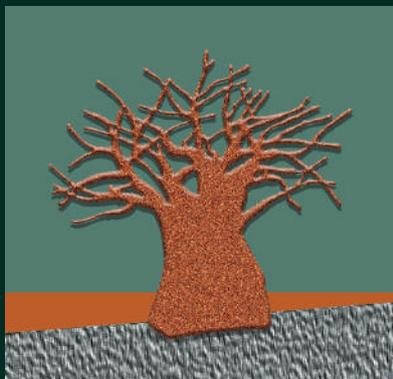
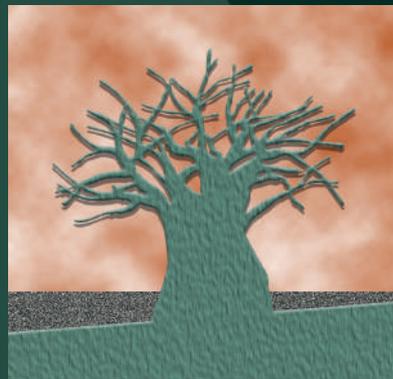
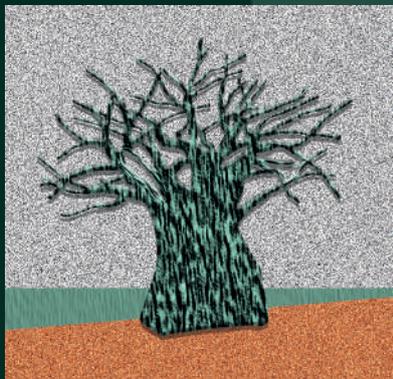


PhD

Philosophiae Doctor

EXPOUNDING THE SPIRITUAL DIVERSITY
IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN SOCIETIES PERTAINING TO THE INFLUENCE IT HAS ON THE
ECONOMY, POLITICAL AND SOCIAL BEHAVIOUR



By

ALIDA ELIZABETH AUCAMP EISELEN

PhD

Philosophiae Doctor

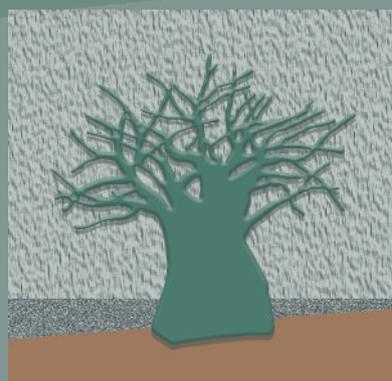
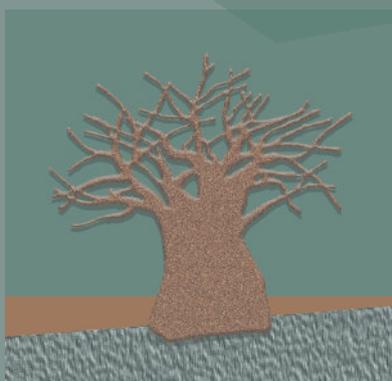
The Boabab Tree (genus *Adansonia*) (baobab (BOUGH-bob) is regarded as the symbol of life on African plains.

The tree has spiritual significance due to their physical appearance. With a trunk that can reach 18-20 meter in circumference and 27 meter in height and a lifespan of more than 500 years, the baobab has been a spiritual symbol for southern African cultures for as long as the trees have grown. The Venda people regard the Boabab as a sacred part of their tribal culture. Other tribes buried relatives at the base of these trees, where it is believed that the baobabs become imbued with their souls.

Boabab trees were the meeting place for kings and tribal discussions. Meetings were conducted with the expectation that the tree's spirit would guide the right decisions. This signifies the spiritual and political relevance of the tree. In more modern times, the Boabab tree is commonly used as a venue for community meetings or even as a classroom, emphasizing the place of the tree in a social and cultural context.

Revenue created from the wide variety of medicinal advantages of the flowers and fruits expands that the tree signifies the financial benefits.

The first documented history of South Africa relates to the Portuguese visits in the 1400's. Thereafter the arrival of the Europeans in the 1600's. With a lifespan of more than 500 years, the Boabab tree witnessed the history of South Africa in times when a variety of people arrived, in times of war and in times of peace. The tree witness the beginning of South Africa's documented history, but also before the times of the Khoi-Khoi and the San people, up until today.





**EXPOUNDING THE SPIRITUAL DIVERSITY IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN
CULTURES PERTAINING TO THE INFLUENCE IT HAS ON THE ECONOMIC,
POLITICAL AND SOCIAL BEHAVIOUR**

By

ALIDA ELIZABETH AUCAMP EISELEN

MASTER OF MINISTRY IN THEOLOGY

Submitted in accordance with the requirements of the degree of

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR IN DIVINITY

At

ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY LAUSANNE

PROMOTOR

PROF. DR. CONNIE M. J. BRAND

D.Litt. Ph.D. M.Th.

Doctor of Philosophy in Theology (Summa Cum Laude)

Doctor of Philosophy in Divinity (Cum Laude)

D Litt in Creative Ministry Theology

Doctor of Philosophy in Interdisciplinary Studies

MTh (Magna Cum Laude)

CO-PROMOTOR

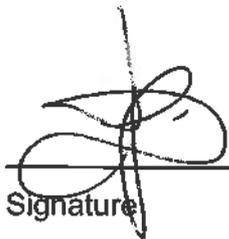
DR. PIETER MALAN

Ph.D.

FEBRUARY 2021

DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned, Alida Elizabeth Aucamp Eiselen, declare that this dissertation is my original work, gathered and utilised specifically to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted to any other University for a higher degree. I certify that all information contained herein and the application of materials submitted by me are true, correct, and accurate to the best of my knowledge and belief.



Signature

22 September 2021
Date

DEDICATION

First and foremost, I dedicate this research to the Lord of Lords and the King of Kings. To the Lord above all, the only true God, Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour. To God the Father who so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son as a perfect atonement to restore our relationship. To the Holy Spirit, our constant companion, counsellor, and friend.

Furthermore, I dedicate this research to my parents, Jan and Cora Aucamp. Together, they served God and stayed committed to their pledge to raise us according to His Word and principles. They modelled God's love for all people, never tolerated any form of discrimination or pride and taught us to be gracious and caring.

To my father –

A special dedication to you. You were convinced of God's calling to pursue studies in Theology. When your study plans were derailed by life's circumstances your life became your ministry. Your life truly portrayed God's love and care. I am honoured and grateful to be able to pursue your erstwhile dream on your behalf. With great admiration, I dedicate this work to you.

***Praise and glory and wisdom and thanks and honour and power and strength
be to our God for ever and ever. Amen!"***

– Revelations 7:12 (KJV)

--ooOoo--

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Professor Doctor Connie M.J. Brand - since my childhood, God has combined our paths. I am forever grateful for your bold obedience to motivate and teach God's principles to direct me to recognize and obey God's calling.

Doctor Chris Brand, observing your faithfulness to God's principles and your steadfast faith over the years is inspiring.

To Hertz, your faith in God is admirable and inspirational – likewise your steadfast commitment to Godly principles. I am always astounded by your curiosity and investigative nature. Your love for people is contagious, your dedication to detail inspiring. I am grateful for your countless sacrifices to grant me time for this research.

To Pieter, Willem and Marianne, who share my interest in history and politics and who contributed greatly to this research, which is a tapestry of our extended discussions and debates. I sincerely appreciate your combined sacrifices made to grant me the opportunity for this research. I am grateful to be blessed with a family that loves to spend time together - in this, I experience God's favour on us all.

To Doctor Pieter Malan for your support, guidance and assistance.

To Doctor Susan Langeveldt and SL Studios for the best creative contribution and assistance with the incorporation of media articles.

To Marlize Beeslaar, your three years of dedicated assistance was an immeasurable contribution.

To the rev. L.H. van Schaik. Our numerous late-night discussions on a wide variety of topics contributed greatly to this work. Your constant motivation inspired me to stay focused.

Liesel Eiselen, your perfectionism and attention to detail still inspires me.

--ooOo

SUMMARY

EXPOUNDING THE SPIRITUAL DIVERSITY IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN CULTURES PERTAINING TO THE INFLUENCE IT HAS ON THE ECONOMIC, POLITICAL AND SOCIAL BEHAVIOUR.

By

Alida Elizabeth Aucamp Eiselen

PROMOTOR: Prof Dr Connie M J Brand
Doctor of Philosophy in Theology (Summa Cum Laude)
Doctor of Philosophy in Divinity (Cum Laude)
D Litt in Creative Ministry Theology
Doctor of Philosophy in Interdisciplinary Studies
MTh (Magna Cum Laude)

DEGREE: Philosophiae Doctor In Divinity

INSTITUTION: St. Clements Private Swiss University

The research investigated the following:

- God and the Bible as the divine authority on all matters
- The reality of Satan and the war between the Kingdom of Light and the kingdom of darkness and some applications of the manifestation of this war in South Africa.

- The history of the South African ethnicity as foundational to the contemporary South African multi-dimensional manifestation of spirituality in multi-dimensional ethnography.
- The possible clandestine influences of alleged secret societies on the history of South Africa. The alignment of the South African Constitution and liberal Human Rights charter alignment with the New Age goals for a One World Government.
- The history of spirituality as well as the contemporary manifestation thereof as a result of the freedom of religion – including witchcraft, sorcery, voodoo, and divination.
- The research addressed the history of South Africa, it portrays the contemporary South Africa and it acknowledges God's promises for the future of South Africa.

Born from an interest in culture and politics, and a short-term as a public representative in the City Council of Pretoria, the author was intrigued by the variety and the contrasts of the South Africa people, but especially in the similarities and the impact of spirituality in all spheres of life.

The South African Government recognises four race groups: African, Indian, Coloured and White. At face value, it seems logical. Yet, it is controversial. 'African' refers to black South African, denying the other groups 'Africanness' (the quality or condition of being African, it encapsulate the sense of belonging). They are not recognised as 'being from Africa' regardless of their history of more than 300 years on African soil.

King Khoisan and his family entered their third year of protest on the lawns of the Union Buildings in their demand to be recognised by the Government. The Khoisan, indigenous and unique is categorised as 'Coloured'. The author assisted the Khoisan family with basic needs and fresh vegetables etc.

The Department of Public Works deny even their extremely basic needs like electricity to boil water or charge mobile phones. The author found this disgraceful.

The South African High Court elevated Chinese South Africans to be categorised as 'black' to benefit from the B-BBEE¹ legislation. Coloured and Indian are also regarded as black in the B-BBEE legislation but retain their 'Coloured' and 'Indian' classification in censuses and other legislations. The 'White' category accommodates everybody from European heritage, including Japanese, Taiwanese etc. The author also learned about the term 'inter-racial' referring to individuals biologically resembling specific ethnicity, but by choice prefer to associate (and demand recognition) with an alternative ethnicity.

Recognition of nine languages is also not reliable in distinguishing South Africans. Afrikaans is predominant in Afrikaner identity and nationalism. Yet, the language is not exclusive to white, protestant Afrikaners. Afrikaans is also the home language of a major percentage of the coloured community. Within this community, Afrikaans was used in the Islamic faith from the 1830's.

Spirituality is deeply entrenched in culture. In recognition of cultures, the research attended to the history of the people of South Africa. The abbreviated historic overview aimed to present the historic ethnicity as a foundation to contextualise contemporary ethnicity and ethnology. Yet again, the historic models vary and it is almost impossible to find an objective interpretation of South African history.

In conclusion, contemporary South Africa is home to multi-linguistic, multi-racial, multi-cultural and multi-religious people. No definite ethnic, cultural, language or spiritual borders exist to distinguish various tribes or nations.

The research attended to historic evidence of the impact of spirituality as well as the impact it has in contemporary South Africa. What the author found to be evident, is the fact that spirituality played a vital role in the history of South Africa, and secondly

¹ *B-BBEE: Broad Based Black Economic Empower*

that spirituality is still prevalent in the lives of the South African people, impacting all spheres of life, cultural or social, economically, and politically.

--ooOoo--

TABLE OF CONTENT (Abbreviated)

TITLEPAGE.....	i
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY.....	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT.....	vii
SUMMARY.....	ix
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated).....	xiii
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xv
PROLEGOMENA.....	1
CHAPTER 1: RESEARCH PREMISE: AUTHORITY OF GOD'S WORD	33
CHAPTER 2: THE REALITY OF TWO KINGDOMS: THE KINGDOM OF SATAN	263
CHAPTER 3: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE COMPLEX SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNICITY	545
CHAPTER 4: POSSIBLE ESOTERIC INFLUENCES IN SOUTH AFRICA'S HISTORY AND THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE CONSTITUTION IN ALIGNMENT WITH A GLOBAL RESET STRATEGY	759
CHAPTER 5: THE MANIFESTATION OF SPIRITUALITY IN CONTEMPORARY SOUTH AFRICA WITH EMPHASIS ON THE IMPACT THEREOF ON THE SOCIAL, ECONOMIC AND POLITICAL ENVIRONMENT	1023
CONCLUSION.....	1331
CASE STUDIES	
BIBLIOGRAPHY	1375
TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS	1507
LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES	1599
CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	1629

--ooOoo--

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

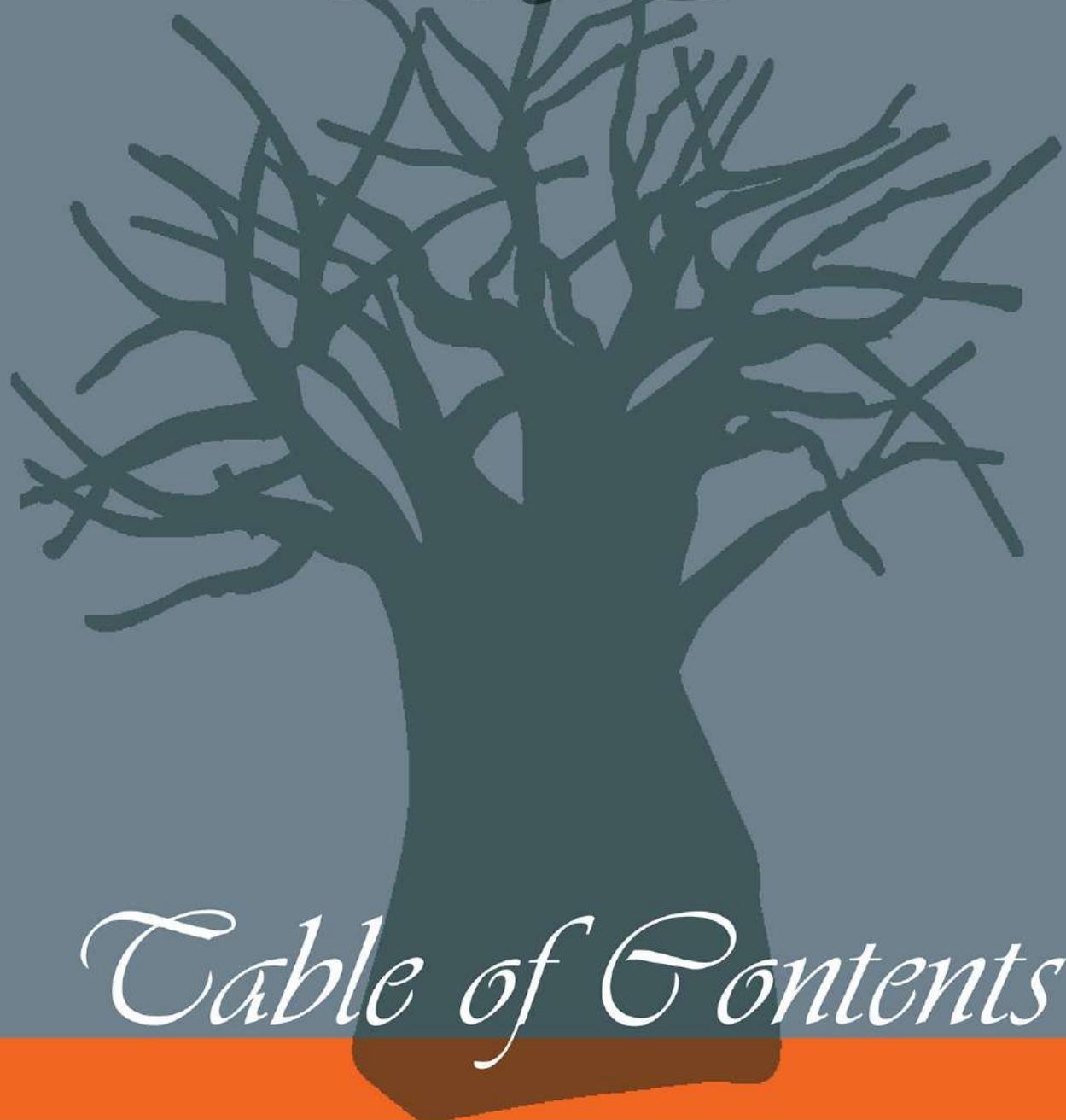


Table of Contents

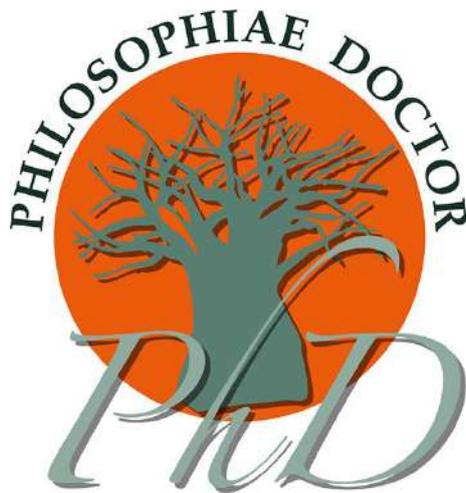


TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Prolegomena</i>	1
<i>Chapter 1: Research Premise: Authority of God's Word</i>	33
1. INTRODUCTION	33
2. BIBLICAL DERIVATION	34
2.1 The Holy Bible is the Word of God	36
2.2 Jesus Christ is the Manifested Word of God	38
2.3 The Word of God Infallible	38
2.4 Man's Contribution to the Word of God	39
2.5 The Longevity of the Word of God	40
2.6 The Word of God is Valuable and Sufficient	40
2.7 The Word of God a Two-Edge Sword	41
2.8 The Power of the Word Triumph Over Temptation	42

Table of Contents

2.9	Christianity	44
3	SPIRITUALITY	45
3.1	Defining 'Spirit'	46
3.1.1	Biblical Applications of 'Spirit'	46
3.1.2	Trichotomy vs Dichotomy of Man	50
3.2	Defining Spirituality	52
3.2.1	Different Types of Spirituality?	53
3.2.2	Author's Definition	54
3.3	Defining Religion	54
3.4	Spirituality vs Religion	56
3.5	Spirituality Within a Social Context	57
4	SPIRITUAL REALITY	59
4.1	The First Introduction: A Triune God	59
4.1.1	Fundamental Truths of the Triune God	60
4.1.1.1	Paradox of Unity and Plurality	60
4.1.1.1.1	Manifestation of the Trinity in the Baptism	62
4.1.1.1.2	The Oneness of God is Confirmed in Both the Old and New Testaments	63
4.1.1.2	The Truth of a Triune God Manifested in His Names	63
4.1.1.2.1	Elohim	65
4.1.1.2.2	"Let Us"	66
4.1.1.2.3	"Echad" vs "Yachid"	66
4.1.1.2.4	Johova	71
4.1.1.2.5	JHWH	72
4.1.1.2.6	Adonai	72
4.1.1.2.7	"EL"	74
4.1.1.2.8	God Does Not Change	75
4.1.1.3	The Nature of God	78
4.1.1.3.1	God is Spirit.....	79

Table of Contents

4.1.1.3.2	God is Light	82
4.1.1.3.3	God is Love	82
4.1.1.3.4	God is a Consuming Fire	83
4.1.1.4	Essential Attributes of God	84
4.1.1.4.1	God is Eternal	84
4.1.1.4.2	God is Self-existent	85
4.1.1.4.3	God is Immutable	85
4.1.1.4.4	God is Omnipotent	85
4.1.1.4.5	God is Omniscient	85
4.1.1.4.6	God is Omnipresent.....	86
4.1.1.5	Moral Attributes	86
4.1.1.5.1	Perfect Holiness	86
4.1.1.5.2	Perfect Righteousness	86
4.1.1.5.3	Perfect Love	87
4.1.1.5.4	Perfect Faithfulness	87
4.1.1.5.5	The Goodness of God	88
4.1.1.5.6	The Grace of God	88
4.1.1.5.7	The Mercy of God	89
4.1.1.5.8	The Compassion of God	89
4.1.1.5.9	The Kindness of God	90
4.1.1.5.10	The Benevolence of God	90
4.1.1.5.11	Perfect Faithfulness	91
4.1.1.6	Gifts of the Trinity	91
4.1.1.6.1	Gifts of the God the Father	93
4.1.1.6.2	Gifts of Jesus Christ	95
4.1.1.6.3	Gifts of the Holy Spirit	96
4.1.2	First in the Trinity: God the Father	98
4.1.2.1	Revelation and Acknowledgement of Father God	99

Table of Contents

4.1.2.1.1	Male, Never Female	99
4.1.2.1.2	Father God's Personal Identification	99
4.1.2.1.3	The Prophet's Acknowledged God as Father	99
4.1.2.1.4	Jesus Acknowledged God as Father	100
4.1.2.1.5	The Apostles Acknowledged God as Father	101
4.1.2.2	Implication of Calling God 'Abba' 'Father'	102
4.1.2.2.1	Believers Share Jesus Intimacy with God	102
4.1.2.2.2	Believers Share Equal Levels of Love from God	103
4.1.2.2.3	Believers Share Rights and Privileges as Sons of God	104
4.1.2.3	Additional Titles for Believers Through Christ	105
4.1.2.3.1	Co-heirs with Christ	105
4.1.2.3.2	Holy Priests	105
4.1.2.3.3	New Creation	105
4.1.2.3.4	Partakers in Divine Nature	105
4.1.2.4	Restoration of Farther-Child Relationship	105
4.1.2.5	Revelation of God as Father in 'The Lord's Prayer'	107
4.1.3	Second in the Trinity: The Son of God - Jesus Christ	108
4.1.3.1	Christology	108
4.1.3.2	Jesus Christ Eternal Existence Prior to His Incarnation	109
4.1.3.2.1	Creation	109
4.1.3.2.2	Jesus Christ, the Word of God	109
4.1.3.3	Theophany, Christophany	110
4.1.3.3.1	(Old Testament) Jesus Christ, the Angel of the Lord	111
4.1.3.3.2	(Old Testament) Additional Christophanies	111
4.1.3.4	The Incarnated Christ	112
4.1.3.4.1	Jesus Christ: His Human Nature	112
4.1.3.4.2	Jesus Christ the Only Begotten Son	117
4.1.3.4.3	Kenosis	117

Table of Contents

4.1.3.4.4	(Old Testament) Prophecies Fulfilled	118
4.1.3.4.5	Jesus Christ Fulfilled in Jewish Feasts	122
4.1.3.5	The Divinity of Jesus Christ	126
4.1.3.5.1	Attributes of Christ	127
4.1.3.5.2	Jesus Christ Dual God and Man	127
4.1.3.5.3	Jesus's Miracles Provide Evidence of His Deity	129
4.1.3.5.4	Jesus' Teachings Reflect His Deity	130
4.1.3.5.5	Seven "I Am" Statements	130
4.1.3.5.6	Jesus Christ More Than the Prophets	132
4.1.3.5.7	Jesus Christ is More Than Angels	133
4.1.3.5.8	The Perfect Atonement of Christ	133
4.1.3.5.9	The Resurrection of Christ	134
4.1.3.5.10	Salvation in Christ	134
4.1.3.5.11	Jesus Christ Eternal Existence and Power After His Ascension	135
4.1.3.6	The Condensed Gospel of Jesus Christ	137
4.1.3.6.1	Restored Fellowship	137
4.1.3.6.2	Jesus Christ: Righteous and Just	137
4.1.3.6.3	Jesus Christs' Unconditional Love	138
4.1.4	Third in the Trinity: The Holy Spirit of God	139
4.1.4.1	The Deity of the Holy Spirit	140
4.1.4.2	The Holy Spirit's Participation in Creation	140
4.1.4.3	The Holy Spirit's Distinction in the Trinity	141
4.1.4.4	The Holy Spirit the Author of the Word of God	142
4.1.4.5	The Significance of 'Seven' in Relation to the Holy Spirit	143
4.1.4.5.1	The Parable of Light	143
4.1.4.5.2	Other Associations with Seven	144
4.1.4.6	The Gender of the Holy Spirit	145
4.1.4.7	The Person of the Holy Spirit	145

Table of Contents

4.1.4.8	The Holy Spirit in the Old Testament	150
4.1.4.9	Holy Spirit in the New Testament	151
4.1.4.9.1	The Holy Spirit in the Life and Ministry of Jesus Christ	151
4.1.4.9.2	The Holy Spirit in the Life of Believers	151
4.2	The Second Introduction: Angels	169
4.2.1	A Secular Post-Modern Acknowledgement of the Existence of Angels	160
4.2.2	A Brief Comment with Regards to the Acknowledgment of Angels in Other Religions	162
4.2.3	Relevance for Research Pertaining to Angels for this Study	163
4.2.4	Biblical Research Pertaining to Angels	164
4.2.4.1	The Nature of Angels	164
4.2.4.1.1	Angels Are Defined as Spiritual Entities	164
4.2.4.1.2	Angels Are Immortal	164
4.2.4.1.3	Angels Are Positioned Below God and Above Man	164
4.2.4.1.4	Angels Are Created Beings	165
4.2.4.1.5	Angels Were Created Before God Commenced with the Creation of the Universe	165
4.2.4.1.6	Angels Are Considered an Order of Creation, Created as a Host or Company, Not a Race	166
4.2.4.1.7	Angels Are Called Sons of God	166
4.2.4.1.8	Angels Have Independent Decision-Making Capabilities	167
4.2.4.1.9	Angels Are Innumerable	167
4.2.4.1.10	Angels Have Personalities	168
4.2.4.1.11	Angels in Comparison to Human Beings	168
4.2.4.1.12	Angels in Comparison to God	169
4.2.4.1.13	Angels in Comparison to Jesus Christ	170
4.2.4.1.14	Angel Appearances	170
4.2.4.2	The Duties and Responsibilities of Angels	171

Table of Contents

4.2.4.2.1	Angels Are Ministering Spirits	171
4.2.4.2.2	Angels Are Messengers	172
4.2.4.2.3	Angels Will Deliver Devastating Judgement on Earth Prior to the Second Coming of Christ	173
4.2.4.2.4	Angels Will Separate the Wicket from the Just	173
4.2.4.2.5	Angels Will Participate in the Condemnation of Mankind	173
4.2.4.2.6	Angels Protects God's People Regardless Hostile Territorial Area	174
4.2.4.2.7	Angels Protected Jacob From the Consequences of His Own Sin	174
4.2.4.2.8	Angels Are Involved in the Man's Monetary Affairs	175
4.2.4.2.9	Angels Protect Nations	175
4.2.4.2.10	Repentance Activate Angelic Assistance	176
4.2.4.2.11	Angels participate in God's judgement	175
4.2.4.2.12	Angels Ministers to Individual People	178
4.2.4.2.13	Five-Fold Ministry of Angels	178
4.2.4.3	Hierarchy and Authority of Specific Angels	179
4.2.4.3.1	The Triune God the Godhead of the Angels	179
4.2.4.3.2	The Angel of the Lord	180
4.2.4.3.3	Archangels	180
4.2.4.3.4	Other Angels Specified	184
4.2.4.3.5	Angelic Hierarchy	187
4.2.4.3.6	Fallen Angels	188
4.2.4.3.7	Angel Assemblies Portrayed in the Book of Revelation	188
4.3	The Third Introduction: Man Adam and Eve	188
4.3.1	Man Defined	189
4.3.2	Man Created as a Tripartite Being: Spirit, Soul and Body	189
4.3.2.1	Man is Created Spirit: Function of the Spirit	192
4.3.2.2	Man Has a Soul: The Function of the Soul	193
4.3.2.3	Man's Soul and Spirit Resides in His Body: Function of the Body.....	194

Table of Contents

4.3.3	The Original Condition and Purpose for the Creation of Man	195
4.3.3.1	Sinless	195
4.3.3.2	Relationship	195
4.3.3.3	Character	196
4.3.3.4	Function	196
4.3.3.5	Reproduction	196
4.3.4	The Entrance of Sin into Humanity	197
4.3.5	The Condition of Man After the Fall of Adam: Consequences of Sin.....	198
4.3.5.1	The Implication of the 'First Adam'.....	199
4.3.5.2	Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Spirit	200
4.3.5.3	Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Soul	201
4.3.5.4	Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Body	202
4.3.5.5	Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Authority	204
4.3.6	The Redeemed Condition of Man: The Effect of Christ's Salvation	204
4.3.6.1	The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Spirit	204
4.3.6.2	The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Soul	205
4.3.6.3	The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Body	205
4.3.6.4	The Effect of Christ's Salvation to Eternal Death	206
4.3.6.5	Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Authority	206
4.4	The Fourth Introduction: Satan and His Entourage of Fallen Angels	207
4.4.1	The Definition of Satan	208
4.4.2	The Origin of Satan	209
4.4.3	Biblical Names of Satan	210
4.4.4	Prior to Sin: The Meaning and Character of Lucifer	214
4.4.5	The Origin of Sin: Satan the Original Sinner	217
4.4.6	The Nature of Satan's Sin	218
4.4.7	Results of Satan's Sin	221
4.4.7.1	Lucifer's Name Changed: The Meaning of Satan	221

Table of Contents

4.4.7.2	Angels Pledge Loyalty to Satan: Fallen Angels, the Origin of Demons	231
4.4.7.3	Man is Deceived: Satan's Threefold Strategy	233
4.4.7.4	Nephilim, Rephaim and Anakim	233
4.4.7.5	Satan Continued His Status as 'Son of God'	250
4.4.7.6	Satan Continued as the 'Angel of Light'	250
4.4.8	Three-fold Strategy of Satan: Individual, National and Territorial	251
4.4.8.1	Individual Strategy	262
4.4.8.2	A Strategy on a National and Territorial Level	263
5.	CONCLUSION	255
5.	ADDENDUM	259
	Addendum 1 Chapter 1	259
<i>Chapter 2:</i>	<i>The Reality of Two Kingdoms: The Kingdom of Satan</i>	263
1.	INTRODUCTION.....	263
2.	TWO KINGDOMS AT WAR	264
2.1	The Theology of Two Kingdoms in Several Heavenly Realms	264
2.2	The Theology of War in the Two Kingdoms	271
2.3	War Between Two Kingdoms: A Biblical Review	273
2.3.1	Conflict in the Heavens Illustrated in the Book of Deuteronomy.....	274
2.3.2	Conflict Manifested Through Nimrod and Illustrated in the Tower of Babel and Babylon	275
2.3.3	War in the Heavens Illustrated in the Book of Daniel	276
2.3.4	War Confirmed in Ezekiel: Spiritual Rulers Over Territories	280
2.3.5	War Confirmed in Ephesians: Instructions for Military Armour	282
2.3.6	Spiritual Conflict Illustrated in Zechariah	283

Table of Contents

2.3.7	War Escalates in Revelation	284
2.4	The Implication of the Spiritual War for Individuals	284
2.5	The Principle of Love in War	287
3.	HIERARCHY OF SATAN'S KINGDOM	289
3.1	The General (Commander in Chief): Beelzebub	290
3.2	Principalities: Four Princes for the Four Directions	291
3.2.1	Prince of the North, Representing Earth: Belial.....	292
3.2.1.1	Application to South Africa	294
3.2.2	Prince of the East, Representing Air: Apollyon/Abbadon	295
3.2.2.1	Application to South Africa	297
3.2.2.2	Abbadon	298
3.2.2.2.1	Application to South Africa	301
3.2.3	Prince of the South, Representing Fire: The Beast	302
3.2.3.1	Application to South Africa	304
3.2.4	Prince of the West, Representing Water: Leviathan	305
3.2.4.1	Application to South Africa	307
3.3	The Powers of the Dark Kingdom	307
3.3.1	Application to South Africa	308
3.3.2	Ashtaroth (Jezebel)	308
3.3.2.1	Application to South Africa	310
3.3.3	Baal	311
3.3.3.1	Application to South Africa	312
3.3.4	Magog	314
3.3.4.1	Application to South Africa	315
3.3.5	Paimon	319
3.3.5.1	Application to South Africa	320
3.3.6	Baphomet	322
3.3.6.1	Application to South Africa	323

Table of Contents

3.3.7	Asmodee	324
3.3.7.1	Application to South Africa	325
3.3.8	Ariton	329
3.3.8.1	Application to South Africa	329
3.3.9	Mammon	330
3.3.9.1	Application to South Africa	331
3.3.10	The Spiritual Significance of Gates and Gatekeepers.....	333
3.3.10.1	Application to South Africa	338
3.3.11	The Spiritual Significance of Portholes	341
3.3.12	The Spiritual Significance of Vortexes	343
3.4	Rulers in the Kingdom of Satan	343
3.4.1	Application to South Africa	344
3.4.2	Strongholds	345
3.4.2.1	Strongholds of the Mind	347
3.4.2.2	Strongholds Manifestation on a National Level	350
3.4.3	Strongman	351
3.4.3.1	Application to South Africa	352
3.5	Demons	354
3.5.1	Demon Defined	354
3.5.2	The Origin of Demons	356
3.5.3	Demonic Association with Pagan Worship	356
3.5.4	Nature of Demons	358
3.5.5	Symbols Associated with Demons	363
3.5.6	Purpose of Demons	364
3.5.7	Types of Demons	365
3.5.7.1	Deliverance	370
3.6	Territorial Demonic Spirits	379
3.6.1	Geographical Territories	382

Table of Contents

3.6.2	The Spiritual Significance and Power of High Places.....	386
3.6.3	Peace Poles/Asherah-Pole	387
3.6.3.1	Application to South Africa	390
3.6.4	Ley Lines	391
3.6.4.1	Application to South Africa	394
3.6.5	Mapping	396
3.6.6	Leviathan and Aquatic Spirits	396
3.6.6.1	Biblical References to the Water Spirits	400
3.6.6.1.1	Biblical References to Rahab	400
3.6.6.1.2	Serpent	401
3.6.6.1.3	Scorpion	402
3.6.6.1.4	Adder	403
3.6.6.1.5	Dragon or Monster	403
3.6.6.1.6	Leviathan	404
3.6.6.1.7	Beast	404
3.6.6.1.8	Satan	405
3.6.6.1.9	Devil	405
3.6.6.1.10	Viper	406
3.6.6.1.11	Python	406
3.6.6.1.12	Additional References	406
3.6.6.2	Attributes of Leviathan and the Aquatic Entities	408
3.6.6.2.1	Application to South Africa	413
4.	OCCULTISM	417
4.1	Occultism Defined	418
4.2	A Biblical Perspective	419
4.3	Divination Defined	421
4.3.1	Divination Mentioned in the Bible	423
4.4	Sorcery Defined	430

Table of Contents

4.4.1	Sorcery Mentioned in the Bible	431
4.5	Witchcraft Defined	432
4.5.1	Witchcraft Mentioned in the Bible	437
4.6	False Religions	438
4.6.1	False Religions Mentioned in the Bible	441
4.7	Contemporary Occult Practices	441
4.7.1	Divination	446
4.7.2	Sorcery	446
4.7.3	Witchcraft	447
4.7.4	General Occult	448
4.7.5	False Religion	450
4.8	Some Occult Practices in Post-Apartheid South Africa	455
4.8.1	Divination in South Africa	456
4.8.2	Sorcery in South Africa	459
4.8.3	Witchcraft in South Africa	460
4.8.4	General Occult in South Africa	460
4.8.5	False Religion in South Africa	462
5.	CURSES	468
5.1	Curses Defined	469
5.2	Generational Curses	471
5.2.1	Generational Curse: Curse of the Bastard	471
5.2.2	Application to South Africa	473
5.3	Curses are Preceded by a Cause	474
5.4	The Originators of Curses	474
5.4.1	God	474
5.4.1.1	God's Original Curse was Fourth Fold	475
5.4.1.2	Primary Causes for God's Curses and Blessing Reflected in the Ten Com- mandments	476

Table of Contents

5.4.1.3	Moral and Ethical Sins	479
5.4.1.4	Anti-Semitism	482
5.4.1.5	Independence from God	486
5.4.1.6	Theft and False Witnesses (Zechariah 5:3)	487
5.4.1.7	Neglecting the House of God: The Curse of Insufficiency	487
5.4.1.8	Withholding Tithes and Offerings	488
5.4.1.9	Curses Applicable to Teachers, Prophets, and Priest in Particular	488
5.4.1.10	Leaders Sinful Acts Results God Curse Upon a Nation	488
5.4.1.11	Blood Calls Onto Blood	489
5.4.1.12	God Curses Cities	489
5.4.1.12.1	Jesus Cursed the Fig Tree	490
5.4.1.12.2	Additional Curses from God	492
5.4.2	Curses Proceeding from Man	493
5.4.2.1	Curses Articulated - The Power of Words	494
5.4.2.1.1	Self-fulfilling Prophecies	495
5.4.2.1.2	Words Spoken by an Authoritative Person	495
5.4.2.1.3	False Prophecies	496
5.4.2.1.3.1	Application to South Africa	497
5.4.2.2	The Curse of Unforgiveness	497
5.4.2.2.1	Application to South Africa	500
5.4.2.3	The Curse of Racism	500
5.4.2.3.1	Application to South Africa	501
5.4.2.4	Freemasonry Curse	502
5.4.3	Curses from Satan	503
5.4.3.1	Material Objects as Conveyers of Curses	503
5.4.3.2	Curses Proceeding from Satan's Representatives	505
6.	SIN	506
6.1	The Original Sin: Pride	509

Table of Contents

6.2	Biblical Sin: Comparisons to Current South Africa	510
6.2.1	The Book of Judges	510
6.2.2	King David Disobedience in Calling for a Census (2 Samuel 24)	511
6.2.3	Consideration from the Books of Judges and Samuel 24 Pertaining to Godly Judgements	511
6.2.4	South African Corruption and State Capture	512
6.3	Seven Detestable Sins from the Book of Proverbs	515
6.4	Additional Sins Identified	516
6.5	Sins of the Churches of Revelation	519
6.6	Major Avenues of Sin	521
6.7	Avenues of Religious Sin	523
6.8	Major Avenues of Sexual Sins	524
6.9	The Effect of Sin in Man's Presence in the Kingdom of God	527
7.	CONCLUSION.....	529
8.	ADDENDUM	533
	Addendum 1 Chapter 2	533
	Addendum 2 Chapter 2	545
<i>Chapter 3:</i>	<i>An Introduction to the Complex South African Ethnography</i>	545
1.	INTRODUCTION	545
2.	INTRODUCING THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN PEOPLE	546
3.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: DARWINISM, THE SOUTH AFRICAN PREHISTORIC ARCHAEOLOGY	549
3.1	Early Stone Age	556
3.2	Middle Stone Age	557

3.3	Late Stone Age: San and Khoi the First Indigenous People of South Africa	559
4.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: RECOGNITION OF RESEARCH DONE BY MICHAEL TELLINGER PERTAINING TO SOUTH AFRICA'S FIRST INHABITANTS	560
4.1	Adam's Calendar	561
4.2	Stone Circles and Structures	563
4.3	Spiritual and Energy Properties of These Circles	565
4.4	Ancient Gold Mines Reveal the Early People and Their Spirituality	566
4.5	The Sumerian Tablets	569
4.6	Sumerian Tablets in Reference to South Africa and the Origin of Man	571
4.7	DNA Studies	575
5.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNICITY AND ETHNOGRAPHY IN A DIVERSE ETHNICAL SOCIETY: THE SCIENCE OF HISTORIOGRAPHY	583
5.1	Imperial Emphasis	584
5.2	Colonial Emphasis	585
5.3	National Emphasis (Afrikaner and Black)	585
5.4	Liberal Emphasis	585
5.5	Radical (Revolutionary) Emphasis	586
5.6	African Historiography	586
6.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: THE EARLY DOCUMENTED HISTORY PERTAINING TO THE FIRST INDIGENOUS PEOPLE	587
6.1	Indigenous San: Early Hunters and Gatherers	588
6.1.1	The San Belief System	593
6.1.1.1	/Kaggen	593
6.1.1.2	Ancestral	593
6.1.1.3	Nature	594
6.1.1.4	San Rites of Passage	596

Table of Contents

6.2	Indigenous Khoi-Khoi (Khoi-Khoi): Herders and Pastoralists	599
6.2.1	Conflict Due to the European Concept of Land Tenure	599
7.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHY: MIGRATING BANTU SPEAKING NATIONS	602
7.1	Bantu Speaking People Defined (African Black Nations)	603
7.2	General Features of Early Bantu-Speaking Societies	606
7.2.1	Stance of Women	606
7.2.2	Rite of Passage	606
7.2.3	Faith and Spirituality	607
7.2.4	General Organisational Structures	607
7.2.5	Advisory Council	609
8.	BLACK ETHNICITY AND MIGRATION	610
8.1	Black Ethnicity: Nguni	612
8.1.1	Northern Nguni: Swazi	613
8.1.1.1	Spirituality	615
8.1.2	Northern Nguni: Zulu	617
8.1.2.1	Spirituality	619
8.1.3	Northern Nguni: Ndebele	620
8.1.3.1	Spirituality	623
8.1.4	Southern Nguni: Xhosa	624
8.1.4.1	Spirituality	624
8.2	Black Ethnicity: Sotho	628
8.2.1	South Sotho/Basotho/Sotho	630
8.2.1.1	Spirituality	633
8.2.2	West Sotho or Tswana	635
8.2.2.1	Spirituality	636
8.2.3	North Sotho Pedi (Bapedi)	638
8.2.3.1	Spirituality	639

Table of Contents

8.3	Black Ethnicity: Tsonga-Shangana	640
8.3.1	Spirituality	642
8.4	Black Ethnicity: Venda	643
8.4.1	Lemba Black Jews	645
8.4.2	Spirituality	646
8.5	Black Ethnicity: Ocampo-Herero	648
9.	SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHY: THE ARRIVAL OF EUROPEAN AND OTHER INTERNATIONAL NATIONALITIES	648
9.1	South African Ethnographic Chronology: First European Interest Prior to Colonization (1400's)	648
9.1.1	The Arrival of the Portuguese 1497	648
9.2	South African Ethnographic Chronology: Pre-Colonial Trade in the Cape (1500's)	652
9.2.1	1500's Chronology Overview	652
9.3	South African Ethnographic Chronology: Colonization. The Arrival of European and Other International Nationalities (1600's)	654
9.3.1	1600's Chronology Overview	654
9.3.2	The Arrival of the Dutch 1652	656
9.3.3	The Arrival of Skilled Artisans	658
9.3.4	The Arrival of Slaves 1657	658
9.3.5	The Arrival Malaysians	661
9.3.6	The Arrival of the French 1688	662
9.3.7	New Indigenous Nations	663
9.3.7.1	Coloureds or Mixed Race	663
9.3.7.2	Afrikaners	664
9.4	South African Ethnographic Chronology: Colonization Continue (1700's)	665
9.4.1	1700's Chronology Overview	665
9.4.2	Christianity: The First Mission 1737	667

Table of Contents

9.4.3	Britain's First Occupation of the Cape: The Arrival of the English 1795	669
9.5	South African Ethnographic Chronology: South African Chronology (1800's) .	670
9.5.1	1800's Chronology Overview	670
9.5.2	British Missionaries 1801	672
9.5.3	Britain's Second Occupation of the Cape	673
9.5.4	British Settlers 1820	673
9.5.5	Mfecane, Also Called Difaqane 1815-1830	674
9.5.5.1	Spiritual Implications of Mfecane	678
9.5.6	The Afrikaner's Interior Migration: 'Groot Trek' 1835	679
9.5.6.1	What Was the Great Trek?	680
9.5.6.2	Who Participated?	681
9.5.6.3	Motivations for the Departure (Trek)	682
9.5.6.4	Different Trek Groups	684
9.5.6.4.1	Trichardt and Van Rensburg	684
9.5.6.4.2	Andries Hendrik Potgieter	685
9.5.6.4.3	Gerrit Maritz	685
9.5.6.4.4	Piet Retief	686
9.5.6.4.5	Piet Uys	686
9.5.7	South African Indians, a Condensed Reflection on Their History	686
9.6	South African Ethnographic Chronology: 1900's	690
9.6.1	1900's Chronology Overview	690
9.6.2	Chinese Arrive 1904	695
9.6.3	The Union of South Africa (1910-1948)	696
9.6.4	The Union of South Africa (1948-1994)	697
9.6.5	The Republic of South Africa (1961-1994)	699
9.6.6	The Republic of South Africa After the First Democratic Election. 1994 – current	699
9.7	South African Ethnographic Chronology: 2000's	699

Table of Contents

9.7.1	2000's Chronology Overview	699
9.7.2	Ethnography: Race Classification 2020	700
9.7.3	Concepts Contributing to the Complexity of the South African Ethnography: Eleven Official Languages	704
9.7.3.1	Gayle.....	704
9.7.3.2	The Complexity of the Variety of Afrikaans Speakers	705
9.7.3.2.1	Kaaps.....	705
9.7.3.2.2	Arabic-Afrikaans	706
9.7.3.2	The Complexity of the Variety of English	708
9.7.3.3	Black Languages	708
9.7.4	Concepts Contributing to the Complexity of the South African Ethnography: Various Concepts Describing Groups of People	713
9.7.4.1	Race	714
9.7.4.1.1	Origin and Etymology of Race	714
9.7.4.1.2	Race: Synonyms	714
9.7.4.1.3	Classification: Origin and Etymology of Race	714
9.7.4.1.4	Race: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People	715
9.7.4.1.5	General Remarks Pertaining to Race in South Africa	716
9.7.4.1.6	Race Classification Reflected in Censuses	718
	a. Censuses: From Colonization to the Union of South Africa. (1652-1910) ...	718
	b. Censuses: The Union of South Africa (1910-1948)	719
	c. Censuses: The Republic of South Africa (1948-1994)	720
	d. Censuses: The Republic of South Africa After the First Democratic Election (1994 – current)	721
9.7.4.2	Ethnic Groups	724
9.7.4.2.1	Ethnic Group: Origin and Etymology of Ethnic Group	724
9.7.4.2.2	Ethnic Group: Synonyms	724

Table of Contents

9.7.4.2.3	Ethnic Group: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People	727
9.7.4.2.4	General Remarks Pertaining to Ethnicity in South Africa	727
9.7.4.3	Culture	728
9.7.4.3.1	Culture: Origin and Etymology of Culture	728
9.7.4.3.2	Culture: Synonyms	728
9.7.4.3.3	Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People	729
9.7.4.3.4	General Remarks Pertaining to Culture in South Africa	732
9.7.4.4	Tribe	733
9.7.4.4.1	Tribe: Origin and Etymology of Tribe	733
9.7.4.4.2	Tribe: Synonyms	733
9.7.4.4.3	Tribe: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People	733
9.7.4.4.4	General Remarks Pertaining to Tribe in South Africa	736
9.7.4.5	Nation	737
9.7.4.5.1	Nation: Origin and Etymology	737
9.7.4.5.2	Nation: Synonyms	737
9.7.4.5.3	Nation: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People	738
9.7.4.5.4	General Remarks Pertaining to Nation in South Africa	742
10.	A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE PERTAINING TO TONGUE, TRIBE AND NATION	743
11.	CONCLUSION	748
11.	ADDENDUM	753
11.1	Addendum 1 Chapter 3	753
11.2	Addendum 2 Chapter 3	754
11.3	Addendum 3 Chapter 3	755

Table of Contents

11.4	Addendum 4 Chapter 3	756
11.5	Addendum 5 Chapter 3	757

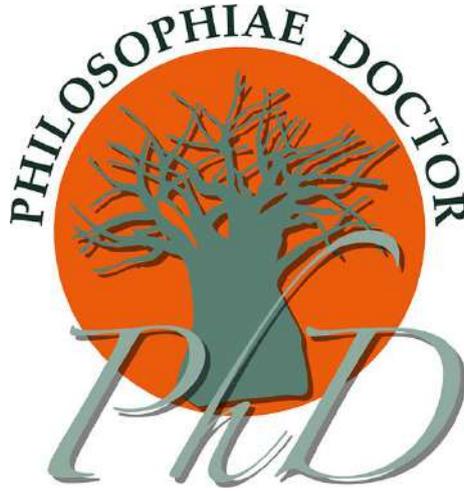


TABLE OF CONTENTS (Volume II)

<i>Chapter 4:</i>	<i>Possible Esoteric Influences in South Africa's History And the Development of the Constitution in Alignment with a Global Reset Strategy</i>	783
1.	INTRODUCTION	759
2.	OVERVIEW OF SECRET SOCIETIES	760
2.1	Nimrod, the First Antichrist and God-Man Theory	764
2.2	Kabbalah	766
2.2.1	The South African Application	769
2.3	Talmud	769
2.4	Order of the Knights Templars	770
2.4.1	History	771

Table of Contents

2.4.2	Templars Organisation	775
2.4.3	Hidden Symbolism and Religion	776
2.4.4	The End of the Templars	777
2.4.5	The Knight Templars Association with the Freemasons	778
2.4.6	Current	781
2.4.7	The South African Application	783
2.4.7.1	First Voyage Around the Cape, Sponsored and Captained by Templars ...	783
2.4.7.2	South African Templars Ordained	783
2.4.7.3	South African Templars	784
2.5	Jesuits	785
2.5.1	Significance of Jesuit Pope (Black Pope)	789
2.5.2	Significance of the Grey Pope	790
2.5.3	The South African Application	792
2.5.2.1	Jesuit African History	792
2.5.2.2	The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide – Drake Shelton	795
2.5.2.3	Robert Mugabe	801
2.5.3.4	The Current South African Jesuit Office	803
2.6	Freemasons	804
2.6.1	Defining the Freemason Phenomena ..	806
2.6.1.1	Freemasons Official Declaration Defining Themselves	806
2.6.1.2	Other Definition	808
2.6.2	Freemason Origin and History	808
2.6.2.1	Stone Masons	808
2.6.2.2	Anglo American Faction	815
2.6.2.3	French Continental Faction	816
2.6.3	Freemason History: The Establishment of Lodges in South Africa	843
2.6.3.1	1600-1699: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa	818
2.6.3.2	1700 - 1799: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa	819

Table of Contents

2.6.3.2.1	Dutch Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape	821
2.6.3.2.2	English Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape	824
2.6.3.3	1800 - 1899: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa	825
2.6.3.3.1	Dutch Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape 1800-1899	825
2.6.3.3.2	English Freemason Lodges 1800-1899. Expansion to the Eastern Cape, Natal, and Interior	827
2.6.3.3.3	Dutch Freemasonry 1800-1899 Expansion to the South African Interior	831
2.6.3.3.4	Freemason Expansion: Other Grand Lodges	832
2.6.3.3.4.1	Grand Lodge of France	832
2.6.3.3.4.2	Grand Lodge of Scotland	832
2.6.3.3.4.3	Irish Freemason Lodges	834
2.6.3.3.5	Freemasonry in the Afrikaner Republics of the Orange Free State and Transvaal	833
2.6.3.3.5.1	Freemason Expansion with the Discovery of Diamonds and Gold	837
2.6.3.3.6	Impact of the Second War of Independence (Anglo Boer War) 1880-1899 ..	838
2.6.3.3.7	Afrikaner Secret Society: Afrikaansche Bond 1883	839
2.6.3.3.8	Jan Smuts Double Membership Nomination to Influence Afrikaner Electorate to Advance the Roundtable Goal	841
2.6.3.3.9	Anglo Boer War 1899-1902	841
2.6.3.3.10	Peace Accord at Vereeniging	
2.6.3.4	1900 - 1999: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa	847
2.6.3.4.1	Freemasons Pre-empted the United South Africa (1910)	847
2.6.3.4.2	Ossewa Brandwag (Ox Wagon Sentinel) WO I (1914)	850
2.6.3.4.3	Afrikaner Secret Society: Broederbond (1921) and Afrikaner Bond	851
2.6.3.4.4	Possible Freemason Influenced Ceremony During the Voortrekker Monument Cornerstone Celebration 1938	857
2.6.3.4.5	Apartheid	859
2.6.3.4.6	A United Grand Lodge	859

Table of Contents

2.6.3.4.7	Significance of the South African Coat of Arms	861
2.6.3.5	2000-Current	863
2.6.3.5.1	Grand Lodge South Africa	864
2.6.3.5.1.1	Southern Division	865
2.6.3.5.1.2	Northern Division	866
2.6.3.5.1.3	Central Division	867
2.6.3.5.1.4	Eastern Division	868
2.6.3.5.1.5	Eastern Cape Division	868
2.6.3.5.2	Aim of the Grand Lodge	869
2.6.3.5.3	Masonic Principles	869
2.6.3.5.4	Annual Meetings	871
2.6.3.5.5	Application for Membership	871
2.6.3.5.6	Joining, Re-joining and Affiliating	872
2.6.4	Particular Comments	873
2.6.4.1	Masonic Influence in Architecture	873
2.6.4.2	Obelisk Monuments	874
2.6.4.3	South African Parliament and the Lodge De Goede Hoop	875
2.6.4.4	Notable South African Freemasons	876
2.6.4.6	Application for Membership	878
2.7	The Illuminate	879
2.7.1	The Origin of the Illuminate	881
2.7.1.1	The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion	881
2.7.1.2	Infiltration of the Freemasons	886
2.7.1.2.1	First Class: Novices	887
2.7.1.2.2	Second Class: Minervals	887
2.7.1.2.3	Third Class: Illuminated Minevrls	887
2.7.2	International Influence	888
2.7.2.1	The Rothchild Order to the Illuminate	888

Table of Contents

2.7.2.2	Communism	891
2.7.2.3	The Illuminati and the Council of Foreign Relations	893
2.7.2.4	Bilderberg Conference	895
2.7.2.5	The United Nations	895
2.7.2.6	Central Intelligence Agency and Central Telecommunications Agency	896
2.7.2.7	National Council of Churches	896
2.7.2.8	Dollar Imperialism and American Influence	897
2.7.2.9	Pan Africanism	901
2.7.2.10	Pax America Decline and Beginning of New World Order	901
2.7.2.11	World War III	902
2.7.2.12	Media Control	902
2.7.2.12	Chronological Overview of the Illuminate/Rothchild International Manipulation	903
2.7.3	Application to South Africa	913
2.7.3.1	South African Mining Industry	913
2.7.3.2	Anti-hate Legislation	917
2.7.3.2.1	Julius Malema Perceived Unchallenged Status	919
2.7.3.4	The Application of the Legislation on Religion	921
2.7.3.5	Rothchild's Controlled Central Banks	921
2.7.3.6	Media Control	922
2.7.3.7	Possible South African Leaders	922
2.7.3.8	Relevance of 1 st of May	924
2.8	Suspicious Political Murders	925
2.8.1	Murder of Chris Hani	925
2.8.2	Murder of Dulcie September	927
2.8.3	Murder of Anton Lubowski	929
2.8.4	Spirituality and Reports of Possible Clandestine Motivations	930
2.9	The New Age Movement/New World Order	932

Table of Contents

2.9.1	An Abridged History	933
2.9.2	New Age Goal	933
2.9.3	New Age Strategy	934
2.9.4	The Club of 500	939
2.9.4.1	New World Order Proposed Diagram	940
2.9.5	Application to South Africa	941
2.9.5.1	One Religion	942
2.9.5.2	Transformation of the Society	943
2.9.5.3	Sexuality Strategy	943
2.9.5.4	Political Correctness	943
2.9.5.5	International Monitoring	944
2.9.5.6	Cashless Society	944
2.9.5.7	International Crisis	945
2.9.5.8	World Ruler	945
2.9.5.9	Pax Britannica	947
2.9.5.10	The New Illuminati – Round Table	947
2.9.5.11	Pax Americana	948
3.	PHOTOGRAPHIC EVIDENCE OF SOUTH AFRICAN SECRET SOCIETY RECOGNITIONS	949
4.	CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT	952
4.1	Previous Constitutions and Related Political Development	954
4.2	Development of the Current Constitution	977
5.	THE CURRENT SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION: THE SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA, 1966. ACT NO. 108 OF 1996	958
5.1	The Content of the Constitution of South Africa	959
5.2	Constitution’s Proclamation: One Law for One Nation	961
5.3	Constitution’s Preamble	962

Table of Contents

5.4	Chapter One: Constitutions Founding Principles	963
5.5	National Symbols Since 1994	966
5.5.1	The Current National Anthem	967
5.5.2	The South African Flag	969
5.5.3	Public Holidays	971
5.5.4	Additional: National Symbol Not in Constitution: The South African Coat of Arms	974
5.5.5	Alternative Interpretation of the South African Coat of Arms	976
5.6.	Chapter Two of The Constitution: Bill of Rights	976
5.6.1	The Bill of Rights Goal	976
5.6.2	Summary of the Content of the Bill of Rights	978
5.6.3	Individual Rights Described and Protected	1000
5.7	Organisations to Ensure the Implementation of the Bill of Rights	1002
5.7.1	Section 27	1002
5.7.2	The South African Human Rights Commission	1002
5.7.3	Department of Justice and Constitutional Development	1002
5.7.4	Freedom of Expression Institute	1003
5.7.5	The Open Society Foundation of South Africa (OSF-SA)	1003
5.7.6	Open Society Foundations	1003
5.7.7	Commission for Gender Equality	1004
5.7.8	Public Protector	1004
5.7.9	Pan South African Language Board	1004
5.7.10	National Youth Commission	1005
5.8	Other Chapters Impacting on the Spirituality or Spiritual Character of South Africa	1005
5.8.1	Chapter Nine: Commission for the Promotion and Protection of The Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities and Linguistic Communities	1005

Table of Contents

5.8.2	Chapter Nine: The Commission for Gender Equality. Article 187	1008
5.9	The Relationship Between the Constitution and Other Laws	1010
5.9.1	Statutes (Laws or Acts) Developed by Government	1010
5.9.2	Common Law	1011
5.9.3	Customary Law	1011
5.9.4	Legislation with a spiritual impact	1011
6.	CONCLUSION	1014
7.	ADDENDUM	1019
7.1	An interpretation of World Political and Economic Power	1019
7.2	Diagram depicting the New World Order	1020
7.3	Alternative Interpretation of the South African Coat of Arms	1021
7.4	New World Order Diagram	1022

<i>Chapter 5:</i>	<i>The manifestation of spirituality, with emphasis on superstition and witchcraft in economic, political and social behaviour.</i>	1023
-------------------	---	------

1.	INTRODUCTION	1023
2.	RELIGIOUS FREEDOM PROTECTED BY THE SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION	1025
2.1	South African Charter of Religious Rights and Freedoms	1027
2.1.1	South African Council of Churches (SACC)	1028
2.1.2	African National Healers Association	1029
2.1.3	South African Pagan Rights Alliance (NPC)	1031
2.2	Customary vs Roman-Dutch Law	1031

Table of Contents

2.2.1	Labour Law: Basic Conditions of Employment Act No. 75 of 1997 and the Traditional Health Practitioners Act No. 22 of 2007	1032
2.2.2	The Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council	1032
2.2.3	Traditional Health Practitioners Act, Act No. 22 of 2007	1032
2.2.4	The International Labour Organization (ILO)	1037
2.2.5	The South African Skills Development Act	1037
3.	RELIGIONS AND SPIRITUALITY PRESENT IN CONTEMPORARY SOUTH AFRICA	1038
3.1	South African Population	1038
3.2	South African Religions	1041
3.2.1	Roman Catholicism in South Africa	1042
3.2.2	Christianity in Africa	1047
3.2.2.1	African Independent Churches (AIC)	1047
3.2.2.2	An Abbreviated History of the Methodist Church in South Africa	1055
3.2.2.3	An Abbreviated History of the Pentecostal Churches in South Africa	1060
3.2.2.3.1	An Abbreviated History of the Apostolic Faith Mission in South Africa	1064
3.2.2.3.2	Pentecostal Revival in the Indian Community	1067
3.2.2.4	An Abbreviated History of the Reformed Churches: Protestantism	1070
3.2.2.4.1	Significant Dates Prior to the Arrival of Christianity in the Cape	1070
3.2.2.4.2	The Development of the Three Main Afrikaans Churches	1073
3.2.2.5	An Abbreviated History of the Anglican Church in South Africa	1074
3.2.2.6	An Abbreviated History of the Lutheran Church in South Africa	1075
3.2.2.7	An Abbreviated History of the Presbyterians Church in South Africa	1080
3.2.2.8	An Abbreviated History of the Baptist Church in South Africa	1083
3.2.2.9	An Abbreviated History of the Congregational Churches	1085
3.2.3	Other Religions	1088
3.2.3.1	An Abbreviated History of Hinduism in South Africa	1091
3.2.3.2	An Abbreviated History of Islam in South Africa	1095

Table of Contents

3.2.3.3	An Abbreviated History of Judaism in South Africa	1096
3.2.3.4	An Abbreviated History of Buddhism	1102
4.	AFRICAN TRADITIONAL RELIGION	1104
4.1	Sui Generis Phenomenon vs Anthropologist Holistic Approach	1104
4.2	Method and Theory	1105
4.3	The Place in History	1106
4.4	Resilience and Adaptability	1106
4.5	Homogeneity of African Traditional Religions	1107
4.5.1	Cosmology	1108
4.5.1.1	God (Creator), Man and Spirits	1109
4.5.1.2	African Philosophy of Being	1114
4.5.1.3	Transcendence of the Sacred	1114
4.5.1.4	Ancestral Veneration	1115
4.5.1.4.1	Ancestor Veneration: Archaeological Evidence of Phenomena	1118
4.5.1.4.2	Ancestor Veneration: Religion of Fear	1119
4.5.1.4.3	Ancestor Veneration: Cultural Variations	1119
4.5.1.4.4	The Impact of Urbanisation in Ancestor Veneration	1120
4.5.1.4.5	Ancestor Spirits Contribution to the Understanding of Two Kingdoms	1121
4.5.2	African Ethics and Morality	1121
4.5.3	Art as an Expressions of Spirituality	1123
4.5.3.1	Paintings	1123
4.5.3.2	Sculptures	1124
4.5.3.3	Wooden Masks	1125
4.5.3.4	Music, Dance and Drums	1125
4.5.3.5	Toyitoyi	1126
4.6	Additional Fundamental Spiritual Practices and Concepts	1127
4.6.1	Voodoo	1127
4.6.2	Witchcraft	1130

Table of Contents

4.6.3	Magic and Sorcery	1135
4.6.5	Sangoma and Traditional Healers	1136
4.6.5.1	The Calling of a Traditional Healer and Sangomas	1138
4.6.5.2	Anthropological Interpretation of Sickness and Healing	1140
4.6.5.3	Anthropological Diagnoses Methodology	1141
4.6.5.4	Anthropological Interpretation of Medicine: Muti and Herbal Medicine	1142
4.6.5.4.1	Muti (Muthi)	1143
4.6.5.4.2	Human Organs for Muti and Muti Murders	1144
4.6.6	The Significance of Water	1150
5.	KINGDOM CULTURE – A BIBLICAL EVALUATION	1151
5.1	Life After Death	1151
5.2	Intermediary	1152
5.3	Worship	1153
5.4	Ancestral Veneration vs Biblical Principle	1154
6.	SPIRITUAL IMPACT IN THE POLITICAL SOCIETY	1155
6.1	Jezebel in Politics	1156
6.1.1	Biblical Introduction to Jezebel in the Old Testament	1156
6.1.1.1	Biblical Narrative: Jezebel and Ahab	1157
6.1.1.2	Biblical Narrative: Elijah vs Jezebel	1159
6.1.1.3	Biblical Reference of Jezebel in the New Testament	1161
6.1.2	Ahab and Jezebel Application to South Africa	1162
6.1.2.1	Deliberate Witchcraft Focusses on Leaders and Influential Men	1162
6.1.2.2	Jezebel in the Media	1165
6.1.2.3	The Application of the Influence of the Jezebel Spirit Pertaining to ANC Government	1166
6.1.2.3.1	Silencing the Prophetic Voice	1167
6.1.2.3.2	Closing the Prophetic School	1169
6.1.2.3.3	False Religion in the Seat of Government	1170

Table of Contents

6.1.2.3.4	Spiritual Adultery	1172
6.1.2.3.5	Murder	1172
6.1.3	The Consequences of a National Head of State's Sin	1173
6.1.4	Knowledge of the Word of God	1175
6.1.5	Forsaking the Word of God	1175
6.1.6	Prophetic Visitation	1176
6.1.7	Ignorance Towards the Prophetic Word Spoken	1177
6.1.8	Spiritual Adultery in the Seat of Governance	1177
6.1.9	Good Governance Forsaken	1178
6.1.10	Spiritual Authority in the Parliament	1179
6.2	Broederbond Political Manipulation	1181
6.3	Ossewa Brandwag	1182
6.4	The Relation of Religion or Spirituality and Nationalism: Afrikaner Nationalism a Pseudo Religion	1183
6.4.1	Interpretation of Afrikaner vs Boer	1183
6.4.1.1	British Imperialism Support	1184
6.4.1.2	Geographical Origin of the Boer	1184
6.4.1.3	Boer Language	1185
6.4.1.4	Colonials vs Born in Africa	1185
6.4.1.5	Leadership	1186
6.4.2	A New Afrikaner Identity is Born	1187
6.4.3	Aspired Independence Founded in the Boer Republics	1188
6.4.4	Afrikaner Boer Hero's and Monuments	1189
6.4.5	The Religious Statement of the Voortrekker Monument	1190
6.4.6	Afrikaans Language	1194
6.4.7	Education: History Syllabus	1194
6.4.8	Religious Assimilation	1197
6.4.8.1	The Groot Trek and Association with Israel	1197

Table of Contents

6.4.8.2	The Battle of Blood River Covenant with God	1198
6.4.8.3	The History of the Boer was a 'lijdensgeschiedenis'	1199
6.4.8.4	Ossewa Brandwag	1202
6.5	Architecture and Monuments	1205
6.5.1	Voortrekker Monument	1206
6.5.2	Freedom Park	1207
6.5.3	Freemason Lodge De Goede Hoop	1209
6.5.4	Dutch Reform Church Building Architecture	1211
6.6	Political Parties and Organisations with Religious Orientated Manifesto's ...	1213
6.7	Multi-party Democracy and Ancestral Veneration	1216
6.8	Apartheid - A Biblical Predicament	1218
6.9	The Phenomena of Praise Singers	1219
6.10	ANC's Discourse on Religion	1223
6.10.1	Nelson Mandela Lecture 2006	1223
6.10.2	ANC 52 nd National Conference Polokwane 2007	1224
6.10.3	President Jacob Zuma Ordained as Honorary Neo Pentecostal Minister	1226
6.10.4	Christian Support for the ANC	1229
6.10.5	President Cyril Ramaphosa Ancestral Guidance	1230
6.11	Islam in South African Politics	1230
6.12	Witchcraft in Politics	1231
7.	SPIRITUALITY IN THE ECONOMIC SOCIETY	1233
7.1	Economic Impact of the Marikana Disaster	1233
7.2	South Africa's Healthcare Contribution to the GDP	1234
7.2.1	Prayer and Fasting for South Africa	1234
7.2.2	Traditional Medicine Accommodated in Western Medical Practices Pharmaceutical Retail	1235
7.2.3	Traditional Medicine Incorporated in Social Media	1235
7.3	Territorial Spiritual Impact on Pretoria City Development	1236

Table of Contents

7.4	South Africa's Crime Rate and the Private Security Industry Contribution to the GDP	1238
7.5	Halal Industry in South Africa	1240
7.6	Spiritual Tourism	1241
7.6.1	Spiritual Retreats in South Africa	1241
7.6.2	Islam Inflates the Cape Tourism Industry	1245
7.7	False Christianity Exploit a Dysfunctional Government	1245
7.8	Animal Sacrifices to the Ancestors Monetary Value	1247
7.9	Spirituality Impacting Personal Finances	1249
7.10	Spirituality in Retail	1251
7.10.1	Territorial Spiritual Impact on the Johannesburg Shopping Centres	1251
7.10.2	Formal Retail and Consultation Services	1253
7.10.3	Informal Retail/Trade	1255
7.11	General Remarks Pertaining the Impact of Spirituality on Finances	1257
7.12	Modern Technology – Social Media Use in Sangomahood	1259
8.	SPIRITUALITY IN THE SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT	1259
8.1	Rites of Passage (Life Cycle)	1259
8.2	HIV/Aids	1264
8.3	Spirituality Impact on Nature	1267
8.4	Spirituality Manifesting in Sport	1267
8.5	The 'Tokoloshe' Phenomenon	1268
8.6	Spirituality Impact Relationships and Individuals	1270
8.7	Amalgamation of Spirituality and 'Western Medicine'	1274
8.7.1	Covid-19 Strategies	1275
8.7.2	Muti Assisting Childbirth	1276
9.	CONCLUSION	1278
10.	ADDENDUM	1281

	<i>Conclusion</i>	1331
1.	INTRODUCTION	1331
2.	(re)SOLUTION FOR SOUTH AFRICA	1336
2.1.	Return to God South Africa!	1336
2.2	Knowledge of Godly Principles	1342
2.2.1	Atonement and Justification of by the Blood of Jesus Christ	1342
2.2.2	Prophecies for South Africa	1343
2.2.3	Understand Timeline: Jewish Calendar	1344
2.2.4	It Is Time for War	1345
2.2.5	Word of Testimony	1345
2.2.6	Fear	1346
2.2.7	Sheep and Goat Nations	1347
2.2.8	Communion	1347
2.2.9	Five-Fold Ministry	1348
2.2.10	Do Not Be Rebellious	1348
2.2.11	Priest and Prophetic Ministries	1348
2.3	Defence Tactics: Battle Plan – Know Weapons of Combat	1349
2.3.1	Submit to God	1349
2.3.2	Jesus Assistance in War	1349
2.3.3	Angelic Help	1349
2.3.4	The Name of Jesus Christ	1350
2.3.5	Weapon of the Blood of Jesus	1350
2.3.6	Armour	1351
2.3.7	Watchmen	1352
2.4	Understand Biblical Principles: Offence Tactics	1353
2.4.1	As a Nation: Fast	1353

Table of Contents

2.4.2	As a Nation: Thanksgiving, Praise and Worship Unto God	1355
2.4.3	As a Nation: Stay True to the Word of God	1358
2.4.4	Words and Confessions Creates Strongholds	1359
2.4.5	Casting Out Demons	1359
2.4.5.1	Authority vs Power	1360
2.4.5.2	The Authority to Bind and Loose	1361
2.5	Lessons From Similar Circumstances in the Bible	1361
2.5.1	Esther	1361
2.5.2	Nineveh	1362
3.	COMMAND FOR SOUTH AFRICA	1362
3.1	The Great Command	1362
3.2	Seek God and Be Transformed	1363
3.3	Pursue in Battle Against Evil Only With Holy Spirit Guidance	1364
3.4	Do Not Judge	1365
4.	TAKE ACTION SOUTH AFRICAN: CORPORATELY RETURN TO GOD	1366
4.1	<i>20th July 2008 - Loftus Versfeld</i>	1366
4.2	<i>It's Time – Bloemfontein</i>	1367
4.3	<i>Its Time Pretoria, October 27, 2018</i>	1368
4.4	Appose Passivity	1369
4.4.1	ProjectSA, Bringing Hope, Healing and Restoration	1369
4.4.2	Kingdom Nation: Uniting South Africa in Christ	1370
4.4.3	Christian Consensus in South Africa	1370
4.4.4	FOR SA (Freedom of Religion South Africa) for Faith and Freedom	1371
5.	A FINAL WORD	1372

Case Studies

1375

Table of Contents

1.	INTRODUCTION	1375
1.1	Art and SpiritualitySupernatural	1376
2.	CASE STUDY NO.1: SPIRITUALITY IN THE ART OF DR. ESTHER MAHLANGU	1376
2.1	Introducing Dr. Machalngu	1377
2.2	Dr. Machlangu Explained	1382
2.3	CONCLUSION: THE SPIRITUAL CONTEXT	1382
3.	CASE STUDY NO 2: THE ALTERNATIVE AFRIKAANS MUSIC MOVEMENT'S IMPACT OR REFLECTION ON SPRITUAL ASPECTS OF AFRIKANER NATIONALISM PSEUDO RELIGION	1384
3.1	Historical Background Pertaining to their 'Partiachal Culture' and Pseudo- Religious Nationalism	1386
3.2	PossibleSpiritual Componentes of the Movement	1387
3.2.1	Perceived Mockery of Church Conveyed in the Name or Gerefomeerde Blues Band	1387
3.2.2	Protest Lyrics in Afrikaans	1389
3.2.3	Afrikaans Transformed in the Rock-gentre	1390
3.2.4	Rebellion Against Authority	1391
3.3	CONCLUSION	1393
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	1393
	TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS	1507
	LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES	1599

--ooOoo--

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD



Prolegomena



PROLEGOMENA

1. INTRODUCTION

Geographically, South Africa is located at the Southernmost tip of Africa. The coastline stretches more than 2,500 kilometres (1,600 miles) from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic Coast on the Western coast, Southwards around the tip of Africa and then northeast to the border with Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

South Africa has a single time zone and is known as one of the best climates in the world with at least seven ecosystems. Johannesburg is, with the inclusion of the adjacent Randburg and Sandton, South Africa's largest city. It is the only major world city not developed next to a sea, ocean, river or any major source of water. Johannesburg is also the youngest major city in the world.

South Africa was internationally applauded for a peaceful transition from white supremacy rule to an all-inclusive democracy.

The country now encapsulates all the traits of democracy; open elections, individual rights, equality under the law, constitutional government, free political activity – yet

one can argue that South Africa is not a blessed country and its citizens, ostensibly free under the law, and yet do not experience freedom. It is the authors opinion that their unfortunate living conditions exist as a result of unmeasurable corruption that has perpetuated poverty, crime and racial tension. The document is rooted in the spiritual and not in the material.

The story of South Africa is one of struggle and the struggle has assumed many forms – from competition over land and resources in the early years to more sophisticated armed conflict in more recent times. Even when relative peace has prevailed, it has generally been an uneasy peace. Wars, rebellions, strikes and protests have divided our people and highlighted the differences between us.¹

The euphoria of one united nation after the elation of the 1994 first democratic election wore off and the reality of a divided and burdened South African overflowed daily news reports. Numerous accounts of fraud and corruption, state capture, crime and especially the brutality of violent crimes contribute to a deeply divided and burdened South African nation.

South Africans are also of mixed ancestry, class and culture, a “rainbow nation” of diverse people who nevertheless have characteristics in common.²

Spirituality encompasses religion, beliefs, faith and superstition. This study endeavoured to investigate spiritual influences on the mentioned disciplines of politics, the economy and social behaviours.

People often confuse spirituality with religion. People can be both religious and spiritual, but it is also possible to be religious without being spiritual, or to be spiritual without being religious.³

The research also evaluated the meaning of “a nation” and evaluated the possibility of a deeply divided, multi-cultural, multi-racial, multi-linguistic population qualification to be called or referred to as one united South African nation. The parallels and discrepancies between nation, tribe, customs, culture, and population

¹ Natrass, G. (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown, Johannesburg, Media 24. P. 1 and 3

² Natrass, G. (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown, Johannesburg, Media 24. P. 3

³ Paul, Margaret PhD (December 21, 2015) *What Does It Means to Be a Spiritual Person?* Available at: https://www.huffingtonpost.com/margaret-paul-phd/what-does-it-mean-to-be-a_12_b_8855220.html

will be presented as vital in comprehending the diversity of the South African people.

Contrary to popular belief, South Africa is not a nation. We simply inhabit one geographical space. Geography does not, however, denote nationhood.⁴

The Bible is recognised as the perfect Word of the Almighty Triune God the Father, Holy Spirit and Jesus Christ. This study accepted Biblical guidelines for all spheres of life. The author was of the opinion that Biblical principles overrule culture and do not discriminate in any manner, especially not on ethnicity. The elevation of culture to overrule Biblical principles is idolatry. Within this framework, spirituality in South African was evaluated according to Biblical principles. This thesis acknowledged the following divine truths:

- The Bible is divinely inspired by God.⁵ (2 Timothy 3:16)⁶
- The Bible is complete and trustworthy.⁷ (Psalm 19:7)⁸
- The content of the Bible is complete.⁹(Proverbs 30:5-6)¹⁰
- God is sovereign.¹¹ (Genesis 1:1)¹²
- God delegated His power to mankind¹³ (Genesis 1:26)¹⁴

Introduction: Introducing the Research Title

➤ Expounding

⁴ Qunta, C. (2016) *Why are we not a nation*. Cape Town, Seriti SA Sechabe Publishers. P. ix

⁵ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xii

⁶ 2 Timothy 3:16 (KJV) All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.

⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xii

⁸ Psalm 19:7 (KJV) The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple.

⁹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xii

¹⁰ Proverbs 30:5-6 (KJV) Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him. Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.

¹¹ Filled Life Bible NKJV General Editor Jack W. Hawford Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xiv

¹² Genesis 1:1 (KJV) In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

¹⁴ Genesis 1:26 (KJV) And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

- Spirituality
- Spiritual Diversity
- Diversity in South African Cultures
- Impact on the Economy
- Impact on the Politics
- Impact on the Social life

1.1 Expounding

Merriam-Webster defined the verb as follows:

Explain, expound, explicate, elucidate, interpret mean to make something clear or understandable. Explain implies a making plain or intelligible what is not immediately obvious or entirely known (i.e. explain the rules) expound implies a careful often elaborate explanation.¹⁵

The definition is also confirmed with the following:

To explain or set forth (an argument, theory, etc.) in detail: to expound on one's theories, he expounded his reasoning. Expounder, noun. Word Origin. C13: from Old French espondre, from Latin expōnere to set forth, from pōnere to put. Word Origin and History for expound.¹⁶

Oxford supplements the definition as follows:

- *Synonyms*

Present, present and explain a theory or idea in detail, put forward, set forth, proffer, offer, advance, propose, propound, frame, give an account of, recount, elaborate on, expand on, expatiate on, dwell on, harp on, discuss at length, explain, interpret, explicate, elucidate

- *Origin*

Middle English expoune (in the sense 'explain (what is difficult)'): from Old French espon-, present tense stem of espondre, from Latin exponere 'expose, publish, explain', from ex- 'out' + ponere 'put'. The origin of the final -d (recorded from the Middle English period) is uncertain.¹⁷

¹⁵ Expound: Merriam Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/expound>

¹⁶ Expound: Dictionary.com. Available at: www.dictionary.com/browse/expounding

¹⁷ Expound: Oxford Lexico. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/expound>

This study endeavoured to present, put forward and propose the vital role spirituality plays in the political social and economic behaviours of South Africans.

This research presented, explained, and interpreted the current spiritual diversity in South Africa.

The study presented numerous accounts of superstition and actual accounts of the paranormal and witchcraft to substantiate this hypothesis of spiritual influences on everyday living, and the impact spirituality has on the afore mentioned disciplines of economics, political and social behaviours.

In order to provide insight into this current spiritual diversity it was imperative to investigate the origin of the variety of spiritual beliefs, religions, superstitions, customs and cultures. The origin is imbedded in the history of the different tribes, cultures, nations and nationalities now intertwined into one South African population.

1.2 Spirituality

McNally was of the opinion that:

“The concept of the human spirit tends to be an idea reserved for theological considerations. Science has no comment on whether or not the spirit exists, much less what happens to the spirit following death.”¹⁸

Owens presented the spiritual reality by stating:

“We live in the midst of invisible forces whose effects alone we perceive. We move among invisible forms whose actions we very often do not perceive at all, though we may be profoundly affected by them.”¹⁹

Opposing McNally, Rosemary E. Guiley was of the opinion that interest into spirituality is not set aside for theologians. She remarked that ***“people are inspired***

¹⁸ McNally, B. (2010) Life after Death & Heaven and Hell. Cape Town, RSA: Struik Christian Books. P. 6

¹⁹ McNally, B. (2010) Life after Death & Heaven and Hell. Cape Town, RSA: Struik Christian Books. P. 6

to probe into the paranormal or metaphysical realms as a result of one of three motivations:

- **One is having an awareness of the supernatural and unseen from an early age.**
- **Secondly is through personal experience(s) that cannot be explained rationally according to what is considered “ordinary reality”**
- **Thirdly is as a result of curiosity probed by movies, TV stories, electronic games etc.²⁰**

In her foreword for “Mysteries of the Supernatural, Rosemary Guiley stated that:

“Darin makes the point that the veil between realms is opening at an increasing pace, with impetus from both sides. We are increasingly drawn (or even plunged) into experience, and he being in other realms are increasingly drawn to interact with us, some for better, some for worse”²¹

With her statement **“even more important, he (Darrin) tackles the dark side as well as the light side”** she acknowledged and emphasized a very significant fact: the supernatural or spiritual world exist of good versus evil, or light versus dark forces.

The existence of the supernatural or paranormal does not inevitably explains or define the existence of the human spirit. It is important to acknowledge the spiritual realm, the paranormal realm or the supernatural and the reality of the human spirit.

McAnally positions the biblical truth by stating that:

- **Every person is born with a spirit.**
- **The human spirit is the core element that differentiates humans from other living creatures. Only humans have spirits.**
- **The human spirit is the main substantiation of the fact that humans are created in God’s image for God is Spirit.**
- **A person’s spirit lives forever and does not die with the person’s physical body²²**

God is Spirit, and His worshipers must worship Him in spirit and in truth.”

John 4:24 (NKL)

²⁰ Owens, D.W. (2014) *Mysteries of the Supernatural*. Virginia Beach, US: 4th Dimension Press, P. xiii

²¹ Owens, D.W. (2014) *Mysteries of the Supernatural*. Virginia Beach, US: 4th Dimension Press. P. xiv

²² McAnally, B. (2010) *Life after Death & Heaven and Hell*. Cape Town, RSA: Struik Christian Books. P. 10

In presenting evidence of the influence of spirituality in the South African context, it was considered foundational to present the Biblical interpretation of the human spirit well as contradictory understanding of the functioning of the supernatural according to the general psychic's interpretations. (The word "Physic" is use with sensitivity and does not imply that all who supports the latter interpretation should necessary be "Physic" or operating as a "Physic". The term is borrowed from Darrin William Owens, whilst it is also understood that he uses this terminology in reference to himself.)

Additional research suggested with regards to the following: Physic/Clairvoyant/ Paranormal (realm) Supernatural (realm), Metaphysical realm²³

1.2.1 Two Kingdoms of Light and Darkness

The Biblical narrates the reality of spiritual kingdom of Light opposed by the kingdom of Darkness. God reigns in the first, satan reigns in the latter. This is the only two spiritual realities. A person belongs to either one of the two. No neutral middle ground exists.

At the outset, the research provided the foundation on which all of its evaluations are grounded. It was important to provide what was considered to be the fundamental truth underlying the understanding of spirituality. The reality of a spiritual realm and the opposing kingdoms of good and evil are explained. The origin of the constant conflict and war in the heavenlies is found in Genesis 1. Lucifer, the fallen angel of light represented or disguised as a serpent deceived Adam and Eve to terminate mankind's spontaneous relationship with God.

The serpent is identified in Revelations 12:9 as Satan himself, here in corporeal form, it is not clear why he chose to indwell this particular beast... which the Lord has made.²⁴

²³ Owens, D.W. (2014) *Mysteries of the Supernatural*. Virginia Beach, US: 4th Dimension Press. P. ix

²⁴ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 8

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. Darby Bible Translation And the great dragon was cast out, the ancient serpent, he who is called Devil and Satan.

Revelations 12:9 (KJV)

The conflict between God and Lucifer, good and evil, light and darkness are still prevalent today. This conflict and Lucifer's strategy to deceive mankind were presented as fundamentally factual to South Africa.

Spiritual influences impact individuals as well as nations and world history. The reality of a Holy Triune God, creator of heaven and earth, longing to have an eternal relationship with believers in Jesus Christ, and His enemy Lucifer, who opposes everything that is from God. Lucifer's hate of God motivates strategies to destroy God's plan in every sense possible, focussing on individuals as well as on nations. It is the authors conviction that in God planned a redemptive gift and plan for every individual and nation. The thesis presented prophetic declarations to reveal God's plan for South Africa.

Specific attention was given to current newspapers reports to provide evidence of the manifestation of spirituality, superstition and witchcraft, all apposing God's Word. Contrary to the Biblical teaching, D.W. Owens suggested the existence of seven Supernatural Realms²⁵

- 1) The Dark Realm: Demonic beings and Fallen Angels
- 2) The Nature Realm: Earth Folk and Nature Spirits
- 3) The Multidimensional Realm: UFO's and Cryptic Creatures
- 4) The Paranormal Realm: Ghosts and Hauntings
- 5) The Spiritual Realm: Human souls and Spirit Guides
- 6) The Divine Realm: Gods, Goddesses and Angelic Beings
- 7) The Source Realm: Mother/Father God: Source of all Creation

²⁵ Owens, D.W. (2014) *Mysteries of the Supernatural*. Virginia Beach, US: 4th Dimension Press. P. xx

1.2.2 Spirit, Soul and Body

In discussing spiritual diversity, it was imperative to define man's spirit or spirituality through the interpretation of the meaning and distinction between an individual's Spirit, Soul, and Body.

1.2.3 The Diversity of South African Cultures

Thirdly, the research introduced the diverseness of the South African population through an abbreviated summary of the history of every nation or tribe represented in the modern society. Newly available census results were included to portray the current population composition.

Culture develops over time and one culture is influenced by the other. Culture and customs not only incorporate beliefs, religion, superstition etc but is rooted in these disciplines. Thus, in the South African context, a wide variety of cultures automatically presents a wide variety of beliefs, religions, and superstitions. This study endeavoured to investigate the manifestation of the different spiritual orientations.

In addition to exploring the diversity of the South Africans via the history of the people, the research also incorporated an investigation of the history of religion and faith movements. Statistically, South Africa is regarded as being 80% Christian. The author finds this misleading because of the inclusion of the African Independent Churches who adopted some aspects of Christianity in an amalgamation with traditional beliefs. The statistic also incorporates Roman Catholicism as a Christian faith. The author disagreed with this inclusion. The latest research results were included to portray the current composition of religions.

Common ground exists between cultures, tribes, or nations, but deeply rooted differences are very prevalent. South Africa is considered a 1st world country as a result of economic and infrastructure developments, yet it still remains part of Africa

- commonly perceived as 3rd world and is also incorporated into the International BRICS²⁶ group of developing countries. Less developed or 3rd world countries are perceived to be less educated and more open to superstitions.

In order to present the similarities as well as the differences between the South African people, it was unavoidable to differentiate between black/white/coloured/Indian, and especially between the various black nations.

It is of the utmost importance to note that any reference to black is by no means clandestine racism or used in a discriminative intent. The reference to “Black” does not imply black people to be one nation and one Homogenous group. This study acknowledges the uniqueness and diversity in culture, language and beliefs among the different black tribes in South Africa.

This research also chose not to use “African” when referring to the black population. This description denies non-black South Africans their Africaness and emphasise the politically exploited perception that they are foreign to Africa (and South Africa). It reduces their status as equal South Africans.

African customs and spirituality encompass a major part of the South African ‘kaleidoscope’ nation. The author noted that the various ‘nations’ of South Africa have a shallow understanding of the customs and spirituality of one another. E.g., Ndebele customs would not be familiar to the Zulu or Venda people and vice versa.

Considering the reality of 11 tribes it is expected that misunderstanding and prejudice exists. The variety of languages also contributes greatly to mistrust and prejudice. People literally do not understand one another and the comprehension of English as the common language is often very limited.

It was not the intent of this study to provide a thorough and complete portrait of the history of every tribe and culture present in the modern South Africa. In contrast, this study will only allow a brief overview of the South African history, focussing to

²⁶ BRICS: Acronym coined to associate five major emerging national economies: Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa.

include a short reflection on every tribe and nation. It will however endeavour to provide enough evidence to the diversity of the cultures and how this diversity is often rooted in spirituality. This study demonstrated that differences are most often found on a spiritual level: The influences of spirituality in many spheres of modern society was presented.

1.3 Impact on Economical Behaviour

Within the South African context, the Economic Political and Social behaviours are almost inseparable. All three disciplines are greatly influenced by the other. Yet, for the sake of this discussion the three disciplines were discussed individually.

For example, it could be argued that an individual's level of education or family history, along with his/her financial abilities and religions conviction might influence the political support he/she renders and thus will again influence the social standing in the community and family.

Witchcraft a familiar term or reality in South Africa and in the South African workplace environment especially. In general, witchcraft is understood as the evil or criminal practice associated with rituals, ritual killings with the aim to project misfortune. The reality of witchcraft and the fear thereof is an inherent belief system of many South Africans, whether they identify themselves as Christian or not – according to Nicci Whitear-Nel (BA LLB) is a Senior Lecturer at the University of KwaZulu-Natal's School of Law.²⁷ She noted that witchcraft in the workplace may manifest when employees seek to use it to intimidate either their employer or their fellow employees.²⁸

²⁷ Whitear-Nel, Nicci. HR PULSE (2017) *The status of witchcraft in the workplace*. Available at: <http://www.hrpulse.co.za/editors-pick/234686-the-status-of-witchcraft-in-the-workplace>

²⁸ Whitear-Nel, Nicci. HR PULSE (2017) *The status of witchcraft in the workplace*. Available at: <http://www.hrpulse.co.za/editors-pick/234686-the-status-of-witchcraft-in-the-workplace>

Witchcraft is an extremely emotive term, and it is a significant issue in South African society generally, and in the South African workplace specifically.²⁹

Widespread witchcraft beliefs result in high levels of mistrust among people. American University Economics Professor Boris Gershman also identified a ***negative relationship between witchcraft beliefs and other metrics of social capital relied upon for a functioning society, including religious participation and charitable giving.***³⁰

The national economy is affected by labour actions and labour strikes infused by superstition and witchcraft. The 2012 Lonmin mine workers strike in Marikana, Rustenburg was presented illustrate the point. This incident is discussed at length. They believed that the muti had made them invincible.

Families and individuals take conscious action, often with the help of traditional healers or sangomas to escape the influences of witchcraft.

1.4 Impact on Political Behaviour

Several political parties claim to have fundamental Biblical values and policies. Political parties who present themselves as Christian are both primarily black as well as primarily white.

It is a common phenomenon in the African context that ancestral spirits influence voting patterns. It is also a common political indoctrination used by President Zuma who advocates that no vote is secret and that ancestral spirits will be unhappy with voters deflecting from the ANC. Such voters should expect punishment from their ancestors.

²⁹ Whitear-Nel, Nicci. HR PULSE (2017) *The status of witchcraft in the workplace*. Available at: <http://www.hrpulse.co.za/editors-pick/234686-the-status-of-witchcraft-in-the-workplace>

³⁰ American University. (2016) Originally written by Basu, Rebecca. Available at: <https://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2016/05/160509191847.htm>

1.5 Impact on Social Behaviour

South Africa is home to a population rich in cultural, spiritual and ethnic diversity. From the streets of its metropolitan cities to the rural villages of its hinterlands, South Africa's population is characterized by a wide range of languages, religious beliefs and customs.³¹

Although the cultures co-exist alongside in work, schools and integrated suburbs, canyons of differences exist between the different races. These differences are – to a great extent influenced by culture and religious beliefs. The 11 official languages add to the complexity of a multi representative society.

The research explored how these different groups co-exist and interact with one another, but also why prejudice still exist. The 11 official languages relate to 11 ethnic groups, and although great similarities exist in customs and spirituality, the diversity between the ethnic groups are not only defined or limited by language. There are thus more than 11 ethnic or cultural groups in the greater South African population.

After the political youth unrest in Soweto in 1976, language in the South African context often relates to antagonism or acceptance. Fierce protest against “Afrikaans” as the medium of instruction in black schools played a key role in this political uproar. Ironically, the protest against Afrikaans was not the original reason for protest, but it quickly became the focus for a political agenda. The Afrikaans language is often betrayed with resentment.

The Muslim community is Afrikaans and English speaking by large. One could therefore accept that a large percentage of the Muslim community is not antagonized towards the white Afrikaans and English-speaking South Africans. It will therefore not be accurate to assume that the 11 official languages are equal to

³¹ Stats SA. 2011 Population of South Africa. Available at: http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=595

11 different cultural groups. The San-people's language is not even accommodated as one of the official languages.

The growing Muslim militant groups might also impact on the South African spiritual landscape taking into account the rumours of existing Jihad training camps in South Africa. The extremist Islam religion might just influence current nonviolent co-existence.

2. Problem Statement

God is spirit, He has no beginning and no end. He reigns from eternity to eternity. One God, existing of three Persons, Father, Son and Holy Spirit, distinguishable but indivisible, omniscient, omnipresent, and omnipotent. God is the essence of love.

Jesus Christ is the eternal Son of God, who always existed with the Father and the Holy Spirit. He is distinct in personality, and pre-eminent – above all things except the Father, co-equal and co-eternal with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

The Holy Spirit is the third divine Person of the eternal Godhead with a distinct personality, co-equal, co-eternal and co-existent with the Father and the Son. In the present era, known as the age of the Holy Spirit, He is the indwelling presence of God in all believers in God through Jesus Christ.

God created man (Adam and Eve, man and woman) in His image, spiritual and co-creators with the purpose to stand in communion with God, to constantly fellowship with God. God created man to rule and take dominion of His creation. Prior to man, God created angels, including Lucifer with the purpose to worship and serve God. Angels are not a race and are not co-creators – they cannot reproduce themselves.

Lucifer was the anointed cherub guarding God's throne. He was clothed with wisdom, light and beauty was given leadership in the ministry of worship. God created him a free-will moral being. Born from pride, covetousness and self-

righteousness Lucifer desired to “be like the Most High” (Isaiah 14:14³²). He attempted to exalt himself above God. This was the origin of all sin. Satan was the original sinner. Sin entered the universe through Satan. Some angels supported the revolt. They became apostate and unredeemable.

The research did not address an in-depth study pertaining to the early Biblical genealogies and nations. Some Biblical references to nation, tribes and cultures include:

- Exodus 12:38³³ refers to a mixed multitude.
- Daniel 7:14³⁴ refer to nations and languages.
- Revelation 5:5³⁵, 7:9³⁶ 14:6³⁷ refer to tribe and nation and language, and people.

The research did take cognisance of Matthew’s referral to sheep and goat nations who will appear before God’s throne on judgement day. (Matthew 25:31-36)³⁸

An isolated case study indicated the following: One Biblical reference to tribes refer to Israel and the traditional divisions of the ancient Jewish people. Jacob (also called Israel, son of Isaac and grandson of Abraham) with his family of 70 people relocated to Egypt. The family was fertile and prolific and multiplied greatly. They

³² Isaiah 14:14 (NKJV) I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.’

³³ Exodus 12:38 (NKJV) A mixed multitude went up with them also, and flocks and herds—a great deal of livestock.

³⁴ Daniel 7:14 (NKJV) Then to Him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, That all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion *is* an everlasting dominion, Which shall not pass away, And His kingdom *the one* Which shall not be destroyed.

³⁵ Revelation 5:5 (NKJV) But one of the elders said to me, “Do not weep. Behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has prevailed to open the scroll and to loose its seven seals.”

³⁶ Revelation 7:9 (NKJV) After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude which no one could number, of all nations, tribes, peoples, and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, with palm branches in their hands

³⁷ Revelation 14:6 (NKJV) Then I saw another angel flying in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach to those who dwell on the earth—to every nation, tribe, tongue, and people

³⁸ Matthew 25:31-36 (NKJV) “When the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the holy angels with Him, then He will sit on the throne of His glory. All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate them one from another, as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats. And He will set the sheep on His right hand, but the goats on the left. Then the King will say to those on His right hand, ‘Come, you blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: for I was hungry and you gave Me food; I was thirsty and you gave Me drink; I was a stranger and you took Me in; I was naked and you clothed Me; I was sick and you visited Me; I was in prison and you came to Me.’”

became known as the 'Israelites' or the nation of Israel. At the time of their rescue from Egypt, the nation of Israel numbered 600 000 men. The Bible refer to Jacob's twelve sons (Reuben, Simeon, Judha, Issachar, Zebulun, Benjamin, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Ascher, Ephraim and Manassah) and their families as the twelve tribes of Israel. After they conquered Israel, every tribe was allotted an individual territory to settle.

The author noted by this description that a tribe according to this Biblical application, implies a smaller group, family related, sub-section and belonging to a greater group or nation. Tribes were traditionally territorial and shared a common religion.

This description is in accordance with South Africa in the sense that the various ethnical groups are referred to as nations e.g., the Zulu nation, Xhosa nation etc. Within the Zulu, Xhosa, Sotho nations smaller units of tribes exist. Tribal wars within a nation is also not impossible. Contributing to the complexity of the South African scenario is the fact that various nations are incorporated into linguistic group e.g., Swazi nation, Zulu- and the Ndebele- are included in the Northern Nguni linguistic group whilst the Xhosa nation, Themba-, Bomvana-, Mpondo- and Mohondomise- belong to the Southern Nguni linguistic family. In addition, Sotho, Shangaan-Tsonga and Venda linguistic families also exist. In this sense. linguistic groups could be considered as a broader category compared to 'nations', whilst the individual nations each has individual, specific languages. Fanagolo is a South African pidgin language based on Xhosa, Zulu, Afrikaans and English. It originated in the mining industry but is now spoken by a larger community.

Ethnicity is the science of ascribing identity to a specific group. Ethnography is the scientific description of people and cultures pertaining to human behaviour in a group. Behaviours include culture, habits, social structures of a group. The trend of some African (black) consumers to direct their shopping to the large Johannesburg shopping centres is an example of human behaviour discussed in the research. Both disciplines were applied in the research.

History narrates numerous instances where the Church advanced specific political agendas, rampant sexual abuse in the Roman Catholic church and Biblical principles opposing liberal lifestyles resulted in a contemporary general apathy towards the church. Simultaneously, the author noted a renewed revival in spirituality which does not include Christianity.

This research investigated the following:

1. The Biblical revelation of God, man's spirituality, and Biblical principles as foundation to interpret and evaluate spirituality (Chapter One).
2. The impact of Lucifer's revolt against God, the reality of two opposing kingdoms and Satan's strategy of creating alternative religions to accommodate spirituality. (Chapter Two).
3. The history of the South African ethnicity to illustrate the complex composition of a multi-dimensional, (multi-cultural, multi-spiritual, multi-racial) society. (Chapter Three).
4. The possible clandestine agendas of members of secret societies in the history of South Africa and the development of the Constitution. (Chapter Four).
5. The manifestation spirituality in social, economic, and political environment. (Chapter Five).

3. DEMARCATION OF THE FIELD OF STUDY INCLUDING SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS

3.1 Limitations: The Proposed Thesis Does Not Aim to Provide –

1. A comprehensive presentation neither of the Kingdom of Darkness nor of the Kingdom of Light. (Chapter One).
2. A comprehensive investigation and presentation of the hierarchy of the kingdom of satan and the manifestation of strategies in South Africa. (Chapter Two).

3. A comprehensive presentation of the history of South African people and the development of various religions and faith movements. (Chapter Three).
4. Comprehensive research of alleged agendas of secret societies nor a detailed interpretation and evaluation on the Constitution of South Africa. (Chapter Four).
5. A complete guide or a complete set of examples of all and every possible spiritual influence that might manifest in economic, political or cultural behaviours. (Chapter Five).

3.2 Scope of Study: The Study Endeavours To -

1. Discuss the fundamental truth of one eternal Triune God, creator of the universe, angels, and mankind. (Chapter One).
2. Discuss the reality of two kingdoms, the conflict, and the strategies of satan to oppose the Kingdom of God. (Chapter Two).
3. Provide understanding with regards to the complexity of the contemporary South African society inclusive of wide assortment of cultures, nations, tribes and religions. (Chapter Three).
4. Interpret the Liberal South African constitution and the emphasis on human rights as a strategic attempt to encourage liberalism that opposes conservative Biblical viewpoints. (Chapter Four).
5. Investigate the South African history of various religions and denominations and the impact of spirituality on the social, economic and political behaviours of the South African society. (Chapter Five).

In closure deliberate the possibility of deep grounded true reconciliation, peace and unity in the diverse South African population.

Bishop Desmond Tutu initiated the phrase “Rainbow Nation” in reference to the South African populous. The multicultural aspects are not the only factors dividing

the South African population. Nor is the deeply rooted heritage of the Apartheid legacy founded on the right of self-governance.

This research considers the spiritual diversity of the South African population in a quest to find shared interest or common ground in this diverse spirituality, enough to build a “one nation”

The research hopes to create awareness and understanding of the diversity within the South African communities.

The research aims to proclaim salvation in Christ and alert and equip Christians for the spiritual battle between good and evil by identifying the influences it has on everyday life of families and households. It is the intention to promote the fact that it is not only possible - but vitally important to combat evil for the sake of families and also for a prosperous future of South Africa.

4. AIMS, OBJECTIONS AND RESEARCH QUESTIONS

4.1 Chapter One: Research Premise: Authority of God’s Word

4.1.1 Aim

To present the authors conviction of the fundamental truth from where spirituality was interpreted and evaluated.

4.1.2 Purpose

The fundamental truths of the Bible are equally true and valid today as they were at the beginning of time. Chapter One introduced the Holy Bible as the manifested Word of God and as such the final authority on all matters, including spirituality and

the contemporary emphasis on the freedom to pursue a wide range of spiritual fulfilment granted by liberty entrenched in human rights.

Chapter One further introduced the four spiritual deities introduced in Genesis: Firstly, the triune of God: God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Secondly, the creation, nature, duties, and hierarchy of angels. Thirdly, the creation and composition of man and the effect of sin. Lastly, the chapter introduced Lucifer, the angelic revolt against God and the result thereof.

4.1.3 Significance

The four spiritual entities of Genesis; the triune God, angels, man, and Lucifer (Satan) remained unchanged throughout all ages until today. Inspired by pride, Satan's revolt originated all evil and opposition against God.

The chapter emphasize the contemporary reality of God, angels, man, and Satan. The Bible does not portray the history, but the present truth.

4.1.4 Research Statement/Hypothesis

The Bible provides an infallible introduction of the Triune God. It provides a complete definition of man's spirituality and a comprehensive guide to evaluate sin and evil.

4.1.5 Research Questions

- i. Religion and dogma rely on Hermeneutics. Does the Bible provide a concise and definite explanation of God?

- ii. What is the primary variation of purpose in the creation of the angelic and mankind?
- iii. What is the origin and result of sin?
- iv. Does the Bible contribute significantly enough to the revelation of man's spirituality and the reflection of a Triune God?
- v. How can man's spirituality be defined?

4.2 Chapter Two: The Reality of Two Kingdoms: The Kingdom of Satan

4.2.1 Aim

Chapter Two aimed to affirm two opposing Kingdoms and to expose the hierarchy of the Kingdom of Darkness and the possible pertinence to South Africa.

4.2.2 Purpose

To provide evidence of the validity of the spiritual conflict between good and evil (Kingdom of Light vs the Kingdom of Darkness) and the manifestation thereof in South Africa.

4.2.3 Significance

Satan is the father of all sin and spearhead rebellion against God. He initiated all religions and alternative faith movements to substitute the intended son-ship fellowship between God and mankind.

Knowledge of the reality of good and evil remains fundamental to discern, identify, avoid, or react to spiritual influences and religions opposing the gospel of Christ.

4.2.4 Research Statement/Hypothesis

Lucifer instigated revolt against God and introduced sin. He heads up an organised and structured Kingdom to oppose God, and pervert the Gospel of Christ.

4.2.5 Research Questions

- i. What is the essence of Hamartiology?
- ii. How does Satan compromise for the void in man's spirit as a result of his negated fellowship with God?
- iii. What is the implication of the War in the heavenlies for Christians?
- iv. Why is there emphasis on man as a spiritual being compared to his/her natural existence.

4.3 Chapter Three: An Introduction to the Complex South African Ethnicity

4.3.1 Aim

The introduction of the complex contemporary South African ethnicity by means of an abbreviated review of archaeological evidence and history of the people.

4.3.2 Purpose

The legacies of the early colonialism, European immigrations slave trade, indigenous tribes (Khoi and San), and migrating Bantu speaking people manifest in the modern South African nation. Recognition of diversities promotes cognisance

of the varied spirituality, including superstition and witchcraft and the challenges it conveys in a multicultural society.

4.3.3 Significance

In the post-apartheid South Africa, previous separated cultures are integrated in society. Prejudice is often a result of the unfamiliar and ignorance breeds mistrust and misunderstanding. The study hopes to enlighten, educate, and address misconceptions.

4.3.4 Research Statement/Hypothesis

Spirituality is the primary attribute of diversity. The contemporary spiritual diversity of South Africans originates from the amalgamation of pluralistic societies.

4.3.5 Research Questions

- i. Why is the understanding of South African history imperative in understanding the spiritual diversity and the influence it has?
- ii. What is the difference between racialist and racism?
- iii. How do interpretation models affect the outcome of the presentation of history?
- iv. Why is the understanding of South African history imperative in understanding the country's spiritual diversity and the influence it has?
- v. How do race, culture and language differentiate groups?
- vi. Is language a scientific criterion to determine race?

4.4 Chapter Four: Possible Esoteric Influences in South Africa's History and the Development of the South African Constitution to Align it with a Global Reset Strategy

4.4.1 Aim

To investigate alleged covert agendas in the history of South Africa and the possible influence in the development of the constitutions.

4.4.2 Purpose

Alleged secret organisations manipulated international and national economy and politics by advancing covert agendas. Numerous organisations influenced the history of South Africa, from as early as the discovery of a trade route around the southern point of Africa. This chapter investigated contended influences of a number of organisations.

4.4.3 Significance

Secret Societies with covert agendas do not aim to enhance the Kingdom of God. They collectively and deliberately endeavour to prepare society for the establishment of a New World Order. Organisations and individuals manipulating the course of events through politics, finances, and the media is evident in the history of South Africa.

4.4.4 Research Statement/Hypothesis

Members of alleged secret societies with covert agendas were active role players in the history of South Africa.

4.4.5 Research Questions

- i. The question that begs asking is, whether the reality of alleged secret societies in South Africa is indeed fact, or mere fiction of conspiracy theorists?
- ii. Is religious freedom a result of the current international acclaimed constitution?
- iii. “The God of the Bible belongs to the White man” – how applicable is this in the South African multi ethnic context?
- iv. How does the economic well-being of Africa affect the spirituality?

4.5 Chapter Five: The Manifestation of Spirituality in Contemporary South Africa with Emphasis on the Impact Thereof on the Social, Economic and Political Environment

4.5.1 Aim

To investigate the manifestation of spirituality within the framework of the liberty of religion protected in the South African Constitution.

4.5.2 Purpose

An abbreviated history of religions in South Africa to illustrate the complexity of the manifestation of spirituality in South Africa.

4.5.3 Significance

The South African constitution emphasises human rights and provides the freedom to engage in any form of spirituality. In doing so, the Constitution elevates individual rights above Biblical principles. Biblical values are reported to be discriminative and a violation of the Human Rights.

An integrated society implies closer contact between previously separated cultures. Since culture and spirituality are inseparable, and as a result of the freedom of religion, the manifestation of spirituality and the application of witchcraft, sorcery etc are not restricted to the clandestine.

4.5.4 Research Statement/Hypothesis

Spirituality (religions, superstition, witchcraft, sorcery etc) has a pivotal influence on all spheres of the South African society.

4.5.5 Research Questions

- i. Why is it imperative for the average South African to take note of, or understand the spiritual reality?
- ii. Would the assumption that ‘spirituality in politics and the economy and are pursued by black South Africans’ be true?
- iii. Are Christians acquitted from the influence of negative spiritual influences.?

5. THESIS AND HYPOTHESES AND RESEARCH STATEMENT

Spirituality is fundamental to cultural and ethnic diversities and is a primary influence in the economic, political and social environment of South Africa.

6. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY AND APPROACH

6.1 Research Design

1. Historical Approach to Research
2. Descriptive Research Methods
3. Case study
4. Analytical Research

6.2 Data Collection and Literature Review

6.2.1 Primary Data Collection

Primary Data are collected through the means of interviews, case studies, observational study and questionnaires.

6.2.2 Secondary Data Collection

Secondary Data are collected through:

- An extensive literature study and internet literature representation of the following sub-fields:
Anthropology, Art, Ethnography, Hermeneutics, History, Philosophy, Phenomenology, Psychology, Sociology, Symbology, Theology, Occultism, Satanism, Esotericism and Mysticism books written about the topic or event, Internet resources, magazine articles, dictionaries, academic publications, Essays, Master- and Doctor Theses.
- Censuses and information published by Government Departments will also be evaluated.
- Biblical Research
- Interviews

- Site visits

6.3 Method of Data Analysis

6.3.1 Qualitative

This proposed dissertation will employ a diverse methodology, using a qualitative research methodology and where applicable historic quantitative data.

7. PROPOSED TIME FRAME

Prolegomena	End March 2018
Chapter One	February 2019
Chapter Two	July 2019
Chapter Three	December 2019
Chapter Four	May 2020
Chapter Five	October 2020
Conclusion	December 2020
Final Thesis	February 2021

8. REFERENCING

The Harvard referencing method will be used in the footnotes throughout the document as well as in the Bibliography.

9. PROPOSED TABLE OF CONTENT AND DIVISION OF CHAPTERS

9.1 CHAPTER ONE: Research Premise: Authority of God's Word

In a liberal society with the elevated focus on freedom of choice and a strong emphasis on human rights, the Bible and Biblical principles are criticised and perceived as discriminative. The author found it therefore essential to declare what was considered to be the foundational truth and departure point for the research. The author confessed the acceptance of the Triune God of the Bible as the only true and eternal God. Chapter One explored the essence of God, the essence and purpose of His created angels and the essence of mankind. God, in essence His Spirit, created mankind in His image. As such man is in essence a spiritual being. God created man to have a continuous spiritual fellowship. Lucifer revolted against God with a third of the angels. Sin entered God's Kingdom and the human race.

9.2 CHAPTER TWO: The Reality of Two Kingdoms: The Kingdom of Satan

Satan - motivated by pride deceived Adam and Eve. With a hierarchy of demons, Satan's aim to deceive mankind to prohibit man's relationship with God has not deviated. Chapter Two investigated the hierarchy of Satan and the application of his strategies in South Africa. The chapter also investigated several alternative faith movements designed to deceive man and prohibit their salvation in Christ.

9.3 CHAPTER THREE: Presenting an Overview of South Africa History and the Variety of Nationalities Developing into the Current South African Populace

The thesis accepted man as primarily a spiritual being. Man is also incorporated into a specific ethnic group and culture. Terminologies such as race, tribe and culture are interrelated and often applied as synonyms. Chapter Three evaluated the meaning and application of various descriptive words used to describe man.

To illustrate the complexity of the contemporary multi-racial South African population, the chapter investigated the origins of the wide variety of South Africans.

9.4 CHAPTER FOUR: Possible Esoteric Influences in South Africa and the South African Constitution in Alignment with a Global Reset Strategy

Evidence of the contributions of members of secret societies was presented with reference to the discovery of the Southern tip of Africa by the Portuguese, the colonial annexures of the Cape, the Boer migration to the interior of South Africa, the Boer republics, the Union of South Africa, the Republic of South Africa, and the new dispensation in a democratic South Africa.

Chapter Four attended to the history of several secret societies in the history of South Africa. The chapter also presented an evaluation of the South African Constitution in comparison with the New World Order Agenda.

9.5 CHAPTER FIVE: The Manifestation of Spirituality in Modern South Africa with Emphasis on Traditional African Religion in the Social, Economic and Political Spheres

No previous governing regime of South Africa prohibited any religion. The Human Rights Charter places great emphasise on freedom of religion. Chapter Five presented an abbreviated account of history of the major religions in South Africa to illustrate the multi-spiritual character of the South African population.

The amalgamation of Christianity with Traditional African religions received specific attention. A comprehensive portrait of the impact of spirituality from a social, economic and political perspective was included and substantiated by numerous media reports.

10. ETHICAL DECLARATION

This proposed thesis does not contain work previously published by the author, nor work under consideration for publication. The proposed Thesis is completely the result of my own work.

11. CONCLUSION

The research provided evidence to support the hypothesis that spirituality impacts the economy, political, social and behaviours of South Africans.

--ooOoo--

“Cultural institutions -religions, languages, customs, and the like – are indicators of communities, but that communities exist independently of attributes that indicate them. It is not the attribute that makes the group, but and group difference that make the attribute important”

- Horowitz

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

RESEARCH PREMISE: AUTHORITY OF GOD'S WORD

Chapter One



Chapter One

Research Premise: Authority of God's Word

1. INTRODUCTION

The God of the Bible reveals Himself in nature and in the Bible. The Bible is considered to be the Holy revelation of God, born from God, and presented to man by the power and revelation of the Holy Spirit. This elevates the Bible to the only inspired and infallible divine revelation of God, and of His creation which includes the angelical and man.

The Bible is the complete, completely trustworthy, and sufficient to comprehensively address all aspects of God, the creation of the angelic and mankind, life, sin, morality, salvation, and eternity. This is the foundational truth accepted as a departure point for this research.

2. BIBLICAL DERIVATION

“Most people, if asked why they hold a certain belief, would have a difficult time giving a solid basis for their opinion. Generally, one’s personal convictions are a matter of loyalty to a particular heritage or tradition. It is amazing how much belief is based not on fact but on blind allegiance to an institution or a political party or a church or a religious system. What passes for religious faith is often adherence to a particular religion more out of loyalty to parents or to the priest or pastor than from real conviction based upon solid evidence.”¹

With reference to Dave Hunt’s presumption regarding religion and beliefs, the author deemed it imperative to confirm the religious foundation of this research and as such the premise on which this research was conducted. In summary, the following foundational statements were presented:²

- a. **Sola Scriptura** – The Bible is the sole written divine revelation the infallible rule for faith and life, and alone can bind the conscience of believers absolutely.

But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Matthew 4:4 (KJV)

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

2 Timothy 3:16 (KJV)

- b. **Sola Fide** – Justification is by faith alone. By God’s free grace, the righteousness of Jesus Christ is imputed to believers by faith and is the sole ground of their acceptance by God, by which their sins are pardoned.

Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

Romans 5:1 (KJV)

¹ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 5

² *Foundational Statement of Faith*. Ligonier Ministries. Available at: <https://www.ligonier.org/about/who-we-are/what-we-believe/>

Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

Galatians 2:16 (KJV)

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

Ephesians 2:8-10 (KJV)

- c. **Solus Christus** – Jesus Christ is the only mediator through Whose work we believers are redeemed.

Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 14:6 (KJV)

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 (KJV)

- d. **Sola Gratia** – Salvation rests solely on the work of God's grace.

Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?

Romans 2:4 (KJV)

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

Ephesians 2:8-10 (KJV)

- e. **Soli Deo Gloria** – Salvation is of God and has been accomplished by God, therefore to God alone belongs the glory.

I am the Lord: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.

Isaiah 42:8 (KJV)

And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

Colossians 3:17 (KJV)

2.1 The Holy Bible is the Word of God

The plenary verbal inspiration of the Holy Bible acknowledging the Holy Spirit as the author, the Holy Bible being the God given inspired Word of God. The Holy Bible, in its entirety, not only merely contains the Word of God, it IS the Word of God in its totality and in part.

“The authority of Scripture is founded on its being spoken by God. This confirmed by the conscience of the godly, and the consent of all men of the least candour. Our faith in doctrine is not established until we have a perfect conviction that God is its author.”³

The conviction of the Word of God as the absolute authority, and therefore - the acceptance of the Holy Bible as inerrant and authoritative on all matters and to which believers ought to submit, summarise the departure point of this research. “Authority” derives from the word “author”. Therefore, the authority of any work is deriving from the authority of the author. The identity of the author is imperative in evaluating the validity of any text, the Holy Bible included.

The apostle Paul affirmed the author, and therefore also the authority the Holy text holds - in its fullness and completeness - to instruct, to convict, to correct and to train.

All Scripture is God-breathed [given by divine inspiration] and is profitable for instruction, for conviction [of sin], for correction [of error and restoration to obedience], for training in righteousness [learning to live in conformity to God's will, both publicly and privately—behaving honorably with personal integrity and moral courage];

2 Timothy 3:16 (AMP)

³ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 39

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

2 Timothy 3:16 (KJV)

“Inspiration of God” according to the Strong’s Concordance #G2315⁴ (Θεόπνευστος), (theopneustos) (teh-op'-nyoo-stos) is translated as **“divinely breathed in: given by inspiration of God”**. All Scripture was inspired by God via His Holy Spirit. The authority of the Holy Bible is the authority of the Holy Spirit.

Peter detailed the process by which God breathed the scriptures to the authors and prophets.

Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

2 Peter 1:20-21 (KJV)

The Holy Spirit of God inspired the writing of the Bible and deployed authors to commence in writing. Internal consistency is found within the Bible’s 66 books, written by more than 40 authors over a period of about 1500 years. Dave Hunt⁵ remarked that the continuity and agreement throughout the Bible is one of the most powerful arguments to provide evidence of the Bible being the Word of God. He noted the following:

“Living in different historical eras and widely differing regions and cultures, the only thing these writers of Scripture had in common was the claim that what they wrote was inspired by the one true God.”

Derek Prince clarified the difference as follows:⁶

“Where He (Jesus) uses “the word of God” it means it proceeds from God. It didn’t proceed from man; it came from heaven, from God. And where He (Jesus) says “the Scripture,” it means that which has been recorded in writing.

⁴ Inspiration of God: #G2315. Strong’s Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

⁵ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 63

⁶ Prince, Derek. (August 2003) *Foundational Teaching from Derek Prince Ministries: The Indispensable Word*.

God has said many things that are not recorded in writing, but those that are recorded in the Bible are there for special benefit. They contain everything we need to know for salvation.”

The apostle Paul explained the concept to the congregation in Corinth as follows:

These things we also speak, not in words which man's wisdom teaches but which the Holy Spirit teaches, comparing spiritual things with spiritual.

1 Corinthians 2:13 (NKJV)

2.2 Jesus Christ is the Manifested Word of God

The “**Word of God**” holds two applications: Firstly, it is the actual written text (God's written Word) and secondly it refers to Jesus Christ (God's personal Word).

In the beginning, the Word existed. The Word was with God, and the Word was God. He existed in the beginning with God. Through him all things were made, and apart from him nothing was made that has been made.

John 1:1-3 (AMP)

The Word became flesh and lived among us. We gazed on his glory, the kind of glory that belongs to the Father's uniquely existing Son, who is full of grace and truth

John 1:14 (AMP)

The following brief conclusions follows from the two scriptures:

- ‘The Word’ is recognised as a male person.
- He existed in the beginning and He was with God.
- He was also God in His own right.
- All of creation was made ‘through Him’.
- He (the Word, Jesus Christ) was born as man.

2.3 The Word of God Infallible

The Bible is infallible and true. This is possible because God is True. And the

Word portrays His Truth.

God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?

Numbers 23:19 (KJV)

That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:

Hebrews 6:18 (NKJV)

The Word of God is “perfect in its accuracy and confident in its dependability”⁷:

“The law of the Lord is perfect, restoring the [whole] person; the testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple.”

2.4 Man's Contribution to the Word of God

Although the Word of God is infallible, it was written by fallible men. God provide assurance and confidence in the following text:

The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.

Psalms 12:6 (NKJV)

The furnace made by clay symbolizing a human vessel, and the fire (Holy Spirit) purifies the silver (message of God) seven times until it is absolutely pure.

God's instruction to Moses pertaining to His commandments (Word) forbids any contribution of man.

Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish ought from it, that ye may keep the commandments of the LORD your God which I command you.

Deuteronomy 4:2 (KJV)

The absoluteness of a God inspired Word as the **only** acceptable word is portrayed in the command given in the book of Deuteronomy. No prophet adding from personal persuasion to the Holy Word of God should be allowed to live.

⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xii

But the prophet, which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die.

Deuteronomy 18:20 (KJV)

Jesus issues a stern warning regarding teachings not in accordance with the commandments of Word of God.

Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Matthews 5:19 (KJV)

2.5 The Longevity of the Word of God

The Bible as God's Word is inerrant perfect. The original text produced by the authors, inspired by the Holy Spirit, delivered over centuries and generations is essentially uncorrupted.

He that hath received his testimony hath set to his seal that God is true.

John 3:33 (KJV)

The Law of the Lord is perfect, restoring life. The testimony of the Lord is steadfast, making foolish people wise.

Psalms 19:7 (AMP)

2.6 The Word of God is Valuable and Sufficient

Confirming the essential **value** of the eternal Scriptures Jesus proclaimed:

But He replied, it has been written, Man shall not live and be upheld and sustained by bread alone, but by every word that comes forth from the mouth of God.

Matthew 4:4 (AMP)

The content of God's word is completed, completely dependable and sufficient to completely answer everything there is to know about eternal salvation or practical wisdom concerning relationships, morality, character, and conduct.

Every word of God is tried and purified; He is a shield to those who trust and take refuge in Him. Add not to His words, lest He reprove you, and you be found a liar.

Proverbs 30:5-6 (AMP)

Jesus affirms the longevity of the Word by edifying the smallest Hebrew letter and punctuation symbol which will remain until all the promises and prophecies are fulfilled.

For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

Matthews 5:18 (KJV)

Jesus confirms the Holy Scriptures as given by God, every truth is to be held inviolable, the Scriptures are indissoluble and credible.

Yet it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one dot of the Law to fail and become void.

Luke 16:17 (AMP)

Jesus attests to the indissolubility of the Scriptures in saying “the Scriptures” cannot be broken. He literally describes the utter inviolability of God’s Word from man’s side and the utter dependability of it from God’s side. God will uphold His Word. All creation may dissolve, God’s Word will remain.⁸

If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken

John 10:35 (KJV)

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Matthew 24:35 (KJV)

2.7 The Word of God a Two-Edge Sword

And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.

Ephesians 6:17 (KJV)

⁸ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P.1547

The sword of the Spirit is the Word of God⁹ The Word of God is powerful. The Greek reference to 'Logos¹⁰ Word" implies the complete Word of God. The written word reveals God. 'Rhema Word' refer the revelation of the Holy Spirit with reference to a specific word, text or promise in the written Word of God. 'Rhema Word' is also compared to the 'spoken word' of God implying the revelation of the Holy Spirit communicated or spoken to the spirit of the man.

The Word of God paralleled with a sword or knife was again repeated in the book of Hebrews illustrating the power of the Word of God to penetrate into the very depths of human personality.

For the word of God is living and active and full of power [making it operative, energizing, and effective]. It is sharper than any two-edged sword, penetrating as far as the division of the soul and spirit [the completeness of a person], and of both joints and marrow [the deepest parts of our nature], exposing and judging the very thoughts and intentions of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (AMP)

For the Word that God speaks is alive and active; it cuts more keenly than any two-edged sword: it strikes through to the place where soul and spirit meet, to the innermost intimacies of a man's being: it exposes the very thoughts and motives of a man's heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (PHILLIPS)

2.8 The Power of the Word Triumph Over Temptation

Jesus Christ demonstrated the power of the Scripture in His response to Satan triple effort to tempt Jesus. In all three instances Jesus rebuked Satan by quoting scripture.

It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

⁹ Ephesians 6:17 (KJV) And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:

¹⁰ Strong's No. #3056 Logos (log-oss) A transmission of thought, communication, a word of explanation, an utterance, discourse, divine revelations, talk, statement, instruction, an oracle, divine promise, divine doctrine, divine declaration. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P1665

Matthew 4:4 (KJV)

Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.

Matthew 4:7 (KJV)

Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

Matthew 4:10 (KJV)

The above display of Jesus' strategy on how to apply the Word of God in combatting temptation is echoed in Paul's letter to the congregation in Ephesus. It also provides another application to the "Word of God".

And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.

Ephesians 6:17 (KJV)

Owen Collins¹¹ provided the following conclusion with regards to the authority of the Holy Word of God:

"Let it therefore be held as fixed, that those who are inwardly taught by the Holy Spirit acquiesce implicitly in Scripture, that Scripture, carrying its own evidence along with it, deigns not to submit to proofs and arguments, but owes the full conviction with which we ought to receive it to the testimony of the Spirit. Enlightened by him, we no longer believe, either on our own judgement or that of others, that the Scriptures are from God, but, in a way superior to human judgement, feel perfectly assured – as such so as if we beheld the divine image visibly impressed on it – that it came to us, by the instrumentality of men, from the very mouth of God.

We ask not for proofs of probabilities on which to rest our judgement, but we subject our intellect and judgment to it as too transcendent for us to estimate."

The author acknowledged this possible subjectiveness in using Scripture to defend the Bible's truthfulness and value. Extensive Scientific, Prophetic, Archaeological, and Historical research material is available providing ample additional evidence to substantiate the arguments presented. This research and evidence are not presented in this thesis.

¹¹ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 40

2.9 Christianity

The research presented the following definition for Christianity: An individual who has repented for his or her sin, and through personal conviction and faith, received Jesus Christ as the Son of God and Saviour and Lord.

Jesus answered, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Do not marvel that I said to you, 'You must be born again.' The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear the sound of it, but cannot tell where it comes from and where it goes. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit.

John 3:5-8 (NKJV)

As a result, the individual is deemed to be 'born again'. The individual has fulfilled the criteria for salvation for eternal life as stated by Jesus Christ in the gospel of Mark.

And He said to them, "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature. He who believes and is baptized will be saved; but he who does not believe will be condemned.

Mark 16:15-16 (NKJV)

'Born again' refers to the creation of man and the result of sin. Man's spirit originated from the inbreathed Spirit of God. Man's original relationship with God was spiritual. As a result of sin, man's spirit became disconnected with God. The relationship and communication with God ended. Through the acceptance of Jesus Christ as Lord and Saviour, the individual's spirit is again re-united with God. Reborn into a new relationship with God.

The individual become the host for the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit and as such communion and relationship with God is restored.

And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying out, "Abba, Father!"

Galatians 4:6 (NKJV)

And what agreement has the temple of God with idols? For you are the temple of the living God. As God has said: "I will dwell in them And walk among them. I will be their God, And they shall be My people."

2 Corinthians 6:16 (NKJV)

3. SPIRITUALITY

The title of this research announced the prominence and emphasis given to 'spirituality' in evaluating South African cultures and behaviours. It is therefore paramount to discuss the meaning of 'spirituality' to provide insight in the research.

Spiritual IQ, Spiritual Growth and development, Spiritual discernment, Spiritual journey, Spiritual neglect, the Spirit of Capitalism and the Spirit of Sport are but a few of the topics available with a preliminary and elementary research on the denotation of spirituality. In addition, it also included Spiritual maturity, Spirituality in Education, Spiritual Fitness and Spirituality in Health and nursing.

James K Walker's¹² included the following in ***The Concise guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality***: Spiritual Dynamics, Spiritual Guide, Spiritism, Spirit of Prophecy, Spiritual Abuse and Spiritualism. This comprehensive guide with more than 1600 entries avoided the challenge of providing a definition for 'spirit' and 'spirituality' – ironically mentioned it the title. This clearly provided evidence of the ambiguous interpretations and efforts to define the experiences of the phenomena of spirituality.

The inclusion of aboriginal or primitive cultural spirituality such as Native American, Native Mexicans, Maori's or any culture in particular, will further complicate the definition.

Central themes identified in evaluating 'spirituality' are: A concept of God, peace, love, significance, hope, connectedness, beliefs, value, relatedness, forgiveness, meaning and purpose, solace, stress release, inner-self, gaining perspective and religion. Judaism, Buddhism, yoga enthusiasts, environ fundamentalists, musicians, holistic health practitioners, and new age practitioners all feel comfortable with the term 'spirituality'. None of the mentioned disciplines

¹² Walkers, James K. (2007) *The Concise guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality* Harvest House Publishers: Eugene, Oregon. PP. 301-303

associates with Christianity, whether Protestantism, Roman Catholicism, or any Orthodox community of faith.

Marilyn Mason¹³, Education Officer of the British Humanist Association expressed her concern with regards to the frequent use of 'spiritual' and 'spirituality':

“the terms have insinuated themselves not mainstream culture and have accumulated a cluster of meanings which have frequently become blurred and conflated,” “These nebulous words almost always require to be further explained if they are to communicate clearly. In most cases it would be better to abandon them altogether and use one of the many more precise alternatives: moral, psychological, emotional, inspiring, beautiful, life-changing, joyful, thoughtful, reflective, abstract, mysterious, weird, exciting. Many of these stand in the place of ‘spiritual’ ... the difficulty is usually to know which one to choose because we can only guess at the intention of the original.”

3.1 Defining 'Spirit'

3.1.1 Biblical Applications of 'Spirit'

Although 'Spiritual' is a Biblical word, the first reference is only after the Pentecostal initiation of the new covenant of the Holy Spirit.

The precise definition of spirituality seems to be debatable. Dr. Chuck Day¹⁴ alluded to the fact that the Old Testament Hebrew text was written in poetic expressions with limited lexicon to accommodate religious concepts. "Spirit" translated from 'ruah' in the Old Testament appears 389 times¹⁵. One word accommodated several interpretations: referring to God (136 times), referring to man or animal (129 times), and referring to its fundamental meaning of wind (113 times). 'Ruah' also means breath; God gives breath (Isaiah 42:5)¹⁶, lifeless bodies

¹³ Dudley, Martin *"Spirituality" What does it mean and is it of any use?* Available at: https://www.academia.edu/33910690/Spirituality_What_does_it_mean_and_is_it_of_any_use?auto=download

¹⁴ Dey, Chuck Dr. 2020 *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered February 1, 2020

¹⁵ Spirit. Available at: <https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/spirit/>

¹⁶ Isaiah 42:5 (NKJV) Thus says God the LORD, Who created the heavens and stretched them out, Who spread forth the earth and that which comes from it, Who gives breath to the people on it, And spirit to those who walk on it:

(Ezekiel 37:9-10)¹⁷ and bad breath (Job 19:17)¹⁸. Referring to man it resembles the vital power of strength sustaining man during illness (Proverb 18:14)¹⁹, and man's spirit can be renewed (Judges 15:18-19)²⁰ and crushed (Psalm 34:18)²¹.

"Ruah" also acknowledges God's power (Psalm 33:6)²² and the occurrences where God's power (ruah) descended on the judges resulting in powerful exploits (Judges 3:10)²³. In contrast to God's mighty power (ruah), no power (ruah) is found in idols of wood and stone (Habakkuk 2:19)²⁴.

"Ruah" is further used to express emotions; The queen of Sheba was breathless (1 Kings 10:5)²⁵, Job's anger (Job 15:13)²⁶ and Ahab's disappointment (1 Kings 21:4)²⁷. Pride is an arrogant spirit (Ecclesiastes 7:8)²⁸. Numbers 5:14²⁹ refers to a jealous spirit.

"Ruah" also accommodate references to willingness and decision power; those

¹⁷ Ezekiel 37:9-10 (NKJV) Also He said to me, "Prophecy to the breath, prophesy, son of man, and say to the breath, 'Thus says the Lord GOD: "Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe on these slain, that they may live." ' " So I prophesied as He commanded me, and breath came into them, and they lived, and stood upon their feet, an exceedingly great army.

¹⁸ Job 19:17 (NKJV) My breath is offensive to my wife, And I am repulsive to the children of my own body.

¹⁹ Proverb 18:14 (NKJV) The spirit of a man will sustain him in sickness, But who can bear a broken spirit?

²⁰ Judges 15:18-19 (NKJV) Then he became very thirsty; so he cried out to the LORD and said, "You have given this great deliverance by the hand of Your servant; and now shall I die of thirst and fall into the hand of the uncircumcised?" So God split the hollow place that *is* in Lehi, and water came out, and he drank; and his spirit returned, and he revived. Therefore he called its name En Hakkore, which is in Lehi to this day.

²¹ Psalm 34:18 (NKJV) The LORD *is* near to those who have a broken heart, And saves such as have a contrite spirit.

²² Psalm 33:6 (NKJV) By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, And all the host of them by the breath of His mouth.

²³ Judges 3:10 (NKJV) The Spirit of the LORD came upon him, and he judged Israel. He went out to war, and the LORD delivered Cushan-Rishathaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand; and his hand prevailed over Cushan-Rishathaim.

²⁴ Habakkuk 2:19 (NKJV) Woe to him who says to wood, 'Awake!' To silent stone, 'Arise! It shall teach!' Behold, it is overlaid with gold and silver, Yet in it there is no breath at all.

²⁵ 1 Kings 10:5 (NKJV) the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the service of his waiters and their apparel, his cupbearers, and his entryway by which he went up to the house of the LORD, there was no more spirit in her.

²⁶ Job 15:13 (NKJV) That you turn your spirit against God, And let *such* words go out of your mouth?

²⁷ 1 Kings 21:4 (NKJV) So Ahab went into his house sullen and displeased because of the word which Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken to him; for he had said, "I will not give you the inheritance of my fathers." And he lay down on his bed, and turned away his face, and would eat no food.

²⁸ Ecclesiastes 7:8 (NKJV) The end of a thing *is* better than its beginning; The patient in spirit *is* better than the proud in spirit.

²⁹ Numbers 5:14 (NKJV) If the spirit of jealousy comes upon him and he becomes jealous of his wife, who has defiled herself; or if the spirit of jealousy comes upon him and he becomes jealous of his wife, although she has not defiled herself—

whose spirits was stirred went ahead to rebuild the temple, the Psalmist pray for a steadfast spirit (Psalm 51:10)³⁰, Caleb had a different spirit (Numbers 14:24)³¹.

“Pneuma” is the New Testament synonym for ‘ruah’. The New Testament, influenced by Greek philosophy, portrays a broader interpretation for spirituality and religion. “Pneuma” has limited references to wind (John 3:8)³² and breath (Matthew 27:50)³³.

The majority of its application refers to feeling and intelligence. Mary's spirit rejoiced (Luke 1:47)³⁴, Jesus was filled with wisdom" (Luke 2:40)³⁵, He was "deeply moved in spirit" over the death of Lazarus (John 11:33)³⁶.

Apollos spoke with "great fervor" (Acts 18:25)³⁷ and Paul "had no peace of mind" (2 Corinthians 2:13)³⁸. Jesus pronounced a blessing on the "poor in spirit" (Matthew 5:3)³⁹.

“Pneuma” opposes the flesh, but both can be holy (1 Corinthians 7:34)⁴⁰ and both can be defiled (2 Corinthians 7:1)⁴¹. The weakness of flesh can be stronger than the spirit's persistence to pray (Mark 14:38)⁴², works of the flesh opposes the fruit

³⁰ Psalm 51:10 (NKJV) Create in me a clean heart, O God, And renew a steadfast spirit within me.

³¹ Numbers 14:24 (NKJV) But My servant Caleb, because he has a different spirit in him and has followed Me fully, I will bring into the land where he went, and his descendants shall inherit it.

³² John 3:8 (NKJV) The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear the sound of it, but cannot tell where it comes from and where it goes. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit.”

³³ Matthew 27:50 (NKJV) And Jesus cried out again with a loud voice, and yielded up His spirit.

³⁴ Luke 1:47 (NKJV) And my spirit has rejoiced in God my Savior.

³⁵ Luke 2:40 (NKJV) And the Child grew and became strong in spirit, filled with wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him.

³⁶ John 11:33 (NKJV) Therefore, when Jesus saw her weeping, and the Jews who came with her weeping, He groaned in the spirit and was troubled.

³⁷ Acts 18:25 (NKJV) This man had been instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in spirit, he spoke and taught accurately the things of the Lord, though he knew only the baptism of John.

³⁸ 2 Corinthians 2:13 (NKJV) I had no rest in my spirit, because I did not find Titus my brother; but taking my leave of them, I departed for Macedonia.

³⁹ Matthew 5:3 (NKJV) “Blessed *are* the poor in spirit, For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

⁴⁰ 1 Corinthians 7:34 (NKJV) There is a difference between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman cares about the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit. But she who is married cares about the things of the world—how she may please *her* husband.

⁴¹ 2 Corinthians 7:1 (NKJV) Therefore, having these promises, beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

⁴² Mark 14:38 (NKJV) Watch and pray, lest you enter into temptation. The spirit indeed *is* willing, but the flesh *is* weak.”

of the spirit (Galatians 5:16-26)⁴³ and the spirit opposes human wisdom (1 Corinthians 2:5)⁴⁴. Spirit is also juxtaposed with the written word (letter); whilst the letter kills, the Spirit is life giving (2 Corinthians 3:6)⁴⁵.

Paul relates the separation of flesh and body in his out-of-body experience, being absent in body, but present in the spirit.

For we know that if our earthly house, this tent, is destroyed, we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed with our habitation which is from heaven, if indeed, having been clothed, we shall not be found naked.

For we who are in this tent groan, being burdened, not because we want to be unclothed, but further clothed, that mortality may be swallowed up by life. Now He who has prepared us for this very thing is God, who also has given us the Spirit as a guarantee.

2 Corinthians 5:1-5 (NKJV)

by whom also He went and preached to the spirits in prison,

1 Peter 3:19 (NKJV)

Referring to worship - scripture reminds that God is Spirit and must therefore be worshipped in spirit and in truth. (John 4:24)⁴⁶ Worship in the flesh is

⁴³ Galatians 5:16-26 (NKJV) I say then: Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary to one another, so that you do not do the things that you wish. But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. Now the works of the flesh are evident, which are: adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lewdness, idolatry, sorcery, hatred, contentions, jealousies, outbursts of wrath, selfish ambitions, dissensions, heresies, envy, murders, drunkenness, revelries, and the like; of which I tell you beforehand, just as I also told *you* in time past, that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control. Against such there is no law. And those *who are* Christ's have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit. Let us not become conceited, provoking one another, envying one another.

⁴⁴ 1 Corinthians 2:5 (NKJV) that your faith should not be in the wisdom of men but in the power of God.

⁴⁵ 2 Corinthians 3:6 (NKJV) who also made us sufficient as ministers of the new covenant, not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.

⁴⁶ John 4:24 (NKJV) God *is* Spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth."

unacceptable. (Philippians 3:3)⁴⁷. God's Spirit is presented as holy, contrasted by unclean, demonic spirits.

It appeared that Paul is the sole user of 'spiritual' as defined by Strongs #4153⁴⁸ "***pneumatikos (pny-mot-ik-oce): An advert denoting a symbolical or spiritual sense***". 1 Corinthians 2:14-16⁴⁹ describes the inability of natural reasoning to comprehend the spiritual. Paul explores the application of 'spiritual' in 'spiritual law' (Romans 7:1)⁵⁰ 'spiritual meat' 'spiritual drink' and a 'spiritual rock' (1 Corinthians 10). He warns Christians with regards to a 'spiritual judgement' and he contrast the carnal with the spiritual (1 Corinthians 3:1-3)⁵¹.

He motivates the 'spiritual' to restore the fallen brother (Galatians 6:1)⁵² and he cautions believers that he who thinks of himself to be spiritual should obey his (Paul's) teachings. (1 Corinthians 14:37)⁵³

3.1.2 Trichotomy vs Dichotomy of Man

Christian theology accommodating the Tripartite view (Trichotomy) defines man as composing of three distinct components: Spirit, Soul and Body.

⁴⁷ Philippians 3:3 (NKJV) For we are the circumcision, who worship God in the Spirit, rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh,

⁴⁸ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1975

⁴⁹ 1 Corinthians 2:14-16 (PHILLIPS) But the unspiritual man simply cannot accept the matters which the Spirit deals with—they just don't make sense to him, for, after all, you must be spiritual to see spiritual things. The spiritual man, on the other hand, has an insight into the meaning of everything, though his insight may baffle the man of the world. This is because the former is sharing in God's wisdom, and 'Who has known the mind of the Lord that he may instruct him?' Incredible as it may sound, we who are spiritual have the very thoughts of Christ!

⁵⁰ Romans 7:1 (NKJV) Or do you not know, brethren (for I speak to those who know the law), that the law has dominion over a man as long as he lives?

⁵¹ 1 Corinthians 3:1-3 (NKJV) And I, brethren, could not speak to you as to spiritual *people* but as to carnal, as to babes in Christ. I fed you with milk and not with solid food; for until now you were not able *to receive it*, and even now you are still not able; for you are still carnal. For where *there are* envy, strife, and divisions among you, are you not carnal and behaving like *mere* men?

⁵² Galatians 6:1 (NKJV) Brethren, if a man is overtaken in any trespass, you who *are* spiritual restore such a one in a spirit of gentleness, considering yourself lest you also be tempted.

⁵³ 1 Corinthians 14:37 (NKJV) If anyone thinks himself to be a prophet or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things which I write to you are the commandments of the Lord.

Anthropological⁵⁴ monism⁵⁵ and anthropological hylomorphism⁵⁶ investigates the three independent aspects of humanity combined into one nature.

The research acknowledged the Bible's interchangeable application of the terms soul and spirit.

And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

Matthew 10:28 (KJV)

And Mary said, My soul doth magnify the Lord, And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.

Luke 1:46-47 (KJV)

For I verily, as absent in body, but present in spirit, have judged already, as though I were present, concerning him that hath so done this deed,

1 Corinthians 5:3 (KJV)

There is difference also between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit: but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please her husband.

1 Corinthians 7:34 (KJV)

These occurrences support the definition of 'dichotomy' where soul and spirit are interpreted as two terms referring to the same entity. Soul and Spirit synonyms for the same component. Alternative scriptures draw a definite distinction between soul and spirit.

Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh.

Romans 8:12 (KJV)

⁵⁴ Anthropology the study of the human race, its culture and society, and its physical development. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/anthropology>

⁵⁵ Monism the doctrine that the person consists of only a single substance, or that there is no crucial difference between mental and physical events or properties. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/monism>

⁵⁶ Hylomorphism, (from Greek *hylē*, "matter"; *morphē*, "form"), in philosophy, metaphysical view according to which every natural body consists of two intrinsic principles, one potential, namely, primary matter, and one actual, namely, substantial form. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/hylomorphism>

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (KJV)

For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV)

Two conclusions were drawn from these scriptures:

- A definite distinction or dividing point exist between soul and spirit.
- Only God is able to discern the exact dividing point.

This trichotomy viewpoint is supported by this research. Man created in the spiritual image of God is also discussed in 3.3.2 of this chapter.

3.2 Defining Spirituality

Sanskrit⁵⁷ defines **Spirituality** as *Adhyātma*. It is derived from two words *Adhi* (means pertaining to the topic and *Ātman* (*Ātmanahā*) translated as 'the Soul'. Spirituality or Spiritual science is called *Paravidya* (Supreme science), while all other sciences are called *Aparāvidyā* meaning inferior science. 'Science' refers to modern science.

Spirituality is the knowledge of infinity, that is, knowledge of all subjects. It incorporates the whole physical world and the subtle unseen world, all the physical and spiritual regions, all physical and subtle frequencies, energies and vibrations, all positive and negative entities and all living beings and non-living beings in the whole Universe. **Spirituality** contains all the knowledge and memory of the past, present and future, from the beginning to the end of the Universe.⁵⁸

⁵⁷ Sanskrit meaning: an ancient Indo-European language of India, in which the Hindu scriptures and classical Indian epic poems are written and from which many northern Indian (Indic) languages are derived. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/sanskrit>

⁵⁸ What is Spirituality? Available at: <https://www.spiritualresearchfoundation.org/spiritual-practice/spiritual-paths/what-is-spirituality/>

Within this definition the significance of a spiritual evolved guide or guru⁵⁹ is paramount.

Dr. Maya Spencer⁶⁰ defined spirituality as follows:

“Spirituality involves the recognition of a feeling or sense or belief that there is something greater than myself, something more to being human than sensory experience, and that the greater whole of which we are part is cosmic or divine in nature. Spirituality means knowing that our lives have significance in a context beyond a mundane everyday existence at the level of biological needs that drive selfishness and aggression. It means knowing that we are a significant part of a purposeful unfolding of Life in our universe. Spirituality involves exploring certain universal themes – love, compassion, altruism, life after death, wisdom and truth, with the knowledge that some people such as saints or enlightened individuals have achieved and manifested higher levels of development than the ordinary person. Aspiring to manifest the attributes of such inspirational examples often becomes an important part of the journey through life for spiritually inclined people”

3.2.1 Different Types of Spirituality? ⁶¹

- **Mystical spirituality** is based around a desire to move beyond the material world, beyond the senses, ego and even beyond time. This approach centres on personal relationships and a sense of unity with all things.
- **Authoritarian spirituality** is a particularly strong form of spirituality based around a need for definition and rules. This type of spirituality is particularly common in specific religious practices.
- **Intellectual spirituality** focuses on building knowledge and understanding of spirituality through analysing history and spiritual

⁵⁹ Spiritual guide or Guru. A Guru is a person who is a Saint at the spiritual of 70% or above. According to Spiritual science, a person who is an authority in the field of Spirituality is known as a Guru. SSRF uses a scale between 1 and 100% to describe spiritual level. 1% would refer to the spiritual level of an inanimate object, while 100% would refer to the pinnacle of spiritual growth for a person, which is Self-Realisation or being one with God. The average spiritual level of a person in the present times is 20%. Available at: <https://www.spiritualresearchfoundation.org/spiritual-practice/spiritual-paths/what-isspirituality>

⁶⁰ Spencer, Maya Dr. (2012) *What is Spirituality? A personal exploration*. Available at: <https://www.rpsych.ac.uk/docs/default-source/members/signs/spirituality-spsig/what-is-spirituality-maya-spencerx.pdf?sfvrsn=f28df052>

⁶¹ What is Spirituality? Reach Out.com Available at: <https://www.ideas.org.au/uploads/resources/550/What-Is-Spirituality.pdf>

Types of Spirituality. Happier Human. Available at: <https://www.happierhuman.com/types-spirituality/>

theories. This approach can be found in the study of religion, also known as theology.

- **Service spirituality** is a common form of spirituality in many religious faiths. This is predominantly built around serving others as a form of spiritual expression.
- **Social spirituality** is often practiced by people who experience a spiritual feeling in the company of others. Social support is often seen as one of the important aspects of spirituality in general.

3.2.2 Author's Definition

It was the author's opinion that; fundamentally equivalent in the comprehension of the 'spirit' or 'spirituality', is the contextualisation of God as Spirit, the Holy Spirit as the third person of the Triune God, and man created in God's image as a spiritual being, first and foremost. Man is created as 'Spirit'. Spirituality would then imply all that involves the spirit of man.

Spirituality is the combined function and ability of man's spirit or spiritual capacity. The 'spirit of man' is the faculty able to transcend above the physical body and soul, to connect and fellowship with God, or the spiritual world at large. (The components of the spiritual world and the two kingdoms are discussed in this chapter.) A spiritual journey and development imply progress. Growth from one level of comprehension, authority, or experience to the next.

3.3 Defining Religion

Professor Sam Gill's⁶² contribution to the Journal of the American Academy of Religion LXII/4 was insightful in providing parameters when attempting to academically define the phenomena of 'religious' or 'religion': An attempt to

⁶² Gill, Sam. (1994) "The Academic Study of Religion." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion*, vol. 62, no. 4, 1994, pp. 965–975. *JSTOR*. Available at: <https://www.jstor.org/stable/1465226?seq=1>

articulate a definition may not be restricted to refer to a particular affiliation, race, gender or culture. Multi-culturalism must be accommodated, and common discourse must be identified inclusive of all religions.

The research acknowledges fundamental aspects:

- A definition cannot accommodate a single principle only but must accommodate the collective nature of what is implied by 'religion'.
- A variety of disciplines⁶³ defines the theory of religion within their particular scope and all are valid and scientific within a specific field of study: Religious Theory, Philosophical Theory, Socio-Economic Theory, Sociological Theory, Psychological Theory.
- Individual beliefs must be separated from religion. Religion suggests a world view or an ideology, a set of values of a group of people.
- It was the authors conclusion that religion – with reference to traditional African religions, does not necessarily include documented doctrine, prescribed worship practices or attendances of church, mosque or synagogues.

Since this research does not aim to research religion per se, it concludes with the following definition provided by The Human Truth Foundation⁶⁴:

“Religions are shared collections of transcendental beliefs that have been passed on from believers to converts, that are held by adherents to be actively meaningful and serious and either based on (1) formally documented doctrine (organized religion) or (2) established cultural practices (folk religion). In both forms, there are religious professionals who embody formal aspects of the religion and who act in positions of leadership and governance, and there are certain rituals reserved for them to carry out. The beliefs generate practical implications for how life should be lived.”

“Religions often include: spiritual explanations of our place in the world in an attempt to answer questions about "why we are here"; worship of deities and/or supernatural entities (including ancestors); conceptions of "holy" and

⁶³ Clarke Peter B.; Byrne Peter; Evans Scotney. (1993) *Religion Defined and Explained*. Palgrave Macmillan UK. Available at: <https://www.palgrave.com/gp/book/9780333538418#>

⁶⁴ Crabtree, Vexen. (2016) *What is Religion? How do you define Religion?* Available at: http://www.humanreligions.info/what_is_religion.html

"sacred" activities ideas and objects; set rituals, calendar events based on the changing seasons, distinctive dress codes (especially for religious professionals), codes of morality and action that are given a mandate from a supernaturally great being, from a supernatural force or from the will of the Universe itself; and, a caste of privileged and exalted professionals who have particular claims to be in touch with transcendental forces."

3.4 Spirituality vs Religion

The concept of 'God' or 'having a relationship with God' has traditionally been defined and experienced within a religious framework. Spirituality is neither synonymous nor conterminous with religion although spirituality is often foundational to religion. Religion formalises and categorises spirituality in specific doctrines and coherent belief systems accepted by a group or community of people.

Religion provides opportunity for individuals within such a community to part take in 'spirituality' through the allegiance to the doctrine without necessarily any personal experience to substantiate the belief. Dr. Spencer⁶⁵ posed the sample whereby one individual might believe in Christ as the Son of God because the Bible and Christian doctrine proclaims it, whilst the next individual might confess the same belief based on a personal encounter with Jesus Christ with no influence from church or doctrine.

This emphasised another variance between religion and spirituality, the former confounds in a community of believers and the latter is independent and individual. The emerging paradigm within this study of spirituality is broadened to accommodate the personal experience outside traditional religion. Steiger and Lipson⁶⁶ defined religion as a **'social institution in which a group of people participate rather than an individual search for meaning'**. This suggest 'religion'

⁶⁵ Spencer, Maya Dr. (2012) *What is Spirituality? A personal exploration*. Available at: <https://www.rcpsych.ac.uk/docs/default-source/members/sigs/spirituality-spsig/what-is-spirituality-mayaspencerx.pdf?sfvrsn=f28df052>

⁶⁶ Steiger, N. and Lipson, J. (1985) *Self Care Nursing: Theory and Practice*. Brady Communications, Bowie, Maryland. P. 212

emphasises systems and practices and beliefs within a social group but does not imply that religion has no spiritual experience.

It is thus possible for an individual to be spiritual, but not religious and not incorporated into a religious community guided by doctrine and creeds.

Van Niekerk⁶⁷ asserted a certain 'uneasiness' with the concept of spirituality independent from religion. Motivation might be found in notions denying doctrines of original sin, predestination and grace compared to man's independent will to pursue a moral life.

Religious expression provides an avenue to practice faith and spirituality with the goal being to connect to a supreme being or a god. This includes prayer, worship, participation in holy journeys and/or sacraments or self-sacrificing activities such as fasting or solitude. It materialises for example in the pursuit of the Noble Path for the Buddhist, adhering to the Quran and following the Sunnah for the Islamic and seeking fellowship with the Holy Spirit for the Christian.⁶⁸ Spiritual growth and maturity depend on the practice of these activities and the consequence success.

3.5 Spirituality Within a Social Context

Hay⁶⁹ suggested ***“that spirituality occurs in the context of the communities in which one is a part”***. This perspective broadened the restricted church or religious community to any social community and gave credence to the notion that self-realisation and the 'state of the self' is largely reliant on the individuals relationship with other people. The author found this to be specifically relevant within the African communities of South Africa. 'Spiritual communities' hold

⁶⁷ Van Niekerk, B. (May 30, 2018) *Religion and spirituality: What are the fundamental differences?* HTS Theologies Studies/Theological Studies 74(3), 4933. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v74i3.4933>. Available at: <http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/hts/v74n3/03.pdf>

⁶⁸ Spiritual Fitness Guide. (May 2, 2012) The United States Navy Chaplain Corps Available at: <http://bootsandbible.info/sf/Spiritual-Fitness-Guide.pdf>

⁶⁹ Hay, Milton W. (September 1, 1989) *Principles in building spiritual assessment tools*. American Journal of Hospice Care Sept/Oct, 25–31. Available at: <https://journals.sagepub.com/doi/abs/10.1177/104990918900600514?journalCode=ajha>

'church services' or gatherings not restricted or confined to the traditional definition of church and doctrine, especially with reference to written creeds. Informal 'spiritual communities' meet in informal environments of open spaces, whether urban or rural.



Figure 1: An example of an 'open church' alongside John Vorster Rd (R80) West of Pretoria. The informal church is structured with specific rules – one of which is that women are not allowed to attend.

Informal spiritual communities' do have leadership and specific rules to which they abide, although not formalised in creeds and doctrine e.g. the abovementioned 'congregation' only consists of men. Rules and rites might also include sacraments, leadership hierarchy and disciplinary action if the community deems it necessary. These informal as well as organised religious communities address the need for, which is included in the quest for the meaning of life.

Howden⁷⁰ included this quest as a critical attribute of spirituality in its purpose of providing a sense of worth and reason for living. Autton⁷¹ agreed and suggested that this need for meaning is a universal trait, essential to life itself, and that a

⁷⁰ Howden J.W. (1992) *Development and psychometric characteristics of the spirituality assessment scale*. Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Texas Woman's University, Denton, Texas.

⁷¹ Autton N. (1980) *The hospital chaplain*. *Nursing (Add-on Journal)* 12 (16), P. 697-699.

lack of meaning can lead to spiritual distress and feeling of emptiness and despair.

4. SPIRITUAL REALITY

“there are more things in heaven and earth, Horatio, than are dreamt of in your philosophy.”⁷²

“Somewhere in every one of us is a deep longing to make contact with the, unknown, with some “higher power”—something greater or wiser or more powerful than ourselves. This is true at all levels, from the teenage girl reading her horoscope, to the witch doctor in some remote tribe who has never seen a white man, to the scientist probing outer space and seeking to discover the secrets of the universe.”⁷³

The research hypothesis acknowledged spiritual diversity and the influence of spirituality in all spheres of life. Evidence of the existence of the spiritual realm is found in both the Old as well as the New Testament. The creation narrative in the first chapters of Genesis introduce four beings or entities namely:

- God
- Angels
- Man: Adam and Eve
- Satan and his entourage of fallen angels

The research presented a short discussion on the four beings or entities introduced in Genesis. This was paramount to providing insight into the hypothesis that spirituality is part all spheres of life, for individuals as well as nations, in historic and modern times.

4.1 The First Introduction: A Triune GOD

Essential for this research's hypothesis is the comprehension of the spirituality of

⁷² William Shakespeare. Hamlet. Hamlet to Horatio. Available at: <http://www.shakespeare-online.com/quickquotes/quickquotehamletdreamt.html>

⁷³ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 113

man. The spirituality of man without a thorough understanding of God is not possible.

The God of the Holy Bible is omnipotent (all-powerful), omniscient (all-knowing), and omnipresent (everywhere). God is eternal and ever living. God is the creator of all. God is present throughout the universe (immanent). He is the creator of all things. He is all powerful and sustains the universe. He exists outside the universe (transcendent). He exists in nature, yet He is not nature. He is the source of life and the inventor of the laws of nature, but not bound by the laws of nature.

- The paradox of unity and plurality.
- The Truth of a Triune God manifested in His Names
- The Nature of God
- Essential attributes of God
- Moral attributes
- Gifts of the Triune God

4.1.1 Fundamental Truths of the Triune God

4.1.1.1 Paradox of Unity and Plurality

The Holy Bible provides the foundation for the doctrine of the eternal Godhead consisting of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, existing in three Persons, distinguishable yet indivisible in essence, co-eternal, co-existent, co-equal in nature, attributes, power and glory.

“There is but one eternal Godhead, who is one undivided and indivisible essence; and in this one essence there are three eternal distinctions, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit.”⁷⁴

⁷⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 41

Just as the Quran does not systematically expound upon the doctrine of Tawhid, the Bible does not expound upon the doctrine of the Trinity in any one place.⁷⁵

The Holy Bible does not attempt to explain the mystery of the Trinity, it simply declares it. However, six elements found repeatedly throughout the Bible's text are best interpreted through the lens of the Trinity.

- a. A real and definite distinction

"The words Father, son and Holy Spirit, certainly indicate a real distinction, not allowing us to suppose that they are merely epithets by which God is variously designated from his works. Still they indicate distinction only, not division."⁷⁶

- b. There is only one God

Seeing it is one God, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through faith.

Romans 3:30 (KJV)

- c. The Father is God

Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him hath God the Father sealed.

John 6:27 (KJV)

- d. Jesus Christ is God

And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.

John 20:28 (KJV)

Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

Romans 9:5 (KJV)

Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:

2 Peter 1:1 (KJV)

⁷⁵ Qureshi, Nabeel. (September 20, 2016) *5 Scriptural points to help you understand the trinity*. Ravi Zacharias International Ministries. Available at: <https://www.crosswalk.com/faith/bible-study/5-scriptural-points-to-help-you-understand-the-trinity.html>

⁷⁶ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 45

- e. The Holy Spirit is God

But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back part of the price of the land? Whiles it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God.

Acts 5:3–5 (KJV)

- f. All Three are distinct persons

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

John 14:16–17 (KJV)

Three distinct, yet fully divine persons, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit are God, but only one God, naturally leads to the doctrine of the Trinity: one God who subsists in three persons. Founded herein is a delicate balance: over emphasis of the fact that God in one is heresy of Unitarianism⁷⁷. Over emphasis of the fact that God is three could lead to the heresy of Tritheism⁷⁸.

4.1.1.1.1 Manifestation of the Trinity in the Baptism

Paul connected one faith, one God and one baptism. Faith implies one God and therefor one baptism.

By baptism, believers publicly confess and are initiated into faith and worship of one God. One act of obedience to relate to the burial and resurrection of Christ.

⁷⁷ Unitarianism: (from Latin unitas "unity, oneness", from unus "one") is a Christian theological movement named for its belief that the God in Christianity is one person, as opposed to the Trinity (tri- from Latin tres "three") which in many other branches of Christianity defines God as three persons in one being: the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Unitarian Christians, therefore, believe that Jesus was inspired by God in his moral teachings, and he is a savior, but he was not a deity or God incarnate. Available at: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitarianism>

⁷⁸ Tritheism: the doctrine that the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit are three distinct Gods. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/tritheism>

A burial of an old life and a resurrection into a new life in Christ. Therefore, one baptism of one faith in one God.

Therefore, He into whose name a believer is baptised, is the true God. Jesus exhibited the uniqueness of the Trinity when He commanded the baptism by stating:

Therefore, as you go, disciple people in all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit,

Matthew 28:19 (ISV)

“This the same thing as to be baptised into the name of the one God, who has been fully manifested in the Father, the Son, and the Spirit. Hence it plainly appears that the three persons, in whom alone God is known, subsist in the Divine essence.”⁷⁹

4.1.1.1.2 The Oneness of God is Confirmed in Both the Old and New Testaments

- a. Old Testament – two of several scriptures:

After the fall of man in the Garden of Eden, God said:

“Behold, man has become like one of Us”

Genesis 3:22 (NKJV)⁸⁰

When men began to build the tower of Babel, God said:

“Come let Us go down and there confuse their language”

Genesis 11:7 (NKJV)⁸¹

Each time the plurality of the Godhead is emphasized.

⁷⁹ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 44

⁸⁰ Genesis 3:22 (NKJV) Then the LORD God said, “Behold, the man has become like one of Us, to know good and evil. And now, lest he put out his hand and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live forever”

⁸¹ Genesis 11:7 (NKJV) Come, let Us go down and there confuse their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.”

b. New Testament – one of several scriptures:

At the baptism of Jesus, we encounter the three members of the Godhead in action at the same time:

When He had been baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and alighting upon Him. suddenly a voice came from heaven, saying, "This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."

Matthew 3:16-17 (NKJV)

The baptism of Jesus is a prominent expression of the doctrine of the Trinity. Christ in human form, visible to all; the Holy Spirit descended upon Christ in manifested as a dove; and the voice of the Father spoke from heaven.⁸²

Jesus also confirmed the trinity:

Jesus answered him, "The first of all the commandments is: 'Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one.

Mark 12:29 (NKJV)

4.1.1.2 The Truth of a Triune God Manifested in His Names

Dave Hunt⁸³ was of the opinion that only one of two basic concepts of God exist: Pantheism or Naturalism⁸⁴ and Supernaturalism⁸⁵. Supernaturalism includes the two opposing viewpoints of Polytheism⁸⁶ and Monotheism⁸⁷.

⁸² Pfandl, Gerhard, (1999) *The Trinity in Scripture*. Biblical Research Institute. Silver Spring. MD. Available at: <https://www.adventistbiblicalresearch.org/sites/default/files/pdf/trinscript.pdf>

⁸³ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 53

⁸⁴ Pantheism or Naturalism: The universe itself is god. Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 53

⁸⁵ Supernaturalism: God or gods exist distinct and apart from the universe. Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 53

⁸⁶ Polytheism: The word originates from 'poly' meaning 'many' and 'theism' meaning 'god'. Polytheism is the worship of many gods. Mormons and Hindus fall in this category. Stuart, Don. *What is Polytheism?* Blue Letter Bible. (April 24, 2007). Available at: https://www.blueletterbible.org/faq/don_stewart/don_stewart_303.cfm

⁸⁷ Monotheism: The word originates from the Greek 'monos', meaning 'one' and 'theos' meaning 'god'. Monotheism is a religion or belief system involving a single God that is omnipresent, omniscient, ultimately

The Holy Scriptures doctrine of God as 'one' is equal to its doctrine of God as 'three'. This implies two interpretations of unity namely absolute unity and compound unity. Both are equally true.

The names of God reveal His significance and His Trinity. The first introduction of God is found in the very first verse of the Holy Bible in Genesis 1 verse 1.

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Genesis 1:1 (NKJV)

4.1.1.2.1 Elohim

"God" or Elohim is defined by the Strong's Concordance #H430⁸⁸ as (אֱלֹהִים) ('ēlôhîym) ('ēlôhîym) and as the plural of #H433⁸⁹ (אֱלֹהִים) ('ēlôahh) **Elo'ah. Elo'ah** defines a deity or the deity or God in *singular* form.

The plural noun Elohim, referring to the supreme *God* and the primary name of God in Old Testament is used 25 000 times in the 39 books of the Old Testament, and almost always with a singular verb.⁹⁰ The single form is used more than fifty times, mostly in the book of Job.

Though Elohim is the plural form it is followed by a single verb "bara" or "created". Hebrew verbs are also presented in singular or plural. The Plural noun "Elohim" followed by a singular verb appears to hold a grammatical paradox. This paradox contains seeds of truth to be unfolded through the rest of scripture. It proclaims both unity and diversity and both singularity and plurality⁹¹.

good. Christianity, Judaism, Islam and Sikhism. Cline, Austin. (March 18, 2019) *Monotheism Definition in Religion*. Available at: <https://www.learnreligions.com/what-is-monotheism-4079967>

⁸⁸ God: #H430 - Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

⁸⁹ God: #H433 - Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

⁹⁰ Derek Prince Radio Ministry. DPM – USA God revealed in His Names. Elohim. Available at: https://www.derekprince.org/Articles/1000136690/DPM_USA/Media/Radio_15/DPLR_15_Archives/God_Revealed_in/God_Revealed_in.aspx

⁹¹ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 54

4.1.1.2.2 "Let Us"

God introduces Himself in the plural. This verse and the remains of the Creation chronicle does not elaborate or proceed to define the plural character of God. The Triune God; One God but three in persons; three distinct individuals: God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ and God the Holy Spirit. Although the exact expression "trinity" is not found in the Bible describing God's triune character, the evidence thereof is provided in several scriptures.

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

Genesis 1:26 (KJV)

The definition of God as one but also three is an "antinomy"⁹².⁹³ The concept of one God who is simultaneously three appears to be mutually exclusive. God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit are the three members of the Trinity. One God with three eternal and co-equal Persons. Although equal, the three entities have divine but unique functions. The same in substance, but distinct in subsistence.⁹⁴

Deuteronomy accommodates the same paradox as Elohim in the plural referring to one God:

Here, O Israel: The Lord (Jehovah) our God, the Lord (Elohim) is one!

Deuteronomy 6:4 (KJV)

4.1.1.2.3 "Echad" vs "Yachid"

⁹² Antinomy: Two apparent mutually exclusive truths presented simultaneously. A contradiction between two statements that seem equally reasonable. The noun originates from the Latin and Greek word 'antinomia', meaning 'contradiction in law'. Synonym for Paradox, Aversion. Available At: <https://www.vocabulary.com/dictionary/antinomy>

⁹³ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 8

⁹⁴ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 27

The Paradox of unity and plurality combined holds the revelation of God. Besides the plural Elohim, it is also relevant to evaluate the semantic value of “one”. The Hebrew language contains two words for “One”.

Deuteronomy 6:4 denotes the first word for “one”. According to the Strong's Dictionary #H259⁹⁵ (אֶחָד) ('echâd) (ekh-awd') meaning: A numeral from, properly united, that is, one; or (as an ordinal) first: - a, alike, alone, altogether, and, any (-thing), apiece, a certain [dai-] ly, each (one), + eleven, every, few, first, + highway, a man, once, one, only, other, some, together. Thus, this refers to a compound unity which comprises more than one person. A unity consisting of more than one.

The second word for “one”: defined in the Strong's dictionary #H3173⁹⁶ (יָחִיד) (yâchîyd) (yaw-kheed') means absolutely alone, only or unique. Abraham to was to take his only (yâchîyd) son. He only had one son.⁹⁷ This accommodates absolute unity, a mathematical or numerical number one. Used twelve times in the Old Testament, “Yahead” is never used to endorse or to describe the unity of God.

And he said, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.

Genesis 22:2 (KJV)

Referring to the unity in marriage God proclaimed that Adam and Eve will become one flesh. Thus, two people unite to become one (echâd). Two elements becoming one.

This explains why a man leaves his father and mother and is joined to his wife, and the two are united into one.

⁹⁵ One: #H259. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

⁹⁶ One: #H3173 Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

⁹⁷ Author's note pertaining to Scripture referring to Abrahams only son whilst Ismael was born 13 years prior to Isaac. Isaac was Abrahams first son, and at the time the only son, born according to God's promise and the covenant between God and Abraham. Ismael was Abrahams son born from his wife's handmaid Hagar. Ismael was naturally Abrahams first born son, and Isaac his first son, and only son with Sarah, born from Gods covenant promise. Isaac was the only son 'of his kind', a son of the covenant. The principle is repeated in Hebrew 11:17. The principle also reflect scriptures referring to Jesus as God's only and begotten son. (John 1:14, 18, John 3:16,18; 1 John 4:9)

Genesis 2:24 (NLT)

Numbers 13 narrates the journey of Israeli scouts sent by Moses on God's command to investigate the promised land. They cut a single (echad) cluster of grapes, yet it contained many singular grapes.

When they came to the valley of Eshcol, they cut down a branch with a single cluster of grapes so large that it took two of them to carry it on a pole between them! They also brought back samples of the pomegranates and figs.

Numbers 13:23 (KJV)

During the civil war between the tribes of Israel, men united as one (echad). Thousands of men as one unit.

So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, knit together as one man.

Judges 20:11 (NLT)

God commanded the prophet to take two sticks representing the two tribes and hold them together as if they were one (echad) stick. The two sticks became one unity.

Again a message came to me from the Lord: "Son of man, take a piece of wood and carve on it these words: 'This represents Judah and its allied tribes.' Then take another piece and carve these words on it: 'This represents Ephraim and the northern tribes of Israel.' Now hold them together in your hand as if they were one piece of wood. When your people ask you what your actions mean, say to them, 'This is what the Sovereign Lord says: I will take Ephraim and the northern tribes and join them to Judah. I will make them one piece of wood in my hand.'

Ezekiel 37:15-19 (NLT)

The unity implied in Elohim is a perfect unity containing more than one entity. Evidence is also found in Genesis three after Adam and Eve sinned and disobeyed God. God replied: "Now they have become like one (echad) of Us. The fact that "Us" is written with a capital letter indicates the referral to God. Plurality and unity are implied.

Then the Lord God said, "Look, the human beings have become like us, knowing both good and evil. What if they reach out, take fruit from the tree of life, and eat it? Then they will live forever!"

Genesis 3:22 (NLT)

Another perfect example indicating the Plurality in the single is found in the book of Isaiah. God asks: "Who will I send (Singular) Who will go for Us." (Plural). God speaking using both singular and plural in one sentence is a fascinating paradox: God is One. The one-ness implies more than one. This paradox portrays the truth about God in His Unity and Plurality.

Then I heard the Lord asking, "Whom should I send as a messenger to this people? Who will go for us?"

Isaiah 6:8 (NKJV)

Isaiah prophesied the following with reference to the birth of Christ:

For unto us a Child is born, Unto us a Son is given; And the government will be upon His shoulder. And His name will be called Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace

Isaiah 9:6 (NKJV)

Hunt⁹⁸ highlighted the uniqueness of the Bible in stating that '***such a concept is found nowhere else in the world's religious literatures.***' A promise for a son to be born who, though a man would be the Mighty God. And though a Son, He would simultaneously be the Everlasting Father.

Isaiah presented the Fatherhood of God, the deity of Christ and the oneness of the Father and the Son and Holy Spirit.

"Come near to Me, hear this: I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; From the time that it was, I was there. And now the Lord God and His Spirit Have sent Me."

Isaiah 48:16 (NKJV)

King Solomon, great in wisdom also acknowledged the Father and Son relationship in creation.

Who has created the whole wide world? What is his name—and his son's name? Tell me if you know!

Proverbs 30:4 (KJV)

God referred to His relationship and plan to redeem Israel: A divine person speaking and yet He says God (the Lord) and His Spirit has sent me. The

⁹⁸ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 55

fulfilment of this scripture is in the New Testament; God send both His Son and His Spirit.

Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord GOD, and his Spirit, hath sent me

Isaiah 48: 16 (KJV)

All three as God. The Father, The Son and the Holy Spirit. In Elohim is a perfect unity of Three in One. God is essentially one. God is also essentially three in one. This reflect the mystery of God. The principle is echoed in the New Testament with Jesus' command to teach and baptise the nations acknowledging all three Entities in the Trinity.

Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

Matthew 28:19 (KJV)

In the great commission Jesus sent his disciples with the command to baptise people in three names: The Name of Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Greek meaning is baptising **INTO** the Name of. This signifies the believer ought to take up his/her place in God leaving their personal lives' behind. Owen Collins⁹⁹ conclusion with regards to the baptism stated the following:

“But as God has manifested himself more clearly by the advent of Christ, so he has made himself more familiarly known in three persons. Of many proofs let this one suffice. Paul connects together these three, God, Faith and Baptism, and reasons from the one to the other – because there is one faith he infers that there is one God., and because there is one baptism he infers that there is one faith. Therefore, if by baptism we are initiated into the faith and worship of one God we must of necessity believe that he into whose name we are baptised is the true God.”

The command of one baptism performed in one faith in the Name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit reflects to Genesis 1:1 where God is presented in the plural and also to Genesis 1:27 where God refers to Himself in the plural.

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

Genesis 1:1 (NKJV)

⁹⁹ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 44

“Let us make man in our image”

Genesis 1:27 (KJV)

The truth and reality of a Triune God in the New Testament is thus a confirmation and fulfilment of the same truth in the Old Testament.

The primary Hebrew name of God in the Old Testament is Elohim. The main associations are power, majesty, righteousness and justice. It is also associated with what is eternal and heavenly.

The name Elohim contains in it the seed of truth that is unfolded through the rest of the Bible. The essence of this truth can be stated in a paradox. Elohim represents the perfect unity of that which is more than one.

The ongoing paradox leads to the full revelation given by Jesus Christ identifying the plurality within the unity of one God as Father Son and Spirit. A proper understanding of Elohim will confirm that the revelation of Elohim by Jesus Christ in the New Testament is not a departure from the understanding of Elohim in the Old Testament, but rather a logical fulfilment.

Exodus 3:4 accommodate two names of God. “The Lord” and “God”.

And when the LORD saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses. And he said, Here am I.

Exodus 3:4 (KJV)

GOD meaning Elohim has already been presented in this discussion.

4.1.1.2.4 Johova

“The LORD” according to the Strong’s Concordance #H3068¹⁰⁰ (יְהוָה) (y^eh^ovâh) (yeh-ho-vaw’) defined as (the) self-Existent or eternal; Jehovah. The Jewish national name of God: - Jehovah, the Lord.

¹⁰⁰ Jehovah: #H3068. Strong’s Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

The name Jehovah originates from the word #H1933¹⁰¹ (יְהוָה) (*hâyâh*) (*haw-yaw*) and #H1934¹⁰² (הָוָה) (*hav-aw'*) meaning too exist, that is, be or become, come to pass.

4.1.1.2.5 JHWH

The most holy Hebrew Name for God is **JHWH**¹⁰³ (The Lord). In its original form the word consists of four Hebrew consonants and no vowels. Traditionally in English presented by the Name Jehovah. Because the vowels were not used the reader had to add it. Thus, unless the reader is already familiar with the word the he/she will not be able to pronounce it. Vowels were sometimes added below the name for assistance. The Authors of the Bible Encyclopaedia is of the impression that Jehovah, originated from a misunderstanding of what the vowels were supposed to be¹⁰⁴. Nevertheless, Jehovah is recognised as a replacement name for the name too holy to pronounce¹⁰⁵; **JHWH**.

4.1.1.2.6 Adonai

Another adjustment to accommodate the most holy name **JHWH** (The Lord) was to amend the name from The Lord to “**My Lord**” translated to **Adonai**¹⁰⁶. Just as Elohim is referring to the plural, so does **Adonai**. “**Adoni**” being the singular form.

The four consonant **JHWH** also translated as “**My Lord**” when My Lord is presented in capital letters in the English text. If “**my lord**” is not presented in

¹⁰¹ Exist: #H1933. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

¹⁰² Breath: #H1934. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

¹⁰³ JHVH: Old Testament variants of YHVH. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/jvh>

¹⁰⁴ Gispem, W.H. Dr. (1977) *Bybelse Ensiklopedie (Tweede Hersiene Uitgawe)*. Cape Town: Die Vereigde Protestantse Uitgewers (Edms.) Bpk. Onder Redaksie van Gispem W.H. Prof. dr.; Oosterhoff, B.J. Prof. dr.; Ridderbos, H.N. Prof. dr.; Van Unnik, W.C. Prof. dr.; Visser, P. Ds.

¹⁰⁵ JHVH (also known as Tetragrammaton). The Hebrew name for God revealed to Moses on Mount Sinai (Exodus 3), consisting of the four consonants YHVH (or YHWH) and regarded by Jews as too sacred to be pronounced. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/tetragrammaton>

¹⁰⁶ The Lord: #H136. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

capital letters it represents **Adonai** in the original Hebrew text. Capital letters represents the sacred name of Jehovah.

In answering Moses God identified himself by proclaiming: “**I am Who I am**”. This is **JHWH, The Lord**.

Exodus 3:14-15, seventeen generations after the creation described in Genesis is remarkable for it presents the first opportunity where God Himself reveals His name.

And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you. And God, furthermore, said to Moses, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you ' This is My name forever, and this is My memorial-name to all generations.

Exodus 3:15 (NASB)

In this text God (Plural Elohim) introduces Himself as:

- “I Am”
- The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.

“I Am” defined by the Strong’s Concordance #H1961¹⁰⁷ (הָיָה)(hâyâh)(*haw-yaw*)’. A primitive root; to *exist*, that is, *be* or *become*. The word is also associated with #H1933 (הָוָה) (hâvâh) (*haw-vaw*)’ meaning “to breath”. As per the discussion already presented, “I Am” provides the root form for Jehovah.

With the correct names the text will read as follows:

And God (Elohim) said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM (the one that exist): and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM (the one that exist) hath sent me unto you. And God (Elohim), furthermore, said to Moses, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'The LORD (Jehova), the God (Elohim) of your fathers, the God (Elohim) of Abraham, the God (Elohim) of Isaac, and the God (Elohim) of Jacob, has sent me to you ' This is My name forever, and this is My memorial-name to all generations.

Exodus 3:15 (KJV)

¹⁰⁷ I am: #H1961. Strong’s Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

"I AM that I AM" He is the ever-present, ever existing One. He is the One who is constantly present, with Moses and with His people, Israel. He is not just the God of the present and of the future; He is the God of the past, the God who made a covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.¹⁰⁸

God repeats His name but also introduces yet another name in Exodus 6.

And God (Elhohim), spake unto Moses, and said unto him, I am the LORD (Jehovah): And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of God (EL) Almighty, but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them.

Exodus 6:2-3 (KJV)

4.1.1.2.7 "EL"

According to the Strong's Concordance #H410¹⁰⁹ (ֵל) ('êl) (*ale*). *strength*; as adjective *mighty*; especially the *Almighty* (but used also of any *deity*): God (god), goodly, great, idol, might (-y one), power, strong.

Shortened from #H352 ('ayil) (*ah'-yil*) properly *strength*; hence anything *strong*; specifically, a *chief* (politically); also a *ram* (from his strength); a *pilaster* (as a strong support); an *oak* or other strong tree: - mighty (man), lintel, oak, post, ram, tree. Elohim and Elo'ah derived from "EL" with the basic meaning "POWER", or "The Powerful One."

The plural Elohim suggests the totality of all that is God. This is expressed in the New Testament.

For since the creation of the world God's invisible qualities—his eternal power and divine nature—have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that people are without excuse.

Romans 1:20 (KJV)

¹⁰⁸ Deffinbaugh, Robert L. (Bob) (February 16, 2007) 9. *Moses and the Exodus (Exodus 1-15)*. Available at: <https://bible.org/seriespage/9-moses-and-exodus-exodus-1-15>

¹⁰⁹ EL: #H410. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

Paul identifies the specific qualities and aspects of Elohim manifested in creation as

- Eternal power
- Divine nature

Derek Prince¹¹⁰ suggested the most powerful interpretation of “Elohim” is “DEITY”. It is the principal Name of God in the Old Testament. Primary associations with “Elohim” include Power, Majesty, Righteousness, Justice, Eternity, and Heavenly dwelling place.

“Elohim” was also applied in reference to created beings who manifested some of this attributes or characteristics e.g. angels; good and bad, rulers and judges. Especially with reference to Power and Justice.

In summary, “Elohim” presents the Totality of all that is God. The name reveals a unique aspect of God found in no other book or religion: Unity and Plurality within the nature of God.

4.1.1.2.8 God Does Not Change

The name *I AM WHO I AM* further implies God does not change.¹¹¹

In Malachi God claims, “I Yahweh do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.” Within the name Yahweh is the affirmation *I AM WHO I AM*.

For I am the LORD, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Malachi 3:6 (KJV)

With God is no variation or shadow due to change

Every good thing given and every perfect gift is from above; it comes down from the Father of lights [the Creator and Sustainer of the

¹¹⁰ Prince, Derek *God Revealed in His Names* Derek Prince Legacy Radio. Available at: https://www.derekprince.org/Articles/1000136690/DPM_USA/Media/Radio_15/DPLR_15_Archives/God_Revealed_in/God_Revealed_in.aspx

¹¹¹ Piper, John (September 16, 1984) “*I am who I am*”. *Desiring God*. Available at: <https://www.desiringgod.org/messages/i-am-who-i-am>

heavens], in whom there is no variation [no rising or setting] or shadow cast by His turning [for He is perfect and never changes.

James 1:17 (KJV)

He is the same yesterday, today, and forever. His absolute name is the granite foundation of our confidence in his ongoing faithfulness.

Jesus Christ is [eternally changeless, always] the same yesterday and today and forever.

Hebrews 13:8 (KJV)

God Is an Inexhaustible Source of Energy

The name *I AM WHO I AM* also implies God to be inexhaustible source of energy. God is the everlasting absolute Reality and the Creator of the ends of the earth and of the universe.

Therefore, all energy — all motion and combustion and fusion and fission — originate in him.¹¹²

Yahweh is the everlasting God, the Creator of the ends of the earth. He does not faint or grow weary.

Isaiah 40:28 (KJV)

This God Has Drawn Near to believers in Jesus Christ.

This is the name of God: *I AM WHO I AM!* And may those who know the name of God put their trust in him.

I am the Alpha and the Omega, says the Lord God, who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty.”

Revelation 1:8 (KJV)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.

Revelation 22:13 (KJV)

¹¹² Piper, John (September 16, 1984) “*I am who I am*”. *Desiring God*. Available at: <https://www.desiringgod.org/messages/i-am-who-i-am>

Finally, an example of a passage in the Old Testament that features the deity of all Three persons of the Trinity is found in Isaiah 48:12-16.

“Listen to Me, O Jacob, and Israel, whom I called; I am He, I am the First, I am the Last. “My hand founded and established the earth, And My right hand spread out the heavens; When I call to them, they stand together [in obedience to carry out My decrees]. “Assemble, all of you, and listen! Who among them [the idols and Chaldean astrologers] has declared these things? The Lord loves him (Cyrus of Persia); he will do His pleasure and purpose against Babylon, And his arm will be against the Chaldeans [who reign in Babylon]. “I, even I, have spoken; indeed, I have called Cyrus; I have brought him, and will make his way successful. “Come near to Me, listen to this: From the beginning I have not spoken in secret, From the time that it happened, I was there. And now the Lord God as sent Me, and His [Holy] Spirit.”

Authors of the Crosswalk Bible study presents the following paraphrase:

“‘I am he; I am the first and the last. My own hand laid the foundations of the earth.’ And now the Sovereign Lord has sent me, endowed with his Spirit.” Here, the Alpha and the Omega says He was sent by the Lord God along with His Spirit.

The next verse calls the speaker “Lord [Yahweh],” “Redeemer,” and “the Holy One of Israel.” In this passage, Yahweh is sent by Yahweh and the Spirit of Yahweh, and this makes little sense unless read through the lens of the Trinity.”

In summary with regards to the Plurality in Unity¹¹³

- One God and One Only
- God exists in three Persons
- All three persons are equal and eternal
- All three persons are worthy of equal praise and worship
- All three persons are distinct yet acting in unity
- All three persons constitutes one true God of the Bible

¹¹³ Pritchard, Ray Dr. (July 13, 2012) *God in Three Persons: A Doctrine We Barely Understand*. Available at: <https://www.christianity.com/god/trinity/god-in-three-persons-a-doctrine-we-barely-understand-11634405.html>

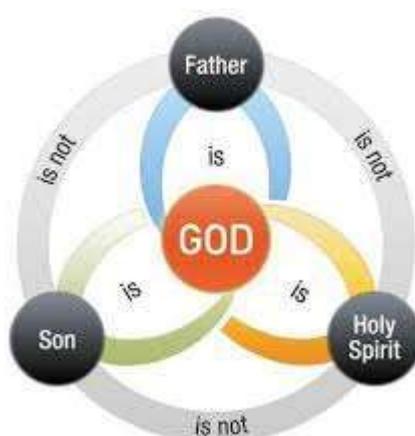


Figure 2: Diagram depicting the Trinity¹¹⁴

The Father is the head of the Trinity, the first cause. He is the primary and original thought of all that has been and will be created. Jesus said:

Jesus Christ, the Son is the 'Logos' or expression of God – the only begotten of the Father. He is second in the Trinity and also God. In His incarnated state He revealed the Father. Jesus is man's only redeemer.

The Holy Spirit is the third Person in the Trinity. He proceeds from the Father and is worshipped and glorified together with the Father and the Son. He enthused the Scriptures. He has and always will empower God's people. He convicts the world 'of sin, righteousness, and of judgment. All three persons are eternal.

4.1.1.3 The Nature of God

Kevin J Conner¹¹⁵ confirmed the essentiality of faith in God in order to know God.

Nothing can be received or known of God unless one believes in His existence Secondly, individuals must accept scripture as the means by which God reveals

¹¹⁴ Diagram depicting the Trinity Available at: <https://bible-quran.com/monotheism-trinity/>

¹¹⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P.43

Himself. Conner further suggest four fundamental revelations pertaining to God's essential nature and being as:

- God is Spirit
- God is Light
- God is Love
- God is a consuming fire

4.1.1.3.1 God is Spirit

Human qualities such as having ears and eyes presented to be Godly features is only presented to enhance understanding of God's abilities. Question 4 of the Westminster Shorter Catechism¹¹⁶ defines God as follows:

“God is a Spirit, infinite, eternal, and unchangeable, in his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth.”

Thomas Watson¹¹⁷ commented as follows:

“By a spirit I mean, God is an immaterial substance, of a pure, subtile, unmix'd essence, not compounded of body and soul, without all extension of parts.”

Derek Rishmawy¹¹⁸ contributed by stating:

“God being spirit means that God is not material, not bodily, not made up of parts you can pull apart and put back together. Sounds simple enough.”

Foundational in exploring spirituality is the statement made by John in John 4 and Paul in his letter to the congregation in Corinthians.

Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.

2 Corinthians 3:17 (NKJV)

¹¹⁶ Q.4. What is God? The Westminster Shorter Catechism. Available at: matt2819.com/wsc

¹¹⁷ Watson, Thomas. *The Being of God*. Available at: <https://www.apuritansmind.com/the-attributes-of-god-by-c-matthew-mcmahon/the-being-of-god-by-thomas-watson/>

¹¹⁸ Rishmawy, Derek. (June 4, 2015) *God is a Spiritual Being but what does that even mean?* Available at: <https://derekzrismawy.com/2015/06/04/god-is-a-spiritual-being-but-what-does-that-even-mean/>

'God is Spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in Spirit and in truth.

John 4:24 (SFLB)

Other Scriptures worth considering are as follows:

He alone possesses immortality [absolute exemption from death] and lives in unapproachable light, whom no man has ever seen or can see. To Him be honor and eternal power and dominion! Amen.

1 Timothy 6:16 (AMP)

Where can I go from Your Spirit? Or where can I flee from Your presence? If I ascend to heaven, You are there; If I make my bed in Sheol (the nether world, the place of the dead), behold, You are there.

Psalm 139:7, 8 (AMP)

In his book 'A Body of Divinity' Watson¹¹⁹ reflected on Psalm 139 as follows:

"God's centre is everywhere, and his circumference is nowhere. A body being compounded of integral parts may be dissolved; quicquid divisibile est corruptibile: but the Godhead is not capable of dissolution, he can have no end from whom all things have their beginning. So that it clearly appears that God is a Spirit, which adds to the perfection of his nature."

Being Spirit implies God to be immaterial and incorporeal. He is referred to as being invisible.

And he said, Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

Exodus 33:20 (KJV)

No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

John 1:18 (KJV)

For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:

Romans 1:20 (KJV)

¹¹⁹ Watson, Thomas (2013) *A Body of Divinity*. Christian Classics Ethereal Library, Grand Rapids. P. 48
Available at: <https://www.ccel.org/w/watson/divinity/cache/divinity.pdf>

Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.

1 Timothy 1:17 (KJV)

Who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom be honour and power everlasting. Amen

1 Timothy 6:16 (KJV)

For this reason – God being invisible – is foundational in God forbidding the making of any visible image or similitudes of Himself.

Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of similitude on the day that the LORD spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire:

Deuteronomy 4:15 (KJV)

To whom then will ye liken me, or shall I be equal? saith the Holy One.

Isaiah 40:25 (KJV)

Conner sensitised the fact that the invisibility of God does not abandon the truth that **God is a person with self-consciousness, self-determination, will, intelligence and feeling. In His personhood He is essentially a spiritual being rather than a physical being.**¹²⁰

God's spirituality must also be accommodated in worship.

God is spirit and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

John 4:24 (KJV)

Kenneth Copeland Ministries defined the content of worship in spirit and in in truth as follows:¹²¹

- *Barak* – To kneel, to bless God, to bow down
- *Halal* – To be clear, to shine, to boast, to show, to rave, to celebrate, to be glamorously foolish

¹²⁰ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P.48

¹²¹ Kenneth Copeland Ministries. (July 18, 2017) *7 Ways to Worship God in Spirit and in Truth*. Available at: <https://blog.kcm.org/7-ways-worship-god-spirit-truth/>

- *Shabach* – To shout loudly, to command
- *Tehillah* – To sing praises, singing out of the spirit spontaneously
- *Towdah* – Extending hands, acting out of thanksgiving for what has or will be done
- *Yadah* – Extending the hands vigorously
- *Zamar* – To touch the strings, to make music with instruments, mostly rejoicing

4.1.1.3.2 God is Light

The majesty and glory of God is captured by this revelation of God's nature. God does not dwell in light, or have light, He IS light.

This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare unto you, that God is light, and in him is no darkness at all.

1 John 1:5 (KJV)

The conclusion from the aspect was as follows: God being light implies God to be eternal, immortal and invisible.

Which in his times he shall shew, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; Who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom be honour and power everlasting. Amen

1 Timothy 6:15-16 (KJV)

4.1.1.3.3 God is Love

Love is the essence of God's nature. Love includes mercy, kindness, grace, goodness, and benevolence of God toward all His creation.

Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.

1 John 4:17 (KJV)

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 (KJV)

4.1.1.3.4 God is a Consuming Fire

For our God is a consuming fire.

Hebrews 12:29 (KJV)

This aspect of God's nature also relates to 'God is Light'. Fire is the most frequent symbol used in the Bible referring to God. Fire encompasses His holiness and absolute righteousness in His judgement against sin. References include:

a. The Lamp of Fire

And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

Genesis 15:17 (KJV)

b. The Burning Bush of Fire

Now Moses kept the flock of Jethro his father in law, the priest of Midian: and he led the flock to the backside of the desert, and came to the mountain of God, even to Horeb. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed. And Moses said, I will now turn aside, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt. And when the Lord saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses.

And he said, Here am I. And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground. Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.

Exodus 3:1-6 (KJV)

c. The Altar of Fire

And Elijah said unto the prophets of Baal, Choose you one bullock for yourselves, and dress it first; for ye are many; and call on the name of your gods, but put no fire under.

1 Kings 18:25 (KJV)

Then the fire of the LORD fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.

1 Kings 18:38 (KJV)

d. The Coals of Fire

Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Isaiah 6:6-7 (KJV)

e. The Tongues of Fire

And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Acts 2:1-4 (KJV)

f. The Lake of Fire

And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

Revelation 20:15 (KJV)

4.1.1.4 Essential Attributes of God

These essential attributes of God essentially belong ONLY to God and to no-one else.

4.1.1.4.1 God is Eternal

God exist from eternity to eternity.

Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever you had formed the earth and the world, from everlasting to everlasting you are God.

Psalms 90:2 (ESV)

4.1.1.4.2 God is Self-existent

God was not created. God exists in and from Himself. He is the source of all life and is underived and inexhaustible. God is totally independent. With regards to the self-existence of God in the creation of the universe Dave Hunt¹²² clarified the following:

“The God of the Bible is separate and distinct from His creation, which He made out of nothing. Without a Creator who had an eternal purpose for His creation, neither the universe nor man in it could have any ultimate meaning.”¹²³

4.1.1.4.3 God is Immutable

God's character and being is unchanged and unchangeable.

God is not man, that he should lie, or a son of man, that he should change his mind. Has he said, and will he not do it? Or has he spoken, and will he not fulfill it?

Numbers 23:19 (ESV)

4.1.1.4.4 God is Omnipotent

God is all powerful (omni-all, potent—power) and sovereign to rule His creation.

The heavens declare the glory of God; the skies proclaim the work of his hands. Day after day they pour forth speech; night after night they reveal knowledge. They have no speech, they use no words; no sound is heard from them. Yet their voice goes out into all the earth, their words to the ends of the world. In the heavens God has pitched a tent for the sun.

Psalms 19:1-4 (NIV)

4.1.1.4.5 God is Omniscient

God's knowledge of the past, present and future is absolute and unacquired.

¹²² Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 52

¹²³ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 41

Omniscient also encompasses perfect wisdom and perfect understanding. God had perfect knowledge of the future consequences of every action He took in creating the universe. Conner defines perfect understanding as “**the full perception and interpretation of the facts**” and perfect wisdom as the “**proper application of facts.**”¹²⁴

4.1.1.4.6 God is Omnipresent

God is not limited by space or time. He is universally and simultaneously present in all of the universe.

4.1.1.5 Moral Attributes

4.1.1.5.1 Perfect Holiness

God does not have the ability to sin. Nor can He tolerate sin. God is absolute pure and Holy in thought and action.

Why do You show me iniquity, And cause me to see trouble? For plundering and violence are before me; There is strife, and contention arises.

Habakuk 1:3 (NKJV)

4.1.1.5.2 Perfect Righteousness

The integrity of God's holiness and the truthfulness of his Word is grounded in His righteousness to judge sin. Conner¹²⁵ defines righteousness as “**holiness in action against sin. The holiness of God demands that sin be judged and the sinner punished.**” He states that justice accommodates both punishment and

¹²⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 48

¹²⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 52

reward. This implies the application of the principle of action and re-action. Holiness is rewarded positively, and sin is judged in a just and righteous manner.

He is the Rock, His work is perfect; For all His ways are justice, A God of truth and without injustice; Righteous and upright is He.

Deuteronomy 32:4 (NKJV)

4.1.1.5.3 Perfect Love

“The love of God is the perfection of affection God has which moves Him to give Himself to His creation continually. This love is not merely and emotion. It is an act of God’s will in which He eternally gives Himself.”¹²⁶

Perfect love includes God’s goodness, His grace, mercy, compassion and His kindness. The love of God depicts the triune character of love; the emotion of love, (The love of the Holy Spirit) the one who loves (the giver, Father God), and the one who is loved (the receiver, the Son Jesus Christ). Whilst the righteousness of God rightfully judged sin in the atonement of Christ, the love of God extended salvation for the sinner.

4.1.1.5.4 Perfect Faithfulness

Perfect faithfulness reflects the trustworthiness of both God and His Word. God is not a man that can lie. God is not capable of lying. Thus, his Word is true in all aspects. Including all His promises. He declares that His Word will not return to Him empty and unfulfilled. God even appoints the angels to manifest His Word/promises in the believer’s life.

God is not human, that he should lie, not a human being, that he should change his mind. Does he speak and then not act? Does he promise and not fulfill?

Numbers 23:19 (NIV)

¹²⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 53

so is my word that goes out from my mouth: It will not return to me empty, but will accomplish what I desire and achieve the purpose for which I sent it.

Isaiah 55:11 (NIV)

Bless Jehovah, ye his angels, That are mighty in strength, that fulfil his word, Harkening unto the voice of his word.

Psalms 12:20 (KJV)

4.1.1.5.5 The Goodness of God

The goodness of God not only reflect on what He does, but primarily on who He is. The goodness of God is embodied in His core essence. The 'goodness' of God is portrayed in the first chapters of Genesis. God proclaimed His creation to be 'good' and the creation of man as 'very good'.

God named the forbidden tree "the tree of the knowledge of good and evil". The goodness of God is the summation of His nature and character. Evidence of the goodness of God is found in God's providential care for all of His creation.

The LORD is good to all: and his tender mercies are over all his works.

Psalms 145:9 (KJV)

4.1.1.5.6 The Grace of God

Grace is the opposite of karma, which is all about getting what you deserve. Grace is getting what you don't deserve.¹²⁷

Grace is the essence of God and Christianity. It is reflected in the unmerited favour of God bestowed upon mankind, reflected in God's promises and embodied in Jesus Christ. Grace includes the longsuffering and forbearance of God.

Grace be to you, and peace, from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ. According as he hath chosen us in him before the

¹²⁷ Holcomb. Justin (January 23, 2013) *What is Grace?* Available at: <https://www.christianity.com/theology/what-is-grace.html>

foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved. In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace

Ephesians 1:2, 5-7 (MSG)

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God.

Ephesians 2:8 (KJV)

4.1.1.5.7 The Mercy of God

Willmington's Guide to the Bible¹²⁸ differentiated between Mercy and Grace as follows: Mercy is the act of withholding deserved punishment, while grace is the act of endowing unmerited favour. In His mercy, God does punish sin with what it deserves namely hell, and in His mercy, He provides what is undeserved namely heaven.

The LORD is merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and plenteous in mercy.

Psalms 103:8 (KJV)

4.1.1.5.8 The Compassion of God

The Latin origin of the word compassion portrays the significance: "*compati*" meaning "*suffer with*"¹²⁹ Compassion encompasses true sorrow for the suffering and affliction of others with a desire to bestow help. The Bible is saturated with God's compassion for human suffering and sorrows.

¹²⁸ Wiljaya, Philip (July 8, 2019) *What is the difference between grace and mercy?* Available at: <https://www.christianity.com/wiki/christian-terms/what-is-the-difference-between-grace-and-mercy.html>

¹²⁹ *What Does the Bible Say About Compassion?* Compassion International. Compassion in Jesus' name. Children and Poverty. Available at: <https://www.compassion.com/poverty/what-does-the-bible-say-about-compassion.htm>

And Jesus went forth, and saw a great multitude, and was moved with compassion toward them, and he healed their sick.

Matthew 14:14 (KJV)

4.1.1.5.9 The Kindness of God

In His kindness God gave us life. Kindness is associated with numerous emotions, acts and attitudes. Understanding kindness is also not consistently distinguishable in meaning as a result of a variety of synonyms.

In English kindness, goodness, mercy, pity, love, grace, favour, compassion, gentleness, tenderness, etc, in Greek chrestos, eleemon, oiktirmon, charis, agape, splanchnon, epieikeia, etc and in Hebrew hesed, tob, rahamim, hemlah, hen, etc.¹³⁰

God's kindness should also not be confused with his righteousness. God remains just and His wrath for sin remains unchanged. This is the essence of His kindness and love. Providing His Son to as substitute for sin. Kindness is also included as a character attributes of the indwelling Holy Spirit. Thus, the manifestation of God's character through man.

But when the kindness and the love of God our Savior toward man appeared, not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit, whom He poured out on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior, that having been justified by His grace we should become heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

Titus 3: 4-7 (NKJV)

4.1.1.5.10 The Benevolence of God

Benevolence originated from the Latin 'bene' (well) combined with 'volentem' (wish), resulting in the meaning 'to wish well' or 'goodwill'.¹³¹ A desire to do good

¹³⁰ Kindness. Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology – Kindness. Available at: <https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/kindness/>

¹³¹ Larson, Craig Brian (December 24, 2018) *Benevolent Love* Available at: <https://craigbrianlarson.com/gods-benevolence/>

to others. God's goodness and grace is not restricted to believers in Christ, but it also extends to unbelievers.

For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, says the Lord, thoughts of peace and not of evil, to give you a future and a hope.

Jeremiah 29:11 (NKJV)

4.1.1.5.11 Perfect Faithfulness

God's faithfulness applies to His absolute trustworthy character as well as to the reliability of His Word. Faithfulness is dually applied and true to His character and His Word.

O LORD, thou art my God; I will exalt thee, I will praise thy name; for thou hast done wonderful things; thy counsels of old are faithfulness and truth.

Isaiah 25:1 (KJV)

Thy testimonies that thou hast commanded are righteous and very faithful.

Psalms 119:138 (KJV)

Neglect and chaotic disharmony followed the fall of man. Death, destruction, disease disaster and discord are manifestations of man's sin and the destructive power of Lucifer and does not reflect God's intent.

4.1.1.6 Gifts of the Trinity

Andrew Murray provided the following summary:¹³²

- God the Father gave His Son
- The Son gave His blood
- The Father and the Sons gave the Spirit

¹³² Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 406

Pat Robertson defined the gifts as follows:¹³³

- Foundationally, existence and human life is given by the Father.

And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

Genesis 2:7 (KJV)

Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live?

Hebrews 12:9 (KJV)

- The Father also gave His only begotten Son as the Redeemer for mankind.

And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.

John 3:13 (KJV)

- Redemptively, Jesus Christ is the giver of eternal life.

But you do not have His word abiding in you, because whom He sent, Him you do not believe.

John 5:38 (NKJV)

My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me. And I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; neither shall anyone snatch them out of My hand.

John 10:27-28 (NKJV)

- Jesus gave His life and shed His blood to gain the privilege to be the giver of eternal life.

"Therefore My Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down of Myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This command I have received from My Father."

John 10:17-18 (NKJV)

Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for her, that He might sanctify and cleanse her with the washing of water by the word, that He might present her to Himself a glorious church, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but that she should be holy and without blemish.

Ephesians 5:25-27 (NKJV)

¹³³ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2022

- The Father and Jesus Christ jointly sent the Holy Spirit to advance the work of redemption through the church's ministry of worship, growth and evangelism.

4.1.1.6.1 Gifts of the God the Father

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 (KJV)

Romans 12:3-8 pronounces seven gifts given by God the Father.

For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith. For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office: So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, let us prophesy according to the proportion of faith; Or ministry, let us wait on our ministering; or he that teacheth, on teaching; Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, let him do it with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness.

Romans 12:3-8 (KJV)

a. Prophecy

- To speak with forthrightness and insight.
- To demonstrate moral boldness
- To portray spiritual righteousness

if [someone has the gift of] prophecy, [let him speak a new message from God to His people] in proportion to the faith possessed;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

b. Ministry

- Minister love and service to others
- Manifested in the work of a deacon

if service, in the act of serving;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

c. Teaching

- Supernatural ability to explain Biblical truths
- Presuppose study and discernment to unveil divine truths
- Distinct from the work of a prophet who speaks as a direct mouthpiece of God.

or he who teaches, in the act of teaching;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

d. Exhortation

- To be call aside for the purpose to make an appeal.
- To intreat, comfort, instruct

or he who encourages, in the act of encouragement;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

e. Giving

- To give generously
- To aid those without resources
- Giving and aiding to be done without pride

he who gives, with generosity;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

f. Leadership

- Refers to the one 'standing in front
- Involves the Holy Spirit in modelling, superintending and developing the body of Christ
- Diligence is required.

he who leads, with diligence;

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

g. Mercy

- Sympathy with the ministry of others
- Relate in empathy, respect and honesty
- Kindness and cheerfulness enhance effectiveness

he who shows mercy [in caring for others], with cheerfulness.

Romans 3 12:8 (AMP)

4.1.1.6.2 Gifts of Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is the redemptive giver of eternal life. His crucifixion and sacrificial death were the eternal and pure blood sacrifice required to redeem man from the slavery and bondage of sin, ensuring eternal life for all who accept this offering.

Pat Robinson described the gifts of the Son of God as '*pivotal*' in assuring that the gifts of the Father and the gifts of the Holy Spirit are applied in the body of Christ.¹³⁴

And [His gifts to the church were varied and] He Himself appointed

Ephesians 1:11 (AMP)

a. Apostles

- Functions as a messenger of spokesman of God
- Refer to individuals who have the spirit of apostleship in remarkably extending the work of the church in opening new areas for the gospel of Christ and overseeing the body of Christ.

some as apostles [special messengers, representatives],

Ephesians 1:11 (AMP)

b. Prophet

- An individual uniquely gifted at times with insight into future events.
- A spiritual mature proclaimer with a divine message for the church.

some as prophets [who speak a new message from God to the people],

Ephesians 1:11 (AMP)

c. Evangelist

- Refers to a special gift of preaching or witnessing in a way that brings unbelievers to salvation in Christ.

some as evangelists [who spread the good news of salvation],

Ephesians 1:11 (AMP)

¹³⁴ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2023

d. Pastors and Teachers

- The word 'Pastor' is derived from the root word 'to protect'. From this understanding the term shepherd relates to this gift.
- Implies the function of a leader or shepherd to nurture, teach, and care for spiritual needs.

and some as pastors and teachers [to shepherd and guide and instruct],

Ephesians 1:11 (AMP)

e. Missionary/Apostle/Evangelist

- Refers to individuals who spread the Word of God.
- Illustrates a humility and willingness to go to remote and unknown areas.
- Reflects an inner compulsion to share the love and salvation of God.
- Special Grace

f. Hospitality

- Accommodate love, service, care and teaching

g. Celibacy

- Accommodate individuals set free from the obligations of family life to allow time for God's ministry
- Martyrdom
- Illustrated in the spirit of Stephen and fulfilled in the attitude of Paul.

4.1.1.6.3 Gifts of the Holy Spirit

The gifts of the Holy Spirit, equally valid but not equally valuable according to Paul, can be described as special abilities given by the grace and extraordinary power of the Holy Spirit, operating in believers, for the purpose of building the Body of Christ. It encompasses a variety of Gifts, all given by the bestowed by one Holy Spirit to serve one Triune God.

But to each one is given the manifestation of the Spirit [the spiritual illumination and the enabling of the Holy Spirit] for the common good.

1 Corinthians 12:7 (AMP)

a. Word of Wisdom

- Supernatural perspective to discern the divine will of God.
- Divine intuition in problem solving and divine direction.

To one is given through the [Holy] Spirit [the power to speak] the message of wisdom

1 Corinthians 12:8 (AMP)

b. Word of Knowledge

- Supernatural revelation of the divine plan and will of God.
- Supernatural understanding of circumstances.

and to another [the power to express] the word of knowledge and understanding according to the same Spirit;

1 Corinthians 12:8 (AMP)

c. Faith

- Supernatural ability to have faith in God without any doubt and combat unbelief.
- Supernatural ability to face adverse circumstances with trust in God's provision.

to another [wonder-working] faith [is given] by the same [Holy] Spirit,

1 Corinthians 12:9 (AMP)

d. Gifts of Healing

- Supernatural healing without human and medical aid.

and to another the [extraordinary] gifts of healings by the one Spirit;

1 Corinthians 12:9 (AMP)

e. Working of Miracles

- Operates closely with the gifts of faith and healing to demonstrate supernatural power to intervene and counteract earthly and demonic forces.

and to another the working of miracles,

1 Corinthians 12:10 (AMP)

f. Prophecy

- Divine, supernatural and anointed utterances. The manifestation of God's Spirit. Prophecy also includes God inspired proclamations in a known language.

and to another prophecy [foretelling the future, speaking a new message from God to the people],

1 Corinthians 12:10 (AMP)

g. Discerning of Sprits

- Supernatural ability to discern the spiritual realm.

and to another discernment of spirits [the ability to distinguish sound, godly doctrine from the deceptive doctrine of man-made religions and cults],

1 Corinthians 12:10 (AMP)

h. Different kinds of Tongues

- Supernatural and anointed utterances in a language not known by the speaker.

to another various kinds of [unknown] tongues,

1 Corinthians 12:10 (AMP)

i. Interpretation of Tongues

- Supernatural ability to reveal the meaning and interpretation of tongues spoken.

and to another interpretation of tongue

1 Corinthians 12:10 (AMP)

4.1.2 First in the Trinity: God the Father

God the Father is the first Person of the Trinity. He has been described as:

“everything from an impersonal life-force to a benevolent, personal, almighty Creator. He has been called by many names, including: "Zeus," "Jupiter,"

"Brahma," "Allah," "Ra," "Odin," "Ashur," "Izanagi," "Viracocha," "Ahura Mazda," and "the Great Spirit" to name just a few. He's seen by some as "Mother Nature" and by others as "Father God."¹³⁵

4.1.2.1 Revelation and Acknowledgement of Father God

4.1.2.1.1 Male, Never Female

In discussing 'Father God', the very first fact to take note of is that neither God Himself, nor the prophets, nor Jesus Christ or the apostles ever refers to God as female, never 'Mother'. All references acknowledge God as 'Father'.

4.1.2.1.2 Father God's Personal Identification

With weeping they shall come, and with pleas for mercy I will lead them back, I will make them walk by brooks of water, in a straight path in which they shall not stumble, for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn.

Jeremiah 31:9 (ESV)

A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If then I am a father, where is my honor? And if I am a master, where is my fear? says the Lord of hosts to you, O priests, who despise my name. But you say, How have we despised your name?

Malachi 1:6 (ESV)

4.1.2.1.3 The Prophet's Acknowledged God as Father

The prophets of Israel understood the concept of 'our Father'. The use of the word 'our Father' (avino) in Jewish prayers is taken from Isaiah 63:16 and was used in the first century.

Doubtless You are our Father, Though Abraham was ignorant of us, And Israel does not acknowledge us. You, O Lord, are our Father; Our Redeemer from Everlasting is Your name

Isaiah 63:16 (NKJV)

¹³⁵ *Who is God? The Question.* (2020) Available at: <https://www.allaboutgod.com/who-is-god-c.htm>

Prophets frequently acknowledge God as 'Father'.

When Israel was a child, I loved him, And out of Egypt I called My son.

Hosea 11:1 (NIV)

But now, O Lord, you are our Father; we are the clay, and you are our potter; we are all the work of your hand.

Isaiah 64:8 (ESV)

Have we not all one Father? Has not one God created us? Why then are we faithless to one another, profaning the covenant of our fathers?

Malachi 2:10 (RSVA)

But now, O LORD, You are our Father; We are the clay, and You our potter; And all we are the work of Your hand

Isaiah 64:8 (NKJV)

4.1.2.1.4 Jesus Acknowledged God as Father

The command for baptism included and acknowledged the 'Father'.

Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age." Amen.

Matthew 28:19 (NKJV)

Jesus affirmed God's power and His one-ness with the Father

My Father, who has given them to Me, is greater than all; and no one is able to snatch them out of My Father's hand. I and My Father are one."

John 10:30 (NIV)

Jesus always recognised and addressed God as 'Father' in prayer:

At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.

Matthew 11:25-26 (KJV)

And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

Luke 23:46 (KJV)

The original Aramaic term for Father used by Jesus was 'Abba'. (אבבא, meaning Aram) This was Jesus' personalised address for God.

And he said, Abba, Father, all things are possible unto thee; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what thou wilt.

Mark 14:36 (KJV)

Jesus addressing God as Father is a fulfilment of Old Testament prophecies:

He shall cry unto me, Thou art my father, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

Psalm 89:26 (KJV)

The Targum¹³⁶ also presents 'Abba' in Psalm 89:26¹³⁷: ***He will call the me, "You are Abba."*** This is the only passage in the Targum which translated 'my Father' with 'Abba' in reference to God. Dr. Chuck Day elucidated the fact that the Jew's at the time, although familiar to the *reference* of God as Father in Old Testament Scriptures, were not familiar with *addressing* God as 'Father. Dr. Day states:¹³⁸

"This was a word that Jews never used for God because it was considered too common."

Scripture confirms this conclusion in the book of John

Therefore the Jews sought all the more to kill Him, because He not only broke the Sabbath, but also said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God.

John 5:18 (NKJV)

4.1.2.1.5 The Apostles Acknowledged God as Father

Jesus intended His disciples to use the name Abba for God. Paul's mention of

¹³⁶ Targum: (Aramaic: "Translation," or "Interpretation"), any of several translations of the Hebrew Bible or portions of it into the Aramaic language. Encyclopaedia Britannica, Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/Targum>

¹³⁷ Psalm 89:26 (NKJV) He shall cry to Me, 'You are my Father, My God, and the rock of my salvation.'

¹³⁸ Dey, Chuck Dr. (2019) *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered (October 12, 2019)

the word 'Abba' in his letters to both the Romans and the Galatians comes undoubtedly from a Church worship tradition begun by Jesus Himself.

For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

Romans 8:15 (KJV)

And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

Galatians 4:6 (KJV)

Jesus' preached a new dispensation that has arrived and those within the kingdom have the privilege to call God Abba

And call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven.

Matthew 23:9 (KJV)

See what kind of love the Father has given to us, that we should be called children of God; and so we are. The reason why the world does not know us is that it did not know him.

1 John 3:1 (ESV)

4.1.2.2 Implication of Calling God 'Abba' 'Father'

4.1.2.2.1 Believers Share Jesus Intimacy with God

Equal relationship with God implies relationship and obedience. Jesus impressed on His disciples to experience the same relationship with the Father than He does.

Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.

John 20:17 (KJV)

Jesus also presented the unparalleled obedience in His prayer before His crucifixion.

And he said, Abba, Father, all things are possible unto thee; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what thou wilt.

Mark 14:36 (KJV)

4.1.2.2.2 Believers Share Equal Levels of Love from God

'Father' portrays a father-child relationship. God the Father did not become a father when He adopted believers as His children. God's fatherhood is eternal. He is the eternal Father of Jesus Christ and through Christ also Father to all believers in Christ. Through Christ believers of the Christian faith are elevated to be called children of God. Positioned to receive His love.

and if children, then heirs—heirs of God and fellow heirs with Christ, provided we suffer with him in order that we may also be glorified with him

Romans 8:17 (ESV)

But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God,

John 1:12 (ESV)

J.I. Parker¹³⁹ concluded the following with reference to God's love

“What is interesting to note here is that John does not say, “The Father loves us.” In doing so, he would be describing a condition. Instead, he tells us that the Father has “lavished” His love on us, and this, in turn, portrays an action and the extent of God's love.”

The concept of Love in relation to Father God

but whoever keeps his word, in him truly the love of God is perfected. By this we may know that we are in him:

1 John 2:5 (ESV)

Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him.

1 John 2:15 (ESV)

¹³⁹ *How should I understand the concept of the Father God?* (January 2, 2020) Got Questions Ministries. Available at: <https://www.gotquestions.org/Father-God.html>

4.1.2.2.3 Believers Share Rights and Privileges as Sons of God

- a. Confidence in God's concern to provide for needs.

Therefore I say unto you, Take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Matthew 6:25 (KJV)

- b. Access to God's presence

Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.

Matthew 7:7-8 (KJV)

- c. Privilege to convey requests in confidence of a favourable response to the prayer

Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Matthew 7:9-11 (KJV)

- d. Privilege to the revelation of the Father through Jesus Christ

All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

Matthew 11:27 (KJV)

- e. Obligation to obey the Father

And he said, Abba, Father, all things are possible unto thee; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what thou wilt.

Mark 14:36 (KJV)

4.1.2.3 Additional Titles for Believers Through Christ

4.1.2.3.1 Co-heirs with Christ

and if children, then heirs—heirs of God and fellow heirs with Christ, provided we suffer with him in order that we may also be glorified with him

Romans 8:17 (ESV)

but whoever keeps his word, in him truly the love of God is perfected. By this we may know that we are in him:

John 2:5 (ESV)

4.1.2.3.2 Holy Priests

you yourselves like living stones are being built up as a spiritual house, to be a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.

Peter 2:5 (ESV)

4.1.2.3.3 New Creation

Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold, the new has come.

Corinthians 5:17 (ESV)

4.1.2.3.4 Partakers in Divine Nature

by which he has granted to us his precious and very great promises, so that through them you may become partakers of the divine nature, having escaped from the corruption that is in the world because of sinful desire.

2 Peter 1:4 (ESV)

4.1.2.4 Restoration of Farther-Child Relationship

The ultimate purpose for the incarnated Christ was to reconcile man with God. This is the full outworking of the redemption purpose.

And this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent.

John 17:3 (NKJV)

For Christ also suffered once for sins, the just for the unjust, that He might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive by the Spirit,

1 Peter 3:18 (KJV)

Jesus confirms the only avenue for reconciliation between man and Father God

I am the way, the truth, and the life!” Jesus answered. ***“Without me, no one can go to the Father.***

John 14:6 (CEV)

Two facts were implied in this statement

- A specific way or a road is implied. The J.B. Phillips Bible translated the scripture as “I myself am the road,”. This way or road is Jesus Christ. Jesus states it emphatically. He is not the destination or ultimate goal.
- A destination is implied. The destination is God the Father.

Derek Prince¹⁴⁰ stated that “knowing Father God” is the ultimate purpose and message of the Bible. This truth is a distinct feature of the Christian faith. This single fact differentiates Christianity from all other religions.

The definitive message of the Gospel of Jesus Christ is the reconciliation of Father God with humankind. Jesus Christ, eternal Son of God born as man, crucified to atone for the sin of mankind and to re-establish the relationship with God the Father destroyed in the garden of Eden. This is the purpose of the Gospel. The restoration of relationship with God the Father. The relationship with God reveals a unique aspect of the nature of God: In God eternally is Fatherhood. Fatherhood equals relationship.

Prince¹⁴¹ further expressed his concern that many people confessing the Christian faith, and who are on the road of Christianity never reaches the

¹⁴⁰ Prince Derek. (1981) *Knowing the Father. Study notes Outline*. Three tape series 4090 The Fatherhood of God. Derek Prince Ministries–International

¹⁴¹ Prince Derek. (1981) *Knowing the Father. Study notes Outline*. Three tape series 4090 The Fatherhood of God. Derek Prince Ministries–International

destination of getting to know God the Father. In his opinion they have what he calls “the doctrine without the experience” or “the theory without the relationship.”

4.1.2.5 Revelation of God as Father in ‘The Lord’s Prayer’

The Lord’s prayer is presented in two scriptures in the New Testament. Matthew included the prayer in the Sermon on the Mount in the teaching devoted to prayer and faith.

***Our Father in heaven,
Hallowed be Your name.
Your kingdom come.
Your will be done
On earth as it is in heaven.
Give us this day our daily bread.
And forgive us our debts,
As we forgive our debtors.
And do not lead us into temptation,
But deliver us from the evil one.
For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.***

Matthew 6:9-13 (ESV)

Luke presented a summarised version as a response to the disciples’ request for knowing how to pray.

And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples. And he said unto them, When ye pray, say, Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth. Give us day by day our daily bread. And forgive us our sins; for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation; but deliver us from evil.

Luke 11:1-4 (KJV)

Jesus understood that God was their Father – collectively. This understanding stems from Exodus where God declares the Israelite to be ‘His Sons’.

And thou shalt say unto Pharaoh, Thus saith the LORD, Israel is my son, even my firstborn:

Exodus 4:22 (KJV)

"You are the sons of the Lord your God. You shall not cut yourselves or make any baldness on your foreheads for the dead. For you are a people holy to the Lord your God, and the Lord has chosen you to be a people for his treasured possession, out of all the peoples who are on the face of the earth.

Deuteronomy 14:1-2 (ESV)

Our Father who is in heaven (*avinu she-bash-sha-mayim*) is found in the Jewish Morning service prayers and frequently elsewhere in the Jewish Prayer book for example:

The Mishna¹⁴²

When Israel looked on high and submitted their hear to their Father who is in heaven they were healed (with reference to the fiery serpent in the wilderness recorded in Number 2:8)

Rosh Hashanah 3:8

Be strong as a leopard, light as an eagle, fleet as hart, and strong as a lion to do the will of they Father who is in Heaven.

Avot 5:20

4.1.3 Second in the Trinity: The Son of God - Jesus Christ

4.1.3.1 Christology

The hypostasis¹⁴³ of the Lord Jesus Christ is the unification of His Divine and human nature in one person. This is the essence of Christology¹⁴⁴. Christology deals with the study of Christ in both His Divinity as well as his Human Nature and as such the study present a summary of His eternal existence prior to His

¹⁴² Mishna: The Jewish oral law passed on from rabbi to rabbi and finally codified 200 AD. Dey, Chuck Dr. (2019) *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered (October 12, 2019)

¹⁴³ Hypostasis: noun Philosophy The substance, essence, or underlying reality. Noun Any of the persons of the Trinity. Available at: <https://www.wordnik.com/words/hypostasis>

¹⁴⁴ Christology: Christology is composed of the words Christ, referring to Jesus, and ology, meaning "the study of." The word Christology, therefore, deals with the study of Jesus Christ. Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/Christology.html>

incarnation, Theophany,¹⁴⁵ Christophany,¹⁴⁶ Old Testament prophecies related to Christ, Christ humanity and the deity of Christ (Kenosis¹⁴⁷). His human nature, His human birth, life, His atonement in His death, His resurrection, ascension, future return and eternal reign.

4.1.3.2 Jesus Christ Eternal Existence Prior to His Incarnation

4.1.3.2.1 Creation

Jesus's participation in creation is clearly defined by the apostle John.

In the beginning [before all time] was the Word (Christ), and the Word was with God, and the Word was God Himself. He was [continually existing] in the beginning [co-eternally] with God. All things were made and came into existence through Him; and without Him not even one thing was made that has come into being.

John 1:1-3 (AMP)

Paul concurred with John in stating

For by Him all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities--all things have been created through Him and for Him.

Colossians 1:16 (NKJV)

Yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom are all things and we exist for Him; and one Lord, Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we exist through Him.

1 Corinthians 8:6 (NKJV)

4.1.3.2.2 Jesus Christ, the Word of God

He is dressed in a robe dipped in blood, and His name is called The Word of God.

Revelation 19:13 (ESV)

¹⁴⁵ Theophany: The appearance of God in various forms. Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/theophany-christophany.html>

¹⁴⁶ Christophany: Is applicable only to Christ. "The appearance of Christ., but are distinct from Christ's incarnation and his subsequent appearance in that form." Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/theophany-christophany.html>

¹⁴⁷ Kenosis: From the Greek word (New Testament) meaning "to empty" Jesus emptied Himself. Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 23, 26

Andrew Murray¹⁴⁸ concluded the following with regards to Jesus Christ:

- Jesus Christ is the Son in whom God has spoken
- Jesus came as the Word of God. He Himself is the Living Word.

One of the distinct titles of Jesus Christ is "Word of God" or "Manifested Word of God". With this understanding and in relation to the scriptures, Matthew Boffey¹⁴⁹ summarised Christ in creation as follows:

- Christ existed prior to the creation
- Christ existed along with God
- Christ is equivalent with God
- In Him and through Him all things were created.

Haasbroek¹⁵⁰ affirmed the significance of Jesus Christ as the Co-creator with the Father: Logos (Word) is recognised as a name of Jesus Christ, the living 'logos'¹⁵¹ or expression of God. (John 1:1)¹⁵² Through the creation Jesus reveals the Father. The Son of God is both man's only redeemer and the agent of creation. The Holy Bible is the written logos revealing the Triune God. (Hebrew 4:12)¹⁵³ The Holy Spirit is the spoken logos. (1 Corinthians 2:4)¹⁵⁴

4.1.3.3 Theophany, Christophany

Every Christophany found in the Old Testament should also be understood as Theophany, every appearance of Christ is the manifestation of God. Both

¹⁴⁸ Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 31

¹⁴⁹ Boffey, Matthew (June 15, 2019) *2 Ways Jesus is the Word of God: Revelation and Logos*. Available at: <https://blog.logos.com/2019/06/2-ways-jesus-is-the-word-of-god-revelation-and-logos/>

¹⁵⁰ Haasbroek, Danie (2001) *Die Wonder van Jesus in die Ou Testament*. Pretoria: DH Trust. P. 185, 189

¹⁵¹ Logos: Defined as 'Word'. Logos (log-oss) Strong's #3056: A Transmission of thought, communication, a word of explanation, an utterance, discourse, divine revelations, talk, statement, instruction, an oracle, divine promise, divine doctrine, divine declaration. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1665

¹⁵² John 1:1 (KJV) In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

¹⁵³ Hebrew 4:12 (KJV) For the word of God *is* quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and *is* a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

¹⁵⁴ 1 Corinthians 2:3 (KJV) And my speech and my preaching *was* not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power:

Christophany and Theophany both implies the manifestation of God through Jesus Christ.¹⁵⁵ Multiple appearances of Jesus as the Angel of Light and several other manifestations are found in the Old Testament

4.1.3.3.1 (Old Testament) Jesus Christ, the Angel of the Lord

The Angel of the Lord is distinct from other angels in the sense that He receives worship.

And the Angel of the Lord appeared to him in a flame of fire from the midst of a bush. So he looked, and behold, the bush was burning with fire, but the bush was not consumed.

Exodus 3:2 (NKJV)

The identity of the Angel of the Lord is revealed in the book of Acts.

“And when forty years had passed, an Angel of the Lord appeared to him in a flame of fire in a bush, in the wilderness of Mount Sinai. When Moses saw it, he marveled at the sight; and as he drew near to observe, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying, ‘I am the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.’ And Moses trembled and dared not look.

Acts 7:30-32 (NKJV)

4.1.3.3.2 (Old Testament) Additional Christophanies

Haasbroek¹⁵⁶ listed manifestations of Christ in the Old Testament.

- Visions and dreams.
- The Angel of the Lord in helping Hagar in the desert.
- A man in making a covenant with Abraham and discussing the Sodom and Gomorrah.
- Miraculous interventions in preventing Abraham to sacrifice Isaac.
- Pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire in the desert.
- Burning Bush

¹⁵⁵ Haasbroek, Danie (2001) *Die Wonder van Jesus in die Ou Testament*. Pretoria: DH Trust. P. 183

¹⁵⁶ Haasbroek, Danie (2001) *Die Wonder van Jesus in die Ou Testament*. Pretoria: DH Trust. PP. 18, 183

- Commander of the army appears to Joshua.
- Christophany only occurred in the Old Testament. The New Testament entertains Jesus as the incarnated Son of God.
- High Priest
- Prophet
- King
- Old Testament prophecies related to Christ
- Christ humanity

4.1.3.4 The Incarnated Christ

4.1.3.4.1 Jesus Christ: His Human Nature

Dr. Louis Berkhof¹⁵⁷ defined Jesus Christ human nature as follows:

Christ has a human nature, but He is not a human being. The person of the mediator is the unchangeable Son of God. In the incarnation He did not change into a human person, neither did He adopt a human person. He simply assumed, in addition to His divine nature, a human nature, which did not develop into an independent personality, but became personal in the person of the Son of God.

The following briefly depicts Christ in reference to 'He became flesh'.

Human Spirit	
He lived in dependence upon His Father by continual prayer. The New Testament recorded 25 occasions where Jesus prayed	Matthew 14:23 ¹⁵⁸ , Hebrews 5:7 ¹⁵⁹ , Luke 6:12 ¹⁶⁰ , Luke 22:39-46 ¹⁶¹

¹⁵⁷ Berkhof, Louis (1951) *The Kingdom of God*. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans. P. 45

¹⁵⁸ Matthew 14:23 (NKJV) And when He had sent the multitudes away, He went up on the mountain by Himself to pray. Now when evening came, He was alone there.

¹⁵⁹ Hebrews 5:7 (NKJV) who, in the days of His flesh, when He had offered up prayers and supplications, with vehement cries and tears to Him who was able to save Him from death, and was heard because of His godly fear,

¹⁶⁰ Luke 6:12 (NKJV) Now it came to pass in those days that He went out to the mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.

¹⁶¹ Luke 22:39-46 (NKJV) Coming out, He went to the Mount of Olives, as He was accustomed, and His disciples also followed Him. When He came to the place, He said to them, "Pray that you may not enter into temptation." And He was withdrawn from them about a stone's throw, and He knelt down and prayed,

He learned to depend on the Father and power of the Holy Spirit	Mark 1:35 ¹⁶² , John 6:15 ¹⁶³ , Acts 1:2 ¹⁶⁴ , Hebrews 9:14 ¹⁶⁵ , Acts 10:38 ¹⁶⁶ , Hebrews 5:7 ¹⁶⁷
He groaned in His spirit	John 11:33 ¹⁶⁸

Human Soul including mind, will and emotions. He did not have an angelic nature and he was not mere spirit.¹⁶⁹ Deity is pure Spirit only. Jesus Christ became flesh.	
He increased in wisdom and knowledge	Luke 2:52 ¹⁷⁰
He was limited in human knowledge	Mark 11:13 ¹⁷¹ , Mark 13:32 ¹⁷² , Mark 5:30-34 ¹⁷³ , John 11:34 ¹⁷⁴

saying, "Father, if it is Your will, take this cup away from Me; nevertheless not My will, but Yours, be done." Then an angel appeared to Him from heaven, strengthening Him. And being in agony, He prayed more earnestly. Then His sweat became like great drops of blood falling down to the ground. When He rose up from prayer, and had come to His disciples, He found them sleeping from sorrow. Then He said to them, "Why do you sleep? Rise and pray, lest you enter into temptation."

¹⁶² Mark 1:35 (NKJV) Now in the morning, having risen a long while before daylight, He went out and departed to a solitary place; and there He prayed.

¹⁶³ John 6:15 (NKJV) Therefore when Jesus perceived that they were about to come and take Him by force to make Him king, He departed again to the mountain by Himself alone.

¹⁶⁴ Acts 1:2 (NKJV) until the day in which He was taken up, after He through the Holy Spirit had given commandments to the apostles whom He had chosen,

¹⁶⁵ Hebrews 9:14 (NKJV) how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

¹⁶⁶ Acts 10:38 (NKJV) how God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him.

¹⁶⁷ Hebrews 5:7 (NKJV) who, in the days of His flesh, when He had offered up prayers and supplications, with vehement cries and tears to Him who was able to save Him from death, and was heard because of His godly fear,

¹⁶⁸ John 11:33 (NKJV) Therefore, when Jesus saw her weeping, and the Jews who came with her weeping, He groaned in the spirit and was troubled.

¹⁶⁹ *The Humanity of Christ. Basic Christian Doctrine* 28. Faith Bible Church. Available at: <http://www.faithbibleonline.net/basic-christian-doctrine/>

¹⁷⁰ Luke 2:52 (NKJV) And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men.

¹⁷¹ Mark 11:13 (NKJV) And seeing from afar a fig tree having leaves, He went to see if perhaps He would find something on it. When He came to it, He found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs.

¹⁷² Mark 13:32 (NKJV) "But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.

¹⁷³ Mark 5:30-34 (NKJV) And Jesus, immediately knowing in Himself that power had gone out of Him, turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched My clothes?" But His disciples said to Him, "You see the multitude thronging You, and You say, 'Who touched Me?'" And He looked around to see her who had done this thing. But the woman, fearing and trembling, knowing what had happened to her, came and fell down before Him and told Him the whole truth. And He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace, and be healed of your affliction."

¹⁷⁴ John 11:34 (NKJV) And He said, "Where have you laid him?" They said to Him, "Lord, come and see."

He learned the carpenter trade	Mark 6:3 ¹⁷⁵ , Luke 3:23 ¹⁷⁶
--------------------------------	--

Human Body	
He had a natural human birth. Born from Mary	Matthew 1:18-23 ¹⁷⁷ , Luke 1:30-33 ¹⁷⁸
He wept.	John 11:35 ¹⁷⁹ , Matthew 23:37 ¹⁸⁰ , Matthew 26:38 ¹⁸¹
Human Body. Flesh, bones and blood.	Hebrews 2:14 ¹⁸² , John 1:14 ¹⁸³ , Matthew 26:12 ¹⁸⁴ , Luke 22:19 ¹⁸⁵
He grew as a child.	Luke 2:40 ¹⁸⁶

¹⁷⁵ Mark 6:3 (NKJV) Is this not the carpenter, the Son of Mary, and brother of James, Joses, Judas, and Simon? And are not His sisters here with us?" So they were offended at Him.

¹⁷⁶ Luke 3:23 (NKJV) Now Jesus Himself began *His ministry* at about thirty years of age, being (as was supposed) *the son of Joseph, the son of Heli,*

¹⁷⁷ Matthew 1:18-23 (NKJV) Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follow 45217218s: After His mother Mary was betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Spirit. Then Joseph her husband, being a just *man*, and not wanting to make her a public example, was minded to put her away secretly. But while he thought about these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take to you Mary your wife, for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS, for He will save His people from their sins." So all this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying: "Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel," which is translated, "God with us."

¹⁷⁸ Luke 1:30-33 (NKJV) Then the angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. And behold, you will conceive in your womb and bring forth a Son, and shall call His name JESUS. He will be great, and will be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David. And He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and of His kingdom there will be no end."

¹⁷⁹ John 11:35 (NKJV) Jesus wept.

¹⁸⁰ Matthew 23:37 (NKJV) "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the one who kills the prophets and stones those who are sent to her! How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under *her* wings, but you were not willing!

¹⁸¹ Matthew 26:38 (NKJV) Then He said to them, "My soul is exceedingly sorrowful, even to death. Stay here and watch with Me."

¹⁸² Hebrews 2:14 (NKJV) Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil,

¹⁸³ John 1:14 (NKJV) And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.

¹⁸⁴ Matthew 26:12 (NKJV) For in pouring this fragrant oil on My body, she did *it* for My burial.

¹⁸⁵ Luke 22:19 (NKJV) And He took bread, gave thanks and broke *it*, and gave *it* to them, saying, "This is My body which is given for you; do this in remembrance of Me."

¹⁸⁶ Luke 2:40 (NKJV) And the Child grew and became strong in spirit, filled with wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him.

He grew hungry.	Matthew 4:2 ¹⁸⁷ , Matthew 21:18 ¹⁸⁸
Had experienced thirst.	John 4:7 ¹⁸⁹ , John 19:28 ¹⁹⁰
He grew weary.	John 4:6 ¹⁹¹
He slept.	Matthew 8:24 ¹⁹²
He faced temptation.	Matthew 4:1-11 ¹⁹³ , Hebrews 2:18 ¹⁹⁴ , Mark 1:35 ¹⁹⁵ , Luke 22:28 ¹⁹⁶
He suffered human death and was buried.	Luke 23:33 ¹⁹⁷

¹⁸⁷ Matthew 4:2 (NKJV) And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He was hungry.

¹⁸⁸ Matthew 21:18 (NKJV) Now in the morning, as He returned to the city, He was hungry.

¹⁸⁹ John 4:7 (NKJV) A woman of Samaria came to draw water. Jesus said to her, "Give Me a drink."

¹⁹⁰ John 19:28 (NKJV) After this, Jesus, knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, said, "I thirst!"

¹⁹¹ John 4:6 (NKJV) Now Jacob's well was there. Jesus therefore, being wearied from *His* journey, sat thus by the well. It was about the sixth hour.

¹⁹² Matthew 8:24 (NKJV) And suddenly a great tempest arose on the sea, so that the boat was covered with the waves. But He was asleep.

¹⁹³ Matthew 4:1-11 (NKJV) Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil. And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He was hungry. Now when the tempter came to Him, he said, "If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread." But He answered and said, "It is written, 'Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God.'" Then the devil took Him up into the holy city, set Him on the pinnacle of the temple, and said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, throw Yourself down. For it is written: 'He shall give His angels charge over you,' and, 'In *their* hands they shall bear you up, Lest you dash your foot against a stone.'" Jesus said to him, "It is written again, 'You shall not tempt the LORD your God.'" Again, the devil took Him up on an exceedingly high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. And he said to Him, "All these things I will give You if You will fall down and worship me." Then Jesus said to him, "Away with you, Satan! For it is written, 'You shall worship the LORD your God, and Him only you shall serve.'" Then the devil left Him, and behold, angels came and ministered to Him.

¹⁹⁴ Hebrews 2:18 (NKJV) For in that He Himself has suffered, being tempted, He is able to aid those who are tempted.

¹⁹⁵ Mark 1:35 (NKJV) Now in the morning, having risen a long while before daylight, He went out and departed to a solitary place; and there He prayed.

¹⁹⁶ Luke 22:28 (NKJV) But you are those who have continued with Me in My trials.

¹⁹⁷ Luke 23:33 (NKJV) And when they had come to the place called Calvary, there they crucified Him, and the criminals, one on the right hand and the other on the left.

Jesus Christ had Human family and Ancestry	
*Jesus never acknowledged Joseph as His human father. ¹⁹⁸	
The gospel of Luke traced the genealogy from his mother Mary to David and Adam.	Luke 3:23-38 ¹⁹⁹
The gospel of Matthey traced the genealogy of his assumed father Joseph to Nature to David and Abraham.	Matthew 1:17 ²⁰⁰
Although Joseph was not his father, Joseph and Mary had 4 sons and 2 daughters.	Matthew 13:55-56 ²⁰¹

Jesus Christ had Human family and Ancestry	
He was born into the nation of Israel was called a Jew accordingly.	

Table 1: How Christ became flesh

¹⁹⁸ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 172:

¹⁹⁹ Luke 3:23-38 (NKJV) Now Jesus Himself began *His ministry* at about thirty years of age, being (as was supposed) *the son of Joseph, the son of Heli, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Janna, the son of Joseph, the son of Mattathiah, the son of Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of Esli, the son of Naggai, the son of Maath, the son of Mattathiah, the son of Semei, the son of Joseph, the son of Judah, the son of Joannas, the son of Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, the son of Neri, the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of Elmodam, the son of Er, the son of Jose, the son of Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Simeon, the son of Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of Jonan, the son of Eliakim, the son of Melea, the son of Menan, the son of Mattathah, the son of Nathan, the son of David, the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the son of Nahshon, the son of Amminadab, the son of Ram, the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah, the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham, the son of Terah, the son of Nahor, the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg, the son of Eber, the son of Shelah, the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech, the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan, the son of Enosh, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, the son of God.*

²⁰⁰ Matthew 1:17 (NKJV) So all the generations from Abraham to David *are* fourteen generations, from David until the captivity in Babylon *are* fourteen generations, and from the captivity in Babylon until the Christ *are* fourteen generations.

²⁰¹ Matthew 13:55-56 (NKJV) Is this not the carpenter's son? Is not His mother called Mary? And His brothers James, Joses, Simon, and Judas? And His sisters, are they not all with us? Where then did this *Man* get all these things?"

4.1.3.4.2 Jesus Christ the Only Begotten Son²⁰²

In His incarnation, Jesus was born of the Virgin Mary, lived a perfect life, was crucified, died, buried, rose again on the third day, ascended to heaven, and will come again in glory and judgement. He is the only Mediator between God and man.²⁰³

Jesus Christ is the only begotten divine Son of God. It was by being begotten of God, by a divine birth, that Christ became the Son. In eternity it was a birth, in the resurrection it was a birth from the dead. The Son was not only begotten of the Father in eternity but begotten again in the resurrection. He was forever the son of God. He will remain the Son of God forever.

Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened, And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

Luke 3:22 (KJV)

4.1.3.4.3 Kenosis

A compelling truth is the fact that Jesus was fully God and simultaneously fully God.

Anders²⁰⁴ summarised this concept as follows:

“He voluntary veiled His divine glory, and He did not use some of His attributes some of the time. Instead, He took on human form, humbled Himself to the plan of God the Father, and died on the Cross for our sins”

The following evidence is presented:²⁰⁵

²⁰² Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 55

²⁰³ *Foundational Statement of Faith*. Ligonier Ministries. Available at: <https://www.ligonier.org/about/who-we-are/what-we-believe/>

²⁰⁴ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 26

²⁰⁵ *The kenosis - What is it?* Got Questions Ministries. Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/kenosis.html>

- Firstly, Christ emptied Himself from His relation to the Law. He was sinless but takes the sins of those He saves.

For He made Him who knew no sin to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

2 Corinthians 5:21 (NKJV)

- Secondly, He emptied Himself for His rightful ownership. Although He created everything, he lived a humbled life.

Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, who, though he was in the form of God, did not count equality with God a thing to be grasped, but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men. And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.

Philippians 2:5–8 (ESV)

- Thirdly, He distanced Himself from His heavenly glory He shared with the Father. He prayed to be glorified again with the glory He once had.

I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

John 17:4-5 (KJV)

- Lastly, Jesus emptied Himself from divine knowledge. He relied only on the Father to reveal to Him what He needed to know at any given time. Therefor He did not know when His second coming will be.

But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Matthew 24:36 (KJV)

4.1.3.4.4 (Old Testament) Prophecies Fulfilled

John McDowell²⁰⁶ pointed to several hundred references to the Messiah in the

²⁰⁶ McDowell, Josh (1999) *Evidence That Demands a Verdict*. Nashville. Thomas Nelson Publishers Inc. P. 164 Available at: https://archive.org/details/The_New_Evidence_That_Demands_a_Verdict_Josh_McDowell/page/n219/mode/2up 9

Old Testament. Prophecies included categories referring to:

- His Birth
- His Nativity and early years
- His Nature
- His Ministry, mission and office
- Events after His Burial
- His Resurrection
- His Ascension

Jesus Christ fulfilled sixty-one major prophecies. The following ten are presented:

Prophecy	Old Testament	Fulfilled: New Testament
Virgin birth	Isaiah 7:14 ²⁰⁷	Matthew 1:21-23 ²⁰⁸
Born in Bethlehem	Micah 5:2 ²⁰⁹	Matthew 2:1-6 ²¹⁰
The Messiah to be called out of Egypt	Hosea 11:1 ²¹¹	Matthew 2:14-15 ²¹²

²⁰⁷ Isaiah 7:14 (NKJV) Therefore the Lord Himself will give you a sign: Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a Son, and shall call His name Immanuel.

²⁰⁸ Matthew 1:21-23 (NKJV) And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS, for He will save His people from their sins.” So all this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying: “Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel,” which is translated, “God with us.”

²⁰⁹ Micah 5:2 (NKJV) “But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, *Though* you are little among the thousands of Judah, *Yet* out of you shall come forth to Me The One to be Ruler in Israel, Whose goings forth *are* from of old, From everlasting.”

²¹⁰ Matthew 2:1-6 (NKJV) Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, wise men from the East came to Jerusalem, saying, “Where is He who has been born King of the Jews? For we have seen His star in the East and have come to worship Him.” When Herod the king heard *this*, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him. And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he inquired of them where the Christ was to be born. So they said to him, “In Bethlehem of Judea, for thus it is written by the prophet: ‘But you, Bethlehem, *in* the land of Judah, Are not the least among the rulers of Judah; For out of you shall come a Ruler Who will shepherd My people Israel.’ ”

²¹¹ Hosea 11:1 (NKJV) “When Israel *was* a child, I loved him, And out of Egypt I called My son.

²¹² Matthew 2:14-15 (NKJV) When he arose, he took the young Child and His mother by night and departed for Egypt, and was there until the death of Herod, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying, “Out of Egypt I called My Son.”

Jesus would perform Miracles	Isaiah 29:18-19 ²¹³ Isaiah 35:4-6 ²¹⁴	Matthew 11:2-4 ²¹⁵
Jesus would speak in parables	Psalms 78:1-2 ²¹⁶	Matthew 13:34-35 ²¹⁷
The Messiah would enter Jerusalem on a donkey	Zechariah 9:9 ²¹⁸	Matthew 21:1-5 ²¹⁹
The Messiah would be scourged, struck and spat upon	Isaiah 50:5-6 ²²⁰	Matthew 26:67 ²²¹ Matthew 27:30 ²²² Mark 14:65 ²²³ Mark 15:15 ²²⁴ John 19:1-3 ²²⁵

²¹³ Isaiah 29:18-19 (NKJV) In that day the deaf shall hear the words of the book, And the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness. The humble also shall increase *their* joy in the LORD, And the poor among men shall rejoice In the Holy One of Israel.

²¹⁴ Isaiah 35:4-6 (NKJV) Say to those *who are* fearful-hearted, "Be strong, do not fear! Behold, your God will come *with* vengeance, *With* the recompense of God; He will come and save you." Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, And the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then the lame shall leap like a deer, And the tongue of the dumb sing. For waters shall burst forth in the wilderness, And streams in the desert.

²¹⁵ Matthew 11:2-4 (NKJV) And when John had heard in prison about the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples and said to Him, "Are You the Coming One, or do we look for another?" Jesus answered and said to them, "Go and tell John the things which you hear and see:

²¹⁶ Psalm 78:1-2 (NKJV) Give ear, O my people, *to* my law; Incline your ears to the words of my mouth. I will open my mouth in a parable; I will utter dark sayings of old,

²¹⁷ Matthew 13:34-35 (NKJV) All these things Jesus spoke to the multitude in parables; and without a parable He did not speak to them, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying: "I will open My mouth in parables; I will utter things kept secret from the foundation of the world."

²¹⁸ Zechariah 9:9 (NKJV) "Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion! Shout, O daughter of Jerusalem! Behold, your King is coming to you; He *is* just and having salvation, Lowly and riding on a donkey, A colt, the foal of a donkey.

²¹⁹ Matthew 21:1-5 (NKJV) Now when they drew near Jerusalem, and came to Bethphage, at the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples, saying to them, "Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Loose *them* and bring *them* to Me. And if anyone says anything to you, you shall say, 'The Lord has need of them,' and immediately he will send them." All this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying: "Tell the daughter of Zion, 'Behold, your King is coming to you, Lowly, and sitting on a donkey, A colt, the foal of a donkey.' "

²²⁰ Isaiah 50:5-6 (ESV) The Lord GOD has opened my ear, and I was not rebellious; I turned not backward. I gave my back to those who strike, and my cheeks to those who pull out the beard; I hid not my face from disgrace and spitting.

²²¹ Matthew 26:67 (ESV) Then they spit in his face and struck him. And some slapped him,

²²² Matthew 27:30 (ESV) And they spit on him and took the reed and struck him on the head.

²²³ Mark 14:65 (ESV) And some began to spit on him and to cover his face and to strike him, saying to him, "Prophecy!" And the guards received him with blows.

²²⁴ Mark 15:15 (ESV) So Pilate, wishing to satisfy the crowd, released for them Barabbas, and having scourged Jesus, he delivered him to be crucified.

²²⁵ John 19:1-3 (ESV) Then Pilate took Jesus and flogged him. And the soldiers twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on his head and arrayed him in a purple robe. They came up to him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!" and struck him with their hands.

Jesus would be crucified, his garments divided, and lots cast for his clothing	Psalm 22:16-18 ²²⁶	Matthew 27:35 ²²⁷ Luke 23:34 ²²⁸ John 19:23-24 ²²⁹
Jesus would be buried in a rich man's tomb	Isaiah 53:8-9 ²³⁰	Matthew 27:57-60 ²³¹ Mark 15:42-46 ²³² Luke 23:53 ²³³ John 19:38-41 ²³⁴

²²⁶ Psalm 22:16-18 (ESV) For dogs encompass me; a company of evildoers encircles me; they have pierced my hands and feet — I can count all my bones— they stare and gloat over me; they divide my garments among them, and for my clothing they cast lots.

²²⁷ Matthew 27:35 (NKJV) Then they crucified Him, and divided His garments, casting lots, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet: “They divided My garments among them, And for My clothing they cast lots.”

²²⁸ Luke 23:34 (NKJV) Then Jesus said, “Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they do.” And they divided His garments and cast lots.

²²⁹ John 19:23-24 (NKJV) Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took His garments and made four parts, to each soldier a part, and also the tunic. Now the tunic was without seam, woven from the top in one piece. They said therefore among themselves, “Let us not tear it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be,” that the Scripture might be fulfilled which says: “They divided My garments among them, And for My clothing they cast lots.” Therefore the soldiers did these things.

²³⁰ Isaiah 53:8-9 (NKJV) He was taken from prison and from judgment, And who will declare His generation? For He was cut off from the land of the living; For the transgressions of My people He was stricken. And they made His grave with the wicked— But with the rich at His death, Because He had done no violence, Nor *was any* deceit in His mouth.

²³¹ Matthew 27:57-60 (NKJV) Now when evening had come, there came a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, who himself had also become a disciple of Jesus. This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded the body to be given to him. When Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, and laid it in his new tomb which he had hewn out of the rock; and he rolled a large stone against the door of the tomb, and departed.

²³² Mark 15:42-46 (NKJV) Now when evening had come, because it was the Preparation Day, that is, the day before the Sabbath, Joseph of Arimathea, a prominent council member, who was himself waiting for the kingdom of God, coming and taking courage, went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Pilate marveled that He was already dead; and summoning the centurion, he asked him if He had been dead for some time. So when he found out from the centurion, he granted the body to Joseph. Then he bought fine linen, took Him down, and wrapped Him in the linen. And he laid Him in a tomb which had been hewn out of the rock, and rolled a stone against the door of the tomb.

²³³ Luke 23:53 (NKJV) Then he took it down, wrapped it in linen, and laid it in a tomb *that was* hewn out of the rock, where no one had ever lain before.

²³⁴ John 19:38-41 (NKJV) After this, Joseph of Arimathea, being a disciple of Jesus, but secretly, for fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus; and Pilate gave *him* permission. So he came and took the body of Jesus. And Nicodemus, who at first came to Jesus by night, also came, bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred pounds. Then they took the body of Jesus, and bound it in strips of linen with the spices, as the custom of the Jews is to bury. Now in the place where He was crucified there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb in which no one had yet been laid.

Jesus would be resurrected after three days	Hosea 6:1-2 ²³⁵	Matthew 28:1-7 ²³⁶ Mark 16:1-7 ²³⁷ Luke 24:1-8 ²³⁸
---	----------------------------	---

Table 2: Prophecies of Jesus Christ

4.1.3.4.5 Jesus Christ Fulfilled in Jewish Feasts

God established seven religious feasts after the Israelites depart from Egypt. The feasts were holy convocations for which the Israelites had to travel to Jerusalem three times every year. Richard Booker²³⁹ denotes the significance of the seven Jewish feasts established by God as follows:

- Three major feasts seasons portrays the three major encounters with God: is Passover, Pentecost and Tabernacles.

²³⁵ Hosea 6:1-2 (NKJV) Come, and let us return to the LORD; For He has torn, but He will heal us; He has stricken, but He will bind us up. After two days He will revive us; On the third day He will raise us up, That we may live in His sight.

²³⁶ Matthew 28:1-7 (NKJV) Now after the Sabbath, as the first *day* of the week began to dawn, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to see the tomb. And behold, there was a great earthquake; for an angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat on it. His countenance was like lightning, and his clothing as white as snow. And the guards shook for fear of him, and became like dead *men*. But the angel answered and said to the women, “Do not be afraid, for I know that you seek Jesus who was crucified. He is not here; for He is risen, as He said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay. And go quickly and tell His disciples that He is risen from the dead, and indeed He is going before you into Galilee; there you will see Him. Behold, I have told you.”

²³⁷ Mark 16:1-7 (NKJV) Now when the Sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, Mary *the mother* of James, and Salome bought spices, that they might come and anoint Him. Very early in the morning, on the first *day* of the week, they came to the tomb when the sun had risen. And they said among themselves, “Who will roll away the stone from the door of the tomb for us?” But when they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away—for it was very large. And entering the tomb, they saw a young man clothed in a long white robe sitting on the right side; and they were alarmed. But he said to them, “Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified. He is risen! He is not here. See the place where they laid Him. But go, tell His disciples—and Peter—that He is going before you into Galilee; there you will see Him, as He said to you.”

²³⁸ Luke 24:1-8 (NKJV) Now on the first *day* of the week, very early in the morning, they, and certain *other women* with them, came to the tomb bringing the spices which they had prepared. But they found the stone rolled away from the tomb. Then they went in and did not find the body of the Lord Jesus. And it happened, as they were greatly perplexed about this, that behold, two men stood by them in shining garments. Then, as they were afraid and bowed *their* faces to the earth, they said to them, “Why do you seek the living among the dead? He is not here, but is risen! Remember how He spoke to you when He was still in Galilee, saying, ‘The Son of Man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.’ ” And they remembered His words.

²³⁹ Booker, Richard (1987) *Jesus in the Feasts of Israel. Restoring the Spiritual Realities of the Feasts to the Church*. Shippenburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 4

- The purpose of the encounters is to obtain God's peace, power and rest.
- God purposefully initiated the feasts and celebrations according to the Jewish calendar to reveal Christ in the familiar feasts.

Feast	Purpose ²⁴⁰
Feast of Passover (Included the feasts of Passover, Unleaded bread and First Fruits)	A lesson to the Jews on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • how to find God. • how to find God's peace.
Pentecost	A lesson to the Jews on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • how to receive the power of God
Tabernacles (including the Feasts of Trumpets, Atonement and Tabernacles.)	A lesson to Jews on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • how to enter God's rest

Table 3: The seven feasts

Jesus Christ fulfilled the first two feasts (Passover and Pentecost) on the exact time of the scheduled celebration during His life and ministry. He will fulfil the last feast at His second coming. The prophetic application is as follows²⁴¹:

Prophetic application fulfilled by Jesus Christ		
Feast	Symbolic meaning	Prophetic application to Jesus Christ
Passover	A memorial to the Hebrew's deliverance from Egypt. The blood of the lamb on their doorpost delivered	Christ Crucifixion (1 Corinthians 5:7 ²⁴²) The blood of Jesus Christ, Lamb of God delivers believers.

²⁴⁰ Booker, Richard (1987) *Jesus in the Feasts of Israel. Restoring the Spiritual Realities of the Feasts to the Church*. Shippenburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 72

²⁴¹ Booker, Richard (1987) *Jesus in the Feasts of Israel. Restoring the Spiritual Realities of the Feasts to the Church*. Shippenburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 32 and McDowell, Josh (1999) *Evidence That Demands a Verdict*. Nashville. Thomas Nelson Publishers Inc. P. 220 Available at: https://archive.org/details/The_New_Evidence_That_Demands_a_Verdict_Josh_McDowell/page/n219

²⁴² 1 Corinthians 5:7 (NKJV) Therefore purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, since you truly are unleavened. For indeed Christ, our Passover, was sacrificed for us.

	them from the angel of death.	
Unleavened bread	Leaven symbolises sin and the Hebrews' bondage in Egypt. Unleavened bread symbolises a new life.	Holy walk and Burial (1 Corinthians 5:8 ²⁴³) Jesus 'had no leaven'. He was without sin.
First Fruits	The first fruit represented the full harvest. The feast consecrates the harvest to God.	Resurrection (1 Corinthians 15:23 ²⁴⁴) Jesus was the first who resurrected. The first of the harvest to follow.
Pentecost	Celebrated at the end of the wheat harvest. A wave offering to God expressing dependence on God.	Christ Exalted and Outpouring of the Holy Spirit (Acts 1:5 ²⁴⁵ , 2:4 ²⁴⁶) Jesus' exaltation to His throne and the outpouring of the Holy Spirit.

Prophetic application to be fulfilled with Christ second coming.

Feasts of Trumpets,	Trumpets (shofar) represented God's voice and His might in warfare.	Jesus is the true commander of God's army (Revelation 19:11-
---------------------	---	--

²⁴³ 1 Corinthians 5:8 – Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened *bread* of sincerity and truth.

²⁴⁴ 1 Corinthians 15:23 (NKJV) But each one in his own order: Christ the firstfruits, afterward those *who are* Christ's at His coming.

²⁴⁵ Acts 1:5 (NKJV) for John truly baptized with water, but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days from now.”

²⁴⁶ Acts 2:4 (NKJV) And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

		16 ²⁴⁷) and the horn of salvation. (2 Samuel 22:2-3 ²⁴⁸) Victory in defeating the enemy and Israel's regathering (Matthew 24:31 ²⁴⁹)
Atonement	The annual sacrifice ritual by the High Priest in the Holy of Holies with the blood of the substitutionary sacrifice.	Purification of the Bride ²⁵⁰ and cleansing by Christ (Romans 11:26 ²⁵¹) Jesus blood sacrifice the last atonement for sin.
Feasts of Tabernacles.	The last of seven (complete, full) feasts celebrated at the end of the harvest season.	In Jesus is the full and complete (seven) relationship with God. Rest and reunion with Christ (Zechariah 14:16-18 ²⁵²)

Table 4: Prophetic applications

The Jewish calendar provides significant prophetic meaning. It is imperative to take note of the prophetic value. The application and integration into a proposed

²⁴⁷ Revelation 19:11-16 (NKJV) Now I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse. And He who sat on him *was* called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He judges and makes war. His eyes *were* like a flame of fire, and on His head *were* many crowns. He had a name written that no one knew except Himself. He *was* clothed with a robe dipped in blood, and His name is called The Word of God. And the armies in heaven, clothed in fine linen, white and clean, followed Him on white horses. Now out of His mouth goes a sharp sword, that with it He should strike the nations. And He Himself will rule them with a rod of iron. He Himself treads the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And He has on *His* robe and on His thigh a name written: KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.

²⁴⁸ 2 Samuel 22:2-3 (NKJV) And he said: "The LORD *is* my rock and my fortress and my deliverer; The God of my strength, in whom I will trust; My shield and the horn^l of my salvation, My stronghold and my refuge; My Savior, You save me from violence.

²⁴⁹ Matthew 24:31 (NKJV) And He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together His elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

²⁵⁰ Bride: Bride of Christ is a metaphor describing the church as the bride of Christ. Available at: <https://www.christianity.com/wiki/church/the-church-is-the-bride-of-christ.html>

²⁵¹ Romans 11:26 (NKJV) And so all Israel will be saved, as it is written: "The Deliverer will come out of Zion, And He will turn away ungodliness from Jacob;

²⁵² Zechariah 14:16-18 (NKJV) And it shall come to pass *that* everyone who is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall go up from year to year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to keep the Feast of Tabernacles. And it shall be *that* whichever of the families of the earth do not come up to Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, on them there will be no rain. If the family of Egypt will not come up and enter in, they *shall have* no rain; they shall receive the plague with which the LORD strikes the nations who do not come up to keep the Feast of Tabernacles.

solution is discussed in the conclusion of this thesis.

4.1.3.5 The Divinity of Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is second in the Trinity but equal in status. He existed as God before He was born as man. He too was Spirit before He was sent to reconcile man with God. He was truly God and truly man, having two natures inseparably united in one divine person without confusion, mixture, separation or division. He possessed all the attributes of God whilst simultaneously hold all the attributes of man. Each nature retains its own attributes. His deity was not cancelled nor replaced by becoming a man.

Dirk Evers²⁵³ concluded the following in his research at the Martin Luther University Halle-Wittenberg:

“What Christ means can only be explained with reference to God and vice versa; what God stands for in a Christian sense has to be explained with reference to Jesus Christ and not with reference to generic religious terms.”

Jesus Christ is the second in the Trinity but equal in status.

Let this mind be in you which was also in Christ Jesus who, being in the form of God, did not consider it robbery to be equal with God, but made Himself of no reputation, taking the form of a bondservant, and coming in the likeness of men.

Philippians 2:5-7 (NKJV)

Christ sonship relationship with God the Father is an eternal sonship. Jesus confirms His everlasting sonship in His conversation to religious leaders recorded in the book of John.

And now, O Father, glorify Me together with Yourself, with the glory which I had with You before the world was.

John 17:5 (NKJV)

²⁵³ Evers, Dirk. (2016). *Combinatory Christology*. *HTS Theological Studies*, 72(4), 1-10. Available at: <https://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v72i4.3482> Available at: <http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/hts/v72n4/122.pdf>

4.1.3.5.1 Attributes of Christ

Conner²⁵⁴ summarised Christ attributes as follows:

a. Divine Attributes

- Eternity of Being
- Pre-existence of Being
- Self-Existence

b. Essential Attributes

- Omnipresent
- Omnipotence
- Omniscience
- Immutable
- Self-Existence
- Eternal

c. Moral Attributes

- Holy
- Righteous
- Love
- Faithfulness

4.1.3.5.2 Jesus Christ Dual God and Man

Jesus remained God whilst he was also man. He was God and man simultaneously. He did not return to the right hand of God after His crucifixion to become God again. He remained to be God and will remain God forever. Because Jesus Christ was also God, he had no sin. This qualified him to be the

²⁵⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. PP. 163-164

perfect, sinless Saviour of humanity. The righteousness of God required an offer to atone for the sin of man in order to re-establish the relationship Adam and Eve once had.

Jesus' words and His works authenticate the Scriptures announcing Him to be man. The fact that Jesus Christ had no beginning and will have no end concludes the fact that He is God.

- He existed in beginning as the Word of God
- He was with God the Father
- He was God, the Son

He remained submissive towards God the Father confirming an important principle: Although the Trinity are equal, God the Father holds a loving authority. Jesus demonstrated

His acknowledgement of this authority in His obedience to the Father. God the Father is the authority in the Godhead, and Jesus fulfils the will of the Father. On the counter, the Father's intent is to exalt the Son. Max Anders²⁵⁵ defines this relationship as follows.

One is in authority, the other serves that authority, yet the one in authority has as His intent to exalt the one under authority. It is a celestial "mutual admiration society"

Anders²⁵⁶ founded his definition on the following scripture:

These words spoke Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee:

John 17:1 (NKJV)

I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

John 17:4-5 (KJV)

²⁵⁵ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 27

²⁵⁶ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 27

The Deity of Christ summarised:

- a. He is the Mighty God
- b. He is Immanuel, God with us
- c. He is the Word made flesh
- d. He is the True God
- e. He is the great God
- f. He is our God and saviour
- g. Self-existent: He existed in the form of God before His incarnation and was equal with God the Father
- h. He is the only wise God
- i. Omnipotence: All powerful
 - He has power in heaven
 - He has power in earth
 - He has power over all nature
 - He has power over all demonic hosts
 - He has power over all the angelic hosts
 - He has power over all things
- j. Omniscience: The son is all knowing as to His deity. Nothing is hidden from His sight.
- k. Omnipresent: The Son is always everywhere present
- l. Immutable: The Son is unchanged and unchangeable
- m. Infallible: The Son is infallible. Not to err or make mistakes
- n. Sovereign: Every knee shall bow and confess

4.1.3.5.3 Jesus's Miracles Provide Evidence of His Deity

The miracles Jesus performed not only met the needs of people, it primarily validated Him being God to authenticate His message of Salvation.

The miracles ranged from healing people from physical diseases and infirmities, casting out of demons, raising the dead, authority over nature in calming the seas,

and feeding five thousand with two leaves of bread and five fishes.

4.1.3.5.4 Jesus' Teachings Reflect His Deity

According to Anders²⁵⁷, all Jesus' teachings related to the following four categories.

- Humanity is spiritually lost and needs to be saved.

You are already clean because of the word I have spoken to you.

John 15:3 (KJV)

- True righteousness is internal, not external.

But the Lord said to Samuel, "Do not look at his appearance or at his physical stature, because I have refused him. For the Lord does not see as man sees; for man looks at the outward appearance, but the Lord looks at the heart."

1 Samuel 16:7 (NKJV)

- People should love God above every else.

"Love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind". This is the greatest and most important command.

Matthew 22:37-38 (CBS)

- People should love their fellow men equally to the love they have for themselves.

The second is like it: Love your neighbor as yourself. All the Law and the Prophets depend on these two commands

Matthew 22:39-40 (CBS)

4.1.3.5.5 Seven "I Am" Statements

The 7 "I Am" Statements of Jesus²⁵⁸ Explained

²⁵⁷ Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc. P. 38

²⁵⁸ Houts Jennell (2017) *The 7 "I Am" Statements of Jesus Explained*. Available at: <https://faithisland.org/bible/the-7-i-am-statements-of-jesus-explained/>

The apostle John, in contrast with the synoptic gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke, placed emphasis on the *person* Jesus Christ. John recorded seven statements Jesus made. These statements are briefly presented as a short exploration of the power and significance Jesus Christ Himself revealed.

The 7 "I Am Statements of Jesus"²⁵⁹ Explained	
"I am the Bread of Life"	<p><i>Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever believes has eternal life. I am the bread of life. Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died. This is the bread that comes down from heaven, so that one may eat of it and not die. I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. And the bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 6:48-51 (ESV)</p>
"I am the light of the World"	<p><i>Again Jesus spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will not walk in darkness, but will have the light of life."</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 8:12 (KJV)</p> <p><i>As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world."</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 9:5 (KJV)</p>
"I am the Door"	<p><i>I am the door. If anyone enters by me, he will be saved and will go in and out and find pasture.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 10:9 (KJV)</p>

²⁵⁹ Houts Jennell (2017) *The 7 "I Am" Statements of Jesus Explained*. Available at: <https://faithisland.org/bible/the-7-i-am-statements-of-jesus-explained/>

<p>"I am the Shepherd"</p>	<p><i>I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>John 10:11 (KJV)</i></p> <p><i>I am the good shepherd. I know my own and my own know me, just as the Father knows me and I know the Father; and I lay down my life for the sheep.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>John 10:14-15 (KJV)</i></p>
<p>"I am the Resurrection and the Life"</p>	<p><i>I am the resurrection and the life. Whoever believes in me, though he die, yet shall he live, and everyone who lives and believes in me shall never die.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>John 11:25-26 (KJV)</i></p>
<p>"I am the True Vine"</p>	<p><i>I am the true vine, and my Father is the vinedresser.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>John 15:1 (KJV)</i></p> <p><i>I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>John 15:5 (KJV)</i></p>

4.1.3.5.6 Jesus Christ More Than the Prophets²⁶⁰

The two dispensations of the Old and the New Testaments implies two modes of worship, two avenues of communication with God: the prophets in the old testament and Jesus Christ in the New. God spoke to His prophets no less truth,

²⁶⁰ Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 35

but it was external communication. Through Jesus Christ God dwells in man. The Son, who is God, brings believers into the presence of God.

4.1.3.5.7 Jesus Christ is More Than Angels²⁶¹

The Jewish people counted it a great privilege that they received the Law through the ministering of Angels. They were familiar with the manifestation of God in the form of an angel. Although Angels showed signs of power, they are/were created beings, regardless being called "sons of God". The truth of Christ Sonship, divinity, priesthood and redemption were revealed by the Holy Spirit in the Holy Bible. Because Jesus Christ is the Son of God, He is higher and more than the angels. The words of Angels and prophets could only point to Him who was to come.

4.1.3.5.8 The Perfect Atonement of Christ

Sin separated man from God. God demands redemption of sin. Reconciliation between God and mankind was only possible through the atoning of sins.

The primary discourse of the Bible presents Jesus Christ as the only means to reconcile man with God and establish an everlasting relationship. This fact sets Christianity apart from every other religion. Jesus Christ is the only means mankind can find atonement and reconciliation with God the Father. Christ's covenant blood and covenant sacrifice are God's provision for forgiveness and reconciliation to include mankind in eternal life. Through the acceptance of this gift mankind also become partakers of the divine nature which is life eternal. (2 Peter 1:3-4²⁶²)

²⁶¹ Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 47

²⁶² 2 Peter 1:3-4 (NKJV) as His divine power has given to us all things that *pertain* to life and godliness, through the knowledge of Him who called us by glory and virtue, by which have been given to us exceedingly great and precious promises, that through these you may be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption *that is* in the world through lust.

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life

John 3:16 (KJV)

But as for you, continue in the things that you have learned and of which you are convinced [holding tightly to the truths], knowing from whom you learned them, and how from childhood you have known the sacred writings (Hebrew Scriptures) which are able to give you the wisdom that leads to salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus [surrendering your entire self to Him and having absolute confidence in His wisdom, power and goodness].

2 Timothy 3:14-15 (AMP)

The work of Jesus Christ is twofold.²⁶³ The work he did on earth, and the work in heaven. Of the former it is said: When he had effected the cleansing of sins when He was Priest, effected the cleansing of sin. Of the latter it is said: He sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high where he presides as Priest-King. He sits on the right hand of God to maintain His heavenly life and bestow blessings.

Andrew Murray presents the following summary:

"Man was created for God. Man was created for fellowship with God. Sin separated man from God. The ministry of the angels and prophets in the Old Testament was only to prepare the way, it could never satisfy the heart either of God or man. The Son Himself had to come as the Word of God to us, the bearer of the life and love of the Father. The Son himself had to come to bring us into living contact with the divine Being."²⁶⁴

4.1.3.5.9 The Resurrection of Christ

Christ rose on the third day after His crucifixion as per the Old Testament prophecies as well as His own proclamations. Through His resurrection Jesus is the prototype and first fruit of the future resurrection of all.

4.1.3.5.10 Salvation in Christ

Jesus Christ is the only avenue whereby man's relationship with God can be

²⁶³ Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 43

²⁶⁴ Murray, Andrew (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House. P. 32

restored. No other name, authority, system or philosophy can affect the rescue of the human soul.

Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.

2 Corinthians 5:17 (NKJV)

But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."

Acts 1:8 (NKJV)

For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,

Romans 3:23 (NKJV)

Salvation, (σωτήριον) (soterion) Strong's Concordance #G4992²⁶⁵: Rescue, deliverance, safety, liberation, release, preservation. Soteria implies the comprehensive word signifying ***forgiveness, healing prosperity, deliverance, safety, rescue, liberation and restoration. Christ's salvation is total in scope for the total man: spirit, soul and body.***²⁶⁶

4.1.3.5.11 Jesus Christ Eternal Existence and Power After His Ascension

After His crucifixion and ascension to heaven Jesus Christ took His rightful place at the right hand of God. God assured His power and dominion to also be the power and dominion of Christ. From this position of power Christ acts as mediator and advocate and judge.

a. Jesus Christ the Mediator

Strong's Concordance #G3316²⁶⁷, mesites (mes-ee-tace). From Mesos, 'middle,' and 'emi', 'to go'; hence, a go-between, umpire, reconciler, arbitrator,

²⁶⁵ Salvation: #G4992. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

²⁶⁶ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1682

²⁶⁷ Mediator: #G3316. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

intermediary. 'Mesites' refers to Jesus accomplishing salvation by His vicarious death (1 Timothy 2:5²⁶⁸) and guaranteeing the terms of the new covenant²⁶⁹.

But now He has obtained a more excellent ministry, inasmuch as He is also Mediator of a better covenant, which was established on better promises.

Hebrews 8:6 (NKJV)

And for this reason He is the Mediator of the new covenant, by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions under the first covenant, that those who are called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.

Hebrews 9:15 (NKJV)

to Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling that speaks better things than that of Abel.

Hebrews 12:24 (NKJV)

b. Jesus Christ the Advocate

Jesus acts as advocate for believers to present a plea for pardon of sins. He qualifies to do so because He is righteous and sinless and He Himself paid the price for sin in full. He therefore qualifies to presents believers sinless and redeemed to His Father.

My little children, these things I write to you, so that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have and Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.

1 John 2:1 (SFLB)

c. Judge

The resurrection of Jesus reflects as the first fruit, the first one or the prototype of the future resurrection of all that have died. 'Judge' in Biblical times was often used equivalent to ruler or king.

²⁶⁸ 1 Timothy 2:5 (NKJV) For *there is* one God and one Mediator between God and men, *the* Man Christ Jesus,

²⁶⁹ New Covenant: The New Covenant of the New Testament entails God's promise to forgive sin in order to restore fellowship with those who accept His offer. Jesus Christ is the mediator of the New Covenant and his death the foundation for the promise.

The judgement of Christ not only reflect His judgement and the passing of a sentence, but also constitutes His rulership and kingship on earth.

I charge you therefore before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, who will judge the living and the dead at His appearing and His kingdom.

2 Timothy 4:1 (NKJV)

4.1.3.6 The Condensed Gospel of Jesus Christ

4.1.3.6.1 Restored Fellowship

God created man for relationship and fellowship. Sin destroyed the perfect relationship God had with Adam and Eve. All of mankind are included in the sin, therefore unrighteousness and separated from God in need of a redeemer to avoid God's judgement. (Romans 3:10²⁷⁰). ***Man sin by nature, by choice and by practice.***²⁷¹ The wages for sin is death. Erroneous teachings of universalism of ultimate reconciliation proclaiming that all of mankind will be granted a reprieve from eternal judgement is false. Fellowship with the Holy God could only be restored through atoning for the sins that separated mankind from God and His covenant promises.

4.1.3.6.2 Jesus Christ: Righteous and Just

God demanded a blood sacrifice²⁷² to redeem²⁷³ sin and restore relationships between Himself and man. God presented Jesus as the sacrifice for atonement.

²⁷⁰ Romans 3:10 (KJV) As it is written, there is none righteous, no, not one:

²⁷¹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 169

²⁷² Christ sacrificial blood is the agency for cleansing, forgiveness and redemption. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1982

²⁷³ Redemption: 'Apolutrosis' (ap-ol-oo-tr-sis): A release secured by the payment of a ransom, deliverance setting free. The word in secular Greek described a conqueror releasing prisoners, a master ransoming a slave, and redemptions from an alien's yoke. In the new Testament it designates deliverance through Christ from evil and the penalty of sin. The price paid to purchase that liberation was His shed blood.

It is the shed blood of Jesus that ultimately satisfied the requirements of God's righteous judgement.

Jesus Christ was the final and perfect blood sacrifice to redeem those who accept His gift of salvation and eternal life. Jesus was the sinless sacrifice for all sin, past present and future. God's judgement was casted in full upon Jesus. Through faith in the blood of Jesus Christ man is again justified. The blood of Christ is forever the only means to restore the right relationship with the holy God.

Now as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, "Take, eat; this is my body." And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, saying, "Drink of it, all of you, for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

Matthew 26:28 (ESV)

But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far off have been brought near by the blood of Christ.

Ephesians 2:13 (ESV)

4.1.3.6.3 Jesus Christs' Unconditional Love

'Agapy' (ag-ah-pay) Strong's Concordance #G26²⁷⁴. Greek manuscripts existing of the period rarely reflect the word outside of the New Testament scriptures. 'Agapy' signifies an insuperable compassion and unsurmountable benevolence that always seeks the uppermost best interest of another person, regardless the persons actions or the persons worth or status. It is the self-giving love that gives at will without expectation of anything in return. In comparison with 'philos' love - inspired or founded on emotion, 'Agapy' is a love by choice, it implicates a decision rather than emotion. Agape describes the unconditional love God has for the world.

God gave His only Son as the only acceptable sinless sacrifice for sin to restore fellowship. Jesus Christ obeyed and suffered the unhuman crucifixion. The

²⁷⁴ Agape: #G26. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

covenant love of God restored the fellowship through the blood of Jesus Christ. It was specifically the blood of Christ shed on the cross that satisfied the demand of God. Faith and acceptance of Christ's blood sacrifice accommodates the legal and just application of a righteous and Holy God and redeem man from the wrath of God. Secondly, it also re-establishes relationship between God and man. Thirdly, it provides the opportunity for man to partake in Christ victory in man's continuing triumph over sin. (Colossians 1:20²⁷⁵/Revelation 12:11²⁷⁶)

Then Jesus said to them, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in you.

John 6:53 (NKJV)

Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from wrath through Him.

Romans 5:9 (NKJV)

4.1.4 Third in the Trinity: The Holy Spirit of God

The Spirit of God is introduced in the second verse of the Holy Bible.

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

Genesis 1:1-2 (NKJV)

Strong's Concordance #H7303²⁷⁷ defined 'spirit' as (*rûach*) (*roo'-akh*): ***Wind; by resemblance breath, that is, a sensible (or even violent) exhalation; figuratively life, anger, unsubstantiality; by extension a region of the sky; by resemblance spirit, but only of a rational being (including its expression and functions): - air, anger, blast, breath, X cool, courage, mind, X quarter, X side, spirit ([-ual]), tempest, X vain, ([whirl-]) wind (-y).***

²⁷⁵ Colossians 1:20 (NKJV) and by Him to reconcile all things to Himself, by Him, whether things on earth or things in heaven, having made peace through the blood of His cross.

²⁷⁶ Revelation 12:11 (NKJV) And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death.

²⁷⁷ Spirit: #H7303. Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

Then the LORD God formed man of dust from the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 (KJV)

In whose hand is the life of every living thing, And the breath of all mankind?

Job 12:10 (KJV)

4.1.4.1 The Deity of the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit proceeds from God the Father and is the third divine person of the Trinity or eternal Godhead. The Holy Spirit is equal in the Trinity and worshipped together with the Father and Jesus Christ. The Holy Spirit was not created. He is God in eternity, omnipresent (all present), omnipotent (all-powerful) and omniscient (all knowing).

The Holy Spirit is the spirit of Truth send from the Father and Jesus Christ. The Holy Spirit is a Person with whom believers of the Christian faith can have relationship with and simultaneously one in the Triune God. He is one with the Father and one with the Son.

4.1.4.2 The Holy Spirit's Participation in Creation

The Holy Spirit in creation is acknowledged on three echelons:

- The Holy Spirit's involvement in the creation of heavens and earth:

By His breath the heavens are cleared; His hand has pierced the fleeing serpent.

Job 26:13 (KJV)

By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, And by the breath of His mouth all their host.

Psalms 33:6 (KJV)

- The Spirit of God is acknowledged as the life-giving breath given to all animals.

You send forth Your Spirit, they are created; And You renew the face of the earth.

Psalm 104:30 (NKJV)

- The Spirit of God is acknowledged in the creation of man.

And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 (NKJV)

The Spirit of God has made me, And the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

Job 33:4 (NKJV)

4.1.4.3 The Holy Spirit's Distinction in the Trinity

- Jesus confirms the distinction between the Father and the Holy Spirit when He declares that the Spirit proceeds from the Father.

But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me: And ye also shall bear witness, because ye have been with me from the beginning.

John 15:26-27 (KJV)

- Jesus Christ also confirms the distinction between Himself and the Holy Spirit when He refers to the Holy Spirit as “another” when He declares that He will send another Comforter.²⁷⁸

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

John 14:16 (KJV)

- Father, Son and Holy Spirit is equally included in the baptismal command of Jesus. This command signifies and confirms the equality of the Holy Spirit in

²⁷⁸ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 45

the Trinity.

Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

Matthew 28:19 (NKJV)

- Jesus teaching further confirms the one-ness of the Holy Spirit with Himself and the Father.

And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

John 14:16 (KJV)

But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 14:26 (KJV)

But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

John 15:26 (KJV)

Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you. And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: Of sin, because they believe not on me; Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more; Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged. I have yet many things to say unto you, but ye cannot bear them now. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

John 16:7-13 (KJV)

4.1.4.4 The Holy Spirit the Author of the Word of God

The Holy Bible is not the transcendent of human imagination, but the inspired Word of God given to guide and correct.

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

2 Timothy 3:16 (KJV)

The entire Holy Bible is the product of the Holy Spirit referred to by John as the 'Spirit of Truth'. (John 16:13²⁷⁹)

All Scripture is God-breathed [given by divine inspiration] and is profitable for instruction, for conviction [of sin], for correction [of error and restoration to obedience], for training in righteousness [learning to live in conformity to God's will, both publicly and privately—behaving honorably with personal integrity and moral courage]

2 Timothy 3:16 (AMP)

"Inspiration" deriving from the Greek word 'Theopneustos' (θεοπνευστος)²⁸⁰ occurs only once in the New Testament. Its meaning, literally, is "God-breathed." The Bible claims that God inspired the words of Scripture.

These things we also speak, not in words which man's wisdom teaches but which the Holy Spirit teaches, comparing spiritual things with spiritual

1 Corinthians 2:13 (NKJV)

Peter declares the Holy Spirit "moved" Bible authors to prophecy:

For prophecy never came by the will of man, but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.

2 Peter 1:21 (NKJV)

4.1.4.5 The Significance of 'Seven' in Relation to the Holy Spirit

Throughout scripture seven is particularly associated with the Holy Spirit. Seven conveys the message of completeness and perfection. The Holy Spirit is in association with the number seven depicted as perfect.

4.1.4.5.1 The Parable of Light

God reveals Himself by means of symbols and parables. One such parable is

²⁷⁹ John 16:13 (NKJV) However, when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth; for He will not speak on His own *authority*, but whatever He hears He will speak; and He will tell you things to come.

²⁸⁰ Deaver, Weylan. (September 2, 2014) *Theopneustos*. Available at: <https://warrenapologetics.org/articles-the-bible/2017/2/27/theopneustos>

'light' and colour in particular.

I set My rainbow in the cloud, and it shall be for the sign of the covenant between Me and the earth.

Genesis 9:13 (NKJV)

The parable of light frequently deflected into the three primary colours of blue, yellow and red. The rainbow accommodates seven colours of violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange and red. ***Thus, within the unity of light, there is the trinity of the primary colours and the sevenfold diversity of the rainbow.***²⁸¹ The covenant rainbow (Genesis 9:13²⁸²) is recognised as one of the most significant signs indicating God's intent to restore His relationship with mankind.²⁸³

4.1.4.5.2 Other Associations with Seven

- Seven Spirits before the throne of God depicts the Holy Spirit in His diverse perfection.

From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings and peals of thunder. In front of the throne, seven lamps were blazing. These are the seven spirits of God. Also in front of the throne there was what looked like a sea of glass, clear as crystal.

Revelation 4:5-6 (NIV)

- Seven lamps before the throne of God reflect the Holy Spirit's enlightening and purifying ministry.

And from the throne proceeded lightnings, thunderings, and voices. Seven lamps of fire were burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God.

Revelation 4:5 (NKJV)

- The seven churches are instructed to hear what the Spirits says. The Holy Spirit manifest as the Spirit of Prophecy. Prophecy always bears witness to Jesus and always require a response. The churches needed to act in reaction to the Spirit of Prophecy.

²⁸¹ Prince, Derek: *Who is the Holy Spirit?* The Teaching Legacy of Derek Prince. XXVII, Issue 1. Available at: <https://www.derekprince.org/Publisher/File.aspx?ID=1000048746>

²⁸² Genesis 9:13 (NKJV) I set My rainbow in the cloud, and it shall be for the sign of the covenant between Me and the earth.

²⁸³ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2013

He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes I will give to eat from the tree of life, which is in the midst of the Paradise of God.”

Revelation 2:7 (NKJV)

- Seven distinct aspects of the Holy Spirit

A shoot will come up from the stump of Jesse; from his roots a Branch will bear fruit. The Spirit of the Lord will rest on him— the Spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the Spirit of counsel and of might, the Spirit of the knowledge and fear of the Lord— and he will delight in the fear of the Lord.

Isaiah 11:1-3 (NIV)

4.1.4.6 The Gender of the Holy Spirit

Greek, the language of the New Testament grammatically accommodates three genders: Masculine referred to as 'he', feminine referred to as 'she' and neutral referred to as 'it'.

The Greek word for 'spirit', 'pneuma' in general is presented in neutral. The appropriate pronoun would therefore be 'it'. Yet, both 'He' and 'it' are applied in reference to the Holy Spirit.

The English language inserted the definite article 'the' before 'Holy Spirit' regardless of the fact that it was not in the original language. Derek Prince²⁸⁴ concluded that the presence or absence of 'the' in conjunction with the Holy Spirit signifies an important distinction.

“When ‘Holy Spirit’ is not preceded by ‘the’, it denotes something non-personal: life or a power, a force, a presence, and influence. On the other hand, when ‘Holy Spirit’ is preceded by ‘the’ He is being depicted as a ‘Person’.”

4.1.4.7 The Person of the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit is both Personal and non-personal.

²⁸⁴ Prince, Derek: *Who is the Holy Spirit?* The Teaching Legacy of Derek Prince. XXVII, Issue 1. Available at: <https://www.derekprince.org/Publisher/File.aspx?ID=1000048746>

The Holy Spirit's Personal Qualities²⁸⁵	
The Spirit works	<i>But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.</i> 1 Corinthians 12:11 (NKJV)
The Spirit searches	<i>But God has revealed them to us through His Spirit. For the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God.</i> 1 Corinthians 2:10 (NKJV)
The Spirit speaks	<i>As they ministered to the Lord and fasted, the Holy Spirit said, "Now separate to Me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them."</i> Acts 13:2 (NKJV)
The Spirit testifies	<i>"But when the Helper comes, whom I shall send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, He will testify of Me.</i> John 15:26 (NKJV)
The Spirit bears witness	<i>This is He who came by water and blood— Jesus Christ; not only by water, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit who bears witness, because the Spirit is truth.</i> 1 John 5:6 (NKJV)
The Spirit teaches	<i>But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all things that I said to you.</i> John 14:26 (NKJV)
The Spirit instructs	<i>You also gave Your good Spirit to instruct them, And did not withhold Your manna</i>

²⁸⁵ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 74

	<p><i>from their mouth, And gave them water for their thirst.</i></p> <p>Nehemiah 9:20 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit reproves	<p><i>And when He has come, He will convict the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:</i></p> <p>John 16:8-1 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit prays and intercede	<p><i>Likewise the Spirit also helps in our weaknesses. For we do not know what we should pray for as we ought, but the Spirit Himself makes intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.</i></p> <p>Romans 8:26 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit leads	<p><i>Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.</i></p> <p>Matthew 4:1 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit guides the believer in truth	<p><i>However, when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth; for He will not speak on His own authority, but whatever He hears He will speak; and He will tell you things to come.</i></p> <p>John 16:13 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit glorifies Jesus Christ	<p><i>He will glorify Me, for He will take of what is Mine and declare it to you.</i></p> <p>John 16:14 (NKJV)</p>
The Spirit brings generation	<p><i>Jesus answered, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.</i></p> <p>John 3:5 (NKJV)</p> <p><i>That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.</i></p> <p>John 3:6 (NKJV)</p>

<p>The Spirit strive with men</p>	<p><i>And the LORD said, "My Spirit shall not strive with man forever, for he is indeed flesh; yet his days shall be one hundred and twenty years."</i></p> <p>Genesis 6:3 (NKJV)</p>
<p>The Spirit convict men</p>	<p><i>And when He has come, He will convict the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:</i></p> <p>John 16:8 (NKJV)</p>
<p>The Spirit send messengers from God</p>	<p><i>"Come near to Me, hear this: I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; From the time that it was, I was there. And now the Lord God and His Spirit Have sent Me."</i></p> <p>Isaiah 48:16 (NKJV)</p>
<p>The Spirit calls men into ministry</p>	<p><i>As they ministered to the Lord and fasted, the Holy Spirit said, "Now separate to Me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them."</i></p> <p>Acts 13:2 (NKJV)</p>
<p>The Spirit directs men in the service of Christ</p>	<p><i>Then the Spirit said to Philip, "Go near and overtake this chariot."</i></p> <p>Acts 8:29 (NKJV)</p> <p><i>While Peter thought about the vision, the Spirit said to him, "Behold, three men are seeking you."</i></p> <p>Acts 10:19 (NKJV)</p> <p><i>Now when they had gone through Phrygia and the region of Galatia, they were forbidden by the Holy Spirit to preach the word in Asia.</i></p> <p><i>After they had come to Mysia, they tried to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit did not permit them.</i></p> <p>Acts 16:6-7 (NKJV)</p>
<p>The Spirit imparts spiritual gifts</p>	<p><i>But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to each one for the profit of all: for to one is</i></p>

	<p>given the word of wisdom through the Spirit, to another the word of knowledge through the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healings by the same Spirit, to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another discerning of spirits, to another different kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">1 Corinthians 12:7-11 (NKJV)</p>
--	---

The Holy Spirit Experience Emotions ²⁸⁶	
The Holy Spirit can be grieved	<p>And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ephesians 4:30 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be insulted	<p>Of how much worse punishment, do you suppose, will he be thought worthy who has trampled the Son of God underfoot, counted the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified a common thing, and insulted the Spirit of grace?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Hebrews 10:29 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be lied to	<p>But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and keep back part of the price of the land for yourself?"</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Acts 5:3 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be blasphemed	<p>"Therefore I say to you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven men. Anyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven</p>

²⁸⁶ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 75

	<p>him; but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven him, either in this age or in the age to come.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Matthew 12:31-32 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be resisted	<p>“You stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit; as your fathers did, so do you.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Acts 7:51 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be tempted	<p>Then Peter said to her, “How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Acts 5:9 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be provoked	<p>But they rebelled and grieved His Holy Spirit; So He turned Himself against them as an enemy, And He fought against them.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Isaiah 63:10 (NKJV)</p>
The Holy Spirit can be quenched	<p>Do not quench the Spirit.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">1 Thessalonians 5:19 (NKJV)</p>

Table 5: Holy Spirit Person

4.1.4.8 The Holy Spirit in the Old Testament

Manifestations of the Holy Spirit in the Bible

- Interpretation of dreams
- Wisdom
- The Holy Spirit came upon individuals
- Individuals came under the prophetic spirit

4.1.4.9 Holy Spirit in the New Testament

4.1.4.9.1 The Holy Spirit in the Life and Ministry of Jesus Christ

Although conceived by the Holy Spirit, Jesus ministry commenced only after He was empowered by the Holy Spirit. After John baptised Jesus in the Jordan river, the Holy Spirit descended from heaven as a dove. From that moment on Jesus was led by the spirit and moved into His ministry and all it included; declaring the presence of God, performed miracles, signs, wonders and apposed Satan and demons.

4.1.4.9.2 The Holy Spirit in the Life of Believers

a. Indwelling of the Holy Spirit

The indwelling of the Holy Spirit and restored relationship with God follows a spiritual re-birth when an individual repents of sin and confesses Christ as Son of God and redeemer of his/her personal sin.

Jesus answered and said to him, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

John 3:1 (NKJV)

This manifestation of the Holy Spirit in the lives of believers validate the statement "**God with us.**" This also emphasize the fact that God is close to believers. From God the Father Jesus came closer to mankind. Finally, the Holy Spirit proceeded to live inside believers, dwelling inside. This corroborate the scripture reminding Christians that they are Temples of the indwelling Holy Spirit. Thus, indwelling God. The books of Jeremiah, Ezekiel and Joel prophesised an indwelling Spirit. The Old Testament also bears witness to the working and manifestation of the Holy Spirit with the difference that the Holy Spirit came on particular people or instances or with reference to a particular task. In the New Testament dispensation, the Holy Spirit does not come to visit, but to dwell inside believers of the Christian faith on a permanent basis.

The indwelling of the Spirit is also confirmed with the following payer of Jesus Christ:

The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen.

2 Corinthians 13:14 (KJV)

The grace that comes through our Lord Jesus Christ, the love that is of God the Father, and the fellowship that is ours in the Holy Spirit be with you all!

2 Corinthians 13:14 (PHILLIPS)

Fellowship implies relationship. Relationship with the Holy Spirit and the Holy Spirit it the only passage to have relationship with God the Father and with Jesus Christ.

b. Receiving the Holy Spirit

Speaking in tongues is not the only evidence. To accept tongues as the only evidence would greatly limit the power of Holy Spirit. The Spirit gives to whom he wants for His purpose.

Now concerning spiritual gifts, brethren, I do not want you to be ignorant: You know that you were Gentiles, carried away to these dumb idols, however you were led. Therefore I make known to you that no one speaking by the Spirit of God calls Jesus accursed, and no one can say that Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit. There are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. There are differences of ministries, but the same Lord. And there are diversities of activities, but it is the same God who works all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to each one for the profit of all: for to one is given the word of wisdom through the Spirit, to another the word of knowledge through the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healings by the same Spirit, to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another discerning of spirits, to another different kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.

1 Corinthians 12:1-11 (NKJV)

Every Christian has the spirit

But you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you. Now if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he is not His.

Romans 8:9 (NKJV)

But if the Spirit of Him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who dwells in you.

Romans 8:11 (NKJV)

Although all believers receive the indwelling Spirit of God once they accept the atonement of Jesus Christ, it is also possible to grow and develop into a greater intimacy with and access more power of the Holy Spirit.

It is also true that God appointed men and women are not homogenic. The Body of Christ has different functions and God equip believers accordingly.

But now are they many members, yet but one body.

1 Corinthians 12:20 (KJV)

The books of Jeremiah, Ezekiel and Joel prophesied an indwelling Spirit. The Old Testament also bears witness to the working and manifestation of the Holy Spirit with the difference that the Holy Spirit came on particular people or instances or with reference to a particular task. The New Testament dispensation has the privilege of the permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit compared to the single visitations of the Old Testament.

The indwelling of the Spirit is also confirmed with the following prayer of Jesus Christ:

The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen.

2 Corinthians 13:14 (KJV)

The grace that comes through our Lord Jesus Christ, the love that is of God the Father, and the fellowship that is ours in the Holy Spirit be with you all!

2 Corinthians 13:14 (ESV)

c. Manifestations of the Holy Spirit

- ❖ The Holy Spirit inspires the new spiritual birth

Jesus answered, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God"

John 3:5 (NKJV)

- ❖ The Holy Spirit indwells the believer's spirit

But you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you.

Romans 8:9 (NKJV)

- ❖ Provides assurance of salvation

The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God,

Romans 8:16 (NKJV)

- ❖ The Holy Spirit fills the believer

And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Acts 2:4 (NKJV)

Then the Spirit said to Philip, "Go near and overtake this chariot."

Acts 8:29 (NKJV)

Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from God, that we might know the things that have been freely given to us by God

1 Corinthians 2:12 (NKJV)

But the anointing which you have received from Him abides in you, and you do not need that anyone teach you; but as the same anointing teaches you concerning all things, and is true, and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, you will abide in Him.

1 John 2:27 (NKJV)

The words that I speak to you are spirit, and they are life.

John 6:63 (NKJV)

not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit,

Titus 3:5 (NKJV)

that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with might through His Spirit in the inner man

Ephesians 3:16 (NKJV)

Likewise the Spirit also helps in our weaknesses. For we do not know what we should pray for as we ought, but the Spirit Himself makes intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.

Romans 8:26 (NKJV)

But the hour is coming, and now is, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth; for the Father is seeking such to worship Him.

John 4:23 (NKJV)

For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are sons of God.

Romans 8:14 (NKJV)

For if you live according to the flesh you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the deeds of the body, you will live.

Romans 8:13 (NKJV)

But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control. Against such there is no law.

Galatians 5:22-23 (NKJV)

So, being sent out by the Holy Spirit, they went down to Seleucia, and from there they sailed to Cyprus

Acts 13:4 (NKJV)

After they had come to Mysia, they tried to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit did not permit them

Acts 16:7 (NKJV)

But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.

Acts 1:8 (NKJV)

But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to each one for the profit of all: for to one is given the word of wisdom through the Spirit, to another the word of knowledge through the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healings by the same Spirit, to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another discerning of spirits, to another different kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.

1 Corinthians 12:7-11 (NKJV)

But if the Spirit of Him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who dwells in you.

Romans 8:11 (NKJV)

ellowship implies relationship. Relationship with the Holy Spirit and the Holy Spirit
it the only passage to have relationship with God the Father and with Jesus
Christ.

d. Purpose of The Holy Spirit

- testifies with the believers Spirit to be children of God
- brings conviction of sin but not condemnation
- brings understanding of God's Word
- brings the desire to read the Word of God
- brings forth fruit of the spirit to become more Christ-like
- brings freedom and replaces slavery

e. The Holy Spirit function in the regeneration of fallen man

The Holy Spirit inspires God's people and convicts the man of sin and of righteousness, and of judgement, reforming man to a new creation.

Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Nicodemus saith unto him, How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born? Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

John 3:3-5 (KJV)

f. The Holy Spirit function in the future resurrection of man

The creative act of resurrecting man includes the power of the Holy Spirit. All Christians have the indwelling Holy Spirit.

But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

Romans 8:11 (KJV)

g. The Holy Spirit Baptism

In Jesus post-resurrection teaching He promised the disciples the power of the Holy Spirit declaring:

"You will be baptized with the Holy spirit not many days from now"

Acts 1:5 (ESV)

You shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth”.

Acts 1:8 (NKJV)

The following conclusion is possible: The Holy Spirit is a Person and the Power which empower ministry in God's Kingdom. The promise of the Holy Spirit to empower preceded Jesus's Great Commission to spread the gospel. Evangelism, healing the sick and delivering people from evil is inseparable from the power of the Holy Spirit. The power of the Holy Spirit is not automatic but must be received. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is not equal to receiving the power of the Holy Spirit.

And finding some disciples he said to them, “Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?”

Acts 19:2 (NKJV)

Believers sometimes experience the baptism of the Holy Spirit as per Acts 2:4

And they were all filled with the Holy spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Acts 2:4 (AMP)

h. Profound Value of Glossolalia²⁸⁷

The speaking in tongues is a unique spiritual gift within the church of Christ given to believers.

- Fulfilment of Old Testament prophecies by Isaiah.

For by people of strange lips and with a foreign tongue the Lord will speak to this people,

Isaiah 28:11 (ESV)

- Fulfilment of Jesus' promise.

And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues;

Mark 16:17 (NKJV)

²⁸⁷ Other Tongues/The experience of 'glossolalia'. A term derived from the Greek 'glossa' (tongue) and 'Laleo' (to speak). It functions as a sign of the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit, affirming His abiding presence and assuring the believer of an invigorated living witness. 1) Human language unknown to the speaker but known by others. 2) "Tongues of Angels" (1 Corinthians 13:1) also refers to supernatural beings. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. PP. 1625, 1646, 1793, 2019

And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Acts 2:4 (NKJV)

- It provides evidence of the resurrection and glorification of Jesus Christ.

Nevertheless I tell you the truth. It is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you; but if I depart, I will send Him to you.

John 16:7 (NKJV)

therefore my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced; my flesh also will dwell in hope.

Acts 2:26 (ESV)

- It is evidence for the baptism in or infilling of the Holy Spirit.

And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Acts 2:4 (ESV)

And the believers from among the circumcised who had come with Peter were amazed, because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out even on the Gentiles.

Acts 10:45 (ESV)

- Acts as a spiritual gift for self-edification.

He who speaks in a tongue edifies himself, but he who prophesies edifies the church.

1 Corinthians 14:4 (NKJV)

But you, beloved, building yourselves up on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Spirit, keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.

Jude 20-21 (NKJV)

- When accompanied with interpretation the speaking of tongues edifies the church.

I wish you all spoke with tongues, but even more that you prophesied; for he who prophesies is greater than he who speaks with tongues, unless indeed he interprets, that the church may receive edification.

1 Corinthians 14:5 (NKJV)

- A spiritual gift for private communication and worship to God.

What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also.

1 Corinthians 14:15 (KJV)

- A means by which the Holy Spirit through the believer in prayer.

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.

Romans 8:26 (KJV)

- A Means of worship.

What am I to do? I will pray with my spirit, but I will pray with my mind also; I will sing praise with my spirit, but I will sing with my mind also.

1 Corinthians 14:15 (ESV)

And do not get drunk with wine, for that is debauchery, but be filled with the Spirit, addressing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody to the Lord with your heart,

Ephesians 5:18-19 (ESV)

- Paul's interpretation of Isaiah's prophesy indicates that speaking in tongues intends to be a means of 'rest' or 'refreshing'.

To whom he said, This is the rest wherewith ye may cause the weary to rest; and this is the refreshing: yet they would not hear.

Isaiah 28:12 (KJV)

In the law it is written, With men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people; and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord.

1 Corinthians 14:21 (KJV)

- Tongues confirms the preached Word of God.

And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;

Mark 16:17 (KJV)

Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying serveth not for them that believe not, but for them which believe.

1 Corinthians 14:22 (KJV)

4.2 The Second Introduction: Angels

The word "angels" appears 250 times in the Holy Bible.²⁸⁸ The Bible distinguish

²⁸⁸ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P xxii

two categories angels, the elect or good versus the fallen or evil angels. The good angels are concerned with the welfare of people whilst the opposing bad angels strategize to cause harm. Man are not allowed to worship either.

Both the Hebrew translation of Angel "mal'ak" meaning "messenger", "representative" or "agent" as well as the Greek translation of "angelos" meaning "messenger" reveal the very core function of Angels – to act as messengers for God.^{289 290} In this context, angels are also called morning stars, announcing the beginning of every day as the morning stars appears at dawn before the day brakes. Angels are may refer to God, man as well as angelic beings. Only the contextualisation of the supporting text will reveal the correct application of the word for e.g. this text indicates the angels exalting God in a shout of joy.

When the morning stars sang together, And all the sons of God shouted for joy?

Job 38:7 (NKJV)

4.2.1 A Secular Post-Modern Acknowledgement of the Existence of Angels

The reality of the existence of angels is fascinating to both Christian as well as non-Christians. According to Dawn Demers²⁹¹ a survey indicated 85 percent of adult Americans believe in angels. Demers also acknowledge the influence angels have within the culture and religion, regardless what the religion is.²⁹² Terry Law revealed that ***“he began to realise that good people were being influenced by supernatural events that they assume came from God”***²⁹³

²⁸⁹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 87

²⁹⁰ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 274

²⁹¹ Demers, Dawn *The 7 Archangels and Their Meanings*. Beliefnet.com. Available at: <https://www.beliefnet.com/inspiration/angels/galleries/the-7-archangels-and-their-meanings.aspx>

²⁹² Demers, Dawn *The 7 Archangels and Their Meanings*. Beliefnet.com. Available at: <https://www.beliefnet.com/inspiration/angels/galleries/the-7-archangels-and-their-meanings.aspx>

²⁹³ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 12

Law²⁹⁴ cautioned that **“every supernatural experience is not necessarily from God. Every spirit that calls itself “the Lord” is not necessarily the Lord of lords and the King of kings, Jesus Christ”**

With Law's warning in mind, it is imperative to discern the origin of spiritual experiences and/or visitations. It is also of the utmost importance to know and discern the powers, influences and strategies of supernatural powers in order to understand the influences it might have on current affairs, whether personal or on a greater national scale with regards to socio-economic-cultural and political affairs.

Law²⁹⁵ referred to an article in Time Magazine discussing the increasing interest in supernatural beings where the **“lesser gods of humanism, materialism and rebellion against authority no longer satisfy. The search is on for spiritual values – but without God.”**

With reference to Angels; Time Magazine reported:

“Jehovah's angels are powerful creatures ... (but) in their modern incarnation, these mighty messengers and fearless soldiers have been reduced to bite-size beings, easily digested. The terrifying cherubim (of the Bible) have become Kewpie-doll cherubs.”²⁹⁶

The above secular comments provide evidence that awareness with Angels and spiritual beings are increasing, but does not necessarily include God, and Biblical Angels are often reduced in the modern-day fascination.

The American Bookseller Association convention declared 1994 “The Year for Angels” Although many of the books displayed at the convention had a New Age character, the fact remains, angels fascinate people. The Angel Watch Network headquarters in Mountainside, New Jersey, monitors angelic activities and reports these in a bimonthly journal.²⁹⁷

²⁹⁴ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 20

²⁹⁵ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 21

²⁹⁶ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 21

²⁹⁷ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 17

4.2.2 A Brief Comment with Regards to the Acknowledgment of Angels in Other Religions

History and religious studies alongside archaeology provides evidence that cultures over many centuries accepted the existence of supernatural beings. Ancient Greeks believed in spirits and worship played a significant role in everyday life. Socrates had a personal spiritual guide called “Daimon” who warned him of trouble. The Romans accommodated the belief in supernatural beings in their polytheistic religion. Ancient societies did not necessarily differentiate between good and bad spirits.

Far Eastern cultures of China, Japan and Korea acknowledged angels and demons as an integral part of religion. Ancestor worship, opposed to direct angel worship, resulted from the interpretation that these supernatural beings, often called gods, were spirits of their diseased family members. Angels and demons were not worshipped directly.

Genesis 6 reports on the “children of the sons of God” called Nephilim, Rephaim or Anakim. What is important to highlight at this point is the fact that these “children” appears in various interpretations in several ancient civilizations.

The 1800's are known for the major influence of angels in the Arts. Thereafter a movement with emphasis on ghosts and the spirits of the dead followed. Spiritism or modern spiritism followed with interest in hypnosis, psychic phenomena and mental healing. Séances (gathering where a medium contact dead friends and relatives) were popular until World War II.

Several cults and movements followed e.g., the “Ascended masters” Christian Science Church”, Unity School of Christianity” and “The New Thought”. The latter being the first Gnostic American Cult.

An elaborate hierarchy of angels is also prevalent in the mystic Kabbalah (Cabbalah). Many names of angels are found in Jewish writings from the first two centuries before Christ and the Apocrypha. “A Dictionary of Angels” published in

1994 contains 331 pages of angels identified and named according to research done from Christian, Jewish and other traditions. ²⁹⁸

4.2.3 Relevance for Research Pertaining to Angels for this Study

The Bible confirms the unseen spiritual realm present in the material world and in midst of people's lives. The spiritual world is not present occasionally, but permanently. Marilyn Hickey²⁹⁹ was of the opinion that the Bible revelation of Angels activities not only portray what they have done, but also reveal what they are assigned to do in present.

This study investigates:

- The proclamation of angels being "ministering spirits' sent forth to minister those who will inherit salvation" according to Hebrews 1:14³⁰⁰.
- The possibility of angels commanded to interrupt the affairs of a nation in answer to prayer. The prospect or opportunity of a nation calling onto God when in distress, resulting in God sending His angels, - not only to intervene into the affairs of individuals, but also into the affairs of the state of the nation.
- The power and influence these invisible servants and warriors might have in the present day.
- This study will also endeavour to investigate the question whether angels are still prohibited by demonic powers after the crucifixion and resurrection of Christ. Does this victory of Christ automatically nullify the power of the demonic forces?

"The fact that angels exist is as certain as the fact that God exist. The Bible reveals the certainty of each. Though angelology is not a carinal doctrine, its acceptance opens the mind to a better understanding of the Bible, God's plan

²⁹⁸ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 126

²⁹⁹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xxi

³⁰⁰ Hebrews 1:14 (KJV) Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

of the ages, the Christian life and ministry, as well as world conditions and course of affairs.”³⁰¹

4.2.4 Biblical Research Pertaining to Angels

4.2.4.1 The Nature of Angels

4.2.4.1.1 Angels Are Defined as Spiritual Entities

The Bible boldly teaches on the existence of Angels as mighty spiritual beings. God is Spirit and He created spiritual angelic beings, not restricted to time or the material or physical realm. Despite being spirits, unlike God, angels are not omnipresent.

Aquinas³⁰² defined angels as follows:

“They are “pure spirits”, not composed of matter and form, but composed of essence and existence, of act and potentiality”

Angels are created by God as a supernatural class of beings. They are never presented as spiritual progressed humans. Humans do not evolve into angels

4.2.4.1.2 Angels Are Immortal

Angels derive their immortality from God and as such are not subject to death.³⁰³

and they cannot die again, because they are [immortal] like the angels (equal to, angel-like).

Luke 20:36 (AMP)

4.2.4.1.3 Angles Are Positioned Below God and Above Man

The word “angel” denotes a heavenly order of beings, below deity (Hebrews 1:6-

³⁰¹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) *Angels Elect & Evil*. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. P. 12

³⁰² Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 107

³⁰³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 89

7), but above humanity (Hebrews 2:7)³⁰⁴

And again, when he bringeth in the first begotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him. And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.

Hebrews 1:6-7 (KJV)

Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands.

Hebrew 2:7 (KJV)

4.2.4.1.4 Angels Are Created Beings

Praise ye him, all his angels: praise ye him, all his hosts. Let them praise the name of the LORD: for he commanded, and they were created.

Psalm 148:2,5 (KJV)

Thou, even thou, art LORD alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.

Nehemiah 9:6 (KJV)

Created by God implies they did not exist from infinity, they are limited and dependent beings although God granted them eternal life.

4.2.4.1.5 Angels Were Created Before God Commenced with the Creation of the Universe

Since the angels shouted with joy at the creation of the universe, it is reasonable to assume that God created them at the initial stages of God's creative activity, before God commenced with the creation of the universe and as such, they were present at the creation of the universe and man, before Genesis 1:1³⁰⁵.

³⁰⁴ Jackson Wayne. Christian Courier. (2020) What Does the Bible Say About the Origin, Nature, and Role of Angels. Available at: <https://www.christiancourier.com/articles/1582-what-does-the-bible-say-about-the-origin-nature-and-role-of-angels>

³⁰⁵ Genesis 1:1 (KJV) In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

4.2.4.1.6 Angels Are Considered an Order of Creation, Created as a Host or Company, Not a Race³⁰⁶

Created spiritual beings implies their inability to procreate. They are referred to as "sons of God" not as "sons of angels."³⁰⁷ Because they do not have descendants, their sin remains individual sin and is not transferred.³⁰⁸

4.2.4.1.7 Angels Are Called Sons of God³⁰⁹

Referring to the angels shouting for joy, Job calls them "sons of God" and as such acknowledging their direct creation by God. As beings created directly by God, they are "sons of God." The "sons of God" shouted for joy at the creation of the earth.³¹⁰

When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

Job 38:7 (KJV)

The expression "sons of God" when referring to angels are found in several Bible verses. It emphasizes the close relationship with God. The expression also implies an association, belonging to a specific or particular group. The Hebrew phrase "bene 'elohim", translates to "sons of God" or "mighty ones" emphasizes the classification of a group of supernatural beings. Sons of God therefore signify angels as supernatural beings with exceptional powers.³¹¹

It is interesting to note that the expression "sons of God" does not imply holiness or a specific special relationship with God. It only refers to the supernatural

³⁰⁶ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 104

³⁰⁷ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 104

³⁰⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 89

³⁰⁹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 143

³¹⁰ The Sons of God. Available at: <https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/706/who-are-the-morning-stars-in-job-387>

³¹¹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 145

character of the being. Therefore, sons of God also include the fallen angels for they too are supernatural beings.

4.2.4.1.8 Angels Have Independent Decision-Making Capabilities

God created angels, like man, with the freedom and ability to make decisions. The freedom and ability to choose. They have the power of choice. Angels had the liberty to decide to follow the leadership of Lucifer or to stay loyal and obedient to God.³¹²

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

Isaiah 14:12-14 (KJV)

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;

2 Peter 2:4 (KJV)

Mercy unto you, and peace, and love, be multiplied.

Jude 2:9 (KJV)

4.2.4.1.9 Angels Are Innumerable

'Hosts', 'multitudes' and 'Legion' reflect the uncountable numbers of angels.

And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God and saying: Glory to God in the highest, And on earth peace, goodwill toward men!"

Luke 2:13 (NKJV)

Is there any number to His armies? Upon whom does His light not rise?

Job 25:3 (NKJV)

³¹² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 89

And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying,

Luke 2:13 (KJV)

4.2.4.1.10 Angels Have Personalities

Conner³¹³ interpreted Angels to have personality, intelligence will and character. Richard³¹⁴ agreed and motivated the statement referring the exuberant joy they expressed after the creation.

4.2.4.1.11 Angels in Comparison to Human Beings

- i Angels have continued to exist from the beginning of creation.
- ii Angels experience God directly.
- iii Angels are spirits.
- iv God created the ranks of Angels.
- v Angels are not a race with the ability to reproduce themselves.³¹⁵
- vi Angels does not have gender although they only appear as muscular men in the Bible.

For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage but are like angels of God in heaven.

Matthew 22:30 (KJV)

- vii Angels does not engage in marriage.
- viii Angels does not reproduce themselves.
- ix Angels are organised in structures and authority and not in families.
- x Angels are immortal.
- xi Angels are invisible although they may manifest occasionally as man.

³¹³ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 89

³¹⁴ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 150

³¹⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 85

- xii Angels do not have the ability to 'speak in tongues' – referring to the gift of the Holy Spirit. They have however the ability to speak any and all human languages.
- xiii Angels does not have permission to share the gospel of Jesus Christ. This responsibility has been entrusted to humans.³¹⁶

Law³¹⁷ added the following:

- i Angels does not have the privilege to call God 'Father", only 'Creator'. The privilege to know God as father is exclusively available to man.
- ii Angels cannot be redeemed or conformed to the image of Christ.
- iii Angels does not have the ability to indwell man. This is dedicated to the Holy Spirit. The indwelling of the Spirit in the spirit-man of believers.
- iv Angels do not judge man. Man will judge angels.

Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?

1 Corinthians 6:3 (KJV)

4.2.4.1.12 Angels in Comparison to God³¹⁸

- i Angels are created beings, created by God. God is their creator. God is the creator of all things and infinite.
- ii God is omnipresent whereas Angels are limited spatially. Angels can only be in one place at any particular time.
- iii Angels are dependent on God for direction and their very existence.
- iv Angels does not command nor should receive worship.³¹⁹

³¹⁶ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 180

³¹⁷ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. PP.119-120

³¹⁸ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 50

³¹⁹ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 120

4.2.4.1.13 Angels in Comparison to Jesus Christ

Jesus is closely associated with angels from before He was born. He was directly involved in their creation. Thereafter, the angel prophesied his birth to Mary and visited Joseph. The angels ministered to Him during His 40 day fast, they strengthened Him during His agony on the night of His betrayal, they were present at His resurrection and Ascension and will be present with His second coming.

- i Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son of God.
- ii Jesus is the reigning Son of Man. He is the Son of David, who inherited and fulfilled God's promise.
- iii Jesus' throne is higher than the angels.
- iv Jesus is eternal compared to the created Angelic beings.
- v Jesus is eternal King, Prophet and Priest. The angels are ministering spirits.
- vi Jesus rules the Kingdom of God compared to the angels who do not have dominion.
- vii Jesus Christ is Lord of All.

4.2.4.1.14 Angel Appearances

Angels appear in a variation of forms depending on the order of their creation. The appearance of a "shining being" does not automatically imply an angelic visitation for the Bible also warns that Satan himself transforms into an angel of Light" 2 Corinthians 11:14³²⁰.

Biblical angel appearances included a voice, a radiant being, a man, and a burning bush. Angels always appeared as a muscular male, never as a female.

³²⁰ 2 Corinthians 11:14 (NKJV) And no wonder! For Satan himself transforms himself into an angel of light.

An Angel of God never appeared as an animal or bird. (An angel did appear to a donkey.)

So the woman came and told her husband, saying, "A Man of God came to me, and His countenance was like the countenance of the Angel of God, very awesome; but I did not ask Him where He was from, and He did not tell me His name.

Judges 13:6 (NKJV)

Terry Law³²¹ made an interesting observation with reference to Hebrews 13:2³²² Angels appear unawares, implies that angels adopt the nationality of the person they appear to. They appear Chinese to the Chinese, African to the African, and so forth.

Do not forget to entertain strangers, for by so doing some have unwittingly entertained angels.

Hebrews 13:2 (NKJV)

According to Richard³²³ there is no Biblical indication that every believer can expect angel encounters.

4.2.4.2 The Duties and Responsibilities of Angels

4.2.4.2.1 Angels Are Ministering Spirits

They are created to minister to the heirs of salvation and are continually advancing the ministry and kingdom of Jesus Christ and His church.

The Spirit Filled Life Bible elaborated as follows: "Ministering" includes "*laos*" meaning "people" and "*ergon*" meaning "work", hence- working for people. The referral to "angels' minister" the Greek word "*diakonia*" refers to their "serviceable labor and assistance".³²⁴

³²¹ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 106

³²² Hebrews 13:2 (KJV) Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares.

³²³ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 50

³²⁴ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. PP. 1872-1873

But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

Hebrews 1:13-14 (NIV)

Although spiritual, they might appear as physical human beings in order to perform specific duties. The psalmist described how the angels delivered food for the Israelites in the desert. Angel's assistance might be withheld by God as a result of disobedience.

Men ate angels' food; He sent them food to the full.

Psalms 78:25 (NKJV)

And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set it before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.

Genesis 18:8 (KJV)

And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat.

Genesis 19:3 (KJV)

Angels are God's agents, commissioned to carry out His will. Angels do not act independently.

4.2.4.2.2 Angels Are Messengers

Angels deliver messages, in any human language, only on behalf of God and not on behalf of themselves or people. The content of the messages varies from prophetic, encouragement or instruction with the aim to advance God's plan and purpose on earth. These messengers do not include the preaching of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Angels respond to sincere prayers from believers and non-believers in command from God. Man does not have the liberty and authority to command angels to take actions. Angels communication always has purpose, never to socialise.

4.2.4.2.3 Angels Will Deliver Devastating Judgement on Earth Prior to the Second Coming of Christ

The book of Revelation forecast the role of angels in the final battle between God and evil. Revelation 8 portrays angels throwing fire and blowing trumpets resulting in earthquakes destroying a third of the planet's vegetation.

The first angel sounded his trumpet, and there came hail and fire mixed with blood, and it was hurled down on the earth. A third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up.

Revelation 8:7 (NKJV)

4.2.4.2.4 Angels Will Separate the Wicket from the Just

In the parable of the wheat and weeds Jesus warned what awaits the wicket and sinful men.

The Son of Man will send out his angels, and they will weed out of his kingdom everything that causes sin and all who do evil. They will throw them into the blazing furnace, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 13 :41-42 (NKJV)

4.2.4.2.5 Angels Will Participate in the Condemnation of Mankind

"I tell you, whoever publicly acknowledges me before others, the Son of Man will also acknowledge before the angels of God. But whoever disowns me before others will be disowned before the angels of God.

Luke 12:8-9 (NKJV)

The text not only implies that the angels will be silent observers of Jesus' judgement, but also participate by presenting witness and as such participate in man's judgement.

4.2.4.2.6 Angels Protects God's People Regardless Hostile Territorial Area

Jacob also went on his way, and the angels of God met him. When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is the camp of God!" So he named that place Mahanaim.

Genesis 32:1-2 (NKJV)

On Jacobs return to Canaan he feared Esau after he deceitfully stole Esau's rightful inheritance. God send angels to be present in Jacob's camp - Jacob named the locality of his camp 'Mahanaim', meaning 'double camp', signifying the presence of the angels only he could see. Jewish midrash³²⁵ suggest 60 myriads³²⁶ (600 000) angels present.

This is particular significant for the research: The same principle should apply in South Africa today. Violent crime statics are staggering. Believers in Christ can pray and rely on God's protection regardless the hostile and extreme violent reality.

4.2.4.2.7 Angels Protected Jacob From the Consequences of His Own Sin

Jacob, meaning 'deceiver' was not sinless. Regardless, God's angels protected him from consequences of his evil actions and of the evil intended by others.

It was the author's opinion that South African should have the liberty to boldly proclaim and trust God's protection regardless personal or generational sin. Within the South African context crime, violent crime and general injustice are often justified as a means to find justice for the injustices of Apartheid.

³²⁵ Jewish midrash: In Judaism, the term *Midrash* (plural *Midrasham*) refers to a form of rabbinic literature that offers commentary or interpretation of biblical texts. A Midrash (pronounced "mid-rash") may be an effort to clarify ambiguities in an ancient original text or to make the words applicable to current times. Ariela Pelaia. What Does the Term "Midrash" Mean? Available at: <https://www.learnreligions.com/what-is-midrash-2076342>

³²⁶ Myriad: Ten Thousand. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/myriad>

4.2.4.2.8 Angels Are Involved in the Man's Monetary Affairs

An angel appeared to Jacob to render advise on the procedure he needed to follow to regain his rightful portion of his wages and profits.

The angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob.' I answered, 'Here I am.' And he said, 'Look up and see that all the male goats mating with the flock are streaked, speckled or spotted, for I have seen all that Laban has been doing to you.

Genesis 31:11-12 (NKJV)

This is a principle South Africans should take not off. Over and above the National loss in revenue due to 'State Capture'³²⁷, individuals face enormous financial constraints. This include tender fraud, delayed or cancelled payments for services rendered, collapse of social grants, poor medical services, poor education etc., and the total lack or deterioration of general services.

4.2.4.2.9 Angels Protect Nations

God promised and provided angelic protection for Israel on their journey from Sinai to Canaan. A 'national angel' manifested as a cloud and fiery pillar to guide them on route.

Then the angel of God, who had been traveling in front of Israel's army, withdrew and went behind them. The pillar of cloud also moved from in front and stood behind them.

Exodus 14:19 (NIV)

Angels also participated in military battle and assisted Israel to be victorious in the battles against their enemies.

My angel will go ahead of you and bring you into the land of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites and Jebusites, and I will wipe them out.

Exodus 23:23 (NIV)

³²⁷ State Capture: State capture, essentially parasitic plundering of public resources. Dassah Maurice O. (2018) *Theoretical analysis of state capture and its manifestation as a governance problem in South Africa*. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/325777788_Theoretical_analysis_of_state_capture_and_its_manifestation_as_a_governance_problem_in_South_Africa

Multiple Biblical references exist with regards to Angelic protection for Israel. In addition, the angelic battle between the angels overseeing Persia and Greece with Michael is narrated in Daniel 10. The author is of the opinion, although not specified in the Bible, that God might have appointed angels to nations and countries.

A similar spiritual battle described in the book of Daniel of an angel from God versus an 'angel' representing Satan is thus possible with reference to all nations, including South Africa.

This view automatically implies a Godly plan and destiny for every nation and Satan's counter strategy to nullify God's purpose.

4.2.4.2.10 Repentance Activate Angelic Assistance

Similar to the current South Africa, Judges 2 describes how Israelites turned away from God to pagan worship. As a result, God permitted His people to be oppressed by a Canaanite king. After their repentance, the Israel's army led by Deborah defeated the Canaanites.

From the heavens the stars fought, from their courses they fought against Sisera.

Judges 5:20 (NKJV)

4.2.4.2.11 Angels Participate in God's Judgement

Angels investigate sin, followed by communicating and administering Judgements of God. Sodom and Gomorrah provide excellent evidence to substantiate this proclamation. Angels visited the towns to assess the sin. They assisted Lot and his family to escape before they carried out God's judgement as He rained fire and brimstone on the cities.

The two men said to Lot, "Do you have anyone else here—sons-in-law, sons or daughters, or anyone else in the city who belongs to you? Get

them out of here, because we are going to destroy this place. The outcry to the Lord against its people is so great that he has sent us to destroy it.

Genesis 19:12-13 (NKJV)

The author posed the question: What would the angels find if they should investigate South Africa today? Two main areas of concern are the legalised abortion and the Constitutional recognition of homosexuality. The five cities in the surroundings of Sodom and Gomorra came to mind, known for their homosexual promiscuity.³²⁸ How many righteous people would the angels find in contemporary South Africa who would qualify to be rescued from God's judgement?

Biblical accounts of angelic intervention South Africa should take serious note of:	
A destroying angel with a sword raised against Israel due to God's anger. 70 000 Israelites died as a result of a plague after David's census. (2 Samuel 24)	The Bible does not specify what angered God. Did David rely on numbers instead of God or was it their idolatry and unfaithfulness to their covenant with God? Two important facts to take note of: 1) God sent a destroying angel to bring judgement against Israel. God can do the same towards South Africa. 2.) God had mercy and recalled the angel after the first of three days of judgement. The author is convinced of God's mercy towards South Africa as well.

³²⁸ Sodom and Gomorrah. (2020) Notoriously sinful cities in the biblical Book of Genesis, destroyed by "sulfur and fire" because of their wickedness (Genesis 19:24). Sodom and Gomorrah along with the cities of Admah, Zeboiim, and Zoar (Bela) constituted the five "cities of the plain," Encyclopaedia Britannica. <https://www.britannica.com/place/Sodom-and-Gomorrah>

Rabbi Steven Nathan. The Destruction of the Cities of Sodom and Gomorrah. "In our contemporary lexicon, the phrase "Sodom and Gomorrah" has become synonymous with extreme depravity and immorality, with a particular sexual connotation." <https://www.reconstructingjudaism.org/dvar-torah/destruction-cities-sodom-and-gomorrah>

<p>Psalm 78 provides a detailed account of God's provision and power compared to Israel's unfaithfulness. God sent angels to deliver food in the desert. Israel complained 'while the meat was still between their teeth' (Numbers 11:33)</p>	<p>God is superior in power to provide in need regardless circumstances. God does not appreciate unthankful complaining and He sent an angel to struck Israel with a plague. Whilst the South African Government act ungodly, God still provide in numerous manners. South Africans must learn from Israel's attitude and give glory to God whilst continue in prayer for God's deliverance. Joyful thanksgiving is not compatible with constant complaining.</p>
--	---

Table 6: Biblical accounts of angelic intervention

4.2.4.2.12 Angels Ministers to Individual People

An angel appeared to Hagar and told her to return to Sarah and that a great nation will be born of the son she was carrying.

And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands. And the angel of the Lord said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Behold, thou art with child and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction.

Genesis 16:9-11 (KJV)

4.2.4.2.13 Five-Fold Ministry of Angels

Marilyn Hickey³²⁹ used Psalm 103 to dissect the five-fold ministry assigned to

³²⁹ Hickey M. The Ministry of Angels. Available at: <http://www.angelfire.com/sc3/wedigmontana/Angels.html> and Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 842

angels.

Bless the Lord, you His angels, Who excel in strength, who do His word, Heeding the voice of His word. Bless the Lord, all you His hosts, You ministers of His, who do His pleasure. Bless the Lord, all His works, In all places of His dominion. Bless the Lord, O my soul!

Psalm 103:20-21 (NKJV)

She summarised the five-fold ministry as follows:

- i. To bless the Lord in worship and service
- ii. To do God's word with reference to activities on earth
- iii. To head to the word of God as it is spoken by believers
- iv. To minister on God's behalf according to Hebrews 1:14³³⁰
- v. To do God's pleasure.

4.2.4.3 Hierarchy and Authority of Specific Angels

Angels are a structured society (Colossians 1:16³³¹) and their levels of authority is associated with their position or rank. Some angels are appointed to guard over nations and nationalities as displayed in the book of Daniel.

4.2.4.3.1 The Triune God the Godhead of the Angels

Paul explains this principle to the congregation in Colossae: God remain the Godhead of the angels and are worshipped by them.

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Colossians 1:16 (KJV)

³³⁰ Hebrews 1:14 (NKJV) Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?

³³¹ Colossians 1:16 (KJV) For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

4.2.4.3.2 The Angel of the Lord

Theophanies or Christophanies is the manifestation of Jesus Christ as an angel referred to in scripture as “the Angel of Lord.”³³² Although it is previously stated that angels are not to be worshipped, Jesus Christ as “The Angel of the Lord” deserves to be worshipped.

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John:

Revelation 1:1 (KJV)

The Bible portrays several encounters with angels although only two angels are introduced by name: Gabriel and Michael. The Roman Catholic Douay Bible also introduces Raphael. According to Larry Richards³³³ their names portrays their closeness to God:

The last two letters of their names “el” stands for “God”. The name Gabriel means “Strength of God” and Michael means “who is like God”. The names of these two angels remind us that most angels are wonderful creatures who are close to the Lord and reflect His own desire to do us good.

Although most Angels in Scripture appeared in human form, some appeared as bright and shining beings. The application of “el” is accommodated in many languages as a singular term with a root meaning “Shining” or “radiant”. Languages include Sumerian (El, Brightness, shining), Akkadian (Ilu, radiant one), Babylonian (Ellu, the shining one”).³³⁴

4.2.4.3.3 Archangels

Archangels, the highest rank of heavenly hosts are translated as ‘to be first (in political rank or power). The prefix ‘arch’ is translated from Greek meaning ‘ruling’

³³² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 97

³³³ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 3

³³⁴ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 45

or 'chief'.³³⁵ Michael is the only archangels specifically identified in scripture. Gabriel, meaning 'strength' or 'chief', characteristics of archangels is also considered to be an archangel.

This conclusion is confirmed by the prominent role Gabriel have in scripture. The last two letters of their names, 'el' resembles God; Gabriel meaning 'strength of God' and Michael 'who is like God'.³³⁶

Conner³³⁷ discussed the possibility of the three Archangels (Lucifer, Michael and Gabriel) each leading a third of the angelic hosts. Lucifer influenced a third of the angels under his command who decided to pledge allegiance to him. Two thirds of the angels remained with Michael and Gabriel respectively.

Interpretations also exist associating the three Archangels with the Triune Godhead. Lucifer represented God the Father, Michael represented the Son Jesus Christ and Gabriel the Holy Spirit. The author of this thesis is not able to verify the validity of these two viewpoints.

a. Archangel Michael

Michael is most often thought of as the angel of protection and the most powerful of all the angels. According to Conner³³⁸ many expositors believe Michael will accompany Jesus Christ in His second advent relative to the resurrection of the saints and the transformation from mortality to immortality. In each of his four appearances in the Bible, warfare with Satan is portrayed.³³⁹

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels,

Revelation 12:7 (KJV)

³³⁵ Demers, Dawn *The 7 Archangels and Their Meanings*. Beliefnet.com. Available at: <https://www.beliefnet.com/inspiration/angels/galleries/the-7-archangels-and-their-meanings.aspx>

³³⁶ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 3

³³⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 88

³³⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 88

³³⁹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1977

But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.

Daniel 10:13 (KJV)

But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince

Daniel 10:21 (KJV)

And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

Daniel 12:1 (KJV)

Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.

Jude 9 (KJV)

And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,

Revelation 20:2. (KJV)

b. Lucifer

Several scholars hold Lucifer to have been an archangel before his fall. However, this is only speculation founded on his position and influence he held over the third of the heavenly angels who followed his lead.³⁴⁰ For a more comprehensive discussion with regards to Lucifer see 3.4.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

Isaiah 14:12-14 (KJV)

c. Gabriel

Gabriel, referred to four times in scripture, is one of the two angels specifically named in the Bible in both the Old and New Testament.

- Interpreted Daniel's vision in Daniel 8:16-27

³⁴⁰ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1945

And it came to pass, when I, even I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.

Daniel 8:15-16 (KJV)

- Revealed the prophecy of 70 week in Daniel 9:21-27

Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding.

Daniel 9:21-27 (KJV)

- introduced himself to Zechariah in Luke 1 prophesying the birth of his son John.

Zechariah asked the angel, "How can I be sure of this? I am an old man and my wife is well along in years." The angel said to him, "I am Gabriel. I stand in the presence of God, and I have been sent to speak to you and to tell you this good news.

Luke 1:18-19 (NIV)

- Announced Christ Birth in Luke 1:2-38

But the angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary; you have found favor with God. You will conceive and give birth to a son, and you are to call him Jesus.

Luke 1:30-31 (NIV)

Because of his character of strength, scholars conclude that he is also an archangel. This is not supported by scripture.³⁴¹ Gabriel is also associated with Michael, but never with Lucifer.

Gabriel's four visitations to Daniel, Zacharias and Mary all held prophetic content with reference to Christ, leading to the acceptance of him as the prophetic angel, the messenger and interpreter of the prophetic word concerning the Messianic revelation.

³⁴¹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1945

4.2.4.3.4 Other Angels Specified

a. Seraphim

The meaning of Seraphim³⁴² is translated as '**a burning, fiery, gliding, angelic being; also, a fire-coloured, agile, gliding desert creature, presumably a fiery serpent**'. The root of the verb 'seraph' 'to set on fire, to burn.' Accordingly, the Seraphim may be interpreted to portray a fiery colour or appearance, or to be 'flamelike' in motion. Scripture refer six times to Seraphim of which five accommodate the description of 'fiery serpent' (Numbers 21:6,8³⁴³, Deuteronomy 8:15³⁴⁴, Isaiah 14:2³⁴⁵, 30:6³⁴⁶) and only once the name Seraphim appears. (Isaiah 6:2³⁴⁷). The ministry of Seraphim is closely associated with the throne, praises and holiness of God as they hover around God's throne, repetitively and continuously glorifying God with the words "Holy, Holy, Holy is the Lord of Hosts, the whole earth is full of His glory" magnifying the thrice holy God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

Above him were seraphim, each with six wings: With two wings they covered their faces, with two they covered their feet, and with two they were flying. And they were calling to one another: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord Almighty; the whole earth is full of his glory." At the sound of their voices the doorposts and thresholds shook and the temple was filled with smoke.

Isaiah 6:2-3 (NIV)

Two of their six wings are used to cover their feet signifying the holy service, two cover their faces signifying their awe and reverence and the last two are used to

³⁴² Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 969

³⁴³ Numbers 21:6,8 (KJV) And the LORD sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. And the LORD said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live.

³⁴⁴ Deuteronomy 8:15 (KJV) Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery serpents, and scorpions, and drought, where there was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint;

³⁴⁵ Isaiah 14:2 (KJV) And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the LORD for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

³⁴⁶ Isaiah 30:6 (KJV) The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence come the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them.

³⁴⁷ Isaiah 6:2 (KJV) Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

fly in obedience to God's will. Constantly glorifying God. They are not commissioned to leave the throne of God in order to deliver messages.

b. Cherubim

The first direct Biblical mention of these heavenly beings is found in Genesis 3 when God placed a Cherub with a burning sword at the East end of the Garden of Eden assigned to guard the tree of life.

So He drove out the man; and He placed cherubim at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to guard the way to the tree of life.

Genesis 3:24 (NKJV)

Hebrews 9:5 refers to them as the "cherubim of glory of God" consequential from their intimate association with God's Divine presence. It is because of this intimate relationship with God, representing His presence and His visible glory that they were never called angels (messengers).

and above the ark were the [golden] cherubim of glory overshadowing the mercy seat; but we cannot now go into detail about these things.

Hebrew 9:5 (KJV)

Three philosophies exist with regards to Cherubim.

- i They are angelic beings, though different from the Seraphim.
- ii They symbolise the Godhead. Within this context the following needs to be understood:

- Ten cherubim were woven into the ten curtains of the tabernacle of Moses.

Moreover, you shall make the tabernacle with ten curtains of fine woven linen and blue, purple, and scarlet thread; with artistic designs of cherubim you shall weave them.

Exodus 26:1 (NKJV)

- Two golden cherubs overshadowed the Ark of the Covenant in Solomon's Temple

Inside the inner sanctuary he made two cherubim of olive wood, each ten cubits high.

1 Kings 6:23 (NKJV)

- Two cherubs were placed at the two ends of the Ark of the Testimony. God met with Israel at the mercy seat³⁴⁸ between the two cherubs. Sacrificial blood was sprinkled once a year on the Day of Atonement, symbolising the reconciliation of Israel with God. (Exodus 25:22)³⁴⁹

And make one cherub on the one end, and the other cherub on the other end: even of the mercy seat shall ye make the cherubims on the two ends thereof. And the cherubims shall stretch forth their wings on high, covering the mercy seat with their wings, and their faces shall look one to another; toward the mercy seat shall the faces of the cherubims be

Exodus 25:19-20 (KJV)

- iii Cherubim are symbolic of the redeemed saints from every kindred, tongue, tribe and nation.

They are the guardians of the fixed stars, keepers of the celestial records, bestowers of knowledge. In the Talmud cherubim are equated with the order of wheels, also called Ophanim. Chief rulers are Ophaniel, Rikbiel, Zophiel and before his fall, Satan.

Ezekiel 28:14 (KJV)

Cherubim are assigned to guard the throne of God, as well as the ark of the covenant and the mercy seat.³⁵⁰

The Lord reigns, let the peoples tremble [with submissive wonder]! He sits enthroned above the cherubim, let the earth shake!

Psalms 99:1 (AMP)

Cherubim are associated with the presenting and withdrawal of the glory of God³⁵¹

Then the glory of the LORD went up from the cherub and stood over the threshold of the house; and the house was filled with the cloud, and the court was full of the brightness of the LORD'S glory.

Ezekiel 10:4 (KJV)

³⁴⁸ Mercy Seat: An object, a type of lid or covering, made of pure gold, that rested on the top of the Ark of the Covenant. It represented the Holy presence of God and associated with the day of Atonement in the Old Testament. What was the mercy seat on the Ark of the Covenant? The mercy seat symbolised God's throne. *What was the mercy seat on the Ark of the Covenant?* Got Question Ministries. Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/mercy-seat.html>

³⁴⁹ Exodus 25:22 (NKJV) And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubim's which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the children of Israel.

³⁵⁰ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 11

³⁵¹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 11

The best description for Cherubim is in Ezekiel 10:

Then I looked, and, behold, in the firmament that was above the head of the cherubim's there appeared over them as it were a sapphire stone, as the appearance of the likeness of a throne.

Ezekiel 10:1 (KJV)

4.2.4.3.5 Angelic Hierarchy

Medieval Jewish thought also accommodated the following angelic hierarchy:

a. Thrones

Represent God's judgement to us. They are sometimes called "wheels" and in the Jewish Kabbalah, chariots or the Merkaba. The occult book, the Zohar, ranks wheels above seraphim, but other sources place them on the same level as cherubim. The ruling prince is Oriphiel of Zabkiel of Zaphiel.

b. Dominions or dominations

They regulate angelic duties. Through them the majesty of God is manifested. They hold an orb or sceptre as an emblem of authority, and in Hebraic lore, the chief of this order is named Hashael or Zadkiel.

c. Virtues

They work miracles on earth. They bestow grace and valour.

d. Powers

Powers are responsible to stop efforts of demons to overthrow the world – or they preside over demons, or perhaps according to Saint Paul, they are themselves evil. Sammael, or Camael is the Chief of the Powers.

e. Principalities

They are the protectors of religion. Nisroc, in Milton is "of principalities the prime" and others according to various sources are named Requel, Anael and Cerviel.

4.2.4.3.6 Fallen Angels

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:7;9 (KJV)

Fallen Angels are deceived and therefore they are instrumental in Satan's rebellion against God.

4.2.4.3.7 Angel Assemblies Portrayed in the Book of Revelation

- Four angels standing on the four corners of the earth to control the four winds of the earth.
- “Seven angels before God will be the messengers of God's judgement during the tribulation period. Their trumpets will announce the great plagues.
- Seven angels will administer the last seven plagues.
- Twenty-four elders of Revelation 4 and 5 – there is not sufficient evidence to determine whether the twenty-four are men or angels, but they seem to be angels who surround the throne of God

4.3 The Third Introduction: Man: Adam and Eve

The first chapter of the first book of the Holy Bible introduces man. The chronicle provides insight into the creation and composition of Adam and Eve as the masterpiece of God's creation.

“Of all the works of God it is the noblest, and most admirable specimen of his justice, wisdom and goodness.”³⁵²

³⁵² Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 49

A dual comprehension is implied in discussing man. Comprehensive understanding of God is advanced with the understanding of the composition of man. Simultaneously, comprehension of man is advanced with an understanding of God. Knowledge of man should also be investigated through three lenses: the condition of man when first created, the condition of man after the fall of Adam and the condition of man after the redemptive work of Jesus Christ, also referred to as the second Adam. Thus, the uncorrupted character of man when first created by God, the corrupt and degraded, sinful nature of man as a consequence of sin and the redeemed state of man.

4.3.1 Man Defined

Strong's #H120 defined man as (אָדָם) ('ādām) (*aw-dawm*'), Man or Mankind, Adam the first man, or humanity at large. "Adam" is used about 20 times in the Old Testament, and as "man" more than 500 times. Adam in general has no reference to gender but rather "humanness".

The verb 'adom' meaning 'to be red', reflecting the colour of the soil might also be considered as it reflects Adam's complexion. "Adamah, soil' or 'ground' should also be accommodated in discussing the name Adam. "***The Lord formed man of the dust of the ground***" (Genesis 2:7) could be translated to "The Lord formed Adam of the dust of 'adamah."³⁵³

Commenting on the current debate with regards to gender and sexuality this research confirms the fact of man's creation in two genders only: man and female.

4.3.2 Man Created as a Tripartite Being: Spirit, Soul and Body

"Of all the works of God it is the noblest, and most admirable specimen of

³⁵³ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 5

his justice, wisdom, and goodness.³⁵⁴

The Biblical creation narrative includes the creation and origin of Adam and Eve as the masterpiece of God's creation. It provides insight into the composition of man as the cornerstone for the Biblical understanding of man. Discussion of Genesis 1:26-28 is presented:

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness, and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

Genesis 1:26 (KJV)

This verse is fundamental in understanding man as a tripartite being, man's spirituality as well as man's authority. It is therefore pivotal in the argument this research presents as to the fact that man is primarily spirit.

God's referral to Himself in the plural was already discussed comprehensively. Additional to the evidence already presented, this verse provides further insight through two significant statements.

- "Let us": Presented in the plural signifying three persons in One God as discussed earlier: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Commentary in the Spirit Filled Life Bible also suggest that 'Let us' could include the '**entire host of heaven, the angels, as well.**' The author disagrees with the motivation that such an inclusion would imply the angels did partake in the creation of man. God alone is the creator.
- "Our image": Is also presented in a combination of plural ('Our') and singular (image). Strong's dictionary defines 'image' as #H6754 (דְּלֶמֶת) (tselem) (tseh'-lem). From an unused root meaning to shade; a phantom, that is, (figuratively) illusion, resemblance; hence a representative figure, especially an idol: - image, vain shew. Derek Prince³⁵⁵ comments as follows with reference to "image":

³⁵⁴ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 49

³⁵⁵ Derek Prince Teaching letters: *Spirit, Soul and Body*. Available at: <http://derekprince.me/resources/free-teaching-letters/>

“Image refers to man’s outward appearance. In a way that is not true of any other creature, man reflects the outward appearance of God. It was appropriate, therefore, that when the Son of God came to dwell on earth, it was in the form of a man—not an ox or a beetle—and not even in the form of some heavenly creature, such as a seraph.”

- **“In our image”** - This statement is imperative in understanding the fact that - and the manner in which man are set aside from the rest of the creation. God’s image portray man created with personalities, emotions, intellect, memory and the ability to reason, feel to love, to hear, to speak and to see.³⁵⁶

In addition to the plural and singular use reflecting the Trinity of God, the singular and plural use also reflect on the creation of man as male and female. In the midst of the current fierce debates with regards to gender and sexuality, this thesis emphasises the creation of only two genders: man, and female. Two individuals becoming one in the unity of marriage and family resembles the community within a Triune God.

- **Our likeness** Also presented in the plural. Strong’s dictionary #1823 (תַּמִּיךְ) (d^emûth) (dem-ooth') *esemblance*; concretely *model, shape*; adverbially *like*: - fashion, like (-ness, as), manner, similitude. Prince³⁵⁷ demarcated “our likeness” as follows:

“Likeness refers to man’s inner nature. Scripture refers to God as a triune being: Father, Son and Spirit. Likewise, it reveals man as a triune being, consisting of spirit, soul and body.”

Scripture confirms Prince’s demarcation of man’s composition namely spirit, soul and body.

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (KJV)

³⁵⁶ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 5

³⁵⁷ Derek Prince Teaching letters: *Spirit, Soul and Body*. Available at: <http://derekprince.me/resources/free-teaching-letters/>

For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (KJV)

Linguistically, both Hebrew and Greek acknowledge the distinct difference between the concepts Spirit, Soul and Body.

	Spirit	Soul	Body
Hebrew	"Ruach"	"Nephesh"	"Beten" or "Geshem"
Greek	"Pneuma"	"Psueche"	"Soma"

Table 7: Difference between Spirit, Soul and Body

It is imperative to present the separation of the three divisions: Man is primarily spirit and man has a soul. Spirit and soul reside in a body. "In Our Image" is additionally clarified in John 3 when God states "***I am spirit***". Scripture also confirms the indwelling nature of man's spirit.

Thus declares the Lord who stretches out the heavens and lays the foundation of the earth and forms the spirit of man within him

Zachariah 12:1 (PHILLIPS)

4.3.2.1 Man is Created Spirit: Function of the Spirit

The spirit of man is the eternal division of man able to worship God who is Spirit. It holds the God-consciousness of man, the capacity to receive revelation of- and fellowship with God.

God is spirit [the Source of life, yet invisible to mankind], and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.

John 4:24 (AMP)

But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for

them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.

1 Corinthians 2:9-12 (KJV)

Intuition, conscience and communion are included within man's spirit.

The creation account further reveals how man's spirit came into being: God breathed His breath into the nostrils of man. Strong's #H5301 describes 'Breathed' (נָפַח) (nâphach) (*naw-fakh*): A primitive root; to *puff*, in various applications (literally, to *inflate, blow hard, scatter, kindle, expire*; figuratively, to *disesteem*): - blow, breath, give up, cause to lose [life], seething, snuff. God's breath equals God's Spirit. God literally transferred His Spirit to man.

And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

Genesis 2:7 (KJV)

4.3.2.2 Man Has a Soul: The Function of the Soul

The soul of man contains the self-consciousness of man. The soul host man's affections, will, emotions and reason or intellect by which he discerns and judges right from wrong, just from unjust, good from evil, virtue and vice. It also includes a person's personality traits. The soul host man's ability to make decisions and moral choices. The will of man was created to be submissive to the authority of reason. This ability differentiates mankind from the animal kingdom, and it is the avenue through which God duplicates His independent and autonomous character. God duplicated His decision-making power and ability in the soul of mankind. The decision process is often expressed by three phrases: 'I want', 'I think' and 'I feel'.

The opportunity for the application of this ability was provided shortly after man was created. God forbid Adam and Eve to eat from the 'tree of knowledge of good

and evil' in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 2:17)³⁵⁸. God gave man the opportunity to decide, to make an autonomous moral choice.

In alignment to his ability to make moral decisions, man was given the opportunity to act in the fullness of being like God. Man had a choice to be obedient. It was thus by man's own free will that he sinned, and he brought about the consequences of sin on to himself and to his descendants.

"Man had the power, if he had the will, but he had not the will which would have given him the power; for this will would have been followed by perseverance."³⁵⁹

4.3.2.3 Man's Soul and Spirit Resides in His Body: Function of the Body

According to the book of Thessalonians, the body acts as a vessel for the soul and the spirit.

that each of you should know how to possess his own vessel in sanctification and honor, not in passion of lust, like the Gentiles who do not know God;

1 Thessalonians 4:4-5 (NKJV)

The body is the instrument for physical pleasure and enjoyment but also the instrument fulfilling the decisions of the spirit and the soul. Physical enjoyment is often founded or influenced by moral decisions of the soul or Godly persuasion in man's spirit.

Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body, that you should obey it in its lusts.

Romans 6:12 (NKJV)

"The body and spirit of man might be separated, but the spirit and the soul can only be distinguished."³⁶⁰

³⁵⁸ Genesis 2:17 (KJV) But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

³⁵⁹ Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale. P. 53

³⁶⁰ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1557

4.3.3 The Original Condition and Purpose for the Creation of Man

With reference to the condition God originally created man, this research presented Connor's³⁶¹ four reasons for the creation of man for it believes that condition relates to purpose and also ability. Adam was created with purpose. God embodied *in* him the ability to manifest this purpose.

4.3.3.1 Sinless

In God's likeness, man was created perfect in body, soul and spirit. No sin, sickness or death were included in his creation. God's satisfaction after the creation of man is captured in His words "very good".

4.3.3.2 Relationship

God's primary purpose for creating man in His image was fellowship and communion. God reveals His desire to fellowship with man throughout scripture. James Robison³⁶² confirms this in stating: ***Man enjoyed the image of God, the intimacy of God, and unbroken fellowship with God.***

The secondary relationship in the creation of man should be noted. God created man and female as individual identities but to have relationship with one another. In this relationship they become one. The one-ness of the community of man and female reflect the one-ness and community between man and God.

The community of the family is a reflection of the community in the Godhead. Its identity, life, and power come from God.³⁶³

³⁶¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. PP. 129-130

³⁶² Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2012

³⁶³ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 6

4.3.3.3 Character

God's desire to reproduce His nature and character. Character is included in God's desire to create man "in our image". God intended to reproduce His Holy character of love and self-giving.

4.3.3.4 Function

God bestowed authority to man to rule and to act as God's 'kingdom agent'. Delegated authority with the command to rule over everything created. In this command God also acknowledged man's sonship and the reflection of 'His image'. ***Man's ability to sustain his role as delegated ruler of Earth will rest on his continued obedience to God's rule as King of all.***³⁶⁴

4.3.3.5 Reproduction

God's command "***to be fruitful and multiply***" involves more than physical birth of offspring. It also implies the reproduction "***after our kind***". This relates to Jesus commissioning His apostles to make disciples of all the nations. Discipleship necessitates a radical response in all three spheres of body, mind and soul. Discussion on the implication of the command for discipleship is discussed in the conclusion and solution presented in the last chapter.

Vital facts with regards to the creation of man.

God's application of personal names referring to Himself as 'The Lord' and to man as "Adam" implies a personal relationship between God and man.

- God bowed down twice, once to create man from the dust of the earth and secondly to breath His Divine breath into man.

³⁶⁴ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 6

- Through His breath God imparted Himself to man. His indwelling Spirit into man's spirit resulted in a continues spiritual relationship.
- God combined the highest from himself with the lowest dust of the earth into one creation.
- As a result, man had the opportunity for a dual relationship with God because he was created from God, and with the world because he was also created from the earth.

4.3.4 The Entrance of Sin into Humanity

The entrance of sin into the angelic hosts resembles the entrance of sin into the human race. Man was created in God's image; creative and intellectual with the authority to rule over God's creation and the ability to discern and take decisions. God gave man one rule to provide the opportunity to operate in accordance with their God-like character. The opportunity of choice. God forbid man to eat from the "tree of knowledge of good and evil". This commandment is recorded in Genesis 2:17.

And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, "You may freely (unconditionally) eat [the fruit] from every tree of the garden;17 but [only] from the tree of the knowledge (recognition) of good and evil you shall not eat, otherwise on the day that you eat from it, you shall most certainly die [because of your disobedience]

Genesis 2:16-17 (AMP)

Genesis 3 gives account of Satan's temptation of man and their failure to adhere to the one Law God proclaimed. They chose *not* to be obedient. With this single act of disobedience sin entered humanity. Satan's own sin originated from within whereas man's transgression was a result of Satan's temptation. The temptation included all three spheres of man: spirit, soul and body.

- Temptation of the body: The lust of the flesh in the sense that the fruit addressed hunger and good taste.
- Temptation of the soul: The fruit looked delicious. (Lust of the eyes)

- Temptation in the spirit: The fruit presented to provide the ability to be like gods, providing wisdom to know good from evil resembles pride.

It is important to note that “temptation” is not sinful, but the yielding to temptation is sin. Conner³⁶⁵ argued the sin of man was similar to the sin of Satan in the following categories:

- Pride
- Covetousness or lust
- Self-will

This research argues that these categories of sin are still prevalent in contemporary South Africa. The freedom of choice and human rights protected in the National Constitution provide individuals the liberty to *lawfully* disobey the will of God. Disobedience to God does not equal disobedience to the Constitution and legislation. Several things forbidden in the Word of God may lawfully be practiced or implemented. The self-will of man carries more substance than the will of God. The will of God, the principles defined in the Holy Word of God is umpired as offensive, discriminative, sexist, gender insensitive, homophobic to name but a few. Pride in cultural inheritance and the constitutional right to pursue cultural practices for example the veneration of forefather spirits supersedes Godly principles. Chapter four elaborates on this statement.

4.3.5 The Condition of Man After the Fall of Adam: Consequences of Sin

Adam and Eve's capacity to choose provided an opportunity for the fourth person in the account of the creation. Satan disguised himself as a snake and lured Adam and Eve to eat from the forbidden fruit. Adam and Eve failed to make the

³⁶⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 145

right moral decision. Genesis 3:1³⁶⁶ describes the serpent as “more cunning (shrewd) than any other beast of the field.”

4.3.5.1 The Implication of the ‘First Adam’

Adam is the *prototype* of all mankind. The first Adam. Adam sinned and therefore all men sinned. Sin was thus projected onto all mankind, onto all the generations that was to follow. Sin birthed the judgement of God and His wrath unto all. The contaminated sinful character of man implies the validity of the *original sin* inherited from Adam as well as the *actual sin* every individual commit and are responsible for.

Wherefore, as by one-man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

Romans 5:12 (KJV)

If they sin against thee, (for there is no man that sinneth not,) and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that they carry them away captives unto the land of the enemy, far or near;

1 Kings 8:46 (KJV)

Man is not a sinner because he sins, but because he is a sinner. Man is also accountable to God for his sins. Though not the sins of his fathers.

In those days they shall say no more, The fathers have eaten a sour grape, and the children's teeth are set on edge. But every one shall die for his own iniquity: every man that eateth the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge.

Jeremiah 31:29-30 (KJV)

But as for them whose heart walketh after the heart of their detestable things and their abominations, I will recompense their way upon their own heads, saith the Lord God.

Ezekiel 11:21 (KJV)

³⁶⁶ Genesis 3:1 (KJV) Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die.

Ezekiel 18:4 (KJV)

The soul that sinneth, it shall die. The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son: the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him.

Ezekiel 18:20 (KJV)

The result of this rebellion effected every man born after Adam. The imputation of Adam's sin means that all people are guilty of Adam's first sin. Mankind also inherited a sinful nature. By nature, mankind is in bondage of sin. The Westminster Catechism³⁶⁷ Question 16 provides the following elucidation:

Since the covenant of life was made with Adam for his descendants as well as for himself, all mankind descending from him in the ordinary manner, sinned³⁶⁸ in him, and fell with him in his first transgression³⁶⁹

Since man was created as a triune being, the consequence of sin effects all three spheres. Man's entire nature corrupted. Every essence of man's creation in God's image was contaminated.

4.3.5.2 Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Spirit

The forbidden tree did not only test Adam and Eve's ability to make moral choices it also **"provided an opportunity for the intruder to impose a wedge between the first human beings and the God who formed them and loved them."**³⁷⁰

The continues spiritual fellowship between God and man immediately ended when Adam and Even disobeyed God. Man's spirit in essence died in accordance

³⁶⁷ Q16. The Westminster Catechism Available at: <https://matt2819.com/wsc/>

³⁶⁸ Sin: Strong's #H2403: An offence (sometimes habitual sinfulness). Strong's Concordance. Available at: www.e-sword.net

³⁶⁹ Transgression: Strong's #3845: Parabaino. Abandoning a trust, departing, stepping aside, overstep, violation, rebellion, aberration, apostacy, disobedience, deviation from an original and true direction. In order to go his own way. Judas abandoned his position of service as one of the Twelve. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1624

³⁷⁰ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 5

with God's warning:

“but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die.”

Genesis 2:17 (ESV)

God did not imply immediate physical death. God implied immediate spiritual death. The physical death of Adam and Eve only occurred 900 years later. Through the execution of their decision to disobey God, their disobedience resulted in their transformation. The supernatural gift of fellowship with God founded on faith and righteousness (right standing with God) were withdrawn by God. God who is righteous and just could not embrace man's iniquity in the same manner as before sin manifested. After Adam, man is estranged and hostile towards God. Spiritual death implies the separation of man's spirit with the spirit of God. This research already presented arguments and evidence promoting the theory that both God and man are primarily spiritual beings.

4.3.5.3 Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Soul

Adam and Eve forfeited their innocence. They became aware of their nakedness and they became ashamed.

Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.

Genesis 3:7 (ISV)

Adam and Eve now had the knowledge to discernment between good and evil. Regardless this discernment, they were corrupted and lost the ability to do good. Knowing good from evil did not prevent them to continue to do evil. As descendants from the first Adam, all of mankind bare the same consequence.

For I know that nothing good dwells in me, that is, in my flesh. For I have the desire to do what is right, but not the ability to carry it out. For I do not do the good I want, but the evil I do not want is what I keep on doing. Now if I do what I do not want, it is no longer I who do it, but sin that dwells within me. So I find it to be a law that when I want to do right, evil lies close at hand. For I delight in the law of God, in my inner being, but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my

mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members. Wretched man that I am! Who will deliver me from this body of death?

Romans 7:18-24 (ESV)

The law or reality of consciousness became effective immediately Adam and Eve sinned. They immediately presented excuses and accused one another.

For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)

Romans 2:14-15 (KJV)

And He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you that you should not eat?" Then the man said, "The woman whom You gave to be with me, she gave me of the tree, and I ate." And the Lord God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

Genesis 3:11-13 (NKJV)

Sin replaced love with fear. They forfeited their relationship with God and hid from His presence.

And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.

Genesis 3:8 (KJV)

Man's mind became self-centred, man's emotions uncontrolled and man's will objected against God.

The spirit of man is the lamp of the LORD, searching all his innermost parts.

Proverbs 20:27 (ESV)

God's love between God and man, and between man and women was converted from perfect love to perverted lust. Sexual sin is a result of this perverted love.

4.3.5.4 Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Body

The imputation of Adam's sin resulted in physical death. Death, sickness and

injury is evidence of sin. All of these are results of sin, the original sin as well as man's individual sin born from our sinful nature. Physical death implies the separation of body and spirit. Physical death is inevitable.

Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it.

Ecclesiastes 12:7 (KJV)

Man were created in God's image with the capacity for immortality.

And the LORD God said, Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil: and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever:

Genesis 3:22 (KJV)

For we have been consumed by Your anger, And by Your wrath we are terrified. You have set our iniquities before You, Our secret sins in the light of Your countenance. For all our days have passed away in Your wrath; We finish our years like a sigh. The days of our lives are seventy years; And if by reason of strength they are eighty years, Yet their boast is only labor and sorrow; For it is soon cut off, and we fly away. Who knows the power of Your anger? For as the fear of You, so is Your wrath.

Psalms 90:7-11 (NKJV)

Sinned destroyed this dimension. The penalty for sin is death.

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

Romans 5:12-14 (KJV)

But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

Genesis 2:17 (KJV)

For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Romans 6:23 (KJV)

Eternal death is the eternal separation of spirit and soul from God in the Lake of Fire.

"Death is not cessation of existence, nor annihilation, but eternal separation from God because of sin."³⁷¹

³⁷¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 150

Biblical confirmation for this statement is found in Matthew 25:41

And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. But rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

Matthew 25:41 (ESV)

4.3.5.5 Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Authority

Richards³⁷² summarised the consequences of doing evil as follows:

- Biological death
- Death as separation from God
- Guilt and shame
- Broken relationships
- Death passed to humanity

4.3.6 The Redeemed Condition of Man: The Effect of Christ's Salvation

4.3.6.1 The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Spirit

Fellowship with the Holy Spirit through Jesus Christ was reinstated.

But God, who is rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved),

Ephesians 2:4-5 (NKJV)

The disgrace and ignominy as a result of man's trespasses and iniquities were transferred to Christ who was sinless and pure. In doing so, Christ restored man's blameless appearance before God. Christ was a propitiatory victim. Expiation was established by Christ's sacrifice. Salvation established by Christ is divided into redemption in His death and redemption in His' resurrection. In the former

³⁷² Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 11

death was annihilated, and by the latter righteousness was restored and life renewed.

herefore, as through one man's offense judgment came to all men, resulting in condemnation, even so through one Man's righteous act the free gift came to all men, resulting in justification of life. For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so also by one Man's obedience many will be made righteous.

Romans 5:18-19 (NKJV)

4.3.6.2 The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Soul

- Mind of Christ

The elementary application of the having the mind of Christ is to convert own thoughts and ideas to align with Biblical guidelines. It also incorporates a desire to bring glory to God, to convey the gospel of Christ to unbelievers, to have compassion for others, to continually pray and seek God's guidance. The fruit of the Spirit bares evidence of the mind of Christ.

- Acknowledge battlefield of the mind

Satan successfully deceived man with the enticement of more knowledge obtainable from the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. This was a pinnacle moment in the history of man. Ever since, Satan strategized to entice mankind with knowledge to doubt God's word.

4.3.6.3 The Effect of Christ's Salvation Pertaining to Man's Body

Delivered from sin, man's body becomes temples for the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Paul also motivate believers to become instruments of righteousness in

their success to rule over the sin and living holy lives. (Romans 6:13)³⁷³. Whilst justification is provided by and through Christ alone, His work in believers lead them to part take in their sanctification and growth in holiness through their ability to discern and avoid sin in them dstrive to become holy for He is holy. (1 Peter 1:16)³⁷⁴

Due to the fact that Christ reconciled man with God, the original order is restored:

Through Jesus God reconciled Himself with man and simultaneously restored His original order: God had communion with man's spirit and man's spirit inspired his soul after which his soul instructed his body.

4.3.6.4 The Effect of Christ's Salvation to Eternal Death

Eternal separation cancelled in Christ.

Jesus Christ removed the sin barrier between man and God. He provided the only avenue for forgiveness. Forgiven implies justification³⁷⁵ and as a result, provided justification, regeneration and sanctified.

4.3.6.5 Consequence of Sin Pertaining to Man's Authority

Re-instated in Christ

Before Jesus' crucifixion, Satan was referred to as "the ruler of the word." (John 12:31³⁷⁶, 14:30³⁷⁷, 16:11³⁷⁸). The death and resurrection of Chris implied the

³⁷³ Romans 6:13 (NKJV) And do not present your members *as* instruments of unrighteousness to sin, but present yourselves to God as being alive from the dead, and your members *as* instruments of righteousness to God.

³⁷⁴ 1 Peter 1:16 (NKJV) because it is written, "Be holy, for I am holy."

³⁷⁵ Justification: "to pronounce, accept and treat as righteous, and not liable, and, on the other hand, entitled to all privileges due to those who have kept the laws". Anders, Max (1995) *Jesus. Knowing our Saviour*. Thomas Nelson. P. 77

³⁷⁶ John 12:31 (NKJV) Now is the judgment of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out.

³⁷⁷ John 14:30 (NKJV) I will no longer talk much with you, for the ruler of this world is coming, and he has nothing in Me.

³⁷⁸ John 16:11 (NKJV) of judgment, because the ruler of this world is judged.

transferral of the authority Satan had to Jesus Christ.

His mighty power which He worked in Christ when He raised Him from the dead and seated Him at His right hand in the heavenly places, far above all principality and power and might and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this age but also in that which is to come.

Ephesians 1:20-23 (NKJV)

Through the indwelling of the Holy Spirit the authority of Jesus becomes the authority of believers in Christ.

You are of God, little children, and have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

1 John 4:4 (NKJV)

4.4 The Fourth Introduction: Satan and His Entourage of Fallen Angels

The fourth and final introduction relating to the entities of Genesis is Satan. The existence of Satan is an accepted reality in the Bible: seven³⁷⁹ of the thirty-nine books of the Old Testament and nineteen³⁸⁰ of the twenty-seven books of the New Testament refers to Satan. Although not mentioned in every book of the New Testament, it is noteworthy that the New Testament referrals represent every author of the New Testament. Jesus Christ's revelations of Satan count to twenty-four of the total twenty-nine references in the four Gospels.

Three common misinterpretation with regards to Satan according to Dr. Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum³⁸¹ is firstly the ***reality of his personality of being*** on not only an evil principle, secondly the indictment that Satan is responsible for every sin

³⁷⁹ Seven Old Testament Books referring to Satan: Genesis, 1 Chronicles, Job, Psalms, Isaiah, Ezekiel and Zechariah.

³⁸⁰ Nineteen New Testament Books referring to Satan: Matthew, Mark, Luke, John, Acts, Romans, I and II Corinthians, Ephesians, I and II Thessalonians, I and II Timothy, Hebrews, James, I Peter, I John, Jude and Revelations.

³⁸¹ Fruchtenbaum, Arnold G. Dr. *Satanology: The Doctrine of Satan*. (MBS077) Ariel Ministries Digital Press. P. 6 Available at: <http://www.arielcontent.org/dcs/pdf/mbs077m.pdf>

in every individual and deserves the blame for all sin. Thirdly the accusation that Satan is the root cause of every physical and mental disorder.

4.4.1 The Definition of Satan

Strong H#7854 concordance defines Satan as follows:

“Satan (sah-tahn): An opponent, or the Opponent, the hater, the accuser, adversary, enemy, one who resist, obstructs, and hinders whatever is good. Satan comes from the verb which means “to be an opponent” or “to withstand”. As a noun, Satan can describe any “opponent”³⁸² However, when the form ha-satan (the Adversary) occurs, the translation is usually “Satan”, not his name, but his accurate description: hateful enemy. Since Satan is the Hater, he is all the more opposed to God, who is love (John 3:10-15)³⁸³. Mankind did not witness Satan’s beginning, but by God’s design shall see his end, one of ceaseless torment and humiliation. (Isaiah 14:12-20³⁸⁴, Ezekiel 28:16-19³⁸⁵; Revelation 20:10³⁸⁶)”³⁸⁷

³⁸² 2 Samuel 19:21-22 (NKJV) But Abishai the son of Zeruiah answered and said, “Shall not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed the LORD’s anointed?” And David said, “What have I to do with you, you sons of Zeruiah, that you should be adversaries to me today? Shall any man be put to death today in Israel? For do I not know that today I *am* king over Israel?”

³⁸³ John 3:10-15 (NKJV) Jesus answered and said to him, “Are you the teacher of Israel, and do not know these things? Most assuredly, I say to you, We speak what We know and testify what We have seen, and you do not receive Our witness. If I have told you earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you heavenly things? No one has ascended to heaven but He who came down from heaven, *that is*, the Son of Man who is in heaven. And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have eternal life.

³⁸⁴ Isaiah 14:12-20 (NKJV) “How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! *How* you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: ‘I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High. ‘Yet you shall be brought down to Sheol, To the lowest depths of the Pit. “Those who see you will gaze at you, *And* consider you, *saying*: ‘Is this the man who made the earth tremble, Who shook kingdoms, Who made the world as a wilderness *And* destroyed its cities, *Who* did not open the house of his prisoners?’ “All the kings of the nations, All of them, sleep in glory, Everyone in his own house; But you are cast out of your grave Like an abominable branch, *Like* the garment of those who are slain, Thrust through with a sword, Who go down to the stones of the pit, Like a corpse trodden underfoot. You will not be joined with them in burial, Because you have destroyed your land *And* slain your people. The brood of evildoers shall never be named.

³⁸⁵ Ezekiel 28:16-19 (NKJV) “By the abundance of your trading You became filled with violence within, *And* you sinned; Therefore I cast you as a profane thing Out of the mountain of God; *And* I destroyed you, O covering cherub, From the midst of the fiery stones. “Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor; I cast you to the ground, I laid you before kings, That they might gaze at you. “You defiled your sanctuaries By the multitude of your iniquities, By the iniquity of your trading; Therefore I brought fire from your midst; It devoured you, *And* I turned you to ashes upon the earth In the sight of all who saw you. All who knew you among the peoples are astonished at you; You have become a horror, *And shall be* no more forever.”

³⁸⁶ Revelation 20:10 (NKJV) The devil, who deceived them, was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone where the beast and the false prophet *are*. *And* they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

³⁸⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers

4.4.2 The Origin of Satan

Most research claim that no evidence can be presented of what existed before the creation narrative in Genesis one. Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand³⁸⁸ provided insight into the mystery:

“In the beginning there was a great interval between the first and second verses of Genesis one. In the beginning there was a perfect creation. How long this creation lasted, is unknown. What is known is that God placed a mighty and magnificent being to rule and govern in His name. God created this being with more power and beauty than He ever gave to any other. The spirit being was named Lucifer the ‘Son of the morning’. He ruled for God as prophet, priest and king. How long this righteous government in full obedience to the single will of God endured is unknown.”

Regardless numerous references to Satan, the Bible does not present a precise and complete doctrine of satanology³⁸⁹ or demonology³⁹⁰. The Bible does however contain a vast amount of information with regards to Satan, evil angels, demons and evil spirits. Two main passages of scriptures detailing Satan's origin are Ezekiel 28:14-15³⁹¹ which introduces Lucifer and Isaiah 14:4-23³⁹² who

³⁸⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity-involving the Theodicy of Darkness*. Philosophiae Doctor at the Calvary University. P. 7

³⁸⁹ Satanology: The doctrine of Satan. Available at: <https://www.biblestudytools.com/topical-verses/archangel-gabriel-in-the-bible/>

³⁹⁰ Demonology: The doctrine of Fallen Angels. Available at: <https://www.biblestudytools.com/topical-verses/archangel-gabriel-in-the-bible/>

³⁹¹ Ezekiel 28:14-15 (NKJV) “You *were* the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones. You *were* perfect in your ways from the day you were created, Till iniquity was found in you.

³⁹² Isaiah 14:4-23 (NKJV) that you will take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: “How the oppressor has ceased, The golden city ceased! The LORD has broken the staff of the wicked, The scepter of the rulers; He who struck the people in wrath with a continual stroke, He who ruled the nations in anger, Is persecuted *and* no one hinders. The whole earth is at rest *and* quiet; They break forth into singing. Indeed the cypress trees rejoice over you, *And* the cedars of Lebanon, *Saying*, ‘Since you were cut down, No woodsman has come up against us.’ “Hell from beneath is excited about you, To meet *you* at your coming; It stirs up the dead for you, All the chief ones of the earth; It has raised up from their thrones All the kings of the nations. They all shall speak and say to you: ‘Have you also become as weak as we? Have you become like us? Your pomp is brought down to Sheol, *And* the sound of your stringed instruments; The maggot is spread under you, And worms cover you.’ “How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! *How* you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: ‘I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.’ Yet you shall be brought down to Sheol, To the lowest depths of the Pit. “Those who see you will gaze at you, *And* consider you, *saying*: ‘Is this the man who made the earth tremble, Who shook kingdoms, Who made the world as a wilderness *And* destroyed its cities, *Who* did not

introduces the King of Tyre. The general accepted facts are: God existed from eternity, God created the angels, including Satan prior to creating the universe and man. God created Satan originally as a powerful and marvellous angel. Ezekiel described Satan as a cherub, an angel of the highest order. Goodness was portrayed in his original name Lucifer meaning "morning star" or "day star". He was perfect until iniquity corrupted his character.

You were anointed as a guardian cherub, for so I ordained you. You were on the holy mount of God; you walked among the fiery stones. You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created till wickedness was found in you

Ezekiel 28:14-15 (NIV)

Paul Richards³⁹³ concluded the following pertaining to Lucifer:

- He is a created being.
- He was one of the more powerful angels called cherubs.
- He is an angelic being, belonging to the spiritual realm.
- He was created perfect, therefore holy and in harmony with God.
- He sinned. Iniquity was found in him.

4.4.3 Biblical Names of Satan

Dr. Lester Sumrall³⁹⁴ from the Indiana University developed a study guide where he presented the Biblical names of Satan:

open the house of his prisoners?" "All the kings of the nations, All of them, sleep in glory, Everyone in his own house; But you are cast out of your grave Like an abominable branch, *Like* the garment of those who are slain, Thrust through with a sword, Who go down to the stones of the pit, Like a corpse trodden underfoot. You will not be joined with them in burial, Because you have destroyed your land *And* slain your people. The brood of evildoers shall never be named. Prepare slaughter for his children Because of the iniquity of their fathers, Lest they rise up and possess the land, And fill the face of the world with cities." "For I will rise up against them," says the LORD of hosts, "And cut off from Babylon the name and remnant, And offspring and posterity," says the LORD. "I will also make it a possession for the porcupine, And marshes of muddy water; I will sweep it with the broom of destruction," says the LORD of hosts.

³⁹³ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 8

³⁹⁴ Sumrall, Lester Dr. (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance. God's Power & Authority over Principalities & Powers*. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing.

- The Prince of the Air

in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient.

Ephesians 2:2 (NIV)

And He said to them, "I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven.

Luke 10:18 (NKJV)

He even exalted himself as high as the Prince of the host; and by him the daily sacrifices were taken away, and the place of His sanctuary was cast down.

Daniel 8:11 (NKJV)

- Prince of the World

So, when he had gone out, Jesus said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in Him.

John 13:31 (NKJV)

of judgment, because the ruler of this world is judged.

John 16:11 (NKJV)

- Prince of Darkness

For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.

Ephesians 6:12 (NIV)

But when the Pharisees heard this, they said, "It is only by Beelzebul, the prince of demons, that this fellow drives out demons."

Matthew 12:24 (NIV)

- God of this World

Knowing that he which raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present us with you.

2 Corinthians 4:14 (KJV)

- He is King

And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.

Revelation 9:11 (KJV)

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

- The Anointed Cherub

Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire.

Ezekiel 28:14 (KJV)

- An angel of light

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.

2 Corinthians 11:14 (KJV)

- Lucifer

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!

Isaiah 14:12 (KJV)

- Devil

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:9 (KJV)

- Dragon

And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.

Revelation 12:3 (KJV)

- Satan

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them.

Job 1:6 (KJV)

- Serpent

But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

2 Corinthians 11:3 (KJV)

- Beelzebub

It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how

much more shall they call them of his household?

Matthew 10:25 (KJV)

But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils.

Matthew 12:24 (KJV)

- Belial

And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel?

2 Corinthians 6:15 (KJV)

- Adversary

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

1 Peter 5:8 (KJV)

- Accuser of the brethren

And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

Revelation 12:10 (KJV)

And the LORD said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Job 1:7 (KJV)

- The enemy

The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels.

Matthew 13:39 (KJV)

- The Tempter

And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread.

Matthew 4:3 (KJV)

- The wicked one

When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth it not, then cometh the wicked one, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side.

Matthew 13:19 (KJV)

- The thief

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10 (KJV)

- Murder

Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him.

John 8:44a (KJV)

- A roaring lion

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

1 Peter 5:8 (KJV)

- A liar

Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

John 8:44 (KJV)

- An oppressor

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

Acts 10:38 (KJV)

- The corrupter of minds

For such are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ.

2 Corinthians 11:13 (KJV)

- Abaddon – Apollyon

And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.

Revelation 9:11 (KJV)

4.4.4 Prior to Sin: The Meaning and Character of Lucifer

Ezekiel 28 portrays Lucifer's one beautiful character in full:

“Moreover the word of the LORD came to me, saying, “Son of man, take up a lamentation for the king of Tyre, and say to him, ‘Thus says the Lord GOD:

“You were the seal of perfection, Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The sardius, topaz, and diamond, Beryl, onyx, and jasper, Sapphire, turquoise, and emerald with gold.

The workmanship of your timbrels and pipes Was prepared for you on the day you were created.

“You were the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones. You were perfect in your ways from the day you were created, Till iniquity was found in you.”

Ezekiel

According to Fruchtenbaum,³⁹⁵ the Hebrew expression translated as ***‘sealed up the sum’*** means to ***‘fill of a pattern’*** or ***‘to fill up a blueprint’***.

God filled up the two areas of wisdom³⁹⁶ and beauty³⁹⁷ with the creation of Lucifer – off all the created beings, he was the wisest and most beautiful.

Secondly, Lucifer was bestowed with precious stones making him the ‘shining one’. He was also the custodian of the timbrels (tabrets) and pipes and as such he orchestrated the heavenly worship before God’s throne.

God created angelic beings in a hierarchy and order: the lowest level known as angels with Michael the chief or archangel. Thereafter followed the Seraphs or Seraphim’s and lastly with the highest order was the Cherubs. Lucifer was not only created in the highest angelic order, but he is also referred to as ‘an anointed’ cherub, acknowledging his authority over the cherubs as Michael has authority over the angels. ***‘Perfect in your ways’*** reflect on Lucifer being perfect in every way.

³⁹⁵ Fruchtenbaum, Arnold G Dr. *Satanology: The Doctrine of Satan*. (MBS077) Ariel Ministries Digital Press. P. 7. Available at: <http://www.arielcontent.org/dcs/pdf/mbs077m.pdf>

³⁹⁶ Wisdom: Chokmâh, (khok-maw) Strong’s Dictionary #H2449: Wisdom (in a good sense): Skilful, wisdom, wisely, wit.

³⁹⁷ Beauty: Yophi, (yoh-fee) Strong’s Dictionary #3308: Beauty, splendour, brightness, fairness, perfect in physical form, flawless in symmetry. Derived from the verb yaphah, ‘to be beautiful, lovely, fair and graceful.’

Kevin Conner³⁹⁸ construed Lucifer's original character as follows: **He was called Lucifer, the Day Star, the Shining One, the Light-bearer.**

- He was called Son of the Mornings because of his brightness.
- He was full of beauty and wisdom. Nothing could be hidden from him.
- He was in Eden, the Garden of God.
- Every precious stone was in his covering, as the colours of the rainbow for beauty.
- His ministry was in the area of music for the workmanship of his pipes and tabrets was in him from the day he was created³⁹⁹.
- He was the anointed Cherub and guardian of the throne of God.
- He was in the Holy Mountain of God and given a high position in heaven as a created being.
- He walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire, the fire of God's holiness.
- He was perfect in all his ways from the day he was created.

In addition to Conner's list, the author added the following attributes:

- Lucifer in an intellectual entity as portrayed in his debate with God concerning Job (Job 1 and 2)
- Lucifer portrays emotion in pride and wrath or anger. (Revelation 12:12,17⁴⁰⁰)

³⁹⁸ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 141

³⁹⁹ Ezekiel 28:13 (KJV) Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created.

⁴⁰⁰ Revelation 12:12,17 (KJV) Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time. And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.

4.4.5 The Origin of Sin: Satan the Original Sinner

He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning.

1 John 3:8 (NKJV)

From 1 John 3:8⁴⁰¹ Kevin Conner⁴⁰² summarised Satan as the original sinner as follows:

“He is the author and originator of all sin, the beginning of sin, sin personified, the first and original sinner. Human history and man’s conscience bear testimony to sin’s reality. The Scriptures show that sin entered the universe through Satan and then into the human race with the fall of Adam and Eve,

The Bible reveals the essence of sin to be self-centeredness and is tragic result to be death, but it also reveals God’s redemptive plan in Christ to make an end of sin for eternity.”

God created Lucifer as an angelic free-will being with the ability the make autonomous decisions, likewise the angels and man. Iniquity was found in him. His character was corrupted with pride and rebellion against God. Dr. Fruchtenbaum⁴⁰³ provided an elucidation on the mystery of sin and pride in the ‘perfect created’ Lucifer:

“God created him without a single flaw. He was so perfect that he had a unique ability, an ability called ‘the power of contrary choice,’ the ability to choose contrary to one’s nature. God does not have that ability which is why God cannot sin; He cannot go contrary to His divine nature. Satan had the power of contrary choice. He was holy and perfect, but he had the capacity to make an imperfect and unholy choice. “

“Human history and man’s conscience bear testimony to sin’s reality. The Scriptures show that sin entered the universe through Satan and then into the human race with the fall of Adam and Eve, The Bible reveals the essence of sin to be self-centeredness and is tragic result to be death, but it also reveals God’s redemptive plan in Christ to make an end of sin for eternity.”⁴⁰⁴

⁴⁰¹ 1 John 3:8 (NKJV) He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

⁴⁰² Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 142 and P. 131

⁴⁰³ Fruchtenbaum, Arnold G Dr. *Satanology: The Doctrine of Satan*. (MBS077) Ariel Ministries Digital Press. P. 8. Available at: <http://www.arielcontent.org/dcs/pdf/mbs077m.pdf>

⁴⁰⁴ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 131

Paul's letter to the Thessalonians presents insight into the mystery of the origin of inequity after Satan was created with such glory:

The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders

2 Thessalonians 2:9 (NKJV)

Additional scriptures confirm his sin:

He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning.

1 John 3:8 (NKJV)

"By the abundance of your trading You became filled with violence within, And you sinned; Therefore I cast you as a profane thing Out of the mountain of God; And I destroyed you, O covering cherub, From the midst of the fiery stones.

Ezekiel 28:16 (KJV)

You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you want to do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.

John 8:44 (NKJV)

4.4.6 The Nature of Satan's Sin

After his fall Lucifer became Satan; the 'accuser' or the 'adversary'. The prophet Isaiah defined Satan's transgression by five "I will" statements:

***How you have fallen from heaven, morning star, son of the dawn! You have been cast down to the earth, you who once laid low the nations! You said in your heart,
I will ascend to the heavens;
I will raise my throne above the stars of God;
I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly, on the utmost heights of Mount Zaphon.
I will ascend above the tops of the clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High***

Isaiah 14:12-15 (NIV)

Satan's pride entrenched character made him believe that he is worthy of these heavenly attributes. Isaiah's statements can be interpreted as follows:

- **Ascend to the heavens:** To be ascended from a lower realm to a higher realm. To be higher than other created beings. Heavens are the territory of authority, rulership and power.
- **Raise a throne:** 'Star' symbolises angels, whether fallen or unfallen. (Job 38:7⁴⁰⁵, Jude 13⁴⁰⁶, Revelations 1:20⁴⁰⁷) This statement reflects his opinion that he is worthy of a throne symbolising authority to rule with judgement. To exalt his leadership above other angels. A throne also symbolises worthiness of honour and accolades.
- **Sit enthroned on the mount:** A desire to be worshipped in the congregation. Psalm 48:1-2⁴⁰⁸ narrates the congregation of Israel gathering on mount Zion to worship God in the Millennial Kingdom.
- This is of great relevance for it affirms Satan's agenda to lure worship from believers away from God to himself. His aim to replace God's throne in the midst of the congregation of believers with his own thrown. This statement exposes Satan's strategy aimed to nullify God and mislead believers in Christ specifically and to become the messianic ruler over Israel.
- **Ascend above the tops of the clouds:** 'Clouds' resembles the *Shechinah Glory*⁴⁰⁹ of God. (Exodus 16:10⁴¹⁰, 40:34-38⁴¹¹, Matthew 26:64⁴¹²). Satan desires the unique Glory belonging to God. The statement also reflects self-

⁴⁰⁵ Job 38:7 (KJV) When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

⁴⁰⁶ Jude 13 (KJV) Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever.

⁴⁰⁷ Revelations 1:20 (KJV) The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.

⁴⁰⁸ Psalm 48:1-2 (KJV) Great is the LORD, and greatly to be praised in the city of our God, in the mountain of his holiness. Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is mount Zion, on the sides of the north, the city of the great King.

⁴⁰⁹ Shechinah Glory. The Hebrew expression for the presence of God dwelling on earth. Available at: <https://www.compellingtruth.org/shekinah-glory.html>

⁴¹⁰ Exodus 16:10 (KJV) And it came to pass, as Aaron spake unto the whole congregation of the children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, the glory of the LORD appeared in the cloud.

⁴¹¹ Exodus 40:34-38 (KJV) Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle. And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle. And when the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the children of Israel went onward in all their journeys: But if the cloud were not taken up, then they journeyed not till the day that it was taken up. For the cloud of the LORD was upon the tabernacle by day, and fire was on it by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel, throughout all their journeys.

⁴¹² Matthew 26:64 (KJV) Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

dependence and self-ascension, independence and self-sufficiency. God as sustainer of life is not only replaced, but annulled.

- ***Make myself like the Most High*** Most-high reflects God as the possessor of the heavens and the earth. (Genesis 14:18-19)⁴¹³. The statement reflects his admission that no one or nothing is higher than God – the *most-high* and it mirror Satan's desire to rule over all of God's creation. It also implies self-deification worthy of worship. The statement boldly illustrated his pride in his desire to be equal to the One who is higher than everything and everyone.

God created Satan with the ability to make autonomous decisions, likewise the angels and man. Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand⁴¹⁴ elaborates on Satan's downfall.

“Then came a time when this being was filled with pride, because of this power and attainments, entertained the thought in his heart that he could govern independently from God. He therefore proclaimed that he would set up an independent rule. A rule whereupon a multitude of the angelic beings of heaven decided to follow his rule and join him in his rebellion against God.”

Scripture support Prof. Dr. Brand's interpretation:

Through your widespread trade you were filled with violence, and you sinned. So I drove you in disgrace from the mount of God, and I expelled you, guardian cherub, from among the fiery stones. Your heart became proud on account of your beauty and you corrupted your wisdom because of your splendour. So I threw you to the earth; I made a spectacle of you before kings. By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuaries.

Ezekiel 28:16-18 (NIV)

Conner⁴¹⁵ narrowed Satan's sin to the three elements of pride, covetousness or lust and self-will. From these three elements he concluded the following:⁴¹⁶

⁴¹³ Genesis 14:18-19 (KJV) And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God. And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth:

⁴¹⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity-involving the Theodicy of Darkness*. Philosophiae Doctor at the Calvary University. P. 8

⁴¹⁵ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 8

⁴¹⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 144

“From being God-centred, Lucifer became self-centred, self-directing, self-reliant and self-supporting. He became selfishness personified. He turned in upon himself. Beholding his own beauty, wisdom, anointing and ministry, he was lifted up in pride, forgetting that all he had was God-given. He then coveted a higher position, even God’s. With this, he set his will against God’s will and fell.”⁴¹⁷

Satan’s pride originated from his perfect beauty and brightness, and pride corrupted his wisdom.

4.4.7 Results of Satan’s Sin

4.4.7.1 Lucifer’s Name Changed: The Meaning of Satan

After his downfall, Lucifer’s name changed to “the evil one”. Satan means adversary – the enemy of God and humanity. The Strong’s concordance defines Satan as follows:

“Satan (sah-than) #7854:

An opponent, or the Opponent; the hater, the accuser, adversary, enemy, one who resist, obstructs, and hinders whatever is good. Satan derives from the verb which means “to be an opponent” or “to withstand”. As a noun, Satan can describe any “opponent” 2 Samuel 19:21-22. However, when the form ha-satan (the Adversary) occurs, the translation is usually “Satan”, not his name, but his accurate description: hateful enemy. Since Satan is the Hater, he is all the more opposed to God, who is love (see John 3:10-15⁴¹⁸, 4:7-8⁴¹⁹). Mankind did not witness Satan’s beginning, but by God’s design shall see his end, one of ceaseless torment and humiliation. (Isaiah 14:12-20⁴²⁰, Ezekiel

⁴¹⁷ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 144

⁴¹⁸ John 3:10-15 (NKJV) Jesus answered and said to him, “Are you the teacher of Israel, and do not know these things? Most assuredly, I say to you, We speak what We know and testify what We have seen, and you do not receive Our witness. If I have told you earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you heavenly things? No one has ascended to heaven but He who came down from heaven, *that is*, the Son of Man who is in heaven. And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have eternal life.

⁴¹⁹ John 4:7-8 (NKJV) A woman of Samaria came to draw water. Jesus said to her, “Give Me a drink.” For His disciples had gone away into the city to buy food.

⁴²⁰ Isaiah 14:12-20 (NKJV) “How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! *How* you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: ‘I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.’ Yet you shall be brought down to Sheol, To the lowest depths of the Pit. “Those who see you will gaze at you, *And* consider you, *saying*: ‘Is this the man who made the earth tremble, Who shook kingdoms,

28:16-19⁴²¹; Revelations 20:10⁴²²)⁴²³

Four primary names are found in the Bible:

I Satan

Satan is used nineteen times in the Hebrew Old Testament and the alternative 'Satanas' is used thirty-six times in the Greek New Testament text.

II Devil

The Greek translation 'diabolos' meaning accuser, slanderer or the one who trips up is used thirty-five times.

III Belial

Belial meaning 'worthlessness' is used by God in 2 Corinthians 6:15⁴²⁴ describing Satan.

IV Beelzebub

The fourth name originated from the Hebrew BaalZviw, literally meaning 'The Lord of the Flies' the Philistine's god Ekron. (2 Kings 1:2,3,6⁴²⁵). New Testament

Who made the world as a wilderness And destroyed its cities, *Who* did not open the house of his prisoners? 'All the kings of the nations, All of them, sleep in glory, Everyone in his own house; But you are cast out of your grave Like an abominable branch, *Like* the garment of those who are slain, Thrust through with a sword, Who go down to the stones of the pit, Like a corpse trodden underfoot. You will not be joined with them in burial, Because you have destroyed your land *And* slain your people. The brood of evildoers shall never be named.

⁴²¹ Ezekiel 28:16-19 (NKJV) "By the abundance of your trading You became filled with violence within, And you sinned; Therefore I cast you as a profane thing Out of the mountain of God; And I destroyed you, O covering cherub, From the midst of the fiery stones. "Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor; I cast you to the ground, I laid you before kings, That they might gaze at you. "You defiled your sanctuaries By the multitude of your iniquities, By the iniquity of your trading; Therefore I brought fire from your midst; It devoured you, And I turned you to ashes upon the earth In the sight of all who saw you. All who knew you among the peoples are astonished at you; You have become a horror, And *shall be* no more forever." ' ' "

⁴²² Revelations 20:10 (NKJV) The devil, who deceived them, was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone where the beast and the false prophet *are*. And they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

⁴²³ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 710

⁴²⁴ 2 Corinthians 6:15 (KJV) And what accord has Christ with Belial? Or what part has a believer with an unbeliever?

⁴²⁵ 2 Kings 1:2 (NKJV) Now Ahaziah fell through the lattice of his upper room in Samaria, and was injured; so he sent messengers and said to them, "Go, inquire of Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I shall recover from this injury."

2 Kings 1:3 (NKJV) But the angel of the LORD said to Elijah the Tishbite, "Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and say to them, '*Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to inquire of Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?*'"

Greek uses Beelzebul (Matthew 10:25⁴²⁶, Mark 3:22⁴²⁷, Luke 11:15⁴²⁸) means 'The Lord of the Palace.' Jewish Rabbis changed the name of Beelzebul to Beelzebub to indicate the disrespect of the god Ekron. In the New Testament the name was translated to Satan.

Biblical names reflect on Satan's character and function or purpose. Dr. Lester Sumrall⁴²⁹ from the Indiana University developed a study guide where he introduced Satan's character and purpose according to Biblical names bestowed to him:

Titles of Satan	
Day-star, Son of the morning	<p><i>"How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations!</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Isaiah 14:12 (NKJV)</i></p>
The Destroyer: Abaddon/ Apollyon	<p><i>And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Revelations 9:11 (KJV)</i></p>
The Prince of the Air	<p><i>in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience,</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Ephesians 2:2 (NKJV)</i></p>

2 Kings 1:6 (NKJV) So they said to him, "A man came up to meet us, and said to us, 'Go, return to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Thus says the Lord: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are sending to inquire of Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you shall not come down from the bed to which you have gone up, but you shall surely die.'

⁴²⁶ Matthew 10:25 (KJV) It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more shall they call them of his household?

⁴²⁷ Mark 3:22 (KJV) And the scribes which came down from Jerusalem said, He hath Beelzebub, and by the prince of the devils casteth he out devils.

⁴²⁸ Luke 11:15 (KJV) But some of them said, He casteth out devils through Beelzebub the chief of the devils.

⁴²⁹ Sumrall, Lester Dr. (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance. God's Power & Authority over Principalities & Powers*. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing.

	<p>And He said to them, "I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Luke 10:18 (NKJV)</p> <p>He even exalted himself as high as the Prince of the host; and by him the daily sacrifices were taken away, and the place of His sanctuary was cast down.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Daniel 8:11 (NKJV)</p>
The God of this Age	<p>whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">2 Corinthians 4:4 (NKJV)</p>
Prince of the World	<p>So, when he had gone out, Jesus said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in Him.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 13:31 (NKJV)</p> <p>of judgment, because the ruler of this world is judged.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 16:11 (NKJV)</p>
Prince of Darkness	<p>For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)</p>
	<p>Now when the Pharisees heard it they said, This fellow does not cast out demons except by Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons."</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Matthew 12:24 (NKJV)</p>
The Prince of Demons	<p>Then the Pharisees went out and plotted against Him, how they might destroy Him.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Matthew 12:14 (NKJV)</p>

	<p><i>But some of them said, "He casts out demons by Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons."</i></p> <p><i>Luke 11:15 (NKJV)</i></p>
The evil one	<p><i>And do not lead us into temptation, But deliver us from the evil one. For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.</i></p> <p><i>Matthew 6:13 (NKJV)</i></p> <p><i>I do not pray that You should take them out of the world, but that You should keep them from the evil one.</i></p> <p><i>John 17:15 (NKJV)</i></p>
God of this World	<p><i>knowing that He who raised up the Lord Jesus will also raise us up with Jesus, and will present us with you.</i></p> <p><i>2 Corinthians 4:14 (NKJV)</i></p>
He is King	<p><i>And they had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in Hebrew is Abaddon, but in Greek he has the name Apollyon.</i></p> <p><i>Revelations 9:11 (NKJV)</i></p> <p><i>For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but gainst principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.</i></p> <p><i>Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)</i></p>
The Anointed Cherub	<p><i>"You were the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones.</i></p> <p><i>Ezekiel 28:14 (NKJV)</i></p>
An angel of light	<p><i>And no wonder! For Satan himself transforms himself into an angel of light.</i></p> <p><i>2 Corinthians 11:14 (NKJV)</i></p>

Lucifer	<p><i>How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!</i></p> <p><i>Isaiah 14:12 (KJV)</i></p>
Devil	<p><i>And the great dragon was thrown down, that ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world—he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.</i></p> <p><i>Revelation 12:9 (ESV)</i></p>
Dragon	<p><i>And another sign appeared in heaven: behold, a great, fiery red dragon having seven heads and ten horns, and seven diadems on his heads.</i></p> <p><i>Revelation 12:3 (NKJV)</i></p>
Satan	<p><i>Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them.</i></p> <p><i>Job 1:6 (NKJV)</i></p>
Serpent	<p><i>But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.</i></p> <p><i>2 Corinthians 11:3 (NKJV)</i></p>
Beelzebub	<p><i>It is enough for a disciple that he be like his teacher, and a servant like his master. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more will they call those of his household!</i></p> <p><i>Matthew 10:25 (NKJV)</i></p> <p><i>Now when the Pharisees heard it they said, “This fellow does not cast out demons except by Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons.”</i></p> <p><i>Matthew 12:24 (NKJV)</i></p>

Belial	<p>What harmony can there be between Christ and Belial (Satan)? Or what does a believer have in common with an unbeliever?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">2 Corinthians 6:15 (AMP)</p>
The king of Tyre	<p>Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ezekiel 28:11-12 (KJV)</p>
The king of Babylon	<p>That thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say, How hath the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased!</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Isaiah 14:4(KJV)</p>

Table 8: Biblical names of Satan

Function or Purpose	
Adversary	<p>Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">1 Peter 5:8 (KJV)</p>
Accuser of the brethren	<p>And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Revelation 12:10 (KJV)</p> <p>And the LORD said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the</p>

	<p>LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.</p> <p>Job 1:7 (KJV)</p>
The enemy	<p>and the enemy who sowed them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are angels.</p> <p>Matthew 13:39 (ESV)</p>
The Tempter	<p>The tempter came to him and said, "If you are the Son of God, tell these stones to become bread."</p> <p>Matthew 4:3 (NIV)</p>
The Deceiver	<p>And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.</p> <p>Revelation 12:9 (KJV)</p>
The wicked one	<p>When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand it, then the wicked one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is he who received seed by the wayside.</p> <p>Matthew 13:19 (NKJV)</p>
The thief	<p>The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have life and have it abundantly.</p> <p>John 10:10 (ESV)</p>
Murderer	<p>You are of your father the devil, and it is your will to practice the desires [which are characteristic] of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth because there is no truth in him.</p> <p>John 8:44a (AMP)</p>

A liar	<p><i>You are of your father the devil, and it is your will to practice the desires [which are characteristic] of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks what is natural to him, for he is a liar and the father of lies and half-truths.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">John 8:44 (AMP)</p>
An oppressor	<p><i>How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power. He went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">Acts 10:38 (ESV)</p>
The corrupter of minds	<p><i>For such men are counterfeit apostles, deceitful workers, masquerading as apostles of Christ.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">2 Corinthians 11:13 (AMP)</p>
The Spirit that now works in the sons of disobedience	<p><i>Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ephesians 2:2 (KJV)</p>

Table 9: Function or purpose of Satan's name

Animal like representation of Satan	
A roaring lion	<p><i>Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">1 Peter 5:8 (KJV)</p>

The serpent	<p>Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Genesis 3:1 (KJV)</p>
	<p>And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Genesis 3:2 (KJV)</p> <p>And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Genesis 3:4 (KJV)</p> <p>And the LORD God said unto the woman, What is this that thou hast done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Genesis 3:13 (KJV)</p> <p>And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Genesis 3:14 (KJV)</p>
The dragon	<p>And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Revelations 12:3 (KJV)</p> <p>And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Revelations 12:4 (KJV)</p>

	<p><i>And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels,</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Revelations 12:7 (KJV)</i></p> <p><i>And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Revelations 12:9 (KJV)</i></p> <p><i>And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Revelations 12:13 (KJV)</i></p> <p><i>And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Revelations 12:17</i></p>
--	--

Table 10: Animal like representation of Satan

4.4.7.2 Angels Pledge Loyalty to Satan: Fallen Angels, the Origin of Demons

God created all beings, including archangels and angelic hosts to worship Him. These beings were created with intelligence and the ability to decide if they elect to obey God. Scripture describes a host of angels who gave allegiance to Satan; described as a “great, fiery red dragon” drawing to earth a “third of the stars of heaven”.

For if God did not spare the angels who sinned, but cast them down to hell and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved for judgment;

2 Peter 2:4 (KJV)

Then another sign [of warning] was seen in heaven: behold, a great fiery red dragon (Satan) with seven heads and ten horns, and on his heads were seven royal crowns (diadems). And his tail swept [across the sky] and dragged away a third of the stars of heaven and flung them to the earth. And the dragon stood in front of the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth he might devour her child.

Revelations 12:3-4 (AMP)

These angelic followers transgressed and became apostate and unredeemable. They shared Satan's hatred for God and combined in effort to battle against God. It is accepted that a third of the Godly created angels turned against God and followed Satan.

Scripture describes God's fury and action towards the rebelling angels.

Through your widespread trade you were filled with violence, and you sinned. So I drove you in disgrace from the mount of God, and I expelled you, guardian cherub, from among the fiery stones. Your heart became proud on account of your beauty and you corrupted your wisdom because of your splendour. So I threw you to the earth; I made a spectacle of you before kings. By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuaries.

Ezekiel 28:16-18 (NIV)

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;

2 Peter 2:4 (KJV)

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

Jude 6 (KJV)

Prof. Dr. Brand⁴³⁰ confirmed this theory and elaborated on the consequence of their revolt:

"A rule whereupon a multitude of the angelic beings of heaven decided to follow his rule and join him in his rebellion against God."

"These form the company of the fallen angels and probably the demons. As a result of this proud revolt against the will of God, the Lord God Almighty blasted the material universe in a curse of temporary judgment and the earth became without form and void, wrecked and ruined, a chaos, and darkness was upon the face of the deep. Much later on the occasion of the creation of Adam, God moved to re-form, re-fashion, the earth."

⁴³⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity-involving the Theodicy of Darkness*. Philosophiae Doctor at the Calvary University. P. 8

4.4.7.3 Man is Deceived: Satan's Threefold Strategy

After gaining support from a third of the angelic beings, Satan directed his focus to man. His strategy was three-fold: Satan did not oppose God's spoken word directly, he shrewdly only *discredited* God's Word by posing a question: **"Has God indeed said, 'You shall not eat of every tree of the garden'?" Genesis 3:2 (NKJV)**. Deception remains an effective and vital strategy Satan uses with great success. The effect of deception is prevalent in South Africa today. Discussion on deception will follow in following chapters.

Secondly, he proceeded to *discredit God's character* by presenting God as an arbitrary tyrant – knowing the ability and potential of man to become something much more, God kept them submissive. By doing so he discredited the loving character of God. Thirdly, Satan *entices man with the same pride* fundamental to his own downfall_ **"You will not surely die. For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." Genesis 3:4 (NKJV)**

The success Satan gained is summarised as follows:

- Man not only died a physical death, although death now became inherit incorporated in man's existence. Man died spiritually. The continues fellowship with God was effectively terminated.

4.4.7.4 Nephilim, Rephaim and Anakim

Following the pattern of introducing entities presented in Genesis, the thesis also acknowledges the Nephilim mentioned several times⁴³¹ (Numbers 13:33,⁴³²

⁴³¹ Genesis 6 and Numbers 13:32-33 (NKJV) And they gave the children of Israel a bad report of the land which they had spied out, saying, "The land through which we have gone as spies *is* a land that devours its inhabitants, and all the people whom we saw in it *are* men of *great* stature. There we saw the giants (the descendants of Anak came from the giants); and we were like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight."

⁴³² Numbers 13:33 There we saw the giants (the descendants of Anak came from the giants); and we were like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.

Ezekiel 32:27⁴³³) in Scripture. The first introduction is found in Genesis chapter 6.

Now it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born to them, that the sons of God saw the daughters of men, that they were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves of all whom they chose. And the Lord said, "My Spirit shall not strive with man forever, for he is indeed flesh; yet his days shall be one hundred and twenty years. There were giants on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.

Genesis 6:2-4 (NKJV)

When human beings began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, the sons of God saw that the daughters of humans were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose. Then the Lord said, "My Spirit will not contend with[a] humans forever, for they are mortal[b]; their days will be a hundred and twenty years."

The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of humans and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.

Genesis 6:2-4 (NIV)

“Daughters of men” is generally accepted as the young women of the time and no controversy exists with this interpretation. However, as portrayed by the two translations, (NKJV and NIV) severe disputes and interpretations exist surrounding the interpretation of key factors such as:

- The identity of the ‘sons of God’ (B’nai or Bene Elohim)
- The identity of the “giants” and “Nephilim”. The two Bible translations varies in the translation.
- The ability of angels to have sexual relationships with humankind to sire offspring.
- The presence of the Nephilim during and “also afterward” the arrival of the sons of God.

⁴³³ Ezekiel 32:27 (NKJV) They do not lie with the mighty Who are fallen of the uncircumcised, Who have gone down to hell with their weapons of war; They have laid their swords under their heads, But their iniquities will be on their bones, Because of the terror of the mighty in the land of the living.

In evaluating the meaning of 'Sons of God' the following are presented:

Dr. Peter Gentry⁴³⁴ acknowledged two interpretations of the Genesis text. The Sethite theory referring to Seth, born to Adam and Eve to secure Godly descendants after Cain murdered Abel. This theory defines 'sons of God' as the sons borne from the Godly family of Seth who married the ungodly daughters of Cain. (Daughters of man). This reflect an early example of mixed marriages where Godly (posterity of Seth) marrying the excommunicated and ungodly race of Cain.

The author found this theory not convincing for the following reasons:

- The sin of mix-marriages was not a sin so advanced in God's sight that He previously threatened to destroy the human race in totality as punishment.
- The theory implies that only the daughters of Cain were ungodly but not the men, and that only the men of Seth were godly but not the young women.
- It also implies that only the men (sons) of Seth intermarried and not the daughters of Seth.
- Genesis confirms God found Noah's family (8 people) to be the *only* godly family. No mention of Seth's family.
- The New Testament accommodates believers in Christ, with the indwelling of the Holy Spirit, as sons of God. (Romans 8:14)⁴³⁵. In contrast, the Old Testament interpretation is restricted as the term 'sons (bane) of God' (Elohim) only refer to beings directly created by God. As such, only Adam and the Angels qualifies. Adam was created in God's likeness and therefore is a son of God. Adam's descendants were not made in God's likeness, but in Adam's and therefore his descendants were 'son of men. All four Old Testament references to 'sons of God' (bene Elohim) refer to angels, higher than man but lower than God. It never refers to men. Angels, both good and bad, is the only species that fits this description. It

⁴³⁴ Gentry, Peter Dr. (2019) *Were the sons of God in Genesis 6 fallen angels? Who were the Nephilim?* YouTube. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qKtHwc3mMY8>

⁴³⁵ Romans 8:14 (NKJV) For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are Sons of God.

is a logical conclusion that the text in Genesis does not deviate from the application and as such it also refers to angels.

"Look!" he answered, "I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire; and they are not hurt, and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God."

Daniel 3:25 (NKJV)

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them.

Job 1:6 (KJV)

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD.

Job 2:1 (NKJV)

When the morning stars sang together, And all the sons of God shouted for joy?

Job 38:7(NKJV)

Dr. Peter Gentry⁴³⁶ also portrayed the interpretation that the sons of God could refer to the heroes of the mystical past, tyrant kings or demigods from the far East such as Gilgamesh⁴³⁷, known to be half-god and half-man. The author noted that this theory is hardly debated nor accepted in any research.

Dr. Thomas⁴³⁸ concurred with most scholars tracing the word "Nephilim" to the Hebrew root "Naphal",⁴³⁹ meaning "to fall", referring to the "fallen ones", the angels who fell from heaven. This interpretation of the sons of God to be the angels who fell from heaven are imperious in the interpretation of the remaining three points mentioned above.

⁴³⁶ Gentry, Peter Dr. (2019) *Were the sons of God in Genesis 6 fallen angels? Who were the Nephilim?* Gilgamesh is "best-known and most popular hero in the mythology of the ancient Near East, Gilgamesh was a Sumerian* king who wished to become immortal. Endowed with superhuman strength, courage, and power, he appeared in numerous legends and myths, including the Epic of Gilgamesh." YouTube. Available at: <https://invidious.privcy.one/watch?v=qKtHwc3mMY8>

⁴³⁷ Myths Encyclopaedia. Myths and Legends: Gilgamesh: Available at: <http://www.mythencyclopedia.com/Fi-Go/Gilgamesh.html>

⁴³⁸ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 106

⁴³⁹ Naphal Strong's #H5307 Nâphâl. A primitive root; to fall.

Helena Blavatsky⁴⁴⁰ referred to these 'gods', these wicked fallen angels' as "**The Ascended Masters of Wisdom.**" Terry Law⁴⁴¹ alluded to ancient writings⁴⁴² that "**give most support to the idea that the sons of God were fallen angels.**" One such reference is the writings of Josephus, a well-known Jewish historian whose books date from about A.D. 90. According to the editor of a modern publication of Josephus⁴⁴³ works, Josephus accepted the fact that fallen angels cohabited with women and produced giants as offspring.

"This notion, that the fallen angels were, in some sense, the fathers of the old giants, was the constant opinion of antiquity."⁴⁴⁴

The copy of the Genesis Apocryphon discovered at Qumran in 1947 also refer to celestial beings who landed on earth to mate with Earth-women who begat giants.⁴⁴⁵

From the scripture (Genesis 6:4) "**the Nephilim were on earth in those day when the sons of God went to the daughters**" it is concluded that the Nephilim were already present on the earth when the 'sons of God' arrived. This implies two occasions where angels fell from heaven. In the first instance, the Nephilim were cast from heaven. Thereafter the sons of God came to the women. The first (Nephilim) were present before, and also after the second occurrence. The first fallen angels, those who revolted with Lucifer in pride against God, the Nephilim had the physical appearance of giants on earth. In the second occasion, sons of God pursued the daughters of men.

The earliest work addressing this conundrum is the *Book of the Watchers* (250-200 BCE), which are now presented as chapters 1-36 of the book of *Enoch*.

⁴⁴⁰ Moderators: Jornada, Anagalia, Simbio (2005) *Sumerians Anunnaki Anakim Anak*. Ancient Lost Treasures. Available at: <https://www.tapatalk.com/groups/ancientlosttreasures/sumerians-anunnaki-anakim-anak-t4676.html>

⁴⁴¹ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 222

⁴⁴² Ancient writings include Ancient Jewish synagogues, Hellenistic Jews at and before the time of Christ, the Christian church until the fourth century, Reformation.

⁴⁴³ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 25 and Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 71

⁴⁴⁴ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 25

⁴⁴⁵ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 62

Students of the book of Enoch is of the opinion that the book was deliberately excluded from the Bible because of the truth it contains pertaining to the origin and history of these beings. According to Elizabeth C. Prophet⁴⁴⁶ the Book of Enoch reflects **“on the realm where history and mythology overlap”**, with its main theme **“the final judgement of these fallen angels, the Watchers, and their progeny, the evil spirits.”** (Authors note: Elizabeth C. Prophet's interpretation does not necessarily concur with the Bible. Her faith orientation is not known to the author.)

From the book of Enoch, Prophet's⁴⁴⁷ critical interpretation distinguished between Nephilim and the Nophelim, also called Watchers. The word 'watcher' originating from 'iyr', meaning 'to open the eyes and watch', gives an indication that God ordained them in a specific order and authority to watch over God's creation on earth.⁴⁴⁸ They are also described as agents employed by God to control world governments and influence the affairs of the nations.⁴⁴⁹

According to Prophet⁴⁵⁰, confusion resulted from translations referring to Nephilim as the 'sons of God' (fallen angels) while other translations referred to Nephilim as the *evil progenies* of fallen angels and women. Adding to the confusion is the Septuagint referring to Nephilim as giants, ('gegenes', suggesting giants, whilst Gegenes means "earthborne"⁴⁵¹) eliminating the angelic connotation.

Morgenstern's⁴⁵² exegesis of Genesis 6 accommodated two accounts of separate falls of angels: **“one, that of the archangel's rebellion against the authority of God and his subsequent fall through pride, in which he was**

⁴⁴⁶ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 9

⁴⁴⁷ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 75

⁴⁴⁸ Shriner, Sherry (2005) *Bible codes revealed, The coming UFO invasion*. USA: iUniverse. P. 25

⁴⁴⁹ Dickason, Fred C. (1975) *Angels Elect & Evil*. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press. P. 62

⁴⁵⁰ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 75

⁴⁵¹ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 68

⁴⁵² Morgenstern, Julian. Hebrew Scholar at Hebrew Union College, 1939. Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origins of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 71.

followed by a multitude of lesser angels, biblically called Nephilim (the “fallen ones”); and two, the other account, recorded faithfully in the Book of Enoch – the later fall of the angels, called Watchers, through inordinate lust for the daughters of men.”

Satan's entourage of rebellious angles, Nephilim or fallen angels, were 'cast out of heaven' or 'made to leave.' They did not exit heaven by choice. Nephilim refers to angels cast from Heaven, appearing as giants in their physical state.

The second incident occurred when the Nophelim or Watchers 'fell' on their own accord. They left heaven by choice. According to this theory, the Nophelim or Watchers were enticed by the human women and they decided to leave heaven to cohabitate on earth.⁴⁵³ Nophelim, angels who "fell by choice" due to their lust for women. Evil children known as Gibborim, translated as heroes or mighty men were born these relationships.

The book of Daniel gives account of a so-called watcher:

“And inasmuch as the king saw a watcher, a holy one, coming down from heaven and saying, ‘Chop down the tree and destroy it, but leave its stump and roots in the earth, bound with a band of iron and bronze in the tender grass of the field; let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let him graze with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him”

According to Morgenstern,⁴⁵⁴ editors misinterpreted Nephilim who also had the appearance of giants, the Gibborim and other giants called Anakim⁴⁵⁵ mentioned in Numbers 13:33⁴⁵⁶. Thomas⁴⁵⁷ concurred in stating that the New King James Version interpretation of Nephilim as giant is incorrect. Nephilim derives from

⁴⁵³ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. PP. 72, 73

⁴⁵⁴ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 72

⁴⁵⁵ Anakim: Meaning the long-necked men” were the most feared inhabitants of Canaan. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 323 The description in the book of Joshua gives clear evidence that these giants were not limited in numbers and occupied vast areas, (in particular mountains) and several cities. Joshua 11:21,22 And at the time Joshua came and cut off the Anakim from the mountains, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab, from all the mountains of Israel, Joshua utterly destroyed them with their cities. None of the Anakim were left in the land of the children of Israel, they remained only in Gaza, in Gath and in Ashdod.

⁴⁵⁶ Latin Vulgate: A Latin translation of the Bible authorised and used by the Roman Catholic Church.

⁴⁵⁷ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 68

“Naphal”, meaning “fallen one”. The Septuagint⁴⁵⁸ reflected Nephilim as “gegenes” or “gigantes” and the Latin Vulgate translation reflects ‘gigentes’⁴⁵⁹ suggesting giants, in contrast to the correct translation as “earthborn”. He too⁴⁶⁰ acknowledged the second group of fallen angels who left heaven by choice in stating **“This second eruption was probably on a more limited and restricted scale than the first.**

Michael Howard⁴⁶¹ elaborated further with reference to the watchers:

Firstly: “These Ben Elohim or ‘fallen angels’ were also known as the Watchers, the Grigori and the Irin. In Jewish mythology the Grigori were originally a superior order of angels who dwelt in the highest heaven with God and resembled human beings in their appearance.”

Secondly, “In the esoteric Luciferian tradition they were a special elite order of angelic beings created by God to be earthly shepherds of the first primitive humans. It was their task to observe and watch over the emerging human species and report back on their progress. However they were confined by the divine prime directive not to interfere in human evolution. Unfortunately they decided to ignore God’s command and defy his orders and become teachers to the human race, with unfortunate repercussions for both themselves and humanity.”

The New Testament confirms the interpretation of angels who fell by choice.

And the angels who did not keep their proper domain, but left their own abode, He has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness for the judgment of the great day; as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities around them in a similar manner to these, having given themselves over to sexual immorality and gone after strange flesh, are set forth as an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.

Jude 6 (NKJV)

Two aspects are noteworthy. The first is the reference to domain of authority. Translations accommodate “domain” (NKJC), “high duties” (Phillips) and “designated place of power (AMP) and “first estate” (KJV). Strong’s #G756⁴⁶²

⁴⁵⁸ Septuagint: The Greek Translation of the Old Testament originally written in Hebrew.

⁴⁵⁹ McHyde, Tim (2018) *Understanding the Nephilim and their Role in Bible Prophecy*. Available at: <https://escapeallthesethings.com/nephilim-bible-prophecy/>

⁴⁶⁰ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan’s Last Assault on God’s Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 109

⁴⁶¹ Howard, Michael (Winter 2009) *Enoch & The Watchers: The Real Story of Angels & Demons*. New Dawn Special Issue 8. New Dawn Magazine. Ancient Wisdom, New Thinking since 1991. Available at: <https://www.newdawnmagazine.com/articles/enoch-the-watchers-the-real-story-of-angels-demons>

⁴⁶² e Sword Strong’s #G756

(archē) ak-khay' clarify the meaning as 'a commencement, chief, magistrate, power, principality, and rule.

The second aspect reflect the place or territory in translations "own abode" (NKJV), "proper sphere" (PHILLIPS) and "proper dwelling place" (AMP) and habitation (KJV). Strong's # G3613⁴⁶³ (oikētērion) clarifies the meaning as "a residence, habitation or house" Angels has authority and a specific dwelling place or habitat in heavenlies. Some angels decided to irreversibly abandon both. Thomas⁴⁶⁴ states that heaven is exclusively designated to the angels and therefore men will finally inhabit a new earth.

In the context of the Nophelim (Watchers), the second group of angels who fell from heaven on own preference, their leader, Samyaza (Shemihaza), recruited 200 fellow angels (Watchers) to accompany him to the daughters of men. ***Then the angels took oaths and bound themselves to the undertaking of mutual execrations' (curses)***⁴⁶⁵

Dr. Miryam Brand⁴⁶⁶ explained that the "***predominant tradition and main thread in the Book of Watchers, into which the other traditions are interwoven, focuses on the desire of the angels, led by Shemihaza, to mate with human women.***" The Book of Enoch gives the following account:

"And it came to pass when the children of men had multiplied that in those days were born unto them beautiful and comely daughters. And the angles, the children of the heaven, saw and lusted after them, and said to one another: 'Come, let us choose us wives from among the children of men and beget us children.'

Enoch 6:1-3

These angels left their own habitation, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh. They lusted after carnal relationships with inhabitants of Earth. Although created as spiritual deities, the Bible provides several

⁴⁶³ e Sword Strong's # G3613

⁴⁶⁴ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 66

⁴⁶⁵ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. P. 10

⁴⁶⁶ Hebrew Voice #30 – Nephilim and Demons in the Book of Enoch. (October 2018) <https://www.nehemiaswall.com/hebrew-voices-nephilim-and-demons-in-enoch>

descriptions of angels appearing in physical human form. In all instances, angels appeared as male, never as female. It would thus be possible for this group of angels, to irreversibly transform from angelic being to human form.

The fallen watchers taught the women sorcery, incantations and divinations, twisted versions of the secrets of heaven. They taught the men iniquity and all instruments of war.⁴⁶⁷

The pseudepigraphical book of Jubilee provides names of eleven fallen angels who supposedly had intercourse with human women in Genesis 6. **“Each was supposed to have taught human beings a skill that contributed to the corruption of the human race.”**⁴⁶⁸

- Armaros taught resolving enchantments.
- Araquel taught the signs of the earth.
- Azazel/Asael taught the skill to make swords and cosmetics for woman.
- Baraqijal taught astrology.
- Ezequeel taught the knowledge of clouds.
- Gadreel taught men to make war.
- Kokabel taught the science of the constellations.
- Penemune taught writing.
- Sariel taught the course of the moon.
- Senjaza taught enchantments.
- Shamshiel taught the signs of the sun.

Advancing in the corruption of the human race, the fallen angels not only taught, but also produced a mixed race with the human women. The sin of lust does not need a physical body for the thought is already adultery. In this application it is physical sexual intercourse with children as a result. In discussing the manner or possibility whereby angels (spiritual entities) could have sexual relations, Dr.

⁴⁶⁷ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. PP. 10,11

⁴⁶⁸ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 125

McDonald⁴⁶⁹ also referred to the principle of incubus and succubus.⁴⁷⁰ Although the possibility is not excluded, it is the author's opinion that the fallen angels transformed or shapeshifted from angelic to human form and that progenies were the result of sexual relationship between two physical bodies.

The fundamental consequence is captured in the fact that the DNA in the sperm of the shapeshifted angelic being is not normal human DNA. As a result, genetic modified giants, super humans called Gibborim were born. The first genetic modified organisms or humanoids,⁴⁷¹ also referred to as Hybrids.⁴⁷² The interpretation of Nephilim and Nophelim might not be acceptable by all scholars, but the evidence of the product of a DNA modified race is growing.

The evidence of a modified DNA is also manifested in the nature and attributes of these progenies.

Biblical identifications:

- They excel in strength. (Psalm 103:20)⁴⁷³
- They are greater in power and might than men of the earth. (2 Peter 2:11)⁴⁷⁴
- The ancient world associated demons with 'knowledge' and intelligence.

⁴⁶⁹ McDonald, Marlize Dr. (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. Pretoria. P. 76

⁴⁷⁰ Moreover, the terms incubus (male demon) and succubus (female demon) are well known amongst many religions and traditional groups. These demons are capable of the act of sex in the physical realm with unsuspecting men and women while they are sleeping. When a hybrid – half demon half human – Nephilim dies, their disembodied spirits become demons as they are known today.” McDonald, Marlize Dr. (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. Pretoria. P. 76.

⁴⁷¹ Humanoid: Having the appearance and character resembling that of a human. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/definition/humanoid>

⁴⁷² Hybrid: The offspring of two animals or plants of different breeds, varieties, species, or genera, especially as produced through human manipulation for specific genetic characteristics. b.) a person or group of persons produced by the interaction or crossbreeding of two unlike cultures, traditions etc. c) anything derived from heterogeneous sources, or composed of elements of different or incongruous kinds. d.) word composed of elements originally drawn from different languages, as television, whole components come from Greek and Latin. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/hybrid>

⁴⁷³ Psalm 103:20 (NKJV) Bless the LORD, you His angels, Who excel in strength, who do His word, Heeding the voice of His word.

⁴⁷⁴ 2 Peter 2:11 (NKJV) whereas angels, who are greater in power and might, do not bring a reviling accusation against them before the Lord.

The demons in Luke 8:28⁴⁷⁵ had knowledge with reference to the deity of Christ, unbeknown to men.

- Acts 16:17⁴⁷⁶ record supernatural knowledge concerning Paul's mission and message. Nobody in Philippi was acquainted with Paul nor had any expectation of the gospel of Christ he was about to preach. The author connects this foreknowledge also with the spiritual (demonic) ability to operate in the fourth dimension of time. Multi-dimensional 'travel' between time zones with no hindrance of the physical. The demonic had knowledge of the future.

Thomas⁴⁷⁷ traced their superhuman knowledge to the original Greek meaning of demon: "Daimon", meaning "knowledge" or "intelligence" and the Latin translation of Lucifer meaning "brilliance or magnificent". He also referred to the fact that demons have access to knowledge and information denied to ordinary mortals.

Prophet⁴⁷⁸ elaborated on these beings superhuman attributes:

- They were giants, born from spirit and from flesh.
- Also called terrestrial spirits
- Evil spirits, also called spirits of the wicked shall proceed from their flesh.
- They oppress, corrupt, fall, contend, and bruise upon earth.
- They cause lamentation.
- Because of their great sin they will never obtain peace and can never return to heaven
- They are bloodthirsty and kill without conscience, as was Hitler.
- They have extraordinary power.
- They show no remorse and have no pity.

⁴⁷⁵ Luke 8:28 (NKJV) When he saw Jesus, he cried out, fell down before Him, and with a loud voice said, "What have I to do with You, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg You, do not torment me!" For He had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man.

⁴⁷⁶ Acts 16:17 (NKJV) This girl followed Paul and us, and cried out, saying, "These men are the servants of the Most High God, who proclaim to us the way of salvation."

⁴⁷⁷ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 114

⁴⁷⁸ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press. PP. 15-78

- Watchers and progenies entered into symbiotic relationships with the discarnate spirits of the “giants” who roam the astral plane to oppress, corrupt and contend for the minds of their victims.
- They misappropriate people’s money inside “bank-tums”. They exchange people’s gold for inflated worthless currencies in exchange for their labour.
- They manipulate drugs and alcohol use.
- They orchestrate murder, rape, theft, violent crimes, child molestation, international terrorism, the Mafia, kidnapping etc. Through manipulation of the judiciary they are not caught.
- Manipulate food production to gain military objective. Words and deed erode planet alcohol drugs destroy economy blood murder.
- Love of money is rooted in pride and lust.
- They have magnetic personalities with a great sense of self-importance
- They believe it is their birth right to rule, to be the elite power.

Old Testament references⁴⁷⁹ to the seed of the Watchers and Nephilim include “the wicked”, “the ungodly”, “the enemy,” “workers of iniquity,” “wicked doers,” “evildoers,” “son of the giant,” “the unjust,” “heathen,” etc. New Testament references include “serpents,” “generation of vipers,” “princes of the world,” “rulers (originators) of darkness of this world,” “Wicked One,” or “Evil One.”

The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of humans and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.

Genesis 6:4 (NKJV)

The interpretation of “***in those days***” is already discussed: The prideful and rebellious fallen angels cast from heaven along with Lucifer were present on earth (manifested as giants) when the watchers decided to leave their stance of authority and heavenly territory to cohabit with women.

They witnessed the great sin and experienced God’s judgement: Man rejected the privileged of being created in God’s image with the purpose and honour to fellowship with God. They were polluted by abominable union with the fallen angels. Their existence and vile corruption were a main reason that God decided

⁴⁷⁹ Prophet, Elizabeth Clare (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origin of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press PP. 15-78

to eradicate the sin of man, man, the sin of the fallen angels and their kind with the flood.

God had favour for Noah's and his family for two reasons: Noah was a righteous man and his family of eight were the only people not defiled by the alien species of fallen angels. Secondly, God protected the bloodline from which Jesus Christ would be borne by saving their lives in the great flood. God secured a genetically uncontaminated bloodline.

The wrath of God destroyed the Nophelim and their progenies with the flood and send their spirits to the Tartarus, the lowest abyss of Hades to be bound in chains forever. (Jude 6-7⁴⁸⁰, 2 Peter 2:4⁴⁸¹)

The Bible does not provide a specific narrative on the re-appearance of fallen angels after the Noahic flood. But it gives definite indications of the presence of giants. Numerous references to the giants confirm their existence after the flood: Goliath, the Philistine defeated by David may have been a descendant of these relationships.⁴⁸² Joshua's report to Moses also included references to giants roaming the land of Canaan.⁴⁸³ Specific references are made to Rephaim, Emim and Zuzim (Genesis 14:5)⁴⁸⁴, Anakim and Zophim (Numbers 13:33)⁴⁸⁵, and Zamzummims (Deuteronomy 2:20)⁴⁸⁶.

God's instruction to Israel to completely exterminate the inhabitants of Canaan, killing every man, woman and child of certain tribes (Deuteronomy 20:16-18)⁴⁸⁷

⁴⁸⁰ Jude 6-7 (NKJV) And the angels who did not keep their proper domain, but left their own abode, He has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness for the judgment of the great day;

⁴⁸¹ 2 Peter 2:4 (NKJV) For if God did not spare the angels who sinned, but cast *them* down to hell and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved for judgment;

⁴⁸² Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 24

⁴⁸³ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 24

⁴⁸⁴ Genesis 14:5 (NKJV) In the fourteenth year, Kedorlaomer and the kings allied with him went out and defeated the Rephaites in Ashteroth Karnaim, the Zuzites in Ham, the Emmites in Shaveh Kiriathaim

⁴⁸⁵ Numbers 13:33 (NKJV) We saw the Nephilim there (the descendants of Anak come from the Nephilim). We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them."

⁴⁸⁶ Deuteronomy 2:20 (NKJV) (That too was considered a land of the Rephaites, who used to live there; but the Ammonites called them Zamzummites.

⁴⁸⁷ Deuteronomy 20:16-18 (NKJV) "But of the cities of these peoples which the LORD your God gives you as an inheritance, you shall let nothing that breathes remain alive, but you shall utterly destroy them: the Hittite and the Amorite and the Canaanite and the Perizzite and the Hivite and the Jebusite, just as the LORD

suggests the complete eradication of these descendants and thereby their gene pool. However, the Israelites did *not* obey God, resulting in the earth once again the repopulated of the Earth by a mixed breed nation containing manipulated DNA from women and fallen angels.

The fact remains – the fallen angels (Nephilim) either survived the flood, or another group of fallen angels (also Nophelim) reappeared to repeat the sexual fornication with the human race to produce giant offspring. The author accepts God's condemnation described in the Bible and therefor conclude with the theory of a subsequent group of fallen angels who repeated the sin of the first.

Evidence of the habitation and existence of giants is not restricted to the Bible nor to the Middle East. Gigantic footprints were discovered in Texas, Colorado, New Mexico, Arizona, California, central Africa and in Mpumalanga South Africa. Giant skeletons were found in China, Hava and in South Africa.⁴⁸⁸



Figure 3A



Figure 3B

your God has commanded you, lest they teach you to do according to all their abominations which they have done for their gods, and you sin against the LORD your God.

⁴⁸⁸ Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House. P. 111

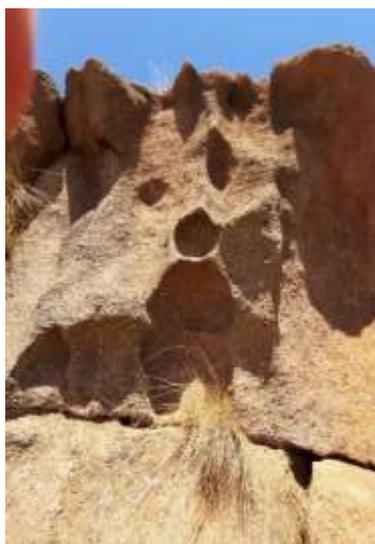


Figure 3C



Figure 3D

Figure 3: 2019 10 17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga Author at Giant footprint and penta-star symbol.

2019-10-17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga. Autor at Giant footprint and penta-star symbol. This site was regarded by Credo Mutwa⁴⁸⁹ as the most holy site in the world.



Figure 4: 2019-10-17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga Author and friends at a stone altar at the sight of the Giant footprint and penta-star symbol.

⁴⁸⁹ Credo Mutwa: Zulu Traditional healer, author, artist. Mail & Guardian (March 2020) Sosibo K. Credo Mutws: Deyging the sting of death. "He was initiated in so many countries on the continent; throughout his initiations he was exposed to so much knowledge about Africa. He knew all the sacred sites of the continent, like the oldest stone calendar and the pyramids in Mpumalanga and the sacred sites in the south."

2019-10-17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga. Author and friends at a stone altar at the sight of the Giant footprint and penta-star symbol. Ashes on the altar indicated the recent use. Ashes were not tested to confirm a sacrifice of any kind. No obvious evidence of bones or any trace of animal remains were visible. The author believed that the burnt offering consisted of only incense. Burned-out candles and candle wax were noticed on the altar and on the rocks to right of the footprint.

The theory, although not supported by all researchers, exist that the descendants of the Nophelim still exist today, as well as another re-occurrence of extra-terrestrial visitation. The importance of this phenomena is accentuated by the attention Jesus Christ gave to the text.

“But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, but My Father only. But as the days of Noah were, so also will the coming of the Son of Man be.

Matthew 24:36-37 (NKJV)

Jesus associated His second coming with signs or occurrences that correlates with the days of Noah. The author is convinced that Genesis 6 therefore not only hold historic, hermeneutical⁴⁹⁰ or exegetical⁴⁹¹ value, but is essential in Eschatology.⁴⁹² For this reason in particular, the author found it a necessity to include a discussion pertaining to the possible re-occurrence of fallen angels (Nophelim or extra-terrestrials) in this research. It is important to note, that it is not the aim of this thesis to provide an in-depth research leading to a conclusion on this subject. Extensive research pertaining the past, present, and future manifestation and impact is suggested.

⁴⁹⁰ An exegesis is an explanation and interpretation of a piece of writing, especially a religious piece of writing, after very careful study. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/exegesis>

⁴⁹¹ Hermeneutics refers to the theory and practice of interpretation, where interpretation involves an understanding that can be justified. Available at: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/social-sciences/hermeneutics>

⁴⁹² Eschatology comes from the Greek *eskhatos*, meaning "last," which makes sense given that this branch of theology is preoccupied with the study of the last part of life or death. More specifically, eschatology involves four elements or "last" things: death, judgment, heaven and hell. It's an examination of the ultimate destiny of mankind. Available at: <https://www.vocabulary.com/dictionary/eschatology>

4.4.7.5 Satan Continued His Status as 'Son of God'

"Sons of God" do not reflect on their noble character or status but only confirms their creation by God Himself. Satan was among the "sons of God" who presented themselves before the Lord God.⁴⁹³

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them.

Job 1:6 (KJV)

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD.

Job 2:1 (KJV)

4.4.7.6 Satan Continued as the 'Angel of Light'

The "Angel of Light" appearing in radiant light should not automatically be accepted as an angel representing God. Paul's confirmation is found in his letter to the Corinthians.

And no wonder! For Satan himself transforms himself into an angel of light. Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also transform themselves into ministers of righteousness, whose end will be according to their works.

2 Corinthians 11:14-15 (NIV)

The only measurement to discern if an angel is an angel from God is whether his words and actions correlate with Scripture and advance God's purpose on earth. Angels are known to deliver messages from God. This remains applicable to the angel of light, but the messages are not from God. The belief in these "false messages" originated two major international religions of Islam and Mormonism.⁴⁹⁴

⁴⁹³ Ericson, Jon (2012) *Biblical Hermeneutics Who are the morning stars in Job 38:7?* Available at: <https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/706/who-are-the-morning-stars-in-job-387>

⁴⁹⁴ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. PP. 49-50. Angels called Moroni and Nephi appeared to John Smith, the founder of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints in 1829. Mohammed believed he was visited by the angel Gabriel over a period of twenty-one years. From these visitations, Mohammed initiated the youngest Word Religion -Islam.

But even if we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed.

Galatians 1:8 (NIV)

4.4.8 Three-fold Strategy of Satan: Individual, National and Territorial

Satan's strategy is deployed in three areas mentioned above. With regards to Satan's assault on a personal level, it is imperative to discern between a **demon possessed** and a **demonized individual**. Dr. Ed Murphy⁴⁹⁵ explained the first to be limited to spiritists and mediums who actively and consciously invited evil spirits to possess them.

On the counter, Dr. Murphy⁴⁹⁶ argued that individuals are demonized either before their conversion to Christianity or when they commit serious sin after their conversion to Christianity, and when serious sin is committed against them. Demons attach to the area of sin in the individuals/or the believer's life and work constantly to increase the area of control. This control is fortunately only partial and never total control. ***'The influence is normally mild and the individual are fully capable to function with normality in society.'***⁴⁹⁷

Although Dr. Murphy⁴⁹⁸ argued that a demonized person continues to have a choice to repent and turn away from the area of sin, the author is of the opinion that his statement generalised a complex matter. The author poses the reality that it is not as simple as a choice, repentance and turning away from sin. In many instances the individual is strangled in sin and to the extent that he/she first needs deliverance from demonic manipulation grounded on a legal right within the life or generation of the individual. The individual's decision to choose to abandon

⁴⁹⁵ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P 545

⁴⁹⁶ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P 433

⁴⁹⁷ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.P433

⁴⁹⁸ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.P433

the habitual sin is in a valid and crucial departure point but the hold on the individual's life is of such an extent that the individual is not strong enough to manifest the decision taken. Deliverance in itself is also only possible once the individual accepted and confessed the Lordship of Jesus Christ and His redemptive blood offer, followed by sincere repentance for personal or generational sins.

4.4.8.1 Individual Strategy

- a Satan's strategy on an **individual level** often focus on four sin-areas:
- Illicit sexual practices.
 - A deep-rooted sense of rejection manifesting in guilt, poor self-esteem and destructive behaviours.
 - Unforgiveness exhibited in anger, bitterness, hatred, rage, and rebellion.
 - The occult and spirit world with a desire to gain power over people.
- b Satan enticed Adam and Eve to sin in order to allow them to adopt his nature of rebellion and disobedience to God. His strategy was not adjusted and is still applicable in the 21st century. Larry Richards⁴⁹⁹ summarised Satan's strategy as follows:
- He raises doubt with regards to the reality of God's Word.
 - He portrays God as oppressive and restrictive.
 - He cast doubt on God's motives.
 - He urges people to act and to see for themselves.
 - He creates a desire for the forbidden.
 - He questions the consequences of disobedience.
 - He appeals to people's pride and to their desire to be independent and to do whatever they think best.

⁴⁹⁹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. PP. 9-10

- c Satan's attack on an individual level also includes the agenda to nullify man's relationship with God. The agenda holds four instructions:
- First to counterfeit religion.
 - Second to counterfeit Jesus Christ.
 - Third to counterfeit theology.
 - Fourthly to counterfeit miracles.
- d Satan prevents belief in the gospel.
- e Satan promotes attraction to falsehood.
- f Satan has the power of death of unbelievers.
- g Satan causes suffering and oppression.
- h Satan sows' unbelievers among believers.
- i Satan uses unbelievers to pervert the gospel.
- j Satan energises his own ministries.
- k Satan uses unbelievers to oppose the Gospel.
- l Satan hinders believers.
- m Satan gains advantage over believers.
- n Satan beguiles believers.
- o Satan buffets believers.
- p Satan has power of death over excommunicated believers.
- q Satan controls some believers from within.
- r Satan wars against the saints.
- s Satan accuses the brethren.
- t Satan plans doubts in the minds of believers.
- u Satan incites persecution.
- v Satan infiltrates the Church.

4.4.8.2 A Strategy on a National and Territorial Level

With regards to Satan's **national and territorial strategy**, Dr. Murphy⁵⁰⁰

⁵⁰⁰ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. XV

commented as follows:

“Beyond our churches, effective worldwide, evangelism is impeded by our having missed the biblical teaching regarding territorial spirits. These high-level principalities and powers hold whole people groups in their grip.” But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

2 Corinthians 4:3-4 (KJV)

Satan's national and territorial agenda is closely related because nations automatically implies territory. Satan is responsible for:

- The fall and decline of nations

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!

Isaiah 14:12 (KJV)

- Deceiving nations

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelations 12:9 (KJV)

And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

Revelations 20:3 (KJV)

- Influencing Nations

But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.

Daniel 10:13 (KJV)

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

- Satan authorises the antichrist

And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority. And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast. And they

worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?

Revelations 13:2-4 (KJV)

- Satan gathers the armies for the final conflict

And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared.

Revelations 16:12 (KJV)

- Satan leads the gentiles in the final revolt.

And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog, and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

Revelations 20:7-10 (KJV)

- Satan has a specific agenda for Israel

And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel.

1 Chronicles 21:1 (KJV)

And he shewed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him. And the Lord said unto Satan, The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan; even the Lord that hath chosen Jerusalem rebuke thee: is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?

Zechariah 3:1-2 (KJV)

5. CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the author addressed the questions posed in the Prolegomena.

5.1 Religion and dogma rely on Hermeneutics. Does the Bible provide a concise and definite explanation of God?

Religion, man's attempt to experience and connect with the divine, including man's attempt to control with authority (dogma) cannot deviate from the truth

presented in the Bible. God revealed himself as a one triune God: one God in three persons of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

5.2. *What is the primary variation of purpose in the creation of the angelic and mankind?*

Angels were created as mighty spirit beings to worship and serve God. God created man in His image: a tripartite being, one person consisting of three dimensions of spirit, soul, and body. The purpose of man's creation primarily was to have a relationship with God and to share His likeness in the function of dominion and pro-creativity.

5.3. *What is the origin and result of sin?*

Pride, the original sin, motivated Lucifer to revolt against God. A third of the angels jointly rebelled against God and were cast from heaven along with Lucifer. Sin entered the universe through Lucifer (Satan). Sin entered the human race via Adam and Eve. Man forfeited his fellowship with God. As such man will always seek spiritual fulfilment to accommodate a spiritual void. Satan, the eternal enemy of God continuously strategize to replace God.

5.4. *Does the Bible contribute significantly enough to the revelation of man's spirituality and the reflection of a Triune God?*

According to John 3 (God is spirit), and God's statement (Let us create in our image) the author concluded that man is primary spirit, living in a natural body and possessing a soul. Man is created in the image of God. The trinity of God, Father, Son and Holy Spirit is reflected in the triune composition of man as body, soul, and spirit. A spiritual being with natural or physical attributes, including intellect, emotions, personality etc. The opinion that man is primary a physical/natural being with spiritual attributes is considered to be false.

5.5. How can man's spirituality be defined?

Although several types of spirituality are presented, the author defined spirituality as the combined function and ability of man's spirit or man's spiritual capacity. The 'spirit' of man' is the faculty able to transcend beyond the physical body, soul, and the natural world to connect and fellowship with God, or the spiritual world at large. The components of the spiritual world and the two kingdoms are discussed in this chapter. Spiritual development implies progress and improvement in spiritual capacity to discern and comprehend the spiritual reality.

--ooOoo--

And for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead men. And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified. He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay.

Matthew 28:4-6 (KJV)

6. ADDENDUM

6.1 Addendum 1 Chapter 1

Schematic presentation of various angelic falls.

Everlasting Triune God			
Angels Creation by the Word of God / Jesus Christ			
Angelic Falls			
↓	↓	↓	↓
1st Angelic Fall	2nd Angelic Fall	3rd Angelic Fall after Noah Flood	4th Angelic Group
↓	↓	↓	↓
Nephilim (also extra-terrestrial)	Nophelim (also extra-terrestrial)	Nophelim (also extra-terrestrial)	Extra-terrestrials
Lucifer with a third of allegiance angels	Samyaza (leader) with 200 watchers	Number Unknown	Number Unknown
Created spiritual entities (originally angels)	Created spiritual entities (originally angels)	Created spiritual entities (originally angels)	Spiritual extraterrestrial entities. Demonic. Origin unknown. Speculation that they originate from first angelic fall.
God casted Lucifer and allegiance from heaven. They did not fall/leave by choice.	Left heaven on own accord	Left heaven on own accord	God cast Lucifer and allegiance from heaven.
After creation before Adam and Eve	Between Garden of Eden and Noah's Flood	After Noah's Flood	After creation before Adam and Eve (1st fall)
Pride and self exaltation caused Lucifer to volt against God. He entised third of angels to follow him	Rejected created origin as heavenly bengs. Departed from seat of authority/habitation in heaven (by choice). Left heaven/Fell from heaven by choice. Became mortal. Manifested in the physical.		If they originate from first angelic fall: Alliegance with Satan against God
Deceived man to question Word of God. Corrupt man with sin to nulify God-man fellowship	Fornicaton with strange flesh. Sexual sin and inbreeding was both unusual and repugnant. Fathered children with women. Children were born as giants, known as Gibborim or mighty men.		Establishment of Kingdom of Satan

Who?

Origin

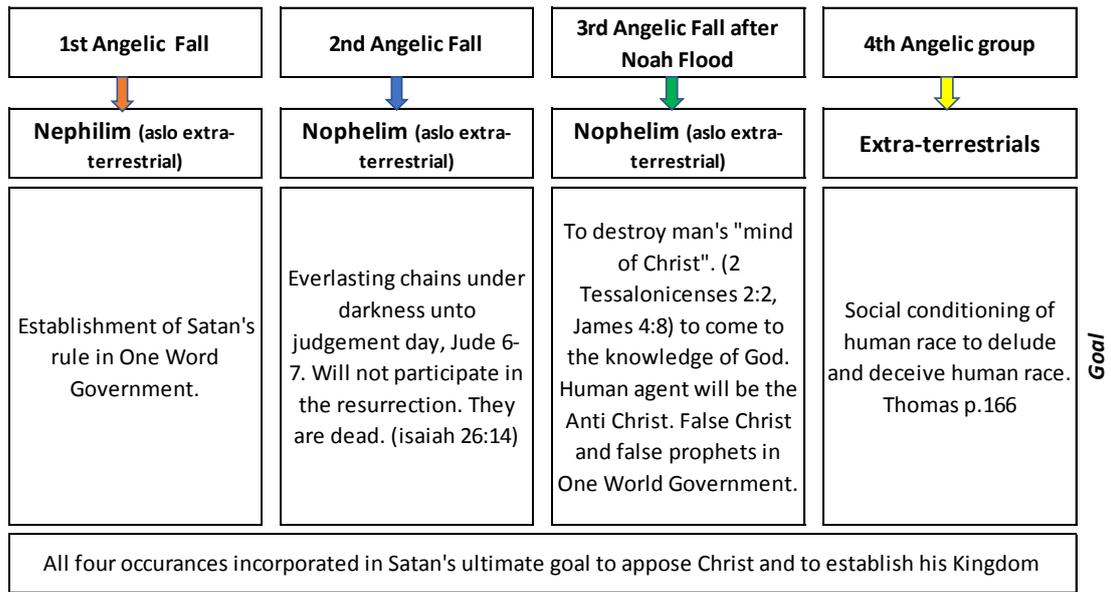
Left heaven

When?

Sin

Sin

1st Angelic Fall	2nd Angelic Fall	3rd Angelic Fall after Noah Flood	4th Angelic group	
Nephilim (aslo extra-terrestrial)	Nophelim (aslo extra-terrestrial)	Nophelim (aslo extra-terrestrial)	Extra-terrestrials	
Establishment of Satan's kingdom. Becoming ruler of world to be worshipped. Destroy God-man fellowshisp. Enslave man.	Contaminate DNA to corrupt bloodline of Jesus Christ to prohibit His virgin birth, atonement and salvation for all of mankind. Man eternity without salvation. Pinnacle of God's creation destroyed. If Jesus' birth is prohibited, no final judgement of Satan. His reign is established.	Ruin image of God in man with abominable union with demons. Contaminate/DNA of human race.	Establishment of Kingdom of Satan. The possible creation of humanoids/hydrids via DNA manipulation.	Goal
Remained spiritual entities but where able to manifest (shapeshift) in the physical as giants	Physical/mortal bodies and descendants destroyed in flood. Transferred supernatural superior knowledge to mankind.	Became mortal only after the flood. Mortal bodies eventually died. Descendants still alive today. Super heroes of our time.	Remained spiritual extraterrestrial entities	Result after fell from heaven
Not confirmed in Bible. Generally accepted that demons are the spirits of fallen angels.	After mortal death God bound their spirits to lowest abyss of hades called Tartarus. Everlasting chains under darkness unto judgement day, Jude 6-7. Will not participate in the resurrection. They are dead. (Isaiah 26:14)		This research acknowledge the possiblity of pre-empted programming but did not include research in this thesis.	Result
Remain temporary free to continue nefarious activities. To decieve man to ensure Christ find no faith on earth on His return. (Luke 18:8).	Mortal death. Spirits bound.	Mortal Descendants with contaminated DNA remained in generations. To decieve man to ensure Christ find no faith on earth on His return. (Luke 8:8). Establishment of One Word Government	Manifestation / visitations recorded in every generation except 33 years when Christ walked on eath. Also current and future.	Result



Goal

(Authors note: Elizabeth C. Prophet's interpretation does not necessarily concur with the Bible. Her faith orientation is not known to the author)

--ooOoo--

“For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named, That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God.”

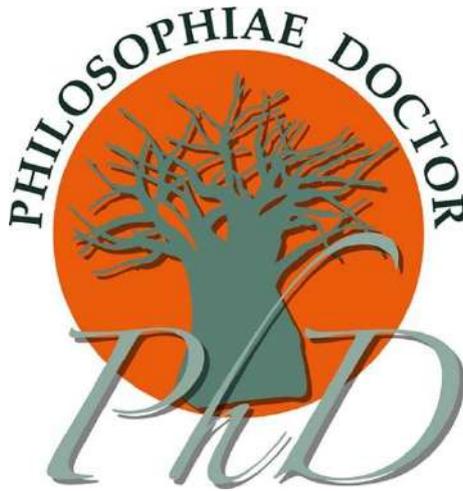
- Ephesians 3:14-19 (KJV)

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

THE REALITY OF TWO KINGDOMS: THE KINGDOM OF SATAN

Chapter Two



Chapter Two

The Reality of Two Kingdoms: The Kingdom of Satan

1. INTRODUCTION

The Bible recounts the legitimacy of two kingdoms. The Kingdom of God is acknowledged as the Kingdom of Light. The eternal Godhead; one God existing of three Persons: Father, Son and the Holy Spirit, distinct but inseparable, co-eternal, co-existent, co-equal in nature, attributes, power and glory. God reigns from eternity and will reign forever.

A hierarchy of multitudes of angels are ranked in God's kingdom to be to His service. Satan, ruler of the counterfeit kingdom of darkness was originally a majestic angel in charge of worship¹ in God's kingdom.

¹ Isaiah 14:12-14 (KJV) How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

Pride motivated him to revolt against God. The result of God's fury was his abandonment from heaven with a third of the angels who pledged loyalty and rebelled against God. The two kingdoms are locked in conflict. The fallen angels organised into hierarchy order with the aimed to oppose God's Kingdom.

2. TWO KINGDOMS AT WAR

2.1 The Theology of Two Kingdoms in Several Heavenly Realms

For the kingdom of God is not in word, but in power.

1 Corinthians 4:20 (NKJV)

In the beginning, only God existed in a singular Kingdom. God is absolutely good, evil did not originate with God. No opposing force existed at that time apart from God. God created moral beings, angels and man. From creation and for the time that they obeyed God, a singular kingdom existed. Rebellion and disobedience entered the Kingdom of God, at that moment His Kingdom was divided: The Kingdom of God versus the Kingdom of Satan. Evil entered God's Kingdom. Dualism was born and dichotomy was established. Dr. Murphy² compared **absolute dualism** where the ultimate reality of contrast is eternally dualistic to **Biblical dualism** as *modern dualism* where only the present reality exists in dualism. It did not exist in the beginning and it will not exist in the future.

Dr. Anna Mendez Ferrell³ reminded us that Satan, regardless off his power to cause distraction, is a fallen creature whereas God, who sent His son Jesus Christ to destroy the work of Satan (1 John 3:8)⁴, is infinitely powerful.

² Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 13

³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 36

⁴ 1 John 3:8 (NKJV) He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

Three principles remain fundamental in analysing the reality of the conflict between the Kingdom of Darkness where Satan rules and the Kingdom of Light where Jesus Christ is King.

Jesus Christ presented an absolute solution; His salvation and atonement are perfect. It presented the only opportunity to restore man's relationship with God. This gift of salvation is not automatically granted to all of mankind. Man has the opportunity to accept or to reject the gift. Satan's main aim remains to prevent man from accepting the gift of salvation in Jesus Christ.

Secondly, salvation accepted through Jesus Christ's included a victory over illness, disease, and sorrow. Yet again, this is not automatic. Faithful prayers are needed to activate deliverance. The third reality is of particular interest to this research: Jesus Christ defeated Satan but his continued determination to destroy mankind, born from his hatred towards God and man was not eliminated.

Conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan, implies, like all wars in history, territory, and strategy. This research evaluated the territory of the battle and the strategies born in Satan's war room.

Debating the two terms of Kingdom of God and Kingdom of Heaven, Prof. Dr. Brand⁵ elaborated on the use of the terms in the four gospels. Matthew uses both references (Kingdom of Heaven thirty-four times and Kingdom of God four times). Mark, Luke and John used Kingdom of God. The audience to whom the authors addressed their letters determined their lexicon preference. Matthew wrote to his fellow Jews within their common religious context. The other authors wrote to gentiles and avoided the implication of polytheism suggested in the Kingdom of Heaven. The Kingdom of God confirms monotheism.

Kingdoms (and warfare) imply territory. Translations of Ephesians 6:12 is coherent with the fact that the conflict is a spiritual battle in a spiritual realm

⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2009) *Spiritual War and Warfare. Manual 1*. P. 14

(territory). Translations include the following:

it is against organisations and powers that are spiritual. We are up against the unseen power that controls this dark world, and spiritual agents from the very headquarters of evil.

Ephesians 6:12 (PHILLIPS)

...against the spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly (supernatural) places.

Ephesians 6:12 (AMP)

...against rulers of darkness and powers in the spiritual world.

Ephesians 6:12 (CEV)

...against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)

A second observation with regards to Satan's territory is founded in the general interpretation that Satan was cast out of heaven - he can therefore no longer dwell in heaven and as such he is confined to hell. The theology that most Christians agree upon is that hell is a place of confinement for the wicked, below the surface of the earth.⁶ The dwelling place of the lost. The deceased will either go to heaven or hell. Hell, also consists of a lake of fire into which the beast and false prophets will be cast into after the great judgement of God. Tartarus is the deepest prison in hell where fallen angels' dwell.

Satan is not yet confined to hell. The Book of Job⁷ reflects on two occasions where God summoned Satan to appear before Him in the third heaven. In both instances Satan was roaming the earth.

Research pertaining to the spiritual reality or territory of Satan took note of the reference in the Book of Job to the third heaven. The reality of multiple heavens

⁶ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 18 and Spiritual authorities in high places – three heavens. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gMK54ITHqoM>

⁷ Job 1:6 (NKJV) Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them. and Job 2:1 (NKJV) Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD.

is provided in the very first verse (Genesis 1:1)⁸ referring to heavens (plural) and earth (singular).

This research presented the following interpretations:

The apostle Paul⁹ recalled an acquaintance who had an exceptional experience. The man was caught up to the third heaven, into paradise where he heard the voice of God. The narrative suggests paradise to be located in the third heaven, the dwelling place of God.

According to Derek Prince,¹⁰ the only logical conclusion would be that the existence of a third heaven automatically confirms the existence of a first and second heaven. Nothing exist in the third place without being preceded by a first and second.

Thus, there are at least three heavens although the possibility of more than three heavens are also not excluded. From Ephesians 4:10¹¹ it is also reasonable to assume that Paul referred to more than three heavens. The use of “all” normally implies a minimum of three.

Prince¹² related his personal experience whereby he experienced how he found it is easier to pray whilst he was travelling by aircraft over long distances. He felt above the obstruction of Satan’s kingdom and closer to God.

Although Prince clearly stated that this experience is very subjective and personal in nature, it led him to the conclusion that Satan rule somewhere between earth and the third heaven. He described this as *the “hostile kingdom that opposes*

⁸ Genesis 1:1 (NIV) In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

⁹ 2 Corinthians 12:2-4 (KJV) I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.

¹⁰ Prince, Derek. *Spiritual authorities in high places – three heavens*. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gMK54lTHqoM>

¹¹ Ephesians 4:10 (NKJV) He who ascended is also the One that descended far above all the heavens, that He might fill all things

¹² Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 21

us (believers) and seeks to hinder our (believers) prayers”

Satan’s kingdom relates to his rebellious character and is founded on pride, ambition, self-exaltation, a desire for authority, glory and his aim to replace God. Jesus’ Kingdom is portrayed to be the opposite, that of humbleness and obedience. (Philippians 2:6-10)¹³

Perry Stone¹⁴ interpreted the first heaven to be the physical observable heaven or the sky including the sun, moon and stars. Adam’s God given dominion was all inclusive of all the waters, land and the air in the first heaven.¹⁵ The dominion God bestowed upon Adam was transferred to Satan after Adam’s submissions to Satan in the garden of Eden.

Satan is the ‘god’ of the world. 1 John¹⁶ confirms the authority of the wicked one in the world. The Old Testament also affirms Satan’s presence and domain portrayed in his answer to God with regards to his whereabouts:

And the Lord said to Satan, “From where do you come?” So Satan answered the Lord and said, “From going to and fro on the earth, and from walking back and forth on it.”

Job 1:7 (NKJV)

And the LORD said to Satan, “From where do you come?” Satan answered the LORD and said, “From going to and fro on the earth, and from walking back and forth on it.”

Job 2:2 (NKJV)

¹³ Philippians 2:6-10 (NKJV) who, being in the form of God, did not consider it robbery to be equal with God, but made Himself of no reputation, taking the form of a bondservant, *and* coming in the likeness of men. And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself and became obedient to *the point of* death, even the death of the cross. Therefore God also has highly exalted Him and given Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, and of those on earth, and of those under the earth,

¹⁴ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 195

¹⁵ Genesis 1:26 (NKJV) Then God said, “Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the air, and over the cattle, over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.”

¹⁶ 1 John 5:19 (NKJV) We know that we are of God, and the whole world lies under the sway of the wicked one.

Dr. J. Vernon McGee was of the opinion that Satan's headquarters at a specific time could have been in Pergamos as per Revelations 2:13.¹⁷

whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.

2 Corinthians 4:4 (NKJV)

A suggestion of the second heaven is found in Ephesians 2:2¹⁸. This scripture positions Satan as the prince of the air. Atmosphere relates to air. Greek etymology¹⁹ accommodates two words for air: it first translates to the English word 'ether'— a higher, rarer atmosphere, and secondly to 'air', the lower atmosphere, contiguous with the earth's surface. Ephesians 2:2²⁰ implies the second translation of 'air'. Satan has authority in this sphere or domain. Everybody who rebels against God is automatically under the authority of Satan. Richards²¹ concurred in stating:

In the New Testament times, 'air' designated earth's atmosphere, where, according to popular belief, demons reside.

With reference to this research evaluating the spiritual impact on cultures and society, Richards²² observation of Satan's operation from the territory of 'air' adjacent to the physical realm is important to take note off:

Satan as ruler of demonic hosts who are at work in human societies, influencing cultures to encourage lifestyles that appeal to humankind's sinful nature. Thus, Satan is the spirit who now works through culture and in those who disobey God.

¹⁷ Revelation 2:13 (NKJV) "I know your works, and where you dwell, where Satan's throne *is*. And you hold fast to My name, and did not deny My faith even in the days in which Antipas *was* My faithful martyr, who was killed among you, where Satan dwells.

¹⁸ Ephesians 2:2 (NKJV) in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience,

¹⁹ Prince, Derek (2006) *Lucifer Exposed. The Devil's plan to destroy your life*. Baldock: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 35

²⁰ Ephesians 2:2 (NIV) in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient.

²¹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 215

²² Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 215

Satan's kingdom, a hierarchy of principalities, powers, rulers of darkness and spiritual hosts of wickedness might be managed from the second heaven, between the observable first heaven and the third, although Scripture has never referred to this realm as the second heaven. According to Law,²³ it is also the realm where angels are operative. The author was of the opinion that angels are active in the physical in service of God, activated by prayer and the Word of God.

The third heaven is the "holy" heaven, the dwelling place of God, also called Paradise according to Perry Stone²⁴. God even dwells above the heavens. The seat and throne of God with Jesus Christ at His right hand.²⁵ From this position God bestowed the gifts of Apostle, some prophets, evangelists, pastors and teachers to establish His church and to regain dominion. (Ephesians 4:11)²⁶ From here God also reveals new and current revelations.

The third heaven is the most familiar definition of have: first in many levels of glory, which is crowned by the Highest of Heavens, the dwelling place of the Father God.²⁷

According to the three-heaven theory, Christians have, due of the redemptive work of Christ on the cross, access to the third heaven by means of prayer.

Dr. Anna Mendez Ferrell²⁸ disregarded the theory of the second heaven as the territory where Satan is operational. She concluded to accept a physical (material) and invisible or spiritual reality.

Regardless of demonic attacks, influencing the physical, they do not become physical, they remain spiritual and launch spiritual attacks. Within the spiritual

²³ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 172

²⁴ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 195

²⁵ 2 Corinthians 12:2 (NKJV) I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago - whether in the body I do not know, or whether out of the body I do not know, God knows - such a one was caught up to the third heaven.

²⁶ Ephesians 4:11 (NKJV) And He Himself gave some *to be* apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some pastors and teachers,

²⁷ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. England: New Wine Press. P. 157

²⁸ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 44

realm they have the ability to move horizontally and vertically. Referring to the spiritual realm Dr. Ferrell²⁹ stated the following:

I've seen this spirit realm many times. I had also seen it many times when I belonged to the army of the enemy. It is a dimension that has diverse regions: places of captivity and, areas of torment, strongholds of demonic government, wells of imprisonment, deserts, and areas of deep darkness. The powers of darkness are able to move in all directions: from side to side and up and down. All this takes place in the midst of our earth.

Revelation's reference to the 'Great Prostitute' also referred to as the Queen of heaven is a powerful Satanic ruler who governs over cities and kings of the world.³⁰ Her habitat is described as many waters and the desert.

From various Bible translations the author concluded the following: regardless, the existence of several heavens, the conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan is a spiritual battle in a spiritual realm. Scripture has no differentiation between the spiritual realm of the earth (first heaven) and the spiritual realm of heavenlies (second heaven). There is no spiritual border or intermediary barrier dividing the earth and the second heaven. The author is of the opinion that angels as well as Satan and his accomplices operate in both realms and as such the spiritual battle is fought within both.

Dr. Ferrell³¹ encapsulated the phenomena as follows:

When Adam gave the dominion of the earth to the devil, all of the second heaven invaded the earth and began to rule it.

2.2 The Theology of War in the Two Kingdoms

Evidence of the spiritual nature of the conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan was given. In addition, another key to 'spiritual warfare' is

²⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 45

³⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 45

³¹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 44

the comprehension of 'Kingdom'. A Kingdom implies the dominion of a king, authority, or rulership. It also implies territory, culture, provision, war units, gate keepers, treasures and power. The Kingdom of God is a kingdom under God's rule and the opposing kingdom of Satan implies his (Satan's) rulership.

War involves a battle for territory and power. Whilst discussing the intense war between the Kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan it remains imperative to reiterate the truth with regards to the power of Satan. Satan is a created and fallen creature. His power cannot be compared to the power of his Creator, God.

At first Adam failed to discern the devious strategy of Satan. God sent a second Adam, Jesus Christ to destroy the works of the devil (1 John 3:8)³². All power and authority belong to Jesus Christ who victoriously defeated Satan.

Through Jesus's salvation atonement was achieved. Jesus' victory on the cross is perfect, absolute, irrevocable and available to all men. This does not imply that all of mankind is automatically saved. Salvation and atonement are available to all, but it remains an individual choice to accept the gift.

Another truth is Jesus defeated above all else the power of the devil, but it doesn't mean the devil no longer exists and the church no longer has to do anything about him.³³

Regardless of the fact that Satan is already defeated, Satan did not retract his war on mankind, believers and non-believers alike. (1 Peter 5:8)³⁴ Born from Satan's absolute hate towards God, his hatred is directed to the pinnacle of God's creation. His hatred is channelled in a variety of strategies to cause suffering and pain and numerous false religions to diverge man from the true gospel of Christ. His main aim remains to prohibit man from accepting the gospel of Jesus Christ, resulting in an everlasting life of torment. With regards to followers of Christ,

³² 1 John 3 :8 (NKJV) He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

³³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 40

³⁴ 1 Peter 5:8 (NKJV) Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

Satan's objective is to proscribe the fullness of their relationship with Christ, their calling and purpose in His service.

Believers in Christ received delegated authority to combat Satan's assaults. Only in the Name of Jesus Christ do believers have authority. Never in their own power. Every minute and major action are only effective if conducted in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, Son of the only Almighty God.

2.3 War Between Two Kingdoms: A Biblical Review

The Bible, from Genesis to Revelations narrates the cosmic conflict for power and dominion. Satan's singular focus is to resist God's purpose by engaging in war not only on the saints, but also against the whole of humanity. God created man in His image and gave him dominion to rule over all of God's creation.

Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule.

Genesis 1:26 (NASB)

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful and increase in number, fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over ... every living creature that moves on the ground.

Genesis 1:28 (NASB)

Satan's first success is portrayed in Genesis 3 when Adam and Eve abandoned their dominion to rule. God created man to rule, to have dominion as His representatives on earth. When man sinned, he lost both his relationship with God as well as his authority.

Man's rulership was replaced by sin and Satan's dictatorship. Man's dominion was transferred to Satan. Scripture confirms the world under the power of the evil one (1 John 5:19)³⁵ and Satan as the god of the world. (2 Corinthians 4:4)³⁶. His

³⁵ 1 John 5 :19 (ESV) We know that we are from God, and the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.

³⁶ 2 Corinthians 4:4 (ESV) In their case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

rulership is characterised by pride, ambition, rebellion, and self-exaltation.

Man abandoned his *First Commission*. Although the phrase Great Commission is not found in scripture, God's command to re-establish His Kingdom on earth by conveying the gospel of Christ to all nations, depicts what is known as the *Great Commission*, but can also be recognised as the *Second Commission* after the first failure. The re-establishment of the Kingdom and rulership of Jesus Christ and the re-establishment of man's first rule, not in his own capacity for that was abandoned, but new authority in Jesus Christ. Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand³⁷ stated the following:

We must realise that the Great Commission is directly related to spiritual warfare. And that the fulfilment on the Great Commission requires an understanding of the clash of the kingdoms and the dynamics of spiritual conflict. Unfortunately, Satan understands the purposes of God far better than the saints understand the plans of hell.

2.3.1 Conflict in the Heavens Illustrated in the Book of Deuteronomy³⁸

After Moses's death, Satan desired to have the corpse of the man of God. Michael contested Satan's disputes and accusations and proceeded to bury Moses. This account was included in the original Jewish work entitled "The Testament" or "The Assumption of Moses".³⁹ It is noteworthy that Michael did not rebuke Satan from his own authority, but in the authority of God. It could be argued that this is an indication that Michael and Satan are equal in rank, both created Archangels. The fact that Satan rebelled against God did not degrade his original rank.

But even the archangel Michael, when he was disputing with the devil (Satan), and arguing about the body of Moses, did not dare bring an abusive condemnation against him, but [simply] said, "The Lord rebuke you!"

Jude 9 (AMP)

³⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2009) *Spiritual War and Warfare. Manual 1*. P. 21

³⁸ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 156

³⁹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1945

2.3.2 Conflict Manifested Through Nimrod and Illustrated in the Tower of Babel and Babylon

The Tower of Babel and the city of Babylon depict the epicentre of the conflict between good and evil, between God and Satan and as such of spiritual warfare. The tower and the city represented idolatry, humanism, pride, polytheism, henotheism⁴⁰, demonism, animism⁴¹ all in defiance of God.

The tower had a religious and humanistic function. Hamilton⁴² regarded the temple as a 'temple tower' because it was dedicated to foreign gods and an expression of man's pride. The embodiment of pride and ungodliness.

Nimrod was the architect and builder of both Nineveh, Babylon and Assyria, the latter two being Israel's most atrocious oppressors. Nimrod, known as rebel, murderer, hunter and a furious man designed the building of the tower and the city, both attempts to nullify God and Israel. Nimrod's name meaning 'we shall rebel'⁴³ reflects the suggestion of him being the manifestation of god-kings who defied God. His endeavours and idolatry embody man's desire to exalt himself above God. He is described as the Old Testament anti-Christ and the second Cain. The embodiment of pride and godliness infuriated God. Calvin⁴⁴ summarised their transgression as follows:

To erect a citadel was not in itself so great a crime; but to raise an eternal monument to themselves, which might endure throughout all ages, was a proof of headstrong pride, joined with contempt of God ... they wage war with God."

⁴⁰ Henotheism: 1) the worship of a particular god, as by a family or tribe, without disbelieving in the existence of others. 2) ascription of supreme divine attributes to whichever one of several gods is addressed at the time. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/henotheism>

⁴¹ Animism: The attribution of a living soul to plants, inanimate objects, and natural phenomena. The belief in a supernatural power that organises and animates the material universe. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/animism>

⁴² Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 230

⁴³ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 230

⁴⁴ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 231

The tower of Babel became the embodiment of rebellion against God, the worship of foreign gods and prideful humanism. Babylon, meaning 'confusion' operates through false religions, philosophies, and dictators to separate man from God. Dr. Ferrell⁴⁵ noted the following:

The devil governs through a spiritual city called Babylon, which opposes the heavenly city, the New Jerusalem. Babylon is the devil's general headquarters, several spiritual regions arrayed under Babylon combine with it to compose his kingdom of terror and death.

Revelation reveals the following with reference to symbolic city Babylon, the demonic government:

And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.

Revelation 17:5 (KJV)

And the woman whom you saw is that great city which reigns over the kings of the earth.

Revelation 17:18 (NKJV)

2.3.3 War in the Heavens Illustrated in the Book of Daniel

War in the heavens is confirmed in Daniel 10. Daniel had set aside three weeks of special prayer and fasting and mourning before God on behalf of Israel and was taken captive to Babylonia. Scripture reveals activities in the cosmic realm or second heaven⁴⁶ at the end of the three weeks. This incident is prevalent in understanding the conflict in the heavens. A glorious angel visited Daniel saying:

Then he said to me, "Do not fear, Daniel, for from the first day that you set your heart to understand, and to humble yourself before your God, your words were heard; and I have come because of your words. But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me twenty-one days; and

⁴⁵ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 49

⁴⁶ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 156

behold, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me, for I had been left alone there with the kings of Persia.

Daniel 10:12-13 (NKJV)

It remains very significant that Gabriel was dispatched on the first day of Daniel's prayer. Gabriel reported on how the **prince** of the kingdom of Persia resisted him to attend to Daniel's prayer. The resistance and confrontation lasted 21 days until the archangel Michael arrived to assist Gabriel. The second significant fact is that the archangel Michael's responsibility is to stand guard over Daniel's nation Israel.⁴⁷ Gabriel also referred to the **king of Persia** and the **prince of Greece**.

Prince⁴⁸ is of the opinion that the **king** is one of the sub-rulers and the **prince** the supreme ruler, part of the kingdom of Persia. At the time, with 127 provinces, one of the largest and most powerful empires on earth. Satan assigned a spiritual authority from his kingdom to the whole of the Persian kingdom with other subordinate spiritual authorities assigned to subdivisions within the Persian kingdom.

The battle took place in the second heaven between God's throne and the earth in a satanic kingdom. Gabriel also alluded to the fact that he would have to return to the battle to fight with the princes of Persia and Greece, referring to two of the four Gentile empires who dominated Israel during and after their captivity. The four successive gentile empires were Babylon, Persian, Greece and Rome. Gabriel indicated that each empire has a dominating angel in the spiritual realm. Gabriel also confirmed how he strengthened the Gentile king Darius who fought against the Persian Empire. As a result, Israel was set free from captivity. (Daniel 11:1)⁴⁹.

The kingdom of Satan still exists between God's throne and the earth.⁵⁰ This is

⁴⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1250

⁴⁸ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 25

⁴⁹ Daniel 11:1 (NKJV) "Also in the first year of Darius the Mede, I, *even I*, stood up to confirm and strengthen him.)

⁵⁰ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 24

also confirmed by Paul in Ephesians 6⁵¹ – about 30 years after the death, resurrection and ascension of Jesus. Thus, whatever the situation was in the day of Daniel, was unchanged after the death, resurrection, and ascension of Jesus. Jesus ascended far above Satan’s kingdom, but Satan’s kingdom remained.

From Daniel’s encounter the following significant conclusions are drawn:

- A fierce but invincible war is being fought in the spiritual realm between God’s angels and Satan’s angels.
- Prayer activates angelic assistance – commissioned by God to fulfil sincere prayer. Man are not allowed to pray to angels nor to give them command to act. Prayer set the forces of heaven into action. Prayer, often prompted by the Holy Spirit, is a human responsibility.
- Angels might be obstructed in reacting to believer’s prayers.
- Praise, thanksgiving and fasting reinforce prayer.⁵²
- Spiritual battles concern God’s people (believers) and God’s purpose.
- Angels as well as demons have different ranks and/or powers. The prince of Persia was stronger than Gabriel and succeeded in withholding him from visiting Daniel. The angel, prince Michael again, had more power to defeat the prince of Persia.
- The empire of Greece succeeded the empire of Persia. Gabriel mentioned that the “prince of Greece” is about to come” indicating that one spiritual victory will be followed by the next battle. The battle against Satan who aims to obstruct God’s purpose in continues.
- The text suggests that angels have the power to influence the course of events among nations and people. The “prince of the kingdom of Persia” was a demonic prince with the aim to attempt to control the nation under his command.

⁵¹ Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV) For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual *hosts* of wickedness in the heavenly *places*.

⁵² 1 Timothy 2:1 (NKJV) Therefore I exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, *and* giving of thanks be made for all men,

- The outcome of the battle between angels and demons is not restricted to the supernatural or the heavenlies. The battle is invisible and fought in the spiritual realm, but one dare not ignore the influential actions in the natural realm. The spiritual battle is fought between the angels and demonic forces. Daniel showcased (and as such portrayed an example for every believer) his commitment to persevere in fasting and in prayer in the natural. The aim is to gain strategic advantages on earth for either God or Satan. This suggestion is supported in Ephesians 6:10-12⁵³
- Michael is the “great prince” assigned to the nation of Israel.⁵⁴ (Daniel 12:1)⁵⁵ This is significant for this study. The assumption can be made that if God assigned an angel prince to the nation of Israel, he could have appointed a prince to other nations as well. And the same is also true for Satan (as Satan copies everything God does). Satan might also assign demons to reign over specific nations. An invincible war for a nation or for spiritual or geographic territory is thus possible. Jude 9⁵⁶ also acknowledge Michael as “the archangel”, the head or chief angel.
- Although the war is between good and evil, it must be understood that God remains in absolute control and He has the power and ability to take control.

The Book of Daniel provides the first reference to Michael, the archangel. Archangel means to be the first in political rank or power⁵⁷. Michael meaning “who is like God” reflects the opposite attitude of Satan who declared “I will be like the

⁵³ Ephesians 6:10-12 (KJV) Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

⁵⁴ Prince, Derek (2014) *Spiritual Warfare*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 21 and Daniel 10:21 (KJV) But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince. / Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1250

⁵⁵ Daniel 12:1 (NKJV) “At that time Michael shall stand up, The great prince who stands *watch* over the sons of your people; And there shall be a time of trouble, Such as never was since there was a nation, *Even* to that time. And at that time your people shall be delivered, Every one who is found written in the book.

⁵⁶ Jude 9 (NKJV) Yet Michael the archangel, in contending with the devil, when he disputed about the body of Moses, dared not bring against him a reviling accusation, but said, “The Lord rebuke you!”

⁵⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1945

Most High”

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

Isaiah 14:14 (KJV)

Several researchers speculate that Gabriel and Satan were also created as archangels although this is not confirmed in Scripture. Jude 9 also portrays how Michael relied on God to rebuke Satan regardless his stature.

This might be as a result of the fact that Michael and Satan were created equal and therefor, he lacked authority to rebuke an ‘angel’ equal in rank.

Revelations 7:1⁵⁸ portrays Michael as the commander of the army of angels who battle against Satan and his demon forces. This is the fourth referral to Michael, in all four references spiritual warfare is implied.

2.3.4 War Confirmed in Ezekiel: Spiritual Rulers Over Territories

Ezekiel, the first prophet called by God during Israel’s Babylonian captivity, is considered one of the four major prophets along with Isaiah, Jeremiah and Daniel. The Book of Ezekiel contains thirteen prophecies over a period of twenty-two years.

All thirteen prophecies are dated and delivered between 592 - 570 B.C. and contains God’s judgement on Judah and neighbouring nations and cities, including Ammon, Moab, Edom, Philistia, Tyre, Sidon, Egypt, Assyria, Elam, Gog and Magog. Babylon is the primary focus of God’s judgement.

Chapters 26 and 27 contains Ezekiel’s prophecy against the harbour city Tyre. “Tyre regarded herself as all-powerful, superhuman and virtually eternal, she

⁵⁸ Revelations 7:1 (NKJV) After these things I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, on the sea, or on any tree.

was possessed of wealth and wisdom above all the other cities, and this led on to the incredible arrogance for which Tyre was notorious.”

Chapter 28 is prophesying against the leader, the prince of Tyre (according to Phoenician annals the king of this time was Ithobal II (called Ithobalus II by Josephus)) and the leadership of the city.⁵⁹

Ezekiel specifies both the **prince of Tyre** (Ezekiel 28:2)⁶⁰ as well as the **king of Tyre** (Ezekiel 28:11-12)⁶¹. Because it was not uncommon in Hebrew thought to differentiate between the two titles referring to the same individual, Christian, and Jewish scholars extensively debate the interpretation of prince vs. king.

The description Ezekiel provides of the King of Tyre substantively indicates that it is not the human ruler but Satan. Two rulers are addressed: The physical ruler and the supernatural demonic ruler. The following references are true in describing Satan, but not true in describing the human ruler of Tyre:

- Created perfect in wisdom and beauty (Ezekiel 28:12)⁶²
- in the Garden of Eden (Ezekiel 28:13)⁶³
- covered by every precious stone (Ezekiel 28:13)⁶⁴
- created as an anointed cherub (Ezekiel 28:14)⁶⁵
- upon the Holy mountain of God (Ezekiel 28:14)⁶⁶
- walked up and down the mountain of fire (Ezekiel 28:14)⁶⁷
- perfect in the day of his creation (Ezekiel 28:14)⁶⁸

⁵⁹ Enduring Word. Ezekiel 28 – Against Satan, King of Tyre. Available at: <https://enduringword.com/bible-commentary/ezekiel-28/>

⁶⁰ Ezekiel 28:2 (KJV) Son of man, say unto the prince of Tyrus, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thine heart is lifted up, and thou hast said, I am a God, I sit in the seat of God, in the midst of the seas; yet thou art a man, and not God, though thou set thine heart as the heart of God:

⁶¹ Ezekiel 28:11-12 (KJV) Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty.

⁶² Ezekiel 28:12 (AMP) You had the full measure of perfection *and* the finishing touch [of completeness], Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty

⁶³ Ezekiel 28:13 (AMP) You were in Eden, the garden of God

⁶⁴ Ezekiel 28:13 (AMP) You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The ruby, the topaz, and the diamond; The beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; The lapis lazuli, the turquoise, and the emerald; And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and your sockets

⁶⁵ Ezekiel 28:14 (AMP) You were the anointed cherub who covers *and* protects

⁶⁶ Ezekiel 28:14 (AMP) And I placed you there. You were on the holy mountain of God;

⁶⁷ Ezekiel 28:14 (AMP) You walked in the midst of the stones of fire [sparkling jewels]

⁶⁸ Ezekiel 28:14 (AMP) You were blameless in your ways From the day you were created

- unrighteousness and evil were found in him (Ezekiel 28:15)⁶⁹
- and cast from the mountain of God. (Ezekiel 28:16)⁷⁰

From this text the following significant conclusions are drawn:

- Although God created man for a personal relationship, and although Christ died to provide the opportunity to re-instate this personal relationship between God and every individual, God has great interest in nations and territories (cities) and He casts judgement over them.
- Attributes of leadership over cities and nations become the attributes of the city and its inhabitants. The proud self-righteous prince of Tyre projected his pride to the extent that the city as a whole was known by this characteristic.
- The reality of spiritual authorities controlling nations, leaders, and territorial areas.
- Pride and self-righteousness are the original sins of Satan and remains an abomination before God.

2.3.5 War Confirmed in Ephesians: Instructions for Military Armour

Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

Ephesians 6:11-12 (NASB)

From this text the following is significant:

- Paul differentiates between the various weaponry in the arsenal of God provided for believers to stand against the forces of hell.
- The reality of a war is stated boldly.

⁶⁹ Ezekiel 28:15 (AMP) Until unrighteousness *and* evil were found in you.

⁷⁰ Ezekiel 28:16 (AMP) And you sinned; Therefore I have cast you out as a profane and unholy thing From the mountain of God.)

- The enemy is not physical but spiritual
- The spiritual enemy has clearly defined levels of authority.

2.3.6 Spiritual Conflict Illustrated in Zechariah

Zechariah 3:1-2⁷¹ narrates how Satan appeared on the High Priest Joshua's right-hand side to oppose him in ministering to the nation. Israel returned after seventy years of captivity in Babylon to rebuild the temple.

The priesthood was inactive for seventy years and as a result the priestly garments did not comply with God's assignment and were considered to be unclean, violating God's Word. (Leviticus 21:17-24)⁷² The Angel of the Lord called upon God to rebuke Satan. Three important conclusions:

- Satan always aims to disrupt and/or prevent the ministering of the Word of God.
- Satan knows God's Word and prescribed assignments and laws.
- Satan projects unworthiness to believers, especially those actively building God's Kingdom like he did with the priesthood who mobilised to rebuild the temple.
- Satan never seizes to accuse believers.⁷³

⁷¹ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 156

⁷² Leviticus 21:17-24 (NKJV) "Speak to Aaron, saying: 'No man of your descendants in *succeeding* generations, who has *any* defect, may approach to offer the bread of his God. For any man who has a defect shall not approach: a man blind or lame, who has a marred *face* or any *limb* too long, a man who has a broken foot or broken hand, or is a hunchback or a dwarf, or a *man* who has a defect in his eye, or eczema or scab, or is a eunuch. No man of the descendants of Aaron the priest, who has a defect, shall come near to offer the offerings made by fire to the LORD. He has a defect; he shall not come near to offer the bread of his God. He may eat the bread of his God, *both* the most holy and the holy; only he shall not go near the veil or approach the altar, because he has a defect, lest he profane My sanctuaries; for I the LORD sanctify them.' "And Moses told *it* to Aaron and his sons, and to all the children of Israel.

⁷³ Revelation 12:10 (NKJV) Then I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, "Now salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of His Christ have come, for the accuser of our brethren, who accused them before our God day and night, has been cast down.

2.3.7 War Escalates in Revelation

The significance in this scripture is found in the following facts:

- There will be a final war in the heavenlies.
- Angelic forces under rulership of Michael will fight against Satan and his allies.
- Satan will be defeated and cast from heaven.

The war broke out in Heaven. Michael and his angels battled with the dragon. The dragon and his angels fought back, but they did not prevail and they were expelled from Heaven. So the huge dragon, the serpent of ancient times, who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world, was hurled down upon the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him.

Revelation 12:7-9 (PHILLIPS)

2.4 The Implication of the Spiritual War for Individuals

Ignorance or denial pertaining to the reality of the spiritual battle does not annihilate Satan's hate for God and Christians, nor his strategy to prohibit the establishment of God's kingdom and as a result, his battle and variety of devious plans and strategies. ***"We are at war. We are involved in this warfare whether we like it or not and, whether we are aware of it or not. A war of universal proportions putting God and His truth against Satan and his lies. It's a battle of wills between God and Satan. It's a cosmic conflict that involves God and the highest creature He ever made and it filters down to every human being."***⁷⁴

Opposing mere ignorance with regards to the reality of the battle is ignorance with regards to the knowledge and preparation for war.

Dr. Anna Mendez Ferrell⁷⁵ highlighted the dangers, errors and strategies of war

⁷⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2009) *Spiritual War and Warfare. Manual 1*. P. 23

⁷⁵ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 3

and cautioned that ignorance not only discourages believers but also prompts Satan to launch powerful counter attacks.

Dr. Ferrell⁷⁶ was of the opinion that not all Christians are called to “fight on the frontline” in high level warfare. The author strongly agreed with her statement that God is preparing and raising up an army and that every Christian should be armed and aware to the enemy’s schemes and attacks emerging from the second heaven.⁷⁷ God has called all believers to be soldiers of war, though the level of combat varies. The call for warfare is a central theme in the gospel but sadly it has not been acknowledged in many Christian doctrines.

Satan has declared war and roams the earth like a hungry lion⁷⁸ to find victims of his onslaught.

“Pierce⁷⁹ included the following in the battle for power: **“wars over the mind, time, God’s presence and glory, power, wealth, the nations and blood.”** He extended his exploration with regards to spiritual warfare by stating:

When the body of Christ at large engages in spiritual warfare, all of natural society is affected: religion, politics (legal and military), economics, media, arts and entertainments, family, education. These seven “mountains” or “mind molders” define what society looks like. How we live is linked with the condition of these societal structures.⁸⁰

Biblical evidence for the spiritual war-battle is portrayed in Paul’s metaphorical comparison of the Christian life to warfare. Paul motivated Timothy to-

- fight the good fight, lay hold on eternal life. (1 Timothy 6:12)⁸¹ and to

⁷⁶ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 3

⁷⁷ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 7

⁷⁸ 1 Peter 5:8 (ISV) Be clear-minded and alert. Your opponent, the Devil, is prowling around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour.

⁷⁹ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 88

⁸⁰ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 139

⁸¹ 1 Timothy 6:12 (NKJV) Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, to which you were also called and have confessed the good confession in the presence of many witnesses.

- “endure hardship as a good soldier for Jesus Christ.” (2 Timothy 2:3)⁸²

Paul exhorted believers to:

- “put on the armour of light” (Romans 13:12)⁸³ and to
- put on the whole armour of God (Ephesians 6:11)⁸⁴

Paul’s letter not only **warns**, but also **instructs** believers to be equipped, protected, and armed with God’s armour.

- The armour does not imply a passive defence but an effective and active offence against the Satanic forces. Paul’s emphasis on prayer will be discussed in the Conclusion of the thesis.

Effectiveness in the battle is determined by the skilful use of spiritual weapons (discussed in the final Conclusion), spiritual discernment and submission to the Holy Spirit. Spiritual warfare needs to be a constant and continues lifestyle and not an occasional exorcism or conflict where Satan is rebuked.

Spiritual warfare relates to God’s purpose and God’s people. It is critical to partake in this warfare to ensure that God’s purposes for God’s people are fulfilled.

Literature in general accepts and refers to the conflict between Satan and Christians - the extension and representatives of the one Holy God.

The author was of the opinion that Satan’s rage and war is not restricted to Christians only. Although his strategy and hate intensify towards Christians, he also wars against non-Christians or non-believers, to humanity in totality. His objectives towards Christians are multiple, but fundamentally to prohibit comprehension of the Word of God, to prohibit the fullness of fellowship with God, to cancel God’s purpose for the individual’s life and the conveying of the Truth to

⁸² 2 Timothy 2:3 (NKJV) You therefore must endure hardship as a good soldier of Jesus Christ.

⁸³ Romans 13:12 (NKJV) The night is far spent, the day is at hand. Therefore let us cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armor of light.

⁸⁴ Ephesians 6:11 (NKJV) Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

all the nations.

Aiming at non-believers, Satan has multiple strategies to prohibit the individual to come to faith in Christ. This remains the primary goal. Multiple false religions to replace the true gospel of Christ, rejection to oppose the love of God and salvation and atonement of Christ.

The embargo on the expansion of the Kingdom of God. Lacking the discernment of the Holy Spirit and knowledge of the Word of God result in non-believers falling victim to Satan's multiple strategies. Several of these strategies are discussed in this Chapter.

Included in God's marching orders is His grace to triumph. God never calls His followers to do anything without releasing His power and His grace to be successful.

Dr. Anna Mendez Ferrell⁸⁵, experienced in the practicalities of spiritual warfare casted the following warning:

Spiritual warfare is not a subject to go into or take lightly; it is a battle against an astute, tricky, very real enemy. It requires preparation and very strict rules. To enter this kind of warfare with just enthusiasm and no real understanding, without a call from the Most High and without the necessary anointing, there's little doubt, very serious consequences will be experienced.

2.5 The Principle of Love in War

For God so loved ... that he gave his only begotten son that

John 3:16 (KJV)⁸⁶

Foundational in war against the enemy of God is a thorough understanding of the

⁸⁵ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 75

⁸⁶ John 3:16 (NKJV) For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.

love of God for mankind. This love of God is the purpose for the suffering Christ endured to present a comprehensive sacrifice and atonement for all of mankind – excluding no one.

All tribes, nations, religions, even cults and enemies of God, past, present, and future are included in the love of God and the crucifixion of Christ with the purpose to restore the love-relationship between God and mankind. For example, a spiritual war against the *religious systems* such of Islam, Ku Klux Klan, Freemasonry etc. does not imply a war with the individuals lured and enslaved into ungodly religious systems.

Chuck Pierce⁸⁷ explained the principle of spiritual territory and Islam as follows:

“The Islamic religious structure follows the spiritual principle of treading to gain territory. Those enslaved to it gain military control or territory (see Joshua 1:3)⁸⁸ establishing their authority through war, bloodshed or whatever necessary to secure what they have gained, being willing to “lay their lives down” to advance their agenda.”

The author was of the opinion that the principle of gaining spiritual territory is applicable to all religions opposing the gospel of Jesus Christ. Even the non-militant religions. Spiritual territory resort either to the Kingdom of Light or the Kingdom of Darkness.

Laws of war (attack, destroy, prisoners, hostages etc.) should not overrule or annul the law of love. Followers of Christ should always portray an intense love and compassion for mankind, particularly those trapped in Satan’s web of destruction. The love of God should not only be manifested, but should be the motivation to engage in conflict with the purpose to bring restoration, healing, deliverance etc. (John 15:12,13)⁸⁹ ***“Spiritual warfare is the outward expression of the compassionate heart of God who cannot rest while there is pain and evil***

⁸⁷ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 41

⁸⁸ Joshua 1:3 (NKJV) Every place that the sole of your foot will tread upon I have given you, as I said to Moses.

⁸⁹ John 15:12,13 (NKJV) This is My commandment, that you love one another as I have loved you. 13 Greater love has no one than this, than to lay down one’s life for his friends.

in the world.⁹⁰ Compassion and love for the ‘unsaved’⁹¹ humanity cannot accommodate ignorance with regards to the reality of the battle between God and Satan. Jesus Christ confirmed the conflict by stating:

“Do not think that I came to bring peace on earth. I did not come to bring peace but a sword.”

Matthew 10:34 (NKJV)

3. HIERARCHY OF SATAN’S KINGDOM

The Biblical evidence pertaining to the two Kingdoms is undisputed. In addition, Biblical evidence pertaining to Satan, his origin, character, strategy and ultimate goal is also conclusive. The reality of the hierarchy of Satan is imperative in comprehending the enormous magnitude of his agenda to war against God and Christians. Satan’s intension is boldly stated in several Scripture texts.

The thief comes with the sole intention of stealing and killing and destroying,

John 10:10 (PHILLIPS)

For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)

The Kingdom of Darkness is divided into various levels of authority. Paul’s letter to the Ephesians emphasised the following levels:

⁹⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 71

⁹¹ Unsaved: Individuals not adhering to the Christian faith. Non-Christians. Individuals who do not accept Jesus Christ as their Lord and Saviour. Ignorance or unbelief with regards to Jesus’s love and His sacrifice to reconcile man with God. Jesus Christ is the only pathway to eternal life. Opposite of Ephesians 2:8: For by grace are you saved through faith.

1. General commander Beelzebub
- ↓
2. Four Principalities
- ↓
3. Powers
- ↓
4. Rulers of the darkness of this age
- ↓
5. Spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

3.1 The General (Commander in Chief): Beelzebub⁹²

In this research the term 'Commander in Chief'⁹³ is used to echo the title of the American President who holds this title and who is portrayed to be the most influential and powerful individual on earth. With multiplied power in comparison to the U.S. President, Beelzebub is the commander and chief of Satan's demonic military forces, ruling with fear. Wicked in his own character, Beelzebub also holds power over all witches and wizards. He has the appearance of half man half horse or a winged horse and is also portrayed as a fly.

As such he controls everything in the spiritual realm that flies, including witches and wizards. Beelzebub feeds on blood and subsequently controls Satan's blood sacrifices. In order to replenish blood supplies any kind of accident with loss of human life is orchestrated. Blood is taken to the Spiritual Witch Coven and finally to Satan as a blood-sacrifice. Higher hierarchy entities live from blood only.⁹⁴ Prof.

⁹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Rādāh Ministries. P. 29

⁹³ Commander in Chief, the supreme commander of the armed forces, nation or, sometimes, of several allied nations. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/commander-in-chief>

⁹⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to deconstruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1505-1507

Dr. Brand⁹⁵ described Beelzebub as the general in command over four princes, representative of four principalities.

3.2 Principalities: Four Princes for the Four Directions⁹⁶

Princes might be Fallen Angels who rebelled with Satan against God. The princes in Satan's dark kingdom obtain their power directly from Satan and their commands from Satan via Beelzebub. Second in charge, they act as the generals in Satan's military forces, responsible to implement Satan's strategies in four separate areas. They rule over geographical areas and groups of people. Their primary agenda is the assault aimed at Christians: to steal, to kill and to destroy (1 Peter 5:8⁹⁷, John 1:10⁹⁸).

Instructions are given to Powers and Rules of Darkness (Spiritual and Physical Entities) and then directed to spiritual hosts of wickedness and then to Familiar and servant spirits, also known as evil spirits.⁹⁹

Their international domination includes religion, the occult, finances, politics and sex. The princes exert their power by giving daily orders to millions of demons and their human followers and co-workers.

The four princes worship Satan and share his hatred for the church of Christ. Each prince, allocated to a specific direction (North, East, South and West) is also representative of the four basic elements of Earth, Air, Fire and Water and

⁹⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Rādāh Ministries

⁹⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Rādāh Ministries. P. 14.

⁹⁷ 1 Peter 5:8: (AMP) Be sober [well balanced and self-disciplined], be alert *and* cautious at all times. That enemy of yours, the devil, prowls around like a roaring lion [fiercely hungry], seeking someone to devour.

⁹⁸ John 10:10: (AMP) The thief comes only in order to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have *and* enjoy life, and have it in abundance [to the full, till it overflows]

⁹⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1505-1507

collaborates with powers aiming to destroy Christ's church.

Principalities/Princes According to Occultism and Egyptian Mythology¹⁰⁰				
Principalities	Direction	Area	God's or Goddesses	Egyptian Mythology
Belial	Prince of the North (False) Lion	On Earth	Moon, Earth Mother Gods (Buto, Shu, Meshueret, Isis)	Mesthap/Hap/Hapi, with and Ape head
Appolyon Abbaddon	Luciferic Prince of the East	In the Air	Sun-God (Bast, Min, Osiris, Ra)	Taumutef/Duamutef, with a Jackal head
The Beast Hellhound	Satanic Prince of the South	Under the Earth	Terror, War, Battle Gods (Nekhebet, Sekhmet)	Akeset/Amset/Imsety with a Human Head
Leviathan	Prince of the West Serpent or Dragon	In the Water	Bloodlust, Underworld, Destruction God (Ament, Hathor, Neith, Anubis, Temu, Sebek, Nepthys)	Qebhsennuf/Qebhsmaf, with a Hawk Head

Table 1: Principalities/Princes According to Occultism and Egyptian Mythology

3.2.1 Prince of the North, Representing Earth: Belial¹⁰¹

Belial, also referred to as the 'false lion', takes credit for the occult, magic, the

¹⁰⁰ De Lange, Dr. Susan F.M. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria. P. 224

¹⁰¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 21-24

metaphysics, Freemasonry and related institutions. False prophetic churches are also exploited by Belial with the aim to bring people who are seeking the supernatural into bondage.¹⁰² All of these are applicable in a South African context. Freemasonry is influential in South African politics. The media almost daily report on occultic activities and false prophets luring people into false gospels.

Belial aligns with Marine spirits, Paimon¹⁰³, Ariton¹⁰⁴ and Leviathan. He is the spirit of worthlessness and strives to decrease worthy attributes such as authority, faith, life, spiritual growth, finances, the individual's relationship with God and marriage.¹⁰⁵ He uses emotions, especially anger, and attacks a person's mind and thoughts, penetrating the sub-consciousness of people to influence thoughts and dreams. It is responsible for the breakdown of an individual's mind to the extent that they are convinced of their worthlessness.

This results in the inability to accept God's love and acceptance, ultimately unable to accept Christ's atonement.

¹⁰² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1426-1427.

¹⁰³ Paimon: A Great King, and very obedient unto LUCIFER. He appeareth in the form of a Man sitting upon a Dromedary with a Crown most glorious upon his head. This Spirit can teach all Arts and Sciences, and other secret things. He can discover unto thee what the Earth is, and what holdeth it up in the Waters; and what Mind is, and where it is; or any other thing thou mayest desire to know. He giveth Dignity, and confirmeth the same. Available at: <https://demonsanddemonolatry.com/demon-of-the-day-king-paimon/2019/12/27>

¹⁰⁴ Ariton: Sometimes also known as Egin or Egin, this demon's name likely derives from the Greek word arhreton, which Mathers defines as meaning 'secret' or 'mysterious'. According to both Mathers and Agrippa, Ariton's equivalent in Jewish lore is the demon Azael. He is attributed with the power to discover hidden treasure. He knows the past, present and future, and can cause people to have visions. He can make spirits appear and take any form. And he can also give familiars. He is reputed to have power to revive people from the dead. He reveals identities of thieves, gifts people with the power of flight, and can make warriors manifest to protect his charges. Notably, a demon with the name Ariton appears as the spirit of Saturn in several works. Available at: <http://occult-world.com/demons/ariton/> 2019/12/27

¹⁰⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1426-1427.

Successes of Prince of North	
In Collaboration with Jezebel	Independently
In families: The Biblical order, image and role of husbands and fathers are annihilated and replaced by the dominating wife and mother.	God of worthlessness
Mother-daughter hatred	Marriage disruption
False religions. Jesus Christ is made worthless e.g., the Roman Catholic Church's emphasis on Mother Mary and not Jesus Christ.	Spirits of separation
	Abortion of financial success
	Goddess worship
	Paganism

Table 2: Prince of North

3.2.1.1 Application to South Africa

- The occult - including sorcery, divination, witchcraft, sangoma's (including magic and astral travel). The South Africa Pagan Rights Alliance (SAPRA) Traditional Healers Organisation (TH) and the South African Pagan Council (SAPC) supports the elimination of the *Witchcraft Suppression Act, 1957*.
- Freemasonry
- False prophetic churches.
- Marine and Leviathan spirits. (Discussion included in Territorial Spirits)
- A growing yoga industry

3.2.2 Prince of the East, Representing Air: Apollyon/Abbadon¹⁰⁶

Apollyon's primary aim is the destruction of **true worship**. The Luciferian Prince from the East is also portrayed as:

- Angel of the light
- Vagabond spirit¹⁰⁷
- Lying spirit
- Deceiving spirit
- Father of the lie

His attributes are summarised as follows:

- Exchanges light for darkness
- Instigate Pagan religions
- Causes fear.
- Causes illness.
- Causes self-righteousness reflecting no remorse or sense of guilt

Dr. McDonald¹⁰⁸ listed Appolyon with the following attributes:

- Symbolizes the struggle between intellect and passion or mind and body
- Sends out flashes of lightning, which symbolizes oracle powers of divination
- Carries a bow and arrow because he started off, as a storm god
- Known for animal drives that involve suffering or being torn apart

¹⁰⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. PP. 15-19

¹⁰⁷ Vagabond: Translated from the Hebrew word Nuwa (Strong's #5128), a fugitive, to wonder up and down; Hebrew word Nuwd (Strong's # 4022) to stroll, to wonder about. The Webster Dictionary defines the vagabond as a person moving from place to place without a fixed home, a wanderer; of relating to or characteristic of a wonderer, leading an unsettled, irresponsible, or disreputable life. Available at: <https://www.scribd.com/doc/32151775/The-Curse-of-the-Vagabond-and-Why-Does-Deliverance-Take-So-Long> 2019/12/27

Cain's sin of murdering his brother caused a curse from God to come upon him. In the New Living Translation of the Bible, the curse that God spoke over Cain is as follows: 'No longer will it yield abundant crops for you, no matter how hard you work! From now on you will be a homeless fugitive on the earth, constantly wondering from place to place.' Genesis 4:12 Available at: <https://instituteoflove.net/struggles/the-spirit-of-vagabond> 2019/12/27

¹⁰⁸ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University.

- He is represented by the werewolf
- Members of his cult would take part in rituals with live serpents, which were taking place at night or in a cave
- In him two sexual forces are always in a struggle
- He eats of the tree of knowledge
- In modern day psychology he is the integration of the identity and the super ego in Freudian language
- Phoenix/eagle which represents new life that rises from the ashes of fire – a symbol of re-birth

To enhance the destruction of true worship, Appolyon instigates **false religion** and doctrine, including Freemasonry. His strategies include methods to **prohibit worship** in spirit and in truth as prescribed by God.¹⁰⁹

Worship is a powerful weapon in warfare. Limiting true worship limits effective war against Satan and his entourage. Worship is also the manner by which believers enter into the presence of God.

Restricting worship diminishes an intimate relationship with God and infringes the communication with God and as such God's involvement in the believers' life to encourage, to instruct or to advise is reduced.

The second target is the **destruction of unity** in the Church of Christ to prevent any success in Godly callings and missions. This is often achieved through the lack of- or disagreements pertaining to doctrine and finances. The powers of twisters and turners¹¹⁰ and Mammon¹¹¹ are employed to assist in achieving

¹⁰⁹ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 258

¹¹⁰ Twisters and Turners: A spirit with the power to bind the minds and sub-consciousness of people, invading thoughts and dreams through Ctuluh, the dream master. De Lange, Dr. Susan F.M. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Twisters and turners distort communication between individuals and the message of the Bible. The content and intention of the message are corrupted between the sender and receiver resulting in two messages, one sent, and another received. The true content is corrupted.

¹¹¹ Mammon: The word *mammon* comes from the Greek word '*mammonas*'. Similar root words exist in Hebrew, Latin, Aramaic, Chaldean and Syriac. They all translate to "money, wealth, and material possessions. In biblical culture the word *mammon* often carried a negative connotation. It was sometimes

financial ruin of ministries.

Due to Appolyon's success, he is known as the spirit of disunity. Pride, strive and jealousy are common tactics to achieve disunity. Assistance from Baal and Ashtoreth enhances success to lure man into **idolatry**. Prof. Dr. Brand noted that a converted occultist attributed a hundred and twenty false religions to his success.

Forthcoming from his talent as an orator, he also manipulates music, drama, literature and mimicry. Appolyon is described as a dark-skinned Aryan with the ability to astral by citing the name Jabulon.

Helena Blavatsky¹¹² was of the opinion that Appolyon ministered alongside Jesus and to the Kings of his time. He taught the Hermeneutic dogmas which included the secrets of nature. Legend holds that Appolyon changes rings from particular a stone representing the judicial laws. He also has the ability to raise people from the dead and perform miraculous healings using hypnotic power.

3.2.2.1 Application to South Africa

- The author perceived the Traditional African Churches' gospel of Jesus Christ in combination with traditional beliefs and superstition as false religion.
- Corruption, from the highest office to the lowest government official, as well as private businesses is founded on self-righteousness, covered in lies and deceit with no apparent remorse.

used to describe all lusts and excesses: gluttony, greed, and dishonest worldly gain. Ultimately, *mammon* described an idol of materialism, which many trusted as a foundation for their world and philosophy. While the King James Version retains the term *Mammon* in Matthew 6:24, other versions translate the Greek as "money," "wealth," or "riches." Available at: <https://www.gotquestions.org/what-is-mammon.html> 27/12/2019

¹¹² Blavatsky, Helena P. (1972) *Isis Unveiled. Secrets of the Ancient Wisdom Tradition, Madam Blavatsky's First Work*. USA: Theosophical Publishing House.

- Disunity in Church denominations results in divided congregations and body of Christ collectively.
- Idolatry (also reflected in African art)
- Religious pride between denominations, especially between traditional churches resulting in a divided Church of Christ inclusive of various denominations.
- Constrains a continuous and powerful prayer culture. Increased prayer is often motivated by fear and not born from fellowship with God e.g., prayer meetings increase before political elections. Thereafter most people return to their normal way of doing things.
- Apollyon takes credit for being the chief medical authority. South Africa applies the Hippocratic Oath in the name of Apollo taken by all medical doctors:

“I swear by Apollo Physician and Asclepius and Hygieia and Panacea and all the gods and goddesses, making them my witnesses, that I will fulfil according to my ability and judgment this oath and this covenant.”¹¹³

3.2.2.2 Abbadon¹¹⁴

Abbadon (Hebrew) translated to ‘Appolyon’ in Greek means ‘the destroyer’. In some Africa countries he is known as the “polluting demon” referring to his intense unpleasant odour. He takes credit for the invention of night clubs (where sexual immorality is practiced) and the strobe light associated with night clubs. Strobe lights are used in the promotion of drug and alcohol addiction. He aims to destroy innocence through:

- Confusion
- Doubt

¹¹³ Shiel W.C Medical Definition of Hippocratic Oath. Available at: <https://www.medicinenet.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=20909>

¹¹⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. PP. 21- 24.

- Deception
- Disunity
- Strife
- Breaking up of families
- The occult
- Addictions

His functions are related to that of Leviathan and he is closely associated with “gods of war” such as Molech, Marduk, Nimrod, Thor, Odin etc.

Pollution of mankind and the promotion of sin to prohibit man from entering into the presence of God remains his main objective. Dr. McDonald highlighted the fact that Abaddon uses sin to destroy an intimate relationship with God. Within this relationship God reveals Himself to His followers. Confusion and deception are key strategies to prevent the pure administration of God’s word. In addition, he prohibits man to repent from sin. Broken fellowship with God through the Holy Spirit, blame shifting, fruitlessness, hopelessness, aggression, worthlessness and passivity follow as results. Avenues used to promote sin are as follows:

- Adultery¹¹⁵
- Fornication¹¹⁶
- Incest¹¹⁷
- Homosexuality (legalised in South African Constitution)
- Bestiality
- Pornography
- Paedophilia

Abaddon combines powers with Bacchus¹¹⁸ and the hordes of darkness to

¹¹⁵ Adultery: Sexual intercourse between a married individual and another individual, not his or her spouse. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 203

¹¹⁶ Fornication: Sexual intercourse between two unmarried individuals. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2003

¹¹⁷ Incest: Sexual intercourse by members of the same family. Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/incest>

¹¹⁸ Bacchus: Bacchus was a Roman agricultural god who was associated with the harvest — particularly that of grapevines. The son of Jupiter by a human woman, Bacchus was said to wander the world educating people about the delightful wines that could be made from grapes. Available at: <https://www.learnreligions.com/bacchus-roman-god-2562627>

Bacchus is the Demon of addictions, such as [on] drugs, smoking, and alcohol. Available at: <https://www.cuttingedge.org/news/n2323.cfm>

promote alcoholism, addiction, and mind control. Spirits of lust sent forth to trap man with illicit sex enhance mind control. Mammon and Asmodee¹¹⁹ are two allies tempting man to replace God with materialism. Materialism including gluttony and lust eventually replaces God. Accusations of materialism in the organised churches needs to be noted. South African media reported on several instances of monetary manipulation by pastors to convince congregation members to pay huge amounts for services such as counselling, deliverance etc.

Successes of Abaddon	
In Collaboration with Jezebel	Independently
Sickness and bloodline health curses	Spirits of lies, misleading, seducing, wandering, twisters and turners, destruction.
The appearance of familiar spirits ¹²⁰ . (Leviticus 19:31 ¹²¹)	Arrogate power illegitimately
Collaborate with fear and confusion (Matthew 11:3 ¹²² , 1 Kings 19:2-4 ¹²³)	Ultimately death

¹¹⁹ Asmodee, Asmodeus or Asmodai (Hebrew or Asmodai (Hebrew: Ashmedai) is a king of demons mostly known from the deuterocanonical Book of Tobit, in which he is the primary antagonist. Available at: <https://genies.fandom.com/wiki/Asmodeus>

Asmodeus: Originates from Persian mythology. He is the queen of lust. Also known as Abaddon, Apollyon, and Beelzebub (Satan). Asmodeus Spirit is a sexual unclean spirit and destroyer spirit of death. He has three heads, those of an ogre, a ram, and a bull, all sexually licentious creatures; having the feet of a cock, another sexually aggressive creature; and having wings and the tail of a serpent. He rides on a dragon and breathes fire. Asmodeus is a chief astrologer of hell and oversees the gambling houses in hell. He is a very busy Demon. Asmodeus is a Day Demon, he is among the legions of AMAYON and rules 72 legions of spirits Asmodeus carries the title "King of the Demons". Available at: <https://touchofgod.org/asmodeus-destroyer-men/>

¹²⁰ Familiar Spirit: Sorcerers or necromancers, who professed to call up the dead to answer questions, were said to have a "familiar spirit" (Deuteronomy 18:11; 2 Kings 21:6; 2 Chronicles 33:6; Leviticus 19:31; 20:6; Isaiah 8:19; 29:4). Available at: <https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/familiar-spirit/>

¹²¹ Leviticus 19:31 (NKJV) Give no regard to mediums and familiar spirits; do not seek after them, to be defiled by them: I am the LORD your God.

¹²² Matthew 11:3 (NKJV) and said to Him, "Are You the Coming One, or do we look for another?"

¹²³ 1 Kings 19:2-4 (NKJV) Then Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, "So let the gods do to me, and more also, if I do not make your life as the life of one of them by tomorrow about this time." And when he saw that, he arose and ran for his life, and went to Beersheba, which belongs to Judah, and left his servant there. But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a broom tree.

Operation of witchcraft and the occult	Operation of witchcraft and the occult
	Poses a false family tree against the Tree of Life

Table 3: Successes of Abbadon

3.2.2.2.1 Application to South Africa

In the South African context several African churches adopted Christianity within the African Traditional Religious parameters, often accommodating ancestor veneration. Confusion with regards to Biblical principles follows automatically.

Freedom of religion legitimises many occultic activities. Newspapers report almost daily on witchcraft activities. (Evidence presented in Chapter Five) It is a general way of life in some African communities. The first 'Satanic Church of South Africa', founded by Riaan Swiegelaar and Adri Norton opened in Century City, Cape Town during June 2020. Chapters (congregations) are planned for Johannesburg, Durban and Bloemfontein.¹²⁴

Within the framework of human rights, homosexual relationships and marriages are legit and recognised by law. Equal rights to heterosexual marriages include the adoption of children, pension funds.

Adult pornography was legalised in 'The Film and publications Act, 1996'. The possible decriminalisation of prostitution is in process.

Deceit, dishonesty, and corruption rage from the highest office of the previous State President and current cabinet members to the lowest level in communities. A judicial committee was appointed at great cost to investigate 'state capture'.

And he prayed that he might die, and said, "It is enough! Now, LORD, take my life, for I *am* no better than my fathers!"

¹²⁴ Head Tom, The South African.com (June 25, 2020) SA Satanic Church has 'famous fans' - and they plan to pen new branches. Available at: <https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/offbeat/satanic-church-south-africa-who-famous-members-tv-where-new-branches-open/>

The magnitude of greed and manipulation investigated are unsurmountable.

The manifestation of fear has resulted in high levels of emigration of professionally qualified, skilled professionals and tradesmen; the so-called 'brain drain'. Statistics indicated an increase of 27% in farm attacks between 2018 and 2019.¹²⁵ Violent crime and crime against women and children escalate. Abuse of power by SAPS¹²⁶ instils fear for the unjust and unrighteous but self-righteous actions of people who are supposed to uphold the law and to protect and serve.

3.2.3 Prince of the South, Representing Fire: The Beast

The Prince of the South aka the Hellhound, Dog or the Beast is mentioned in the Book of Revelation. (Revelation 13:17-18¹²⁷, Revelation 16:2¹²⁸, Revelation 17:8-11¹²⁹ and Revelation 19:20¹³⁰) The Beast will be responsible for deception, bloodshed, idolatry, and destruction. He is identified with the number 666 and will be responsible for the Great Deceptions mentioned in the Bible. Through the

¹²⁵ Afriforum Research Institute. Farm attacks and farm murders. Analysis of recorded incidents 2019. Available at: <https://www.onteiening.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2020/02/Farm-attack-and-murder-report.pdf>

¹²⁶ SAPS: South African Police Service

¹²⁷ Revelation 13:17-18 (NKJV) and that no one may buy or sell except one who has the mark or the name of the beast, or the number of his name. Here is wisdom. Let him who has understanding calculate the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man: His number is 666.

¹²⁸ Revelation 16:2 (NKJV) So the first went and poured out his bowl upon the earth, and a foul and loathsome sore came upon the men who had the mark of the beast and those who worshiped his image.

¹²⁹ Revelation 17:8-11 (NKJV) The beast that you saw was, and is not, and will ascend out of the bottomless pit and go to perdition. And those who dwell on the earth will marvel, whose names are not written in the Book of Life from the foundation of the world, when they see the beast that was, and is not, and yet is. "Here is the mind which has wisdom: The seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. There are also seven kings. Five have fallen, one is, and the other has not yet come. And when he comes, he must continue a short time. The beast that was, and is not, is himself also the eighth, and is of the seven, and is going to perdition.

¹³⁰ Revelation 19:20 (NKJV) Then the beast was captured, and with him the false prophet who worked signs in his presence, by which he deceived those who received the mark of the beast and those who worshiped his image. These two were cast alive into the lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Antichrist a ten-nation military force will be mobilise against Israel.¹³¹

“Those who have astral travelled to the plane where the beast is found describes him as a “fat red man” that sits on a throne and looks like a gorilla.”¹³²

In occult symbolism he is represented by the cheetah. During the End Times he will be responsible for:

- Terrorizing mankind before the return of Jesus Christ
- Deceiving mankind in two ways:
 - An Ecclesiastical system or One World Order in which Satan will be worshipped.
 - A Political system in which he will enrol the Anti-Christ.

Successes of Prince of the South	
In Collaboration with Jezebel	Independently
Spirits of unbelief, fear, rejection, rebellion	Spirits of hate, war, abuse, bloodshed, suicide, envy, murder, jealousy, rebellion
Works with Mars & War gods: Valhalla, Gog, Magog	Red witchcraft opposing ministerial calling
Rape, abortion, murder, farm murders and attacks	Blood covenants
Cancellation of ministerial calling	Destruction of the lambs
War of end time destruction	Inhabit and destruct prayer life

Table 4: Prince of South

¹³¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1529-1531

¹³² McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan’s vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 263

3.2.3.1 Application to South Africa

- Depression, psychosis, and suicide: On average, 3000 people commit suicide daily.

This is calculated to one person every 40 seconds, and one million people annually. For every suicide, 20 or more attempts are made.¹³³ During a radio interview in 2018, Dr. Jason Bantjes¹³⁴, doctor in Psychology at the University of Stellenbosch, confirmed the 2018 statistics as one suicide every hour. From 2018 to 2020 the rate escalated from one per hour to one every 40 seconds.

SACAP¹³⁵ reported on a SADAG¹³⁶ research identified that one in six South Africans suffer from anxiety, depression, or substance abuse. (excluding more serious conditions such as bipolar disorder or schizophrenia). The report quoted Cassey Chambers, Director of SADAG:¹³⁷

“people don’t know where to go to get help, or are too scared to seek it, the stats we have are still not a true reflection of what is actually happening on the ground.”

Dr. Eugene Allers,¹³⁸ leading psychiatrist and former President of SASOP believes that if crime and motor-vehicle accidents were to be considered, up to 6 million South Africans could suffer from post-traumatic stress disorder.

- Involvement in Freemasonry. Discussion on the history and contemporary Freemasonry in South Africa in Chapter Four.
- Prevents peaceful relationship with fellow South Africans and instigate hate: Escalated violent crime includes rape, abortion, murder, farm murders, cash

¹³³ South African Government. [www.gov.za. World Suicide Prevention Day 2020. Available at: https://www.gov.za/WorldSuicidePreventionDay2020](http://www.gov.za/WorldSuicidePreventionDay2020)

¹³⁴ 702 Radio Interview. One suicide every hour in south Africa. Available at: <http://www.702.co.za/articles/318667/one-suicide-every-hour-in-south-africa>

¹³⁵ SACAP: The South African College of Applied Psychology

¹³⁶ SADAG: South African Depression and Anxiety Group

¹³⁷ The shocking state of mental health in South Africa. Available at: <https://www.sacap.edu.za/blog/management-leadership/mental-health-south-africa/>

¹³⁸ The shocking state of mental health in South Africa. Available at: <https://www.sacap.edu.za/blog/management-leadership/mental-health-south-africa/>

heists, gangsterism, armed robberies and brutal attacks.

3.2.4 Prince of the West, Representing Water: Leviathan

“In that day the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea.”

Isaiah 27:1 (KJV)

Leviathan is also known as a powerful water spirit, dragon and serpent. His reputation is associated with illicit sex and the abortion of babies.¹³⁹ Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁴⁰ noted that Leviathan’s primary aim and goal is to manipulate, control, beguile and seduce, to abort and to intimidate mankind. Leviathan sears the conscience of people and aims to abort the Church of Christ marriages. Ancestral rights in the bloodline give Leviathan access to the fetus, already in the womb. He confines emotions to inhibit love be communicated.¹⁴¹ Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁴² also elaborated on the Leviathan, revered as the King of the Sea, also called dragon, large sea serpent or sea monster.

“The dragon is considered to be the power of the sorcerer, deception, brutality and cruelty. Other symbolic terms for the dragon are Rahab, Egypt (Ezekiel 29:3)¹⁴³, and Babylon (Jeremiah 51:34)¹⁴⁴. The ancient Pharaohs

¹³⁹ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan’s vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 262

¹⁴⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 1532

¹⁴¹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published PP. 1523- 1525.

¹⁴² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 1525

¹⁴³ Ezekiel 29:3 (NKJV) Speak, and say, ‘Thus says the Lord GOD: “Behold, I *am* against you, O Pharaoh king of Egypt, O great monster who lies in the midst of his rivers, Who has said, ‘My River *is* my own; I have made *it* for myself.’

¹⁴⁴ Jeremiah 51:34 (NKJV) “Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon Has devoured me, he has crushed me; He has made me an empty vessel, He has swallowed me up like a monster; He has filled his stomach with my delicacies, He has spit me out.

believed their power from the dragon. They adored themselves with serpentine ceremonial objects and were also symbolically revered as dragon-kings or offsprings thereof. Occult, spiritual, and supernatural knowledge are believed to be obtained, possessed and dispensed by the dragon, no doubt reminiscent of the serpent that beguiled Eve and overthrew Adam's world dominion."

Leviathan is responsible for:

- Confuses and scatters individual's thoughts
- To deceive
- Causes disunity and strive
- Dismantle families and family ties
- Occultism
- Addictions like drugs/smoking and alcoholism

Successes of Leviatan	
In Collaboration with Jezebel	Independently
Spirits of tradition and religion	Destruction of relationships including marriages and within the body of Christ.
Control world order and politics	Spirit of abortion and destruction
Spirit of witchcraft confuses the mind, blind the eyes, and paralyzes individuals to produce a spirit of fear and bondage.	Success in collaborating with twisters and turners. Creates confusion. Successful witchcraft
Divorce, pre-marital sex and adultery	Abort the presence and manifestation of the Holy Spirit

Table 5: Successes of Leviatan

3.2.4.1 Application to South Africa

- Tradition or cultural heritage is incorporated in the doctrine of Christ. True worship is thus compromised.
- Occult practices, (Witchcraft, divination, and sorcery) are very familiar practices.
- Water spirits are powerful and familiar to many and as such water is used in several rituals for the power it conveys.
- Legalised abortions are especially relevant in the South African context. (Choice of Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996)

3.3 The Powers of the Dark Kingdom¹⁴⁵

“For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.”

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

Subordinate to Principalities, powers are major demonic spirits (originally powerful angels¹⁴⁶) with the goal to cover areas with specific evil energy. It is compared to a blanket that is pulled over an area – normally with a regional or even a countrywide jurisdiction. Powers hold executive powers on behalf of principalities and might combine tactics within an area. In such events the one will be more influential and powerful. Their effectiveness is often noticeable when generic problems (similar problems, behaviour or sin) exist within an area. Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁴⁷ also associated mannerisms and dialect within a geographical region as a possible result of such influences of powers.

Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁴⁸ explained that powers travel between the heaven above and

¹⁴⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 29.

¹⁴⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 31

¹⁴⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference: *Die Skeppingsdoel van God soos gesien in menslike seksualiteit*. Conference Research material: P. 11

¹⁴⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh

the earth to execute their missions. She identified the powers as Atheroth, Magog, Paimon, Baphomet, Asmodee, Ariton and Mammon. Dr. McDonald¹⁴⁹ noted the following:

- Powers exist in the heavens just above the earth and have access to both the heavens and the earth. (unlike Satan who has access to heaven where God is)
- They joined Satan in rebellion against God and were removed from the presence of God.
- They use Rulers, demons as well as human agents to execute their orders.
- They are responsible for false religions and are worshipped as idols.
- They demand blood sacrifices.
- They were worshipped by heathen nations of the Bible. For this reason, God instructed total destruction.

3.3.1 Application to South Africa

The author is of the opinion that all 8 powers influence South Africa. An in-depth study demarcating specific regions to identify possible specific controls per region was not conveyed. This research presents possible generic influences these powers might have in South Africa.

3.3.2 Ashtaroth (Jezebel)

Also called Astarte or Queen of heaven (Jeremiah 7:18¹⁵⁰, Jeremiah 44:17¹⁵¹,

Ministries. P. 3

¹⁴⁹ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 265

¹⁵⁰ Jeremiah 7:18 (NKJV) The children gather wood, the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead dough, to make cakes for the queen of heaven; and they pour out drink offerings to other gods, that they may provoke Me to anger.

¹⁵¹ Jeremiah 44:17 (NKJV) But we will certainly do whatever has gone out of our own mouth, to burn incense to the queen of heaven and pour out drink offerings to her, as we have done, we and our fathers,

19¹⁵²,25¹⁵³), and the “Mother of the sun-god”. It is believed that the ‘sun-god’ was born on the 25th of December (Persian sun-worship). Although she is worshipped as a goddess, the Biblical personification is found in Queen Jezebel, wife of King Ahab, king of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Their reign was known for replacing worship of the Hebrew God Yahweh with worship of Baal and the merciless murders of God’s prophets. (1 Kings 18:13-14).¹⁵⁴ Ahab erected a temple to worship Baal and an Asherah pole¹⁵⁵ for pagan worship. Their actions provoked God. (1 Kings 16:33)¹⁵⁶. Ahab died in battle with the Syrians and Jezebel was thrown from her window. Her memory was associated with wickedness, cruelty, greed, vanity, and false religions.

In Revelation 2:20¹⁵⁷ Jezebel’s reputation lives on as Jesus speaks against the church at Thyatira. The association is made to “Jezebel,” immorality and idolatry and their preying upon God’s people was very Jezebel-like.

In her persona as Diana of Ephesus, she collaborates with Baal and Appolyon to establish and promote false religions resulting in nature worship and paganism. As earth-goddess she requires offerings and sacrifices during the harvest

our kings and our princes, in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem. For *then* we had plenty of food, were well-off, and saw no trouble.

¹⁵² Jeremiah 44:19 (NKJV) *The women also said*, “And when we burned incense to the queen of heaven and poured out drink offerings to her, did we make cakes for her, to worship her, and pour out drink offerings to her without our husbands’ *permission*?”

¹⁵³ Jeremiah 44:25 (NKJV) Thus says the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel, saying: ‘You and your wives have spoken with your mouths and fulfilled with your hands, saying, “We will surely keep our vows that we have made, to burn incense to the queen of heaven and pour out drink offerings to her.” You will surely keep your vows and perform your vows!’

¹⁵⁴ 1 Kings 18:13-14 (NKJV) Was it not reported to my lord what I did when Jezebel killed the prophets of the LORD, how I hid one hundred men of the LORD’s prophets, fifty to a cave, and fed them with bread and water? And now you say, ‘Go, tell your master, “Elijah *is here*.” “He will kill me!”

¹⁵⁵ Asherah pole: An Asherah pole was a sacred tree or pole that stood near Canaanite religious locations to honor the pagan goddess Asherah, also known as Astarte. Available at: <https://www.gotquestions.org/Asherah-pole.html>

¹⁵⁶ 1 Kings 16:33 (NKJV) And Ahab made a wooden image. Ahab did more to provoke the LORD God of Israel to anger than all the kings of Israel who were before him.

¹⁵⁷ Revelation 2:20 (NKJV) Nevertheless I have a few things against you, because you allow that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, to teach and seduce My servants to commit sexual immorality and eat things sacrificed to idols.

season. Crop festivals are also included in her agenda.

In her capacity as 'Astarte' or 'Wife of the dragon' she finds pleasure in human sacrifices, especially children, twins, and firstborns.

In her capacity as 'Queen of Heaven' she 'gives' children to barren women. This belief is especially prominent in Africa. According to Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁵⁸ these children are spiritual beings in human form.

She is the primary physician and in collaboration with Appolyon practice alternative medicine methods.

Occultism, Nature worship, Roman Catholicism and divination are also regarded to be results of Ashtaroth power.

Islam is believed to be one of the false religions instigated by Astaroth, represented by the moon. Due to the association with the moon, demonic activities such as rituals, blood sacrifices and witchcraft are prevalent at full moon. In his capacity as sun-god Baal is also associated with the sun and star symbols – reflecting Islam. Possessed people have the ability to transfer the 'spirit of witchcraft' by the laying on of hands, counterfeiting the Biblical practice. Witchcraft spirits can also be transferred to the fetus in the womb.

3.3.2.1 Application to South Africa

Ashtaroth is the authority on the veneration of ancestors – a very prominent belief in South Africa that impacts social, economic, and political behaviour.

Alternative medicine: She is the Earth-goddess and therefore has knowledge of natural medicines which she provides to chosen 'herbalists', 'traditional healers'

¹⁵⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 33

and 'witchdoctors' (known as 'Sangomas' in the South African context) – all three are prevalent in all the South African cultures and society at large.

Divination is a major component of the practice of traditional healers. Contemporary traditional healers are not primitive and some use technology such as smart phone applications to provide services.

Witchcraft: Ashtaroth also takes credit for transferring the witchcraft spirit from one generation to the next. In the South African context 'Sangomas' are 'called' or 'anointed' by family ancestors to continue in the 'gift'. Ignorance and disobedience can lead to sickness until the 'called' individual adheres and obeys the 'calling'. Credo Mutwa,¹⁵⁹ Zulu sangoma and author of several books relates his journey of sickness until he obeyed his ancestors 'sangoma calling' in his book 'Song of the Stars'. Individuals with this 'calling' on their lives are born possessed as a result of the transferral of the 'gift' whilst still in the mother's womb, alias Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁶⁰.

With reference to Islam: The first Muslim in the Cape were political exiles and slaves from India and Indonesia. The first mosque were erected in 1804 – the beginning of substantial growth. South African Muslims had by the mid-1990' one of the highest rates of hajj¹⁶¹ outside the Middle East.

3.3.3 Baal

Symbolised by a bull or calf, Baal is half-man half-bull and the god of fertility. Also worshipped as the 'son-god' of Babylon and the god of the Canaanites. In Egypt Baal was recognised as the 'Son of the Nile' or 'Ra' while the Roman Empire

¹⁵⁹ Mutwa, Vusamazulu Credo P. P. (1996) *Song of the Stars: The Lore of a Zulu Shaman*. Barrytown, Limited University of Michigan

¹⁶⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 35

¹⁶¹ Hajj: The greater Muslim pilgrimage to Mecca which takes place in the last month of the year and which all Muslims are expected to make at least once during their lifetime. IT is one of the Five Pillars of Islam.

recognised him as Orion. Eastern religions associate Baal with a star, reflecting Mecca – the epicentre of Islam. Hinduism knows him as “Iswara”.

It is believed that Baal possessed Akhenaton, the husband of Nefertiti – the founder of the Rosicrucian’s and Freemasons. He is the “third eye” of the eastern religions as well as the “thousand eyes” of the Freemasons – which enables people to see into the spiritual realms at all times. The Obelisk is perceived to symbolise Baal and per association with Egyptian doctrine Baal represents immorality.¹⁶²

Baal is perceived to be the originator of occultism. He also promotes false religion in association with Ashtaroth and Appolyon, incorporating shrine or temple prostitution. He is responsible for ‘mental illnesses’ or psychiatric disorders.

3.3.3.1 Application to South Africa

With reference to the impact of Baal in South African context, the author speculates with regards to the following:

- **Freemasonry:** Baal is also symbolised as a star in all cults and secret societies.

He is the third eye of the occult (New Age) that causes enlightenment or opens the individual’s eyes to the spiritual world. Jasper Ridley¹⁶³ explored the god of Freemasonry in his book titled “The Freemasons”:

The name of the Supreme Being, which all Masons must accept before joining a Lodge, is Jah-Bul-On. where he twice refers to the Masonic god as being Jahbulon, as revealed in the Royal Arch Degree. Jahbulon is a composite name made up of three parts - "Jah", being the Hebrew name for God... "Bul" refers to the Babylonian deity Baal and "On" refers to the Egyptian deity Osiris.

¹⁶² De Lange, Dr. Susan F.M. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria P. 247

¹⁶³ Jahbulon – The Secret Name for god in Freemasonry (July 22, 2002) Available at: <http://grahamhancock.com/phorum/read.php?2,378302,378748> 2019/12/28

- **False Religions:** Cooperating with Apollyon and Ashtaroth, Baal promotes false religions. Freemasonry is considered by researchers as a false religion. Chapter Four briefly discusses the current religions in South Africa with special reference to the African Traditional Churches who adopt Christianity within the context of traditional African religious practices.
- **Baal** often demands the sacrifice of first-born children. In several South African cultures, parents are expected to give their first-born 'back to the grandparents who will be responsible to raise the child.' This is most certainly not comparable with the trauma of a blood sacrifice, but the author does find a correlation because of the fact that the child will 'belong' to the grandparents. In essence, the biological parents lose their first born. They remain with visiting rights but the child lodges with the grandparents, regardless of the distance separated them.
- **Sexual immorality:** Baal uses addiction to activate mind control and sexual immorality. These tactics are executed in nightclubs in association with Abaddon. Sexual immorality in South Africa is disturbingly flourishing. The Citizen News Paper¹⁶⁴ reported (September 2019) as follows with regards to crime statistics and sexual immorality in particular:

Sexual offences is a broad crime category that includes rape, compelled rape, sexual assault, incest, bestiality, statutory rape and the sexual grooming of children. The number of reported sexual offences increased to 52,420 in 2018/19 from 50,108 in 2017/18. Most of these were cases of rape. The sexual offences crime rate increased from 88.3 per 100,000 in 2017/18 to 90.9 in 2018/19. The police recorded 41,583 rapes in 2018/19, up from 40,035 rapes in 2017/18. This means an average of 114 rapes were recorded by the police each day. The rape rate increased from 70.5 in 2017/18 to 72.1 in 2018/19
- **Alcoholism:** Baal introduced alcoholism to gain mind control. The thesis does not imply that the moderate use of alcohol is equivalent to- or even leading to alcoholism, but the statistics provided by the World Health

¹⁶⁴ The Citizen Factsheet: South Africa's crime statistics for 2018/19. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/crime/2178462/factsheet-south-africas-crime-statistics-for-2018-19/2019/12/28>

Organisation (WHO)¹⁶⁵ on South African alcohol use must be noted.

Data published by the World Health Organisation shows that South African consumers of alcohol are some of the heaviest drinkers globally, despite relatively high levels of abstinence in the population. While the majority of the adult population are not big on alcohol, the third of the population who are drinkers, do so heavily. According to the WHO's data, South Africa's drinking population consumers 28.9 litres of pure alcohol – per capita – a year, the fifth highest consumption rate in the world, below Namibia (31.3 litres), Eswatini (32.7 litres), Cook Islands (32.9 litres) and Tunisia (33.4 litres). With a total of approximately 529,400 deaths from all causes, roughly one in ten deaths was attributable to alcohol use, the researchers said.

- **Murder:** Along with addiction and sex, Baal uses murder to enforce control. South Africa attracts daily international attention with regards to the crime and murder statistics. The Citizen¹⁶⁶ newspaper reported as follows:

Murder is the unlawful and intentional killing of another person. Murder statistics are considered the most reliable, according to the Institute for Security Studies. This is because most murders can be independently verified. The number of murders in South African increased from 20,336 in 2017/18 to 21,022 in 2018/19. On average, 58 people were murdered every day. "Over the past seven years murder has risen by 35%," the Institute for Security Studies announced in reaction to the crime statistics.

3.3.4 Magog

Magog, also referred to as the demon of Iron, is the Power behind war. He teaches nations the art of warfare and collaborates with white witches in the design and manufacturing of war technologies and equipment. He has a secret laboratory where demons (and human agents) fabricate new war armaments. The victory of either of the participants in the war has no value, the only important factor is the shedding of blood from which the demonic gain power. This power

¹⁶⁵ Business Tech (December 28, 2019) *South Africa has some of the heaviest drinkers in the world.* Available at: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/lifestyle/332909/south-africa-has-some-of-the-heaviest-drinkers-in-the-world/> 2019/12/28

¹⁶⁶ The Citizen Factsheet: South Africa's crime statistics for 2018/19. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/crime/2178462/factsheet-south-africas-crime-statistics-for-2018-19/> 2019/12/28

is invoked when black witches use charms and libations to make weapons of war and in order to give power to someone to become invisible and thus invincible.

Magog's power operates with black, white and red witches and includes cyber, scientific, psycho, electro and mind occultic practices. He is instrumental for the control and management of demons that are responsible for creating anger and hate that result in war.

He collaborates with Belial to instigate *anger, fear* and *hate*; the so-called "*triplet spirit*". This Triplet spirit employs 13 other spirits one of which is *unforgiveness* and all black witches are possessed by this spirit.

Magog also aligns with the demonic Strongman of Germany called Gog. Magog and Gog will be involved in the schemes for World War III between Germany and Israel - the Battle of Armageddon. During war, Magog and his demons operate on both sides of the battle line to create maximum bloodshed in order to fill their blood banks. Magog is the demonic strongman ruling over communistic countries.

The power with which Magog operates is so fierce that no human authority can withstand his onslaught. Whilst in covenant with God and rejecting sin, God assisted Israel in their battles and war. David describes Jesus Christ's assistance in battle.

Blessed be the LORD, who hath not given us as a prey to their teeth.

Psalm 124:6 (KJV)

3.3.4.1 Application to South Africa

With regards to the application in the South African context, the author speculated concerning the tragic events of the Marikana mineworker strike on August 16, 2012. The event is also referred to as the 'Marikana massacre'. Injured workers

totalled 112 and the total deaths included 34 mine workers and 10 security officials and police officers. Although the total deaths are not comparable with war, the spirituality of the event needs attention.

A well-motivated 'wildcat strike'¹⁶⁷ concerning a wage dispute and poor living conditions at Lonmin platinum mine near Rustenburg, was marred by extreme intimidation and violence. Three thousand miners participated in the strike. Four hundred policemen were deployed armed with '**R5's, a licensed replica of the Israeli Galil SAR, or LM5 assault rifles, designed for infantry and tactical police use.**'¹⁶⁸ The author is of the opinion that the manifestation of the 'triplet spirit' is noticeable in footage of the events. Anger over conditions escalated into hatred and war cries echoed the combination of hate and anger. The police forces were positioned opposing the violent group.

Fear on both sides was noticeable. What is especially relevant is Magog's power to make individuals invisible in order to be invincible. Several media reports referred to "muti"¹⁶⁹ provided by a sangoma¹⁷⁰ to ensure invisibility.

Agence France-Presse¹⁷¹ reported:

A number of reports on the tragedy at the Lonmin Marikana platinum mine, in which 34 strikers were killed by police gunfire, have quoted workers who said a traditional healer, known in South Africa as a "sangoma," had given some of the men "muti" for protection. The use of muti, or traditional

¹⁶⁷ 'Wildcat Strike' term is used to describe a strike action undertaken by unionized workers without union leadership's authorization, support or approval. It is also referred to as an 'unofficial strike.'

¹⁶⁸ South African History Online. Marikana Massacre (August 16, 2012). Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/marikana-massacre-16-august-2012>

¹⁶⁹ Muti: A Zulu word meaning medicine. Medicine, not according to Western interpretation but relating to medicine manufactured in a traditional manner, believed to hold supernatural power. The ingredients could include a combination of leaves, roots, herbs, seawater, animal and human body parts etc. The Muti is prepared by traditional healers for application externally (rubbed on the skin or applied to wounds) as well as for consumption. Muti is strongly associated with ancestor veneration and the casting of spells. African "Muti murders" (October 11, 2013). Available at: <http://alterreddimensions.net/2013/african-muti-medicine-murders-hospitals-sell-body-parts-murderers-harvest-organs-from-live-victims-witch-doctors-black-magic-spells>

¹⁷⁰ Sangoma: Traditional healer of Africa.

¹⁷¹ Agence France-Presse: South Africa: Striking miners 'thought they were invincible' after taking 'muti' By Erin Conway-Smith August 21, 2012. Available at: <https://www.pri.org/stories/2012-08-21/south-africa-striking-miners-thought-they-were-invincible-after-taking-muti>

medicine made from ingredients including plants and animal parts, is an important practice in southern Africa.

South Africans from all walks of life seek out traditional cures for ailments ranging from rashes to erectile dysfunction, as well as for magical purposes such as bringing good fortune in love and business.

"A mystery sangoma is believed to be behind the foolish courage displayed by striking miners during Thursday's deadly standoff. Undeterred by water cannons and tear gas, the miners crept through the bushes towards the police and charged straight into a heavy line of fire."

According to the newspaper, some locals believe that if not for the muti rituals, many more workers would have been killed.

The Mail & Guardian¹⁷² reported:

Police crime intelligence gathered information that protesting Marikana mineworkers performed muti rituals and believed they were invincible before the August 16 shootings last year.

Brigadier Adriaan Calitz told the Farlam commission of inquiry in Centurion on Tuesday that even though the strikers believed they were invincible police had to intervene to curb the violent strike.

"We had received intelligence that there was this story around the muti and these people believed that the police would not be able to do anything to them. They believed that their [police] weapons would not be able to do anything.

"The police are being subjected to such things on a daily basis, for example in the cash-in-transit robberies. People use muti and believe that nothing will happen to them. At the end of the day, we had to act," he said.

Calitz was one of the police commanders assigned to the operation during the labour unrest at Lonmin's platinum mining operations at Marikana, near Rustenburg in North West last year.

News 24¹⁷³ reported:

Rustenburg - Naked protesting Lonmin mineworkers queued to be sprinkled with muti in rituals purported to make them invincible, a police officer told the Farlam commission in Rustenburg, North West, on Thursday. "At 15:23

¹⁷² Jonisayi Maromo. (November 26, 2013) Marikana Commission: Strikers used muti, believed they were invincible.. Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2013-11-26-marikana-commission-strikers-used-muti-believed-they-were-invincible>

¹⁷³ Marikana men queued for muti – police. (2012-11-08). News 24 archives. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/SouthAfrica/News/Marikana-men-queued-for-muti-police-20121108>

it was reported that the protesters had imported an inyanga [herbalist] or sangoma [traditional healer] to perform rituals that would ensure them victory in a confrontation with opponents," Lieutenant Colonel Victor Visser said. "The men gathered at the koppie [hill], carrying pangas, spears, and knobkerries, and believed the inyanga would sprinkle them with muti [traditional medicine] to make them brave."

Visser gave detailed evidence, supported by video footage and photographs. Aerial photographs of two queues of naked men were shown to the commission. "These rituals were observed by members of the police who were in a chopper. The bodies were wiped down [and sprinkled] with a substance," he said.

IOL¹⁷⁴ (Independent OnLine) reported:

"Nobody is denying that muti was used because it was done in broad daylight. It was not a secret, it was done in front of the koppie by a tiny minority. Evidence is that the majority of the strikers were not believers in muti but in Christianity," said Mpfu.

"They (muti users) are entitled to it. We cannot judge people by our own upper class standards. The fact that they believed that muti would protect them is similar to people who believe prayer would protect them."

The inquiry has seen footage of a queue of naked mine workers being sprinkled with what police allege was muti, meant to make the protesters invisible and invincible during a confrontation.

Apart from enhancing the bravery of the men because they were convinced of the effect of the magic, the muti was powerless. The magic was unsuccessful. The faith they had in the sangoma and the muti is of relevance for this study, and not necessarily the actual power of the lotion. Their spirituality, fundamental in their faith in the power of the sangoma and muti to advance their protest held a social (better living conditions) and economic (better wages) application. The political addition.

Unfortunately, the sangoma who supplied the 'unsuccessful' magic 'muti' was murdered. He paid the ultimate price for his failed magic power. IOL¹⁷⁵ reported

¹⁷⁴ Jonisayi Maromo. (November 12, 2014) Mpfu rubbishes Marikana muti claims. IOL. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/mpofu-rubbishes-marikana-muti-claims-1779322>

¹⁷⁵ Marikana muti man killed. News (March 25, 2013) IOL. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/marikana-muti-man-killed-1491221>

on the murder:

Eastern Cape - The sangoma believed to have performed rituals on protesting Lonmin mineworkers in Marikana, North West, has been gunned down, the Farlam Commission¹⁷⁶ heard on Monday. "It was with a deep sense of shock to learn about the assassination of the sangoma (implicated) in the Marikana muti rituals. He was gunned down in the early hours of yesterday morning," said Semanya. He said police had been making efforts to bring the sangoma to testify as a witness before the commission.

3.3.5 Paimon

Paimon¹⁷⁷ exerts its power over all celestial and heavenly demons. This provides him power over the stars and planets. He collaborates with Baal (Orion) and Belial who also exerts their powers over the stars. He is also known as the Crystal demon, introducing himself of the 'angel of light' or even the archangel Michael. Along with Belial and minor spirits, he has the ability to communicate with people through mirrors, crystal balls and water. His associates receive a magical mirror in which they can see him while they are channelling through the spiritual realm. The mirrors also provide him access to gain information of anyone through their familiar spirits.

He controls "White Garment Churches" of West Africa through false prophecies and messages or teachings provided to the pastors. He counterfeits the Holy Spirit's gifts of revelation and word of knowledge. He imitates the voice of God in order to deceive people. Within this strategy his power will increase during the End Times to provide a counterfeit religion for those people who seeks God. The Bible warns against this deception.

¹⁷⁶ Farlam Commission: A commission appointed by the South African government under leadership of Judge Farlam to investigate the actions taken by the South African Police Service and the deaths that occurred during the Marikana strike.

¹⁷⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 43

For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

Matthew 24:24 (KJV)

Dr. McDonald¹⁷⁸ stated that the lack of an *intimate relationship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit* makes individuals vulnerable to fall prey to these deceptions. Knowledge of the Word of God and relationship with the Holy Spirit ensures discernment and wisdom.

Like Satan, this demon also poses as the “Angel of Light”, a counterfeit light. He also imitates Michael the Archangel. He is the ruler over divination and fortune-telling. These practices are clearly forbidden by the Word of God and those who have participated in this sin are removed from their intimacy with God.

‘And the person who turns to mediums and familiar spirits, to prostitute himself with them, I will set My face against that person and cut him off from his people.

Leviticus 20:6 (NKJV)

There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, or one who practices witchcraft, or a soothsayer, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer, or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead. For all who do these things are an abomination to the Lord, and because of these abominations the Lord your God drives them out from before you. You shall be blameless before the Lord your God.

Deuteronomy 18:10-13 (NKJV)

And when they say to you, “Seek those who are mediums and wizards, who whisper and mutter,” should not a people seek their God? Should they seek the dead on behalf of the living? To the law and to the testimony! If they do not speak according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

Isaiah 8:19 (NKJV)

3.3.5.1 Application to South Africa

Divination: The author suggested that Paimon is responsible for providing

¹⁷⁸ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan’s vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind.* (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 270

information to pastors and in doing so imitates the Holy Spirit's gift of 'Prophecy' and 'Word of Knowledge'. Paimon is the 'supposed voice of God'. The appearance of a Godly inspired message provides the opportunity for false churches to expand and to prosper from the members financial contribution.

Divination: Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁷⁹ noted that Paimon provided information to Nostradamus, Jeame Divion etc.

The author speculated if the phenomena might be equivalently applicable to 'Siener van Rensburg'¹⁸⁰, 'Johanna Brand'.¹⁸¹ Both, especially Siener van Rensburg was regarded as a Godly inspired Afrikaner prophet. He predicted the first, second and third World Wars.

Sangomas use a variety of methods to predict the future – whether on a personal or national level.

Prof. Dr. Brand¹⁸² also elaborated on the occurrences where individuals were raised from the dead to provide the opportunity for spiritists to inquest financial or

¹⁷⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 43

¹⁸⁰ Siener van Rensburg: Visions of the Future: Nicolaas Pieter Johannes "Siener" van Rensburg (August 30, 1862–March 11, 1926) was a Boer from the South African Republic -also known as the Transvaal Republic- and later a citizen of South Africa who is seen by some as a prophet of the Boere (or Afrikaners). Therefore, his nickname soon became Siener, which is Afrikaans for "seer" or "soothsayer". His seemingly accurate predictions of future events were typically wrapped in religious patriotism. Available at: <https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/siener-van-rensburg-visions-future/>

¹⁸¹ Johanna Brand (1976-1964) Van der Merwe M E. 'n Historiese perspektief oor die kontroversiële lewe van Johanna Brandt. Brandt, (born Van Warmelo) who lived in Pretoria during the Anglo Boer War. She became involved in the events as a nurse in hospitals and later on in the Irene concentration camp and also as a Boer spy. She married the Reverend L.E. Brandt in the Netherlands soon after the war. In 1903 they came to South Africa where Ernst Brandt became minister of the Zoutpansberg congregation of the Reformed church. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/60431>

Johanna Brandt: Siener en baas spioen. Article published in the Bronberger, November 17, 2011: Johanna saw visions which she explained in her books Millennium. (1918) Die Smeltkroes (1920) and Paraclets (1936). Her visions and forecasts of future bloodshed was translated into English, Sesoetoe, Zulu and Xhosa. She was an effective secret agent during the war. Her secret lemon juice letters were received by the President Kruger in Netherland. WT Stead published her letters pertaining to the Concentration (English Prison war camps) in the London 'Review of Reviews'. Available at: https://www.bronberger.co.za/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1337:johanna-brandt-siener-skrywer-en-baas-spioen&catid=50:toeka-se-dae&Itemid=76

¹⁸² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 53-54.

other information where after the 'zombie' walks to his/her grave.

3.3.6 Baphomet

According to ascensionglossary.com¹⁸³, Baphomet is the god of magic and intricacy involving all deceptions and trickery causing sexual misery. He is the accepted universal symbol for Satan. He is portrayed as a winged creature with a pentagram behind his goat's head and a man's torso with both male and female genitals. Aleister Crowley¹⁸⁴, occultist and magician of the late 19th to mid-20th century interpreted Baphomet as the divine androgyne who brought wisdom to mankind, representing life, love and light.

According to spiritualsatanist.com¹⁸⁵ his name originates from the Jewish 'ez azel', the goat which 'escapes' (azel). Mythology associates Azazel with Lucifer, one of heaven's glorious angels before his allegiance with Lucifer.¹⁸⁶ The symbolic 'scapegoat' who took the blame for the sin on behalf of the people.

But the goat on which the lot fell to be the scapegoat shall be presented alive before the Lord, to make atonement upon it, and to let it go as the scapegoat into the wilderness

Leviticus 16:10 (NKJV)

In the Jewish tradition Azazel is associated with the day of Atonement:

On the tenth day of Tishri (see Atonement Day)¹⁸⁷ the high priest, after first performing the prescribed sacrifices for himself and his family, presented the victims for the sins of the people. These were a ram for a burnt offering, and two young goats for a sin-offering. Having brought the goats before Yhwh at the door of the tabernacle, he cast lots for them, the one lot "for

¹⁸³ Baphomet. Available at: <https://ascensionglossary.com/index.php/Baphomet>

¹⁸⁴ Who/what is Baphomet? Available at: <https://www.gotquestions.org/Baphomet.html>

¹⁸⁵ Spiritualsatanist.com: The Origin of the Baphomet, or Why Goats are Satanic. Available at: <https://www.spiritualsatanist.com/essays/satanism/baphomet-why-goats-are-satanic.html>

¹⁸⁶ Azazel according to Mythology.net: Originally, Azazel was one of heaven's angels, a gloriously beautiful man with wings on his back. When he sympathized with Satan, he was cast down to earth and became one of the "fallen angels." Available at: <https://mythology.net/demons/azazel/>

¹⁸⁷ Jastrow, Morris Jr. Margolis, Max L. *Day of Atonement*. Jewish Encyclopaedia. Available at: <http://www.jewishencyclopedia.com/articles/2093-atonement-day-of>

Yhwh" and the other "for Azazel." The goat that fell to Yhwh was slain as a sin-offering for the people. But the goat of Azazel (now usually known as the "scapegoat") was made the subject of a more striking ceremony.

The high priest laid his hands upon its head and confessed over it the sins of the people. Then the victim was handed over to a man standing ready for the purpose, and, laden as it was with these imputed sins, it was "led forth to an isolated region," and then let go in the wilderness.¹⁸⁸

Two alternative explanations of his name are provided by occultopedia.com:¹⁸⁹

According to Elliphas Levi the name is composed of three abbreviations: Tem. Olip. Ab. Templi onnium hominum Pacis abhas, 'the father of the temple of universal peace among men'. Others claim that the word is derived from two Greek words Baph and Metis meaning 'Baptism of Wisdom'.

Baphomet might also be the demon referred to in Leviticus:

And they shall no more offer their sacrifices unto devils, after whom they have gone a whoring. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations.

Leviticus 17:7 (KJV)

According to Ellicott's Commentary for English Readers, the word sēirim in Leviticus 17:7 translates to "**devils**", **literally denotes hairy or shaggy goats, and then goat-like deities, or demons.**¹⁹⁰ The Egyptians were one of the nations of antiquity who worshipped goats as gods. Statues of the goat-god were erected, and the capital of the Mendesian Nomos in Lower Egypt instituted a celebrated temple dedicated to the goat-image Pan whom they called Mendes.

The terror which the devil, appearing in this Pan-like form, created among those who were thought to have seen him, has given rise to our expression panic¹⁹¹

¹⁸⁸ Jastrow, Morris. *Azazel (Scapegoat)*. Jewish Encyclopaedia. Available at: <http://www.jewishencyclopedia.com/articles/2203-azazel>

¹⁸⁹ Baphomet. Available at: occultopedia.com

¹⁹⁰ Bible Commentaries. Biblehub.com: Leviticus 7. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/commentaries/ellicott/leviticus/17.htm>

¹⁹¹ Bible Commentaries. Biblegateway.com: Leviticus 7. Available at: <https://www.biblegateway.com/passage/?search=Leviticus+17&version=NKJV>

3.3.6.1 Application to South Africa

Sorcery and witchcraft for sexual gain: Advertisements of Sangomas spells and power to enhance romance, the return of lovers, and the enlargements of sexual organs are common in South Africa e.g.:



Figure 1: Photo taken by author. Adverts such as these are found in most towns and cities – glued to walls, street signs, traffic lights etc.

3.3.7 Asmodee

Asmodee is apparently a tall, ‘demonic’ fat man with a characteristic smell that earned him the name “the Stinker”. He also has wings like Beelzebub and resembles the look of a bat. He aligns with other demonic powers to cooperate with Baal and is responsible for the spirit of Jezebel. Asmodee affiliates and report to the prince Abaddon.

He aims his attacks towards the prohibiting of as well as destruction of Godly relationships. He binds men and women with Satan’s demonic powers in a spiritual marriage. Aligning with his denial of- and attack on Godly relationships he causes barrenness, conflict and unfulfillment in marriage and the lack of true and lasting love. In this strategy he finds allies in powers, principalities, witchery, and he uses mind control. His collaboration includes the following:

- With the help of Astarte and Leviathan: Abort babies as an offering to Satan.
- With the help of Molech: Abort first born babies or kill first born young children.
- With the help of Dagon: Burn offering of placenta to Satan.

Asmodee promotes sexual immorality: prostitution, sexual perversions (homosexuality, lesbianism, bestiality, incest and masturbation). Specific co-operation with Lesbos perverts man's sexuality and promotes homosexuality which results in the termination of Godly generations, extreme hatred towards marriage, revulsion of man in the image of God, hatred towards healthy family relationships and Godly sexual relationships. Promiscuity, perversity, jealousy, pornography, prostitution, lies, boredom, offence and secrets in marriage relationships and the lack of the ability for emotional involvement are frequently used strategies. His main aim is to pollute mankind with immorality. Sexual perversion is also employed as a tactic to destroy ministries.

He also has the ability to marry people in the spirit and has sex with them just like Satan, the powers and princes. The spirit causes sexual dreams in which a person has intercourse with a spiritual husband or wife. The spirit gives intelligence and beauty (and sometimes money) to its recruits and often uses young girls to seduce pastors or other church leaders.

3.3.7.1 Application to South Africa

Prof. Dr. Brand's¹⁹² research indicated two frequent manifestations in Africa:

- Firstly, the joining of individuals with spiritual spouses.

¹⁹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. P. 46

- Secondly the prominence of the water spirit Leviathan as well as the head of water spirits, Marine – portrayed as half-human half-fish or mermaid.

In addition, the author elaborates on the South African success in eradicating Godly principles with regards to relationships and marriage:

- The South African Bill of Human Rights legalises polygamy and same-sex marriages with legal right to adopt children.
- The largest South African Protestant Church (Dutch Reform Church) officially approved the accommodation of homosexual ministers and office bearers as well as same sex marriage and the sharing in sacraments with no discrimination of race, gender, identity or sexual orientation.¹⁹³
- The new sex-education Bill (The comprehensive Sexuality Education) is set to be implemented in 2020 for students from grade 4 (approximately 9-10 years of age) to grade 12 (approximately 16-18 years of age). The Department of Basic Education describe the Lesson Plans - which will not be allowed to be amended by teachers - as follows: ***these Scripted Lesson Plans (SLPs) as designed to assist educators to teach "scientifically accurate, evidence-informed, incremental, age appropriate and culturally appropriate" sexuality education within the Life Skills and Life Orientation Curriculum Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) in the classroom.***¹⁹⁴

These SLPs use a "human rights approach which allows adolescents and young people to develop appropriate life skills to support healthy choices and promote gender equality".

¹⁹³ IOL (Independent Online) Sphelele Ngubane (October 13, 2015) Durban - Christian denominations have lashed out at the "conservative" Dutch Reformed Church (DRC) after it announced that it had approved of same-sex unions and that would now allow homosexual ministers to be ordained without the need for them to be celibate. Last week a 64% majority of the church's synod voted in favour of acknowledging same-sex marriages and having openly gay church members serve in the church, which had previously been forbidden. Dutch Reformed Church moderator Nelis Janse van Rensburg said the issue of allowing same-sex unions had been discussed in the church since the 1980s. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/kwazulu-natal/dutch-reformed-churchs-radical-gay-ruling-1928889>

¹⁹⁴ Mamacos, Elizabeth (October 30, 2019) Are the new Comprehensive Sexuality Education lesson plans really too much? Article on Parent24.com. Available at: <https://www.parent24.com/Learn/Learning-difficulties/is-the-new-sexuality-education-curriculum-real-ly-too-much-20191030>

Recent news reports based on information from Freedom of Religion South Africa (FOR SA)¹⁹⁵ have revealed what appears to be extracts from these new plans, and include "graphically explicit" scenarios, examples of sexual assault, group discussions on the topic of "private parts", and more.

Chris Klopper¹⁹⁶, the President of the South African Teachers Union (SAOU) has called the content **"grossly insensitive"** and called for the embargo by teachers who object to the new SLP's.

CYPSA¹⁹⁷ motivated a petition against the said legislation:

Comprehensive Sex Education is not approved by South African parents and is being taught in schools behind their back. The nature of the curriculum is destructive to children. Most CSE programmes include components such as:

- **Teaching that promiscuity is a right;**
- **Promoting dangerous "alternative" sexual practices which increase the risk of sexually transmitted diseases;**
- **Encouraging children to experiment sexually with members of the same sex and of the opposite sex;**
- **Teaching children to advocate for so-called "sexual rights";**
- **Exposure to explicit and pornographic content;**
- **Encouraging children to use condoms at an early age without informing them of potential failure rates;**
- **Disregarding parental values and parental involvement in education; and**
- **Demeaning "traditional" moral, religious, and cultural values shared by families and the community.**

This is a dangerous proposal that must be stopped. South African children should be taught holistically about sex, not from an agenda-driven ideological perspective that demeans our traditional cultural values.

We are deeply concerned that multiple UN agencies, federal and local governments, and school administrations are implementing, promoting and/or funding controversial comprehensive sexuality education programs that sexualize children and take away their innocence.

¹⁹⁵ Press Release: Controversial Sex-Ed Content to be Rolled out in Public Schools Revealed (October 24, 2019). Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/press-release-controversial-sex-ed-content-to-be-rolled-out-in-public-schools-revealed/>

¹⁹⁶ parent24.com Are the new Comprehensive Sexuality Education lesson plans really too much? Available at: <https://www.parent24.com/Learn/Learning-difficulties/is-the-new-sexuality-education-curriculum-really-too-much-20191030>

¹⁹⁷ CYPSA: Concerned Young People of South Africa is a non-profit organisation that was started by concerned people of South Africa in 2009 and then registered as an NGO in 2010. Available at: <https://www.cypsa.org.za/cck/stop-cse-in-south-african-schools>

These programs go way beyond regular sex education and are designed to change all of the sexual and gender norms of society. They openly promote promiscuity, high-risk sexual behavior and sexual pleasure even to very young children.

Thirdly, with reference to the Asmodee power murdering children, it is relevant to evaluate the South African legislation pertaining to abortion. The 'Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act' was enacted in December 2011 giving women of any age or marital status access to abortion services during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, and in certain cases it is extended to the first 20 weeks of pregnancy.¹⁹⁸ It must be noted that the South African Constitution adopted the single-entity approach to pregnancy: **This approach entails viewing pregnant women as single entities, thus making the unborn non-entities under the law. The single-entity approach means that "the fetus is simply part of the woman's body" and thus denies the unborn its "distinctiveness". South African legal position is that a person is one who is born alive and in whom legal subjectivity vests only at this moment.**¹⁹⁹

The unborn baby is thus not protected by law for it acknowledges the human rights of pregnant women but not the rights of the unborn baby. Unborn babies are not recognised as a person up to eight weeks of pregnancy, and therefore, has no 'human right.' Expecting mothers have the freedom provided due to their guaranteed 'human right' to terminate pregnancies. It is the opinion of the author that this practice relates to child sacrifices to Moloch (also called Molech).²⁰⁰

¹⁹⁸ Guttmacher Institutes. Volume 24, Issue 4. Guttmacher S. (December 2, 1998) *Abortion reform in South Africa: A case study of the 196 Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act*. Available at: <https://www.guttmacher.org/journals/ipsrh/1998/12/abortion-reform-south-africa-case-study-1996-choice-termination-pregnancy-act>

¹⁹⁹ South Africa Legal Institute. De Jure Law Journal. Pickles, C. (2014) *Approaches to pregnancy under the law: a relational response to the current South African position and recent academic trends*. Available at: <http://www.saflii.org/za/journals/DEJURE/2014/2.html>

²⁰⁰ Jewish Virtual Library. Ancient Jewish History: The Cult of Moloch. Evidence concerning Moloch worship in ancient Israel is found in the legal, as well as in the historical and prophetic literature of the Bible. In the Pentateuch, the laws of the Holiness Code speak about giving or passing children to Moloch (Leviticus 18:21, 20:2–4) and the law in Deuteronomy speaks of "passing [one's] son or daughter through fire" (18:10). Although Moloch is not named in the Deuteronomy passage, it is likely that his cult was the object of the prohibition. Available at: <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/the-cult-of-moloch>

Fetuses and placentas are being cremated at hospital crematoriums, ironically called 'Lucifer'.

Fourthly, a research interview with a Minister from the Dutch Reform Church who requested to stay anonymous confirmed the following: The attack on ministry through perverted sexual tactics is astonishing. Young attractive girls are enticed by Satan/Asmodee to attend church services, wearing no underwear. These girls will then take a seat in the front row and while the minister is preaching act in an exhibitionist manner.

3.3.8 Ariton

Ariton also known as Egin or Egyn²⁰¹ meaning 'secret' or 'mysterious' holds authority over all "magical powers". Requests for additional power can be launched. He provides magic mirrors which can supposedly provide information about a person's past and future.

He knows the past, present, and future, and can cause people to have visions. He can make spirits appear and take any form, and he can also give familiars. He is reputed to have the power to revive the dead. ²⁰²

Magic mirrors is used to murder individuals. The particular individual's spirit is summonsed to appear in the mirror. When the spirit appears facing to the front, instant death occurs. When the spirit of the person appears facing backwards, the spell is unsuccessful.

3.3.8.1 Application to South Africa

Sorcery: Magical charms through which a person hopes to obtain power in

²⁰¹ Egyn. Occult-world.com. Arton. Available at: <http://occult-world.com/demons/ariton/>

²⁰² Egyn. Occult-world.com. Arton. Available at: <http://occult-world.com/demons/ariton/>

various aspects. The physical realm pertains to financial prosperity (employment, promotion, instant millionaires etc.). Social and cultural benefits often include the return of lovers and physical appearances. It can also include the death of enemies through the use of magical mirrors.

3.3.9 Mammon

According to Prof. Dr. Brand²⁰³, Mammon operates in the sixth level above the earth. From this level he controls Satan's storehouses in the heavens. He operates as a merchant to sell everything in Satan's kingdom including charms, magic potions, talismans, spirits such as witchery, fame, mirrors etc. He also acts as an auditor and is responsible for distributing Satan's riches upon the earth to sustain and reward those in service of Satan. He is recognizable with a golden appearance and two parallel scars across his face. Instrumental in end-times when financial structures are expected to collapse, he aims to achieve the following:

- To contractual align with agents and rulers of the Dark Kingdom as well as prominent families in order to gain power via war, politics and the distribution of drugs. He prevents money from flowing to the children of God.
- To align with media and key media individuals to ridicule individuals in service of God and missionaries.
- He deceives mankind into falling into a debt cycle. He increases gluttony and dissatisfaction with what is affordable. This is also a means to destroy families.
- Mammon controls the demons of lust, selfishness, poverty and financial ruin to hold Christians in bondage.

²⁰³ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Rādāh Ministries. P. 40

- Mammon gains control and power through mankind's love of money

3.3.9.1 Application to South Africa

The author was of the opinion that the legalisation of gambling and the establishment of a national lottery in 'The National Gambling Act, 1996' and 'The Lotteries Act, 1997' were not only instigated by Mammon, but are powerful in keeping individuals in financial bondage.

With regards to astronomical national financial fraud, The Daily Maverick²⁰⁴ reported on the estimated cost of 'state capture' in South Africa.

The cost of State Capture hovers at around R1.5-trillion over the second term of the Jacob Zuma administration. That's just short of the R1.8-trillion Budget for 2019. Put differently: State Capture has wiped out a third of South Africa's R4.9-trillion gross domestic product, or effectively annihilated four months of all labour and productivity of all South Africans, from hawkers selling sweets outside schools to boardroom jockeys.

A Study by William Gumede²⁰⁵ at the University of the Witwatersrand in Johannesburg titled 'Why corruption killed the dreams of a better South Africa: stated the following:

Jacob Zuma, who came to power in 2009, was forced to resign on February 14, 2018, following public outrage about perceived runaway corruption under his presidency.

The party went on to win this election under the new leadership of Cyril Ramaphosa—albeit with its smallest majority since the party had been in power (just over 57 percent of the vote, a share that had been declining since the party's all-time high of nearly 70 percent in 2004).

In the fall of 2017, former anti-apartheid activist and current British politician Peter Hain criticized HSBC in the British House of Lords for "possible

²⁰⁴ Merten, Marianne (March 1, 2019) *State Capture wipes out third of SA's R4. Trillion GDP – never mind the lost in trust, confidence, opportunity.* Daily Maverick. Available at: <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2019-03-01-state-capture-wipes-out-third-of-sas-r4-9-trillion-gdp-never-mind-lost-trust-confidence-opportunity/>

²⁰⁵ Gumede, William (September 19, 2019) *Why corruption killed dreams of a better South Africa.* University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. Available at: <https://www.wits.ac.za/news/latest-news/opinion/2019/2019-09/why-corruption-killed-dreams-of-a-better-south-africa.html>

criminal complicity” in South African money laundering after the bank allegedly ignored internal warnings about suspicious transactions.

In Canada, the federal export credit agency, Export Development Canada, has also been tainted by association with the Gupta family, an influential trio of businessmen brothers who arrived in South Africa in the 1990s from India, and South African corruption, leading it, in late 2017, to cancel a \$41 million loan to the family.

3.3.10 The Spiritual Significance of Gates and Gatekeepers

Physical and spiritual gates functions in the same manner. Gates are normally strategic positioned to provide entrances and exits. A gate or doorway implies the transition between locations. Arches (modern and antique) often represent gateways.

Biblical references include a place of thanksgiving (Psalm 100:4)²⁰⁶ and especially battle (Isaiah 28:6)²⁰⁷. Who so ever gained victory at the gate, had victory in possessing the city, Jesus compared the power of death to the gates of hell who will not prevent the expansion of the church of Christ. (Matthew 16:18).²⁰⁸

Gatekeepers were responsible to maintain order in ancient societies. Guards stationed at the city gates, palace gates and temple gates had specific duties and authority to control access.

David and Samuel appointed 212 “positions of trust” to guard the temple. (1 Chronicles 9:22)²⁰⁹ Ezra included 139 gatekeepers on Zerubbabel’s journey from

²⁰⁶ Psalm 100:4 (NKJV) Enter into His gates with thanksgiving, *And* into His courts with praise. Be thankful to Him, *and* bless His name.

²⁰⁷ Isaiah 28:6 (NKJV) For a spirit of justice to him who sits in judgment, *And* for strength to those who turn back the battle at the gate.

²⁰⁸ Matthew 16:18 (NKJV) *And* I also say to you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of Hades shall not prevail against it.

²⁰⁹ 1 Chronicles 9:22 (NKJV) All those chosen as gatekeepers *were* two hundred and twelve. They were recorded by their genealogy, in their villages. David and Samuel the seer had appointed them to their trusted office.

Babylon to Jerusalem. (Nehemiah 7:1)²¹⁰. The Book of Ruth (Ruth 4:2)²¹¹ mentions the elders at the gate. Elders were endowed with the authority to confirm legal transactions and to exercise the role of contemporary judges in civil affairs.²¹² Equivalent, 'modern gates' are leaders who assemble to discuss governing agendas regarding Congress, Parliament etc.

Gatekeepers can also be described as follows:

A tutelary (/ˈtʊtl ɛri/or/ˈtjʊtl ɛri/) (also tutelar) is a deity or spirit who is a guardian, patron, or protector of a particular place, geographic feature, person, lineage, nation, culture, or occupation. The etymology of "tutelary" expresses the concept of safety, and thus of guardianship.²¹³

A demonic gatekeeper is a powerful demonic entity guarding the entrance to specific territorial areas. The circumference of areas is variable from smaller regions to countries and its national borders. The author emphasizes the fact that the territories guarded by gatekeepers are not restricted to actual geographical territories.

Such a demonic power controls and coordinates demonic hierarchy in the area and strategizes how to oppose and restrict the Gospel of Christ. In the context of Elders congregating at the city gates with authority to judge and rule the city, demonic gatekeepers represent Satan's authority. They control demonic access and oppose angelic access.

They affirm actions according to Satan's legal right in an area and are positioned to influence decisions pertaining to the management of countries and cities.

Larson²¹⁴ extended the functions of gatekeepers to individuals in stating:

"The demon who provides continual access to the person's body or soul. Gatekeepers don't have to be powerful demons. In fact they often aren't.

²¹⁰ Nehemiah 7:1 (NKJV) Then it was, when the wall was built and I had hung the doors, when the gatekeepers, the singers, and the Levites had been appointed,

²¹¹ Ruth 4:2 (NKJV) And he took ten men of the elders of the city, and said, "Sit down here." So they sat down.

²¹² Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 392

²¹³ Tutelary deity. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tutelary_deity

²¹⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 374

They're just clever. They stay hidden so their role goes undetected. But they're most valuable to the entire evil spiritual system in the person. They control the entry for all the others."

South African 'gates' of authority are the three levels of Government: National (Parliament, National Council of Provinces), Provincial Legislatures, and Local Government Authorities (Metro and Town Councils). Decisions opposing Godly principles open the door for the rulers of the Kingdom of Satan to enter to influence, not only the elected public representatives, but also people subject to the authority of the governing body.

An intercessory prayer for South Africa by Priscilla Adam received on social media (July 2020) accommodated three gates: Government, the president Cyril Ramaphosa and leadership, the Education Gate, and the Economic Gate. She prayed against the demonic gatekeepers influencing these specific areas in South Africa. The author identified the following possible spiritual gates with specific demonic rulers (gatekeepers) with authority to influence decisions to advance the Kingdom of Darkness, opposing the Holy Spirit and ministering angels sent by God from the Kingdom of Light.

- i. **Gate of Authority*** (including political leaders on all three spheres of government).
- ii. **Gate to the Economy*** (All Financial related matters including the South African Revenue service, National Treasury, public and private enterprise, mineral resources and energy, employment and labour, Trade, and Industry).
- iii. **Gate to Education.*** (Legislation control religious education, parental inclusiveness and authority, the controversial proposed legislation including sex education in curricula, and the content of History of South Africa).
- iv. **Gate to the Judiciary, law enforcement and Correctional Services*** (The special SAPS unit for Occult Related Crime was cancelled in 2006. Speculations exist with regards to the re-instated unit. The only data

available is confirmation of special 'occult-training of 40 officers in 2015. The unit is supposedly responsible for investigating 'muti-murders').

- v. **Gate to the military and border protection** (Including Denel²¹⁵, South African Airforce and South African Navy. Disintegrated border control results in the influx of illegal African immigrants from Zimbabwe and Mozambique in particular. Relevant are the claims from South African black people that the sangoma powers from Zimbabwe are apparently stronger than their South African counterparts. The author speculates with regards to the possible illegal immigrants from Pakistan and China. Spirituality of immigrants cannot be ignored)
- vi. **Gate to Media and Communication and broadcasting** (Manipulation of liberal news, false news, propaganda, criticism towards Christianity disguised under the banner of the protection of freedom of speech).
- vii. **Gate to Sport, Art, and Entertainment and culture** (Race quotas in sport are very controversial and lobbyists have strong political agendas. Art and Entertainment is internationally captured by a liberal agenda. The LGBTQI²¹⁶ agenda is very prevalent).
- viii. **Gate to Religion** (including the agenda of a New World Order, Freemasonry, other false religions, annihilating of the Church of Christ).
- ix. **Gate to Morality** (including racism, xenophobia, family as unit, and LGBTQI).
- x. **Gate to Medical and Health** (Basic Conditions of Employment Act validate medical certificates from traditional healers. This act legitimises traditional medicine and traditional healers. The Traditional Health Practitioner Act was promulgated on April 30, 2014).
- xi. **Gate to public service and administration** (Maladministration and corruption especially in the issue of Identity documents are reported).

²¹⁵ Denel: South African State-Owned Aerospace and military technology conglomerate established in 1992. Available at: <http://www.denel.co.za/about-us/company-profile>

²¹⁶ LGBTQI: Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Queer or Questioning and Intersex. Available at: <https://acronyms.thefreedictionary.com/LGBTQI>

A gate or doorway implies the transition between locations. Arches (modern and antique) often represent gateways. Larson²¹⁷ extended the functions of gatekeepers to individuals in stating:

“The demon who provides continual access to the person’s body or soul. Gatekeepers don’t have to be powerful demons. In fact they often aren’t. They’re just clever. They stay hidden so their role goes undetected. But they’re most valuable to the entire evil spiritual system in the person. They control the entry for all the others.”

A tutelary (*/ˈtʊtl ɛri/* or */ˈtjʊtl ɛri/*) (also *tutelar*) is a deity²¹⁸ or spirit who is a guardian, patron, or protector of a particular place, geographic feature, person, lineage, nation, culture, or occupation. The etymology of "tutelary" expresses the concept of safety, and thus of guardianship.²¹⁹

Karin Hardin²²⁰ remarked the following after the Arch of Baal was erected in Washington in 2018:

Arch of Baal was built at the entrance of the Temple of Baal in Syria approximately 2,000 years ago. It was a gateway to the demonic and Baal worship. But as with much of China's architecture, which was constructed for protection against or to spiritual entities, these arches represent memorials and gateways established to ruling authorities in those regions. This was not the first appearance of the arch.

In September 2016, a replica of the Syrian arch, which had been destroyed by Isis in August 2015, was unveiled in New York City. This is not simply a piece of history for us to study and admire; it is a deeper spiritual root on display.

Peter Wagner’s books contain a number of other examples of dealing with “territorial spirits.” In one instance a missionary saw a dramatic contrast between two sides of the same street, one side in Brazil and the other side in Uruguay. The people standing on the Brazilian side were much more open and responsive to the gospel, apparently because the power of Uruguayan territorial spirits ended dramatically at the Uruguayan border.²²¹

Dr. Ferrell²²² affirmed the existence of “Places of Darkness” (a generic name for

²¹⁷ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 374

²¹⁸ Deity: Defined as "a god or goddess (in a polytheistic religion)", or anything revered as divine. A goddess is a female deity. Oxford Dictionary of English. Stevenson, Angus (2010). Oxford Dictionary of English (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

²¹⁹ Tutelary deity. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tutelary_deity

²²⁰ Hardin, K. (2018) *America just erected a Gateway to Demonic Darkness*. Available at: <https://www.charismanews.com/opinion/73474-america-just-erected-a-gateway-to-demonic-darkness>

²²¹ Poythress, V. (June 5, 2015) *Territorial Spirits: Some Biblical Perspectives*. Available at: <https://framepoythress.org/territorial-spirits-some-biblical-perspectives/>

²²² Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. PP. 71,79

Satan's empire, and a spiritual place), "Gates of Darkness", the Abyss, Pits, and Deep places and "Places of Death". She elaborated on the phenomena of these gates by identifying the following: "**The region of darkness with its prisons, labyrinths, valleys, and abysses is a zone connected to other regions. Specific places function as gates of entry:**"

Regions of Fear (gate) are regions and demon guards transporting prisoners from the regions of darkness. This gate opens when the individual's sole is fragmented by extreme events. The **Covenant chambers** are gates opened by occult ceremonies performed in the physical world.

Gates originates in sorcery, witchcraft, divination, rituals of idolatry, Masonic rituals, mind control and New Age rituals. **Gates of Pain** open with extreme pain, such as the loss of a loved one, rejection, or abandonment, attempted abortion, treason, humiliation, hatred, anger, revenge, violence, etc. The **abyss** is described as a place close to hell or Sheol, equivalent to "Infernos" and one of the gates of hell.

Located under the ice in the polar regions (Job 38:30)²²³ from where water spirits (including Leviathan) are sent. (Isaiah 27:1, Isaiah 14:15)²²⁴. **Pits of the abyss** or "miry pits" refer to the mud of iniquity. (Psalm 69:2)²²⁵. Depression is situated in the **Pits of Desperation**. (Psalm 40:1-2).²²⁶ Pits of Destruction hold people who are imprisoned by sin, vices and evil actions such as sorcerers, the mafia, serial killers, drug traffickers etc. With reference to '**Pits of Corruption**' and the '**Pit of**

²²³ Job 38:30 (NKJV) The waters harden like stone, And the surface of the deep is frozen.

²²⁴ Isaiah 27:1 (NKJV) In that day the LORD with His severe sword, great and strong, Will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan that twisted serpent; And He will slay the reptile that is in the sea.

Isaiah 14:15 (NKJV) Yet you shall be brought down to Sheol, To the lowest depths of the Pit.

²²⁵ Psalm 69:2 (NKJV) I sink in deep mire, Where *there is* no standing; I have come into deep waters, Where the floods overflow me.

²²⁶ Psalm 40:1-2 (AMP) I waited patiently *and* expectantly for the LORD; And He inclined to me and heard my cry. He brought me up out of a horrible pit [of tumult and of destruction], out of the miry clay, And He set my feet upon a rock, steadying my footsteps *and* establishing my path.

Iniquity' (Isaiah 38:17)²²⁷, Dr. Ferrell stated:

In countries with a lot of corruption, these pits operate at a national level. The consciousness of the people is totally influenced by these places.

The nations have sunk down in the pit which they made; In the net which they hid, their own foot is caught.

Psalm 9:15 (NKJV)

3.3.10.1 Application to South Africa

With all the evidence of corruption and state capture provided in this thesis, Dr. Ferrell's observation is hundred percent applicable to South Africa.

South Africa is often described as the 'gateway to Africa'. Although this has reference to agriculture, economy etc. the author is of the opinion that it is also applicable to the spreading of the Gospel of Christ.

If this is true, the argument can be presented that Satan will have specific strategies to ensure the general downfall of South Africa to nullify the power of the Church and the continued spreading of the Gospel to Africa.

Dr. Ferrell²²⁸ dissected the complex phenomena of places of hell and presented the divisions. In the evaluation of her presentation, the author concluded to possible areas applicable to South Africa.

Sheol,²²⁹ meaning 'lower place' is also known as Hades (Greek) and Hell (Latin) and it represents Satan' basecamp. The Bible describes Satan as the "angel of

²²⁷ Isaiah 38:17 (NKJV) Indeed *it was* for my own peace *That* I had great bitterness; But You have lovingly *delivered* my soul from the pit of corruption, For You have cast all my sins behind Your back.

²²⁸ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. PP. 86-117

²²⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. PP. 89-92

the Abyss' (Revelation 9:11)²³⁰, prince or ruler of darkness (Ephesians 6:12)²³¹ and he who holds the power of death: (Hebrew 2:14).²³²

The fact that Dr. Ferrell identified Poland and Hitler to reflect the regions of death implies that applications to South Africa would also be possible. Sheol takes people captive during victimization and causes people to become ensnared.

The Valley of the Shadow of Death is the projection of things moving in the regions of death and Sheol such as hospitals and cemeteries. Poltergeist spirits roam here, and spiritualists invoke the spirits of the departed. ***"This practice attracts the spirit of death, which produce sickness and spiritual death in and among the population."***²³³

Ancestral veneration and consultation with departed ancestors are a very general practice in South Africa influencing all spheres of life such as studies, careers, marriage partners, pregnancy and christening of children to name but a few. Whilst South Africa is praying for a Godly revival and spiritual breakthrough, this practice might be a spiritual interference.

The **Region of Death** is described as the dwelling place of those who have departed from this life.

Abaddon, or the Slaughterer, is depicted as the deepest part of the Abyss from where Satan forges plans of destruction. This demonic power destroys families, individual lives, ministries and entire cities. Abaddon is responsible for abortion of babies, war, genocide, shedding of innocent blood and natural disasters.

²³⁰ Revelation 9:11 (NKJV) And they had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in Hebrew is Abaddon, but in Greek he has the name Apollyon.

²³¹ Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV) For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual *hosts* of wickedness in the heavenly places.

²³² Hebrew 2:14 (NKJV) Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil,

²³³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 101

The manifestation of this power within the boundaries of South Africa is very prominent. The shedding of innocent blood includes abortion, farm murders, violence against women and children and xenophobia.

- An in-depth analysis of Crime against Women in South Africa²³⁴ defined femicide as ***a specific form of gender-based violence where women are murdered, usually by men, just because they are female. Also as death of females resulting from any form of abuse by males'***

"Statistics show that every three hours, a woman is killed in South Africa. This is five times the world average. Half of all women murder victims are killed by men with whom they had a close relationship."²³⁵

- With regards to abortions, the South African Government News Agency²³⁶ reported in 2018 that between 52% and 58% of the estimated 260 000 in South Africa every year are illegal. A 2019 report could not be obtained. A logical conclusion would be that the total abortions escalated.
- The South African economy is in dire straits. On March 27, 2020 Moody's became the last of the three major credit-rating agencies to downgrade South Africa sovereign credit rating to junk status. Fitch and Standard & Poor's downgraded South Africa in 2017. This downgrade implies that South Africa will not be included in the important FTSE²³⁷ World Government Bond Index (WGBI). At least one investment grade rating by one of the credit rating agencies is a requirement to participate in the index²³⁸.

The place of the Jackals is one of the regions under Abaddon's authority. The King James translation and some others translated the text as "place of dragons"

²³⁴ Crime against women in South Africa. Report 03-4-05 P. 4. Available at: <https://www.justice.gov.za/vg/femicide/docs/201806-CrimeStats.pdf>

²³⁵ Theletsane, Winnie (January 2, 2020) *7 months ago Some of the femicide cases that made headlines in 2019*. Eyewitness News. Available at: <https://ewn.co.za/2020/01/02/femicide-cases-that-made-headlines-in-2019> Author underlined some text.

²³⁶ SA News.com South African Government News Agency. (July 2018). Available at: <https://www.sanews.gov.za/south-africa/sas-illegal-abortion-rate-alarmingly-high>

²³⁷ FTSE: Financial Times Stock Exchange

²³⁸ Simpson, Mike (2020-03-28) *The South African.com Junk Status: Moody's downgrade hits South Africa at 'worst possible time'*. Available at: <https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/finance/moodys-junk-status-south-africa-economy-28-march-2020/>

or 'devourer. (Psalm 44:19)²³⁹ Finances, dreams, projects, health etc. are devoured, resulting in a place of brokenness and great destruction. The result reflects on Scriptures referring to Satan as a prowling lion who devours. (1 Peter 5:8)²⁴⁰

Dr. Ferrell²⁴¹ also remarked that this is a place of God's judgement. As evidence of the possibility that cities can fall victim to the impact of these spirits she stated:

There are entire cities held in this region of wild beasts. The cities of Nezahualcoytl (meaning "Place of Coyotes") and Coatzacoalcos (meaning "Place of serpents or dragons") are located in my country, Mexico. Both cities suffered the devastating impact of these spirits.²⁴²

The author made the following observation: Travelling through eight of the nine provinces, the absolute deterioration of smaller towns and their businesses and infrastructure are devastating. Once vibrant business zones are now desolate with mostly new Chinese and Pakistani businesses. Traditional businesses have disappeared. Many business premises are vacant. It appears that infrastructure management failed totally including roads, sanitation, and general maintenance. An appearance of absolute desolation.

Although the Auditor General report reflected on astronomic financial mismanagement in local governments, the author experienced a definite spiritual oppression in many towns.

The Land of Forgetfulness is home to rejection, loneliness, and sadness. Individuals who are spiritually confined to this region are forgotten by others. Several Biblical passages relate demons to nations and territories.

However every nation continued to make gods of its own, and put them in the shrines on the high places which the Samaritans had made, every

²³⁹ Psalm 44:19 (KJV) Though thou hast sore broken us in the place of dragons, and covered us with the shadow of death.

²⁴⁰ 1 Peter 5:8 (NKJV) Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

²⁴¹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 113

²⁴² Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 114

nation in the cities where they dwelt.

The men of Babylon made Succoth Benoth, the men of Cuth made Nergal, the men of Hamath made Ashima, and the Avites made Nibhaz and Tartak; and the Sepharvites burned their children in fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech, the gods of Sepharvaim.

2 Kings 17:29-31 (NKJV)

They provoked Him to jealousy with foreign gods; With abominations they provoked Him to anger. They sacrificed to demons, not to God,

Deuteronomy 32:16-17 (NKJV)

3.3.11 The Spiritual Significance of Portholes

Amanda Linette Meder²⁴³, psychic medium provided the following insight into the phenomena:

A Porthole is any place, person (also called channels) or object that acts as a channel for spiritual beings to travel between physical and spiritual realms. It is an opening or gateway, a bridge between the two worlds, physical or spiritual. Mirrors, doorways, and windows are known to be manmade portholes.

Natural portholes can be found in waterfalls, riverways, fissures and geological divides, sources of organic material, (including the human body), places with high heat or energy holding capacities and geological magnetic energy fields.

The connecting point between ley lines are normally also powerful portholes. Places where individuals frequently cross over from the one realm to the other, like hospitals and old age homes can become portholes.

Daniel Mastral²⁴⁴, a converted Satanist explained this concept in his book

²⁴³ Meder, Amanda Linette (December 2013) *What is a spiritual portal?* Available at: <https://www.amandalinnettemeder.com/blog/2013/12/16/what-is-a-spirit-portal>

²⁴⁴ Holliday, Dr. Pat Sessions, Dr. Sabrina, Marshall Perot Projected Demonic Energy episode 11. Available at: <https://miracleinternetchurch.com/345archive-newsletters/2017/2-Breaking-the-Shackles-of-Demonic-Bondage.pdf>

'Rastros do Oculto': **Occultism, magick and Satanism seek the opening of portals and communication with evil fallen angels, or demons.** He differentiated between portals to an individual's physical body and portals to the Earth. Permanent portals are the main objective of Satanists, also called 'children of Lucifér'. Portholes to the earth require strong energy created in blood rituals. Masral claimed that 90 portholes exist, of which 72 have been opened by the turn of the century, nine in 2006 and the last nine in 2013. Only a few high-ranking witches are familiar with the particular requirements to open these portholes. Masral stated:

"The opening of these portals is the reason we have seen since the 1950s so many spiritual manifestations such as UFOs, light orbs and apparitions, sometimes in plain daylight."²⁴⁵

Portholes to individual's are gained through the 7 chakras and the awakening of the kundalini spirit.

3.3.12 The Spiritual Significance of Vortexes

A spiral of energy attached to locations or created by geomagnetic forces concentrated in a tunnel-like shape. Occasionally, vortices can become portholes.

3.4 Rulers in the Kingdom of Satan²⁴⁶

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12 (KJV)

²⁴⁵ Holliday, Dr. Pat Sessions, Dr. Sabrina, Marshall Perot Projected Demonic Energy episode 11. Available at: <https://miracleinternetchurch.com/345archive-newsletters/2017/2-Breaking-the-Shackles-of-Demonic-Bondage.pdf>

²⁴⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. PP. 53-54.

Although 'Rulers' follow the 'Powers' in Satan's hierarchy, they have direct access to Satan and his princes. The highest authority achievable for humans is sub-princes, almost equal in power compared to 'Rulers'. Rulers are either spirit or human. Most commonly, Rulers manifest through possessed humans. When promoted to 'Ruler', man obtains spiritual powers equal to spiritual entities to enable him/her to exert progressive power.

It is not impossible for an individual to be delivered from Satan's power and to accept Christ, but it becomes increasingly more difficult according to the covenants and pacts of secrecy he/she has with Satan.

Promotion in Satan's hierarchy increases evil powers with which these individuals operate. Fear and secret pacts bind human rulers to Satan. Promotion also implies the increased transformation from human to a spiritual being.

The Book of Joshua lists 31 Rulers or Kings whom Joshua's army conquered: The kings of Jericho, Ai, Jerusalem, Hebron, Jarmuth, Lachish, Eglon, Gezer, Debir, Geder, Hormah, Arad, Libnah, Adullam, Maddedah, Bethel, Tppuah, Hopher, Aphek, Lasharon, Madon, Hazor, Shimron Meron, Achshaph, Taanch, Megiddo, Kedesh, Jokneam, Dor, Gilgal, and Tirzah.

Prof. Dr. Brand²⁴⁷ quoted Dean Sherman²⁴⁸ in saying ***"Ruling has to do with exerting opinion or will over others. It is important to understand how the enemy gets access to the earth to exert his opinion over the will of men."***

3.4.1 Application to South Africa

Rulers exert power through witchcraft. Enhanced power enables actions such as

²⁴⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 586

²⁴⁸ Sherman, D. (1990) *Spiritual Warfare for Every Christian*. Seattle. WU:YWAM Publishing. P. 96

extended astral travel and the ability to live under water for extended periods of time.

Human covenants or agreements with Satan result in descendant rulers operating as witches, wizards and magicians. Countless confessions are available from South Africans recounting the (ancestral) call to becoming a sangoma.

3.4.2 Strongholds

A Stronghold is a fortified place that Satan builds to exalt himself against the knowledge and plans of God.²⁴⁹ Dr. De Lange²⁵⁰ differentiated the following categories:

A. Ground-level

Individuals held captive on a personal level by Ground-level strongholds

- Personal strongholds (personal, reoccurring sin)
- Strongholds of the mind (reoccurring thought patterns. Also relate to mental pathways)

B. Occultic

Demonic strongholds reflect the occult and territorial strongholds entertaining geographical areas or families:

- Ideological Strongholds (e.g., New Age);
- Occult strongholds (Divination, sorcery and witchcraft frequently practiced in a geographical area or family);

²⁴⁹ De Lange, Dr. Susan F.M. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria. P. 124

²⁵⁰ De Lange, Dr. Susan F.M. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria. P. ix

- Seats of Satan (highly oppressed and demonically controlled geographic locations that reign and rule areas).

Territorial Strongholds involve the following:

- Social strongholds (poverty, racism, injustice);
- Strongholds between City and Church (where the church sees the city government as its enemy);
- Sectarian strongholds (division causing strongholds between churches, such as pride, idolatry of belief systems, fear of rejection);
- Strongholds of iniquity (sins of the fathers that cause weaknesses in generations).

In his elaboration concerning witchcraft in the church, O.O. Paul²⁵¹ provided his analysis of key demonic strongholds defiling ministries:

- Deceit includes lying, fantasies, delusions, rationalizations, wrong doctrines, misuse of scripture, flattery and syncretism;
- Jealousy reflects spitefulness, gossip and slander, betrayal, critical and judgemental attitudes, suspiciousness, un-Christlike competition and cruelty;
- Rejection symptoms are addictive behaviours, compulsions, unworthiness, withdrawal, shallow relationships, loneliness and people seeking acceptance;
- Pride results in ungratefulness, self-righteousness, self-centeredness, insensitivity, materialism, stubbornness, mocking, vain characters, spiritual adultery, impatience and people aspiring for positions;
- Religiosity includes religious busyness, knowledge without love, no spiritual power, spiritual blindness, hypercriticism, legalistic perversion, presumptions of grace.
- Independence and divorce reflect insensitivity, aloofness, selfish ambition, devil's advocate, withdrawal, lack of trust, wilfulness and the presentation of

²⁵¹ Paul, O.O. (2013) *Expository Study Book on Witchcraft in the Church. Their Marks & Missions*. P. 27-42

excuses.

3.4.2.1 Strongholds of the Mind

The apostle Paul taught the congregation in Corinth as follows:

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war according to the flesh. For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal but mighty in God for pulling down strongholds, casting down arguments and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ, and being ready to punish all disobedience when your obedience is fulfilled.

2 Corinthians 10:3-4 (NKJV)

These scriptures clearly defines the battleground as non-physical. Various translations present synonyms for Paul's reference to 'arguments': *imagination, reasoning, translation, speculation, knowledge and thought*. All referring to the faculty of the mind incorporated in the dimension of the soul. Satan who is pursuing a fierce strategy to influence the manner in which man thinks and argues, creates thought patterns or thought habits and neuropathways by which man evaluates, judges and acts or reacts. Thus, strongholds include thought patterns, arguments, and exalted ideas (every high thing) established and protected by Satan, in order to be exalted and to oppose the knowledge of Christ.

"A thought process implanted by a spiritual force that keeps a person in bondage". (P. 134) Worship of demonic powers in the heavens led to the establishment of thrones of iniquity through unholy agreement between heaven and earth. (P. 135) In every territory, thrones compete against the glory of God infiltrating earth and unlocking the harvest of a generation (P. 136)²⁵²

A demonic stronghold is any type of thinking that exalts itself above the knowledge of God, thereby giving the devil a secure place of influence in an individual's thought-life. Christians can be 'oppressed' by demons, which

²⁵² Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books. PP. 134, 135, 136

can occupy unregenerated thought systems, especially if those thoughts are defended by self-deception or false doctrines.²⁵³

Stone²⁵⁴ elaborated on the establishment of 'stronghold' mindsets as follows:

Imaginations frames images in your mind, and those images then stir emotions. These mental images are like giant roadblocks on the road to blessing.

Derek Prince²⁵⁵ construed two genetic strongholds as 'prejudices' and 'preconceptions. Prejudices often manifests in religious cults, political ideologies and racial discrimination and includes confessing Christians. A stronghold of prejudice and preconceptions in an individual's mind blind him/her to prohibit the true gospel of Jesus Christ.

'...whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.'

2 Corinthians 4:4 (NKJV)

Baxter²⁵⁶ identified the manifestation of thought patterns (strongholds) on an individual:

- Emotional problems: The following could be included: Anger, depression, fear, inferiority, insecurity, rejection, hatred, jealousy, resentment, self-pity and worry;
- Mental problems could include unrealistic and unexplained procrastination, incomprehensible indecision, wavering, compromise, confusion, delusions, doubt, rationalization and loss of memory'
- Disruptive problems which manifest through lying, profanity, blasphemy, criticism, mockery, railing and gossip;
- Sexual Problems could include but are not limited to fantasy sexual experiences, masturbation, lust, provocative and lewd behaviour, homosexuality, fornication, adultery, incest, and other perversions;

²⁵³ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. England: New Wine Press. P. 28

²⁵⁴ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 43

²⁵⁵ Prince, Derek (2014) *Spiritual Warfare*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 27

²⁵⁶ Baxter, Mary K. and Lowery, T.L. Dr. (2006) *A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington: Whitaker House. PP. 59-61

- Addictions: Satan oppresses people with nicotine, alcohol, drugs, medicine, gambling, television, the Internet, caffeine, sugar, food etc.;
- Physical infirmities sometimes originate from spirits of infirmity.

Frangipane²⁵⁷ mentioned two fortresses of thought patterns (Strongholds) often established: First by **“the world into which we have been born. The steady stream of information and experience that continually shaped our childhood perceptions is the greatest source of strongholds within us”**

Secondly, **“Strongholds are built into us through our experiences and the conclusions we have drawn from them.”** From this resolution it is the authors opinion that in addition to Princes conclusion pertaining to the stronghold of the South African people ‘the spirit of fear’ could be added.

The abnormal violent crime forces families to teach young children to be vigilant, precise and accurate with regards to a variety safety measures, at home and in public. Most families (or their close relatives) fell victim to crime of some sort.

Adding to fear is the collapsing economy and high percentage of unemployment, frequent retrenchments and crumbling of all public services. (Education, medical and the South African Police Service).

The brutal racism towards white South Africans in particular increases fear. Numerous media reports exist of brutality and rape of white men in police stations without an official criminal charge being lodged.

The failing judiciary results in potentially dangerous people being released on bail or released early during their sentence period.

Strongholds develop via the following avenues:²⁵⁸

- Occult or spiritism: séances, witchcraft, black magic, wicca, ouija boards,

²⁵⁷ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. England: New Wine Press. PP. 43,45

²⁵⁸ Baxter, Mary K. and Lowery, T.L. Dr. (2006) *A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington: Whitaker House. P. 61

levitation, palmistry, handwriting analysis, automatic handwriting, ESP, hypnosis, horoscopes, astrology, fortune-telling, seeking after spirits of the dead, new age mediation, yoga, divination, mantras, and any form of devil worship;

- False religion and doctrine: Pagan religion, philosophy, cult, and mind science;
- Pride and vanity: A sense of superiority, unteachability, self-sufficiency;
- Fear;
- Ungodly imagination leading to mental images leading to emotions. (often fear)²⁵⁹
- Other sin: Wilful participation in sin, ignorance, idolatry, lust.

3.4.2.2 Strongholds Manifestation on a National Level

It seemed to be possible that a stronghold might manifest in a group of people, (for example a nation or cultural group) sharing the same conviction and mindset.

“The mind is the number-one battleground between Christians and Satan”.²⁶⁰

“The real battleground is the mind, the imagination, the fantasy realm. The Scriptures are clear that immortality is first committed in the mind, the imagination, the fantasy realm, before it is committed with the body.”²⁶¹

(Matthew 5:27-28)²⁶²

Prince²⁶³ believes God revealed the stronghold of the South African people as bigotry²⁶⁴: ***Obstinate or intolerant devotion to one’s own opinions and***

²⁵⁹ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 42

²⁶⁰ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 158

²⁶¹ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 121

²⁶² Matthew 5:27-28 (NKJV) “You have heard that it was said to those of old, ‘You shall not commit adultery.’ But I say to you that whoever looks at a woman to lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.

²⁶³ Prince, Derek (2014) *Spiritual Warfare*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 28

²⁶⁴ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. England: New Wine Press. P. 43

prejudices: the state of the mind of a bigot.²⁶⁵ It is also defined as **the practice of having very strong and unreasonable opinions, especially about politics, race or religion, confusing and refusing to consider other people's opinions.**²⁶⁶

Bigotry is closely related to ideology, characterised by intolerance and often divided into religious and racial bigotry.

The general and frequent application of witchcraft and ancestor veneration might be additional strongholds. It is well known amongst Black nationalities of South Africa and not as frequent nor familiar amongst the Indian, Coloured or White population groups. (Chapter Five elaborated more on the application of witchcraft in South Africa.)

The author surmised that Satan aims to establish spiritual strongholds on an individual, national, and cultural level by manipulating thought patterns and convictions. From here on, physical manifestations or actions flow.

3.4.3 Strongman

Or how can anyone go into a strong man's house and steal his property unless he first overpowers and ties up the strong man? Then he will ransack and rob his house.

Matthew 12:29 (AMP)

The principle of the satanic strongman is significant in combatting Satan's success on a personal and national level. In essence, this scripture re-affirms the fact that Satan's Kingdom is divided into levels of authority with satanic forces responsible for overseeing specific areas.

As they descend in order, their territories also become smaller. The true character and purpose of Satan remains fundamental in all of his operations.

²⁶⁵ Bigotry defined. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bigotry>

²⁶⁶ Bigotry defined. MacMillan Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.macmillandictionary.com/dictionary/british/bigotry>

Be sober [well balanced and self-disciplined], be alert and cautious at all times. That enemy of yours, the devil, prowls around like a roaring lion [fiercely hungry], seeking someone to devour.

2 Peter 5:8 (AMP)

Satan deploys 'angels' with authority (Strongmen) to implement his strategy of abort and destruction of individuals, families, territorial areas, nations or cultures. Illustrating the application of this strategy over nations, Prince²⁶⁷ identified the following strongmen over 3 specific nations:

- New Zealand: The attitude of 'in difference'.
- Australia: Initially founded as a penal colony with prisoners routinely given the opportunity to go there or sent there as punishment. Main spiritual problem remained 'rejection'.
- The United States of America (USA) was conceived in rebellion. Rebellion is the sin of witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:23)²⁶⁸. Rebellion and witchcraft are both strong spiritual entities influencing the USA.

3.4.3.1 Application to South Africa

Various opinions exist regarding the strongman over South Africa:

- **Pride:** Nationalism and culture is exalted above God's principles. This is prevalent in several of the nationalities: The Afrikaner distinctly associate their nationality, right to own land, language etc. as God-given. African religions refrain from idolatry and accommodate pagan rituals within their dogma of Christianity. It could also be argued that pride lies at the foundation of racism.
- **Occult:** Sorcery, divination and witchcraft are common practice in many societies.

²⁶⁷ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK.

²⁶⁸ 1 Samuel 15:23 (NKJV) For rebellion *is as* the sin of witchcraft, And stubbornness *is as* iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the LORD, He also has rejected you from *being* king."

- **Ancestral veneration (ancestor worship):** The custom of venerating deceased ancestors who are considered still a part of the family and whose spirits are believed to have the power to intervene in the affairs of the living²⁶⁹ In the broad sense, ancestor worship comprises a variety of religious practices and beliefs focussing on the spirits of ancestors.

It is most often persons who used to be important, such as the head of a family or clan and the chief of a tribe or state, who are revered in these rites. Ancestor worship in a narrow sense refers to the specific actions which are performed during the rites relating to the propitiation of deceased relatives and/or ministrations to their needs.

Ancestor worship here is an attempt to preserve good relations with the departed kin. These actions, on the part of the living who are in a position to render help, try to pacify or oblige the spirits of the dead – by offering them what they may need in their new existence (Hwang 1977:343).²⁷⁰

- **Anarchy:** Lawlessness is prevalent in ‘state capture’. Education with reference to violent protests on Tertiary campuses and the burning of schools, destructive riots pertaining to poor service delivery, setting trains and busses alight in protest actions etc.
- **Racism:** Racism in South Africa is not a white-black challenge. It is much more involved including all races.

The Anti-Racism Network of South Africa (ARNSA) was established by the Ahmed Kathrada and Nelson Mandela Foundation in 2015²⁷¹. The Centre for the Advancement of Non-Racialism and Democracy (CANRAD)²⁷² provides an intellectual and social space for debate on the complexities of post-apartheid South Africa to establish a new non-racial and democratic

²⁶⁹ Ancestor Worship. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ancestor%20worship>

²⁷⁰ Choon, Sup Bae (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree Philosophiae Doctor (PhD) in the Faculty of Theology, University of Pretoria. P. 21

²⁷¹ Who is ARNSA? Available at: <https://www.arnsa.org.za/home>

²⁷² CANRAD: Centre for the Advancement of Non-Racialism and Democracy. Available at: <https://canrad.mandela.ac.za/What-we-do>

social and economic order. The author is of the opinion, that although overwhelmed by the racial debate between White, Coloured, Black and Indian, a prevalent discrimination by Government is towards the Khoisan or Khoi nation whose individuality as a nation is ignored.

“Given that the country has the world’s largest white minority living under black rule, colour line tensions will remain a fairly permanent feature of the country’s political landscape.”²⁷³

3.5 Demons

The Bible presents considerably more information with regards to angels compared to demons. Yet, the fundamental truths to assist in the comprehension of demons and evil spirits mentioned in the New Testament, is found in the Old Testament. Scripture does not define ‘demons’ nor does it provide a detailed register of their origin, nor the time of the origin.

One fact remains, demons are not metaphors or figures of speech. Jesus in particular, treated demons as reality. History of religion also presents a history of demonic accounts.

Dr. George W. Gilmore²⁷⁴ stated ***“the entire religious provenience out of which Hebrew religion sprang is full of demonism.”***

3.5.1 Demon Defined

The New Testament (Greek), Strong’s Concordance²⁷⁵ #G1140 provided the

²⁷³ Gottschalk, Keith. (May 1, 2019) *The Conversation. Academic rigour, journalistic flair. Race still colours South Africa’s politics 2years after apartheid’s end.* Political Scientist. University of the Western Cape. Available at: <https://theconversation.com/race-still-colours-south-africas-politics-25-years-after-apartheids-end-115735>

²⁷⁴ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare.* Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 20

²⁷⁵ Strong’s #G1140: Demon. eSword

following definition: (δαίμόνιον) daimonion *dahee-mon'-ee-on* a *daemonic being*; by extension a *deity*: - devil or god. It is a diminutive form of #G1142 (δαίμων) daimōn *dah'ee-mown*; *demon* or supernatural spirit (of a bad nature): - devil. Prince²⁷⁶ elaborated more explaining the New Testament Greek noun '*daimonion*' association with the passive verb '*daimonizomai*'– “to be demonized or under the influence or power of demons.” New Testament translations alternate the use of the phrases 'possessed' and 'vexed'.

Prince²⁷⁷ criticised the translation of the Greek '*daimonion*' to '*devil*'²⁷⁸. Devil derives from the Greek word '*diabolos*' literally translated to '*slanderer*'. Scripture reserves this as one of the titles for Satan himself.

Most Bible translations differentiate between '*diabolos*' translated to “devil” and “*daimonion*” translated as “demon.”²⁷⁹ Demons are also referred to as: '*Evil spirit*': (Revelation 16:13)²⁸⁰ From '*ponēros*' ***indicting an active, virulent wickedness that expresses itself in doing harm to others.***²⁸¹

Demons are spiritual entities, also referred to as fallen angels and evil spirits.

²⁷⁶ Prince, Derek (1970) *Expelling Demons*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 4

²⁷⁷ Prince, Derek (1970) *Expelling Demons*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 5

²⁷⁸ Mark 1:34 (NKJV) Then He healed many who were sick with various diseases, and cast out many demons; and He did not allow the demons to speak, because they knew Him.

Mark 16:17 (NKJV) And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues;

Luke 9:1 (NKJV) Then He called His twelve disciples together and gave them power and authority over all demons, and to cure diseases.

Luke 10:17 (NKJV) Then the seventy returned with joy, saying, “Lord, even the demons are subject to us in Your name.”

James 2:19 (NKJV) You believe that there is one God. You do well. Even the demons believe—and tremble!

1 Corinthians 10:20-21 (NKJV) Rather, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice they sacrifice to demons and not to God, and I do not want you to have fellowship with demons. You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons; you cannot partake of the Lord's table and of the table of demons.

Matthew 9:33-34 (NKJV) And when the demon was cast out, the mute spoke. And the multitudes marvelled, saying, “It was never seen like this in Israel!” But the Pharisees said, “He casts out demons by the ruler of the demons.”

²⁷⁹ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 18

²⁸⁰ Revelation 16:13 (NKJV) And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs *coming* out of the mouth of the dragon, out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet.

²⁸¹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 248

Spirit deriving from the Greek 'Pneuma'²⁸² translated as 'spirit' is used 385 times referring to the Holy Spirit, human spirit and evil spirits. Dr. Murphy²⁸³ described demons as ***“invisible, evil, supernatural, created cosmic beings are fallen angelic creatures.”***

3.5.2 The Origin of Demons

Discussed in Chapter One.

3.5.3 Demonic Association with Pagan Worship

They shall no longer sacrifice their sacrifices to the goat demons with which they play the harlot. This shall be a permanent statute to them throughout their generations.”

Leviticus 17:7 (NASB)

The English translations of the Old Testament Hebrew applied 'demon' four times. All of these translations associate demons with pagan worship.

- Moses wrote a song to instruct Israel pertaining to their relationship with God who presented His Law after He redeemed them from Egypt. He described how Israel abandoned God and sacrificed to demons and unfamiliar gods. (Deuteronomy 32:17)²⁸⁴
- Jerobeam 1 established a counterfeit religion and worship centres with statues of bull calves upon which an invisible deity was imagined. (2 Chronicles 11:15)²⁸⁵

²⁸² Strong's Concordance - #G4151 (πνεῦμα) pneuma, pnyoo'-maj. A current of air, that is, breath (blast) or a breeze, by analogy or figuratively a spirit that is, (human the rational soul, (by implication) Vital principle, mental disposition, etc. or (superhuman) an angel, daemon, or (divine) God, Christ's spirit, the Holy Spirit: -ghost, life, spirit, (-ual, -ually), mind. Available at: E-sword

²⁸³ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 21

²⁸⁴ Deuteronomy 32:17 (NKJV) They sacrificed to demons, not to God, *To gods* they did not know, *To new gods*, new arrivals That your fathers did not fear.

²⁸⁵ 2 Chronicles 11:15 (NKJV) Then he appointed for himself priests for the high places, for the demons, and the calf idols which he had made.

- Jerobeam 1 also appointed priests to perform duties in service of the calf idols. These passages associate demons with false worship practices.
- Psalm 106 depicts Israel's failure to destroy the Canaanites and the consequential sacrifices of their sons and daughters to the demons.

Demon powers attach and concentrate under, behind or on top of statues and images. They lurk there to influence man and nature. Leviticus 17:7²⁸⁶ also elaborates on spiritual beings worshipped as pagan gods and goddesses.

Richards²⁸⁷ elaborated on other Hebrew Old Testament references to demons:

- **'Shedhim'** meaning 'rulers' or 'lords'. Idols represented as visible symbols of demons. (Psalm 106:37²⁸⁸ Deuteronomy 32:17²⁸⁹)
- **Sa'ir** meaning goat is also associated with hostile supernatural beings in Greek mythology. (Leviticus 17:7)²⁹⁰
- **'Elilim'** recognises pagan gods. (Psalm 96:5)²⁹¹
- **Gad** and **Mini** refer to two Babylonian demon gods of 'Fortune' and 'Destiny'. (Isaiah 65:11)²⁹²
- **Qeter** refer to the demon-god 'Destruction'. (Psalm 91:6)²⁹³

The author also explored the following Hebrew (Old Testament) references.

- **Shéd/Shade**²⁹⁴, a demon unto which human sacrifices were offered. The custom was especially found among Canaanites and Phoenicians. (Psalm

²⁸⁶ Leviticus 17:7 (NKJV) They shall no more offer their sacrifices to demons, after whom they have played the harlot. This shall be a statute forever for them throughout their generations."

²⁸⁷ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 95

²⁸⁸ Psalm 106:37 (KJV) Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters unto devils,

²⁸⁹ Deuteronomy 32:17 (AMP) "They sacrificed to demons, not to God, To gods whom they have not known, New gods who came lately, Whom your fathers never feared

²⁹⁰ Leviticus 17:7 (AMP) So they shall no longer offer their sacrifices to goat-idols or demons or field spirits with which they have played the prostitute. This shall be a permanent statute for them throughout their generations."

²⁹¹ Psalm 96:5 (AMP) For all the gods of the peoples are [worthless, lifeless] idols, But the Lord made the heavens.

²⁹² Isaiah 65:11 (AMP) "But you who abandon (turn away from) the Lord, Who forget and ignore My holy mountain (Zion), Who set a table for Gad [the Babylonian god of fortune], And who fill a jug of mixed wine for Meni [the god of fate],

²⁹³ Psalm 91:6 (KJV) Nor for the pestilence that walketh in darkness; nor for the destruction that wasteth at noonday.

²⁹⁴ Strong's Concordance: #H7700 (שֵׁד) shéd shade. a *daemon* (as *malignant*): - devil

106:37)²⁹⁵

- **Seirim**²⁹⁶ referred to hairy or hairy ones. Male goats resembled objects of divine honour, especially for the Egyptians who worshipped Mendes. Herodotus, the 5th century B.C. Greek historian known as the ‘Father of History’ believed all goats were worshipped in Egypt, but in particular male-goats. (Leviticus 17:7)²⁹⁷ ‘gone a whoring’ is equivalent to idolatry, but also literal refers to the public prostitution associated with Baalpeor and Astaroth worship among the Egyptians, Moabites, Canaanites, Greeks and Romans.

3.5.4 Nature of Demons

- a) Demons are spiritual entities created by God.
- b) Demons are spiritual entities and invincible. They manifest through the indwelling of human beings (Matthew 8:16²⁹⁸, Luke 10:17²⁹⁹, Matthew 17:18³⁰⁰, Luke 9:38-42³⁰¹) and animals. (Matthew 8:28-34³⁰², Acts

²⁹⁵ Psalm 106:37 (NKJV) They even sacrificed their sons and their daughters to demons

²⁹⁶ Strong’s Concordance #H8163 (שַׂעִיר שָׂעִיר) *śâ’îyr śâ’ir*, *saw-eer*, *saw-eer*. From H8175; *shaggy*; as noun, a *he goat*; by analogy a *faun*: - devil, goat, hairy, kid, rough, satyr.

²⁹⁷ Leviticus 17:7 (NKJV) And they shall no more offer their sacrifices unto devils, after whom they have gone a whoring. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations.

²⁹⁸ Matthews 8:16 (NIV) When evening came, many who were demon-possessed were brought to him, and he drove out the spirits with a word and healed all the sick.

²⁹⁹ Luke 10:17 (NKJV) Then the seventy returned with joy, saying, “Lord, even the demons are subject to us in Your name.”

³⁰⁰ Matthew 17:18 (NKJV) And Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of him; and the child was cured from that very hour.

³⁰¹ Luke 9:38-42 (NKJV) Suddenly a man from the multitude cried out, saying, “Teacher, I implore You, look on my son, for he is my only child. And behold, a spirit seizes him, and he suddenly cries out; it convulses him so that he foams *at the mouth*; and it departs from him with great difficulty, bruising him. So I implored Your disciples to cast it out, but they could not.” Then Jesus answered and said, “O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you and bear with you? Bring your son here.” And as he was still coming, the demon threw him down and convulsed *him*. Then Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, healed the child, and gave him back to his father.

³⁰² Matthew 8:28-34 (NKJV) When He had come to the other side, to the country of the Gergesenes, there met Him two demon-possessed *men*, coming out of the tombs, exceedingly fierce, so that no one could pass that way. And suddenly they cried out, saying, “What have we to do with You, Jesus, You Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?” Now a good way off from them there was a herd of many swine feeding. So the demons begged Him, saying, “If You cast us out, permit us to go away into the herd of swine.” And He said to them, “Go”. So when they had come out, they went into the herd of swine.

- 16:16³⁰³).
- c) Some demons have a prominent foul smell.
 - d) As a result of their choice to join in Satan's revolt against God, they remained his servants and slaves. (Matthew 12:22-30)³⁰⁴
 - e) Demons are consistent in their devotion and obedience to Satan. From their allegiance to Satan flows and unilateral opposition to God, an inherent hate for Christians and loathing of Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.
 - f) The confession "we are legion" indicates that they are great in numbers. If the consideration is accepted that demons are the fallen angels, the conclusion would be that demons count to one third of the original angels. Two thirds would then be in service of God. (Luke 8:30)³⁰⁵
 - g) Equal to archangels being the senior authority over angels, demons submit to senior demonic power of principalities and powers.
 - h) Scripture describes them as unclean (Matthew 10:1)³⁰⁶, wicked (Ephesians 6:12)³⁰⁷, evil (Luke 7:21)³⁰⁸, ghastly and abhorrent (Revelation

And suddenly the whole herd of swine ran violently down the steep place into the sea, and perished in the water. Then those who kept *them* fled; and they went away into the city and told everything, including what *had happened* to the demon-possessed *men*. And behold, the whole city came out to meet Jesus. And when they saw Him, they begged *Him* to depart from their region.

³⁰³ Acts 16:16 (NKJV) Now it happened, as we went to prayer, that a certain slave girl possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much profit by fortune-telling.

³⁰⁴ Matthew 12:22-30 (NKJV) Then one was brought to Him who was demon-possessed, blind and mute; and He healed him, so that the blind and mute man both spoke and saw. And all the multitudes were amazed and said, "Could this be the Son of David?" Now when the Pharisees heard *it* they said, "This *fellow* does not cast out demons except by Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons." Jesus knew their thoughts, and said to them: "Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand. If Satan casts out Satan, he is divided against himself. How then will his kingdom stand? And if I cast out demons by Beelzebub, by whom do your sons cast *them* out? Therefore they shall be your judges. But if I cast out demons by the Spirit of God, surely the kingdom of God has come upon you. Or how can one enter a strong man's house and plunder his goods, unless he first binds the strong man? And then he will plunder his house. He who is not with Me is against Me, and he who does not gather with Me scatters abroad.

³⁰⁵ Luke 8:30 (NKJV) Jesus asked him, saying, "What is your name?" And he said, "Legion," because many demons had entered him.

³⁰⁶ Matthew 10:1 (NKJV) And when He had called His twelve disciples to *Him*, He gave them power *over* unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all kinds of sickness and all kinds of disease.

³⁰⁷ Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV) For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual *hosts* of wickedness in the heavenly *places*.

³⁰⁸ Luke 7:21 (NKJV) And that very hour He cured many of infirmities, afflictions, and evil spirits; and to many blind He gave sight.

9:7-9)³⁰⁹ No demon can repent of their wickedness and convert to followers of Christ. They are in a permanent unclean state. There exists no atonement for their sins.³¹⁰

- i) Not the Bible, nor any research available, report on any demon denying the Bible as the inherent Word of God or the deity of Christ.
- j) Some evidence indicates some fallen angels are chained forever in Tartarus whilst others roam the earth. (2 Peter 2:4)³¹¹. The Bible does not indicate the sin of those chained.
- k) Demons orchestrate blood sacrifices for Satan via animal and human sacrifices, vehicle accidents, vampire spirits, people cutting themselves with knives or sharp objects, stolen placentas and even menstrual blood.
- l) Demons (except the mute demons) have the ability to communicate with one another and can speak in an audible voice of the individual possessed. (Matthews 8:31)³¹²
- m) Demons are operative through a wide variety of practices such as cults, heavy metal music, horror movies, witchcraft, voodoo, drug and other addictions, magic, secret societies, trauma, some sicknesses (not all), persistent sin, sexual sin such as pornography, paedophilia, sadomasochism, bestiality, and emotional fortresses of hate, unforgiveness, bitterness, jealousy, lust and/or covetousness.

Dr. Murphy³¹³ also added all four classifications of child abuse: Sexual-, physical-, psychological- and religious abuse. Reactionary emotions sin of anger, bitterness, rage, rejection and rebellion as a result of being the victim of wrongdoing can also lead to demonic manipulation.³¹⁴

³⁰⁹ Revelation 9:7-9 (NKJV) The shape of the locusts was like horses prepared for battle. On their heads were crowns of something like gold, and their faces *were* like the faces of men. They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like lions' *teeth*. And they had breastplates like breastplates of iron, and the sound of their wings *was* like the sound of chariots with many horses running into battle.

³¹⁰ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 47

³¹¹ 2 Peter 2:4 (NKJV) For if God did not spare the angels who sinned, but cast *them* down to hell and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved for judgment;

³¹² Matthew 8:31 (NKJV) So the demons begged Him, saying, "If You cast us out, permit us to go away into the herd of swine."

³¹³ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 439

³¹⁴ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 440

- n) The Bible warns about demonic mind control power. (Colossians 2:8)³¹⁵
- o) Demons are not omniscient. They do recognise Jesus Christ (Mark 1:23-24)³¹⁶. They are also aware of their destiny (Matthew 8:29)³¹⁷.
- p) They qualify in all three elements associated with the concept of personality:
 - They demonstrate knowledge (Mark 1:24)³¹⁸, they possess an independent will (Matthew 12:44)³¹⁹ and they demonstrate emotion (James 2:19)³²⁰. Their decisions and actions are according to their evil nature. (Psalm 8:5)³²¹ (Matthew 8:29—31³²², Luke 4:35³²³, 41³²⁴, James 2:19³²⁵, Mark 1:23³²⁶).
- q) The ability to experience emotion is evident in their fear for divine existence. (James 2:9)³²⁷
- r) They were created with distinct individuality: each demon has a name and

³¹⁵ Colossians 2:8 (KJV) Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.

³¹⁶ Mark 1:23-24 (NKJV) Now there was a man in their synagogue with an unclean spirit. And he cried out, saying, "Let *us* alone! What have we to do with You, Jesus of Nazareth? Did You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!"

³¹⁷ Matthew 8:29 (NKJV) And suddenly they cried out, saying, "What have we to do with You, Jesus, You Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?"

³¹⁸ Mark 1:24 (NKJV) saying, "Let *us* alone! What have we to do with You, Jesus of Nazareth? Did You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!"

³¹⁹ Matthew 12:44 (NKJV) Then he says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' And when he comes, he finds *it* empty, swept, and put in order.

³²⁰ James 2:19 (NKJV) You believe that there is one God. You do well. Even the demons believe—and tremble!

³²¹ Psalm 8:5 (NKJV) For You have made him a little lower than the angels, And You have crowned him with glory and honor.

³²² Matthew 8:29—31 (NKJV) And suddenly they cried out, saying, "What have we to do with You, Jesus, You Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?" Now a good way off from them there was a herd of many swine feeding. So the demons begged Him, saying, "If You cast us out, permit us to go away into the herd of swine."

³²³ Luke 4:35 (NKJV) But Jesus rebuked him, saying, "Be quiet, and come out of him!" And when the demon had thrown him in *their* midst, it came out of him and did not hurt him.

³²⁴ Luke 4:41 (NKJV) And demons also came out of many, crying out and saying, "You are the Christ, the Son of God!" And He, rebuking *them*, did not allow them to speak, for they knew that He was the Christ.

³²⁵ James 2:19 (NKJV) You believe that there is one God. You do well. Even the demons believe—and tremble!

³²⁶ Mark 1:23 (NKJV) Now there was a man in their synagogue with an unclean spirit. And he cried out,

³²⁷ James 2:9 (NKJV) but if you show partiality, you commit sin, and are convicted by the law as transgressors.

groups of demons has team names (Luke 8:30)³²⁸.

- s) Demons are not omnipresent. They only have the ability to be at a single location at any given time though not bound by spatial limitations. They have the ability to travel from one location to the next instantaneously and can escalate and move instantly between different levels of the spiritual realm.

Demons are sometimes restricted to a specific geographical area. The legion of demons begged not be send from the region.

- t) Demons are not omnipotent although they demonstrate extraordinary supernatural power that defies all-natural laws of physics. The following portrays their paranormal abilities:
- i. Healing a wound that inflicts death (Revelation 13:12)³²⁹
 - ii. The demoniac of Gadara' strength superseded strong shackles and chains. (Mark 5:4)³³⁰
 - iii. Creating fire falling from heaven (Revelation 13:13)³³¹
 - iv. Animating a material object to speak with a human voice (Revelation 13:15)³³²
- u) Demons are not bound by physical barriers. A legion of demons was confined in the body of one man. (Luke 8:30)³³³
- v) Demons operate in the air, on the ground and in water.
- w) Demons submit to the name of Jesus Christ, Son of God.

³²⁸ Luke 8:30 (NKJV) Jesus asked him, saying, "What is your name?" And he said, "Legion," because many demons had entered him.

³²⁹ Revelation 13:12 (NKJV) And he exercises all the authority of the first beast in his presence, and causes the earth and those who dwell in it to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.

³³⁰ Mark 5:4 (NKJV) because he had often been bound with shackles and chains. And the chains had been pulled apart by him, and the shackles broken in pieces; neither could anyone tame him.

³³¹ Revelation 13:13 (NKJV) He performs great signs, so that he even makes fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men.

³³² Revelation 13:15 (NKJV) He was granted *power* to give breath to the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak and cause as many as would not worship the image of the beast to be killed.

³³³ Luke 8:30 (KJV) And Jesus asked him, saying, What is thy name? And he said, Legion: because many devils were entered into him.

- x) Sexual demons Incubus³³⁴ and Succubus³³⁵ manifest to have sexual intercourse with humans.³³⁶
- y) Important for this research is the demon's ability to **adapt to cultural environment of a place or an age**.³³⁷ Demonic manifestations in developed and educated communities are more disguised and varies from their manifestations in more modest communities and cultures.
- z) Demons have the ability to appear as 'ministers of righteousness'. (2 Corinthians 11:15)³³⁸ encouraging self-righteousness.

3.5.5 Symbols Associated with Demons

- Fowls of the air (Matthew 13:4³³⁹, 19³⁴⁰)
- Unclean birds (Revelation 18:1-3)³⁴¹
- Locusts from the bottomless pit (Revelation 9:1-10)³⁴²

³³⁴ Incubus: A male demon having sexual intercourse with human. Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 113; Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 225; Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 154

³³⁵ Succubus: A demon assuming female form for purpose of sexual relations. Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 113

³³⁶ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 18

³³⁷ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 138

³³⁸ 2 Corinthians 11:15 (KJV) Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

³³⁹ Matthew 13:4 (NKJV) And as he sowed, some seed fell by the wayside; and the birds came and devoured them.

³⁴⁰ Matthew 13:19 (NKJV) When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand it, then the wicked one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is he who received seed by the wayside.

³⁴¹ Revelation 18:1-3 (KJV) And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory. And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies.

³⁴² Revelation 9:1-10 (KJV) And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads. And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be

- Unclean frogs (Revelation 16:13-14)³⁴³
- An army of horses and horsemen, with lions' heads and serpents' tails by which they torment mankind. (Revelation 9:16-19)³⁴⁴
- As serpents and vipers (Luke 3:7)³⁴⁵

3.5.6 Purpose of Demons

Demons have a two-fold purpose: To torment and afflict mankind (also referred to as 'obsession, possession and oppression) with the goal to extend the power of Satan. Secondly, to impede God's purpose, re-directing people from God and His truth.³⁴⁶ (Mark 5:2-5³⁴⁷, Acts 13:6-12³⁴⁸).

tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months.

³⁴³ Revelation 16:13-14 (NKJV) And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs *coming* out of the mouth of the dragon, out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. For they are spirits of demons, performing signs, *which* go out to the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.

³⁴⁴ Revelation 9:16-19 (NKJV) Now the number of the army of the horsemen *was* two hundred million; I heard the number of them. And thus I saw the horses in the vision: those who sat on them had breastplates of fiery red, hyacinth blue, and sulfur yellow; and the heads of the horses *were* like the heads of lions; and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and brimstone. By these three *plagues* a third of mankind was killed—by the fire and the smoke and the brimstone which came out of their mouths. For their power is in their mouth and in their tails; for their tails *are* like serpents, having heads; and with them they do harm.

³⁴⁵ Luke 3:7 (NKJV) Then he said to the multitudes that came out to be baptized by him, “Brood of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?”

³⁴⁶ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers P. xix P. 2006

³⁴⁷ Mark 5:2-5 (NKJV) And when He had come out of the boat, immediately there met Him out of the tombs a man with an unclean spirit, who had *his* dwelling among the tombs; and no one could bind him, not even with chains, because he had often been bound with shackles and chains. And the chains had been pulled apart by him, and the shackles broken in pieces; neither could anyone tame him. And always, night and day, he was in the mountains and in the tombs, crying out and cutting himself with stones.

³⁴⁸ Acts 13:6-12 (NKJV) Now when they had gone through the island to Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew whose name *was* Bar-Jesus, who was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, an intelligent man. This man called for Barnabas and Saul and sought to hear the word of God. But Elymas the sorcerer (for so his name is translated) withstood them, seeking to turn the proconsul away from the faith. Then Saul, who also *is called* Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently at him and said, “O

This include the prohibition of individuals to accept the gospel of Christ as well the prohibition of matured fellowship with- and knowledge of Christ.

The moral nature of demons compels them to ceaselessly oppose God's kingdom and fight against His redeemed servants. Demons incite sin in the hearts of the morally weak.³⁴⁹

The thesis states it boldly that not every sin is demonic inspired or instigated. Sin most often originates from man's sinful character and ability to make independent immoral choices. A difference exists between works of flesh (for example to lie, steal, murder, rage, lust, envy, jealousy etc.) versus demonized bitterness, jealousy, selfishness, ambition, arrogance, lying, cursing etc. The listed manifestations of sin of the flesh can also be motivated by demonic influences. It is thus difficult to discern whether non-God like characteristics are a result of the individual's sinful nature vs. demonic inspiration.

3.5.7 Types of Demons³⁵⁰

- Antichrist Spirits – imitates Christ, utters blasphemy, supresses ministry, bringing division in gatherings (1 John 4:3)³⁵¹
- Blind and Dumb Spirits (Matthew 12:22)³⁵²
- Deceiving/Seducing spirits (1 Timothy 4:1)³⁵³

full of all deceit and all fraud, *you* son of the devil, *you* enemy of all righteousness, will you not cease perverting the straight ways of the Lord? And now, indeed, the hand of the Lord *is* upon you, and you shall be blind, not seeing the sun for a time.” And immediately a dark mist fell on him, and he went around seeking someone to lead him by the hand. Then the proconsul believed, when he saw what had been done, being astonished at the teaching of the Lord.

³⁴⁹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. PP. 47-48

³⁵⁰ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 20

³⁵¹ 1 John 4:3 (NKJV) and every spirit that does not confess that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is not of God. And this is the *spirit* of the Antichrist, which you have heard was coming, and is now already in the world.

³⁵² Matthew 12:22 (NKJV) Then one was brought to Him who was demon-possessed, blind and mute; and He healed him, so that the blind and mute man both spoke and saw.

³⁵³ 1 Timothy 4:1 (NKJV) Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons,

- Devils, evil spirits, or servants of the Devil. (Leviticus 17; Deuteronomy 32:17³⁵⁴; Mark 1:34³⁵⁵; 16:17³⁵⁶)
- Deaf and Dumb Spirits - dumbness, madness, epilepsy, seizures (Mark 9:25)³⁵⁷
- Dumb Spirits (Luke 11:14³⁵⁸; Mark 9:17³⁵⁹; Matthew 9:32-34³⁶⁰)
- Evil spirits mentioned eight times (Luke 7:21³⁶¹, Judges 9:23³⁶²; 1 Samuel 16:14³⁶³, 23³⁶⁴)
- Familiar Spirit mentioned six times. Also referred to as diviner, enchanter (magician), witch or wizard, clairvoyant (1 Samuel 28:7-8)³⁶⁵
- Foul spirits (Mark 9:25³⁶⁶, Revelation 18:2³⁶⁷)

³⁵⁴ Deuteronomy 32:17 (NKJV) They sacrificed to demons, not to God, *To gods* they did not know, *To new gods*, new arrivals That your fathers did not fear.

³⁵⁵ Mark 1:34 (NKJV) Then He healed many who were sick with various diseases, and cast out many demons; and He did not allow the demons to speak, because they knew Him.

³⁵⁶ Mark 16:17 (NKJV) And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues;

³⁵⁷ Mark 9:25 (NKJV) When Jesus saw that the people came running together, He rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, "Deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him and enter him no more!"

³⁵⁸ Luke 11:14 (NKJV) And He was casting out a demon, and it was mute. So it was, when the demon had gone out, that the mute spoke; and the multitudes marvelled.

³⁵⁹ Mark 9:17 (NKJV) Then one of the crowd answered and said, "Teacher, I brought You my son, who has a mute spirit.

³⁶⁰ Matthew 9:32-34 (NKJV) As they went out, behold, they brought to Him a man, mute and demon-possessed. And when the demon was cast out, the mute spoke. And the multitudes marvelled, saying, "It was never seen like this in Israel!" But the Pharisees said, "He casts out demons by the ruler of the demons."

³⁶¹ Luke 7:21 (NKJV) And that very hour He cured many of infirmities, afflictions, and evil spirits; and to many blind He gave sight.

³⁶² Judges 9:23 (NKJV) God sent a spirit of ill will between Abimelech and the men of Shechem; and the men of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech,

³⁶³ 1 Samuel 16:14 (NKJV) But the Spirit of the LORD departed from Saul, and a distressing spirit from the LORD troubled him.

³⁶⁴ 1 Samuel 16:23 (NKJV) And so it was, whenever the spirit from God was upon Saul, that David would take a harp and play *it* with his hand. Then Saul would become refreshed and well, and the distressing spirit would depart from him.

³⁶⁵ 1 Samuel 28:7-8 (NKJV) Then Saul said to his servants, "Find me a woman who is a medium, that I may go to her and inquire of her." And his servants said to him, "In fact, *there is* a woman who is a medium at En Dor. So Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes, and he went, and two men with him; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, "Please conduct a séance for me, and bring up for me the one I shall name to you."

³⁶⁶ Mark 9:25 (NKJV) When Jesus saw that the people came running together, He rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, "Deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him and enter him no more!"

³⁶⁷ Revelation 18:2 (NKJV) And he cried mightily with a loud voice, saying, "Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and has become a dwelling place of demons, a prison for every foul spirit, and a cage for every unclean and hated bird!"

- Lunatic Spirits - Epileptic and suicidal spirits (Matthew 17:15-18³⁶⁸; Mark 9:14-29³⁶⁹)
- Lying spirits mentioned six times. Also referred to as, Medium, lies, flattery, profanity, insinuations, exaggeration. (1 Kings 22:22-23³⁷⁰; 2 Thessalonians 2:9-12³⁷¹)
- Perverse Spirit – lust, error, fool, pervert the Gospel, snare, hate, despised. (Isaiah 19:14)³⁷²
- Seducing Spirits - Religious spirits which bring false doctrines, doctrines of devils, idol worship, witchcraft, and divination.
They sear the conscience, entice, allure, attract, tempt. (2 Timothy 4:1)³⁷³

³⁶⁸ Matthew 17:15-18 (NKJV) “Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is an epileptic and suffers severely; for he often falls into the fire and often into the water. So I brought him to Your disciples, but they could not cure him.” Then Jesus answered and said, “O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? How long shall I bear with you? Bring him here to Me.” And Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of him; and the child was cured from that very hour.

³⁶⁹ Mark 9:14-29 (NKJV) And when He came to the disciples, He saw a great multitude around them, and scribes disputing with them. Immediately, when they saw Him, all the people were greatly amazed, and running to Him, greeted Him. And He asked the scribes, “What are you discussing with them?” Then one of the crowd answered and said, “Teacher, I brought You my son, who has a mute spirit. And wherever it seizes him, it throws him down; he foams at the mouth, gnashes his teeth, and becomes rigid. So I spoke to Your disciples, that they should cast it out, but they could not.” He answered him and said, “O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? How long shall I bear with you? Bring him to Me.” Then they brought him to Him. And when he saw Him, immediately the spirit convulsed him, and he fell on the ground and wallowed, foaming at the mouth. So He asked his father, “How long has this been happening to him?” And he said, “From childhood. And often he has thrown him both into the fire and into the water to destroy him. But if You can do anything, have compassion on us and help us.” Jesus said to him, “If you can believe, all things are possible to him who believes.” Immediately the father of the child cried out and said with tears, “Lord, I believe; help my unbelief!” When Jesus saw that the people came running together, He rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, “Deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him and enter him no more!” Then the spirit cried out, convulsed him greatly, and came out of him. And he became as one dead, so that many said, “He is dead.” But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and he arose. And when He had come into the house, His disciples asked Him privately, “Why could we not cast it out?” So He said to them, “This kind can come out by nothing but prayer and fasting.”

³⁷⁰ 1 Kings 22:22-23 (NKJV) The LORD said to him, ‘In what way?’ So he said, ‘I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.’ And the LORD said, ‘You shall persuade him, and also prevail. Go out and do so.’ Therefore look! The LORD has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours, and the LORD has declared disaster against you.”

³⁷¹ 2 Thessalonians 2:9-12 (NKJV) The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders, and with all unrighteous deception among those who perish, because they did not receive the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this reason God will send them strong delusion, that they should believe the lie, that they all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

³⁷² Isaiah 19:14 (NKJV) The LORD has mingled a perverse spirit in her midst; And they have caused Egypt to err in all her work, As a drunken man staggers in his vomit.

³⁷³ 2 Timothy 4:1 (NKJV) I charge you therefore before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, who will judge the living and the dead at His appearing and His kingdom:

- Spirit of Bondage to oppress and bruise.
- Spirit of Divination - Spirit of Python, or fortune telling enchanter, hypnotist. (Acts 16:16³⁷⁴; Acts 8:9³⁷⁵)
- Spirit of Error (1 John 4:6)³⁷⁶
- Spirit of Fear - fear, fright, torment, horror, dread, faithless, terror. (2 Timothy 1:7)³⁷⁷
- Spirit of Infirmity: colds, sinus, fungus, asthma, viral infections, arthritis. (Luke 13:11)³⁷⁸
- Spirit of Whoredom: love of the body, love of the world, love of money, idolatry. (Hosea 4:12)³⁷⁹
- Spirit of the World (1 Corinthians 2:12)³⁸⁰Unclean spirit is mentioned twenty-two times in Scripture. (Matthew 10:1³⁸¹; 12:43³⁸²; Mark 1:23-27³⁸³; Acts 8:7³⁸⁴; Zechariah 13:2³⁸⁵; Revelation 16:13)³⁸⁶. 'Unclean spirit' depicting a

³⁷⁴ Acts 16:16 (NKJV) Now it happened, as we went to prayer, that a certain slave girl possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much profit by fortune-telling.

³⁷⁵ Acts 8:9 (NKJV) But there was a certain man called Simon, who previously practiced sorcery in the city and astonished the people of Samaria, claiming that he was someone great,

³⁷⁶ 1 John 4:6 (NKJV) We are of God. He who knows God hears us; he who is not of God does not hear us. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error.

³⁷⁷ 2 Timothy 1:7 (NKJV) For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and of love and of a sound mind.

³⁷⁸ Luke 13:11 (NKJV) And behold, there was a woman who had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bent over and could in no way raise *herself* up.

³⁷⁹ Hosea 4:12 (NKJV) My people ask counsel from their wooden *idols*, And their staff informs them. For the spirit of harlotry has caused *them* to stray, And they have played the harlot against their God.

³⁸⁰ 1 Corinthians 2:12 (NKJV) Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from God, that we might know the things that have been freely given to us by God.

³⁸¹ Matthew 10:1 (NKJV) And when He had called His twelve disciples to *Him*, He gave them power *over* unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all kinds of sickness and all kinds of disease.

³⁸² Matthew 12:43 (NKJV) "When an unclean spirit goes out of a man, he goes through dry places, seeking rest, and finds none.

³⁸³ Mark 1:23-27 (NKJV) Now there was a man in their synagogue with an unclean spirit. And he cried out, saying, "Let *us* alone! What have we to do with You, Jesus of Nazareth? Did You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!" But Jesus rebuked him, saying, "Be quiet, and come out of him!" And when the unclean spirit had convulsed him and cried out with a loud voice, he came out of him. Then they were all amazed, so that they questioned among themselves, saying, "What is this? What new doctrine *is* this? For with authority He commands even the unclean spirits, and they obey Him."

³⁸⁴ Acts 8:7 (NKJV) For unclean spirits, crying with a loud voice, came out of many who were possessed; and many who were paralyzed, and lame were healed.

³⁸⁵ Zechariah 13:2 (NKJV) "It shall be in that day," says the LORD of hosts, "*that* I will cut off the names of the idols from the land, and they shall no longer be remembered. I will also cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to depart from the land.

³⁸⁶ Revelation 16:13 (ESV) And I saw, coming out of the mouth of the dragon and out of the mouth of the beast and out of the mouth of the false prophet, three unclean spirits like frogs.

moral connotation is also used interchangeably in New Testament translations. (Revelation 16:13)³⁸⁷

- Demons adapt the name associated with a purpose e.g. pride, disobedience, hatred³⁸⁸. Prince³⁸⁹ confirmed names demons had confessed to him, illustrating their nature and purpose: Fear, Hatred, Lies, Doubt, Envy, Jealousy, Confusion, Perversity, Schizophrenia, Death, Suicide, Adultery, Mockery, Blasphemy and Witchcraft.
- Sexual demons (incubus and succubai)³⁹⁰
- Religious Demons equal to pagan gods. Richards³⁹¹ mentioned that demons congregate under statues and images.
- 'Spiritual hosts of wickedness' (Ephesians 6:12)³⁹² who inspire false teachings and doctrines. (1 Timothy 4)³⁹³
- Twisters and turners distort communication between individuals (marriage, family, business, etc) and the discourse of the gospel. The content and

³⁸⁷ Revelation 16:13 (NKJV) And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs *coming* out of the mouth of the dragon, out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet.

³⁸⁸ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. PP. 310-313

³⁸⁹ Prince, Derek (1970) *Expelling Demons*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 15, Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 158

³⁹⁰ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 225

³⁹¹ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 95

³⁹² Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV) For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual *hosts* of wickedness in the heavenly *places*.

³⁹³ 1 Timothy 4 (NKJV) Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons, speaking lies in hypocrisy, having their own conscience seared with a hot iron, forbidding to marry, *and commanding* to abstain from foods which God created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the truth. For every creature of God *is* good, and nothing is to be refused if it is received with thanksgiving; for it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer. If you instruct the brethren in these things, you will be a good minister of Jesus Christ, nourished in the words of faith and of the good doctrine which you have carefully followed. But reject profane and old wives' fables, and exercise yourself toward godliness. For bodily exercise profits a little, but godliness is profitable for all things, having promise of the life that now is and of that which is to come. This *is* a faithful saying and worthy of all acceptance. For to this *end* we both labor and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who *is* the Savior of all men, especially of those who believe. These things command and teach. Let no one despise your youth, but be an example to the believers in word, in conduct, in love, in spirit, in faith, in purity. Till I come, give attention to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine. Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you by prophecy with the laying on of the hands of the eldership. Meditate on these things; give yourself entirely to them, that your progress may be evident to all. Take heed to yourself and to the doctrine. Continue in them, for in doing this you will save both yourself and those who hear you.

intention of the message are corrupted between the sender and receiver resulting in two messages; one sent (the intended message), and another received. The true content is corrupted.

- Gatekeepers. See discussion under 'Territorial'.
- Blocker: Larson³⁹⁴ described 'blocker demons' as a category of evil spirits whose sole purpose is to hinder the progress of exorcism. They cause the individual to be mute to cancel any response to inquiries or prayers against the demons. Other blockers will make the victim temporarily, blind or paralysed, which creates a terrifying experience.³⁹⁵
- Legal right: Larson³⁹⁶ argued that the cross of Christ cancelled all legal rights demons had on a Christian's spirit. In some cases, demons argue that their resistance is legitimate. Their case is more moral than legal.

3.5.7.1 Deliverance

And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues;

Mark 16:17 (NKJV)

In this scripture, Mark quoted Jesus's statement in which He prioritise exorcism³⁹⁷ before the baptism in the Holy Spirit.

This highlighted the theological question of demonic influences on Christians: Is it possible for Christians to be possessed, oppressed, obsessed, demonised or targeted by demon attacks? If not, how does Satan and his demonic forces go about influencing Christians?

Dr. Ed Murphy states: ***"The possible demonization of true Christians is the***

³⁹⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 322

³⁹⁵ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 322

³⁹⁶ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 329

³⁹⁷ Exorcism: Commanding, in the name of Jesus, a demon to come out of an individual, a house, or wherever the demon happens to be. Exorcism is accomplished by the Spoken word in the name of Jesus, through the power of the Holy Spirit. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. xix P. 2006

single most controversial area of spiritual warfare today.³⁹⁸ Can a person have a demon and not know it? According to Bob Larson:³⁹⁹ **“The answer is yes.”** In addition to the debate of internal demonic influences (oppression, possession, demonization) the author also presents the reality of demonic influences on individuals from an external origin – projected by other individuals and a third avenue of influence through the phenomena of bloodline and family curses.

The understanding of the composition of man, a tripartite being (spirit, soul, and physical body) is fundamental in the comprehension of the phenomena of demonic influences and manipulation. A person could be demonised before their conversion to Christ. The moment a person is born into the kingdom of God by faith in Christ, his spirit is automatically reborn (renewed) to belong to God. (Ephesians 2:8-9)⁴⁰⁰.

From this moment it is impossible for Satan and his demonic entourage to infiltrate man’s spirit. The other two faculties of mind and body are not reborn, and Satan continues with his torment in these areas.

Believers might be demonised after their conversion to Christ due to sin committed by themselves or sin committed against them.⁴⁰¹ “Gatekeeper”⁴⁰² demons provide and control continual demonic access to an individual’s mind and body. Larson⁴⁰³ describes the process of demonic power as follows: The smallest account of disobedience to the Word of God (described as sin in Larson’s depiction) results in a demon entering an individual’s life claiming to have a legal right to occupy space due to the sin committed. **“When a demon enters, he immediately embarks on a plan for further demonic invasion.”**

³⁹⁸ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 429

³⁹⁹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 49

⁴⁰⁰ Ephesians 2:8-9 (NKJV) For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

⁴⁰¹ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 433

⁴⁰² Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 374

⁴⁰³ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 318

Gatekeepers manage the process of tempting the person to commit more sin leading to more demons entering claiming legal right to occupy space. An infrastructure of evil replaces moral consciousness. Four areas of sin, whether by natural inherent sin or afflictions by demons are:

- Illicit sexual fantasies and practices;
- Deep-seated anger, bitterness, hatred, rage, rebellion;
- Rejection, guilt, poor self-esteem, unworthiness and shame;
- Participation in the occult.

Vital in evaluating and debating demonic power is defining the following:

- Differentiation between demonic possession, demonic oppression and demonic obsession;
- Demonization before and after conversion to Christ;
- Warning to Christians to safeguard their lives and not to surrender any area of their lives;
- The area of demonization in reference to body, soul and spirit.

Oppress is translated from the Greek word “katadunasteuo”,⁴⁰⁴ meaning “to exercise dominion against, oppress, and overburden in body and mind”⁴⁰⁵ It implies influence through sinful thoughts that encourage carnal sin effecting mind and emotion.⁴⁰⁶

Attempted demonic influences are projected from outside the person – “**the demon has not entered the victim and cannot manifest through the victim’s neurosensory system.**”⁴⁰⁷ **Possess** is translated from the Greek word “daimonizomai”⁴⁰⁸ meaning to be exercised by a demon. It denotes both the occupancy and ownership the demon took of the individual.

⁴⁰⁴ Strong's Concordance - 2669. Kataponeó. Available at: <http://biblehub.com/greek/2669.htm>

⁴⁰⁵ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 111

⁴⁰⁶ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 226

⁴⁰⁷ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 328

⁴⁰⁸ Strong's Concordance -1139. Daimonizomai. Available at: <http://biblehub.com/greek/1139.htm>

The indwelling demonic control. The term does not appear in the original Greek text. Scholars claim the King James rendition added the concept to differentiate degrees of demonic control. **Possession** imply demon-controlled and as such the demonic spirit has the power to control the individual's faculties at will. Possession can also be described as 'demonised'. Some symptoms of possession include lunacy, palsy, dumbness, blindness, and fortune telling. Demons detest being disembodied spirits and therefor seek to possess human or even animal bodies. (Matthew 4:24⁴⁰⁹, Matthew 9:32-33⁴¹⁰, Mark 1:32⁴¹¹, Acts 8:7⁴¹², Acts 16:6⁴¹³).

The author agrees with Dr. Murphy⁴¹⁴ and Bob Larson⁴¹⁵ that true believers in Christ cannot be demon *possessed* after their spirits were reborn and regenerated to host the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit. They can however be demonized. **Obsession** involves the continues attack in specific areas. Obsession describes lesser powerful demonic influence compared to possession and oppression, but more than mere temptations.

Derick Prince⁴¹⁶ casted a warning that, regardless intricate theological debates, the original Greek text make no distinction between the English translations of possession, oppression, or obsession by demons.

It is also imperative to take note that numerous demons exist, but only one

⁴⁰⁹ Matthew 4:24 (NKJV) Then His fame went throughout all Syria; and they brought to Him all sick people who were afflicted with various diseases and torments, and those who were demon-possessed, epileptics, and paralytics; and He healed them.

⁴¹⁰ Matthew 9:32-33 (NKJV) As they went out, behold, they brought to Him a man, mute and demon-possessed. And when the demon was cast out, the mute spoke. And the multitudes marvelled, saying, "It was never seen like this in Israel!"

⁴¹¹ Mark 1:32 (NKJV) At evening, when the sun had set, they brought to Him all who were sick and those who were demon-possessed.

⁴¹² Acts 8:7 (NKJV) For unclean spirits, crying with a loud voice, came out of many who were possessed; and many who were paralyzed and lame were healed.

⁴¹³ Acts 16:6 (NKJV) Now when they had gone through Phrygia and the region of Galatia, they were forbidden by the Holy Spirit to preach the word in Asia.

⁴¹⁴ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 430

⁴¹⁵ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 328

⁴¹⁶ Prince, Derek (1970) *Expelling Demons*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 4

(singular) Satan, although they share the same destructive character.

Demonic attacks on human fall in a variety of categories. Strategies are planned for every individual.

Spiritual insight and discernment, conscientious care and professional medical advice is imperative in discerning the root cause and/or demonic influences. Broadly, the following categories of demonic influences were identified:

Physical Health includes illnesses and addictions. Larson⁴¹⁷ confirmed that every “disease isn’t a demon, but every disease may be exploited or imitated by a demon.” Biblical examples are muteness (Matthew 9:32-33)⁴¹⁸ blindness (Matthew 12:11)⁴¹⁹ deformities (Luke 13:11-17)⁴²⁰ and severe seizures (Luke 9:39)⁴²¹ (Matthew 12:11)⁴²² deformities (Luke 13:11-17)⁴²³ and severe seizures

⁴¹⁷ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 429

⁴¹⁸ Matthew 9:32-33 (NKJV) As they went out, behold, they brought to Him a man, mute and demon-possessed. And when the demon was cast out, the mute spoke. And the multitudes marvelled, saying, “It was never seen like this in Israel!”

⁴¹⁹ Matthew 12:11 (NKJV) Then He said to them, “What man is there among you who has one sheep, and if it falls into a pit on the Sabbath, will not lay hold of it and lift *it* out?”

⁴²⁰ Luke 13:11-17 (NKJV) And behold, there was a woman who had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bent over and could in no way raise *herself* up. But when Jesus saw her, He called *her* to *Him* and said to her, “Woman, you are loosed from your infirmity.” And He laid *His* hands on her, and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God. But the ruler of the synagogue answered with indignation, because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath; and he said to the crowd, “There are six days on which men ought to work; therefore come and be healed on them, and not on the Sabbath day.” The Lord then answered him and said, “Hypocrite! Does not each one of you on the Sabbath loose his ox or donkey from the stall, and lead *it* away to water it? So ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan has bound—think of it—for eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath?” And when He said these things, all His adversaries were put to shame; and all the multitude rejoiced for all the glorious things that were done by Him.

⁴²¹ Luke 9:39 (NKJV) And behold, a spirit seizes him, and he suddenly cries out; it convulses him so that he foams *at the mouth*; and it departs from him with great difficulty, bruising him.

⁴²² Matthew 12:11 (NKJV) Then He said to them, “What man is there among you who has one sheep, and if it falls into a pit on the Sabbath, will not lay hold of it and lift *it* out?”

⁴²³ Luke 13:11-17 (NKJV) And behold, there was a woman who had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bent over and could in no way raise *herself* up. But when Jesus saw her, He called *her* to *Him* and said to her, “Woman, you are loosed from your infirmity.” And He laid *His* hands on her, and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God. But the ruler of the synagogue answered with indignation, because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath; and he said to the crowd, “There are six days on which men ought to work; therefore come and be healed on them, and not on the Sabbath day.” The Lord then answered him and said, “Hypocrite! Does not each one of you on the Sabbath loose his ox or donkey from the stall, and lead *it* away to water it? So ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan has bound—think of it—for eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath?” And when He said these things,

(Luke 9:39)⁴²⁴

And he was casting out a devil, and it was dumb. And it came to pass, when the devil was gone out, the dumb spake; and the people wondered.

Luke 11:14 (NKJV)

Strategic action includes:

- Binding people: Luke 13:16⁴²⁵ recalls a woman bound by arthritis. The Greek translation⁴²⁶ “deo” means “to tie up, confine, and fasten by binding cords around you;
- Tormenting people through sickness is compared with the sting of a locust;(Revelation 9:11);⁴²⁷
- Vexing people is usually painful suffering; Luke 6:18⁴²⁸, Acts 5:6;⁴²⁹
- Spirit of sleep creating tiredness; (Isaiah 29:10);⁴³⁰
- Sexual perversion, homosexuality and masturbation;
- Satan might impart supernatural strength; (Luke 8:29)⁴³¹ and
- Addictions have no limitations. **Almost everything that is both compulsive and enslaving is an addiction, and there is not limits to the forms that addiction may take.**⁴³²

all His adversaries were put to shame; and all the multitude rejoiced for all the glorious things that were done by Him.

⁴²⁴ Luke 9:39 (NKJV) And behold, a spirit seizes him, and he suddenly cries out; it convulses him so that he foams *at the mouth*; and it departs from him with great difficulty, bruising him.

⁴²⁵ Luke 13:16 (NKJV) So ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan has bound—think of it—for eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath?”

⁴²⁶ Strong's Concordance - 1210. Deó. Available at: <http://biblehub.com/greek/1210.htm>

⁴²⁷ Revelation 9:11 (NKJV) And they had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in Hebrew is Abaddon, but in Greek he has the name Apollyon.

⁴²⁸ Luke 6:18 (NKJV) as well as those who were tormented with unclean spirits. And they were healed.

⁴²⁹ Acts 5:6 (NKJV) And the young men arose and wrapped him up, carried him out, and buried him.

⁴³⁰ Isaiah 29:10 (NKJV) For the LORD has poured out on you The spirit of deep sleep, And has closed your eyes, namely, the prophets; And He has covered your heads, namely, the seers.

⁴³¹ Luke 8:29 (NKJV) For He had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For it had often seized him, and he was kept under guard, bound with chains and shackles; and he broke the bonds and was driven by the demon into the wilderness.

⁴³² Van Der Walt, Ronell Dr. (2016) *Freedom Through Deliverance Pertaining to Bloodlines, Oppression, the Gutter of Lies, Sin, Shame, Guilt and Unbelief Leading the Body of Christ into Apostolic Counselling*. Pretoria P. 435

- Psychological or mental and emotional health. The Bible reports on insanity (Luke 8:27, 35)⁴³³ and suicidal mania (Mark 9:22)⁴³⁴. Dr. Ed Murphy⁴³⁵ reported that 75% of Multiple Personality Disorders is a result of Satanic Ritual Abuse and related forms of extreme child sexual abuse.

And when they were come to the multitude, there came to him a certain man, kneeling down to him, and saying, Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water. And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him. Then Jesus answered and said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me. And Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour.

Matthew 17:14-18 (NKJV)

Strategic action includes:

- Torment and troubling people by projecting fear and terror, agitating their minds. (1 Chronicles 10:13-14)⁴³⁶ “Trouble” defines to “make fearful, afraid, to terrify, agitating the mind to be perplexed;
- Demons sear a person’s consciousness and persuade him/her to entice to do evil or act sinful;
- Defiling and unclean spirits attack individuals mentally by means of imaginations, thoughts, fantasies, impure or lustful images etc. Especially during the time set aside to fellowship with God in worship or reading scripture;

⁴³³ Luke 8:27 (NKJV) And when He stepped out on the land, there met Him a certain man from the city who had demons for a long time. And he wore no clothes, nor did he live in a house but in the tombs.

Luke 8:35 (NKJV) Then they went out to see what had happened, and came to Jesus, and found the man from whom the demons had departed, sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind. And they were afraid.

⁴³⁴ Mark 9:22 (NKJV) And often he has thrown him both into the fire and into the water to destroy him. But if You can do anything, have compassion on us and help us.”

⁴³⁵ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 439

⁴³⁶ 1 Chronicles 10:13-14 (NKJV) So Saul died for his unfaithfulness which he had committed against the LORD, because he did not keep the word of the LORD, and also because he consulted a medium for guidance. But *he* did not inquire of the LORD; therefore He killed him, and turned the kingdom over to David the son of Jesse.

- Demons harass individuals by following their movements, observe their weak moments and manipulating situations to ensure that they stumble and fall;
- They vex people. “*Pascho*” in Greek encompasses experiences and sensations, impressions and feeling that is normally painful. “Vex” also incorporate “to mob, to harass, molest” or “to suffer or experience pain.”⁴³⁷ (Matthew 15:22⁴³⁸; 17:15⁴³⁹; Luke 6:18⁴⁴⁰; Acts 5:16⁴⁴¹);
- Demons seduce (to lead astray, allure, tempt, corrupt, defraud and entice) individuals and persuade them to do evil;
- Demons demolished a person’s identity;
- Demons instigate rejection and use a variety of actions to reinforce the lie to enhance and escalades the feeling of worthlessness and rejection;
- Demons can amend or destroy normal mental capacity to leave a shattered mind;⁴⁴²
- Demons mimic insanity;
- Demons have the power to facilitate physical infirmities to create a physiologically diseased state, which then leads to dementia.⁴⁴³
- Financial wealth and prosperity pertaining to Employment, Promotions, Constant breakages and repairs, Money disappearing, etc. Strategies include:
 - Battering people with constant hardships resulting in financial losses (2 Corinthians 12:7);⁴⁴⁴

⁴³⁷ Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 111

⁴³⁸ Matthew 15:22 (NKJV) And behold, a woman of Canaan came from that region and cried out to Him, saying, “Have mercy on me, O Lord, Son of David! My daughter is severely demon-possessed.”

⁴³⁹ Matthew 17:15 (NKJV) “Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is an epileptic and suffers severely; for he often falls into the fire and often into the water.

⁴⁴⁰ Luke 6:18 (NKJV) as well as those who were tormented with unclean spirits. And they were healed.

⁴⁴¹ Acts 5:16 (NKJV) Also a multitude gathered from the surrounding cities to Jerusalem, bringing sick people and those who were tormented by unclean spirits, and they were all healed.

⁴⁴² Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 363

⁴⁴³ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 363

⁴⁴⁴ 2 Corinthians 12:7 (NKJV) And lest I should be exalted above measure by the abundance of the revelations, a thorn in the flesh was given to me, a messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I be exalted above measure.

- Resistance: Demons act as adversaries to oppose individual success (Zechariah 3:3).⁴⁴⁵
- Failed and Corrupt relationships

God created the universe and everything in it in a particular order. God's order with regards to relationships is as follows: God first and foremost, then within marriage the husband as head and leader of his household, third in authority his wife, followed by the children. Following the intimacy and security of the household is fellow men and women, within the community of Christ as well as non-believers.

 - Bill Subritzky⁴⁴⁶ describes how demons fight against personal harmony, peace and physical well-being to cause disruptive relationships.
 - Demons entice resentment, hatred, fear, rebellion, and discrimination
 - Demons instigate lies, gossip, and cursing.
 - Destroying relationships through jealousy, hate, fear, pride, resentment, moodiness, and emotional instability in general.
- Ministry and Evangelism

Whilst Satan and his demons prohibit the spreading of the Gospel of Christ in every sense possible, there is also a major strategy to prevent the growth in the knowledge of Christ and fellowship with the Holy Spirit. A variety of strategies are implemented, from pestering believers to fall asleep during church services or when reading scripture, to intercept the message and to deliver a twisted version.

The strategy includes:

- Opposing God's ministers. (Matthew 13:19⁴⁴⁷, 2 Corinthians 4:4⁴⁴⁸);

⁴⁴⁵ Zechariah 3:3 (NKJV) Now Joshua was clothed with filthy garments, and was standing before the Angel.

⁴⁴⁶ Subritzky, Bill (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses* NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries. P. 11

⁴⁴⁷ Matthew 13:19 (NKJV) When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand *it*, then the wicked *one* comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is he who received seed by the wayside.

⁴⁴⁸ 2 Corinthians 4:4 (NKJV) whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.

- Perverting God's Word and hindering the Gospel. (1 Thessalonians 2:18);⁴⁴⁹
- Deceiving people to distort the Word of God and the love of Christ. (Revelation 12:9⁴⁵⁰, Matthew 24:4-5⁴⁵¹);
- Create doubt, unbelief, indecision, and procrastination;
- Blinding the mind of unbelievers. (2 Corinthians 4:4);⁴⁵²
- Seducing and tempting people in believing a false doctrine. (1 Timothy 4:1).⁴⁵³
- Death
Natural and unnatural causes including a variety of sicknesses, addictions, murder, motor and other fatal accidents.
- Demons can instigate compulsive eating or drinking disorders.
- Deceiving national leaders to cause havoc for the nation. David was deceived to implement the census which resulted in the wrath of God. (1 Chronicles 21:1)⁴⁵⁴ Demons will also deceive nations through signs and wonders to entice them to war against the returning Messiah. (Revelation 16:14).⁴⁵⁵

3.6 Territorial Demonic Spirits

Territorial spirits are high level demonic personages with great authority ruling over geographical or social-cultural groups of people. The Strong's concordance also included inhabitants in the definition of region, and not the physical area only: #G5490 defines region as follows: *chōra kho'-ra, the idea of empty expanse*;

⁴⁴⁹ 1 Thessalonians 2:18 (NKJV) Therefore we wanted to come to you—even I, Paul, time and again—but Satan hindered us.

⁴⁵⁰ Revelation 12:9 (NKJV) So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

⁴⁵¹ Matthew 24:4-5 (NKJV) And Jesus answered and said to them: "Take heed that no one deceives you. For many will come in My name, saying, 'I am the Christ,' and will deceive many.

⁴⁵² 2 Corinthians 4:4 (NKJV) whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.

⁴⁵³ 1 Timothy 4:1 (NKJV) Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons,

⁴⁵⁴ 1 Chronicle 21:1 (NIV) Satan rose up against Israel and incited David to take a census of Israel.

⁴⁵⁵ Revelation 16:14 (NKJV) For they are spirits of demons, performing signs, *which* go out to the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.

room, that is, a space of **territory** (more or less extensive; often including its inhabitants): - coast, county, fields, grounds, land, region.

The process of evaluating a physical area, (a landscape, region, territory, country, city etc) should include the inhabitants in a general survey. (Nationalities or faith groups could represent specific spiritually. Scientific surveys e.g., pertaining to water, minerals etc excluded).

The author acknowledged Scott Moreau and others⁴⁵⁶ critique towards the theory and especially the practices of some Christian groups in their actions to discern and expel territorial demonic forces referred to as “

Strategic-level spiritual warfare or SLSW”, and even agrees that some practices indeed lure to what is called “Christian magic”. The questionable actions of some do however not annul the reality of territorial demonic authorities and activities, including water or marine spirits. Satan’s dominion is found in three created spheres of the universe: the heavenlies (air), earth and water. Only in and through Christ has man regained the authority to reclaim the lost dominion and authority.

God created three spheres of the universe: the heavenlies, the earth and the waters⁴⁵⁷ and gave man dominion to rule and take dominion over all three spheres:

God blessed them and said to them, ‘Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish in the sea and the birds in the sky and over every living creature that moves on the ground.’

Genesis 1:28 (NIV)

“Therefore, rejoice, O Heavens, and all you who live in the Heavens! But alas for the earth and the sea, for the devil has come down to you in great fury, knowing that his time is short!”

Revelation 12:12 (PHILLIPS)

⁴⁵⁶ Scott, Mareua (August 22, 2000) *Gaining Perspective on Territorial Spirits*. Available at: <https://www.lausanne.org/content/territorial-spirits>

⁴⁵⁷ Psalm 146:6 (NIV) He is the Maker of heaven and earth, the sea, and everything in them – he remains faithful for ever. Nehemiah 9:6 (NIV) You alone are the LORD. You made the heavens, even the highest heavens, and all their starry host, the earth and all that is on it, the seas and all that is in them. You give life to everything, and the multitudes of heaven worship you.

From this text, three key words are highlighted:

- **Heaven** Strong's #G3772 (Ouranos) (oo-ran-os) Perhaps from the same as #G3735 (through the idea of *elevation*); the *sky*; by extension *heaven* (as the abode of God); by implication *happiness, power, eternity*; specifically, the *Gospel (Christianity)*: - air, heaven ([-ly]), sky.
- **Earth** Strong's #G1093 (*ghay*) Contracted from a primary word; *soil*; by extension a *region*, or the solid part or the whole of the *terrene* globe (including the occupants in each application): - country, earth (-ly), ground, land, world.
- **Sea** Strong's #G2281 (halassa) (*thal'-as-sah*) Probably prolonged from G251; the *sea* (generally or specifically): - sea.

Satan devised immediate and direct counter tactics to oppose every intension of God. Man's God-given dominion was transferred to Satan after man's sin against God. His dominion and authority are illustrated when Satan presents the kingdoms of the earth as trade when he enticed Jesus to worship him. The earth, including the waters were indeed Satan's to trade.

Again, the devil took Him up on an exceedingly high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. And he said to Him, "All these things I will give You if You will fall down and worship me."

Matthew 4:8-9 (NKJV)

The three spheres and Satan's dominion are also affirmed in the Book of Revelation:

"Therefore, rejoice, O Heavens, and all you who live in the Heavens! But alas for the earth and the sea, for the devil has come down to you in great fury, knowing that his time is short!"

Revelation 12:12 (PHILLIPS)

The three spheres are mentioned individually in the *first*⁴⁵⁸ of the Ten Commandments. God is explicit in His commandment and will not allow other gods, in any of the three spheres.

⁴⁵⁸ The author draws attention to the fact that the first of anything implies priority or status.

***You shall have no other gods before me.
“You shall not make for yourself an image in the form of anything in
heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the waters below. You shall
not bow down to them or worship them; for I, the Lord your God, am a
jealous God, punishing the children for the sin of the parents to the
third and fourth generation of those who hate me,***

Exodus 20:3-5 (NIV)

The research presented Satan’s territory on earth to include geographical areas, nations and cultures and even families and individuals within a particular territorial area, and with special reference to ‘high places.’

This dominion in the air includes ley lines, gateways, portholes, and all types of audio-visual media transferred via the airways. Aquatic spirits habituate in all water sources and are generally known as water spirits, with Leviathan being the most notorious. (Job 1:6-7)⁴⁵⁹ (Ephesians 2:1-2)⁴⁶⁰

3.6.1 Geographical Territories

Jesus’ acknowledged the significance of cities, Jerusalem in particular, when he gave precise preference to Jerusalem to receive the gospel first.

***But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you
will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and
to the ends of the earth.***

Acts 1:8 (NIV)

Nations and territories are inextricable. God is very bold in proclaiming that He elected the Jewish nation to be his own, His ‘chosen people’. Jesus Christ was born from the Jewish lineage. God chose a specific geographical area and

⁴⁵⁹ Job 1:6-7 (AMP) Now there was a day when the sons of God (angels) came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan (adversary, accuser) also came among them. The LORD said to Satan, “From where have you come?” Then Satan answered the LORD, “From roaming around on the earth and from walking around on it.”

⁴⁶⁰ Ephesians 2:1-2 (AMP) And you [He made alive when you] were [spiritually] dead and separated from Him because of your transgressions and sins, in which you once walked. You were following the ways of this world [influenced by this present age], in accordance with the prince of the power of the air (Satan), the spirit who is now at work in the disobedient [the unbelieving, who fight against the purposes of God].

presented it to them as the promised land. Satan always presents a mirror and counter strategy for God's initiatives.

He, initiates strategies pertaining to cities, territories, countries, nations, or cultures in his territorial warfare to oppose God's purpose or ordinances as illustrated in 1 Chronical 21:1.⁴⁶¹ The concept is also acknowledged by several authors.

**Let me make it clear that I do believe there are territorial spirits, and I have encountered them in the more than eighty countries where I have travelled and ministered. It seems clear from the Bible that Satan's evil angels are arranged in ranks of various authorities.⁴⁶²
In every territory, thrones compete against the glory of God infiltrating earth and unlocking the harvest of a generation.⁴⁶³**

It is believed that territorial spirits answer directly to Satan. Chuck Pierce⁴⁶⁴ confirmed the demonic hierarchy operating with a legal right to steal and plunder individuals lives, gained through continual personal or generational sin. (1 Peter 5:8)⁴⁶⁵ The same principle applies for geographical areas. Repetitive sin within a specific area, or repetitive sin committed by an individual or family bloodline (generational sin) establishes a demonic 'legal right' which stands in direct opposition to God's plan and purpose for the individual or family and territory. Satan aims to escalate an individual or family sin to corporate sin.

Corporate sin in a specific area results in the establishment of a *throne of iniquity*. Sin demolishes God's purpose and order and provide an opportunity for Satan to enhance his influence. It was found that some cultural or ethnic groups (automatically within, but not restricted to a geographical area) have greater abilities to discern spiritual activities. The author was of the opinion that it is also

⁴⁶¹ 1 Chronical 21:1 Now Satan stood up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel.

⁴⁶² Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P. 160

⁴⁶³ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books P. 136

⁴⁶⁴ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books P. 24

⁴⁶⁵ 1 Peter 5:8 (NKJV) Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

applicable in the South African context.

The African (black) contingent of the South African population has a greater spiritual discernment. It might be argued that African tribes and nations have a greater ancestral lineage of spiritists and are thus informally inaugurated with spiritual reality from a young age. This argument holds some truth, but it also remains a generalisation. Dr. Ed Murphy⁴⁶⁶ contributed as follows:

Africans, Asians, Latin Americans, and the inhabitants of Oceania⁴⁶⁷ know intuitively the reality of the spirit world. They know invisible spiritual beings both good and evil continually interact with human beings. They strive to maintain the right balance of relationship with spirits to avoid harm by evil spirits and to gain help from the good spirits.⁴⁶⁸

Beyond our churches, effective worldwide evangelism is impeded by our having missed the Biblical teaching regarding territorial spirits. These high-level principalities and powers hold whole people groups in their grip.⁴⁶⁹

The fact that some demons operate in specific territories is demonstrated when Legion pleaded with Jesus not to send them out of the region.

He was asking him, "What is your name?" And he replied, "My name is Legion; for we are many." And he began begging Him repeatedly not to send them out of the region.

Mark 5:9-10 (AMP)

Daniel 10 could be interpreted as an indication of the invisible battle for control over nations. Nations or cultures automatically imply a territory and vice versa. Satan's focus might be directed towards the specific nation or culture, regardless of where they find themselves geographically. On the other hand, Satan might have a specific focus and strategy focussing on a specific geographical area regardless the inhabitants (culture and nation) of such a territorial or geographical

⁴⁶⁶ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.

⁴⁶⁷ Oceania, collective name for the islands scattered throughout most of the Pacific Ocean. The term, in its widest sense, embraces the entire insular region between Asia and the Americas. A more common definition excludes the Ryukyu, Kuril, and Aleutian Islands and the Japan archipelago Britannica.com Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/place/Oceania-region-Pacific-Ocean>

⁴⁶⁸ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. xiv

⁴⁶⁹ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. xv

area.

Dr. Anna Mendez Ferrell⁴⁷⁰ presented Isaiah's prophesy concerning the land of the ancient tribes of Zebulun and Naphtali who suffered severely as evidence of how Satan can dominate or rule specific territories or landscapes: ***"This land of darkness and the shadow of death were spiritual regions in that specific zone, not in any other, revealing that every one of the cities on earth can be ruled by a certain area of Satan's empire"***

In obedience to God, Gideon tore down his father's altar of Baal, (Judges 6:27)⁴⁷¹ and in doing so freed the people from its demonic influence of idolatry in the geographical area. In return God gave victory over the Amalekites with only 30 men.

King Hezekiah demolished altars to idols in the land and by doing so restored worship of the Lord in the Temple (Because God's throne had been established during the reign of Hezekiah, the Assyrians were not able to defeat Judah).

He removed the high places, smashed the sacred stones and cut down the Asherah poles. He broke into pieces the bronze snake Moses had made, for up to that time the Israelites had been burning incense to it. (It was called Nehushtan.)

2 Kings 18:4 (NIV)

Hezekiah trusted in the Lord, the God of Israel. There was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, either before him or after him He held fast to the Lord and did not stop following him; he kept the commands the Lord had given Moses. And the Lord was with him; he was successful in whatever he undertook. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and did not serve him. From watchtower to fortified city, he defeated the Philistines, as far as Gaza and its territory.

2 Kings 18:5-7 (NIV)

⁴⁷⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 72

⁴⁷¹ Judges 6:27 (NIV) Gideon chose ten of his servants to help him, and they did everything God had said. But since Gideon was afraid of his family and the other people in town, he did it all at night

3.6.2 The Spiritual Significance and Power of High Places

The Old Testament has numerous references to places of worship located on high hills or high places. (2 Kings 17:29-31)⁴⁷²

The battle between Ben-Hadad and King Ahab illustrates the reverence of Divine power associated with high places and valleys:

Meanwhile, the officials of the king of Aram advised him, "Their gods are gods of the hills. That is why they were too strong for us. But if we fight them on the plains, surely we will be stronger than they.

1 Kings 20:23 (NIV)

The man of God came up and told the king of Israel, "This is what the Lord says: 'Because the Arameans think the Lord is a god of the hills and not a god of the valleys, I will deliver this vast army into your hands, and you will know that I am the Lord.'"

1 Kings 20:28 (NIV)

High places were the locations for worshipping deities. Idol worship on hills and high places often included abominable practices of sacrificing infant children in ovens to Molech.⁴⁷³

In everything he followed the ways of his father Asa and did not stray from them; he did what was right in the eyes of the LORD. The high places, however, were not removed, and the people continued to offer sacrifices and burn incense there.

1 King 22:43 (NIV)

Asa did what was good and right in the eyes of the Lord his God. He removed the foreign altars and the high places, smashed the sacred stones and cut down the Asherah poles. He commanded Judah to seek the Lord, the God of their ancestors, and to obey His laws and commands. He removed the high places and incense altars in every town in Judah, and the kingdom was at peace under him. He built up the fortified cities of Judah, since the land was at peace. No one was at

⁴⁷² 2 Kings 17:29-31 (NKJV) However every nation continued to make gods of its own, and put them in the shrines on the high places which the Samaritans had made, every nation in the cities where they dwelt. The men of Babylon made Succoth Benoth, the men of Cuth made Nergal, the men of Hamath made Ashima, and the Avites made Nibhaz and Tartak; and the Sepharvites burned their children in fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech, the gods of Sepharvaim.

⁴⁷³ Prince, Derek (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK. P. 61

war with him during those years, for the Lord gave him rest.

2 Chronical 14:2-5 (NIV)

God gave firm instructions with regards to the destruction of these high places of worship. Idolatry is breaking the first commandment⁴⁷⁴.

These are the decrees and laws you must be careful to follow in the land that the Lord, the God of your ancestors, has given you to possess—as long as you live in the land. Destroy completely all the places on the high mountains, on the hills and under every spreading tree, where the nations you are dispossessing worship their gods. Break down their altars, smash their sacred stones and burn their Asherah poles in the fire; cut down the idols of their gods and wipe out their names from those places.

Deuteronomy 12:1-3 (NIV)

3.6.3 Peace Poles/Asherah-Pole

Prof. Dr. Connie Brand⁴⁷⁵ described these poles as an obelisk-like structures, at least two meters in length with the words “May peace prevail on earth” engraved in different languages. The Peace Pole Project is an official project of the World Peace Prayer Society. (WPPS) It is recognised as the most prominent international symbol and monument to promote and celebrate peace. Peace poles do not have to portray any text. The symbolic meaning remains.

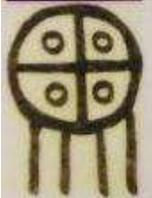
The Old Testament has several references to Asherah poles, always in context of pagan worship, (goddess Asherah) and often erected at high places. (Exodus

⁴⁷⁴ First Commandment: Exodus 20:1-6 I am the LORD your God, who has brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. You shall have no other gods before Me. “You shall not make for yourself any idol, or any likeness (form, manifestation) of what is in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the water under the earth [as an object to worship]. You shall not worship them nor serve them; for I, the LORD your God, am a jealous (impassioned) God [demanding what is rightfully and uniquely mine], visiting (avenging) the iniquity (sin, guilt) of the fathers on the children [that is, calling the children to account for the sins of their fathers], to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing graciousness *and* steadfast lovingkindness to thousands [of generations] of those who love Me and keep My commandments

⁴⁷⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries.

34:13)⁴⁷⁶ In Deuteronomy God commanded the people to destroy these images (Deuteronomy 12:3)⁴⁷⁷ and not to erect these images of abomination. (Deuteronomy 16:21)⁴⁷⁸

Detailed meaning of the six global symbols on the Global Peace Pole.⁴⁷⁹

Symbol	Explanation
Na Mu Myo Ho Ren Ge Kyo Mantor Calligraphy 	Represents the Buddha's message of Peace
Wampum Belt 	Symbol of the Great Law of Peace, the foundation of the Iroquos Confederacy.
Hopi Declaration of Peace 	The distilled essence of the Hopi prophecy promising inevitable global peace.

⁴⁷⁶ Exodus 34:13 (NKJV) But you shall destroy their altars, break their *sacred* pillars, and cut down their wooden images

⁴⁷⁷ Deuteronomy 12:3 (NKJV) And you shall destroy their altars, break their *sacred* pillars, and burn their wooden images with fire; you shall cut down the carved images of their gods and destroy their names from that place.

⁴⁷⁸ Deuteronomy 16:21 (NKJV) You shall not plant for yourself any tree, as a wooden image, near the altar which you build for yourself to the LORD your God.

⁴⁷⁹ Detailed meaning of the six global symbols on the Global Peace Pole Available at: <http://www.global-emergency-alert-response.net/GPPsymbols.html>

<p>The symbol representing the Three Faiths of Jerusalem</p> 	<p>Spirituality United in Peace</p>
<p>The Spiritual Unity of All Faiths symbol</p> 	<p>Depicts the centre as a symbol of the Golden Age of Peace, unity and harmony promised to come in the future.</p>
<p>The symbol for Peace, Love and Patience</p> 	<p>From the Mayan Sixth Sun Sacred Calendar</p>

Table 6: Global symbols on the Global Peace Pole

The author commented as follow:

- The triune God of the Bible is the only true God deserving of worship and admiration.
- God forbid the erection of these poles.

They provoked Him to jealousy with foreign gods; With abominations they provoked Him to anger. They sacrificed to demons, not to God,

Deuteronomy 32:16-17 (NKJV)

- Jesus Christ is the manifestation of peace. There is not peace without Him or outside of His presence.

“Peace I leave with you, My peace I give to you; not as the world gives do I give to you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.”

John 14:27 (NKJV)

Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.”

Romans 5:1 (NKJV)

Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts, since as members of one body you were called to peace. And be thankful."

Colossians 3:15 (NKJV)

- No recognition of the one and only true God.

yet for us there is one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we for Him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, through whom are all things, and through whom we live.

1 Corinthians 8:6 (NKJV)

- It functions as a focus point (antenna) for demonic activity, equivalent of gates and portholes.
-

3.6.3.1 Application to South Africa



Figure 2: Freedom Park, Pretoria⁴⁸⁰

⁴⁸⁰ Freedom Park. Available at: <https://www.brandsouthafrica.com/people-culture/arts-culture/freedom-park>

Freedom Park Pretoria. Amphitheatre surrounded by steel reeds, overlooking the sanctuary with its ever-burning flame⁴⁸¹.

Steeple, obelisk and peace poles are pagan phallus symbols, honouring the sun-god.

“Because the sun was really the god and the standing, erect column was pointed at “him,” this was symbolic of man's power over the sun god represented as sexual power. Therefore, when Israel pointed their power poles upward it was an affront to the one True God and he demanded that they “shall not stand up”, but must be cast down.”⁴⁸²

3.6.4 Ley Lines

Incorporated in the phenomena of territorial demonic activity, is the occurrences of ley lines. (*'Ley', 'lea' - 'A clearing'*) (*'Heilige Linien' to the Germans 'Fairy paths' to the Irish, 'Dragon Lines' to the Chinese, 'Spirit Lines' to Peruvians and 'Song Paths' to the Australian Aborigines - and so on around the world*).⁴⁸³

Several cultures are familiar with- and have lexicon for straight often geometric lines across landscapes, connecting natural, sacred and prehistoric structures: the Australian Aborigines described a 'pastage', labelled "dream-time" to describe the time when the gods created paths called 'turingas'. The Incas implemented 'spirit lines' with the Inca temple of the sun in Cuzco and the Jesuits called the lines 'ceques' or secret pathways. The German lexicon accommodates 'Heilige Linien' or "Holy Line".

The area of 'Teutberger Wald', also known as the 'German heartland' has a significant network of these lines which include the Externsteine and the

⁴⁸¹ Freedom Park: Celebrating Peace. (April 5, 2013) Available at: <https://www.brandsouthafrica.com/people-culture/arts-culture/freedom-park>

⁴⁸² Asherah. Available at: <http://www.piney.com/Asherah.html>

⁴⁸³ Ancient-Wisdom: Ley Lines. Available at: <http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/leylines.htm>

megalithic stone circle at Bad Meinberg.⁴⁸⁴ Ancient tracks or lines are also associated with the Mayan. Research has also revealed annual Spanish “qhapaq Hucha” seremonies of human sacrifices (usually children) at “wak’as”.⁴⁸⁵

It is not uncommon to find the terms 'ley-lines' and 'roman roads' in the same context, but it is important to draw a distinction between the two, as there is absolutely no pre-requisite for a ley-line to include roads, pathways, or any visible connection between ley-points of any kind whatsoever. It is the case however, that some ley-lines have been identified along which ancient paths or roads follow (or run alongside), and it is perhaps worth first considering the origin of these ancient tracks, and their connection with ley-lines.⁴⁸⁶

Clare Lewis⁴⁸⁷ elaborating on the ley line phenomena in the ‘Supernatural Magazine’, presented four types of energies: Physical energy (electrical fields), living energies (auras), earth-based energies also called ley lines and spiritual energy.

Ley lines can be described as unseen ‘energy highways’ connecting important and sacred sites throughout the world. Along one such ley line is the Great Pyramids of Giza, Chichén Itzá and Stonehenge. Lewis discerned between energy ley lines and true ley lines – the latter being the ancient straight traders’ tracks. In 1921, amateur archaeologist Alfred Watkins theorised the phrase “leys” or “ley line” after he discovered ancient sites around the world, man-made and natural positioned in a type of alignment.⁴⁸⁸ His discovery could be classified as ‘true ley lines’. The research presents the following definitions:

Ley lines are lines that crisscross around the globe. Like latitude and longitudinal lines, that are dotted with monuments and natural landforms, and carry along with them rivers of supernatural energy.⁴⁸⁹

⁴⁸⁴ Ancient Wisdom: Ley Lines. Available at: <http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/leylines.htm>

⁴⁸⁵ Ancient Wisdom: Ley Lines. Available at: <http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/leylines.htm>

⁴⁸⁶ Ancient Wisdom: Ley Lines. Available at: <http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/leylines.htm>

⁴⁸⁷ Lewis, C. (2014) *Supernatural Magazine: Ley Lines and The Connection To Adverse Spiritual Phenomena*. Available at: <https://supernaturalmagazine.com/articles/ley-lines-and-the-connection-to-adverse-spiritual-phenomena>

⁴⁸⁸ Serena Katie (2018) *These Supernatural Lines Supposedly Connect The Universe Through Monuments And Landforms*. Available at: <https://allthatsinteresting.com/ley-lines>

⁴⁸⁹ Serena Katie (2018) *These Supernatural Lines Supposedly Connect The Universe Through Monuments And Landforms*. Available at: <https://allthatsinteresting.com/ley-lines>

Well most of the Earths leys are positive but when two of these leys cross or intersect a vortex of negative energy is then created. It is like a powerful magnet attracting all kinds of lower vibrational spirit, energy or entity and even sometimes people. These entities can then draw off the energy, feed on it and use it to manifest.⁴⁹⁰

Today, ley lines are believed by many to connect spiritual or mystical places called vortexes, that emit energy or psychic power that can harm or heal the body and spirit, and even open portals to other dimensions. Stonehenge, Mount Shasta, The Bermuda Triangle and Sedona, Arizona are good examples of vortexes. Some ley lines are believed to attract UFOs and paranormal events. In theory, the more powerful the vortexes are at the ends of a ley line, the stronger the energy of the ley line is, and the more ley lines that intersect at a vortex, the stronger the vortex.⁴⁹¹

Prof. Dr. Brand⁴⁹² explained that lines are sometime drawn on the ground using a stick or any marker to claim a territory for Satan. Demons are positioned around these territories. An opening or gate allows demonic entities to enter and exit. Gatekeepers control these entrances.

Lewis' research identified the attraction of all kinds of lower vibrating spirits, energies or entities to a vortex of negative energy that occurs when two of the earth's positive ley lines connect or where underground water, covered wells and rock strata are found distorting the earth's energy. These entities "**draw energy, feed on it and use it to manifest**"⁴⁹³

Ley lines are often associated with 'astral traveling' where the spirit of the traveling individual is surrendered by "guiding spirits" who separate body and spirit. Dr. Ferrell⁴⁹⁴ defines astral travel as follows"

Astral projection (or astral travel) is an esoteric interpretation of any form of out-of-body experience (OOBE) that assumes the existence of an "astral

⁴⁹⁰ Lewis, C. (2014) *Supernatural Magazine: Ley Lines and The Connection To Adverse Spiritual Phenomena*. Available at: <https://supernaturalmagazine.com/articles/ley-lines-and-the-connection-to-adverse-spiritual-phenomena>

⁴⁹¹ Ley Lines. Available at: <http://www.vortexhunters.com/what-is-a-ley-line.html>

⁴⁹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Conference Material. Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. P. 11

⁴⁹³ Lewis, C. (2014) *Supernatural Magazine: Ley Lines And The Connection To Adverse Spiritual Phenomena*. Available at: <https://supernaturalmagazine.com/articles/ley-lines-and-the-connection-to-adverse-spiritual-phenomena>

⁴⁹⁴ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 69

body” separate from the physical body and capable of travelling outside it. Astral projection or travel denotes the astral body leaving the physical body to travel in the astral plane.

Dr. Ferrell conveyed her experience of this phenomena as follows:

“I have visited churches established right in the middle of spiritual power lines (called ley lines) where these territorial spirits render them to bits. They are laden with sicknesses, adultery and filthiness because no one knows how to confront the devil.”⁴⁹⁵

3.6.4.1 Application to South Africa

Dean Liprini did extensive research pertaining to South Africa’s ‘sacred sites.’ His mapping of these sites is the main objective of the Sacred Sites Foundation of Southern Africa. Liprini uncovered a mysterious grid of geometrically aligned Solar and Lunar observatories across the southern tip of Africa. He associated this with the Khoi-Khoi and Khoi-San People, the ancient people of South Africa. **“The scale and magnitude of the profiles, observations and Markerstones covering an area over 800 kilometres long is monumental in proportion and defies explanation.”⁴⁹⁶**

It is believed that one of the 12 main energy centres and ley lines are at the bottom of Table Mountain. For this reason, the mountain attracts spiritual healers and spiritists from around the globe.⁴⁹⁷

The small town of McGregor, between Cape Town and Montagu, also lies on the convergence of the two ley lines. As a result, a variety of wellness, healing, and therapy centres developed. It also resulted in the growth of the property market

⁴⁹⁵ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 6

⁴⁹⁶ Liprini, Dean. *Sacred Sites Southern Africa. Unveiling the Ancient Mysteries at the tip of South Africa.* Available at: <https://sacredsites.co.za/sacred-site-research/sunpath-diamond-light-grid-phenomena-in-southern-africa/>

⁴⁹⁷ The Khoisan God, Rastas and Lay Lines. Lower Cableway Station Audio Guide: In-Queue Entertainment. Available at: <https://voicemap.me/tour/cape-town/lower-cableway-station-audio-guide/sites/the-khoisan-god-rastas-ley-lines>

as many Capetonians invest in a second property to connect the spirituality of the region more frequently.

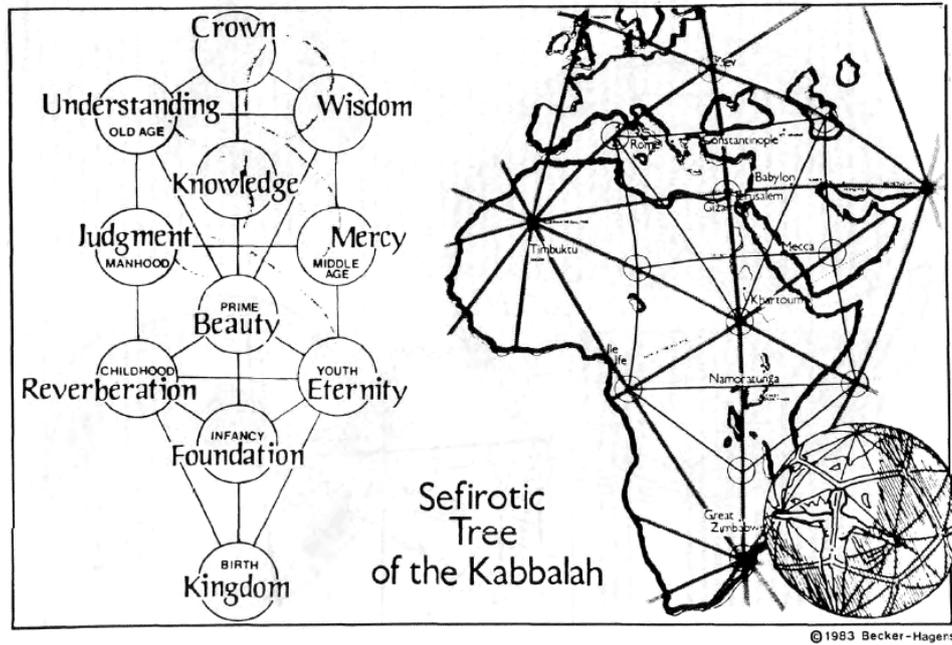


Figure 3: Ley Lines Tree of Life on Map of Africa from Beth Hagens and Wm. S. Becker⁴⁹⁸



Figure 4: Sunpath "Diamond Light Grid" Phenomena in Southern Africa⁴⁹⁹

⁴⁹⁸ Tree of Life on Map of Africa from Beth Hagens and Wm. S. Becker. Available at: <http://vortexmaps.com/africa-grid-map.php>

⁴⁹⁹ Sacred Sites South Africa. Available at: <https://sacredsites.co.za/sacred-site-research/sunpath-diamond-light-grid-phenomena-in-southern-africa/>

3.6.5 Mapping

Spiritual mapping is a technique used to evaluate a specific area in order to identify legal demonic right and activity. The technique assumes the existence of territorial demonic spirits who inhabit and rule specific areas. The following are examples of sites that might portray demonic activity:

Anything related to:

- War and conflict (battlefield sites, memorials etc.)
- Frequent bloodshed (murder, natural disasters, vehicle accidents abortions etc.)
- Places of immorality (Pornographic bookstores, X-rated theatres, prostitution etc.)
- Places of worship (Any religious temple, churches, etc. also statues of Roman, Greek or African gods)
- Places of pain and suffering (including hospitals etc.)
- Cemeteries
- Water sources

An application of the theory of mapping is discussed in Chapter 5.

3.6.6 Leviathan and Aquatic Spirits

Vital to the discussion of territorial spirits is an exploration pertaining to the Marine Kingdom, home of Leviathan and marine spirits. Engagement with water spirits is a common phenomenon in South Africa.

Included in the hierarchy of Satan is the Marine world, inclusive of all forms of water, inland, sea's and oceans and water beneath the earth. Prof. Dr. Brand⁵⁰⁰

⁵⁰⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 776

defined a water spirit as **“generally a mischievous (manlike) creature living in water (e.g. Elf, Undine, Fairy, Sprite, Goblin, etc.).** Dr. Ferrell⁵⁰¹ defined the ‘Abyss’ as a place close to hell or Sheol, a place of waters of darkness. From here, water spirits such as Leviathan are sent out.

The Queen of heaven is one of the most powerful dominions, described in Revelation as the “Great Prostitute.” She reigns from a great city of many waters (Revelation 17:18)⁵⁰² over the Kings of the earth.

Scientifically,⁵⁰³ the significance of water is common knowledge: 71% of the earth’s surface is water covered. The oceans hold 96.5 percent of the Earth’s water. Water vapor in the air, rivers, lakes, icecaps, glaciers, groundwater and aquifers⁵⁰⁴ represent the remaining percentage. 60% of the human adult body is water. The brain and hearth are composed of 73% water, the lungs about 83%, skin 64% muscles and kidneys 79% and bones 31%.⁵⁰⁵

The author highlighted the Biblical emphasis of water with reference to the following:

- Creation
- Ten Commandments
- Egyptian plagues
- The Holy Spirit: Living Water, Streams of living water
- Baptism

⁵⁰¹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 81

⁵⁰² Revelations 17:18 (NKJV) And the woman whom you saw is that great city which reigns over the kings of the earth.”

⁵⁰³ How much Water is there on earth? Available at: https://www.usgs.gov/special-topic/water-science-school/science/how-much-water-there-earth?qt-science_center_objects=0#qt-science_center_objects

⁵⁰⁴ Aquifer: a body of permeable rock which can contain or transmit groundwater. Available at: <https://digitalatlas.cose.isu.edu/hydr/concepts/gwater/aquifer.htm#:~:text=An%20aquifer%20is%20a%20body,basalts%20also%20make%20good%20aquifers.>

⁵⁰⁵ *The Water In You: Water and the Human Body*. USGS Water Science School. Available at: https://www.usgs.gov/special-topic/water-science-school/science/water-you-water-and-human-body?qt-science_center_objects=0#qt-science_center_objects

Water is specifically characterized in the creation narrative. Genesis 1 narrates God's creation with particular reference to water and water creatures:

Then God said, "Let the waters below the heavens be gathered into one place [of standing, pooling together], and let the dry land appear"; and it was so. God called the dry land earth, and the gathering of the waters He called seas; and God saw that this was good (pleasing, useful) and He affirmed and sustained it.

Genesis 1:9-10 (AMP)

Then God said, "Let the waters swarm and abundantly produce living creatures, and let birds soar above the earth in the open expanse of the heavens."

God created the great sea monsters and every living creature that moves, with which the waters swarmed according to their kind, and every winged bird according to its kind; and God saw that it was good and He affirmed and sustained it.

And God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let birds multiply on the earth." And there was evening and there was morning, a fifth day.

Genesis 1:20-23 (NKJV)

The author compared the above first commandment with the *first* of the ten plagues when God turned the water of the Nile river into blood. Dr. Olukoya⁵⁰⁶ was of the opinion that Pharaoh consulted the gods of the Nile river every morning.

Although the Ten Commandments were not given to Pharaoh, the principle remains unaffected: God alone is worthy of adoration.

Go to Pharaoh in the morning as he goes out to the river. Confront him on the bank of the Nile, and take in your hand the staff that was changed into a snake.

Exodus 7:15 (NIV)

Moses and Aaron did just as the Lord had commanded. He raised his staff in the presence of Pharaoh and his officials and struck the water of the Nile, and all the water was changed into blood.

Exodus 7:20 (NIV)

⁵⁰⁶ Olukoya, D.K. Dr. (2011) *Disgracing Water Spirits*. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/notes/teik-chuan-giam/disgracing-water-spirits/113647082065567/>

Jesus affirms the power of the Holy Spirit in the comparison with living water that refresh, quench a spiritual thirst and cleanse.

On the last and greatest day of the festival, Jesus stood and said in a loud voice, "Let anyone who is thirsty come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as Scripture has said, rivers of living water will flow from within them."

By this he meant the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were later to receive. Up to that time the Spirit had not been given, since Jesus had not yet been glorified.

John 7:37-39 (NKJV)

The reality of the evil qualities of Leviathan was also confirmed in Anton LaVey's Satanic bible where he acknowledges Leviathan as representative of water and the Crown Prince of the West in his Princes of Hell.

Above text (John 7:37-39) also affirms the residing power of the Holy Spirit. The author nexus this indwelling power to the warning that life and death is manifested in the words one chooses to use. (Proverb 18:21)⁵⁰⁷ The living waters of the Holy Spirit inspires words of life. Words are spiritual, they convey spiritual power.

"Every alchemist or magician knows that one of the great secrets of their art is in the power of words. Or more precisely, the way certain words can be charged with power and effect."⁵⁰⁸

Leviathan, also known as the twisting serpent, succeeds to 'twist' words. The intended meaning of a message is twisted or altered to bring about confusion, misunderstandings and troubled relationships.

The strategy is not only applicable to particular people, even King David also complained:

All day they twist my words; All their thoughts are against me for evil

Psalms 56:5 (NKJV)

⁵⁰⁷ Proverbs 18:21 (NIV) The tongue has the power of life and death, and those who love it will eat its fruit.

⁵⁰⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 84

Baptism, one of two holy sacraments, water is symbolic of a new life in Christ. It is not surprising that, through ages, the interpretation of the application of water divided Christianity. To bring about division is one of the strategies of the Leviathan spirit.

Peter told them, “You must repent and every one of you must be baptised in the name of Jesus Christ, so that you may have your sins forgiven and receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

Acts 2:38 (PHILLIPS)

3.6.6.1 Biblical References to the Water Spirits

3.6.6.1.1 Biblical References to Rahab

God does not restrain his anger; even the cohorts of Rahab cowered at his feet

Job 9:13 (NIV)

Prof. Dr. Brand⁵⁰⁹ alluded to different Bible translations of ‘Rahab’. Although the NIV preserved ‘rahav’, other translations (including the NKJV)⁵¹⁰ accommodated ‘proud’. Strong’s #H7295⁵¹¹ defines ‘rahav’ with (raw-hawb), insolent: proud.

Prof. Dr. Brand⁵¹² and Dr. Olukoya⁵¹³ also associated the manifestation of ‘rahav’ with two other New Testament accounts:

- Jesus Christ ruling over the demon possessed man and sending the demons into a herd of pigs who rushed down a steep bank into a lake of water to drown

⁵⁰⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 779

⁵¹⁰ Job 9:13 (NKJV) God will not withdraw His anger, The allies of the proud lie prostrate beneath Him.

⁵¹¹ eSword Job 9:13 (KJV) *If God will not withdraw his anger, the proud helpers do stoop under him.*

⁵¹² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 780-789

⁵¹³ Olukoya, D.K. Dr. (2011) *Disgracing Water Spirits*. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/notes/teik-chuan-giam/disgracing-water-spirits/113647082065567/>

there. (Matthew 8:28-32)⁵¹⁴

- Jesus Christ ruling over the storm which according to Prof. Dr. Brand was not a naturally fierce storm but was instigated from a demonic force from within the water. (Matthew 8:23-27)⁵¹⁵

“We can say without any error that Rahab talked about in the scriptures mentioned above are referring to Rahab a satanic principality living in water.”⁵¹⁶

3.6.6.1.2 Serpent

Strong’s #G3789 (eSword)	‘Ophis’ Probably from G3700 (through the idea of <i>sharpness</i> of vision); a <i>snake</i> , figuratively (as a type of sly cunning) an artful <i>malicious</i> person, especially <i>Satan</i> : - serpent.	Mark 16:18 ⁵¹⁷ Luke 10:19 ⁵¹⁸ Revelation 12:9 ⁵¹⁹
--------------------------	---	--

⁵¹⁴ Matthew 8:28-32 (NKJV) When He had come to the other side, to the country of the Gergesenes, there met Him two demon-possessed *men*, coming out of the tombs, exceedingly fierce, so that no one could pass that way. And suddenly they cried out, saying, “What have we to do with You, Jesus, You Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?” Now a good way off from them there was a herd of many swine feeding. So the demons begged Him, saying, “If You cast us out, permit us to go away into the herd of swine.” And He said to them, “Go.” So when they had come out, they went into the herd of swine. And suddenly the whole herd of swine ran violently down the steep place into the sea, and perished in the water.

⁵¹⁵ Matthew 8:23-27 (NKJV) Now when He got into a boat, His disciples followed Him. And suddenly a great tempest arose on the sea, so that the boat was covered with the waves. But He was asleep. Then His disciples came to *Him* and awoke Him, saying, “Lord, save us! We are perishing!” But He said to them, “Why are you fearful, O you of little faith?” Then He arose and rebuked the winds and the sea, and there was a great calm. So the men marvelled, saying, “Who can this be, that even the winds and the sea obey Him?”

⁵¹⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. PP. 784-786

⁵¹⁷ Mark 16:18 (NKJV) They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover

⁵¹⁸ Luke 10:19 (NKJV) Behold, I give you the authority to trample on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

⁵¹⁹ Revelation 12:9 (NKJV) So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Strong's #H5175 (eSword)	' <i>nâchâsh</i> ' <i>a snake (from its hiss): - serpent.</i>	Genesis 3:1 ⁵²⁰ Psalm 58:4 ⁵²¹ Isaiah 27:1 ⁵²²
Strong's #H8314 (eSword)	' <i>Śârâph</i> ' From H8313; <i>burning</i> , that is, (figuratively) <i>poisonous</i> (serpent); specifically, a <i>saraph</i> or symbolical creature (from their copper color): - fiery (serpent), seraph.	Isaiah 30:6 ⁵²³

Table 7: Biblical reference: Serpent

3.6.6.1.3 Scorpion

Strong's #G4651 (eSword)	' <i>Skorpios</i> ' Probably from σκέρπω skerpō, an obsolete word, (perhaps strengthened from the base of G4649 and meaning to <i>pierce</i>); a "scorpion" (from its <i>sting</i>): - scorpion.	Luke 10:19 ⁵²⁴
Strong's #H6137 (eSword)	' <i>aqrâb</i> ' Of uncertain derivation; a <i>scorpion</i> ; figuratively a <i>scourge</i> or knotted whip: - scorpion.	Ezekiel 2:6 ⁵²⁵

Table 8: Biblical reference: Scorpion

⁵²⁰ Genesis 3:1 (KJV) Now the serpent was more subtile than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

⁵²¹ Psalm 58:4 (NKJV) Their poison *is* like the poison of a serpent; *They are* like the deaf cobra *that* stops its ear,

⁵²² Isaiah 27:1 (NKJV) In that day the LORD with His severe sword, great and strong, Will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan that twisted serpent; And He will slay the reptile that *is* in the sea.

⁵²³ Isaiah 30:6 (NKJV) Through a land of trouble and anguish, From which came the lioness and lion, The viper and fiery flying serpent, They will carry their riches on the backs of young donkeys, And their treasures on the humps of camels, To a people who shall not profit;

⁵²⁴ Luke 10:19 (KJV) Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

⁵²⁵ Ezekiel 2:6 (NKJV) "And you, son of man, do not be afraid of them nor be afraid of their words, though briars and thorns are with you and you dwell among scorpions; do not be afraid of their words or dismayed by their looks, though they are a rebellious house.

3.6.6.1.4 Adder

Strong's #6620 (eSword)	' <i>aqrâb</i> ' Of uncertain derivation; a <i>scorpion</i> ; figuratively a <i>scourge</i> or knotted whip: - scorpion.	Psalms 91:13 ⁵²⁶ Psalm 58:4 ⁵²⁷
----------------------------	---	--

Table 9: Biblical reference: Adder

3.6.6.1.5 Dragon or Monster

Strong's #8577 (eSword)	' <i>tannîym</i> ' (The second form used in Ezekiel 29:3) ⁵²⁸ ; intensive from the same as H8565; a marine or land <i>monster</i> , that is, <i>sea serpent</i> or <i>jackal</i> : - dragon, sea-monster, serpent, whale.	Isaiah 27:1 ⁵²⁹ Psalm 91:13 ⁵³⁰
Strong's #G1404 (eSword)	' <i>drakōn</i> ' Probably from an alternate form of δέρκομαι <i>derkomai</i> (to <i>look</i>); a fabulous kind of <i>serpent</i> (perhaps as supposed to <i>fascinate</i>): - dragon.	Revelation 20:2 ⁵³¹

Table 10: Biblical reference: Dragon

⁵²⁶ Psalm 91:13 (KJV) Thou shalt tread upon the lion and adder: the young lion and the dragon shalt thou trample under feet.

⁵²⁷ Psalm 58:4 (NKJV) Their poison *is* like the poison of a serpent; *They are* like the deaf cobra *that* stops its ear,

⁵²⁸ Ezekiel 29:3 (NKJV) Speak, and say, 'Thus says the Lord GOD: "Behold, I *am* against you, O Pharaoh king of Egypt, O great monster who lies in the midst of his rivers, Who has said, 'My River *is* my own; I have made *it* for myself.'

⁵²⁹ Isaiah 27:1 (NKJV) In that day the LORD with His severe sword, great and strong, Will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan that twisted serpent; And He will slay the reptile that *is* in the sea.

⁵³⁰ Psalm 91:13 (NKJV) You shall tread upon the lion and the cobra, The young lion and the serpent you shall trample underfoot.

⁵³¹ Revelation 20:2 (KJV) And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years.

3.6.6.1.6 Leviathan

Leviathan, the Hebrew word occurs six times in the Bible. The root word indicates something “wreathed” or “gathered into folds”. With the exception of Job 3:8⁵³², Biblical references appear to signify some aquatic creatures with qualities of immense strength.

Strong’s #H3882 (eSword)	Strong’s #H3314 <i>liv-yaw-thawn</i> From H3867; a <i>wreathed</i> animal, that is, a <i>serpent</i> (especially the <i>crocodile</i> or some other large sea monster); figuratively the constellation of the <i>dragon</i> ; also as a symbol of Babylon: - leviathan, mourning.	Psalm 74:14 ⁵³³ Isaiah 27:1 ⁵³⁴ Genesis 3:1 ⁵³⁵ Psalm 104:26 ⁵³⁶
-----------------------------	---	---

Table 11: Biblical reference: Leviatan

3.6.6.1.7 Beast

Strong’s #2342 (eSword)	‘ <i>thēriōn</i> ’ Diminutive from the same as G2339; a <i>dangerous animal</i> : - (venomous, wild) beast.	Revelation 13:2 ⁵³⁷
----------------------------	--	--------------------------------

Table 12: Biblical reference: Beast

⁵³² Job 3:8 (KJV) Let them curse it that curse the day, who are ready to raise up their mourning.

⁵³³ Psalm 74:14 (AMP) You crushed the heads of Leviathan (Egypt); You gave him as food for the creatures of the wilderness

⁵³⁴ Isaiah 27:1 (NKJV) In that day the LORD with His severe sword, great and strong, Will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan that twisted serpent; And He will slay the reptile that *is* in the sea.

⁵³⁵ Genesis 3:1 (AMP) Now the serpent was more crafty (subtle, skilled in deceit) than any living creature of the field which the LORD God had made. And the serpent (Satan) said to the woman, “Can it really be that God has said, ‘You shall not eat from any tree of the garden’?”

⁵³⁶ Psalm 104:26 (AMP) There the ships [of the sea] sail, And Leviathan [the sea monster], which You have formed to play there.

⁵³⁷ Revelation 13:2 (KJV) And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

3.6.6.1.8 Satan

Strong's #G4567 (eSword)	' <i>Satanas</i> ' Of Chaldee origin corresponding to G4566 (with the definite article affixed); <i>the accuser</i> , that is, the <i>devil</i> : - Satan.	Romans 16:20 ⁵³⁸ 2 Corinthians 11:4 ⁵³⁹ Revelation 12:9 ⁵⁴⁰
--------------------------	---	--

Table 13: Biblical reference: Satan

3.6.6.1.9 Devil

Strong's #G3789 (eSword)	' <i>Ophis</i> ' Probably from G3700 (through the idea of <i>sharpness</i> of vision); a <i>snake</i> , figuratively (as a type of sly cunning) an artful <i>malicious</i> person, especially <i>Satan</i> : - serpent.	Matthew 7:10 ⁵⁴¹
Strong's #G1228 (eSword)	' <i>Diabolos</i> ' From G1225; a <i>traducer</i> , specifically <i>Satan</i> (compare [H7854]): - false accuser, devil, slanderer.	Revelation 12:9 ⁵⁴²

Table 14: Biblical reference: Devil

⁵³⁸ Romans 16:20 (KJV) And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

⁵³⁹ 2 Corinthians 11:4 (NKJV) For if he who comes preaches another Jesus whom we have not preached, or *if* you receive a different spirit which you have not received, or a different gospel which you have not accepted—you may well put up with it!

⁵⁴⁰ Revelation 12:9 (ESV) And the great dragon was thrown down, that ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world—he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

⁵⁴¹ Matthew 7:10 (NKJV) Or if he asks for a fish, will he give him a serpent?

⁵⁴² Revelation 12:9 (AMP) And the great dragon was thrown down, the age-old serpent who is called the devil and Satan, he who *continually* deceives *and* seduces the entire inhabited world; he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

3.6.6.1.10 Viper

Strong's #H660 (eSword)	'eph'eh' From H659 (in the sense of <i>hissing</i>); an <i>asp</i> or other venomous serpent: - viper.	Isaiah 30:6 ⁵⁴³
----------------------------	--	----------------------------

Table 15: Biblical reference: Viper

3.6.6.1.11 Python

Biblical references to Water Spirits referred to as 'Python'

The slave girl reported in Acts 16 had a spirit of divination, or literally, "a spirit, a python," association with divination.

Strong's #4366 (eSword)	Puthōn (the name of the region where Delphi, the seat of the famous <i>oracle</i> , was located); a <i>Python</i> , that is, (by analogy with the supposed <i>diviner</i> there) <i>inspiration</i> (<i>soothsaying</i>): - divination.	Acts 16:16 ⁵⁴⁴
----------------------------	---	---------------------------

Table 16: Biblical reference: Serpent

3.6.6.1.12 Additional References

Prof. Dr. Brand⁵⁴⁵ also identified the following:

⁵⁴³ Isaiah 30:6 (KJV) The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence come the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them.

⁵⁴⁴ Acts 16:16 (NKJV) Now it happened, as we went to prayer, that a certain slave girl possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much profit by fortune-telling.

⁵⁴⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 784-786

- **Battle among the “gods”⁵⁴⁶:** A heavenly council consisting of multitudes of other powerful heavenly beings called “gods,” “sons,” or “angels,” responsible to manifest God’s will and to engage in battle on God’s behalf. They had the freedom to choose to be, or not to be obedient to God. Regardless the choice, they had a significant influence on history.
- **Mermaids (female) and Mermen (Male):** A creature generally known to have a body of a human with legs replaced by the tail of a fish. Although they have the ability to live on land, they are more known to find their habitat in the sea’s/oceans as well as inland waters. The author’s research⁵⁴⁷ identified the three types of mermaids as Nymphs (demonic spirits associated with particular locations), Naiads (fresh water or Aquarius spirits) and Oceanides (sea spirits with the ability to live in fresh water).
- **Dagon:** The fertility god with a human torso and upper body and fish tail as lower body. Babylonian, Phoenician and Philistine cultures acknowledged Dagon. He is admired as a storm or sea-god. Biblical references to Dagon Strong’s #1712 **daw-gohn' From H1709; the fish god; a Philistine deity.** (Also Revelation 12:3⁵⁴⁸, 12:7⁵⁴⁹, 13:4⁵⁵⁰, 20:2⁵⁵¹)

When the Philistines took the ark of God, they brought it into the house of Dagon and set it by Dagon

1 Samuel 5:2 (NKJV)

⁵⁴⁶ Psalm 82:1-8 (KJV) God standeth in the congregation of the mighty; he judgeth among the gods. How long will ye judge unjustly, and accept the persons of the wicked? Selah. Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy. Deliver the poor and needy: rid them out of the hand of the wicked. They know not, neither will they understand; they walk on in darkness: all the foundations of the earth are out of course. I have said, Ye are gods; and all of you are children of the most High. But ye shall die like men, and fall like one of the princes. Arise, O God, judge the earth: for thou shalt inherit all nations.

⁵⁴⁷ Divine Supernatural Realms. Underwater Kingdom of the Devil. Mermaids-Human Hybrids and Demons. Available at: <https://adivineencounter.weebly.com/underwater-kingdom-of-satan.html>

⁵⁴⁸ Revelation 12:3 (KJV) And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.

⁵⁴⁹ Revelation 12:7 (KJV) And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels,

⁵⁵⁰ Revelation 13:4 (KJV) And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?

⁵⁵¹ Revelation 20:2 (KJV) And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,

Gods of pagan religions are symbolised creatures from the heavens, earth and waters that is included in the category of nature spirits. One such a god was presented as half man and half fish.

3.6.6.2 Attributes of Leviathan and the Aquatic Entities

According to Prof. Dr. Brand⁵⁵², they have the ability to exchange bodies and spirits with humans. Their purpose is to prevent mankind from worshipping the true God, the Creator of the universe. In order to achieve this goal, several devices are implemented to deceive people such as:

- Worldly philosophies
- False Religions and all Cults

Jennifer LeClaire⁵⁵³ elaborated on the python's association with divination.⁵⁵⁴

The word divination in this verse comes from the Greek word for puthon, which translates in English as "python." Vine's Dictionary explains how Greek mythology believed the Pythian serpent guarded the oracle of Delphi until Apollo slew it (and then took on the name Pythian). The word was later applied to diviners or soothsayers, inspired by Apollo.

The occult-world.com⁵⁵⁵ described Leviathan as follows:

- A Primordial monster Demon of the seas and king of beasts.
- He is the ruler of Envy, the fourth of the Seven Deadly Sins.
- Leviathan, in Hebrew lore, has two aspects, male (the Slant Serpent) and female (Lilith, the Tortuous Serpent).

⁵⁵² Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2005) *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Master Degree. Calvary University. P. 84

⁵⁵³ Clair J. (2015) *What the Python Spirit Really Wants* Available at: <http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/the-plumb-line/21396-what-the-python-spirit-really-wants>

⁵⁵⁴ Divination Strong's G4436 Puthōn. (poo'-thone) The name of the regions where Delphi, the seat of the famous oracle, a Python, that is (by analogy with the supposed diviner there) inspiration (soothsaying): divination. Available at: eSword.

⁵⁵⁵ Leviathan Available at: <https://occult-world.com/leviathan/>

Occultpedia.com⁵⁵⁶ added the following attributes to Leviathan:

In general 'Leviathan' implies a formidable, huge or monstrous creature. The word is also associated with Satan, and identified as one of the demons, put in charge of all of the maritime regions. According to legend Leviathan was a fire-breathing creature of such immense size that the sea boiled when it swam on the surface. It ruthlessly and fearlessly ruled over all the creatures of the sea.

The author drew the following conclusions pertaining to occult: Aquatic entities are significant in all four divisions of the occult:

- Divination: Waters where Naiads or water gods resides are believed to hold prophetic powers.
- Sorcery: Water is used as a medium to cast spells.
- Witchcraft is often water based. Water spirits are contracted for supernatural powers.
- False religions: ***The snake is the metamorphosed amalgam of ancestors who live under the water.***⁵⁵⁷ The snake need to be distinguished from 'the big one' who is believed to be "the Lord", representing the Supreme Deity.

From the serpent's ability to twist and turn, Pastor Gary McSpadden draw the analogy to Leviathan's main strategy to twist and turn words. This includes the Word of God, (the Holy Bible), the preached Word and words spoken between people. Words spoken and the intended interpretation are corrupted.

The message is being altered from the moment it is presented by the 'sender' to the moment it is received by the 'receiver'. The aim is to achieve the following:

- To diminish the Glory of God conveyed in the Word of God and the gospel of Jesus Christ.

⁵⁵⁶ Leviathan Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/leviathan.htm>

⁵⁵⁷ Bernard, Penny S. (2003) *Ecological Implications of Water Spirit Beliefs in South Africa: The Need to Protect Knowledge, Nature, and Resource Rights*. USDA Forest Service Proceedings RMRS-P27.2003 Available at: https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p027/rmrs_p027_148_154.pdf

- To eliminate faith. Faith come by hearing the Word of God. (Romans 10:17)⁵⁵⁸
- To create confusion and disorder through misunderstandings. (1 Corinthians 14:33)⁵⁵⁹
- To eliminate unity and as such the power of prayer. (Matthew 18:19)⁵⁶⁰
- Twisted communication results in broken relationships. Some manifestations are the re-occurrence of divorce, broken family relationships, the inability to find a spiritual home and constantly moving between congregations.

The interpretations of Leviathan as a snake and water monster (could also include reference to the Nile crocodile) lurking in the water, hidden, and camouflaged but deadly in an attack, is also associated with his character. Hiding its presence while launching tactical attacks. Believers need the revelation of the Holy Spirit to identify his strategies.

The third analogy is drawn from Leviathans description as a scorpion. The scorpion's ability to sting multiple times is compared to Leviathan's ability to instigate repeated physical and emotional pain to its victim. To torture the body and soul in a strategy to deflate the believer's revelation of-, and relationship with God. Key to Leviathan's character is pride. Job 41 provides a long list of attributes which includes descriptions of untameable, fierce, strong, merciless, a double coat of armour, smoke from his nostrils, eyes like sun rays, flames from his mouth.

The lengthy description ends with the following conclusion:

He beholds every high thing; He is king over all the children of pride.

Job 41:34 (NKJV)

The association between Leviathan and Satan manifested as a serpent in the garden of Eden confirms the spirit of pride. Pride was Satan's original sin. Jealous

⁵⁵⁸ Romans 10:17 (NKJV) So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God

⁵⁵⁹ 1 Corinthians 14:33 (NKJV) For God is not *the author* of confusion but of peace, as in all the churches of the saints.

⁵⁶⁰ Matthew 18:19 (NKJV) Again I say to you that if two of you agree on earth concerning anything that they ask, it will be done for them by My Father in heaven.

envy to be as glorious as God.

In an article MaryEllen McCloud⁵⁶¹ boldly called “The Spirit of Pride AKA Leviathan”. She sensitised Christians to be cautious in their boldness to engage in spiritual warfare. They need to evaluate their motives to ensure that it is not pride motivating them to engage in battle.

“Many Christians believe they can take authority over the enemy anytime they choose. The truth is far from this. I have a simple rule: If God did not tell me to deal with that problem, then I don’t.”

Leviathan is recognized as a symbol of evil⁵⁶². In Canaanite mythology, Leviathan was believed to be a ferocious twisting serpent of the sea encircling the earth. This fearful image was inspirational for modern video games Dungeons and Dragons. Leviathan, a symbol for oppressive rulers of Egypt.

To accommodate the African perspective, the author included the following contributions by Dr. Olukoya and Apostle Colin Nyathi from Open Heaven Ministries:

Dr. Olukoya⁵⁶³:

- i. There is a very strong link between ancestral spirits and water spirits. Some forefathers had powerful charms that enabled them to dive into the river and came out with their clothes still dry.
- ii. Water spirits cause people to be polygamous and promiscuous. Cause sexual perversion (adultery, fornication, abortion, incest, homosexuality, lesbianism, pornography, polygamy etc.)
- iii. They supervise the production of alcohol.
- iv. They control commerce and the flow of money. Several international

⁵⁶¹ McCloud, MaryEllen. (2016) *The Spirit of Pride AKA Leviathan*. Available at: <https://www.replenishedhope.com/post/2016/06/19/the-spirit-of-pride-aka-leviathan>

⁵⁶² Kauffmann, D.T. (1967) *Dictionary of Religious Terms*. P. 288

⁵⁶³ Olukoya, D.K. Dr. (2011) *Disgracing Water Spirits*. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/notes/teik-chuan-giam/disgracing-water-spirits/113647082065567/>

businesses, such as Starbucks Coffee⁵⁶⁴ are apparently influenced by the marine kingdom.



Figure 5: Starbucks Logo⁵⁶⁵

v. They control fashion and the make-up industry. They design seductive dresses inspired by the marine kingdom.



Figure 6: Red-carpet designs claimed to be inspired by the marine kingdom.⁵⁶⁶

⁵⁶⁴ Divine Supernatural Realms. Underwater Kingdom of the Devil. Mermaids-Human Hybrids and Demons. Available at: <https://adivineencounter.weebly.com/underwater-kingdom-of-satan.html>

⁵⁶⁵ Starbucks Logo Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/ronaldholden/2017/03/04/mermaid-siren-princess-how-the-starbucks-logo-evolved/#56cb31f058bd>

⁵⁶⁶ Divine Supernatural Realms. Underwater Kingdom of the Devil. Mermaids-Human Hybrids and Demons. Available at: <https://adivineencounter.weebly.com/underwater-kingdom-of-satan.html>

Apostle Colin Nyathi Open Heaven⁵⁶⁷

- i. Leviathan portrays attributes of excess pride and arrogance, abnormal desire to be honoured.
- ii. It controls and manipulates.
- iii. It is accountable to no one. Dishonour constituted authority.
- iv. The man or prophet operating with this spirit becomes a cult figure.

3.6.6.2.1 Application to South Africa

a. Modjadji Rain Queen



Figure 7: Queen Modjadji⁵⁶⁸

Modjadji, (Queen of Rain, also meaning ‘ruler of the Day⁵⁶⁹) the rain Queen of the Balobedu tribe in northern Limpopo, is South Africa’s only matrilineal dynasty.⁵⁷⁰ The Balobedu is a mixture of both Venda and Bapedi Tribes,

⁵⁶⁷ Nyathi, C.N. (2014) *Water Spirits: Unmasking demonic spirits associated with the wrong use of water as a source of power. (Part 2)* Available at: <https://www.chronicle.co.zw/water-spirits-unmasking-demonic-spirits-associated-with-the-wrong-use-of-water-as-a-source-of-power-part-2/>

⁵⁶⁸ Balobedu rain queen returns. Available at: <https://www.enca.com/south-africa/rain-queen-returns>

⁵⁶⁹ Kandali, S. Down To Earth. (May 2020) *All hail the “Rain Queen” of South Africa* <https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/young/all-hail-the-rain-queen-of-south-africa-71209>

⁵⁷⁰ National Museum Publications. *Modjadji – The Rain Queen.* (September 2019) <https://nationalmuseumpublications.co.za/modjadji-the-rain-queen/>

originating from Egypt and Zimbabwe.

The Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims (CTLDC) investigated Modjadji's claim for recognition, followed by President Zuma's official recognition in 2016. The Rain Queen is one of the handful tribal South African monarchies officially recognised by Government. The author noted the significance for President Zuma, a Zulu leader to recognise another tribal leader of this stature. Her status will be equal to the Zulu and Xhosa Kings. It is the first Queenship in the Republic of South Africa.⁵⁷¹ The previous government nullified her status in 1972. President Ramaphosa attended the official coronation ceremony on April 7, 2018.

It is believed that she has the power to control clouds and rainfall. Rainmaking ceremonies are held in October of every year to communicate with the ancestors. The current queen awaits her eighteenth birthday in 2023 to take control. She ascended to the throne in 2005 after her mother's death when she was an infant.

b. Mama Wati (Mother Water)

Also called Mama Wata is the sacred female African Water Deity. The most powerful African water spirit, the Mermaid of Africa.⁵⁷² African spiritism and witchcraft acknowledge the mermaid spirits as 'Mommy' or 'Mother of the Water'. She possesses power to endow good fortune.

A study on the ecological implications of water spirits done by Penny S. Bernard⁵⁷³ revealed the following:

- As far as the author could establish, for all the African nations including the Khoi-San water is essential in spirituality.

⁵⁷¹ Diko, K. (Spokesperson to the President) (April 6, 2018) President Cyril Ramaphosa attends coronation ceremony of Queen of Balobedu, April 7. Available at: www.gov.za

⁵⁷² Divine Supernatural Realms. Underwater Kingdom of the Devil. Mermaids-Human Hybrids and Demons. Available at: <https://adivineencounter.weebly.com/underwater-kingdom-of-satan.html>

⁵⁷³ Bernard, Penny S. (2003) *Ecological Implications of Water Spirit Beliefs in Southern Africa: The Need to Protect Knowledge, Nature, and Resource Rights*. USDA Forest Service Proceedings RMRS-P-27. 2003. Available at: https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p027/rmrs_p027_148_154.pdf

- The natural and spiritual are inseparable with the spiritual being the superior power. Water is essential in both the spiritual and natural. Their water-adoration and water-consciousness is not superficial, it involves a complex belief system impacting all aspect of life.
- The snake and mermaid are primary manifestations in their zoomorphic⁵⁷⁴ ideology. They reside in or beyond the water and interact with humans. The rivers, wetlands and the sea are the dwelling places. These places are often revered to as sacred.

c. Snake

- The snake and water spirits, providers of wisdom and knowledge, are especially associated with the calling of healers.
- The Zulu accept snakes and crabs appearing at homes as manifested ancestors.
- Is the metamorphosed amalgam of ancestors who live under the water. Ancestors live an idyllic life in dry places at the bottom of pools of 'living' water which resembles normal life where they have homes, own livestock etc.⁵⁷⁵
- Snakes reside in 'living water' or running water e.g. rivers and waterfalls. Still water of dams normally does not host snakes.

d. Mermaids

- Zulus acknowledge the heavenly princess 'iNkosaza', half human half fish, although she can also manifest as a snake, a rainbow, and soft rain.
- The Shona define mermaids known as 'njuzu' as alien spirits of human and

⁵⁷⁴ Zoomorphic, Zoomorphism is a derivative of the Greek words zōon, which means "animal," and morphē, which means "form," or "shape." It is a literary technique in which animal attributes are imposed upon non-animal objects, humans, and events; and animal features are ascribed to humans, gods, and other objects. Available at: <https://literarydevices.net/zoomorphism/>

⁵⁷⁵ Bernard, Penny S. (2003) *Ecological Implications of Water Spirit Beliefs in Southern Africa: The Need to Protect Knowledge, Nature, and Resource Rights*. USDA Forest Service Proceedings RMRS-P-27. 2003. Available at: https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p027/rmrs_p027_148_154.pdf

non-human origin. The spirit of 'njuzu' can possess diviners in order to channel healing power.

- Mermaids are believed to exit from the water at night.
- Rainmaking forces and fertility is associated with water spirits.
- Rain making forces are responsible to bless agriculture and human fertility. (Zulu)

e. Water sources

- Is honoured for its lifegiving abilities. It has the power to purify, protect from evil, and heal.
- Is essential in conducting rituals to aid communication with the spirit world.
- Is associated with the 'calling' into divinity. The individual 'called' dream of water, snakes, or mermaids. The rituals include the physical submersion into water. Water spirits impart wisdom pertaining to medicinal plants, healing, sacred knowledge, and psychic abilities. The Umkumzi reed surrounding the water is a definite sign of the habitual presence of ancestors. The reed mat and its and essential accoutrement of diviners. Direct association with water is essential for diviners.
- Foam created by some plants is used for washing in cleansing ritual in preparation to meet with ancestors in dreams.
- Oceans are believed to be a sacred place of spiritual renewal.
- The sea has mystical powers and is the dwelling place of ancestors, carrying the knowledge of the past. In Zulu tradition, drinking sea water is believed to be purgative, cleansing the body from evil. "**You are reborn after you drink it**" according to Sabelo Mlaba⁵⁷⁶. Malba is one of several collecting and selling sea water. He explained the power of the water as follows:

It is important that a small layer of sea sand is present at the bottom of the containers. According to Sabelo "the water is crying when it leaves the

⁵⁷⁶ Perros, Robyn (2019) *Below the Salt*. Available at: <https://www.zigzag.co.za/featured/below-the-salt/>

ocean” and if you take it home without the sand, in the morning the water will have disappeared and returned back to sea where it wants to be.

- The sea sand also possesses powers and is often sprinkled over household gardens to dispel evil spirits and ward off wrongdoers. **“If wrongdoers come in the night, they will not see the yard, they will see the ocean and not enter,”** Sabelo explained.⁵⁷⁷
- Killing of any water messenger such as frogs, crabs etc is forbidden.



Figure 8: Sabelo collecting of sea water (with sand) to be sold.⁵⁷⁸

f. Caves

- Caves, often with Khoi-San paintings are regularly found near sacred water sources. Only Kings/chiefs, healers, or individuals pure from heart are allowed to approach these areas.

4. OCCULTISM

One side of esoteric teaching was that of occultism, the development of all human psychic forces, which misused, leads to the practice of magic. The esoteric part of all religions or hermeticism, the teaching and practise of

⁵⁷⁷ Perros, Robyn (2019) *Below the Salt*. Available at: <https://www.zigzag.co.za/featured/below-the-salt/>

⁵⁷⁸ Perros, Robyn (2019) *Below the Salt*. Available at: <https://www.zigzag.co.za/featured/below-the-salt/>

occultism, led to the development of what might be termed the religion of the secret, which eventually overshadowed and helped to dissimulate subversive activities.⁵⁷⁹

4.1 Occultism Defined

Deriving from Latin, Occult means **“hidden, secret, dark, mysterious, or concealed”**⁵⁸⁰. Occult practices therefore mission to uncover that which is hidden by means of observing and accessing the supernatural.

Modern Occultism is on the one hand practical Cabala and on the other, Indian Yogism, both of which have always had their adepts more or less openly. The Cabala is Occult Science itself. It is the secret theology of the initiates, theology essentially Satanic. In a word, counter-theology.⁵⁸¹

The following is presented as fundamental truths relevant to the origin of occultism:

- God created man as spirit first and foremost.
- God created man with the intention to establish a spiritual relationship and fellowship.
- Satan distorted this spiritual relationship. As a result of sin man forfeited his fellowship with God resulting in a spiritual void.

Satan initiated a variety of counterfeits to simulate the Holy Spirit with the aim to fill the spiritual void steering man away from God to prohibit man from having a Godly relationship.

Occultic categories of Divination, Sorcery, Witchcraft, False religions and general occultic practices are presented in the following categories:

- Defining each phenomenon: Divination, Sorcery, Witchcraft, False religions and general occultic practices.

⁵⁷⁹ Queenborough, Lady (Edith Starr Miller) (1933) *Occult Theocracy*. Los Angeles California: The Christian Book Club of America. P. 28

⁵⁸⁰ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 104

⁵⁸¹ Queenborough, Lady (Edith Starr Miller) (1933) *Occult Theocracy*. Los Angeles California: The Christian Book Club of America. P. 28

- Occultic phenomenon mentioned in the Bible. Dr. Ed Murphy⁵⁸² refers to these as “Christian Occultism”, differentiating them from “Non-Christian Occultism” not mentioned in the Bible.

The author cautioned that this differentiation might create the impression that “Christian occultism” is i) a general application or behaviour among Christian, ii) incorporated in Christian dogma iii) approved by God. All three conclusions or interpretations are false.

- Contemporary occult practices. In addition to the numerous occultic practices mentioned in the Bible, multitudes of occult practices developed over time. One generic theme is the animosity and hate towards Jesus Christ, the absolute denial of His Lordship and salvation for all with the goal to prevent successful evangelism to unbelievers, and the prevention of spiritual growth of Christians keeping them in bondage and fearful.

4.2 A Biblical Perspective

Lessons from the ministry of Jesus Christ

- Jesus’ disciples

Paul commanded the spirit of divination to ‘come out’ of the slave girl reported in Acts 16⁵⁸³. The occult in both the Old and New Testament is associated with “evil spirits” or “demons”.

“Christian Occultism”⁵⁸⁴ focusses on the following three categories⁵⁸⁵:

- Doctrine and persons of Jesus Christ

⁵⁸² Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 444

⁵⁸³ Acts 16:16-18 (NKJV) Now it happened, as we went to prayer, that a certain slave girl possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much profit by fortune-telling. This girl followed Paul and us, and cried out, saying, “These men are the servants of the Most High God, who proclaim to us the way of salvation.” And this she did for many days. But Paul, greatly annoyed, turned and said to the spirit, “I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her.” And he came out that very hour.

⁵⁸⁴ Christian Occultism as per definition of Dr. Ed Murphy: Occult practices mentioned in the Bible.

⁵⁸⁵ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 446

- Doctrine and working of the Holy Spirit
- Body of Christ⁵⁸⁶

Scripture provides several lists of occult practices:

“When you enter the land which the LORD your God is giving you, you shall not learn to imitate the detestable (repulsive) practices of those nations. There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or daughter pass through the fire [as a sacrifice], one who uses divination and fortune-telling, one who practices witchcraft, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer, or one who casts a charm or spell, or a medium, or a spiritist, or a necromancer [who seeks the dead]. For everyone who does these things is utterly repulsive to the LORD; and because of these detestable practices the LORD your God is driving them out before you.

You shall be blameless (complete, perfect) before the LORD your God. For these nations which you shall dispossess listen to those who practice witchcraft and to diviners and fortune-tellers, but as for you, the LORD your God has not allowed you to do so.

“The LORD your God will raise up for you a prophet like me [Moses] from among you, from your countrymen (brothers, brethren). You shall listen to him.

Deuteronomy 18:9-15 (AMP)

And he caused his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom: also he observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft, and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke him to anger.

2 Chronicles 33:6 (KJV)

Bible translations accommodated different terminologies and translations for the same occultic practice:⁵⁸⁷

Witchcraft (NKJV) is also translated to practice black magic (TLB) and augur (Tanakh), fortune tellers and interpreting omens in the New King James Version is also translated as diviner (Tanakh) and sorcerer (NIV), sorcerer (NKJV) is also translated as ‘practice magic’ (CEV)⁵⁸⁸, conjures spells, medium and spiritists in the New King James Version is translated as cast spells, asks ghosts for help,

⁵⁸⁶ Body of Christ: Collective name for believers in Christ. Christians.

⁵⁸⁷ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 105

⁵⁸⁸ CEV: Contemporary English Version

asks spirits (GW)⁵⁸⁹, cast spells and talk to the dead (CEV), familiar spirits (Tanakh)⁵⁹⁰ and cast spells, medium and spiritist in the New International Version (NIV). Paul calls Bar-Jesus, a sorcerer a false prophet, son of the devil and enemy of all righteousness. (Acts 13:6-10)⁵⁹¹. 1 Samuel⁵⁹² equate rebellion to witchcraft and stubbornness to iniquity.

Deuteronomy 18 not only portrays a list of occult activities; it also depicts God's utter disgust in describing these activities as "detestable" "utterly repulsive", "provoked anger" and His robust command stating it is "not allowed". God also proceeds to present these activities as contaminating man's position of being blameless. These activities transfer man from being blameless to blameworthy and guilty before God.

Significant for this research is the fact that the Godly command in Deuteronomy was given to priests and prophets, two fundamental offices in Israel's religion. The same text also promises a Godly prophet as counterweight for occultic activities, affirming the religious or spiritual connotation of these activities.

4.3 Divination Defined

Deriving from the Hebrew word '*qāsam*'⁵⁹³ meaning "*to discover information by*

⁵⁸⁹ GW – God's Word Translation

⁵⁹⁰ Tanakh. An acronym referring to the traditional Jewish division of the Bible into the Torah (Teaching), Nevi'im (Prophets) and Ketuvim (Writings). Hebrew Bible: Torah, Prophets and Writings. Available at: <https://www.myjewishlearning.com/article/hebrew-bible/>

⁵⁹¹ Acts 13:6-10 (NKJV) Now when they had gone through the island to Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew whose name was Bar-Jesus, who was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, an intelligent man. This man called for Barnabas and Saul and sought to hear the word of God. But Elymas the sorcerer (for so his name is translated) withstood them, seeking to turn the proconsul away from the faith. Then Saul, who also is called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently at him and said, "O full of all deceit and all fraud, you son of the devil, you enemy of all righteousness, will you not cease perverting the straight ways of the Lord?"

⁵⁹² 1 Samuel 15:23 (KJV) For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the Lord, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

⁵⁹³ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 104

various occultic practices.” Also referred to as “fortune telling” it is often perceived to be the “power branch of divination.⁵⁹⁴ Divination is also related to the Hebrew word ‘nahash’ translated to “interpreting omens”. Diviners are also referred to as channelers, mediums, psychics, spiritualists, clairvoyants, a person who claims to speak with or for the spirits of the dead.

Biblical references to divination include throwing sticks or arrows and examining the entrails of animals (Ezekiel 21:21)⁵⁹⁵, using images (teraphim) (Zechariah 10:2)⁵⁹⁶ and consulting the stars (Isaiah 47:13)⁵⁹⁷.

The root word is also associated with a snake. (Strong’s #G4436. a *Python*⁵⁹⁸). A ‘medium’ (yiddóni) is considered a wizard with a familiar spirit with whom he/she consults to discover information. In Acts 13:6-10⁵⁹⁹ Paul associates a man with a false prophet calling him a son of the Satan. Most people, Christian and non-Christian alike, desire to know what the future hold.

Horoscopes deceive many people in their ignorant belief that the practice is harmless, not realising that they open themselves to demonic influence in their lives. To this desires Prince relied as follows:

⁵⁹⁴ Prince, Derek (2006) *Lucifer Exposed. The Devil’s plan to destroy your life*. Baldock: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 92

⁵⁹⁵ Ezekiel 21:21 (NKJV) For the king of Babylon stands at the parting of the road, at the fork of the two roads, to use divination: he shakes the arrows, he consults the images, he looks at the liver.

⁵⁹⁶ Zechariah 10:2 (NKJV) For the idols speak delusion; The diviners envision lies, And tell false dreams; They comfort in vain. Therefore *the people* wend their way like sheep; They are in trouble because *there is* no shepherd.

⁵⁹⁷ Isaiah 47:13 (NKJV) You are wearied in the multitude of your counsels; Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, *And* the monthly prognosticators Stand up and save you From what shall come upon you.

⁵⁹⁸ eSword Acts 16:16-17: And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, which brought her masters much gain by soothsaying: The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high God, which shew unto us the way of salvation.

⁵⁹⁹ Acts 13:6-10 (ESV) When they had gone through the whole island as far as Paphos, they came upon a certain magician, a Jewish false prophet named Bar-Jesus. He was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, a man of intelligence, who summoned Barnabas and Saul and sought to hear the word of God. But Elymas the magician (for that is the meaning of his name) opposed them, seeking to turn the proconsul away from the faith. But Saul, who was also called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently at him and said, “You son of the devil, you enemy of all righteousness, full of all deceit and villainy, will you not stop making crooked the straight paths of the Lord?”

A person who has a python spirit can actually channel supernatural knowledge concerning the past or the future. This measure of truth is the bait of Satan's occult hook by which he seeks to capture and enslave his victims.⁶⁰⁰

4.3.1 Divination Mentioned in the Bible

Astrologers, Stargazers, Monthly Prognosticators	
Horoscopists, studying the stars to predict events on earth.	Isaiah 47:13 ⁶⁰¹ , Leviticus 19:26 ⁶⁰² Jeremiah 10:2 ⁶⁰³
Consulter of familiar spirits. Consulter of demons. Soothsaying	
An individual who has direct fellowship and communion with demons, impersonating spirits who are familiar with a deceased person's life and deceiving the living. The Occult Dictionary ⁶⁰⁴ describes familiar as	Deuteronomy 18:10 ⁶⁰⁵ Leviticus 10:13 ⁶⁰⁶ , 20:27 ⁶⁰⁷ ; Deuteronomy 18:11 ⁶⁰⁸ ; 1 Chronicles 10:13 ⁶⁰⁹ ; Isaiah 8:19-20 ⁶¹⁰ ;

⁶⁰⁰ Prince, Derek (2012) *Rules of Engagement. Preparing for Your Role in Spiritual Battle*. Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 147

⁶⁰¹ Isaiah 47:13 (NKJV) You are wearied in the multitude of your counsels; Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, And the monthly prognosticators Stand up and save you From what shall come upon you.

⁶⁰² Leviticus 19:26 (NKJV) 'You shall not eat *anything* with the blood, nor shall you practice divination or soothsaying.

⁶⁰³ Jeremiah 10:2 (NKJV) Thus says the LORD: "Do not learn the way of the Gentiles; Do not be dismayed at the signs of heaven, For the Gentiles are dismayed at them.

⁶⁰⁴ The Occult Dictionary. Links 2 The Occult A Dictionary of the Occult. Available at: http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/dictionary_f.htm

⁶⁰⁵ Deuteronomy 18:10 (NKJV) There shall not be found among you *anyone* who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, *or one* who practices witchcraft, *or a soothsayer*, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁶⁰⁶ Leviticus 10:13 (NKJV) You shall eat it in a holy place, because it *is* your due and your sons' due, of the sacrifices made by fire to the LORD; for so I have been commanded.

⁶⁰⁷ Leviticus 20:27 (NKJV) 'A man or a woman who is a medium, or who has familiar spirits, shall surely be put to death; they shall stone them with stones. Their blood *shall be* upon them.' "

⁶⁰⁸ Deuteronomy 18:11 (NKJV) or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead.

⁶⁰⁹ 1 Chronicles 10:13 (NKJV) So Saul died for his unfaithfulness which he had committed against the LORD, because he did not keep the word of the LORD, and also because he consulted a medium for guidance.

⁶¹⁰ Isaiah 8:19-20 (NKJV) And when they say to you, "Seek those who are mediums and wizards, who whisper and mutter," should not a people seek their God? *Should they seek* the dead on behalf of the living?

<p>follows: The witch's familiar was thought to be a demon or imp often appearing in the form of a small animal such as a cat. This assumed form of a witch's companion spirit was believed to trade favours to her in return for milk from her breast, or third nipple. Familiars are also though forms which can be manifested by worked up emotions for personal use to enhance a ritual or spell. These thought forms are taken from your subconscious and have aspects of you, although they are detached from you.</p>	<p>Isaiah 19:3⁶¹¹; 29:4⁶¹², Daniel 2:27⁶¹³:</p>
<p>Divination</p>	
<p>Also called soothsaying from the Hebrew word 'qāsam', meaning to discover information by means of the occult. Interpretation of sticks thrown and examining the entrails of animals. The use of images (teraphim) or consulting the stars. To divine to determine by lot or magical</p>	<p>Leviticus 19:26-31⁶¹⁴, Deuteronomy 18:10⁶¹⁵; Numbers 22:7⁶¹⁶; Number 23:23⁶¹⁷; Acts 16:16⁶¹⁸;</p>

To the law and to the testimony! If they do not speak according to this word, *it is* because *there is* no light in them.

⁶¹¹ Isaiah 19:3 (NKJV) The spirit of Egypt will fail in its midst; I will destroy their counsel, And they will consult the idols and the charmers, The mediums and the sorcerers.

⁶¹² Isaiah 29:4 (NKJV) You shall be brought down, You shall speak out of the ground; Your speech shall be low, out of the dust; Your voice shall be like a medium's, out of the ground; And your speech shall whisper out of the dust.

⁶¹³ Daniel 2:27 (NKJV) Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, "The secret which the king has demanded, the wise *men*, the astrologers, the magicians, and the soothsayers cannot declare to the king.

⁶¹⁴ Leviticus 19:26-31 (NKJV) 'You shall not eat *anything* with the blood, nor shall you practice divination or soothsaying. You shall not shave around the sides of your head, nor shall you disfigure the edges of your beard. You shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor tattoo any marks on you: I *am* the LORD. 'Do not prostitute your daughter, to cause her to be a harlot, lest the land fall into harlotry, and the land become full of wickedness. 'You shall keep My Sabbaths and reverence My sanctuary: I *am* the LORD. 'Give no regard to mediums and familiar spirits; do not seek after them, to be defiled by them: I *am* the LORD your God.

⁶¹⁵ Deuteronomy 18:10 (NKJV) There shall not be found among you *anyone* who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, *or one* who practices witchcraft, *or a soothsayer*, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁶¹⁶ Numbers 22:7 (NKJV) So the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian departed with the diviner's fee in their hand, and they came to Balaam and spoke to him the words of Balak.

⁶¹⁷ Number 23:23 (NKJV) "For *there is* no sorcery against Jacob, Nor any divination against Israel. It now must be said of Jacob And of Israel, 'Oh, what God has done!'

⁶¹⁸ Acts 16:16 (NKJV) Now it happened, as we went to prayer, that a certain slave girl possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much profit by fortune-telling.

scroll. Also called fortune telling.	Ezekiel 21:21 ⁶¹⁹ ; 2 Kings 23:24 ⁶²⁰ ; Zachariah 10:2 ⁶²¹ Isaiah 47:13 ⁶²² ; Jeremiah 10:2 ⁶²³
Magicians	
Horoscopists (drawing magical lines or circles), Enchanters, Diviners, Astrologers	Genesis 41:8 ⁶²⁴ Exodus 7:11 ⁶²⁵
Medium	
A medium receives information from a spirit and relays it to others. Physical mediumship is the phenomena whereby a spirit uses a tangible, concrete object to facilitate communication. ⁶²⁶ An intermediary between the physical world and the spiritual world. Communication usually through channelling or conducting a séance.	Leviticus 20:6 ⁶²⁷ 1 Samuel 28:8 ⁶²⁸

⁶¹⁹ Ezekiel 21:21 (NKJV) For the king of Babylon stands at the parting of the road, at the fork of the two roads, to use divination: he shakes the arrows, he consults the images, he looks at the liver.

⁶²⁰ 2 Kings 23:24 (NKJV) Moreover Josiah put away those who consulted mediums and spiritists, the household gods and idols, all the abominations that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, that he might perform the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest found in the house of the LORD.

⁶²¹ Zachariah 10:2 (NKJV) For the idols speak delusion; The diviners envision lies, And tell false dreams; They comfort in vain. Therefore *the people* wend their way like sheep; They are in trouble because *there is* no shepherd.

⁶²² Isaiah 47:13 (NKJV) You are wearied in the multitude of your counsels; Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, *And* the monthly prognosticators Stand up and save you From what shall come upon you.

⁶²³ Jeremiah 10:2 (NKJV) Thus says the LORD: “Do not learn the way of the Gentiles; Do not be dismayed at the signs of heaven, For the Gentiles are dismayed at them.

⁶²⁴ Genesis 41:8 (NKJV) Now it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled, and he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men. And Pharaoh told them his dreams, but *there was* no one who could interpret them for Pharaoh.

⁶²⁵ Exodus 7:11 (NKJV) But Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers; so the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments.

⁶²⁶ Lally, T. (2012) *Table Tipping: More than just spirit communication*. Available at: <https://www.llewellyn.com/journal/article/2284>

⁶²⁷ Leviticus 20:6 (NKJV) ‘And the person who turns to mediums and familiar spirits, to prostitute himself with them, I will set My face against that person and cut him off from his people.

⁶²⁸ 1 Samuel 28:8 (NKJV) So Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes, and he went, and two men with him; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, “Please conduct a séance for me, and bring up for me the one I shall name to you.”

Myomancy	
A Method of theriomantic divination by rats or mice, which may be alluded to Isaiah. Their particular cries or some marked devastation committed by them was taken for a prognostication of evil. ⁶²⁹	Isaiah 66:17 ⁶³⁰
Necromancer	
Seeker unto the dead, consults the dead for advice and information. Communicating with the dead. Necromancy: The summoning of conjuring of the dead for divination, prophecy, or magical	Deuteronomy 18:11 ⁶³² 1 Samuel 28:7-19 ⁶³³ , Isaiah 8:19 ⁶³⁴

⁶²⁹ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

⁶³⁰ Isaiah 66:17 (NKJV) “Those who sanctify themselves and purify themselves, *To go* to the gardens After an *idol* in the midst, Eating swine’s flesh and the abomination and the mouse, Shall be consumed together,” says the LORD.

⁶³² Deuteronomy 18:11 (NKJV) or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead.

⁶³³ 1 Samuel 28:7-19 (NKJV) Then Saul said to his servants, “Find me a woman who is a medium, that I may go to her and inquire of her.” And his servants said to him, “In fact, *there is* a woman who is a medium at En Dor.” So Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes, and he went, and two men with him; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, “Please conduct a séance for me, and bring up for me the one I shall name to you.” Then the woman said to him, “Look, you know what Saul has done, how he has cut off the mediums and the spiritists from the land. Why then do you lay a snare for my life, to cause me to die?” And Saul swore to her by the LORD, saying, “As the LORD lives, no punishment shall come upon you for this thing.” Then the woman said, “Whom shall I bring up for you?” And he said, “Bring up Samuel for me.” When the woman saw Samuel, she cried out with a loud voice. And the woman spoke to Saul, saying, “Why have you deceived me? For you *are* Saul!” And the king said to her, “Do not be afraid. What did you see?” And the woman said to Saul, “I saw a spirit ascending out of the earth.” So he said to her, “What *is* his form?” And she said, “An old man is coming up, and he *is* covered with a mantle.” And Saul perceived that it *was* Samuel, and he stooped with *his* face to the ground and bowed down. Now Samuel said to Saul, “Why have you disturbed me by bringing me up?” And Saul answered, “I am deeply distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and God has departed from me and does not answer me anymore, neither by prophets nor by dreams. Therefore I have called you, that you may reveal to me what I should do.” Then Samuel said: “So why do you ask me, seeing the LORD has departed from you and has become your enemy? And the LORD has done for Himself as He spoke by me. For the LORD has torn the kingdom out of your hand and given it to your neighbor, David. Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD nor execute His fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore the LORD has done this thing to you this day. Moreover the LORD will also deliver Israel with you into the hand of the Philistines. And tomorrow you and your sons *will be* with me. The LORD will also deliver the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.”

⁶³⁴ Isaiah 8:19 (NKJV) And when they say to you, “Seek those who are mediums and wizards, who whisper and mutter,” should not a people seek their God? *Should they seek* the dead on behalf of the living?

purposes. ⁶³¹	
Observer of Times	
To cloud over, act covertly, practise magic, to prophesy from the appearance of clouds.	Deuteronomy 18:10 ⁶³⁵
Séance	
Séance originating from the French verb “to sit” ⁶³⁶ is an attempt to communicate with spirits. A medium leads a group of observers (sitters) to make contact with the spiritual realm to communicate with deceased. Also refers to a meeting of spiritists or spiritualists.	1 Samuel 28:8 ⁶³⁷
Soothsayers/Consulter of familiar spirits or demons	
“Sooth” is an archaic English word dated from the 17 th century meaning “truth” or “reality”. ⁶³⁸ Soothsayer is a person who predicts the future.	Micah 5:12 ⁶³⁹ , Isaiah 2:6 ⁶⁴⁰ , 1 Samuel 28:7,9 ⁶⁴¹

Water witching or Dowsing (Rhabdomancy)

⁶³¹ Necromancy. Available at: <https://occult-world.com/divinations/necromancy/>

⁶³⁵ Deuteronomy 18:10 (NKJV) There shall not be found among you *anyone* who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, *or one* who practices witchcraft, *or a soothsayer*, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁶³⁶ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 288

⁶³⁷ 1 Samuel 28:8 (NKJV) So Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes, and he went, and two men with him; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, “Please conduct a séance for me, and bring up for me the one I shall name to you.”

⁶³⁸ Soothsayer. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/soothsayer>

⁶³⁹ Micah 5:12 (NKJV) I will cut off sorceries from your hand, And you shall have no soothsayers.

⁶⁴⁰ Isaiah 2:6 (NKJV) For You have forsaken Your people, the house of Jacob, Because they are filled with eastern ways; They *are* soothsayers like the Philistines, And they are pleased with the children of foreigners.

⁶⁴¹ 1 Samuel 28:7 (NKJV) Then Saul said to his servants, “Find me a woman who is a medium, that I may go to her and inquire of her.” And his servants said to him, “In fact, *there is* a woman who is a medium at En Dor.” 1 Samuel 28:9 (NKJV) Then the woman said to him, “Look, you know what Saul has done, how he has cut off the mediums and the spiritists from the land. Why then do you lay a snare for my life, to cause me to die?”

<p>A method whereby a dowser uses a special device called a divining rod to locate water, minerals and other underground material.⁶⁴² Dowsers claim that they possess a natural sensitivity to alleged earth magnetism, water “radiations,” or some other natural phenomenon. They believe their dowsing stick or other device (often an occult pendulum) somehow “focuses” or otherwise identifies this energy so that one is able to find water or other substances or things that one is seeking — including oil, treasure, and lost persons or objects.⁶⁴³ Dowsing in modern times is also used to determine the gender of unborn babies. Also used to locate people, objects or substances and to diagnose illnesses.⁶⁴⁴</p>	<p>Hosea 4:12⁶⁴⁵</p>
<p>Wise Men</p>	
<p>Claimed to have supernatural wisdom from the unseen realm.</p>	<p>Exodus 7:11⁶⁴⁶</p>
<p>Wizard</p>	
<p>A knowing one, a conjurer, a prognosticator. Able to supply information by means of the spirits contacted.</p>	<p>Deuteronomy 18:11⁶⁴⁷; Leviticus 19:31⁶⁴⁸; 20:6⁶⁴⁹,</p>

⁶⁴² Dowsing. All about spirituality. Available: at <https://www.allaboutspirituality.org/dowsing.htm>

⁶⁴³ Weldon, J. (June 10, 2009) *Dowsing* Available at: <https://www.equip.org/article/dowsing/>

⁶⁴⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 130

⁶⁴⁵ Hosea 4:12 (NKJV) My people ask counsel from their wooden *idols*, And their staff informs them. For the spirit of harlotry has caused *them* to stray, And they have played the harlot against their God.

⁶⁴⁶ Exodus 7:11 (NKJV) But Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers; so the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments.

⁶⁴⁷ Deuteronomy 18:11 (NKJV) or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead.

⁶⁴⁸ Leviticus 19:31 (NKJV) ‘Give no regard to mediums and familiar spirits; do not seek after them, to be defiled by them: I *am* the LORD your God.

⁶⁴⁹ Leviticus 20:6 (NKJV) ‘And the person who turns to mediums and familiar spirits, to prostitute himself with them, I will set My face against that person and cut him off from his people.

	20:27 ⁶⁵⁰ ; 1 Samuel 28:3 ⁶⁵¹ , 9 ⁶⁵² ; 2 Kings 21:6 ⁶⁵³ ; 23:24 ⁶⁵⁴
--	---

Table 17: Divination in the Bible

- **Spiritism:** Belief that mediumistic phenomena is caused by spirits. Faith in the (possible) habitation of spirits in geological locations, fauna and flora. Contact with these spirits normally requires the intervention of a Shaman, but in some instances, individuals might have the potential to interact independently. The practice is causally related to spiritualism and shamanism.⁶⁵⁵
- **Spiritualism:** Spiritism in a religious context. The practice of contacting and communicating with the spirits of the dead (usually through the intermediary work of a Medium. Some scholars trace the development of modern spiritualism to Catherine and Margareta Fox. Spiritualism is predicated on two central beliefs: the eternity of the spirit or soul, and the potential (and, generally, the benefit) of contacting individuals in the spirit world. It is related to necromancy.⁶⁵⁶

⁶⁵⁰ Leviticus 20:27 (NKJV) ‘A man or a woman who is a medium, or who has familiar spirits, shall surely be put to death; they shall stone them with stones. Their blood *shall be* upon them.’ ”

⁶⁵¹ 1 Samuel 28:3 (NKJV) Now Samuel had died, and all Israel had lamented for him and buried him in Ramah, in his own city. And Saul had put the mediums and the spiritists out of the land

⁶⁵² 1 Samuel 28:9 (NKJV) Then the woman said to him, “Look, you know what Saul has done, how he has cut off the mediums and the spiritists from the land. Why then do you lay a snare for my life, to cause me to die?”

⁶⁵³ 2 Kings 21:6 (NKJV) Also he made his son pass through the fire, practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft, and consulted spiritists and mediums. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke *Him* to anger.

⁶⁵⁴ 2 Kings 23:24 (NKJV) Moreover Josiah put away those who consulted mediums and spiritists, the household gods and idols, all the abominations that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, that he might perform the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest found in the house of the LORD.

⁶⁵⁵ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today’s Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 90

⁶⁵⁶ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today’s Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 303

- **Spiritists and spiritualists** are synonymous in that each communicate with the diseased. Spiritists are mediums who claim to bring the diseased in contact with the living in a séance.

4.4 Sorcery Defined

Sorcery, a main branch of the occult, derived from the Hebrew word *'anan'* translated to mean **"to practice witchcraft"**.⁶⁵⁷ Old Testament interpretation hold the meaning as 'practices of hidden arts, magicians. New Testament Greek 'Pharmakeus'⁶⁵⁸ implies 'Enchanter applying drugs, maker and user of drugs or even 'drugs' in particular. Also called a false prophet, son of the devil and enemy of all righteousness. Sorcery is a form of magic which attempts to control or direct spirits. It is associated with drugs, potions, charms, love potions, amulets, magic, spells, incantations, curses, murder, sexual immorality, theft and violence. Drug addiction often relates to the latter four. Dr. Ferrell noted that witchcraft points to something that is crafted, as in an object or a work. Dr. Ferrell⁶⁵⁹ noted the following:

Witchcraft points to something that is crafted, as in an object or a work. It is something done to produce evil in a person, business, or city. For this evil to work, it needs a design concocted under the inspiration of spirits or project to be harmed. The sorcerer needs something that represents the person or project to be harmed.

According to Dr. Ferrell sorcerers have the ability to keep individual's captive and imprisoned in sin, vices and evil actions.⁶⁶⁰ In order to cast a spell, a sorcerer

⁶⁵⁷ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 104

⁶⁵⁸ Pharmakeus/Pharmacia Strong's #5332: pharmakeus (pronounced far-mak-yoos') from pharmakon (a drug, i.e. spell-giving potion); a druggist ("pharmacist") or poisoner, i.e. (by extension) a magician:-sorcerer.

⁶⁵⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 45

⁶⁶⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 85

needs something that represents the person or project to be harmed.⁶⁶¹

4.4.1 Sorcery Mentioned in the Bible

Charmer	
To fascinate, cast a spell.	Deuteronomy 18:10 ⁶⁶²
Conjuration	
A magic incantation or spell. The performance of something supernatural by means of a magic incantation or spell. ⁶⁶³	1 Samuel 28:8 ⁶⁶⁴ , 2 Kings 21:6 ⁶⁶⁵ , 2 Kings 23:24 ⁶⁶⁶ , 1 Chronicles 10:13 ⁶⁶⁷ , 2 Chronicles 33:6 ⁶⁶⁸ , Isaiah 8:19 ⁶⁶⁹ , 19:3 ⁶⁷⁰ , 47:13 ⁶⁷¹
Enchanted	

⁶⁶¹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 45

⁶⁶² Deuteronomy 18:10 (NKJV) There shall not be found among you *anyone* who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, *or one* who practices witchcraft, *or a soothsayer*, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁶⁶³ Conjuration. Available at: <https://bible.knowing-jesus.com/words/Conjure>

⁶⁶⁴ 1 Samuel 28:8 (NKJV) So Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes, and he went, and two men with him; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, "Please conduct a séance for me, and bring up for me the one I shall name to you."

⁶⁶⁵ 2 Kings 21:6 (NKJV) Also he made his son pass through the fire, practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft, and consulted spiritists and mediums. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke *Him* to anger.

⁶⁶⁶ 2 Kings 23:24 (NKJV) Moreover Josiah put away those who consulted mediums and spiritists, the household gods and idols, all the abominations that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, that he might perform the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest found in the house of the LORD.

⁶⁶⁷ 1 Chronicles 10:13 (NKJV) So Saul died for his unfaithfulness which he had committed against the LORD, because he did not keep the word of the LORD, and also because he consulted a medium for guidance.

⁶⁶⁸ 2 Chronicles 33:6 (NKJV) Also he caused his sons to pass through the fire in the Valley of the Son of Hinnom; he practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft and sorcery, and consulted mediums and spiritists. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke *Him* to anger.

⁶⁶⁹ Isaiah 8:19 (NKJV) And when they say to you, "Seek those who are mediums and wizards, who whisper and mutter," should not a people seek their God? *Should they seek* the dead on behalf of the living?

⁶⁷⁰ Isaiah 19:3 (NKJV) The spirit of Egypt will fail in its midst; I will destroy their counsel, And they will consult the idols and the charmers, The mediums and the sorcerers.

⁶⁷¹ Isaiah 47:13 (NKJV) You are wearied in the multitude of your counsels; Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, *And* the monthly prognosticators Stand up and save you From what shall come upon you.

Under a spell, bewitched, magical. ⁶⁷²	Leviticus 19:26 ⁶⁷³ , 2 Kings 21:6 ⁶⁷⁴
Enchanter	
A hisser, whisperer, mutterer of enchantments and magic spells.	Deuteronomy 18:10 ⁶⁷⁵
Sorcerers	
Strong's #H3784 ⁶⁷⁶ : To whisper a spell, to enchant or practice magic.	Exodus 7:11 ⁶⁷⁷

Table 18: Sorcery in the Bible

4.5 Witchcraft Defined

Relevance to this research in particular is the appearance of the phenomena in various categories of witchcraft in South Africa, influencing individuals and families in a social context, the economy, and politics.

Larry Huch⁶⁷⁸ quoted Strong's to describe witchcraft as **“to fascinate by false representation, to assent, affirm, profess, say.”** Witchcraft is perceived to be the ‘power branch’⁶⁷⁹ of the occult. It derives from the Hebrew term **“Kashap” which means to practice or use witchcraft. The practice seems to involve the use of**

⁶⁷² Enchanted. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/enchanted>

⁶⁷³ Leviticus 19:26 (NKJV) ‘You shall not eat *anything* with the blood, nor shall you practice divination or soothsaying.

⁶⁷⁴ 2 Kings 21:6 (NKJV) Also he made his son pass through the fire, practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft, and consulted spiritists and mediums. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke *Him* to anger.

⁶⁷⁵ Deuteronomy 18:10 (ESV) There shall not be found among you anyone who burns his son or his daughter as an offering, anyone who practices divination or tells fortunes or interprets omens, or a sorcerer

⁶⁷⁶ eSword Exodus 7:11 (KJV) Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers: now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments.

⁶⁷⁷ Exodus 7:11 (ESV) Then Pharaoh summoned the wise men and the sorcerers, and they, the magicians of Egypt, also did the same by their secret arts.

⁶⁷⁸ Huch, Larry (2006) *10 Curses that Block the Blessing*. United States of America: Larry Huch Ministries. P. 137

⁶⁷⁹ Prince, Derek (2006) *Lucifer Exposed. The Devil's plan to destroy your life*. Baldock: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 91

magic to compel a god or demon to do one's bidding by the use of spells or incantations.⁶⁸⁰

According to Dr. Ferrell⁶⁸¹, **witchcraft points to something that is crafted, as in an object or a work. It is something done to produce evil in a person, business, or city. For the evil to work, it needs a design concocted under the inspiration of spirits of witchcraft.**

The craft is also referred to as wicca, (wise ones), the old religion, womanspirit, goddess worship or the craft. The application of magic to move a demon to act according to a spell or incarnation.

The distinction between black witchcraft intending harm calling on the help of demons and white witchcraft intending to do good or render help with the help of angels is false. In both instances' witches claim similar supernatural power.⁶⁸²

All occultic practices are forbidden by God. It is furthermore not Biblical to command or worship angels. (Revelation 22:8,9)⁶⁸³. Believers are only allowed to request God to give His angels command to render assistance. (Judges 13:8)⁶⁸⁴

Witchcraft normally sends a word with a person's name through the air to produce a wrong thought or control pattern in a person, thus capturing his or her freedom to worship. One word, thought or action that enters a person's thinking can cause decay to begin.⁶⁸⁵ (Supernatural aspect)

⁶⁸⁰ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 104

⁶⁸¹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc.

⁶⁸² Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 109, 277

⁶⁸³ Revelation 22:8 (NKJV) Now I, John, saw and heard these things. And when I heard and saw, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel who showed me these things.; Revelation 22:9 (NKJV) Then he said to me, "See *that you do not do that*. For I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren the prophets, and of those who keep the words of this book. Worship God."

⁶⁸⁴ Judges 13:8 (NKJV) Then Manoah prayed to the LORD, and said, "O my Lord, please let the Man of God whom You sent come to us again and teach us what we shall do for the child who will be born."

⁶⁸⁵ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 156

Prince⁶⁸⁶ identified witchcraft to have two aspects of the natural and the supernatural.

He summarised the operation of witchcraft as consisting of three key words: manipulation and intimidation with domination being the ultimate goal. This correlates with the association of rebellion and illegitimate authority. Dr. Ferrell⁶⁸⁷ contributed as follows:

The word witchcraft points to something that is crafted, as in an object or a word. It is something done to produce evil in a person, business, or city. For the evil to work, it needs a design concocted under the inspiration of spirits of witchcraft. The sorcerer needs something that represents the person or project to be harmed.

Prof. Dr. Brand⁶⁸⁸ differentiated between different witchcraft categories as follows:

- **Blind witchcraft** is the lowest level of all witchcraft operations. Persons might not know he/she is a witch and as such they do not operate consciously as one. Blind witches must be subjected to a process of manipulation called 'blind initiation' to receive the mark of destruction.
- **Red witchcraft** aims to eliminate the Power of God through unbelief, persisting sins, religion, ignorance, sleeping in Churches, spiritual blindness, sectarianism, familiar spirits, heresies, visions and dreams, pride, rejection, the witches' tent, etc.

Persisting sin lifts God's protecting shield resulting in a spiritual canopy (tent) raised by witches to cover homes, churches etc. substituting the shield of God. Repentance is the avenue to abandon this canopy. Thereafter the witches' tent can be cancelled.

- **White witchcraft** is an occult practice focussing on deception and uses the

⁶⁸⁶ Prince, Derek (2006) *Lucifer Exposed. The Devil's plan to destroy your life*. Baldock: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 86

⁶⁸⁷ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 45

⁶⁸⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. South Africa: Râdâh Ministries. PP. 59-60.

art of fortune telling, geomancy⁶⁸⁹, gemstones, occult mantras, natal astrology⁶⁹⁰, shadow reading, hypnotism, physiognomy⁶⁹¹ palmistry, talismans, Ouija boards, tarot cards and crystal balls. The craft establishes deception through guarding spirits, fear, torment, horoscopes, debts, cult practices, poverty, sickness, rock music, curses, rebellion, queen of the coast, mermaids, Feminism, discord, gossip, sex, religion, marriage breaking etc. It includes Wicca and secret societies. (Freemasonry, Gardnerian covens, Sicilian covens, Dianic witchcraft and Alexandrian covens.)

- **Black witchcraft** aims to cause death before the individual's salvation by accepting Christ as their saviour. Avenues of sickness, plagues, a variety of problems, infirmity, fear, rejection, suicide, curses, idolatry, cults, besetting sins, and binding words are followed to achieve the goal.
- Black witchcraft originated in Africa and operate through a combination of juju and voodoo occultism. Juju includes a variety of items, superstitiously venerated and used to spell curses: charms, amulets, pieces of clothing, roots, leaves, holy water, a fetish, burned objects etc. Supernatural power is attributed to these objects, or the system of observances connected therewith. General witchcraft is a common phenomenon inspired by revenge, jealousy and envy, hatred, racism etc.

The South African application of witchcraft was discussed in Chapter Five.

Richards⁶⁹² mentioned that Hellenistic and Mesopotamian literature differentiated between white magic intended to do good when the sorcerer

⁶⁸⁹ Geomancy: A method of divination that interpret markings on the ground or the patterns formed by tossed handfuls of soil, rocks, or sand. Râdâh Academy. Van Gevangenskap na Vryheid.

⁶⁹⁰ Natal astrology: The system of astrology based upon the concept that each individual's personality or path in life can be determined by constructing a natal chart for the exact date, time, and location of a person's birth.

⁶⁹¹ Physiognomy: The assessment of a person's character or personality from their outer appearance, especially the face.

⁶⁹² Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 277

calls on the help of angels in contrast to black magic intended to harm when the sorcerer calls on demons. However, Scripture makes no distinction between white and black magic and forbids all occult practices.

- **Kali witchcraft** originated in India through the worship of Kali⁶⁹³ and Durga⁶⁹⁴, the oldest female psychic entity. This witchcraft uses human blood for money and body parts for rituals. The craft has the power to wreck nations.
- **Abra Melin witchcraft**, also called Rajo witchcraft is the primary category of all witchcraft operations. The craft, practiced around the world, originated in Babylon and includes major parts of the Chinese occult mystery known as “Yee Jing”. Its principles are presented in the renowned occult book “I Ching” (The Book of Changes).

It developed into the foundation of divination in China and practitioners include the Hermetic Order of Golden Dawn, Aleister Crowley, Rosicrucianism (AMORC⁶⁹⁵), and Hebrew occultism (Kaballah).

- **Biblical witchcraft** Witchcraft was already a familiar phenomenon in Biblical times. Evidence is found in the Old as well as in the New Testaments.

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

1 Samuel 15:23 (NKJV)

This scripture portrays the prophet Samuels conversation with King Saul where he compares rebellion to witchcraft and stubbornness to idolatry. In essence this implies rebellion to be the root of witchcraft and stubbornness

⁶⁹³ Kali: Cartwright, M. (2013) Kali is the Hindu of death, time, and doomsday and is often associated with sexuality and violence but is also considered a strong mother-figure and symbolic of motherly-love. Kali also embodies *shakti* - feminine energy. Available at: <https://www.ancient.eu/Kali/>

⁶⁹⁴ Durga: In Hinduism, the goddess Durga, also known as Shakti or Devi, is the protective mother of the universe. Durga means ‘a fort’ fitting her militant nature. She is worshipped as the goddess of strength. She has between 8 and 18 arms and hold a symbolic object in each hand.

Rajhans, Shri Gyan. "The Goddess Durga: The Mother of the Hindu Universe." Learn Religions, February 11, 2020. Available at: www.learnreligions.com/goddess-durga-1770363.

⁶⁹⁵ AMORC - Ancient and Mystical Order Rosæ Crucis

to be the root of idolatry. Stubbornness implies an unwavering opinion, considering own opinion as the absolute truth, overshadowing the truth of God's Word. In this sense it becomes an idol. Rebellion in its core rejects the authority of God. In both instances, God's Word is rejected.

'Do not turn to mediums or spiritists; do not seek them out to be defiled by them. I am the LORD your God.

Leviticus 19:31 (NASB)

Paul included sorcery as a manifestation of the works of the flesh.

Now the works of the flesh are evident, which are, adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lewdness, idolatry, sorcery.

Galatians 5:19-20 (NKJV)

The Galatians were followers of Christ, baptised with the Holy Spirit and they had witnessed God's miracles. Nonetheless, they were bewitched. The important conclusion that might be drawn is the fact that Christians are not automatically safeguarded or protected against witchcraft.

This Scripture reveals the fundamental aim of Witchcraft: to obscure the truth of Jesus Christ. Dr. Ferrell⁶⁹⁶ warned believers by stating:

The devil is an imitator and knows how to unite the visible with the invisible. He uses the power of curses and witchcraft to establish his designs upon the earth.

Central in the practice of witchcraft is the phenomena of curse. Discussion of curses in point 4 of this Chapter.

4.5.1 Witchcraft Mentioned in the Bible

Bewitched			
Strong's	#940 ⁶⁹⁷	baskaino	Galatians 3:1 ⁶⁹⁸

⁶⁹⁶ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 42

⁶⁹⁷ Strong's #940: Bewitch. eSword

⁶⁹⁸ Galatians 3:1 (NKJV) O foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you that you should not obey the truth, before whose eyes Jesus Christ was clearly portrayed among you as crucified?

(pronounced bas-kah'-ee-no) akin to 5335; to malign, i.e. (by extension) to fascinate (by false representations):--bewitch.	
Witchcraft	
Strong's #3785 magic, sorcery. Strong's #H7081 Divination.	Micah 5:12 ⁶⁹⁹ , 1 Samuel 15:23 ⁷⁰⁰
Witch	
Practitioner of Witchcraft and magic. Witches whisper or cast a spell that influence the lives of others. Females are called witches; males are called warlocks.	Deuteronomy 18:10 ⁷⁰¹ ; Galatians 5:20 ⁷⁰² ; Exodus 22:18 ⁷⁰³ ; Leviticus 22:18 ⁷⁰⁴ ; Leviticus 20:27 ⁷⁰⁵ ; 2 Chronicles 33:6 ⁷⁰⁶

Table 19: Witchcraft in the Bible

4.6 False Religions

Any Biblical interpretation deviating from the true definition of the triune God discussed in Chapter One is considered false religion. Any other religion in contrast to the triune God discussed in Chapter One.

⁶⁹⁹ Micah 5:12 (NKJV) I will cut off sorceries from your hand, And you shall have no soothsayers.

⁷⁰⁰ 1 Samuel 15:23 (NKJV) For rebellion *is as* the sin of witchcraft, And stubbornness *is as* iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the LORD, He also has rejected you from *being* king.”

⁷⁰¹ Deuteronomy 18:10 (NKJV) There shall not be found among you *anyone* who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, *or one* who practices witchcraft, *or a soothsayer*, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁷⁰² Galatians 5:20 (NKJV) idolatry, sorcery, hatred, contentions, jealousies, outbursts of wrath, selfish ambitions, dissensions, heresies,

⁷⁰³ Exodus 22:18 (NKJV) “You shall not permit a sorceress to live.

⁷⁰⁴ Leviticus 22:18 (NKJV) “Speak to Aaron and his sons, and to all the children of Israel, and say to them: ‘Whatever man of the house of Israel, or of the strangers in Israel, who offers his sacrifice for any of his vows or for any of his freewill offerings, which they offer to the Lord as a burnt offering—

⁷⁰⁵ Leviticus 20:27 (NKJV) ‘A man or a woman who is a medium, or who has familiar spirits, shall surely be put to death; they shall stone them with stones. Their blood shall be upon them.’”

⁷⁰⁶ 2 Chronicles 33:6 (NKJV) Also he caused his sons to pass through the fire in the Valley of the Son of Hinnom; he practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft and sorcery, and consulted mediums and spiritists. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke Him to anger.

4.6.1 False Religions Mentioned in the Bible

False religions often pretend to present a pathway to experience peace and tranquillity or access to God. Scripture provides undisputable ruling on the matter:

Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts, remembering that as members of the same body you are called to live in harmony, and never forget to be thankful for what God has done for you

Colossians 3:15 (PHILLIPS)

Don't worry over anything whatever; tell God every detail of your needs in earnest and thankful prayer, and the peace of God which transcends human understanding, will keep constant guard over your hearts and minds as they rest in Christ Jesus.

Philippians 4:6-7 (PHILLIPS)

Similar to the other avenues of the occult, false religions lure individuals away from the truth of the Gospel of Jesus Christ. In many instances the pretended avenue is disguised with good intent, but very often the pretence is blasphemous and the objections are not disguised. False religions appeal to man's pride in contrast to God's principle of grace. (Ephesians 2:8-9)⁷⁰⁷. Paul identified pride in his warning addressed to the congregation in Ephesus. Prince⁷⁰⁸ identified the following categories:

- Religions acknowledging a plurality of gods.
- Religions that practice idol worship.
- Religions teaching the transfiguring and evolvment of humans to gods.
- Religions whose dogma declares that humans can achieve righteousness by means of their own effort.
- Religions offering esoteric knowledge only to a privileged few.

Paul boldly proclaimed that false religions are permeated by demonic power and

⁷⁰⁷ Ephesians 2:8-9 (NKJV) For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

⁷⁰⁸ Prince, Derek (2012) *Rules of Engagement. Preparing for Your Role in Spiritual Battle*. Minnesota: Chosen Books. PP. 149-150

urged believers to refrain from any involvement.

Pantheism is convicted that the divine is in all things and responsible to unify all things, and ultimately transcends all things. The universe is included in the aspect of God, it is not equivalent to God or the eternity of God's being.⁷⁰⁹

Sacrifices to other gods	
<p><i>They shall no longer sacrifice their sacrifices to the goat demons with which they play the harlot.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Leviticus 17:7 (NASB).</i></p>	
Passing through the fire	
<p>Children consecrated to Molech⁷¹⁰ by fire-death.</p>	<p>Deuteronomy 18:10⁷¹¹; Leviticus 18:21⁷¹², 2 Kings 17:17⁷¹³</p>
Idols/Pagan religious objects, artefacts and relics	
<p>An image or representation of a god used as an object of worship. Idolatry is replacing worship to God with</p>	<p>Genesis 31:43⁷¹⁴, Zachariah 10:2⁷¹⁵</p>

⁷⁰⁹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 248

⁷¹⁰ Molech a Pagan god

⁷¹¹ Deuteronomy 18:10 (AMP) There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or daughter pass through the fire [as a sacrifice], one who uses divination *and* fortune-telling, one who practices witchcraft, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer,

⁷¹² Leviticus 18:21 (AMP) You shall not give any of your children to offer them [by fire as a sacrifice] to Molech [the god of the Ammonites], nor shall you profane the name of your God [by honoring idols as gods]. I am the LORD.

⁷¹³ 2 Kings 17:17 (AMP) They made their sons and their daughters pass through the fire [as human sacrifices], and used divination [to foretell the future] and enchantments; and they sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the LORD, provoking Him to anger.

⁷¹⁴ Genesis 31:43 (KJV) And Laban answered and said unto Jacob, These daughters are my daughters, and these children are my children, and these cattle are my cattle, and all that thou seest is mine: and what can I do this day unto these my daughters, or unto their children which they have born?

⁷¹⁵ Zachariah 10:2 (AMP) For the teraphim (household idols) speak wickedness (emptiness, worthlessness), And the diviners see lying visions And tell false dreams; They comfort in vain. Therefore the people wander like sheep, They are afflicted *and* suffer because there is no shepherd.

worship of a physical object.	
-------------------------------	--

Table 20: Sacrifices to gods

4.7 Contemporary Occult Practices

All of the occult practices already mentioned in the Bible are still prevalent today. Additional practices developed, categorised by Dr. Murphy⁷¹⁶ as “non-Christian Occult”. Modern day Occult practices include the following:

4.7.1 Divination

- **Aeromancy:** Deriving from the Greek “aero” (air) and “mantela” (divination), Aeromancy is the divination by means of interpreting atmospheric conditions.⁷¹⁷
- **Aleuromancy:** Divination using flour. (“arleuron” meaning flour in Greek) Messages or philosophical writings are baked inside cakes or cookies e.g. the modern fortune cookie.⁷¹⁸
- **Arithmancy:** Divination by using numbers. (Greek “arithmos” means number.)
- **Automatic Writing:** Words written without awareness or conscious effort.
- **Cartomancy:** Fortune telling by means of cards, related to Tarot
- **Chinese astrology:** Was introduced by Buddha who invited 12 animals to a race to determine their position in the Chinese zodiac. Fundamental to Chinese astrology is Chinese philosophy acknowledging that everything and everyone has purpose and energy or “qi”, divided in female energy (yin) and

⁷¹⁶ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 445

⁷¹⁷ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

⁷¹⁸ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

male energy (yang).⁷¹⁹

- **Chiromancy:** Palmistry. Divination by analysis of lines in the palm of a hand.
- **Chirognomy:** Divination by analysing the appearance, shape and size of hands and fingers to determine the character, nature and personality of the person. Used by palmist. The elements of fire, air, earth and water categorise different hand shapes.
- **Cosmology:** Study of the order of the universe.
- **Crystallomancy/Crystal Gazing:** Fortune telling achieved through trance induction by means of gazing at a crystal, crystal ball, or mirror.
- **Divination:** Another name for Fortune-telling. According to the Occult-world.com⁷²⁰ divination includes Astrology, Augury, Divination by observation, Dowsing, I Ching, Numerology, Palmistry, Scrying, Sorteleges, Spontaneous divination, Tarot.
- **Dream interpretation** (as with Edgar Cayce books)
- **Dungeons and Dragons:** Fantasy role-play game involving the spirit world.
- **Handwriting/Graphology:** Graphology is the study of human handwriting so as to determine various aspect of the writer's personality, deriving from the Greek words 'grapho' (writing) and 'logos' (word). ***“one of the forms of divination which has made for itself some kind of space in the modern rational world is graphology”***.⁷²¹
- **Hepatoscopy:** Examination of liver or certain sacrificial animals to interpret meaning to be used as guidance.
- **Horoscope:** Refer to Observer of Times. Astrology, study of star at birth, by which they profess to tell events of a person's life.
- **Hydromancy:** Divination by viewing images in water, including the colour, ebb and flow, or ripples produced when pebbles are dropped in the water.

⁷¹⁹ Introduction into Chinese Astrology. Available at: <https://witcheslore.com/astrology/chinese-astrology/introduction-to-chinese-astrology/340/>

⁷²⁰ Divination. Available at: <https://occult-world.com/divinations/>

⁷²¹ Graphology – Understanding a Personality from Handwriting. Available at: <http://futurescopes.com/divination/graphology/2314/graphology-understanding-personality-handwriting/Links2theOccult:Divination:Graphology>. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/graphology.htm>

- **IChing:** Also known as the “Book of changes”. An ancient sacred Chinese book containing of the earliest Chinese literature and considered a classic of Confucianism, traditionally used for divination.⁷²²
- **Numerology:** An occult practice which interprets numbers for fortune telling. The study of the alleged mystical correspondence between numbers and both living and non-living objects. In its basic form it includes number-based superstition for example the belief of an unlucky no. 13.
- **Oneiromancy:** Divination by interpretation of dreams.
- **Ophiomancy: (Also Ophidiomancy) This is a form of divination based on the colour and movements of serpents. It has two classifications: divination or fortune telling by the snake’s manner of eating, or by their coils, divination by means of serpents or the use of serpents to foretell the future or to divine the past.**⁷²³
- **Ouija Board:** A board with the alphabet and symbols and a planchette. When touched it moves in such a way as to spell spiritualistic and telepathic messages on the board. It is a means to contact the spirit world. Also refer to Progressive Entrapment in this list.
- **Precognition:** Foreknowledge of the occurrence of events which cannot be inferred by present knowledge.
- **Phrenology:** Divining/analysis based upon the bumps and structure of the skull.
- **Progressive Entrapment:** Is associated with the Ouija board. A method used by the spirit entities spoken to, in order to consume the will of the person who is contacting them.
- **Psychic surgery or healing: (Also called spiritual healing)** Involves balancing healing energy through physical touch or the practitioner moving his or her hand over the patient. The concept is rooted in Hinduism.⁷²⁴

⁷²² Book of Changes. Available at: http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/dictionary_b.htm#bookofchanges

⁷²³ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

⁷²⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today’s Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 260

- **Psychic portraits:** Drawings or sketches of departed people inspired by mediumistic readings and spirit communicators or visitations. No photographs or physical images are used to inspire the drawing.⁷²⁵
- **Psychic sight:** See Clairvoyance
- **Psychic spirit or metaphysical healing:** The suggesting that an individual can do the healing process. This is deeply connected with one of the main laws of metaphysics:
 - The Law of Freedom according to which a person is responsible for all his or her actions, thoughts, and energy patterns happening in both the seen and unseen worlds. By holding people accountable to their own pain or illness, The Law of Freedom also encourages people to be able to find their own cure. People who practice metaphysics believe in the concept of shamanism. In this concept, a person known as a shaman can help be a spiritual healer or soul doctor. This person is chosen by the spiritual world and has strong contact with all things spiritual. A shaman can enter a trance, communicate with others in the spirit world, and help sick people align their spiritual centers. He or she is seen as a person in total harmony with the world and as having a perfect balance between mind and spirit.⁷²⁶ Shamans practice what is known as the shamanic arts. This field of study, intertwined with the larger study of metaphysics, looks at modern applications for the emotional, physical, and spiritual effects of going into the spirit world, or entering deep in one's mind, to communicate with others, heal, or inspire.⁷²⁷
- **Psychic:** An individual supposedly sensitive to "to extraordinary, especially extrasensory and non-physical, mental processes or forces, such as extrasensory perceptions and telepathy"⁷²⁸
- **Psychokinesis (PK):** Moving objects by use of the mind and thought

⁷²⁵ Joe Shiel Spirit Portraits. Available at: <https://www.josephshiel.com/spirit-portraits.html>

⁷²⁶ What is Metaphysics.com Metaphysical Healing. Available at: <https://whatismetaphysics.com/metaphysical-healing/>

⁷²⁷ What is Metaphysics.com Metaphysical Healing. Available at: <https://whatismetaphysics.com/metaphysical-healing/>

⁷²⁸ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 109

- patterns; “mind over matter”. Psychic meaning “of the mind.”
- **Psychography:** Use of heart-shaped board with Ouija board for spirit messages.
 - **Psychoanalysis, Psychic:** Includes automatic writings, self-hypnotic, visions, dreams, trances, etc.
 - **Punk Rock:** Also called simply rock is a music genre emerged in the mid-1970's.
 - Described as anti-mainstream, anti-establishment, anti-commercial and very angry.
 - **Pyramidology:** Mystic powers associated with models of the Pyramid. A study of ancient pyramids to uncover hidden mystic knowledge or secret spiritual messages. Associated with Pyramid power, a New Age belief that ancient pyramids or the geometric shape of the pyramid generates or directs occult power or energy.⁷²⁹
 - **Runes:** A Norse alphabet developed by characters used for magical purposes.
 - **Stichomancy:** Fortune telling by randomly selecting lines or passages from books, including the Bible. *(literally, divination from lines) is the practice of seeking answers to the great metaphysical questions, as well as trying to gain insight into the meaning of existence and reality, by reading random passages from a book such as the Bible or the I Ching.*⁷³⁰
 - **Scrying:** A general term referring to the practice of divination using a bowl of water, mirrors, crystals, ink and flames to induce vision. Nostradamus used a bowl of water.⁷³¹
 - **Table tipping:** A type of physical mediumship.⁷³²
 - **Tarot cards:** The original card game of the fourteenth century had no occultic

⁷²⁹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 262

⁷³⁰ Stichomancy. Available at: <http://skepdic.com/stichoma.html>

⁷³¹ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

⁷³² Lally, T (2012) *Table Tipping: More than just spirit communication*. Available at: <https://www.llewellyn.com/journal/article/2284>

nuances. The modern practice of divination consists of 78 cards, 56 cards divided into four suits, and 22 cards consisting of a joker plus 21 cards depicting vices, virtues and elemental forces used in fortune telling. The individual seeks information from the supernatural.

- **Tea leaf reading/Tasseography:** A type of divination or fortune-telling method interpreting patterns in tea leaves in a cup once the beverage has been drunk.
- **Telepathy:** Form of ESP: Greek “impressions across a distance”. Thought reading, communication. Communicating to others at a distance, involving mind reading.
- **Thought transference:** Also called Telepathy.
- **Trans diagnoses:** Also called Psychic diagnosis. The rendering of a diagnosis by a person who has been led to the diagnosis by unexplained means.⁷³³
- **Zodiac:** The word literally means animals. It refers to the configuration of the sun, moon and planets in 12 constellations or zodiac signs associated with the 12 months. Every element is believed to portray and transfer qualities of strength and weaknesses to individuals believed to be born in a specific zodiac sign. Also referred to as “Birth Signs”. Stands in close relationship with Astrology.

4.7.2 Sorcery

- **Alchemy:** Physical Alchemy is the study of transforming properties of matter and basic elements of water, fire, earth and air and transmutation. Spiritual Alchemy is concerned with the process the individual follows to free him/herself from whatever they believe to confine them e.g. fear. Middle Age

⁷³³ Psychic Diagnosis. The free dictionary. Available at: <https://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/psychic+diagnosis>

alchemists endeavored to develop gold from non-gold material.⁷³⁴

- **Birth stones:** Precious stones associated with calendar months are believed to hold supernatural power. Wearing the stone that coincides with the wearer birth month is believed to bring good luck, channel positive energy and ward off illness, bad karmas/negative energies. The opposite is applicable if a stone from another month is worn.
- **Ankh:** (a cross with a ring top used in satanic rites)/crux ansanta
- **Apport:** the appearance and/or disappearance of physical objects.
- **Fetishes:** Spiritual embodiment in a natural object, e.g. stone, tree, doll, etc.
- **Hallucinogenic drugs** (LSD, cocaine, heroin, marijuana, sniffing glue etc.)
- **Remote influence of the subconscious mind of others:**
- **Rhodomancy:** Casting sticks into air-then interpreting omens from the manner in which they fall and land.

4.7.3 Witchcraft

- **Dianic cults:** Based on the ancient Greek goddess Diana emphasizing the traditional Goddess of Witchcraft. It is a feminine principle of worship believed to be a de-Christianised backdated version of the Virgin Mary.⁷³⁵
- **Fairies:** Beings who occupy a middle realm between Earth and Heaven. *Fairies* have magical powers and are sometimes associated with Demons and Fallen Angels. They have the capability to bewitch and possess people⁷³⁶. Also associated with nature spirits. Especially relevant in Britain, Ireland and Europe. They are invisible and can only be seen by clairvoyants.⁷³⁷
- **Gnomes:** Dwarf like, creatures who live underground and guard treasures and

⁷³⁴ Alchemy. Available at: <https://occult-world.com/alchemy/>

⁷³⁵ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 161

⁷³⁶ Occult World. Fairies. Available at: <https://occult-world.com/mythological-creature/fairies/>

⁷³⁷ Fairy. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/f/fairy.htm>

precious minerals. Only visible by clairvoyants. Rosicrucianism accepted them as elemental spirits dwelling in the bowels of the earth.⁷³⁸

- **Lust for Dominance and Power:** Jezebel
- **Silva Mind Control (SMC):** Psychic orientology. Created in 1966 by Jose Silva, students learn to use the power of their minds to relax, increase physical and emotional health and efficiency, and develop natural abilities in clairvoyance.⁷³⁹
- **Telekinesis (TK):** objects move around, instruments play, engines start etc.
- **Transference:** Process of an indwelling spirit leaving one body and entering another.
- **Vampires:** Cursed humans who need to drink blood to survive. They bite humans and animals for their blood. People bit by vampires might also be cursed to become a vampire. Vampires are able to transform to animals: bats, wolves, rats or cats.

4.7.4 General Occult

- **Acupuncture:** A Chinese system of healing that uses needles or hand pressure (acupressure) to balance the YIN and YANG energies in the body by opening blocked Meridians (apexes in the pathway). One the Chakras (key points or intersections) are open, the energy (CHI) can flow through the body.⁷⁴⁰
- **Art** involving the occult, including literature, music, sculptures, statues etc.
- **Abstract art** (under hallucinogenic stimulus),
- **Black Art:** Refers to any Black Magic operations such as Necromancy,

⁷³⁸ Gnomes. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/g/gnomes.htm>

⁷³⁹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 297

⁷⁴⁰ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 17

- Sorcery, Witchcraft, Satanism etc., (or any variation of such.)⁷⁴¹
- **Blood Pact:** A contract signed with Satan in one's own blood.
 - **Coven:** A community of witches: 6 males, 6 females, 1 High Priest
 - **Ectoplasm:** An unknown, supernatural substance exuding from the body of a medium during a spiritualistic trance and during the manifestations of spirits.
 - **Extra Sensory Perception (ESP):** A sense or senses beyond the normal five (taste, touch, smell, sight, hearing) that gives knowledge
 - **Gothic:** A para religious subculture rejecting religious ideology, exemplifying a postmodern ethos where authentic spirituality derives from a highly personalized search for existential meaning.⁷⁴²
 - **Horror movies and adrenaline amusement park rides:** Both are made with the purpose of trapping souls with fear leading to the possession of the spirit of fear.⁷⁴³
 - **Hypnosis:** Suggestion in hypnotic state or trance
 - **Incubus:** A demon in illusionary appearance of a male human being who seeks sexual intercourse with women, usually when they are asleep, raping them or inciting sexual desires only himself could satisfy.⁷⁴⁴
 - **Heavy metal rock music, acid and punk:** All destructive, demonic and occultic music.
 - **Levitation:** The rising of physical bodies into the air, object floating; supernatural power that overcomes gravity.
 - **Mind reading:** Mentalism. A division of magic in which the practitioner is able to create the illusion that he/she is able to read the mind or control other's thoughts.⁷⁴⁵

⁷⁴¹ Links 2 the Occult. A Dictionary of the Occult. Available at: http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/dictionary_b.htm

⁷⁴² Healy, Kevin *Goth Subculture Spirituality and Unique Visual Aesthetics*. Available at: <https://www.atmostfear-entertainment.com/opinions/movements/goth-subculture-spirituality-unique-visual-aesthetics/>

⁷⁴³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 76

⁷⁴⁴ Incubus. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/i/incubus.htm>

⁷⁴⁵ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. Walker. P. 221

- **Occult symbols:** Symbols used in the occult such as the Scarab Beetle
- **Occult literature:** Refers to literature with the occult and spiritual philosophy as content. The author is of the opinion that the definition of 'occultic games' could also apply to literature. The primary theme might not be occultic philosophy or practice, but an avenue to introduce readers into the world of the occultic by means of characters or occultic practices interwoven into a storyline.
- **Occult games:** According to Dr. John Weldon⁷⁴⁶, "**occultic games are not necessarily divinatory, however, it is an attempt to introduce players into the occult philosophy or practice in a fun and existing manner through playing a game.**"
- **Poltergeist:** *Meaning "rattling ghost" or "Noisy spirit" in German. A term applied to a wide array of site- and person-specific supernatural phenomena including variations in temperature, anomalous sounds, the unexplained movement of objects.*⁷⁴⁷
- **Stigmata:** Wounds that may or may not bleed.
- **Spider:** "**Spiders are like witches, webs are like witchcraft**"⁷⁴⁸ Hazenbroek⁷⁴⁹ described spiders as representatives of the Bard, the Ovate and the Druid, the guardian of ancient language and alphabet. Spiders are associated with spiral energy linking the past with the future.

4.7.5 False Religion

- **Agnostic:** Neither for or against belief in God; believes man can never know,

⁷⁴⁶ Weldon, John Dr. *Divination Practices and Occultic Games*. Available at: <https://jashow.org/articles/divination-practices-and-occult-games/>

⁷⁴⁷ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 255

⁷⁴⁸ Mondesir, D.M. *Providing Biblical Tools for Effective Spiritual Warfare*. Available at: <https://witcheslore.com/astrology/chinese-astrology/introduction-to-chinese-astrology/340/>

⁷⁴⁹ Hazenbroek, D. *Spiders as Spiritual Guides*. Available at: <https://www.druidry.org/library/animals/spiders-spiritual-guides>

- prove, or disprove the existence of God.
- **Black Mass:** celebrated in honour of the Devil.
 - **Celticism:** Celts - A group of related tribes whose territory extended throughout Europe early in the first millennium A.D.
 - Most commonly associated with the British Isles. The Celts worshipped local deities (frequently associated with nature), who were often severed by a priestly class of Druids. Human sacrifice was reportedly important.⁷⁵⁰
 - **Cult of confession:** *One of eight criteria of Mind Control. A system that requires member to disclose to their leaders their personal thoughts, attitudes, and actions that do not conform to the group's ideal. The practice diminishes healthy personal boundaries and privacy. Relates to brainwashing.*⁷⁵¹
 - **Druids:** Celtic Priesthood. Many Neo-paganism groups claim to be druidic orders.⁷⁵²
 - **Eastern meditation/religions** – Gurus, Mantras, Yoga etc.
 - **Epistemology:** Study of knowledge
 - **Guru:** *A religious teacher in Eastern religious systems (particularly Hinduism) who gives personal guidance toward enlightenment. In some groups gurus are the focus of devotion and worship.*⁷⁵³
 - **Kabbalah:** Mystical body of law based on occult interpretation of Old Testament.
 - **Indian Kachina:** Traditional religion of the Pueblo Indians of North America.
 - **Japanese Flower:** Arranging flowers for sun worship. Dates back to the Heian period and flower offerings at Buddhist altars.
 - **Jonathan Livingstone Seagull** (Reincarnation, Hinduism)

⁷⁵⁰ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 86

⁷⁵¹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 122

⁷⁵² Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 86, 130

⁷⁵³ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. Walker. P. 167

- **Mantra:** Eastern Mysticism and/or New Age term used for a word or series of words that are continually repeated (either verbally or silently). The mantra is said to help one achieve an altered state of consciousness. Mantras are often recited during Meditation or relaxation exercises.⁷⁵⁴
- **Meditation:** (Evil) A passive state of mind, open to spiritual forces, counterfeit, latent 'ego' within, and makes a self-saviour.
- **Metaphysics:** Study of knowledge and order of the spirit world; forces beyond our normal five senses. **Based on the Greek terms for "beyond the physical" metaphysics is the philosophical study of existence and knowledge; it addresses questions of 'ultimate reality. In popular, modern usage, metaphysics has come to refer to the immaterial or spiritual, and therefore to experimentation with magic, psychic phenomena or the occult.**⁷⁵⁵
- **Mind Awareness:** (Dynamics) — New and higher levels of consciousness in passivity.⁷⁵⁶
- **Mormonism:** Church of the Latter-day Saints. Based in Salt Lake City, Utah. Established on April 6, 1830 by Joseph Smith Jnr. The foundation of the movement is based on Smith's vision whereby Christ would have explained that Christianity ceased to exist shortly after the first century and that Christian creeds and doctrines are corrupt.⁷⁵⁷
- **Mysticism:** **The use of intuition and deep personal experience in the religious pursuit of union with God, contact with the divine, or the innate knowledge of ultimate truth and reality. Associated with altered states of consciousness by initiation into clandestine ceremonies or by receiving access to secret knowledge.**⁷⁵⁸

⁷⁵⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.

⁷⁵⁵ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 222

⁷⁵⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 113

⁷⁵⁷ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 105

⁷⁵⁸ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 230

- **Ordo Templi Orientis (OTO):** The most pervasive and secret orders of ritual magic organised on Freemason-type degrees. The original founder of the lodges were Karl Kellner and they were later headed by Aleister Crowley⁷⁵⁹. Crowley added an eleventh homosexual degree to be included in the temple sex magic rituals. The Baphomet symbol is displayed to entice sexual energy. The ultimate achievement is the magical adeptness to achieve intercourse with invisible astral beings/demon entities called incubus and succubus.⁷⁶⁰
- **Rebirthing:** A breathing technique reputed to release repressed material and stress from the body, emerged from California in the 1970's as a modality of the New Age.⁷⁶¹
- **Reincarnation:** The belief that living beings possessing immortal spirits or souls are reborn in form of another living being. The belief that the soul, upon death of the body, comes back to earth in another body.
- **Rosicrucian's:** Magical group inspired by Aleister Crowley.
- **Taoism:** *Chinese philosophy teaching no God exist – all is the impersonal Tao (similar to an impersonal God-force of Hindu Pantheism). The Tao is composed of conflicting opposites (Tin and Yang) that should be balanced or harmonised by yoga, meditation etc.*⁷⁶²
- **Transmigration:** Hindu doctrine similar to reincarnation, but believes that a dead soul can return to earth in the body of a snail, crab, ant, man, etc.
- **The Watchtower:** *The major publication of the Watch Tower Bible and Tract Society of Pennsylvania. Were originally called Zion's Watch Tower and*

⁷⁵⁹ Aleister Crowley. Original name Edward Alexander Crowley, (born October 12, 1875, Royal Leamington Spa, England—died December 1, 1947, Hastings), British occultist, writer, and mountaineer, who was a practitioner of “magick” (as he spelled it) and called himself the Beast 666. He was denounced in his own time for his decadent lifestyle and had few followers, but he became a cult figure after his death. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Aleister-Crowley>. Crowley believed literally that he was the Beast of Revelation and declared open revolt against God. Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 149

⁷⁶⁰ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 154

⁷⁶¹ Carr, E. (July 2014) *Rebirthing: the transformation of personhood through embodiment and emotion*. University of Adelaide School of Social Science. Available at: <https://digital.library.adelaide.edu.au/dspace/bitstream/2440/86481/8/02whole.pdf>

⁷⁶² Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 312

Herald of Christ's Presence.

- **Founded by Charles Taze Russell in 1879. In 1931 the group adopted the name Jehovah's Witnesses. Principle to the doctrine is the rejection of the Trinity and the belief that only 144 000 believers will go to heaven.**⁷⁶³
- **Yin and Yang: A fundamental concept of Taoism is harmony and unity. The word 'tao' signifies a way of life that is in harmony with the natural laws of the universe (as well as the principle that governs those laws). In order to achieve harmony, Yin and Yang must be in balance.**
Yin is the feminine, negative and passive force in the universe, both night and water are part of Yin. Yang is the masculine, positive, and active force in the universe, both day and the sun are part of Yang.⁷⁶⁴
- **Yoga:** Physical exercises designed to enable one to gain control over bodily processes. Also associated with Eastern demon and sun worship
- **Yoga: Taken from the Sanskrit, yoga means "union". Hinduism teaches that through yoga, the individual moves beyond the "surface mind" of life in the body to fully realize the union of oneself with all selfs in the one spirit.**
Five main paths of yoga: Bhakti yoga, Hatha yoga, Karma yoga, Jnana yoga and Raja yoga. Added practices are Tantra yoga, and Kundalini yoga.⁷⁶⁵
- **Kundalini yoga: A yoga discipline within Hinduism. Teaches that vast amounts of latent energy lies at the base of the human spine; "like a coiled serpent, ready to spring"**⁷⁶⁶ **Through strenuous yoga techniques, this serpent-coiled spiritual energy is awakened and rises through seven "chakras" - or power centres - within the human body.**
- **This spiritual energy is known as the "serpent force," and is considered to be "a concentrated field of intelligent cosmic, invisible energy absolutely vital to life; beginning in the base of the spine as a man or a woman begins**

⁷⁶³ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 340

⁷⁶⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 350

⁷⁶⁵ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 352

⁷⁶⁶ Stutley, Margaret and James. (1977) *Harper's Dictionary of Hinduism: Its Mythology, Folklore, Philosophy, Literature, and History*. New York: Harper & Row Publishers. P. 156

to evolve in their first incarnation...".⁷⁶⁷

4.8 Some Occult Practices in Post-Apartheid South Africa

Within the South African society, divination is integrated in traditional African spirituality. Two types of traditional health practitioners are differentiated: The **herbalist** (Sotho Selaodi, Xhosa ixhwele, Tsonga nvanga and Zulu invanga) and **diviners** (Sotho selaodi, Xhosa igqirha, Tsonga mungome and Zulu isangoma). Petrus and Bogopa⁷⁶⁸ explains the spiritual approach in the African milieu:

"there is an acute awareness, among African societies, of the three-dimensional nature of human beings, as simultaneously, biological, social and spiritual beings ... and that humans exist in three interrelated worlds: the human, nature and supernatural worlds".

Jean-Francois Sobiecki⁷⁶⁹, research associate, ethnobotanist and health and wellness educator confirmed the role of the South African diviner as follows:

The diviners are considered to be the spiritual specialists and use divination to communicate with their ancestral spirits to diagnose their patients' misfortunes or medical conditions (although both types of practitioner use plant medicines for spiritual healing). It is the work of the traditional Southern Bantu diviner to apply or recommend the appropriate action in the form of counseling, prescribing medicines and/or instructing on ritual ceremonies.

In contrast to the above African application, Dr. McDonald⁷⁷⁰ defined divination as follows:

Fortune-telling is where a person consults demons in order to know what the future holds, whereas in the case of a Godly prophet, the future is revealed

⁷⁶⁷ Bletzer, June G. (1986) *The Donning International Encyclopedic Psychic Dictionary*. Norfolk: Donning. P. 343

⁷⁶⁸ Petrus, T. S., & D. L. Bogopa. (2007). *Natural and supernatural: Intersections between the spiritual and natural worlds in African witchcraft and healing in reference to Southern Africa*. Indo-Pacific Journal of Phenomenology, 7(1). P. 10

⁷⁶⁹ Sobiecki, J-F. (2014) *The intersection of culture and science in South African traditional medicine*. Indo-Pacific Journal of Phenomenology. On-line version ISSN 1445-7377. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1445-73772014000100006

⁷⁷⁰ McDonald, Dr. Marlize (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University. P. 271

by God. Satan does have some insight into the future and can therefore provide the information to human beings through demons - this is not in God's will and does not promote His Kingdom. In contrast, a prophet is not in control of what he sees or foretells - God is in control of this through His Holy Spirit.

Supernatural and occultic practices are very ordinary in South Africa. Given God's disgust in these practices, it automatically implies that God does not look at South Africa favourably. Although a variety of modern applications of witchcraft exist, especially in South Africa, God is revulsed with reference to witchcraft it is very clear:

'Now a man or a woman who is a medium or a spiritist shall surely be put to death. They shall be stoned with stones, their bloodguiltiness is upon them.'

Leviticus 20:27 (NASB)

'As for the person who turns to mediums and to spiritists, to play the harlot after them, I will also set My face against that person and will cut him off from among his people.'

Leviticus 20:6 (NASB)

4.8.1 Divination in South Africa

- **Apparition:** appearance of a disembodied spirit or ghost form.
- **Astrology:** The study of the positions and aspects of heavenly bodies (planets, moon and sun) in the 12 Zodiac positions at the moment of an individual's birth with the aim to assess or predict their supposed influence on individual character and human affairs.
- Fortune telling based on a supposed influence of the position of the sun, moon, stars and planets. The results of the study are presented as horoscopes to guide daily and significant decisions. See "Zodiac" defined.
- **Augury:** Fortune telling by means of interpreting the flight of birds.
- **Aura/Aura Soma:** A subtle light of energy field said to surround people or objects. Mystics claim the colour of the aura communicates the individual's emotional and intellectual moods. The aura remains a focal point for psychic

power.

- **Botanomancy:** Involves divination by means of burning branches of trees and herbs. The fire and smoke are interpreted.
- **Capnomancy:** Divination by means of interpreting smoke movements after a fire has been started. A thin, straight line indicates a good omen in contrast to plumes of smoke indicating a need for immediate action to avoid disaster.
- **Chakras:** *Psychic centres, or trigger points, of prana (the life force) located in seven specific areas of the body. Reciting the MANTRA associated with each chakra will allow the Kundalini energy to rise from the base of the spine to the sahasrara chakra at the crown of the head. Some HOLISTIC HEALING practitioners uses crystals and herbs to enhance the energy flow through the chakras.*⁷⁷¹
- **Channelling:** *A channeler is very similar to a language translator or interpreter. They allow themselves to sense the non-verbal communication from another being and then translate it into human words.*⁷⁷² *Channels or channelers typically focus their efforts on bringing through the guidance of higher vibrational beings, while mediums typically deliver the guidance of deceased loved ones and ancestors who once lived in the physical realm, and are now present within the realms of spirit.*⁷⁷³ *Similar to spiritualism, channelling (trance channel) is a New Age practice whereby spirit being, ascended masters, deceased humans, or animal spirits allegedly communicate important messages by temporarily entering the body and controlling the voice of a host (channel or medium).*⁷⁷⁴
- **Charming or Enchanting:** employment of magic, attempts to use spirit power.

(a) **Clairaudience:** Meaning 'Clear hearing' it is a spiritualistic faculty

⁷⁷¹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 89

⁷⁷² Channelling: What is channelling. Available at: <https://www.crimsoncircle.com/Library/What-is-Channelling>

⁷⁷³ What is channelling? Mediumship versus Channelling. Available at: <https://www.ask-angels.com/spiritual-guidance/channeling/#3>

⁷⁷⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 89

for hearing voices not normally heard. Physic and/or information conveyed by the spiritual in the form of subtle sounds, words or ideas perceived and interpreted through the hearing centers of the brain. Regarded by parapsychologists as a form of extrasensory perception.

(b) Clairsentience: Spiritualistic diagnosis of diseases apart from science.

(c) Clairvoyance: Meaning 'clear seeing' in French, the term denotes to supernatural sight. The ability to perceive objects, locations, events or people not noticeable with normal senses.⁷⁷⁵ The content includes historical and future events. Regarded by parapsychologists as a form of extrasensory perception

- **Cleromancy:** *A form of divination using sortition, casting of lots, or casting bones or stones, in which an outcome is determined by means that normally would be considered random, such as the rolling of dice, but are sometimes believed to reveal the will of God, or other supernatural entities.*⁷⁷⁶
- **Crystals:** Crystals and gems are believed to conduct vibrational energy with the ability to open chakras and promote healing. It is the authors opinion that crystals also align to sorcery as some belief crystals to bring wealth or good fortune.
- **Magician:** An individual with magical power.
- **Medium:** An intermediary between the physical world and the spiritual world. A medium enables so called contact and communication with the dead, usually through channeling or conducting a séance. Mediums deliver the guidance of deceased loved ones and ancestors who once lived in the physical realm and are now present within the realm of spirits.⁷⁷⁷
- **Omens:** An observable event or action pertaining to the future.

⁷⁷⁵ Clairvoyance. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/c/clairvoyance.htm>

⁷⁷⁶ Divination Types. Available at: <http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>

⁷⁷⁷ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 220 and What is channelling? Mediumship versus Channelling. Available at: <https://www.ask-angels.com/spiritual-guidance/channeling/#3>

- **Oracle:** “Speaking Place”. A revelation or message from the supernatural through a medium. (e.g. the Oracle of Delphi – Greece).
- **Pendulum:** Divining-rod or fortune telling to locate objects unseen.
- **Shamanism:** Shamans have the ability to operate in both the natural and supernatural realms. Their human spirit can leave their physical body to roam the spiritual world to obtain answers. They can communicate with spirits and claim to treat sickness caused by evil spirits. Special techniques transfer a shaman into a trance to be able to receive visions. Animals can be adopted to help.

4.8.2 Sorcery in South Africa

- **Amulet:** an object considered to possess magical power to protect or spiritually empower the owner thereof. Objects may include rings, stones, gems, drawings, written text etc.
- **Good luck charms and items:** Lucky charms or signs of the Zodiac or birthstones
- **Mascots:** A person or object that is supposed to bring good luck, especially one linked to a particular organization or event.
- **Mesmerism (Hypnotism):** Essentially healing diseases by charms or rituals.
- **Potions:** A liquid or liquid mixture, especially one that is medicinal, poisonous, or magical. Potions are frequently sold at muti markets.
- **Incantation:** A spell or charm used in or as a part of magic ritual.
- **Spells:** In magic, a ritual used to enact a spiritual or supernatural effect. Spells are casted in various ways such as ceremonies, incantations, potions, or physical objects including liquids. A spell can also be an audible or written formula intended to influence a course of events. It is associated with prayer in the petition to deities to achieve a particular outcome. The outcome can be either harmful or beneficial and is applied to people, animals or nature. The

sphere of influence involves health, finances, fertility, longevity, protection, and fortune. Harm can be cast to establish illness, loss of love, impotence, barrenness, failure and death.

- **Talismans:** An object or charm believed to hold magical properties to bring good fortune or to avert evil. Talismans are associated with amulets and magic.

4.8.3 Witchcraft in South Africa

- **Black magic:** Involving hidden powers
- **Spells:** A magic ritual to enact a spiritual or super spiritual effect. Spells can be cast in various means including incantations, ceremonies or potions.
- **Warlock:** A male practitioner of witchcraft.
- **Wizard:** One devoted to black magic or sorcery.
- **Witch:** A female practitioner of witchcraft.
- **Witchcraft:** Also referred to as sorcery. A type of sorcery involving the magical manipulation of paranormal forces through the casting of spells and the conjuring or invoking of spirits.⁷⁷⁸

4.8.4 General Occult in South Africa

- **Art (Masks):** involving the occult, including literature, music, sculptures, statues etc.
- **Astral Projection or Astral Travel:** Partial or complete separation of soul and soul travel. ***An esoteric interpretation of any form of out-of-body experience (OOBE) that assumes the existence of an “astral body” separate from the physical body and capable of travelling outside it. Astral projection or travel denotes the astral body leaving the physical body to travel in the***

⁷⁷⁸ About Witchcraft. Available at: <https://occult-world.com/menu-witchcraft/about-witchcraft/>

astral plane. ⁷⁷⁹

- **Halloween:** Celebrated on October 31st, the celebration originally called Samhain (pronounced sow-en) was initiated by the Celtic Druids to appease the dead. Witchcraft and Neo-Paganism observe the celebration as a religious ceremony.⁷⁸⁰
- **Levitation:** An occult practice of the apparent superseding gravity by lifting and suspending oneself or an object in mid-air using psychic power.
- **Magi, Magic:** (Black, White, Red) A means of incantations, charms, witchcraft. Larson⁷⁸¹ noted that all schools of the occult share a common belief in the power of magic. Walker⁷⁸² differentiate three types: i) Stage magic includes magicians and mentalists, ii) supernatural magic includes spiritual and religious practices involving the alleged ability to affect events supernaturally, influencing people, or altering the future using psychic power or spells. Practitioners include Wicca operating in white and black magic. 'iii) Magick (-ck) is a philosophical system developed by Aleister Crowley as a science and art in which outcome is transformed in alignment with one's will. Magic has been used by shamans, alchemists and witches for centuries
- **Magician:** A practitioner of magic. Originally a Priest class of Medes and Persians who offered sacrifices, interpreted dreams, practiced magic and omens, acquainted with all modern and ancient arts of spiritism. Generic in a variety of occult practices.
- **Travel of the soul or journey of souls:** Similar to astral projection; in that a person leaves the body and travel to other locations called the 'astral plane' under guidance of a spirit guide or master. A 'silver cord' is said to form a connection with the physical body. 'Soul travel' is also a term that has been used by the modern spiritual group known as Eckankar, the Ancient Science

⁷⁷⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 69

⁷⁸⁰ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 169

⁷⁸¹ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 153

⁷⁸² Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 215

of Soul Travel.⁷⁸³

- **Superstitions:** A widely held but unjustified belief in supernatural causation leading to certain consequences of an action or event, or a practice based on such a belief.⁷⁸⁴
- **Succubus: Also known as the demon lover.** A female form demon in illusionary appearance of a female human being who seeks sexual intercourse with men, usually when the victim is asleep⁷⁸⁵.
- **Trances:** Form of ESP: Greek “a condition in which consciousness and all-natural senses are withheld” the soul becomes susceptible only to a particular vision. A vision in which one experiences the event in the spiritual world. The person having this experience is totally conscious, never leaving the physical body.⁷⁸⁶

4.8.5 False Religion in South Africa

International false religions are too comprehensive to list in this research. The author had thus decided to narrow the discussion and presenting only false religions to those applicable in a South African environment.

- **African Hebrew Israelites:** Carter led a group from Chicago to Israel in 1966 believing they were descendants from Israel, directed by the angel Gabriel to return home. In 2003 Israel granted them permanent resident status. They live a vegetarian and polygamous lifestyle in the desert and adhere to the Old Testament Laws. The author speculates about the relation between this group and the Lemba tribe (meaning people who refuse to eat pork and marry

⁷⁸³ Soul travel: What is soul travel? Available at: <https://www.quora.com/What-is-soul-travel>

⁷⁸⁴ Superstition. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/superstition>

⁷⁸⁵ Succubus. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/s/succubus.htm>

⁷⁸⁶ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 69

- gentiles) in North Limpopo claiming to be 'Black Hebrews/Black Jews'.⁷⁸⁷
- **Akashic Records:** Theosophical term designating an alleged library that exists on the astral plane containing all the thoughts, actions, and events of mankind. Mystics, through altered states of consciousness, tune in to this library for information.⁷⁸⁸
 - **Alchemy:** *In its original, literal meaning, theories and experiments involving the transmutation (dissolving and combining) of base metals to form gold through chemical and/or Occult and supernatural process.*
 - *Today the term carries the meaning of a mystical transformation in New Age consciousness through various mystical techniques.*⁷⁸⁹
 - **Animism:** The conviction holds all things in the universe to possess a life force, soul or mind. The belief is a significant component of many primitive religions, the occult and spiritism.
 - **Avatars:** Deriving from the Sanskrit the word "*avtāra*" means "*Descending*". *Hinduism and some New Age spirituality acknowledge alleged deities or spiritual beings descending from the heaven to provide wisdom and enlightenment to humans. Also referred to as "Ascended masters".*⁷⁹⁰
 - **Black Hebrews:** Several groups hold the conviction that the Jews were originally black or alternatively that one of the 12 tribes was black. Thus, they believe to be the descendants of this black tribe. Also referred to as the Nation of Yahweh, the African Hebrew Israelites of Jerusalem and the Israelite Nation Worldwide Ministries.⁷⁹¹

⁷⁸⁷ World Jewish Congress (March 8, 2010) Lemba tribe in south Africa has Jewish Roots, genetic tests reveal. Genetic testing carried out by British Scientist have revealed that many of the Lemba tribesmen in South Africa have Jewish origins, according to a report by the BBC. Available at: <https://www.worldjewishcongress.org/en/news/lemba-tribe-in-southern-africa-has-jewish-roots-genetic-tests-reveal>

⁷⁸⁸ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 22

⁷⁸⁹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 22

⁷⁹⁰ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 53

⁷⁹¹ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 67

- **Church of Scientology:** Scientology received official religious recognition in South Africa on March 31, 2000 from the Department of Home Affairs.⁷⁹²
- **False Prophecy:** Any teaching or prophecy not inspired by God. In South Africa some false prophets apply outrageous actions⁷⁹³ as healing remedies e.g. Prophet Rabalago sprayed members of his congregation with “Doom” insecticide:

“Rabalago, from Mount Zion General Assembly, was earlier this month found guilty on five charges of assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm and two of contravening the Stock and Agricultural Remedies Act 36 of 1947, which deals with pest control operators. The accused used household insecticides as one of his healing rituals.

These actions contributed to the Parliamentary Portfolio Committee on Women in the Presidency call for the drafting of legislation to govern all religions. ***The committee was briefed by the Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities (CRL Rights Commission) on the commercialisation of religion and the abuse and exploitation of people’s belief systems.***⁷⁹⁴

- **Freemasonry:** A fraternal order revived in the early eighteenth century in England.
- **Gnostic:** Person/group who believes they have the only correct and accurate knowledge/data.
- **Gnosticism:** Deriving from the Greek word “gnosis” meaning “knowledge”, gnostic belief systems argue that salvation is achieved through receiving secret, esoteric knowledge.
- **Hinduism:** The third largest religion internationally. Basic beliefs include Harma (personal duties and obligations), Sam-sara (the “running around” of

⁷⁹² The Scientology Religion in South Africa. Available at: <http://www.scientologyreligion.org/religious-recognitions/south-africa.html> and Scientology A Religion in South Africa VIII. Scientology in South Africa. Available at: <https://www.scientologyreligion.org/religious-expertises/scientology-a-religion-in-south-africa/scientology-in-south-africa.html>

⁷⁹³ The Citizen Newspaper (March 2, 2018). Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/news-cns/1842103/doom-prophet-sentenced/>

⁷⁹⁴ Polity. (October 30, 2018) SA Committee says legislation must be drafted to regulate churches. Available at: <https://www.polity.org.za/article/sa-committee-says-legislation-must-be-drafted-to-regulate-churches-2018-10-30>

Reincarnations”), Karma (“to act” which generates the cause and effect cycle and Moksha (“release” or salvation). Five different paths include Bhakti (devotional service) Karma (unselfish acts), Jnana (enlightenment and learning) Raja (meditation) and the path of belief (Ishvara). Reincarnation and the belief in an impersonal God. Everything, including humans, animals, deities, vegetation and earth) is a part of the universal God (Pantheism)

- **Islam:** It is possible that the Malays of Batavia, arriving in 1652 were the first Muslim to arrive in South Africa.⁷⁹⁵
- **Karma:** The Hindu principle of cause and effect.
- **Kundalini:** *In Hindu thought the Kundalini energy is symbolised as a serpent coiled at the base of the spine.*
- *Through mediation and yoga this latent energy is aroused, gradually ascending the chakras along the spine. When it reaches the seventh Chakra at the crown of the head, the individual achieves complete unions with the Brahma.*⁷⁹⁶
- **New Age:** The denial of the reality of evil centered in one evil being called Satan. It propagates “good things” and seeks to promote the full development of human potential. It champions nature, world peace and a new world order. According to Dr. Murphy⁷⁹⁷ “*the New Age movement has all the appeal of the one-world religion of the Antichrist*”. It will not necessarily introduce the Antichrist, but it provides the environment of an all-inclusive world religion with which the Antichrist will be able to reconcile.
- **Ontology:** Study of forces beyond the five senses - spiritual existence.
- **Peace Pole:** Poles on which the message “May peace prevail on earth” is printed in different languages on each side. The purpose of these poles is to

⁷⁹⁵ History of Muslims in South Africa: 1652–1699 by Ebrahim Mahomed Mahida. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/archive/history-muslims-south-africa-1652-1699-ebrahim-mahomed-mahida>

⁷⁹⁶ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 204

⁷⁹⁷ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 500

- remind individuals to visualise world peace.⁷⁹⁸ Associated with the New Age.
- **Pagan fetishes:** African Pagan Religion consists of two categories: Animism and Fetishism. Animism is the belief in spirits, a wide variety of spirits including ancestral spirits, and spirits in nature. Fetishism is the belief in the preternatural power of certain rites, certain amulets etc. A fetish is an inanimate object worshipped for its supposed magical power. It is believed that such an object is inhabited by a spirit.
 - **Pagan rites:** (Voodoo, sing sings, Corroborees, Fire Wa is king, Umbanda Macumba)
 - **Parapsychology (PSI):** Especially study of demonic activity.
 - **Parapsychology:** Branch of psychology dealing with investigation of psychic phenomenon, e.g., clairvoyance, ESP, telepathy, etc.
 - **Satan: Church of Satan South Africa:** Riaan Swiegelaar, co-founder of the South African Satanic Church noted the following: ***“the church does not worship the devil, but the church reveres Satan as an archetype for the church's nature, and a symbol for joy and pride.*** He said the church's name simply ‘means that they question beliefs ***“that which is being forced as true beliefs”***. Norton and Swiegelaar clarified the church is not affiliated with any satanic movements or churches including the US-based 'The Church of Satan.⁷⁹⁹
 - **Satan: Church of Satan US:** Church of Satan official website eludes as follows:
“Founded on April 30, 1966 c.e. by Anton Szandor LaVey, we are the first above-ground organization in history openly dedicated to the acceptance of Man's true nature—that of a carnal beast, living in a cosmos that is indifferent to our existence. To us, Satan is the symbol that best suits the nature of we who are carnal by birth—people who feel no battles raging between our thoughts and feelings, we who do not embrace the concept of a soul imprisoned in a body.

⁷⁹⁸ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 250

⁷⁹⁹ Times Live. Bhengu, C. (June 24, 2020) SA Satanic Church on rituals, worshiping the devil & religious tolerance. Available at: <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-06-24-sa-satanic-church-on-rituals-worshipping-the-devil--religious-tolerance/>

He represents pride, liberty, and individualism—qualities often defined as Evil by those who worship external deities, who feel there is a war between their minds and emotions. We Satanists are thus our own “Gods,” and as beneficent “deities” we can offer love to those who deserve it and deliver our wrath (within reasonable limits) upon those who seek to cause us—or that which we cherish—harm.”⁸⁰⁰

- **Satan: Satanism:** Worship of/or religious allegiance to Satan.⁸⁰¹ **Satanism is a modern, largely non-theistic religion based on literary, artistic and philosophical interpretations of the central figure of evil.**⁸⁰²
- Prior to the 20th century Satanism did not exist as an organised religion. Anton LaVey initiated the first church on April 30, 1966. Walker⁸⁰³ differentiated different types of Satanists:
 - Material Satanists do not believe in the existence of Satan but engage in Satanic rituals to mock Christianity.
 - Religious Satanists believe in the existence of both Satan and the Christian God, but who choose to worship Satan.
 - Mystical Satanists believe they can tap an impersonal spiritual power.
- **Superstitions:** An irrational belief in the supernatural influences, especially to bring about good luck. It also includes practices to bring about good luck. Bad luck is also associated with specific actions.
- **Trance:** A half-conscious state of mind. It is believed to be state where an individual enters into the spirit world.
- **Voodoo: The popular name for Vodoun, a religion of West Africa. Vedou developed in Haiti in the nineteenth century. A pantheon of gods is worshipped in Voodoo, foremost the unknowable Olorun (a lesser god and Obatala who was responsible for the creation of Earth and all life.) A large number of minor spirits rule over such things as emotions, natural forces,**

⁸⁰⁰ Church of Satan. Available at: <https://www.churchofsatan.com/>

⁸⁰¹ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 115

⁸⁰² Satanism. History.com (September 27, 2019). Available at: <https://www.history.com/topics/1960s/satanism>

⁸⁰³ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 286

or specific locations. Voodoo beliefs the bodies of the dead can be reanimated into a trance-like state (Zombie) by a Shaman to do his bidding.⁸⁰⁴

- **Voodoo doll:** Pins are stuck into a small, soft doll representing a specific person. The concept rests on this body being the material incarnation of a person, although religious usage of the voodoo doll uses outside spirits.⁸⁰⁵ Whatever the witch does on earth, the devil reproduces in hell and vice versa. From hell, the demons keep the design alive so that it manifests in the life of the person.⁸⁰⁶
- **Wicca:** *Focusses on the Greek goddess, Diana and goddess worship. Wiccan spirituality is a polarity between goddess and God, the triple goddess (Maiden, Mother, and Crone) is the emanating source of nature, while God is both the source of fertility through which the goddess gives life as well as the bringer of death. Wiccan rituals are performed in a circle that contains the energy generated by the rituals until that energy is released in the Cone of Power, thereby accomplishing the purpose for which the rituals were performed.*⁸⁰⁷

5. CURSES

God is light and in Him is no darkness at all.

1 John 1:5 (NKJV)

God opposes the Kingdom of Darkness and all aspects of sin. This is the crux of the conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan. Man is

⁸⁰⁴ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. PP. 337, 356

⁸⁰⁵ Voodoo doll. Joukowsky Institute for Archaeology & the Ancient World: Brown University. Providence, RI. Available at: https://www.brown.edu/Departments/Joukowsky_Institute/courses/13things/7393.html

⁸⁰⁶ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 45

⁸⁰⁷ Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers. P. 345

burdened with Adam's original sin and thus born into the Kingdom of Darkness. Man has the opportunity given by Christ to be transported, by choice, to the Kingdom of Light. In this process man's spirit is renewed. The battle between good and evil remains in the mind of men. Therefore Scripture commands believers to adapt to the 'mind of Christ'.

Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that by testing you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and acceptable and perfect.

Romans 12:2 (ESV)

5.1 Curses Defined

A curse is defined as "***A solemn utterance intended to invoke a supernatural power to inflict harm or punishment on someone or something***".⁸⁰⁸ Dr. Murphy also expanded on the purpose of a curse.

"Execration, also known as a curse. A prayer or incantation, written or spoken, for harm to come upon one, a wish that harm or hurt will be inflicted by and supernatural powers, such as a spell, a prayer, an imprecation, an execration, magic, witchcraft, a god, a natural force, or a spirit. Any expression desire that some form of adversity or misfortune will befall or attach to some other person, persons, a place, or an object; to call on divine power to send injury upon someone or something. Curses belief is also used to explain the failures or misfortunes of specific peoples, places or things."⁸⁰⁹.

The author summarised curses to be:

- Legal, spiritual, execution authorisation with the exclusive purpose to cause destruction and misfortune without an automatic expiry date.
- A curse remains valid and powerfully influential until it is identified and cancelled.

⁸⁰⁸ Curse. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/curse>

⁸⁰⁹ Curse. Available at: <https://www.occultopedia.com/e/execration.htm>

- Curses can be collective (families, nations, cities) or personal, divinely originated, written or oral, binding or conditional (such as the covenant curses pronounced in Deuteronomy 27-29).
- Physical objects might be used to ‘transport’, convey or represent a curse. Obedience and *Coram Deo*⁸¹⁰ will result in Godly blessings and the opposing disobedience will result in curses.

This implies that man, to a great extent, partakes through personal decisions whether he/she live a blessed or a cursed life.

- Curses might also be projected during a ritualistic ceremony.
- Written and oral curses (and blessing) have equal power.
- Scripture confirms the principle of an individual’s choice to curse, having the opportunity and ability to choose. (Deuteronomy 30:19)⁸¹¹ Satan’s co-workers are excluded for they often don’t have freedom to choose.
- In summary, blessings and curses can be described as supernatural invisible forces that will ultimately shape the destiny of individuals and nations.
- Ignorance and arrogance with regards to the power of curses contribute to man’s entrapment.

Blessing (or the variation ‘bless’) occurs 410 times in the Bible and curse, in various forms 230 times. Derek Prince⁸¹² included the following two imperative aspects with reference to curses and blessings:

Two important features are common to both. First, their effect is seldom limited to the individual. It may extend to families, tribes, communities or whole nations. Second, once they are released, they tend to continue from generation to generation until something happens to cancel their effects.

⁸¹⁰ Coram Deo: Pronounced CORE-um DAY-oh is a Latin phrase, which literally means “before the face of God. Available at: <https://www.coramdeoassociation.org/meaning-of-coram-deo/>

A phrase from Christian theology which summarizes the ideas of Christians living in the Presence of, under the authority of, and to the honour of God. Available at: <https://www.latin-is-simple.com/en/vocabulary/phrase/345/>

⁸¹¹ Deuteronomy 30:19 (NKJV) I call heaven and earth as witnesses today against you, *that* I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing; therefore choose life, that both you and your descendants may live;

⁸¹² Prince, Derek (2006) *Blessing or Curse. You can choose*. United Kingdom: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 36

5.2 Generational Curses

With reference to Exodus 34:3-7⁸¹³, Larson⁸¹⁴ indicated that a generation curse might continue for a minimum of four generations. Two types of generational curses exist: A specific curse (often pertaining to health/recurring physical ailments or recurring financial difficulties) manifesting in *every generation*, sometimes in the lives of individuals sharing the same name, or position in the family (e.g. eldest). Alternatively, curses can be projected over generations to a *specific person in a specific generation*. Larson⁸¹⁵ recalled an incident where Scottish soldiers cursed the fourteenth generation of a specific individual. Generation one to thirteen were unaffected.

The manner in which South Africans corporately disobeyed God and as such brought about a corporate curse (judgement) are an important question that need to be addressed.

5.2.1 Generational Curse: Curse of the Bastard

Prof. Dr. Brand⁸¹⁶ exposed the purpose of demons as a means to ensure that lies remain prominent in the lives of people. She exposed the curse of the bastard as follows:

⁸¹³ Exodus 34:3-7 (NKJV) And no man shall come up with you, and let no man be seen throughout all the mountain; let neither flocks nor herds feed before that mountain.” So he cut two tablets of stone like the first ones. Then Moses rose early in the morning and went up Mount Sinai, as the LORD had commanded him; and he took in his hand the two tablets of stone. Now the LORD descended in the cloud and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the LORD. And the LORD passed before him and proclaimed, “The LORD, the LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abounding in goodness and truth, keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, by no means clearing *the guilty*, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children and the children’s children to the third and the fourth generation.”

⁸¹⁴ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 353

⁸¹⁵ Larson, Bob (1999) *Larson’s Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 353

⁸¹⁶ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Conference Notes: Spiritual Warfare: Bloodline curse and Deliverance*. P. 3

Since blood is transferred from generation to generation, and since, according to Deuteronomy 23:2⁸¹⁷, illegitimately conceived children perpetuate the transference of that cursed, corrupted blood for ten generations, the bastard curse is a particular effective tool for Satan's purposes. Ten generations is a long time. It is at least 400 years, perhaps more. Thus, the generational curse is perhaps far more effective and far-reaching than any other device ever utilized to date."

Satan attempted to introduce the curse into the bloodline of Christ. The curse is introduced early in the Old Testament.

- The fallen sons of God⁸¹⁸ cohabitated with woman who bore their children⁸¹⁹.
- Abram and Sarah faithlessly pre-empted God's promise by taking Hagar to bore a child for Abram⁸²⁰. The bastard son Ismael was cursed by God⁸²¹.
- Lot's daughters committed incest with their father⁸²². Moab and Ammon were born. Their descendants, the Ammonites and Moabites failed to render help to Israel in the desert.

⁸¹⁷ Deuteronomy 23:2 (NKJV) "One of illegitimate birth shall not enter the assembly of the LORD; even to the tenth generation none of his *descendants* shall enter the assembly of the LORD.

⁸¹⁸ Genesis 6:2 (NKJV) that the sons of God saw the daughters of men, that they *were* beautiful; and they took wives for themselves of all whom they chose.

⁸¹⁹ Genesis 6:4 (NKJV) There were giants on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men and they bore *children* to them. Those *were* the mighty men who *were* of old, men of renown.

⁸²⁰ Genesis 16:2-4 (NKJV) So Sarai said to Abram, "See now, the LORD has restrained me from bearing *children*. Please, go in to my maid; perhaps I shall obtain children by her." And Abram heeded the voice of Sarai. Then Sarai, Abram's wife, took Hagar her maid, the Egyptian, and gave her to her husband Abram to be his wife, after Abram had dwelt ten years in the land of Canaan. So he went in to Hagar, and she conceived.

⁸²¹ Genesis 16:9-12 (NKJV) The Angel of the LORD said to her, "Return to your mistress, and submit yourself under her hand." Then the Angel of the LORD said to her, "I will multiply your descendants exceedingly, so that they shall not be counted for multitude." And the Angel of the LORD said to her: "Behold, you *are* with child, And you shall bear a son. You shall call his name Ishmael, Because the LORD has heard your affliction. He shall be a wild man; His hand *shall be* against every man, And every man's hand against him. And he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren."

⁸²² Genesis 19: 30-38 (NKJV) Then Lot went up out of Zoar and dwelt in the mountains, and his two daughters were with him; for he was afraid to dwell in Zoar. And he and his two daughters dwelt in a cave. Now the firstborn said to the younger, "Our father *is* old, and *there is* no man on the earth to come in to us as is the custom of all the earth. Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, that we may preserve the lineage of our father." So they made their father drink wine that night. And the firstborn went in and lay with her father, and he did not know when she lay down or when she arose. It happened on the next day that the firstborn said to the younger, "Indeed I lay with my father last night; let us make him drink wine tonight also, and you go in *and* lie with him, that we may preserve the lineage of our father." Then they made their father drink wine that night also. And the younger arose and lay with him, and he did not know when she lay down or when she arose. Thus both the daughters of Lot were with child by their father. The firstborn bore a son and called his name Moab; he *is* the father of the Moabites to this day. And

- Genesis 38 narrates how Tamar misled her father in law Judah⁸²³ to conceive a child with her⁸²⁴.

The result of the curse is stipulated in Deuteronomy 23.

- Believers are cut off from the congregation of the Lord.
- The ability of believers to build close fellowship with God the Father in order to experience the spirit of adoptions and intimacy with God is compromised.
- Fellowship with co-believers in the body of Christ is compromised
- The curse of the bastard legally provide entrance to the spirit of bondage (slavery), the spirit of fear opposing faith, and the spirit of corruption (perishing decay).

Jesus Christ restored fellowship with God. Because of His perfect blood offering, He answered to the legal requirement for the restoration of the relationship.

5.2.2 Application to South Africa

Prior to marriage, families in black cultures enter into negotiations with the parents of the bride and agree on an amount of bride wealth, called 'lobola' or 'bogadi'. Payment by cattle is now replaced by cash. In several of the cultures, the partial payment, or birth of the first child will constitute the marriage. The author was of the opinion that children born from these relationships are victims of the curse of the bastard and could fall prey to the consequences of an unfulfilled relationship with God.

the younger, she also bore a son and called his name Ben-Ammi; he *is* the father of the people of Ammon to this day.

⁸²³ Genesis 38:15-16 (NKJV) When Judah saw her, he thought she *was* a harlot, because she had covered her face. Then he turned to her by the way, and said, "Please let me come in to you"; for he did not know that she *was* his daughter-in-law. So she said, "What will you give me, that you may come in to me?"

⁸²⁴ Genesis 38:24 (NKJV) And it came to pass, about three months after, that Judah was told, saying, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has played the harlot; furthermore she *is* with child by harlotry."

5.3 Curses are Preceded by a Cause

The first and last Biblical curses reveal two imperative important facts:

1. A curse is always preceded by a cause. A curse does not appear without being instigated by a legitimate cause.
2. God's final judgement and eternal reign will end the power of all curses. Revelation 22:7⁸²⁵ holds the promise of Jesus' return and promise of blessing. Simultaneously, it also portrays a warning coherent with the scripture in Revelation 22:15.⁸²⁶

5.4 The Originators of Curses

Dr. Murphy⁸²⁷ was of the opinion that humanity cannot escape the reality of curses. The author identified four origins for curses, all of which release spiritual energy towards a person or object cursed:

- God
- Man
- The Spirit world
- Satan's human servants.

5.4.1 God

The author cautioned against the presupposition that, because of the inherent purpose to bring about destruction, curses originated with Satan. To the contrary,

⁸²⁵ Revelation 22:7 (NKJV) "Behold, I am coming quickly! Blessed is he who keeps the words of the prophecy of this book."

⁸²⁶ Revelation 22:15 (NKJV) Blessed are those who do His commandments, that they may have the right to the tree of life, and may enter through the gates into the city. Revelation 22:14): But outside are dogs and sorcerers and sexually immoral and murderers and idolaters, and whoever loves and practices a lie.

⁸²⁷ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 442

Genesis 3:14-19⁸²⁸ recounts God as the first to pronounce a curse upon Satan, Adam, Eve, and the earth. God was also the last to curse Satan in Revelation 22:3.⁸²⁹ Thus, the Bible begins and ends with curses. The original sin of man resulted in the curse of God not being limited to Adam and Eve, but effective on all generations thereafter. Man, therefor bears the effect of the original curse and as such the scripture is fulfilled:

5.4.1.1 God's Original Curse was Fourth Fold

Serpent (Satan)	<i>Because you have done this, You are cursed more than all cattle, And more than every beast of the field; On your belly you shall go, And you shall eat dust All the days of your life</i> <i>Genesis 3:14 (NKJV)</i>	Cause: Lucifer's pride and deceit of man
Eve	<i>"I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception; In pain you shall bring forth children; Your desire shall be for your husband, And he shall rule over you."</i> <i>Genesis 3:16 (NKJV)</i>	Cause: Disobedience, hunger for supernatural knowledge
The land	<i>"Cursed is the ground for your sake; Both thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you,</i> <i>Genesis 3:17, 18 (NKJV)</i> + <i>The earth is also defiled under its inhabitants, Because they have</i>	Cause: The land was cursed because of the sin of man. Earth's inhabitants defiled it by

⁸²⁸ Genesis 3:14-19 (NKJV) So the LORD God said to the serpent: "Because you have done this, You are cursed more than all cattle, And more than every beast of the field; On your belly you shall go, And you shall eat dust All the days of your life. And I will put enmity Between you and the woman, And between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, And you shall bruise His heel." To the woman He said: "I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception; In pain you shall bring forth children; Your desire shall be for your husband, And he shall rule over you." Then to Adam He said, "Because you have heeded the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree of which I commanded you, saying, 'You shall not eat of it': "Cursed is the ground for your sake; In toil you shall eat of it All the days of your life. Both thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you, And you shall eat the herb of the field. In the sweat of your face you shall eat bread Till you return to the ground, For out of it you were taken; For dust you are, And to dust you shall return."

⁸²⁹ Revelations 22:3 And there shall be no more curse, but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it, and His servants shall serve Him

	<p>transgressed the laws, Changed the ordinance, Broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore the curse has devoured the earth, And those who dwell in it are desolate. Therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, And few men are left.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Isaiah 24:5-6 (NKJV)</p>	transgressing against God's laws.
Adam	<p>In toil you shall eat of it All the days of your life. In the sweat of your face you shall eat bread Till you return to the ground, For out of it you were taken; For dust you are, And to dust you shall return."</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Genesis 3:17 - 19 (NKJV)</p>	Cause: Disobedience, hunger for supernatural knowledge

Table 21: God's original four-fold curse

The cause for this first curse was Lucifer's pride and rebellion and man's disobedience and lust for higher knowledge.

God's curses are always a result of God's judgement. God's judgement always has a cause. God's judgement/curse was not only towards the enemies of His people (Israel) but towards Israel themselves. God cursed disobedience and idolatry with wars, destruction of cities, captivity, replacement of kings and prophets, draught, famine, barrenness, and pests.

5.4.1.2 Primary Causes for God's Curses and Blessing Reflected in the Ten Commandments

Transgression of the first two of the Ten Commandments resulted in God unleashing generational curses for four generations.

***"I am the Lord your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
"You shall have no other gods before Me. "You shall not make for yourself a carved image—any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the***

earth; you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. For I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing mercy to thousands, to those who love Me and keep My commandments.

Exodus 20:1-6 (NKJV)

The cause: the acknowledgement of other gods and imagery of God.

Generational curse: Curse extended third and fourth generation.

Generational blessing: God's mercy bestowed to thousands.

It is invaluable to note that God's judgement and curse is not a result of the adoration or faith in any other god, but the *mere acknowledgement* of the *existence* of other deities. The dedicated application is portrayed in the following:

- The sanctity of the temple is portrayed in the engraved designs of flowers, fruit and geometric patterns on the huge columns. No human or animal face were portrayed.
- Idol gods and goddesses, animals or the faces of Roman Emperors were minted on Roman coins. Moneychangers exchanged these coins for temple coins to enable visitors to the temple to make a payment to the temple treasurer.
- The two majestic cherubim on the ark of the covenant, beaten from pure gold, were left faceless to prevent adoration.

This command also includes all occult practices and false religions. The occult presents an avenue whereby forbidden or supernatural knowledge is sought. A desire for illegitimate knowledge was the root for man's very first transgression in the garden of Eden. The same desire is reflected in modern day aspirations to achieve a state of enlightenment. False religions, also referred to as 'spiritual adultery' accepts Satan and other gods as alternative sources of supernatural knowledge and power. God's emphasis is reflected in the fact that God prioritises this rule and judgement (curse) by presenting it as the first Mosaic law.

Secondly, any effort to create an image or artificial representation of God is forbidden. God reveals Himself in nature and in His Word. God judges and curses the rejection of this revelation and the necessity for additional avenues to define or portray God. Attempted images also defile the sole dependence upon Him as Creator and sustainer of all things.

The fifth commandment unequivocally states God's ordinance with regards to respect due to parents.

Honor your father and your mother, that your days may be long upon the land which the Lord your God is giving you.

Exodus 20:12 (NKJV)

According to Ravi Zacharias⁸³⁰ all world religions have one primary aspect in common: to honour parents. This is the first of God's commandment which also contains a promise. The author's interpretation leans to the fact that the contrary might also be true: If honour is rewarded with a long life in the land of promise, dishonour might materialise in the opposite. The commandment does not include this warning or curse, but the sentiment is reflected in Proverbs. (Proverbs 20:20)⁸³¹ (Proverbs 30:17)⁸³²

Parents represents God's order, His authority, His love, and His protection. Within the family unit God wishes to establish a portrait of His fatherhood. The decline and distortion of families and especially absent fathers also distort the opportunity to portray God's character as a loving Father.

"Modern day induction in secularism defiles the definition of family. According to modern day psychological theories we are allowed to hate and dislike our parents. But God shows the sacredness and sanctity of the human family."⁸³³

⁸³⁰ Ravi Zacharias: RZIM Just a thought podcast. Honor Your Parents. Available at: <https://www.rzim.org/listen/just-a-thought/honor-your-parents>

⁸³¹ Proverbs 20:20 (NKJV) Whoever curses his father or his mother, His lamp will be put out in deep darkness.

⁸³² Proverbs 30:17 (NKJV) The eye that mocks his father, And scorns obedience to his mother, The ravens of the valley will pick it out, And the young eagles will eat it.

⁸³³ Ravi Zacharias: RZIM Just a thought podcast. Honor Your Parents. Available at: <https://www.rzim.org/listen/just-a-thought/honor-your-parents>

The cause for the blessing: Honouring of parent

Generational curse portrayed: None

Blessing: God's mercy bestowed to thousands in a generational bloodline.

5.4.1.3 Moral and Ethical Sins

Deuteronomy presents another two categories: God's curses resulting from disobedience to a large number of moral or ethical Godly principles (Deuteronomy 27-28) and God's blessings for prosperity flowing from obedience. (Deuteronomy 28). God curses the following sins:

Cursed is the one who makes a carved or molded image, an abomination to the LORD, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and sets it up in secret.

Cursed is the one who treats his father or his mother with contempt.

Cursed is the one who moves his neighbor's landmark.

Cursed is the one who makes the blind to wander off the road.

Cursed is the one who perverts the justice due the stranger, the fatherless, and widow.

Cursed is the one who lies with his father's wife, because he has uncovered his father's bed.

Cursed is the one who lies with any kind of animal

Cursed is the one who lies with his sister, the daughter of his father or the daughter of his mother

Cursed is the one who lies with his mother-in-law.

Cursed is the one who attacks his neighbor secretly.

Cursed is the one who takes a bribe to slay an innocent person.

Cursed is the one who does not confirm all the words of this law by observing them.

Deuteronomy 27:15-26 (NKJV)

With regards to the South African application, the author notes the following categories:

- Acknowledgement and worship of false gods. This co-insides with Paul's warning with regards to the preaching of a deviated gospel of Christ. (Christ promised to send "another Comforter", Greek, 'allos', another of the same truth) Paul's warning is primarily addressed to (but not exclusively) ministers and pastors preaching a deviated message. (Galatians 1:8)⁸³⁴
 - The South African constitution acknowledges the freedom of religion. All religions are accepted including the church of Satan.
 - Ancestral veneration is a common and respected belief. The National Assembly official annual opening traditionally includes a praise singer giving praises to the ancestors of the president. Several cultural ceremonies include the ancestors.
 - African Traditional Churches accommodate several cultural and superstitious practices incorporated in the preaching of the Gospel of Christ.
 - The presence and manifestation of Divination, Sorcery, Witchcraft and several false beliefs or practices already discussed.
 - All forms of oppression and injustice, especially towards the weak and helpless.
 - The author argues that "moving your neighbours' landmark" is comparable to 'land expropriation without compensation'.⁸³⁵
 - The author is of the opinion that "cursed is the one who perverts the justice due to the stranger" reflects on the widespread xenophobic attacks.⁸³⁶

⁸³⁴ Galatians 1:8 But even if we, or an angel from heaven, should preach to you a gospel contrary to that which we [originally] preached to you, let him be condemned to destruction.

⁸³⁵ Land expropriation without compensation" implies the amendment of section 25 of the South African Constitution to allow government to expropriate land and property without compensation to the current owner and holder of the title deed. The African National Congress, The Economic Freedom Fighters and the National Freedom Party all voted in favour of the report to the Joint Constitutional Review Committee (JCRC) tabled November 15, 2018. Available at: https://www.gov.za/speeches/joint-constitutional-review-committee-adopts-report-expropriation-land-without-compensation?gclid=CjwKCAjwxev3BRBBEiwAiB_PWJQR1DGWAuEENx0muQL0F9TXIMaTdoW1nQroPnXuCNTfb0OBw8nPuBoC6GgQAvD_BwE

⁸³⁶ Xenophobic attacks South Africa 2019 (September 13, 2019). Available at: <https://www.hrw.org/news/2019/09/13/south-africa-punish-xenophobic-violence>

- Legalised abortion is the ultimate assault on the weak and helpless. The denial of a foetus as human and thus the denial of his/her human rights implies that unborn babies cannot rely on protection by law.
- All forms of illicit and unnatural sex.

Abuse and perversion of sexual relationships is the final curse-provoking conduct. Within the South African context, the legalisation of homosexual marriages is already discussed. The fact remains, regardless the South African legal opinion, it remains an abomination before God. The author deems it necessary to clarify terminologies: *Gender identification* reflects an individual's internal sense of his/her role in their culture pertaining to the perceived behavioural differences between men and women. *Sexual orientation* defines the emotional and sexual attraction they feel for others i.e. bisexual, gay, straight.⁸³⁷

In 1996 South Africa was the first country to adopt a Constitution that protects people from discrimination on grounds of sexual orientation. The Republic of South Africa is one, sovereign, democratic State, founded on a set of values which includes, amongst others values, human dignity, non-racialism and non-sexism.⁸³⁸

In the fight for LGBTQ+ rights on the African continent, South Africa leads the way for marriage equality and legal protection against discrimination. In fact, it was the first country in the world to protect against discrimination based on sexual orientation and the fifth to legalize same-sex marriage. The Civil Union Act came into power on November 30, 2006. Legal protection preceded public acceptance.⁸³⁹

⁸³⁷ National Institutes of Health. Office of Equity, Diversity, and Inclusion. Communities. Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender – What's the difference? Available at: <https://www.edi.nih.gov/blog/communities/lesbian-gay-bisexual-transgender-%E2%80%93-what%E2%80%99s-difference>

⁸³⁸ Van Vollenhoven, Willem J. and Els, Christo J. (June 2013) *The human rights paradox of lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender students in South African education*. De Jure Law Journal (Pretoria) vol.46 n.1 Pretoria. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S2225-71602013000100015

⁸³⁹ World Economic Forum. South Africa still hasn't won LGBTQ+ equality. Here are 5 reasons why. Available at: <https://www.weforum.org/agenda/2018/11/south-africa-road-to-lgbtq-equality/>

5.4.1.4 Anti-Semitism

“He who touches you (Israel) touches the apple of His (God’s) eye”

Zephaniah 2:8

God is decisive in His Covenant commitment with Israel. Scripture portrays several instances where God blessed the nation of Israel.

God blessed Abraham	<i>I will bless those who bless you, And I will curse him who curses you.</i> <i>Genesis 12:2-3 (NKJV)</i>
Isaac blessed Jacob	<i>Cursed be everyone who curses you, And blessed be those who bless you.</i> <i>Genesis 27:29 (NKJV)</i>
Balaam towards Israel	<i>“Blessed is he who blesses you, And cursed is he who curses you.”</i> <i>Numbers 24:9 (NKJV)</i>

Table 22: God bless Nation of Israel

The scriptures depict a definite judgement including both a blessing and a curse, originally pronounced to Abraham and extended to his descendants Isaac and Jacob and their succeeding generations, collectively known as the Jews.

God’s blessing is extended to all nations and individuals who bless Israel, and simultaneously a curse on all who curse Israel. The original blessing of God automatically provokes the hatred of God’s enemy. Those blessed by God are automatically hated by Satan and he will effortlessly pursue initiatives to nullify God’s blessing. This is the foundation for all anti-Semitism discrimination and cruelty in history. This principle is portrayed in the following examples of Spain’s and Great Britain’s policy towards the Jewish community:

During the fifteenth and sixteenth century Spain controlled Europe, with dominant Military and Navy forces. In 1492, the Spain ‘Edict of Expulsion’ provided three

choices to Spain's Jewish community: "Convert, depart or death."⁸⁴⁰ Tens of thousands of Jewish Refugees died as a result of Tomas de Torquemada's policies, the mastermind of the Spanish Inquisition.⁸⁴¹ Within one century after expelling the Jewish people, Spain declined to a second rate European power.

Israel unsuccessfully applied for membership of the United Nations Security Council on May 15, 1938, one day after the declaration of its establishment. The application was renewed and approved (United Nations UN Security Resolution 69) in 1949 after the Israeli elections. On May 11, 1949 South Africa supported the Israeli admission to the United Nations General Assembly. (United Nations General Assembly Resolution 273). This signified the re-birth of Israel as an independent state and sovereign nation.

The United Kingdom abstained from voting in both the Security Council and the General Assembly. It is the authors opinion that Great Britain, the once powerful international power declined in power after abstaining their vote in support of Israel. God's warning "cursed are those who cursed you" seemed to be applicable to Spain and Great Britain.

South Africa's once positive relationship with Israel is further portrayed in the following two examples:

- Pretoria, the executive (administrative) and de facto national capital of South Africa has a Sister-City agreement⁸⁴² with Bethlehem.⁸⁴³ The author had the privilege to cast a vote in favour of the proposal whilst being a sitting member of the City Council of Pretoria.

⁸⁴⁰ Adatti, Kiku (2019) *Spain's Attempt to Atonement for a 500-Year-Old Sin*. Available at: <https://www.theatlantic.com/international/archive/2019/09/spain-offers-citizenship-sephardic-jews/598258/>

⁸⁴¹ Jewish Virtual Library. Modern Jewish History: The Spanish Expulsion. (1943). Available at: <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/the-spanish-expulsion-1492>

⁸⁴² Sister Cities International. What is a Sister City? A sister city, or state relationship is a broad-based, long-term partnership between two communities in two countries. A relationship is officially recognized after the highest elected or appointed official from both communities to sign off on an agreement to become sister cities.

⁸⁴³ Sister Cities of the World. Sister cities of Pretoria. Available at: <http://en.sistercity.info/sister-cities/Pretoria.html>

- *The Times of Israel* (October 13, 2018)⁸⁴⁴ reported on the death of Pik Botha, seventeen-year term minister of Foreign Affairs in the pre-1994 South African Government. The report depicted the South-Africa – Israel relationship.

During Botha's term as foreign minister the apartheid regime's military ties with Israel thrived. South Africa is believed to have been the Jewish state's largest arms customer in the 1980s, and documents have shown close cooperation on nuclear weapons development. The two nations are believed to have carried out joint nuclear weapons tests.

Israel continued to supply weapons to the regime despite a UN weapons embargo and in the 1980s remained the last significant power to violate the sanctions. It finally joined international sanctions in 1987, though it promised to honor existing deals and only stopped supplying the South African government in 1991.

The Unisa Institute of Global Dialogue⁸⁴⁵ report on Mr. Mmusi Maimane's visit to Israel reflected the ANC's amended policy and attitude towards Israel:

The leader of the Democratic Alliance (DA), Mmusi Maimane, was recently in Israel- a visit that has since given the African National Congress (ANC) some ammunition against its opposition and left South Africans wondering if this was the DA taking lessons from the oppressor or merely going to Israel to learn firsthand about the conflict and how South Africa can play a more active role in reaching an agreement between the parties. The ANC has taken Maimane's visit to Israel as a clear indication of the DA's disregard and undermining of the ruling party's stance on Israel, misrepresenting South Africa's position abroad, ignoring diplomatic protocol and choosing Israelis over Palestinians.

Although South Africa supported Israel in the past, the South African policy and sentiment redirected to criticism. Contrary to the friendship reflected in the mentioned Sister City agreement, *The Times of Israel*⁸⁴⁶ reported on the suspension of Mayoral Committee member of Johannesburg, Mpho Phalatse,

⁸⁴⁴ *The Times of Israel* (October 13, 2018) *Pik Botha, apartheid-era South-African foreign minister, dies at 86*. Available at: <https://www.timesofisrael.com/pik-botha-apartheid-era-south-african-foreign-minister-dies-at-86/>

⁸⁴⁵ Lobakeng R. UNISA Institute of Global Dialogue. *The Democratic Alliance visiting Israel; taking lessons from the oppressor or offering an ear?* Available at: <https://www.igd.org.za/infocus/11791-the-democratic-alliance-visiting-israel-taking-lessons-from-the-oppressor-or-offering-an-ear>

⁸⁴⁶ *The Times of Israel* (June 12, 2018) *Johannesburg suspends councilwoman for saying the city is a 'friend of Israel.'* Available at: <https://www.timesofisrael.com/johannesburg-suspends-councilwoman-for-saying-city-is-a-friend-of-israel/>

(Democratic Alliance)⁸⁴⁷ after she stated the following with reference to Israel:

“I would like to declare that I am a friend of Israel and the city of Johannesburg is a friend of Israel. Shalom.” “We value you, we celebrate you, we appreciate you, feel at home...”

The author presents the following newspaper article to portray South Africa’s current position towards Israel.

The Mail & Guardian⁸⁴⁸ reported as follows:

- ***In May 2018, South Africa recalled its ambassador to Israel following clashes between Israeli military forces and protesters during which at least 52 Palestinians were killed. In a recent speech, Minister of International Relations and Co-operation, Lindiwe Sisulu, clarified that a decision had now been made to not replace the ambassador.***
- ***The embassy, would be downgraded to a liaison office.***
- ***The embassy will have no political mandate, no trade mandate and no development cooperation mandate.***
- ***It can be seen in strong contrast to Washington’s policy towards Israel. The US recently moved its embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem and controversially recognised the Golan Heights as part of Israel.***
- ***“Most of the political parties including the trade unions have historical sympathy towards Palestine. And you often hear the comparison between apartheid and what is going on in Israel.” Ralph Mathekga, political analyst.***

The EFF⁸⁴⁹ and BFLF⁸⁵⁰ both expressed their support to the Palestinian people and their discourse which associate Israel’s right to self-defence with ‘apartheid’. The EFF marched to the Israeli embassy in Pretoria (November 2, 2017) to display their solidarity with the Palestinians.⁸⁵¹

⁸⁴⁷ Democratic Alliance, official opposition political party in South Africa. The Democratic Alliance governed the City of Johannesburg at the time of the statement after their political victory in the previous Local Government Elections.

⁸⁴⁸ Oneko S, Schwikowski M. (April 9, 2019) *Israel and South Africa: ‘A downgraded relationship?’* Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2019-04-09-israel-and-south-africa-a-downgraded-relationship/>

⁸⁴⁹ EFF: Economic Freedom Fighter

⁸⁵⁰ BLFL: Black First Land First

⁸⁵¹ 702 Radio. (June 2, 2017) *EFF says stands by Palestine in a bid to isolate and boycott Israel*. Available at: <http://www.702.co.za/articles/279041/eff-says-stands-by-palestine-in-a-bid-to-isolate-and-boycott-israel>. Black First Land First (November 2017) *EFF march to Israeli embassy is fake*. Available at: <https://blf.org.za/2017/11/02/eff-march-to-israeli-embassy-is-fake/>

5.4.1.5 Independence from God

Thus says the Lord:

**“Cursed is the man who trusts in man
And makes flesh his strength,
Whose heart departs from the Lord.
For he shall be like a shrub in the desert,
And shall not see when good comes,
But shall inhabit the parched places in the wilderness,
In a salt land which is not inhabited.
“Blessed is the man who trusts in the Lord,
And whose hope is the Lord.
For he shall be like a tree planted by the waters,
Which spreads out its roots by the river,
And will not fear when heat comes;
But its leaf will be green,
And will not be anxious in the year of drought,
Nor will cease from yielding fruit.**

Jeremiah 17:5-9 (NKJV)

Adam’s transgression in his desire to be independent from God was the beginning of a generational curse on all mankind. Abraham also portray this character in proceeding to have Ishmael with Hagar whilst God promised him a son with Sarai. The phrase “whose heart departs from God” in the text is an indication that the reference pertains to an individual who is familiar with God’s power and grace – but decided to withdraw his/her dependence from God. Paul⁸⁵² described these efforts born from own strength, not inspired by the Holy Spirit as “dead works”. Legalism, an attempt to achieve righteousness by observing a set of laws or imposing additional conditions for achieving righteousness, obscures and abandon God’s all sufficient grace provided in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. Paul repeated his judgement in his letter to the followers of Christ in the province of Galatia. (Galatians 3:10)⁸⁵³

⁸⁵² Hebrew 6:1 (NASB) Therefore, leaving the discussion of the elementary *principles* of Christ, let us go on to perfection, not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God

⁸⁵³ Galatians 3:10 (PHILLIPS) Everyone, however, who is involved in trying to keep the Law’s demands falls under a curse, for it is written: ‘Cursed is everyone who does not continue in all things which are written in the book of the Law, to do them.

Paul compared the notion to reach perfection by own efforts in keeping the Law, replacing faith in Christ and the gift of the Holy Spirit, with witchcraft. (Galatians 3:1-3)⁸⁵⁴

5.4.1.6 Theft and False Witnesses (Zechariah 5:3)⁸⁵⁵

This warning is significant to South Africa. The absolute luting of public funds, referred to in the State Capture and corruption in the private sector could imply that this particular curse of God is also applicable to South Africa. The tendency to steal does not restrain the curse to the individual, but also includes the “whole land”. Derek Prince⁸⁵⁶ stated the following with reference to theft and false witnesses:

Their ultimate effect will be similar to that of the scroll of Zechariah saw in his vision: the erosion of whole nations and even an entire civilization.

5.4.1.7 Neglecting the House of God: The Curse of Insufficiency

Through the prophet Haggai, God expressed His dissatisfaction with the people who attended to their own homes whilst the temple was neglected. God utilised nature to implement His divine judgement. (Haggai 19:10)⁸⁵⁷

⁸⁵⁴ Galatians 3:1-3 (PHILLIPS) O you dear idiots of Galatia, who saw Jesus Christ the crucified so plainly, who has been casting a spell over you? I will ask you one simple question: did you receive the Spirit of God by trying to keep the Law or by believing the message of the Gospel? Surely you can't be so idiotic as to think that a man begins his spiritual life in the Spirit and then completes it by reverting to outward observances?

⁸⁵⁵ Zechariah 5:3 Then he said to me, “This is the curse that is going out over the face of the whole land; for everyone who steals will be cut off according to the writing on one side, and everyone who swears [oaths falsely] shall be cut off according to the writing on the other side

⁸⁵⁶ Prince, Derek (2006) *Blessing or Curse. You can choose*. United Kingdom: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 119

⁸⁵⁷ Haggai 19:10 Thus says the LORD of hosts: “Consider your ways! Go up to the mountains and bring wood and build the temple, that I may take pleasure in it and be glorified,” says the LORD. “You looked for much, but indeed it came to little; and when you brought it home, I blew it away. Why?” says the LORD of hosts. “Because of My house that is in ruins, while every one of you runs to his own house. Therefore the

5.4.1.8 Withholding Tithes and Offerings

Malachi's judgement is very concise: withholding tithes and offerings is equal to robbing God. God in return is withholding blessing or prosperity in His retributive judgement, and as such the individual falls victim to the devourers of finances. (Malachi 3:9)⁸⁵⁸

5.4.1.9 Curses Applicable to Teachers, Prophets, and Priest in Particular⁸⁵⁹

God proclaims a curse on prophets who do not convey God's Words accurately and who promise peace to people disobeying God. (Jeremiah 29:17-19)⁸⁶⁰ A curse as a result of the 'false prophets' shall fall on the nation. (Jeremiah 29:22)⁸⁶¹

5.4.1.10 Leaders' Sinful Acts Result in God's Curse Upon a Nation

The people of Egypt fell victim to ten horrendous plagues because of King Pharaoh's stubbornness to provide freedom to the Jewish people. King Solomon

heavens above you withhold the dew, and the earth withholds its fruit. For I called for a drought on the land and the mountains, on the grain and the new wine and the oil, on whatever the ground brings forth, on men and livestock, and on all the labor of your hands."

⁸⁵⁸ Malachi 3:9 You are cursed with a curse, For you have robbed Me, Even this whole nation. Bring all the tithes into the storehouse, That there may be food in My house,

⁸⁵⁹ Prince, Derek (2006) *Blessing or Curse. You can choose*. United Kingdom: Derek Prince Ministries-International. P. 194

⁸⁶⁰ Jeremiah 29: 17-19 (NKJV) Behold, I will send on them the sword, the famine, and the pestilence, and will make them like rotten figs that cannot be eaten, they are so bad. And I will pursue them with the sword, with famine, and with pestilence; and I will deliver them to trouble among all the kingdoms of the earth—to be a curse, an astonishment, a hissing, and a reproach among all the nations where I have driven them, because they have not heeded My words, says the Lord, which I sent to them by My servants the prophets, rising up early and sending them; neither would you heed, says the Lord.

⁸⁶¹ Jeremiah 29:22 (NKJV) And because of them a curse shall be taken up by all the captivity of Judah who are in Babylon, saying, "The Lord make you like Zedekiah and Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in the fire"; 23 because they have done disgraceful things in Israel, have committed adultery with their neighbors' wives, and have spoken lying words in My name, which I have not commanded them. Indeed I know, and am a witness, says the Lord

worshipped the gods of his foreign wives. God used Jeroboam to punish Solomon by alienating ten of the twelve tribes. Rehoboam divided the nation into northern Israel (ten tribes⁸⁶²) and southern Judah (two tribes)⁸⁶³

Reflecting on South Africa, the author was cautious to comment on national leaders for the judiciary processes are still in progress. Previous President Zuma was allegedly responsible for the State Capture.

It was the authors opinion that the grotesque corruption from the Office of the President and national leaders became the character of the South African society. The Biblical pattern is repeated in the post-apartheid South Africa. God did not ignore injustices then, and the people of South Africa trust that God will not allow injustices now.

5.4.1.11 Blood Calls Onto Blood

The Lord said, "What have you done? Listen! Your brother's blood cries out to me from the ground. Now you are under a curse and driven from the ground, which opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. When you work the ground, it will no longer yield its crops for you. You will be a restless wanderer on the earth."

Genesis 4:10-12 (NIV)

The author is of the opinion that the blood of the innocent through legalised abortions and the farm murders which the government ignores, are calling out to God for His judgement.

5.4.1.12 God Curses Cities

⁸⁶² Who are the Tribes of Judah? Jewish Voice (2018) The ten tribes of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Manasseh, Issachar, Zebulun, Ephraim, Dan, Asher, Naphtali and Gad. Available at: <https://www.jewishvoice.org/read/blog/who-are-tribes-judah>.

⁸⁶³ Who are the Tribes of Judah? Jewish Voice (2018) The two tribes of Judah: Judah and Benjamin. Available at: <https://www.jewishvoice.org/read/blog/who-are-tribes-judah>

Persistent sin resulted in God's judgement over the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah. God also send an angel to curse the town of Meroz for their failure to provide additional men to assist Israel in battle. The town was 'under sacred obligation' to assist Israel against their oppressors.

The author noted the ignorance and persistent disobedience of the South African government with regards to the Word of God.

5.4.1.12.1 Jesus Cursed the Fig Tree

Parables were a powerful teaching methodology of Jesus. In contrast to the other parables, the cursing of the fig tree⁸⁶⁴ is described as an 'action parable', meaning the lesson Jesus wanted to convey did not rely on a story but on a physical action. In the cultural context, the following are noteworthy:

- The fig tree was a symbol for the nation of Israel. (Jeremiah 8:13⁸⁶⁵, Hosea 9:10⁸⁶⁶)
- In Biblical times, resting under a fig tree symbolised peace and prosperity. (1 Kings 4:25⁸⁶⁷, Micah 4:4⁸⁶⁸, Zechariah 3:10⁸⁶⁹)

⁸⁶⁴ Matthew 21:18-19 (NKJV) Now in the morning, as He returned to the city, He was hungry. And seeing a fig tree by the road, He came to it and found nothing on it but leaves, and said to it, "Let no fruit grow on you ever again." Immediately the fig tree withered away.

Mark 11: 12-14 (NKJV) Now the next day, when they had come out from Bethany, He was hungry. And seeing from afar a fig tree having leaves, He went to see if perhaps He would find something on it. When He came to it, He found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs. In response Jesus said to it, "Let no one eat fruit from you ever again."

⁸⁶⁵ Jeremiah 8:13 (NKJV) "I will surely consume them," says the LORD. No grapes *shall be* on the vine, Nor figs on the fig tree, And the leaf shall fade; And *the things* I have given them shall pass away from them." ' ' "

⁸⁶⁶ Hosea 9:10 (NKJV) "I found Israel Like grapes in the wilderness; I saw your fathers As the firstfruits on the fig tree in its first season. *But* they went to Baal Peor, And separated themselves *to that* shame; They became an abomination like the thing they loved.

⁸⁶⁷ 1 Kings 4:25 (NKJV) And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, each man under his vine and his fig tree, from Dan as far as Beersheba, all the days of Solomon.

⁸⁶⁸ Micah 4:4 (NKJV) But everyone shall sit under his vine and under his fig tree, And no one shall make *them* afraid; For the mouth of the LORD of hosts has spoken.

⁸⁶⁹ Zechariah 3:10 (NKJV) In that day,' says the LORD of hosts, 'Everyone will invite his neighbour Under his vine and under his fig tree.' ' "

- It was common knowledge that leaves would automatically imply fruit, unless the tree was barren.

The time of the parable also presents significant meaning:

- Jesus cursed the fig tree four days prior to His crucifixion.
- It was thus the week of Passover and crowds gathered in Jerusalem.

The parable takes place in the same time frame as Jesus' cleansing of the Temple. Mark narrates the incident *before* Jesus' arrival at the temple whilst Matthew report the incident on Jesus' *return* from the Temple. The occurrence before or after the cleansing of the temple has no impact on the message Jesus conveyed. The fact that the action is taken in conjunction with the cleansing of the temple holds the message.

Jesus expected to find fruit, but regardless the out worthy appearance and promise of fruit, none were found. Herein lies the message and warning for Christians, and in light of this thesis, a lesson for South African Christians in particular: Fruitlessness results in God's judgement. The Jews, God's covenant people were in Jerusalem to celebrate Passover, yet, the temple was filled with commerce. The people were excited to partake in the rituals of Passover without a serious conviction of their religion and the fruit that bears witness to their conviction. (Galatians 5:22⁸⁷⁰, Philippians 1:11⁸⁷¹)

In reference to the meaning of the parable Christianity.com explains that cursing the fig tree was Jesus's way of saying that the whole nation had become spiritually barren before the Lord. They had the form of religion but not the reality. They knew the right words to say, but their hearts were far from God.⁸⁷²

⁸⁷⁰ Galatians 5:22 (NKJV) But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness,

⁸⁷¹ Philippians 1:11 (NKJV) being filled with the fruits of righteousness which *are* by Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God.

⁸⁷² The Meaning of the Parable of the Fig Tree. Available at: <https://www.christianity.com/jesus/death-and-resurrection/holy-week-and-passion/why-did-jesus-curse-the-fig-tree.html>

5.4.1.12.2 Additional Curses from God

- The nation of Meroz was cursed for they did not assist the Lord's army under command of Barak against Sisera. (Judges 5:23)⁸⁷³ (Refer to God's promise to curse those who curse Israel)
- Jotham cursed the murderers of the sons of Gideon. (Judges 9:57)⁸⁷⁴ (Transgression of the Ten Commandments)
- Jezebel was cursed for witchcraft and immorality. (2 Kings 9:34⁸⁷⁵, 2 Kings 9:22⁸⁷⁶)
- (Refer to God's curse concerning witchcraft and immorality)
- A curse on the house of the wicked. (Proverbs 3:33)⁸⁷⁷ (Refer to God's curse concerning witchcraft)
- The earth is cursed as a result of man's transgression and defilement of God's laws. (Isaiah 24:5-6)⁸⁷⁸ (Refer to Man's original sin)
- God cursed the nation of Edom for their persistent animosity and disloyalty towards Israel. (Isaiah 34:5)⁸⁷⁹ (Refer to God's promise to curse those who curse Israel)
- A curse on the Israelites who went to Egypt in disobedience of God's warning.

⁸⁷³ Judges 5:23 (NKJV) 'Curse Meroz,' said the angel of the LORD, 'Curse its inhabitants bitterly, Because they did not come to the help of the LORD, To the help of the LORD against the mighty.'

⁸⁷⁴ Judges 9:57 (NKJV) And all the evil of the men of Shechem God returned on their own heads, and on them came the curse of Jotham the son of Jerubbaal.

⁸⁷⁵ 2 Kings 9:34 (NKJV) And when he had gone in, he ate and drank. Then he said, "Go now, see to this accursed woman, and bury her, for she was a king's daughter."

⁸⁷⁶ 2 Kings 9:22 (NKJV) Now it happened, when Joram saw Jehu, that he said, "Is it peace, Jehu?" So he answered, "What peace, as long as the harlotries of your mother Jezebel and her witchcraft are so many?"

⁸⁷⁷ Proverbs 3:33 (NKJV) The curse of the LORD is on the house of the wicked, But He blesses the home of the just.

⁸⁷⁸ Isaiah 24:5-6 (NKJV) The earth is also defiled under its inhabitants, Because they have transgressed the laws, Changed the ordinance, Broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore the curse has devoured the earth, And those who dwell in it are desolate. Therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, And few men are left.

⁸⁷⁹ Isaiah 34:5 (NKJV) "For My sword shall be bathed in heaven; Indeed it shall come down on Edom, And on the people of My curse, for judgment."

(Jeremiah 42:18⁸⁸⁰, Jeremiah 44:8⁸⁸¹, 12⁸⁸²) (Disobedience has consequences)

- God curses any man who fails to carry out God's judgement on His enemies. (Jeremiah 48:10)⁸⁸³ (Disobedience has consequences)
- God curses 'goat nations' who have no mercy to the brothers of Jesus. (Matthew 25:32-33)⁸⁸⁴ (Refer to God's promise to curse those who curse Israel)
- God curses people who preach the Word of God but lack the fruit of their teaching. (Hebrew 6:8)⁸⁸⁵ (Refer to God's judgement on teachers, pastors and prophets)

5.4.2 Curses Proceeding from Man

The research acknowledged the legitimacy of curses proceeding from man and as such will briefly allude to them. The essence of the research remains the investigation pertaining to spirituality, be it as a result of collective actions, government actions or individual actions, opposing to, or in ignorance of the principles of the Word of God.

⁸⁸⁰ Jeremiah 42:18 (NKJV) "For thus says the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel: 'As My anger and My fury have been poured out on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so will My fury be poured out on you when you enter Egypt. And you shall be an oath, an astonishment, a curse, and a reproach; and you shall see this place no more.'

⁸⁸¹ Jeremiah 44:8 (NKJV) in that you provoke Me to wrath with the works of your hands, burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt where you have gone to dwell, that you may cut yourselves off and be a curse and a reproach among all the nations of the earth?,

⁸⁸² Jeremiah 44:12 (NKJV) And I will take the remnant of Judah who have set their faces to go into the land of Egypt to dwell there, and they shall all be consumed *and* fall in the land of Egypt. They shall be consumed by the sword *and* by famine. They shall die, from the least to the greatest, by the sword and by famine; and they shall be an oath, an astonishment, a curse and a reproach!

⁸⁸³ Jeremiah 48:10 (NKJV) Cursed *is* he who does the work of the LORD deceitfully, And cursed *is* he who keeps back his sword from blood.

⁸⁸⁴ Matthew 25:32-33 (KJV) "All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate them [King Jesus will judge the nations] one from another, as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats. And He will set the sheep [the faithful nations] on His right hand, but the goats [the unfaithful servants] on the left."

⁸⁸⁵ Hebrews 6:8 (NKJV) but if it bears thorns and briers, *it is* rejected and near to being cursed, whose end *is* to be burned.

The Word of God is decisive pertaining to what God allows and to what infuses His judgement and curses. God's curses are always as a result of God's judgement. Man bring about curses on himself or others by means of the following:

5.4.2.1 Curses Articulated - The Power of Words

Ravi Zacharias⁸⁸⁶ relates to the origin and power of words as follows:

“Though many religions recognize the power of words, I believe it is inherently Christian to recognize the weight of language. The first chapter of the Gospel of John echoes the first pages in all of Scripture—namely, that out of silence the universe was brought to order, for in the beginning was the Word. We speak because there is one who first spoke. There is meaning and order among us because in the beginning was the Word.”

Linguistic ability manifested in thoughts and words, oral or written remains the foremost trajectory for curses or blessings. Words convey reality or transmit the potential of a *new* reality for they hold creative and destructive power. Their power also includes thoughts articulated and repeated in an internal dialogue. Language remains the primary communication with God, fellow man, self and it articulates the experience of reality and man's reaction there on.

Jesus' confirmation that His followers will hear his voice implies (John 10:26)⁸⁸⁷ 1) Jesus communicates (speaks) to Christians, and 2) believers are familiar with His voice and recognise Him speaking.

In God's grace, He included several scriptures (31 according to Kenneth Copeland Ministries)⁸⁸⁸ to caution man with regards to the power of words. Words are regarded to be the origin of life and death, prosperity or poverty.

⁸⁸⁶ Ravi Zacharias: RZIM The Beginning of Words. Available at: <https://www.rzim.org/read/a-slice-of-infinity/the-beginning-of-words>

⁸⁸⁷ John 10:26 (NKJV) My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me.

⁸⁸⁸ Kenneth Copeland Ministries: *31 Scriptures About the Power of Your Words*. Available at: <https://www.kcm.org/real-help/spiritual-growth/believe/31-scriptures-about-the-power-your-words>

(Proverbs 11:9)⁸⁸⁹ (Proverbs 12:18)⁸⁹⁰, (Proverbs 15:4)⁸⁹¹. Words remain a powerful application of the natural world activating the spiritual world. Words (verbalised or written) activate the supernatural. Words provides the Kingdom of Darkness legality to act. Curses verbalised often materialise for the forces of Darkness act accordingly. The following categories were identified with reference to language (the power of words)

5.4.2.1.1 Self-fulfilling Prophecies

Man's words such as "I am not able", "I cannot", "Scared to death", "Dying to get there", "Divorce runs in my family" etc. does not necessarily reflect the valid current reality, but it has the power to manifest future reality and outcomes. It is equal to a curse articulated for it has the power to become the manifested truth. (Proverbs 18:21)⁸⁹² (Matthew 12:37)⁸⁹³ Biblical advice is condensed in one sentence.

Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be acceptable in Your sight, O Lord, my rock and my Redeemer.

Psalm 19:14 (NASB)

5.4.2.1.2 Words Spoken by an Authoritative Person

Curses are more prominent in the Old Testament; Noah pronounced a curse on Canaan and a blessing on Shem, Isaac blessed his Jacob instead of Cain. Jacob

⁸⁸⁹ Proverbs 11:9 (NKJV) The hypocrite with *his* mouth destroys his neighbor, But through knowledge the righteous will be delivered.

⁸⁹⁰ Proverbs 12:18 (NKJV) There is one who speaks like the piercings of a sword, But the tongue of the wise *promotes* health.

⁸⁹¹ Proverbs 15:4 (NKJV) A wholesome tongue *is* a tree of life, But perverseness in it breaks the spirit.

⁸⁹² Proverbs 18:21(NIV) Death and life are in the power of the tongue and those who love it will it eat its fruit.

⁸⁹³ Matthew 12:37 (NLT) The words you say will either acquit you or condemn you

blessed his twelve sons. His statement confirmed how his blessing will materialised in the future.

Then Jacob called for his sons and said: “Gather around so I can tell you what will happen to you in days to come.

Genesis 49:1 (NKJV)

5.4.2.1.3 False Prophecies

The office of the prophet (one who speaks forth) is recognised as a powerful inclusion in the five-fold ministry bestowed by God to His church. (Amos 3:7, Matthew 10:20)⁸⁹⁴.

The purpose of prophecy is to equip the believers for their work of service, and secondly to build the Body of Christ (1 Corinthians 14:3-4)⁸⁹⁵. A prophecy acts as a confirmation of what God has already stirred in a believer’s heart. It is seldom a surprise. Thus, a prophecy is more often a confirmation than a re-direction.

Satan and his allies in the Kingdom of Darkness strategize to infiltrate the prophetic ministry mainly to oppose the original purpose thereof already mentioned above.

Satan aims to nullify the effectiveness of the Church and to destroy the Body of Christ by means of false prophecies and false prophets. Scripture provides several warnings to alert the Body of Christ with regards to Satan’s strategy (Jeremiah 23:32).⁸⁹⁶

“Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves.

Matthew 7:15 (NKJV)

⁸⁹⁴ Amos 3:7 (NKJV) Surely the Lord GOD does nothing. He reveals His secret to His servants the prophets. Matthew 10:20 (NKJV) for it is not you who speak, but the Spirit of your Father who speaks in you.

⁸⁹⁵ 1 Corinthians 14:3-4 (NKJV) But he who prophesies speaks edification and exhortation and comfort to men. He who speaks in a tongue edifies himself, but he who prophesies edifies the church.

⁸⁹⁶ Jeremiah 23:32 (NKJV) Behold, I *am* against those who prophesy false dreams,” says the LORD, “and tell them, and cause My people to err by their lies and by their recklessness. Yet I did not send them or command them; therefore they shall not profit this people at all,” says the LORD.

Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand confirmed the power of words in stating the following:

Every alchemist or magician knows that one of the great secrets of their art is in power of words. Or more precisely, the way certain words can be charged with power and effect.⁸⁹⁷

5.4.2.1.3.1 Application to South Africa

The following chapters will also consider the phenomena of false prophets within the South African context. Moses Owojaiye conveyed the tragic reality of false prophets within the African context as follows:

I do not know of any other ministry that has damaged the image of the church in the African public square today more than that of the self-proclaimed prophets who have perverted what charismatics believe is a genuinely Biblical prophetic ministry. While this phenomenon is not peculiar to Africa, this kind of public abuse of the pastoral and prophetic ministry seems to be more obvious here than elsewhere.⁸⁹⁸

5.4.2.2 The Curse of Unforgiveness

In Matthew 6 Jesus taught His disciples *how* to pray. He did not elaborate on ‘*why*’ they needed to pray. The disciples, being Jewish, were disciplined in prayer from childhood. Yet, they witnessed the power Jesus’ prayers conveyed compared to what they were familiar with. Jesus provided the key to miraculous results by providing a precise text for the content of prayer. Included in Jesus’ prayer are the words: **“*And forgive our debts, As we forgive our debtors*”** (**Matthew 6:12**)

The background of this petition is the Pentateuchal Law of cancelling debts that

⁸⁹⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to deconstruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 84

⁸⁹⁸ Owojaiye, Moses B. (November 2019) *The Problem of False Prophets in Africa*. Available at: <https://www.lausanne.org/content/lga/2019-11/problem-false-prophets-africa>

took place every seven years.⁸⁹⁹ (Deuteronomy 15:1-2)⁹⁰⁰ The Israelites were obligated to cancel the debt of fellow Israelites. This alone is an incomplete interpretation. More importantly is the addition of the Law of Jubilee where the cancelling of debts has a much more significant implication. The year of Jubilee, every fifty years, implied not only the cancelling of debt but also the restoration or return of property. Debts are cancelled and inheritance is restored. (Leviticus 25:10-12)⁹⁰¹, (Leviticus 27:24)⁹⁰²

This was the basis of Jesus's forgiveness and healing when He told the paralytic: "**Son, your sins are forgiven you.**" (Mark 2:9)⁹⁰³ (Mark 2:11)⁹⁰⁴. This incident emphasised Jesus' authority to forgive sins. The Greek verb, to forgive also means 'to leave, to forsake, to send away, to divorce, to abandon.' By including it in His lesson, Jesus extended His authority to forgive sin to man. The authority is extended to include an obligation to forgive. The obligation to forgive is extended to include love with the statement in Luke 6.

But love your enemies, do good, and lend, hoping for nothing in return; and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High. For He is kind to the unthankful and evil. Therefore be merciful, just as your Father also is merciful.

Luke 6:35-36 (NKJV)

Jesus extends the importance of forgiveness in answering Peter to forgive seventy times seven. (Matthew 18:21)⁹⁰⁵.

⁸⁹⁹ Dey, Chuck Dr. (2020) *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered February 1, 2020

⁹⁰⁰ Deuteronomy 15:1-2 (NKJV) "At the end of every seven years you shall grant a release of debts. And this is the form of the release: Every creditor who has lent anything to his neighbor shall release it; he shall not require it of his neighbor or his brother, because it is called the LORD's release.

⁹⁰¹ Leviticus 25:10-12 (NKJV) And you shall consecrate the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout all the land to all its inhabitants. It shall be a Jubilee for you; and each of you shall return to his possession, and each of you shall return to his family. That fiftieth year shall be a Jubilee to you; in it you shall neither sow nor reap what grows of its own accord, nor gather the grapes of your untended vine. For it is the Jubilee; it shall be holy to you; you shall eat its produce from the field.

⁹⁰² Leviticus 27:24 (NKJV) In the Year of Jubilee the field shall return to him from whom it was bought, to the one who owned the land as a possession.

⁹⁰³ Mark 2:9 (NKJV) Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, 'Your sins are forgiven you,' or to say, 'Arise, take up your bed and walk'?

⁹⁰⁴ Mark 2:11 (NKJV) "I say to you, arise, take up your bed, and go to your house.

⁹⁰⁵ Matthew 18:21 (NKJV) Then Peter came to Him and said, "Lord, how often shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? Up to seven times?"

Curses of unforgiveness and bitterness:

- Unforgiveness is the single most effective strategy of the Kingdom of Darkness to cause an array of physical (Deuteronomy 28:60-61)⁹⁰⁶ and psychiatric illnesses. (Deuteronomy 28:28)⁹⁰⁷
- Believers jeopardise the blessing of being in the presence of God. (Matthew 5:24)⁹⁰⁸
- Unforgiveness is equal to rebellion. Judgement is reserved for God. (Romans 12:19)⁹⁰⁹
- Joseph's life portrays God's faithfulness to secure His calling for the believer's life, regardless Satan's endeavours to counter God's plan. (Genesis 50:20)⁹¹⁰
- Bitterness can result in a fall of Grace and defile a person. (Hebrew 12:15)⁹¹¹
- Unforgiveness block God's forgiveness. (Matthew 6:15)⁹¹²
- Satan flourish and take advantage on unforgiveness (2 Corinthians 2:10-11)⁹¹³
- Spiritual fruit are compromised. (John 15:5)⁹¹⁴
- Disobedience coursed God to curse the land and the city. (Deuteronomy 28:16)⁹¹⁵
- The curses following unforgiveness include financial challenges

⁹⁰⁶ Deuteronomy 28:60-61 (NKJV) Moreover He will bring back on you all the diseases of Egypt, of which you were afraid, and they shall cling to you. Also every sickness and every plague, which *is* not written in this Book of the Law, will the LORD bring upon you until you are destroyed.

⁹⁰⁷ Deuteronomy 28:28 (NKJV) The LORD will strike you with madness and blindness and confusion of heart

⁹⁰⁸ Matthew 5:24 (NKJV) leave your gift there before the altar, and go your way. First be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift.

⁹⁰⁹ Romans 12:19 (NKJV) Beloved, do not avenge yourselves, but *rather* give place to wrath; for it is written, "Vengeance *is* Mine, I will repay," says the Lord.

⁹¹⁰ Genesis 50:20 (NKJV) But as for you, you meant evil against me; *but* God meant it for good, in order to bring it about as *it is* this day, to save many people alive.

⁹¹¹ Hebrews 12:14-15 (NKJV) Pursue peace with all *people*, and holiness, without which no one will see the Lord: looking carefully lest anyone fall short of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up cause trouble, and by this many become defiled;

⁹¹² Matthew 6:15 (NKJV) But if you do not forgive men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

⁹¹³ 2 Corinthians 2:10-11 (NKJV) Now whom you forgive anything, I also *forgive*. For if indeed I have forgiven anything, I have forgiven that one for your sakes in the presence of Christ, lest Satan should take advantage of us; for we are not ignorant of his devices.

⁹¹⁴ John 15:5 (NKJV) "I am the vine, you *are* the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing."

⁹¹⁵ Deuteronomy 28:16 (NKJV) "Cursed *shall* you *be* in the city, and cursed *shall* you *be* in the country.

(Deuteronomy 28:17)⁹¹⁶, divorce and unfaithfulness (Deuteronomy 28:30)⁹¹⁷

5.4.2.2.1 Application to South Africa

Forgiveness, or the lack thereof is a vital part of the history of South Africa. From blood thirsty tribal wars before and during colonialism, conflict and hate after colonialism and racial tension in contemporary South Africa portrays a history and reality of racial tension and unforgiveness. It is important to note that the racial tension was not excluded to black and white hatred, but between all races represented in the boundaries of South Africa.

The Afrikaner nurtured their hate towards Britain after the first and second Boer Wars for decades. White supremacy caused deep rooted hatred.

Hatred, the fruit of unforgiveness is prevalent in news reports daily. The 'Hate Speech Act' is an effort to subdue the blatant hate and propaganda, but the application of the Law seems to be politically biased. It is the authors opinion that the extend of the cruelty of the torture in farm murders and farm attacks is a direct result of deep-rooted hatred and unforgiveness. The Government's lack of acknowledgment of the seriousness of the blatant farm murders, in the frequency of occurrences as well as the extend of cruelty of the nature thereof, accompanied by the perceived unsuccessful law enforcement leads to the conclusion that the ANC Government shares the hate and unforgiveness of the murderers.

5.4.2.3 The Curse of Racism

Racism implies division and hate, a lack of unity. Larry Huch⁹¹⁸ extended the

⁹¹⁶ Deuteronomy 28:17 (NKJV) "Cursed *shall be* your basket and your kneading bowl.

⁹¹⁷ Deuteronomy 28:30 (NKJV) "You shall betroth a wife, but another man shall lie with her; you shall build a house, but you shall not dwell in it; you shall plant a vineyard, but shall not gather its grapes.

⁹¹⁸ Huch, Larry (2006) *10 Curses that Block the Blessing*. United States of America: Larry Huch Ministries. P. 175

definition of racism to include anti-Semitism and in particular jealousy and envy between different denominations within the body of Christ. Scripture warns that a divided city will not be able to stand against the onslaught of the enemy. (Matthew 12:25)⁹¹⁹. God bestowed different gifts on ministries and denominations to empower them to fulfil their calling in the Kingdom of God. Whenever a denomination separates Christians from the rest of the Body of Christ, the Kingdom of God is divided.

Opposing jealousy and envy are the principle of love. John 13 provides a strong commandment, not a mere suggestion.

A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another; as I have loved you, that you also love one another. By this all will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another.”

John 13:34-35 (NKJV)

Love opposes hate and racism. Two powerful principles follow:

- Scripture put the Love for God and love for fellowmen as the foundation of the Law. (Matthew 22:37-40)⁹²⁰
- Man’s proclamation of his love for God, without loving fellowmen equals him to be a liar. (1 John 4:20-21)⁹²¹

5.4.2.3.1 Application to South Africa

Deep dividing racism is the general character of the South African people. Arts, music, and victories in the sport arenas only creates an illusion of unity. As soon

⁹¹⁹ Matthew 12:25 (NKJV) But Jesus knew their thoughts, and said to them: “Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand.

⁹²⁰ Matthew 22:40 (NKJV) Jesus said to him, “‘You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.’ This is *the* first and great commandment. And *the* second is like it: ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself.’ On these two commandments hang all the Law and the Prophets.”

⁹²¹ 1 John 4:20-21 (NKJV) If someone says, “I love God,” and hates his brother, he is a liar; for he who does not love his brother whom he has seen, how can he love God whom he has not seen? And this commandment we have from Him: that he who loves God must love his brother also.

as the euphoria of the moment and the adrenalin of the victory wares off, the deep-rooted divisions are noticeable.

The study did not ignore sincere brotherly love and friendship across race and denominations, but it is only a small percentage of South Africans who are able to live above any division. In accordance with Huch⁹²² definition, it is noticeable how denominational differences have power to divide even homogenic societies.

Within the white-only community Orania in the Northern Cape, with a population of 1602, 9 denominations⁹²³ exist. Although the community is in unity with regards to their language, cultural and political views, religion still prevails as the dividing factor. The choice of translation of the Bible plays a vital role. (Some denominations accept a recent translation of the Bible to adapt the modern spoken language, whilst others interpret the new translation almost as blasphemy and remain to use the original translation from Hebrew and Greek)

5.4.2.4 Freemasonry Curse

The name Lucifer or Satan are not explicitly mentioned in the rituals of the Blue Lodge, the York Rite nor the Scottish Rite degrees. However, one of the “Sacred Words” in the 17th Degree of the Scottish Rite is “Abaddon,” the angel of the bottomless pit, mentioned in Revelation 9.

“And they had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in Hebrew is Abaddon, but in Greek he has the name Apollyon.”

Revelation 9:11(NKJV)

A workbook authored by Derek Robert⁹²⁴ contains 500 renunciations for breaking

⁹²² Huch, Larry (2006) *10 Curses that Block the Blessing*. United States of America: Larry Huch Ministries.

⁹²³ Dutch Reformed Church, Apostoliese Geloofsending, Afrikaanse Protestantse Kerk, Evangelies-Gereformeerde Kerk, Gereformeerde Kerk, Hervormde Kerk, Israel Visie and Maranata Kerk, all are Protestant except Maranata, which is part of the Charismatic Movement. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Orania,_Northern_Cape#Religion

⁹²⁴ Robert, Derek. Freedom Ministries International. *Workbook - Breaking the Chains of Freemasonry - Breaking Masonic Curses*. Available at: <https://www.freedom-ministries.com/catalog/derek-robert->

Masonic and Witchcraft curses from the 33 degrees of Freemasonry. Selwyn Stevens⁹²⁵ confirmed the 'oath and an obligation' to proceed from one degree to the following. He noted the following examples:

First or Entered Apprentice degree the curse is on the throat; in the Second or Fellow Craft degree the curse is on the heart; and the Third or Master Mason degree the curse is on the stomach area.

Because of the content and power of the oaths, it is considered to be curses. Numerous documented cases exist where Freemasons, their family members and even descendants fell victim to the 'curses'. Stevens summarised the curses based on Deuteronomy 28:

1. Mental and emotional disorders;
2. Repeated or chronic sickness (often hereditary);
3. Barrenness, miscarriage and female reproductive problems;
4. Breakdowns of marriage and family alienation;
5. Continuing financial insufficiency (regardless of income level);
6. Being "accident-prone";
7. History of suicides and unnatural or untimely deaths.

5.4.3 Curses from Satan

5.4.3.1 Material Objects as Conveyers of Curses

- With reference to blessing, the Bible illustrate the following:
 - Anointing oil imparts the blessing of the Holy Spirit.

products/-workbook-breaking-the-chains-of-freemasonry-by-derek-robert-breaking-masonic-curses-worldwide-postage-included-779.html

⁹²⁵ Stevens, Selwyn. Ph.D. *Informing the Community about: Freemasonry* Available at: <http://static1.squarespace.com/static/55caa035e4b06e41a4a1e1fe/t/55e1fa21e4b09e1859638333/1440872993198/masonry-info.pdf>

- The faithful partaking in holy communion transmits a blessing from God. (1 Corinthians 1:16)⁹²⁶ Those who partake in communion in an unworthy manner eat and drink a judgement to himself. (1 Corinthians 11:29)⁹²⁷
- The Bible also recounts objects conveying a curse. The following are presented to illustrate the application:
 - The second of the ten commandments forbid **images and objects** for religious purposes resembling idols, false religions, or the occult. Acknowledgement of other deities and disobedience to this article of the Law is cursed for four generations.
 - Images representative of any false religion or idols hold the possible power to convey demonic power and presence, regardless the fact that they are not worshipped. This action is equal to idolatry.
 - Objects, not manifesting or representative of a curse in itself, might also be cursed by God. God forbid Israel to take any of the spoiled objects after the victory over Jericho. Jericho was the first of approximately thirty-one cities Joshua's army conquered. Jericho was the "first fruit"⁹²⁸ city and the spoils were to be set aside for the treasury of the Lord. First fruit objects withheld from God's in contrast to His holy commandment became cursed. (Joshua 6:18-19⁹²⁹). Perry⁹³⁰ emphasised the double jeopardy; not only is the object withheld cursed, but in addition, disobedience in itself cause a curse. Disobedience resulted in Israel being slain in the following battle against Ai – a less significant and weaker city compared to Jericho.

⁹²⁶ 1 Corinthians 1:16 (NKJV) Yes, I also baptized the household of Stephanas. Besides, I do not know whether I baptized any other.

⁹²⁷ 1 Corinthians 11:29 (NKJV) For he who eats and drinks in an unworthy manner eats and drinks judgment to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

⁹²⁸ First Fruit. God pronounced the principle Available at: <https://get.tithe.ly/blog/first-fruit>

⁹²⁹ Joshua 6:18-19 (NKJV) And you, by all means abstain from the accursed things, lest you become accursed when you take of the accursed things, and make the camp of Israel a curse, and trouble it. But all the silver and gold, and vessels of bronze and iron, *are* consecrated to the LORD; they shall come into the treasury of the LORD."

⁹³⁰ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 16

- Perry Stone⁹³¹ included pornography in images of idolatry resulting in the release of a “seducing spirit”. (2 Timothy 4:1)⁹³² Stone explained the seducing spirit as deriving from ‘*planos*’, meaning “**to wander and to stray like a roving tramp.**”

5.4.3.2 Curses Proceeding from Satan’s Representatives

Only a prophet directly led of God can rightly curse another man. **Twice God says one who curse another should be cursed himself.**⁹³³

The Bible provides no reference of Satan cursing. Born from Satan’s hate towards man created in the image of God, being co-creator with God with the ability to fellowship with God, he constantly seeks to create opportunities to defile mankind and as such entrapped man to be deserving of a curse as a result of the defilement. Co-workers in the Kingdom of Satan in the occult effortlessly curse individuals, families, ministries, business etc.

Avery Hart⁹³⁴, a self-proclaimed travelling witch which provided a four part teaching on the procedures and three types of curses practices in witchcraft:

- Quick curses include spitting, (on, in front of or behind the individual, or any objects belonging to the person or something he/she will touch e.g. door handle), the evil eye, (directing as much as possible ill intent into a quick glare), verbal curses, written curses (writing sigils⁹³⁵ or vindictive words on

⁹³¹ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 20

⁹³² 1 Timothy 4:1 (NKJV) Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons,

⁹³³ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 443

⁹³⁴ Hart, Avery (2016) *Cursing 101: The 3 Types of Curses You Need To Know*. Available at: <https://thetravelingwitch.com/blog/2016/12/21/quick-curses>

⁹³⁵ Sigils: Ancient-Symbols.com Sigil is a Latin term which refers to a type of pictorial signature of a demon. However, its modern usage, this term is applied in the context of chaos magic that symbolizes the magician’s desired outcome. These symbols were designed for magical purposes in allowing a small

small papers or motor windows, burning paper with the victim's name, writing the name on the sole of a shoe to step on it or writing the victim's name on unfavourable locations e.g. vehicle tire, a toilet seat etc.)

- Long form curses. Requires planning and often uses taglocks.⁹³⁶
- Object based curses. Curses attached to an object and not targeted on an individual. The curse follows the object and affect those who come in contact with it. These curses can be intentionally or unintentionally. (Often considered to be haunted objects when it belonged to someone and the ***“restless spirit become attached to an object that was significant to them in their lives”***).

6. SIN

The result of sin pertaining to the reality the two Kingdoms.

“Sin in short is the vast moral disease which affects the whole human race, of every rank, and class and name and nation and people and tongue; a disease from which there never was but born of woman that was free.”⁹³⁷

In addition to the origin of sin, relevance to this research also include sin's relation to evil, the effect thereof with reference to the two Kingdoms and the possible impact of collective sin on the South African people. Intrinsic to the nature of spiritual warfare, is the origin of sin and evil: Satan's rebellion against God and his deceit of mankind enlisted the human race in his war against God. Sin alienate man from God and God's Kingdom. Sin has defiled the human race in its totality, every area of each personality⁹³⁸. The New Testament refers to this corrupted

proportionate of people to create strong magical talismans. Available at: <https://www.ancient-symbols.com/sigil.html>

⁹³⁶ Taglock: Any item connecting the spell to the individual e.g. hair, photos, nails, saliva. Hart, Avery (2016) *Cursing 101: The 3 Types of Curses You Need To Know*. Available at: <https://thetravelingwitch.com/blog/2016/12/21/quick-curses>

⁹³⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions. P. 38

⁹³⁸ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 107

persona as “the old man” (Romans 6:6)⁹³⁹ or the flesh (Galatians 5:24)⁹⁴⁰.

Since man lost his communion with God through sin he also lost a true understanding of himself and his reason for being, and since all attempts by the unregenerated man to regain this understanding have so obviously failed, is it truly possible for man to understand himself?⁹⁴¹

A close relation exists between the demonic (evil) and sin. The one disparity is the fact that the effect of sin is universal and absolute, but the effect of demons is not. Many people are influenced by demons, but not all, whereas all people, without exemption, are influenced by sin.⁹⁴² The same principle applicable as to sickness applies, not all sicknesses are caused by the demonic, but all sickness can be used by the demonic. Not all sin is demonic, but all sin can be used by the demonic to find an entry point in a person’s life.

Once an entry point is established, the demonic will not cease to launch initiatives to expand their influence. Bufford⁹⁴³ warned that sex, power, wealth, status fame, influence and popularity are not intrinsic sin, but have the potential to result in demonization. He evaluated the relationship between sin and the demonic as follows:

Satan is always involved in sin. So are demons. Where sin flows, demons flow. They thrive on sin. It is their very life. They are sin personified.

The “old man” describes the rebellious nature inherited from Adam. Adam did not beget any children in his pre-rebellious state but only after he sinned against God. As such, mankind inherited Adam’s rebellious nature and not a Godly nature. In man’s sinful nature it is an automatic tendency to rebel against God. **The spirit of rebellion still dwells in all unbelievers – those who the Bible calls “the sons of**

⁹³⁹ Romans 6:6 (NKJV) knowing this, that our old man was crucified with *Him*, that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves of sin.

⁹⁴⁰ Galatians 5:24 (NKJV) And those *who are* Christ’s have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

⁹⁴¹ Paul, O.O. (2013) *Expository Study Book on Witchcraft in the Church. Their Marks & Missions*. P. 2

⁹⁴² Romans 5:12 (NKJV) Therefore, just as through one man sin entered the world, and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men, because all sinned—

⁹⁴³ Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc. P. 106

disobedience (Mathew 13:38)⁹⁴⁴. "Those who follow the devil wilfully or even ignorantly are called the "sons of the wicked one"⁹⁴⁵

The apostle John refer to them as the "children of the devil" (1 John 3:10)⁹⁴⁶ The English language also use the adjectives 'carnal' or 'fleshly' in referring to describe the sinful corrupt nature.

Strong's #266 defines sin (hamartia, ham-ar-tee-ah) as "missing the mark, failure, offence, taking the wrong course, wrongdoing, sin, guilt."⁹⁴⁷ The New Testament uses the word in a generic sense for *concrete wrongdoing*, (John 8:34⁹⁴⁸, 2 Corinthians 11:7⁹⁴⁹, James 1:15⁹⁵⁰) as principle and *quality of action* (Romans 5:12-13⁹⁵¹, 20⁹⁵², Hebrew 3:13⁹⁵³) and as a *sinful deed*. (Matthew 12:31⁹⁵⁴, Acts 7:6⁹⁵⁵, 1 John 5:16⁹⁵⁶). The apostle John provided an uncomplicated definition by stating that sin is lawlessness.⁹⁵⁷ Deriving from hamartia is hamartiology, the

⁹⁴⁴ Matthew 13:38 (NKJV) The field is the world, the good seeds are the sons of the kingdom, but the tares are the sons of the wicked *one*.

⁹⁴⁵ Baxter, Mary K. and Lowery, T.L. Dr. (2006) *A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington: Whitaker House. P. 24.

⁹⁴⁶ 1 John 3:10 (NKJV) In this the children of God and the children of the devil are manifest: Whoever does not practice righteousness is not of God, nor *is* he who does not love his brother.

⁹⁴⁷ Bible Hub 266. Hamartia. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/greek/266.htm>

⁹⁴⁸ John 8:34 (NKJV) Jesus answered them, "Most assuredly, I say to you, whoever commits sin is a slave of sin.

⁹⁴⁹ 2 Corinthians 11:7 (NKJV) Did I commit sin in humbling myself that you might be exalted, because I preached the gospel of God to you free of charge?

⁹⁵⁰ James 1:15 (NKJV) Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death

⁹⁵¹ Romans 5:12-13 (NKJV) Therefore, just as through one man sin entered the world, and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men, because all sinned— (For until the law sin was in the world, but sin is not imputed when there is no law.

⁹⁵² Romans 5:20 (NKJV) Moreover the law entered that the offense might abound. But where sin abounded, grace abounded much more,

⁹⁵³ Hebrew 3:13 but exhort one another daily, while it is called "Today," lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.

⁹⁵⁴ Matthew 12:31 (NKJV) "Therefore I say to you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy *against* the Spirit will not be forgiven men.

⁹⁵⁵ Acts 7:6 (NKJV) But God spoke in this way: that his descendants would dwell in a foreign land, and that they would bring them into bondage and oppress *them* four hundred years.

⁹⁵⁶ 1 John 5:16 (NKJV) If anyone sees his brother sinning a sin *which does not lead* to death, he will ask, and He will give him life for those who commit sin not *leading* to death. There is sin *leading* to death. I do not say that he should pray about that.

⁹⁵⁷ 1 John 3:4 Philips "Everyone who commits sin breaks God's law, for that is what sin is, by definition – a breaking of God's law.

doctrine of sin in Christian theology.⁹⁵⁸

Strong's #7451 clarifies two aspects of evil in the Hebrew word for evil "ra", (evil, distress, misery, injury, calamity)⁹⁵⁹: As a moral term referring to actions which violate God's intention and as a descriptive term reflecting the consequences of evil, the result of the wrong moral choices.⁹⁶⁰

6.1 The Original Sin: Pride

Pride goes before destruction, and arrogance before failure. Better to be humble among the poor than share the spoil with the proud

Proverbs 16:18-19 (CJB)

A haughty look, a proud heart, And the plowing of the wicked are sin.

Proverbs 21:4 (NKJV)

1. Pride was the fundamental sin of Satan when he first sinned. Pride: (Isaiah 14:13-14)⁹⁶¹
2. Pride and self-assertion inevitably lead to the sin of rebellion. Proud human initiatives often result in conflict with God's plan. Therefore the Godly warning to resist the proud but gives grace to the humble. (James 4:6)⁹⁶²
3. Pride is associated with self-ascension, self-exaltation, self-enthronement, self-dependence, and self-deification. ***God opposes the arrogant, but to the humble he gives grace. (James 4:6)***

⁹⁵⁸ Got Questions? What is Hamartiology? Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/hamartiology>

⁹⁵⁹ Evil. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/hebrew/7451b.htm>

⁹⁶⁰ Richards, Larry (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc. P. 11

⁹⁶¹ Isaiah 14:13-14 (NKJV) For you have said in your heart: 'I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.'

⁹⁶² James 4:6 (NKJV) But He gives more grace. Therefore He says: "God resists the proud, But gives grace to the humble."

6.2 Biblical Sin: Comparisons to Current South Africa

The comparisons to South Africa in this research are not reflecting individual sin, but on 'structural' or 'institutional sin'; sin accumulating to the extent that many people commit to the same sin, where society begins to accept institutional sin as the norm whereby their civilization operates.

The author was of the opinion that leadership, by virtue of spiritual executive authority, transfers, or duplicate sin, or legally establish the sinful nature by means of legally permitting sin to establish a stronghold by means of collective and repeated sin.

This research evaluated the alleged collective sin of the President as highest office bearer, members of his cabinet, members of Parliament and high-ranking government officials and appointed office bearers. The research also comments on sin, by Biblical definition, safeguarded in the National Constitution and Charter of Human Rights. The research evaluated the South African institutional sin according to several Biblical definitions.

6.2.1 The Book of Judges

National sin resulted in God's wrath on a national level towards the inhabitants of a land. Numerous examples are found in the Book of Judges where the leader (normally the king) sinned and God's judgement manifested in natural disasters such as drought, famine and war etc.

In Judges chapter two the Angel of the Lord (manifestation of Jesus Christ) confirmed to Israel that He will not assist them to possess the land due to their disobedience.⁹⁶³ They did proceed to possess the land but had to endure the

⁹⁶³ Judges 2:2-3 (NKJV) And you shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land; you shall tear down their altars.' But you have not obeyed My voice. Why have you done this? Therefore I also said, 'I

problematic presence of their enemies – the very people they did not strike. South Africa is disobedient to the Word of God in countless ways. Adapting godless practices establish the problematic presence of the kingdom of darkness.

6.2.2 King David Disobedience in Calling for a Census (2 Samuel 24)

King David sinned in his decision to implement a census and as a result the nation bore a plague for three days with seventy thousand deaths. Considering that the text only reflects the male casualties, it is reasonable to accept that the number of deaths were considerably higher.

The occurrence of sin and God's judgement highlight the decisive persona of God as judge, but also His fairness and grace.

6.2.3 Consideration from the Books of Judges and Samuel 24 Pertaining to Godly Judgements

- Sin of a leader results in judgement affecting not only the leader but the people of the land collectively. South African leaders (with special reference to the previous president) are allegedly responsible for numerous accounts of fraud and corruption. (State capture)
- Sin of a king often become the sin of the people. Numerous accounts are presented of Kings replacing God with idol worship, building altars for foreign god. The nation followed swiftly. Alleged fraud and corruption of South African leaders became the norm for many ordinary South Africans, especially in all spheres of government.

will not drive them out before you; but they shall be *thorns* in your side, and their gods shall be a snare to you.' ”

- The opposing action is equally true. When Godly leaders, (normally the King) repented and turned to God, the nation followed. God bestowed favour in peace and prosperity.
- God is just and cannot ignore sin. If He could, it would not have been necessary to present His only begotten Son as a sin offering to re-establish atonement.
- God is gracious to forgive if sin is repented.
- Sin, missing the mark of God's intended plan, discounting God and defiling the principles of His Word operates in allegiance with the Kingdom of Satan.

6.2.4 South African Corruption and State Capture

A State Capture Commission of Inquiry (Proclamation No. 3 of 2018, Judicial Commission of inquiry into allegations of State Capture, Corruption and Fraud in the Public Sector including Organs of State)⁹⁶⁴ was established in August 2018. Mr. Justice Raymond M.M. Zondo, Deputy Chief Justice of the Republic of South Africa was appointed as chairman. The commission convened on 21 August 2018, and has to date spend more than 200 days and heard evidence from over 150 witnesses. The transcript of the evidence consists of more than 27 000 pages, with exhibits of more than 450 000 pages.⁹⁶⁵ Public hearings video graphic recordings are available on the website www.sastatecapture.org.za.

Second to government, several private sector companies were implied in scandals. Steinhoff, EOH Holdings, Tongaat Hulett, KPMG, McKinswy & Company and German Software giant SAP.⁹⁶⁶

⁹⁶⁴ Government Gazette (January 25, 2018). Available at: https://www.sastatecapture.org.za/uploads/Terms_Of_Reference.pdf

⁹⁶⁵ BusinessTech (January 24, 2020) *Corruption in South Africa – nobody cares*. Available at: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/government/368032/corruption-in-south-africa-nobody-cares/>

⁹⁶⁶ BusinessTech (January, 24 2020) *Corruption in South Africa – nobody cares*. Available at: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/government/368032/corruption-in-south-africa-nobody-cares/>

Government on all three levels is implicated. The Auditor General's report indicated that 28 of 257 municipalities could not be audited as their financial statements were not submitted. Only 8% (20 municipalities) received clean audits.⁹⁶⁷ Not a single municipality in the Free State province received a clean audit for 2018/19. With several investigations for misconduct implicating the Free State provincial government, the author states that the facts speak for itself. The lack of the ANC's commitment to address corruption is evident in the constant elections and appointment of ANC office bearers implicated in corruption. The former premier of the Free State Ace Magashule acts as the ANC Secretary General whilst Danny Msiza and Florence Radzilani implicated in the VBS Mutual Bank R2 billion scandal were reinstated in the Limpopo Treasury.

*Buzz South Africa*⁹⁶⁸ published the top ten corruptions scandals identified by the trade union Solidarity:

i	Local Government	Irregularities included 304 awards to 72 auditees to the value of R60 million. Employees (189), councillors (21) and suppliers (198) benefited.
ii	Tenderpreneurships Fraud	Irregular spending total R11 351 million
iii	SAPS ⁹⁶⁹	Apart from various officers arrested, alleged drug bribes total to R1.6 million and corruption involving the lease of SAPS headquarters totalled R500 million
iv	Metro Police	184 Johannesburg Metro Police department officers are accused of brutality, soliciting and accepting bribes.

⁹⁶⁷ Corruption News (July 3, 2020) MFMA Report: Officials continue to squander municipal millions. Available at: <https://www.corruptionwatch.org.za/mfma-report-officials-continue-to-squander-municipal-millions/>

⁹⁶⁸ Nedu, Raymond (May 21, 2020). *Top 10 Corruption Scandals in South Africa*. Available at: <https://buzzsouthafrica.com/here-are-the-top-10-corruption-scandals-in-south-africa/>

⁹⁶⁹ SAPS: South African Police Service

v	Tshwane Prepaid meters	Total of R830 million paid for 800 000 meters. After only 12 930 meters were installed the tender was cancelled. Payment of another R800 million was planned after the cancellation of the contract.
vi	PRASA ⁹⁷⁰	R620 million wasted on unsuitable trains.
vii	False Qualifications	Corrupt practices of South Africa manifested in numerous falsified Curriculum Vitae's ⁹⁷¹ . The salaries earned were corrupt, the consequences of inadequate skills, detrimental.
viii	South African Home Affairs	High levels of bribery made possible by the fact that individual's opportunity to work, study, to get a driving licence, to vote, to marry etc depends on a valid Identification document.
ix	Cabinet and parliament	Corruption varies from the abuse of parliamentary travel vouchers to irregular spending and contracts awarded. The report mentioned corruption to the value of more than R975 million.
x	Jacob Zuma's Nkandla's Home	Irregular spend to the value of R246 million.

Table 23: Top ten corruptions scandals identified by the trade union Solidarity

Corruption entrenched in the South African Society undermines the basic legitimacy of the government. The lack of leadership and political will to address the corruption pandemic is in itself problematic, but accumulatively, is the collaboration of the leaders, resulting in the fact that corruption, in the view of the

⁹⁷⁰ PRASA: Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

⁹⁷¹ ANC Spokesperson Carl Niehaus submitted false qualifications in 2014. Pallo Jordan, former minister of Arts and Culture falsified a PhD in engineering and was not even registered with the Engineering Council of South Africa. The South African Broadcast Corporation (SABS) board chairman, Ellen Tsabalala and Hlaudi Motsoeneng, acting CEO of SA Airways Nico Bezuidenhout and board chairperson Dude Myeni, all falsified their qualifications. Former minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs Sicelo Shiceka falsified a Master's Degree and former SANRAL Board chairperson Tembakazi Mnyaka falsified a Master's Degree in Town Planning.

author, is considered a corporate or institutional sin.

The 1960 theorist Horst Rittel⁹⁷² coined the phrase “wicked problem”, describing a problem so complex that it is difficult or almost impossible to solve. The problem is characterised by contradictory and changing requirements, whilst ‘wicket’ refers to the problem being resistant to resolution, not necessarily evil.

Corruption can be described as a ‘wicked problem’. In contrast to the original meaning, the author speculates pertaining to the possibility that the ingrained corruption is not motivated, instigated and orchestrated from the Kingdom of Darkness.

6.3 Seven Detestable Sins from the Book of Proverbs

The Complete Jewish Bible present Proverbs 6:16-19⁹⁷³ as following:

“There are six things Adonai hates, seven which he detests”

Proverbs (CJB)

Detestable sins listed	Application to South Africa
a haughty look	Root of high levels of nepotism and ignorance for the social needs of millions of South Africans.
a lying tongue	State capture and corruption and criminalisation of the state as a result

⁹⁷² Sunday Independent (November 2012) *The Wicked Problem of Corruption*. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/sundayindependent/the-wicked-problem-of-corruption-1425534>

⁹⁷³ Proverbs 6:16-19 (CJB) There are six things ADONAI hates, seven which he detests: a haughty look, a lying tongue, hands that shed innocent blood, a heart that plots wicked schemes, feet swift in running to do evil, a false witness who lies with every breath, and him who sows strife among brothers.

hands that shed innocent blood (Also in Law of Moses: You shall not murder)	Legalised abortion ⁹⁷⁴ , Muti murders, Violent crimes with special reference to farm murders. Violence towards women and children is constantly exceeding.
a heart that plots wicked schemes	State capture and corruption and criminalisation of the state as a result
feet swift in running to do evil	State capture and corruption and criminalisation of the state as a result
a false witness who lies with every breath (also included in Law of Moses "You shall not bear false witness)	The Zondo commission is appointed to dismantle countless national lies.
and him who sows strife among brothers.	Hate speech and provoked racism by Members of Parliament set the example and bear fruit accordingly.

Table 24: 7 Detestable sins

6.4 Additional Sins Identified

Sin	Application to South Africa
The thought of covetous foolishness (Proverbs 24:9) ⁹⁷⁵	Continuing high levels of corruption fuelled by covetousness.
Transgression of law (1 John 3:4) ⁹⁷⁶	All three spheres of government in 8 provinces were found to have violated good governance principles, deviating from their mandate to govern to the benefit of the people. Only 20 of 257 Municipalities received a clean audit for 2018/18. Fruitless

⁹⁷⁴ Choice of Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996, Education laws amendment Act, 1999

⁹⁷⁵ Proverbs 24:9 (NKJV) The devising of foolishness *is* sin, And the scoffer *is* an abomination to men.

⁹⁷⁶ 1 John 3:4 (NKJV) Whoever commits sin also commits lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness.

	and wasteful expenditure accounted to over R2.07 billions and unauthorised expenditure for R11.9 billion. R32.06 billion was spent irregularly, marking an increase of R6.86 billion over the previous financial year. ⁹⁷⁷
Unrighteousness is Sin (1 John 5:17) ⁹⁷⁸	State capture and corruption and criminalisation of the state as a result
Not doing good is doing Sin (James 4:17) ⁹⁷⁹	The author is of the opinion that discrimination in Apartheid was unrighteous and unjust. The silent acceptance is interpreted as sin. In the same instance, numerous legislations accepted after 1994 is founded on race discrimination. Wages below the minimum wage amount is considered to be wrongdoing and as such sin.
Unbelief is Sin (Romans 14:23) ⁹⁸⁰	Faithlessness in the provision of God to intervene in Government. Ignoring the progress by the Zondo Commission to unveil fraud, ignorance re the Godly intervention for peaceful elections.
Lust (Matthew 5:28) ⁹⁸¹	Lust is contributing to femicide ⁹⁸² . South African woman fall victim epidemic of gender-

⁹⁷⁷ IOL (African News Agency Reporter) (July 4 2020) South Africans being badly let down by local government, says SAHRC after audit outcomes. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/south-africans-being-badly-let-down-by-local-government-says-sahrc-after-audit-outcomes-50388947>

⁹⁷⁸ 1 John 5:17 (NKJV) All unrighteousness is sin, and there is sin not *leading* to death.

⁹⁷⁹ James 4:17 (NKJV) Therefore, to him who knows to do good and does not do *it*, to him it is sin.

⁹⁸⁰ Romans 14:23 (NKJV) But he who doubts is condemned if he eats, because *he does* not *eat* from faith; for whatever *is* not from faith is sin.

⁹⁸¹ Matthew 5:28 (NKJV) But I say to you that whoever looks at a woman to lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.

⁹⁸² Femicide: Stats SA defines femicide as: “The intentional killing of females (women or girls) because they are females.” Available at: <https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/how-many-women-killed-south-africa-femicide/>

	based violence. Adult pornography ⁹⁸³ and prostitution ⁹⁸⁴ feed lust.
Gluttony (Proverbs 23:21) ⁹⁸⁵	Gluttony is one of the roots of corruption and state capture.
Greed (Ephesians 4:19) ⁹⁸⁶	The Lottery and Gamble legislation ⁹⁸⁷ fuel Greed. Greed is one of the roots of corruption and state capture.
Laziness (Proverbs 15:19) ⁹⁸⁸	The author is of the opinion that the cause of the total collapse of all parastatals (SAA, Eskom, PRASA, Denel, etc.) is founded in incompetence and corruption, ineptitude, but most assuredly laziness and a lack of accountability.
Wrath (Proverbs 15:1) ⁹⁸⁹	Post 1994 legislations, with regards to Labour ⁹⁹⁰ and the Economy (business) ⁹⁹¹ in particular does not focus to address the unrighteousness of the past, but as retribution of white South African. Specific tax incentives exclude white owned businesses. ⁹⁹²
Envy (1 Peter 2:1-2) ⁹⁹³	Envy is one of the roots of corruption and state capture. Envy manifests in the Land

⁹⁸³ The Films and Publication Act, 1996

⁹⁸⁴ Decriminalisation of Prostitution is in process.

⁹⁸⁵ Proverbs 23:21 (NKJV) For the drunkard and the glutton will come to poverty, And drowsiness will clothe *a man* with rags.

⁹⁸⁶ Ephesians 4:19 (NKJV) who, being past feeling, have given themselves over to lewdness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.

⁹⁸⁷ The National Gambling Act, 1996 and the Lotteries Act, 1997

⁹⁸⁸ Proverbs 15:19 (NKJV) The way of the lazy *man* is like a hedge of thorns, But the way of the upright is a highway.

⁹⁸⁹ Proverbs 15:19 (NKJV) A soft answer turns away wrath, But a harsh word stirs up anger.

⁹⁹⁰ Employment Equity Act 55 of 1998

⁹⁹¹ Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment Act 53 of 2003 Department Trade and Industry: Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP) Isivande Women's Fund.

⁹⁹² PAYE (Pay as you earn): ETI (Employment Training Initiative) and Covid19 Tax relief measures.

⁹⁹³ 1 Peter 2:1-2 (NKJV) Therefore, laying aside all malice, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all evil speaking, as new-born babes, desire the pure milk of the word, that you may grow thereby,

	grab movement and Land Expropriation legislation. ⁹⁹⁴
Pride (Proverbs 16:18) ⁹⁹⁵	Pride could have been a fundamental reason for the Apartheid ideology. The Afrikaner nations association with Israel and their elevation of their culture to be superior. Currently, tribal pride is noticeable in unprofessional working relations between public officials.
Polygamy (Deuteronomy 17:17 ⁹⁹⁶ , Matthew 19:4-5 ⁹⁹⁷ , 1 Corinthians 7:2) ⁹⁹⁸	The recognition of customary marriages in accordance with traditions and laws of indigenous African law accommodated polygamy in contrast to God's Word. ⁹⁹⁹

Table 25: Additional sins

6.5 Sins of the Churches of Revelation

Church and the specific sin	Comparison to South Africa
<u>Ephesus</u> ¹⁰⁰⁰ : Forsaken their first love (Christ)	The constitution does not acknowledge God. "May God protect our people" in the Preamble of the constitution are not specific

⁹⁹⁴ Restitution of Land Rights Act 22 of 1994 and Land expropriation without compensation bill aims to amend Section 25 of the Constitution.

⁹⁹⁵ Proverbs 16:18 (NKJV) Pride *goes* before destruction, And a haughty spirit before a fall.

⁹⁹⁶ Deuteronomy 17:17 (NKJV) Neither shall he multiply wives for himself, lest his heart turn away; nor shall he greatly multiply silver and gold for himself.

⁹⁹⁷ Matthew 19:4-5 (NKJV) And He answered and said to them, "Have you not read that He who made *them* at the beginning 'made them male and female,' and said, 'For this reason a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and the two shall become one flesh'?"

⁹⁹⁸ 1 Corinthians 7:2 (NKJV) Nevertheless, because of sexual immorality, let each man have his own wife, and let each woman have her own husband.

⁹⁹⁹ Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998. Customary Marriages in South Africa: Understanding the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/customary-marriages-south-africa-understanding-recognition-customary-marriages-act-1998> and Is Polygamy legal in SA? <https://www.dailysun.co.za/SunDefender/is-polygamy-legal-in-sa-20170923>

¹⁰⁰⁰ Revelation 2:4 (NKJV) Nevertheless I have *this* against you, that you have left your first love.

	to which God it refers. A generic god accommodating all beliefs.
<u>Smyrna</u> ¹⁰⁰¹ : One of two churches who was not rebuked. The church refused to adopt pagan worship. ¹⁰⁰²	Pagan worship ¹⁰⁰³ (satanism included) is protected in the South African Constitution.
<u>Pergamos</u> ¹⁰⁰⁴ : The tolerant church did not deny Christ but allowed paganism and idolatry. ¹⁰⁰⁵	Pagan worship (satanism included) is protected in the Constitution. ¹⁰⁰⁶ Ancestral veneration is a general accepted practice. Rituals are performed at the opening of parliament, sport.
<u>Thyatira</u> ¹⁰⁰⁷ : All-inclusive church on moral and spiritual matters. Love and good works also accommodated idolatry, sexual sins and pagan traditions. ¹⁰⁰⁸	Spiritual fornication in the acknowledgement and equality of all religions.
<u>Sardis</u> ¹⁰⁰⁹ : Referred to as the dead church abandoned or did not recognise the work of the Holy Spirit.	The author is of the opinion that the three major Afrikaans Churches (Dutch Reform, Reform and GKSA) do not recognise and allow the Holy Spirit ministry. To the contrary,

¹⁰⁰¹ Revelation 2:10 (NKJV) Do not fear any of those things which you are about to suffer. Indeed, the devil is about to throw *some* of you into prison, that you may be tested, and you will have tribulation ten days. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life.

¹⁰⁰² Jeremiah, David. *Seven Churches of Revelation Bible Study*. Available at: <https://davidjeremiah.blog/seven-churches-of-revelation-bible-study/>

¹⁰⁰³ Promoting of equality and prevention of unreasonable discrimination Act, 2000,

¹⁰⁰⁴ Revelation 2:16 (NKJV) Repent, or else I will come to you quickly and will fight against them with the sword of My mouth.

¹⁰⁰⁵ Living Passages. The 7 Churches of revelation, their struggles and strengths. Available at: <https://livingpassages.com/7-churches-of-revelation/>

¹⁰⁰⁶ Freedom of religion, belief and opinion. Article 16 of The Bill of Rights

¹⁰⁰⁷ Revelation 2:20 (NKJV) Nevertheless I have a few things against you, because you allow that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, to teach and seduce My servants to commit sexual immorality and eat things sacrificed to idols.

¹⁰⁰⁸ Living Passages. The 7 Churches of revelation, their struggles and strengths. Available at: <https://livingpassages.com/7-churches-of-revelation/>

¹⁰⁰⁹ Revelation 3:2 (NKJV) Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die, for I have not found your works perfect before God.

	many Traditional African Churches are enthusiastic to allow the Holy Spirit manifestation, but due to a lack of discernment, often falls victim to the false holy spirit.
<u>Philadelphia</u> ¹⁰¹⁰ : Commended for an open door, faithfulness and not denying Christ.	Although the majority of south Africans claim to belong to the Christian faith regardless the multitudes of denominations, the Constitution, nor the pre-ample to the Constitution recognise Christ.
<u>Laodicea</u> ¹⁰¹¹ : Lukewarm faith, compromising, conceited and Christ-lessness.	Prior to the 1994 elections, powerful prayer groups arose across South Africa. God was faithful and the threatening bloodbath did not materialise. Thereafter, South Africans returned to lukewarm Christianity. Sporadic renewed commitments often co-insided with general and local government elections.

Table 26: Sins of the churches

6.6 Major Avenues of Sin

Psalm 32:5 mentions sin, transgression, and iniquity in the same verse. This seems to indicate a definite distinction.

I acknowledged my sin to You, And my iniquity I have not hidden. I said, "I will confess my transgressions to the Lord," And You forgave the iniquity of my sin. Selah

Psalm 32:5 (NIV)

- **Iniquity** Strong's #5771 'avon (ah-voan): Evil, fault, sin, iniquity, guilt, blame, moral illness, perversion., crookedness. 'Avon is derived from 'avah, to blend" or "distort." Thus, iniquity is the evil bent within human

¹⁰¹⁰ Revelation 3:10 (NKJV) Because you have kept My command to persevere, I also will keep you from the hour of trial which shall come upon the whole world, to test those who dwell on the earth.

¹⁰¹¹ Revelation 3:16 (NKJV) So then, because you are lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will vomit you out of My mouth.

beings. (Psalm 103:2-3)¹⁰¹² Bending, twisting or distorting the Law or God's Word.

Iniquity is a violation of the right of duty that mankind is under obligation to do. As such, an iniquity can also be a wicked act and immoral conduct or practices that are harmful or offensive to society but especially to God.¹⁰¹³

- **Transgressions** Strong's #6588 Pasha' (peh-sha) Rebellion, transgressions, trespass. 'Pasha' comes from the verb pasha', which means to 'revolt', rebel, and trespass'. A wilful act of disobedience. Whether as nouns or verb, a trespass had to do with revolting against the law, God, or government, and was a transgressing, that is, going beyond established limits, 'Rebellion,' or "breaking out against," might also describe 'pasha'. Isaiah 53:5¹⁰¹⁴ shows that the Messiah was wounded on account of our transgressions (esha) and verse 12¹⁰¹⁵ shows Him interceding for transgressors (peaha').¹⁰¹⁶

Additional to the above. Strong's #3845 also translated transgression as Transgression, 'parabaino' (par-ab=ahee-no) Abandoning a trust, departing, stepping aside, overstep, violation, rebellion, aberration, apostasy, disobedience, deviation from an original and true direction. In order to go his own way, Judas abandoned his positions of service as one of the Twelve.¹⁰¹⁷

- **Tresspass** mâ'al *maw-al'* A primitive root; properly to cover up; used only figuratively to *act covertly*, that is, *treacherously*: - transgress, (commit, do a) tresspass (-ing).

¹⁰¹² Psalm 103:2-3 (NKJV) Bless the LORD, O my soul, And forget not all His benefits: Who forgives all your iniquities, Who heals all your diseases,

¹⁰¹³ What is the difference between Sin and Iniquity? A Bible Study. (July 2015). Available at: <https://www.patheos.com/blogs/christiancrier/2015/07/23/what-is-the-difference-between-sin-and-iniquity-a-bible-study/>

¹⁰¹⁴ Isaiah 53:5 (NKJV) But He *was* wounded for our transgressions, *He was* bruised for our iniquities; The chastisement for our peace *was* upon Him, And by His stripes we are healed.

¹⁰¹⁵ Isaiah 53:12 (NKJV) Therefore I will divide Him a portion with the great, And He shall divide the spoil with the strong, Because He poured out His soul unto death, And He was numbered with the transgressors, And He bore the sin of many, And made intercession for the transgressors.

¹⁰¹⁶ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1179

¹⁰¹⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1624

- **Unrighteousness** Adikia (ad-ee=kee-ah) Strong's #93: Derived from a negative, and the root dike, "right." Misdeeds, injustice, moral wrongdoing, unjust acts, unrighteous, iniquity. It is the opposite of truthfulness, faithfulness, and rightness.¹⁰¹⁸

The author concluded with 1 John 3:4. Sin is the transgression of the law of God and every iniquity is sin.

Whoever commits sin also commits lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness.

1 John 3:4 (NKJV)

6.7 Avenues of Religious Sin

- **Idolatry:** Strong's #1495 (eidólolatria) Image worship. False religions, sorcery, witchcraft, divination. Derek Prince¹⁰¹⁹ compared Idolatry with spiritual adultery (turning away from the one true God.)¹⁰²⁰

Numerous examples e.g., Exodus 32:1-8¹⁰²¹ and Deuteronomy 5:9¹⁰²² were provided where the Israelites abandoned their faith in the God of Abaraham,

¹⁰¹⁸ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1587

¹⁰¹⁹ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 124

¹⁰²⁰ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 124

¹⁰²¹ Exodus 32:1-8 (NKJV) Now when the people saw that Moses delayed coming down from the mountain, the people gathered together to Aaron, and said to him, "Come, make us gods that shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him." And Aaron said to them, "Break off the golden earrings which are in the ears of your wives, your sons, and your daughters, and bring them to me." So all the people broke off the golden earrings which were in their ears, and brought them to Aaron. And he received the gold from their hand, and he fashioned it with an engraving tool, and made a molded calf. Then they said, "This is your god, O Israel, that brought you out of the land of Egypt!" So when Aaron saw it, he built an altar before it. And Aaron made a proclamation and said, "Tomorrow is a feast to the LORD." Then they rose early on the next day, offered burnt offerings, and brought peace offerings; and the people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play. And the LORD said to Moses, "Go, get down! For your people whom you brought out of the land of Egypt have corrupted themselves. They have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them. They have made themselves a molded calf, and worshiped it and sacrificed to it, and said, 'This is your god, O Israel, that brought you out of the land of Egypt!'"

¹⁰²² Deuteronomy 5:9 (NKJV) you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. For I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me,

Isaac and Jacob. Influenced by false religions from neighbouring nations or born from own dissatisfaction and ungratefulness. Ritenbaugh¹⁰²³ noted how Israel's unfaithfulness impacted the direction of the nation's morality, government, art, literature, education and the entire nation.

6.8 Major Avenues of Sexual Sins

Do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit or have any share in the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived; neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate [by perversion], nor those who participate in homosexuality, nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor revilers [whose words are used as weapons to abuse, insult, humiliate, intimidate, or slander], nor swindlers will inherit or have any share in the kingdom of God.

1 Corinthians 6:9-10 (AMP)

Paul¹⁰²⁴ distinguished between sin outside the body vs sin against a person's own body. He considered someone guilty of sexual immorality to sin against their own body. Considering the indwelling of the Holy Spirit, believers body's belongs to God and should be considered temples of God. The author was of the opinion that, although faith is a spiritual phenomenon, Paul's reference to the physical body implies that faith in God includes the physical body. Faith in God is thus spiritual with a physical implication or extension.

- **Adultery:** Defined as unlawful sexual intercourse, illicit connections with a married person, marital infidelity. (Strong's #3430 Moicheia.) Moicheia is incompatible with the harmonious laws of family in God's Kingdom, and since it violates God's original purpose in marriage, it is under God's judgement.¹⁰²⁵

¹⁰²³ Ritenbaugh, John W. *The Nature of God: Elohim* Available at: <https://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Topical.show/RTD/cgg/ID/2117Idolatrous-Religious-Influence.htm>

¹⁰²⁴ 1 Corinthians 6:18 (NKJV) Flee sexual immorality. Every sin that a man does is outside the body, but he who commits sexual immorality sins against his own body.

¹⁰²⁵ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1588

The ten commandments specifically include the prohibition against adultery: “**You shall not commit adultery**”. (Exodus 20:14)¹⁰²⁶.

- **Fornication:** Defined as an illicit sexual relationship between two unmarried people.¹⁰²⁷
- Relevant definitions from the Strong’s concordance: Strong’s #4204: porné, a prostitute or harlot.¹⁰²⁸ Strong’s #4203: to commit fornication.¹⁰²⁹ Strong’s #4202: From porneuo; harlotry (including adultery and incest); figuratively, idolatry -- fornication.¹⁰³⁰
- **Pornography/Fornication:** The Spirit Filled Life Bible¹⁰³¹ expand on the Strong’s (Strong’s #4203 define pornography: Porneuo (porn-yoo-oh) Compare “pornographic” and “pornography”. To engage in illicit sexual intercourse, be unfaithful, play the harlot, prostitute oneself. The word is used literally (Mark 10:19, 1 Corinthians 6:18, 10:8)¹⁰³² and metaphorically, that is idolatry (Revelation 17:2, 18:3, 9)¹⁰³³

The author acknowledges sexual orientation, gender identity and gender expression, LGBTQI¹⁰³⁴ phenomena as extremely complex matters. Individuals experience resentment, alienation, and discrimination.

¹⁰²⁶ Exodus 20:14 (NKJV) “You shall not commit adultery.

¹⁰²⁷ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2003

¹⁰²⁸ Strong's Concordance - #4204. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4204.htm>

¹⁰²⁹ Strong's Concordance - #4203. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4203.htm>

¹⁰³⁰ Strong's Concordance - #4202. Available at: <https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4202.htm>

¹⁰³¹ Committed fornication: Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1984

¹⁰³² Mark 10:19 (NKJV) You know the commandments: ‘Do not commit adultery,’ ‘Do not murder,’ ‘Do not steal,’ ‘Do not bear false witness,’ ‘Do not defraud,’ ‘Honor your father and your mother.’ ”

1 Corinthians 6:18 (NKJV) Flee sexual immorality. Every sin that a man does is outside the body, but he who commits sexual immorality sins against his own body.

1 Corinthians 10:8 (NKJV) Nor let us commit sexual immorality, as some of them did, and in one day twenty-three thousand fell;

¹⁰³³ Revelation 17:2 (NKJV) with whom the kings of the earth committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth were made drunk with the wine of her fornication.”

Revelation 18:3 (NKJV) For all the nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth have become rich through the abundance of her luxury.”

Revelation 18:9 (NKJV) “The kings of the earth who committed fornication and lived luxuriously with her will weep and lament for her, when they see the smoke of her burning,

¹⁰³⁴ LGBTQI: Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Queer or Questioning and Intersex. Available at: <https://acronyms.thefreedictionary.com/LGBTQI>

The author also acknowledges that many of the LGBTQI individuals confess their faith in Jesus Christ and are in turmoil with regards to their sexuality.

The Word of God however is clear in this regard referring to the phenomena as shameful (Romans 1:27)¹⁰³⁵, individuals will not enter the Kingdom of God (1 Corinthians 6:9-10)¹⁰³⁶ and the final order of rebellion. Several legislations legalise homosexual lifestyles.

- The Children's Act No. 38 of 2005 legalises same sex couples to adopt children
- The Domestic partnership and homosexual marriage Act of 1994 legalises homosexual relationships and accept of being equal to heterosexual relationships.
- Legalising of homosexual marriages in 2006.
- Alternation of sex description and sex status Act of 2003 allows gender description of individuals in the National Populations Register whose sex organs have been amended resulting in a 'sex change'.
- The Aliens Control Act of 1991 was found to be unconstitutional in its discrimination not to acknowledge the benefits extended to "spouses" in same sex relationships.
- **Lusts** epithumia (ep-ee-tho-mee-ah) Strong's #1939¹⁰³⁷ A strong desire and intense craving for something. Three times it applies to good desires

¹⁰³⁵ Romans 1:27 (NKJV) Likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust for one another, men with men committing what is shameful, and receiving in themselves the penalty of their error which was due.

¹⁰³⁶ 1 Corinthians 6:9-10 (NKJV) Do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived. Neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor homosexuals, nor sodomites, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners will inherit the kingdom of God.

¹⁰³⁷ Lusts. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1854

(Luke 22:15¹⁰³⁸; Philippians 1:23¹⁰³⁹; 1 Thessalonians 2:17¹⁰⁴⁰). Ts other uses are negative, such as gratifying sensual cravings, desiring the forbidden, longing for the evil, coveting what belongs to someone else, and striving for things, persons, or experiences contrary to the will of God.

6.9 The Effect of Sin in Man's Presence in the Kingdom of God.

And they heard the sound of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God among the trees of the garden.

Then the Lord God called to Adam and said to him, "Where are you?" So he said, "I heard Your voice in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; and I hid myself."

And He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you that you should not eat?"

Then the man said, "The woman whom You gave to be with me, she gave me of the tree, and I ate."

Genesis 3:8-12

- Sin separates man from and creates fear as God illustrated in Adam and Eve's effort to hide from God. (Genesis 3:8);¹⁰⁴¹
- Sin creates shame as illustrated by Adam and Eve's effort to hide their nakedness. (Genesis 3:8);¹⁰⁴²
- Sin seeks to justify and cancels honesty. (Genesis 3:8-10);¹⁰⁴³

¹⁰³⁸ Luke 22:15 (NKJV) Then He said to them, "With *fervent* desire I have desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer;

¹⁰³⁹ Philippians 1:23 (NKJV) For I am hard-pressed between the two, having a desire to depart and be with Christ, *which is* far better.

¹⁰⁴⁰ 1 Thessalonians 2:17 (NKJV) But we, brethren, having been taken away from you for a short time in presence, not in heart, endeavored more eagerly to see your face with great desire.

¹⁰⁴¹ Genesis 3:8 (NKJV) And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden.

¹⁰⁴² Genesis 3:8 (NKJV) And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden.

¹⁰⁴³ Genesis 3:8:10 (NKJV) And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden. Then the LORD God called to Adam and said to him, "Where *are* you?" So he said, "I heard Your voice in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; and I hid myself."

- Sin leads to blame as illustrated by Eve blaming the snake and Adam blaming Eve. (Genesis 3:12);¹⁰⁴⁴
- Sin leads to judgement illustrated by God's command for them to leave the Garden of Eden as well as his curse on both of them They were judged individually and as a unit. (Genesis 3:22);¹⁰⁴⁵
- Sin corrupted man's nature in spirit, soul, and body;
- Due to Adam's sin, sin entered the world and sin was passed on to all of mankind;
- Sin cancelled man's original capacity of immortality. The penalty of sin is death;¹⁰⁴⁶
- Sin does not annihilate salvation and atonement in Christ. (1 John 1:7)¹⁰⁴⁷

Regardless of national sin, salvation is only applicable to the individual. God is righteous and judges sin, individually or corporately. The Old Testament illustrates how Israel as a nation, and their Kings repented for their sins. In the South African application leaders need to confess sins committed under their rule. South Africans collectively should repent and seek God's forgiveness. God's forgiveness is complete, but the consequences of sin remain a burden to be endured. The burden on the economy as a result of state capture will remain and will be endured for a long time.

Individual remedy for sin is crucifixion of the sinful nature, becoming Christ-like, bearing the fruit of the spirit. The remedy for the demonic torment, as demonstrated by Jesus Christ on several occasions, is to cast the demons out. The two remedies are not interchangeable. It is not possible to cast out the flesh,

¹⁰⁴⁴ Genesis 3:12 (NKJV) Then the man said, "The woman whom You gave to be with me, she gave me of the tree, and I ate."

¹⁰⁴⁵ Genesis 3:22 (NKJV) So He drove out the man; and He placed cherubim at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to guard the way to the tree of life.

¹⁰⁴⁶ Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing. P. 149

¹⁰⁴⁷ 1 John 1:7 (NKJV) But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin.

and it is likewise not possible to crucify a demon.¹⁰⁴⁸

Sin, that is deviation from the Word of God, is falsely legitimised and protected by the Constitution and the Bill of Human rights and several other pieces of legislation. Every aspect of sin aligns with the Kingdom of Darkness and is incorporated in Satan's arsenal of strategies to alienate man from God. On the contrary, the author is convinced that it is possible for a nation, just as it is possible for an individual, to have the mind of Christ, and as such to act just and according to the Word of God.

7. CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the author addressed the questions posed in the Prolegomena:

7.1 *What is the essence of Hamartiology?*

The Doctrine of Sin in essence identifies Satan as the original sinner. It determines that sin entered the universe through Satan. He led an angelic rebellion to oppose God. These angels became totally apostate and unredeemable. Satan was also responsible for sin to enter mankind through Adam and Eve.

Satan deceived Adam and Eve and has since never deviated from his efforts to betray mankind. The purpose of all Satan's efforts is to oppose God's Kingdom and to resist man's salvation in Jesus Christ.

7.2 *How does Satan compromise for the void in man's spirit as a result of his negated fellowship with God?*

Man is primary a spiritual entity created to fellowship with God. Due to the nullified relationship with God, a spiritual void existed resulting in man's constant effort to

¹⁰⁴⁸ Prince, Derek (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books. P. 109

relate to the spiritual in an effort to satisfy the void. It is the authors opinion that Satan originates a variety of all false religions and as such continue to deceive man. Counterfeit false religions cannot replace fellowship with God; thus, man is never spiritually satisfied and remains spiritually depleted.

7.3 What is the implication of the War in the heavenlies for Christians?

The Christian believer - blessed with the indwelling Holy Spirit, and as a result of Christ's victory over Satan share in Christ's authority over Satan. Christ's ministry and authority were transferred to His disciples and later to the church (all believers). Believers are called to take dominion and rule over the kingdom of satan in the authority of Jesus Christ. Scripture defines special gifts of the Sprit and the armour of God to equip believers for the battle between the two Kingdoms. God has ordained man with authority to accomplish His purpose. Jesus gave His disciples authority (exousia) over all the power (dunamis) of the enemy.¹⁰⁴⁹

7.4 Why is there emphasis on man as a spiritual being compared to his/her natural existence?

Life does not end with man's natural death. Natural death is the immediate transference of man's spirit to eternity. Eternity encompasses of only two destinations: The Kingdom of Darkness with Lucifer as eternal superior or The Kingdom of Light with God's eternal reign. The destination is determined by only one fundamental decision: Faith in Christ. The acceptance of Christ as redeemer of all sin automatically transcends man to fellowship with God through the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. The atonement offered by Christ nullify separation

¹⁰⁴⁹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 2006

from God as a result of sin. One man sinned (Adam) and one man offered perfect atonement. (Jesus Christ)

--ooOoo--

“The Christians are right: it is Pride which has been the chief cause of misery in every nation and every family since the world began. Other voices may sometimes bring people together: you may find good fellowship and jokes and friendliness among drunken people or unchaste people. But pride always means enmity it is enmity. And not only enmity between man and man, but enmity to God.”

- C.S Lewis

8. ADDENDUM

8.1 Addendum 1 Chapter 2

Explanation of the Six Global Peace Pole Symbols



Explanation of the Six Global Peace Pole Symbols on The Great Spirit Relay Global Peace Baton

The Na Mu Myo Ho Ren Ge Kyo mantra calligraphy represents the Buddha's Message of Peace accepted by India's King Ashoka -2200 years ago, who then renounced his previous bloody warfare and violence, leading to 500 years of peace and prosperity throughout India. He built many peace poles and monuments to memorialize the Message of Peace.

The Wampum Belt symbol of The Great Law of Peace, the foundation of the Iroquois Confederacy which ended centuries of bitter warfare among the indigenous nations -1000 years ago, and spiritually united over a hundred indigenous nations for hundreds of years of peace and prosperity among them.

The symbol of the Hopi Declaration of Peace by traditional Hopi interpreter Thomas Banyacya, the distilled essence of the Hopi Prophecy promising inevitable global peace to come.

The symbol representing the Three Faiths of Jerusalem Spiritually United in Peace, created for the Christmas 2001 Bethlehem to Jerusalem Peace Walk conducted by members of each of these three faiths as Jerusalem Peacemakers.

The Spiritual Unity of All Faiths symbol created by India's Sathya Sai Baba, who built the Lotus Stupa pillar peace pole depicted in the center as a symbol of the Golden Age of Peace, Unity and Harmony promised to come in the future.

The symbol for Peace, Love and Patience, from the Mayan Sixth Sun Sacred Calendar for the next 26,000 years from December 21, 2012, promising Global Peace starting in 2021.

global-emergency-alert-response.net/GlobalPeace2021.html

8.2 Addendum 2 Chapter 2

With reference to Sin

To provide additional evidence to the argument of the reality of collective or national sin, herewith a summary provided by Adv Willie Spies (20 July 2020) of current investigations pertaining to corruption and fraud.¹⁰⁵⁰

1	ANC's Multi-billion \$ Arm's scandal
2	E-tolling scandal
3	Jacob Zuma's Nkandla Homestead Project (Project Prestige)
4	Nkandla Freeway Project
5	Misuse of the plastic bag levy funds
6	Police Buildings and the exorbitant lease saga
7	Travelgate
8	Tony Yengeni's arrest
9	Jackie Selebi and everything about the trial
10	Jackie Selebi's parole
11	Shabir Schaik's trial, during which Zuma was implicated but no prosecution followed
12	Schabir Shaik's parole on medical grounds, but suddenly, he has fully recovered
13	Richard Mdluli's slush fund
14	Richard Mdluli's abuse of safe houses
15	Richard Mdluli's travel agency scam
16	Richard Mdluli's abuse of state owned vehicles
17	Manto Tshabalala-Msimang's liver transplant
18	Nathi Mtethwa's private residence upgrade with public funds
19	Julius Malema's Limpopo feeding programme
20	Ntau Letebele's transport tender in Limpopo
21	Julius Malema's transport tender in Limpopo
22	School feeding schemes in the Eastern Cape
23	Ms Dina Pule and the ITC Indaba
24	Limpopo textbooks saga
25	Moses Kotane Development Agency corruption
26	Msunduzi municipality officials using more than R1 million of taxpayers' money to fund an ANC rally.

¹⁰⁵⁰ Spies, W. Adv. (July 1, 2020) available at: <https://www.facebook.com/WillieDSpies/posts/912236682607326>

27	Mthatha corruption case over fraudulent legal jobs didn't exist
28	Ekurhuleni municipality corruption in awarding water meter contracts to Lesira-Teq
29	Thaba Chweu local municipality's misuse of R3 million in 2009
30	Endemic corruption at Nala Local Municipality to the point that treasury have cut them off
31	Desiree Tlhoale's axing after going after corrupt officials in sports, arts and culture
32	Viking testing station's corrupt examiners
33	Police officers Linda Mlambo and Mahlang Shaku fraudulently conning motorists out of cash
34	Sandton officers arrested for corruption after extorting money from motorists
35	Willie Hofmeyer's axing
36	Mvula Trust and the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs' job creation fraud to the tune of hundreds of millions of Rands
37	Government's endemic over-use and over-pay of consultants
38	Glynnis Breytenbach's axing
39	The spy-tape saga
40	Thosan Panday corruption in KwaZulu-Natal
41	KwaZulu-Natal's misuse of R785 million in 2011
42	Madibeng municipality awarding millions in tenders to its own employees
43	Madibeng municipality's taxation scam with its employees
44	Madibeng municipality paying money to fictitious companies for fictitious work
45	Madibeng municipality paying for funerals that never took place
46	Madibeng municipality paying for home renovations for its employees
47	Taung municipality paying triple digit increases without consultation
48	Morake Incorporated Attorneys & the Rustenburg provincial department – R13 million paid in fees for a disciplinary hearing
49	Endemic corruption at Mbhashe municipality to the point of the mayor and 7 others being fired
50	Corruption exposed by SIU at Rustenburg and Madibeng local municipalities
51	Corruption exposed by SIU at Moses Kotane
52	Corruption exposed by SIU at Bojanala District
53	Corruption exposed by SIU at Ventersdorp
54	Corruption exposed by SIU at Greater Taung
55	Corruption exposed by SIU at Tswaing

56	Corruption exposed by SIU at Ramotshere Moiloa
57	Corruption exposed by SIU at Mahikeng
58	Corruption exposed by SIU at Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District
59	Corruption exposed by SIU at Maquassi Hill
60	Corruption exposed by SIU at Moretele
61	Corruption exposed by SIU at Lekwa-Teemane
62	Corruption exposed by SIU at Ngaka
63	Corruption exposed by SIU at Modiri Molema District
64	Corruption exposed by SIU at Ditsobotla
65	Corruption exposed by SIU at Kagisano
66	Corruption exposed by SIU at Kgetlengrivier
67	Corruption exposed by SIU at Ratlou
68	Corruption exposed by SIU at Dr. Ruth Mompati District
69	Corruption exposed by SIU at Naledi Local Municipality
70	Awarding of tenders to Vivian Reddy following Zuma intervention
71	Twenty-five cases, involving R768 827 043 in KwaZulu-Natal in 2010 alone
72	The Glen Agliotti case
73	Diverting of public funds to Swazi King
74	Diverting of public funds to Robert Mugabe
75	Diverting of public funds to Zanu-PF
76	Funding of military equipment in Zimbabwe with South African public funds
77	Zuma's corruption in numerous cases prior to his presidency
78	Fraud, corruption, tender-rigging, kickbacks and irregular appointments at Tshwane municipality
79	Endemic corruption at the heart of Mpumalanga municipality including physical violence to avoid publication of facts
80	Public Works' endemic misuse of public funds for private residences of government officials, disguised as security upgrades.
81	Public Works leasing back property from its own employees for official use, while footing the initial bill too
82	BEE fronting for SAPS land deals outside of the main contract for Pretoria head office through Roux Shabangu
83	R2.4 billion in improper bonuses paid out by SABC to directors
84	SABC paying fictitious staff
85	ANC controlling SABC with threats of fund withdrawals
86	SABC awarding tenders to its own employees
87	Ekurhuleni employees signing off on deals that do not exist
88	Land fraud in KwaZulu-Natal worth R50 million involving three officials and a businessman for farms and other properties

89	Department of arts and culture misuse of R42 million during the soccer world cup
90	Loss of dockets relating to high profile corruption cases
91	Education department officials involved in examination selling
92	Parastatals' inflated sponsorship of events hosted by the Guptas and New Age
93	New Age website having massive funds diverted its way from government budgets without readership stats to speak of
94	The City of Johannesburg rigging a large tender in favour of Regiments, an ANC-connected empowerment firm central to a consortium that made the Johannesburg mayor's wife a *multimillionaire.
95	On-Point Engineering securing Limpopo tenders through Julius Malema and his accomplices
96	Amathole district municipality awarding irregular tenders relating to vehicle tracking
97	John Block's R112 million tender fraud relating to water purification equipment
98	Gaston Savoie's R112 million tender fraud relating to water purification equipment
99	DoC official awarding R500 000 tender to his wife
100	Martin Masemola from Dept of Minerals & Energy receiving financial kickbacks and land for favours to friends and family
101	Bosasa and Correctional Services corruption to the tune of R3 billion in tender rigging
102	Public Works corrupt relationship with Saab and the blacked out agreements that not even they are entitled to
103	R63 million tender fraud at Limpopo traffic department involving Mbhazima Sithole, 45, Felix Baloyi, 34, Mphateleni Musubu, 43, and Lufuno Muladi, 27, all directors of various companies that secured tenders illegally
104	Gauteng Finance dept awarding R23 million in IT tenders fraudulently
105	Kelly Group securing labour broking tenders worth R372million by BEE fronting
106	Eastern Cape health department and their tender fraud worth over R800 million in just one single case
107	Obed Mlaba securing tenders to the value of R3 billion in KwaZulu-Natal
108	KwaZulu-Natal misuse of public money to the tune of R532 million in 2009
109	Public Works in Limpopo involved in tender fraud for undisclosed sum late last year
110	Tshwane kickback scheme for tenders to the tune of R1 billion
111	Tshwane maladministration in their financial dept for undisclosed sum

112	Philemon Mohlahlane (ex Land Bank CEO) embezzling R19 million out of the Land Bank for his personal and business use
113	Prestige Portfolio tender corruption at Public Works as investigated by SIU (this appears to be linked to Project prestige – Zuma’s development)
114	Bobby Motaung’s multi-million Rand fraud involving stadium tenders
115	Ekurhuleni Metro IT tender for R21 million that was used to buy Porsches and Mercs
116	Limpopo transport tender fraud of R63 million
117	Limpopo Premier Cassel Mathale’s influence in awarding tenders
118	Buffalo City Metro tender fraud of R12 million
119	Ekurhuleni Chief Financial Officer Mr Zakes Myeza, Chief Director Water and Sanitation Mr Slindokuhle Hadebe, Acting Head of Department of then Roads and Stormwater Mr Moses Maliba, Junior Official Water and Sanitation Ms Nomusa Malimabe and Independent Contractor Mr Miyelani Holeni’s all involved in tender fraud worth R166 million
120	Julius’ cousing Tshepo Malema involved in corruption and fraud through the government worth R63 million
121	Pikitup tender fraud relating to contracts awarded through City of Johannesburg for undisclosed sum
122	Vivian Reddy’s company awarded an inflated contract of R1.25 billion for smart electricity meter reading in Joburg despite never having done anything like it before
123	Xhariep district mayor Mongi Ntwanambi’s fraudulent travel expenses claims costing half a million rand a year
124	Free State Government paying R140 million for their website created with a \$40 WordPress template
125	Limpopo Health’s unaccounted for R739 million tender spend for 2012
126	Gauteng Health’s R1 billion corruption in 2010
127	ANC’s investment body, Chancellor House, receiving yet another state tender worth billions of Rands
128	ANC’s investment arm, Chancellor House, receiving millions from the Medupi and Kusile deals
129	ANC’s investment arm, Chancellor House, to benefit significantly from R40 billion Eskom tenders
130	The spending of more than R13.5 million on Nomvula Mokonyane’s home. A home that was purchased for R11.5 million
	Zuma’s position weakens as he loses battle to keep ‘spy tapes’ under wraps
131	Bankrupt SAA
132	Bankrupt Post Office
133	Bankrupt SABC

134	Corruption and takeover of the Media
135	The Gupta's
136	FIFA
137	Bankrupt Eskom
138	Bashir saga
139	Safa president Danny Jordaan allegedly turned to the Gupta family to cover up a \$10 million (R138 million) hole in the organisation's books
140	12 000 'dead people' doing business with South African government, says Treasury
141	14,000 state employees who are listed as directors of companies that have been awarded state contracts in violation of regulations
142	In the 2017/18 financial year, R45.85 million was spent on maintenance for official ministerial residences in Pretoria and Cape Town
143	Senior intelligence officers could land in hot water after a parliamentary committee proposed that they be investigated for allegedly "pilfering" more than R1 billion from the intelligence account.
144	Trevor Manuel approved a R200 million salary golden handshake to Coleman Andrews of SAA
145	The corruption around Bidvest and Ramaphosa's business
146	Truckloads of evidence of corruption of Pravin Gordhan made rounds. Multi Billions missing in Treasury. Mountain of corruption in PIC. Banks he is a shareholder in.
147	Gordhan award of a R10 million Contract in Treasury, to his own daughter Anisha Gordhan
148	Top black "executives" in the SABC earns more than R12 million
149	Florence Radzilani, the Deputy Chairperson of the ANC in Limpopo and the Mayor of Vhembe District Municipality took a R300 000 bribe for not withdrawing the money her municipality invested with VBS Mutual Bank.
150	The South African Revenue Service's head of legal, Refiloe Mokoena, who was at the center of granting the controversial Gupta family in a reported R420 million VAT refund.
151	Suspended commissioner Tom Moyane is still getting full pay while being suspended.
152	The South African Revenue Service (SARS) paid a law firm R120,000 to read a book to establish whether suspended Commissioner Tom Moyane was mentioned in it and whether its contents were defamatory.
153	SARS executive Luther Lebelo has racked up more than R750,000 of taxpayer money to prepare his submission to the Nudgent commission.
154	Home Affairs Minister Malusi Gigaba has been subpoenaed to answer why his department allowed an unpaid R67 million invoice owed to an

	information technology (IT) company undergoing liquidation to balloon to almost R800 million.
155	Controversial North West MEC for social development Hoffman Galeng has been given until Tuesday to explain why more than R600 000 was spent on security at his private residence.
156	ANC Secretary-General Ace Magashule is at the centre of a criminal investigation into the disappearance of a valuable Pierneef painting from the premier's office in Bloemfontein.
157	Ace Magashule was fingered for mismanagement amid fears that the province will be placed under administration. The Free State government's finances are in a dire state. There are various reasons for this: the botched R250 million Vrede dairy farm project; millions of Rands shelled out for demolition works for the new provincial legislature complex; and more than R100 000 in monthly rentals for the provincial treasury department.
158	The Free State provincial health department is facing R1.5 billion worth of lawsuits for malpractice, while the education department is alleged to have recorded a bank overdraft of R800 million to help alleviate the financial crunch.
159	A defence force project meant to give jobless matriculants a foot in the door has degenerated into a job creation project for the children of defence force generals.
160	Denel accumulated a staggering loss of R 1.7 milliard Rands- it's boss Riaz Saloojee still gets a hefty bonus.
161	The South African Airways (SAA) will get R5 billion, SA Express R1.2 billion and the South African Post Office R2.9 billion in new funding from the government (tax payer again)
162	Recently fired Transnet CEO Siyabonga Gama will still receive his salary for the next six months despite not having to report for duty. The fired Transnet boss will still be paid R3 million for doing nothing.
163	Hundreds of millions of Rands have been spent by Prasa on dodgy security contracts. Roy Moodley implicated in deals worth over R300-million.
164	Jacob Zumja and Tina Joemat Petersen illegally sold off 10 million barrels of crude oil left the country, at \$28 a barrel.
165	A new factory going to build R51 billion locomotives that South Africa can't use
166	Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka and the 55 000 Nigerian oil barrel scandal
167	Tony Yengeni and his R349 950 Merc scandal
168	Pnuell Maduna and the oil scandal
169	Defence and Military Veterans Minister Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula has been asked to clean up tender irregularities in excess of R52 million in the South

	African National Defence Force (SANDF), as more allegations pile up against senior officials
170	SABC CEO Madoda Mxakwe says that the public broadcaster's top management cannot let the SABC collapse due to its poor finances that makes it technically insolvent
171	Then there was the humiliation for the SABC incompetent robbers when SCOPA chased them away to go and find R 4.9 Billion they have wasted
172	An in-depth forensic investigation by Grant Thornton and Sizwe Ntsaluba Gobodo Advisory Services into the awarding of a SAPS/SITA contract to Keith Keating's Forensic Data Analysts amounting to R61 million for the provision of forensic light sources, has uncovered massive potential fraud and/or collusion between at least 20 senior SAPS officials and FDA employees.
173	The ANC received a R2 million election campaign donation from the bosses of VBS Mutual Bank.
174	Stanley Khanyile, a former social development head of department in the Eastern Cape province, was allegedly instrumental in stripping some R30-million from the National Development Agency budget over two years via "rigged tenders.
175	With cash-strapped non-profit organisations (NPOs) struggling to stay afloat, there are concerns that the R1 billion being spent by the KwaZulu-Natal Social Development Department on NPOs annually, is being channelled to bogus welfare entities.
176	A former acting municipal manager of Makhado municipality in Limpopo, Johannes Kandwendo, is to face disciplinary action over his involvement in the irregular investment of R63 million at VBS Mutual Bank.
177	What was meant to be the start of a thriving multimillion-rand protea farming project is yet to get off the ground in an Eastern Cape village – despite R2.5 million apparently already having been paid for 290,000 plant cuttings.
178	Parliament's Portfolio Committee on Public Enterprises is now part of a "campaign" aimed at destroying Home Affairs Minister Malusi Gigaba. This is according to the embattled minister, following reports of a leaked preliminary report into electricity provider Eskom. According to Business Day, Gigaba and former public enterprises minister Lynne Browne are among 44 people and 25 companies who should be criminally investigated over alleged mismanagement and corruption at the utility.
179	The quality of diesel produced by PetroSA has become so poor that it is on the verge of losing its last big client, Shell South Africa, which could cost the oil company billions.
180	The South African Police Service (SAPS) is planning to promote 37 former black only Umkhonto weSizwe (MK) and Azanian People's Liberation Army

	(Apla) “freedom fighters” to the top rank of General – a move that could see some of them skip as many as five ranks.
181	In what Daily Maverick suggested in February 2018 was the largest state-sanctioned, corporate-sponsored fraud in the history of Big Mining in democratic South Africa, an insight was provided into how 350,000 mostly unemployed members of the Bakgatla Ba Kgafela were robbed of their inheritance.
182	DA leader Mmusi Maimane has implicated the son of Cyril Ramaphosa in questionable financial dealings with controversial government service provider BOSASA, alleging that Andile Ramaphosa received a suspicious R500,000 payment from the company.
183	The civil rights movement Afriforum is going to take South Africa’s government Health Services head on about the waste of R10 Billion in the 9 provinces.
184	The Travelgate scandal
185	Nkosazana Zuma’s R 50 million AIDS scandal
186	The Amersfoort Police apprehended an ANC Chief Whip Obed Thulani Shabangu (41) in connection with corruption relating to RDP houses on December 18, 2018
187	PRASA is a cesspit of mismanagement, breached procurement rules and looting of billions of Rands in taxpayers’ money.
188	SABC Boss Hlaudi Motsoeneng was illegally paid a R11,5-million “success” bonus.
189	Old Ramkraal prison: Another R 120 million ANC failure
190	Fraud “on an enormous scale” has been uncovered in the land reform program in which ANC government officials handed out farms and millions in grants to beneficiaries who did not qualify.
191	Hlaudi Motsoeneng has confirmed Agrizzi’s claim that Bosasa paid more than R1 million to the former SABC head.
192	Soweto owes Eskom R17 billion, half of the total national debt- another very expensive ANC “free bee.”
193	Former acting CEO of the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA) Rail, Mthuthuzeli “Mthura” Swartz, made a brief appearance in the Port Elizabeth Commercial Crime Court on Tuesday. Swartz faces an array of charges including fraud, money laundering and theft of over R1.5 million.
194	A leaked AG report reveals Tshwane’s R12 billion GladAfrica contract was irregular
195	Ramaphosa’s son Andile paid a monthly amount of R 300 000.00 to Cyril Ramaphosa which came out in the Bosasa scam hearings.
196	South African Clothing and Textile Workers’ Union (SACTWU) Worker Health Programme (SWHP) former CEO Colleen Khumalo (51) has

	appeared in the Cape Town Regional Court on charges of fraud involving R50-million.
197	EFF R12 billion Tshwane scandal resurfaces, similar to VBS
198	ANC bigwigs scored millions of Rands from a botched broadband project for the City of Johannesburg while its costs more than doubled to nearly R1.7 billion
199	KwaZulu-Natal's Asset Forfeiture Unit on Thursday swooped in on top ANC KwaZulu-Natal politician Mike Mabuyakhulu and seven of his co-accused in a corruption case, seizing their property and cars in an early morning raid related to their involvement in the North Sea Jazz Festival graft scandal.
200	ANC bigwigs scored millions of Rands from a botched broadband project for the City of Johannesburg while its costs more than doubled to nearly R1.7 billion. Public service & administration minister Ayanda Dlodlo, Deputy defence and military veterans minister Kebby Maphatsoe and former diplomat Lerema Kekana were directors of the BEE partner involved, Citi Connect Communications (CCC).
201	Vhembe municipality has reportedly lost R1 billion of taxpayers' money
202	Eskom paid R300 billion (and counting) for 2 deeply flawed coal-fired dinosaurs
203	Soweto owes Eskom R17 billion, half of the total national debt
204	R 220 million Rand for drought relief went "missing" in Kwa-Zulu Natal.

I know you are very busy catching surfers and smokers, but if you have a bit of free time, an update would be highly appreciated. Sincerely yours, South Africa. 🇿🇦

--ooOoo--

“In the Bible, evil is associated with the power of choice and could not exist apart from it. Only beings capable of choice can have moral responsibility, and this very power of choice makes evil not only possible but inevitable. It is foregone conclusion that creatures who, though made ‘in the image of God’ (Genesis 1:26, 27), are less than God (as any creation of God must be), will think thought and do deeds unworthy of God and thus evil by very definition.”

- Dave Hunt

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE COMPLEX SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNICITY

Chapter Three



Chapter Three

An Introduction to the Complex South African Ethnicity

1. INTRODUCTION

The complexity of the South African people is embedded in the history of the people. Archaeological findings not only provided evidence of the presence of certain people, but most significantly of their spirituality. This confirmed the author's viewpoint that mankind, primarily created as spiritual beings, always seeks to fill a spiritual void – regardless how primitive or sophisticated the people. Hindu temples discovered by Michael Tellingner delivered surprising evidence of for the early presence of Hinduism in South Africa.

Chapter One has confirmed man as primary spiritual. The history of the people will therefor also reflect and include the spirituality of these people. The author was of the opinion that the understanding of the history of the people is necessary to interpret the contemporary complex society.

Before the arrival of the first Europeans in the fourteenth century, and the migration of Bantu-speaking people, the Khoi-Khoi and San were present in South Africa. Although their physical appearances had similarities, they were distinct in language, culture, and spirituality.

The arrival of Europeans, slaves, Bantu-speaking people, Indians, Chinese etc. contributed to the heterogenic multi-linguistic, multi-cultural, multi-racial, multi-spiritual society. The diversity intensified in contemporary South Africa.

2. INTRODUCING THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN PEOPLE

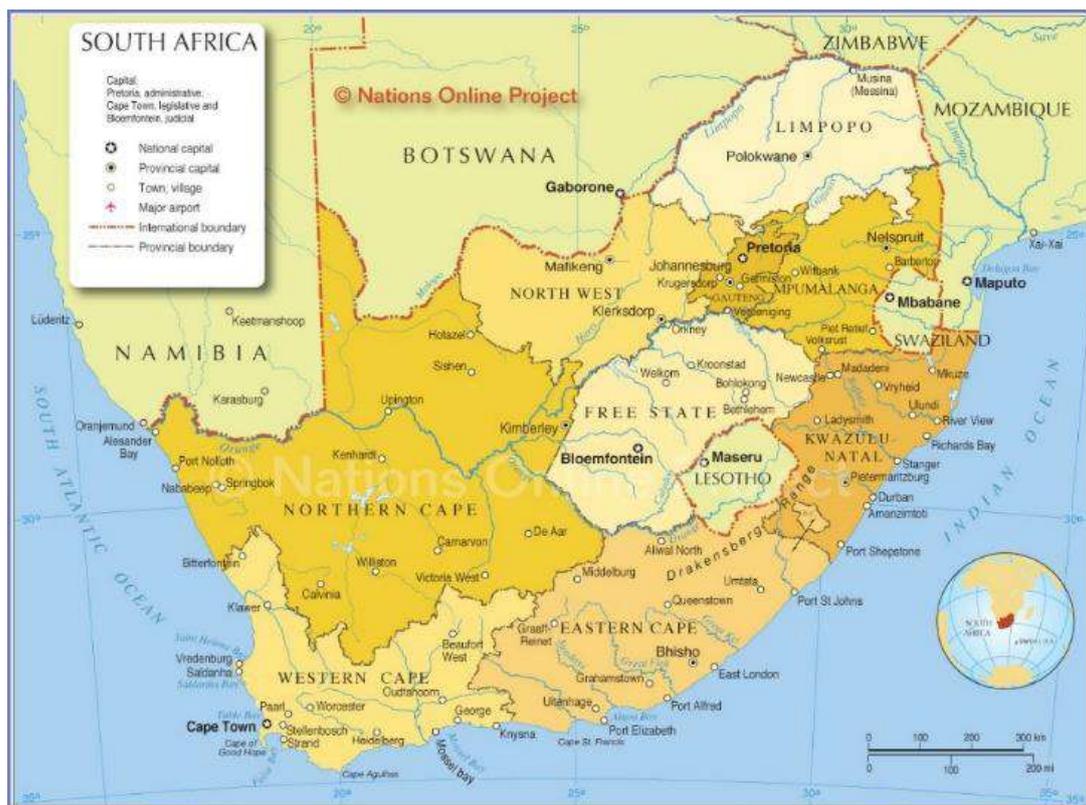


Figure 1: Map of South Africa¹

¹ Map of South Africa. Available at: http://www.nationsonline.org/oneworld/map/za_provinces_map2.htm

The name "South Africa" is derived from the country's geographic location. The coastline stretches 2798 kilometres (1,739 miles) from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic Coast on the Western coast, Southwards around the Southern tip of Africa and then northeast to the border with Mozambique on the Indian Ocean. Namibia, Botswana, and Zimbabwe are the Northern neighbouring countries with Mozambique on the East.

South Africa has a single time zone and is known for one of the best climates in the world with at least seven ecosystems. Johannesburg is, including the adjacent Randburg and Sandton, South Africa's largest city.

It is the only major world city not developed next to a sea, ocean, river, or any major source of water. Johannesburg is also recognised as the youngest major city in the world. The United Nation Demographic Yearbook identifies South Africa as the 25th-largest country in the world.

It is similar in size as Colombia, twice the size of France, three times as big as Japan, four times the size of Italy and five times the size of the United Kingdom.²

South Africa's location on the Southern point of Africa was pivotal in the arrival of a variety of nations. The composition of her people, historic as well as the contemporary, was influenced by her strategic position.

The arrival of foreign nations (black and white) versus the aboriginal people is a very emotional and complexed political and social debate. Interpretations fuel expectations of land ownership, citizenship, and renewed nationalism.

This thesis acknowledges the San and Khoi as the South African native people. Although disputed, modern historians seem to agree that Bantu speaking people migrated south from central and West Africa.

Europeans and other nationalities arrived on the southern tip and migrated east

² South Africa. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Africa

and north to the interior. Nationalities, literally worlds apart in culture, language and other defining aspects met within in the vast areas of Southern Africa.



Figure 2: Map of Africa³ (re: see Addendum)

This research attended to the influence of spirituality in the South African community. As discussed in chapter one, man created by God in His image, is primarily a spiritual being, possessing a soul and hosted in a physical body. As such, evaluating spirituality or the impact of spirituality is inseparable from man.

Investigating the current spiritual diversity and the influence spirituality has on the economy, political and social behaviours of the South African people, it was

³ Map of Africa. Available at: <https://walleigh.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/south-africa-location-map-in-africa.gif>

imperative to include an overview with regards to the composition of the South African Rainbow Nation.

Spiritual attributes are embedded in the beliefs and religion of people. Comprehension of the history and composition of the South African people will provide insight in their spiritual attributes and the manifestation of spirituality in many spheres of life.

The author re-affirmed the foundational truth presented in chapter one: God created man into His image. The author took note of the evolutionist theory and the relevance of the excavations and evidence found.

Michael Tellinger⁴ is not in agreement with the evolutionary theory and the conclusions presented drawn from evidence presented at the Cradle of Humankind. Although he is also not in agreement with man being created by the one Holy God, he is convinced that man was created 'suddenly'.

3. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: DARWINISM, THE SOUTH AFRICAN PREHISTORIC ARCHAEOLOGY

Darwinism is presented as the distinguishing explanation for the history and diversity of mankind and life on earth. Ker Than quoted Brian Richmond⁵, curator of human origins at the American Museum of Natural History in New York, Richmond defined Darwin's Theory of evolution by natural selection consisting of two points:

"All life on Earth is connected and related to each other," and this diversity of life is a product of "modifications of populations by natural selection, where some traits were favored in and environment over others. All life on Earth is connected and related to each other," and this diversity of life is a

⁴ Tellinger, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 122

⁵ Than, Kerr (February 27, 2018) What is Darwin's Theory of Evolution? Available at: <https://www.livescience.com/474-controversy-evolution-works.html>

product of "modifications of populations by natural selection, where some traits were favored in and environment over others," "

Palaeontology⁶ and archaeological⁷ was particular successful in South African excavations adding valuable research to the international arena. Giliomee & Mbenga⁸ presented the early inhabitants timeline as follows:

1 →	2 →	3 →	4 →	5
Australopithecous	Homo Habilis	Homo Egaster	Homo Sapiens	Homo Sapiens
4m -1.5m years ago in Africa	2.2m -1.8m years ago	1.8m - 500 000 years ago	500 000 – 100 000 years ago	150 000 – 100 000 years ago
Southern African Ape. The pro-type human who walked upright. The most famous fossil was named 'Lucy' by Don Johnson. ⁹	First member of the genus Homo with the ability to make tools, fire and hunt. Cameron ¹¹ speculated regarding the possibility of language.	In Africa known as Homo Erectus. Cameron referred to their ability to hunt and protect. ¹²	Known as wise man or antique Homo Sapiens.	A small group of about 80 000 moved outside Africa to early European Asian, Australia and America species.

⁶ Palaeontology: The study of the history of life on Earth as found on fossils of plant, animals (including human), fungi, bacteria and single cell organisms. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.org/encyclopaedia/palaeontology/>

⁷ Archaeological: 1) The scientific study of material remains (such as tools, pottery, jewellery, stone walls, and monuments) of past human life and activities. 2) remains of culture of a people. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/archaeology>

⁸ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 4 and P. 7

⁹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 7

¹¹ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 19

¹² Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 20

Considered to be the 'missing link between big primates and human. ¹⁰				
--	--	--	--	--

Table 1: Early inhabitants timeline

4 million years ago	Australopithecus ¹³
2.5 million years ago	Homo habilis ¹⁴ created the first stone implement in East Africa
1.8 million years ago	Homo habilis created the first stone implemented in southern Africa
1.5 million years ago	Homo ergaster (Homo erectus) ¹⁵ migrated from Africa
1 million years ago	Homo ergaster (Homo erectus) left Africa
200 000 – 100 000 years ago	Evolution of the Homo Sapiens in Africa.
115 000 years ago	Homo sapiens ¹⁶ in South Africa

¹⁰ Cameron, Trehwella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 16

¹³ Australopithecus: A fossil bipedal primate with both ape-like and human characteristics, found in Pliocene and Lower Pleistocene deposits (c.4 million to 1 million years old) in Africa. 'Bipedalism - the ability to walk upright on two legs - evolved in the ape-like Australopithecus at least 4.5 million years ago while they also retained the ability to travel through the trees.' Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/australopithecus>

¹⁴ Homo habilis: An extinct hominid that is the earliest and most primitive known member of the human genus Homo, living in Africa between about 2.3 and 1.4 million years ago. Available at: https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/homo_habilis

¹⁵ Homo ergaster: An extinct hominid that is believed to have spread from Africa to Europe and Asia about 2 million years ago and appears to have survived in Asia to at least 150,000 years ago. Compare "Java", "Peking man", "Solo": Also, in extended use: man, as a biped. Available at: https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/homo_erectus

¹⁶ Homo sapiens: The primate species to which modern humans belong; humans regarded as a species. 'It clearly belongs to our species Homo sapiens, but it defies attribution to a specific modern human group.'

80 000 years ago	Language developed in Africa. A small group of Africans migrated from East Africa and populated the rest of the world.
14 000 years ago	San ancestors widely spread across South Africa
4000 years ago	Iron Age (North Africa)
2500 years ago	Established Iron age communities in South Africa south of the Sahara
2300 years ago	San people owned cattle and developed as shepherds. (Khoi-Khoi)
2000 years ago	Hunting people known as the “San” gathered cattle in the current Botswana region. They moved to the Western South Africa where they referred to themselves as “Khoi-khoi” or “Khoe”.
300AD	Early iron age dwellers settled south of the Limpopo River
400AD	Early Iron age people settled in the current KwaZulu Natal.
600AD	Early Iron age people settled in the current Eastern Cape.
1200AD	Middle Iron age people established the Kingdom of Mapungubwe in the current Limpopo province.
1450AD	People from the late Iron age settled in the South East Mpumalanga province. (Southern Highveld)

Table 2: Early inhabitants timeline continued

Samples of the oldest palaeontology¹⁷ (human-fossil) and archaeological¹⁸ sites in the world were discovered over vast areas in South Africa. Schirmer's¹⁹ reflected on some research to illustrate the vast areas of South Africa where evidence of early development was found:

- Fauresmith Culture with early and middle stone tools found at Kimberley, Dundee, Pietersburg, and Saldanha.
- Florisbad man, one of two men who apparently lived at the beginning of the Stone Age, found at Florisbad, north of Bloemfontein. Wooden weapons were founded. It is general accepted that this man could have been the ancestor of the San.
- Makapanstad close to Potgietersrus and Taung. Stone age tools and fireplaces believed to be the first application of fire. (Homo Erectus)
- Mapungubwe is claimed to be the first evidence of the application of gold.
- Mrs. Ples, a nickname given to the skull of a prehistoric female found at Sterkfontein by Dr. Robert Broom – considered to be the father of South African archaeology.
- Montagu cave near Montagu consists of two rooms with evidence of life from the late stone age. Hand axes relates to tools found in the Fauresmith culture.
- Peers cave in the Fish Hoek Valley preserved the first South African skeleton from the stone age. According to Schirmer²⁰ this person lived 15000 ago, and could be an ancestor of the San.
- Evidence of the Sangoan Culture found in the Mpumalanga highveld is considered to be one of the who cultures demonstrating the bridge between

¹⁷ Palaeontology: The study of the history of life on Earth as found on fossils of plant, animals (including human), fungi, bacteria and single cell organisms. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.org/encyclopaedia/palaeontology/>

¹⁸ Archaeological: 1) The scientific study of material remains (such as tools, pottery, jewellery, stone walls, and monuments) of past human life and activities. 2) remains of culture of a people. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/archaeology>

¹⁹ Schirmer, Peter (1981) *Die Beknopte Geïllustreerde Ensiklopedie van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Central News Agency (Pty) Ltd. PP. 9-12

²⁰ Schirmer, Peter (1981) *Die Beknopte Geïllustreerde Ensiklopedie van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Central News Agency (Pty) Ltd. P. 12

the early and middle stone age.

- Schaapplaats close to Clarence presents San rock art where humans are presented with antelope heads. Although it was speculated that this might resemble mythology, Schirmer²¹ stated that it is more likely that they only portrayed men hunting.
- Taung skull was found in the Northern Cape. The Taung man walked upright and is considered to be one million years old. This founding correlates with Darwin's projection that evidence of the early man would be found in Africa.²² Numerous additional discoveries at Taung were classified as *Homo habilis*.²³

Wide-ranging fossil remains were discovered at "The Cradle of Humankind" in the Gauteng Province in particular. Referring to this UNESCO World Heritage Site, an article published by the University of Pretoria stated the following:

These finds suggest that various hominid species existed in South Africa from about three million years ago, starting with Australopithecus africanus. There followed species including Australopithecus sediba, Homo ergaster, Homo erectus, Homo rhodesiensis, Homo helmei, Homo naledi and modern humans (Homo sapiens). Modern humans have inhabited Southern Africa for at least 170,000 years.²⁴

South Africa is accepted as one of a few regions in the world where people were consistently present for more than two million years. According to one theory, modern people developed in the middle stone age about 200 000 to 100 000 years ago. Fossils of anatomical modern man were found near Klasies River (115 000 years) and at the Border Cave. 'People' who lived near Stilbaai 75 000 years ago made ornaments from ochre (red clay) and jewellery from shells. These

²¹ Schirmer, Peter (1981) *Die Beknopte Geïllustreerde Ensiklopedie van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Central News Agency (Pty) Ltd. P. 12

²² Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 13

²³ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 14

²⁴ Wiggins, Harry. *Host country South Africa*. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://www.up.ac.za/pme43/article/2715045/host-country>

findings are the earliest evidence of modern behaviour found anywhere in the world. Ritual and psychological themes are frequently evident in rock art.²⁵

The australopithecine, ape-like from their shoulders upwards, but much more human-like below their shoulders, lived in South Africa about three million years ago. They belong to the human-like Hominidae family.²⁶

An extinct genus of the hominid family that lived in Africa from about three to one million years ago. The name means “southern ape.” Members of this genus were the ancestors of modern humans. One of the best-known fossils, Lucy, was a member of this genus.²⁷

The South African geology provides valuable archaeological discoveries compared to countries in the northern hemisphere where snow covered vast areas resulting in the interruption of the Stone age.

Some scientists²⁸ are of the opinion that all people originated from the early African inhabitants who developed the ability to produce working tools from ivory and bone as well as spear like weapons for hunting purposes.

Communication skills through language also developed. About 80 000 “Africans” migrated via the Red Sea and to East, India, Indonesia, Australia, China and Europe. Eighty thousand years later in 1652, descendants returned when Jan van Riebeeck arrived in the Cape.²⁹

The first evidence of the existence of man’s prehistoric australopithecine and of their journey from the tropical jungles of Africa to Southern Africa, were discovered close to Taung in the North West province. Raymond Dart,³⁰

²⁵ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 5

²⁶ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 16

²⁷ Australopithecus. Dictionary.com. Available at: <http://www.dictionary.com/browse/australopithecus>

²⁸ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 11

²⁹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. VIII

³⁰ Schirmer, Peter (1981) *Die Beknopte Geïllustreerde Ensiklopedie van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Central News Agency (Pty) Ltd. P. 9

professor in Anatomy named the skull found Australopithecus africanus (southern African ape)³¹.

3.1 Early Stone Age³²

Prehistory (95.5/% of human history)	
Old Stone Age ³³	
Palaeolithic	Upper Palaeolithic
Interglacial until 70 00 B.C.	35 000 to 8 000 B.C.
Neanderthal Man	Anatomically Modern human
First tool making (Slamming rocks together) to large chunky tools	First examples of art, tools, ornaments

Table 3: Early Stone Age

- Major technological advancement in the manufacturing of tools.
- Archaeological findings of tooth imply tool users were plant eaters.
- Little of the earliest findings called the Olduvai-industrial complex or culture from the Olduvai valley in Tanzania, correlated with tools found in South Africa. The group belonged to Homo habilis, related to discoveries at

³¹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 9

³² Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 13

³³ Prehistory Workshop. Barkman, Mark. University of Durham. Archaeosoup Productions. Available at: <http://archaeosoup.com/prehistory/> and “*Living in the Past. Genetic Research Is Uncovering Signs that Our Ancestors Aren't What We Thought They Were-and that Most Europeans May Be Cousins.*” James Graff, Time International. April 30, 2001. Watson, Stephanie Editor (2006) *The Mechanisms of Genetics: An Anthology of Current Thought*. New York: The Rosen Publishing Group Inc. PP. 44-40

Sterkfontein, South Africa.³⁴

- Specimens of the second development, the Acheul culture, originally discovered in France, was also found close to Vereeniging. The South African Fauresmith culture is portrayed as the transition from the Old to Middle Stone Age.³⁵
- Working tools discovered at the Sterkfontein caves date to 1.7 to 2 million years ago. Tools with a distinct style and technique were discovered over vast areas in South Africa.
- Most representatives of this age were hunters and gatherers. (San and Khoi-Khoi)

3.2 Middle Stone Age

Prehistory (95.5/% of human history)	
Middle Stone Age ³⁶	
Mesolithic Middle Stone Age	Neolithic New Stone Age
12000-7000 B.C.	7000-5000 B.C.
	First modern man
Ice age ends, new selection of food. Smaller well-made tools	New social use of tools. Beginning of farming. Specific tools

Table 4: Middle Stone Age

³⁴ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 15

³⁵ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 16

³⁶ Barkman, Mark. University of Durham. Archaeosoup Productions. Available at: <http://archaeosoup.com/prehistory/> and Time Magazine. Graff, James (April 2001) *Living in the Past. Genetic Research Is Uncovering Signs that Our Ancestors Aren't What We Thought They Were-and that Most Europeans May Be Cousins*. PP. 44-40

- Extreme climate changes; the last phase of the ice age in the northern hemisphere and colder, dryer temperatures in South Africa with less rainfall. Water resources were abundant.
- Technological development involved advanced tools often with a handle.
- South African excavations were done at several coastal areas (Fish Hoek, Stilbaai, Klasies River Mouth, Mossel Bay), the Karoo (Matjiesfontein), Free State (Hofmeyr, Florisbad), Northern Cape (Alexandersfontein), Limpopo (Polokwane) and in Gauteng. Each of the culture's development were influenced by aspects such as climate, the availability of food and available material to produce tools.³⁷ Remains are dated between 120 000 and 80 000 years ago.³⁸
- Social development could include language, although no evidence exists.³⁹
- The original classification of the species as *Homo sapiens rhodesiensis*, was amended to *Homo sapiens* later. Both represents the development phase between the *Homo erectus* and *Homo sapiens sapiens* (human)⁴⁰
- The oldest rock paintings date to this age. Rock art is evidential of symbolic thought. Shells discovered near Stilbaai suggest creative jewellery. Patterned Ochre were discovered at Diepkloof cave near Elands Bay.
- Their diet of meat, fish, sea mammals and vegetation and their habitation of caves instead of open planes provides additional evidence of their development.

³⁷ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 17

³⁸ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 14

³⁹ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 18

⁴⁰ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 19

3.3 Late Stone Age: San and Khoi the First Indigenous People of South Africa

Prehistory (95.5/% of human history)
Late Stone Age
40000 years ago
B.C.

Table 5: Late Stone Age

- New smaller and shaper tools were manufactured, inclusive of 15mm blades.
- Beads and water containers made from ostrich eggs, bone and shell necklaces and several other objects connects the San with this period.
- Giliomee & Mbenga⁴¹ considered the San the best model of the hunter-gatherer lifestyle.
- No evidence exists with regards to the language spoken by the San. It is accepted that they belong to the “click-languages” group.
- Remains of human skeletons shown physical similarities with the San.
- The dominant hunter-gatherers also adopted shepherd trades after they traded cattle and sheep from the Bantu speaking Iron age nations from the north on their south ward journey.
- The new shepherd community known as ‘Khoi-Khoi’, migrated in vast numbers to the South African region 2000 years ago. They were hunters but also owned cattle and sheep. Simultaneously, black people migrated

⁴¹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 16

to south of the Limpopo. They had skills in nursing plants, owned cattle and sheep and had knowledge of pottery and metal work.⁴²

- Van Aswegen⁴³ specified two cultures from this period present in South Africa:

Wilton culture at the south and eastern coastlines, pre-empted by the Robberg (20 000 – 12 000 years ago) and the Albanie culture (12 000 – 7000 years ago).

The Smithfield culture from the highveld interior of the Free State, Mpumalanga and Northern Cape.

The manufacturing and usage of tools differentiate the two cultures.

4. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: RECOGNITION OF RESEARCH DONE BY MICHAEL TELLINGER PERTAINING TO SOUTH AFRICA'S FIRST INHABITANTS

Early South African inhabitants and prehistoric history was thoroughly researched by Michael Tellingner. Investigating the influence of spirituality on South Africa's society and inspired by the concrete discoveries across Southern Africa, the author deemed it relevant to acknowledge research conducted by Michael Tellingner and Johan Heine. Although Tellingner⁴⁴ stated that research of the ancient past cannot be separated from religion, their research did not acknowledge the Triune God or Word of God as the ultimate truth. They explored not only the South African evidence of man's physical origin, but also the origin of spirituality. In interpreting the spirituality of man, they subsequently comment on the origin of man's religious behaviour (in South Africa).

⁴² Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. viii

⁴³ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk.

⁴⁴ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 10

The author briefly entertained Telling's field of research pertaining to the origin of man, the first South Africans and their spirituality. Telling's research included, but was not restricted to the following subjects.

- Adam's calendar
- Stone circles and structures
- Spiritual and energy properties of these circles
- Ancient gold mines reveal the early people and their spirituality
- Sumerian tablets
- Sumerian tablets in reference to South Africa and the origin of man
- DNA Studies

4.1 Adam's Calendar

The pinnacle of Telling's research, called "Adam's Calendar" involves ruins of a set of stones (rocks) functioning as an accurate calendar



Figure 3: The location of Adam's Calendar: Mpumalanga, on top of a plateau just above the town of Kaapse Hoop, overlooking the Barberton valley – Mpumalanga

Geologists confirm that the monoliths are dolerite, whilst the mountain bedrock is black reef quartzite⁴⁵. Dr. Dion Brandt⁴⁶, consulting geologist confirmed the following:

The site occurs where dolomite is abundant. This means that the rocks have not been imported from far, but most likely manipulated into various orientations, and possibly worked and chipped for the correct effect. The cliffs in the vicinity are predominantly sandstone from the Transvaal Supergroup and protected by the more resistant and extremely hard dolerite sill, on which the site occurs.

Extensive measurements and surveys found a deviation in alignment of 3 degrees 17 minutes and 2 seconds from the original intended alignment by the ancient builders. From this calculation it was concluded that the sight is probably older than 75 000 years.



Figure 4: Adam's Calendar⁴⁷ Kaapsehoop Mpumalanga

⁴⁵ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 61

⁴⁶ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Publishers Geological Report. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet P. 3

⁴⁷ Computer generated view of the Adam's Calendar site. Available at: <http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/africaadamscalendar.htm>

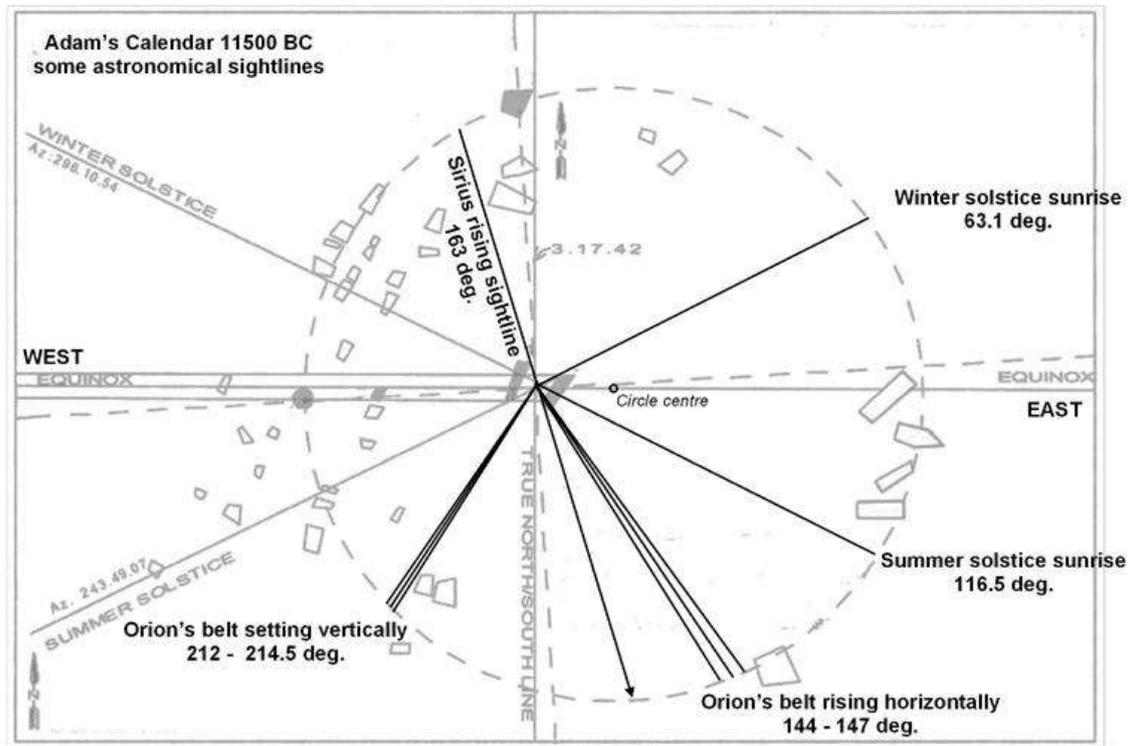


Figure 5: Rodney Hale's plan of Adam's calendar with alignment as they were in 11500 BC⁴⁸

4.2 Stone Circles and Structures

The first appearance of mankind, the first signs of intelligence and consciousness in South Africa is the rock paintings of the Khoi-Khoi and San dated 75000 years ago.

Additionally, 100 000 monolithic⁴⁹ stone structures consisting of dwellings, roads, temples, and irrigation systems scattered across Southern Africa, provides evidence of ancient lost civilizations.

⁴⁸ Hill, Bryan (June 2, 2015) *Ancient Origins Reconstructing the Story of Humanity's Past. Adam's Calendar: Oldest Megalithic Site in the World?* Available at: <https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-africa/adam-s-calendar-oldest-megalithic-site-world-003160>

⁴⁹ Hill, Bryan (June 2, 2015) *Adam's Calendar: Oldest Megalithic Site in the World?* Available at: <https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-africa/adam-s-calendar-oldest-megalithic-site-world-003160>

⁴⁹ Shah, Amsih. *100 000-Year-Old Ruins of South Africa*. Available at: <https://projectyourself.com/blogs/news/100-000-year-old-ruins-of-south-africa>



Figure 6: Ancient stone circles. Mpumalanga, South Africa⁵⁰



Figure 7: Ancient Stone circles: Mpumalanga, South Africa⁵¹

⁵⁰ Shah, Amsih. *100 000-Year-Old Ruins of South Africa*. Available at: <https://projectyourself.com/blogs/news/100-000-year-old-ruins-of-south-africa>

⁵¹ Hill, Ryan (June 2, 2015) *Ancient Origins Reconstructing the Story of Humanity's Past. Adam's Calendar: Oldest Megalithic Site in the World?* Available at: <https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-africa/adam-s-calendar-oldest-megalithic-site-world-003160>

Circular stone structures cover thousands of kilometres between South Africa, Botswana and Zimbabwe.

Three densely populated areas or lost cities cover 10 000 square kilometres each. This is by comparison larger than Johannesburg or Los Angeles. An average of 3,2 ruins were found per square kilometre. Connecting stone channels must not be mistaken for roads, although they were fundamentally integrated in the construction of these cities.

4.3 Spiritual and Energy Properties of These Circles

The stone ruins were first accepted to be cattle kraals⁵² from ancient Bantu⁵³ people. Research done by Hromnik⁵⁴, Wade, and Heine revealed these stone structures to be the remains of ancient temples and astronomical observatories of many lost ancient civilisations.

A critical discovery was the circular ruins energy generating capacities.⁵⁵ A Central monolith in the middle can be compared to a central high frequency oscillator in a magnetron device. This central rod of stone, was made to vibrate (using sound, a frequency or pitch) as a specific frequency, then amplified in the adjacent resonant chambers and channelled out via the connectors that conduct the vibrational energy to another destinations where it was used in many possible ways.

⁵² Kraals (Afrikaans): Enclosures for livestock in southern Africa. Dictionary.com. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/kraal>

⁵³ Bantu according to Credo Mutwa, derives from Abantu from the Sumerian goddess A'NTU, meaning ABA'NTU. A Sumerian goddess who loved the ABZU – Southern Africa, home of all the gold. Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 124

⁵⁴ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 21

⁵⁵ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 90

The discovery of ancient civilizations, lost cities and peoples from ancient cultures brought about a deeper understanding of the people who developed cultures.

These ancient cultures displayed remarkable knowledge and understanding of science and the cosmos. Although it took decades to decipher various texts or styles of writings, little progress is made to understand the ancient Balkan-Danube⁵⁶ scripts and the ancient Indus⁵⁷ script.

4.4 Ancient Gold Mines Reveal the Early People and Their Spirituality

“Human history cannot be separated from the quest for gold.”⁵⁸

⁵⁶ The rise of early agrarian communities in the valley of the Danube and its hinterland produced innovative technologies. In the course of this process, sign use consolidated and assumed the character of an organized form of notation. This transition to writing marks the first experiment of its kind in world history. The experiment with writing technology in South eastern Europe produced an original writing system which is addressed here as the “Danube script,” and the cultural horizon in which it originated is referred to as the “Danube civilization.”¹ These terms are synonyms with the earlier terminology, “Old European script” and “Old Europe,” coined by Marija Gimbutas (1991). Available at: <https://www.archaeomythology.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/01/2008-vol4-intro1.pdf>

The Danube Valley civilization is one of the oldest civilizations known in Europe. It existed from between 5,500 and 3,500 B.C. in the Balkans and covered a vast area, in what is now Northern Greece to Slovakia (South to North), and Croatia to Romania (West to East). During the height of the Danube Valley civilization, it played an important role in south-eastern Europe through the development of copper tools, a writing system, advanced architecture, including two storey houses, and the construction of furniture, such as chairs and tables, all of which occurred while most of Europe was in the middle of the Stone Age. They developed skills such as spinning, weaving, leather processing, clothes manufacturing, and manipulated wood, clay and stone and they invented the wheel. They had an economic, religious and social structure. One of the more intriguing and hotly debated aspects of the Danube Valley civilization is their supposed written language. While some archaeologists have maintained that the ‘writing’ is actually just a series of geometric figures and symbols, others have maintained that it has the features of a true writing system. If this theory is correct, it would make the script the oldest written language ever found, predating the Sumerian writings in Mesopotamia, and possibly even the Dispilio Tablet, which has been dated 5260 BC. Available at: <https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-europe/danube-valley-civilisation-script-oldest-writing-world-001343>

⁵⁷ The term Indus script (also Harappan script) refers to short strings of symbols associated with the Indus Valley Civilization, in use during the Mature Harappan period, between the 26th and 20th centuries BC. In spite of many attempts at decipherments and claims, it is as yet undeciphered. The underlying language is unknown, and the lack of a bilingual makes the decipherment unlikely pending significant new finds. Available at: <http://www.crystalinks.com/indus.html>

⁵⁸ Tellinger, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 49

The significance of gold is evident in the many gold mines dating back to the birth of Christ or even earlier. Speculations accommodate the possibility of Southern Africa's association with the great empire of Monomotapa, the land of Ophir, Queen Sheba and King Solomon⁵⁹.

Gold fields were in these ancient civilisations in Southern Africa. The discovery of the golden one-horned rhino at Mapungubwe⁶⁰ (Limpopo province) provided evidence of ancient societies ability to mine and manufacture art.



Figure 8: Golden Rhino discovered at the ruins of Mapungubwe.⁶¹

Best preserved artefacts produced by Indian gold miners is dated prior to the birth of Christ.⁶² Richard Wade⁶³ associated the circular ruins with ancient Arabic, Chinese, and Indian traders.

Several Indian temples in the vicinity of gold mines as well as Hindu symbolism

⁵⁹ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. PP. 14-15

⁶⁰ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 17

⁶¹ Mapungubwe Gold Rhino Image. Available at: <https://www.shentonsafaris.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/Mapungubwe-rhino.jpg>

⁶² Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 17

⁶³ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 23

and Arabic wording confirmed their presence.⁶⁴ Hinduism was thus one of the first religions practiced in South Africa. Hinduism re-appeared with the arrival of Indian slaves for the Natal sugar farms in 1860.

Dr. Cyril Hromnik also discovered several Hindu altars of various sizes, confirming evidence of wide presence of Indian gold miners in South Africa dating back to the birth of Christ or even earlier.⁶⁵

Stone symbols of Hindu fertility⁶⁶ and the 'OM symbol'⁶⁷ suggest that Hindu Indian people might have been of the first people in South Africa. Tellingner⁶⁸ commented on Hromnik research:

When Cyril Hromnik wrote his masterpiece Indo Africa in 1981, he made many enemies with his outlandish suggestions that much of South Africa's current culture was influenced by Indians. His impeccable research in this area leave little doubt that there was a large presence of Indian, Dravidian gold miners and merchants over an extended period as far back as 2000 years ago and possibly even earlier. They left behind an unmistakable range of influence which is evident in many aspects of South African culture and indigenous languages. Many of the stone ruins we have explored can be linked directly to the Dravidian culture, on which Hromnik has written papers.

The gold producing region of Mpumalanga known as 'Komatiland' was described by early Portuguese travellers as 'Terra dos Macomates',⁶⁹ meaning the land of the Komati people. Komati is the professional name of the Dravidian merchant

⁶⁴ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 18

⁶⁵ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 17

⁶⁶ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 147

⁶⁷ OM (Ω) (i) Tellingner's definition: "Vibrational frequency or ohm shape. The horseshoe shape is often depicted as one of the six syllables of OM. The OM is regarded as the prime sound of creation, because of its vibrational frequency." Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 127 (ii) Omega is the 24th and late letter in the Greek alphabet. (iii) Alfa (A) and Omega (Ω) are Christian symbols representing God as used in the book of Revelations. It is also interpreted as a paraphrase of Isaiah 44: where Jesus stated "I am the first and the last, apart from me there is no God. (NKJV). Available at: <https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/alpha-and-omega.html>

⁶⁸ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 33

⁶⁹ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 33

caste of South India. The Indian merchants mixed with the indigenous Kung (bushmen) creating the Quena (Otentottu) and with the Black people creating the aBantu people.

Together they became the MaKomatidesa, Land of the MaKomati.⁷⁰ The name Komati River and the town of Komatipoort (“Komati gorge”) still exist today. The author noted the similarities between the so called ‘Otentottu’ people and the perceived indigenous ‘Hottentot’⁷¹ people named by the first Europeans settlers in the Cape.

The calendar, dwellings, temples etc. could suggest the very first concentration of human settlement inhabited by the early Homo sapiens civilisation dated 75 000 years.⁷² Thousands of petroglyphs carved into rock is associated with ancient cultures such as the Sumerians and Egyptians.

4.5 The Sumerian Tablets⁷³

The oldest written records in a script called cuneiform, first deciphered towards

⁷⁰ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 34

⁷¹ Hottentot. Jeffreys, M.D.W. Dr. *The origin of the Name Hottentot*. The origin of the name Hottentot is often dispute. Dr. Jeffreys comments on an article of J. du Plessis stating that it became a European generic nickname for braces at the Cape, including Bosjemans and Hottentots. The name in English was easily corrupted into “Hodmandod”, as they were commonly called, which is a corruption of the word ‘Hottentot’. ‘Hodmandod means scarecrow and was applied to any deformed person. It could be applied to any indigenous inhabitants. Du Plessis points out that this tribe never referred to themselves as ‘Hottentot’ but by the term “Khoi-Khoi” meaning ‘people’. Available at: <https://www.jstor.org/stable/719230#?seq=1>
Maingard, L.F. (1935) *The origin of the word “Hottentot”*. A forgotten passage of a French traveller Beaulieu, who visited the Cape in March 1620 described the greeting ritual of the indigenous people: “their usual greeting on meeting us is to dance to a song, the beginning, the middle and the end of which is “hautitou”. He also referred that the word “Hottentot” was frequently used by the aborigines as the burden of their songs and further concluded that “Hottentoo, in spite of the intrusive ‘n’ may be legitimately derived from *houtitou* or *hatitou*, in which form there was not improbably a click”. He did not, however, explain the precise process whereby *hottentoo* was derived from *hatitou*. Available at: <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/02561751.1935.9676356>

⁷² Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 23

⁷³ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 118

the end of the 1800's revealed the following:

- The first civilisation was in Sumer (Mesopotamia).
- The tablets reflected first calendar, poetry, recipes, court proceedings, music and the Sumerian history.
- The group of tablets called “Enuma Elish” (Epic Creation) contains information with regards to the solar system and the creation of the earth.
- A pantheon of twelve gods reigned, with Anu, and his sons Enlil and Enki the first holy trinity.⁷⁴
- The gods created man with the single purpose to extract gold from the mines in Southern Africa/Abzu. The early authorities, the gods of Annunaki⁷⁵ under the leadership of the deity Enki reigned in Abzu.⁷⁶ Early humans were slaves, forced to extract the gold.
- Scrips concur with Genesis' narration of Adam and Eve, the garden of Eden, Noah, the tower of Babel, Abraham, Sodom and Gomorrah and more.
- The Bible also refers to gold already in Genesis 2. According to the Sumerian tablets, man's first encounter with gold was in Southern Africa.

Referring to the Nephilim mentioned in Genesis 6, Telling⁷⁷ stated:

this pantheon of ancient powerful gods or beings was also very active right here in South Africa under their leader Enki. The evidence is everywhere, especially in the Sumerian tablets.⁷⁸

⁷⁴ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 119

⁷⁵ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 87

⁷⁶ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 119

⁷⁷ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 11

⁷⁸ Sumerian tablets: Sumerian Tablets. Cuneiform: The earliest writing dates back to around 3,000 B.C.E. and was probably invented by the Sumerians, living in major cities with centralized economies in what is now southern Iraq. Writing, the recording of a spoken language, emerged from earlier recording systems at the end of the fourth millennium. The first written language in Mesopotamia is called Sumerian. Most of the early tablets come from the site of Uruk, in southern Mesopotamia, and it may have been here that this form of writing was invented. Available at: <https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/ancient-art-civilizations/ancient-near-east1/the-ancient-near-east-an-introduction/a/cuneiform>

4.6 Sumerian Tablets in Reference to South Africa and the Origin of Man

According to the Sumerian tablets, the god Enki,⁷⁹ with his brother Enlil and their father Anu were the first “holy trinity”. Enlil took control of the upper world (northern hemisphere) while Enki, the winged serpent and creator of gold controlled the Abzu, the underworld south of the equator.⁸⁰ Enki was also known as the medical master with knowledge of life and death. Evidence of Enki’s reign Tellingner referred to is found in the logo of the South African Medical Association resembling the symbol of Enki.

Sumerian Civilization: Andrews Evan 9 Things You May Not Know About the Ancient Sumerians. Updated February 5, 2019, Original December 2015. The origins of Sumerian civilization in Mesopotamia are still debated today, but archaeological evidence indicates that they established roughly a dozen city-states by the fourth millennium B.C. The Sumerian invention of cuneiform—a Latin term literally meaning “wedge-shaped”—dates to sometime around 3400 B.C. In its most sophisticated form, it consisted of several hundred characters that ancient scribes used to write words or syllables on wet clay tablets with a reed stylus. The tablets were then baked or left in the sun to harden. Available at: <https://www.history.com/news/9-things-you-may-not-know-about-the-ancient-sumerians>

Mysterpile Ancient Mysteries: Sumerian Anunnaki: Ancient Sumerian texts define the Anunnaki as “those who from heaven to Earth came” described as royal blood descending from the heavens and in certain contexts, the fallen angels or Nephilim. The ancient Sumerians sometimes described these deities as proprietors of mineral extractions from Earth, using the human race to replenish invaluable resources on the angel’s home planet according to some researchers. Anunnaki were a heavenly council of seven, which may be interpreted as the first known written record referencing organized sons of god. By historical accounts, the Anunnaki were the Gods & Goddesses who met occasionally in the heavens to indirectly determine the fate of mankind if by no fault of their own. Available at: https://www.mysterypile.com/anunnaki.php?gclid=Cj0KCQjw-O35BRDVARIsAJU5mQVCUIcAmWvYQH_jHvXzn8ky02n60Qf2HRPgQuqgDsa0ZgqOzxYIP0caAhjPEALw_wcB

⁷⁹ Enki. Sumerian tablets refer to the first “Holy Trinity” originated between the gods Anu, and his two sons Enlil and Enki. Enki controlled the gold mining. Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 119

Enlil took control of the upper world and Enki, the winged serpent and creator god took control of the underworld south of the equator, called Abzu. The land producing the gold. Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 11

⁸⁰ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 16



Figure 9: Symbol of the South African Medical Association⁸¹



Figure 10: Symbol Enki and the Creation of Humankind⁸²

These ancient gods referred to southern Africa as ABZU⁸³. Monoliths⁸⁴ aligning with celestial aspects, stone ruins, and petroglyphs with images and undeciphered scripts, narrates the history of ancient civilizations. Telling underwrites the theory of Africa being the cradle of humankind where humans (Homo Sapiens, the thinking man, the Sumerian Adamu or the Biblical Adam)⁸⁵ first walked the earth and from where they migrated to the rest of the earth.

He did however not agree with the interpretation presented at the Cradle of

⁸¹ South African Medical Association. Available at: <https://www.samedical.org/>

⁸² Enki and the creation of humankind. Available at: <http://ancientmysteries.gayla-groom.com/enki-and-the-creation-of-humankind/>

⁸³ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 16

⁸⁴ Definition: Monolith - A very large, upright piece of stone, especially one that was put in place in ancient times. Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/monolith>

⁸⁵ Telling, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 123

Humankind⁸⁶ and stated that it rather be called “Cradle of Hominid kind”⁸⁷. He considered the various hominid skeletons dated back over three million years as **“have absolutely nothing to do with humankind and only serves to confuse the masses by being called “Cradle of humankind.”**⁸⁸ Regardless the fast amount of evidence of ancient civilizations in South Africa, Tellingner⁸⁹ stated:

We still cannot pinpoint the origin of humankind. It is all calculated speculation presented to us either as scientific hypotheses or religious dogma. But in reality, all it ends up being, is more manipulation of the pieces of the Great Human Puzzle.

Geneticist Wesley Brown⁹⁰ research provided evidence that humans appeared ‘suddenly’ on the earth. According to Brown this first human female, (affectionately named “Mitochondrial Eve” by (agnostic scholars) appeared between 180 000 – 360 000 years ago. This supported the creationists argument of an actual point in time when man was first created, although their creation timeline differs. Genetic studies on the Y Chromosome in males correlate with that of the female results.

The ever-present gods called Annunaki were early explorers and settlers on this planet under the leadership of their supreme commander Anu. They were ancient astronauts from Nibiru reflected in the Sumerian tablets who ruled over the world 400 000 years ago. They were gods who nurtured their primitive creation of slaves into civilization. This history is reflected in stones such as the Rosetta

⁸⁶ Cradle of Humankind: Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site: The Fossil Hominid Sites of Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Kromdraai and Environs, known as the Cradle of Humankind, were declared a World Heritage Site on December 2, 1999. The Cradle of Humankind covers an area of over 47 000 hectares of privately owned land north west of Johannesburg and is home to over 17 000 residents. In 2005, two other highly significant sites, Makapan and Taung were listed as serial sites together with the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (COH WHS). Together, these are the Fossil Hominid sites of South Africa. Available at: https://www.places.co.za/html/cradle_of_humankind.html

⁸⁷ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 123

⁸⁸ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 47

⁸⁹ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 6

⁹⁰ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 11

Stone (found in Egypt in 1799 by Napoleon's army) depicting three different scripts in two languages. (Egyptian and Greek)

Tellingner investigated a possible Sumerian-African connection. Credo Mutwa⁹¹ was of the opinion that the early Africans also worshipped the Sumerian Gods.⁹² In contrast to modern history's introduction of the migration of peoples to South Africa, Tellingner concluded the following from the tablets:

- The vastness of the stone structures implies a stable population of indigenous people over thousands of years. They were responsible for the cave and rock art (paintings, beads and petroglyphs. None of the stone structures are attributed to the San and Khoi-Khoi.⁹³
- According to the stone-tablets, Abzu, ancient people of the south, were responsible for mining gold and iron between 50 000 and 100 000 years ago.⁹⁴

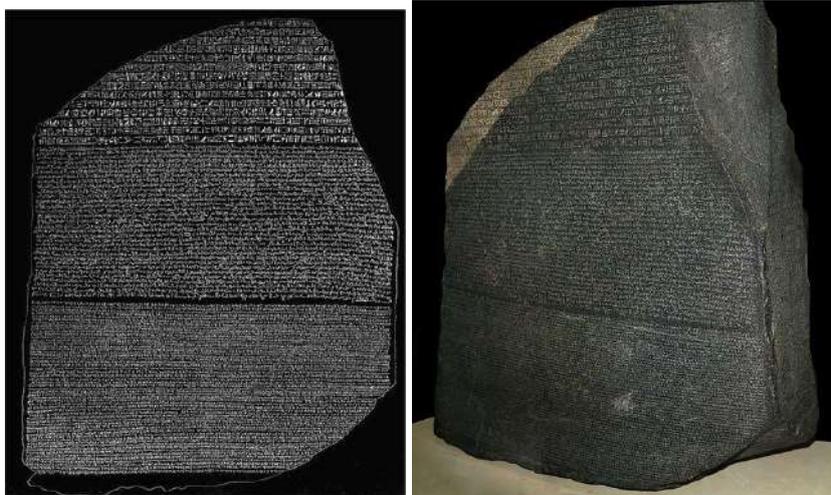


Figure 11: Rosetta stone: Three different scripts. Image one⁹⁵ Image two.⁹⁶

⁹¹ Credo Mutwa: Renowned South African sangoma and traditional healer.

⁹² Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 122

⁹³ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 97

⁹⁴ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 105

⁹⁵ Returning the Rosetta Stone to Egypt. Available at: https://za.pinterest.com/pin/AXHbJ-ZBvfHiDVTssnMrH3yOMEW5TssNjDM7P2RSopTbBO2CHkh4ndg/?nic_v2=1a3W7EmQm

⁹⁶ Just History Post on Twitter. Available at: https://za.pinterest.com/pin/108508672255580136/?nic_v2=1a3W7EmQm

- Bantu speaking people, the original humans were the first people who lived in Southern Africa. (about 60 000 years ago.)
- The ‘Exodus from Africa’ and their migration north followed after an enormous super volcano eruption at Lake Toba in Sumatra.
- They migrated with their traditions, customs, sacred symbols (such as winged planet/disk and ankh⁹⁷ which later appeared in Egyptian and Sumerian civilizations), and knowledge of building with stone. Similar circular ruins are thus all over the planet.
- Several thousand years later they migrated south to their original birthplace in Southern Africa.

4.7 DNA Studies

Tellingner was convinced that humans have a mixed-race ancestral history with unpredictable animal behaviour grounded in mankind’s double helix DNA. In addition to scientific studies, the contribution of genetic anthropology is vital.

Our intelligence has been suppressed, our knowledge has been erased, our lifespan has been genetically shortened, and our memory has been removed. We have an inferior, genetically cloned mutation of the great civilisations of the past, left behind to pick up the pieces of the Great Human Puzzle.

Tellingner⁹⁸ stated that the ultimate question of humanity lies in the human genome and the mystery of that which is not controlled by it. Secret powers that might be locked up behind the inactive parts of our genetic structure.

Astronomers’ extended solar system knowledge included:

- Descriptive text describing the rule, conflict and betrayal of ancient gods

⁹⁷ The Ankh is the most recognised symbol of ancient Egypt representing eternal life and knowledge. Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 6

⁹⁸ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers.

who escaped from the stars on chariots.

- Text referring to the great wisdom that was departed to men by the many gods who came from the stars.
- Complicated metallurgical procedures to extract precious metals.
- Knowledge of medical procedures.
- Knowledge of genetic manipulation. The creation of the “Adamu” and a new species documented in ancient tablets.
- Wireless communication and geophysical knowledge to anticipate natural disaster. With regards to these points, Tellingner⁹⁹ questioned modern man or modern civilizations as being the “pinnacle of intelligence”.

We are sub-species. Our arrogance is our weakness and our ignorance, a congenital disease that will eventually destroy us. The dogma has consumed us, and the fear controls us. But why are we so blind to the facts and evidence that surround us? Why are we so obsessed with popular religions that mostly bow to a god who uses retribution and punishment as a form of control? Religious conflict has torn our history apart for millennia and still hangs over heads into the 21st century like a cancer, waiting to devour us.

Sumerian tablets suggest that ‘Adamu’ was created in the image of his maker – the maker being an advanced species of deities and that he was created for a specific purpose 250 000 years ago. With regards to spirituality, Tellingner¹⁰⁰ was of the opinion that spiritual evolution is determined by human’s physical boundaries, predetermined by DNA at the point of conception.

A print-out of the structured order of four chemicals found along the length of a DNA molecule was the result of The Human Genome Project launched in 1990. The goal was to decipher and map the complete human DNA. The letters A, C, G and T represent the four chemicals, arranged in three billion variations along the 23 chromosomes. This exceptional sequence not only embraces the encoded programme for the growth of every person, it also governs every physical aspect

⁹⁹ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 8

¹⁰⁰ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 8

of human life, it reflects man's ancestry and encode the future. It also directs the building proteins and several million hidden activities not discovered yet.

Telling¹⁰¹ stated that active genes determining everything from the colour of eyes to gender accounts to only 3% of the total DNA in man's chromosomes.

The genome dictates the growth of master cells before birth. The following Telling statement is significant for the investigation of the spiritual impact on society:

It seems that as our genome evolves, it allows us to evolve on two levels. A physical level and a spiritual or mental level. It is very curious that our evolution or development as a species seems to be linked to technological discovery, scientific achievements and spiritual maturity.

It seems incredible that the knowledge of the universe, our ability to build structures like the pyramids, and broad-minded philosophy all vanished.

The use of "spiritual" and "mental" as synonyms is in contrast with the definition of man as a three dimensional being presented by this research: man is defined as a spiritual being, who possesses a soul (mental, creative, and emotional capacity), confined to a physical body.

Evolution of human DNA Telling¹⁰² concluded that the more mankind evolved, the more impressive the discoveries. The fact that the function and purpose of the dormant stretches of DNA are not yet discovered does not stop the evolvement. Evolution of the DNA results in the evolution of man's physical ability as well as his spirituality.

More and more people around the world now refer to themselves as "spiritual" rather than religious. ¹⁰³

Physical and spiritual evolvement needs to be synchronization. Telling

¹⁰¹ Telling, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 21

¹⁰² Telling, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 21

¹⁰³ Telling, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 21

speculated that the evidence of physical evolution could be found in the fact that modern humans are less oppressed by certain sicknesses, and on a spiritual level now have the ability to ask more complex questions relating to God and the origins of the universe. The discovery of the Nebulae¹⁰⁴ birth new stars and galaxies and other astronomy discoveries impacted the science of genome evolution.

Research done by Fred Hoyle and Chandra Wickramasinghe and the introduction of the concept of Panspermia¹⁰⁵, is presented as evidence that life, in the form of viruses, bacteria, spores and other microscopic organism arrived on Earth from space. This theory is now accepted by the majority of scholars.

Apart from the leading role panspermia played in the origin of life on Earth, it also supported the theory that evolutions occurred in jumps opposing the Darwin theory. It also supported the theory that mankind is *not* the final link of the evolution process started with apes who developed into primitive hominids and eventually intelligent humans.

In contrast to the Christian and Biblical foundation of the thesis, but significant in presenting an opposing view, Tellingner¹⁰⁶ stated that panspermia hypothesis also supports the theory that

¹⁰⁴ A *nebula* is a giant cloud of dust and gas in space. Some *nebulae* (more than one *nebula*) come from the gas and dust thrown out by the explosion of a dying star, such as a supernova. Other *nebulae* are regions where new stars are beginning to form. For this reason, some *nebulae* are called "star nurseries. Available at: <https://spaceplace.nasa.gov/nebula/en/>

¹⁰⁵ Panspermia is a Greek word that translates literally as "seeds everywhere". The panspermia hypothesis states that the "seeds" of life exist all over the Universe and can be propagated through space from one location to another. Some believe that life on Earth may have originated through these "seeds". Mechanisms for panspermia include the deflection of interstellar dust by solar radiation pressure and extremophile microorganisms traveling through space within an asteroid, meteorite or comet. Available at: <http://www.panspermia-theory.com/>

The panspermia hypothesis suggests life began on Earth when the "seeds" of life, already present in the universe, arrived here from space. How did these seeds, or microbes, get here? Proposed transport methods include meteorites, comets, and spacecraft. Available at: <http://www.astronomy.com/newsobserving/ask%20astro/2008/04/what%20is%20the%20theory%20of%20panspermia>

¹⁰⁶ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 24

‘Adam’ or first man was created by a conscious act of medical science some 200 000 years ago. This has been supported by tracking the Y-chromosome in the male population and arriving at a similar date. Tracing mitochondrial DNA in females, has placed the first ‘Eve’ around the same time. These scientific discoveries have gone a long way in supporting the evidence which suggests that Adam was created and when he was lonely, a female partner was created for him from his ‘essence’.

Tellingier concluded the following with regards to the human brain:

- It is impossible to map brain activity.
- It is possible to study the visible chemicals and enzymes, but it is more difficult to explain the invisible aspects of the brain functions. The process between stimulus and response leading to actions or the formulation of an argument.
- The entire central nervous system is controlled by the brain and medulla oblongata, a mass of interconnected nerve cells.
- The brain contains 100 billion neurons, 10-50 times glial cells, and around multiple kilometres of nerve fibre.
- The brain also controls spiritual characteristics such as consciousness, thought, reason, emotion, love, purpose, passion and more.
- IQ remains unchanged, regardless the fact that brain tissue might be destroyed or damaged.
- Research done by Alexandre Luria confirmed that the bulk of the frontal lobes are mostly dormant. It does however effect mood patterns.
- Scientists agree on the fact that the human brain underwent a major evolutionary change around 200 000 years ago. Various theories exist in explaining this development – one of which is high seafood intake.
- The left and right brain functions are defined and separated.
- Involuntary functions include the controlling of metabolic functions e.g. heartbeat, breathing.
- Voluntary actions include all conscious actions.
- The brain consumes 20-30% of the body’s energy and therefore oxygen, glucose and nutrients are transported via 100 billion neurons.
- Neurons or nerve cells are connected by dendrites – thousands of

connections.

- A single neuron has the ability to produce a tenth of a volt electrical power.
- The neurotransmitter serotone interacts with at least 15 different receptors in the body.
- One of the serotone's most common receptors begin to decline and disappear from the human brain at about 15% per decade after the age of 20.

The above facts are presented not because it relates to the fundamental subject of this research, but because of its relevance to the following statement by Tellinger¹⁰⁷:

Scientist believe that humans underwent a major brain change around 200 000 year ago. There had to be a dramatic event that caused such a major change in the brains or our ancestors.... There is emerging evidence supported by genetic and mitochondrial dating, which seems to point to such a dramatic event.... Keep in mind that the coincidental facts of mitochondrial Eve and chromosomal Adam were both dated back to around 200 000 years ago.

These changes in brain size happened suddenly, as if overnight. They are more easily explained by genetic manipulation than gradual evolution due to high fish consumptions.

He explained Homo habilis (handy man) to be the first of the genus Homo, who lived between 2.2 million and 1.6 million years ago, with an average brain size of 500-740ml.

Homo erectus followed 2 million – 400 000 years ago with an average brain size of 800-900ml. At about 200 000 years ago a new species appeared with an 55% increased brain capacity. **“the brain underwent a dramatic increase in size, just about at the time when the Anunnaki created “Adamu” according to the Sumerian tablets”**¹⁰⁸

He dismissed the argument presented by the big-brain theory claiming the

¹⁰⁷ Tellinger, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 31

¹⁰⁸ Tellinger, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 33

increased brain capacity to be the result of diets containing high fish intakes.

So, while it may be true that fats build your brain, and proteins unite it, carbohydrates fuel the brain, and micronutrients defend it, the real miracle lies in the fact that your DNA planted the programmed code at your point of conceptions, which allowed your brain to grow into its fully functional form. As incredible an organ as the brain may be, it is ultimately controlled by the genome, just like every other minute aspect of our being.¹⁰⁹

Unexplained psychic abilities demonstrated by a large number of people confirmed the fact that the brain does have limitless capacity for higher functionality not clearly understood. Tellingner presents an explanation giving the brain credit for being a **“interphase between the physical body and spiritual, our body and our soul”**.¹¹⁰ He highlights the following facts:

A brain’s development and capacity are pre-determined by the genome.

The genome and the spirit cannot evolve at individual speeds.

So, while the genome controls the rate of evolution of the brain, it is then by default also the genome that ultimately dictates the pace at which the soul is allowed to evolve while trapped in our human body.

Our DNA will allow the spirit in our bodies to mix with the greater spirit in the universe, in bite size chunks, as we evolve and as we learn to deal with our newfound knowledge.

Genetic manipulation causing man’s brain to rapidly expand was documented in clay tablets dating 4000-6000 years ago. Tellingner was convinced that the rapid expansion of man’s brain – the genetic manipulation is the result of an **“advanced race of beings, right here on earth at the time when our brains had so miraculously expanded. Not only did they leave behind written evidence of their genetic manipulation, but they actually explain in great detail the reasons why they needed to create a “primitive worker” on this planet.”**¹¹¹

¹⁰⁹ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 32

¹¹⁰ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 34

¹¹¹ Tellingner, Michael (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P. 33

An article by Ann Gibbons¹¹² in the Science Magazine October 2019 criticised DNA studies done by Vanessa Heys. The study incorporated mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA¹¹³), a type of DNA inherited only from mothers in a database from more than 1000 Africans. (mostly from Southern Africa)

The study confirmed earlier research identifying the one mtDNA lineage in the Khoisan speakers – L0¹¹⁴, is the oldest known mtDNA in living people. The work also dates the origin of L0 to about 200 000 years ago. Gibbon's article quoted Sara Tishkoff¹¹⁵, evolutionary geneticist of the University of Pennsylvania:

But mtDNA alone in living people is a poor tool for tracking ancient population history in Africa. MtDNA traces only one genetic lineage passed from mothers to their children over time. If the researchers had traced the evolution of Y chromosomes inherited from fathers or of any nuclear genes inherited from both parents, they might have gotten many different answers, Scally adds.

Hayes explained the use of mtDNA:

“because it doesn’t get shuffled in early fetal development like other types of DNA do. As a result, it can be used to trace living people’s evolution in a direct line to a small number of female ancestors who only lived in southern Africa. It acts like a time capsule for our ancestral mothers.” Most of the data on Khoisan speakers’ Y chromosomes has disappeared as men mixed with other groups.

Critics also accommodated the fact that female ancestors of the Khoisan speakers may not have lived in the same place 200,000 years ago. Tishkoff added that the ancestral women with the L0 lineage could have migrated to southern Africa from elsewhere or been part of a larger population whose descendants outside of southern Africa went extinct.

¹¹² Science (October 28, 2019) Experts question study claiming to pinpoint birthplace of all humans. Available at: <https://www.sciencemag.org/news/2019/10/experts-question-study-claiming-pinpoint-birth-place-all-humans>

¹¹³ mtDNA: an extranuclear double-stranded DNA found exclusively in mitochondria that in most eukaryotes is a circular molecule and is maternally inherited — abbreviation *mtDNA*. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/mitochondrial%20DNA>

¹¹⁴ Haplogroup L0 is a human mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) haplogroup. Available at: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haplogroup_L0_\(mtDNA\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haplogroup_L0_(mtDNA))

¹¹⁵ Science (October 28, 2019) Experts question study claiming to pinpoint birthplace of all humans. Available at: <https://www.sciencemag.org/news/2019/10/experts-question-study-claiming-pinpoint-birth-place-all-humans>

The bottom line, says population geneticist Pontus Skoglund of the Francis Crick Institute in London, is that populations move and mix so much over the millennia that studying DNA from living humans is “very limited when it comes to reconstructing what happened to populations 70,000 to 200,000 years ago.” For that, he says, you need ancient DNA. Or well-dated fossils.

The author recognised ongoing scientific research pertaining to the origin of man but also the general conclusion that the Southern Africa could have been the homeland of the early humans. Since scientific DNA research is not the focus of this research, the author cannot comment or present critique on scientific studies. As stated at the outset of the research, the author recognizes the Word of God as true on all matters. Science often confirm Scriptures. Numerous study results are available.

5. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNICITY AND ETHNOGRAFY IN A DIVERSE ETHNICAL SOCIETY: THE SCIENCE OF HISTORIOGRAPHY

Ethnography, is the study of aspects of culture, in this research, spirituality and religion in particular, among various ethnical societies in South Africa relied on both historic and contemporary data.

Within the multifaceted South African environment, interpretation of history and ethnicity are dependent on various interpretation models. The Chris Lorenz,¹¹⁶ Institute of Social Movements (ISB) spokesperson Ruhr-Universität Bochum” stated the following pertaining to the science of historiography:

The idea that historiography is or should be a science, founded on the critical research of documents, is connected to the process of institutionalization and of professionalization of historiography as an academic discipline in the late eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

¹¹⁶ Lorenz, Chris (March 2009) Scientific Historiography. A Companion to the Philosophy of History and Historiography. Chapter 35, P. 393. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/290899154_Scientific_Historiography

Historiography¹¹⁷ accommodates a variety of interpretation models. The author acknowledged the impact interpretation and presentation of history data has on the authenticity, and as such the validity of research. Interpretation of historically events, the consequences thereof and the actions and counteraction of individuals and groups is often inseparable from nationalism and sentiment. This is often fuelled by a political agenda. Within the South African milieu this is as true as in any other international circumstances, possibly more so.

Race relations in South Africa remain delicate. Cultural misinterpretations, ignorance and language barriers contribute to the explosive and often cynical nature of race relations. Political agendas polarise economic disparity, and economic and educational disparities fuel political agendas. Foundational is the combined and complex history of the South African peoples.

The author attempted to be neutral, guided by the following South African models presented by Prof. van Aswegen¹¹⁸:

- Imperial emphasis
- Colonial emphasis
- National emphasis (Afrikaner and Black)
- Liberal emphasis
- Radical emphasis

5.1 Imperial Emphasis

A 19th century emphasis on the positive and liberating role of England acting in the best interest of her subjects. Other nations, including the Afrikaners and black tribes are often portrayed as less cultivated and obstructive to the goals of

¹¹⁷ Historiography: The historiography (general descriptor) of a topic is the sum total of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past and current historians. An analysis of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past historians. Amanda Izenstark How to create a Historiography: Historiography: Definitions. Available at: <https://uri.libguides.com/historiography>

¹¹⁸ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 307

England's progression. England's imperialistic ideals are the nucleus of this discussion.

5.2 Colonial Emphasis

The departure point of the white colonists and Afrikaners, is portrayed as dynamic, creative, and critical towards England. Other nations and black people are perceived to present obstacles to the progression of the white man. Historians operating within this school of thought tend to focus on administrative events and strong leaders in a narrative and descriptive style.

5.3 National Emphasis (Afrikaner and Black)

Extreme emphasis on the nationality or the race the researcher often leads to subjectivity. African nationalism focuses particularly on birth of the Afrikaner nation and that of the white Afrikaner in the 'Groot Trek'. Historical record includes Afrikaner rebellion against foreign governance, the Boer War's fought for freedom, and African culture and leaders are accentuated. Black people are often portrayed as uncultivated, non-Christian or heathens.

Opposing extreme black nationalism contests the white historian's interpretation presents an alternative interpretation for black people, and other non-whites. White people are portrayed as oppressors, colonialists, and imperialists who systematically stole the land. Aspects such as slavery, the homelands, and apartheid are highlighted. Black resistance and the role of black leaders remain central.

5.4 Liberal Emphasis

Less group orientated historians, present moderate discussions pertaining to

race relations and political challenges. Race discrimination in principle is abandoned and the black South African incorporated as an equal contributor in South Africa. The Afrikaner is also perceived to be guilty of instigating conflict between races. Recent research focusses on the history of black communities and race relations. The whites remain the aggressor. Their values remain seated in the motivation of equal rights to all.

5.5 Radical (Revolutionary) Emphasis

Also referred to as the Marxist or neo-Marxist historians. This school developed from the 1970's and rejected liberal faith in capitalism. The root of conflict is not founded in race relations, but in economic discrepancies. The South African history is thus portrayed according to economic powers and the social-economical incongruities as a result of white capitalism. The white population gained control of land and labour by means of force and exploitation. Subjectivity remains a great threat in representing truthful facts.

5.6 African Historiography

In addition to Prof. van Aswegen's interpretation, Glen Ncube¹¹⁹ wrote an article titled "*Contested, but difficult to ignore*" in the Journal of Good Governance Africa (October-December 2019) discussing African history as academic discipline, and Afrocentric history or interpretation in particular. The importance of investigating Africa's role in the world's global past, drastically departing from colonial interpretations. It also seeks to compliment the post-colonial histories that appeared 1950's and 1960's. In South Africa, history and the interpretation thereof are often contested. Ncube highlighted the essentiality of 'decoloniality' and Afro-centric interpretation of history.

¹¹⁹ Ncube, Glen Dr. (October 2019) *Contested, but difficult to ignore*. Africa in Fact. Issue 51 (Oct-Dec 2019). Rosebank: Good Governance Africa. P. 14

“Decoloniality is a radical concept. Its main aim is to degrade the coloniality of knowledge. In South Africa, the decolonisation movement has been tied to bread and butter issues: tuition fees and access to higher education. Decoloniality affords both the language and the reason for seeking to dismantle what are regarded as western and colonial systems and disseminations.”

The author noted the challenge to present an objective summary of South African history. Renewed Afrikaner nationalism and growing African nationalism are fiercely opposite emotional poles. The validity of ‘identity politics’ must also not be underestimated. Yolanda Busbee Methvin¹²⁰ recalled being told ***“You sound like a white girl”***. The author concluded that a validity of the “sound of colour” should not be ignored. The author also recall witnessing an incident where a customer treated a sales assistant in a retail shop with obvious disrespect. It appeared the young, modern, black sales lady who was wearing a blond wig at the time was perceived to be not loyal to her ‘blackness’. The same is also relevant in critique against a particular radion station where the black individuals articulated English accent are not “African” enough, and thus disloyal. The remark ‘not black enough’ are a new addition to the South African environment.

These examples illustrate how the diversity of the South African people are not confined by colour or language. Within the emotional contextualisations of race, loyalty, colonialism etc it remains an enormous challenge to present a summary of South African history without being offensive to someone.

6. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHIC CHRONOLOGY: THE EARLY DOCUMENTED HISTORY PERTAINING TO THE FIRST INDIGENOUS PEOPLE

The author reiterate the motivation for presenting an abridged introduction of South Africa’s people to provide evidence of the complexity of the South African

¹²⁰ Methvin YN (November 2019) On Identity and Politics. Sawuboms Magazine. Mikateko Media. Novus Print. P14.

population and extended spirituality. The discussion is not a comprehensive portrait of the individual nations or tribes combined into the 'rainbow nation'.

6.1 Indigenous San: Early Hunters and Gatherers



Figure 12: San Family



Figure 13: San Hunters¹²¹

¹²¹ San Hunters. Available at: <https://thisisafrica.me/botswana-diamond-mine-opens-san-land/>

What is considered to be the ancestors of the San people migrated from the Northern region of the modern Botswana. **“More sophisticated use of stone, bone and ivory tools and ornaments”** classifies these people as **“Later Stone Age people”**¹²².

The later African immigrants of Khoi-Khoi called these hunter-gatherers “San”. The Dutch settlers referred to them as “men of the bush” or “bushmen”.

These hunter-gatherers have been called by many names: “San” or “Sonqua”, “Soaqua”, “Sarwa” or “Basarwa”, and “Twa”. all basically meaning, “those without domestic livestock”. The Dutch settlers used the term “Bossiesman” or “Bushman”, to refer to them as “bandits” or “outlaws”. however today this term is considered derogatory.¹²³

Their social structure is not tribal because they have no paramount leader and their ties of kinship are relaxed. Spirituality included a belief in a “Greater” and a “Lesser” Supreme being or God as well as other supernatural beings, and the spirits of the dead.

Famous rock art of paint work and engravings, depicting their way of life and their religious beliefs, is found from the Eastern province of Mpumalanga to the far Western areas of the Northern Cape, but also includes sites in the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng.

Rock art discoveries over vast areas of South Africa provides clear evidence that the San people inhabited widespread areas. This is particularly important in the current South African debate with regards to original land ownership. Although there is not a comprehensive record of this art, it is estimated to total of more than one million individual items scattered between 20 000 – 30 000 sites. The oldest rock paintings they created are in Namibia and have been radiocarbon-dated to be 26 000 years old.

The Linton Panel is one of the most famous pieces of rock art made by the San.

¹²² Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 14

¹²³ Differences and similarities between Khoi and San people. Available at: <https://www.afronerd.co.za/differences-similarities-khoi-san-people/>

It was found in a cave on the farm Linton in the Eastern Cape, but has since been moved to the South African Museum in Cape Town:¹²⁴

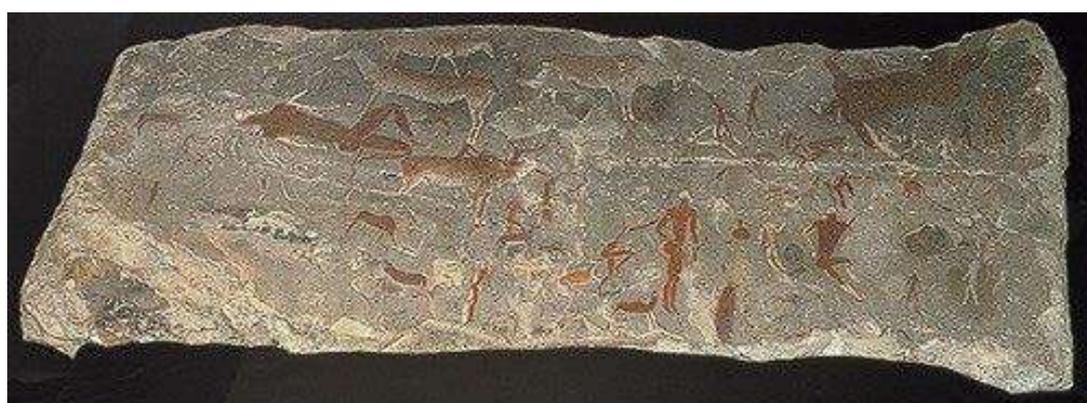


Figure 14: The Linton Panel ¹²⁵

Natrans interpretation of their art depicting both real and abstract pictures is of great value for this study.

The ability to think in the abstract suggest a society far less one-dimensional than previously considered. They painted both the animals they hunted, and the rituals associated with them. The eland was particularly important because the San believed that the eland gave up its strength to the hunter when it was killed. San medicine men, or shamans would hallucinate and put themselves into a state of trance during their rituals. The San painted

¹²⁴ Linton Rock Art Panel. Available at: http://www.onsetimages.com/english/SouthAfrica/city/CapeTown/Iziko/iziko_LintonPanel_03a.htm =

¹²⁵ Linton Rock Art Panel. Available at: <https://archaeology-travel.com/friday-find/linton-panel/>

pictures about this too, and some 19th-century pictures of men on horseback with guns, and trains on railway tracks, can be described as South Africa's first protest art. ¹²⁶



Figure 15: A giant Eland¹²⁷



Figure 16: San rock art Eland¹²⁸

Later rock art portrayed pictures of red coats (British Military shooting on fleeing San people whilst the traditional healer lies in a trance.

The San and Khoi-Khoi people inhabited the Cape with the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in 1652. San groups were scattered between the stronger Khoi-Khoi.

¹²⁶ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 16

¹²⁷ Facts about the Eland. Available at: <https://haydensanimalfacts.com/2015/05/11/5-interesting-facts-about-giant-eland/>

¹²⁸ San Eland. Available at: <https://fineartamerica.com/featured/san-eland-1-weston-westmoreland.html>

Van Jaarsveld speculated that the San could have been in the Cape area a thousand years before the arrival of Van Riebeeck.¹²⁹

The migration of Khoi-Khoi herders with their livestock into Southern Africa and especially with the arrival white farmers the San people lost great areas of land. Environmental changes like horseback hunters with guns influenced their existence and the available hunting areas as well as available wild life. The African quagga (Zebra type) became exterminated during this time.

The San were bow and arrow hunters and gatherers from the stone age. The cattle of both the Dutch and Khoi-Khoi was primary prey. This resulted in constant quarrels and conflict between the San and the Dutch and Khoi-Khoi cattle owners.

The often-brutal conflict still occurred between 1786 and 1795 when the Cape Dutch authorities gave permission to small regiments to act against the 'Bushmen'. An estimated 2500 "Bushmen" were killed.¹³⁰ The following were noted in a report drafted in 1818 by magistrate Stockenström:

They (black tribes) stormed the bushmen's huts – their schildvellen screening them against all the effects of the arrows – murdered the men and women by the most abominable torture, threw those children, which were too young to live without nursing, on a heap, and having covered them with the straw of huts, burnt them to death. Some grown up ones they cut the flesh off the bottom of the feet and left them to starve, and such children as could serve them they carried off.¹³¹

The constant brutal conflicts, as well as the incorporation of the San into the Khoi-Khoi tribe through mix relationships, resulted in the decreasing San numbers over time. Currently, only a few San remain in the Kalahari Desert and Northern Cape.

¹²⁹ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 20

¹³⁰ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 21

¹³¹ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 22

6.1.1 The San Belief System

The San dually acknowledged the supremacy of a powerful god, as well as the presence lesser gods. The greater god is associated with life and the rising of the sun. The lesser gods are associated with illness and death. Shamans (medicine, traditional healer), entered into trances and altered consciousness during ritual dances, attained access to the lesser gods who caused illness.

6.1.1.1 /Kaggen

/Kaggen, or trickster-deity is the most powerful spiritual being. He was responsible for creating many things and appear in several myths. He can be both foolish and wise, wearisome or helpful. /Kaggen is sometimes translated to “mantis” which led to the conclusion that the San worshipped the praying mantis. The mantis is but only one of the /Kaggen manifestations.

He can also turn into an Eland, a hare, a snake or a vulture - he can assume many forms. When he is not in one of his animal forms, /Kaggen lives his life as an ordinary San.¹³²

6.1.1.2 Ancestral

Homage is bestowed to the spirits of the deceased. It is believed that upon death, a person’s soul returns to the great god’s house in the sky. Diseased people have the ability to influence the living. This leads to great concern when a medicine man dies for it is believed that his spirit can become a danger to the living.

6.1.1.3 Nature

¹³² /Kaggen. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.html

It is believed that when the world was first created, animals and people were indistinguishable. The separation was vague. People did not have culture in the beginning and were separated from animals only after the second creation where they were educated in a separate social code.

Birth, death, gender, rain and weather were all believed to have supernatural significance, for example, people acquired good or bad rain-bringing abilities at birth and this ability was reactivated when the person died. ¹³³

Agriculture and working the soil is believed to be opposing the world order established by the god. Some San tribes also revere the moon.



Figure 17: Photo taken by Author at the Union Building – The Official Seat of Government where King Khoisan and several Khoisan members camp in protest for the Government ignorance towards them. They are not recognised as an individual race but classified as colour.

Their language, although represented on the official land, has no recognition as an official language. What is important is the mud-image of the Holy Eland. The author is not sure if it is significant for the antelope to face West.

The Eland is believed to be the most potent animal:

¹³³ San people. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.htm

- Shamans aspire to gain the Elands potency during a trance dance.
- Other traditions e.g. marriage and male puberty include rituals honouring the eland
- The Eland is also believed to be the /Kaggen's favourite animal and that he can transform to an Eland.
- It is honoured for the believed ability to send rain, provide power to heal the sick and enforcing the ability to control animals.

Traditional healers (*!gi-ten*) had supernatural powers. Dancing was an important ritual and wild herbs around their ankles elevated them into a trance.

Traditional healers interpreted death as a metaphor for the trance because they experienced a feeling of dying and coming alive again.

When shaman (medicine men) painted an Eland, they did not just pay respect to a sacred animal; they also harnessed its essence (N!um). By putting paint to rock, they would be able to open portals to the spirit world.¹³⁴

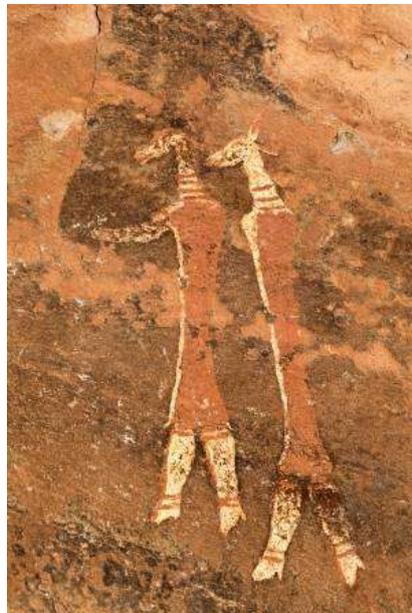


Figure 18: Bushmen San Rock Painting ¹³⁵

¹³⁴ African Bushmen. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.html

¹³⁵ Bushmen Rock Painting. Available at: https://www.123rf.com/photo_23869322_bushmen-san-rock-painting-drakensberg-mountains-south-africa.html

Rock painting of people with animal heads indicated the experiences of traditional healers whilst in a trance. They experienced the illusion that they become the specific animal who then transfers supernatural power to them.

6.1.1.4 San Rites of Passage

The Eland, the animal possessing the highest spiritual importance appears in several rituals.

- A boy's first Eland kill

A ritual where a boy was taught how to track and shoot an Eland, and how the antelope will fall after being shot. Boys will be welcomed into adulthood as soon as they kills their first large antelope, preferably an Eland. The Eland was skinned, and the fat of the Eland's throat and collarbone is made into a broth.

- Girl's puberty

Young girls were isolated in a hut at her first menstruation cycle. The tribe's women then performed the Eland Bull Dance where the mating behaviour of the Eland cow is imitated. Any of the men, usually with horns on his head interpreted the part of the Eland bull. This ritual protected the girl's beauty, safeguarded her from hunger and thirst and gave her peace. At a later stage, the girls would be anointed with Eland fat.

- Marriage

An Eland's heart was presented to the bride's parents in a marriage ritual. The young bride will would be anointed with Eland fat.

- Trance dance

Dance rituals in San groups were integral part of their social and spiritual behaviour. Everybody participated in the great 'medicine and healing dance'.

During these dances, the women usually sat around a central fire as they sang and clapped their hands. The men then first danced around the women in a clockwise direction and then vice versa. As the dance increased in intensity, the dancers reached trance-like, altered, states of consciousness

and were transported into the spirit realm where they could plead for the souls of the sick. These trance dances are depicted in the rock art left behind by the San. The shamanic figures are often painted in strange 'bending forward' postures. Shamans or 'medicine men' explained later that they adopted this posture during their trance dances because they experienced a great deal of pain when the 'potency' started boiling in their stomachs and their stomach muscles started contracting. They also often experienced spontaneous nosebleeds at this time. These nosebleeds are depicted in the many rock paintings of trance dances. As other groups invaded the territory of the San and influenced their way of life, the pictures of soldiers, wagons and horses served to record historical events.¹³⁶

6.2 Indigenous Khoi-Khoi (Khoi-Khoi): Herders and Pastoralists

Khoi-Khoi, meaning “men of men”¹³⁷, alongside the San, were the first indigenous people the Settlers met with their arrival in the Cape.

“The Settler referred to them as “Hottentot”. “The Khoi-Khoi were genetically similar to the San, but taller. The European immigrants labelled them Hottentots, in imitation of the sound of the Khoi language, but this term is today considered derogatory.”¹³⁸



¹³⁶ African Bushmen. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.htm

¹³⁷ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 17

¹³⁸ Bam, Onke (2019) *Advantage line: Contextualizing the transformation debate of rugby in South Africa*. MSocSci History (Coursework) Mini-Dissertation. Department of Historical and Heritage studies. Available at: <https://www.afronerd.co.za/differences-similarities-khoi-san-people/>

Figure 19: Khoi-Khoi Family¹³⁹



Figure 20: Khoi-Khoi hunters¹⁴⁰

Giliomee-Mbenga¹⁴¹ believed the Khoi-Khoi arrived at the Cape Coastline 2000 ago. They estimated 75 000 Khoi-Khoi and San were present in the Cape area when the 90 Dutch citizens arrived in 1652 to establish a refreshment post for passing ships.

Similar to the San, they also migrated from Botswana to Southern Africa in search of grazing land for their animals. Several researchers speculated about their origin from North East Africa and their extended farming communities developing south. Seeking better grazing lands, higher developed farming black tribes, namely the Naman in South West Africa and the Xhosas in the East, forced them to move south. In the South they were confronted by the Europeans who missioned to expand to the North and East interior.¹⁴²

¹³⁹ Early history - San and Khoi-Khoi. Available at: <https://www.kapstadt.de/suedafrika/geschichte/fruehgeschichte-san-und-khoikhoi>

¹⁴⁰ The Khoi-Khoi and the San. Available at: <http://learn.e-limu.org/topic/view/?t=242&c=45>

¹⁴¹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 5

¹⁴² Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 22

Giliomee and Mbenga¹⁴³ differentiated the San from the Khoi-Khoi in that the San did not own any livestock. The Khoi-Khoi who lost their livestock due to war, theft or sickness joined the San clans to embrace their hunter-gatherer lifestyle. This is probably possible, but it is also imperative to note that the languages of the San and Khoi-Khoi does not resemble one tribe or nation. The Khoi-Khoi languages from the estimated twelve major groups resembles strong associated dialects. The San in contrast spoke a variety of languages. Both the Khoi-Khoi dialects as well as the San languages differs vastly from the Bantu languages spoken by the tribes arriving in South Africa from the North.

Khoi-khoi tribes identified: Hoengeyqua, Gona, Damasqua, Inqua, Attaqua, Gouriqua, Hessequa, Chanouqua/Gorachouqua/Koranas, Cochoqua, Guriqua, Small/minor Nama and the Big/major Nama

6.2.1 Conflict Due to the European Concept of Land Tenure

Van Riebeeck were commanded to ensure peaceful relations to safeguard their trade of long horn cattle and sheep to ensure the refreshment station's provisions to passing ships. The initial peaceful relationships deteriorated in 1770 when southern Nguni in the East and Khoi-Khoi in the north eastern resisted white farmers expansion inland.¹⁴⁴

The Khoi-Khoi society existed of small groups under the leadership of a chief with cattle as their indicator of wealth and value. During the 17th century their monetary system of cattle-wealth depreciated due to some unfair trade with the Settlers and cattle diseases. Jan van Riebeeck allowed some employees of the Dutch

¹⁴³ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. PP. 19-20

¹⁴⁴ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 5

East-India Company (DEIC) to commence farming to increase the production of fresh produce for passing ships.

The author positioned the following three research viewpoints pertaining to land ownership. Natrass' statement that the **“burghers with their guns, tools and generally superior technology, the burghers were able to take over Khoi-Khoi cattle and land”**¹⁴⁵ suggested that unfair trade was the only way in which the burghers acted. On the contrary Van Jaarsveld referred to official land trade transactions between Captain Schacher and Dutch in 1672.¹⁴⁶

In 'Disputed Land'¹⁴⁷ published in 2012, Changuion presented a thorough research pertaining to land ownership in South Africa. He didn't recognise any of the first two viewpoints. In contrast he presented his view that the inhabitants of land before the arrival of the Europeans did not practice individual land tenure. The territory or land inhabited by a particular ethnic group was owned or utilised by the tribe in the name of their king or tribal chief. Changuion commented as follows:

The Khoi and San (also referred to as Hottentots and Bushmen) did not 'own' land – not because they did want to own land but simply because owning land was not part of their culture and they therefore did not recognise and respect this custom. In their culture, a region with unclear borders belonged communally to the tribe. These undefined borders were continually adjusted as the need dictated.¹⁴⁸

The Dutch East-India Company (DEIC) had an increasing demand for cattle due to the growing number of ships utilising the Cape refreshment stop, and simultaneously aimed to be the exclusive buyer of cattle from the Khoi-Khoi in a strategy to manipulate the prices off purchases downwards. The Khoi-Khoi often

¹⁴⁵ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 37

¹⁴⁶ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 25

¹⁴⁷ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 13

¹⁴⁸ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 16

sold weak and sick animals in an effort to sustain their herds.

Van Riebeeck's frustration motivated a request to enslave the Khoi-Khoi close to the Dutch settlement to be able to confiscate their cattle. The DEIC had no intention to become involved in the territories internal politics and declined van Riebeeck's request stating that the Khoi-Khoi must remain free people.¹⁴⁹

As a result of their declining cattle stock, the Khoi-Khoi had to convert to hunting and gathering like the San people. With their adoption of the hunting culture of the San and mixed relationships, the distinction between San and Khoi-Khoi became unclear resulting them perceived as one people called Khoisan.¹⁵⁰

The loss of grazing territory and the Dutch expanded farming led to confrontation and the Khoi-Khoi moved further inland. One such tribe was the Koranas. (Gorachouqua) who settled between the Vaal and Harts Rivers.

Another tribe, the Griekwas, of whom some was the descendants of mixed relationships with the Europeans. They adopted the Afrikaans language, clothes and habits. Their leader, Adam Kok decided to settle at the confluence of the Vaal and Orange Rivers. The British missionary Rev. Campbell convinced them to adopt the name "Griekwas".

The third in-land movement included the Oorlams group who found a new home in the Northern Cape and the Rehoboth-Basters who moved to South West Africa. The remaining Cape Khoi-Khoi constantly fought with the Xhosas and Europeans in an effort to protect and regain land for cattle. Mix relationships with both the Xhosas and the Europeans weakened their identity of the remaining group. By 1726 no Khoi-Khoi communities existed in a radius of 322 kilometre from the Cape.

The Khoi-khoi population declined at a consistent rate between 1652 and 1780,

¹⁴⁹ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 50

¹⁵⁰ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 18

and by an increased rate in 1713 and 1755 due to smallpox epidemics in the Colony.¹⁵¹ By 1800 the Khoi-Khoi community ceased to exist as a distinct group. The remaining individuals entered into labour contracts with the Cape Dutch.

No missionary work was done to convert the Khoi-Khoi to Christianity until the German missionary Georg Schmidt opened a missionary in 1737. White farmers only allowed the Khoi-Khoi labourers to attend home Bible readings. The British occupied the Cape in 1795 and again in 1806.

By 1838 slavery and race discrimination were officially banned. The integrated population consisted of 70 000 European descendants and 80 000 slave and Khoisan descendants. 6000 Dutch and Afrikaans speaking farmers decided to leave the Cape. This would have an enormous impact on the history of South Africa¹⁵².

7. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHY: MIGRATING BANTU SPEAKING NATIONS

This research noted the generally use of the term “Bantu speaking people” in reference to the South African black population. “Prior to 1994, ‘bantu’ was generally used to refer to a black person, especially a black male. In the current South Africa, this reference is offensive and regarded as derogatory.

The research was hence sensitive to accommodate the word “Bantu” although researchers apparently use it without prejudice intended. It was deemed important to define the word in order to affirm that no discrimination is implied. The South African History Online (SAHO)¹⁵³ website provides the following

¹⁵¹ La Croix, Sumner. (March 2018) Working Paper No.18-2 University of Hawaii. The Khoikhoi Populations, 1652-1780: a Review of the Evidence and Two New Estimates. Available at: https://www.economics.hawaii.edu/research/workingpapers/WP_18-02.pdf

¹⁵² Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 5

¹⁵³ SAHO: South African History Online. Defining the term ‘Bantu’. Available at: <http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/defining-term-bantu>

definition.

The Bantu speaking peoples comprised of 700 languages and dialects, and more than 100 million and Negroid people from southern to and central Africa. How these languages spread into southern Africa remains uncertain.

7.1 Bantu Speaking People Defined (African Black Nations)

Abantu (or 'Bantu' as it was used by colonists) is the Zulu word for people. It is the plural of the word 'umuntu', meaning 'person', and is based on the stem '-ntu' plus the plural prefix 'aba'.

This original meaning changed through the history of South Africa. It is a term used in two ways in archaeology, history and anthropology:

(1) it named a major linguistic group in Africa, and more locally, to identify the sizeable group of Nguni languages spoken by many Africans in sub-Saharan Africa, and

(2) it identifies those Bantu-speakers who spoke that group of closely related languages which linguists divide into four categories: Nguni, Sotho-Tswana, Venda and Tsonga-speakers.



Figure 21: Khoi-Khoi and San (Khoisan) and Bantu speaking migrated from North Africa whilst Europeans settled from the South.¹⁵⁴

¹⁵⁴ The Khoi-Khoi and the San. Available at: <http://learn.e-limu.org/topic/view/?t=242&c=45>

Today archaeologists agree that the forbears of such Bantu speakers as the Kalanga, Karanga, and Venda achieved a height of material cultural development in the tenth and fifteenth centuries. Some researchers dedicated the structures and ruins investigated by Tellingier, including the Zimbabwe ruins to bantu populations. 'Bantu', regardless its original meaning, holds a particular negative political connotation. For this reason, the author decided to present several definitions.

plural Bantu or Bantus

***a family of Niger-Congo languages spoken in central and southern Africa
a member of any of a group of African peoples who speak Bantu languages***¹⁵⁵

***a member of any of several peoples forming a linguistically and, in some respects, culturally interrelated family in central and southern Africa.
a grouping of more than 500 languages of central and southern Africa, as Kikuyu, Swahili, Tswana, and Zulu, all related within a subbranch of the Benue-Congo branch of the Niger-Kordofanian family***¹⁵⁶

adjective [ADJECTIVE noun]

Bantu means belonging or relating to a group of peoples in central and southern Africa. This use could cause offence.

...a Bantu people who live on the southern slopes of the mountain.

adjective [ADJECTIVE noun]

Bantu languages belong to a group of languages spoken in central and southern Africa. This use could cause offence.¹⁵⁷

Bantu in British

ba:ntu, bæntu, bæn'tu

noun

a group of languages of Africa, including most of the principal languages spoken from the equator to the Cape of Good Hope, but excluding the Khoisan family: now generally regarded as part of the Benue-Congo branch of the Niger-Congo family

plural -tu or -tus: South Africa offensive

¹⁵⁵ Bantu. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/Bantu>

¹⁵⁶ Bantu. Dictionary.com. Available at: <http://www.dictionary.com/browse/bantu>

¹⁵⁷ Bantu. COBUILD Advanced English Dictionary. Harper Collins Publishers. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/bantu>

a Black speaker of a Bantu language

adjective

denoting, relating to, or belonging to this group of peoples or to any of their languages

Usage

Use of the term Bantu is only acceptable outside South Africa and when talking about this group of languages and their speakers. To refer to African people or peoples, the terms Black and African are acceptable within South Africa¹⁵⁸

Bantu in American

Bæntu, bantoo

noun

a group of more than 200 languages belonging to the Niger-Congo language subfamily, including Swahili, Xhosa, and Zulu

Word forms: plural 'Bantus or 'Bantu

a member of any of the Bantu-speaking peoples living throughout the S half of the African continent

adjective

of the Bantus or their languages or cultures¹⁵⁹

Whilst the ancestors of the white population arrived mainly from Europe and eventually migrated from the Cape to the North, the Black Nations migrated from the North to the Southland. Both the white and black nations had encounters with the indigenous nations of San and Khoi-Khoi on their journeys through South Africa. According to Van Jaarsveld¹⁶⁰ it is generally accepted that the black people (tribes/nations) originated from the Hamiete (stockmen) and Negers (crop farmers.)

¹⁵⁸ Bantu. Collins English Dictionary. Harper Collins Publishers. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/bantu>

¹⁵⁹ Bantu. Webster's New World College Dictionary, 4th Edition 2010 Houghton Mifflin Harcourt. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/bantu>

¹⁶⁰ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 64

7.2 General Features of Early Bantu-Speaking Societies

7.2.1 Stance of Women

- Women were dominated by men. Not only their husbands, but men within a family unit; husbands, fathers, uncles and finally their sons.
- Women were responsible for all domestic and farming duties. This included carrying water in pots on their heads for domestic and other uses.
- The practice of “lobola”¹⁶¹ was widely accepted in arranged marriages. The family of the bridegroom is responsible to pay a bridal price to the family of the bride.
- Affluent men could afford to pay Lobola for several wives and simultaneously increases their work force with their wives and children.
- In these patriarch communities the men were responsible to clear the land and herd the cattle.

7.2.2 Rite of Passage

Boys and girls were subjected to Initiation programmes when they reached puberty. The teenagers attended ‘initiation’ schools at secluded places to receive instruction in adult behaviour and the traditions of the tribe. In a final ceremony, boys were circumcised, and girls went through a procedure to stretch the hymen.

The Limpopo Venda people honoured a python god who they believed lived in Limpopo’s sacred Lake Fundudzi. The girl’s initiation included a sacred “domba” dance in honour of the python god. The girls danced in a curving line holding the

¹⁶¹ Labola or Lobolo, also called a bride-price or bride-worth is a payment to the parents of a young women to secure her hand in marriage. The price is negotiated between the two families. The price is determined in terms of cattle e.g. an educated womed are worth more. The price in cash is calculated accoding to the value of the cattle agreed apon. Elion, B and Strieman M (2002) Clued up on Culture. P. 46 Smartphone apps and other software are available to calculate the Labola price according the specific question.

girl in front's elbow after which two girls were sacrificed to the python. The tribe threw them into the lake. This custom was replaced and gifts instead of girls are thrown into the water to pay homage to the python.¹⁶²

Although these procedures often led to sepsis and even casualties, it was – and is still today, often considered a risk that had to be taken to fulfil the tradition of the tribe.

7.2.3 Faith and Spirituality

Ancestral veneration and faith in ancestor powers and control are evident in many South African cultures today. The practice is often incorporated with Christianity and often associated with animal sacrifices to appease the ancestors. Traditionally, tribes preferred to stay in the vicinity of ancestral burial sites to enable sacrifices etc.

The Xhosa and Zulu chiefdoms were each named after an ancestral figure, while others, like the Sotho and the Tswana chiefdoms, were named after animals like the Kwena (“crocodile”), Taung (“lion”), Khatla (“monkey”) and Tloung (“elephant”).¹⁶³

The inherited ‘calling’ to become a spiritual healer (also called sangoma) is widely recognised. These individuals are believed to be appointed by ancestors and bestowed with potentially divination and healing powers which needs to be unleashed with training and initiation.

7.2.4 General Organisational Structures

Generically, Bantu speaking nations were organised within a tribal system consisting of three levels of governance: Villages (Compared to a District or Ward

¹⁶² Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 29

¹⁶³ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 30

Governing Body), Tribes (Compared to a Regional Governing Body) and Nations (Compared to a Central Governing Body). Authority included the political, Judiciary, military, economy and advisory councils.

The Village authority was the smallest unit of the nation. It consists primarily of relatives with the most senior male as leader, assisted by the council of senior men. The leader represented the family at the next level – the Tribal Counsel. Village leaders and the counsel had judicial authority with regards to minor disputes.

A tribe was the political unit of a geographical area, inclusive of several villages. The tribal authority reigned over these areas and villages. Every tribe had a unique and individual name and tribal leaders. The leaders represented the tribe in the nation's governing structure, inherited their leadership position and had secondary authority after the Nation's leader or chief.

A nation was governed by a 'Royal House or Dynasty'. According to the practice of inherited authority, the oldest son of the primary wife (wife or mother of the chief) normally inherited the nation's leadership. (applicable in the Nguni, Sotho, Venda and Herero nations), but it was also bestowed to the oldest boy born from other wives in the accepted polygamy custom.

Flowing from the principle of inherited leadership was so powerful, the primary wife enjoyed special recognition in the nation as well in the advisory council. The nation also contributed to the lobola. Chiefs were supported by an advisory council, representative members and leaders from every tribe.

Both political and judiciary authority was seated in the chief. Political authority included the proclamation of legislations, negotiating powers, and declaration of war and peace. The Chief with judiciary authority delivered judgement and penalties after consultation with the advisory council. Military authority belonged to the Chief Military Commander. The Chief and council ruled over all economic matters.

Spiritual authority was nested in the traditional healer who possessed supernatural and divination powers to communicate with ancestral spirits of previous chiefs to ask advice. The healer was also responsible for spiritual ceremonies with regards to rain, disasters etc.

Stringent rules existed with regards to the proper behaviour in the presence of the Chief. Praise singers were responsible to glorify the chief in song praising his bravery and honour. Honour was also bestowed in the manner in which the nation addressed the chief:

- Morena and Kgosi by the Sotho's
- Nyanga-yeziswe (the nation's doctor) by the Zulu's
- Ingwenyana (Lion) by the Swazi's
- Vhamusanda (the man of the Kings Court) by the Venda's

7.2.5 Advisory Council

The main or superior wife of the Chief's late father had a superior position in the council. The council assisted on all matters, political, economy, judiciary. The senior council member acted as intermediary between the chief and the nation and was responsible to convene meetings. His name also carried authority and respect:

- By the Zulu's as Induna
- By the Xhosa's as Umphankathi Omkulu
- By the Sotho's as Tona

The council were called

- Khoro by the Venda's
- Kgotla by the Sotho's
- Bunga by the Xhosa's
- Ibandla by the Nguni's

8. BLACK ETHNICITY AND MIGRATION

Black nations migrated south from Central and West Africa to South Africa. Black original land ownership is not ipso facto. The division of five primary black nations correlates with the five primary language groups: Nguni, Sotho, Shangaan-Tsonga and Venda. The Herero-Ovambo immigrated from Africa to Namibia. This thesis focusses on South African nations only. Ethnologists identified and labelled groups according to their origin and language, and not as a result of general similarities.

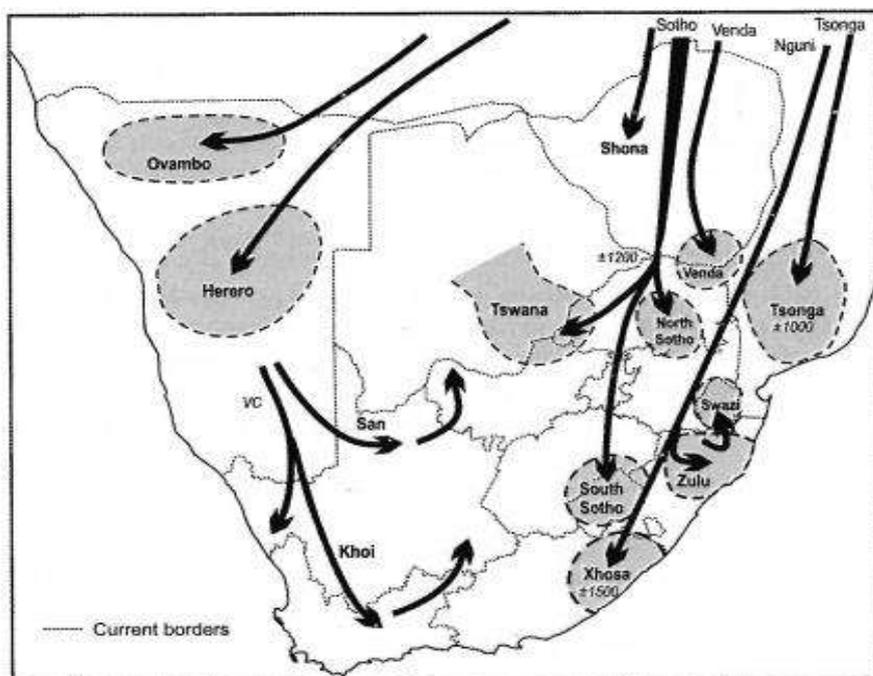


Figure 22: The Southward migration of the black people and where they settled in Southern Africa.¹⁶⁴

The five groups mentioned migrated independent from one another with no coherent one-ness. They never met apart from on the battlefield. Every group functioned independently with a unique organisation, governmental structure, and territories. Because they did not migrate as a unified group, they did not arrive simultaneously. Three prominent routes relate to three prominent groups/nation:

¹⁶⁴ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 17

8.1 Black Ethnicity: Nguni

The Nguni migrated from the Central-East Africa. They passed through Zimbabwe and Botswana, Mozambique, and the Northern parts of South Africa. From Swaziland, passing through Zululand and the Drakensberg mountains to the Fish River the Eastern Cape. In the process of migration, the Nguni people divided into smaller communities who developed individual and regional characteristics. Cape settlers met the front lines of the Xhosa at about 1770 when they invaded the land of the San and Khoi-Khoi tribes.

The Nguni nation is divided into the Northern and Southern Nguni, both included hundreds of tribes. Within the Northern Nguni, Swazi, Zulu, and Ndebele languages are recognised, elevating their tribal status. The Xhosa, South Southern Nguni also divided into smaller tribes, but the Themba, Bomvana, Mpondo, and Mphondomise languages do not enjoy recognition; thus, their tribal status seems to be secondary. It might also be that the number off language users do not warrant recognition.

The Northern Nguni divided into three major groups of the Lala, Mbo and Ntungwa. The Lala, probably the oldest group, settled north of the Tugela River and were the group reported on by the Dutch ship Stavenisse in 1686.¹⁶⁷ (refer to discussion of Portuguese arrival in South Africa). The Lala consisted of a combination of several groups, of which the Cele and Tuli was the most prominent. Others were the Ziz, Bhele and Hlubi.

The Mbo group originally settled between the Lebombo Mountain range and Delagoa Bay. The group divided into several strong and independent groups such as Ngwane, Ndwandwe, Zizi, Bhele, Hlubi and Mpondo. These groups subdivided in several groups under authority of a chief.

One such group, the Petla was the first to relocate south of the Drakensberg

¹⁶⁷ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 58

mountains where they co-existed with the San. Petla men took San wives and employed San men and young adults as herdsman.¹⁶⁸ The author highlighted the inter-racial history of South Africa and the fact that many (most) nations and tribes have no claim on a pure bloodline. Most South Africans share ancestors to a greater extent than many might feel comfortable with.

One of the Mbo fragmented groups to take note of is the Ntungwa Nguni who separated into the Zulu, Qwabe and Mthethwa tribes. The Zulu was originally the least significant with Malandela their progenitor. After his son Qwabe declared his sovereignty, his younger son, Zulu succeeded Malandela.

In 1878 chief Senzangakhone son Shaka was born who would unite the Zulus into a mighty kingdom.

The Ngwane group later became the primary group of Swaziland. The Ngwane tribal captains (Dlamini) incorporated several Sotho and smaller Nguni tribes leading to conflict with the Tembi infused by competition over the Portuguese ivory trade.¹⁶⁹

Four Nguni tribes recognised in contemporary South Africa is the Swazi, Zulu, Ndebele and Xhosa. In summary, the Ndebele and Swazi's settled in the north, the Zulus in the East and the Xhosa's in the south.¹⁷⁰

8.1.1 Northern Nguni: Swazi

The Swazis are predominantly Nguni in language and culture. The country and the Swazi take their names from Mswati II, the 19th-century king under whose

¹⁶⁸ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 60

¹⁶⁹ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 60

¹⁷⁰ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

rule Swazi territory was expanded and unified. In April 2018, the official name was changed from Kingdom of Swaziland to Kingdom of Eswatini, mirroring the name commonly used in Swazi.¹⁷¹



Figure 24: Swazi women¹⁷²

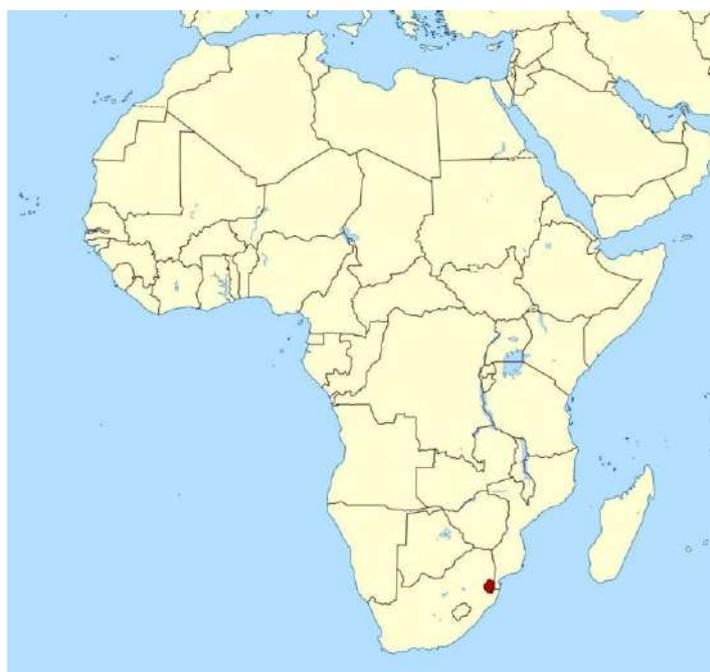


Figure 25: Swaziland (Kingdom of Eswatini), one of the smallest independent countries in Africa (re: see Addendum)¹⁷³

¹⁷¹ Swaziland. Available at: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eswatini>

¹⁷² Swazi people. Available at: <https://www.alamy.com/stock-photo/swazi-cultural-village.html>

¹⁷³ Read Around the World: Swaziland. Available at: <https://thereadersroom.org/2019/06/23/read-around-the-world-swaziland/>

Contemporary Swaziland is home to the Swazi's (Nguni) and Sotho tribes. The Ngwane tribe under leadership of chief Sobhuza became the prominent tribe around 1820. Mswazi succeeded Sobhuza in 1840 and incorporated several Sotho tribes to the extent that a new nation can be considered, named after the founder Mswazi. The amalgamation of the Swazi (Nguni) and Sotho tribes is portrayed in the surname Maseko, belonging to the original Royal rulers in Swaziland, which is similar to Maseho in Lesotho (Sotho).

KaNgwane, adjacent to Swaziland was homeland to the Swazi people. In 1984 it was granted self-governance. Political parties advocated for democracy and the end of the 'royal dictatorship'. The parties were banned under the Suppression of Terrorism Act. Political parties. Although banned, are Ngwane National Liberation Congress (NNLC), the Communist Party of Swaziland (CPS), the Swazi Democratic Party (SDP) and the People's United Democratic Party (PUDEMO). They have formed a grouping called the Political Parties Assembly (PPA).¹⁷⁴

8.1.1.1 Spirituality

The Christian religion in Swaziland is estimated 6% while the balance practices indigenous beliefs.¹⁷⁵ Traditional religion accommodate a Supreme Being known as "Mkhulumqande", who fashioned the earth. In contrast to other religions, Mkhulumqande does not demand sacrifices and is neither worshipped nor associated with ancestral spirits.

Swazi men offer sacrifices for the ancestral spirits. Female diviners communicate with spirits for welfare and health. Traditional healers are categorised as herbalists, diviner-mediums, and Christian faith healers.

¹⁷⁴ Swazi media Commentary (Gaborone) (November 12, 2019) Swaziland Political Parties Unite in Bid to End Absolute King's Power. Available at: <https://allafrica.com/stories/201911120553.html>

¹⁷⁵ Read Around the World: Swaziland. Available at: <https://thereadersroom.org/2019/06/23/read-around-the-world-swaziland/>

Traditional healers (herbalists) as primarily biomedical and traditional practitioners use natural objects such as roots, bark and leaves etc. It was believed that serious ailment is not natural but sent by someone. Traditional medicine was believed to be more effective for 'African' or specific Swazi conditions such as 'madness' caused by a curse. Western medicine was again recognised as more effective for 'Western' conditions such as cholera.

Ancestral spirits were believed to operate through diviners and therefore they received more respect. Once a sickness was 'diagnosed', with spiritual discernment, the illness was removed by the femba ceremony. Most healers (more than 80 percent) have been officially registered and are thus subject to taxation. Many belong to healers' organizations. Green¹⁷⁶ noted the following with regards to healing of sexual transmitted diseases:

“Swazi healers claim to be most effective in healing sexually transmitted diseases, sorcery and bewitchment types of ailments, children's illnesses, and migraines. By tradition, a recognized Swazi healer-diviner would commonly receive an initial gift of a goat, spear, or other articles, an intermediary gift of meat from a beast that was slaughtered during treatment, and a cow given in thanks for effecting a successful cure.”

Mortuary rituals varied according to the status of the deceased and status of the mourners. Rituals escalated for more important individuals. Men were normally buried at the entrance of the cattle kraal¹⁷⁷. The spirit of the deceased may manifest as a snake or various illnesses and omens. Ancestral spirits upheld morality. Inflicted suffering was never a malicious act but always to correct behaviour or as just punishment. Heads of families had the responsibility and right to appeal to the ancestors for domestic events such as births, marriages, deaths and hut-building activities.

¹⁷⁶ Swazi – religion and Expressive Culture. Available at: <https://www.everyculture.com/Africa-Middle-East/Swazi-Religion-and-Expressive-Culture.html>

¹⁷⁷ Cattle kraal means cattle enclosure.

8.1.2 Northern Nguni: Zulu

The Zulus settled in KwaZulu Natal, where the largest percentage of the population still resides. The first leader Lalandela named the tribe after his son Zulu. Four prominent tribes combined with the powerful Mtethwa tribe under leadership of Dingiswayo lived east of the Zulu, the Qwabe under leadership of Dingiswayo to the south and Ndandwe under leadership of Zwide to the north of the Mtethwa.¹⁷⁸



Figure 26: Traditional Zulu men

King Shaka succeeded to unite about 200 different tribes. Natal and South-East Transvaal were home for most. Usutu, Nyuswa, Ngwane, Mabaso, Mkhizo, Buthelezi, Qwabe, Thembu, Mthethwa, Nxumalo. Dr. Broodryk¹⁷⁹ recognised

¹⁷⁸ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

¹⁷⁹ Broodryk, Johann (2007) *Understanding South Africa. The uBuntu way of living*. Waterkloof: uBuntu School of Philosophy. P. 27

King Shaka as the founder of the Zulu nation. Shaka was born approximately in 1787 in a small Zulu tribe during the reign of the two most important kingdoms of the time; king Dingiswayo who was king over Mthethwa and king Zwide who reigned over Ndwandwe.

Shaka was the illegitimate son of the tribal chief Senzangakona. Denying paternity, the chief named the boy iShaka meaning “worm”.¹⁸⁰ King Dingiswayo accommodated Shaka and his mother Nandi after they were expelled from Senzangakona’s tribe.

Shaka, especially talented in military strategy and combat, was appointed as a primary commander in king Dingiswayo’s military. With Dingiswayo’s help, Shaka conquered the Zulu throne from his older brother after their father Senzangakona died. Shaka also propelled his authority when he took command of the majority of king Dingiswayo’s chiefdom after Dingiswayo was murdered by Zwide.

Shaka advanced to eliminate his rivals. This period is considered to be beginning of the rise of the Zulu kingdom. Shaka succeeded to establish Zulu pride, he portrayed courage and strength. He was brilliant in military affairs with a **“aura of statesmanship”**¹⁸¹

Shaka is also described in Zulu oral traditions as a “lion”, “a man as big as the great mountains” and one “who beats but is not beaten”.

Over time, Shaka has become a Zulu icon evoking the qualities of courage, military might and political skill. In 1975, when Inkatha (meaning crown), a cultural liberation movement for Zulu’s, was founded by Mangosuthu Gatsha Buthelezi, it drew heavily on the image of Shaka. His name has also been used to promote business and leadership.¹⁸²

In 1828 Shaka’s half-brothers Dingane and Mahlangane orchestrated Shaka’s assassination. Lacking heirs to inherit his kingship, Dingane succeeded Shaka.

¹⁸⁰ Broodryk, Johann (2007) *Understanding South Africa. The uBuntu way of living*. Waterkloof: uBuntu School of Philosophy. P. 27

¹⁸¹ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 60

¹⁸² Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. PP. 60-61

8.1.2.1 Spirituality

The Supreme Being is referred to as 'uNkulunkulu' (the Great-Great-One) or 'uMvelingangi' (the First-to-Appear). Unkulunkulu is an agelessness concept of a first human being who came to be before time.¹⁸³

Because of the Zulu concept that the creator was the first human, (not a Supreme God), he had less influence on their lives. The conceptual idea a Supreme Being who deserved worship was not included in the Zulu belief system. Therefore, no one prays to Unkulunkulu.

African ontology accommodated the core concept of spirits as vital universal energy that embodies all living things, both human and nature. A holistic approach required balance and harmony. This implied that members of a homestead needed harmony before social events or medical treatments can be administered.

A concept of the Almighty God ruling over humankind and universe as well as the polarized notions of good and evil and the Judaic-Christian sense of guilt centred on the individual are incompatible with the African notion of collective agency and reciprocal respect. Inversely, among African people, good and bad co-exist and are part of everything and of everyday life. It is every human's responsibility to prevent chaos and actively seek for balance and harmony in the community.

Missionaries who translated the Bible in Zulu ignored Zulu conceptualizations of the supernatural and replaced traditional Zulu terminologies. These terms were considered to be inappropriate and that the association with Zulu religious practices such as ancestor veneration might contaminate the Bible translation. Eiselen and Schapera¹⁸⁴ defined ancestor worship as follows:

¹⁸³ Masubelele, M.R. (2009) *Missionary Interventions in Zulu Religious Practices: The Term for the Supreme Being*. P. 63. Available at: <http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/at/v29s12/07.pdf>

¹⁸⁴ Eiselen, W.M. & Schapera, I. (1946) *Religious beliefs and practices*. In: I. Schapera (ed.), *The Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa: An ethnographical survey*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller. PP. 247-249.

“one that is based on the belief that a person, or rather part of a person, survives after death. The surviving soul becomes a spirit (ithongo or idlozi) which continues to linger around its grave or former home indefinitely.”¹⁸⁵

Ancestor worship was therefore considered to be pagan and barbaric in terms of Christian convictions. Zulu venerated the spirits of the ancestors (Amatongo or Itongo)¹⁸⁶ whom they believed will take care of the living. The Amatongo was responsible for correction and provided wealth, cattle and harmony. Amatongo manifested in dreams, omens and symbols. Diviners interpreted communications with ancestors and normally required an animal sacrifice.

Umkulunkulu brought forth everything by powerful words (Nommo). The American Board Mission complete Zulu Bible was published by the American Bible Society in 1883. In 1855 Bishop Colenso produced the 1848 translation of the American Board Mission with adaptations and in 1897 the New Testament.

8.1.3 Northern Nguni: Ndebele

Three main Ndebele groups were distinguished: The Southern Transvaal Ndebele (Gauteng and Mpumalanga), the Northern Ndebele (Limpopo) and the Ndebele of Zimbabwe. The Ndebele language, the first written bantu-speaking language, is considered to be ‘purer’. Two tribes of the South Ndebele occupied areas surrounding Pretoria and the North Ndebele occupied areas surrounding Polokwane and Mokgopong. They are famous for their house-painting and beadwork.¹⁸⁷

¹⁸⁵ Masubelele, M.R. (2009) *Missionary Interventions in Zulu Religious Practices: The Term for the Supreme Being*. P. 64. Available at: <http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/at/v29s12/07.pdf>

¹⁸⁶ Monteiro-Ferreira, A. (January 2005) Re-evaluating Zulu Religion: An Afrocentric Analysis. *Journal of Black Studies* Vol 35, No. 3 P. 359. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/40034764?seq=13#metadata_info_tab_contents

¹⁸⁷ SAHO: SA History Online: Ndebele. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/ndebele>



Figure 27: Traditional Ndebele women in front of traditional Ndebele home decorations.

The Apartheid government designated Lebowa, which consisted of several segments of land scattered across Limpopo to the Ndebele's. The Southern Ndebele were assigned to KwaNdebele which was declared a 'self-governing' territory in 1981. In 1980 the Ndebele's recognised the Mahlangu family as their Royal family and KwaMahlangu their capital. In 1994 these homelands were dissolved.

The southern tribe migrated to the southern parts of the old Transvaal under the leadership of chief Msi. After his death, his sons Manala and Ndzundza founded two tribes of the southern Ndebele, named after their founders. (Manala and Ndzundza). They settled around Middelburg (Mpumalanga), Bronkhorstspuit, Bethal and Belfast.¹⁸⁸

The Ndebele leader Mzilikazi serves as an example of a Northern leader who originated from Natal. Once a Zulu "military officer", his relocation to the north followed a dispute with the Zulu king Shaka in 1821. He left with a group of 200-

¹⁸⁸ *The Early History of South Africa*. Ndebele Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

300 loyal men and their families. He integrated the tribes he conquered on his journey to the west and to the north. Although he was known for the cruelty in which he dealt with disobedience, he won the allegiance of the people he incorporated. His following grew to approximately 60 000 by 1829.

The missionary Robert Moffat noted **“that the physical features of Mzilikazi’s people had changed noticeably during this time.”**¹⁸⁹ By the time of his death Mzilikazi established a “new people, the Ndebele or Matabele” comprising of all the groups he unified over time. It is estimated that only about two thirds of the Ndebele’s originated from the original Nguni nation.

In October 1836 Mzilikazi’s military was responsible for the first attack on the Voortrekkers in Transvaal. This marked the first major battle between any black tribe and the Voortrekkers. In 1837 Mzilikazi was defeated in a battle against combined Voortrekker, Griqua and Rolong forces.

Mzilikazi had to retreat to the current Zimbabwe. He established his capital Bulawayo in the Matopo Hills. He was succeeded by his son Lobengula but the kingdom was destroyed in 1893 by South African British military during their quest to find gold.

Contrary to the Eurocentric historians who depicted Mzilikazi as a fierce militant with little respect for human life, the missionary Moffat who befriended Mzilikazi, noted:

“discipline and superior morale of the people under his rule, and their strict courtesy, manners and happy spirit, which was unlike the climate of intimidation and fear with which the Zulu lived under Dingane”.¹⁹⁰

Moffat visited Mzilikazi for the first time in 1829. The 30-year friendship between them is described as a **“story of great psychological interest”**¹⁹¹ They shared a special bond and Moffat travelled many demanding and difficult terrains to visit

¹⁸⁹ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 58

¹⁹⁰ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 64

¹⁹¹ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 66

Mzilikazi at his many outposts. Mzilikazi also welcomed the friendships of other European hunters, traders and hunters but he never trusted the Voortrekkers and other missionaries.

He was thus unique in the sense that his “kingdom” was not restrained to a specific territory. He had outposts in four of the current provinces namely Mpumalanga, Gauteng, North West and the Free State. His “headquarters” migrated between areas. Mzilikazi’s kingdom is referred to as a “migratory kingdom” and the most disruptive force in the interior during the Difaqane.¹⁹²

8.1.3.1 Spirituality

Rites of passage initiation ceremonies for boys (‘ukuwela’) and for girls (‘iqhude’) marked their passage from childhood to adulthood and dominated the ritual life. The content of the initiation ceremonies was held in great secrecy.¹⁹³ Boys initiation, lasted two months and included circumcision.

Uncommon compared to the general loyalty and fear of other black groups, Mzilikazi and his followers had no religious stance to stay close to or to return to the graves of their ancestors.

The creator god (abezimu) and ancestral spirits were the focus of their spirituality. Annoyed ancestors cause illness, misfortune or death. Traditional practitioners (iinyanga or izangoma) mediated between the past and present world. Sorcerers (abathakathi or abaloyi) were recognised. Death were caused by natural as well as unnatural causes. Funerals included singing praises of the deceased (iibongo) at the grave. Animals were slaughtered at the diseased homestead.

¹⁹² Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 63

¹⁹³ *The Early History of South Africa*. Ndebele. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

8.1.4 Southern Nguni: Xhosa



Figure 28: Traditional Xhosa women

Aural tradition recognised Thembu as the oldest chief of the Southern Nguni, descendants of chief Zwidi who probably reigned in the 14th century.¹⁹⁴

The tribe originated when chief Tshawe expanded his authority to include several Nguni and Khoi communities. He also initiated the royal Tshawe bloodline.¹⁹⁵ The Xhosa people were the most Southern Nguni nation. Several tribes such as Xhosa, Bomvana, Gcaleka, Gaika, Ndlambe, Temboe, Pondo, Baca, Fingo Ngqika, Dushane, and Zesibe were all related to one another.

Xhosa contact with the San and Khoi-Khoi were confrontational, regardless of established trade relations. Van Aswegen¹⁹⁶ reported on the San's suspicion towards the new land invaders and the subsequent cattle theft, leading to the Xhosa's brutal retaliation, the beginning of the extermination of the late stone age

¹⁹⁴ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 62

¹⁹⁵ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 62

¹⁹⁶ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 64

San people.

Relationships with the Khoi-Khoi was also characterised by a combination of conflict and healthy trade, but especially intermarriage and joined relationships. Chief Togu, third Xhosa leader married a bride from one of the prominent Khoi-Khoi chiefdoms. Assimilation followed when Xhosa families joined Khoi-Khoi groups and vice versa. In these communities, both Xhosa and Khoi-Khoi languages and cultures survived. Complex tribal relationships followed until the Xhosa subjected the Khoi-Khoi as their subordinates. The assimilation of the two nations was evident in the incorporation of the Khoi-Khoi language (click sound and words) into Xhosa.¹⁹⁷ An estimated 6% of Xhosa words originates from Khoi-Khoi. The author noted this as another example of assimilation of South African cultures and language.

Historical evidence provided evidence of Xhosa people inhabiting the Eastern Cape area from 1593. The Xhosas did not succeed in unifying themselves. The Thembu tribe settled at the Kei River whilst the original Xhosa tribe settled beyond the Kei River. Their leadership were obeyed due to fear and not gratitude or respect.

8.1.4.1 Spirituality

A devastating disaster for the survival of the Xhosa nation followed an 1850 prophesy of the sixteen-year-old girl Nongqawuse. A Xhosa historian and poet, William W. Gqoba¹⁹⁸ interpreted the event as follows:

Near a river known as the Kamanga two men approached them and said, 'Convey our greetings to your people, and tell them we are So-and-So and So-and-So' (giving their names). And the names by which they called themselves turned out to be the names of people who were known to have died long ago. They went on to say: 'You are to tell the people that the whole community is about to rise again from the dead. Then go on to say to them

¹⁹⁷ Xhosa denotes to the people or tribe as well as to their language.

¹⁹⁸ Nongqawuse. Available at: <http://pzacad.pitzer.edu/NAM/presxhos/writers/nongqawu/nongqawuS.htm>

all the cattle living now must be slaughtered, for they are reared with defiled hands, as the people handle witchcraft. Say to them there must be no ploughing of lands, rather must the people dig deep pits (granaries), erect new huts, set up wide, strongly built cattlefolds, make milk-sacks, and weave doors from buka roots. The people must give up witchcraft on their own, not waiting until they are exposed by the witchdoctors. You are to tell them that these are the words of their chiefs, --the words of Napakade (Forever), the son of Sifubasibanzi (the Broad-chested)

Approximately 20 000 Xhosas died of starvation and another 30 000 were scattered on white owned farms to find food and shelter. The Xhosa nation survived this tragedy and still retain their traditions and culture. They multiplied to become the largest black South African nation. President Nelson Mandela being the most well-known member of the Xhosa nation. The Ciskei, Transkei, and Eastern Cape are home to many contemporary Xhosa's.

Linguistic evidence substantiated the religion influence of the Khoisan. Janet Hodgson¹⁹⁹ reported that one sixth of all Xhosa words contain 'click-sounds', but of the 2 400 click words in Xhosa only 375 have cognates in Zulu. The indications are that the Xhosa acquired the majority of the click words after they separated from the parent Nguni body. This is significant for the historical study of their religious development.

It indicated the extent to which the Xhosa incorporated a large number of the Khoisan religious terminologies which were not included in their own language. Harinck²⁰⁰ suggested that the inferior social status of the Khoi was balanced by their elevated religious status and the Xhosa adoration towards them as the original occupants of the land and as such special ability to protect it. By 1805 most 'rainmakers' were Khoisan people.

Hodgson²⁰¹ made a valuable contribution to the interpretation of the development

¹⁹⁹ Hodgson, Janet (1982) *The God of the Xhosa. A Study of the origins and development of the traditional concepts of the supreme being.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press. P. 8

²⁰⁰ Hodgson, Janet (1982) *The God of the Xhosa. A Study of the origins and development of the traditional concepts of the supreme being.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press. P. 8

²⁰¹ Hodgson, Janet (1982) *The God of the Xhosa. A Study of the origins and development of the traditional concepts of the supreme being.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press. P. 11

of the Xhosa spirituality: The incorporation of the Khoisan religion was evident of the Xhosa's preparedness to accommodate other religions and as such it paved the way for Christianity:

“This is well illustrated by the teaching of the Xhosa 'prophet Ntsikana between the time of his conversion around 1815 and his death in 1821. He met with far greater success than the early missionaries, who attempted to graft Christianity directly onto Xhosa culture. His theology is enshrined in his four hymns and they represent a truly African expression of Christianity.

This supports the view of religious transformations brought about by Christianity were part of an ongoing process of religious change among the Xhosa, albeit intensified and at a greater pace; and that Christian doctrine only became a meaningful part of Xhosa culture when it began to meet their existential and interpretative needs.”

The initiation into adulthood was mainly applicable to boys. Attendance of an 'initiation school' will grant recognition of adulthood and permission to enter into marriage. These 'schools' were often in remote mountain areas around May when the corn ripens. Casualties as a result of extreme winter conditions induce serious critique.

Circumcision was central in the initiation tradition. Boys were not allowed to utter any sound during the procedure. After the wounds had healed, several other topics were dealt with such as hunting skills, lessons on responsible adulthood, rules of etiquette, the laws of respect, and the principles of honouring ancestral spirits.

At intervals, the young men staged dances, called Amakwetha, showing off their dancing skills. They disguised themselves in headdresses, wore heavy skirts of palm leaves and painted their bodies with white clay. At the end of the isolation period, the initiates were marched down to the river to wash themselves. Thereafter, their guide would place a piece of animal fat on their heads and smeared it straight down their bodies and across their shoulders, in the form of a cross.

After this ritual, the boys wrapped themselves in brand new blankets and turned away from the hut, covering their faces. All their possessions were thrown into the hut and then set alight, to prevent witches from taking possession of it. They were also forbidden to face the fire.

The 'amakrwala', as these boy-men were called, were then marched back to their parental homes where they were showered with gifts and a feast was prepared in their honour. The following year, these boys continually had to refresh the red ochre ceremony. They had to walk slowly to demonstrate humility and to signify that they were still "small", unimportant men.

While the males of the tribe underwent their initiation, girls of the same age had their heads shaven and were dressed in a specific manner for a few weeks. When the male initiates emerged from their isolation, the girls were recognised as being of marriageable age.

8.2 Black Ethnicity: Sotho

The Sotho nation is sub-subdivided into three groups:

- South Sotho also called Basotho/Sotho
- Western Sotho also called Tswana
- Northern Sotho also called Pedi or Bapedi.

Prior to the Difaqane, many independent tribes lived in the area of Lesotho. These tribes are related to the Batswana (Tswana) and Sotho people of Swaziland.²⁰²

From the three groups, five primary Sotho families developed: Kgalagadi, Fokeng, Rolong Hurutshe (Lwena) and Kgatla. It is interesting to note that language and dialect contributed to the division of the groups. The migration of

²⁰² *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

the five families into the interior of South Africa resulted in contact and association with the Khoi-Khoi and San. The author notes once again how wide the territory of these two nations originally was.

The Kgalagadi settled near Molopo where they intermarried with the San and Khoi-Khoi. After being defeated by stronger Sotho groups, the Kgalagadi relocated to the Kalahari Desert.

Information pertaining to the Fokeng is scarce. It appears that they settled in the old Southern Transvaal. They portrayed a typical character of the Sotho people in division and formation of new groups. One such division relocated to the Broederstroom district.

Another, the Dighoya was the first Sotho people in the Free State. Good trade relations with the San lead to intermarriage between Sotho men and San women. The Dighoya divided into two groups, locating to Lesotho and the other to the Frankfort (Free State) district.

The Rolong, from the Vaal, Harts and Molopo Rivers were known because of a fearless leader Tau. Phuduhutswana decided to separate with a group of followers to form the Tlhaping tribe. Tau was in constant conflict with the San and reacted mercilessly to claims of cattle theft. Similar retaliations were launched against the Kora (Khoi-Khoi tribe). Regardless the conflict, San and Kora individuals were incorporated in the Rolong and Chief Molehabangwe had a Koro wife, as a result the Koro language was incorporated in his tribe. After Tau's death, the tribe divided between his three sons: Seleka, Rpulana and Ratlou.

The Hurutshe (Kwena) the fourth primary Sotho tribe, under leadership of Malope and his son Masilo, originally settled near the Witwatersrand area and relocated to Zeerust and the Marico River. Several divisions and relocations followed from which the Kwena developed to be the strongest in battle and most prone to war. Power struggles between tribes continued until the end of the Difaqane.

The Kgatla's progenitor Mokgatla is considered to be one of the prominent Sotho leaders. Like the other Sotho groups, the Kgatla divided into smaller tribes such as the Pedi, Tlkowa, Phuting, Sia and Kolokwe. From these, the Pedi became the most prominent travelling to the North East to settle at the Steelpoort Valley. The other four groups migrated to the Free State.

Authority was organised within family structures. Seniority is determined by age. Tribal authority belonged to the Chief. Young men were required to attend initiations schools. Van Aswegen²⁰³ noted the Sotho tendency for division and war between themselves, often fuelled by succession conflict and jealousy.

8.2.1 South Sotho/Basotho/Sotho



Figure 29: Blankets are the Basotho National Identity. “Kobo ke bophelo” meaning ‘Blankets it life’, an example of colonial legacy adopted and transformed. Legend has it that the first blanket was given to King Moshoeshoe in 1860. When he requested British protection, he described it as Queen Victoria’s ‘Spreading her blanket’ of protection over the Basotho nation.

204

²⁰³ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 73

²⁰⁴ Unsworth, Andrew (February 1, 2017) *How the Basotho Blanket became the brand identity of the nation*. Available at: <https://www.wantedonline.co.za/art-design/2017-02-01-how-the-basotho-blanket-became-the-brand-identity-of-a-nation/>

South Sotho also called Basotho/Sotho, settled in the Lesotho and neighbouring areas. King Mosjesj combined several Sotho tribes (Kwena, Kgatla/Tlokoa, Taung, Teble, Vendla) during the Difaqane wars. Smaller tribes were assimilated into stronger groups after they became fragmented. The Sotho leader Moshoeshoe (Moshweshwe) welcomed displaced groups, often smaller Sotho groups, into his kingdom and incorporated them into his nation, located at what is known as independent kingdom of Lesotho.

These incorporations led to the establishment of the southern Sotho as a powerful nation. He claimed to have incorporated 23 tribes into the Basotho (Basutho) nation.

Moshoeshoe leadership included traits of good diplomacy, commerce, and warfare. He had built his village on the slopes of the Buth-Buthe Mountain from where he could notice invaders from afar. His tactic to roll boulders down the mountain in times of attack was especially successful. In 1824 he relocated to the mountain Thaba Bosiu. The fertile ground and abundance of water prospered his people. The belief existed that the mountain increase in size after sunset, as such they were seldom attacked after dark. By 1828 he was the acknowledged leader of the land between the Thaba Nchu missionary and the Caledon River.

He was known to provide cattle to displaced and poor groups who agreed to join him. Cattle was also sent as gifts to enemies. In return, Mzilikazi did not proceed with war after receiving cattle gifts. He bestowed crane feather gifts to Shaka which he used in his regalia. Shaka also did not proceed with warfare against the Basotho.

It is believed that Moshoeshoe had 100 wives', some of which were the daughters of his rivalries. The Basotho nation grew from 80 000 in 1848 to about 150 000 in 1865.²⁰⁵ This was strategic to secured peace. Agriculture included European

²⁰⁵ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppetown: Media 24. P. 68

vegetables and fruit. He welcomed European trade and allowed missionaries up until 1840 when he converted to more traditional practices of attacks and war.

In 1852, Moshoeshoe raised troops of some 6 000 mounted men to turn back the British, which he succeeded in doing. No one before him, nor Mzilikazi, Dingane or any of the Xhosa leaders, had marshalled, armed and mounted forces on such a large scale on an open battlefield and carried the day.²⁰⁶

Cape governor Harry Smith encouraged Boers to buy farms where they wished. Farms were proclaimed in the present day KwaZulu Natal, Griqualand and the Free State. The research did not engage in an in-depth research and confirmation of sale deeds and title deed. It does though acknowledge the possibility that land proclaimed and possessed without proper arrangements can be interpreted to be land appropriation without compensation.

The British and Boers signed the Bloemfontein Convention in 1853 acknowledging the Boers sovereignty over the Orange Free State. The independence of the Orange Free State was proclaimed in 1854. Moshoeshoe and other chiefdoms of the Xhosa, Zulu, Hurutshe, Rolong and Fokeng retained land. Moeshoesoe encouraged young men to find employment in the Cape and Natal to earn wages to enable them to buy cattle.

By 1866 the Boers under leadership of President Johannes Brand threatened Moeshoesoe who turned to the British for protection resulting in the establishment of the British colony of Basutoland 1868-1966. 1966 marks the year of Basutoland's independence to become the Kingdom of Lesotho.

The Sotho's migrated from Central East Africa, Zambezi and Northern Botswana until they settled in the western and central South Africa, from Limpopo, Gauteng, Free State and Northern Cape. After 40 years of rule over the Sotho people Moshoeshoe died in 1870 and was buried on Thaba Bosiu, his unconquered mountain home.

²⁰⁶ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 69

The contemporary government of Lesotho is a constitutional monarchy, the country divided into ten administrative districts. Three major political parties exist with a judiciary founded on Roman Law. Traditional law is the basis of village government consisting of chiefs, sub-chiefs, headmen and sub-men. These have the authority to judge minor crimes with delegated authority.

8.2.1.1 Spirituality

Lesotho is a combination of the past (traditional) and present (modern) beliefs and practices. One such a collective implementation is the officiating of marriages in the church, whilst the practice of bride's wealth (labola/lobola) from the groom's family remains applicable. Daughters of a family might be very lucrative. In addition, the bride becomes the property of her husbands.

The Roman Catholic Church owns over 75% of schools in Lesotho with the result that the (about) 80% of the population indicating to be Christian, mainly belongs to the Roman Catholic Church. The Dutch Reformed and Anglican also have members. Church services often include traditional Lesotho rituals such as chanting, drumming and cultural consumes.²⁰⁷

Basotho cultural elements, oral prayers, sayings, beliefs, songs, rites of passage and other customs, portray the traditional Basotho religion incorporating the Supreme Being, Water Snake, and his different manifestations.²⁰⁸

Christianity were not introduced by formal missionary establishments; Christianity were accepted by personal choice. Speculations consider 90% of the population to be Christian.

Basotho's still regard Christianity as a foreign religion, brought to them by the

²⁰⁷ Countries and Cultures: Lesotho. Available at: <https://www.everyculture.com/Ja-Ma/Lesotho.html>

²⁰⁸ Rakotsoane, R.L.C. (1996) Theses for Masters. *Religion of the ancient Basotho with special reference to the water snake*. University of Cape Town.

white man who established missionaries. Converts to Christianity receive new names, different from the traditional Basotho names. The belief system manifest in a “what they act out”, a way of life more than a professed theology. As such, African Traditional Churches (ATR) allow individuals to practice a combination of Christianity and ATR.

Negligence of ATR is to disregard the source of African Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS) in general as Domfeh (2007) cites that Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS) is a knowledge systems acquired over generations by communities through their interaction with the environment. It is a knowledge that is embedded in African traditional beliefs and has been 162 Afr. J. Hist. Cult. handed down through generations by cultural transmission. It encompasses spiritual relationships, religious beliefs in relationships with the natural environment and the use of natural resources, relationships between people, and is reflected in language, social organization, values, institutions and laws.²⁰⁹

In pre-colonial time, Basotho worshipped ‘balimo’, the ancestor spirit believed to have the power to punish those who disobey by misfortune and illness.²¹⁰ Punishment could be bestowed to the individual or the community. Ancestor spirits were important in all aspects of life. Certain people had the ability to channel and communicate with the spirits through dreams and visions. It does not appear that the Basoeto’s incorporated sacrificial ceremonies.²¹¹

Flowing from early missionaries, current Religious Education taught in Lesotho schools is basically Christian oriented. Missionaries emphasised the fact that Christianity expect believers to abandon traditional beliefs. Christianity cannot compromise to accommodate several convictions and practices. Basoeto’s who lived at missionaries were alienated from their traditional religion and customs. Regardless the efforts, syncretism began in 1860 when the prophetess Mantsopa

²⁰⁹ Mokotso R.I. (2015) Academic Journals: African Journal of History and Culture. *Syncretism of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity: Gateway to the syncretistic teaching of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity in Lesotho schools*. P. 159. Available at: <https://academicjournals.org/journal/AJHC/article-full-text-pdf/F4E357753819>. P. 162

²¹⁰ Basotho Religion. Available at: <https://welovebasotho.weebly.com/religion.html>

²¹¹ Basotho Religion. Available at: <https://welovebasotho.weebly.com/religion.html>

combined Christianity and Traditional religion. Makotso²¹² summarised her theory:

‘Mantsopa had argued that a way to God is broader than narrowly presented by the missionaries as to renounce traditional culture in order to join Christianity.’

A second movement was called ‘Thapelo ea Sephiri’, (Secret Prayer) who fused Christianity and Basotho Traditional Religion incorporated animal sacrifices for ancestors’ equivalent to traditional religion. In the 1920s Walter constituted his own church incorporating Christianity and Basotho Traditional Religion. The Zionist and Apostolic churches established also accommodated both.²¹³

8.2.2 West Sotho or Tswana

The Kgalagadi, initially the main tribe, gave life to the Kwena, which divided into a large number of tribes. The Western Sotho live primarily in the area of Bophuthatswana. They probably arrived in South Africa during 1600 to settle in Botswana and the Western parts of South Africa. Van Aswegen²¹⁴ considered the main tribes to be the Rolong, Hurutshe, Kwena, Fokeng and Kgatla. Additionally, the following is also acknowledged: Tswana, Tlhaping, Tlharo, and Ngwato.²¹⁵

Twana culture, social organisation, ceremonies, language, and religion is similar to the other Sotho groups, but distinct in the fact that they their chiefdoms and

²¹² Mokotso, R.I. (2015) Academic Journals: African Journal of History and Culture. *Syncretism of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity: Gateway to the syncretistic teaching of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity in Lesotho schools*. P. 158. Available at: <https://academicjournals.org/journal/AJHC/article-full-text-pdf/F4E357753819>

²¹³ Mokotso, R.I. (2015) Academic Journals: African Journal of History and Culture. *Syncretism of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity: Gateway to the syncretistic teaching of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity in Lesotho schools*. P. 159. Available at: <https://academicjournals.org/journal/AJHC/article-full-text-pdf/F4E357753819>

²¹⁴ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 56

²¹⁵ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

culture reflected a complex legal system with hierarchies of courts and mediators, and harsh punishment for those found guilty.

Traditional Sotho villages were also organized into age-sets, or groups of men or women who were close in age. Each age-set had specific responsibilities; including warfare and herding for the men, crop cultivation and religious responsibilities for the women. An entire age-set generally graduated from one task to the next, and the village often celebrated this change with a series of rituals and, in some cases, an initiation ceremony.²¹⁶



Figure 30: They are popular in the country due to their Tswana dance, their unique Setswana names, and the gorgeous Tswana wedding dresses.²¹⁷

8.2.2.1 Spirituality

Initiations into adulthood were elaborated ceremonies lasting a few months, in which girls and boys were taken separately to a rural outdoor (bush) in the winter.

²¹⁶ SAHO: South African History Online. Tswana. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/tswana>

²¹⁷ Kinuthia, Peter (2019) *Tswana culture, people, food, language, traditions, ceremony, dance and traditional attire*. Available at: <https://briefly.co.za/30383-tswana-culture-people-food-language-traditions-ceremony-dance-traditional-attire.html>

The boys were circumcised.²¹⁸

Christian missionaries in the early nineteenth century had notable successes amongst the Tswana. Traditionally, the Supreme Being and creator Modimo, was distant and remote. Ancestors (Badimo), had more direct influence in daily affairs. Ancestor veneration manifested in respect given to elders of the family, and their capacity to influence the younger generations. At death, their spirits were believed to join the other ancestral spirits. Sacrifices, prayers and appropriate behaviour were avenues of Bandimo veneration. Badimo was believed to have the choice to withdraw support leaving them vulnerable to disease and misfortune. People who died with regret are believed to become ‘dipoko’ (ghosts) and not Badimo. Their souls remain in the graves by day but rise at night to haunt the living.²¹⁹

Funerals are held in opulence. Traditionally, children were buried under their homes, women in their compounds and men in their cattle kraals. This tradition is now replaced by cemeteries. The tradition of slaughtering cattle is still prevalent. Traditional healers preside over funeral procedures, administering rites the bereaved that are directed toward exorcising thoughts of the diseased from the living **“so that they will not go mad”**²²⁰ from their grief. Increasingly, funerals have become the most elaborate life-cycle rituals.

Traditional healers, (dingaka, ngaka) specialises in healing and magic, rainmaking, compound protection, avenging sorcery, and women’s productive health. Throwing bones and the manner in which they fall is used to interpret the individual’s problem. Baloi (sorcerers), have the ability to shapeshift into animals at night, and may cause their victims to do the same. They have the power to

²¹⁸ SAHO: South African History Online. Tswana. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/tswana>

²¹⁹ Tswana - Religion and Expressive Culture. Available at: <https://www.everyculture.com/Africa-Middle-East/Tswana-Religion-and-Expressive-Culture.html>

²²⁰ Tswana - Religion and Expressive Culture. Available at: <https://www.everyculture.com/Africa-Middle-East/Tswana-Religion-and-Expressive-Culture.html>

cause sickness and misfortune. Practitioners of the African Independent churches (e.g. baporafota (prophet)) or the baruti (minister or teacher) attend less rigorous training compared to the dingaka, but they also engage in healing ceremonies.

8.2.3 North Sotho Pedi (Bapedi)

The North Sotho's were scattered in Limpopo and Mpumalanga. They exist of several tribes e.g. Pedi and Koni in Sekhukhuneland, Phalaborwa, Lebedu and Kutswe. The Pedi society arose from a confederation of smaller tribes before the 17th century in the Limpopo province. These tribes defeated other tribes resulting in the powerful tribes of Thulare and Malekuta.²²¹ They are commonly known as the BaPedi. Mzilikazi often attacked the BaPedi during the Mfecane.

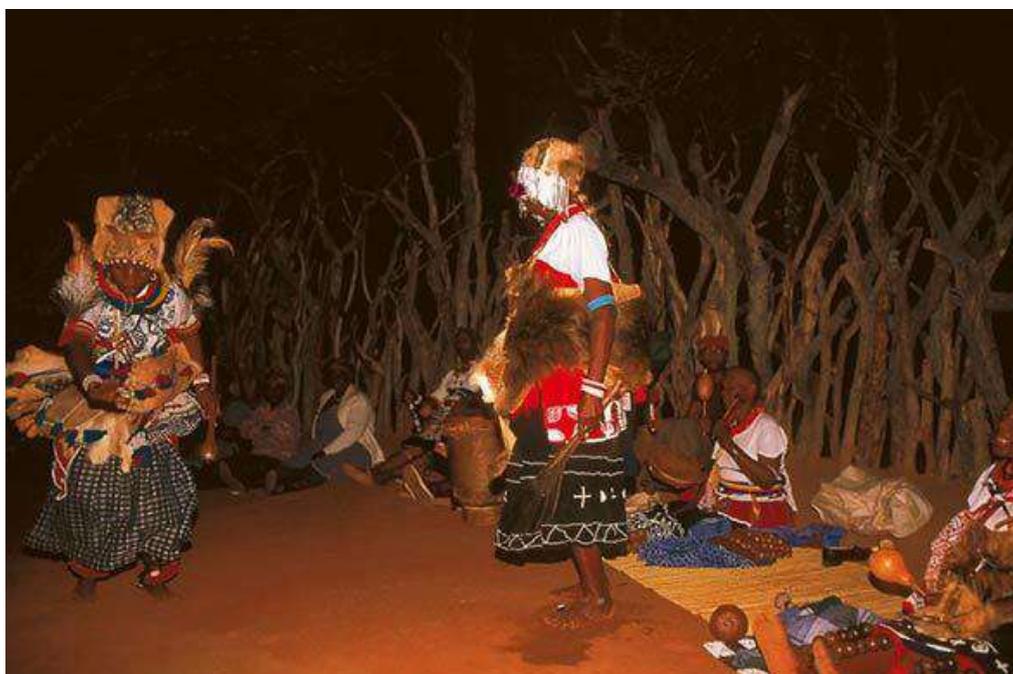


Figure 31: North Sotho in traditional ceremony

²²¹ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

Even though the Pedi originates from the Bakgatla and were of Sotho origin, inter-marriages with other tribes resulted in the adoption of non-Sotho language and customs. The most important Northern Sotho tribes are the Pedi, Koni, Phalaborwa, Lobedu and Kutswe.

8.2.3.1 Spirituality

The Pedi prayed to ancestors and gods to provide for their needs. Initiation schools for both boys and girls are custom. Several rituals exist²²²:

- Parents decide on the marriage partner for their children.
- Bogadi (brides' price) is paid in cattle by the groom's parents.
- Younger brothers are expected to marry the wife of the older brother should the latter pass away.²²³
- Babies are born at the home of the women's family and she returns to her husband after the birth. Her family provides meat and beer to celebrate the new born.
- Birth of Royal babies are celebrated by gifts to the Royal house (moshate)
- Funerals are held seven days after an individual died to make provision for arrangements. The day prior to the funeral the corps are draped in cow skin and everybody has the opportunity for final greetings (go tlhoboga).

The Bible was translated into North Sotho in 1904 by a team consisting of G. Trumplemann, H. Kuschke, A. Serote and G. Eiselen.²²⁴

²²² Pedi. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_pedi.html

²²³ The author notes the importance of cultural sensitivity. It is considered offensive to refer to the passing of a Black African as died, death etc. This is not in acknowledgement of their faith in the afterlife. The accepted terminology is 'passing on' 'passing through'.

²²⁴ Bible Society of South Africa. Translations. Available at: <http://www.bibles.co.za/history/>

8.3 Black Ethnicity: Tsonga-Shangana

The Tsonga people are a diverse group of tribes including Shangaan, Thonga, Tonga, Vanzawu, VaTshwa, Vakalanga and Valoyi to name a few. Regardless the shared origin, tribes have assumed unique identities. Tribal differences often lead to rejection of the title Shangaan or Tsonga.

During the Difaqane Soshangane, along with some of Zwide's tribe fled to Mozambique. They oppressed the local Tsonga people to the extent that some fled to the Lebombo mountains.



Figure 32: Tsonga women in traditional colourful attire.²²⁵

Some Tsonga tribes are the Nhlangu, Nkuna and Tembe. The most significant tribes belonging to the Shangaans are the Tulilamashe, Shangana and Nkuna.²²⁶

African crop farmers and herders travelled south from what is believed to be from

²²⁵ Mixo, Precious (2016) *Tsonga colourful clothes and their meaning*. Available at: <https://mixo.wordpress.com/2016/06/01/i-am-tsonga-our-colourfully-clothes-and-their-meaning/>

²²⁶ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

Central and East Africa. Their language was vastly different from the San and Khoi-Khoi and they also had a much darker skin reflection.

The farmers' knowledge of cultivation and herding implied that they lived in more settled communities and were not dependent on hunting and gathering. Their art was less elaborate compared to the San. They produced and decorated clay pots with elaborate design.

They developed trade networks and they had the skills and ability to mine tin, iron, copper and even gold. Indian coloured glass beads is evident of international trade. Archaeological excavations of burial sites from the Mapungubwe community close to the Limpopo River discovered gold beads, bracelets and tin objects supporting the indication that they had mining capacity. Excavations at the settlement of Thulamela discovered gold attached to bone amulets and Chinese porcelain.

Excavations also indicated that they had specific burial and arrangements for life in general. Dolls portraying different sexual positions could indicate that young people were prepared for adulthood. Because similar dolls were also found in Zimbabwe the suggestions exist that the two communities could have exchanged young people in their initiation schools.

The evidence of trade with West Africa, India and China dismisses the general thought that South Africa's international trade as well as local commerce and structured societies was only introduced with the arrival of the Europeans.

It does seem though that the arrival of the Portuguese navigators had a detrimental effect on a flourishing African trade. They dominated Arab traders and seized their trade. Simultaneously it seemed that the local communities did not find the Portuguese products equally attractive.

Research indicated that black farmers dominated the interior of South Africa and by the 18th century significant polities had begun to emerge. Sotho-Tswana

chiefdoms dominated the interior of South Africa whilst the Venda settled to the north and the Nguni to the East. The Xhosa occupied the Eastern Cape areas and the Zulu dominated KwaZulu Natal. These societies interacted with one another as well as with the San and Khoi-Khoi.

8.3.1 Spirituality

The Tsonga tiMhamba (plural of Mhamba) or sacrificial rites divided the sacred and the profane. Rituals of sacrifices to Mhamba were the most visible stage of religion. Mhamba is defined as “**any object or act or even person, which is used to establish a bond between the gods and their worshippers**”.²²⁷ Sacrifices to ancestral gods primary goal is to appease and pacify ancestral gods and acts as a petition to intervene into specific needs including rain, peace, victory, productivity etc. tiMhamba are complex rites influenced by the specific need. Offerings varied between specific personal or family needs and national offerings concerning the whole tribe. Sacrifices celebrated specific events in the life of the family or clan, and can also include bloodshed.

A close relationship existed between civil religion and tradition. Repetition and rites generated and enforced tradition, including civil religion. Civil religion justified and legitimised tradition e.g. the Luma ritual, (circumcision) was incorporated in a tribal calendar at every New Year. Rituals normalised tradition and enforced culture. Public practice of Mtamba authenticated the religious ceremony and the authority of those performing the sacrifice. It also standardised proper behaviour.²²⁸

²²⁷ Ngale, S.J. (2011) *From Tsonga to Mocambicanidade: Civil Religious Dynamics in Mozambican Nationalism*. Thesis presented for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. University of Cape Town. P. 64. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/12264/Ngale_SJ.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

²²⁸ Ngale, S.J. (2011) *From Tsonga to Mocambicanidade: Civil Religious Dynamics in Mozambican Nationalism*. Thesis presented for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. University of Cape Town. P. 64.

Excavations discovered the graves of what could have been a queen and a king. The local Venda people named them queen Losha because of her posture with folded hands in a gesture of respect facing the grave of her husband. Her husband was named King Ingwe, meaning “Leopard King”.

Opinions with regards to rulers and crocodiles are still shared by the Shona and Venda people. Natrass²²⁹ noted as follows:

According to the Venda, “the crocodile does not leave its pool” – this refers to the concept of sacred leadership. It is believed that the first man emerged from a sacred pool of water, much as a crocodile does from a river. Their chief is believed to be directly linked to this person.

It is also thought that crocodiles could communicate with ancestors from the spirit world, which was under the water. Traditional Venda chiefs swallowed pebbles taken from a crocodile’s stomach to link with this spirit word. The crocodile motif is seen on wooden doors, drums and stone walls at sites in both Zimbabwe and Limpopo.

8.4 Black Ethnicity: Venda

The Venda (VhaVenda) originated from Great lakes of Central Africa. Van Aswegen²³⁰ noted language and cultural similarities between the Venda and the Shona people. The Venda are considered to be one of the last tribes who migrated to the south of the Limpopo River. They divided between Zimbabwe and Limpopo. The southern tribe arrived by 1700 (1100 according to Dr. Broodryk).²³¹ Their language and culture differ from the other major groups.

Ruins of their first capital D’zata build in the Soutpansberg Mountains still exist. King Shiriyadenga was the first king of their first kingdom, called Mapungubwe in

Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/12264/Ngale_SJ.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

²²⁹ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 23

²³⁰ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 73

²³¹ Broodryk, Johann (2007) *Understanding South Africa. The uBuntu way of living*. Waterkloof: uBuntu School of Philosophy. P. 29

the 9th century. Shiryadenga was succeeded by his children. The Mapungubwe Kingdom emerged from 800AD but declined again from 1240. The centre of power and trade shifted north to the Great Zimbabwe's Khami and Rozwi empires. The Venda culture survived this shift. South of the Limpopo Shona-Venda pottery styles developed in the 14th and 15th centuries. Shona speaking migrants from north Zimbabwe settled across the South African lowveld.



Figure 33: Venda Village²³²

Venda history is interrelated with the history of their successive captain's houses – especially those descended from their legendary ancestor, Thoho-ya-Ndou (Head of the Elephant). His kraal (home) D'zata has been declared a National Monument. The significance of D'zata is evident in the fact that their chiefs were buried facing towards D'zata. Succession to the throne was a complex matter. Disputes between the chiefs after the death of Thoho-ya-Ndou divided the Venda people into the 26 Captain houses that exists today.

Tribes within the Venda nation were political and territorial units. Venda's people of different clans could choose to pay allegiance to any particular tribe and live in the particular territory. No supreme chief or king existed. Headmen were responsible for the governing of districts within the tribal territory.

²³² Venda Village. Available at: <https://andrejfourie.files.wordpress.com/2012/06/venda.jpg>

Territories were ruled by independent chiefs belonging to a lineage of the same tribe. Lineage supremacy implies a social division between commoners (vhasiwana) and the descendants of the chief (chakololo).

TshiVenda or LuVenda, developed as a distinct dialect in the 16th Century. TshiVenda vocabulary developed to be similar to SeSotho, although their grammar also shared similarities with Shona dialects spoken in Zimbabwe. Currently, about 875 000 people in South Africa speak Tshivenda

Two major groups can be considered to be true Venda:

- Descendants of leaders such as Mphephu, Senthumule and Kutama, primarily of Singo origin.

It was believed that the Singo king could protect his people from attack by their enemies by beating a special drum called the Ngoma Lungundo, ('drum of the dead'). According to legend, the sound of the drum would strike terror in the hearts of the enemy and they would flee. Some Venda say that this king disappeared from his kraal one night with this special drum and neither were ever seen again. It is believed that at Mashovhela "place where the drums can be heard", rock pool on the Morning Sun Nature Reserve, you can still hear the his drum in the echoes of the cliffs and is considered the second most sacred site in Venda culture

- Descendants of descendants of Lwamonde, Rambuda, Tshivashe and Mhapuli

8.4.1 Lemba Black Jews

The unique group Lemba, a Shona group but descendants from African Semitic (Arab), travelled with the Venda from central Africa around 696 AD. Some of the Lemba integrated with the Venda. Van Aswegen²³³ reported on them being descendants from Muslim traders and converted to Islam. According to other research material, the Lemba considers themselves to be a lost tribe of Israel:

²³³ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 74

The Lemba believe themselves to be Black Jews, descendants of the lost tribe of Israel. They keep to themselves, only marry within their own group and sometimes refer to themselves as Vhalungu, which means 'non-Negroid' or 'respected foreign.

The beads they brought with them from these far-off countries are still treasured to this day and are used in divination and other magical ceremonies. The Lemba were very good traders and artisans. They were also famous, for their metalwork and pottery. ²³⁴

8.4.2 Spirituality

The Venda's culture artistic style reflects the vigorous mythical belief system on which their culture is founded. Their culture incorporated a variety of Nguni, Sotho, Eastern and Central African cultures such as the conviction that pork is forbidden and male circumcision during the Murundu²³⁵ initiation practice for boys. This initiation was introduced by the North Sotho people.

The Domba, Vusha and Tshikanda are initiation 'schools' for girls. The chief announces the time for the Domba. Girls were obliged to 'pay entrance fees' in bangles and clothes to the chief. Historically, girls remained at the school for three months. This has now been amended to a weekend at the Chief's kraal to accommodate schools etc. The Domba aims to prepare girls for adulthood by lectures concerning fertility, family planning, childbirth, HIV and marriage.

The following is also pertinent:

- Many Venda people still practice polygamy.
- Differences occurred in the religion rituals of various tribes.
- Worship of family ancestors
- Water is especially significant. Venda's conjure with ancestral spirits at several sacred water sites.

²³⁴ Venda. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_venda.html

²³⁵ Venda. Available at: http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_venda.html

Water spirits (zwidutwane) live at the bottom of waterfalls. They are only 50% visible to this world, the other 50% is only visible in the spirit world. Thus, only one eye, one leg and one arm are visible.

Food is offered to the zwidutwane to compensate for the fact that they are not able to produce food under water. Lake Fundudzi is one of the most sacred sites. The lake is fed by the Mutale River but has no outlet. Great suspicion surrounds the lake and it is believed that the Tshikona song can be heard regardless the fact that no one is there.

The geographical homestead of the Venda people is also home to indigenous reptiles. Special honour was bestowed to the crocodile whose brain is believed to be poisonous. The crocodile provides favour and right of way for the Venda's respect for not killing the crocodile.

The Vhavenda traditional religion acknowledged the supreme being as 'Nwali', the creator who presided over the collective community, and who loved and cared for creation. 'Nwali' is the provider for rain. Oral tradition accounts the magical power of a drum called Ngomo-Lungundu, the drum of Mwari/Nwali.

The magical drum protected the people on their journey southwards. The chief and by extension his people were feared as a result of the power of the drum. It had power to simultaneously protect and provide victory.²³⁶

Alidzulwi Simon Munyai²³⁷ in his PhD thesis provided the following interpretation of ancestors:

“(Mbiti (1969:83) describes the ancestors as the departed up to five generations back. They are in a different category from that of ordinary spirits. They are still within the Sasa period; in other words, they are expressed as being in the present time, the recent past and the near future.

²³⁶ Munyai, A.S. (2016) *The Tenacity of African Traditional Religion in Venda Christianity: A missional Investigation*. Submitted in fulfilment of the degree Philosophiae Doctor. Faculty of Theology, Department of Science of Religion and Missiology. University of Pretoria. P. 26. Available at: https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/61193/Munyai_Tenacity_2016.pdf?sequence=1

²³⁷ Munyai, A.S. (2016) *The Tenacity of African Traditional Religion in Venda Christianity: A missional Investigation*. Submitted in fulfilment of the degree Philosophiae Doctor. Faculty of Theology, Department of Science of Religion and Missiology. University of Pretoria. P. 30. Available at: https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/61193/Munyai_Tenacity_2016.pdf?sequence=1

The recently departed whose time overlapped with people still here are the Sasa, or the living dead. They are not wholly dead, for they live on in the memories of those who have survived them. They are in state of personal immortality: their process of dying is not yet complete. They are the closest link that humans have with the spirit world.

The two groups are bound together by their common Sasa; that of the living dead is however, fast disappearing into the zamani. When the last person knowing an ancestor dies, that ancestor leaves the Sasa for the zamani, i.e. the dead. As generalised ancestors, the zamani are not forgotten but revered. The living dead are still people, and have not yet become 'things'. They return to their human families from time to time, and share meals with them, however symbolically."

It is noteworthy that the ancestors are not equal to Mwali (Supreme Being), they were people who once lived and who are promoted to ancestors, a position of ancestry.

8.5 Black Ethnicity: Ocampo-Herero

The Ovambo's travelled from Central-East Africa to the West and re-located in the current Namibia. Agriculture was the main focus. Seven tribes are included in the Ovambo nation. The *Herero* also travelled to the West of Africa. They were cattle farmers and re-located south of the Ovambo's in the current Namibia.

9. SOUTH AFRICAN ETHNOGRAPHY: THE ARRIVAL OF EUROPEAN AND OTHER INTERNATIONAL NATIONALITIES

9.1 South African Ethnographic Chronology: First European Interest Prior to Colonization (1400's)

9.1.1 The Arrival of the Portuguese 1497

South Africa, on the most southern tip of Africa with the Atlantic Ocean and Indian ocean meeting on the shores, is strategically in the middle where the East meets the West.



Figure 34: Indian Ocean Trade Routes²³⁸

The Portuguese and Spanish were dominant international imperialists from 1492 – 1598. The Spanish empire extended to the North and South Americas whilst the Portuguese focussed their imperial ideas on Asia, Africa and South America. The Spanish discovered North America in 1492. In their quest to find an economical route to Asia, the Portuguese successfully ventured around the Southern tip of Africa in 1497. They were the first to investigate alternative routes to India after the rise of the Ottoman Turkish Empire that resulted in the Mediterranean and Arabian Peninsula to be closed.

The religious and monopolistic ideas of the Catholic missions and the advancement of the motherland was prominent. Huge stone crosses erected along the South African coastline demonstrated their Christian (Roman Catholic) faith and provided landmarks for future travels. Bartolomeu Dias erected the first three crosses;²³⁹ in March 1488 at Kwaaihoek near the mouth of the Bushman's

²³⁸ Blake, Rebekah (2015) *Indian Ocean Trade Routes*. Available at: <https://www.thinglink.com/scene/712732665165381634>

²³⁹ SAHO: South African History Online. *Portuguese navigator Bartholomew Dias erects the first stone cross on the South African coast*. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/dated-event/portuguese-navigator-bartholomew-dias-erects-first-stone-cross-south-african-coast>

River in the Eastern Cape, (named Padrão de São Gregorio),²⁴⁰ the second cross (Padrão de São Filipe) at Cape Maclear west of Cape Point on June 6 and the third (Padrão de São Tiago (St James)) on the Namibian coast on July 25, 1488.

The Southern Cross Catholic Weekly paper²⁴¹ noted the first Roman Catholic mass on South African soil dated December 1487. The author noted that the Roman Catholic footprint in South Africa preceded colonisation of the Cape and the Christian Protestantism of the Dutch by more than 150 years.

The crosses displayed the Portuguese superiority in sea navigation, and in addition manifested the very first presence of Christianity in South Africa. During this time, the Europeans classified people into two categories: Christian or civilised and Non-Christian or non-civilised.

It also was the Portuguese Bartolomeu Dias who named the Cape Cabo das Tormentas, meaning “The Cape of Storms”. The Portuguese king eventually changed the name to Cabo da Boa Esperança, or “Cape of Hood Hope” for it held the promise of a new route to the east. Vasco da Gama named “Natal”. According to Natrass²⁴² the **“name carried the connotation of the birth of Christ in Portuguese.”**

In contrast to the Dutch and the British, the Portuguese aimed to utilise the Cape to provide fresh supplies, and not to colonise the Cape, but it was the Dutch who first established a fresh produce station in 1652. During this time, the Dutch slowly surpassed the Portuguese trade in the East.

An estimated 2500 shipwrecks along the South African coastline is evident of the

²⁴⁰ The first cross erected by Diaz, discovered by Prof. E Axelson in 1938, is acknowledged as South Africa’s oldest monument. A reconstructed cross was sent to the University of the Witwatersrand for safe keeping. SAHO: South African History Online. *Portuguese navigator Bartholomew Dias erects the first stone cross on the South African Coast*. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/dated-event/portuguese-navigator-bartholomew-dias-erects-first-stone-cross-south-african-coast>

²⁴¹ The Southern Cross (June, 19, 2018) *A Timeline of Catholicism in South Africa*. Available at: <https://www.scross.co.za/2018/06/a-timeline-of-catholicism-in-south-africa/>

²⁴² Rooms for Africa. *Shipwrecks along South Africa’s Coast* (September 8, 2014) Available at: https://www.roomsforafrica.com/art/shipwrecks_south_africa_coast

importance of the trade route. Dr. Gillian Vernon²⁴³, historian at the University of Cape Town and Director at the East London Museum research discovered that some captains and crew of Portuguese ships like the Santo Aberto traded with local people with mutual respect and in peace. Others like Nossa Senhora de Atalaia regarded the local people as barbarians and often intended to kill them.

Dr. Vernon noted how, despite cultural and linguistic differences, many shipwreck survivors settled among local African tribes, absorbed their culture, and became wealthy and respected members of their new African community. This included officers, wealthy passengers and African and Indian slaves who belonged to the captains of the stranded ships.

The Dutch ship *Stavenisse* reported contact in 1686 with a survivor of the *Nossa Senhora de Atalaia* who lived with the Mpondo people for 40 years and chose 'not to be rescued'.²⁴⁴

The author notes that the survivors of the shipwrecks from the 1400's and the local tribes could probably be regarded as the first mix race of South Africa. It is unknown if the survivors of the shipwrecks stayed true to their Roman Catholic convictions. The author speculates that their descendants would probably have been absorbed in the faith of the local tribe they belonged to, or an amalgamated religion could have been the outcome.

Expedition members on a mission to find and rescue survivors of the English ship *Grosvenor* in 1782 reported a clan of about 400 abelungu (the Xhosa term for fair-skinned people, or people from the sea). They were probably descendants from European survivors of shipwrecks and the Mpondo people. It is reported that Chief Faku, leader of the clan (1824-1867) was a mixed race descendent of one

²⁴³ Vernon, Gillian Dr. (2016) Centre for Extra-Mural Studies, University of Cape Town . *1109 Shipwreck survivors in South-East Africa, 1552-1782: Contrasting Fortunes*. Available at: http://www.summerschool.uct.ac.za/shipwreck_survivors

²⁴⁴ Green, Lawrence G. (1969) *Harbours of Memory*. Cape Town: Howard Timmins. P. 124

of the survivors of the Grosvenor and a local person.²⁴⁵

Green²⁴⁶ reported on many 'curiously light skinned' Pondoland people, a characteristic he contributed to their European ancestors. The South African coastal line appeared to be the area where diverse people had encounters for at least 500 years. "The Sunburnt Queen" by Hazel Crampton²⁴⁷ narrates the life of an English girl named Bessie who grew up with the Mpondo's (1736). She became a woman of surpassing beauty, married a chief of the clan, and became the ancestor of many of the Xhosa royal families in the nineteenth century. The amaMpondo called her Gquma, "The Roar of the Sea".

9.2 South African Ethnographic Chronology: Pre-Colonial Trade in the Cape (1500's)

Migration of the Nguni and Sotho people invaded the San and Khoi-Khoi territories, restricting their territory mainly to the Western and Northern Cape. The Portuguese proceeded with the mapping of the South African coastline and in the process extended on the establish trade with the Khoi-Khoi.

Dutch and other European ships had been stopping at Table Bay and Saldanha Bay (some 130km to the north) since the 1590s to load up on drinking water and barter livestock.²⁴⁸

9.2.1 1500's Chronology Overview

SA History.org²⁴⁹ presents the following noteworthy dates pertaining to the South African history during the 1500's:

²⁴⁵ Green, Lawrence G. (1969) *Harbours of Memory*. Cape Town: Howard Timmins. P. 124

²⁴⁶ Green, Lawrence G. (1969) *Harbours of Memory*. Cape Town: Howard Timmins. PP. 121-124

²⁴⁷ Crampton, Hazel. (2004) *The Sunburn Queen*. Jacana Media. Available at: <https://jacana.co.za/our-books/sunburnt-queen-the/>

²⁴⁸ Dall, Nick (January 14, 2020) *The shipwreck that forever changed South Africa*. Available at: <http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20200113-the-shipwreck-that-forever-changed-south-africa>

²⁴⁹ General South African History Timeline: 1500s. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/general-south-african-history-timeline-1500s>

1500	The international power of the Portuguese nation began to decline. This marked the start of European nations pursuing the sea route vs land routes to India.
1503	Antonio de Saldanha, leading a Portuguese squadron, enters Table Bay (called Aguada da Saldanha until 1601) owing to a navigational error. They were the first Europeans to climb Table Mountain, which they name Taboa do Cabo (the Table Cape) on account of its shape.
1510	March 1, on his way back to Portugal the Viceroy of Portuguese India, Francisco d' Almeida, is killed in a skirmish with Khoi-Khoi, probably due to a misunderstanding arising from barter between the Khoi-Khoi, and the Portuguese at the mouth of the Salt River in Table Bay. Thereafter, Portuguese traders tend to bypass the Cape itself, relying on Robben island for fresh meat and water.
1554	April 24, The Portuguese ship São Bento is wrecked north of the Great Fish River on its return from the East. Manuel de Mesquita Perestrelo, Portuguese navigator and cartographer is one of 64 survivors of the crew of 473 who reaches Delagoa Bay on foot, and one of 23 to be ultimately rescued.
1564	An account of the shipwreck of the São Bento by mariner Manuel de Mesquita Perestrelo is published in Portugal, the oldest book dealing exclusively with events on South African soil.
1575-1576	Portuguese mariner and cartographer Manuel de Mesquita Perestrelo explored the south and south-east coast of South Africa on a voyage for this purpose. He gives the first detailed description and draws a map of the coast.
1580	June 18, An English admiral, Francis Drake, rounds the Cape on his voyage round the world in his quest to reach India for the English Crown. He describes the Cape in the following words: 'This Cape is a most stately thing, and the fairest Cape we saw in the whole circumference of the earth.'

1590's	The English and the Dutch begin to call regularly at Table Bay on their way to and from Asia. Khoi-Khoi traded mainly iron, copper and marijuana with the foreigners at this stage.
1591	August 1, The English navigator, James Lancaster, barter sheep in the Bay of Saldanha (called Table Bay after 1601) from the Khoi-Khoi. He describes the sheep as very large, with good mutton, bearing no wool but hair, and with very large tails.
1595	August 4, four ships under Cornelis de Houtman reach São Bras. This is the first contact of the Dutch with the coast of Southern Africa.

Table 6: 1500's Chronology

9.3 South African Ethnographic Chronology: Colonization. The Arrival of European and Other International Nationalities (1600's)

The early documented history pertaining to the first indigenous people and the arrival of African and other international nationalities.

9.3.1 1600's Chronology Overview

1601	Dutch East-India Company ²⁵⁰ (DEIC) fleets explore the Cape route to India
------	---

²⁵⁰ Dutch East-India Company: UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation) Archives of the Dutch East-India Company: Founded in 1602 and liquidated in 1795, was the largest and most impressive of the early modern European trading companies operating in Asia. Available at: <http://www.unesco.org/new/en/communication-and-information/memory-of-the-world/register/full-list-of-registered-heritage/registered-heritage-page-1/archives-of-the-dutch-east-indiacompany/Rijksmuseum> 1602 Trade with the East: Also known as VOC (Verenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie). The company was a combination of commercial organisations in various cities of Holland and Zeeland. It was the first public company to issue negotiable shares and it developed into one of the biggest and most powerful trading and shipping concerns. Available at: <https://www.rijksmuseum.nl/en/rijksstudio/timeline-dutch-history/1602-trade-with-the-east-voc>

1652	Dutch- refreshment posting established at the Cape for ships on route to India
1657	Dutch organised settlement at the Cape, The VOC releases nine officials to establish themselves as fulltime farmers.
1658	Arrival of the first slaves at the Cape
1659 – 1669	Armed conflict between Europeans and Khoi-Khoi with regards to land and cattle.
1684	First Indian slaves arrived. ²⁵¹
1688	French Huguenots ²⁵² refugees arrive at the Cape

Table 7: 1600's Chronology Overview

The strategic value of South Africa led to the arrival of European nations. Although the Portuguese was the first to discover the Southern point of Africa in 1488, it was the English Captain Shilling who first planted the Union Jack on Table Mountain in June 1620. He declared Table Mountain and surrounding areas to be an English Colony.²⁵³ Unfortunately, Captain Shilling died during his fleet's return to England. King James 1²⁵⁴ was not persuaded to pursue to

²⁵¹ South African History Online. Indian South Africans. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/indian-south-africans>

²⁵² French Huguenots: Huguenot Society of South Africa. Viljoen H.C. The Huguenots who arrived at the Cape of Good Hope at the end of the 17th century, consisted of only a fraction of the large-scale Protestant flight from France after the revocation of the Edict on Nantes in 1685. As early as 1671 the first Huguenot refugee, Francois Villion (later Viljoen), arrived at the Cape. In 1686 the brothers Guillaume and Francois du Toit arrived. After the mainstream of Huguenots arrived during 1688 – 1689, they comprised approximately one sixth of the free burgher population, after which individual arrivals continued sporadically until the termination of the state subsidised emigration in 1707. Available at: <https://www.hugenoot.org.za/huguenots.htm>

²⁵³ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 60 and Wolfaart Johan (April 2019) The fairest Cape: Die ampere Britse kolonie aan die Kaap. Available at: <https://eensgesind.com/the-fairest-cape-die-ampere-britse-kolonie-aan-die-kaap/>

²⁵⁴ King James I: James became King James VI of Scotland aged 13 months in July 1567. After the death of the unmarried Queen Elizabeth I of England in 1603, James became the first king of the combined throne of England and Scotland with the new title of King James I. He reigned from 1567-1625. He is best known

colonisation of the Cape.

The history and evidently the contemporary South Africa would have been dramatically different if any of the two international powers (Portugal or England) had decided to colonise the Cape. It was the Dutch who was the first to start a development in 1652.

9.3.2 The Arrival of the Dutch 1652

On March 1647, the Nieuw Haarlem foundered in Table Bay' waters, 58 crew members were rescued by passing ships, 62 men were left behind to guard valuable spices, pepper, textiles etc. The experience of the survivors was the catalyst which determined the future of the Cape and South Africa. They established a camp and battered livestock from the indigenous Khoekhoe people.

After their return to Holland, Jansz and Poot submitted recommendations to the DEIC proposing the development of the Cape.

Their submissions included a proposal that the Cape settlement should be governed by a **“good commander who treats the indigenous people politely and who pays for everything that is bartered from them, and to treat some of them with a bellyful of food”**.²⁵⁵ Their submission was successful. Jan van Riebeeck was appointed as the first commander.

The Dutch arrived in the Cape in 1652. The initial intention of the Dutch East-India Company (DEIC) was the establishment of a refreshment and trade station for ships on route from Europe to the East. The strategic harbour soon became

for his vision to commission the King James Authorised Version of the Bible published in 1611. King James I (1603-1625). Available at: <https://www.britroyals.com/kings.asp?id=james1>

²⁵⁵ Dall, Nick (January 14, 2020) *The shipwreck that forever changed South Africa*. BBC Travel. Available at: <http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20200113-the-shipwreck-that-forever-changed-south-africa>

significant for all passing ships, not only those belonging to the Dutch. The first interaction with indigenous people was with the San and Khoi-Khoi. Jan van Riebeeck directed the outpost in a different and history-defining direction. Gerald Groenewald²⁵⁶ from the University of Johannesburg noted the following:

“From day one, he had a negative view of the Khoekhoe, He had a low opinion of the Khoekhoe, distrusted them very much. His ill relationship with the Khoekhoe led to the first Khoekhoe-Dutch War of 1658-59.”

The author notes the appointment of Jan van Riebeeck instead of Jansz or Poot who had established good relationships with the Khoekhoe, as the second decision with dramatic effects on the history of and contemporary South Africa. It is possible that Van Riebeeck’s poor relations with the Khoi-Khoi laid the foundation for future poor race relations.

Van Jaarsveld²⁵⁷ described the period as a time of ‘mercantilism’.²⁵⁸ The initial priority was amended, and large-scale settlement was encouraged. Jan van Riebeeck was ordered to start a fresh produce production and acquire cattle to deliver fresh meat. Regardless the initial aim, this initiated the 150 years of Dutch rule and European conquering of the Cape.

By 1668 the population increased to 600 and the status of ‘refreshment station’ was promoted to a ‘Colony’. The title of ‘commander’ as head of the refreshment station advanced to ‘Governor’. Simon van der Stel was appointed first governor of the Cape (1691). He was succeeded by his son Willem Adriaan van der Stel (1699-1708).

²⁵⁶ Dall, Nick (January 14, 2020) *The shipwreck that forever changed South Africa*. BBC Travel. Available at: <http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20200113-the-shipwreck-that-forever-changed-south-africa>

²⁵⁷ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. ‘n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 3

²⁵⁸ Mercantilism: Economic policy of most European governments from the 16 to 18 centuries. A period signifying the establishment of national states. The policy aimed to create prosperity and power through strict control over gold and trade. Trade were managed by a system of tariffs to achieve the maximum export potential whilst import was limited. Industrial development remained a focus point. Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 83

9.3.3 The Arrival of Skilled Artisans

Early Cape agriculture needed skilled farming and building labour. Poor relations with the indigenous San and Khoi-Khoi added to the labour deficit. Skilled artisans were imported from Indonesia, including Holy Sufis²⁵⁹ to benefit from their devoted followers who followed their teachers to the Cape.²⁶⁰ Burial places of these Sufis are shrines known as *kramats*. Muslim groups and individuals that opposed the unpopular Dutch rule in Java were exiled to the Cape, alongside the slaves.²⁶¹

9.3.4 The Arrival of Slaves 1657

The first slaves arrived in the Cape in 1657, imported and employed by the VOC. In 1658 the Dutch ship Amersfoort pillaged slaves from Angola and Guinee from a Portuguese ship. Slaves originated from Madagascar, Indonesia, Ceylon (Sri Lanka), India as well as from Mozambique and parts of Africa, especially from the coast of Delagoa Bay and Zanzibar. Some from Malaysia, but the majority came from India and Indonesia. The first Indian slaves arrived in 1684. SA History Online reports 16300 Indian slaves in total being bought. Between 1690 to 1725, 80% of slaves are reported to have been Indian.²⁶²

By 1658 the slave count was already 2300. In 1713, slave numbers exceeded the number of white farmers after a decision was taken to import slaves to relieve labour shortages. Slaves became integrated in business and domestic life.

²⁵⁹ Sufi Islam: Sufism is mystical and ascetic form of Islam. Available at: <https://www.dw.com/en/sufi-islam-what-you-need-to-know/a-41532401>

²⁶⁰ Wilkinson, Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 16

²⁶¹ Wilkinson, Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 16

²⁶² SA History Online: Indian South Africans. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/indian-south-africans>

Labour shortages encouraged the increase of slaves to the extent that it became a **“feature of business and domestic life at the Cape”**.²⁶³ Official 1793 statistics indicates that there were 13 830 white farmers with their families (free burgers) compared to the 14 747 slaves, and in 1795 the slave numbers increased to 17000.²⁶⁴

“The Indian Ocean slave trade, it seems was complex and multidirectional, and there is no doubt that the ignominious trade in human beings contributed to the distribution of different cultures and beliefs around the world”²⁶⁵

This statement is especially true in the South African context.

In May 2015 Jaco Boshoff (Archaeologist) and Stephen Lubkemann (Anthropologist) discovered a captain’s logbook from São José-Paquete, a 1792 stricken ship near the modern-day Clifton. This logbook gave clear descriptions of the 400 slaves taken from Mozambique. The slaves who survived the tragedy were sold into slavery in Cape Town.

This founding endorsed the theory that South Africa had been involved in the slave-trade network operating from East Africa to the Americas in the 18th century. Black chiefs participated in this trade and accepted bribes.

Thabiso Leshoi²⁶⁶ concluded that while Europe had a compelling need for cheap labour, manufactured European goods were in demand in Africa. As a result, significant profits were made from slave raids.

Survivors of other shipwrecks became integrated with local communities who assisted them resulting in light skinned mixed race people. The Mpondo chief Faku (1824-1867) was supposedly one of these descendants.

“South African author Lawrence Green noted in the 1960’s that many of the people in Pondoland were still ‘curiously light-skinned’, a characteristic he

²⁶³ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 43

²⁶⁴ Cameron, Trewhella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 70

²⁶⁵ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 46

²⁶⁶ The Journal of Good Governance. Africa in Fact. Issue 51. October – December 2019 Leshoi Thabiso Africa: The transatlantic slave trade. A painful story. P. 49

attributed to their strange ancestors. It would seem that the coastal parts of South Africa have been the meeting place of diverse people for at least 500 years.²⁶⁷

The Justice Counsel was responsible for the protection of the slaves. In 1754 the slave legislation was adopted to determine the rules for behaviour and suitable punishments.

The British Empire abolished slavery throughout the British Empire - one year after the second British occupation of the Cape. Slave ownership continued to exist, but it was difficult to obtain new slaves. Punishment of slaves were reviewed and decreased in 1820. Slavery was a practice at the Cape for 176 years.

At the time of the abolishment of slavery in all colonies of the British Empire, an estimated 36 000 slaves were present in the Cape. Van Aswegen²⁶⁸ provides a balance sheet of slaves in the Cape between 1658-1824:

Origin of Slaves 1658-1824		
Country of origin	Amount	Percentage
Madagascar	875	26.65%
Ceylon	102	3.10%
India	1195	36.40%
Indonesia	1033	31.47%
Malaysia	16	0.49%
Varia	19	0.58%
Unknown	43	131%

Table 8: Origin of slaves

²⁶⁷ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 36

²⁶⁸ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 127

Slave statistic's ²⁶⁹			
	Slaves	Total Population	% Slaves
1798	25754	61947	42%
1806	29861	77055	39%

Slaves imported	
1803	306
1804	402
1805	387
Total	1095
From Mozambique	790

Table 9: Slave statistic's

9.3.5 The Arrival Malaysians

A majority of the emancipated slaves relocated to the Bo-Kaap, a specific geographical area in Cape Town. This district still exists today from Buitengracht Street to Signal Hill, adjacent to Cape Town's city centre. Here, along with other Muslim immigrants an integrated community developed. Nattrass referred to this community as **“distinctive though ethnically mixed community.”**²⁷⁰ Although members of this new community were referred to as “Cape Malays, it is important to take note that only some of the community members originated from Malaysia, most came from India and Indonesia.

²⁶⁹ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 213

²⁷⁰ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 45

Evidence of the Malaysian contribution to the South African kaleidoscope of culture is found in the many Malaysian words assimilated into the Afrikaans language although the original languages disappeared. The same is true for food, recipes and spices originating from Malaysian and Indian cuisine that is now blended with other South African cultures.

The Malaysians represent the Eastern religious influence in the South African history. Many of their forefathers were political expatriates. Their religion was instrumental in the unity of their community, a unique individual South African “ethnic” group was established. The Cape Peninsula was their new-found home, close to the graves of their religious leaders like sheik Josef.

9.3.6 The Arrival of the French 1688

An estimated 200 French Huguenots families, all French Protestants and mostly followers of John Calvin arrived between 1688-1692. They escaped the religious prosecution in France after the Roman Catholic king Louis XIV revoked the Edict of Nantes guaranteeing religious tolerance to Protestants.

Although this is a small number, their very strong Protestant convictions contributed hugely to the Protestant heritage and the current convictions of the Afrikaner nation.

The Dutch VOC company sponsored these French Huguenots and avail farms in the Cape. The French is acknowledged for the establishment of the successful wine industry in the Cape.

“Chardonnay, Pinot Noir, Sauvignon Blanc and Merlot grapes are still planted at Boschendal, just as they were 300 years ago.” Several South African white surnames like Aucamp, De Villiers, Du Buys, Du Plessis, Du Toit, Du Plooy, Joubert, Lombard, Malherbe and Marais, proofs the French bloodline incorporated into the modern South African population. ²⁷¹

²⁷¹ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 42

9.3.7 New Indigenous Nations

9.3.7.1 Coloureds or Mixed Race

Intermarriage began when the first settlers arrived in the Cape in 1652. Exiled Europeans married freed slaves or any of the other races.

European women found the teetotaling Malay men less violent than the drinking and gambling European men. Some women converted to Islam.²⁷²

From mixed relationships between the white Cape populations including the Europeans, Khoi-Khoi, San, Cape Malayan, Koranas, Griekwas, Namas and slaves a new ethnic group were born. The original delegation consisted of 116 men and 16 women. White males often took slave or Khoi concubines. In 1671 75% of the children were born to slave women and European fathers. Residential areas were mixed, eating houses, taverns and gambling were open to all.

Basically, Coloured included (and still includes) everybody that was neither white, nor black, nor Asian. The Khoi-Khoi as an individual group of people disintegrated by the 1800's. In the modern South African society, the Khoi-Khoi descendants are included in the Coloured and Griqua.

Van Jaarsveld²⁷³ is of the opinion that the two ethnic groups, the Afrikaner and the Coloured, can equally claim to be native to South Africa as both originated on South African soil, detached from any specific nationality but simultaneously attached and created by several. Adding to this argument is the fact that neither one of the two relate to any other country as their motherland. Allegiance existed to South Africa only.

²⁷² Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers.

²⁷³ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Riebeeck tot PW Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 29

Both the groups speak Afrikaans and they share Christianity as religion as well as many cultural aspects. The reason for this shared identity can be found in the fact that, after the dismantling of the Hottentot as a unique tribe, the white Cape settlers made no race distinctions based on colour, but on religion. Any non-white, slave or Khoi-Khoi who converted to Christianity were welcomed and incorporated as a full member in the Dutch Reformed Church. Marriages within the church were allowed, regardless of colour.

9.3.7.2 Afrikaners

'Afrikaans' a new language of the Cape Settlers originating from Dutch, Khoi-Khoi, Malay, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Portuguese, German and others etc. Within three generations the French language was assimilated into the Cape language and it disappeared. The settlers (and speakers of the new language) became known as the 'Afrikaners'. One feature distinguishing Afrikaans from Dutch is the nouns which have no gender and verbs are not affected by numbers. Malay²⁷⁴ has a similar construction. Because of the Muslims' Arabic knowledge enabling them to read the Qur'an, Arabic words²⁷⁵ were also incorporated in Afrikaans.²⁷⁶

Educated Imams²⁷⁷ were the first to write this new language – using Arabic characters. The oldest written Afrikaans is in Arabic script. It has been said that the history of Afrikaans is to a large extent the story of communication between the white and the coloured races in the early years of South African history.²⁷⁸

Gail Nattrass summarised the pre-1910 Cape history as follows:

²⁷⁴ Malay words in Afrikaans examples: (often related to food) bredie, bobotie, sambals, frikkadel. Malayo-Polynesian words in Afrikaans examples: Baadjies (jacket), baie (lots), Pondok (shack), blatjang (chutney), nonna (young girl).

²⁷⁵ Arabic word examples: bota (older brother) atchar (pickled vegetables)

²⁷⁶ Wilkinson, Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 27

²⁷⁷ Imam: The person who leads prayer in a mosque. A title of various Muslim leaders. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/imam>

²⁷⁸ Wilkinson, Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 27

“Before 1910, the southern part of Africa consisted of a series of British colonies (the Cape and Natal), Afrikaner Republics (the Orange Free State and the Transvaal Republic) established by the descendants of the early British and Dutch Settlers) and black chiefdoms (Zulu, Xhosa, Sotho and others).”²⁷⁹

Natrass acknowledged the British and Dutch from which the Afrikaner nation descended, but she did not – in this statement - acknowledged the French and several other nations. The author thus found this statement incomplete.

The author emphasizes the fact that the Afrikaners deserve the status as an indigenous nation of South Africa motivated by the fact that they did not exist prior to the colonialization of the Cape. They are also not descendants from one nation only, but a combination of many the inhabitants present in the Cape. Afrikaans as language would become critical in Afrikaner nationalism influencing political decisions. This is still relevant in 2020.

9.4 South African Ethnographic Chronology: Colonization Continue (1700's)

9.4.1 1700's Chronology Overview

1701	Continued Khoi-Khoi conflict after the Europeans moved inland to the Tulbagh area.
1701-1703	The Khoi-Khoi launches attacks on famers who occupied the Tulbagh area.
1713	Small pock epidemic decimates the south western Khoi-Khoi
1737	First official mission work initiated by George Smidt

²⁷⁹ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 4

1770	Dutch nomad farmers known as 'Trekboere' ²⁸⁰ pressing into the interior in search agricultural land.
1795	First British occupation at the Cape
1798	First Mosque is built in Cape
1799	The United Dutch East-India Company seized to exist.

Table 10: 1700's Chronology

By the 1700's white settlers (including of women, children, and slaves) were living and farming in the Cape area. Van der Stel allowed farmers to seasonally move beyond the borders find food for their sheep and cattle. These farmers, known as 'Trekboere' always returned to their homestead.

Nattrass conveyed a viewpoint with regards to these expansion that carries political implication in the contemporary volatile political climate: This expansion into the Khoi-Khoi occupied areas ***“has been seen as the first stage of ‘official’ white takeover of land previously inhabited by people who had moved there thousands of years before.”***²⁸¹

Changuion and Steenkamp²⁸² interpretation to what Nattrass calls “takeover of land” is the three avenues by which land was occupied; by way of occupation where the land was uninhabited, or through war and consequent conquest, or by means of negotiations followed by treaties and agreements.

These farmers expanded eastwards and by 1770's invaded land occupied by the Xhosa people. Severe clashes followed. During this Cape Frontier Wars or Africa's Hundred Year's War (1781-1871) Xhosa and white farmers experienced enormous losses.

²⁸⁰ Trekboer is an Afrikaans translation referring to farmers (boere) that relocate or move (trek) from time to time when needed to find new pastures ext.

²⁸¹ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 39

²⁸² Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 29

French and German migrants arrived in South Africa. The English followed after Britain colonised the Cape in 1795.

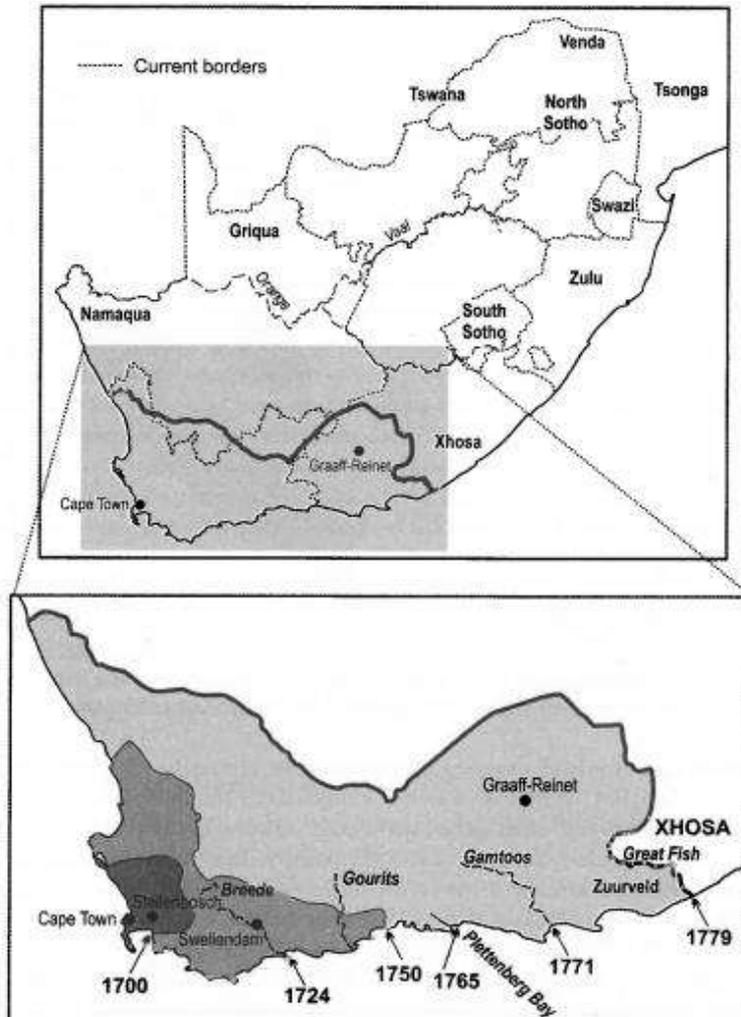


Figure 35: Expansion of the Cape borders from 1670 to 1779 when the Fish River became the eastern border and the white farmers came into contact with the Xhosa tribes.²⁸³

9.4.2 Christianity: The First Mission 1737

The original agenda of the Dutch to establish a produce post also incorporated the intension to spread the Word of God. Jan van Riebeeck's prayer after arrival

²⁸³ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 20

is well documented. This goal did not receive much attention. Slaves hosted in the slave houses did receive some schooling in Christianity and they were baptized, but only to adhere to the stipulations of the VOC and not with the vision to lead them to true conviction and life committed to Christ. The Khoi-Khoi, San, and Xhosa were not included in the efforts. Many were sceptic towards the Khoi-Khoi acceptability towards Christianity. The Dutch did not proceed with great enthusiasm to pursue with the original goal to spread the Gospel of Christ. Doubt existed with regards to the responsibility of granting freedom to slaves who converted to Christianity and were baptised.

The first official missionary work started in 1737 with George Schmidt from the Moravian Brothers, a Lutheran, Protestant Church society from Hernhut, Sakse in Germany. Schmidt established the first missionary at Zoetemelksvlei in the valley of Zondereind River and the second deeper into the interior at Baviaanskloof. The Khoi-Khoi had nothing in common between their own familiar spirituality and Christianity. The first Khoi-Khoi convert is reported in 1738 in a congregation of 38 Khoi-Khoi.

The author noted how conflict in the body of Christ prohibited the fruitful work Schmidt had started. The Cape Christian community as well as the authorities accepted the Reform Church (also Protestant) as the official church in the Cape at the time. Fears arose that the Settlers who had no ministers in the interior would use Schmidt to baptise their children. Schmidt was not an ordained minister and in addition Lutheran, not Reform. Criticism against Schmidt reached a pinnacle moment when the Class of Amsterdam, the highest church authority in Netherland also commented against Schmidt performing baptism. For the time being, Schmidt proceeded with his work. Amounting pressure motivated him to return to the Netherland to discuss the matter with the VOC. He was not successful in convincing the Here XVII. Motivated by fear to allow other church communities to establish a footprint in South Africa, permission was withheld to

allow Schmidt to return to Baviaanskloof. This closed the chapter on the Moravian mission in the Cape.

The author notes the following: The Dutch themselves did not have any intension of missionary work among the Khoi-Khoi. Regardless their reluctance, they successfully demolished the work of Schmidt. Secondly, the spirit of jealousy and fear apposed the Spirit of Christ.

The Moravians returned in 1794 to find only two remains of the work of Scmidt – a pear tree and one Khoi women who still had her Bible, although she could not remember much of his teaching.

The renewed Moravian efforts by Hendrik Marsveld, Daniel Schwinn, and Johann Christian Kühnel gracefully had more support as a result of the vision of Reformed minister H.R. Lieber. Scepticism about the Moravian missionaries almost disappeared and as a result fruit on their labour flourished. The first service days after their arrival was attended by 100 Khoi-Khoi, and by 200 regularly thereafter.

9.4.3 Britain's First Occupation of the Cape: The Arrival of the English 1795

British rule was first established in 1795, but they returned the Cape to the Dutch Bavarian authority with the treaty of Amiens²⁸⁴ for the period 1803-1806.

²⁸⁴ Treaty of Amiens: A peace treaty that temporarily ended ware between France and Britain during the French revolutionary wars, signed on March 25, 1802 at Amiens France. Cavendish, Richard. (March 2002) *The Treaty of Amiens*. Published in History Today. Volume 52, Issue 3. Available at: <https://www.historytoday.com/archive/months-past/treaty-amiens>.

The treaty was signed by Britain, France, Spain and the Batavian Republic (Netherland) achieving peace for 1 months during the Napoleon wars. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/event/Treaty-of-Amiens-1802>

9.5 South African Ethnographic Chronology: South African Chronology (1800's)

9.5.1 1800's Chronology Overview

1801	First British missionaries arrive
1803	Cape is returned to Dutch authority.
1804	De Mist published the Church Order allowing for freedom of religion. ²⁸⁵
1806	Cape becomes a British colony for the second time after Britain paid the Dutch €6 million
1807	Britain ban slavery
1809	The Hottentot Code introduced labour contracts with Khoisan employees but also introduced pass laws ²⁸⁶ .
1820	British settlers arrive. Native kingdoms arise after unrest starts in Natal with the rise of the Zulu leader Shaka. The Zulu kingdom under king Shaka The kingdom of Thokwa under king Manthatisi The kingdom of the Ndelebele under king Mziikazi The kingdom of the Sotho under king Msohoeshoe.
1828	All restrictions applicable on the Khoisan cancelled
1829	The Kat-River reserve for the Khoisan established

²⁸⁵ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

²⁸⁶ Pass laws: Laws aimed to restrict movement. A pass is a identity document which needed to available for inspection all the time. The pass specified the areas the individual was allowed to travel in or through. Movement without the pass/identity document implied trespassing the law.

1833	Britain announces the abolishment of Cape slavery. Slaves will have to remain in employment for four years before set free in 1834.
1834	First European farmers begin to leave the Cape colony. The movement will later be called the 'Groot Trek'.
1836 - 1938	The start of the 'Groot Trek'. Dutch speaking farmers start moving inland from the Cape
1838	Battle of Blood River
1843	Britain takes control of Natal
1848-1856	Approximately 5000 British immigrants settled in Natal. The beginning of sugar plantations.
1852-1854	The proclamation of the two Boere Republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State
1860	First Indian people arrive to work on the Natal sugar cane fields
1857	Diamonds are discovered in Kimberley
1857	Nongqawuse Xhosa suicide episode
1870	Black kingdoms incorporated into British control
1872	Responsible government based on the Westminster model intro
1879	Anglo-Zulu and Anglo Pedi War
1880-1881	First Anglo Boer War
1884	The 'Native Locations Act' accepted. Extended by Act No. 33 of 1892.
1886	Gold reef discovered at Witwatersrand

1877	The entire Zululand annexed by Britain. Proclamation of May 14.
1890	Cecil John Rhodes became prime minister of the Cape Colony
1894	Western form of government introduced to the Ciskei and Transkei. All the Xhosa tribes under Cape control.
1893-1914	NIC (National Indian Congress) and TIC (Transvaal Indian Congress) established with the visit of Mohandas Ghandi
1897	Zululand, including the New Republic, transferred to Natal.
1899-1902	Second Anglo Boer War

Table 11: 1800's Chronology

9.5.2 British Missionaries 1801

The statue of Livingstone in Edinburgh with a Bible in the one hand and the other resting on an axe is a good portrait of the early South African missionaries. It was found that their practical contributions did more to enhance their missions than their moral teachings. Especially the Eastern Cape relied on their knowledge of irrigation and technological abilities.

Tyler (1891)²⁸⁷ reported in 1891 that the church at Nqumba, Natal, had adopted, among several others, the following rules:

- No polygamist shall be allowed to become a member of this church.
- He who sells his daughter or sister treats her like a cow, and cannot be received into this church.

²⁸⁷ SAHO: South African History Online: European missionaries in southern African: The role of the missionaries. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/european-missionaries-southern-africa-role-missionaries>

- No member of this church shall be permitted to attend a wedding if beer is drunk there, although he may have been invited to it.
- No member of this church is allowed to go where there is slaughtering for the departed spirits.

9.5.3 Britain's Second Occupation of the Cape

From their second occupation of the Cape Colony in 1806, the British were to remain in charge until the Cape became part of the Union of South Africa in 1910.

British rule brought about the end of slavery and the promotion of free labour and free trade. Humanitarian philosophies also paved the way for efforts to convey Christianity to the indigenous people in the British colonies of Natal and the Cape.

9.5.4 British Settlers 1820

British Settlers arrived in 1820 after legislation was approved in Britain to promote British settlement in the Cape. The aim was to relieve population pressure and poverty in Britain after the Napoleonic war and to increase the number of white settlers in the eastern districts of the Cape to enforce the frontier battles against the Xhosa.

The British influence

- South Africa automatically connected with the most powerful industrial economy at the time. British mercantile law was developed and instituted to deal with the increase in trade and commerce.
- Political measures to separate the powers of State, making it impossible for any person or section to dominate were introduced.

- Roman Dutch legal systems were introduced.
- The establishment of a separate independent judiciary.
- An updated version of the Rule of Law, which states that no man is above the Law, no matter what his status is.
- The establishment of the *stare decisis* (Latin for “to stand by things decided”). Whereas under the Dutch, past decisions in the courts were merely a guide, under the British Rule of Law the courts had to follow precedents. *Stare decisis* stood in the way of courts being able to make drastic innovations. These British additions are still part of the South African law today.
- The British culture was not assimilated like the French and their distinct culture prevailed.
- Surnames and Place names speaks volumes of the impact on South African history.
- The 1854 establishment of representative government made provision for all males, irrespective of race to vote for the two-chamber parliament. Property ownership or £25 or a wage of £50 per annum was the qualifying measurement. This ensured that poorer whites and most black and coloured people were excluded. Yet, it insured that men of all races participated in the Cape elections. A similar procedure existed in Port Natal.
- This British Westminster system of representative government has been the foundation of the current South African system of government. Parliament institutes legislation but the judiciary remains responsible for enforcing the acts.
- The Cape Colony established its own armed forces which were deployed “in six of the nine wars that were fought in South Africa between 1877 and 1881.”

9.5.5 Mfecane, Also Called Difaqane 1815-1830

Mfecane, originating from “feca” means “to crush”²⁸⁸ or ‘destroyed in total war’²⁸⁹.

²⁸⁸ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 57

²⁸⁹ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

Mfecane (Difaqane in Sotho, translated as 'hammering or forced migration') refers to the period between 1815 to early in 1830, acknowledged as one of the most significant historical occurrences in South African history. A time of widespread domestic conflict initiated by two Nguni chiefs, Zwile from the Ndwandwe kingdom (present day Northern KwaZulu Natal) and Dingiswayo from the Southern Mtethwa kingdom. The conflict escalating in wars between different black tribe with social, political and economic consequences. This conflict originated in Zululand (KwaZulu Natal) but spread across the South African borders to Tanzania.

Although the thesis did not include a complete research on the topic, reference to this conflict was included for the following reasons:

Primary, the traditional tribal identities were deranged and displaced, either as a result of combined war efforts amalgamating different tribes, some were incorporated after they lost battles. The patterns and ethnic structure of the South African population changed irreversibly.²⁹⁰

The armed struggles resulted in the displacement of large amounts of people from their traditional settlements and the depopulation of vast interior areas. Communities were literally dispersed across wide areas. Most of the tribal groups had to re-establish their homes substantial distances from their original homeland.

Black leaders had to consolidate what was left of their tribes and re-establish their authority. Some of these leaders were Shaka, the Zulu king, Manthatisi, the Tlokwa king, Mzilikazi the Ndebele king Moshoeshoe, the Sotho king, Moletsane the Taung leader, Sekwati the Pedi king and Motshiwa the Rolong

Traditionally, the war lord Zulu king Shaka and his successes in the territories of the Northern Nguni tribes, stands central in the motives for the wars. The Hlubi tribe under leadership of Mpangazita and the Ngwane under leadership of

²⁹⁰ *The Early History of South Africa*. Universitas Airlangga. Available at: <http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>

Matiwane instigated the interior wars. On request the Hlubi rendered help and protection to Matiwane during the attacks from Dingiswayo and Zwidi. Hlubi betrayed the Matiwane by stealing their cattle. Matiwane retaliated and conquered Hlubi – their remnants scattered. One group remained in Natal whilst the others fled to the Drakensberg mountains.

Shaka's army in retaliation conquered Matiwane and they too fled over the Orange River. Both Matiwane and Hlubi continued war against smaller tribes in their new territories and against one another. This thesis does not report on the battles of the war, but in order to portray the magnitude of the interior wars, some participating tribes are listed: Tlokwa, Fokeng (later called Koloko), Sotho's under Mosjwesjwe, Ndebele under Mzilikazi, Zulus under Shaka and Dingane, Sotho tribes of Phuting, Hlakoane, Fokeng and Taung, Tswana tribes of Ngwaketse, Hurutshe, Kgatla, Rolong and Tlhaping, Griekwas, Bdebele, Swazi, Pedi, Nguni Thmbu and Bhaca.²⁹¹

The interpretation of the motivating factors is a contentious matter. Traditional interpretations identified Shaka and Dingiswayo as the two key figures responsible. A new interpretation investigated by J. Cobbing and J. Wright²⁹² relayed the origin of the war as an extension of the conflict between the European farmers (Afrikaners) and the imperialists from the Cape against black nations. In their opinion the traditional view of Shaka being the main aggressor is a deliberate action from white settlers to disguise their exploitation of the black man and the process to seize their land. A second contributing factor was supposedly the Portuguese slave traders operating from Delagoa bay. Changuion and Steenkamp²⁹³ also confirms the wars commenced just before the whites arrived in South African interior and secondly that it was wars of extermination among the black tribes. They presented the following map to indicate the re-location of

²⁹¹ Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. PP. 247-253

²⁹² Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk. P. 249

²⁹³ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 28

black tribes as a result of the war.

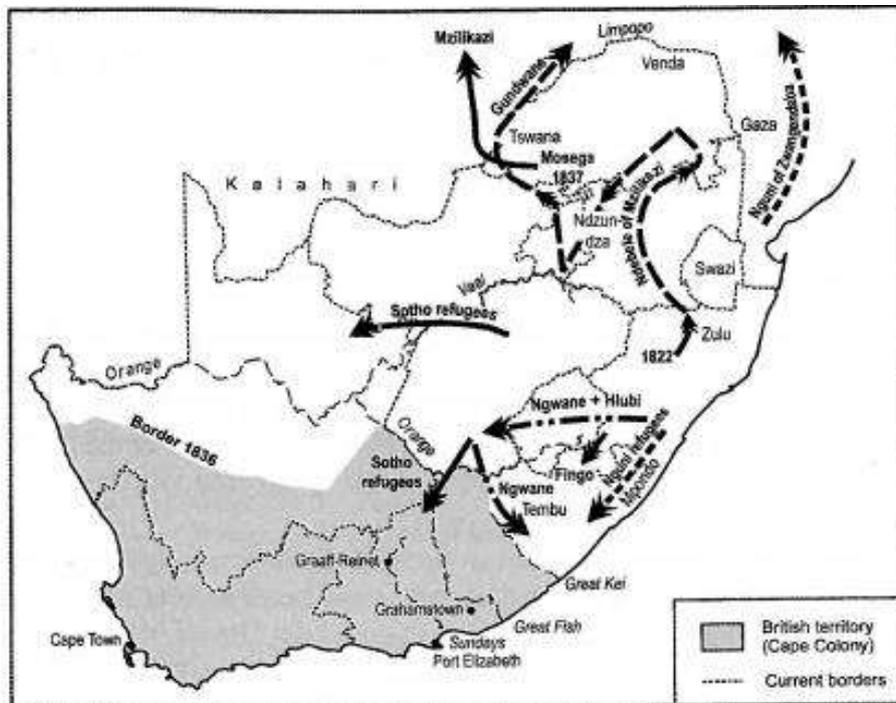


Figure 36: The period of the Difaqane²⁹⁴

In view of the list of participating black tribes and the magnitude of the interior wars, the author was sceptical of the arguments of Cobbing and Wright.²⁹⁵ The author highlighted how the contrasting viewpoints in identifying the aggressor between prominent black leaders versus imperialism and white farmers have political implications for contemporary South Africa: Traditional history presents the South African interior empty and barren with no obvious leaders or domestic tribes to negotiate land occupation and ownership. The land seemed to belong to nobody, and the Trekkers proceeded to occupy some land. Expropriation of land without compensation is currently an emotional political debate. It is the authors view that the extreme displacements of tribes would make it impossible to determine original ownerships, as there was no proper record keeping. Countless

²⁹⁴ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 28

²⁹⁵ Disclaimer for critique: The author did not research the motivations of Cobbing and Wright and as such the critique is subjective.

tribes amalgamated and found new land to occupy. It is thus possible that some land was found void of occupants.

9.5.5.1 Spiritual Implications of Mfecane

J.J. Knoetze²⁹⁶ reported on Wellman's definition of African spirituality as follows:

Africa spirituality can be described or understood from the following characteristics: beliefs, practices, ceremonies and festivals, religious objects and places, values and norms as well as religious officials and leaders.

'Spirituality' then is not defined by an explicit set of religious beliefs or practices. On the contrary, spirituality does not need religion at all to define itself ... Spirituality, therefore, is more about how people identify themselves, how they view the world, interact with others, and make decisions.

- i. Guided by this definition and the article of Knoetze, the author identified the following spiritual implications of the Difaqane.
- ii. African spiritual experience is holistic, communal, and not individualistic. With the upset of communities, communal spirituality was severely compromised in several aspects.
- iii. A community or tribe share spirituality. This includes among others, folktales, beliefs, rituals, and customs. Disrupted and divided communities shared experiences. Equally true, amalgamated tribes could experience contradictory spiritualities.
- iv. African spirituality relies on oral tradition. Various family members (grandparents, parents, extended family members) contributed in conveying their truth to the children. Scattered communities disrupted the oral tradition.
- v. It would be impossible to determine how many of the traditions with spiritual implications were lost or compromised.

²⁹⁶ Knoetze, J.J. Article published in the Journal 'In Luce Verbi (June 7, 2009). *African spiritual phenomena and the probable influence on African families*. Oases Publishing. Available at: <https://indieskriflig.org.za/index.php/skriflig/article/view/2505/5879>

- vi. The family unit is the spiritual nucleus of communities with patriarchal spiritual authority in the household. Families were not only displaced, but countless men died on the battlefields.
- vii. Tribes got separated from spiritual sacred places of worship (including ancestors graves). Many could not return.

In fact, many black people were simply displaced and, not wanting to live far from the graves of their ancestors, many intended to return home when the wars were over. Some tribes became fragmented and disappeared as separate entities – some weaker and smaller tribes joined with stronger groups.²⁹⁷

- viii. Some spirits of outstanding leaders are elevated through myths and rituals to the status of divinities. These myths and rituals needed to be introduced to every generation. Within new communities under new leadership, the reverence of fallen enemies would probably not be allowed.
- ix. Spirits of the last four or five generations are considered as ‘living dead’ and active in the lives of the tribe and individuals. An ancestor only has authority and belonging as long as he is recognised by his offspring. Many tribes, incorporated into bigger groups after they were defeated, lost the opportunity to pay homage to their leaders and war heroes. This could have resulted in fear for retribution from the ancestors.
- x. Rituals, festivals, and rites are means of communicating spiritual significance. In new communities’ rituals and rites could have been compromised.

9.5.6 The Afrikaner’s Interior Migration: ‘Groot Trek’ 1835

Over a period of three years (1835 - 1838), more or less 10 000 white people left the Cape Colony and trekked (relocated/migrated) into South Africa’s interior by ox wagon. These farmers started to build a unique identity and started calling

²⁹⁷ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: Media 24. P. 58

themselves Afrikaners. The Afrikaans-speaking descendants of these people would later simply be called Boere (Farmers).

9.5.6.1 What Was the Great Trek?

The journey known as the ‘The Great Trek’, was a great organised migration of thousands of Afrikaans speaking Boer families²⁹⁸ from the Cape Colony to the North and North East interior of South Africa. The exodus was a peaceful rebellion in reaction to political and spiritual challenges endured between 1820 and 1830’3s. Muller²⁹⁹ portrayed the Bloemfontein Convention in 1814 as the logical end of the ‘Groot Trek’ chapter.

The Great Trek inspired a variety of strong opinions: Professor Muller³⁰⁰ noted some:

Prof. W.M. Macmillan: ***“the great disaster of South African history.”***

Prof. E.A. Walker: ***“the central event in the history of European man in southern Africa” and “that long series of flights from the oncoming nineteenth century in British uniform”***

Prof. L. Fouche: ***“fundamentally a desperate protest against equality between black and white.”***

²⁹⁸ Boer is the Afrikaans translation for ‘farmer’. The ‘Boers’ were pioneer farmers (often on the borders) of the Cape colony. Their occupation was transformed to become synonym with their nationality. It would thus be restrictive to refer to them as the “Cape Farmers”. The farmers (occupation) is the ancestors of the ‘Boer’ or Afrikaner nation. They were white and Afrikaans speaking. In contemporary South Africa the EFF (Economic Freedom Fighters) slogan “kill the Boer” is not restricted to Afrikaans speaking white farmers, although it is included in the meaning. It encompasses a much wider hate and motivation to murder white South Africans, regardless of their occupations as farmers, and regardless their language whether it is English or Afrikaans. The slogan aims inclusively at all white South Africans, descendants from Europe who, in their view, stands guilty of the colonialization of Africa.

²⁹⁹ Muller, C.F.J. M.A. D.Phil (1977) *Vyfhonderd Jaar Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery. P. 149

³⁰⁰ Muller, C.F.J. M.A. D.Phil (1977) *Vyfhonderd Jaar Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery. P. 149-150

Prof. C.W. de Kiewiet: ***“the Great Trek represented a decision to give up the frontal attack and undertake an out-flanking movement ... The Great Trek indissolubly linked the future of all South Africans with the Boer race”***

9.5.6.2 Who Participated?

The author notes that what appears to be an elementary question holds a much more involved answer. The question does not simply mean ‘*how many people*’ participated in the Trek. The answer to this question is concrete as the records indicate that by 1845, one fifth of the Cape’s white people (2 300 families, 15 000 individuals) and 5 000 black labourers had left the Cape Colony. They were Afrikaner families who packed all their belongings on ox-wagons and with all their livelihood left the Cape for the unknown interior.

More significant answers to the question reflect on the history, identity *and* character traits of the ‘trekkers’³⁰¹ as well as their association (or disassociation) with the original European countries of their forebears. The author is of the opinion that Afrikaner nationalism, racial attitudes and -legislation through history and to the present can be traced to this time period.

The arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in 1652 marks the Dutch East Indies Company establishment of a fresh produce post at the Cape of Good Hope. In the midst of the Napoleon Wars, Britain seized the Cape (1795) in a strategy to prevent the possible French invasion. Britain returned the colony to Dutch (Batavian) rule after the Peace of Amiens in 1802. In 1805 Britain seized authority once again.

The ‘Groot Trek’ is dated 1835, 162 years after the first Dutch arrivals and 148 years after the arrival of the French Huguenots. By this time, the Cape settlers detached themselves from their original European homelands. The Cape became

³⁰¹ Trekkers: A reference to the White Afrikaner/Boer people who participated in the Groot Trek/Great journey, -migration,-exodus.

their 'homeland', they developed into a new indigenous nation with a unique culture and especially Afrikaans as language. They had no allegiance to either France or the Netherland nor Britain. The same is also true for the smaller percentage Germans descendants.

Most of these settlers were farmers and as such also called 'Boere' or the direct English translation 'Boers', meaning farmer. Muller³⁰² argued that they had no intention to totally abolish the relationship with the Cape and continued with trade, and in doing so some travelled back to the Cape when needed. He argued that the Cape replaced the European empires as being the 'new motherland' of the Cape Settlers, including those who decided to depart from the Cape.

9.5.6.3 Motivations for the Departure (Trek)

Piet Retief, an affluent and respected leader of the Voortrekkers presented the reasons for the departure in a letter titled "Manifesto of Emigrant Farmers". Published in the Graham's Town Journal (a colonial newspaper) on February 2, 1837.³⁰³

The thesis presents spiritual and cultural motivations for the 'Groot Trek' as reflective on the identity and character of the Trekkers.

Spiritual: The Magna Carta³⁰⁴ declaration elevated the Khoi-Khoi to status equal to that of the white farmers. Anna Steenkamp a niece of the leader Piet Retief is often quoted as she declared how this proclamation elevating a heathen nation is contrary to the Word of God. The Dutch Reformed Church acted as a state

³⁰² Muller, C.F.J. M.A. D.Phil (1977) *Vyfhonderd Jaar Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery. P. 152

³⁰³ Piet Retief, "Manifesto of the Emigrant Farmers," *Grahamstown Journal* (February 2, 1837), in G. W. Eybers, ed., *Select Constitutional Documents Illustrating South African History, 1795–1910*. New York: Negro Universities Press (1918): 143–45. Available at: <https://www.oxfordfirstsource.com/view/10.1093/acref/9780199399680.013.0163/acref-9780199399680-e-163>

³⁰⁴ Magna Carta: A charter of liberty signed 1215 by King John of England guarantee the right of people. Often seen as the beginning of the rule of law in England.

church implement no racial discrimination. The Church married Khoisan and invited them to participate in the baptism and Holy Communion sacraments. According to David Harrison³⁰⁵, the church did not sympathy with the farmers plights and supported the British Cape government.

Political/Governmental: The fact that affluent farmers also decided to depart emphasize the lack of representation as an additional and significant motivation. The colleges of magistrates 'heemrade' (representative counsels) were terminated in 1828, leaving the farmers without trustworthy representation.

Security and Conflict: Olive Schreiner³⁰⁶, an early feminist and liberal governess³⁰⁷ in the district of Cradock and Colesberg eluded to the ongoing conflict the farmers had to endure, the arrogant behaviour of the Cape government, and fraudulent payment for slaves. The pinnacle of confrontation with British rule led to the decision to leave the Cape and to migrate to the interior of South Africa.

Ongoing border conflict between Boers and the Xhosa inhabitants. This included the lack of financial support from the Cape Government, and the limitations on the Boer commandos to protect Boer farms.

Emancipation of Slaves: The 1828 Ordinance 50 provided freedom of movement to the Khoisan resulting in high percentages of lost labour as the Khoisan relocated to missionaries. Farms were had no fences and the lack of herdsman was problematic.

³⁰⁵ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 15

³⁰⁶ Olive Schreiner, (1855-1920) born from a Wesleyan missionary couple at Wittebergen in the Eastern Cape. Described as a feminist and social commentator of her time. Her correspondences are unparalleled resources in investigating colonialism, feminism, socialism, race, capital and imperialism in South Africa. She opposed British imperialism and the Boer War in an effort to expand British dominance. She authored several novels; *The Story of an African Farm*, *The Political situation and Woman and Labour* to name a few. *The Olive Schreiner Letters*. Available at: oliveschreiner.org and South Africa History online: Olive Schreiner. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/olive-schreiner>

³⁰⁷ Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers. P. 109

Lack of ground became acute. Title deeds were delayed, farm boundaries measurements were done inaccurately, and corrupt land surveyors added to the problem.³⁰⁸

9.5.6.4 Different Trek Groups

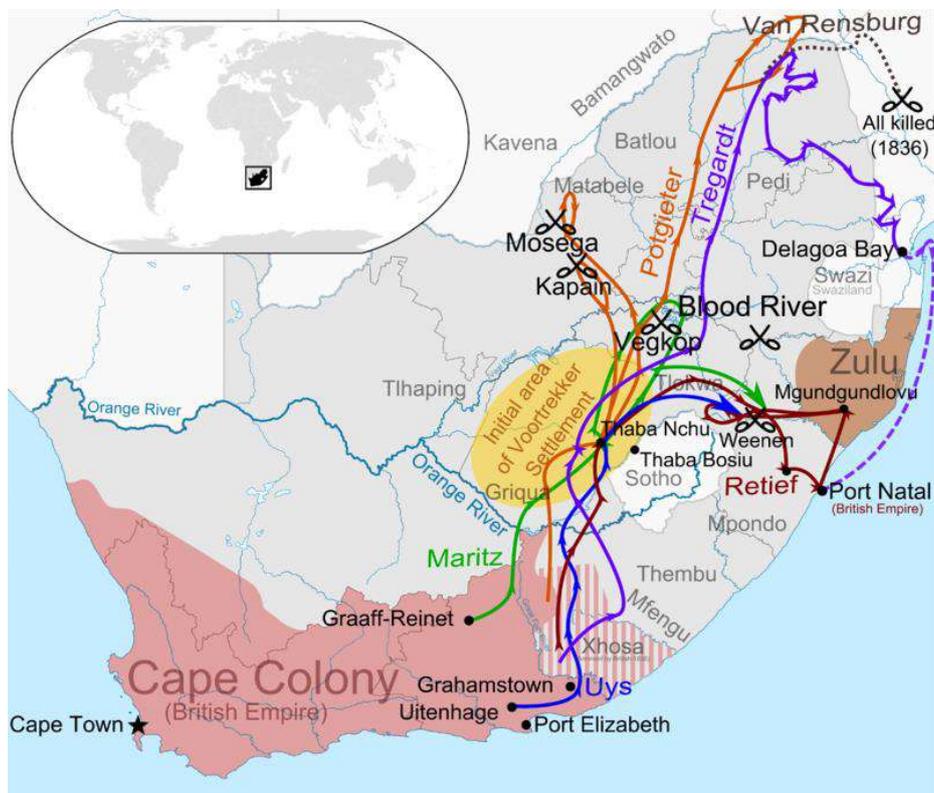


Figure 37: Map indicating the different Voortrekker departures³⁰⁹ (re: see Addendum)

9.5.6.4.1 Trichardt and Van Rensburg

Louis Trichardt (with 53 people) and Hans van Rensburg led the first groups. Trichardt aimed to reach the Soutpansberg and Van Rensburg left for

³⁰⁸ Muller, C.F.J. M.A. D.Phil (1977) *Vyfhonderd Jaar Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery. P. 151

³⁰⁹ Great Trek Map. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Trek#/media/File:Great_Trek_map_full.png By Discott - Own work, CC BY-SA 4.0, <https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?curid=34945945>

Mozambique. The Van Rensburg party was subsequently massacred near the Limpopo River.

Louis Trichardt moved on to the area where the town of Louis Trichardt is situated today. He waited for some time for Potgieter's trek to meet up with them but eventually became impatient and moved on to Lourenço Marques (present day Maputo). By the time Trichardt reached Maputo, on April 13, 1838, many of his cattle had been killed by tsetse flies and nearly half of his group had died of malaria.

9.5.6.4.2 Andries Hendrik Potgieter

Potgieter left the Cape Colony towards the end of 1835 with 200 people. They also aimed to reach Lourenço Marques for trading purposes. They were attacked by an army of 1 000 men sent by Mzilikazi. A few of the Voortrekkers were killed and Potgieter left his trek temporarily to meet up with Louis Trichardt. On his return, he instructed his people to form a laager (circle of ox wagons) as a defence strategy against the black armies. Two months later, all their cattle were stolen during another attack at Vegkop. Moroka (chief of the Barolong) and Gerrit Maritz helped Potgieter's group to get back to Thaba Nchu.

9.5.6.4.3 Gerrit Maritz

Maritz left for Thaba Nchu with 700 people. On their arrival in November 1836, they held a mass meeting with the Voortrekkers who had already arrived. Maritz was elected as the president of a council of 7 members who were to look after the interests of the Voortrekkers. Potgieter was elected the military leader. One of the first decisions of the council was to send an expedition out to recapture their cattle from Mzilikazi.

9.5.6.4.4 Piet Retief

Piet Retief was the commandant of the Winterberg ward in the district of Albany. He was also a farmer, building contractor and speculator and had sufficient money to finance a venture into the interior. Before his departure, he published a manifesto in the Grahamstown Journal in which he explained the reasons for the trek. He left the Cape in March 1837, together with 400 people. When he joined the Voortrekkers in the Free State, they numbered more or less 5 000. Retief was elected governor and military leader at a convention held at Winburg. At the same convention Maritz was elected chairman of the Political Council.

9.5.6.4.5 Piet Uys

Uys and his followers were the last to leave the Cape as part of an organised trek. These 100 odd men, women and children departed from the district of Uitenhage in April 1837. They arrived in the Free State in August of the same year.

9.5.7 South African Indians, a Condensed Reflection on Their History

Indian traders were operational along the African East coast before the conquest of the Cape in 1652. The first Indians in South Africa arrived as slaves in 1860, imported by the DEIC³¹⁰ from Bengal and South India, marking the beginning of the period in the history of Indian diaspora in South Africa. They were only a few and were absorbed into the Cape Malay population over time. The workers sought to escape poverty and famines in India during the period of British rule.³¹¹

³¹⁰ DEIC: Dutch East India Company

³¹¹ Striking Women – Migration. *Indentured labour from South Asia (1834-1917)*. Available at: <https://www.striking-women.org/module/map-major-south-asian-migration-flows/indentured-labour-south-asia-1834-1917>

The British Empire colonised the subcontinent of India and controlled the labour markets. Researchers hold England responsible for ruining India's domestic self-sufficiency by converting agriculture into 'London's bread-basket' and thereby making indentured contracts in colonies a necessary alternative to starvation.³¹²

Although the group included families, most were single men who hope to return to India at the end of their contract. During 1860 and 1911 a total of 152 184 indentured Indian labourers arrived scheduled to work on the Natal sugar plantations were Tamil and Telegu speakers from Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh in South India, as well as from Bihar and Uttar Pradesh in the North.³¹³

Their working contract was valid for 5 years. Thereafter they had the option to re-indenture or seek employment elsewhere in Natal. They also had a free passage to return to India after 10 years. The majority remained in the colony, regardless of very harsh working conditions.

The feeling of togetherness, -- bhaiy-acharaya (brotherhood) and caste consciousness weakened because the village structures were not there to reinforce them.³¹⁴

Indian merchants, mostly Muslim and from a different social class, mainly from Gujarat on the west coast of India followed in the 1870's. This group called 'passengers' arrived on personal expense and were subject to ordinary laws of the colony. The majority settled in Natal and Transvaal. A smaller group settled in the Cape. From 1880, many Indians, arriving on passenger ships at East London and Durban journeyed to the diamond mines near Kimberley and the gold mines in Transvaal.³¹⁵

³¹² O'Malley, Pdraig *The Indian Community in SA*. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v03370/051v03414.htm>

³¹³ Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 574

³¹⁴ O'Malley, Pdraig *The Indian Community in SA*. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v03370/051v03414.htm>

³¹⁵ O'Malley, Pdraig *The Indian Community in SA*. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v03370/051v03414.htm>

White hostility increased around 1894 when the Natal Indian population of 46000 exceeded the white population of 45 000. The 1904 census indicated occupations of market gardeners, farmers, accountants, clerks, cooks, domestic workers, laundry workers, plumbers, fishermen and tailors. Indian competition was reported in the Wragg Commission of 1895 as the cause for **“much of the irritation existing in the minds of the European colonists”**.³¹⁶

Indian franchises and immigration were limited with new legislation in 1893 after the Natal self-governance was proclaimed. Anti-Indian legislation followed in the rest of South Africa. The Transvaal promulgated Law 3 of 1885 determined separate residential and Indian settlements and in 1906 passed laws requiring Indians to register. The Free State prohibited Indian Settlement from 1891. The Cape implemented immigration restrictions from 1903.

The Natal Indian Congress (NIC) founded in 1894 was the beginning of organised political action with Mohandas K. Gandhi, a London-educated lawyer the first secretary. The Act of Union in 1910 confirmed anti-Indian legislation.

The 1911 census reported on 149 791 Indians in South Africa. (Of 130 000 in Natal, 20 000 were of passenger origin)³¹⁷. The Indian Relief Act of 1914 was a result of a meeting between General Jan Smuts (Minister of the Interior) and Gandhi in 1913 after a major labour strike at the coal mines and sugar farms in Natal. Indian were still banned from the Free State and the Cape only allowed South African Indians born before August 1913. Gandhi returned to India in 1914.

Indians transformed to urban-based proletariat in the three decades after World War I. A dynamic professional class emerged in the early 1940's. Dr. Dadoo (Transvaal Indian Congress) and Dr. Naicker (Natal Indian Congress) signed a declaration with Dr. A.B. Xuma (ANC President) in March 1947 to pledge **“the**

³¹⁶ Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 576

³¹⁷ Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 575

fullest co-operation between the African and Indian peoples³¹⁸

Violent racial tension between the Indian and Black populations in 1940 damaged the Indian-Black relationship but the South African Indian Congress was still included in the 1955 Congress of Democrats who adopted the Freedom Charter³¹⁹. The Treason Trail³²⁰ (1956-1961) included several Indian political activists such as Dr. Dadoo, Dr. Naiker, Ayesha Dawood, and M.P. Parker.

Ahmed Kathrada, Billy Nair and several other were incarcerated on Robben Island. Mac Maharaj, Sam Ramsamy, M.P. Naicker and others continued the protest against apartheid in exile. Sport became the vehicle to overcome apartheid. Indian, black and coloured teams engaged in competitive events from 1950. Expansion of education under the Department of Indian Affairs (1965) resulted in rapid Indian economic growth. The 2001 census indicated 13% of Indians older than 20 did not attend secondary school.

Indian representatives participated in negotiating South Africa's new constitution. After the 1994 elections Indians became equal citizens of South Africa. The post-apartheid era and period of affirmative action created a black elite and benefits did not reach all communities.

Capital benefited from downsizing, tax concessions, lower inflation, privatisation, and exchange control liberalisation, while Black Economic

³¹⁸ Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 581

³¹⁹ Freedom Charter: The document adopted by the Congress of the People on June 26, 1955 in Kliptown, Soweto. The meeting brought together several organisations and individuals allied to the liberation movement of the African National Congress. (ANC). It included a vision for social justice and economic order. Roberts Benjamin The Conversation (June 25, 2020) South Africa's Freedom Charted campaign holds lessons for the pursuit of a fairer society. Available at: <https://theconversation.com/south-africas-freedom-charter-campaign-holds-lessons-for-the-pursuit-of-a-fairer-society-141316>

³²⁰ Treason Trail: A series of judicial hearings which took place from December 1956 to March 1961, after a charge of high treason had been brought against a number of left-wing political figures accused of committing or promoting politically-motivated sabotage; any one of these hearings, especially the final trial of the thirty accused. Of 156 people arrested in this connection during December 1956, 91 were charged, but only 30 were tried. During the trial, one of the accused died and one fled the country; the others were acquitted, and charges against the remaining 61 were dropped. Dictionary of South African English. Available at: <https://dsae.co.za/entry/treason-trial/e07300>

Empowerment (BEE) policies allow elite black groups to achieve upward mobility.³²¹

Periodic anti-Indian outbursts magnified Indian fears in the post-apartheid period. Mbongeni Ngema’s 22 song “amaNdiya” meaning “indian” in Zulu, attacked Indian for their alleged unwillingness to accept black people as equals; resisting change; being interested only in making money; and remaining exploitative. Ngema urged “strong men” of the Zulu nation to stand up to Indians. Lyrics such as “we are faced with hardship and poverty because everything was taken by the Indians, but they turn around and exploit us” and “Indians are abusive to black people, being more racist than whites”, stirred criticism from many Indian. The song pandered to the aspiring black middle classes, who felt sidelined by Indian retailers who serviced a predominantly black clientele.³²²

9.6 South African Ethnographic Chronology: 1900’s

9.6.1 1900’s Chronology Overview

1901	APO (African People’s Organisation) founded by coloured people
1904 1905 1906	First Chinese people arrive to work in gold mines Ladgen Report recommends separation according to race, Self-governance for the Transvaal colony Ghandi leads Indian community protest against passbook
1910	Pass laws and segregation policies to control movement of black people introduced
1912	Union of South African established within the British Commonwealth. The Union incorporates the two Boer Republics, British colonies Black kingdoms and chiefdoms. Louis Botha the elected Prime Minister and Jan Smuts the elected deputy Prime Minister

³²¹ Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 585

³²² Editor Pretorius, Fransjohan (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House. P. 586

1913	Land Act introduced
1913	Charlotte Maxeke leads the first woman's protest against the pass law
1914	World War I Protest South Africa's participation in World War I J.B.M. Hertzog founds the Afrikaner NP (National Party)
1918	Afrikaner Broederbond ³²³ established
1918	Jan Smuts replaces Louis Botha as Prime Minister of the Union
1921	South African Communist Party (SACP) established
1923	Urban Areas Act ³²⁴ accepted
1924	PACT government under J.B.M. Hertzog
1926	Organised support for poor white people with Hertzog's Civilised Labour Policies
1928	GWU (Garment Workers Union) as the first multiracial union founded.
1929-1930	Depression. Poor white challenge increases
1930	Voting power extended to white women
1634	UP (United Party) founded Jan Smuts and J.B.M. Hertzog merge Purified National Party founded under leadership of D.F. Malan

³²³ Afrikaner-Broederbond, English Afrikaner Brotherhood, South African secret society composed of Afrikaans-speaking Protestant, white men over the age of 25. Although its political power was extensive and evident throughout South African society for many decades, its rituals and membership—by invitation only—remained secret. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/Afrikaner-Broederbond>

³²⁴ The Native (Urban Areas) Act of 1923

1936	Second land Act ³²⁵
1939	World War II
1939-1948	Jan Smuts was Prime Minister and leader of the United Party
1943	ANC Woman's branch founded
1944	ANC Youth league established. Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu participants
1948	The United Party is defeated by National Party. Apartheid policies follows
1950	Hendrik Verwoerd appointed as minister of Native Affairs Group Areas Act follows Population Registration Act follows Immorality Act, Mixed Marriages Act follows
1951	Homeland for black people created with the Bantu Self Government Act
1952	ANC collaborate with the SAIC (South African Indian Congress) and SACPO (South African Coloured People's Organisation) in the Defiance Campaign against unjust laws
1953	Freedom Charter accepted by ANC, SAIC and SACPO Bantu Education establish separate inferior education for black learners
1955	Establishment of the Black Sash
1956	Protest march against the carrying of passes by women to the Union Buildings (Administrative Head Quarters of Government in Pretoria)
1956-1961	Treason Trail

³²⁵ Native Trust and Land Act, 1936

1958	Hendrik Verwoerd elected Prime Minister
1960	“Wind of Change” speech by Harold Macmillian. ANC Breakaway group under leadership of Robert Sobukwe establish the PAC Sharpeville pass burning organised by the PAC. Organisers arrested. PAC and ANC banned
1961	South African’s independence from the British Commonwealth with the birth of the Republic of South Africa.
1963-1964	Rivonia Trial
1966	B.J. Vorster elected as Prime Minister after the assassination of Hendrik Verwoerd
1970	Black political rights cancelled with the cancelation of Black representation in parliament. Political participation limited to homelands.
1971	Black Consciousness Movement initiated by Steve Biko
1975	Inkatha Movement initiated by Chief Mangosuthu Buthelezi
1976	Soweto uprising
1976-1977	Independence to Transkei and Bophuthatswana
1982	NUN (National Union of Mine Workers) established first union for black people. Activist Ruth First assassinated by parcel bomb
1983	UDF (United Democratic Front) established by Rev. Allan Boesak
1984	Creation of a Tricameral Parliament for Whites Coloured and Indian people. Blacks excluded.
1986	COSATU (Congress of South African Trade Unions) established.

	COSATU calls for international sanctions against South Africa Pass laws revoked Mixed marriages act revoked
1986-1987	Sequential states of emergency
1987	Dakar negotiations with the banned ANC
1989	F.W. de Klerk elected head of state (prime minister/president) Secret negotiations between ANC and white leaders
1990	F.W. de Klerk unban ANC, PAC and SACP ANC leaders released from prison ANC and other black political leaders return from exile
1991	Group Areas Act revoked
1993	Former White schools open to all races Leader of the SACP assassinated
1994	First democratic elections ANC becomes majority and ruling party Government of National Unity established Nelson Mandela becomes president FW de Klerk deputy president Former homelands again incorporated into South Africa
1995	TRC (Truth and Reconciliation Commission) established to investigate apartheid crimes and human rights violations
1996	New South African constitution accepted
1999	Thabo Mbeki succeeds Nelson Mandela as president

Table 12: 1900's Chronology

9.6.2 Chinese Arrive 1904

The very first Chinese (no more than 100, convicts and slaves) arrived in South Africa in the mid to late 17th century. They were either repatriated or gradually became integrated in the growing mixed-race population of the Cape.

The Anglo Boer war displaced large numbers of the indigenous population. The development of the gold mine industry quickly required large numbers of labourers. Milner attempted to source labourers from Portuguese East Africa (Angola) to strengthen ties with Portugal. His efforts failed and resulted in a labour shortage of 129 364 by 1903.

The Chamber of Mines, the Chamber of Commerce and the nominated Legislative Council of South Africa recommended labourer imports from China.

Between 1904 and 1910, an estimated 64 000 Chinese labourers arrived in South Africa. Although attracted by the discovery of gold and diamonds, discriminative legislation prohibited individual mining licences. Most of them returned to China. A few Chinese women arrived, mostly to be brides for the immigrants. The 1936 census reported over 1,000 Chinese women in South Africa and 1,000 children born in South Africa of Chinese parents. Over the next decade, these numbers doubled.

Large-scale immigration from China was prohibited by discriminative legislation: the Transvaal Immigration Restriction Act of 1902 and the Cape Chinese Exclusion Act of 1904.³²⁶ Other laws denied citizenship, prohibited land ownership, and restricted trade for the Chinese. Incidentally, these laws were not unlike legislation in place in the United States and other Western nations at that time. The ancestors of the current Chinese community stem from the immigrants who arrived as early as 1870.

³²⁶ Park, Yoon (2012) Migration Policy Institute: *Living In Between: The Chinese in South Africa*. Available at: <https://www.migrationpolicy.org/article/living-between-chinese-south-africa>

The Chinese population were confronted by a duality: The National Party won the election in 1948 and implemented apartheid legislation detrimental for the Chinese population, and in China in 1949 the Chinese Nationalists were defeated by the Communists. Many Chinese were forced to flee Mainland China. Whilst a small number of Chinese were permitted to enter South Africa between 1949 and 1953, the Immigrants Regulation Amendment Act of 1953 increasingly prohibited emigration until 1970.

Increasing trade relations between South Africa and the Republic of China (Taiwan) with generous incentives for Taiwanese investors opened the door for relocating families.

Many of them settled in rural parts of South Africa, adjacent to former homelands and provided countless job opportunities in the textile and garment factories. During the 1990's and into 2000 many Chinese businesses left Africa.

Their departure was hastened by South Africa's official recognition of the People's Republic of China, ongoing difficulties with South Africa's labor regulations, stiff competition from the entry of cheap imported goods from China, and increasing crime. Today, most reports indicate that there are but 6,000 Taiwanese in the country. Virtually all who remain are South African citizens and can comfortably be referred to as Taiwanese South Africans.³²⁷

9.6.3 The Union of South Africa (1910-1948)

By 1910, the two British Colonies (Cape and Natal), the Afrikaner Republics (Transvaal and Free State) and the several Black Chiefdoms were united under British rule. Nattrass³²⁸ is of the opinion that the Union marked the birth of the concept of a united South Africa. The two small territories of Basutoland (now Lesotho) and Swaziland were not included under British rule. The rest of South Africa were divided into four provinces, ruled by a white minority.

³²⁷ Park, Yoon (2012) Migration Policy Institute: *Living In Between: The Chinese in South Africa*. Available at: <https://www.migrationpolicy.org/article/living-between-chinese-south-africa>

³²⁸ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 5

9.6.4 The Union of South Africa (1948-1994)

A significant number of Afrikaners did not support the Hertzog-Smuts merger of 1934. Instead, they established the Reunited National Party (HNP). D.F. Malan, Cape clergyman and newspaper editor was the elect leader. The party steadily gained support with great emphasis on the 'poor white' problem. Job reservation, mechanization, demobilization, and post war immigration implied increased labour competition.³²⁹

Malan's nationalist party capitalised on the insecurities. Their focus on the colour problem, integration, and promises to retain job reservation for whites gained support. The HNP won the watershed 1948 election with a slender majority of five seats. D.F. Malan took office as Prime Minister.

After 1948, policies founded on race became the norm. The government was committed to a basic policy of social, economic and political segregation, coinciding with Hertzog's opinion. The new government's aim was to limit the number of blacks in the cities by enforcing influx control and to see to it that agriculture would have available sufficient labour.

A policy of segregation was developed for social and political separateness for the white nation, the coloured people, the Indians and for the various Bantu population groups. With this policy, they believed, the white nation, as bearer of Christian civilization in South Africa, would be maintained, protected and strengthened to enable it to fulfil its self-imposed task as a responsible guardian so that it could lead to other groups peacefully to total independence. Legislations based on colour and race were endorsed:³³⁰

- The prohibition of mixed marriages Act, 1949 (Act No. 55 of 1949)

³²⁹ Joyce, Peter (1990) *The Rise and Fall of Apartheid. The Chronical of a divided society as told through South African Newspapers*. Cape Town: Struik. P. 13

³³⁰ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. PP. 191-208

- The Groups Areas Act 1950 (Act No. 1 of 1950)
- The Population Registration Act 1950 (Act No. 30 of 1950)
- The Suppression of Communism Act, 1950 (Act No. 44 of 1950) Later amended to The Internal Security Act
- The Prevention of Illegal Squatting Act. 1951 (Act No. 52 of 1951)
- The Native Authorities Act, 1951 (Act No. 68 of 1951)
- The Native (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act No. 67 of 1952)
- Reservation of Separate Amenities Act, 1953 (Act No. 49 of 1953)
- The Bantu Education Act, 1953 (Act No. 47 of 1953)
- Natives Resettlement Act, 1954 (Act No. 19 of 1954)
- The promotion of Black Self-Government Act, 1959 (Act No. 46 of 1959)

On the opposing side of political activities, 1948-1961 was also the period in which opposition and protest against Apartheid gained momentum. Moderate black leaders lost hope for a negotiated solution. Listed the following elements of protest between 1948 and 1961:

- The founding of the ANC's Youth League in 1949;
- Countrywide strikes in 1951;
- The Defiance Campaign of 1952-1953;
- The ratification of the Freedom Charter in 1955 at Kliptown;
- The founding of the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC) in 1959;
- Various protest actions against pass laws. In 1960, the strike at Sharpeville led to the death of 69 protestors.
- A state of emergency announced on March 30, 1960 and on April 8, 1960, and the government declaring the ANC and PAC illegal organisations.
- The founding of the military wing of the ANC, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), on December 16, 1961. With this, the revolution in South Africa began. It would last until 1990 when Nelson Mandela suspended the armed struggle.

9.6.5 The Republic of South Africa (1961-1994)

By 1960, the majority of white voters supported the government's race-motivated policies. After a referendum on October 6, 1960, South Africa assumed a republican form of government on May 31, 1961.

The Union became a republic outside the Commonwealth in terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1961 (Act No. 32 of 1961).³³¹

Adv. C.R. Swart was the first elect State President. Changuion is of the opinion that the founding of the Republic closed a chapter of Afrikaner politics.

9.6.6 The Republic of South Africa After the First Democratic Election. 1994 – current

1994 marks the year of the first democratic election. **“The concept of a new South Africa” was born.**³³² Basutoland became the Kingdom of Lesotho and Swaziland became the Kingdom of Swaziland. These two monarchies still function independently from the rest of South Africa.

9.7 South African Ethnographic Chronology: 2000's

9.7.1 2000's Chronology Overview

2000	DA (Democratic Party) becomes the governing party in the Western Cape and formal opposition in parliament
------	---

³³¹ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 211

³³² Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 5

2003	President Thabo Mbeki elected for a second term in office
2005	Thabo Mbeki discharges deputy president Jacob Zuma on corruption charges
2008	Thabo Mbeki forced to resign as president
2009	Jacob Zuma elected to succeed Thabo Mbeki
2012	ANC's centenary celebration Marikana mine workers strike
2013	Julius Malema, former ANC youth leader establish the EFF (Economic Freedom Fighters)
2014	National Elections. Jacob Zuma elected to office for a second term
2015	Mmusi Maimane succeeds Helen Zille as leader of DA.

Table 13: 2000's Chronology

A reflection on the current population is introduced by a portrait of the Biblical interpretation of nations and tribes, and an evaluation of several definition relevant to the complexity of the South African population

9.7.2 Ethnography: Race Classification 2020

The official South African classification of race differentiates between black, white, coloured and Asian.³³³ According to the latest census (2016) the composition is as follows:

- Black African 80.66% (44.8 million)
- White 8.11% (4.5 million)

³³³ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 7

- Coloured 8.74% (4.8 million)
- Asian 2.4% (1.3 million)

The distinction of the four groups does by no means imply homogenous individual groups.

Black: A large number of immigrants from Africa are constantly flocking to South Africa, especially from the neighbouring Zimbabwe and Mozambique. They are not included in the classification of “black” in the definition of the South African census and legislation but have the status of “permanent residents” or “work permit holders”. Zimbabwe is also known for the strong witchcraft powers; it is therefore important not to ignore the spiritual influence their citizens brings to South Africa.

White accommodates white Afrikaans and English-speaking people, and all descendants from European nations such as Greek, Portuguese, Dutch, Italian and German communities etc.

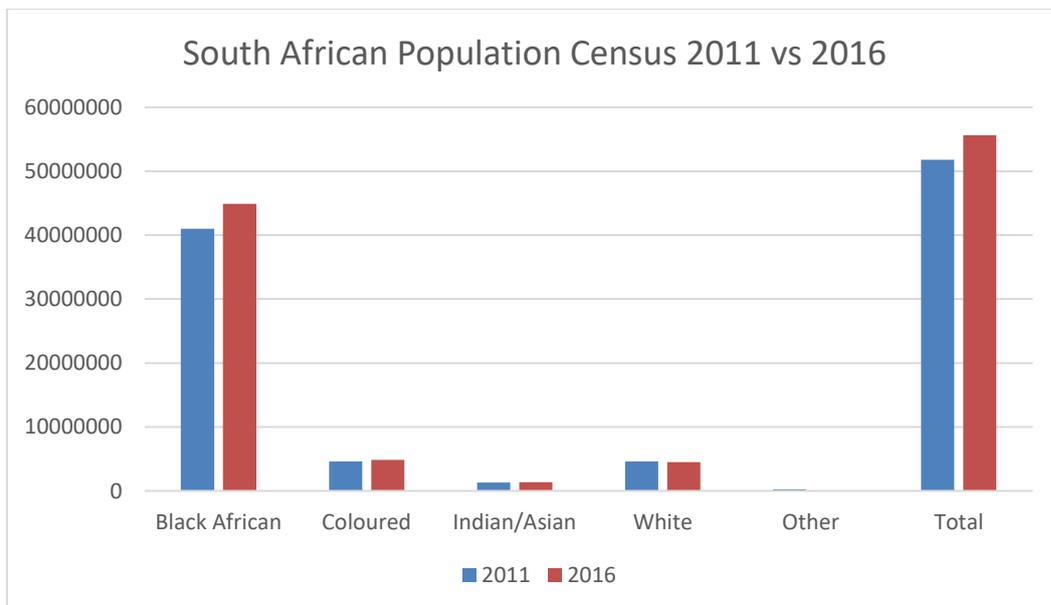


Figure 38: South African population

The classification of Coloured is explained as follows:

“In the South African context, the term “coloured” refers to mixed-race people: the descendants of the early inhabitants of the Cape (the Khoi-Khoi and San), slaves imported from Madagascar, Mozambique and Asia in the late 1700’s, and interracial relationships between white, black and coloured people over a long period of time.”³³⁴

The Khoisan descendants view their inclusion in the Coloured category as offensive for it provides proof of the government’s violation of their right to be recognised as an individual and aboriginal nation.

Their nationhood as well as their language are not recognised by the South African government.



Figure 39: Minister in the presidency Jeff Radebe is seen meeting with the group of Khoi-San who have been living on the lawns of the Union Buildings, December 13, 2017 to have their demands of cultural recognition addressed. Picture: Jacques Nelles³³⁵

Amanda Watson³³⁶ (Citizen newspaper) reported on the contribution of IFNASA³³⁷ CEO, Anthony Phillip Williams, during the 2018 Khoi and San Land

³³⁴ Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 6

³³⁵ The Citizen, Watson, Amanda ‘Coloured’ classification was ‘bloodless genocide’ – Khoi, San. May 8, 2018. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/1917678/coloured-classification-was-bloodless-genocide-khoi-san/>

³³⁶ The Citizen, Watson, Amanda ‘Coloured’ classification was ‘bloodless genocide’ – Khoi, San. May 8, 2018. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/1917678/coloured-classification-was-bloodless-genocide-khoi-san/>

³³⁷ Indigenous First Nation Advocacy South Africa

Summit:

The 1950s Population Registration Act was a bloodless genocide that wiped out the Khoi and San peoples by recording their race as “coloured” – and it’s a crime still perpetuated today, the Indigenous First Nation Advocacy South Africa (IFNASA) group said yesterday in Johannesburg. Williams said that given the descendants’ direct genetic link to Khoi and San peoples, their racial classification as “coloured” was completely rejected.³³⁸

The mentioned summit accepted the following Classification –

‘Native’ refers to a person who in fact is, or is generally accepted as, a member of any aboriginal race or tribe of Africa.

‘Coloured’ refers to a person who is not white or a native – Population Registration Act of 1950.³³⁹

Asian includes 1.2 million Indian people and 35000 Chinese South Africans.

With regards to Chinese, Econoserc.co.za³⁴⁰ explains the ruling as follows:

In terms of the codes and the B-BBEE Amendment Act “Black” means Africans, Coloureds, and Indians who are citizens of the Republic of South Africa by birth or descent or who became citizens of the Republic of South Africa by naturalisation- Before 27 April 1994 or-

***On or after 27 April 1994 and who would have been entitled to acquire citizenship by naturalisation prior to that date but were precluded from doing so by Apartheid policies:
Note clause (a) and (b)***

In 2008 the Pretoria High Court decided that Chinese are included in the definition of coloured. However, based on clause (a) and (b) a Chinese person is only defined as Black if he/she was born in South Africa or became a SA citizen by naturalisation prior to 27 April 1994.

³³⁸ The Citizen, Watson, Amanda ‘Coloured’ classification was ‘bloodless genocide’ – Khoi, San. May 8, 2018. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/1917678/coloured-classification-was-bloodless-genocide-khoi-san/>

³³⁹ The Citizen, Watson, Amanda ‘Coloured’ classification was ‘bloodless genocide’ – Khoi, San. May 8, 2018. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/1917678/coloured-classification-was-bloodless-genocide-khoi-san/>

³⁴⁰ Are all Chinese people defined as black? Available at: <http://www.eonoserv.co.za/are-all-chinese-people-defined-as-black/>

It stands to reason that a Chinese national who arrived in SA in, for example, 2001 is not Black as per the definition.

9.7.3 Concepts Contributing to the Complexity of the South African Ethnography: Eleven Official Languages

The author included comments on language to indicate the variety as well as the complexity of the South African population. As such, it implies a complexed spiritual society. The composition of the population of South Africa are more complex in comparison with the official languages. The languages do not provide a clear and concise demarcation of the various nations included in the South African population.

The South African Constitution recognises eleven official languages. South Africa has 34 historically languages, thirty are living languages and four Khoisan languages are extinct.³⁴¹

9.7.3.1 Gayle

The abovementioned 30 'living languages' does include sign language but not Kaaps and Gayle. Kathryn Luyt³⁴² defined Gayle as follows:

A language which emerged primarily from the white and coloured gay male population of Cape Town during the Apartheid years. Gayle's original function, to give white and coloured gay men a language of secrecy to be able to talk to one another in public without facing prosecution as well as to have an in-group language of belonging.

³⁴¹ South Africa Gateway. Arts and Culture. *The 11 languages of South Africa*. Available at: <https://southafrica-info.com/arts-culture/11-languages-south-africa/>

³⁴² Luyt, Kathryn (2014) Minor Dissertation submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Arts. University of Cape Town. *Gay Language in Cape Town: A study of Gayle – attitudes, history and usage*. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/item/6868/thesis_hum_2014_luyt_k.pdf

The study of gay language (or Queer Linguistics, as it has more recently been termed) is a relatively new and topical area within Sociolinguistics, which focuses on the language of member of the LGBTI (Lesbian Gay Bisexual Transgender Intersex) community.

9.7.3.2 The Complexity of the Variety of Afrikaans Speakers

9.7.3.2.1 Kaaps

Including English and the indigenous language Afrikaans³⁴³, the Constitution recognises eleven official languages. Natrass divided the population according to the language groups, but she does not accommodate the Coloured community whose mother tongue is a combination of Kaaps, Afrikaans and English. In this calculation the Afrikaans is only allocated to the Afrikaans speaking *white* community, also referred to as the ‘Afrikaners’.

According to the 2011 South African census results, approximately 49.7% of Western Cape dwellers speak Afrikaans, and the majority of these speakers are from coloured communities. While this statistic refers to the Afrikaans in its standard form, in reality, Kaaps is what is widely spoken in these communities.³⁴⁴

The majority of the approximately 4.2 million Coloured people live in the Western Cape and they speak all three mentioned languages, but specifically the language ‘Kaaps’. ***Kaaps is an abbreviation of Kaapse Afrikaans, and literally refers to the “language of the Cape” or Cape Afrikaans.***³⁴⁵ The specific term derives from the late 1970’s literature and political anti-apartheid protest. It is important to acknowledge the motion and even strong opinion of the Coloured

³⁴³ Afrikaans could be considered an indigenous language since it originated from all the languages present in the Cape after Van Riebeeck’s arrival. Afrikaans mainly developed from Dutch spoken by the early Dutch Settlers, but accommodated words and phrases from the Khoi-Khoi, Malay, isiXhosa, and other Black languages, as well as Portuguese, German, French and English. Available at: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Afrikaans>

³⁴⁴ Kaaps: Hamman, Meagan. Capetownmagazine.com Available at: <https://www.capetownmagazine.com/kaaps>

³⁴⁵ ESAT Encyclopaedia of South African Theatre, Film, Media and Performance. Kaaps. Available at: <https://esat.sun.ac.za/index.php/Kaaps>

people that their language is not Afrikaans or even a dialect of Afrikaans but that it deserves recognition as an independent and unique language called “Kaaps”. Dr. Adam Small promoted this argument in the prologue of this poetry volume of verse “Kitaar my Kruis” in 1962 already. (Directly translated: Guitar, my Cross). Recognition of Kaaps as a unique and independent language are growing and newspapers, radio, published books, the Literary community already acknowledge Kaaps as a language, and not a dialect of Afrikaans.

The Cape Flats dictionary³⁴⁶ describe the origin of ‘Kaaps’ as follows:

Cape Afrikaans, or Kaaps, developed in a multilingual context in the 17th century Dutch colony on the Cape. Members of the enslaved people wanted to invent a language of their own that is different yet similar to Dutch, the language of the colonists. Initially, Cape Afrikaans - or Cape Dutch, as it was then known - was used to create a means of private communication between the indigenous Khoisan, Malays, West African and Madagascan people and to oppose the dominant language of the time. However, as the vernacular spread, it became the home language of more than half of the population. Today, Kaaps is spoken by more than 70% of people in Coloured communities throughout the Western Cape, most notably on the Cape Flats, Bo-Kaap, Boland and West Coast. Interestingly, these people consider themselves speaking Afrikaans rather than a regional variant of the language.

9.7.3.2.2 Arabic-Afrikaans

In an interview with Olivia M Coetzee³⁴⁷ reflecting on her publication “Innie Shadows”, Barbara Boswell commented that Afrikaans first belonged to the ‘coloured people’ and was stolen by the ‘whites’. At the time the author was one disappointed that Afrikaans was perceived as a phenomenon that divides South Africans and not uniting them, and secondly because the origin of Afrikaans is well documented as the language of the Cape Settlers and one of the reasons

³⁴⁶ Cape Flats Dictionary: *What is Kaaps?* Available at: <http://capeafrikaans.blogspot.com/p/what-is-kaaps.html>

³⁴⁷ Litnet.co.za Video: Coetzee, Olivia M. *Kaapstad bekendstelling van Innie Shadows*. Available at: <https://www.litnet.co.za/video-kaapstad-bekendstelling-van-innie-shadows-deur-olivia-m-coetzee/>

for the Groot Trek. It was first perceived as an unjustified political statement. But research uncovered another development of the Afrikaans language not recognised in traditional history.

Whilst the white population in the Cape claim to be the originators of Afrikaans, the coloured Muslim community was the first to elevate Afrikaans to a written language, using Arabic alphabet. The settlers spoke Afrikaans but the written language remained Dutch. Muslim leaders translated sections of the Koran in Afrikaans to be used for theological studies. Prof. van Selms initiated the term “Arabies-Afrikaans” (Arabic Afrikaans).

The first evidence of Afrikaans written with the Arabic alphabet is an article in the South African Commercial Advertiser dated July 26, 1856.



Figure 40: Arabic-Afrikaans Alphabet: Arabic letters for phonetically representing Afrikaans³⁴⁸

³⁴⁸ Facebook page: Arabies-Afrikaans

9.7.3.2 The Complexity of the Variety of English

English remains the main language for business, commerce, and academy. English is spoken by 8.1% of individuals at home, making it the sixth most common home language in South Africa. It is, however, the second most commonly spoken language outside the household (16.6%) after isiZulu (25.1%), and preceding. IsiXhosa (12.8%).³⁴⁹The Indian/Asian population group is the most monolingual, with 92.1% speaking English at home. More than 77.4% of coloured individuals speak Afrikaans at home, while 20.1% use English. More than 61.2% of white South Africans speak Afrikaans and 36.3% speak English.³⁵⁰

9.7.3.3 Black Languages

Race classification of black or African accommodates nine different black language communities, equal in language status, representative of unique and individual tribes or nations:

- i. Ndebele
- ii. Northern Sotho (Pedi)
- iii. Sotho
- iv. Swazi
- v. Tswana (Western Sotho)
- vi. Tsonga
- vii. Venda
- viii. Xhosa
- ix. Zulu – of the nine language groups, Zulu is spoken the most.

³⁴⁹ BusinessTech. (June 1, 2019) *These are the most-spoken languages in South Africa 2019*. Available at: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/business/319760/these-are-the-most-spoken-languages-in-south-africa-in-2019/>

³⁵⁰ Nkanjeni, U, (June 5, 2019) for Times Live: *Only 8% of South Africans speak English at home*. Available at: <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2019-06-05-only-8-of-south-africans-speak-english-at-home-report/>

The nine language communities belong to four primary ethnic classifications:

- i. Nguni
- ii. Sotho-Tswana
- iii. Shangaan-Tsonga
- iv. Venda

This language classification is presented in the following diagram. The languages recognised constitutionally as an official language are indicated with a **.

NGUNI							
Northern Nguni			Southern Nguni				
**Swazi	**Zulu	**Ndebele	**Xhosa	Themba	Bomvana	Mpondo	Mphondomise

SOTHO			
South Sotho		West Sotho	North Sotho
Basotho	**Sotho	**Tswana	**Pedi

**SHANGAAN-TSONGA

**VENDA

Table 14: Four primary ethnic language classifications

Language representation in the South African population:

- Zulu 23% (estimated at 12 million people)
- Xhosa 16% (estimated at 8 million people)
- Afrikaans 13.5% (estimated at 7 million people)
- English 9.6% (estimated at 5 million people)

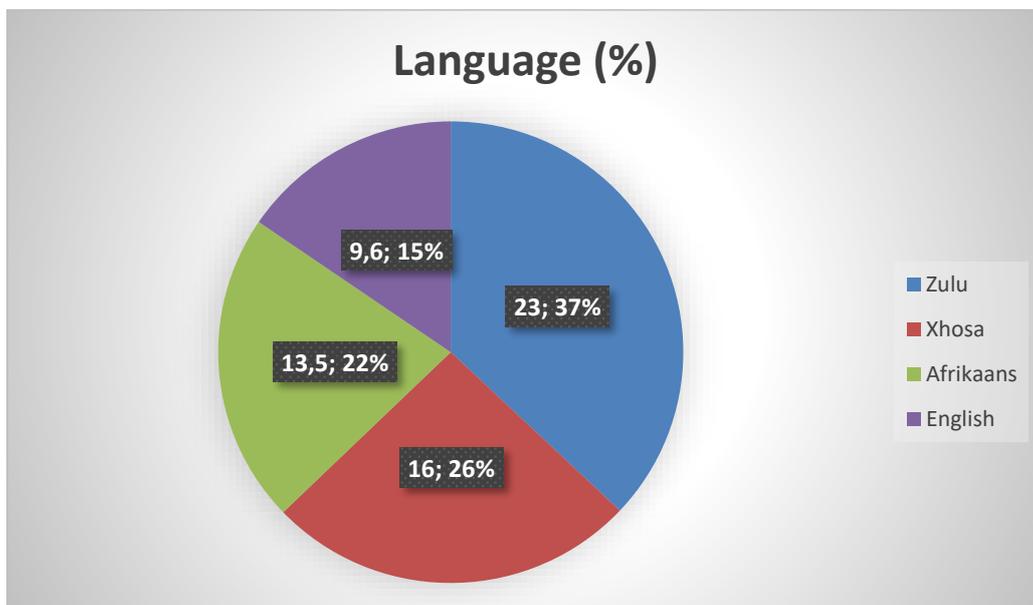


Figure 41: The Nguni and Sotho language groups represent the largest percentage of the South African population. Nguni collectively accommodates Bantu-speaking people originating from the Negroid racial group of Africa. Nguni is divided between two major groups of Northern Nguni and Southern Nguni.

Alongside the Coloured community and the debate pertaining to the official status of “Kaaps” as a language, the Khoisan also contends the acknowledgment of their language. Ironically, the Khoisan language is used in South Africa Coat of Arms but does not have the status of an officially recognised national language.

The Asian population mainly speaks English.

The eleven official languages do not only imply eleven cultural groups or nations combined into the South African population. The South African society is an extreme complex multi-faceted combination of a variety of people and everyone

has a strong sense of nationalism, not necessarily towards South Africa first, but to their heritage, their language, their culture or the tribe and nation they belong to. In many of these groups, spirituality plays a vital role and influence how individual as well as individual groups conduct themselves in all aspects of society.

9.7.4 Concepts Contributing to the Complexity of the South African Ethnography: Scientific Interpretations Defining the South African Population

South Africa's multi-ethnic society embodies a wide variety of cultures, languages, religions.

The cultures, languages and heritages of South Africa are multiple, diverse, and dynamic. Intersectional issues of gender, ethnicity, and race further complicate the matter of identity and make it highly inadvisable to categorise the different people contained within South Africa's borders. This is especially true in the wake of segregationist Apartheid policies which attempted to divide and conquer the majority of the country's population by emphasising the ontological immiscibility of different races.

South Africa is heir to a legacy of autochthonous livelihoods (see, most famously, the Khoi and the San) as well as Bantu immigration; slavery; colonisation; settler economies; and liberation movements. These histories have all had a drastic effect on the make-up of South Africa's population. Yet somehow through the interchange of cultures and sharing of cultural influences in the age of globalisation, there defiantly remains a tapestry of phenomena which can identifiably and unambiguously to termed 'South Africa.'³⁵¹

This pluralistic society is reflected in, but not restricted to, the recognition of eleven official languages. Cultures and religions are not limited to the eleven languages. According to the 2016 Statistics South Africa estimation, South Africa has a total population of 55.9 million people.³⁵² In evaluating the history of-, and post-apartheid South African population, it is imperative to allow various sciences

³⁵¹ Defining Culture, Heritage and Identity. Available at: <http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/defining-culture-heritage-and-identity>

³⁵² Nattrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24. P. 6

to contribute to the interpretation.

Anthropology (“Anthropos meaning “human” and logia meaning “study”),³⁵³ the study of humankind, specifically social anthropology interprets the content of particular cultures and social transformation with focus areas of culture, ideology, race, class, gender and gender equality, politics, colonialism, resistance movements, human ecology, and family systems.

Ethnology (“ethnos” meaning people and logia meaning “study of”)³⁵⁴ is the study of a particular cultural group, whilst ethnography is the comparative study of ethnographic data, society, and culture.³⁵⁵ The Oxford dictionary defines Ethnography as the **“scientific description of peoples and cultures with their customs, habits, and mutual differences.”**³⁵⁶

In terms of political organization, one such classification would be in terms of band, tribe, chiefdom, and state.³⁵⁷

Sociology contributes in the evaluation of social relationships and institutions, including religion, state, and family. The division of race and social classes in a shared common culture. Racial identity, prejudice, and discrimination as well as the phenomena of war and peace.³⁵⁸

It also includes the evaluation of social change and the consequences of human behaviour. Divisions in societies also included gender and social classes in shared beliefs of a common culture.³⁵⁹ The Oxford dictionary defines Ethnography as the **scientific description of peoples and cultures with their**

³⁵³ What is Anthropology? Boston University. Arts & Science. Anthropology. Available at: <https://www.bu.edu/anthrop/about/what-is-anthropology/>

³⁵⁴ Anthropology. Available at: <http://anthropology.iresearchnet.com/ethnology/>

³⁵⁵ Human Relations Area Files. Ethnology and Ethnography in Anthropology. Available at: <https://hraf.yale.edu/teach-ehraf/ethnology-and-ethnography-in-anthropology/>

³⁵⁶ Ethnography: Oxford Dictionary. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/ethnography>

³⁵⁷ Anthropology. Available at: <http://anthropology.iresearchnet.com/ethnology/>

³⁵⁸ The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. Department of Sociology. What is Sociology? Available at: <https://sociology.unc.edu/undergraduate-program/sociology-major/what-is-sociology/>

³⁵⁹ Case Western Reserve University. College of Arts and Sciences. Department of Sociology. What is Sociology. Available at: <https://sociology.case.edu/what-is-sociology/>

customs, habits, and mutual differences.³⁶⁰

The various specialised focus areas mentioned above incorporate similar aspects of human society such as culture. These fields of study and historians often intermingle the terminologies, especially the references to ‘culture’, ‘tribe’ and ‘nation’.

9.7.4 Concepts Contributing to the Complexity of the South African Ethnography: Various Concepts Describing Groups of People

Concepts describing groups of people were identified, defined, and evaluated to determine the relevance to South Africa. Changuion and Steenkamp³⁶¹ presented the following summary: ‘Nation’ in the broadest reference accommodate people from the same ethnic origin e.g. Zulu, Sotho etc. Tribe refers to a subdivision of a nation, for example the Sotho are subdivided into a large number of tribes such as the Koni, Pedi et cetera. Grouping or community is the subdivision of tribes; for example, the Koni are subdivided into the Moletse, et cetera. To conclude the discussion, the author assesses a Biblical view on the phenomena of nation and tribe

Chapter two (Bill of Rights 9.3) of the Constitution of South Africa specifically mentions race and ethnic groups. The discussion will therefore begin with race and ethnic, followed by culture, tribe, and nation. Population, residents, and citizens do not have variable interpretations and as such it is not necessary to interpret their application to the South African environment.

Every definition is presented in the following categories:

- Origin and Etymology

³⁶⁰ Ethnography: Oxford Dictionary. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/ethnography>

³⁶¹ Changuion, L. and Steenkamp, B. (2012) *Disputed Land. The Historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Boek House. P. 10

- Synonyms
- Several Definitions with an evaluation of the application to South Africa.

9.7.4.1 Race

Michael MacDonald³⁶² noted the following:

Apartheid deepened segregation and white supremacy, it did not invent either of them. What it did innovate, and what in principle differentiate apartheid from segregation, was a distinct conception of race. Apartheid associated races with cultures, but implicitly addressed the prospect that the link between them was not indissoluble, elaborating a state policy – “separate development”

9.7.4.1.1 Origin and Etymology of Race

Early 16th century (denoting a group with common features): via French from Italian razza, of unknown ultimate origin.³⁶³

9.7.4.1.2 Race: Synonyms

Blood, clan, family, folks, house, kin. Kindred, lineage, people, stock, tribe, ancestry, ethnicity, nation, nationality.³⁶⁴

9.7.4.1.3 Classification: Origin and Etymology of Race

Early 16th century (denoting a group with common features): via French from Italian razza, of unknown ultimate origin³⁶⁵

³⁶² MacDonald, Michael (2006) *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. USA: Harvard University Press. P. 11

³⁶³ Race: Lexico Oxford and Spanish Dictionary, Thesaurus, a Spanish to English Translator: Race. Available at: <https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/race>

³⁶⁴ Race: Merriam-Webster.com Thesaurus, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/thesaurus/race>.

³⁶⁵ Race: Oxford Dictionaries. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/race>

9.7.4.1.4 Race: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People

i Race Definition One: Collins Dictionary

A race is one of the major groups which human beings can be divided into according to their physical features, such as the colour of their skin.³⁶⁶

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Physical features such as skin colour does differentiate racial groups in South Africa.	Physical features such as skin colour and hair are not the only characteristic differentiating racial groups in South Africa. Chinese who arrived before 1994 are classified as 'coloured', thereafter as 'white'.

Table 15: Race Definition One: Collins Dictionary

ii Race Definition Two: Oxford Dictionary

Each of the major divisions of humankind, having distinct physical characteristics.

'people of all races, colours, and creeds'³⁶⁷

More example sentences

1. The fact or condition of belonging to a racial division or group; the qualities or characteristics associated with this.
2. A group of people sharing the same culture, history, language, etc.; an ethnic group.
3. A group or set of people or things with a common feature or features.

³⁶⁶ Race: Collins English Dictionary. HarperCollins Publishers. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/race>

³⁶⁷ Race: Oxford Dictionaries. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/race>

4. Biology A population within a species that is distinct in some way, especially a subspecies.
5. (in non-technical use) each of the major divisions of living creatures.
6. 'a member of the human race'
7. Literary A group of people descended from a common ancestor.

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
1-7 applicable	Physical features such as skin colour or hair is not the only characteristic differentiating racial groups in South Africa.

Table 16: Race Definition Two: Oxford Dictionary

iii Race Definition Three: Merriam-Webster Dictionary³⁶⁸

- 1a: an actually or potentially interbreeding group within a species; also: a taxonomic category (as a subspecies) representing such a group**
b : breed
2: a category of humankind that shares certain distinctive physical traits

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 17: Race Definition Three: Merriam-Webster Dictionary

9.7.4.1.5 General Remarks Pertaining to Race in South Africa

The popular classification of race is based on skin colour and other physical features such as height, eyes, and hair. Race, and the related concepts of

³⁶⁸ Race: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/race>.

ethnicity and language has been core to world history, influencing societies, politics, legislation, economy, war, and bloodshed. Throughout history, race classification was used for political purposes- to discriminate negatively, and more importantly, to affirm positively. In South Africa race classification affirmed and legalised constitutional rights to whites.

BBBEE³⁶⁹ and Employment Equity³⁷⁰ legislation adds additional discrepancies to race classification. The author highlights two examples: The Khoisan and the Chinese:

With reference to the South African Chinese population, Prof. Karen Harris³⁷¹, Head of Department of Historical and Heritage studies at the University of Pretoria elaborated as follows: The Chinese communities were excluded as beneficiaries of both the mentioned legislations.

This perpetuated the treatment of the Chinese since their arrival in the Cape Colony towards the end of the seventeenth century. The South African High Court ruled in 2008 that the South African Chinese community will be considered to be "black" in terms of Employment Equity and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment. This was the result of an eight-year battle launched by the Chinese Association of South Africa to clarify their status in terms of affirmative action and empowerment legislation.

Fierce critique against colonialism not only focuses on the so-called illegal land occupation, but it also includes the early race classification. Segregation was not instigated by the 1948 White National Party government, but by the Dutch and English colonial rule in the Cape of Good Hope. In order to provide a short portrait of the race classification history of South Africa, comments are prepared with regards to censuses within four periods:

³⁶⁹ Black Economic Empowerment Act 35 of 2003

³⁷⁰ Employment Equity

³⁷¹ Harris, K.L. (2017) SciFlo BEE-ing Chinese in South Africa: a legal historic perspective. *Fundamina (Pretoria)* [online]. 2017, vol.23, n.2, PP. 1-20. ISSN 2411-7870. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.17159/2411-7870/2017/v23n2a1>.

- Colonization of the Union of South Africa. (1652-1910)
- The Union of South Africa (1910-1948)
- The Republic of South Africa (1948-1994)
- The Republic of South Africa after the first democratic election) (1994–current)

9.7.4.1.6 Race Classification Reflected in Censuses

a. Censuses: From Colonization to the Union of South Africa. (1652-1910)

The principle of segregation was already implemented by the colonial Dutch and especially the English rule in the Cape.

British colonial authorities adhered to a philosophy of racial segregation while their French counterparts subscribed to one that segregates along socioeconomic and cultural lines.³⁷²

Assessment of ethnicity and race was an integral part of the first census conducted in 1865, (Cape of Good Hope) following the principles laid down by the British Colonial Office. The census employed a basic fourfold race classification: European, Hottentot, Kafir³⁷³ (Xhosa) and other. Hottentot and Xhosa were recognised as indigenous whereas ‘other’ accommodated the mixed raced population and the Cape Malays who were descendants of the slaves imported from India, Sri Lanka, and Indonesia in the 17th and 18th centuries.

The 1875 census accommodated a much more complicated race classification of six major classifications (European/White, Malay, Hottentot, Fingo³⁷⁴, Kafir, and

³⁷² Njoh, A. J. (2008). Colonial Philosophies, Urban Space, and Racial Segregation in British and French Colonial Africa. *Journal of Black Studies*, 38(4), PP. 579–599. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.1177/0021934706288447>

³⁷³ The word ‘kafir’ is derived from the Arabic term for an infidel unbeliever. In the mid-nineteenth century it had not yet acquired the highly pejorative connotations associated with the term in the twentieth century.

³⁷⁴ Fingo. XhosaCulture.co.za Amafengu. The Mfengu are Bantu people, originally closely related to the Zulu people, but now often considered to have assimilated to the Xhosa people whose language they now speak. Historically they achieved considerable renowned for their military ability in the frontier wars. The

Bechuana³⁷⁵, Mixed and Other) and several sub categories based on a combination of skin colour, facial features, degrees of assimilation, origins and language. The problematic identification of the Hottentot people resulted in special instructions to evaluate distinct characteristics. The 1875 classification was retained in the 1891 and 1904 censuses.

The Orange Free State census in 1880 and 1890, applied several of the concepts of the Cape of Good Hope³⁷⁶, but distinguished only between Europeans and Coloureds, reflecting the basic legal division in society between citizens and non-citizens.

The South African Republic (Transvaal) followed in 1890³⁷⁷, counting only Europeans. Natal conducted a census³⁷⁸ in 1891 accommodating European and Coloured in one category. The 1904 Transvaal and Natal census listed Europeans, Natives, Asiatics and mixed. The Asiatic were excluded in the Orange River Colony according to the exclusion law not allowing them in the colony. Indians, Chinese, Syrians and Malays were included in the “Asiatic” category while American (coloured), African (mixed) and Islanders were included in the Mixed group.

b. Censuses: The Union of South Africa (1910-1948)

The Union, established in May 1910 with the unification of four British colonies, was charged by the imperial government of the British Empire to conduct a

name amaMfengu means “wanderers”. The Fingo nation (like the Bhaca, Bhele, Hluvi and Zizi) was formed from the tribes that were broken up and dispersed by Shaka and his Zulu armies in the Mfecane wars. Available at: <http://xhosaculture.co.za/history/amamfengu/>

³⁷⁵ Bechuana: A member of the Bantu, Tswana speaking people. Available at: <https://www.thefreedictionary.com/Bechuana>

³⁷⁶ *Verslag van den Census, 1890* (C. Borckenhagen, Bloemfontein, 1890). Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001#24a

³⁷⁷ *Verslag van de Volkstelling, 1890* (Staatsdrukker, Pretoria, 1891). Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001#25a

³⁷⁸ Christopher, A.J. The Union of South Africa censuses 1911-1960: an incomplete record. *Historia* [online]. 2011, vol.56, n.2 [cited 2020-08-03], PP. 01-18. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001&lng=en&nrm=iso. ISSN 2309-8392. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/20004271?readnow=1&seq=1#page_scan_tab_contents

census in 1911.

The first census conducted took place in May 1911. A.J. Christopher³⁷⁹ attributed then that the 1911 census as the first South African foundational census:

“the first census of the newly formed Union of South Africa took place and in certain ways, its comprehensive scope and coverage were never repeated, and it remains as a remarkable survey of the country as it attained internal administrative and political independence (South Africa 1912).”

The categories were simplified to European/White, Bantu and Mixed and Other Coloured. Coloured were meant to include the Hottentot.

The indigenous population (Hottentot), were previously classified separately in the Cape censuses. They were considered to be yellow of colour, neither Native nor Bantu. In addition, the imperial government of India requested information pertaining to Indian diaspora. Indians were included in the ‘mixed and other category. The census results were European or Whites 1 276 242, Bantu 4 019 006, Mixed and other Coloured 678 14.³⁸⁰

In 1921 a fourfold division was implemented: European, Native (replaced Bantu), Asiatic and Mixed or Coloured.

c. Censuses: The Republic of South Africa (1948-1994)

Census categories amended Native to Black in 1980 and finally to Africans in 1996. Race classification was foundational to all ‘apartheid laws’ post 1948, determining place of residents, education etc. Four race groups classified South Africans as: Native (Black African)³⁸¹, Coloured (neither black or white), White

³⁷⁹ Christopher, Anthony J. (June 16, 2010) South African Geographical Journal Volume 92 of 1992, issue 1. A South African Domesday Book: the first Union census of 1911. Available at: <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/03736245.2010.483882>

³⁸⁰ Statistics SA. Census in brief (2011) Available at: https://unstats.un.org/unsd/demographic/sources/census/wphc/South_Africa/ZAF04-Census2011.pdf

³⁸¹ Thompsell, Angela. Thought Co. *Racial classification under Apartheid*. (September 1, 2018) Native: “a person who in fact is or is generally accepted as a member of any aboriginal race or tribe of Africa”. Available at: <https://www.thoughtco.com/racial-classification-under-apartheid-43430>

and Indian. Chinese and Japanese were categorised as “honorary whites”.³⁸²

The 1951 census reclassified the Cape indigenous (Hottentot previously classified as coloured) in the Native category. The 1960 census reversed their classification back to ‘coloured’.

The Helen Suzman³⁸³ Foundation highlighted the following race-orientated apartheid legislations:

- Population Registration Act No. 30 of 1950 required people to be identified according to race.
- Immorality Act of 1950. Prohibiting mixed race relationships.
- Group Areas Act 1950 confined ownership and occupation of land and buildings to specific areas. The act established distinct areas where members of a race needed to reside to live and work.
- Bantu Education Act/Bantu Authorities Act
- Bantu Authorities Act 1951 created a basis for ethnic government in African reserves, known as ‘homelands’, created by the national government to act as homelands based on tribal groupings, according to their record of origin.
- The Pass Law Act 1952 required black South Africans over the age of 16 to carry passbook, similar to a passport.
- Separate Amenities Act provided the reservation of public premises and vehicles or portions thereof for the exclusive use of persons of a particular race.

d. Censuses: The Republic of South Africa After the First Democratic Election (1994 – current)

The 2011 census accommodated five racial identifications: Black African (79.2% 41 million), White, (8.9%, 4.59 million), Coloured (8.9%, 4.62 million), Indian or

³⁸² Gilman Scholarship. (August 2, 2018) Race in South Africa: Colonialism, Segregation, and Apartheid. Available at: <https://gilmanprogram.wordpress.com/2018/08/02/race-in-south-africa-colonialism-segregation-and-apartheid/>

³⁸³ Key legislation in the formation of Apartheid. Available at: <https://www.cortland.edu/cgis/suzman/apartheid.html>

Asian (2.5%, 280.4 thousand) and Other/Unspecified (0.5%, 280.4 thousand).³⁸⁴

Race based legislation in the post-Apartheid South Africa include

- **Article 9 (3)** The state may not unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more ground, including race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language or birth.
- Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment

For the purpose of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (B-BBEE or BEE), it is generally understood that an individual qualifying for this category of assistance has to be African, Coloured or Indian, as well as a South African citizen. “Black people” is a generic term which means Africans, Coloureds and Indians–

- ***Who are citizens of the Republic of South Africa by birth or descent; or***
- ***Who became citizens of the Republic of South Africa by naturalization-***
- ***Before 27 April 1994; or***
- ***On or after 27 April 1994 and who would have been entitled to acquire citizenship by naturalization prior to that date.”***

On June 18, 2008, the Chinese Association of South Africa approached the High Court with a request that South African Chinese people be included in the definition of “black people”.

This relief was granted and, as such, “black people” for purposes of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (B-BBEE) now refers to Africans, Coloureds, Indians and Chinese people.³⁸⁵

The 2008 High Court ruling declared Chinese South Africans who arrived before 1994 be reclassified as Coloureds to provide them the advantage of the B-BBEE legislation. This is calculated to about 3%-5% of the total Chinese population estimated at 12000-15000.

³⁸⁴ World elections. Elections, referendums and electoral sociology around the world. Race, Ethnicity and Language in South Africa. Available at: <https://welections.wordpress.com/guide-to-the-2014-south-african-election/race-ethnicity-and-language-in-south-africa/>

³⁸⁵ SERR Synergy SA’s leader I Legal Compliance and Transformation Solutions. Available at: <https://serr.co.za/who-qualifies-as-black-in-terms-of-the-b-bbee-act-no-set-criteria-to-determine-racial>

- Employment Equity Act 1998 accommodates the generic black classification referring to Coloured, Indian and Black African.
- National Sport and Recreation Act
- SARS ETI (Employment Tax Incentive) Covid19 relief for companies applicable for black young (ages of 18–29) employees only, with a monthly remuneration of less than R6500.00³⁸⁶
- National Empowerment Fund (NEF) Support^{387/388}R200 000.00 in loans available for black entrepreneurs to manufacture and supply a range of medical products.

South Africa's Census surveys, all based on race, were conducted in 1911; 1921; 1936; 1951; 1960; 1970; 1980; 1985, 1991, 1996 and 2001.³⁸⁹

In new scientific research, the concept of race is central in the new dimension of genetics and DNA testing. The Human Genome Project examine human ancestry with genetics.

Research indicates that the concept of “five races” does, to an extent, describe the way human population are distributed among continents, but the lines between races are much more blurred than ancestry testing companies would have us believe.

In the biological and social sciences, the consensus is clear: race is a social construct, not a biological attribute. Today, scientists prefer to use the term “ancestry” to describe human diversity. “Ancestry” reflects the fact that human variations do have a connection to the geographical origins of our ancestors—with enough information about a person’s DNA, scientists can make a reasonable guess about their ancestry. However, unlike the term “race,” it focuses on understanding how a person’s history unfolded, not

³⁸⁶ White & Case Publications & Events. Covid-19: South African Government Financial Assistance. Available at: <https://www.whitecase.com/publications/alert/covid-19-south-african-government-financial-assistance-measures>

³⁸⁷ White & Case (May 19, 2020) Publications & Events. Covid-19: South African Government Financial Assistance. Available at: <https://www.whitecase.com/publications/alert/covid-19-south-african-government-financial-assistance-measures>

³⁸⁸ LEXAfrica Lawyers for Africa. (May 26, 2020) Black Empowerment criteria for Government COVID-19 relief funds. Available at: <https://www.lexafrica.com/2020/05/bbbee-criteria-for-government-relief-funds-in-the-covid-19-crisis/>

³⁸⁹ Christopher, Anthony J. (June 16, 2010) South African Geographical Journal Volume 92 of 1992, issue 1. A South African Domesday Book: the first Union census of 1911. Available at: <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/03736245.2010.483882>

how they fit into one category and not another. In a clinical setting, for instance, scientists would say that diseases such as sickle-cell anaemia and cystic fibrosis are common in those of “sub-Saharan African” or “Northern European” descent, respectively, rather than in those who are “black” or “white”.³⁹⁰

9.7.4.2 Ethnic Groups

9.7.4.2.1 Ethnic Group: Origin and Etymology of Ethnic Group

The term ethnic is derived from the Greek word ἔθνος ethnos (more precisely, from the adjective ἔθνικός ethnikos, which was loaned into Latin as ethnicus). The inherited English language term for this concept is folk.

In Early Modern English and until the mid-19th century, ethnic was used to mean heathen or pagan (in the sense of disparate "nations" which did not yet participate in the Christian oikumene), as the Septuagint used ta ethne ("the nations") to translate the Hebrew goyim "the nations, non-Hebrews, non-Jews".

9.7.4.2.2 Ethnic Group: Synonyms

Cultural, genealogical, family, folk, native, tribal, civil, traditional, ethnological, indigenous.³⁹¹

9.7.4.2.3 Ethnic Group: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People

i Ethnic Group Definition One: Science Daily

An ethnic group is a human population whose members identify with each other, usually on the basis of a presumed common genealogy or ancestry. Ethnic groups are also usually united by common cultural, behavioural, linguistic, or religious practices.

³⁹⁰ Chou, Vivian (April 17, 2017) Harvard University Medical School. How Science and Genetics are Reshaping the Race debated of the 21st Century. Available at: <http://sitn.hms.harvard.edu/flash/2017/science-genetics-reshaping-race-debate-21st-century/>

³⁹¹ Ethnic Group. Available at: <https://www.thesaurus.net/ethnic>

Members of an ethnic group generally claim a strong cultural continuity over time, although some historians and anthropologists have documented that many of the cultural practices on which various ethnic groups are based are of recent invention.³⁹²

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 18: Ethnic Group Definition One: Science Daily

ii Ethnic Group Definition Two:

Nina Jablonski³⁹³, an anthropologist and paleobiologist at The Pennsylvania State University, known for her research into the evolution of human skin colour, defined ethnicity as follows:

"Race is understood by most people as a mixture of physical, behavioural and cultural attributes. Ethnicity recognizes differences between people mostly on the basis of language and shared culture."

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 19: Ethnic Group Definition Two

iii Ethnic Group Definition Three:

R.M. Williams³⁹⁴ defined ethnicity in the International Encyclopaedia of the Social Behavioral Sciences as:

³⁹² Ethnic Group. Available at: https://www.sciencedaily.com/terms/ethnic_group.htm

³⁹³ Bryce, Emma (February 8, 2020) Life Science. What's the difference between race and ethnicity? Available at: <https://www.livescience.com/difference-between-race-ethnicity.html>

³⁹⁴ Science Direct. Ethnicity. Available at: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/psychology/ethnicity>

Ethnicity is ancient and ubiquitous, and commentaries on ethnic differences have been highly variable over time and place. The term has been used variously to signify 'nation,' 'race,' 'religion,' or 'people,' but the central generic meaning is that of collective cultural distinctiveness.

An ethny here is a culturally distinctive collectivity, larger than a kinship unit, whose members claim a common origin or descent. The prototype is a local endogamous population sharing cultural traits that differentiate it from other collectivities.

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 20: Ethnic Group Definition Three

iv Ethnic Group Definition Four:

An ethnic group or ethnicity is a population group whose members identify with each other on the basis of common nationality or shared cultural traditions. The traditional definition of race and ethnicity is related to biological and sociological factors respectively.

Race refers to a person's physical characteristics, such as bone structure and skin, hair, or eye color. Ethnicity, however, refers to cultural factors, including nationality, regional culture, ancestry, and language.³⁹⁵

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 21: Ethnic Group Definition Four

v. Ethnic Group Definition Five:

Ethnicity denotes groups, such as Irish, Fijian, or Sioux, etc. that share a common identity-based ancestry, language, or culture.

³⁹⁵ Difference Ethnicity vs Race. Available at: https://www.diffen.com/difference/Ethnicity_vs_Race

It is often based on religion, beliefs, and customs as well as memories of migration or colonization (Cornell & Hartmann, 2007). In scientific analysis, it can be important to distinguish, however loosely, between race and ethnicity.³⁹⁶

9.7.4.2.4 General Remarks Pertaining to Ethnicity in South Africa

Ethnicity, race, and tribes are very closely related. The author makes the distinction between race and ethnicity in the sense that race encompass ethnic groups. South Africa officially differentiate between four races. (Black, White, Indian, and Coloured). Within the black race, different unique ethnic groups exist. Race is primarily unitary, ***“a category of humankind that shares certain distinctive physical traits.”***³⁹⁷ As such, the African Black race may share some physical traits, but is not culturally or linguistically homogeneous. Nine of the eleven language distinguish ethnic groups, (Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele, Northern Sotho, Sotho, Swazi, Twana, Tsonga and Venda) ***“large groups of people classed according to common racial, national, tribal, religious, linguistic, or cultural origin or background.”***³⁹⁸

Ethnicity, includes culture, ancestry, language and nationality. In addition, ethnic groups encompass tribes, within an ethnic group several tribes (also families or clans may exist).

The author draws attention to the fact that, regardless the nine languages reflecting nine black South African tribes, language cannot be applied as the only major distinction category to differentiate between tribes. The coloured community speaks English and Afrikaans and Kaaps. The Indian and Asian

³⁹⁶ Gender Innovations in Science, Health & Medicine, Engineering, and Environment. Race & Ethnicity. Available at: <https://genderinnovations.stanford.edu/terms/race.html>

³⁹⁷ Blakemore, Erin (February 22, 2019) Culture Explainer. Race and ethnicity: How are they different? National Geographic. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/culture/topics/reference/race-ethnicity/>

³⁹⁸ Blakemore, Erin (February 22, 2019) Culture Explainer. Race and ethnicity: How are they different? National Geographic. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/culture/topics/reference/race-ethnicity/>

community's mother tongue is primarily English. 60% of the White community speaks Afrikaans and the remaining 40% speaks English.

Soshanguve, the name of a black residential area (township) north of Pretoria illustrates the multi-ethnic composition of South Africa's population. The acronym accommodates Sotho, Shangaan, Nguni, (isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, SiSwati) and Venda.³⁹⁹

The author views this settlement as an illustration of disrespect for ethnicity. The principle of segregation accommodated race (black, white etc) and not the different ethnic groups. Ethnic groups were grouped together and bases of their black-ness, disregarding individuality of language, culture, religion etc.

9.7.4.3 Culture

9.7.4.3.1 Culture: Origin and Etymology of Culture

*Middle English cultivated land, cultivation, from Anglo-French, from Latin cultura, from cultus, past participle*⁴⁰⁰

9.7.4.3.2 Culture: Synonyms

*accomplishment, civilization, cultivation, polish, refinement*⁴⁰¹

³⁹⁹ African Languages. Meaning of place names in South Africa. New 2006/7 list. Available at: https://africanlanguages.com/south_africa/place_names.html

⁴⁰⁰ Culture: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/culture>.

⁴⁰¹ Culture: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/culture>.

9.7.4.3.3 Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition’s Application to the South African People

i Culture Definition One – Merriam Webster Dictionary⁴⁰²

- a. *the customary beliefs, social forms, and material traits of a racial, religious, or social group; also: the characteristic features of everyday existence (such as diversions or a way of life) shared by people in a place or time*
- b. *the set of shared attitudes, values, goals, and practices that characterizes an institution or organization*
- c. *the set of values, conventions, or social practices associated with a particular field, activity, or societal characteristic*

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
a-c: Many shared beliefs, shared attitudes, and mutual values does exist amongst the different racial and cultural groups.	a-c: A wide variety and often contrasting and conflicting beliefs, attitudes, and values exist amongst the different racial and cultural groups.

Table 22: Culture Definition One – Merriam Webster Dictionary

ii Culture Definition Two – Collins Dictionary⁴⁰³

- a. **uncountable noun**
Culture consists of activities such as the arts and philosophy, which are considered to be important for the development of civilization and of people's minds. (There is just not enough fun and frivolity in culture today, aspects of popular culture.)
- b. **countable noun**
A culture is a particular society or civilization, especially considered in relation to its beliefs, way of life, or art. (people from different cultures.)
We live in a culture that is competitive.
- c. **countable noun**

⁴⁰² Culture: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/culture>.

⁴⁰³ Culture: Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/culture>

The culture of a particular organization or group consists of the habits of the people in it and the way they generally behave. (Banks need to change their culture to improve efficiency and service.)

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
<p>a. General appreciation of all forms of art⁴⁰⁴ and music.</p> <p>Mutual beliefs, way of life and art, habits and general behaviour exists especially with reference to food and South African cooking.</p>	<p>a-b A distinct difference in the appreciation of African vs Western Art and music. The language barrier (a small percentage of white South Africans can speak or understand any of the Bantu languages) contributes to disinterest of white South Africans towards 'black music, lyrics and literature.</p> <p>A robust and even violent objection from certain black South Africans towards European influenced art as symbolic of colonialism. Obliteration of artefacts divide cultural communities.</p> <p>b. Distinct differences in specific behaviours such as the 'hand-shake greeting, social distancing, interpretation of speaking etiquette, attributing of character traits and spirituality to animals to name but a few. News24 was recently criticised after reporting of the death of an ANC leader. They did not accommodate the interpretation of death as passing on but reported on his death. The critique against the news agency was their cultural insensitivity - black people do not die – they pass on.</p>

⁴⁰⁴ Types of Art. Basic definition of Art: Fine Art (includes drawing, painting, sculpture and printmaking), Visual Art (includes fine arts, certain contemporary arts e.g. installation and performance, and decorative art), Decorative art (includes architecture, industrial-design, fashion/furnishings-design, interior-design etc.) and Crafts (broadly synonymous with decorative arts.)

Table 23: Culture Definition Two – Collins Dictionary

iii Culture Definition Three – Cambridge Dictionary⁴⁰⁵

The way of life especially the general customs and beliefs of a particular group of people at a particular time. (youth/working-class culture, She's studying modern Japanese language and culture.)

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Mutual and generic customs exist throughout the wide variety of groups. Especially in food and some music genres e.g. jazz. The South African barbeque called “braaivleis” and side dishes is shared in all communities, Indian, Coloured, Black (African) and White.	Specific customs within different ethnical groups exist. Customs is a portrait of the integration of religion and culture pertaining to birth, puberty, weddings, funerals rituals to name a few.

Table 24: Culture Definition Three – Cambridge Dictionary

iv Culture Definition Five – Edward Burnett Tylor, 1871, British Social Anthropologist

***"Culture or civilization, taken in its wide ethnographic sense, is that complex whole which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, custom, and any other capabilities and habits acquired by man as a member of society."*⁴⁰⁶**

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Generic knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, custom, and other capabilities, and habits exist.	In the same instance, specific disparities exist not only between the races, but also between the various tribes.

⁴⁰⁵ Culture: Cambridge Dictionary. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/culture>

⁴⁰⁶ Defining culture, heritage and identity. Available at: <http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/defining-culture-heritage-and-identity>

Table 25: Culture Definition Five – Edward Burnett Tylor, 1871, British Social Anthropologist

v Culture Definition Six – United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) (2002)

Culture should be regarded as the set of distinctive spiritual, material, intellectual and emotional features of society or a social group, and that it encompasses, in addition to art and literature, lifestyles, ways of living together, value systems, traditions and beliefs." ⁴⁰⁷

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Distinct similarities exist on spiritual, material, intellectual and emotional features in all the mentioned disciplines.	Some similarities exist but also distinct differences with regards to spiritual, material, intellectual and emotional features of the South African society, manifesting in all the disciplines mentioned.

Table 26: Culture Definition Six – United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) (2002)

9.7.4.3.4 General Remarks Pertaining to Culture in South Africa

Culture is a much debated and sensitive subject in South Africa. Joshua Rothman⁴⁰⁸ from the New Yorker.com refer to culture, in its historical sense as a “polemical word”.

It does not only provide content to an academic or political discourse but is emotional for it also represents the core identity, and very often language and religion of a specific group of people. Language in South Africa carries much weight for several groups.

⁴⁰⁷ The 2009 UNESCO Framework for Cultural Statistics (FCS). P. 9. Available at: <https://unstats.un.org/unsd/statcom/doc10/BG-FCS-E.pdf>

⁴⁰⁸ Rothman, J. (December 24, 2014) *The meaning of “Culture”*. New Yorker.com. Available at: <https://www.newyorker.com/culture/cultural-comment>

Cultural differences are not restricted to the 11 languages or the four recognised races. Although the Coloured community is recognised as a race, their language is not recognised. The individuality of the Khoisan people, nor their language is recognised. Descendants from European families such as the Dutch, German, Italian, as well as others such as Jews, Chinese etc. contribute to the combined, rich, but heterogenic culture of the South African people.

9.7.4.4 Tribe

9.7.4.4.1 Tribe: Origin and Etymology of Tribe

*Middle English, from Latin *tribus*, a division of the Roman people, *tribe*.⁴⁰⁹*

*The term originated in ancient Rome, where the word *tribus* denoted a division within the state. It later came into use as a way to describe the cultures encountered through European exploration.⁴¹⁰*

9.7.4.4.2 Tribe: Synonyms

blood, clan, family, folks, house, kin, kindred, kinfolk (or kinfolks), kinsfolk, line, lineage, people, race, stock⁴¹¹

race, ethnic group, people, family.⁴¹²

9.7.4.4.3 Tribe: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People

i Tribe: Definition One: Cambridge

a group of people, often of related families, who live together, sharing the same language, culture, and history, especially those who do not live in towns or cities:

⁴⁰⁹ Tribe: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/tribe>.

⁴¹⁰ Tribe. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/tribe-anthropology>

⁴¹¹ Tribe: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/tribe>.

⁴¹² Tribe: Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/tribe>

a tribe of Amazonian Indians
the Masai tribe

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Tribes do share language, culture and history	No comment

Table 27: Tribe: Definition One: Cambridge

ii Tribe: Definition Two: Merriam Webster Dictionary

1a: a social group comprising numerous families, clans, or generations together with slaves, dependents, or adopted strangers

1b: a political division of the Roman people originally representing one of the three original tribes of ancient Rome

2: a group of persons having a common character, occupation, or interest⁴¹³

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Common character is true	Occupations and interests, educational and literacy within tribes varies vastly.

Table 28: Tribe: Definition Two: Merriam Webster Dictionary

iii Tribe: Definition Three: Oxford Dictionary

A social division in a traditional society consisting of families or communities linked by social, economic, religious, or blood ties, with a common culture and dialect, typically having a recognized leader. 'indigenous Indian tribes'⁴¹⁴

⁴¹³ Tribe: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/tribe>.

⁴¹⁴ Tribe: Oxford Dictionaries. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/tribe>

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and Applicable	No comment

Table 29: Tribe: Definition Three: Oxford Dictionary

iv Tribe: Definition Four: Dictionary.com

1. **any aggregate of people united by ties of descent from a common ancestor, community of customs and traditions, adherence to the same leaders, etc.**
2. **a local division of an aboriginal people.**
3. **a division of some other people.**⁴¹⁵

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 30: Tribe: Definition Four: Dictionary.com

v Tribe: Definition Five: Collins Dictionary

1. countable noun [with singular or plural verb]

Tribe is sometimes used to refer to a group of people of the same race, language, and customs, especially in a developing country. Some people disapprove of this use.

...three-hundred members of the Xhosa tribe.

2. countable noun [with singular or plural verb, adjective NOUN]

You can use tribe to refer to a group of people who are all doing the same thing or who all behave in the same way.

[mainly humorous, informal]

...tribes of talented young people. [+ of]

*...the particularly unpleasant tribe who argue over the splitting of restaurant and bar bills.*⁴¹⁶

⁴¹⁵ Tribe. Available at: <http://www.dictionary.com/browse/tribe>

⁴¹⁶ Tribe: Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/tribe>

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
True and applicable	No comment

Table 31: Tribe: Definition Five: Collins Dictionary

9.7.4.4.4 General Remarks Pertaining to Tribe in South Africa

The complexity of the tribal diversity of South Africa is displayed by the following:

South Africa has voted in favour of adopting the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples but has yet to ratify ILO⁴¹⁷ Convention, 1989 No. 169. This statement is substantiated by the South African government's neglect to recognise one percent of the estimated 50 million people in South African is believed to be indigenous groups. The first inhabitants of South African is collectively known as Khoe-san, comprising of the San and Khoekoe groups. IWGIA⁴¹⁸ reported that the San consist of †Khomani, Khwe and !Xun. The Khoekhoe consist of the Nama, Koranna, Criquea, and Cape Khoekoe. Members of these groups are now exercising their right to for self-identification whilst the South African government categorise them as 'coloured'. The complexity of the matter is further highlighted by the existence of Zulu⁴¹⁹ speaking Khoisan from the Drakensberg. (Michael Francis under supervision of Keyan Tomaselli

⁴¹⁷ ILO International Labour Organization. The only tripartite U.N. agency, since 1919 the ILO brings together governments, employers and workers of 187 member states, to set labour standards, develop policies and devise programmes promoting decent work for all women and men. Available at: <https://www.ilo.org/global/about-the-ilo/lang--en/index.htm>

⁴¹⁸ IWGIA International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs. (2011) Indigenous people in South Africa. Available at: <https://www.iwgia.org/en/south-africa/722-indigenous-peoples-in-south-africa.html>

⁴¹⁹ The Zulu language, one of the African Bantu languages, is accepted as spoken by the Zulu people.

submitted research as a requirement of a PhD in culture, communication and media studies at the University of KwaZulu Natal)⁴²⁰

Healing and other spiritual practices is also often tribal specific and not necessarily homogenic within a specific race or ethnic group.

9.7.4.5 Nation

9.7.4.5.1 Nation: Origin and Etymology

Middle English nacioun, from Anglo-French naciun, from Latin nation-, natio birth, race, nation, from nasci to be born; akin to Latin gignere to beget — more at kin⁴²¹

The Latin word nāscī, meaning “to be born,” and its form nātus give us the roots nat and nai. Words from the Latin nāscī have something to do with being born. When someone is native to a particular place, she or he was born there. A nation, or country, is a place where people are born. Anyone naive has a lack of knowledge and experience as if he or she was only recently born.⁴²²

Origin: Middle English: via Old French from Latin natio(n-), from nat- ‘born’, from the verb nasci.⁴²³

9.7.4.5.2 Nation: Synonyms

***commonwealth, country, land, sovereign (also sovranity), state
Related Words: city-state, ministate, nation-state; domain, dominion, empire, kingdom, realm, republic, democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, monocracy, oligarchy, sovereign (also sovran), theocracy, fatherland, homeland, motherland;***

⁴²⁰ Francis, Michael (March 22, 2007) Explorations in Ethnicity and Social Change among Zulu-speaking San Descendants of the Drakensberg Mountains, KwaZulu-Natal. Available at: <https://ukzn-dspace.ukzn.ac.za/handle/10413/2202>

⁴²¹ Nation: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nation>.

⁴²² Nation: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nation>.

⁴²³ Nation: Cambridge Dictionary. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/nation>

*great power, power, sea power, superpower, world power*⁴²⁴

9.7.4.5.3 Nation: Definitions and the Evaluation of the Definition's Application to the South African People

i Nation: Definition One: Cambridge

a country, especially when thought of as a large group of people living in one area with their own government, language, traditions, etc.:

- ❖ *All the nations of the world will be represented at the conference.*
- ❖ *The Germans, as a nation, are often thought to be well organized.*
- ❖ *Practically the whole nation watched the ceremony on television.*

a large group of people of the same race who share the same language, traditions, and history, but who might not all live in one area:

- ❖ *the Navajo nation*⁴²⁵

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
The definition is true with reference to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - An independent government, although some groups would prefer self-governance. - Share history although every group has its individual interpretation of events, own heroes etc, 	The definition is not applicable with reference to language and generic traditions, although shared traditions do exist and should not be discarded. Similarities do exist, but it varies widely between different groups

Table 32: Nation: Definition One: Cambridge

ii Nation: Definition Two: Oxford Dictionary

⁴²⁴ Nation: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nation>.

⁴²⁵ Nation: Cambridge Dictionary. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/nation>

***A large body of people united by common descent, history, culture, or language, inhabiting a particular state or territory.*⁴²⁶**

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
A large body of people inhabiting a particular state or territory	Not common descent, history, culture, or language

Table 33: Nation: Definition One: Cambridge

iii Nation: Definition Three: Business Directory

Community or race of people with shared culture, traditions, history, and (usually) language, whether scattered or confined to one country. UK, for example, is a country inhabited mainly by people of four nations: the English, Irish, Scot, and Welsh.

***Whereas the term 'nation' emphasizes a particular group of people, 'country' emphasizes the physical dimensions and boundaries of a geographical area, and 'state' a self-governing legal and political entity.*⁴²⁷**

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
	Community or race of people do not share culture, traditions, history, and (usually) language

Table 34: Nation: Definition Three: Business Directory

iv Nation: Definition Four: Global Policy

A nation is a large group of people with strong bonds of identity - an "imagined community," a tribe on a grand scale. The nation may have a claim to statehood or self-rule, but it does not necessarily enjoy a state of its own. National identity is typically based on shared culture, religion, history, language or ethnicity, though disputes arise as to who is truly a member of the national community or even whether the "nation" exists at all (do you have to speak French to be Québécois? are Wales and Tibet nations?). Nations seem so compelling, so "real," and so much a part of the political

⁴²⁶ Nation: Oxford Dictionaries. Available at: <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/nation>

⁴²⁷ Definition: Nation. Available at: <http://www.businessdictionary.com/definition/nation.htm>

and cultural landscape, that people think they have lasted forever. In reality, they come into being and dissolve with changing historical circumstances - sometimes over a relatively short period of time, like Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia. Why, then, does national identity give rise to such extremely strong feelings? And why would so many be ready to "die for the nation" in time of war? Because of migration, most modern states include within their borders diverse communities that challenge the idea of national homogeneity and give rise to the community of citizenship, rather than membership in the nation. In the age of global transportation and communication, new identities arise to challenge the "nation," but the pull of nationalism remains a powerful force to be reckoned with - and a glue that binds states together and helps many people (for better and for worse) make sense out of a confusing reality.⁴²⁸

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
Most modern states include within their borders diverse communities that challenge the idea of national homogeneity and give rise to the community of citizenship, rather than membership in the nation	A large group of people does not necessarily have strong pledges of identity, Only partially shared culture, religion, history, language, or ethnicity

Table 35: Nation: Definition Four: Global Policy

v Nation: Definition Five: Merriam Webster Dictionary

- ❖ ***nationality:***
three Slav peoples ... forged into a Yugoslavia without really fusing into a Yugoslav nation. -Hans Kohn
- ❖ ***a politically organized nationality:***
a non-Jewish nationality:
why do the nations conspire - Psalms 2:1 (Revised Standard Version)
- ❖ ***a community of people composed of one or more nationalities and possessing a more or less defined territory and government***
Canada is a nation with a written constitution - B. K. Sandwell
- ❖ ***a territorial division containing a body of people of one or more nationalities and usually characterized by relatively large size and independent status***
a nation of vast size with a small population - Mary K. Hammond
- ❖ ***archaic : group, aggregation***
- ❖ ***a tribe or federation of tribes (as of American Indians)***

⁴²⁸ What is a nation? Available at: <https://www.globalpolicy.org/nations-a-states/what-is-a-nation.html>

the Seminole Nation in Oklahoma⁴²⁹

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
<p>Nationality</p> <p>A community of people composed of one or more nationalities and possessing a more or less defined territory and government</p> <p>A territorial division containing a body of people of one or more nationalities and usually characterized by relatively large size and independent status</p> <p>A nation of vast size with a small population</p> <p>Group, aggregation</p>	<p>No comment</p>

Table 36: Nation: Definition Five: Merriam Webster Dictionary

vi Nation: Definition Six: Collins Dictionary

Word forms: plural nations

1. countable noun

A nation is an individual country considered together with its social and political structures.

Such policies would require unprecedented cooperation between nations.

...Nigeria, by far the most populous of African nations.

country

Synonyms: country, state, nation state, power

2. singular noun

The nation is sometimes used to refer to all the people who live in a particular country. [journalism]

3. Synonyms: public, people, community, society.⁴³⁰

⁴²⁹ Nation: Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nation>.

⁴³⁰ Nation: Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/nation>

True and Applicable in the South African context	Not true and not applicable in the South African context
<p>A nation is an individual country considered together with its social and political structures. The nation is sometimes used to refer to all the people who live in a particular country.</p> <p>Both comments are true in applying to South Africa</p>	<p>No comment</p>

Table 37: Nation: Definition Six: Collins Dictionary

9.7.4.5.4 General Remarks Pertaining to Nation in South Africa

The complexity of the South African nation is evident in the heterogenic community. Desmond Tutu coined the phrase ‘rainbow nation’. This phrase is not a negative reflection on the colourful nation. God provided the rainbow as symbol and reminder of his promise not to destroy the earth by a flood ever again. (Genesis 9:13-17)⁴³¹

Even for non-Christians, peace and tranquillity is associated with the rainbow. Yet, aspects of race, ethnicity, gender, class, sexuality, age, religion, able-bodiedness, literacy, work ethic etc. divide the South African nation to the extend where the notion of a one unified nation is to many, only a myth. A unified nation is as impossible as it is to reach a rainbow.

⁴³¹ Genesis 9:13-17 (NKJV) I set My rainbow in the cloud, and it shall be for the sign of the covenant between Me and the earth. It shall be, when I bring a cloud over the earth, that the rainbow shall be seen in the cloud; and I will remember My covenant which *is* between Me and you and every living creature of all flesh; the waters shall never again become a flood to destroy all flesh. The rainbow shall be in the cloud, and I will look on it to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that *is* on the earth.” And God said to Noah, “This *is* the sign of the covenant which I have established between Me and all flesh that *is* on the earth.”

Awareness of the complex society assists in understanding the complexity of the diverse spirituality. It also provides insight in the strong sense of nationalism that is often closely associated with religion and culture.

10. A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE PERTAINING TO TONGUE, TRIBE AND NATION

Ravi Zacharias⁴³² stated the following:

“The reason we believe discrimination on ethnically is wrong is because race and ethnicity of a person’s race is sacred. We do not discriminate against a person’s race and ethnicity for It was a sacred gift from God.”

Evaluating Biblical references pertaining to the differentiation of tongue (language), tribe, and nation.

The first form of identification is found in Genesis 1:12⁴³³. Although this verse refers to God’s creation of various kinds of grass, herbs, trees and fruit, each “*after his kind*”, the author noted the first reference to ‘species’ to identify or refer to a group belonging- or grouped together. Strong’s No. #H4327 (*mîyn*) (*meen*) ***From an unused root meaning to portion out; a sort, that is, species: - kind. Compare #H4480.***

Genesis 2:4⁴³⁴ refers to “generations”, implicating family in reference to God’s creation of heaven and earth The NKJV translated ‘generations’ into “history”. Strong’s No. #H8435 (*tôledâh tôledâh*) (*to-led-aw’, to-led-aw’*) ***From H3205; (plural only) descent, that is, family; (figuratively) history: - birth, generations.***

⁴³² Ravi Zacharias on the Christian View of Homosexuality. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nPYRXop7aPA>

⁴³³ Genesis 1:12 (NKJV) And the earth brought forth grass, the herb that yields seed according to its kind, and the tree that yields fruit, whose seed is in itself according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.

⁴³⁴ Genesis 2:4 (NKJV) This is the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day that the LORD God made the earth and the heavens,

Genesis 2:4 (KJV) These are the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created, in the day that the LORD God made the earth and the heavens,

After the flood, referring to the sons of Noah, Genesis 10:32⁴³⁵ accommodates “family”, “generation”, and “nation”. Family: Strong’s No. #H4940 (*mishpâchâh*), (mish-paw-khaw’), **a family, that is, circle of relatives; figuratively a class (of persons), a species (of animals) or sort (of things); by extension a tribe or people: - family, kind (-red).**

Generation: Strong’s No. #H8435 (*tôledâh*) (to-led-aw’) From #H3205; **(plural only descent, that is, family, (figuratively) history: birth, generations. Nation: Strong’s No. #G1471 (*gôy*), (go’-ee), a foreign nation, hence a Gentile.**

The tower of Babel narrates a unified, monoglot humanity replicating the original sin in their effort to dethrone God. Genesis 11:1⁴³⁶ accommodates “language” and “one speech” explained by Strong’s No’s #H8193 and #H1697: (*śâphâh*, saw-faw’), (*śepeth sef-eth’*), **the idea of termination, the lip (as a natural boundary); by implication language; speech, talk, [vain] words.** (#H8193) and (*dâbâr*, daw-bawr’) **a word; by implication, a matter (as spoken of) of thing; adverbially a cause: - act, advice, affair, answer, song, speech.** (#H1697)

Isaac blessed Jacob (Genesis 28:3)⁴³⁷ to multiply into a great assembly of people meaning ‘tribe’ specifically and ‘nation’ collectively according to Strong’s No. #H5971: (*‘am*) (*am*) **from H6004; a people (as a congregated unit); specifically a tribe (as those of Israel); hence (collectively) troops or attendants; figuratively a flock: - folk, men, nation, people.**

New Testament references includes the following:

Jesus’ command to disciple the nations is captured in Matthew 28:19.⁴³⁸ Strong’s No. #G1484, in accordance with #H1471, define nations as ‘gentile’ nations

⁴³⁵ Genesis 10:32 (NKJV) These were the families of the sons of Noah, according to their generations, in their nations; and from these the nations were divided on the earth after the flood.

⁴³⁶ Genesis 11:1 (NKJV) Now the whole earth had one language and one speech.

⁴³⁷ Genesis 28:3 (NKJV) “May God Almighty bless you, And make you fruitful and multiply you, That you may be an assembly of peoples;

⁴³⁸ Genesis 28:19 (NKJV) Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.” Amen.

specifically. Israel is God's chosen people. Israel is not referred to as nation. Nation implies non-believing, heathen people.

Revelation 5:9⁴³⁹ and Revelation 11:9⁴⁴⁰ accommodate tribe, (kindred in the KJV), tongue, nation, and people.

Tribe: Strong's No. #G5443 (*phulē*) (*foo-lay*) (*compare G5444*); *an offshoot, that is, race or clan: - kindred,*

Tongue: Strong's No. #G1100 (*glossa*) (*gloce'-sah*) *Of uncertain affinity; the tongue; by implication a language (specifically one naturally unacquired): - tongue.*

People: Strong's No. #G2992: (*laos*) (*lah-os'*) *Apparently a primary word; a people (in general; thus, differing from G1218, which denotes one's own populace): - people.*

Nation: Strong's No. #G1100 (*ethnos*) (*etn'-nos*) *Probably from G1486; a race (as of the same habit), that is, a tribe; specifically, a foreign (non-Jewish) one (usually by implication pagan): - Gentile, heathen, nation, people.*

Revelation 17:15⁴⁴¹ also accommodates multitudes. Strong's No. #G3793 (*ochlos*) (*okh'-los*) *from a derivative of #G2192 (meaning a vehicle); a throng (as borne along); by implication the rabble; by extension a class of people; figuratively a riot: - company, multitude, number (of people), people, press.*

In concluding the biblical references, the author emphasizes the following: The Old Testament reference to nation (#G1471 (*gôy*), (*go'-ee*), *a foreign nation, hence a Gentile*) as well as the New Testament reference to nation (G1486; *a race (as of the same habit), that is, a tribe; specifically a foreign (non-Jewish) one*

⁴³⁹ Revelation 5:9 (NKJV) And they sang a new song, saying: "You are worthy to take the scroll, And to open its seals; For You were slain, And have redeemed us to God by Your blood, Out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation,

⁴⁴⁰ Revelation 11:9 (NKJV) Then those from the peoples, tribes, tongues, and nations will see their dead bodies three-and-a-half days, and not allow their dead bodies to be put into graves

⁴⁴¹ Revelation 17:15 (NKJV) Then he said to me, "The waters which you saw, where the harlot sits, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and tongues.

(usually by implication pagan): - Gentile, heathen, nation, people.) translates 'nation' as a gentile, by implication a heathen.

Jacob, grandson of Abraham wrestled with God where after God changed his name to Israel. After Jacob's return to Canaan, God confirmed the covenant of Abraham and also Jacob's name change. Jacob's descendants were called Hebrew's or Jew's indicating nationality or ethnically. Israel reflect a covenant relationship and not a blood (descendant) relationship.

Covenant relationship was signified by circumcision only. A man, biologically descending from Abraham but not circumcised, not bearing the covenant sign were 'cut off' from the nation. Concurrently, a man not biologically related to Abraham and Jacob, when circumcised, would become as a native of the land" (Exodus 12:48)⁴⁴²

In the Biblical context, gentile nations were defined by their blood relationships, but Israel was defined by a covenant relationship. Within the South African complexity of multi nationalities, this definition would simplify the evaluation of the South African population by accommodating only two groups: the gentiles, non-Christians, unbelievers, versus the covenant people of God, regardless of bloodline race, tribe or language.

This classification is, although Biblical, not sufficient in evaluating the complexity of the influence of spirituality in the South African environment.

With reference to the Biblical twelve tribes of Israel, Yanki Tauber⁴⁴³ noted the following: Jacob blessed his twelve sons, imparting qualities and gifts that would have defined each tribe's role within the people of Israel. Two centuries later, Moses did the same before the Israelites entered the promised land. During their

⁴⁴² Exodus 12:48 (NKJV) And when a stranger dwells with you and wants to keep the Passover to the Lord, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near and keep it; and he shall be as a native of the land. For no uncircumcised person shall eat it.

⁴⁴³ Tauber, Yanki. Tribalism. Available at: https://www.chabad.org/parshah/article_cdo/aid/298072/jewish/Tribalism.htm

forty-year journey to the promised land each tribe had their own leader or prince (authority), own encampment in a designated place around the Tabernacle (territory) and own colours and flags (tribal symbols) and representative stone on the High Priest's breastplate.

The promised land was divided into twelve tribal territories according to their vocation of shepherds, soldiers, scholars etc. Only sons were eligible to inherit land. Moses ruling allowed daughters to inherit land from their father if no sons were born to the family. (Numbers 27) A second ruling stipulated that these women only be allowed to marry men from the same tribe to prevent territorial borders to be compromised.

This ruling provides evidence on the original importance of the individual character of the twelve tribes. This ruling was only instituted in the first generation of Jews who settled in the promised land. The apportionment of the tribes took fourteen years. Thereafter the strict tribal exclusivity disappeared.

The official permission for tribal intermarriage was declared a public holiday (15th of Av) and declared by the Mishnah to be, along with Yom Kippur, the two greatest days of the year. The author concludes that the twelve tribes, to a great extent fitted their tribal uniqueness and identity. Their identity included vocation, authority, territory, and symbols. Tauber⁴⁴⁴ confirmed the conclusion with the statement:

Tribal identity is passed on from the father. The vast majority of Jews do not know which tribe they are from. However, there are many Jews whose families retained their identity as Levites or kohanim. There are only a small handful of families from other tribes who know which tribe their forefathers were from.

When the Messiah comes, we will rediscover who is a member of which tribe. It is then that the Jewish nation that we know today and the ten lost tribes will be reunited in the Land of Israel.

⁴⁴⁴ Tauber, Yanki. Tribalism. Available at: https://www.chabad.org/parshah/article_cdo/aid/298072/jewish/Tribalism.htm

Great debate exists pertaining to the future unification of the tribes of Israel. There seems to be three opinions on the matter:

Rabbi Akiva holds that the ten tribes are not coming back; Rabbi Eliezer holds that they are; and Rabbi Shimon says that it depends on whether they repent.⁴⁴⁵

Man is primary spirit. In evaluating the spiritual impact or spirituality in behaviours, it is not possible to separate the study from the actual people for spirituality manifest in and through people. Thus, the study must reflect on the composition of the South African population.

Interpreting this composition, several concepts, definitions, and descriptions, contribute in defining the complex society. Concepts such as race, tribe, and culture are fluid and several interpretations exist. Conflict is often a natural result.

As such the chapter attend to several concepts foundational to the understanding of the South African society. Paving a way to evaluate the current composition of the South African people, the study briefly notes the original arrival or immigration of the people to South Africa. The author also acknowledges Telling's research of the possible first inhabitants.

11. CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the author addressed the questions posed in the Prolegomena.

11.1 ***Why is the understanding of the South African history imperative in understanding the spiritual diversity and the influence it has?***

History of people narrates the political, social, economic, and cultural aspects of life. Chapter One determined that man is primarily a spiritual entity. Spirituality is

⁴⁴⁵ Shurpin Yhuda Are the Ten Lost Tribes of Israel Ever Coming Back? Available at: https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/1701071/jewish/Are-the-Ten-Lost-Tribes-Ever-Coming-Back.htm

not confined by ethnicity. Religion and other manifestation of spirituality is first learned within the boundaries of family (and therefore race).

The history of ethnicity and ethnography therefore reflects the history of spirituality for man cannot escape the core and essence of his being – a spiritual entity. The aboriginal people, the colonialists, slaves, the Huguenots and other Europeans, the migrating bantu speaking, all other races who arrived over time represented specific spirituality.

11.2 *What is the difference between racialism and racism.*

Racialism are content with the fact that people are different. Racism is the phenomena where one group dominate another. The interpretation of the superiority of one group and the inferiority of another. Racist prescribe supremacy for the superior population and subordination for the inferior race. Racism do not regard power as the foundation of superiority, but superiority as the foundation of their power.

11.3 *How does interpretation models affect the outcome of the presentation of history?*

The author is of the opinion that the date and the locality of historic events are often the only objective information. Everything else is contaminated by ideology and subjectivity. The concepts of perception versus perversion is also relevant. Perversion accommodates a deliberate presentation of fact for a specific purpose. The Afrikaner Nationalist who manipulated school history curricula to portray the English community of South Africa as the enemy after the second Boer War with the goal to advance Afrikaner nationalism is a perfect example. Simultaneously, the concept of unintentional (incorrect) presentation of history is

acceptable, whilst the intentional manipulation of history motivated by ulterior motives.

11.4 *How do race, culture and language differentiate groups?*

Customs or culture, language and religion are often considered attributes that defines a group of people. The author noted that customs/culture and language are learned skills and behaviours. Race, in comparison is considered to be inherited and not created. The author noted that one have to take into consideration that the unification of nations could create a new group of people that can develop into an independent race. Historians have consensus that the South African Coloured community developed from inter-race relationships between the Europeans, Malaysians, Khoi-Khoi, and San. The classification is often contentious, but the identification and classification of 'Coloured' as an independent race is recognised by the South African Government.

11.5 *Is language a scientific criterion to determine race?*

The South African distinction of nine official languages relates to the nine major nations. The recognised race 'Coloured' provides evidence for the fact that language as criteria to determine race is not scientific. At the most it can be included as a contributing element, but not a determining element. The author is therefore of the opinion that language as a learned ability should not be utilised as a measurement to identify ethnicity. This is contentious for some nations e.g., some Afrikaners consider Afrikaans as a prerequisite, along with being white, to be acknowledged as a Afrikaner.

The Khoi-San, classified as 'Coloured' has a unique language but is not recognised as an independent and unique race. The classification of Coloured thus incorporate the Khoi-San, Kaaps, English and Afrikaans speaking people.

The Coloured communities of Gauteng do not speak “Kaaps’ – mostly restricted to the Cape Coloured community.

--ooOoo--

“In human relationships kindness and lies are worth a thousand truths.”

- Graham Green

12. ADDENDUM

12.1 Addendum 1 Chapter 3

Map of Africa with South Africa at the southernmost tip.



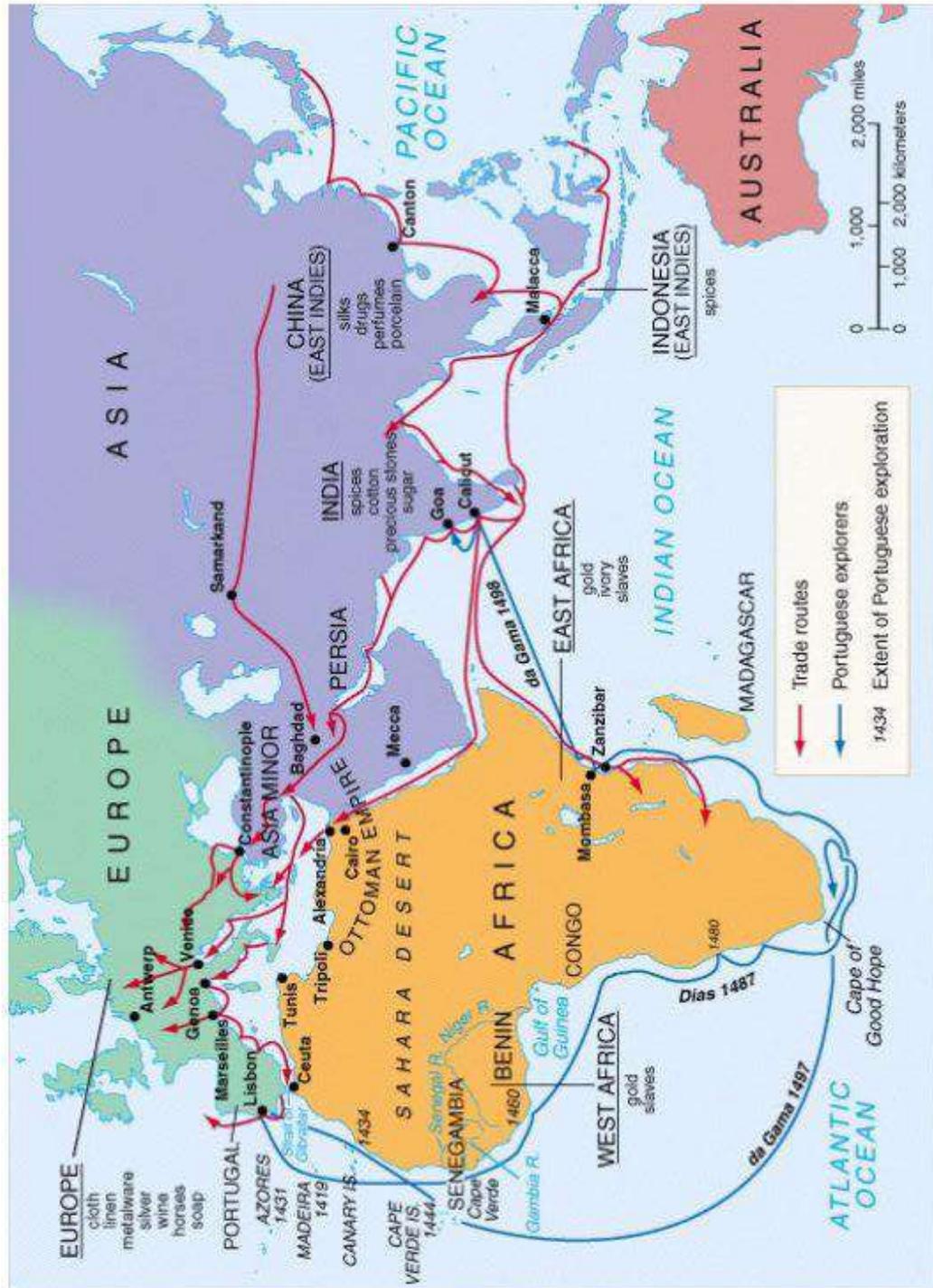
12.3 Addendum 3 Chapter 3

Swaziland (Kingdom of Eswatini), one of the smallest independent countries in Africa



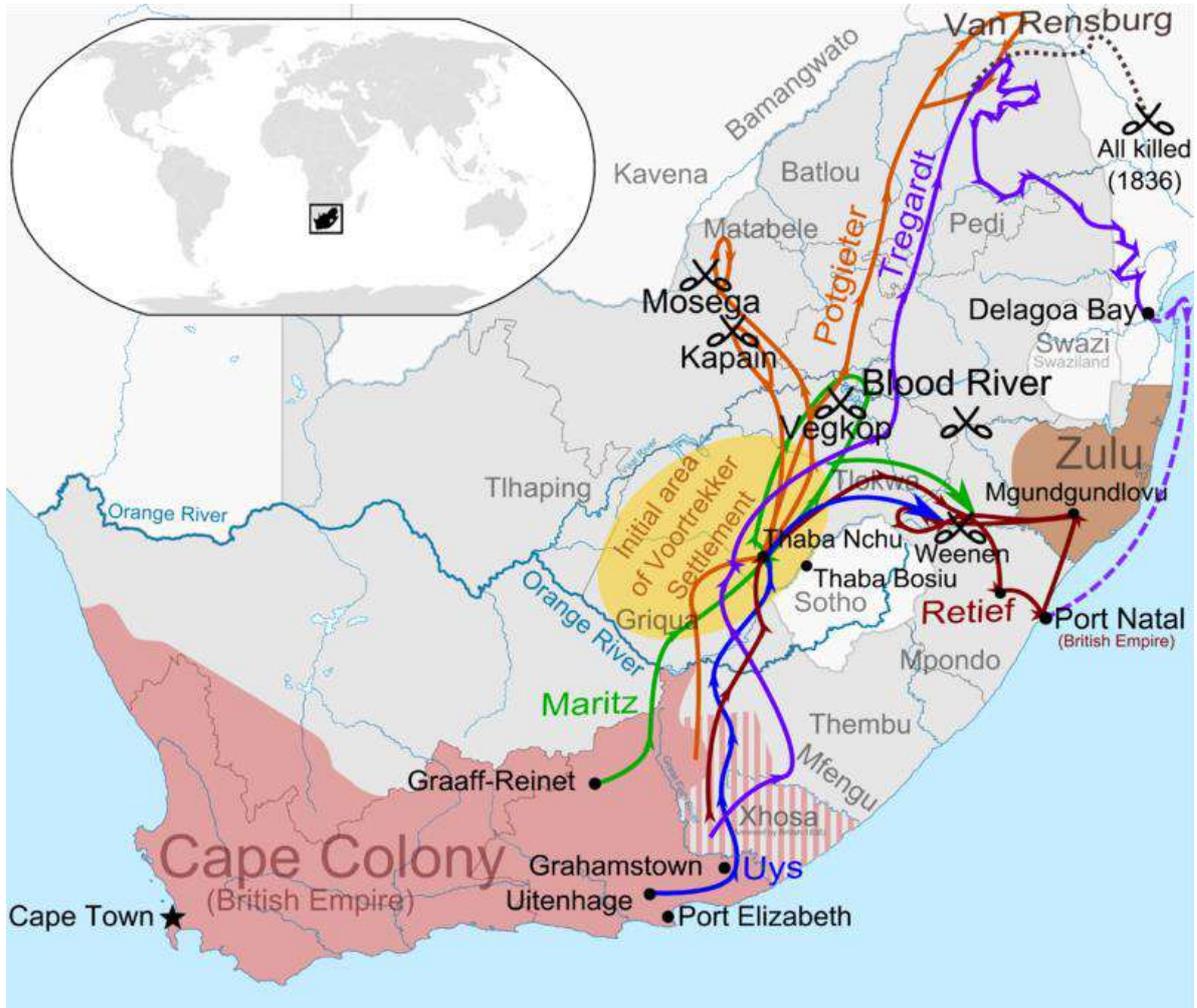
12.4 Addendum 4 Chapter 3

Indian Ocean Trade Routes



12.5 Addendum 5 Chapter 3

Map indicating the different Voortrekker departures



--ooOoo--

***“In human relationships kindness and lies are worth a
thousand truths.”***

- Graham Green

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

POSSIBLE ESOTERIC INFLUENCES
IN SOUTH AFRICA'S HISTORY AND THE DEVELOPMENT
OF THE CONSTITUTION IN ALIGNMENT
WITH A GLOBAL RESET STRATEGY

Chapter Four



*Chapter Four - Possible Esoteric¹ Influences in South Africa's
History and the Development of the Constitution in Alignment
with a Global Reset Strategy*

1. INTRODUCTION

Previous chapters elaborated on the reality of the continuous conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan. The deep-rooted hate Satan has for God and His people should never be underestimated. Hidden agendas to mislead people and prepare them for eternal condemnation remains the ultimate goal fuelled by hate. Ordo Templi Orientis, the first of the great Old Orders, and several other secret organisations share one common goal: to combat Christianity and to prepare the coming of the anti-Christ and the worship of a vague being called the “Great Architect of the Universe” (G.A.O.T.U.). South Africa’s history not only portrays the presence of several secret societies, but their manipulation of political events and the economy is evident.

¹ Esoteric: designed for or understood by the specially initiated alone. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/esoteric#other-words>

Spirituality in South Africa is a complex conglomeration of faiths and religions accommodating a variety of Christian perspectives as well as non-Christian faiths. An overview of the history of various religions accommodated the suggestion that Hinduism could have been the first religion on South African soil. Aspects of Khoi-Khoi and San religions portrayed in art spread over vast areas of South support their claim to be South Africa’s aboriginal people. Migrating Bantu speaking people, colonialism and the slave trade contributed to the establishment of various religious systems.

The South African Constitution protects all religion, race, creed and cultures. This chapter evaluated the freedom of religion and the implication of the emphasis on human rights compared to Biblical principles.

2. OVERVIEW OF SECRET SOCIETIES

The phrases ‘One World Agenda’ or ‘One World Government’ and the so called ‘secret societies’ and conspiracy theories are not unfamiliar to many people, academic scholars, and ordinary people alike. The media, literature and cinema contributed significantly to the mysticism of secret societies and secret agendas manipulating individual, national, and international events. Reflecting on South Africa, the research investigated the possible threatening manipulations steering towards a pre-designed future opposed the notion that secret societies are nothing more than modern entertainment and fiction.

What is of great significance is the relevance of Biblical end-time prophecies with regards to the history and current spiritual realities of South Africa. Dr. W.S. Mc Loud is of the opinion that Christians are **“fast asleep whilst Luciferian conspiracies aim to demolish Christian values, religious freedom, the right to property ownership and nationality.”**² (Author’s translation)

² Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud.

In his keynote address on the 70th anniversary of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, Constitutional Hill, Johannesburg, President Cyril Ramaphosa stated:³

It is no coincidence that our Constitution was signed into law by Nelson Mandela on the same day that the Universal Declaration of Human Rights had been adopted by the United Nations General Assembly 48 years earlier.

Coincidence is arguably possible with regards to all things in life, momentous dates and events included. Yet, it does create a sense and awareness that greater influences are at play. The South African constitution, known and applauded for the great emphasis on human rights, signed on the very date commemorating the United Nations Universal Declaration of Human Rights is exactly such an event that fuels suspicion of greater mysterious manipulation of world events.

With regards to the manipulation of South African national and international affairs, Advocate P.J. Pretorius made several bold statements with relation to esoteric agendas in the South African history and current affairs.

A court order prohibited the printing and distribution of his book “Volksverraad” (1996) (translated as ‘A Nations Treason’ or ‘A Nations Betrayal’). The mere fact that the publication was prohibited is evidence in itself that the content is not only controversial, but it raised suspicion or confirmed the conviction that it might contain vital elements of the truth.⁴

Adv. Pretorius stated the following:⁵

- The Afrikaner nation’s desire for self-governance and a society that values Christian principles was systematically undermined with secret agendas from the time prior the Boer Republics. (Natal in 1839, Transvaal in 1852, Free State in 1854).

³ President Cyril Ramaphosa keynote address. Available at <http://www.casac.org.za/>

⁴ Author’s opinion

⁵ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. PP. 13-14

- Freemasonry, driven by the Zionists, strategized campaigns to contest Christian values.
- The Afrikaner Broederbond organisation became a front organisation for the Freemasonry and the CIA, American Intelligence Service and the Council on Foreign Relations, which in turn used the Freemasonry to advance their agenda.
- Several Afrikaans theologians and ministers, especially from the Dutch Reformed Church also belonged to the Broederbond and therefore (unwillingly) co-operated in the Freemasonry strategy.
- The South African constitutional history is characterised by lies and deception.
- South Africa is driven by subversive powers with the aim to establish one holistic unit in the New World Order.
- The American and British Departments of Foreign Affairs and Intelligence Services are key role players, along with the Freemasonry, the Afrikaner Bond and the anti-apartheid organisations.
- Fundamental to the strategies is the Social Darwinism ideal of one world government, with a universal character and dissolution of race and gender inequalities.
- Equality in race, gender religion and age being the universal objective. This implies that South Africa is to be a Neo-colony of the United States of America. (Pax Americana.)
- The secret Agendas were already a reality with the establishment of the two Boer Republics with the aim to extinguish and exterminate the Afrikaner nation.

The research could not endeavour into detailed research with regards to history, ideology, and symbology of esoteric secret societies. It was however prevalent to evaluate the strategies pertaining to South Africa and to provide some evidence of the influence and successes in a South African context.

The research accommodated an abbreviated history of several mystical organisations to evaluate their inclusion in the history and objectives of

Freemasonry, The Illuminate and New Age. In order to contextualise the South African strategy, a condensed introduction pertaining to secret societies was deemed necessary. The research aimed to evaluate and determine the *possible influences* of the mentioned organisations on the development of the South African constitution in an attempt to incorporate South Africa into a ‘holistic one world’ or ‘one world government’ with specific spiritual implications.

Two significant research results:

- Organisations accused to be the masterminds of international agendas with the goal to establish a one-world society are not isolated from one another. History, individual affiliations and membership, and collective goals are interconnected. Conspiracy theorists and decades of research has not reached a final conclusion. Several researchers denoted the Freemasons and Illuminate as integrated organisations. The author acknowledged the integrated relationship, but also found it imperative to evaluate the organisations individually.
- This research did not attempt to provide a complete study on either the history, symbolism, and membership of organisations, nor on the complete strategy and world views and current status. The aim was to provide an overview to stimulate a debate pertaining to the South African history and especially the post-Apartheid South Africa in context of the so-called hidden agendas.

The organisations and associated subjects identified share close relationships, histories, memberships, or alliances.

- Nimrod, the first anti-Christ prototype
- Kabbalah
- Talmud
- Order of the Knights Templars
- Jesuits
- Freemasons
- Illuminate
- New Age

2.1 Nimrod, the First Antichrist and God-Man Theory

According to Dr. Mc Loud⁶, Nimrod, meaning ‘seed of the women’ (Zoroaster/ Zuro-sshter, ‘zero’ meaning seed), grandchild of Gam, was probably the first person who can be described as type of the ‘antichrist’. Lew White⁷, described Nimrod as a tyrant and translated his name to “a mighty hunter before (against) JHWH”. Nimrod was the first man who played a pinnacle role in propagating revolt against God.

Greek mythology recognised Kus, Nimrod’s father as Belus or Bel and bestowed upon him the honour of creator and organiser of chaos and the separator of heavens and earth. Nimrod was recognised as the architect and builder of the Assyrian capital Nineveh⁸ and the Tower of Babel⁹. His kingdom included all the nations of Assyria and Libya. Mythology portrays Nimrod in a variety of images for example:

- A lion with a honeybee at his mouth. In the Galilee language the word for ‘bee’ also means ‘word’. This reflected to Christ as the ‘Word’ of God.¹⁰
- He was prayed to as ‘Kronos’. Kronos meaning prince or ‘The Horned One’. Mighty men were portrayed with horns.¹¹

Nimrod, alias Zoroaster, was the head of the fire worshippers and the first sorcerer, also referred to as Magus, chief of sorcery. His knowledge of the celestial constellations resulted in the Chaldeans adoration of him as the ‘sun-god’ Mithra. Mithra also means mediator.

⁶ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. 1

⁷ White, Lew (2001) *Fossilized Customs*. Paulshof: Qodesh Publishers. P. 11

⁸ Tower of Babel. Available at <http://www.israel-a-history-of.com/tower-of-babel.html>

⁹ Babel is derived from the Hebrew balal, which means ‘mixed up’ or ‘confused’. The Babylonians later interpreted ‘Bable’ to mean ‘the gate to the god’. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 21

¹⁰ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. 1

¹¹ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. B-1

Egyptian mythology recognises Nimrod as Osiris with his beautiful wife (also his mother according to White)¹² Semiramis. After his death she was elevated to a god and she bestowed the throne in Babel. She claimed Nimrod’s ‘appearance’ after which she fell pregnant and their son Horus (also called Osiris) was born. Mother-child worship spread to several religions and cultures.

White¹³ recorded the name of their son as ‘Tammuz’. Semiramis’ also reported how Nimrod had gone to the heavens to re-appear as the sun. Semiramis became the deity representing the earth.

The sun became the father and the Earth the mother. From ‘Ish’ translated as man in Hebrew, Semiramis was worshipped as ‘Ishtar’, also known as Asherah, Asteroth, Ishtar, Eostre, Astarte, Maia, Gaia, Diana, Ninurta, Nan, Eres, Ostara, Austron, Isis, Nut (the sky), Aphrodite, Venus, Indrani, Devaki, Tanit, Cybele, Artemis, Athena and the earth mother Asherim.

Mythology bestows numerous names to Nimrod, several very closely associated with titles attributed to Jesus Christ:

- As Mithras he was acknowledge as Mediator.
- Baal-berith – god of the covenant.
- Statues honour him on the Rainbow – sign of the covenant.
- Indian Vishnu honour him as ‘redeemer of mankind’ and also the ‘victim man’
- The Greek name for Nimron (Bacchus) is Dionysus of Dionusos meaning ‘the one who carries sin’
- Buddhists know him as ‘redeemer of the word’
- The Greek honoured the elevated god as ‘Zeus’
- An Egyptian legend tell of a voice on the day of his birth proclaiming ‘the god of the earth is born’
- Son-god. Every sunset symbolises the death of Nimrod, and every sunrise symbolises the resurrection of Nimrod. Nimrod therefor is found in the

¹² White, Lew (2001) *Fossilized Customs*. Paulshof: Qodesh Publishers. P. 12

¹³ White, Lew (2001) *Fossilized Customs*. Paulshof: Qodesh Publishers. P. 12

centre of sun-worship, often symbolised with a circle.

Zoroastrian ideas influenced the tribes of Judah and Benjamin with the captivity in Babylonia. Speculations even exist whereby Zoroastrian teachings are equal to the prophecies of Ezekiel.

This origin of worship bestowed to a man, the beginning of god-man, or god within man influenced orthodox Judaism. A sect, called the Pharisees, emerged to advance this concept. This was the foundation of Pantheistic theories and the origin of the Kabbalah of the Pharisees. The theory was conveyed verbally from one generation to the next for the first 800 years before it was transcribed into the Talmud.

Dr. Mc Loud¹⁴ stated:

The religion of the 'god-man' originated in Babel. It suited the Jews with their self-concept as being a higher or special selected race."

Relevant to this research is the conclusion made by Dr. Mc Loud:¹⁵ Modern Freemasonry still embraces the legend of Nimrod although they replaced the city of Baal with the Solomon's temple and Nimrod with Hiram Abiff. (Author's translation)

2.2 Kabbalah

Kabbalah (Hebrew: קַבָּלָה, literally "receiving/tradition"), is an esoteric method, discipline, and school of thought that originated in Judaism. Kabbalah's definition varies according to the tradition and aims of those following it, from its religious origin as an integral part of Judaism, to its later Christian, New Age, and Occultist syncretic adaptations. Kabbalah is a set of esoteric teachings meant to explain the relationship between an unchanging, eternal, and mysterious Ein Sof (infinity) and the mortal and finite universe (God's creation).¹⁶

¹⁴ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. 'n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. 2

¹⁵ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. 'n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. 2

¹⁶ Kabbalah. Available at <https://www.jstor.org/topic/kabbalah/?refreqid=excelsior%3A6fc4c23f1181cc15d9890f028cc4562c>

Pretorius¹⁷ interpreted the New World Order as a Jewish intellectual ideal from the middle ages as a result of the Jewish suppression by the Roman Catholic Church. Some Jews were executed because their knowledge of medicine was associated with sorcery. The root of the Jewish intelligence, or secret knowledge and Jewish secret science, called the “Jewish Ka ba la” from the Hebrew qabalah developed over centuries.

The kabala was transferred orally to elected individuals until the 7th century when it was documented and developed into a mystic religion according to which every letter and number in the Torah would represent a secret value and meaning. The Kabala also envisioned a one-ness with God, they sought knowledge with regards to the unknown and the hidden and supported messianism¹⁸.

David Hamidovic¹⁹ defined messianism as follows:

Messianism covers the waiting for a saviour named “messiah” in numerous contexts. In the majority of cases, a messiah is thought to appear unexpectedly and to solve a desperate problem. The term messianism was unknown in Antiquity; it is instead a term of modern scholarly discourse that is applied from an etic perspective. More precisely, it describes the messianic expectations concerning the emergence of a messiah, a figure of salvation arising in the end of times.

The Roman Catholic Church continued to suppress the Jewish community which led to a rising of antagonism against “Christianity”. Several Jews for example Michel Nostradamus ‘converted’ to what was called Catholic Jews, pretending to adapt to Roman Catholicism but continued to pursue their Jewish faith in secret. A fury against Christianity developed with a pledge to destroy Christianity. According to Manie Maritz²⁰ quoted by Adv. Pretorius, this group, the Illuminate,

¹⁷ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 10

¹⁸ Messianism, Jewish Messianism: The term messianism denotes a movement, or a system of beliefs and ideas, centred on the expectation of the advent of a messiah (derived from the Hebrew *mashiah*, "the anointed one." Available at: <https://www.encyclopedia.com/environment/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/messianism-jewish-messianism>

¹⁹ Hamidovic, David (2007) *Messianism*. Available at <http://www.oxfordbibliographies.com/view/document/obo-9780195393361/obo-9780195393361-0233.xml>

²⁰ Maritz, Manie Genl. (1939) *My Lewe en Strewes*. Pretoria: Aurora. P. 120 Quoted by Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 15

financed and conspired the reformation led by Martin Luther and John Calvin in opposition to the Catholic Church. These ‘selected’ Jews collected their grievances in ‘*The Protocols of the Elders of Sion*’.

The Kabbalah endeavoured to define the following concepts and through understanding attain spiritual realisation.

- The nature of human beings and the nature of the universe.
- The nature and purpose of existence
- Various ontological concepts.

Orthodox Jews interpreted the Biblical promise of God’s universal rule as a promise of a universal Jewish rule. Traditional Kabbalists believed the Kabbalah text earliest origin pre-dates religions, and as such it presented the primordial blueprint for creation's philosophies, religions, sciences, arts, and political systems. Historically, Kabbalah originated from earlier forms of Jewish mysticism and spread to Southern France and Spain during the 12th and 13th centuries. Renewed interpretation appeared during the Jewish mystical renaissance of 16th-century Ottoman Palestine. It was popularised in the form of Hasidic Judaism²¹ from the 18th century onwards. Twentieth-century interest in Kabbalah has stimulated cross-denominational Jewish renewal and contributed to a varied non-Jewish contemporary spirituality.

Dr. Mc Loud²² stated the following:

- The modern Kabbala accommodates the theoretical dealing with the theosophical whilst the practical deals with sorcery.
- Two books contain the theosophical theories:

²¹ Hasidic Jews are Orthodox, although they differ from Orthodox Jews in some respects. The word Hasidic comes from the Hebrew word *chesed*, meaning “lovingkindness.” The Hasidim are literally “those who do good deeds for others.” They are known for their separated living, their devotion to a dynastic leader, their exuberant, joyful worship, and their distinctive dress. Hasidic Jews believe that prayer and acts of lovingkindness are means of reaching God. Hasidic philosophy is less ritualistic than other branches of Judaism, and it places a greater emphasis on emotion, warmth, and inclusiveness. Available at: <https://www.gotquestions.org/Hasidic-Judaism.html>

²² Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction. P. B-4

Sepher Yetzirah, ‘The book of Creation’ detailing Godly unity and God’s revelation as ten Sephirots²³.

The Sepher-Ha-Zohar, ‘The Book of Light’ was presented by God to Adam via the angel Razael.

- Sorcery or the occultic science is incorporated in practical Kabbalah. Communication with spiritual beings are taught. The secret theology in essence is Luciferic.

2.2.1 The South African Application

In his review on the book of “Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd South Africa’s Greatest Prime Minister” by Stephen Mitford Goodson, M.C. Reidy²⁴ stated:

The book delves into both the assassination attempt of 1961 and Verwoerd's assassination by Manchurian candidate Tsafendas in September 1966 - linking the murder to the shadowy cabal headed by Anton Rupert and Harry Oppenheimer.

2.3 Talmud

Talmud (study) is the generic term for documents observing and expanding upon the Mishnah (repeating), the first work of rabbinic law, published around year 200 CE by Rabbi Judah the Patriarch in the land of Israel.²⁵ A collection of writings covering the full gamut of Jewish law and tradition. The primary text is the Mishnah, a collection of concise Hebrew teachings.

Rabbis continued to teach and expand on the original scripts. Several of these teachings were collected in two volumes, the Jerusalem Talmud, with the

²³ In the cabala, the first ten numerals, as attributes or intelligences and emanations of the Deity, compared to rays of light, and identified with Scripture names of God. Available at: <https://www.wordnik.com/words/sephiroth>

²⁴ Customer review by M.C. Reidy (June 27, 2018) on the comment ... *often portrayed by liberal South African media and the great man's cultural marxist antagonists.* Available at: <https://www.amazon.co.uk/Hendrik-Frensch-Verwoerd-Greatest-Minister/dp/1717041426>

²⁵ Talmud. Available at: <https://www.myjewishlearning.com/article/talmud-101/>

teachings of the rabbis in the Land of Israel, and the Babylonian Talmud, featuring the teachings of the rabbis of Babylon. These two works were written in the Aramaic dialects used in Israel and Babylonia respectively.²⁶

The teachings of the Talmud were regarded with higher reverence than the Law of Moses and regarded as elevated above every other law.²⁷ Relevant to this research is the Talmud’s expressed hatred towards Christians and the blasphemy with regards to Jesus Christ. Herewith an extract:

Pertaining to Christ

- Sanhedrin 67a: Jesus referred to as the son of Pandira, a soldier. Mother a prostitute.
- Zohar III (282): Died like a beast and buried in animal’s dung heap.
- Sanhedrin 67a: Jesus was hanged on the eve of Passover.
- Toldath Jeschu: The Birth of Christ related in most shameful expressions.

Pertaining to Christians

- Hilkhoth Akum (x1): Make no agreements and show no mercy to Christians.
- Makkoth (7b): Innocent of murder if intent was to kill a Christian.
- Schabbath (116a) Tos: Gospels called the volumes of iniquity, and heretical books.
- Babha Kama (112b): It is permitted for a Jew to deceive Christian.
- Iore Dea (158, 1): Christians who are NOT Jews’ enemies MUST ALSO DIE.

2.4 Order of the Knights Templars

The research did not accommodate a thorough research pertaining to the history

²⁶ What is Talmud. Available at: https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/3347866/jewish/What-Is-the-Talmud-Definition-and-Comprehensive-Guide.htm

²⁷ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1989) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. ‘n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: W S Mc Loud. Introduction.

of the Knights Templars. Emphasis remained on the historic and contemporary application to South Africa. The early history of the Knights seemed to have laid the foundation for the birth of the Freemasons. The latter established themselves in South Africa shortly after the Dutch’s arrival in the Cape in 1652 and is still very predominant in contemporary South Africa.

In the book “Operations of Mind Control”, Walter Bowart²⁸ described the “Invisible Government of Wise and Ross’ as ‘Cryptocracy’ – a form of government where the real leaders are hidden or unknown. The organisation referred to is identified as the ‘Order of Oriental Templars’, known as ‘OTO’. Heimlichner²⁹ described the OTO as follows:

The OTO is a traditional “fringe Masonic” or ‘irregular’ Order, a special group structure which exists in a fraternal relationship with top members of Grand Lodge ‘regular’ Freemasonry, minus official sanction, enabling convenient public disavowals and denial by the Grant Lodge when incriminating activities of these “irregular” lodges occasionally reach public awareness.

2.4.1 History

Marilyn Hopkins³⁰ observed ***that the foundation of the medieval Order of the Knights Templars bears all the hallmarks of a massive conspiracy.*** Her research dated the foundation of the Templars to 1118, although she speculated that it might be earlier. The Bishop of Chartes referred to the ‘Knighthood of Christ’ in 1114, suggesting the existence of the Templars.³¹

Research also confirmed secret meetings of twelve leading aristocratic Rex

²⁸ Heimlichner, Craig (2005) *Blood on the altar. The Secret history of the World’s Most Dangerous Secret Society*. Idaho, USA: Independent History & Research. P. 5

²⁹ Heimlichner, Craig (2005) *Blood on the altar. The Secret history of the World’s Most Dangerous Secret Society*. Idaho, USA: Independent History & Research. P. 7

³⁰ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 6

³¹ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 19

*deus*³² families of Scotland prior to the first crusade in 1097. A similar meeting was conducted after Jerusalem was destroyed. The first crusade began in 1097, departing on the march to Jerusalem on January 13. On June 7, the Crusaders reached Jerusalem and conquered the city on the 14th of July 1097. A new order of Knights was created to protect the pilgrimage routes in the Holy land.

The Knights reported to King Baldwin II on their arrival in Jerusalem declaring their intention to establish an order of warrior monks. They received quarters in the palace and the al-Aqsa mosque south of the Temple Mount, known by the crusaders as the Temple of Solomon. In 1120 the Templars received recognition of the patriarch of Jerusalem, Daimbert, the archbishop of Pisa.

The Bishop of Chartes reprimanded Hughes de Payen in a letter dated 1114 for abandoning his wife to vow himself for the “knighthood of Christ”. Evidence is available referring to Hugh de Payen as the first Grand Master of the Poor Militia of Christ.

For the first nine years, the Templars wore ordinary clothes until the patriarch bestowed white cloaks as a symbol of purity and the red two-barred cross as insignia to symbolise the Free French forces. They officiated the ‘uniform’ mantles with the red cross to distinguish them as Christ’s Knights, and an emblem of martyrdom only after the election of Pope Eugenius III.³³

The order was known by several names including ‘The Poor fellow-soldiers of Jesus Christ and the Temple of Solomon’, ‘The Knights of the Temple of Solomon’, ‘The Knights of the Holy Grail’, ‘The Knights of the Temple’, ‘The

³² Rex Deus. Titus, son of Emperor Vespasian campaigned in Judea, besieged and almost destroyed Jerusalem in 70AD. The Jewish Elders hid their treasures and fled to Europe where many married into noble families. Twenty-four became patriarchs, known as the “Rex Deus” families. The original knights of the nine Knights Templar were either born or related to the Rex Deus families. *Crusader History*. Available at: <https://crusaderhistory.wordpress.com/2018/12/11/knights-templar-rex-deus-treasure/>

³³ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 20

Temple, or the ‘The Templars’.³⁴

The order expanded exponentially to the extent that they obtained considerable power and influence. Due to their wealth and land ownership, estimated at 9000 properties over Europe at the time of their suppression, they laid the foundation for modern capitalism and international banking. Apart from the acquisition of land, properties across Europe and Israel included fortified buildings, farms, (farmhouses, barns, stables) dormitory blocks, workshops, chapels, prisons, harbours, churches, temples, castles, cathedrals etc. Their fleet surpassed all state fleets.

The architecture and construction of Gothic cathedrals claimed to be inspired by Templar knowledge of sacred geometry: A three-dimensional code that conveyed a hidden message in an architectural form of **“la langue verte – the green language, or language of initiation (a verbal code used to speak without fear of being reported to the church authorities).”**³⁵

“Chartres Cathedral has been described as ‘a hymn to gnostic, initiatory spirituality, a melodic symphony in stone that is a visible celebration of divine harmony. The Amiens cathedral is said to celebrate the gnostic principle of divine wisdom.’”³⁶

A guild of specialist craftsmen was responsible for the architecture and construction of the Gothic cathedrals. Skilled masons taught the principles of the sacred geometry of the Cistercians to apprentices as they moved between building sites known as the “tour de France.” Progress in skill was acknowledged in three successive degrees: apprentice, companion and master. The craft masons consisted of three individual groups:

- Children of Solomon responsible to build the great Gothic Cathedrals. A close relationship between the Templars and the Children of Solomon is

³⁴ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 20

³⁵ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 33

³⁶ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 34

evident from the Templars authority to pardon them a “Rule of Life” in 1145.

- Children of Master Jacques, known as bridge builders.
- Children of Father Soubise, responsible for constructing ecclesiastical buildings.

In 1138 Pope Innocent II declared the Templars autonomous and accountable to him alone and as such safeguarded them from any other authority. By this declaration, the Templars became the “**most independent religious order in the Christian³⁷ world.**”³⁸

Various Knights Orders existed:

- Knights Templar, the primary crusading military order in the East during the 12th and 13th centuries. The defender of Christianity and members of Rx Deux. They regarded the Holy land to be rightfully theirs.
- The Knights Hospitaller or The Order of the Knights of the Hospital of St John, formed in the 11th century preceded the Knights Templar. Original a monastic brotherhood providing medical services to pilgrims and crusaders.
- The Teutonic Knights founded in 1190-91 as a hospital order was formally recognised by the Church on March 5, 1198. Knights joined the German founders of the Hospital of St. Mary to establish the new order of Teutonic Knights. Their white cloaks with a black cross created the idea that they were related to the Knights Templars.
- The Templars and Hospitallers, highly trained professional soldiers always posed a threat to the Islam military. The Templars established their dominion in the Holy Land by the end of the second Crusade (1147-1149).

³⁷ Author’ note: Pertaining to Hopkins’ reference to ‘Christian’; it is relevant to note that the implication is to Roman Catholicism. As such, it is debatable if it should be referred to as ‘Christian’.

³⁸ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 6

2.4.2 Templars Organisation

Head of the Templar Order: Grand Master

- Elected for life.
- The county of Tripoli and Antioch in the Kingdom of Jerusalem each had a Grand Master.

Provincial authority: Provincial Commander

- Commanded lower ranking officials in provinces.

Calvary soldiers: Knights

- Professional trained warriors.
- Any Knight, unmarried and fee with no connection to any other religion were allowed to apply to join the Knights Templar.

Sergeants: Commoners who fought alongside the Knights and working brothers responsible for the domestic needs.

Priests: Ordained members forbidden to fight.

Meetings were known as Chapter meetings. The Divine office accommodated ritual readings or chanting of letters of revered theologians or Bible passages. Admission originally required a training period. Members were divided into two categories:

Outer Circle

- Ordinary sergeants, craftsmen, and auxiliary members.
- Loyalists to the Catholic Church

Inner Circle

- Rex Deus members had a right of birth to attain higher orders of the three inner circles.
- Constituted of 70 Knights who proved themselves to be trustworthy to receive dangerous knowledge.
- Gnostics and Heretics. Templar Order seals displayed gnostic and dualistic beliefs.

2.4.3 Hidden Symbolism and Religion

The Templars were accused of venerating Baphomet. Two interpretations exist: the first claimed that the head of John the Baptist was the true Baphometric head of the Templars. The second was an esoteric code used by the Essenes that translated Baphomet to ‘Sophia’, the spiritual principle of Wisdom, usually associated as a Greek goddess.

Churches associated with the Rex Deus or Templars acknowledged two individuals as authoritative over Jesus: John the Baptist, Jesus’ spiritual guide and teacher and John the evangelist, also described as John the Divine.

‘Divine Mother’ pagan worship is foundational to the Roman Catholic worship of Mary, described as the ‘cult of Mariolatry’.³⁹ Veneration of the Black Madonna disguised the heretical worship of Isis and her Horus Child, the principle or symbol of divine wisdom. Egyptian tradition associated black with wisdom, as such, Magdalene is often portrayed dressed in black with the crown of stars of Sophia. Her infant wears a golden crown of royalty.

Isis, the black Egyptian goddess, venerated as the initiate of light or enlightenment, the divine mother of the god Horus, embodying the Classical Greek goddess of wisdom, Sophia.⁴⁰

Mary Magdalene was believed to be the wife of Jesus and the mother of his children. She received specific adoration from the inner circle. The instructions of Bernard of Clairvaux “Obedience to Bethany and the House of Mary and Martha” translates to ‘obedience and loyalty to the dynasty founded by Mary Magdalene and Jesus. Ordinary members of the outer circle adhered to the Catholic Church adoration of Mary, mother of Jesus.

³⁹ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 93

⁴⁰ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 94

Charles Bigarne⁴¹ discovered that some statues of Isis bear similar descriptions as the one found on the virgin in NorteDane-Souos-Terre.

Rudolf Steine⁴² claimed the interpretation of the sacred symbolism varies depending on the level of the initiate. The lower levels conclude with Mary, mother of Jesus. The esoteric interpretation of the Black Madonna as representative of Mother Mary.

2.4.4 The End of the Templars

Jerusalem was permanently lost to Christians after Egyptian forces reinforced by Khorezmanian Turks sieged the city. The Templar Order lost the primary reason for their existence.

Muslims defeated Christian forces at the final battle at La Forbie. An estimated 800 crusaders were taken prisoner and sold as slaves. Thirty-three Templar Knights survived, 260-300 were killed. The order’s fall from grace was sudden, dramatic, and brutal. On Friday October 13,1307, the Grand Master Jacques de Molay. Most of the Knights in France (60 knights of the inner circle and all but 24 of the knights) were arrested.

Charges against the Templars included⁴³:

- Heresy, sodomy, and blasphemy.
- Causing injuries to Christ more terrible than those He endured on the cross.
- Adoration of an idol known as Baphomet.

⁴¹ Wallace-Murphy, Tim (2005) *Cracking the Symbol Code: The Heretical Message within Church and Renaissance Art*. London: Watkins Media. Available at: https://books.google.co.za/books/about/Cracking_the_Symbol_Code.html?id=PNP9CwAAQBAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=kp_read_button&redir_esc=y#v=onepage&q&f=false

⁴² Steiner, Rudolf (October 2, 1916) *The Templars*. Lecture given in Dornach. Authorised Translation from the German Notes. Available at: <https://wn.rsarchive.org/GA/GA0171/19161002p01.html>

⁴³ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 114

- Performing a perverted sacrament.
- Wearing a cord of heretical significance,
- Ritual murder
- A ritual kiss
- Alteration in the ceremony of the Mass
- Unorthodox form of absolution
- Immortality
- Treachery to other sections of the Christian forces.

The inquisition involved immense torture resulting in death or permanent disability for the few that survived. Grand Master Jacques de Molay and Geoffroi de Charney, preceptor of Normandy was burned at the stake to ensure a slow painful death. Before he died, Molay cursed both the king and the pope. They died on April 20th and November 29th, respectively.

Scotland became the safe haven for many Templar refugees in 1314. The Templars pledged allegiance and fought in the civil war to secure victory for Robert de Bruce. In an additional act of gratitude and recognition the Templars ordained Bruce as the Sovereign Grand Master of the Templar Order.

2.4.5 The Knight Templars Association with the Freemasons

‘Born in Blood’, authored by Robinson⁴⁴ narrated the association between the dissolved order and various craftsmen guilds. This union resulted in the grafts eventually developing into Freemasonry.

Under the guidance of the St. Clair’s of Rosslyn, the hidden members of the Templar Order selected suitable candidates from the operative craft guild to receive instruction in various branches of esoteric knowledge, which included science, geometry, history, philosophy, and the contents of the scrolls possible discovered by the Templars under the Temple mount in Jerusalem. This new brotherhood of “free” Masons created charitable

⁴⁴ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 124

institutions that supported the poorer members of society, the first institutions to be set up that were not within the direct control of the Church. The prime movers behind the transformation of the guilds of operative Masons into Freemasonry were almost certainly the Templars.⁴⁵

Hopkins⁴⁶ presented the following evidence to support claimed association of the Templars and the Freemasons.

- The Royal Arch Degrees and Scottish Rite Freemasonry founded on the Declaration of Arbroath⁴⁷ in 1320, were the result of ordinary workers Superior erudition and intricacy secured by means of the teaching of sacred rituals. The Royal Arch Degrees as well as the Scottish Rite were later incorporated into a formal constitution for Scottish Rite Freemasonry.
- French lodges reserved original esoteric teachings and maintained loyal affiliation with the Scottish structures. The rite of “Strict Observance” reported on the visitations of the lodges of Compannonage in France to the lodge in Aberdeen in 1361.
- The association of the Order of Templars and the Freemasons is symbolised in the rite of “Knight of the East and the West” which commemorates the foundation of the Order of the Templars. The rite commemorates the founding of the Templars by 11 knights in 1118 under the supervision of the patriarch of Jerusalem.
- Andrew Michael Ramsay, graduandi of Edinburgh fled to France (1710) where he was ordained as a Knight of the Order of St. Lazarus. Active in the French Freemasonry (Chancellor of the Grand Lodge of Paris and Chevalier of the

⁴⁵ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books. P. 124

⁴⁶ Hopkins, Marilyn (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books.

⁴⁷ Declaration of Arbroath: The Declaration of Arbroath, also known as the Declaration of Scottish Independence, was a diplomatic letter from the Scots to the Pope in 1320, calling for Scotland to be recognised as an independent kingdom against English claims of over lordship. It is thought to be one of the earliest written arguments for popular sovereignty and one of the most significant statements of nationhood in Europe. The Declaration is one of the primary foundation stones of Scottish identity, but its influence is international. In 2016 the Declaration was also awarded ‘Memory of the World’ status by UNESCO World Heritage. Barr, A.R. *The illustrated declaration of Arbroath*. Available at: <https://andrewbarr.com/arbroath2020/>

Order of St. Lazarus). He propagated that Freemasons originated from the crusaders and their effort to liberate the Holy Land. By oath, the knightly masons were committed to their calling to rebuild the temple of God. He presented no evidence to substantiate this theory and the alleged origin of Freemasonry from kings, priests, knights, and nobility. On their return from the crusades, they established lodges in France, Italy, Spain, Germany, and Scotland.

He disregarded the view that Freemasonry originated from medieval craftsmen and favoured the theory that the knightly Masons originated from the Scottish who supported and sustained the Templars. Scotland’s Lord Steward, Grand Master of the Lodge of Kilwinning in particular, and Scotland in general was faithful to provide protection to the returning crusaders/knights/early masons. Inspired by Ramsay, one French system initiated a “new” system with 33 degrees and adopted the name “Scottish Rite Freemasonry”.

- Baron von Hund, a German nobleman recounted the origin of the Freemasons disclosed in a secret initiation ceremony: a group of knights of the Templar Order escaped the suppression and sought refuge in Scotland. They joined a guild of working masons and were able to secure the survival of their order. Grand Masters were successfully appointed after the death of Jacques de Molay. Von Hund initiated the lodge “Rite of Strict Observance” but received no further instructions. Hunt and those present at his acceptance ceremony was killed in the Jacobite rebellion⁴⁸ of 1745. Six years after his death, a

⁴⁸ Jacobites: The Jacobite movement emerged from the overthrow of the Catholic king, James VII of Scotland and II of England, in favour of his Protestant daughter and son-in-law, Mary II and William of Orange, during the ‘Glorious’ revolution of 1688-89. Jacobites (named after the Latin for James, *Jacobus*) sought to restore James and his heirs to the British and Irish thrones. *Who were the Jacobites and what did they want for Scotland?* (April 24, 2018) University of Dundee. Available at: <https://www.dundee.ac.uk/humanities/news/2018/article/who-were-the-jacobites-and-what-did-they-want-for-scotland-public-lecture.php>

Jacobite rebellion: The Stuarts had reigned in Scotland for centuries, and the Jacobites craved the reinstatement of the Stuart male line. The rebellion was a reaction to the union of Scotland and England in 1707. *History Extra. 10 things you didn’t know about Bonnie Prince Charlie and the Jacobites.* (May 2016) Available at: <https://www.historyextra.com/period/georgian/10-things-you-probably-didnt-know-about-bonnie-prince-charlie-and-the-jacobites/>

convention of ‘reformed’ Masonic groups held in Willhelmsbad rejected von Hund’s claims and approved “Rectified Scottish Rite” which moderated the Templar connection.

- Historians debate the validity of the Charter of Larmenius, allegedly discovered in 1804. The document contains information of the Charter, Molay’s nomination of Jean-Marc Larmenius, a Templar in Cyprus as successor and the confirmation of the continuation of the Templars after the suppression. The author of the documents confirmed the survival of the Templar Order in Scotland.

2.4.6 Current

The website “Sovereign Magistral Order of the Temple of Solomon”⁴⁹ proclaim the modern and re-emergence of the Order of the Knights Temple by stating the following:

The Sovereign Magistral Order of the Temple of Solomon is the direct lineal continuation of the 12th century historical institution of the original Knights Templar from 1118 AD. The modern Templar Order has been legally a canonically restored to the full depth and substance of its ancient and medieval heritage, and to its original legitimacy as a chivalric, nobiliary and ecclesiastical institution.

The Restoration of the Order of the Temple of Solomon, re-establishing its authentic status of public legitimacy, was successfully accomplished through laborious efforts. This was intended to provide the practical support of infrastructure and legal capacities of international scope, with revitalizing new infusions of ancient Templar sacred knowledge and scholarship.

As a result, all who sincerely desire to live the True Life of Chivalry, as a practical way of life of great relevance and profound significance in the modern era, can now “come home” in Brotherhood and Sisterhood, under the banner of the most famous Order in recorded history, within the fortress of its official capacities of statehood as a sovereign subject of international law.

⁴⁹ Order of the Temple of Solomon: Direct Continuation of the Original Knights Templar from 1118 AD. Available at: <https://www.knightstemplarorder.org/knights-templar/>

This restored medieval Order is based on monastic principles, dedicated to humble service in its historical missions of upholding good against evil, as Defenders of All Faith and Guardians of Justice for humanity. All members are required to make it their priority to support the authentic Templar humanitarian missions of the Order itself, and not to use the Order for their own private ambitions.

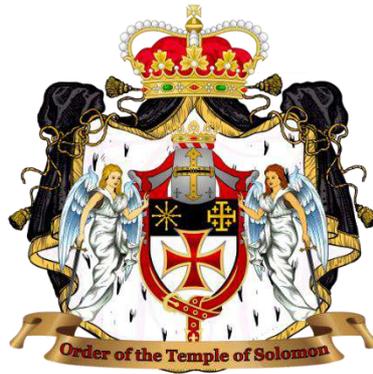


Figure 1: Official heraldic coat of arms of the Government of the Templar Order as a non-territorial Principality and sovereign subject of international law.⁵⁰

Patrick Masters⁵¹ on December 30, 2019 commented on contemporary status of the Templars:

The Templar legacy has grown beyond their medieval military role and the name has become synonymous with the occult, conspiracies, the Holy Grail, and the Freemasons. But these are all false narratives—fantastical, but misleading.

The real legacy of the Templars remains with the Portuguese Order of Knights, Ordem dos Cavaleiros de Nosso Senhor Jesus Cristo (Order of the Knights of Jesus Christ). This order was created by King Diniz in 1319 with Papal permission due to the prominent role the Templars played in establishing the kingdom of Portugal. The new knighthood even moved into the Templars’ former headquarters at Tomar.

Membership of this Order is open only by invitation and also only to those of the Trinitarian Christian Faith. Members are required to be five (5) years a Master Mason and two (2) years a member of a Royal Arch Chapter before being considered for membership. Requests to join are not entertained. (Source: “An Initial Guide to Freemasonry in Ireland”, Grand Lodge of Ireland)

⁵⁰ Order of the Temple of Solomon: Direct Continuation of the Original Knights Templar from 1118 AD. Available at: <https://www.knightstemplarorder.org/knights-templar/>

⁵¹ Masters, Patrick (December 30, 2019) *The true history of the conspiracy theories about the Knights Templar*. Available at: <https://qz.com/1777098/the-source-of-the-knights-templar-mythologies/>

2.4.7 The South African Application

2.4.7.1 First Voyage Around the Cape, Sponsored and Captained by Templars

Portuguese Templars modified their name to the Knights of Christ. This aided their survival into the sixteenth century. Templar knights found refuge in Portugal after the European financed expeditions to find new worlds⁵². Their maritime explorations impacted the discourse of world history irreversible. Prince Henry the Navigator was a grand Master of the Order⁵³. One of the most remarkable achievements as a result of the Templar sponsorship was the successful voyage around the Cape of Good Hope by Bartolomeu Dias in 1488.

Vasco da Gama – a Knight of Christ captained the first successful voyage from Portugal to India in 1497. Ships of the Knights of Christ sailed under the Templars' familiar red pattern cross.

2.4.7.2 South African Templars Ordained

Pres Mbeki was admitted to the British royal order of chivalry by the organisation's Grand Prior, the Duke of Gloucester, a grandson of George the Fifth. The order, whose sovereign head is Queen Elizabeth II, was first granted official recognition by the British Crown in 1888, a year after the establishment of its well-known St John Ambulance Brigade, though its roots stretch back centuries to the Crusades.

Membership is by invitation only, and those chosen as Knights are expected to help focus attention on the betterment of living conditions of poor and disadvantaged communities.⁵⁴

⁵² Portugal.com The Golden Age. Available at: <https://portugal.com/portugal/information/history/discoveries-golden-age>

Good Hope (November 23, 2016) Available at: <https://www.vendeeglobe.org/en/news/16383/good-hope>

⁵³ Portugal: The Knights of Christ. Available at: <http://www.lundyisleofavalon.co.uk/templars/tempic051.htm>

⁵⁴ IOL (May 10, 2007) *Mbeki IS a Knight of St John*. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/mbeki-is-a-knight-of-st-john-352454>

2.4.7.3 South African Templars

The website of the District Grand Lodge South Africa North (www.dglsanorth.co.za) listed “other orders” incorporated in Freemasonry. Two “other orders” are the Knights Templar and KT Priests.

It seems that the South African Knights – similar to the Knights Templar Order in Ireland, is an order of Freemasonry. The website confirms the origin of the Order in South Africa in Ireland where records of the order is dated in the late 1700’s.

knightstemplarpriest.com confirm requirements of membership as follows:

Apart from being a Master Mason for three years and confession of the Trinitarian Christian faith, subscribing Masonic members belonging to one the following might be considered for membership:

- A Craft Lodge
- A Royal Arch Chapter
- A Knights Templar Preceptory.

The mentioned website listed eight Tabernacles in South Africa: Pinelands (Cape Town), Somerset West, Port Elizabeth, Durban, Camperdown (south of Pietermaritzburg), Parktown, Germiston, and Polokwane.

In 1755, the High Knights Templar in Ireland accommodated a Priestly Order. The degree was established in 1807.⁵⁵ The South African Order of the Knights Templar Priests owes its origin to District Grand Secretary W. Bro. George Walter Hookham and Provincial Prior Rt. III Kt. Pt. Arthur Murphy. Julien Missak, A.G. Olivier and A.C. Green were the only South African Knight Templar Priests although the Tabernacle was not established at the time. Hookham petitioned for the approval of a Tabernacle in South Africa resulting in the establishment of the Kosmos Tabernacle No. 38. The first meeting held on 4th April 1968 restricted

⁵⁵ The Holy Royal Arch Knight Templar Priests and Order of Holy Wisdom. Available at: http://knighttemplarpriests.com/?page_id=14

membership to leaders of the masonic community in Johannesburg. Hookham’s 1972 report listed seven present and past rulers

The most recent Tabernacle to be consecrated was the Cape Peninsula Tabernacle No. 213 on 1st November 2001 at Pinelands in Cape Town. South African Knight Templar Priests have much to be proud of in the way that in spite of tremendous difficulties, both political and economic, they have kept the Order alive and well over the past thirty years. It is obvious that the spirit of George Hookham lives on: Long may it continue to do so!⁵⁶



Figure 2: Order of the Knight Templar Priest South Africa⁵⁷

2.5 Jesuits

“My history of the **Jesuits** is not eloquently written, but it is supported by unquestionable authorities, [and] is very particular and very horrible. Their [the **Jesuit Order**’ s] restoration [in 1814 by Pope Pius VII] is indeed a step toward darkness, cruelty, despotism, [and] death. ... I do not like the appearance of the **Jesuits**. If ever there was a body of men who merited eternal damnation on earth and in hell, it is this **Society of [Ignatius de] Loyola**.”

John Adams (1735-1826; 2nd President of the United States)



John Adams

Figure 3: Photo of John Adams (1735-1826; 2nd President of the United States)⁵⁸

⁵⁶ Knights Templar Priests. The Order in South Africa. Available at: https://www.dglsanorth.org.za/lodge_Histories/History_of_the_KTP_Order_in_South_Africa.pdf

⁵⁷ Knights Templar Priests. The Order in South Africa. Available at: https://www.dglsanorth.org.za/lodge_Histories/History_of_the_KTP_Order_in_South_Africa.pdf

⁵⁸ John Adams. Available at: <https://tabublog.com/2017/07/27/what-famous-men-had-to-say-about-the-jesuit-order/>

The Jesuit, known as the apostolic religious, are the largest group of male religious (priests and brothers) within the Catholic Church. There are around 18,000 Jesuits worldwide called to serve the church in a variety of means. Therefore, Jesuits could be teachers, doctors, astronomers, historians, and mathematicians etc. A key aspect of the ministry is the service to the poor and vulnerable.⁵⁹

The Society of Jesuits was founded by St Ignatius Loyola. While recovering from a broken leg he noted extraordinary spiritual experiences. Titled “Spiritual Exercises” he shared his insights with nine men who joined him in establishing the Jesuit order with approval of Pope Paul III.

The Jesuits became the largest group of male religious (priests and brothers) within the Catholic Church, known as the “apostolic religious” (Called to be with Christ at the heart of the world).⁶⁰ The only female Jesuit was Joanna of Austria, daughter of Charles V and Empress Isabel of Portugal, born on June 24, 1535. She made her vows in secret in 1557 but was never allowed to publicly or officially participate in the Jesuit ministry.⁶¹ Elizabeth Scalia⁶² reported on April 19, 2019 pertaining to the successful lobby to allow women in the organisation:

In a move that is sure to reverberate within the deepest corridors of the Vatican, members of the Society of Jesus have today announced that they will be admitting women into the Society as full Sisters. “They can’t be ordained, at least not yet,” said James Martin, the Jesuit author of the best-selling book Jesus: A Pilgrimage, “but as Jesuits in service to the church and the world, we feel it is important at this time to validate the history of holy women within the church, and to help make them and their gifts more visible. Our Ignatian-minded sisters will be fully-recognized Jesuits.”

Saint Ignatius of Loyola, founder of the Jesuits defined the two-fold purpose of the Jesuits:

- Participation in public life in addition to sacramental priestly duties.
- Service to the poor and marginalised.

⁵⁹ A brief word about the Jesuits. Available at: <https://sj.org.za/about-us/>

⁶⁰ Jesuits South Africa. A brief word about the Jesuits. Available at: <https://sj.org.za/about-us/>

⁶¹ Bello, Adriana (August 28, 2017) *Meet the only Jesuit women in history*. Available at: <https://aleteia.org/2017/08/28/meet-the-only-jesuit-woman-in-history/>

⁶² Scalia, Elizabeth. (April 1, 2019) *Jesuits to admit women: Who will be the first female Jebsies?* Available at: <https://the anchoress.com/jesuits-to-admit-women-who-will-be-the-first-female-jebsies/>

Due to their commitment to education in erecting schools and academic research they deserved to be called the ‘schoolmasters of Europe” during the 16th and 17th century.⁶³

- By 1750, 30 of the world’s 130 astronomical observatories were managed by Jesuit astronomers.
- 35 lunar craters have been named to honour Jesuit scientists.
- The “Gregorian” calendar developed Jesuit Christopher Clavius, the most influential teacher of the Renaissance.
- Ferdinand Verbiest determined the Russo-Chinese border
- Five of the eight major rivers of the world were first charted by Jesuit explorers.
- Jesuit explorers found Sao Paulo.
- Jesuits were responsible for the upliftment of 57 settlements in Paraguay in 1767 serving 113 716 indigenous natives.

Pope Clement XIV, threatened that the Bourbon courts would cancel his Papal status and that European countries will follow the example of Henry VIII who abandoned the Roman Catholic Church, issued his brief *Dominus ac Redemptor* suppressing the society in 1773. Twenty-three thousand Jesuits were disbanded, except in Russia where Empress Catherine rejected the promulgation and 200 continued with their service. As a result of the suppression, schools and libraries were abandoned, books sold or burned.

Pope Pius VII restored the society 41 years later in 1814. Their educational history infused imaginations and new members joined in great numbers. Their primary focus on education prevailed until today.

This thesis did not aim to incorporate in-depth research into conspiracy theories. It did however accept the reality of secret agendas of elitist and alleged secret societies with the aim to establish a new world order by means of a great reset.

⁶³ A Brief History of the Jesuits. Available at: <http://faculty.fairfield.edu/jmac/sj/briefsjhistory.htm>

The following quotation was not presented as the truth for it could not be verified. It was included to entice additional research with regards to the Jesuits:⁶⁴:

In 1540, Ignatius Loyola started the Jesuit Order for the purpose of restoring the Temple power of the Pope over the reclaimed Nations of the world, to bring Nations back to the obedient workshop under the papacy rules. The Jesuit Order actually began with the establishment of the City of London, which is now an 800-year corporation that controls finance from an entity called ‘The Crown’. This entity is the creator and controller of the BIS, the Bank of England, the US Federal Reserve, the World Bank, the IMF, The European Union, and various cartels and corporations across the earth. The Crown Identity is kept most secret, and The Crown Bank of England took and assumed control of the United States during Theodore Roosevelt Administration (1901-1909) when its agents, who were really Crown agents (J. P. Morgan), took over 25% of American business. The Crown has never been the King or Queen of England since the establishment of the corporate body, but the British Monarchy is a figurehead for The Crown, rules parliament in Great Britain and has authority over the Prime Ministers through a Vatican knighthood called the Order of the Garter. The Order of the Garter is the secret inner group which is an elite group within the Order of St. John of Jerusalem which is the British part of the Knights of Malta. The Knights of the Garter are the leaders of the Committee of 300 formed by East India Company. The main shareholders of The Honourable East India Company were all based in protected Switzerland which has been neutral since the start of the creation of the little horn new unHoly Roman Empire back in 1814 with the Congress of Vienna. An invisible Empire commanded by the Priesthood of Baal and Jesuit trained King Juan Carlos of Spain.

The Sovereign Military Order of Malta (SMOM) or Knights of Malta, are the military arm of the Vatican while the Jesuit Order (IHS=Isis, Horus, Seb), is the intelligence arm of the Vatican and the Jesuit Order controls all the world secret societies through the umbrella of freemasonry which is international. The Jesuit Order is, since 1814, in complete control of the - obscenely wealthy - Vatican institution.

The Jesuits are a military organization, not a religious order. Their chief is a general of an army, not the mere father abbot of a monastery. And the aim of this organization is POWER. Power in its most despotic exercise. Absolute power, universal power, power to control the world by the volition of a single man . . .

The General of the Jesuits insists on being master, sovereign, over the sovereign. Wherever the Jesuits are admitted they will be masters, cost what it may . . .

⁶⁴ The Jesuit Order of the Holy Roman Empire. Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/06/the-jesuit-order-of-holy-roman-empire.html>

Every act, every crime, however atrocious, is a meritorious work, if committed for the interest of the Society of the Jesuits, or by the order of the general.⁶⁵

The real powerhouse is 114 Mount Street, Mayfair, London W1K 3AH, UK. And let's not forget St Patrick's Cathedral, which is basically across the street from the Royal Institute Of International Affairs, the Tavistock, Rockefeller center and US Embassy. And the real powerhouse of the U.S. is Jesuit Georgetown university.

The Jesuits Order presently controls various other organizations together with the Military Order of Malta, such as:

- **The United Nations, the New World Order government**
- **NATO, the military power**
- **European Commission the 4th Reich of the Holy Roman Empire**
- **Council on Foreign Relations and other thinkers, policy makers**
- **various central banks, the ponzy scheme fiat currency system**
- **big corporations to monopolize the world**
- **secret services (CIA, Mossad, Interpol, NSA, MI6, KGB, ...)**
- **numerous societies and cults, such as Freemasonry ("The Brotherhood") and Opus Dei (The Holy Mafia)**

“The Knights of Malta are the militia of the Black Pope, and are sworn to total obedience by a blood oath which is taken extremely seriously and to the death. The Black Pope, as the head of the Vatican, is also the head of a foreign national power.⁶⁶

In order to reach the highest level in the Pentagon establishment, you must be an illuminated Freemason and/or a Knight of one order or another. Nelson Mandela is listed as a notable Jesuit.

2.5.1 Significance of Jesuit Pope (Black Pope)

The Superior General of the Jesuits is informally known as “the Black Pope”, referring to the black cassock worn by the Jesuits. Bound by oath, Jesuits do not seek higher office in the Roman Catholic Church.⁶⁷ The Black Pope is elected at

⁶⁵ Memorial of the Captivity of Napoleon at St. Helena, by General Montholon, vol. ii. pp. 62, 174 as quoted in *Fifty Years in the Church of Rome* (chapter 59) by Charles Chiniquy, converted Roman Catholic priest. Available at: <https://www.jesus-is-lord.com/chamber.htm>

⁶⁶ "Encyclopaedia of Freemasonry and Its Kindred Sciences" by Albert G. Mackey 33rd degree Mason, published by the Masonic History Company, Chicago, New York, & London, 1925: (Volume One, pp. 392-95)

⁶⁷ Bell, Caleb K. (March 14, 2013) *Why the first Jesuit pope is a big deal*. RNS Religion News Service. Available at: <https://religionnews.com/2013/03/14/why-the-first-jesuit-pope-is-a-big-deal/>

the Jesuit headquarters, a block from the Vatican.⁶⁸ For the first time, on March 13, 2020, Pope Francis, Jesuit leader was also elected to the Roman Catholic highest office. The head of the Catholic Church, sovereign of the Vatican City State, Bishop of Rome, Vicar of Christ, Pontifex Maximus⁶⁹ (Greatest Pontiff). It is significant for several reason.

He is the first pope from the Southern hemisphere, the first from South America, thus the first non-European since Syrian Gregory III from the 8th century. He is also the only pope to take the name Francis—evoking the humility of St Francis of Assisi, a 12th century Italian monk. Most astounding of all, he is the only member of the Society of Jesus to be elected pope.⁷⁰ Thus, the first Black Pope who also reign as the White Pope.

2.5.2 Significance of the Grey Pope

While the Black Pope is the head of the Jesuits, the White Pope head of the Catholic Church, the Grey Pope is the head of the bloodline families. These three individuals are considered to be the most powerful men in the world.⁷¹

Pepe Orsini, also known as Orso of the Roman Maximus Clan is the Grey Pope and the King of the Holy Roman Papal Bloodlines. He is superior to the Rothchild’s and Rockefeller families, but equal to the Breakspear, Aldobrandini and other Papal families. The Grey Pope and the Black Pope work as associates

⁶⁸ Pullella, Philip (January 7, 2008) *Jesuits gather in Rome to elect new “black pope”*. Available at: <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-religion-jesuits-idUSL0646796520080107>

⁶⁹ Pontus Maximus: The head priest of the Roman state religion. UNRV Roman History. Available at: <https://www.unrv.com/culture/pontifex-maximus.php>

⁷⁰ The Economist E.H. (March 19, 2013) *Who are the Jesuits, exactly?* Available at: <https://www.economist.com/the-economist-explains/2013/03/19/who-are-the-jesuits-exactly>

⁷¹ NewYork.org. The Black Pope, Head of the Jesuits, And the Grey Pope Head of the Bloodline Families, Also Rule from the Vatican. Available at: <https://www.newyork.org/government/the-black-pope-head-of-the-jesuits-and-the-gray-pope-head-of-the-bloodline-families-also-rule-from-the-vatican>

in the Society of Jesus. The Orsini family is believed to be the Zoroastrianist shadow hierarchy of the Jesuit Order.

The Cecil family were controlled by the powerful Jesuit family known as the Pallavicini. Maria Camilla Pallavicini is far more powerful than Queen Elizabeth II. The Queen and Prince Philip are totally subordinate to the Papal Bloodline the Breakspear Family and their Jesuit UKHQ at 114 Mount Street.⁷²

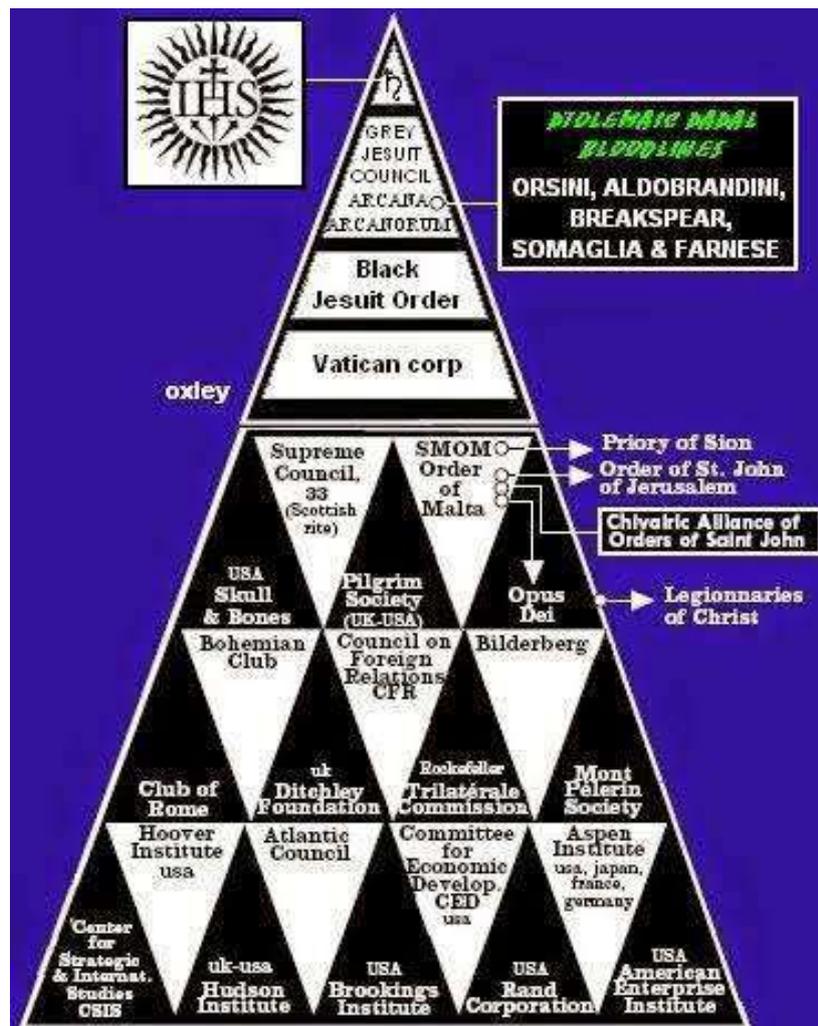


Figure 4: Diagram illustrating a theory pertaining to the possible hierarchy of alleged Jesuit power.⁷³

⁷² The Jesuit Vatican New World Order. Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/08/the-jesuit-vatican-new-world-order.html>

⁷³ The Jesuit Vatican Power. Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/08/the-jesuit-vatican-new-world-order.html>

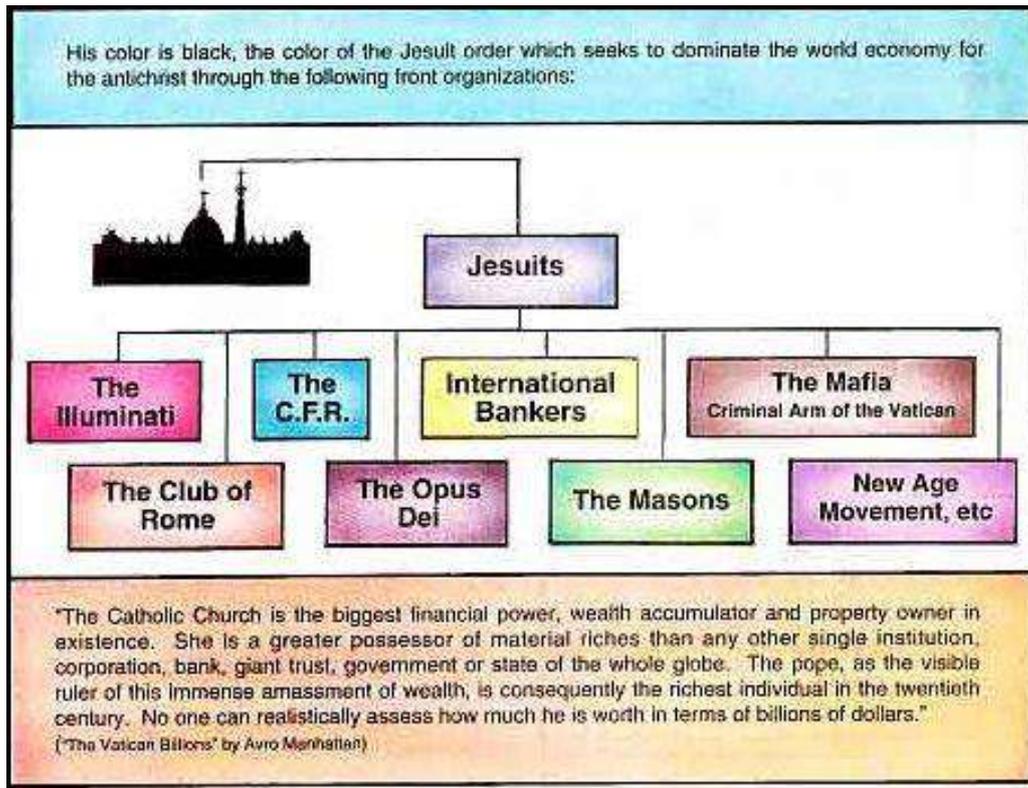


Figure 5: An interpretation of the Jesuit authority in the World esoteric organisations⁷⁴

2.5.3 The South African Application

2.5.3.1 The Society of Jesus (Jesuit) African History

An Oxford study⁷⁵ confirmed research challenges pertaining to Jesuits in South Africa similar to African history in general. Information is not well documented and therefore scares.

From the time of their founding in 1540 to the present day, and because of a combination of historical factors, the members of the Society of Jesus (as their order is officially known) have viewed the continent as an appropriate mission territory. The Jesuits have been intermittently present in various

⁷⁴ Mullen, Gretchen. Jesuits are the Illuminati and I charge of the New World Order? Conspiracy theories. Available at: <https://skepticroview.com/2018/05/03/jesuits-are-the-illuminati-and-in-charge-of-the-new-world-order-conspiracy-theories/>

⁷⁵ Oxford Handbook Jesuits in Africa. Available at: <https://www.oxfordhandbooks.com/view/10.1093/oxfordhb/9780199935420.001.0001/oxfordhb-9780199935420-e-56>

parts of Africa over a long period of time, preaching, baptizing, building churches and schools, running farms, transacting businesses, mediating politics, and doing a variety of other works. However, a few regionalized monographs on the subject notwithstanding, Jesuits’ historical links with Africa remain so conspicuously understudied that The Cambridge Companion to the Jesuits could only afford them a cursory mention.

Inadequate historic data is located in Rome, Lisbon, Paris, Dublin, Quebec, and Goa. Information of little of value is actually available in Jesuit archives on the continent of Africa. Africa and Madagascar are divided into nine Jesuit jurisdictions.

Data is only available only for Zimbabwe, Zambia-Malawi, Central Africa (comprising the Democratic Republic of the Congo and Angola), and Madagascar in Harare, Lusaka, Kinshasa, and Antananarivo, respectively. Only Zimbabwe-Mozambique and Zambia-Malawi have adequate archives according to a Jesuit survey conducted in 2001.

The early Cape Dutch government, influenced by the Protestant Reformists, opposed the Roman Catholic domination in Europe and only allowed Protestantism and the Dutch Reformed Church. Specifically, within the white or European Cape community protecting Calvinism.

The first Jesuits known to have come ashore at Cape Town in 1685 was Guy Tachard and six priests on their way to establish a French embassy in Siam (Thailand). Ordinarily Catholics were forbidden to disembark, but the governor Simon van der Stel needed astronomical readings and therefore permitted Tachard, a mathematician and astronomer, onto dry land - provided he and his companions did not attempt any Catholic worship.

The Batavian government⁷⁶ negotiated permission in 1803 for two Roman Catholic priests as military chaplains. The Society of Jesus in Europe was

⁷⁶ Batavian Republic. The restored Dutch Cape government following the Peace/Treaty of Amiens (March 25, 1802) whereby Britain returned the colony to the Dutch. The treaty temporarily ended hostilities between France and Great Britain during the French Revolution. It implied the end of the French Revolutionary Wars. After a short period of peace, the Napoleon Wars began.

formally restored by a papal bull⁷⁷ signed on the August 7, 1814.

Restored British rule in the Cape (1806, Battle of Blaauwberg) implied Catholic emancipation. By 1850 three vicaries (office of a vicar) were established. Bishop James David Richards invited Jesuits to open a school at Grahamstown to serve as staging post for missionaries in the interior leading to the establishment of St. Aidan’s College in 1876.

By 1879 the Jesuit *Zambesi Mission* territory included modern day Zimbabwe, Zambia and Malawi, and the neighbouring parts of Botswana, Angola, the D.R. Congo and Tanzania. The St. Aidan’s College remained a Jesuit school for almost a century. Foreigners were equipped to speak the local language and South Africans inspired to join the Jesuits received training before departing to England. By the end of the 1900’s, the Jesuits established three mission stations in the Cape colony. The primary Jesuit expansion took place in Zambia and Zimbabwe.⁷⁸

All of the post-war Jesuit missions in Africa have survived in one form or another and have given rise to a myriad of other activities in several new locations. As the Society of Jesus shed off its mission status and became more locally established, the Jesuits had to reorganize the governance of their Society in Africa. A number of independent administrative jurisdictions (usually called provinces or regions) were established during the first two decades of African political independence, especially when the order was under the leadership of Fr. Pedro Arrupe (1907–1991) as its general superior.⁷⁹

Father Pedro Arrupe, Jesuit superior general, established the Zimbabwe Province of the Society of Jesus in 1978, and the few houses in South Africa remained a Mission of the British Province.

The anti-apartheid struggle helped condition two new generations of South African Jesuits, causing them to re-evaluate their works and methodologies.

⁷⁷ Papal Bull. Papal bull is a special kind of patent or charter issued by a pope. It is named after the seal (*bulla*) that is appended to the end to authenticate it. Available at: https://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Papal_bull

⁷⁸ Oxford Handbook Jesuits in Africa. Available at: <https://www.oxfordhandbooks.com/view/10.1093/oxfordhb/9780199935420.001.0001/oxfordhb-9780199935420-e-56>

⁷⁹ Oxford Handbook Jesuits in Africa. Available at: <https://www.oxfordhandbooks.com/view/10.1093/oxfordhb/9780199935420.001.0001/oxfordhb-9780199935420-e-56>

They have made important contributions as parish priests and university chaplains, in educating both diocesan and religious clergy, and in revitalizing the spirituality of both religious sisters and lay people of all ages.⁸⁰

2.5.3.2 The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide – Drake Shelton

Drake Shelton’s⁸¹ research titled “**The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa**” is a result of his investigation of strategies under the specious pretext of “enlightening the world by the torch of philosophy” by Jesuit trained Rene Descartes-DS.⁸² His investigation attended to the following:

- The Jesuit use of Black envy pursuant unto the Jesuit’s economic goal of control of Boer Gold and Diamonds.
- Their religious goal of the elimination of the Protestant Christian peoples of the earth
- Through their political propaganda tool known as Communism

Shelton⁸³ observed the following:

“I have observed these doctrines gradually diffusing and mixing with all the different systems of Freemasonry; till, at last, AN ASSOCIATION HAS BEEN FORMED FOR THE EXPRESS PURPOSE OF ROOTING OUT ALL THE RELIGIOUS ESTABLISHMENTS, AND OVERTURNING ALL THE EXISTING GOVERNMENTS OF EUROPE. I have seen this Association exerting itself zealously and systematically, till it has become almost irresistible: And I have seen that the most active leaders in the French Revolution were members of this Association”.

An excerpt of his research pertaining to Jesuit involvement in South Africa:

⁸⁰ A short history of the South African region. Available at: <https://sj.org.za/about-us/a-short-history/>

⁸¹ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism>

⁸² Rene Descartes (1596-1650) French mathematician and philosopher. called the father of modern philosophy. He is known for one of the best-known quotations in philosophy: “Cogito, ergo sum” (“I think, therefore I am”). Rene Descartes Biography. Available at: i) <https://www.biography.com/scholar/rene-descartes>. ii) Rene Descartes French mathematician and philosopher. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Rene-Descartes>

⁸³ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism/>

Anti-white Communist writers equated as Jesuit educated and/or Jesuit coadjutors portrayed the Boer⁸⁴ as an ambitious group of white tyrant conquerors exploiting the black man’s land and resources. Drake evaluated the traditional South African black tribes as “non-adventurous” or “people of exploration”. The white South Africans discovered gold and diamonds. Jesuits successfully utilized black envy as a political instrument.

It is this political instrument that has now developed into a machine of war that is murdering and raping the Boers into nonexistence in South Africa just like the white African farmers were eliminated from Mugabe’s Zimbabwe.

The Council of Foreign Affairs controls media and education to enhance black-white tension. The South African Government will follow the same strategy as Mugabe to ‘demonize’ the whites to justify a too Fascist Totalitarian Government.⁸⁵

Cecil John Rhodes was instrumental in the Jesuit strategy:

Diamonds was discovered near Hopetown in 1867 and gold near Johannesburg in 1886. An influx of a wide variety of foreigners followed. Great prosperity was followed by depression. These discoveries ushered in an era described by Ridpath⁸⁶ as “***the era of intrigue and political power play.***”

Cecil Rhodes-DS generated personal wealth in investments, exploiting the depreciated value of mining claims. He initiated a monopoly or syndicate including all the diamond industries. He negotiated the provision of the necessary capital from the Rothchild International bankers to enable him to buy the remaining claims or property in the Kimberley district and to establish the De Beers Company in 1871.

Rhodes was appointed managing director for life, at a salary of one hundred and

⁸⁴ Boer directly translated to farmer does not refer to the occupation of farming but to the mainly Afrikaans speaking white (European descent) section of the South African population.

⁸⁵ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism/>

⁸⁶ Ridpath, John Clark (1885) *Cyclopaedia of Universal History Volume 8*. Jones Brothers. PP. 231-233

fifty thousand dollars a year.

Rhodes entered politics as a candidate for the Cape Colony Parliament for the Kimberley District. He rallied supporters on who’s loyalty he could depend, no matter what policy was adopted, including his loyalty to support British rule with a strategy of expansion from Cape to Cairo. He became a multi-millionaire, head of one of the most enormous capitalistic enterprises of the globe, and the Prime Minister in 1890 of Cape Colony. In 1894 the Glen Grey Act⁸⁷ was approved with the following implications:

- It restricted Black Africans to own land.
- Black Africans were no longer allowed to sell or rent their land.
- Black Africans who could not provide proof of employment were fined 10 shillings.
- Literacy, (the ability to write name, address, and occupation) were set as qualifications to vote. Pondoland were outright denied voting.

Rhodes established the British South Africa Company, (Chartered Company) in 1895. Rhodes died at the age of 48 in 1902. Ernest Oppenheimer arrived in the same year to work as a diamond buying agent in Kimberley. The Oppenheimer family would become one of the multimillionaire families in South Africa. Oppenheimer and Rhodes never had the opportunity to meet.

Within days of the outbreak of the Boer War in 1899, all work at the Kimberley mine was suspended. The Kimberley mine never re-opened.

The two Boer republics of the Transvaal and the Orange Free State were obstructing his imperialistic strategy. Historians often regard Rhodes as the instigator of the failed Jameson coup, an attempt to overthrow the Boer Government in the Transvaal.

⁸⁷ Who Was Cape Town’s Cecil Rhodes? Available at: <https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/who-was-cecil-rhodes/>

“The Last Will and Testament of Cecil John Rhodes”, edited by W.T. Stead⁸⁸ confirmed Rhodes obscure agenda as follows:

Mr. Rhodes was more than the founder of a dynasty. He aspired to be the creator of one of those vast semi-religious, quasi-political associations which, like the Society of Jesus, [Jesuits-DS] have played so large a part in the history of the world. To be more strictly accurate, he wished to found an Order as the instrument of the will of the Dynasty, and while he lived, he dreamed of being both its Caesar and its Loyola [Jesuit founder-DS].”

Stead⁸⁹ also elaborated further:

“All these wills were framed under the influence of the idea which dominated Mr. Rhodes's imagination. He aimed at the foundation of a Society composed of men of strong convictions and of great wealth, which would do for the unity of the English-speaking race what the Society of Jesus did for the Catholic Church immediately after the Reformation.

The English-speaking race stood to Mr. Rhodes for all that the Catholic Church stood to Ignatius Loyola. Mr. Rhodes saw in the English-speaking race the greatest instrument yet evolved for the progress and elevation of mankind shattered by internal dissensions and left in twain by the declaration of American Independence, just as the unity of the Church was destroyed by the Protestant Reformation. [Thus, the Jesuits would mount Rhodes’ NWO which they inspired in him to begin with to re-assimilate the Holy Roman Empire-DS]

Unlike Loyola, who saw that between Protestants and Catholics no union was possible, and who therefore devoted all his energies to enable the Catholics to extirpate their adversaries, Mr. Rhodes believed that it was possible to secure the reunion of the race. Loyola was an out-and-out Romanist. He took sides unhesitatingly with the Pope against the Reformers. The attitude of Mr. Rhodes was altogether different [But the solution was the same-DS]. He was devoted to the old flag, but in his ideas, he was American, and in his later years he expressed to me his unhesitating readiness to accept the reunion of the race under the Stars and Stripes if it could not be obtained in any other way.”

Mr. Rhodes's elucidated his political ideas in a letter he wrote in 1891:

My idea discussed with you is a Society, copied from the Jesuits as to organisation, the practical solution a differential rate and a copy of the United States Constitution, for that is Home Rule or Federation, and an organisation

⁸⁸ Stead, W.T. (1902) *The Last Will and Testament of Cecil John Rhodes with Elucidatory Notes*. London: William Clowes and Sons Limited. P. 56

⁸⁹ Stead, W.T. (1902) *The Last Will and Testament of Cecil John Rhodes with Elucidatory Notes*. London: William Clowes and Sons Limited. PP. 62-63

to work this out, working in the House of Commons for decentralisation, remembering that an Assembly that is responsible for a fifth of the world has no time to discuss the questions raised by Dr. Tanner or the important matter of for I believe that England with fair play should manufacture for the world, and, being a Free Trader, I believe until the world comes to its senses you should declare war I mean a commercial war with those who are trying to boycott your manufactures that is my programme. You might finish the war by union with America and universal peace, I mean after one hundred years, and a secret society organised like Loyola's, supported by the accumulated wealth of those whose aspiration is a desire to do something, and a hideous annoyance created by the difficult question daily placed before their minds as to which of their incompetent relations they should leave their wealth to. You would furnish them with the solution, greatly relieving their minds and turning their ill-gotten or inherited gains to some advantage.”

Mr. Stead⁹⁰, writing to his wife in 1889 conveyed Rhodes ideas further:

**He is full of a far more gorgeous idea in connection with the paper than even I have had. I cannot tell you his scheme, because it is too secret. But it involves millions. . . . He expects to own, before he dies, four or five million, all of which he will leave to carry out the scheme of which the paper is an integral part. . . . His ideas are federation, expansion, and consolidation of the Empire. He expounded to me his ideas about underpinning the Empire by a Society which would be to the Empire what the Society of Jesus was to the Papacy, and we talked on and on, upon very deep things indeed.” You see the Jewish International Banking Cartel is the tail and their true head is the Order of Loyola, the Jesuits.
You see the Jewish International Banking Cartel is the tail and their true head is the Order of Loyola, the Jesuits.**

The Second Boer War (1899-1902) was, according to Tiffany Fawn Jones,⁹¹ the first attempt to eliminate the Boers. The concentration camps responsible for 41 570 deaths of women and children was the first appearance of concentration camps in West. It preceded the annexation of the South African Republic into the British Empire under Edward VII.

The proclamation of the Union of South Africa in 1910 consolidated South Africa (and the South African mining industry) into the British Empire. King Edward VII,

⁹⁰ Stead, W.T. (1902) *The Last Will and Testament of Cecil John Rhodes with Elucidatory Notes*. London: William Clowes and Sons Limited. PP. 82-83

⁹¹ Jones, Tiffany Fawn (2012) *Psychiatry Mental Institutions and the Mad in Apartheid South Africa*. Routledge Publishers

through his friend J.P. Morgan⁹², Papal Financier of America⁹³ incorporated South Africa’s Gold and Diamonds into the International Banking Cartel. (creating the ability to finance the coming World Wars).

The independent Republic of South Africa was proclaimed 1961. The British component disappeared leaving the Boers to take the blame for every social ill in South Africa, pursuant unto the lyrics, **“Kill the Boer” and not “Kill the Anglo”**. Umkhonto we Sizwe, (Military wing of the ANC) was created in this year and performed acts of sabotage on state structures.

Could it be that just as the Jesuits through their servants in England destroyed our country through their African Slave trade, creating numerous groups designed to destroy the Anglo-Protestant Culture of these original colonies, (The Abolitionists, the Tories, the Carpet Baggers, the 2nd and 3rd KKK’s, the NAACP, and the Civil Rights movement [The Kill the White Protestant Culture Movement]) they rose up the ANC against the Boers, while the English Government stepped off the stage in the shadows while the Boers got the spotlight to take all the blame?⁹⁴

Prime Minister H.F. Verwoerd, considered to be the architect of Apartheid, was assassinated by Manchurian candidate⁹⁵ Demetrio Tsafendas in 1966: Jones⁹⁶ noted how Tsafendas was described in a similar way to James Holmes.⁹⁷

The Afrikaner Weerstandsbeweging (Afrikaner Resistance Movement - AWB)

⁹² J.P. Morgan. Available at: <https://www.abc.net.au/local/stories/2007/08/24/2014195.htm>; <https://www.jpmorgan.com/country/US/en/jpmorgan>; <https://www.history.com/topics/19th-century/john-pierpont-morgan>; YouTube <https://www.bing.com/videos/search?q=jp+morgan&view=detail&mid=477328BBB8F3A2A92E91477328BBB8F3A2A92E91&FORM=VIRE>

⁹³ Hopkins, Castell (1902) *The Life of King Edward VII*. Germany. P. 298

⁹⁴ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism>

⁹⁵ The Manchurian Candidate. The idea of programming a hypnotically conditioned, drug-controlled assassin to kill was born in a novel and a motion picture. The Manchurian Candidate is a novel by Richard Condon, first published in 1959. It is a political thriller about the son of a prominent U.S. political family who is brainwashed into being an unwitting assassin for a Communist conspiracy. It is a summary of a conspiracy theory, not a statement of fact. James Gregory played the title role in the 1962 film *The Manchurian Candidate*, in which a political candidate is brainwashed by Communists to become an unwitting assassin. Are some killers, such as Lee Harvey Oswald, types of “Manchurian candidates”? Available at: <https://encyclopedia2.thefreedictionary.com/Manchurian+Candidate>

⁹⁶ Jones, Tiffany Fawn (2012) *Psychiatry, Mental Institutions, and the Mad in Apartheid South Africa*. PP. 86-88, 160

⁹⁷ James Holmes: American mass murderer responsible for the 2012 Aurora Colorado shooting in which 12 people were killed and 70 injured. EWN Eyewitness News. Available at: <https://ewn.co.za/Topic/James-Holmes>

was established in 1973 by Eugène Terre ‘Blanche. Höhne⁹⁸ associated the AWB with Jesuits:

“The symbol is clearly Nazi which means it is Jesuit in substance. It was the inspiration for violent activity against blacks, especially in 1976.”

Bophuthatswana was proclaimed a homeland to the 1977 by the Apartheid South African Government.

“But that wasn’t enough because the Jesuits are not a live and let live organization. Their plots flourish through agitation.”

South Africa became the murder and rape capital of the world after 1994.⁹⁹ Genocide Watch rates South Africa a stage 5 level of Genocide (July 2012), the third last category of preparation for utter extermination. The Chinese Communists are in association with the ANC who could be the final solution to the Boer problem in South Africa.

Racial agitation and anti-white racism are a Jesuit strategy. Drake¹⁰⁰ compared South Africa with the Jesuit initiated racial agitation between the Natives of Paraguay and the Spanish and Portuguese governments in the 18th Century. Finally, he posed the question whether Jesuits are on both sides of the Socialist-Fascist political paradigm and playing both sides of these parties to end up being the ultimate benefactors?

2.5.3.3 Robert Mugabe

News 24¹⁰¹ referred to an article titled: “The Mafia, The CIA, & The Vatican’s

⁹⁸ Höhne, Heinz: The Order of the Death’s Head. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism>

⁹⁹ The United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime Homicide Statistics. Available at: <http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/homicide.html>

¹⁰⁰ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism> and http://2.bp.blogspot.com/6BtC3Q_nHcE/UzqPYIK6rnI/AAAAAAAAAI9Q/M588ijL-QR4/s1600/order+of+st+john.jpg

¹⁰¹ *Chris Hani, Jesuits, the Pope and Mugabe*. (March 19, 2013) Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/MyNews24/Chris-Hani-Jesuits-the-Pope-and-Mugabe-20130319>

Intelligence Apparatus” where the link between Roman Catholic Church, the Nazis, the CIA and the Apartheid regime were highlighted. The role of Lyndon LaRouche in the capturing of Nelson Mandela and his support of Robert Mugabe is also discussed. News24 reported as follows:

“it is not surprising then that in spite of the EU travel ban placed on Robert Mugabe, he is attending the inauguration mass of the Jesuit Pope Francis I.”

Considering the following, the speculation in the mentioned news report does not seem to be fiction:

- Robert Gabriel Mugabe was born on February 21, 1924, in Katama, a Jesuit mission station near Salisbury. (Harare) (Zimbabwe Jesuit district)¹⁰²
- After completing six years of elementary education, in 1941 Mugabe was accepted at Kutama's St. Francis Xavier college, graduating in 1945 as a trained teacher.¹⁰³
- He taught at the Roman Catholic Mission school, Driefontein which is in Mvuma.¹⁰⁴
- Known for his dictatorship and responsible for thousands of deaths, he was invited to attend the beatification of Pope John Paul II. He had special seating in the front row. (May 2011)¹⁰⁵
- On 2005 Mugabe attended the Pope's funeral. On both occasions he travelled to the Vatican regardless the 2002 European Union Travel ban.¹⁰⁶
- The Papal bestowed a blessing on his 1996 marriage to his second wife Grace, despite him having fathered children with her out of wedlock whilst

¹⁰² Robert Mugabe. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/robert-gabriel-mugabe>

¹⁰³ Robert Mugabe. Available at: <https://www.biography.com/political-figure/robert-mugabe>

¹⁰⁴ Robert Mugabe. Available at: <https://www.biography.com/political-figure/robert-mugabe>

¹⁰⁵ Kirchick, James (May 16, 2011) *The New Republic. Love the Sinner. Why is Robert Mugabe visiting the Vatican?* Available at: <https://newrepublic.com/article/88416/robert-mugabe-vatican-catholic-pope-zimbabwe>

¹⁰⁶ Kirchick, James (May 16, 2011) *The New Republic. Love the Sinner. Why is Robert Mugabe visiting the Vatican?* Available at: <https://newrepublic.com/article/88416/robert-mugabe-vatican-catholic-pope-zimbabwe>

he was still married to his first wife Sally.¹⁰⁷

- The Zimbabwean Catholic Church tabled a condemning genocide report on 20 000 deaths of the Nbebele people with the help of North Korean soldiers. It does not appear that the Roman Catholic Church in Rome reacted to the report.
- The local Catholic clergy also released continues reports on the eviction of white farmers, the famine and cholera outbreaks, and the election related violence.¹⁰⁸ It does not appear that the Roman Catholic Church in Rome reacted to the report.

2.5.3.4 The Current South African Jesuit Office

Currently, former parish priest of the Holy Trinity in Braamfontein, Johannesburg, FR Russell Pollitt SJ (Society of Jesus, SJ; Latin: Societas Iesu) of The Jesuit Institute of South Africa is the current Director (succeeded Raymond Perrier, director since January 2010).

South Africa hosts three Jesuit communities in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. Spiritual training, retreats and lectures are presented on invitation across South Africa. Jesuits are not necessarily in full time ministry or employed by the Jesuits, they occupy several professions. Listed on the website¹⁰⁹ are:

- Retreat directors – especially of The Spiritual Exercises
- Spiritual Directors
- Parish Priests
- Teachers in schools, seminaries, colleges, and universities

¹⁰⁷ Kirchick, James (May 16, 2011) *The New Republic. Love the Sinner. Why is Robert Mugabe visiting the Vatican?* Available at: <https://newrepublic.com/article/88416/robert-mugabe-vatican-catholic-pope-zimbabwe>

¹⁰⁸ Kirchick, James (May 16, 2011) *The New Republic. Love the Sinner. Why is Robert Mugabe visiting the Vatican?* Available at: <https://newrepublic.com/article/88416/robert-mugabe-vatican-catholic-pope-zimbabwe>

¹⁰⁹ Who are the Jesuits? Available at: <https://sj.org.za/who-are-the-jesuits>

- School and university chaplains
- Financial Administration
- Marriage preparation/counselling
- Refugee Work
- Medicine
- Academic and research

The author noted that all the professions mentioned portray positions of influence, in accordance with theories pertaining to possible Jesuit influences in South Africa.



Figure 6: An interpretation of World Political and Economic Power¹¹⁰

2.6 Freemasons

Opening of Freemason meetings:

¹¹⁰ An interpretation of World Political and Economic Power. Available at: https://www.reddit.com/r/religiousfruitcake/comments/cyu6ab/the_synagogue_of_satan_runs_the_world/

“It is to be understood, that not only the nature spirits, but also the strange half-conscious creatures which we have called elements, will and do respond to the invocation which is employed in this closely condensed formula of opening” (of the Masonic Lodge)¹¹¹

The enumeration of the officials... is in the nature of a call to attention – a call which reverberates through these different kingdoms of nature, and lets devas, nature-spirits and elementals know that an opportunity is about to be offered to them. For that is the way in which these creatures, look upon such a call and they therefore greatly rejoice to respond.

The specific question sets the machinery in motion, acts as a call to a deva, who immediately presents himself and acts as a captain of the nature-spirits and elementals.

For example, when the J(unior) D(eacon) is mentioned, a thrill shoots out through the astral levels, and when he is asked what is his situation in the Lodge, a deva at once steps forward and takes up his position above the head of the J(unior) D(eacon). At the same time the attention of a number of nature-spirits is aroused”

By the time, therefore, that the last of the list of questions and answers has been exchanged, the whole Lodge is pulsating with elemental life, all of which is filled with the most intense eagerness to launch itself upon the work in hand, whatever that may be”

The elemental and nature-spirits of the different level vary greatly in development and intelligence, some being fully defined and exceedingly active, whereas others are comparatively vague and cloud-like.”

But a very striking appearance is presented by the Lodge when these various groups of beings are gathered together, each group showing its distinctive colour and floating over the head of the official who is its physical plane representative – all this taking place while the lode is still in semi darkness, lit only by the three candles and the sacred fire. It is to condition that the R(ight) W(orshipful) M(aster) refers (whether he knows it or not) when he says: Our Lodge being thus duly formed”.

If he the Master reaches upward to this deva representative, and allows the force to flow freely through him, blending his will with it as if flows, his higher principles will become one with that deva and he will not only be an excellent channel for the divine force, but will himself be greatly helped and strengthened in the doing of the work.”

The spiritual implication: Members and spiritual powers react and take action on the command of the chairman.

¹¹¹ Leadbeater CW 33° Freemason and clairvoyance. The Hidden Life in Freemasonry. Par 414-417. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FyvHF84A2VQ> Minute 17:42

A 'Deva' spirit takes leadership over other evoked spirits. Junior Deacon mentioned a call is presented into the spiritual world and a spirit appears. At the end of the opening ceremony, the spirit world is attentive and eager for action.

2.6.1 Defining the Freemason Phenomena

2.6.1.1 Freemasons Official Declaration Defining Themselves

The official South African Grand Lodge Freemason website defines the organisation as follows:

Freemasonry is an organisation of men who strive to live by the fundamental principles of truth, morality and brotherly love. It is a non-profit organisation and supports charity and community service. It unifies men of high ideals regardless of their colour, creed or worldly status.¹¹²

The Grand Lodge of Scotland Yearbook of 1976 defined their purpose as follows:

"Masonry is a system of morality based on a belief in the existence of God, the immortality of the soul, and the brotherhood of man: therefore, no atheist can be made a mason. It strives to teach a man the duty he owes to God, to his country, to his family, to his neighbour and to himself. It inculcates the practice of every virtue and makes an extensive use of symbolism in its teachings. It interferes with neither religion nor politics but strives only after light and truth, endeavouring always to bring out the highest and noblest qualities of men".

In answer to the question "what to Freemasons do?", T.N. Cranstoun-Day¹¹³, District Grand Master for English Lodges in the Western Cape for nearly 40 years, replied with stating the masonic principles of his District Grand Lodge on April 29, 1965:

¹¹² Freemason Grand Lodge. Available at <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>

¹¹³ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. vii-viii. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>.

- ***"Freemasonry is a charitable, benevolent, educational and religious society. Its principles are proclaimed as widely as men will hear. Its only secrets are in its methods of recognition and of symbolic instruction.***
- ***"It is charitable in that it is not organised for profit, and none of its income inures to the benefit of any individual, but all is devoted to the promotion of the welfare and happiness of mankind.***
- ***"It is benevolent in that it teaches and exemplifies altruism as a duty.***
- ***"It is educational in that it teaches by prescribed ceremonials a system of morality and brotherhood based upon the Sacred Law.***
- ***"It is religious in that it requires a belief in God, the Creator of the Universe - that is essential: The volume of the Sacred Law (The Holy Bible) is open upon its altars whenever a Lodge is in session; reverence for God is ever present in its ceremonies, and to its brethren are constantly addressed lessons of morality; but it is not sectarian nor theological.***
- ***"It is a social organisation only so far as it furnishes additional inducement for men to foregather in numbers, thereby providing more material for its primary work of education, of spiritual uplift and of charity.***
- ***"Through the improvement and strengthening of the character of the individual man, Freemasonry seeks to improve the community. Thus, it impresses upon its members the principle of personal integrity and personal responsibility; enlightens them as to those things which make for human welfare, and inspires them with that feeling of charity, or goodwill towards their fellow men which move them to translate principle and conviction into action.***
- ***"To that end it stands for obedience to God's law; for truth and justice; fraternity and philanthropy; and enlightenment and orderly liberty, civil, religious and intellectual.***
- ***"It charges each of its members to be true and loyal to the government of the country to which he owes allegiance, and to be obedient to the law of any State in which he may be.***
- ***"It believes that the attainment of these objectives, is best accomplished by having a broad basis of principle upon which men of every race, country and opinion may unite rather than by setting up a restricted platform upon which only those of certain creeds, races and opinions can assemble.***
- ***"Believing these things, it adheres to that ancient and approved rule of Freemasonry which forbids the discussion in Masonic meetings of creeds, politics, or other topics likely to excite personal animosities.***
- ***"It further affirms its conviction that it is not only contrary to the fundamental principles of the Craft, but dangerous to its unity, strength, usefulness and welfare, for Masonic bodies to take action or to attempt to exercise pressure or influence for or against any legislation, or in any way to attempt to procure***

the election or appointment of Government officials, or to influence them - whether members of the Craft or not - in the performance of their official duties. The true Freemason will act in civil life according to his individual judgment and the dictates of his conscience.

- **"We have never been aggressors, nor sought to dominate; or to deny to any man the right to hold to his own faith; his convictions; the choice of his associates; and his way of life".**

2.6.1.2 Other Definition

According to Alan Cooper¹¹⁴, Freemasons -

"is not a secret society but a society with secrets - that is, secret methods of recognition of one Freemason by another"

Dr. Ferrell¹¹⁵ gave credit to the Freemason organisation in describing them as follows:

"most widespread secret society and has the greatest historical tradition. Freemasons is a fraternal organisation that arose from obscure origins in the late 16th to early 17th century. Freemasons now exists in various forms all over the world, with a membership estimated at around 5 mil, including just under two mil in the US and around 480 000 in England Scotland and Ireland. The various forms all share moral and metaphysical ideals".

2.6.2 Freemason Origin and History

2.6.2.1 Stone Masons

Originally, Masonry was a society of cathedral builders, the trade of stone masons and the underlying philosophy during the Middle Ages. Masonry was both protective and instructive. It ensured that a trained mason could obtain work at

¹¹⁴ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political', Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>. P.vi-vii

¹¹⁵ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 13

fair value and that apprentices and fellows would be taught the required skills.¹¹⁶

Craftsmen with certain privileges were called Franc-maçons (literally “Free Masons”), a denomination that gave rise to the synonyms Masonry and Freemasonry.

The society transformed and began acquiring an ideological and symbolic content. Cooper¹¹⁷ explored two causes: Firstly, as masons moved from one job to another, they had to prove to a 'lodge' of strangers they were genuine. A 'lodge' appears to have been the workshop, hut or sizeable building in which the masons worked, stored their equipment, prepare their meals and slept.¹¹⁸

While their ability and craft could be tested by their employer, they had to provide proof to their fellow stonemasons by some secret sign that they were familiar with the 'secret' skills of a mason. Secondly, the body of masons at an isolated building site often formed a community distinct from the nearest town. This isolation cemented their loyalty to their trade and their lodge and encouraged this secretiveness, the use of passwords and signs and the teaching of rudimentary moral instruction.

In contrast to the Scottish craftsmen, England’s governing bodies, royalties and noblemen or clerical masters continued to be the authority and no trade controls were relevant. Gradually, lodges became more independent associations of working masons. Both English and Scottish lodges-initiated ceremonies to promote new apprentices to ‘fellows’ or ‘fellow craftsmen’ after examining their efficiency in a higher level of the trade. Two stages of degrees were later

¹¹⁶ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

¹¹⁷ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

¹¹⁸ Pick, F.L. and Knight, G.N. (1969) *Pocket History of Freemasonry*. London: Muller. PP. 22, 25

expanded to include a ‘master builder’.

Craft guild members shared a secret mark of recognition which was introduced to them in ceremonies under oaths of secrecy. This practice differentiated the guilds from the lodges. The Mason society was well accepted by civil and religious people in certain countries.

During the 17 and 18 centuries, they also adopted some religious rites mainly from the old orders of Chivalry. Hiram Abiff, a master metal worker and craftsman in charge of building Solomon’s Temple, became the persona of inspiration. For the ordinary Mason, Hiram Abiff is only known to be the architect of God’s temple.

For the elite Freemason members, Hiram Abiff had a deeper, occultic meaning. The Roman Catholic church considered Masonry to be “The Devil’s Party” due to the suspicious mysterious and perceived fearsome satanic ceremonies. A decision was taken in 1783 to excommunicate parishioners who committed the serious sin of joining the fraternity.

In his work *The Black Book of Freemasonry*, the Illustrious and Grand Master Mason Serge R. de la Ferriere¹¹⁹ said, referring to Harim Abiff:

“Many Brother Masons firmly belief that he is a somewhat historic character, when he is simply a symbol. They are fooling themselves. After the spiritual workers were initiated in order to build the temple of Truth, Hiram was killed many times, but raised from the dead. Hiram is Adonis, killed by a wild boar, he is the exalted Pythacoras, he is Osiris, killed by a typhoon, he is Orpheus, torn apart by drunkards, he is Jesus, crucified by Caiaphas, Judas Iscariot and Pilot, he is Jacques (Santiago from Molay), condemned by the Pope, betrayed by a False brother and burned by order of the king. Naturally this is only one explanation among many others. If you note that Hiram is related to fire, then the allegory of this death would correspond to the regeneration or transmutation of this same element. He is the Chief of all true Masons worldwide”

Several symbols representing Solomon’s Temple comforted new members to the masons, for example the pillars of “Jachin’ and ‘Boaz at the entrance to Lodges.

¹¹⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. PP. 108-109

Masonry legends and rituals also include the mysteriously disappearing of the Master. The ritual contains the following: When his body is finally found after seven days, various attempts are made to resuscitate him. The Apprentice first tries to raise the master by one hand. He slips and is unsuccessful. His effort is followed by the Companion, with the same result. Finally, a more expert worker supporting the body strongly using his right hand are successful. He returns to life after the five key points of companionship are touched. The Masonic Rite says, stimulating a resurrection.

“Hand with hand, I greet you as brother, feet with feet I will sustain you in your praiseworthy commitments; remember your desires, chest with chest, when you trust me with a secret I will keep it as if it were my own, and hand upon back I will protect your honor in your absence and in your presence.”¹²⁰

In Hebrew, the name “Hiram,” likewise, is spelled interchangeably with Hermes [Trismegistus], the father of the Hermetic teachings (H, R and M).¹²¹

Lionel and Patricia Fanthorpe credited King Solomon of Israel as the first Mason and his Temple is argued to have several Masonic symbols.

There can be no full and proper understanding of the mysteries and secretes of Freemasonry without very deep and thorough research into its earliest history – and that enigmatic history goes back a great deal further than is generally understood.¹²²

Dr. Ferrell summarised Hiram as follows:

He is the Spirit of Occultism, the grand master architect of the secret temple, hidden in deep darkness. He is the inspirer of the temple of Osiris in Egypt and of all the other magic temples of the world. He is the spiritual power that has been unveiling the symbols and repeating them throughout generations. He is the one who has been trapping mankind in the confusion of his enchantments and his spells of knowledge and virtue. It is the spirit of Lucifer, in his insatiable struggle to occupy the throne of the Almighty.

¹²⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 208

¹²¹ The Voice of Freemasonry in the Nation’s Capital. Volume 36, Number 3, 2019. Available at: https://www.dcgrandlodge.org/uploads/6/9/5/4/6954862/voice_2019_issue_03-final.pdf

¹²² Fanthorpe, Lionel and Patricia. (2010) *The Big book of Mysteries.* Toronto: Dundurn Press. Available at: https://books.google.co.za/books/about/The_Big_Book_of_Mysteries.html?id=VI6cBYj7rDMC&printsec=frontcover&source=kp_read_button&redir_esc=y#v=onepage&q&f=false

Despite this statute, many of the Catholic Church high ranking members clandestinely became members of the forbidden society. Professor Ricardo de la Cierva, Spanish historian and author of *Enigmas in History*” commissioned by the University of Zaragoza to research Masonry in the that in the 18th century. He obtained a confession of the Jesuit, Father José Abtonia Ferrer confirming that more than two thousand clergymen, priests, and bishops were Masons, and Mason lodges had even been found inside convents.

Dr. Ferrell¹²³ confirmed that mason -membership and high-ranking degrees among Protestant and Evangelical churches is also a current phenomenon. She stated:

I attribute this power of seduction, with which Masons has been able to entangle so many Evangelists and Clergy, to the subliminal and fraudulent manner in which they impart their doctrine to the initial degrees. -(first 3). These new followers totally ignore the depths of the Orders and its darkest secrets. For them, it is a fraternity centred on the wellbeing of the family, an organisation with a philanthropic character, and a grouping of people with political and financial interest. However, they do not fail to acknowledge the strange and even frightening character of rites. Terrible truths are zealously guarded and I intent to bring them to light.

Dr. Ferrell¹²⁴ emphasized the critical strategy behind the Freemasonry policy to accommodate all religions, including Humanism, Deism and Naturalism.

“For this reason, it is not surprising that in 1990, one of the official Masonic publications in North America was named “The New Age”. Instead, many of them are, what is known today as, “New Age”.”

With the decline of cathedral building in Europe, the groups, or “Lodges” began to admit non-craftsmen into its organizations. ‘Operative masons’ allowed ‘non-operative’ men to become a member of a lodge, referring to them as ‘accepted’.¹²⁵

¹²³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 15

¹²⁴ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 15

¹²⁵ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876.* A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at:

From their beginning the power of Freemasons was extraordinary, and it quickly spread among the aristocracy, politicians, and high society. Aristocracy, politicians, and the elite felt at home in the society. Between 1737 and 1907, 16 England princes have belonged to the order. Harry Carr¹²⁶ noted that how social, economic, and industrial history of England (from the 11th to the 16th century) is interwoven with the rise of development of gild (guild) organisations.

Freemasonry divided into different branches, of which the “The Old and Accepted Scottish Rite” (The American adaptation of the “Rite of Perfection” from the French Freemasons) and “The York Rite.” The “Supreme Council” or “Supreme Power of Masonic Order” and the “Great Orient of France” or “Great College of all Freemason Rites” are the two major Freemason rites in France. A rite comprises of a succession of degrees, conferred by one or various established bodies, authorised by a supreme government.¹²⁷

Adam Weishaupt, founder of the order of “The Illuminate” (founded in 1776), convinced that the corrupt human race needed intervention. He was determined to infiltrate the continental branch of Freemasons by 1782 to establish an International Masonic Convention of Willemstad, Germany. He was the first futurist to envision international expansions to bring about *Novus Ordo Seclorum* (also called New World Order).

Weishaupt, indoctrinated in Egyptian occultism, developed a five-year plan to combine all occult systems into one powerful, secret organisation. Among his goals were:¹²⁸

https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

¹²⁶ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

¹²⁷ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 18

¹²⁸ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 20

- The abolition of the monarchy and established governments.
- The abolition of private property and inheritance.
- The abolition of patriotism and nationalism,
- The abolition of family life and the institution of marriage, and the establishment of communes for elementary education.
- The abolition of all religions.

“I have discovered that the secret shell of the Masonic Lodges has been used in every country to ventilate and to propagate political and religious sentiments that could not have been exposed to the outside without having put to risk the author to serious dangers. I have observed how these doctrines have been disseminating and mixing with the different Freemason systems, until finally an organisation has formed with the express purpose of uprooting all established religion and to distort all existing governments in Europe.”¹²⁹

Weishaupt secured loyalty to the brotherhood by promising power, influence, and success, and by obtaining sensitive information of members private lives. Master de la Ferriere¹³⁰ continues, saying:

‘The true Grand Masters are not always those who appear clothed in authority; behind the representative power of titles and functions are the Patriarchs, the true Venerables, the Powers who lead the rites of the world because they are over the Universal Freemasonry.

In the Hebrew-Christian Scriptures, the only spiritual army that is described in this manner is the one led by the prince of the power of the air, Lucifer.

For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)

You are My friends if you do whatever I command you. No longer do I call you servants, for a servant does not know what his master is doing; but I have called you friends, for all things that I heard from My Father I have made known to you.

John 15:14-15 (NKJV)

¹²⁹ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 20

¹³⁰ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 108

even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved), and raised us up together, and made us sit together in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,

Ephesians 2:5-6 (NKJV)

According to Dr. W.S. Mc Loud¹³¹ two primary groups of secret societies exist:

- Anglo-American faction
- French Catholic faction

2.6.2.2 Anglo American Faction¹³²

- Some British Freemasons, supporters of the Welf party, resigned from the mainstream Stuart orientated Freemasonry in England to create the Grand Lodge of England in 1717.
- The Anglo-American Faction was the continuation of the Welf (Guelph) Party active in the Italian city-states during the previous millennium and supporters of the Dynasty of Welf in the Holy Roman Empire.
- The Welf-party supported the House of Welf in the Holy Roman Empire and were responsible for the transformation of the allies of the Roman Church and the House of Welf-Anjou.
- The House of Welf bestowed the British throne when George Ludwig of Hanover, ancestor to the House of Windsor, became King in 1714.
- The first grand lodge, established to govern Freemasonry in England and Wales, was formed in 1717, during a meeting at the ‘Goose and Gridiron’¹³³ pub in the City of London.
- According to Dr. Mc Loud, the Illuminati, birthed by Adam Weishaupt in 1776 was one of the prominent precursors to the current Anglo-American Faction.

¹³¹ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. Pp. 3, 19

¹³² Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 3

¹³³ The Guardian. *Freemasonry explained: a guide to the secretive society*. Available at: <https://www.theguardian.com/uk-news/2018/feb/04/freemasonry-explained-guide>

Dr. Mc Loud states that the Illuminate later secured existence within the Order of the Carbonari. Their leaders, known as the Alta Vendita were influential in the Welf party.¹³⁴

- The headquarters of the organisation concurrently relocated from Italy, especially Venice to London along several influential trade family’s relocation to London.
- In 1743, British Premier, Henry John Tempel (Lord Palmerston), patriarch of the Welf-Party, among others, initiated the Jewish Freemasonry known as the ‘Bnai B’rith’ (Sons of the Covenant”), as well as the “Scottish Freemasons called the “Ancient and Accepted” rite.
- During this time, the multi-millionaire Baron Lionel Rothchild became a significant role-player and exploiter of events. Benjamin Disraeli, British prime minister, described Rothchild in his book ‘Coningsby’ as a multi-millionaire, controlling spies, the Carbonari, Freemasons, secretive Jews, and revolutionary thinkers in key positions.
- The Rothchild family initiated the Committee of 300 in 1879. This secret world parliament included influential trade and royal families e.g. the Italian Orsini, Guistiniani, Luzzatto, the British Cecil, Fraser, Inshcape and the American Rockefeller and Morgan families. The Royal families of Britain, Netherland, Belgium and Denmark were also represented.
- Dr. John Coleman, previous member of the Rothchild House private ‘Covent of 13’ confirmed the committee of 300 later expanded to 500. He also provided the diagram portraying the members and structure.

2.6.2.3 French Continental Faction

- Opposing the Anglo-American faction and the Welf Party is the French-Continental faction with a European emphasis.

¹³⁴ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 3

- In contrast to the Anglo-American faction who supported the Roman Catholic church, the French Continental Faction had a Celtic background.
- This faction accommodated the occult and also the Royal families excommunicated by the Roman Catholic Church such as Robert Bruce from Scotland, and Keiser Frederick II. The Scottish House of Stuart, the German House of Staufen. St. Clair’s were also included.
- During the middle ages, the Stuart family acted as the guardians of the Freemasonry who descended from the Order of Templars.
- The Royal House of Stuart fled to France, traditional a Scottish alliance, after the Welf Party bestowed the British Throne with the ‘Glorious Revolution’ in 1688.
- Some British Freemasons, supporters of the Welf party, resigned from the mainstream Stuart orientated Freemasonry in England to create the Grant Lodge of England in 1717.
- In the struggle for control over the Freemasonry, the Stuart family added higher degrees, called the Scottish Freemasonry, to the structures of the Freemasons. Currently still known as the “Rectified’ Rites and the continuation of the Freemasons.
- The supreme authority of the French Continental Freemasons is known as the Grand White Lodge and the Grant White Brotherhood, founded on the Templar rites such as ‘Ordo Templi Orientis’, several ‘Oriental Sufi- Orders’, the “Rectified” Scottish Freemasons” etc.
- Dr. Mc Loud¹³⁵ makes a radical statement in referring to the ‘Ordo Templi Orientis’ as the modern satanism.
- the French Continental Freemasons is also known as the Rosicrucian wearing white roses on their robes. (Apposing to the red rose resembling the Socialist communist who had strong ties with the Welfs)

¹³⁵ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 3

Dr. Mc Loud¹³⁶ emphasised the importance of the conflict between the two occultic philosophies in his forecast of the ultimate New World Order. The culmination of the conflict and the chaos it will present, will create an opportunity to present a peaceful solution. He further stated that representatives of both organisations are included in a higher order of the “Prieuré de Sion”. The Grand Master, representing the “Priest-King” bloodline, a descendant from the first rules of Europe, the ‘Merovingiane’, will reconcile the two ideologies.

- The plan for a Closed Global World.
- The Global plan entails the absolute rule. Chaumeil, spokesperson for the highly mysterious “Prieuré de Sion” confirms this statement:
‘a theocracy wherein nations would be no more than provinces, their leaders but proconsuls in the service of a world occult government consisting of an elite.’

- The New Order will be a closed society.
- The government will hold absolute dictator power.
- No freedom outside prescribed rules will be allowed. Including freedom of religion.
- Different secret societies, although very similar and in close relationship with one are competing to be the final authority in the new order.

Cecil John Rhodes, member of the committee of 500 eluded:

In the end Britain is to establish a power so overwhelming that wars must cease, and the Millennium be realised.”¹³⁷

2.6.3 Freemason History: The Establishment of Lodges in South Africa

Secret Societies contest social, political, social structures and legislation in order to promote a specific agenda to achieve specific goals. Front organisations are often created to guarantee allies and support in the promotion of agendas and

¹³⁶ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 5

¹³⁷ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 6

viewpoints. These front organisations are often oblivious of the role they play in the achievement of alternative motives. History and the fate of nations can be impacted by a minority group of influential role players supported by their strategically established allies.

Whenever the goals of any organisation are known, regardless how secret the operations, the strategies and actions taken are more recognisable for it is measurable against the projected outcome and goals.

It is the opinion of this study that the South African Constitution align with the international Freemason goal. It is further concluded that there is no differentiation between the Freemason, Illuminate or New Age goal. It is thus of relevance to reflect briefly on the history of secret societies in South Africa.

The Freemason organisation is often referred to as a ‘Secret Organisation’. Since members have the liberty to make their membership public, one could argue that it could be described as a “society with secrets’.

The brief discussion with regards to the history of Pax America and Pax Britannica as organisations is presented as departure before the influences of members and front organisations of these ‘esoteric organisations’ in the South African historic context, especially with regards to the South African Constitutional development are investigated.

2.6.3.1 1600-1699: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa

Particular significant dates

1652	Jan van Riebeeck (Freemason) arrive in South Africa.
------	--

Table 1: Freemasonry in South Africa 1600 – 1699

The executive directorate (*Heeren Sewentien*¹³⁸) of the Dutch East India Company (VOC) was granted a government charter, which effectively guaranteed it the right to the spice trade monopoly in East Asia. The government charter secured the VOC also included power to colonise whichever territory it desired.

In 1649 a recommendation, or *Remonstrantie*¹³⁹, was made to the Directors of the VOC to grant permission for the establishment of refreshment station at the Cape of Good Hope for ships passing it en route the spice trade. Jan van Riebeeck arrived on April 6, 1652 to establish the refreshment station.

Several members of the Heeren Sewentien, as well as Jan van Riebeeck were Freemasons. The masonic fraternity in South Africa was established from the very first day Europeans arrived in the Cape.

2.6.3.2 1700 - 1799: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa

Particular significant dates

1771	Brother Abraham van der Weijde, the captain of a sailing vessel plying between Holland and the East Indies, was appointed Deputy Grand Master Abroad.
1772	Lodge De Goede Hoop (Lodge Good Hope) as Lodge No. 12 on the register of the G.E.N. with Abraham Chiron as its Charter Master.
1780	Lodge in recess, lasting 9 years.
1794	The Lodge re-open

¹³⁸ Heeren Sewentien: Heeren XVII or Gentlemen Seventeen was the name for the board of directors of the Dutch United East India Company (VOC), founded in 1602. Available at: <https://www.encyclopedia.com/history/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/heeren-xvii>

¹³⁹ Remonstrantie: Jan van Riebeeck came equipped with a document called the ‘Remonstrantie’, drawn up in the Netherlands in 1649, which was a recommendation on the suitability of the Cape for this VOC project.

1798	The first English Military Lodge opened
------	---

Table 2: Freemasonry in South Africa 1700 - 1799

2.6.3.2.1 Dutch Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape

Freemasonry in England, Ireland, Scotland, France, and Holland had made significant progress since the formation of the Grand Lodge of England during 1717.¹⁴⁰ Freemasonry expanded from Britain to Netherland in 1731 and was finally officiated in 1756 with the establishment of the ‘Grand Orient of the Netherlands’ by ten of the existing lodges which operated under jurisdiction of the English and Scottish Grand Lodges.¹⁴¹

Lodges in Netherland expanded rapidly. Several of the masters of ships and other Navy officials employed by the Dutch East Company travelling to the newly established Cape halfway were Freemasons from The Dutch Central Freemason Body – the Grand East of the Netherland. It was therefore a natural development for a Cape Freemason Lodge to be founded under the banner of the Grand East of the Netherlands (G.E.N.)



Figure 7: Abraham van der Weijde¹⁴²

¹⁴⁰ Smith, John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863*. Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

¹⁴¹ Freemasonry in Netherland. *Orde van Vrijmetselaren onder het Grootoosten der Nederlanden*. Available at: http://www.stichtingargus.nl/vrijmetselarij/ovo_en.html

¹⁴² Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

Both Abraham van der Weijde, captain of the ship “Erfprins” was appointed Deputy Grand Master Abroad in 1771 with the authority and responsibility to found Lodges in the Cape Colony. He arrived in the Cape on April 24, 1772. Van der Weijde organised the first meeting 8 days after his arrival on May 2, 1772. Ten masons attended. Van der Weijde issued a provisional warrant of authority for the approval of the first Freemason Lodge on South African soil. The G.E.N. endorsed the new lodge on September 1, 1772 as ‘Lodge No. 12’ on the register of the G.E.N. The first Dutch Lodge called ‘**Lodge De Goede Hoop**’ (translated to Lodge Good Hope) was established.¹⁴³ Abraham Chiron became the first grand master of the Lodge De Goede Hoop in 1772.¹⁴⁴

The Lodge failed to endorse permanent members from local residents and depended mostly on visitors. Lack of progress reported to the Grand East of the Netherlands in June 1774 stated the following reasons:¹⁴⁵

- Christian condemnation.
The organisation was perceived to introduce principles of deism. Women influenced their husbands to be cautious.
- The application of equality conflicted with the rigid rules of social prejudice. Two social classes existed among the white population: Company officials and the Free Burgers. The Company enforced a monopoly on import and exports in trades and agriculture to the disadvantage of the Free Burgers. Company officials were not allowed to trade personally.
The Company also enforces orders for ‘social standing and etiquette’ on all three levels of economy, political and social.

¹⁴³ The Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/history/>

¹⁴⁴ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Masters of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

¹⁴⁵ Cooper, Alan Amos (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 9. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

Men were discouraged to accept membership if equality undermine their social standing and estimation by other community members.

The Masonic philosophy of equality in the Lodge violated the structure in the Cape where difference in rank between Company officials and free burghers was practised.¹⁴⁶

A lack of members and the above reasons led to the recess of the Lodge in April 1781.

The minute book ends on April 24, 1781 with the remark "Temporary suspension owing to paucity of members".¹⁴⁷

The Lodge resumed operations in 1794 as more prominent and permanent (not dependant on visitors to the colony) 'Capetonians' became members. It is interesting to note that several of the new initiates were South African born and thus permanent residents. They were no longer Europeans settling in South Africa and should be regarded as South Africans. The Dutch East India Company also ensured protection with regards to religious antagonism. With more prominent Cape residents interested, such as Johannes Andreas Truter, later Chief Justice the Lodge succeeded in creating stability.

The lodge was instrumental in the establishment of several other Lodges and still remained active as Lodge No 1 on the register of the Grand Lodge of South Africa.

The population in Cape Town had increased significantly since 1772 and Bate reports that there were between five and six thousand inhabitants living in Cape Town at that time. This increase in the population saw an increase in the permanent membership of the two Lodges and more than 200 brethren attended the consecration ceremony. member of Lodge Salomon in Bengal who, with the assistance of the brethren Abraham Chiron, Jacobus Alexander de Febre, Pieter Soermans, Jan Coenraad Gie, Christoffel Brand, Petrus Johannes de Wit, Johannes Adriaanus van Schoor, Barend Hendrik Rheede van Oudtshoorn, Oloff Gotlieb de Wet and Johannes Snyders, established the first Masonic Lodge in South Africa under the jurisdiction of

¹⁴⁶ The Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/history/>

¹⁴⁷ Cooper, Alan Amos (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 9. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

the National Grand Lodge of the United Netherlands by the formation of Lodge de Goede Hoop in Cape Town on May 2, 1772.¹⁴⁸



Figure 8: Sir Christoffel Brand¹⁴⁹

2.6.3.2.2 English Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape

Britain occupied the Cape in 1795. British Freemasons, absorbed in the British military, arrived in the Cape between 1795 and 1803 and stirred a renewed interest in the Craft.

Influx of English-speaking masons into the Dutch Lodge De Goede Hoop’ created tension and pathed the road for separate English Lodges. Permission was given for the establishment of an English military Lodge, ‘Africa No. 1’ or ‘De Afrikaan’ by the De Goede Hoop Lodge in 1798.

¹⁴⁸ Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

¹⁴⁹ Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

2.6.3.3 1800 - 1899: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa

Particular significant dates

1800	The establishment of the second Dutch Lodge ‘De Goede Trouw’
1800	Sir George Yonge established the first English, non-military Lodge: The Royal York Lodge. The Lodge expired in 1801.
1802	After the Amiens Peace Treaty signed in January 1802 Britain returned the Cape colony to Dutch rule.
1803	First Masonic Temple build
1806	Establishment of Dutch Provincial Grand Lodge
1811	First English Lodge at the Cape: British Lodge.
1829	Establishment of English Provincial Grand Lodge
1848	Both Dutch and English Grand Lodges lapsed.
1860	First Lodge under the Scottish Constitution, Lodge Southern Cross
1875	First call for a unification of lodges into one South African Lodge
1892	500 Masons meet in Kimberley. Proposal for the unification of lodges unsuccessful.
1896	First Lodge under the Irish Constitution, Lodge Abercorn

Table 3: Freemasonry in South Africa 1800 - 1899

2.6.3.3.1 Dutch Freemason Lodges Establishment in the Cape 1800-1899

Additional stimulus was added to the Dutch Lodge during the Batavia Republic (1802-1806) and the arrival of Jacob de Mist, a Deputy Grand Master in Netherland. He was the first Deputy Grand Master National, Netherlandic Constitution appointed to the region, assigned to re-establish the Dutch presence in the Cape. Freemasonry was one of the major approaches he used to accomplish his goal. J.A. de Mist and J.W. Jansens. grounded the Dutch

Freemasonry in the Cape. De Mist became the first Dutch deputy Great Master of the Dutch Freemasonry for South Africa (1803-1804). He was succeeded by John Truter (1804-1845).

Members of the Lodge de Goede Hoop purchased land to build the first Masonic Temple in South Africa. The temple was consecrated in 1803 by Jacob Abraham de Mist, Commissary-General and the Deputy Grand Master National of the Grand Loge of the Netherlands.¹⁵⁰

Johannes Andreas Truter, a Past Master of Lodge de Goede Hoop, was appointed in 1804 Deputy Grand Master National over all the Lodges in the Batavian Colony at the South Point of Africa.

Christoffel Brand¹⁵¹, (grandson of Christoffel Brand, one of the founder members of the Lodge de Goede Hoop) succeeded Truter as the Deputy Grand Master of the Grand Loge of the Netherlands. Lodge de Vereeniging, the third Lodge under the Grand Loge of the Netherlands was established in Graaff-Reinet during 1834.¹⁵²

The 1800 successes and expansions of Lodges under the English and Scottish constitutions motivated Brand to endeavour three journeys to promote Freemasonry under the Grand Loge of the Netherlands. He succeeded to establish the following Lodges:

- 1862 Lodge Rising Star in Burghersdorp
- 1863 Lodge Star in the East in George
- 1863 Lodge L’Astre de L’Orient in Stellenbosch
- 1863 Lodge Unie in Bloemfontein.

¹⁵⁰ Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

¹⁵¹ Christoffel Joseph Brand (1811-1843).

¹⁵² Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

The Grand Lodge of the Netherlands authorised the constitution of a Provincial Grand Lodge to assist Brand with the management of all the Lodges under his jurisdiction. The provincial Lodge thereafter requested permission from the Grand Lodge of the Netherlands to constitute a Provincial Grand Lodge to assist him with the management of the Lodges now under his control.

This Provincial Grand Lodge remained until 1906 when the Provincial Grand Lodge of the Transvaal was constituted. The new name Provincial Grand Lodge of Southern Africa (except the Transvaal) was adopted.

1961 saw the formation of the Grand Lodge of South Africa. It is now known as the Provincial Grand Lodge; Southern Division and it has been in continuous existence for 150 years.¹⁵³

2.6.3.3.2 English Freemason Lodges 1800-1899. Expansion to the Eastern Cape, Natal, and Interior

The second British occupation of the Cape (1806-1814) followed after the Battle of Blaauwberg. The English commander, Major General David Baird, Colonel of the 24th Regiment was an ardent Mason. John Truter, Deputy Grand Master National, welcomed Truter and other British masons into the Dutch Lodge De Goede Hoop and De Goede Trouw. The influx of the English-speaking masons created tension among the members of the Lodges resulting in the successful petition to the Grand Lodge of England to grant the establishment of an English-speaking Lodge in the Cape. The British Masons detached from the Dutch Lodge and established the first independent, permanent English Lodge called ‘The British Lodge’ in 1811. This was the first permanent Masonic involvement in the territory by the United Grand Lodge of England, the beginning of a permanent establishment.¹⁵⁴

¹⁵³ Smith, John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

¹⁵⁴ The Grand Lodge History. Available at: <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>

The cordial relationship that existed between the Masons in the Cape was manifested when the then Deputy Grand Master of the Grand Lodge of the Netherlands, Johannes Andreas Truter, as the highest ranked Freemason in the Cape, was invited to officiate at the consecration of the “British Lodge”. He was duly installed as the first Presiding Master of “British Lodge” in the de Goede Hoop building.¹⁵⁵

Additional to the temporary Military Lodges which held meeting in the Cape, the establishment of other permanent Lodges under the Grand Lodge of England followed:

- 1811 The British Lodge
- 1821 The Union Lodge
- 1821 The Hope Lodge
- 1828 The Albany Lodge in Grahamstown was the first expansion to the Eastern Cape.
- 1824-1841 A French Lodge warranted by the Grand Oriental of France.

Deputy District Grand Master National Truter held the authority over all Dutch Lodges in contrast to The English Lodges who lacked a common authority. On request of the United Grand Lodge of England in 1826, Truter agreed to also direct the English Cape Lodges adding the title English Provincial Grand Master in South Africa. Truter established the first English Provincial Grand Lodge in 1829. Clerke Burton succeeded Truter after his retirement in 1833. By 1829 three English Lodges existed in Cape Town:

The Cape Colony endured a general economic stagnation between 1828-1850 resulting in the decline of Freemason activities. Both English and Dutch masons resigned unable to pay their membership. By 1848 both English and Dutch Provincial Grand Lodges lapsed. Renewed relative prosperity in the Cape in 1850 resulted in the influx of British settlers.¹⁵⁶ Four English Lodges were operational

¹⁵⁵ Duncan, David, Assistant Grand Master (July 2015) The Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: <https://glsa23.wordpress.com/2015/07/09/the-grand-lodge-of-south-africa/>

¹⁵⁶ Duncan, David, Assistant Grand Master (July 2015) The Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: <https://glsa23.wordpress.com/2015/07/09/the-grand-lodge-of-south-africa/>

accepting the authority of the United Grand Lodge of England:

- The British Lodge. Cape Town.
- The Hope. Cape Town. (Erased in 1871)
- The Union Cape Town. (Erased in 1857)
- De Vereeniging. Graaff-Reinet. (Succumbed 1844)

Increased English immigrant numbers and commercial progress in the Cape Colony benefited the Freemason establishment in the Cape. The influx of British Settlers to the Cape resulted in the development of the Eastern coast and Natal Colony, and concurrently English Freemasonry spread to these areas. (Dutch Freemasonry spread to the South African interior with the mason-Voortrekkers¹⁵⁷) Several English Constitution Lodges were established:¹⁵⁸

- 1852 - Lodge Zetland in Fort Beaufort
- 1857 - Lodge Goodwill in Port Elizabeth
- 1858 - Lodge Port Natal in Durban. The first Lodge in Natal
- 1860 - Lodge St. John’s in Grahamstown
- 1861 - Lodge The Midlands in Graaff-Reinet
- 1861 - Lodge Joppa in Cape Town
- 1861 - Lodge Kaffrarian in King Williams’ Town
- 1861 - Lodge Goodwill in Port Elizabeth
- 1861 - Lodge Union in Knysna
- 1862 - Lodge Joppa Lodge in Cape Town
- 1862 - Lodge Star in the East in Queenstown
- 1863 - Lodge St. Paul in Adelaide
- 1863 - Lodge Prince Alfred in Pietermaritzburg. (Natal)
- 1864 - Lodge Rising Star in Bloemfontein

¹⁵⁷ Voortrekkers: Official name of the farmers who migrated to the interior on the Groot Trek.

¹⁵⁸ Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

- 1865 - Lodge Flaming Star of Africa in Potchefstroom. The first lodge in the Boere Republic of Transvaal.
 - Richard Southey was appointed as Provincial Grand Master for South Africa. In 1862.
 - 1867 - Lodge Inanda in Verulam
 - 1872 - Cosmopolitan Lodge, Diamond fields of Kimberley
 - 1872 - Octahedron in Barkly West
 - 1875 - Richard Giddy in Kimberley
 - 1876 - After a long separatist movement, Lord Carnarvon announced the division of most of the English lodges in South Africa into three districts: Western, Eastern and Griqualand West. Lodges were given the option of remaining under direct control of the Grand Lodge of England if desired.
 - 1877 - Lodge Natalia at Pietermaritzburg
 - 1877 - Lodge Carnarvon at Richmond
 - 1877 - Skelmersdale Lodge at Pietermaritzburg
 - 1878 - English Lodges in Transvaal did not expand on the same pace as the rest of South Africa. The Transvaal Lodge was warranted in 1878.
 - 1880 - Umvoti at Greytown
 - 1881 - Addington at Durban
 - 1882 - Umlazi at Pinetown
 - 1885 - After 1878, English Lodges Johannesburg, Zeerust and Klerksdorp were warranted only in 1895.
 - 1887 - Stella Lodge in Vryburg
 - 1888 - Loch Lodge in Kimberley
 - 1893 - Franklin in Windsorton
 - 1894 - Austral in Mafeking
 - Cape Town was the original centre of Freemasonry in South Africa and remained influential not only with regards to the expansion and warranties of new lodges, but also in the debate prior to the creation of a combined masonic grand lodge for South Africa.
-

2.6.3.3 Dutch Freemasonry 1800-1899 Expansion to the South African Interior

British occupation and rule of the Cape Colony and the constant conflict with the adjacent Xhosa people offered no hope for a peaceful existence for the farmers on the Eastern boarder of the Cape colony. Piet Retief, a descendant of the French Huguenots, took command as spokesperson for the farmers in the frontier Retief and published a manifest to declare independence in the Grahamstown Journal on January 22, 1837. He served the official declaration of departure from the Cape Colony.

“We solemnly declare that we quit this colony with a desire to lead a quieter life than we have heretofore done. We will not molest any people, nor deprive them of the smallest property; but, if attacked, we shall consider ourselves fully justified in defending our persons and effects, to the utmost of our ability, against every enemy.”

Retief even stated their expectations when meeting indigenous tribes in the new land: “We propose, in the course of our journey, and on arriving at the country in which we shall permanently reside, to make known to the native tribes our intentions, and our desire to live in peace and friendly intercourse with them.”¹⁵⁹

Farmers (Afrikaners/Boers) decided to relocate to the South African Eastern interior to establish independence. Dutch Freemasonry spread to the South African interior with the “Groot Trek”¹⁶⁰ (1835-1838). Dutch Freemasonry Lodges in South Africa were limited to the Cape colony, including the Eastern Cape. The British strategy to secure South Africa for Pax Britannica failed after the Afrikaners¹⁶¹ rejected the British rule and relocated to the interior of South Africa to establish independent republics. The British neglect to assist settlers in their

¹⁵⁹ Piet Retief Declaration. Available at: https://www.zoutpansberger.co.za/articles/history_streets/38046/2016-08-01/11-the-secret-story-that-started-with-piet-retief

¹⁶⁰ Groot Trek. 10 000 Afrikaners journeyed to the interior in protest British oppression with the aim to establishment of independent rule.

¹⁶¹ Afrikaners being the descendants from various European nationalities stationed at the Cape. The Afrikaners were the first new indigenous nation in South Africa. Also called the “Boers” or “Boer Afrikaners”. The name is still valid today referring to mainly Afrikaans speaking people descendants from the first Europeans stationed at the Cape Colony. The Afrikaner Nation is one of several nations included in the South African population.

conflict with indigenous nations plundering Eastern border farms, resulted in the 1819 1834 1846 Frontier Wars¹⁶²

2.6.3.3.4 Freemason Expansion: Other Grand Lodges

2.6.3.3.4.1 Grand Lodge of France

During 1824, the Grand Lodge of France, irregular according to the Grand Lodge of England, granted a charter to its only Lodge in Cape Town, “Lodge L’Esperance”. This Lodge continued to be active until it was incorporated into the GLSA in 1961.¹⁶³

2.6.3.3.4.2 Grand Lodge of Scotland

The first request for permission by Saunders in 1862 to establish a Lodge under the Grand Lodge of Scotland was unsuccessful. The use of English in the Dutch Lodges again enthused frustration and several Scottish members of the Lodge de Goede Hoop. They successfully petitioned permission from the Grand Lodge of Scotland to establish a Scottish Lodge. The Southern Cross Lodge established in the Goede Hoop Temple in 1860 was the first Lodge under the Scottish Constitution, followed by the second Scottish Lodge, Lodge Rising Star in Burghersdorp.

Brand (now Sir Christoffel Brand), was requested to officiate at the festivities surrounding the formation of this Lodge. During 1862 the Royal Alfred Lodge was also established in Cape Town under the Scottish Constitution.¹⁶⁴

¹⁶² Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 53

¹⁶³ Duncan, David, Assistant Grand Master (July 2015) The Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: <https://glsa23.wordpress.com/2015/07/09/the-grand-lodge-of-south-africa/>

¹⁶⁴ Smith. John RW Bro. *Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863* Available at: <https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>

2.6.3.3.4.3 Irish Freemason Lodges

Lodge Abercorn established in 1896 was the first lodge under the Irish Constitution, followed by St Patrick’s Lodge in 1897.¹⁶⁵

Some Lodges of the Irish and Scottish Constitution even formed Lodges working in Afrikaans.¹⁶⁶

2.6.3.3.5 Freemasonry in the Afrikaner Republics of the Orange Free State and Transvaal

As a result of the Groot Trek three Boer-Afrikaner independent Republics were established.

- 1839 - Republic Natalia after the Boer victory over the Zulus.

(Britain annexed Natal again in 1842. The Boer’s ventured on a second Trek north to the Orange Free State and Transvaal.)
- 1853 - Republic of the Orange Free State
- 1854 - Transvaal Republic also called the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republic (ZAR), (South African Republic)

(Britain colonised both Republics again in 1902 after Lord Kitchener’s tactics of scorched earth and concentration camps sealed their victory in the Boer War. The Republic became the Transvaal colony. During WO I an unsuccessful attempt to re-instate the Republic was known as the 1914 Rebellion.)

¹⁶⁵ Duncan, David. (July 2015) *The Grand Lodge of South Africa*. Available at: <https://glsa23.wordpress.com/2015/07/09/the-grand-lodge-of-south-africa/>

¹⁶⁶ The Grand Lodge History. Available at <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>



Figure 9 . Three independent Boer Republics.¹⁶⁷

The foundation of the two republics were preceded by the French Revolution and American Independence War.

Several Afrikaner leaders such as M.W Pretorius, Sir John Brand, F.W. Reitz, T.F. Burgers, General Louis Botha, General C.R. de Wet, Danie Theron admired the Freemasons – to the extent that the American and French Constitutions were used to draft the new Republic Constitution.¹⁶⁸

The two Afrikaner Republics were an early manifestation of Afrikaner Nationalism, motivated by independence. By 1819 several Freemason lodges were established across South Africa. During September 1819, a request for closer relationship between the lodges paved the way for a United South Africa. The holistic approach of the Freemasons was opposed to the independence of the Republics.

¹⁶⁷ Map of the first Boer Republics. Available at: <https://za.pinterest.com/pin/329818372688120984>

¹⁶⁸ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 54

Britain recognized the independency of the two Boer republics. The Dutch Freemasons did not expand immediately from the Cape resulting in limited Illuminate influence in the two new independent Afrikaner republics.

Christoffel Brand, Dutch Freemason, Head of the Netherlandic Constitution, Deputy Grand Master National in the Cape (1847-1874), Speaker of the first Cape Legislative Assembly in 1854, and editor of the Afrikaans newspaper ‘De Zuid-Afrikaan’ was particular successful in expanding the Dutch Lodges. In 1863, a provincial structure for the Grand Lodge of the Netherlandic Constitution in Cape Town was established under the name of the Provincial Grand Lodge of Southern Africa. This already recognised the expansion prospects for the Order.

Motivated by the expansion of the English Lodges he embarked on his first ‘missionary’ travel to the interior of South Africa. Only two Cape Dutch Lodges (De Goede Hoop and De Goede Trouw were active at the time. Alan gives specific credit to Sir Christoffel Brand.

Important to this upsurge was the appointment in 1847 of Christoffel Brand, later Sir Christoffel Brand, as Deputy Grand Master National of the Dutch lodges, who ventured north on several missionary tours to open up new lodges.¹⁶⁹

Brand succeeded to establish the first Freemason lodge in the Free State and Transvaal in 1860. This provided a footprint for the Illuminate in the interior of South Africa. Rapid growth followed:

- 1863 - Star of the East in George Town
- 1863 - Knight of the Sword
- 1863 - L’Astre De L’Orient in Stellenbosch
- 1863 - Unie Lodge in Bloemfontein. The first Free State Lodge was petitioned by Marthinus Wessel Pretorius, son of the Voortrekker leader, Andries Pretorius. Pretorius initiated as a Freemason on June 27, 1862,

¹⁶⁹ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772–1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch. P. 31 (15). Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>.

was President of the Free State from February 1860 to April 1863 and later president of South Africa Republic from 1864 – 1870. President of the Free Jan Brand, son of Christoffel Brand laid the cornerstone of the Unie Lodge in April 1865.

- 1865 - Excelsior Lodge in Willomere, Cape
- 1866 - Northern Lodge in Colesberg, Cape
- 1866 - St. Jan Lodge in Malmesbury, Cape
- 1866 - Orange Lodge in Paarl, Cape,
- 1967 - Lodge Morgenster in ‘Cronstadt, Free State
- 1868 - Lodge Auror in Pretoria, Transvaal
- 1869 - Patronheid Lodge, Phillipolis,
- 1869 - Lodge Eintracht in Somerset East, Cape
- 1969 - Lodge De Vriendschap in Adelaide,
- 1986 - Christoffel Brand, age 79, embarked on this last ‘missionary travel’ and established four new lodges at Somerset East, Phillipolis, Adelaide and Kroonstad.

Christoffel Brand simultaneously established five ‘high degree chapters’ in Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, Pretoria, Potchefstroom and Adelaide. Membership in general increased in all Lodges. The master of the Potchefstroom Lodge reported the following after the foundation stone of their temple was laid:¹⁷⁰

“The ceremony of laying the foundation stone went off very well indeed. By general consent it became a public holiday; even the Landdrost's office was closed and all the Potchefstroom world was there, and several strangers.”¹⁷¹

Brand had succeeded in making the Dutch constitution the more numerous in South Africa by 1869. New lodges had been warranted in the Cape, Orange Free State and Transvaal even though several others had foundered. He had

¹⁷⁰ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political', Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 30,46. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>.

¹⁷¹ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political', Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 33 Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

won for his constitution English approval of its legality and reduced high-placed enemies in the English Constitution to insignificance.¹⁷²

2.6.3.3.5.1 Freemason Expansion with the Discovery of Diamonds and Gold

The British Lodges in the two Afrikaner republics did not expand at the same pace as in the Cape and Natal. The United Grand Lodge of England was restricted by a series of conventions permitting warrants for new English lodges in territories not under British political control. The two Afrikaner Republics fiercely objected British rule.

The Transvaal Lodge in Pretoria was warranted in 1978. The next Lodges at Johannesburg, Zeerust and Klerksdorp were only warranted in 1889. By 1898 Grand Master G Richards reported on 24 lodges with 1838 members.

The discovery of diamonds at Hopetown (1867) and gold in Transvaal (1886) resulted in renewed British interest. Free State President Brand was unsuccessful in his efforts to incorporate the diamond rich territory between the Orange and Vaal River in the Free State Republic. The territory was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880 creating the opportunity for new British Lodges on British territory:

- 1873 - Lodge Cosmopolitan in Kimberley
- 1873 - Lodge, the Octahedron at Barkly West
- 1872 - Richard Giddy Lodge in Kimberley
- 1879 - Charles Warren Lodge in Dutoitspan

New economic growth resulted from the discovery of diamonds also enhanced the formation of new English lodges outside the diamond fields.

- 1873 - Wodehouse Lodge at Dordrecht

¹⁷² Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political', Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 34 Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

- 1873 - Port Alfred Lodge at Kowie
- 1873 - Meridian Lodge at Cradock
- 1874 - Ripon at Colesberg
- 1874 - Zetland at Murraysberg
- 1874 - The District Grand Lodge reported 22 lodges under its jurisdiction – the whole of South Africa.
- 1879 - Charles Warren Lodge in Dutoitspan

This rapid progress of Freemasonry in the Diamond Fields inspired Past Master of Cosmopolitan Lodge, Richard Giddy Lodge to request London to release them from their allegiance to the District Grand Lodge of South Africa in Cape Town and to warrant a local District Grand Lodge. London approved and Giddy was appointed as the first District Grand Master.

- 1873 - The Dutch warranted their first lodge in the Diamond fields.
- 1873 - Peace and Harmony in Dutoitspan

2.6.3.3.6 Impact of the Second War of Independence (Anglo Boer War) 1880-1899

The Transvaal Republic President Paul Kruger befriended European countries during the immigrant influx to the goldmines. These allegiances confronted the Rhodes agenda. The Afrikaner/Dutch Freemason lodges were also positive with regards to a United South Africa.

Cecil Rhodes, Barney Benato and others established De Beers Consolidated Mines, Goldfields Company and Consolidated Goldfields of South Africa. Premier (refer to Rhodes discussion in Jesuits) With his election of Cape with the help of the Afrikaner Bond he personified the political and economic power. He manipulated the unsuccessful Jameson raid, an immigrant labourer revolt, and

the unsuccessful military invasion of Transvaal. The results from the raid did not favour Rhodes:

- International awareness. The German Keiser forwarded his congratulations to President Kruger. This birthed the Transvaal hope of future German alliance.
- The victory enhanced African Nationalism.
- Transvaal realised the possibility of future conflict and started to prepare his military.
- The Afrikaner Bond negated Rhodes membership and withdraw their support.
- Hofmeyr aligned himself to a fellow Mason, Jan Smuts.
- A formal political pledge between the two Afrikaner Republics of the Free State and Transvaal.
- English speaking residents in Transvaal established the 'South African League' with the aim to promote British rule, equality for Afrikaans and English speaking and to oppose Afrikaner Nationalism.
- Rhodes resigned as Cape Premier.
- Sir Alfred Milner (Freemason, member of The Society of the Elect of the Round Table and esteemed member of the Illuminate) was appointed High Commissioner of South Africa in 1897.

2.6.3.3.7 Afrikaner Secret Society: Afrikaansche Bond 1883

Afrikaner alienation by the English rulers motivated the launch of the Bond. The purpose was the promotion of Afrikaner economic, political, and cultural interests. Although the organisation was born in the Cape, it envisioned the national Afrikaner unity.¹⁷³

¹⁷³ SA History.org. the Afrikaner Bond. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/afrikaner-bond>



Figure 10: Minute 45:47

Minute 45: 49

Freemason symbolism portrayed:

- Secret handshake



Figure 11: Masonic Handshake example.¹⁷⁴

The handshake varies on the different levels of the Masonic hierarchy. In general, it is explained as follows:

The secret of the Masonic handshake as a Masonic symbol is that it represents a type of relationship and rapport you expect between Brothers.¹⁷⁵

¹⁷⁴ Freemason information.com Masonic information. Masonic Education and Analysis. Available at: <https://freemasoninformation.com/2017/03/the-secret-of-masonic-handshakes/>

¹⁷⁵ Freemason information.com Masonic information. Masonic Education and Analysis. Available at: <https://freemasoninformation.com/2017/03/the-secret-of-masonic-handshakes/>

- Ankh



The Anchor and the Ark

Figure 12: Anchor and Ark taken from Freemason Information.com¹⁷⁶

From the ritual of the third degree, Masons described the symbol as follows:

The anchor and the ark are emblems of a well-grounded hope and a well-spent life. They are emblematic of that divine ark and anchor which safely bears us over this tempestuous sea of troubles, and that anchor which shall safely moor us in a peaceful harbor, where the wicked cease from troubling, and the weary shall find rest. We have this hope as an anchor for the soul, firm and secure. It enters the inner sanctuary behind the curtain.¹⁷⁷

2.6.3.3.8 Jan Smuts Double Membership Nomination to Influence Afrikaner Electorate to Advance the Roundtable Goal

Piet Grobler (Freemason) nominated Smuts as State Attorney, providing him inroads into the Afrikaner communities. Smuts was, according to Pretorius¹⁷⁸ a Freemason as well as a member of the Rhodes-Milner secret Illuminate society and a Zionist¹⁷⁹. Pretorius¹⁸⁰ refers to a claim made by Professor Carol Quigley

¹⁷⁶ Freemason Information.com Masonic Information Masonic Education and Analysis. Available at: <https://freemasoninformation.com/masonic-symbols/>

¹⁷⁷ Freemason Information.com Masonic Information Masonic Education and Analysis. Available at: <https://freemasoninformation.com/masonic-symbols/>

¹⁷⁸ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 58

¹⁷⁹ Shimoni, G. (1977). Jan Christiaan Smuts and Zionism. *Jewish Social Studies*, 39(4), 269-298. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4466970>.

¹⁸⁰ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 58

describing Jan Smuts as a highly regarded member of The Round Table¹⁸¹, a member of the Inner Circle of The Association of Helpers, and a member of the Society of the Elect.

Jan Smuts who had been a vigorous supporter of Rhodes and acted as his agent in Kimberley as late as 1895 and who was one of the most important members of the Rhodes-Milner group in the period 198-1950.

The secret Milner group¹⁸², was also referred to as the Milner Kindergarten (1901-1910) and the Round Table (1910-1920). After 1920 it was known as ‘the Rhodes crowd, The Times crowd, the All Souls group and as the Cliveden set.’¹⁸³ Cecil Rhodes, (wealthy imperialist), William T. Stead (journalist) and Reginald Baliol Brett, later known as Lord Esher, friend and advisor to Queen Victoria and King Edward VII and King George V developed met in London in 1891 to develop a plan for a secret society. The society would consist of an inner circle (The Society of the Elect), and outer circle (the Association of Helpers). The real power was constituted in the leader, Rhodes, and the Junta was to be Stead, Brett and Alfred Milner.

The Society of the Elect consisted of Cecil John Rhodes, Nathan Rothchild, Baron Rothchild, Sir Harry Johnston, William T. Stead, Reginald Brett (Viscount Esher) and Alfred Milner (Viscount Milner) and Jan Smuts to name a few. The total number of members were 34. The Inner Circle had 28 members, including Jan Smuts. The Outer Circle members totalled 44. International membership included Canada 6, the United States 4, Australia 4, New Zealand 3, Germany 2. South Africa’s members were Jan Smuts, Sir Patrick Duncan, Sir Abe Bailey,

¹⁸¹ Round Table: Opposing the entire European Renaissance; the Round Table of Cecil Rhodes, Alfred Milner, Balfour, and their friends, strategists from the African and Asian empire, seeking world power for the Anglo-Saxon master race. The Canadian Patriot. Cecil Rhodes, the Roundtable Movement and Eugenics. (April 11, 2015) Available at: <https://canadianpatriot.org/2015/04/11/cecil-rhodes-the-roundtable-movement-and-eugenics/>

¹⁸² Appendix: A Tentative Roster of the Milner Group. Available at: <https://info.publicintelligence.net/MilnerGroup.pdf>

¹⁸³ Quigley, Carroll Prof. (1981) *The Anglo-American Establishment. From Rhodes to Cliveden*. New York: Books in Focus Inc. P. ix Also available at: <https://www.transcend.org/tms/wp-content/uploads/2015/12/ed-The-Anglo-American-Establishment.pdf>

Basil K Long, Richard Feetham and Sir James Rose-Innes.¹⁸⁴

The accomplishment of the Rothman family and the accomplishment of this group listed by Professor Quigley¹⁸⁵ is remarkably similar. The membership of the Rothchild group could not be determined. The author is convinced that several, if not most individuals held double membership. The accomplishments are listed as follow:

- Jameson Raid of 1895
- The Boer War of 1899-1902
- Controlling the Rhodes Trust
- Establishment of the South African periodical *The State* in 1908
- Founding the British Empire periodical, *The Round Table* in 1910
- Influencing All Souls, Balliol, and New Colleges at Oxford for more than a generation.
- Controlled ‘The Times’ for more than fifty years
- Published the idea of, and the name “British Commonwealth of Nations’
- The main influence in Lloyd George’s war administration in 1917-1945
- Dominating the British delegation to the Peace Conference of 1919
- The founding of the Royal Institute of International Affairs in 1919.
- Influencing the British policy towards Ireland, Palestine and Indian 1917-1945
- Influencing the content of the policy towards Germany 1920-1940

Smuts envisioned the inauguration of Transvaal into the Federation of South Africa to secure the mineral wealth for Britain. Rhode’s ‘Round Table’ supported war between the Afrikaner Boere and Britain. The mineral wealth and the developing relationship between the Boer republics and Germany, as well as the

¹⁸⁴ Public Intelligence United Kingdom. (April 30, 2011) *Milner Group Membership List*. Available at: <https://publicintelligence.net/milner-group-membership-list/> and <https://info.publicintelligence.net/MilnerGroup.pdf>

¹⁸⁵ Quigley, Carroll Prof. (1981) *The Anglo-American Establishment. From Rhodes to Cliveden*. New York: Books in Focus Inc. P. 5. Also available at: <https://www.transcend.org/tms/wp-content/uploads/2015/12/ed-The-Anglo-American-Establishment.pdf>

railway between Transvaal and Natal enhancing the Afrikaner’s economic independence caused concern for the Rhodes goal. Smuts, member of the Afrikaner Bond as well as the Milner/Rhodes/Rothchild society, utilised the Bond to influence the Afrikaner Boer community to promote the Round Table Agenda. The author is of the opinion that Smuts’ loyalty was not with the Boers or Afrikaners. His membership with the Afrikaner Broederbond was merely a strategy to promote the Milner/Rhodes/Rothchild society – the Illuminate and Freemason imperial / One World agenda.

The Rhodes Trust operating as the “top layer of the structure”; in 1909 the society was renamed the Round Table; and from 1920 the Institute of International Affairs became its new face.¹⁸⁶

2.6.3.3.9 Anglo Boer War 1899-1902

Milner’s opinion with reference to the political circumstances in Transvaal was ***“no way out of the political troubles of South Africa except reform in the Transvaal or war”***. Milner exaggerated the political concerns in a strategy to manipulate Britain’s hostile takeover of the Transvaal Republic, his viewpoint: ***“Reform of War”¹⁸⁷***

War was unavoidable. Deputy District Grand Master (EC) of Transvaal circulated a letter (September 1899) to all the Freemason lodges urging them to close due to the pending war. Several masons joined the Jewish Ambulance Brigade and commenced with First Aid training to avoid participating in the war. They had friends and family on both sides of the pending war.¹⁸⁸

¹⁸⁶ Maylam, Paul Emeritus Professor (January 29, 2016) *Rhodes: closet gay man who hatched a secret society to promote empire?* Available at: <https://theconversation.com/rhodes-closet-gay-man-who-hatched-a-secret-society-to-promote-empire-53850>

¹⁸⁷ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 66

¹⁸⁸ Grosskopf, Rodney. Right Worshipful Brother. (2012) *Freemasonry and the Anglo-Boer War*. Available at: <https://www.glsa23.co.za/freemasonry-and-the-anglo-boer-war>

Freemason Most Worshipful Brother David Duncan¹⁸⁹ reflection on the Boer war (The battle of Magersfontein in particular) was printed in the “The Square and Compasses” A newsletter for the Grand Lodge of South Africa. No. 8 of March 2019”:

It has been reported that there were many occasions when, under a flag of truce, Freemasons from both sides met together in brotherly love. Peace and harmony were momentarily restored according to Masonic principles. After the meeting, it was back to business as usual. It is also written that later in the conflict, countless lives were spared in Johannesburg and Pretoria when the Masonic military leaders on both sides, agreed not to fight street by street in those two cities and so spared the local population from the horrendous collateral damage that would have occurred.

The two Afrikaner Boer Republics suffered defeat and were returned to British reign. Boer prisoners-of-war (who were also Freemasons) sent to St Helena, were fortunate that there were two lodges there. One prisoner-of war wrote:

‘Existence here is exceedingly dull and a few of us are indebted to the local Lodges for being enabled to spend a few pleasant evenings in town at Lodge meetings. There are two Lodges in St Helena, viz St Helena Lodge, no 488 and the Old Rock Lodge, no 912 (both working under the English Constitution).’¹⁹⁰

Some of the results of the infiltration of General Piet Joubert, General Louis Botha, General Smuts and several other Freemasons and Illuminati members were:

- Afrikaner Nationalism were opposed and debilitated.
- The Afrikaner nation was politically defeated.
- Enormous losses in life and the decline of the Afrikaner nation.
- Enormous economic losses, especially in agriculture was unmeasurable due to the “scourged earth tactics.”¹⁹¹

¹⁸⁹ Duncan, David. Most Worshipful Brother. (March 2019) *Magersfontein and Masonry*. Available at: https://www.grandlodge.co.za/wpcontent/uploads/2019/03/The_Square_and_Compasses_No_86_March_2019.pdf

¹⁹⁰ Grosskopf, Rodney. Right Worshipful Brother. (2012) *Freemasonry and the Anglo-Boer War*. Available at: <https://www.glsa23.co.za/freemasonry-and-the-anglo-boer-war>

¹⁹¹ (i) Scorched-earth policy defined: the act of an army destroying everything in an area such as food, buildings, or equipment that could be useful to an enemy. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/scorched-earth-policy>.

- The Afrikaner Generals Smuts and Botha promoting the Illuminate’s goal to return the Boer Republics to British rule was instrumental in achieving this goal. A final remark with reference to Smuts:

Smuts had studied in England, at Cambridge University and the Middle Temple. By 1895 he was a lawyer in Cape Town. His lack of success in this profession doubtless had some influence in turning him into the devious opportunist he soon became, but throughout his opportunism he clung to that ideal which he started with Rhodes and Milner – the ideal of a united South Africa. All his action from this date onward – no matter how much they may seem, viewed superficially, to lead in another direction – Africa within the British Empire – and, to him almost equally important, a United South Africa in which he would be the dominant figure.¹⁹²

The Boer Freemasonry proceeded even in a foreign country as prisoners of War. They did not repent from idolatry but continue.

The two Afrikaner (Boer) republics were incorporated in the Union of South Africa under British rule. This unification had two results:

- Plea for Multi-racial democracy influenced by the Pax Americana
- Revitalization of the Afrikaner nationalism

“It is interesting to note that after losing the war and experiencing all of the suffering and carnage caused by that conflict, the people of South Africa won the peace. They achieved a measure of independence when the Union of South Africa was created some 10 years later and full self-rule in 1926 under the terms of the Balfour Declaration. Again, Freemasons were involved in this political victory.”

- Most Worshipful Brother David Duncan¹⁹³

(ii) South African History Online. The War. The British tactics during the Boer War resulted in 30 000 homes/farms and 40 towns burned and destroyed. Countless deaths to livestock whilst women and children, black and white were taken to concentration camps, resulting in the death of 41 570 women and children. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/war>

¹⁹² Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 60

¹⁹³ Duncan, David. (March 2019) *Magersfontein and Masonry*. Available at: https://www.grandlodge.co.za/wpcontent/uploads/2019/03/The_Square_and_Compasses_No_86_March_2019.pdf

2.6.3.3.10 Peace Accord at Vereeniging

The peace treaty negotiated at Vereeniging was signed on May 31, 1902 at Melrose House in Pretoria. The British Government agreed to Boer self-governing colonies. Similar to the war, Freemasons negotiated the peace accord on from both sides. Signatories representing Britain were Sir Alfred Milner (Freemason) and Lord Kitchener (Freemason). Signatories for the Boer Republic Transvaal were Schalk W. Burger, Francis W. Reitz (Freemason), Louis Botha (Freemason), Koos de la Rey, Lucas J. Meyer and Johannes C. Krogh. Signatories for the Boer Republic of the Free State were J.B.M. Hertzog, Christiaan de Wet, C.H. Olivier and W.C.J. Bebnier.

No doubt this extremely influential fraternal association was instrumental in forging lasting ties between the erstwhile foes, resulting in South Africa being a fully independent and prosperous country within eight years of the cessation of hostilities. It also helps to explain how Jan Smuts, the Boer General became a British Field Marshal in later years and how a young Boer like Deneys Reitz, who refused to accept the authority of the Crown in 1902 was, by 1916, a Colonel in the British Army in France in the midst of the First World War.¹⁹⁴

Freemason Afrikaner leaders at the time was Smuts, T.F. Burger and General Piet Joubert. Milner

2.6.3.4 1900 - 1999: A Brief History of Freemasonry in South Africa

Particular significant dates

1899-1902	The Boer War
1902	Peace treaty signed at Vereeniging was signed on May 31. British ruled over four South African colonies restored.
1910	Unification of South Africa creating a South African Nation State

¹⁹⁴ Grosskopf, Rodney. Right Worshipful Brother. (2012) *Freemasonry and the Anglo-Boer War*. Available at: <https://www.glsa23.co.za/freemasonry-and-the-anglo-boer-war>

1914-1918	World War I
1921	Afrikaner Bond secret society created
1938	Groot Trek centenary trek and cornerstone of Voortrekker monument.
1961	Grand lodge of SA unite Freemasonry in South Africa
1961	South Africa became a Republic
	Referendum vote to determine negotiated constitutional change for South Africa
1990	President de Klerk unban ANC and all related organisations and release Mr Mandela and others from prison. `
	Codesa I and II negotiations for a South African Government of National Unity
1994	First democratic election with all races participating. Pres Mandela elected the first black president.

Table 4: Freemasonry in South Africa 1900 - 1999

(The Boer war was fought between what was perceived at the two opposing races at the time. The Afrikaans speaking versus the English speaking. The peace accord resulted in the self-governing dominion within the British empire – a political and cultural configuration that was both national and imperial.)¹⁹⁵

2.6.3.4.1 Freemasons Pre-empted the United South Africa (1910)

A Johannesburg Masonic Journal reported as follows:

Union Day – a day moreover when the first of the three principles on which Freemasonry is founded will also come nationally and politically to the front.’

¹⁹⁵ Merrington, P. (1997) *Masques, Monuments, and Masons: The 1910 Pageant of the Union of South Africa. Theatre. Journal* 49(1), 1-14. Retrieved November 14, 2020. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/3208421>

Brotherly Love, Belief and Truth the three Free Masonic principles referred to. Scottish lodges also favoured a united South African masonic union:¹⁹⁶

Lodge Coronation, a Scottish lodge at Newcastle, Natal, "sounded the call to masonic union" in 1906 to other lodges. without avail.90 Another Scottish lodge, Middleburg United Lodge in the Transvaal, sponsored "with great enthusiasm" a United Grand Lodge of South Africa in April 1906, circularised the 36 Scottish lodges in the Transvaal and obtained a two-thirds majority in favour of a Grand Lodge.

Two years later the irrepressible Middleburg Lodge campaigned for a United Grand Lodge for the Transvaal.

A German-speaking Lodge, Zur Eintracht, in Cape Town, petitioned in 1913 for its release from the Dutch Provincial Grand Lodge and institution of direct relations with Holland. This was seen as a move by- unity-minded lodges to join forces in a United Grand Lodge.

The Grand Lodge of South Africa website¹⁹⁷ claims Freemasons as essential contributors in South Africa's recovery after the war:

Many political commentators have suggested that our principles as Freemasons were able to assist in healing the wounds caused by the Boer War. They allowed a Boer General, Louis Botha, to become the first Prime Minister of the Union of South Africa in 1910.

Pax Britannica succeeded to unite white South African in the Union of South Africa in 1910. Several Freemasons were included into the new Union's first cabinet. Two opposing ideologies developed simultaneously: the re-birth of Afrikaner Nationalism and the new Pax Britannica goal of a multi-racial democracy.

During 1914, Cornelius Langenhoven, a member of the English Cango Lodge in Oudsthoorn, proposed that Afrikaans should replace Dutch as the medium of education in schools. In 1918, he wrote "Die stem van Suid-Africa". This poem was, of course, later put to music and became the national anthem from 1957 until 1994.

¹⁹⁶ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 9. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

¹⁹⁷ Freemason History. Available at <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/>

Political apathy amongst the Afrikaner after they forfeited independence to Britain were replaced by a renewed cultural consciousness among the Afrikaner Nation, especially with regards their Afrikaans language. The formation of the 'Taalbond' (Language League) in 1953 by Jan Hofmeyer, a senior member of the Afrikaner Bond with the aim to promote and protect the Afrikaans language and the contributions of several poets like Louis Leipoldt, Totius and others progressed the renewed cultural awareness.

Political inclination was enthused when Lord Milner's imported Chinese labour to the gold mines. Louis Botha organised the first political meeting in Heidelberg to discuss the foreign nationals leading to the formation of the first political party "Het Volk" in 1904.

The Liberal Party, who supported the Afrikaner ideology during the war, gained power in Britain and recalled Milner. A new attitude of good will and cooperation with the Afrikaners and a strategy to enhance cooperation between English and Afrikaners followed.

Representatives of the four British colonies, (Transvaal, Free State, Cape and Natal) negotiated the formation of the Union of South Africa. Cooper describe the Freemason manipulation as follows:

Now, the motivation for an independent masonic authority in South Africa had political overtones, with masons viewing the concept of a nation in South Africa as a prelude to a masonic union.

If south Africa could unite, so could the four masonic constitutions in South Africa – the English, Dutch, Irish and Scottish – their editors wrote.

Proponents for unity gained in strength from the fact that there were Freemasons among the delegates to the National Convention which met in 198 and 199 to draft the new Union Constitution.

2.6.3.4.2 Ossewa Brandwag (Ox Wagon Sentinel) WO I (1914)

Acknowledging the power of the Afrikaner nationalism, the Freemasons used the

subversive organisation of the “Ossewa Brandwag” to divide the Afrikaner nationalism.

Despite of this infiltration, African Nationalism triumphed with the victory by the National Party with the help of the Broederbond and the Afrikaner Party in the 1948 election. Freemasons John Vorster, Pieter Meyer and Kowie Marais unfortunately successfully influenced the National Party and Broederbond via the Afrikaner Party.

2.6.3.4.3 Afrikaner Secret Society: Broederbond (1921) and Afrikaner Bond

The Afrikaner Broederbond (Afrikaner Brotherhood or AB) emerged from the “Jong Suid Afrika” (Young South Africa) in 1918 with the motto “Wees Sterk” (Be Strong). Henning Klopper and Danie Du Plessis as the first elected leader and secretary. The status and upliftment of the Afrikaner and ‘poor whiteism’ (arm blanke vraagstuk) was the paramount motivation for the creation of the Bond. The organisation had one main aim: to further Afrikaner nationalism in South Africa - to maintain Afrikaner culture, develop an Afrikaner economy, and to gain control of the South African government¹⁹⁸. The depleted Afrikaner Nationalism resulted from a combination of factors such as the suppression of the 1914 Rebellion and the execution of Jopie Fourie and imprisonment of other leaders, deteriorated agriculture, and the influenza. In 1924 members elected to become a secret organisation.¹⁹⁹.

It was described as an extremely exclusive Afrikaner, male, protestant, nationalist organisation, in a symbiotic relationship with the National Party²⁰⁰. Membership is available by nomination only and confirmed after the nomination is circulated nationally and no objections were received. The organisational structures are

¹⁹⁸ Afrikaner Broederbond. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/afrikaner-broederbond>

¹⁹⁹ Natrass, Gail (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppesstown: P. 15 P. 157

²⁰⁰ O’Malley. Afrikaner Broederbond. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv02730/05lv03188/06lv03190.htm>

organised from community branches to larger town or city (regional) and then to national structures. Their political participation increased from the 1930’s.

Jan Hofmeyr²⁰¹, Deputy Grand Master of the Dutch Freemasons²⁰², academic scholar, Transvaal Administrator, and Minister of Education, the interior and Public Health in 1933 correspondence mentioned the following:

Broederbond 23 items 1935, 1943-1948

Correspondents: C. Douglas, M.S. du Buson, Federasie van Afrikaanse Kultuurvereniging, G. Henning, J.H. Hofmeyr, T.J. Hugo, J.D. Joubert, E.G. Malherbe, A.A. Oosthuizen, C.J. van Dyk

Subjects:

1935 Object of the Broederbond to govern the country

1943 Meeting of the Broederbond in Bloemfontein attended by many schoolteachers and inspectors

1944 Subversive influences in training colleges and schools

Nation-wide collection of funds to encourage Afrikanerdom Increasing influence of the Broederbond

Report on the Nasionale Instituut vir Onderwys en Opvoeding

1948 United Party's intention to raise the issue in parliament of Broederbond control

Prime Minister JBM Hertzog criticised the political involvement of Broederbond. The elitist organisation included a majority of Afrikaans members of Parliament and Cabinet and other influential academic, business, and cultural men. Since 1948, all Prime Ministers and State Presidents and Executive State Presidents held membership. Norman Levy²⁰³ compared the power of the Broederbond in manipulating politics and culture as **a state within a state**:

Who were the Broederbond whose distorting signature was imprinted on the pages of the laws and in whose secret cells the country’s policies were debated? Here, in all its fanaticism, was the belief that the ideas of service, nation and duty to God were created according to the Broederbond’s thinking; the National Party in all it said and did simply disseminated that message.

²⁰¹ Historical Papers Research Archive. Inventory for A1. Hofmeyr, Jan-Hendrik, 1910-1948. Available at: <http://www.historicalpapers.wits.ac.za/?inventory/U/Collections&c=A1/I>

²⁰² Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y P. 25

²⁰³ Levy, Norman SAHO South African Online History. *The Broederbond*. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/broederbond-norman-levy>

Hertzog discarded the ambition of a united independent Afrikaner republic and motivated a united South African under British rule and the creation of “South Africanism” whereby Afrikaans and English-speaking white people will unite as one nation with two languages. With this political agenda he reinforced the Pax Britannica (Illuminate’s) influence.

The English community was at the time distrustful with regards to the Afrikaner Bond. Cecil John Rhodes (Illuminate) accepted membership of the Afrikaner Bond and in loyalty the Afrikaner Bond supported Rhode’s premiership. This step decreased the English scepticism on the one hand but alienated the Afrikaners. Rhodes imperialistic ideals and capitalism contributed to the Afrikaners in the Republics suspicion. The close relationship between Hofmeyr and Rhodes greatly impacted the political development in the Cape colony.

The Broederbond was transformed into Afrikaner Bond in 1994. Membership were no longer restricted to ‘whites only’. Cynicism is often raised with regards to the alleged relationship with Freemasonry. It might only be because of the dual membership of some members.



Figure 13: Afrikaner Bond emblem²⁰⁴

²⁰⁴ Afrikaner Bond emblem. Available at: <https://www.afrikanerbond.co.za/>



Figure 14: Well-known Freemason emblem²⁰⁵

The emblem with circular and triangle are often questioned although the Afrikanerbond presents their independent symbology. In order to promote Afrikaner culture and leadership, several ‘front organisations’ were established. Herewith some of the alleged associated organisations and corporations:



The Afrikaner Broederbond

Figure 15: Organisations and Companies allegedly associated with the Afrikaner Broederbond.²⁰⁶

²⁰⁵ Freemason symbols and emblems: Eye of Providence. Available at: <https://www.gettyimages.com/detail/news-photo/the-pyramid-and-the-all-seeing-eye-symbols-used-in-the-news-photo/525515034>

²⁰⁶ Organisations and Companies allegedly aligned with the Afrikaner Broederbond. White Genocide in South Africa. Video: The Afrikaner Broederbond: The most shocking is the relationship between the AB and the Rothchild family. Available at: <http://stopwhitegenocideinsareports.blogspot.com/2016/03/video-afrikaner-broederbond-most.html>

The author noted the following associates on the chart:

- Several South African *mainstream media* manipulating media content: ENCA, Media 24, Multichoice and E-TV. Naspers is the largest internet company in Africa and the seventh largest internet company in the world with operations in 133 countries. Koos Bekker (CEO from the mid 1980’s-2016). He made substantial investments in the Chinese Company “Tencent”. Tencent supported by the Chinese government aims to become a competitor to Amazon.com. They differ in the evaluation of individuals credit rating by collecting data from individual’s social media with regards to political party loyalty and participation in social concerns. Sesame Data also collects data from online purchases. Comments “along party lines” and purchases the Chinese government deems valuable (for e.g. work shoes) result in a rise of the individuals score. This Sesame credit rating has real life consequences e.g. higher scores influences the administration for international travel or successful credit/loan applications. Koos Bekker is also the owner of the wine estate Babylonstoren near Stellenbosch.
- Political organisation: South African Institute of Race Relations, FW de Klerk Foundation, Irdeto²⁰⁷, Freedom Front
- Afrikaner Religion, Academy and Cultural organisations: Die Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk van Suid Afrika, (the Dutch Reformed Church of South Africa), Afrikaanse Taalraad (Afrikaans Language Board) Suid Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns. (South African Academy for Science and Art), FAK (Federasie van Afrikaanse Kultuur (Federation of African Culture), ATKV, Afrikaanse Taal en Kultuur Vereniging, (Afrikaans Language and Culture Association), Voortrekkers (Afrikaner Youth Organisation).

²⁰⁷ Irdeto: World leader in digital platform security. Irdeto protects platforms and applications for video entertainment, video games, connected transport, connected health and LoT connected Industries. Available at: <https://irdeto.com/>

An additional chart indicating the Johann Rupert, Koos Becker and N.M. Rothchild influence, especially control over the media and publishing houses of is astonishing:

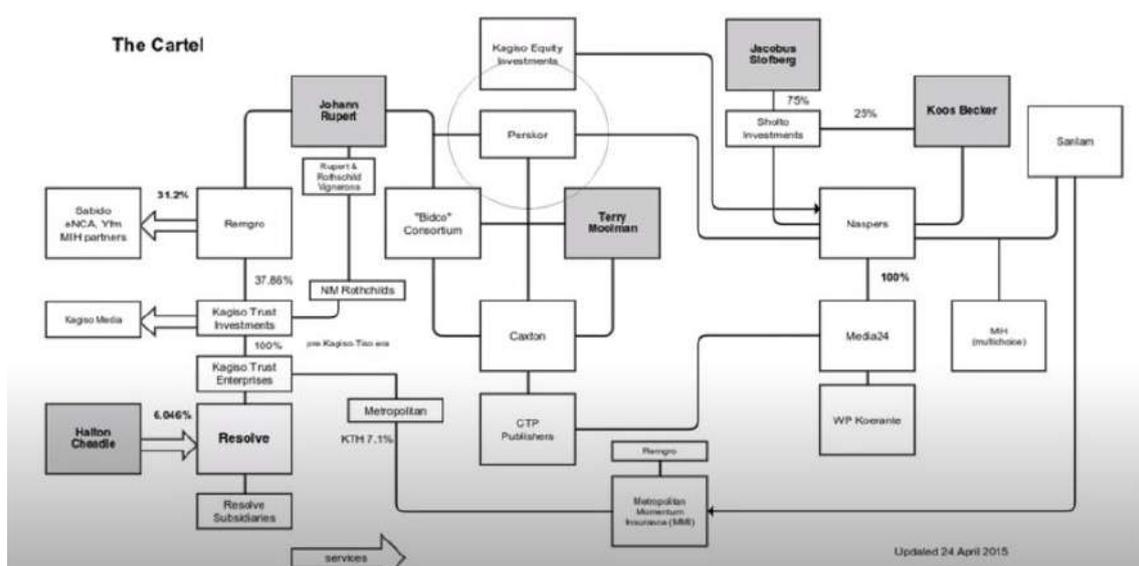


Figure 16: Organisations and Companies allegedly associated with the Afrikaner Bond, Johann Rupert, Koos Becker and NM Rothchild.²⁰⁸

An article and video titled “White Genocide in South Africa”²⁰⁹, published in May 2016 made profoundly serious allegations. The author does not necessarily agree with the following:

- **Clearly by November 1986 the Afrikaner bond (New name for Afrikaner Broederbond) had already decided for the rest of South Africa that every other vote, political debate, referendum or speech was all maculatus ...South Africa's fate was sealed on the inside of an Afrikaner bonds meeting.**
- **Their agenda aligned with the MASONIC PLANNED DISASTER for Global DESTRUCTION of Socialist & Communist Imperialism for the Coming “NEW World Order”**
- **The transformation that started with the death of Dr. Hendrik Verwoerd is complete... The Afrikaner bond has turned from guardian to handler.**

²⁰⁸ The Afrikaner Broederbond. Available at: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9XG3FcP_NG0

²⁰⁹ White Genocide in South Africa. Available at: <http://stopwhitegenocideinsareports.blogspot.com/2016/03/video-afrikaner-broederbond-most.html>

- **The Afrikaner bond is today the new world order's local management team, it serves as watch dog & controls every aspect of 'Afrikaner life' & enslaves and control the black nations of South Africa.**
- **It controls the 'Afrikaner' through its influence in culture, finance, education, religion, media, labour & politics. The Afrikaner bond ensures that all the Afrikaner conform to the international agenda of multiculturalism & multiracialism, political correctness, feminism, sexual promiscuity and homosexuality, financial dependency through debt, multi religions & occultism, blind obedience internationalism instead of nationalism, destruction of families, slavery through socialism...They know perfectly well the misery they are unleashing on South Africans...**

2.6.3.4.4 Possible Freemason Influenced Ceremony During the Voortrekker Monument Cornerstone Celebration 1938

The author noted similarities between the Freemason's Cornerstone symbolism and rituals, and the cornerstone ceremony of the Voortrekker Monument. It is important to take note that this observation is not substantiated by any available literature.

Ohio Grand Lodge²¹⁰ elaborates on cornerstone rituals:

Freemasons in their ceremonies have made the cornerstone a symbol of the individual Mason and the sacrifices of labor and time necessary to build a moral and Masonic edifice. Today we hollow out the cornerstones, placing small objects inside, like coins, photographs, newspapers, or a list of those who erected the building; it's wholly up to the committee in charge's imagination. This tradition includes a subtle nod to its origin; in Freemasonry, he who hunts for the symbol behind the symbol will find from the cornerstone the need of sacrifice in time, effort, and thought at the beginning of every effort and of one's Masonic journey. Every Mason must make these sacrifices if they choose to play an integral part in bettering themselves and the lives of those in their communities.

Norm McEvoy²¹¹ confirmed the history of the craft as follows:

In Masonic buildings it is now always placed in the north east; but this rule was not always formally observed

²¹⁰ The Grand Lodge of Ohio. *Behind the Masonic Symbols: The Cornerstone*. Available at: <https://www.freemason.com/behind-the-masonic-symbols-the-cornerstone/>

²¹¹ McEvoy, Norm (July 10, 2017) *Symbolism of the Corner Stone*. Available at: <https://theeducator.ca/symbolism-of-the-corner-stone/>

Dr. Peter Hammond²¹² described the Voortrekker monument cornerstone on the north east corner as follows:

This massive granite structure located on a hilltop, was designed by architect, Gerard Moerdijk. The cornerstone was laid on Monument Hill, December 16, 1938, by three descendants of Voortrekker leaders: the granddaughter of Andries Pretorius, the great granddaughter of Hendrik Potgieter and the great granddaughter of Piet Retief.

Under the foundation stone is buried a copy of the Covenant vow made by the Voortrekkers on the eve of the Battle of Blood River, December 16, 1838, a copy of the anthem Die Stem and a copy of the land deal for Natal, signed by Dingaan, King of the Zulus after Piet Retief had fulfilled the conditions he had required. The monument was inaugurated December 16, 1949, by Prime Minister D.F. Malan.



Figure 17: Voortrekker monument Cornerstone.

Inscription translated:

A Great-granddaughter of Piet Retief

A Granddaughter Andries Pretorius

A Great-granddaughter Andries Hendrik Potgieter

Laid this cornerstone on December 16, 1938²¹³

²¹² Hammond, Peter Dr. *The Reformation society*. ReformationSA.org. *The Voortrekker Monument* Available at: <https://www.reformationsa.org/index.php/history/385-the-voortrekker-monument>

²¹³ The Photographic Journey of bulldog. (August 30, 2012) Voortrekker Monument in Pretoria. Available at: <https://visitstotheperk.files.wordpress.com/2012/08/voortrekker-monument-082.jpg>

2.6.3.4.5 Apartheid

As result of the Pax Britannica segregation policies legislation were adopted:

Historical constitutional development in South Africa and the white Afrikaner passion for independence and self-determination opposed the Illuminate’s goal. Adv. Pretorius²¹⁴ is of the opinion that the greatest mistake the Afrikaner nation could make was to be deceived by Freemasonry.

2.6.3.4.6 A United Grand Lodge

During 1878, Albany Lodge dismissed the authority of the centralised Cape Mason authority, the English Provincial Grand Lodge and campaigned to retain independence. Although the four Lodges (English, Netherland, Sottish, and Ireland) operated in harmony with many Masons holding joint membership, and some Temples jointly owned by Lodges from different Constitutions, the first suggestion for a United Grand Lodge was made in 1875 and again in 1892. Dutch as well as British lodges lobbied for an Independent Grand Lodge in South Africa, uniting all masons, independent from the British and Netherland Grand Lodges. Masons even retained loyalty to the Freemason oath during the Anglo Boer War, **“saving their Brethren, going so far as to spare the Temples from destruction.”**²¹⁵

Perhaps as a result of political circumstances, the upsurge of Afrikanerdom and the growing campaign for a South African Republic, the striving for a South African Grand Lodge again gained momentum.²¹⁶

The Grand Lodge of Southern Africa was eventually established on April 22, 1961 with Colonel Colin Graham Botha as its first Grand Master. The combined record

²¹⁴ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers.

²¹⁵ Freemason History Available at <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>

²¹⁶ Freemason History Available at <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>

of Lodges in 1875 was as follows:²¹⁷

Total Lodges	Region	Dutch Lodges	British Lodges
11	Western Province	8	3
14	Eastern Province	3	11
8	Midland Province	4	4
5	Free State	3	2
2	South African Republic	2	0
3	3 Griqualand West	1	2
43	Total	21	22
2281	Total Membership	1114	1167

Table 5: Combined record of Lodges in 1875

Colonel Colin Graham Botha was the first Grand Master.²¹⁸ Chronological list of Grand Masters elected:

- 1961 M Wor Bro Col C.G. Botha
- 1966 M Wor Bro E. Conradie
- 1973 M Wor Bro S.R. Gasson
- 1983 M Wor Bro C.B. Groenwald
- 1991 M Wor Bro R.S. Bauser
- 1997 M Wor Bro B.G. Lindeque
- 2003 M Wor Bro J.T. Bowen
- 2008 M Wor Bro A. Watson

²¹⁷ Cooper, Alan Amos (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Master of Arts in the University of Cape Town. Available at: https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y. P. 64

²¹⁸ First South African Grand Master. Available at: <http://www.grandlodge.co.za/in-the-beginning/>

2.6.3.4.7 Significance of the South African Coat of Arms



Figure 18: The Coat of Arms - Grand Lodge of South Africa²¹⁹

The Coat of Arms of the Grand Lodge of South Africa registered at the Bureau of Heraldry, Certificate No. 1428 of 3rd April 1987. Or a square with corner base ward surmounted by a compass Gules; on a chief Azure a sun in splendour; Or Crest: A lion couchant; Or Wreath; Or Gules, Supporters: Two Springboks proper; collared On Motto: Deo et Collegio.²²⁰ Meaning “For God and our Order”: “Vir God en ons Orde”.²²¹

The author noted the obvious resemblance between the Coat of Arms of the Grant Lodge of South Africa and South African Coat of Arms²²²:

South African Coat of Arms was amended several times.

²¹⁹ Coat of Arms. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/yearbooks/GLSA2016.pdf>

²²⁰ Grand Lodge South Africa Coat of Arms. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/yearbooks/GLSA2016.pdf>. P. 3

²²¹ Meaning of motto. Available at: <http://mason33.org/content/africa/grand-lodge/index.html>

²²² South Africa - Coat of Arms. Available at: [https://www.crwflags.com/fotw/flags/za\)coa.html](https://www.crwflags.com/fotw/flags/za)coa.html)

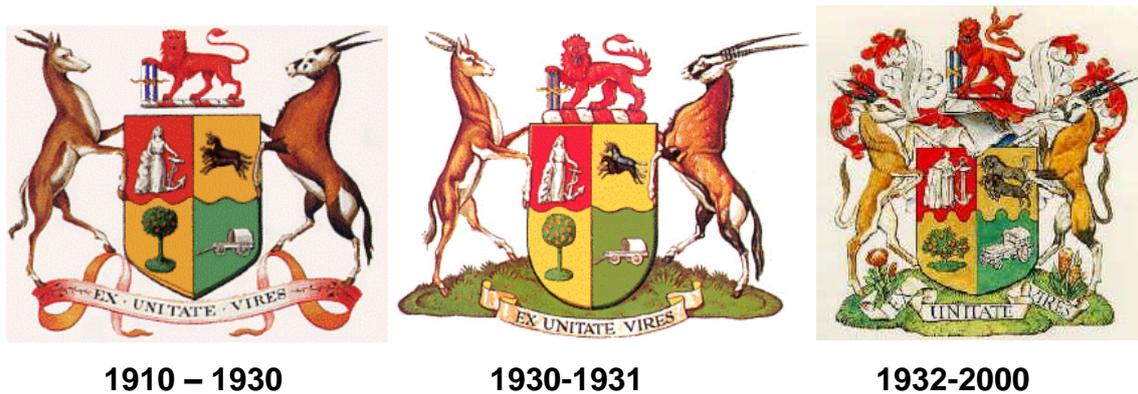


Figure 19: South African Coat of Arms

Apart from the antelope, the author also points to the following symbolism in the South African Coat of Arms reflecting masonic meaning:

- **Ankh**

Although the ankh is not in the Freemason symbol, it remains a prominent symbol. The Voice of Freemasonry Volume 36²²³ communicate the following to fellow masons:

As we learn more and more about the mystery traditions of the Ancient Egyptians, we find that Kabbalah and the Tree of Life (represented by the hieroglyph Ankh meaning “life”) were already known to the priesthood of Amen-Ra.

- **Lion paw found on both the South African and Freemason Coat of Arms**

The Grand Lodge of Wisconsin²²⁴ explains as follows:

During the third section of the Master Mason degree, we are introduced to the Hiramic Legend. The candidate, representing Hiram Abif, is raised from his makeshift grave by the help of the strong grip of a Master Mason, or

²²³ The Voice of Freemasonry in the Nation’s Capital, Volume 36, Number 3, 2019. Available at: https://www.dcgrandlodge.org/uploads/6/9/5/4/6954862/voice_2019_issue_03-final.pdf

²²⁴ Grand Lodge of Wisconsin – Masonic Study Series Volume 2, Issue 8. (February 2017) Available at: <http://members.wisc-freemasonry.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/MSS-The-Lions-Paw-February-2017.pdf>

Lion’s Paw. Applying this symbolism to the candidate, it means that he entered the Lodge as a natural man, lost in sin and spiritually buried. By the strong Grip of the Lion’s Paw, he is raised again to a new life, or born again to spiritual righteousness, standing, again in a living perpendicular with a purified inner self accomplished through the direct action of the Redeemer, who was the Lion of the Tribe of Judah.”

2.6.3.5 2000-Current

Particular significant dates

2001	An official panel considered the 1999 arms deal corruption allegations involving British, French, German, Italian, Swedish and South African firms.
2002	Court acquits Dr. Wouter Basson - dubbed "Dr. Death" - who ran apartheid-era germ warfare programme. Basson had faced charges of murder and conspiracy. ANC condemns verdict.
2004	April - Ruling ANC wins landslide election victory, gaining nearly 70% of votes. Thabo Mbeki begins a second term as president. Inkatha Freedom Party leader Mangosuthu Buthelezi is dropped from the cabinet.
2005	President Mbeki sacks his deputy, Jacob Zuma, in the aftermath of a corruption case.
2006	South Africa becomes the first African country, and the fifth in the world, to allow same-sex unions.
2007	Cape Town mayor Helen Zille is elected as new leader of the main opposition Democratic Alliance (Democratic Alliance).
2008	The Congress of the People - or Cope as a new political party founded.

2009	Appeals court rules that state prosecutors can resurrect their corruption case against ANC leader Jacob Zuma, opening the way for Mr Zuma's trial to be resumed, just months before general election
2009	Parliament elects Jacob Zuma as president.
	Economy goes into recession for first time in 17 years
2011	The ANC suspends its controversial and influential youth leader, Julius Malema, for five years for bringing the party into disrepute.
2012	August-October - Police open fire on workers at a platinum mine in Marikana, killing at least 34 people, and leaving at least 78 injured and arresting more than 200 others.
2012	Former ANC youth leader Julius Malema is charged with money laundering
2013	Nelson Mandela dies at age 95. Tributes to "the father of the nation" flood in from throughout the world.
2014	Ruling ANC party wins a majority in general elections.
2018	President Zuma resigns under pressure from the governing ANC over corruption charges

Table 6: 2000- Current

2.6.3.5.1 Grand Lodge South Africa

South African Freemason lodges are well established. The official South African Freemason website opens as follows:²²⁵

***For God and our Order
Vir God en ons Orde (Afrikaans translation)
Deo et Collegio***

²²⁵ Lodge locator. Available at: https://portal.grandlodge.co.za/public_lodges/search?q=&d=3

Welcome to the Grand Lodge of South Africa

Freemasonry is an organisation of men who strive to live by the fundamental principles of truth, morality and brotherly love. It is a non-profit organisation and supports charity and community service. It unifies men of high ideals regardless of their colour, creed or worldly status.

The website lists the South African Freemason catalogue of lodges:

1 Lodge		
Lodge	Founded	Location
Makalani No.114	1973	Grootfontein, Namibia

Table 7: Grand Lodge South Africa

2.6.3.5.1.1 Southern Division

14 Lodges		
Lodge	Founded	Location
De Goede Hoop No. 1	1772	Cape Town
De Goede Trouw No.2	1800	Cape Town
St Jan No. 6	1867	Paarl
Orange No.7	1867	Paarl
De Goede Verwachting No. 23	1908	Cape Town
Marina No. 25	1908	Cape Town
Belville No. 42	1931	Cape Town
Waterfront No.43	1931	Cape Town
Mutual No.53	1940	Cape Town
Johan van Riebeeck No.53	1940	Cape Town
Simon van der Stel No.101	1968	Cape Town
Hiram No.108	1971	Cape Town
Helderberg No.116	1975	Cape Town

Perseverance No.126	1977	Cape Town
Cape Town No.138	2002	Cape Town
Total of 15 Lodges.		

Table 8: Grand Lodge South Africa Southern Division

2.6.3.5.1.2 Northern Division

22 Lodges		
Lodge	Founded	Location
Aurora No.8	1868	The Willows, Pretoria
Orange No.12	1878	Rustenburg
Star of the Rand No.15	1889	Johannesburg
Libertas No.16	1890	Krugersdorp
De Broederband No.17	1892	The Willows, Pretoria
Prins Frederik No.19	1894	Johannesburg
Star of East No.28	1920	Germiston
Star of the West No.56	1948	Klerksdorp
Albert J Haak No.60	1951	Roodepoort
M W Pretorius No.62	1951	Carltonville
Sonop No.63	1952	Germiston
Star of North No.64	1952	Pietersburg
President Burgers No.70	1954	The Willows, Pretoria
Golden City No.75	1956	Orange Grove, Johannesburg
Koh -I- Noor No.79	1957	The Willows, Pretoria
Alpha No.89	1962	Orange Grove, Johannesburg
Friendship No.95	1963	Orange Grove, Johannesburg

Trichardt No.106	1970	Kinross
Brits No.110	1972	Beestekraal Brits
The Rising Star No.129	1983	Cullinan
Jock of Bushveld No.130	1983	Nelspruit
Flaming Star No.139	2005	Orange Grove, Johannesburg
Total of 22 Lodges.		

Table 9: Grand Lodge South Africa Northern Division

2.6.3.5.1.3 Central Division

9 Lodges		
Lodge	Founded	Location
Unie No.4	1864-1889 1889-1921 reses, 1921 till date	Bloemfontein
De Morgenster No.9	1870	Kroonstad
Peace & Harmony No.11	1873	Kimberley
Diamond No.22	1907	Koffiefontein
Senekal No.27	1914	Senekal
Parys No.30	1922	Parys
Central Free State No.35	1923	Welkom
Dagreek No.45	1932	Bloemfontein
Bultfontein No.123	1977	Bultfontein
Total of 9 Lodges		

Table 10: Grand Lodge South Africa Central Division

2.6.3.5.1.4 Eastern Division

7 Lodges		
Lodge	Founded	Location
Neerlandia No.3	1922 (Recess December and January)	Durban
Dromedaris No.77	1957	Pietermaritzburg
Theophilus No.10	1971	Margate
Meerensee No.118	1975	Empangeni
Mngeni No.13	1986	Durban
First United No.140	2008	Durban
Isandlwana No.141	2013	Durban
Total of 7 Lodges		

Table 11: Grand Lodge South Africa Eastern Division

2.6.3.5.1.5 Eastern Cape Division

7 Lodges		
Lodge	Founded	Location
De Vereeniging No.3	1834	Graaf Reinet
Fidelity No.34	1925	Port Elizabeth
Milton No.49	1936	Queenstown
Royal Protea No.55	1948	East London
Bartholomeus Diaz No.72	1954	Port Elizabeth
Tolerance No. 142	2015	Port Elizabeth
Coelacanth No 137		East London
Total of 7 Lodges.		

Table 12: Grand Lodge South Africa Eastern Cape Division

According to the Lodges listed: 61 Lodges in South Africa.

2.6.3.5.2 Aim of the Grand Lodge²²⁶

The aim of the Grand Lodge of South Africa is to build a non-racial brotherhood of good men who practice brotherly love, charity and truth and who are united in the enhancement of wisdom, high moral standards and justice for all persons. The strict adherence to these principles will inculcate the duties of loyalty, good citizenship and family values in its members and will promote reconciliation between and mutual respect of all persons. They will further strengthen the members' belief in a Supreme Being and will encourage the practice of equality of all persons and the adherence of human rights for all persons. They will also ultimately build stronger bonds of true friendship among its members.

2.6.3.5.3 Masonic Principles

T.N. Cranstound-Day, District Grand Master for English Lodges in the Western Cape, stated the Masonic principles to his Lodge in 1965 as follows:²²⁷

1. Freemasonry is a charitable, benevolent, educational and religious society. Its principles are proclaimed as widely as men will hear. Its only secrets are in its methods of recognition and of symbolic instruction.
2. It is charitable in that it is not organised for profit, and none of its income inures to the benefit of any individual, but all is devoted to the promotion of the welfare and happiness of mankind.
3. It is benevolent in that it teaches and exemplifies altruism as a duty.

²²⁶ Grand Lodge Constitution. Available at: https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view

²²⁷ Cooper, Alan. A (1983) PhD *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. vii. Available at <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>

4. It is educational in that it teaches by prescribed ceremonials a system of morality and brotherhood based upon the Sacred Law.
5. It is religious in that it requires a belief in God, the Creator of the Universe - that is essential: The volume of the Sacred Law (The Holy Bible) is open upon its altars whenever a Lodge is in session; reverence for God is ever present in its ceremonies, and to its brethren are constantly addressed lessons of morality; but it is not sectarian nor theological.
6. It is a social organisation only so far as it furnishes additional inducement for men to foregather in numbers, thereby providing more material for its primary work of education, of spiritual uplift and of charity.
7. Through the improvement and strengthening of the character of the individual man, Freemasonry seeks to improve the community. Thus, it impresses upon its members the principle of personal integrity and personal responsibility; enlightens them as to those things which make for human welfare, and inspires them with that feeling of charity, or goodwill towards their fellow men which move them to translate principle and conviction into action.
8. To that end it stands for obedience to God's law; for truth and justice; fraternity and philanthropy; and enlightenment and orderly liberty, civil, religious and intellectual.
9. It charges each of its members to be true and loyal to the government of the country to which he owes allegiance, and to be obedient to the law of any State in which he may be.
10. It believes that the attainment of these objectives, is best accomplished by having a broad basis of principle upon which men of every race, country and opinion may unite rather than by setting up a restricted platform upon which only those of certain creeds, races and opinions can assemble.
11. Believing these things, it adheres to that ancient and approved rule of Freemasonry which forbids the discussion in Masonic meetings of creeds, politics, or other topics likely to excite personal animosities.

12. It further affirms its conviction that it is not only contrary to the fundamental principles of the Craft, but dangerous to its unity, strength, usefulness and welfare, for Masonic bodies to take action or to attempt to exercise pressure or influence for or against any legislation.

Thus, an attempt to procure the election or appointment of Government officials, or to influence them - whether members of the Craft or not - in the performance of their official duties. The true Freemason will act in civil life according to his individual judgment and the dictates of his conscience.

13. We have never been aggressors, nor sought to dominate; or to deny to any man the right to hold to his own faith; his convictions; the choice of his associates; and his way of life", said Cranstoun-Day.

This noble goal is surely a motivation for members and instils pride to be associated with and initiated into the Freemasons. It is however not the esoteric goals.

2.6.3.5.4 Annual Meetings²²⁸

The Grand Lodge shall hold its Annual Meeting between June and September, but in the event of unforeseen circumstances, not later than October 31st of each year. The Grand Master shall direct the venue of all Meetings and may convene additional Meetings

2.6.3.5.5 Application for Membership²²⁹

Subject to Articles 44.2 and 44.3, no male person shall be initiated into a Lodge while under the age of twenty-one (21) years, unless by dispensation of the Grand

²²⁸ Constitution of the Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view

²²⁹ Constitution of the Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view

Master or the Provincial.

Grand Master. Every candidate shall be a free man and of good standing.

The son of a Freemason – known as a Lewis – may be proposed as a candidate on him attaining the age of eighteen (18) years (or thereafter) and there is no sanction for any abatement in his favour or the fee ordinarily charged for an initiation.

It is not in order for a Lodge to accept an application for initiation for an eighteen (18) year old stepson of a Master Mason, but it is acceptable from a legally adopted son.

A Lodge is not debarred from receiving an application for initiation from a male person who is deaf, who lip-reads and speaks, but not from a deaf-mute. In view of ceremonial and other difficulties, Lodges may exercise their discretion in this matter.

Every member, upon initiation, shall be supplied with a copy of this Constitution, Laws and Regulations and his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to be an express declaration of his admission of and submission to its contents.

2.6.3.5.6 Joining, Re-joining and Affiliating²³⁰

A member desiring to become a joining, re-joining or affiliating member of a Lodge shall be proposed at a properly constituted meeting. He shall be balloted for at the next Board of Management meeting. If elected, he shall take up his membership within one (1) year.

²³⁰ Constitution of the Grand Lodge of South Africa. Available at: https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view

2.6.4 Particular Comments

2.6.4.1 Masonic Influence in Architecture

During the Anglo Boer War Freemasons fought on both side of the war. The British Publication "Freemason" reported in July 1902 on Boer Republic buildings associated with Freemason were not destroyed.

A typical example of Freemason influenced architecture is found in the main building of the Dutch Reformed Church faculty at the University of Stellenbosch (picture left, architect Freemason Carl Otto Hager) and the first Freemason Lodge (Lodge De Goede Hoop, picture on the right).



Figure 20: Freemason architecture. Dutch Reformed Church Building right and Freemason lodge left.²³¹

The Theological building, apart from the pillars, triangular and sun symbol also portray the Coat of Arms of the Utrecht University where many South African ministers of the Dutch Reformed Church studied. The University motto is also portrayed: "***Sol iustitiae Illustra Nos***," which means "May the Sun of

²³¹ Die Vals Priesterdom: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (Deel 1). Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N8vna9NKekD>

Righteousness Enlighten Us", also translated to "May the sun of righteousness illuminates us"²³². The motto was cleaned from Malachi 4:2.

But for you who revere my name the sun of righteousness shall rise, with healing in its wings.

Malachi 4:2

The 'enlightenment' or 'illumination' of Freemasonry opposes the 'righteousness' for those who revere God's Name.

2.6.4.2 Obelisk Monuments

Described as Masonic "erectations" - offspring of the ancient Egyptian obelisk.

And the obelisk, in those days, represented the dismembered phallus of the God-King, Osiris.18 As we learn more and more about the mystery traditions of the Ancient Egyptians, we find that Kabbalah and the Tree of Life (represented by the hieroglyph Ankh meaning "life") were already known to the priesthood of Amen-Ra.

Numerous Obelisks are found, especially in monuments and memorial graves. The author noted how the Afrikaner Freemasons were not restricted to South Africa only. An Obelisk-monument was erected in St Helena to honour the Boer prisoners of war. (Anglo Boer War). Sarel Cilliers, Voortrekker leader and the great inspiration for the Blood river Afrikaner Covenant with God grave also portrays the obelisk.

What is assumed to be a Minister on the St Helena photo as well as Sarel Cilliers portray another Masonic message with their hands on a book.

²³² Die Vals Priesterdom: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (Deel 1). Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N8vna9NKeko>



Figure 21: St Helena monument



Figure 22: Sarel Cilliers (R) and his grave. (L)

2.6.4.3 South African Parliament and the Lodge De Goede Hoop

The Lodge de Goede Hoop, established in Cape Town (founded in 1772) built the first Freemason Temple on South African soil in 1802, the inaugurated followed in 1803. Several of the Cape Government members had dual membership with the Freemasonry. The Cape Parliament used the masonic banquet hall as a venue from 1854 to 1884 until the Old House of the Assembly was completed.

The South African Parliament was built on the grounds belonging to the Freemasons. The Sunday Press of June 8, 2014, reported on the tour of the secret temple and refers to the following:

- Freemason symbol on the window
- Star of David above the wooden doors
- Well known Masonic symbols – the square and a pair of compasses
- On the wall is an engraved list of the names of former masters
- wall beside the front door is adorned with a framed photograph of Watty Watson, former DA chief whip and retiring Grand Master

Inside the Meditation Chamber

- statue of a dead man with a dagger
- a book and an hourglass and the words “know thyself”
- Two artificial human skulls

The middle chamber

The most fascinating room in the Lodge De Goede Hoop is undoubtedly the middle chamber. With only two small windows letting in a sliver of light, the room is dark even in the middle of the day. Here, ceremonies are held at night in the pitch dark to remind members just how fleeting their lives are.²³³

Territorial power in the conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan is already discussed in Chapter two. Physical territories and buildings, dedicated It is the opinion of the author that territory dedicated.

2.6.4.4 Notable South African Freemasons

Politicians

- General Louis Botha, the first Prime Minister of South Africa

²³³ Parliament’s secret temple revealed. (June 8, 2014) News24. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/SouthAfrica/News/Parliaments-secret-temple-revealed-20140608>.

- Cecil John Rhodes,
- Lord de Villiers,
- Sir Andries Stockenström
- Sir John Truter, first Chief Justice of the Cape
- Commissioner Jacob de Mist of the Batavian Republic,
- Sir Christoffel Brand, first Speaker of the Cape Assembly,
- Sir Henry de Villiers, chairman of the national convention and
- Jan Hendrik Hofmeyr

Presidents

- Reitz, Pretorius, Brand and Burgers of the old republics
- Lord Milner, Cape Governor

Military

- General Piet Joubert, General Piet Retief and Captain Danie Theron,
- British side Lords Roberts and Kitchener and Generals Haig and French

Artist & Architects

- C.J. Langenhoven, who wrote the words of “Die Stem”, one of our two national anthems,
- Gustav Preller
- Louis Thibault
- Anton Anreich

Business

- Harry Oppenheimer, builders of the world's greatest diamond empire, which originated in Kimberley.

2.6.4.5 Application for Membership

Web search “Freemasonry” delivers several invitations to join the Illuminati. The association is bold, and Freemasonry and the Illuminati is presented as one organisation. Herewith an example²³⁴: The website provides a definition of the illuminate as follows

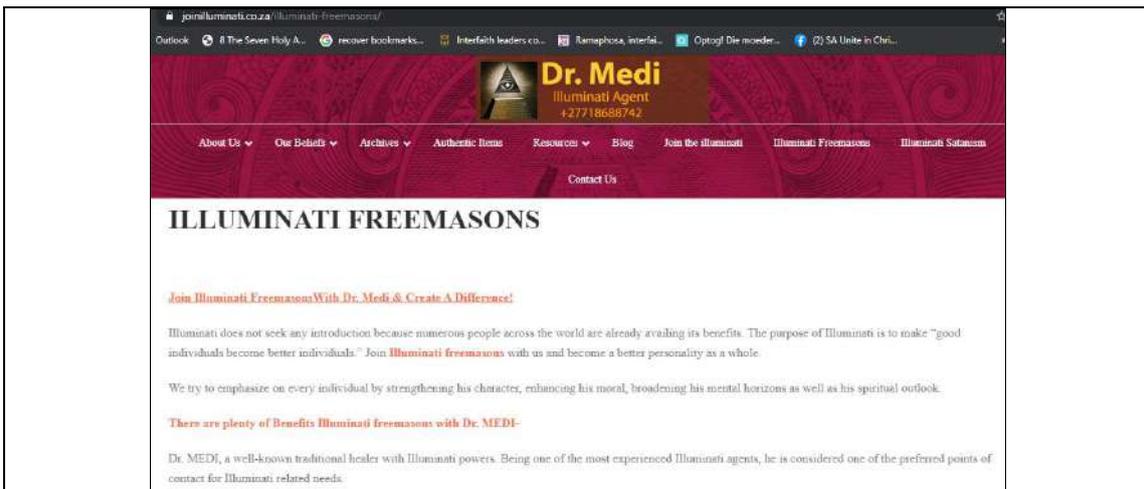


Figure 23: Dr. Medi Illuminate Agent²³⁵



Figure 24: How to join Illuminate²³⁶

²³⁴ Illuminati membership. Available at: <https://www.joinilluminati.co.za/illuminati-freemasons/>

²³⁵ Dr. Medi Illuminate Agent. Available at: <https://www.joinilluminati.co.za/about-us/>

²³⁶ How to join Illuminate. Available at: <https://joinilluminatiams.com/>

The author noted the following:

- The astounding blunt close association between the Freemasons and the Illuminate. It is presented as one organisation.
- The effortless method to join the organisation. Uniformed people might easily be convinced to join. The author identifies two vulnerable groups: young people browsing the internet and join out of curiosity and the invitation of fame and fortune. Stats SA²³⁷ indicated 20.4 million young people unemployed during the first quarter of 2020. Secondly, financially challenged individuals and businesses, especially after the devastating financial the economic lockdown due to the Covid-19 pandemic.
- The association with traditional healers and the illuminate. This bridge not only the cultural differences, but also bridge the natural scepticism for the unknown which will advance the decision to become a member.

2.7 The Illuminate

The Illuminate conspiracy theory overshadow all other conspiracy theories. According to BBC reporter Sophia Smith Galer²³⁸ Films like Angels and Demons based on the books of Dan Brown have brought the concept of the Illuminated into popular consciousness. Phil Edwards²³⁹ reported in 2015 3.4 million ‘likes’ on the Illuminate Facebook page and 200 000 subscribers to YouTube channels with the Illuminate content.

Professor in Law at the University of Florida Mark Fenster²⁴⁰ remarked:

“It’s absurd on its face that you’ve got this sacred group that’s more than 300 years old and continue to see arguments about its relevance today,” he says. “The fact that the discussion is alive is amazing.”

²³⁷ Vulnerability of youth in the South African labour market. Available at: <http://www.statssa.gov.za/?p=13379>

²³⁸ Best of BBC Future: Anthropology. Smith Galer, Sophia (July 11, 2020) *The accidental invention of the Illuminate conspiracy*. Available at: <https://www.bbc.com/future/article/20170809-the-accidental-invention-of-the-illuminati-conspiracy>

²³⁹ Edwards, Philip (January 19, 2016) *9 Questions about the Illuminati you were too afraid to ask*. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

²⁴⁰ Edwards, Philip (January 19, 2016) *9 Questions about the Illuminati you were too afraid to ask*. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

Regardless the widespread interest in the Illuminate, results of a survey done in 2012 by Joseph Uscinski²⁴¹, political scientist at the University of Miami and co-author of American Conspiracy Theories with Joseph Parent indicated that zero Americans believed the Illuminate is controlling politics. This stands in contrast with another survey done in 2013 by Public Policy Polling (a Democratic-leaning polling firm) 28% of voters indicated they believe in the existence of the Illuminate.²⁴² Endless efforts of Fagan and others to awake Americans to the truth and danger of the Illuminate strategy had zero success if the success is measured by the outcomes of this survey.

Galer²⁴³, referred to the Illuminate agenda as “this far-fetched paranoia” is of the opinion that it originated from a “playful work of fiction in the 1960s.” David Bramwell²⁴⁴, claimed researcher (and also broadcaster) stated the following with regards to the Illuminate myth:

Instead, an era of counter-culture mania, LSD and interest in Eastern philosophy is largely responsible for the group’s (totally unsubstantiated) modern incarnation. It all began somewhere amid the Summer of Love and the hippie phenomenon, when a small, printed text emerged: Principia Discordia.

George Hill²⁴⁵ described ‘Principia Discordia’ or ‘How I found Goddess and What I Did to Her When I Found Her:

The Magnum Opiate of Malaclypse the Younger’ “as one of the great books of our time. The official Bible of the most relevant religion ever conceived, Discordianism”²⁴⁶. The ‘underground classic’ apparently contains absolutely

²⁴¹ Edwards, Philip (January 19, 2016) 9 Questions about the Illuminati you were too afraid to ask. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

²⁴² Gill, Martha. The Guardian. (November 22, 2017) What is the Illuminati? Available at: <https://www.theguardian.com/commentisfree/2017/nov/22/what-is-illuminati-google-autocomplete>

²⁴³ Best of BBC Future: Anthropology. Smith Galer, Sophia (July 11, 2020) *The accidental invention of the Illuminate conspiracy*. Available at: <https://www.bbc.com/future/article/20170809-the-accidental-invention-of-the-illuminati-conspiracy>

²⁴⁴ Best of BBC Future: Anthropology. Smith Galer, Sophia (July 11, 2020) *The accidental invention of the Illuminate conspiracy*. Available at: <https://www.bbc.com/future/article/20170809-the-accidental-invention-of-the-illuminati-conspiracy>

²⁴⁵ Discordianism is the religion for these screwed-up times, and Principia Discordia reveals it here for your enlightenment, confusion and entertainment. Available at: https://www.goodreads.com/book/show/89937.Principia_Discordia_Or_How_I_Found_Goddess_and_What_I_Did_to_Her_When_I_Found_Her

²⁴⁶ Discordianism is the religion for these screwed-up times, and Principia Discordia reveals it here for your enlightenment, confusion and entertainment. Available at: https://www.goodreads.com/book/show/89937.Principia_Discordia_Or_How_I_Found_Goddess_and_What_I_Did_to_Her_When_I_Found_Her

everything worth knowing about absolutely everything.²⁴⁷

If the accusation is true pertaining to the Illuminate’s control of all media as per the later discussion, reports and research done by the BBC and any media aligned individuals (including reporters) cannot be accepted as objective but rather manipulated and incorporated into a strategy to hide the truth.

Some researchers claim the Illuminate, also referred to as the Bavarian Illuminate to have ended in 1776. Myron Fagan, well known writer, director and producer of numerous Broadway plays researched the origin, history of the Illuminate over several decades, as well as the influence and manipulation of the Illuminate on the American, Britain and Europe history.

He followed several avenues to alert the American public to the Illuminate plot to destroy the sovereignty of the United States of America and to enslave the American people in a “One World Government.”²⁴⁸ One such method was weekly publications titled ‘News Bulletins’. Another avenue was two Broadway productions; “Red Rainbow” revealing the plot of Roosevelt, Ager Hiss, Harry Hopkins, Stalin, Molotov and Vishinsky to deliver the Balkans, Eastern Europe and Berlin to Stalin. The second was the famous Broadway theatre piece, “Thieves Paradise” based on the plot of a few men to create the “United Nations” to be “housing” for a so-called Communist One-World Government.²⁴⁹

2.7.1 The Origin of the Illuminate

2.7.1.1 The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion

Several researchers argue the Protocols of the Elders to be a false fabrication to

²⁴⁷ An intro into Discordianism. Available at: <https://www.learnreligions.com/discordianism-95677>

²⁴⁸ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁴⁹ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

support anti-Semitism. According to Pretorius²⁵⁰, specific Zionist were convinced that the expected Messiah will - with his appearance, affirm their sovereign world rule. In preparation they should establish their presence worldwide. Their preparation, as well as their disrespect for Christianity is documented in the protocols.

Arthur Koestler²⁵¹ differentiated this group from the twelve tribes of Israel by categorising them as the ‘thirteenth tribe’. Since this group is also portrayed as the originators of the Illuminate, is important to take note of their origin:

Deuteronomy 7:1-6²⁵² portrays God’s explicit command to Israel to utterly destroy all the nations of Canaan during Israel’s invasion. The Jebusites are mentioned specifically. Contrary to God’s demand to “**smite and utterly destroy them**”,²⁵³ Israel spared the Jebusites and accommodated them in their midst. The Jebusites adapted Israel’s culture and religion.

But the children of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites who inhabited Jerusalem; so, the Jebusites dwell with the children of Benjamin in Jerusalem to this day.

Judges 1:21 (NKJV)

Israel’s second disobedience was the assimilation of the Khazare nation (Hittites, descendants from Gam). Although these two nations internalised the Jewish culture and religion, they were not descendants from Abraham and thus not

²⁵⁰ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 16

²⁵¹ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 17

²⁵² Deuteronomy 7:1-6 (NKJV) When the LORD your God brings you into the land you are entering to possess and drives out before you many nations—the Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites, seven nations larger and stronger than you— and when the LORD your God has delivered them over to you and you have defeated them, then you must destroy them totally. Make no treaty with them, and show them no mercy. Do not intermarry with them. Do not give your daughters to their sons or take their daughters for your sons, for they will turn your children away from following me to serve other gods, and the LORD’s anger will burn against you and will quickly destroy you. This is what you are to do to them: Break down their altars, smash their sacred stones, cut down their Asherah poles and burn their idols in the fire. For you are a people holy to the LORD your God. The LORD your God has chosen you out of all the peoples on the face of the earth to be his people, his treasured possession.

²⁵³ Deuteronomy 7:2 (KJV) And when the LORD thy God shall deliver them before thee; thou shalt smite them, and utterly destroy them; thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor shew mercy unto them:

included in the 12 Jewish tribes. Arthur Koestler²⁵⁴ referred to the Khazare as the “thirteenth tribe”. According to Pretorius the descendants of this tribe possessed great international monetary powers and was the initial founders of the United Nations and the Illuminate. (He also referred to them as the ‘Synagogue of Satan’). The Book of Revelation 2:9, states the following which would appear to be about these Ashkenazi Jews:

"I know thy works, and tribulation and poverty, (but thou art rich) and I know the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan."

Revelation 2:9 (KJV)

The most wealthy bloodline in the world bar none (of the Jews) and the leader of the Ashkenazi Jews in the world today is the Rothschild family. The Rothschilds have obtained this position through lies, manipulation and murder. Their bloodline also extends into the Royal Families of Europe, and the following family names: Astor; Bundy; Collins; duPont; Freeman; Kennedy; Morgan; Oppenheimer; Rockefeller; Sassoon; Schiff; Taft; and Van Duyn. Every Prime Minister of Israel has been an Ashkenazi Jew²⁵⁵

Hitchcock presented this motivation for the Rothschilds conversion to Judaism as a result of the King's instruction in in 740AD.

The first Illuminate organisation was founded in Alombrados, Spain in 1520. It incorporated several organisations of which the Rose-Croix is one of the significant organisations. Freedom of religion bestowed to the Jews by Oliver Cromwell (1599-1658) signified the first actual progress of the illuminate. Their goals²⁵⁶:

- Abolishment of organised government
- Abolishment of private property rights
- Rejection of patriotism

²⁵⁴ Koestler, Arthur (1976) *The Thirteenth Tribe*. Last Century Media.

²⁵⁵ Hitchcock, Andrew Carrington (September 31, 2010) *The History of the House of Rothchild*. Available at: <https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>

²⁵⁶ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 18

- Abolishment of family structure, marriage, morality, and communal education
- Abolishment of religion

Adam Weishaupt, a German thinker born in 1748 in Ingolstadt, a city in the Electorate of Bavaria, (now part of Germany) was a descendant of Jewish converts to Christianity²⁵⁷. Orphaned as a young child his scholarly uncle enrolled him in a Jesuit School. As professor of natural and canon law at the University of Ingolstadt, he believed that the monarchy and the church were repressing freedom of thought.

Convinced that religious ideas were no longer an adequate belief system to govern modern societies, he decided to find another form of “illumination,” a set of ideas and practices that could be applied to radically change the way European states were run.²⁵⁸

Phil Edwards²⁵⁹ wrote:

Weishaupt was not, he said, against religion itself, but rather the way in which it was practiced and imposed. His thinking, he wrote, offered freedom “from all religious prejudices; cultivates the social virtues; and animates them by a great, a feasible, and speedy prospect of universal happiness.”

“To achieve this, it was necessary to create “a state of liberty and moral equality, freed from the obstacles which subordination, rank, and riches, continually throw in our way”²⁶⁰

The quotation summarises Weishaupt’s reasoning which also resulted in his decision to abandon the Roman Catholic Church. In 1770, the recently found professional money lenders, House of Rothchild commissioned Weishaupt to

²⁵⁷ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28 and Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) *Meet the man who started the Illuminati*. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

²⁵⁸ Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) *Meet the man who started the Illuminati*. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

²⁵⁹ Edwards, Phil (2016) 9 Questions about the Illuminate you were too afraid to ask. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

²⁶⁰ Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) *Meet the man who started the Illuminati*. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

revise and modernise the ‘Protocols of Zion’²⁶¹ and in this manner financed the masterplan for the creation of the ‘Illuminati’. These theories aligned with Weishaupt thought of establishing an alternative organisation. Hitchcock²⁶² confirmed these facts:

1770: Mayer Amschel Rothschild draws up plans for the creation of the Illuminati and entrusts Ashkenazi Jew, Adam Weishaupt, a Crypto-Jew who was outwardly Roman Catholic, with its organization and development. The Illuminati is to be based upon the teachings of the Talmud, which Andrew Hitchcock – The History of the House of Rothschild Page 3 of 40 is in turn, the teachings of Rabbinical Jews. It was to be called the Illuminati as this is a Luciferian term which means, keepers of the light.

Weishaupt completed the revision of the Protocols of Zion and included a strategy for the formation of the Illuminati to implement the plan. As an apostate Catholic Priest, he hypothesised the ‘One World’ theory in 1760.

1776: Adam Weishaupt officially completes his organisation of the Illuminati on May 1 of this year. The purpose of the Illuminati is to divide the goyim (all non-Jews) through political, economic, social, and religious means. The opposing sides were to be armed and incidents were to be provided in order for them to: fight amongst themselves; destroy national governments; destroy religious institutions; and eventually destroy each other.²⁶³

Five men met on the night of May 1, 1776 in a forest near Ingolstadt. They established the rules to govern their new society. Rules to govern to new Order and admission requirements for future members were on the agenda. Consensus were reached pertaining to the qualifications for members which included a strong reputation, well established families, strong social connections, and wealth.

The objective was to attract the most intelligent men in disciplines of art, letters, education, science, finance and industry to govern the world and as such prevent wars and conflicts. The phrase ‘peace on earth’ was nothing more than bait to

²⁶¹ Edwards, Phil (2016) 9 Questions about the Illuminati you were too afraid to ask. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

²⁶² Hitchcock, Andres C. (September 31, 2010) *The History of the House of Rothchild*. Available at: <https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>

²⁶³ Hitchcock, Andres C. (September 31, 2010) *The History of the House of Rothchild*. Available at: <https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>

influence followers. Ordered by Rothchild, Weishaupt established Lodges of the Grand Orient, masonic lodges as secret headquarters. The name ‘Illuminate’ was explained by Weishaupt himself:²⁶⁴

The word is derived from Lu ci fer and means: ‘holder of the light’.²⁶⁵

2.7.1.2 Infiltration of the Freemasons

Simultaneously, alternative freethinkers were attracted to Freemasonry, resulting in the expansion of membership and Lodges over Europe. Disillusioned with the Freemason thought, Weishaupt decided against his original assertion to accept Freemason membership. Additional study of the Seven Sages of Memphis and the Kabbalah convinced him to birth a new, additional organisation.

Membership increased considerably to 600 by 1782. It included influential Bavarian public figures such as Baron Adolph and Knigge and Mayer Amschel Rothchild and other nobleman, politicians, doctors, lawyers, jurists as well as intellectuals and artists like Johann Wolfgang van Goethe. Membership expanded to 2000-3000 members by 1784. Baron von Knigge, a former Freemason played a considerable role in the progress and expansion of the organisation. He favoured rites similar to the Freemasons such as the “secret” false names for members taken from the classical antiquities. He also adopted the Freemason hierarchy of membership levels, thirteen degrees of initiation divided into three classes, replacing the original three degrees: Novices, Minervals, and Illuminated minervals.²⁶⁶

²⁶⁴ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁶⁵ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28

²⁶⁶ Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) *Meet the man who started the Illuminati*. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

2.7.1.2.1 First Class: Novices

Each novice was initiated in humanitarian philosophy until he became a minerval. He then received the order’s statutes and could attend meetings.

1. Initiate
2. Novice
3. Minerval
4. Illuminatus Minor

2.7.1.2.2 Second Class: Minervals

Minerva is recognised as the Roman goddess of wisdom. Therefore, Minervals reflected the order’s aim to achieve and distribute true knowledge or illumination with regards to the restructuring of society and state.) The various degrees in this class were inspired by Freemasonry. The illuminatus major supervised recruitment, and the illuminatus dirigens presided over the minervals’ meetings.

5. Apprentice
6. Fellow
7. Master
8. Illuminatus
9. Major
10. Illuminatus Dirigens

2.7.1.2.3 Third Class: Illuminated Minevral

The highest degree of philosophical illumination. Its members were priests who instructed lower-degree members. The lower orders of this class were themselves under the authority of a king.

11. Priest
12. Prince
13. Magus
14. King

2.7.2 International Influence

2.7.2.1 The Rothschild Order to the Illuminate

Fagan provided documented evidence of the Rothschild conspiracy to establish a ‘One World Government’ via the Illuminate and how every war during the past two centuries was manipulated by the Rothschild House. Fagan summarised the objective of a ‘One World Government’ as follows:²⁶⁷

The plan required the destruction of all existing governments and religions. That objective was to be reached by dividing the masses of people, whom he Weishaupt, termed: “goyism” (nationalism) or human cattle into opposing camps in ever increasing numbers on political, social, economic, and other issues – the very conditions we have in our country today. The opposing sides were then to be armed and incidents provided which would cause them to fight and weaken themselves and gradually destroy national governments and religious institutions.

When and if their blueprint for world control, the Protocols of The Elders of Zion, is discovered and exposed, they would wipe all the Jews off the face of the earth in order to divert suspicions from themselves.

The Rothschild order to the Illuminate via Weishaupt was as follows:²⁶⁸

- i. Use monetary and sexual bribery to obtain influential men.
- ii. Cultivate students from all faculties at Universities in internationalism. This included scholarships to those selected by the Illuminati.

The Rhodes Scholarship means an introduction into accepting the idea that only a one-world government can put an end to recurring wars and strife.²⁶⁹

- iii. These educated and trained students and all influential people, experts and specialists, were assigned to act as agents when appointed in all government departments. They had to advise executives to adopt policies in alignment with the illuminate goal. In order to achieve a ‘One World

²⁶⁷ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁶⁸ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁶⁹ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

Government’ national governments and especially religion needed /needs to be eradicated.

- iv. The most vital directive to Weishaupt was to obtain absolute control of the media and press.

Weishaupt manipulation of the international relationship between France and Britain in 1784 was discovered after the courier who had to deliver a book containing the history of the Illuminate and strategy for the French Revolution was struck by lightning. The Duke Elector of Bavaria issued an edict in June 1784 banning the creation of any society not previously authorised by law. The edict was followed by a second in March 1785, expressly banning the order. It included an order to raid Weishaupt Lodges of the ‘Grant Orient’ and homes of most influential associates during which highly compromising documents containing invisible ink formulas, medical procedures for abortions, defence for suicide and atheism and a plan for a female branch were discovered.²⁷⁰ The Conspiracy Theories in American History: An Encyclopaedia refers to documents seized portraying aspirations of world domination.²⁷¹

Conflict between Weishaupt and Knigge with regards to aims and procedures of the order increased. Knigge resigned from the order and simultaneously another ex-member Joseph Utschneider exposed the order in a letter to Duchess of Bavaria. The letter suggested a conspiracy against Bavaria on behalf of Austria. The allegations, an assortment of lies and truth led to the edict by the Duke of Bavaria Karl Theodor in 1785 outlawed all societies not authorised by law.²⁷² He ordered the closing of the Lodges of the ‘Grant Orient’. This was followed by a second edict in March 1785 by the Bavarian Sovereign, expressly banning the order. In August 1787 the duke-electore issued a third edict in which he confirmed

²⁷⁰ Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) Meet the man who started the Illuminati. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

²⁷¹ Edwards, Phil (2016) 9 Questions about the Illuminate you were too afraid to ask. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

²⁷² Edwards, Phil (2016) 9 Questions about the Illuminate you were too afraid to ask. Available at: <https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>

the banning of the order and he also imposed the death penalty for membership.²⁷³

Details of the discovered conspiracies was published in 1786 with the title: “**The Original Writings of the Order and the Sect of the Illuminate**”²⁷⁴ Copies were sent to all the heads of state and church in Europe. Although the influence of the Rothschild’s by then was sufficient to ensure that the warnings were ignored, it did necessitate the Illuminate to restructure as a more secret or underground organisation.

Simultaneously, Weishaupt ordered Illuminate’s to infiltrate the “Blue Masonry Lodges” to create a secret society within a secret society. Masons were initiated into the Illuminate only when they-

- Proved themselves to be internationalists
- Proved they have defected from God.

The conspirators donned the cloak of philanthropy and humanitarianism to conceal their revolutionary and subversive activities.²⁷⁵

In order to infiltrate Masonic Lodges in Britain, Weishaupt entrusted John Robison, a high degree Mason in the Scottish Rite, Professor in Natural Philosophy at Edinburgh University and Secretary of the Royal Society of Edinburgh. with the complete Illuminate strategy. The Freemason Grand Orient involvement in the French Revolution already provided sufficient proof of the Illuminate’s influence and capturing of the Freemason structures. Robinson opposed to the Illuminate’s strategy of infiltration of the Masonic Lodges exposed the conspiracy in his book ‘**Proof of a conspiracy to Destroy all Governments**

²⁷³ Weishaupt, Adam (July 8, 2016) Meet the man who started the Illuminati. Available at: <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>

²⁷⁴ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁷⁵ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

and Religions’ published in 1798.²⁷⁶ Warnings was also sent in 1798 to all American Masonic Lodges with regards to the Illuminate’s infiltration. David Papen, President at Harvard University alerted Lodges on the Illuminate’s manipulation of American politics and religion. John Quincy Adams, organiser of the New England Lodge wrote three letters to Colonel William L Stone, senior Mason to expose the infiltration of Illuminate’s Jefferson - founder of the American Democratic Party. The three letters are in the Whittenburg Square Library in Philadelphia. Robinson’s warning, the Illuminati was well positioned within the Freemason organisation – which expanded into an international organisation due to the British Colonialism

Rothschild seized control over British and European economies after the Battle of Waterloo in 1815. Despite the allied forces victory which brought an end to the French and Napoleon’s domination in Europe, Rothchild falsified the outcome of the battle resulting in the English stock market plunging, providing Rothchild the opportunity to take control in establishing the new ‘Bank of England’.

After the failed first attempts to issue warnings to the American Masonic lodges with regards to the Illuminate’s infiltration and secret agendas, Captain William Morgan re-issued new warnings in 1826. Morgan was found guilty of treason and convicted and later murdered after his failed attempt to escape.

2.7.2.2 Communism

A secret Illuminate meeting in New York in 1850 is of critical importance since it represents the birth of ‘Communism’. A strategy was tabled whereby the Illuminate premeditated the unification of Nihilist and Atheist and all other subversive groups into one international group to be known as ‘Communism’. The Illuminate created the word and present it for the first time during this meeting.

²⁷⁶ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 18

The agenda was to create a ‘fear-factor’, **“a supreme weapon to terrify the whole world and drive the terrorized peoples into the Illuminati to foment future wars and revolutions”**.²⁷⁷

Rothchild financed the publication of ‘Das Kapital’ by Karl Marx and the ‘Communist Manifesto’ authored by Marx and Engels. Fagan interpret this strategy as follows:

“This clearly reveals that communism is not a so-called ideology, but a secret weapon, a boggy-man word to serve the purpose of the Illuminate.”

Rothchild commissioned Jacob Schiff, son of a Rabbi in one of Rothchild Frankfurt houses, with the following objectives in the American plot:²⁷⁸ Control the American Money System

- Identify the right calibre men who can be convinced of the conspiracies and promote them into influential government positions.
- Find mechanisms to control the press and all media.
- Infiltrate and gain control of both the Democratic and Republican Parties.
- Manipulate Income Tax regulations
- Create the ‘Council of Foreign Relations’ as a mechanism to control elected officials.
- Manipulate procedures to ensure the United States become enslaved to the United Nations goal of a ‘One World Government’.
- Create minority groups strife. Especially based on race between black and white. Destroy the unity of the American people.
- Initiate a movement to destroy religion. Christianity to be the main focus.

Karl Marx authored the ‘Communist Manifesto’ simultaneously with Professor Karl Ritter authoring the antithesis.

²⁷⁷ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illuminate.htm>

²⁷⁸ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illuminate.htm>

The idea was that those who direct the overall conspiracy could use the differences in those who so-called ideologies to enable them to divide larger and larger number of the human-race into opposing camps so that they could be armed and then brainwashed into fighting and destroying each other.²⁷⁹

Fagan is of the opinion that the work of Ritter was continued by the German philosopher Freidrich Wilhelm Nietzsche, founder of Nietzscheanism. Nietzscheanism developed into Fascism and later into Nazism. Nazism being the fundamental cause for World War I and II.²⁸⁰

An American General Albert Pike, head of the Luciferian conspiracy, developed a strategy which was considered to be the final blueprint for three world wars. According to this strategy, communism, Nazism, political Zionism and other international movements should be organised to provoke global wars and revolutions.

The final stages of the conspiracy envision the one-world government with a king-dictator as the head of the United Nations, the Council for Foreign Relations, and a few billionaires, economists, scientists, all who proved their allegiance to the conspiracy.

Weishaupt reviewed the Illuminate before his death in 1830. Various aliases, front organisations, and agents in executive positions, was positioned to organise, finance, direct and control all international organisations and groups. Guiseppe Mazzini succeeded Weishaupt in 1870. Albert Pike and Adrian Lemmi followed as revolutionary leaders.²⁸¹

2.7.2.3 The Illuminati and the Council of Foreign Relations

The Council on Foreign Relations is to date the cornerstone of the Illuminati

²⁷⁹ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁸⁰ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁸¹ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 19

and the main source of the current secret network in the Anglican world.²⁸²
(direct translation)

Fagan stated the following:

- The Illuminate invented front organisations to forward strategies after their exposure. One such organisation was the ‘Council of Foreign Relations’.
- The first attempt was the creation of the League of Nations.
- They succeeded with the second attempt in the creation of the United Nations to serve as the nucleus of a conspiracy to destroy America’s sovereignty. (Authors note. What is true for the US is true for other governments. One World includes the whole World)
- The CFR (Council of Foreign Relations) is in fact the hierarchy of the Illuminate.
- The hierarchy consists of foreign nationals who have changed their surnames to disguise their nationality and true identity.
- Similar organisations were created in France, Germany and other nations. Britain’s British Institute of International Affairs/The Royal Institute of International Affairs falls in the same category.
- Numerous subsidiaries or front organisations continuously are used to infiltrate various nations affairs.
- These subsidiaries are financed by International Bankers; they in turn are controlled by the Rothschild’s.
- ‘The International Bar Association’ is such a subsidiary organisation.
- The strategies are kept secret via absolute control of mass-communication media of television, radio, the press, and Hollywood.
- Power of State Department, the Pentagon and the White House has been seized.
- Fagan equalise the Illuminati secret agenda to a ‘satanic plot’.
- Fagan identifies the Illuminate ‘one world’ conspirators as the enemy.

²⁸² Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28

- The term ‘liberal’ projecting the sense of humanitarian has been captured to convey disguised strategies.

2.7.2.4 Bilderberg Conference

Anthony Sampson commented the following with regards to David Rockefeller, the accepted “god-father” of the Pax America and the origin of the Bilderberg Conference.

Rockefeller was ambitious in the international arena, and he and his (Chase Manhattan) bank had become increasingly closely associated with the Council on Foreign Relations, which in the late forties become less dominated by the Morgan interests, and more by the Rockefellers. David’s father gave large sums to the Council: in 1953 McCloy (employed by Rockefellers) became chairman of the Council and he took over the Chase, and in 1969-70 David also succeeded to both jobs. David was also a founder in 1954, with Prince Bernhard and others, of the Bilderberg Conference which once a year brought together western politicians, bankers and businessmen; and in 1972 he initiated the Trilateral Commission, itself closely linked with the Council, which brought together leaders in America, Europe and Japan, with Zbigniew Brzezinski as its secretary.²⁸³

2.7.2.5 The United Nations

The second World War was a direct result of nationalism and imperialism and it demolished the Euro centric world resulting in the end of the 19th Century New World Order.

The Pax Americana’s fundamental triumph was its successful motivation for the establishment of the United Nations as an international peace monitoring organisation. This implied the replacement of the Britain’s international power (Pax Britannica) with contemporary World Order and American power (Pax America). The latter a result of intellectual, technological, industrial and

²⁸³ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 29

organisational development.²⁸⁴

The United Nations personified the new contemporary world order or the Free World and Pax Americana and embodied principles such as equality and brotherhood to absorb demands from the Round Table intellectuals. The new order articulated a threefold division:

- First World Countries: Old Core Countries with the United States of America as the Superpower.
- Second World Countries: Communist Block with Russia at the core.
- Third World countries: Previously colonised countries.

2.7.2.6 Central Intelligence Agency and Central Telecommunications Agency

The formation of the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) in 1974 resulted from the reorganisation of the American Defence Force in terms of the National Security Act to accomplish the goal to defend the Free World against communism. Adv. Pretorius claimed the prominent members of the CIA had dual membership with what he referred to as ‘Rockefeller’s Council of Foreign Relations’ (CFR). He claimed the Council of Foreign Relations control the CIA to the extent that the CIA is a mere front organisation of the CFR. Communication and interaction are conducted in secret. The same is also true for the Central Telecommunications Agency in the sense that it is also controlled by the CFR.²⁸⁵

2.7.2.7 National Council of Churches

Fagan stated the Illuminate’s objective is to destroy Christianity.

²⁸⁴ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 31

²⁸⁵ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 33

The destruction of Christianity could be accomplished only by those who are entrusted to preserve it. By the pastors, the men of the cloth.²⁸⁶

John D. Rockefeller identified a suitable candidate to be entrusted with this objective in Dr. Harry F. Ward. Rockefeller financed the creation of the ‘Methodist Foundation of Social Service’ and expected Ward to implement the following:

Identify young scholars and teach and qualify them as Christian ministers and pastors and placing them in churches. Simultaneously they have to be taught how to:

- Subtly convey to their congregations that the gospel of Jesus is a myth.
- Cast doubts with regards to the Divinity of Christ
- Cast doubt with regards to Mary and the virgin birth.

In 1908, the ‘Methodist Foundation of Social Service’ (America’s first communist front organisation according to Fagan) transformed into the ‘Federal Council of Churches’²⁸⁷ The name was amended again in 1950 to the ‘National Council of Churches.’

2.7.2.8 Dollar Imperialism and American Influence

Opposing Europe’s large number of colonised third world countries (USA had none) America with capital power, implemented the following strategies with the aim of establishing American power in West Europe.

- Bretton Woods System and the 1944 agreement²⁸⁸

²⁸⁶ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁸⁷ The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion. Available at <http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>

²⁸⁸ Amadeo Kimberley (September 3, 2020) U.S. & World Economies – Economic Theory. *Bretton Woods System and 1944 Agreement*. Available at: <https://www.thebalance.com/bretton-woods-system-and-1944-agreement-3306133>

World War II Allied Nations agreed to the Bretton Woods agreement of 1944 during a conference in Bretton Woods, New Hampshire.

According to the agreement, the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund (IMF) were established.

It also established a new global monetary system by replacing the gold standard with the U.S dollar as global currency. America held three-fourths of the world’s gold supply. No other currency had enough gold to back its replacement. This secured America as the dominant power in world economy and the only country with the ability to print dollars.

According to the agreement, nations promised that their central banks would maintain fixed exchange rates between their currencies and the dollar.

The IMF would enforce the agreement and act as a central bank to lend money to countries if they needed to adjust their currencies. The World Bank (contrary to its name, not the world’s central bank) was created to lend money to countries left devastated by the war. The purpose adjusted to lend money to developing projects in emerging markets.

- Marshal Plan (1948)

Secretary of State George Marshall announced the European Recovery Program. Congress passed the Economic Cooperation Act (ECA) in March 1948 to legitimise the Plan, also known as the European Recovery Program (ERP).²⁸⁹

The United States funded programme, administered by a Europe-wide commission spent US\$13 billion over four years to rebuild the European economy after World War II.²⁹⁰ One of the objectives was to prohibit communism and as such it was cited as the beginning of the Cold War between the United States and its European allies and a key catalyst for the formation of the NATO. (North

²⁸⁹ Marshall Plan, 1948. Office of the Historian. Available at: <https://history.state.gov/milestones/1945-1952/marshall-plan>

²⁹⁰ Hubbard, R.G. and Duggan, W. (2008) *The Forgotten Lessons of the Marshall Plan*. Available at: <https://www.strategy-business.com/article/08203?gko=4209e>

Atlantic Treaty Organisation).²⁹¹

The primary aim of the plan was to increase productivity, improve economic growth and economic policy. Sixteen West European countries (Austria, Belgium, Denmark, France, West Germany, the United Kingdom, Greece, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Sweden Switzerland, Turkey) were included in the Organisation for European Cooperation (OEEC, which transformed into OECD, Organisation for Economic Co-operation, and Development). America succeeded in establishing power in Europe which advanced the expansion of American power to third world countries.

During the 1950’s the American State Department and CIA lobbied the decolonisation of British colonies to be replaced by pro-capitalism and non-racial democracies. Benn Steil,²⁹² senior fellow and Director of International Economics at the Council of Foreign Relations, raised an opinion that the Marshall plan was also one of the first operations of the CIA designed to ensure the Italian Communist Party failure in the 1948 elections.

- North Atlantic Treaty Organisation, NATO (1949)

The founding members of NATO signed the North Atlantic Treaty on April 4, 1949. The primary purpose to defend member nations²⁹³ from the threats of communism and communist countries. It also provided an opportunity to the United States to maintain their presence in Europe. Opposing aggressive nationalism and the promotion of political union paved the way for the European Union. The United States military protection granted the European nations the opportunity to rebuild after World War II.

²⁹¹ Marshall Plan. (December 16, 2009) History.com. Available at: <https://www.history.com/topics/world-war-ii/marshall-plan-1>

²⁹² Steil, Benn (2018) Ten fascinating facts about the Marshall Plan. Available at: <https://blog.oup.com/2018/03/ten-fascinating-facts-marshall-plan/>

²⁹³ NATO Member nations: Albania, Belgium, Bulgaria, Canada, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Montenegro, the Netherlands, North Macedonia, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Turkey, United Kingdom, and the United States.

NATO work in conjunction with the United Nations, the World Banks, and the International Monetary Fund.

- Mutual Security Act, (1951) and Mutual Security Administration²⁹⁴

With the purpose of averting communism, The United States could authorise military, economic, and technical assistance to nation-states. The development of welfare and liberations to the benefit of the United States. The Mutual Security Administration was established to supervise foreign aid programmes – inclusive of economic and military assistance. The Mutual Security Act (MSA) replaced the ECA in 1952.

- Bilateral assistance programmes²⁹⁵

With the aim to aid economic progress and social stability in developing nation-states the following bilateral assistance programmes were established.

USAID	: U.S. Agency for International Development
PC	: Peace Corps
IADF	: Inter-American Development Foundation
ADF	: African Development Foundation
TDAWHO	: Trade and Development Agency World Health Organisation
MCC	: Millennium Challenge Corporation
ODA	: Official Assistance Committee
EU	: European Union
FA	: Food Assistance
DAC	: Development Assistance Committee
FMF	: Foreign Military Financing
OECD	: Organisation for Economic Co-operation Development
FFP	: Food for Peace

²⁹⁴ Payne, A.R and Thakkar, B.S. (2012) *The Marshall Plan – Global Strategy and Foreign Humanitarian Aid*. Available at: <https://www.intechopen.com/books/globalization-approaches-to-diversity/the-marshall-plan-global-strategy-and-foreign-humanitarian-aid>

²⁹⁵ Payne, A.R and Thakkar, B.S. (2012) *The Marshall Plan – Global Strategy and Foreign Humanitarian Aid*. Available at: <https://www.intechopen.com/books/globalization-approaches-to-diversity/the-marshall-plan-global-strategy-and-foreign-humanitarian-aid>

PVO’s : Private Voluntary Organizations

OFDA : Office of Foreign Disaster Assistance

Non-government organisations included the World Bank (WB) and the Multilateral Development Banks (MDB)

Religious organisations included the United Nations Development Programs (UNDP), United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF) and the United Nation High Commission for Refugees and the International Committee of the Red Cross (UNHCR/ICRC). In addition, the foundation of Business Donations (BD) was also established.

2.7.2.9 Pan Africanism

To gain Third World support, the Kennedy administration followed the policy of “Africa for Africans’ and influenced Western countries to de-colonise and return independence to their African colonies. Pan Africanism – Africa for the Black Man – emerged in 1950 and the Organisation for African Unity as a Pan Africanist organisation was founded in 1963.

A belief that people from Africa and their descendants should be united, or a movement to achieve such unity²⁹⁶

2.7.2.10 Pax America Decline and Beginning of New World Order

Although the Pax America succeeded in establishing the United Nations to manage international relations and politics, the influence declined after President Nixon cancelled the United States as an international currency based on the gold standard.

The Council on Foreign Affairs developed a new philosophy and goal of a New World Order founded on capitalism and democracy. President Bush revealed the

²⁹⁶ Pan-Africanism. A belief that people from Africa and their descendants (= younger related people) should be united, or a movement to achieve such unity. Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/pan-africanism>

terminology 'New World Order' for the first time in 1991 referring to the war against Iraq.

2.7.2.11 World War III

The research does not aim to speculate on the validity of the forecast made by Adv. Pretorius with regards to a third world war. Two quotations are presented with regards to this hypothesis²⁹⁷:

'World War Three is to be fermented by using the differences the Agentur of the Illuminati stir up between Political Zionists and the leaders of the Moslem world. The war is to be directed in such a manner that Islam (the Arab World including Mohammedanism) and Political Zionism (including the State of Israel) will destroy themselves while at the same time the remaining nations, once more divided against each other on this issue, will be forced to fight themselves into a state of complete exhaustion physically, mentally, spiritually and economically.'

We shall unleash the nihilists and atheists and we shall provoke a great social cataclysm, which in all its horror will show clearly to all nations the effect of absolute atheism, the origin of savagery and of most bloody turmoil. Then everywhere, the people forced to defend themselves against the world minority and revolutionaries will exterminate those destroyers of civilizations and the multitudes, disillusioned with Christianity whose deistic spirits from that moment will be without direction and leadership and anxious for an ideal, but without knowledge of where to send its adoration, will receive the true light through the universal manifestation of pure doctrine of Lucifer (Satan), brought finally out into public view, a manifestation which follows the destruction of Christianity and Atheism, both conquered and exterminated at the same time.'

2.7.2.12 Media Control

The media provided an illusion of choice and of independent news coverage. The truth is that only six media giants control 90% of all audio, visual and written news

²⁹⁷ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 46

coverage.

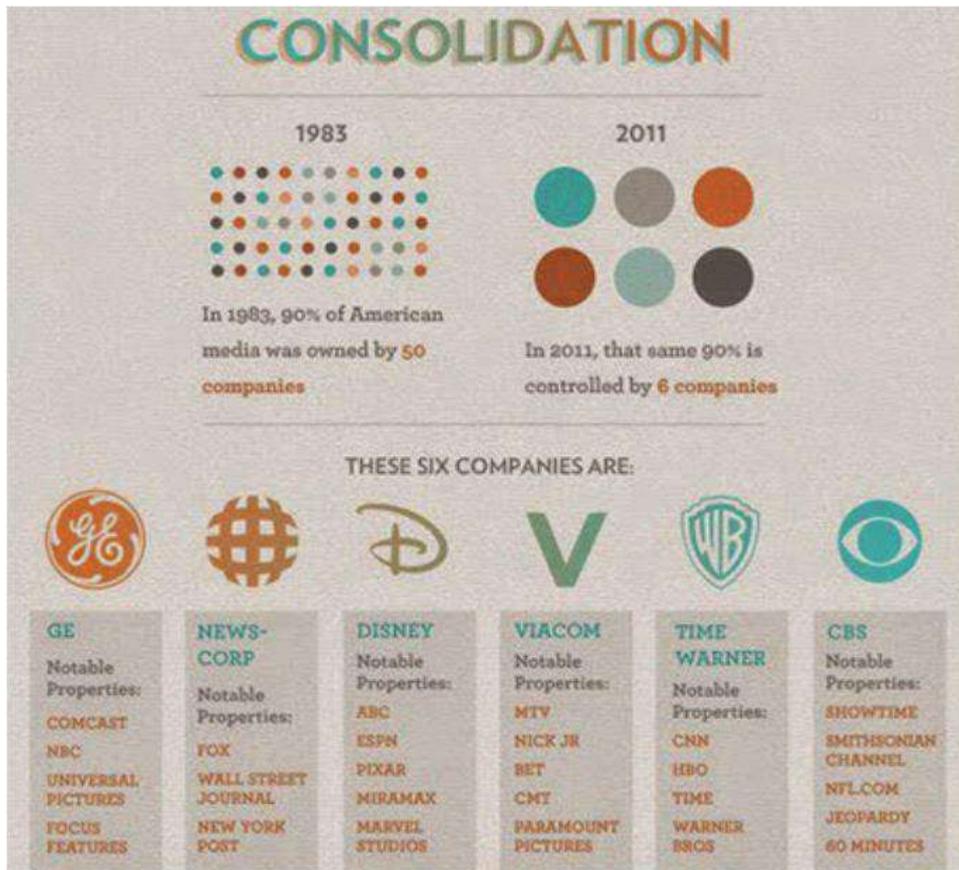


Figure 25: Diagram illustrating the manipulation of mainstream media by six media monopolies.²⁹⁸

2.7.2.13 Chronological Overview of the Illuminate/Rothchild International Manipulation

Andrew Carrington²⁹⁹ did fascinating research with regards to the influence of the Rothchild/Illuminate in world history. He presented their actions chronologically. Specific events selected to illustrate their influence is presented in this research:

²⁹⁸ Consolidation of media. Provinces and Assistancies, Jesuits World Order 10 Kingdoms. Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/09/provinces-and-assistancies.html>

²⁹⁹ Hitchcock, Andrew Carrington (2010) *The History of the House of Rothchild*. Available at: <https://rense.com/general88/hist.htm> or <https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>



Figure 26: Rothschild Family Shield Motto “Concordia Integritas Industria”³⁰⁰

1743	Mayer Amschel Bauer, an Ashkenazi Jew, is born in Frankfurt, Germany, the son of Moses Amschel Bauer, a money lender and the proprietor of a counting house.
	Moses Amschel Bauer places a red sign above the entrance door to his counting house. This sign is a red hexagram (which geometrically and numerically translates into the number 666) which under Rothschild instruction will end up on the Israeli flag some two centuries later
1760	During this decade Mayer Amschel Bauer works for a bank owned by the Oppenheimers' in Hanover, Germany. He is highly successful and becomes a junior partner. Whilst working at the bank he becomes acquainted with General von Estorff.
	Following his father's death, Bauer returns to Frankfurt to take over his father's business. Bauer recognises the significance of the red hexagram and changes his name from Bauer to Rothschild, after the red hexagram or sign signifying 666 hanging over the entrance door ("Rot," is German for, "Red," "Schild," is German for, "Sign").
1769	Mayer Amschel Rothschild is given permission by Prince William to hang a sign on the front of his business premises declaring that he

³⁰⁰ Rothschild Family Shield Motto “Concordia Integritas Industria”. Available at: <https://flowofwisdom.files.wordpress.com/2014/06/screen-shot-2014-06-09-at-1-03-01-pm.png>

	is, "M. A. Rothschild, by appointment court factor to his serene highness, Prince William of Hanau."
1770	Mayer Amschel Rothschild draws up plans for the creation of the Illuminati and entrusts Ashkenazi Jew, Adam Weishaupt, a Crypto-Jew with its organization and development. The Illuminati is to be based upon the teachings of the Talmud.
1774	Salomon Mayer Rothschild born.
1776	Adam Weishaupt officially completes his organisation of the Illuminati on May 1 of this year.
1788	Kalman (Carl) Mayer Rothschild Born
1790	Mayer Amschel Rothschild states, " Let me issue and control a nation's money and I care not who writes the laws. "
1816	The American Congress passes a bill permitting yet another Rothschild dominated central bank, which gives the Rothschilds control of the American money supply again. This is called the Second Bank of the United States and is given a twenty-year charter. The British war against the America therefore ends with the deaths of thousands of British and American soldiers, but the Rothschilds get their bank.
1823	The Rothschilds take over the financial operations of the Catholic Church, worldwide.
1837	The Rothschilds send one of their own, August Belmont, an Ashkenazi Jew, to America to salvage their banking interests defeated by President Andrew Jackson.
1840	The Rothschilds become the Bank of England's bullion brokers. They set up agencies in California and Australia.
1848	Karl Marx, an Ashkenazi Jew, publishes, " The Communist Manifesto. " Interestingly at the same time as he is working on this, Karl Ritter of Frankfurt University was writing the antithesis which would form the basis for Freidrich Wilhelm Nietzsche's,

	"Nietzscheanism." This Nietzscheanism was later developed into Fascism and then into Nazism and was used to foment the first and second world wars.
1849	Gutle Schnaper, Mayer Amschel Rothschild's wife dies. Before her death she would nonchalantly state, " If my sons did not want wars, there would be none. "
1871	An American General named, Albert Pike, who had been enticed into the Illuminati by Giuseppe Mazzini, completes his military blueprint for three world wars and various revolutions throughout the world , culminating into moving this great conspiracy into its final stage. The first world war is to be fought for the purpose of destroying the Tsar in Russia, as promised by Nathan Mayer Rothschild in 1815. The Tsar is to be replaced with communism, which is to be used to attack religions, predominantly Christianity. The second world war is to be used to foment the controversy between fascism and political Zionism with the slaughter of Jews in Germany a lynchpin in bringing hatred against the German people. The third world war is to be played out by stirring up hatred of the Muslim world for the purposes of playing the Islamic world and the political Zionists off against one another. Whilst this is going on, the remaining nations would be forced to fight themselves into a state of mental, physical, spiritual and economic exhaustion.
1887	The Rothschilds finance the amalgamation of the Kimberley diamond mines in South Africa . They subsequently become the biggest shareholders of this company, De Beers, and mine precious stones in Africa and India.
end of the 1800's	Purchase Reuters news agency so they can have some control of the media

1919	N. M. Rothschild & Sons' are given a permanent role to fix the world's daily gold price . This takes place in the City of London offices, daily at 1100 hours, in the same room until 2004.
1921	Under the orders of Jacob Schiff, the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR) is founded by Ashkenazi Jews, Bernard Baruch and Colonel Edward Mandell House. The first job of the CFR was to gain control of the press. The CFR also needed to gain control of radio, television and the motion picture industry . This task was split amongst the international bankers from, Kuhn Loeb, Goldman Sachs, the Warburg’s, and the Lehmann’s.
1930	The first Rothschild world bank, the, "Bank for International Settlements (BIS)," is established in Basle, Switzerland. The same place as where 33 years earlier the first ever World Zionist Congress was held.
1945	The Rothschilds take a giant step towards their goal of world domination when the second, " League of Nations, " called the, " United Nations, " was approved this year.
1963	President John F. Kennedy (the 35 th President of the United States 1961-1963) signs Executive Order 11110 which returned to the U.S. government the power to issue currency, without going through the Rothschilds owned Federal Reserve.
1663	November 22 nd : President Kennedy is assassinated by the Rothschilds for the same reason as they assassinated President Abraham Lincoln in 1865, he wanted to print American money for the American people, as oppose to for the benefit of a money grabbing war mongering foreign elite.
1987	Edmond de Rothschild creates the World Conservation Bank which is designed to transfer debts from third world countries to this bank and in return those countries would give land to this bank.

	This is designed so the Rothschilds can gain control of the third world which represents 30% of the land surface of the Earth.
1988	<p>The ADL initiate a nationwide competition for law students to draft anti-hate legislation for minority groups. That competition is won by a man named, Joseph Ribakoff, whose thesis proposes that not only must hate motivated violence be banned, but also any words which stimulate: suspicion; friction; hate; and possible violence, these must also be criminalised.</p> <p>Furthermore, even if the person making the statement can justify it, for example Christians criticizing homosexuality because the bible expressly forbids it, Ribakoff asserts that the truth is to be no defence in court.</p>
	<p>The only proof a court will need in order to secure a conviction of hate speech is that something has been said, and a minority group or member of such group has felt emotionally damaged as a result of such criticism.</p> <p>Therefore, under these proposals which the ADL will have forced into law all over the world less than 15 years later, Jesus Christ would have been arrested as a hate criminal.</p> <p>This law is designed to protect the Rothschild conspiracy from being revealed in that if you criticize the Rothschilds criminal cabal, you will be targeted as anti-Semitic, and thus risk imprisonment.</p>
1991	<p>"We are grateful to the Washington Post, the New York Times, Time Magazine, and other great publications whose directors have attended our meetings and respected their promises of discretion for almost 40 years. It would have been impossible for us to develop our plan for the world, if we had been subjected to the lights of publicity during those years. But the world is now more sophisticated and prepared to march towards a world government. The super-national sovereignty of an intellectual elite and world</p>

	bankers is surely preferable to the national auto- determination practised in past centuries."
1997	On October 29, Edmond de Rothschild dies in Geneva. Interestingly on the exact same day Anton Szandor LaVey, the founder of the Church of Satan also dies, who in his book, "Satan Speaks," he states in relation to The Protocols Of The Elders Of Zion, "The first time I read the Protocols of the Elders of Zion, my instinctive reaction was, So what's wrong with THAT? Isn't that the way any master plan should work? Doesn't the public deserve - nay, demand - such despotism?" Kofi Annan becomes Secretary General to the United Nations. He is married to Nane Lagergren, a Rothschild, who he wed in 1984.
2000	George W. Bush is elected (so they tell me) President of the United States. Bush and his family claim to be descendants of the House of Plantagenet which is descended from the Royal House of Judah.
2001	On September 11th the attack on the World Trade Center is orchestrated by Israel with the complicity of Britain and America, under the orders of the Rothschilds as a pretext for removing the liberty of people worldwide in exchange for security, just as happened with the Reichstag fire in Germany where the citizens were lied to in order to give up liberty for security. They also will use the attacks to gain control of the few nations in the world who don't allow Rothschild central banks and so less than one month after these attacks, US forces attack Afghanistan, one of only 7 nations in the world who don't have a Rothschild controlled central bank.
2003	Ancient Babylon, I mean Iraq, is now one of six nations left in the world who don't have a Rothschild controlled central bank. This war is mainly about stealing Iraq's water supply for Israel and is being

	fought with the blood of the American military which the State of Rothschild, I mean Israel control. "Jews rule the world by proxy. They get others to fight and die for them."
2005	There are now only 5 nations on the world left without a Rothschild controlled central bank: Iran; North Korea; Sudan; Cuba; and Libya.
2006	The Edmond De Rothschild Banque, a subsidiary of Europe's Edmond De Rothschild family bank group in France, becomes the first foreign family bank that has obtained approval of the China Banking Regulatory Commission and entered China's financial market.

Table 13: Overview of the Illuminate/Rothchild

Several illustrations are available to demonstrate the compositions and role-players of various secret societies and their agendas. The accuracy of the illustrations might be disputed in light of the fact that membership and agendas are exclusively available to members only.

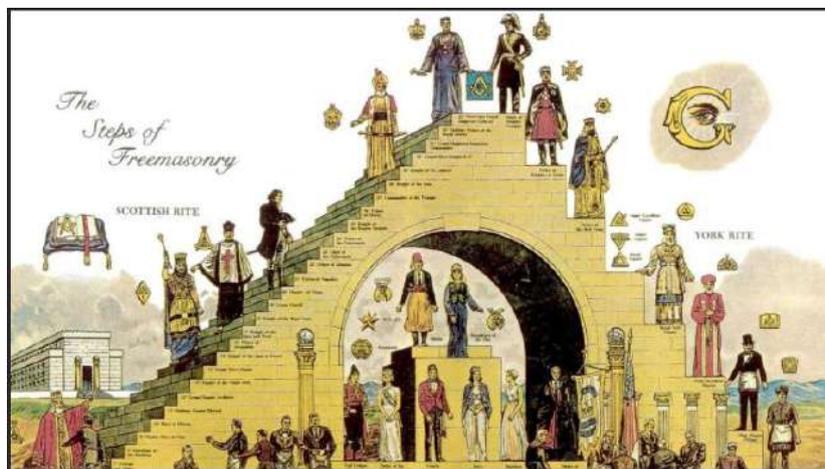


Figure 27: The Steps of Freemasonry divided in the Scottish and York Rites.³⁰¹
The Jesuits may have authored the Protocols of the Elders of Zion but the real masters of this work were the Vatican in 1482 within Rome some fifty-two years before the founding of the Jesuit Order by Alessandro Farnese and

³⁰¹ The Steps of Freemasonry. Available at: https://lh3.googleusercontent.com/ljauCKhj5i_Kdow7EJpUUykkCqb_ZxmQoos4BGrtKdBsFL08i_o7KvdIt3q4BBtcJ_0ibq2tHn_IBA=w1440-ns-nd-rj

the Aragon Knights Templar continuum power of Francis Borgia and Ignatius Loyola.

The marriage between the Rothschild’s and the Aldobrandini’s is between David de Rothschild and Princess Olimpia Anna Aldobrandini. The family named after the very important occult Aldebaran bullseye star mentioned in the Rolling Stones song 3000 Light Years From Home.

High level Masonic Knights of Malta representative politicos bend their knee, to the list of birth certificates of this Nobility, the REAL Zoroastrian Bloodlines of the Illuminati, which you will see below as the obelisks of Rome: Matteiano, Flaminio. Vticano (Vatican was named in their honour), Dogali, Solare, Lateranense, Minerveo, Macuteo, Sallustiano, Quirinale, Agonalis, Pinciano, Esquiline.

An excellent deception has many believing the Jews are in control of the world. The real Saturnalian Brotherhood – the real 13 Zoroastrian bloodlines of the Illuminate are as follows: The House of Borja, House of Breakspeare, House of Somaglia, House of Orsini, House of Conti, House of Chigi, House of Colonna, House of Farnese, House of Medici, House of Gaetani, House of Pamphili, House of Este, House of Aldobrandini.³⁰²

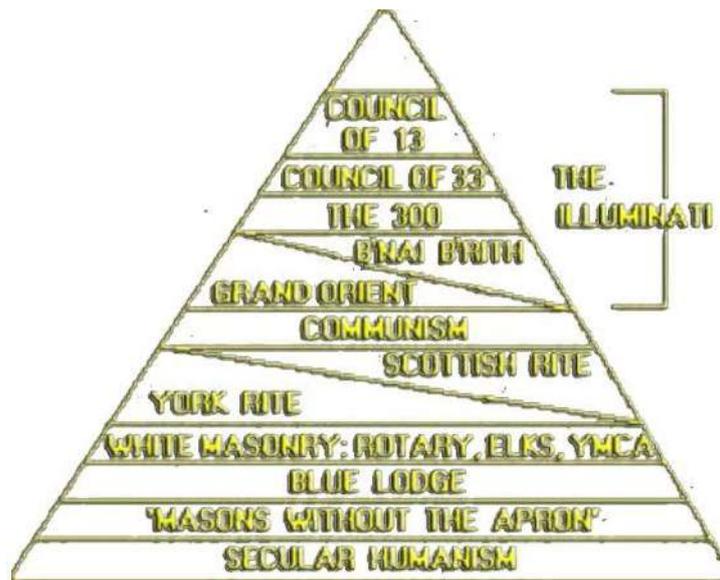


Figure 28: Diagram illustrating the hierarchy of the Illuminati. The Council of 13, the 13 families and bloodlines listed above. It also illustrate the Illuminate as the elevated levels above the York and Scottish Freemasonry Rites.³⁰³

³⁰² The Real 13 Illuminate Families: Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/05/the-real-13-illuminati-families.html>

³⁰³ Provinces and assistancies, Jesuits World Order 10 Kingdoms. (September 26, 2014) Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/09/provinces-and-assistancies.html>

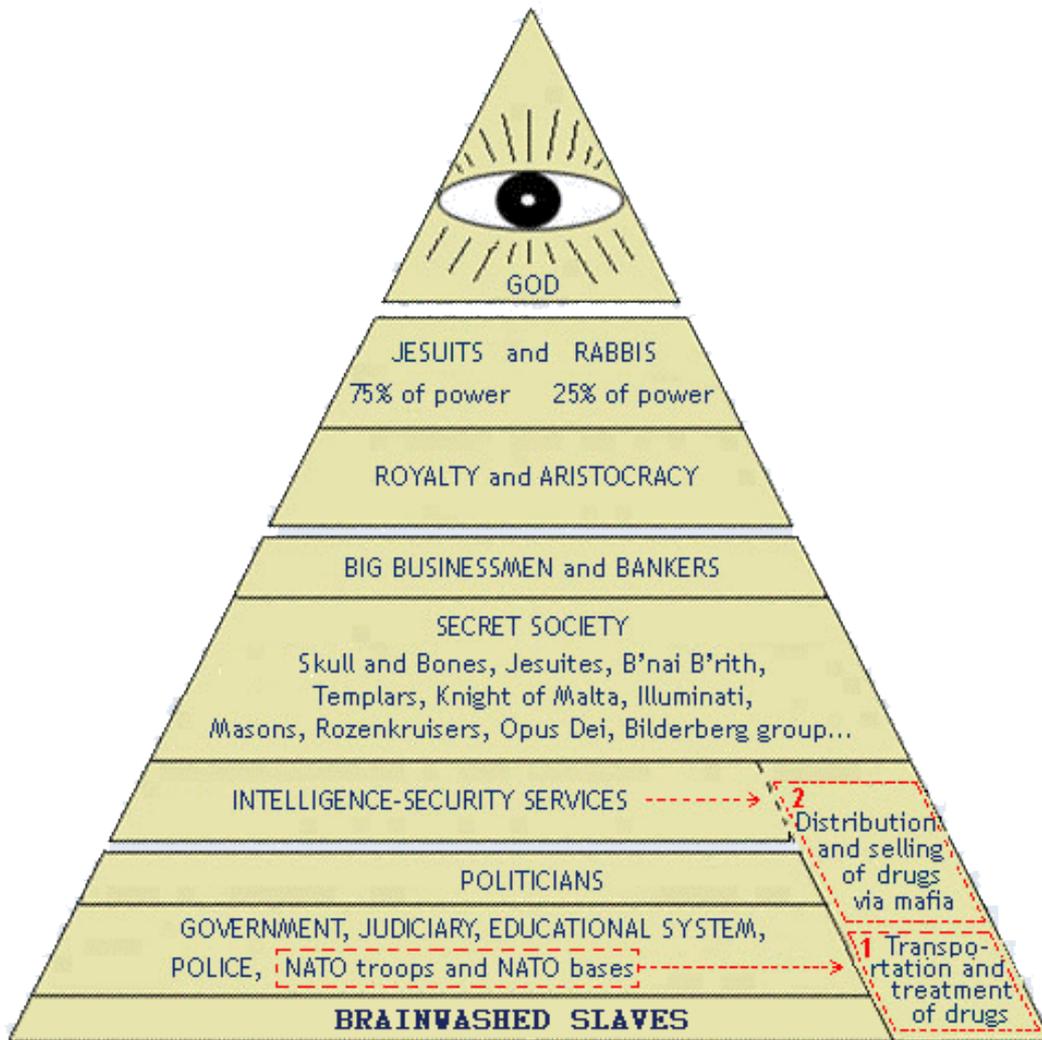


Figure 29: These are the real World power structures.

The three most powerful men in the world are Jesuit priests. The order of their power is as follows: First, “the Black Pope” and Jesuit Superior General; secondly, former Black Pope and Jesuit Superior General; and lastly, “the White Pope” and Vicar of Christ/Vicar of Horus Pope. The current Pope is the first pope who is openly a member of the military order of the Society of Jesus. These arch criminals under bloody oaths rule the world on behalf of Satan, “the god of this world” (II Corinthians 4:4).³⁰⁴

³⁰⁴ Provinces and assistancies, Jesuits World Order 10 Kingdoms. (September 26, 2014) Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/09/provinces-and-assistancies.html>

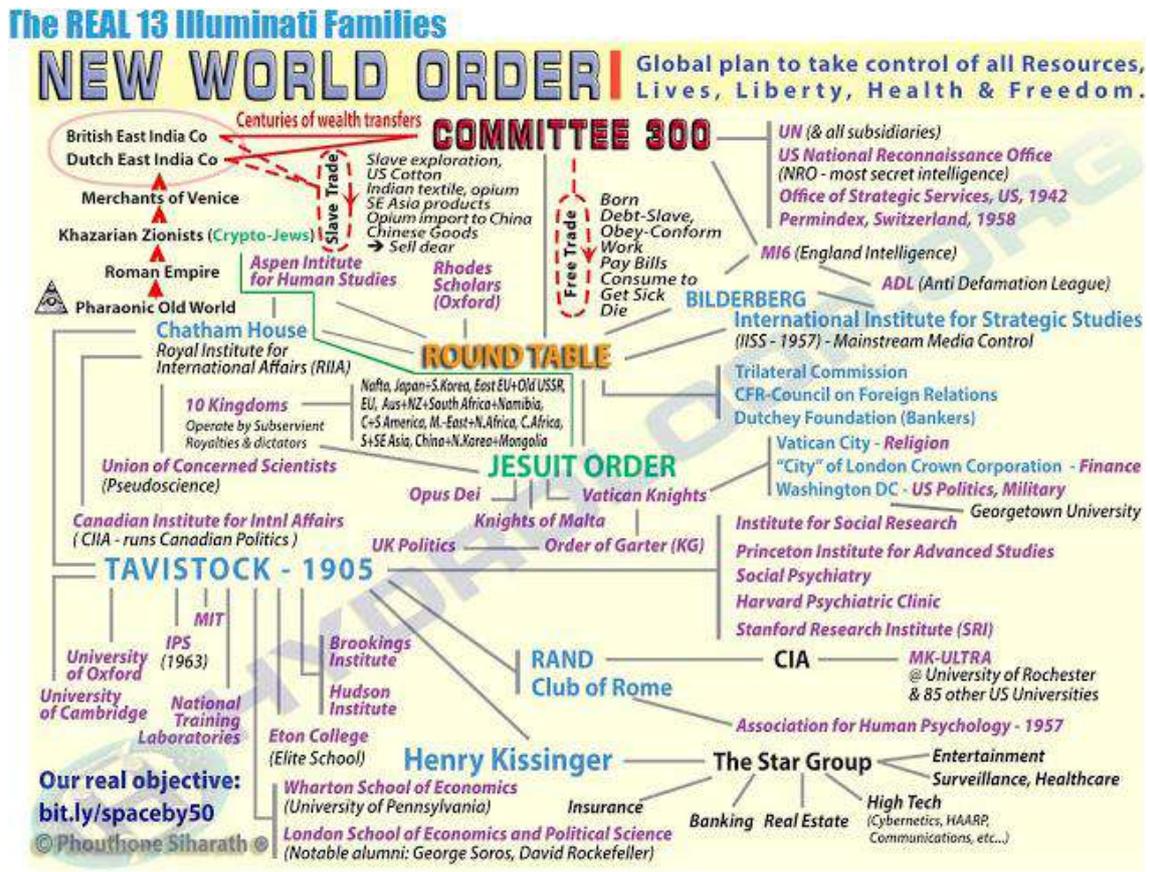


Figure 30: Diagram depicting the New World Order.³⁰⁵

2.7.3 Application to South Africa

In addition to the Rothchild timetable, the author presented several industries to provide evidence of the involvement of the Rothchild family in the history of South Africa.

2.7.3.1 South African Mining Industry

The 15-year-old Erasmus Stephanus Jacobs discovered South Africa’s first

³⁰⁵ Diagram depicting the New World Order. Available at: <http://www.seawapa.co/2014/05/the-real-13-illuminati-families.html>

diamond in Hopetown in 1867. Diamonds were also discovered on the farm of Nicolaas and Diederick de Beer, near what is now known as Kimberley. Two mines on the farm, the Kimberley and De Beers were estimated to be the world’s most productive mine at the time.³⁰⁶

In 1871, Cecil John Rhodes bought a claim to the De Beers mine and by 1888, owning most of the South African mines. He incorporated De Beers Consolidated Mines, Ltd. He established the Diamond Syndicate in 1890 and later the Central Selling Organization. (CSO) – now known as the Diamond Trading Company (DTC).

Within twelve years of the discovery of gold on the Witwatersrand in 1866 the Transvaal produced more than 25% of the world’s gold. The emergence of gold was during the international global monetary gold standard. Transvaal’s gold was shipped and sold at London’s bullion market.³⁰⁷

Ownership of diamond and gold mines became concentrated in a few entrepreneurs, mainly European, called Randlords.

Ernest Oppenheimer, a Jew from Friedberg Germany, worked as a junior clerk at the London based diamond brokers Dunkelsbuhlers & Company. In 1902 he relocated to Kimberley. With financial assistance of JP Morgan, he established the Anglo-American Corporation of South Africa Ltd to exploit the Witwatersrand goldfield in 1917 and the Consolidated Diamond Mines of South West Africa, Ltd in 1919. In 1930 he established The Diamond Corporation Ltd after gaining control of the De Beers Consolidated Mines. Oppenheimer also served as mayor of Kimberly from 1912-1915 and was a member of the Union of South African Parliament from 1924-1938.³⁰⁸

The German Jewish Rothschild family were pioneers in the development of

³⁰⁶ De Beers S.A. South African Company. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/De-Beers-SA>

³⁰⁷ Van-Helten, J. (1982). Empire and High Finance: South Africa and the International Gold Standard 1890-1914. *The Journal of African History*, 23(4), 529-548. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/182040>

³⁰⁸ Sir Ernest Oppenheimer, South African Industrialist. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Ernest-Oppenheimer>

international finance originated from Frankfurt. The family empire was established by Mayer Amschel Rothschild, son of Amschel Moses, a trader of silk cloth and currency merchant. Mayer build the family empire with his five sons, Nathan Mayer, James Mayer, Salomon Mayer, Carl Mayer and Amschel Mayer. Four sons were sent to the prominent international financial capitals of Paris, Vienna, Naples and London. One son remained in Frankfurt.³⁰⁹

Nathaniel Mayer Rothschild, Grandson of Nathan Rothschild, and head in the London family bank N.M. Rothschild & Sons funded Rhodes in the development of the British South African Company and the De Beers diamond conglomerate. The Rothschild's purchase of Kimberley mines in 1887. They subsequently become the biggest shareholders of De Beers. He was also member of the Round Table movement founded in 1909.

Numerous researchers provided evidence that Rhodes, Oppenheimer,³¹⁰ Rothchild, and JP Morgan were members of alleged secret societies, whether Freemason or the Illuminate. The research indicated that there is no clear distinction between secret societies and membership thereof. A common thread is the international financial strength and the ability to manipulate and dominate industries on a national and international level. This correlates with Mayer Amschel Rothchild's motto:

"Give me control of a nation's money supply, and I care not who makes it's laws"³¹¹

Rhodes was nominated as the first grand master of a United Grand Lodge:

Assimilation of the different rituals was impossible, he said. The conference rejected a suggestion that Cecil John Rhodes, a mason, should be the first Grand Master of a United Grand Lodge³¹²

³⁰⁹ Cook, Jennifer. Business Leaders (December 9, 2020) *A History of the Rothchild Family*. Available at: <https://www.investopedia.com/updates/history-rothschild-family/>

³¹⁰ Freemasonry Part 2. Available at: <https://trumpetcall.co.za/dvds/freemasonry-part-2>

³¹¹ The Forum South Africa. "Lets talk business" Available at: <https://www.theforumsa.co.za/forums/showthread.php/4192-Linking-the-Illuminati-SARB/page2>

³¹² Cooper, Alan. A. The effects of Political, economic and social events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, with some reference to the movement for the formation of the United Grand Lodge, 1772-

The involvement of Oppenheimer:

Ernest Oppenheimer was an early member of the Bavarian Illuminati, which had been founded using money from the Rothschild family. Ernest’s children and grandchildren are said to have been inducted into Freemasonry since then. He was inducted into the Richard Giddy Lodge in Kimberley on October 23, 1943, after being proposed by his father, Sir Ernest, who was master of the lodge in 1912, and seconded by well-known Kimberley businessman DB Blacklaws.³¹³

Sir Ernest was master of Richard Giddy Lodge, Kimberley in 1912. In 1943 he proposed his son, then Captain Harry Oppenheimer, for membership and in the same year Harry was initiated.³¹⁴

JP Morgan, JD Rockefeller and the Rothschild’s created the Standard Oil empire and financed the Edward Harriman Railroads and Andrew Carnegie Steel enterprises according to William T. Still. Nathan Rothschild became the main banker for the British government and the Bank of England. It is also noteworthy that Barclays of England is the major shareholder of Absa South Africa and that Nathan Rothschild in turn is the 56% shareholder of Barclays.³¹⁵

In addition, AngloGold Ashanti appointed the former CEO of Absa South Africa and previous Director-General of the South African National Treasury, Maria Ramos as chairwoman. She has been a director at the world’s third-biggest gold producer since May 2019. Ramon became interim CEO in September³¹⁶ Ramos’s life partner and former long serving minister of finance, Trevor Manuel was

1961. Reference from: TEA DGL TVL EC Reports: Meeting, October 20, 1923, P. 10 <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/37389554.pdf> P. 89

³¹³ IOL. (August 24, 2000) Freemasons remember their Harry Oppenheimer. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/freemasons-remember-their-harry-oppenheimer-48047>

³¹⁴ Cooper, Alan. A. (September 1983) The effects of Political, economic and social events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, with some reference to the movement for the formation of the United Grand Lodge, 1772-1961. Reference from: TEA DGL TVL EC Reports: Meeting, October 20, 1923, p.10 <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/37389554.pdf>

³¹⁵ ³¹⁵ Cook, Jennifer. Business Leaders (December 9, 2020) *A History of the Rothchild Family*. Available at: <https://www.investopedia.com/updates/history-rothschild-family/>

³¹⁵ Freemasonry Part 2. Available at: <https://trumpetcall.co.za/dvds/freemasonry-part-2>

³¹⁵ The Forum South Africa. “Lets talk business” Available at: <https://www.theforumsa.co.za/forums/showthread.php/4192-Linking-the-Illuminati-SARB/page2>

³¹⁶ Nathan Melani (December 9, 2020) Maria Ramos replaces Pityana at AngloGold Ashanti Available at: <https://www.biznews.com/sa-investing/2020/12/09/maria-ramos-anglogold-ashanti>

recently appointed “a senior advisor to the Group worldwide and Deputy Chairman of Rothschild in South Africa”³¹⁷

2.7.3.2 Anti-hate Legislation

The Rothschild’s 1988 anti-hate legislation for minority groups relates closely to the international and South African ‘hate speech legislation’.

The United Nations General Assembly Resolution 2200 (XXI) of December 16, 1966 is titled: International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights (ICCPR). The Covenant were enforced on March 23, 1976 in accordance with Article 49 of the covenant. This covenant describes the principles for recognition of the inherent dignity and equal inalienable rights of all people, the rights inherent to human dignity, civil and political freedom, and the responsibility of all people to promote the rights detailed in the covenant.

Toby Mendel³¹⁸, Executive Director at the Centre for Law and Democracy noted that the international law not only allows, but actually requires governments to ban certain speech on the basis that it undermines the right of others to equality or to freedom from discrimination.

The author noted the following: This particular document (ICCPR) is not described as a “law, agreement, or act”, but as a covenant. ‘Covenant’ relates to a solemn promise, and, in the author’s opinion, it relates to a Biblical context of a divine promise. This legislation is thus elevated from status of an agreement or act to a solemn promise. This ‘promise’ is fundamental in the preparation of a one world religion and one government. Biblical truths are already considered to be

³¹⁷ Poplak Richard (October 3, 2014) Business Maverick. *The Company Man: Trevor Manuel marries the Rothchilds*. Available at: <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2014-10-03-the-company-man-trevor-manuel-marries-the-rothschilds/>

³¹⁸ Mendel, Toby. (2010) *Hate Speech Rules Under International Law*. Available at: <http://www.law-democracy.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/07/10.02.hate-speech.Macedonia-book.pdf>

discriminative. Governments and individuals are expected to promise to oppose Biblical principles and especially the preaching thereof.

Furthermore, it needs to be clarified that although freedom of speech is a *basic* human right enshrined in Article 19 of the United Declaration of Human Rights as well as the ICCPR, it is not an *absolute* right. Exceptions to this ‘freedom’ is ‘hate speech’, generally referred to as any communication (verbal, nonverbal, electronic, written) intended to degrade individuals on the basis of race, gender, age, ethnicity, nationality, religion, sexual orientation, gender identity, disability, language ability, ideology, social stance, occupation, appearance, (height, weight, hair, colour, etc.) mental capacity, and any other distinction.³¹⁹

The first international instrument attending to hate speech was the International Convention on the Elimination Of all Forms of Racial Discrimination (CERD), adopted by the UN General Assembly in 1965. The CERD is the most inclusive document dealing with hate speech. All three regional charters on human rights, the African Charter on Human Rights, The American Convention of Human Rights, and the European Convention of Human Rights all provide the right to freedom of speech and expression. The African Charter on Human Rights alone makes provision in Article 13(5) for banning hate speech. Key elements include Intent³²⁰, Incitement³²¹, Causation³²², and Proscribed results³²³.

The author distinguished three contentious South African matters applicable namely: Julius Malema perceived hate speech and the apparent lack of action by

³¹⁹ Hate Speech: Dictionary.com Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/hate-speech> and Ramanuj (2015) *Hate Speech and International Law*. Available at: <https://blog.ipleaders.in/hate-speech-international-law/>

³²⁰ Intent: Article 20 (2) of the ICCPR and Article 13 (5) of the ACH. Any statements made with the intent of inciting hatred

³²¹ Incitement: Article 7 of the UDHR, Article 20 (1) of the ICCPR, Article 13 (5) of the ACHR: apply only in cases where incitement exists

³²² Causation: Any speech that can cause violence or incite hatred

³²³ Proscribed results: Article 13 (5) of ACHR is limited to incitement of violence or similar illegal actions. Article 4(a) of CERD and article 20 of ICCPR cover everything like incitement to discrimination and hatred. A six-part threshold test involves Context, Speaker, Intent, Content or form, Extent of the speech, Likelihood, including imminence.

government, the highly emotional hair debate, and the application of the legislation on religion.

2.7.3.2.1 Julius Malema Perceived Unchallenged Status

Julius Malema, leader of the EFF (Economic Freedom Fighters), third biggest political party in South Africa is well known for the song “Kill the Boer, kill the farmer.” With brutal farm murders escalating, it remains questionable that he seems to be untouchable and the government is not criticising apparent hate speech. The author speculates pertaining to his alleged Freemason membership and the Illuminate strategy for African dictatorship.

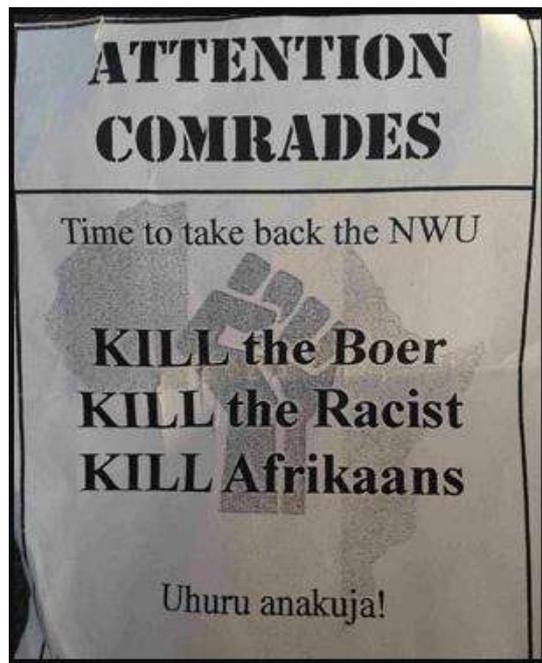


Figure 31: Political poster displayed at the North West University³²⁴

³²⁴ Political poster displayed at the North West University. Available at: <http://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/wp-content/uploads/2016/03/Kill-Boer-European-Knights-Project.jpg>



Figure 32: Official EFF Banner displaying black hate towards whites.³²⁵

Radio Free South Africa³²⁶ reported the following on July 26, 2016:

Julius Malema now is back in Britain among those same white “rubbish” – and when you look who he is going to meet and address there, then it certainly raises a few eyebrows...Royal Institute of International Affairs, Oxford Union, Pan African People’s Movement in Tottenham and attend the African Enterprise Awards at the London Capital Club...all affiliated or connected to Rhodes/Milner’s Round Table Group. Malema is being hosted by the “Who’s who” of the Illuminati in London where the corrupt South African ambassador Obed Mlaba, a Zulu and former mayor of Durban, is seen as a Zuma crony.

Malema’s meeting was also extensively reported by ‘Black opinion’, October 30, 2020³²⁷:

The meeting with Renwick (Malema and top EFF leadership, October 2015) and other representatives of imperialism happened under the secret rule called the “Chatham House Rule”. Renwick serves in the House of Lords in the British Parliament and has business links to the Rothchild’s, the Rupert’s and some of the biggest multinational companies in the world. Malema is attending private meetings in the Chamber of Commerce under the ‘Chatham House Rule’. This means that it’s a secret, that one bind oneself to, not to reveal who one is meeting with.

The author was not able to confirm this allegation. It is not impossible considering

³²⁵ Official EFF Banner. Available at: <https://southafricatoday.net/media/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/Honeymoon-is-over-for-White-people-in-South-Africa.jpg>

³²⁶ Radio Free South Africa (July 26, 2016) *Julius Malema groomed to become the Illuminate’s next chosen dictator in south Africa*. Available at: <https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/julius-malema-groomed-become-illuminatis-next-chosen-dictator-south-africa/>

³²⁷ Black Opinion (October 30, 2020) *Who is Lord Robin Renwick Julius Malema’s Handler form London?* Available at: <https://blackopinion.co.za/2016/04/13/who-is-lord-robin-renwick-julius-malemas-handler-from-london/>

the history of the Illuminate to finance both sides of international conflict. The author speculates with regards to the similarity in financing various angles given the fact that Malema propagates the nationalisation of the Reserve Bank, possibly owned by the Rothschild illuminate associates.

The author further points to the fact that allegiance with the Illuminate could also be instrumental in Malema apparently being untouchable with regards to the hate speech bill. It is furthermore unconfirmed that Helen Zille is a member of the Southern Star Freemason.

Trevor Manuel, who served three South African presidents as Minister of Finance, was appointed as an advisor and Deputy Chairman of Rothschild & Co South Africa in 2014.

2.7.3.3 The Application of the Legislation on Religion

Three South African laws are implied in evaluating the issue of speech: The Constitution, the Promotion of Equality, and the Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act of 200 (PEPUDA or the “Equality Act”). Currently Parliament is also evaluating the “Prevention and Combating of hate Crimes and Hate Speech Bill (the Hate Speech Bill). This bill, if signed into legislation will make “hate speech” a criminal act in South Africa with criminal consequences.³²⁸

2.7.3.4 Rothschild’s Controlled Central Banks

The Rothschild chronological history report stated only 5 nations are left without a Rothschild controlled central bank: Iran; North Korea; Sudan; Cuba; and Libya. (2005) The Central bank of Cuba and the Central bank of Libya has now been

³²⁸ FOR SA (April 20, 2020) Ellerbeck, Daniela. Legal Advisor for FOR SA. *Hate Speech – Where do we stand?* Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/hate-speech-where-do-we-stand/>

included in the Rothschild portfolio. The author investigated the situation pertaining to South Africa and discovered the following: The South African Reserve Bank website³²⁹ provides a comprehensive list of shareholders. (2 million shares)³³⁰ The 700 shareholders, includes six countries and individuals across the globe. The Rothschild's are not listed as a shareholder or owner. It is though most likely that their shares, if any, are owned by one of their numerous international companies. Yet, the African Agenda website³³¹ lists 'The South African Reserve Bank' as one of the banks owned by the Rothchild family.

The author associates the ownership of multitudes of international banks with the 1790 statement made by Mayer Amschel Rothschild:³³²

"Let me issue and control a nation's money and I care not who writes the laws."

2.7.3.5 Media Control

The Rothschild chronological history report their purchase of the Reuters news agency at the end of the 1800's and their expressed gratitude towards the media in 1991. The South African mainstream media is owned by Naspers.

2.7.3.6 Possible South African Leaders

National policies worldwide are influenced to achieve the goal of global power. South Africa is included in this global strategy. Several politicians and

³²⁹ South African Reserve Bank. Available at: <https://www.resbank.co.za/Pages/default.aspx>. Shareholders list.

³³⁰ Mail & Guardian (March 9, 2019) *Who owns the Reserve Bank?* Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2019-03-09-00-who-owns-the-reserve-bank/>

³³¹ List of Banks owned by the Rothschild family. Available at: <http://africanagenda.net/list-of-banks-owned-by-the-rothschild-family/>

³³² Hitchcock, Andrew Carrington (2010) *The History of the House of Rothchild*. Available at: <https://rense.com/general88/hist.htm> or <https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>

businessmen are suspected to have promoted the goal for global power strategy.

Adv. Pretorius listed the following:

- Harry Oppenheimer
- Anton Rupert
- J.P. Morgan
- John Vorster
- Long Hendrik van den Bergh
- Niek Diedericks
- Pik Botha
- F.W. de Klerk
- Wimpie de Klerk
- Sampie Terreblanche

The list was compared with a list provided by the Trumpet Call Christian Ministry³³³:

- Alan Kirkland Soga
- Sir Ernest Oppenheimer
- Harry Oppenheimer
- Nicky Oppenheimer
- Johnathan Oppenheimer
- Piet Retief
- Pres. J.H. Brand
- Sir Christoffel Brand
- Genl. Ben Viljoen
- Genl. Louis Botha
- Pres. M.W. Pretorius
- Pres. F.W. Reitz
- Genl. Piet Cronje
- Genl. Piet Joubert
- Komdt. Danie Theron
- Pres. M.T. Steyn
- Genl. C.R. de Wet
- Genl. Jan Smuts

³³³ Trumpet Call. Freemasonry Part 2. Available at: <https://trumpetcall.co.za/dvds/freemasonry-part-2>

- Tielman Roos
- C.J. Langenhoven
- Genl. Dan Pienaar
- Gustav Preller

Dutch Reformed Ministers:

- Andrew Murray
- William Murray
- John Murray
- Petrus van der Spuy
- G.W.A. van der Lingen
- Meent Borchers
- J.H. Neetlingh

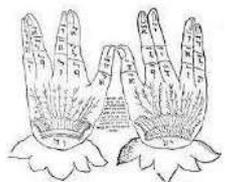


Figure 33: Nelson Mandela and Freemason hand signs³³⁴

2.7.3.7 Relevance of 1st of May

The United States of America Bar Association recognised the significance of the date and declared 1st of May “Law Day”. The celebration of 1st of May is

³³⁴ Elish, Deborah (November 14, 2014) *Nelson Mandela, Thabo Mbeki, Desmond Tutu all Freemasons*. Discerning the World. Available at: <https://www.discerningtheworld.com/2014/11/19/nelson-mandela-freemason/>

associated with Paganism, Baal-Worship and revolves around Satanic worship.

Author’s note: 1st of May is also recognised in the South African government as an official holiday called ‘Workers Day’. The question can be asked if this can be coincidental, given the choice of 356 days to choose from?

2.7.3.8 Suspicious Political Murders

Speculations exists with regards to several South African unsolved murder mysteries and the possibility that they could have been politically motivated, instigated or performed by alleged secret societies. As illustration, the author attended to three unsolved murders.

2.7.3.8.1 Murder of Chris Hani

Chris Hani is described as the most popular Black politician by the Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory³³⁵, as well as the Mail & Guardian³³⁶. He was the leader of the South African Communist Party and chief of staff of uMkhonto we Siswe³³⁷ at the time of his murder on April 10, 1993. Mandela³³⁸ revered him as “one of the greatest revolutionary leaders the country has ever seen.” Fidel

³³⁵ Kemp, Arthur. O’Malley. *The Death of Chris Hani: An African misadventure*. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v03370/051v03422.htm>

³³⁶ Jacob, Sean (April 13, 2020) *Chris Hani’s Political Legacy*. Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2020-04-13-chris-hanis-political-legacy/>

³³⁷ uMkhonto we Siswe. O’Malley. The heart of Hope. Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory. Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the nation) was the military wing of the African National Congress (ANC). Founded December 16, 1961 by the ANC and SACP as the answer to the political, social and economical oppression against blacks by the South African Apartheid regime. The MK carried out numerous bombings of military, industrial, civilian and infrastructural sites. Notable among these is the January 8, 1982 (to coincide with the 70th anniversary of the formation of the ANC) attack on the Koeberg nuclear power plant in Cape Town. Umkhonto we Sizwe was officially disbanded on August 1, 1990. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v02730/051v02918/061v02983.htm>

³³⁸ Jacob, Sean (April 13, 2020) *Chris Hani’s Political Legacy*. Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2020-04-13-chris-hanis-political-legacy/>

Castro³³⁹ described him as one of South Africa’s “most valuable leaders.”

Janusz Waluś, a Polish immigrant to South Africa and Gaye Derby-Lewis, Conservative Party Member of Parliament,³⁴⁰ were arrested and convicted for Hani’s assassination. A list comprising with names (Hani and others), numbered in an apparent order of priority was found in Waluś’s residence.

Derby-Lewis served in all levels of government in South Africa and founder member of the Conservative Party after the National Party amended policies on racial segregation. He remained member of the Conservative Party General Council and Parliamentary Caucus until 1993. He grew up in Kimberley and was educated at the Christian Brothers' College. He later joined the Afrikaanse Protestantse Kerk. (Protestant Church)

He was considered a co-conspirator as he supplied the murder weapon to Janusz. Derby-Lewis confessed to his role in the assassination in the Truth and Reconciliation Commission hearings. In his amnesty application he explained how the assassination was encouraged or sanctioned by senior leaders of the Conservative Party. The assassination strategy is described as follows:³⁴¹

“Their objective was to create a situation in which the radicals who supported Hani would cause widespread chaos and mayhem in the wake of his death. Because the NP (National Party) would not be able to take effective control, this situation would unite right-wing leaders. They would then be able to combine with the security forces and, by ‘stepping in’, trigger a ‘counter-revolution’ and take over the government of the country.”

In his defence, Derby-Lewis³⁴² claimed that he was acting "in defence of my people, who were threatened with a Communist take-over. He added that his

³³⁹ Jacob, Sean (April 13, 2020) *Chris Hani’s Political Legacy*. Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2020-04-13-chris-hanis-political-legacy/>

³⁴⁰ Chris Hani Timeline. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/thembisile-chris-hani-timeline-1942-2003>

³⁴¹ Munusamy, Ranjeni (April 1, 2013) *The blood of Chris Hani and the eternal damnation of Clive Derby-Lewis*. Daily Maverick. Available at: <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2013-04-10-the-blood-of-chris-hani-and-the-eternal-damnation-of-clive-derby-lewis/>

³⁴² O’Mailley The Year of Hope. Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory. Truth and Reconciliation hearings. Assassinations. Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02167/04lv02264/05lv02267/06lv02268/07lv02269.htm>

Christian faith within the Afrikaanse Protestant Church was central to his decision and the objective of the attack on Mr Hanı:

To strike a blow for Almighty God and Christianity against the anti-Christ communism in the form of the leader of the SA Communist Party. As a practising Christian, Mr Chairman, my priority is to Almighty God before all else. Mr Chairman as I have previously testified, I actually cleared the principle with Dr. Treurnicht when I had the discussion regarding what is the duty of a Christian in terms of the struggle or the war against the Anti-Christ?

Both men were acquitted on conspiracy charges due to insufficient evidence. They were however found guilty on murder and illegal possession of a firearm and ammunition charges. They were sentenced to death on Friday October 16, 1993 - which in reality implied life imprisonment as there has been a moratorium on executions in South Africa since 1990. This moratorium was made permanent in 1995. Gaye Derby spent 22 years in prison before granted medical parole and placed under house arrest for 18 months prior to his death (due to cancer) in November 2016. Janus’ application for parole was denied several times, the most recent dated March 2020.

News 24³⁴³ reported on a statement by former President Zuma pertaining to the clandestine reality of Hanı’s assassination. Pres. Zuma allegedly said:

“there are things he doesn’t talk about but there are some people within his own movement who wanted to kill Hanı.”

Whilst head of the African National Congress (ANC) Intelligence during the struggle, he allegedly discovered information on how Hanı was betrayed by colleagues who leaked information to the enemy. He did not elaborate on the identity of the ‘enemy’.

2.7.3.8.2 Murder of Dulcie September

Dulcie Evonne September was a South African anti-apartheid political activist. She was assassinated in Paris on March 29, 1988. At the time she was the Chief

³⁴³ Dzulane, Bonga (July 20, 2019) Available at: <https://ewn.co.za/2019/07/20/zuma-there-were-some-within-anc-who-wanted-to-kill-hani>

Representative of the ANC for France, Luxembourg and Switzerland. Her murder was never solved.

At the time she was murdered, Dulcie was beginning to understand, how powerful networks involving European banks, arms companies across the world, shipping companies and middlemen made fortunes arming apartheid in violation of a mandatory UN-embargo.

Beyond her duties as chief representative, we know that Dulcie September was investigating the illegal arms trade between South Africa and Europe during apartheid. Much of trade was coordinated through the South African embassy in Paris. Before Dulcie September was assassinated, she reported she was being watched and feared an attempt on her life. In spite of this, she never received protection from neither the French authorities or the ANC.³⁴⁴

The Daily Maverick³⁴⁵ reported on the Armscor weapon transactions with the Apartheid government: September investigated French military support for the apartheid whilst stationed in Paris. From her appointment in 1983, she was intimidated and threatened by elements of the French elite. Evelyn Groenink³⁴⁶ investigative journalist did extensive research pertaining to the murders of Dulcie September, Anton Lubowski and Chris Hani. Her journalistic and editing work can be seen on www.zammagazine.com. Groenink³⁴⁷ wrote the following:

My investigation into the nuclear trail began when a South African journalist told me, sometime in 1989 or 1990, about advanced nuclear cooperation between France and South Africa. The nuclear collaboration itself wasn't shocking – everyone knew France had helped build South Africa's Koeberg nuclear reactor and was also routinely breaking arms sanctions.

Contributing to the mystery is the fact that no recognition is given to Dulcie September, no statues, no airports, or grand boulevards named after her. This is in spite of the fact that she was the highest-ranking ANC-official ever to be killed outside of Southern Africa. The question remains, who stood to gain from her

³⁴⁴ Bitsch, Rasmus; Koopman, Kelly-Eve (August 2, 2019) *The erasure of Dulcie September*. Available at: <https://africasacountry.com/2019/08/the-erasure-of-dulcie-september>

³⁴⁵ Open Secrets. (September 20, 2017) *Declassified: Apartheid Profits - Who killed Dulcie September?* Available at: <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2017-09-20-declassified-apartheid-profits-who-killed-dulcie-september/>

³⁴⁶ Groenink, Evelyn (March 25, 2020) *An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history*. Available at: <https://gga.org/an-uncomfortable-truth/>

³⁴⁷ Groenink, Evelyn (March 25, 2020) *An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history*. Available at: <https://gga.org/an-uncomfortable-truth/>

murder?

2.7.3.8.3 Murder of Anton Lubowski

Anton Theodor Eberhard August Lubowski was assassinated by operatives of South Africa’s Civil Cooperation Bureau in 1989.

A Namibian anti-apartheid activist and advocate and member of the South West Africa People's Organization (SWAPO). He studied law at the University of Stellenbosch and graduated from the University of Cape Town with a LL.B. degree. He defended political prisoners and got involved with the Namibian trade union movement as Secretary of Finance and Administration of the National Union of Namibian Workers (NUNW). He had no political affiliation before joining SWAPO in 1984. He initiated a legal research organisation NAMLAW with the purpose to draft legislation for Namibia after independence. Elected Deputy Secretary for Finance and Administration in the SWAPO Election Directorate. Shortly before his death he was elected to the SWAPO Central Committee. Lubowski was awarded the Austrian Bruno Kreisky Prize for Achievements in Human Rights.

On June 23, 1994, Judge Harold Levy, sitting in the High Court of Namibia, found Donald Acheson, an Irish national guilty off the assassination of Lubowski. Judge Levy ruled that the killer or killers had been acting on the instructions of the bizarrely named South African Civil Cooperation Bureau (CCB), a shadowy unit of the South African Defence Force. It appeared that the then current administration had no political will to resolve what had been labelled an Apartheid government crime.

***The family said that a sinister motive was believable considering the death threats they received and police dockets that disappeared over the years.*³⁴⁸**

³⁴⁸ Groenink, Evelyn (March 25, 2020) *An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history.* Available at: <https://gga.org/an-uncomfortable-truth/>

2.7.8.3.4 Spirituality and Possible Clandestine Motivations

Evelyn Groenink, an investigating journalist published *‘Incorruptible. The story of the murders of Dulcie September, Anton Lubowski and Chris Hani’* and “An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history”³⁴⁹ evaluating the evidence and possible motivations for the Hani, Lubowski and September murders.

Hani and September are both associated with clandestine arm deals. Lubowski is also described as incorruptible. The author found it interesting that Chris Chatters SJ³⁵⁰ (South African Jesuit) evaluation of book is published on the Illuminate website. Groenink noted:

In the case of Chris Hani, former comrades explained to me how he was an obstacle to the USD\$ 60 million arms deal that was being negotiated with others in the ANC leadership at the time’.

Dulcie September is believed to have discovered exceedingly dangerous information in the murky world of the international arms trade.

Groenink’s evidence points to an unholy collusion between apartheid South Africa, the French secret services and the ‘merchants of death’ executing September’s elimination. Bennie van Vuuren³⁵¹ Author of “Apartheid, Guns and Money” reported as follows:

“A likely scenario is that Dulcie September was killed by a South African assassin with either the participation of the French security services or at least their tacit approval. The arms deal at the time were not only a South Africa Affair. The train of profit-making led to Paris, where it benefited corporations, politicians and spies. If any of this was revealed, it might have endangered the existence of the Armscor office in Paris... .”

A similar scenario is presented for the case of Anton Lubowski: an incorruptible SWAPO office-bearer unwilling to approve shady deals. A News 24³⁵² article

³⁴⁹ Groenink, Evelyn (March 25, 2020) *An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history.* Available at: <https://gga.org/an-uncomfortable-truth/>

³⁵⁰ Chatteris, Chris (April 5, 2018) Review – *Incorruptible: The story of the murders of Dulcie September, Anton Lobowski and Chris Hani.* Available at: <https://spotlight.africa/2018/04/05/review-incorruptible-the-story-of-the-murders-of-dulcie-september-anton-lubowski-and-chris-hani>

³⁵¹ Van Vuuren, Hennie (2018) *Apartheid Guns and Money: A Tale of Profit.* Glasgow: Bell & Bain Ltd.

³⁵² *Chris Hani, Jesuits, the Pope and Mugabe.* (March 19, 2013) Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/MyNews24/Chris-Hani-Jesuits-the-Pope-and-Mugabe-20130319>

dated March 19, 2013 not only referred to the unsolved murders but also suggested sinister Jesuit involvement:

With the election of Francis 1, Jesuit Pope, and his association with the abduction, torture, murder and disappearance of tens of thousands during Argentina dictatorship in 1970, I am reminded of a very tense time in SA shortly before NM became pres.

Two things have struck me. The first is the actual assassin. JW who came from Poland. The Pope was at the time in Poland. Karol Jozef Wojtyla, Pope John Paul II. No info is available of JW life before he came to SA

Two people were involved. Clive John Derby-Lewis, who was educated at - Christian Brothers’ College and an extraordinary minister of Holy Communion, and his wife Faye Derby-Lewis a former nun originally from Australia.

Gaye was provided with a hit list of senior ANC members that were to be targeted. What strike me here is the Roman Catholic Church’s involvement in the promotion of fascist states and the links that it has to assassinations both in South America and in south Africa. Is has also crossed my mind that both Clive and Januz Walus were Jesuits.

The author could not:

- Verify any reference to the Jesuits in Groenink’s research.
- Confirm the Jesuit-status of Clive Derby Lewis or Janus Walus after intensive research.

Any allegation confirmed by only a single reference, generally would not quality for adoption in academic research. It is not the authors intention to rely on speculative unverified information, but rather to accommodate the information as a suggestion for additional research pertaining to the Jesuit impact on the South African history. Suggested research could also include Jesuit strategies and successes pertaining to China’s presence in Africa and South Africa in particular: The growing Chinese absorption of Africa’s mineral resources and the possible Chinese-Jesuit manipulation. Additional research could be in line with Edmond Paris³⁵³ descriptions pertaining to Jesuits:

“Politics are their main field of action, as all the efforts of these “directors” concentrate on one aim: the submission of the world to the papacy, and to attain this the “heads” must be conquered first”. No other Orders showed so

³⁵³ Paris, Edmond (1982) *The Secret History of the Jesuits*. Ontario, Calif.: Chick Publications. P. 24

much interest and talent for politics and deployed so much activity in it the Jesuit Order.³⁵⁴

In motivation, Paris cited the following examples:

- Father Possevino was pontifical legate in Sweden, Poland and Russia.
- Father Pete was a minister in England.
- Father Vota acted as counsellor of Jean Sobieskie of Poland and mediator when Prussia transformed into a kingdom.

Pope France’s 2013 message also resembles a similar opinion:³⁵⁵

“Good Catholics meddle in politics, offering the best of themselves, so that those who govern can govern,” he said. “Politics, according to the Social Doctrine of the Church, is one of the highest forms of charity, because it serves the common good. I cannot wash my hands, eh? We all have to give something!”

The Jesuit website elaborates on this statement:

- Political participation is not merely worthwhile, but one of the “highest forms of charity.” (Charity, or the Latin *caritas*, is the highest theological virtue and a word for what we more commonly call “love”)
- Politics is an important way of loving God by loving our neighbour in an incarnational, concrete way.
- Catholics are called to get involved in politics — to “meddle,” even! — instead of disengaging and avoiding the messiness of political life.

2.8 The New Age Movement/New World Order

The New Age movement is spearheading a comprehensive attack on many of the highest values of both Christian church and Western Culture.³⁵⁶

This statement by Prof. Gordon R. Lewis, in the foreword of Groothuis’ publication (New Age), echoed Prof. Dr. Brand³⁵⁷ when she quoted Mitchell:

³⁵⁴ Paris, Edmond (1982) *The Secret History of the Jesuits*. Ontario, Calif.: Chick Publications. P. 64

³⁵⁵ Jesuits. Contemplation and Political Action: An Ignatian Guide to Civic Engagement. The Jesuit Conference of Canada and the United States reflects on our Gospel call to promote the common good in the public square. Available at: <https://www.jesuits.org/our-work/justice-and-ecology/take-action-2/civic-engagement/>

³⁵⁶ Groothuis, D.R. (1986) *Unmasking the New Age*. Ontario, Canada: Intervarsity Press. P. 9

³⁵⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-

“The New Age movement, as it is commonly called could be likened to a counterfeit “John the Baptist movement, preparing the way for the coming anti-Christ and his rule on earth in the end time. It is one single movement, with a specific leader at this time, but a rallying together of thousands of groups, individuals, all working towards a common aim.”

2.8.1 An Abridged History

The founding of the Theosophical Society (1875) by Madame Helena Petrovna Blavatsky marks the beginning of the New Age movement in a modern form. Petrovna claimed “telepathic communications” from “Masters” until her death in 1891. These spiritual teachers are men transformed into higher levels of consciousness, Buddha, Mohammed, Confucius, and Jesus.

Included in these teachings were the instruction to keep the teachings secret for a hundred years (1875-1975). Leadership of the movement transferred from Blavatsky to Annie Besant and Alice Ann Bailey.

Prof. Dr. Brand³⁵⁸ alluded to Bailey as a spiritist and medium, an ardent believer in reincarnation and the accepted “high Priestess” of the New Age Movement (NAM).

2.8.2 New Age Goal

The establishment of an ultimate dictator world rule in a New World Order remains the primary goal of secret societies. Their compatriots and associates in varied organisations are not necessarily enlightened with the camouflaged ultimate goal of a new One World Order and the preparation for the anti-Christ. Their particular

Published, P. 828 and Mitchell, Edwin and Jody (1991) *The Two Headed Dragon of Africa*. USA: Joshiah Publishing, P. 284

³⁵⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published. P. 385

goals are promoted by liberal human rights and pro-choice³⁵⁹ movements opposing Biblical principles. In order to maintain world peace, no freedom outside prescribed rules can/will be allowed. Prof. Dr. Brand³⁶⁰ referred to the Biblical warnings in the book of Revelation pertaining to a World Government, (Revelation 13:1-10)³⁶¹, a World Religion (Revelation 13:11-15)³⁶² and a cashless society. (Revelation 13:16-18)³⁶³

2.8.3 New Age Strategy

The NAM (New Age Movement) is not a single organisation but a conglomerate of organisations unified in their opposition to Biblical principles and specifically the gospel of salvation in Christ. A counterfeit “John the Baptist’ movement in

³⁵⁹ Pro-choice advocates the legal right of a woman to choose whether or not she will have an abortion.

³⁶⁰ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, P. 383

³⁶¹ Revelation 13:1-10 (NIV) The dragon stood on the shore of the sea. And I saw a beast coming out of the sea. It had ten horns and seven heads, with ten crowns on its horns, and on each head a blasphemous name. The beast I saw resembled a leopard, but had feet like those of a bear and a mouth like that of a lion. The dragon gave the beast his power and his throne and great authority. One of the heads of the beast seemed to have had a fatal wound, but the fatal wound had been healed. The whole world was filled with wonder and followed the beast. People worshiped the dragon because he had given authority to the beast, and they also worshiped the beast and asked, “Who is like the beast? Who can wage war against it?” The beast was given a mouth to utter proud words and blasphemies and to exercise its authority for forty-two months. It opened its mouth to blaspheme God, and to slander his name and his dwelling place and those who live in heaven. It was given power to wage war against God’s holy people and to conquer them. And it was given authority over every tribe, people, language and nation. All inhabitants of the earth will worship the beast—all whose names have not been written in the Lamb’s book of life, the Lamb who was slain from the creation of the world. Whoever has ears, let them hear. “If anyone is to go into captivity, into captivity they will go. If anyone is to be killed with the sword, with the sword they will be killed.” This calls for patient endurance and faithfulness on the part of God’s people.

³⁶² Revelation 13:11-15 (NIV) Then I saw a second beast, coming out of the earth. It had two horns like a lamb, but it spoke like a dragon. It exercised all the authority of the first beast on its behalf, and made the earth and its inhabitants worship the first beast, whose fatal wound had been healed. And it performed great signs, even causing fire to come down from heaven to the earth in full view of the people. Because of the signs it was given power to perform on behalf of the first beast, it deceived the inhabitants of the earth. It ordered them to set up an image in honor of the beast who was wounded by the sword and yet lived. The second beast was given power to give breath to the image of the first beast, so that the image could speak and cause all who refused to worship the image to be killed.

³⁶³ Revelation 13:16-18 (NIV) It also forced all people, great and small, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on their right hands or on their foreheads, so that they could not buy or sell unless they had the mark, which is the name of the beast or the number of its name. This calls for wisdom. Let the person who has insight calculate the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man. That number is 666.

preparation for the coming of the anti-Christ”, according to Prof. Dr. Brand.³⁶⁴ Loyalists successfully infiltrated every area of society, including the Church, health and medical approaches, education, religion, legislation, etc. to prepare the world at large for Satan’s strategy to present the **“false messiah’ to the world. The New Age Movement is the gathering together of all his satanic projects.”**

Various organisations with individual agendas do not negate the actual masterplan of the organised secretive organisations with an articulated agenda and time frame to implement international control in preparation for the antichrist. “Report from Iron Mountain” a secret report compiled by 15 experts from various disciplines, leaked to the media in 1996. It revealed specific actions to be implemented in order to create an artificial global threat to unite all people. This united fear will path the way for the new world order and new world leader to arise. The New Yorker (May 13,1996)³⁶⁵ referred the leaked report as a **“hoax, hatched by a bunch of New York lefties”**

Economic, social, cultural, scientific, and ecological disasters will create chaos and fear equal in comparison to a world war. The time frame for the implementation of this plan was stated as one to one and a half lifetime. A lifetime calculated as thirty years implies the implementation in 2041. The global threat to unite the people could include:

- Nuclear weapons and nuclear spillage
- Global warming

The decline of the earth’s ozone layer, global warming and several severe oil spills are some of the ecological disasters. United State vice President Albert Gore declared them in his book “Earth in Balance” to be a greater threat to the earth compared to war.

³⁶⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, P. 382

³⁶⁵ Boynton, Robert S. (May 13, 1996) A Lefty Reunion. The New Yorker. Available at: <https://www.newyorker.com/magazine/1996/05/13/a-lefty-reunion>

- Extra-terrestrials and possible attacks

It is however the extra-terrestrial that holds the greater potential to unite all people.

“the most ambitious and unrealistic space project cannot of itself generate a believable external menace. Such a menace would offer the ‘last, best hope of peace’ by uniting mankind against the danger of destruction by ‘creatures’ from other planets or from outer space. Experiments have been proposed to test the credibility of an out-of-our-world invasion threat; it is possible that a few of the more difficult-to-explain ‘flying saucer’ incidents of the recent years were in fact early experiments of this kind...” (translated)³⁶⁶

Speculations of highly intellectual civilizations responsible for the Egyptian pyramids and pyramids on Mars are frequently reported in the media. Nasa, CIA Stanford Research Instituut, the Esalen Institute and the Great White Lodge made assumptions with regards to life on Mars.

One of the most important recommendations was:

“a comprehensive social-welfare programme – a giant open-end space research programme ..., an omni-present, virtually omnipotent international police force, and established and recognised extra-terrestrial menace, intensified environmental pollution, new religious or other mythologies, socially oriented blood games, a modern, sophisticated form of slavery.”³⁶⁷

Several major social projects are evidential for progress in the realisation of the above goal. Herewith only three major organisations:

- NATO, North Atlantic Treaty Organisation; formed in 1949 with the signing of the Washington Treaty is a security alliance of 30 countries from North America and Europe. The fundamental goal is to safeguard the Allies’ freedom and security by political and military means. NATO remains the principle security instrument of the transatlantic community and expression of its common democratic values.

It is the practical means through which the security of North America and Europe are permanently tied together. NATO enlargement has furthered the

³⁶⁶ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 7

³⁶⁷ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 7

U.S. goal of a Europe whole, free and at peace.³⁶⁸

- The first ever international police force developed by Interpol and adopted by die 192 countries at the Interpol General Assembly in 2017.

“The Global Policing Goals launched today are meant to enable global security actors to contribute to such transformative law enforcement efforts in other countries, so that Colombia’s experience in transitioning towards a more sustainable future becomes the norm and not the exception,” said Mr Vargas Valencia.³⁶⁹

- World Health Organisation (WHO) birthed on April 7, 1948 is operational in 150 countries. Their primary goal is to direct and coordinate international health within the United Nations system.³⁷⁰ The current Corona-19 epidemic provided ample evidence of the control and information and medicine the WHO holds.
- World Council of Churches. The W.C.C. represents some 560 million Christians from 110 countries, created in 1936 to establish unity, justice and peace in the world.

Its constitution states that “the primary purpose” of the fellowship “is to call one another to visible unity in one faith and in one eucharistic fellowship, expressed in worship and common life in Christ, through witness and service to the world, and to advance toward that unity in order that the world may believe.”³⁷¹

The Ecumenical Institute in Bossey, an international centre of encounter, dialogue and formation of the W.C.C. that was founded in 1946 to enable members of the different churches to study the theology of ecumenism, missiology and social ethics, in an intercultural and community atmosphere.³⁷²

³⁶⁸ US Mission to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization. Available at: <https://nato.usmission.gov/our-relationship/about-nato/>

³⁶⁹ Interpol. (October 18, 2018) Interpol launches Global Policing Goals. Available at: <https://www.interpol.int/News-and-Events/News/2018/INTERPOL-launches-Global-Policing-Goals>

³⁷⁰ World Health Organization. Available at: <https://www.who.int/about>

³⁷¹ America, The Jesuit Review. O’Connell, Gerard. (June 20, 2018) Why Pope Francis’ presence at the World Council of Churches matters. Available at: <https://www.americamagazine.org/faith/2018/06/20/why-pope-francis-presence-world-council-churches-matters>

³⁷² O’Connell, Gerard. (June 20, 2018) *Why Pope Francis’ presence at the World Council of Churches matters*. The Jesuit Review. America. Available at: <https://www.americamagazine.org/faith/2018/06/20/why-pope-francis-presence-world-council-churches-matters>

Dr. Mc Loud³⁷³ also identified the following aspects:

- The CIA MK-Ultra “mind control” system
- “Regionalised and Adaptive Model of the Global World Systems” report released by the Club of 500 in 1973.
- APEC, Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation
- EU, The European Union
- ORPM, The Office of Religious Persecution Monitoring

Fundamental Christians believing in the Triune God: Father, Son and Holy Spirit, with Christ the only begotten Son of God and the only path to forgiveness of sins/salvation and eternal life will be in contradiction to the core principles of the ORPM. This gospel of exclusivity would be equal to hate speech according to ORPM definition. The very existence of all Christian ministries and churches will be in jeopardy.

Dr. Mc Loud refers to a statement by Prof. Spangenberg from Unisa who identified fundamentalism, including Christianity, as one of the major impediments for peace and prosperity in the 20th century. Christian culture is also evaluated as conservative and not accommodating towards other faiths.³⁷⁴

- Dionysus-culture apposing traditional Christian values propagating sexual promiscuity, homosexuality, and militant feminism.
- Monitoring via the Echelon system whereby personal data of individuals can be monitored.
- Cashless society.
- New religions manifesting in the multiple New Age concepts. One such a theory of critical importance is conceptualised in Marilyn Ferguson's book “The Aquarian Conspiracy. Personal and Social Transformation in the 1980’s”.

³⁷³ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. PP. 10-14

³⁷⁴ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 13

“The title became a catchword to describe a new consciousness revolution involving a leaderless network of many enlightened individuals to bring about radical change in modern culture, based on a greatly enlarged concept of human potential.”³⁷⁵

- Several strategies are deployed to influence people on an unconscious level with the aim to unite people without their conscious desire to unite. Individuals not cooperating will be removed from society with public consent because of the natural and automatic sense to unite as one.
- A one-world parliament: Transformation on political level were promoted by the proposal from Anthony Gibbons from the London School of Economics and Political Science for the United Nations to be transformed to a world parliament. Member nations will be expected to nominate representatives to the world parliament. Dr. Mc Loud is of opinion that these ideas will be escalated during or after the next international crisis that will enhance the need to unite.

2.8.4 The Club of 500

The Club of Rome established in 1968 as a subdivision of The Club of 500, is especially responsible for the establishment of a one world order. The first meeting was organised by Aurelia Peccei, an Italian industrialist – in his own opinion - the re-incarnation of Adam Weishaupt, the founder of the Illuminati.

Their first report was published in 1973 titled “Regionalised and Adaptive Model of the Global World System”. The conclusions of this report were documented in the book “Mankind at the turning point.” The proposal made was to divide the world into ten regions, “**interdependent and mutually interacting regions.**”³⁷⁶

These regions will be organised according to political, economically and environmental factors. Henry Kissinger referred to NAFTA, APEC and the EU as

³⁷⁵ The Aquarian Conspiracy. (October 27, 2020) Available at: <https://www.encyclopedia.com/science/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/aquarian-conspiracy>

³⁷⁶ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 9

the “basic units of the new world order.” The regions will unite economically first, then political unification will follow.

2.8.4.1 New World Order Proposed Diagram



Figure 34: New World Order ³⁷⁷

³⁷⁷ New World Order. Available at: <https://messagia.files.wordpress.com/2013/06/nwo-chart.gif>

2.8.5 Application to South Africa

South Africa’s confessing Christians, acknowledging Christ as the Son of God in different denominations count to almost 80% of the population. The relevance of the success to the New Age movement is emphasized by the accusation of its occultic character.

The New World Order as envisioned by the Elite is hardly a recent undertaking. There is a philosophy rooted in ancient occult traditions. Success is near, and the infiltration of society by New Age occultism is the reason for this success. The New World Order has never been solely about world government, rather, from the beginning its proponents have been privy to secret doctrines and it is a spiritual plan more than anything.

If one failed to take into account the occult nature of the New World Order, they would be remiss.³⁷⁸

This statement by Terry Melanson in discussing the New Age emphasizes the need to evaluate the spiritual influence of the New Age for South Africa. The possibility of “disciples” in South Africa, their strategy, goals and successes in **“training men and women to recognise the higher psychism”** to enforce the **“masters plan”** is relevant to this investigation into the spiritual influences in South Africa.

“These methods of overshadowing will largely be the ones used by the Great Lord and his Masters at the end of the century, and for this reason They are sending into incarnation, in every country, disciples who have the opportunity offered them to respond to the need of training men and woman to recognize the higher psychism, and the true inspiration and mediumship, and to do this scientifically. In fifty years’, time, the need for true psychics and conscious mediums (such as H.P.B., for instance [Helena Petrova Blavatsky]) will be very great if the Masters' plans are to be carried through to fruition, and the movement must be set on foot in preparation for the coming of Him for Whom all nations wait.”³⁷⁹

The following organisations is regarded to be aligned to the One World vision:

³⁷⁸ Melanson, Terry. (2005) *New World Order or Occult Secret Destiny?* Available at: http://www.conspiracyarchive.com/NewAge/New_World_Order.htm

³⁷⁹ Melanson, Terry. (2005) *Alice Bailey & Master Djwhal Khul: A Satanic Communion.* Illuminati Conspiracy Archive.com. Available at: http://www.conspiracyarchive.com/NewAge/Alice_Bailey.htm

- SADC, Southern Africa Development Community with the aim is to demolish economic and trade borders and divisions between the 21 Comesa (Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa) countries to create a free trade area.
- Organisation of African Unity (AOU) established in 2002 with the aim to rid the continent of the remaining vestiges of colonisation and apartheid, promoting unity and solidarity amongst African states.
- South African Council of Churches (SACC) is an inter denominational forum uniting 36 member churches.

With its enviable track record of advocacy, care and empowerment, the SACC aims to be the moral compass of South Africa, advocating for social and economic justice, national reconciliation, the integrity of the natural environment, eradication of poverty, and contributing towards the empowerment of all those who are spiritually, socially and economically marginalised.³⁸⁰

2.8.5.1 One Religion

Henry Kissinger³⁸¹ affirmed the importance of collective values to unite a community. The Roman Catholic church adopted the leading role to enhance one belief system with the reconciliation document between themselves and the Lutherans and Anglican churches in 2000.

The goal was to establish an international religion where believers from all denominations, including Muslims, Hindi etc. will feel safe and accommodated.

The world parliament of Religions met in Chicago in 1993 and in Cape Town in 1999. The “*Statement of universal ethics*” were signed.

The establishment of a structured global religious order dramatically advanced with the development of a constitution for the United Religions in San Francisco

³⁸⁰ South African Council of Churches. Available at: <http://sacc.org.za/about/>

³⁸¹ Kissinger, H. (1974). Address to the Sixth Special Session of the United Nations General Assembly. *International Organization*, 28(3), 573-583. Retrieved February 25, 2021, from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2706310>

in 1997. This organisation will be responsible to manage and control all religions.

2.8.5.2 Transformation of the Society

Communal values are imperative to the success of the global unity. For this reason, the transformation of societies received specific focus and strategies. Christian and Biblical norms and values positioned in contrast to the aims of the one world order presented a major obstacle. God’s sovereign power and authority and salvation through Christ’s sacrifice alone is problematic in the reconciliation with other religions and faiths.

2.8.5.3 Sexuality Strategy

Wilhelm Reich *stated* in his book titled “The mass psychology of Fascism” the futility to argue the existence of God. A more effective strategy is to lure people into alternative sexual practices which will automatically divide them from God and enhance the doubt with regards to God’s existence and His all-mighty power. Thus, sex became to the key to influence Western cultures.³⁸²

“Make love, not war” first coined by Herbert Marcuse in 1934, became a famous anti-war slogan associated with the American hippy-counterculture in the 1960’s to protest against the Vietnam War. Although this subculture promotion of free-love, nudity, rock-music, liberated use of drugs etc. stands in steep contrast with Biblical principles, it aligns and promotes the sexual strategy.

2.8.5.4 Political Correctness

Simultaneously to the above counterculture, the ideology of politically correct

³⁸² Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 14

behaviour developed with the aim to condition people to think and act in specific manners. Traditional and/or Christian values are promoted so as to be conservative and discriminatory and thus offensive and human right violations.

Seventeen tribunals are responsible to investigate such human right violations.

A sophisticated form of slavery ... (which is an absolute prerequisite for social control in a world at peace)³⁸³

2.8.5.5 International Monitoring

High tech development such as the Echelon system will enable organisations such as the National Security Agencies (NSA) to monitor all individual electronically. George Orwell’s book “1984” describes how governments could instruct people to report electronically on specific scheduled times.

2.8.5.6 Cashless Society

Microchips ID cards containing all personal information such as Id number, fingerprints, eyeball and facial recognition are already a reality. Electronic payments, although convenient, provide financial institutions to record all transactions, and as such monitor individual behaviour.

Ukraine was the first to implant the microchip which will eventually make it possible for any government to trace individuals through the Global Positioning System. (GPS).

Dr. Mc Loud refers to research done by Dr. Carroll Quicley pertaining to work done by a prominent Anglo-American front organisation, The Round Table: An international network aiming to secure financial control of the private sector and

³⁸³ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 14

to monitor and regulate individual (monetary behaviours) choices. According to this strategy individuals will receive a number at birth which will remain valid until death. Individuals not conforming to the prescribed religion could be isolated from all economic actions.

2.8.5.7 International Crisis

Preparations for a manipulated world crisis is already evident on political, economic, religious, social and technological developments. Such a crisis should be so intense and the devastation it generates so overwhelming as to cause a global yearning for peace and the acceptance of a leader to implement a peace plan. Compromises for the sake of peace ...

The peaceful world reflected upon in “Report from iron Mountain” as well as George Orwell’s 1984 will materialise. Final world order will be created from world chaos.

2.8.5.8 World Ruler

Although the factions of the secret organisations agree on the above strategy to create world peace from an international crisis, they differ from the opinion on the type of conflict or crisis. The Anglo-American faction prefer a conflict in Europe whilst the French-Catholic faction foresee a crisis in the Middle-East. They hope for the European Union to take the lead in initiating world peace and to become the dominant global leader. A Messianic leader should according to their plan be the crowned king and leader of Europe. The European Counsel of Princes represent 33 European Royal families.

Dr. Mc Loud speculated that the future leader could be an heir from the Merovingian family, the first European leaders. It is further speculated that this

family:

- Have in their possession the Ark of the Covenant. This will be returned to Israel at an opportune time.
- Are heirs of James, brother to Jesus.
- Are heirs of the marriage of Jesus and Mary Magdalene.
- Presents the bloodline from which the second Christ will be born from.
- Have documented proof that Jesus was initiated into the secret religions and was the leader of the Essene, from which the Freemasons originate.

In this manner Jesus Christ is re-defined as prophet and priest, but not the Son of God who was crucified and who rose from the dead. Rudolph Bultmann, a German theologian stated:

“It would not surprise me the least if they were now to find Jesus’ bones”³⁸⁴

“And yet our age appears determined to embrace one or another form of Messianic myth in order to obtain a sense of meaning. If it must perform to so, we would prefer to see a mortal Messiah presiding over a united Europe than a supernatural Messiah presiding over Armageddon. The Prieuré de Sion cannot provide a messiah of the sort which that word has come erroneously to connote for, say, American fundamentalist. We question whether anything other than the special effects department of a Hollywood studio can provide that. But if we are correct in our assessments, it would seem that The Prieuré de Sion can provide a messiah of the kind that Jesus himself, as a historical personage, actually was.”³⁸⁵

The counter side of the family is the suspicion of occult priests and prophets from the town Satanicum – Stenay in modern history. With the appearance and acceptance of the new world leader the strategy will be deployed:

- The time of the closed global order will be activated.
- One world parliament will be inaugurated.

³⁸⁴ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 20

³⁸⁵ Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief. P. 20

- One set of ethical rules and international religion will be implemented.
- Fundamentalism will have no right to exist and will be prosecuted. Especially Christians who do not conform.
- International monitoring systems will be in operation to control all economical activities.

2.8.5.9 Pax Britannica

South Africa’s inclusion in the global attempt for a one world government dates back to 1877 when Cecil John Rhodes joined the Freemasonry. He was described as the “godfather of the Pax Britannica”. Pax Britannica vision was world peace under British rule. Influenced by John Ruskin, Rhodes promoted British World Rule.

2.8.5.10 The New Illuminati – Round Table

Rhodes combined efforts with other Freemasons to enhance subversive structures from January 1891 to promote the British rule. The “Round Table” organisation was founded to propagate the one world ideal. Adv. Pretorius is of the opinion that the Round Table is the modern manifestation of the Illuminate. Rhodes’ commitment to a conspiracy to establish World Government was noted in a series of wills described by Frank Aydelote in his book *American Scholarships*.

The ‘secret society’* was organized on the conspiratorial pattern of circles within circles. Professor Quigley informs us that the central part of the secret society was established by March 1891, using Rhode’s money. The organisation was run for Rothschild by Lord Alfred Milner.³⁸⁶

³⁸⁶ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (March 16, 2012) *Die Boer en die verraad in sy midde – die hele geskiedenis en die hele waarheid*. Available at: <http://kvbnuusblad.blogspot.com/2012/03/hierdie-is-n-redelike-lang-stuk-omte.html>

The three-circle strategy contained the following:

- The inner circle known as “The Society of the Elect”.
- The outer circle known as “The Association of Helpers”.
- Within the Society of the Elect, the real power was exercised by the leader, and a “Junta of Three”.

Advocate Pretorius stated that the Round Table.

- Influenced British foreign policy influencing Brittan’s conduct in World War I.
- Instigated the Jameson Raid of 1895 and the Boer War of 1899-1902.
- Was responsible for the creation of the Union of South Africa in 1906-1910.

2.8.5.11 Pax Americana³⁸⁷

Shortly before Rhode’s death, he approved the Pax Britannica transforming to Pax Americana to adapt a new strategy of world peace under America’s rule. Pax Britannica favoured white rule whereas Pax America acknowledged and promoted multinationalism with the aim to advance non-racial and no-religion in the economic and political spheres. Global businesses were united regardless of race, gender, age or religion/faith. A doctrine shared by the Freemasons.

White imperialism and nationalism in the 19th century prohibited the immediate growth of Pax America, World Order driven by industrial imperialism resulted in a three-part world division:

- Industrial Core: A well-integrated nation country with high industrial development and a strong national loyalty.
- Semi- or agrarian periphery: Developing industrialization with no particular

³⁸⁷ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 25

national loyalty.

- Periphery: Countries with no industrial or agricultural development.

Pretorius³⁸⁸ wrote:

The aggressive and provocative action of national states in a powerplay of militarism, competitive alliances, secret diplomacy, economic imperialism and nationalism led to the First World War. The main objective the control of world economy. (Free/direct translation)³⁸⁹

The Round Table group (Illuminati) expanded its structure after First World War in order to advance the Pax Americana ideals. Lionel Curtis was tasked to establish the Round Table group via obverse organisations in every one of Brittan’s colonies resulting in the establishments of the following organisations:³⁹⁰

- France: Institute of International Affairs
- Unites States: Council on Property Relations
- Britain: Royal Institutions or International Affairs

These front organisations have become increasingly influential enhancing the Round Table groups’ main objective of a non-racial New World Order.

3. PHOTOGRAPHIC EVIDENCE OF SOUTH AFRICAN SECRET SOCIETY RECOGNITIONS

In commemoration of the 900th Anniversary of the Order of Saint John, the South African Post Office released a stamp of President Mandela in regalia of the Knights of Malta.

³⁸⁸ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28

³⁸⁹ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28

³⁹⁰ Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers. P. 28

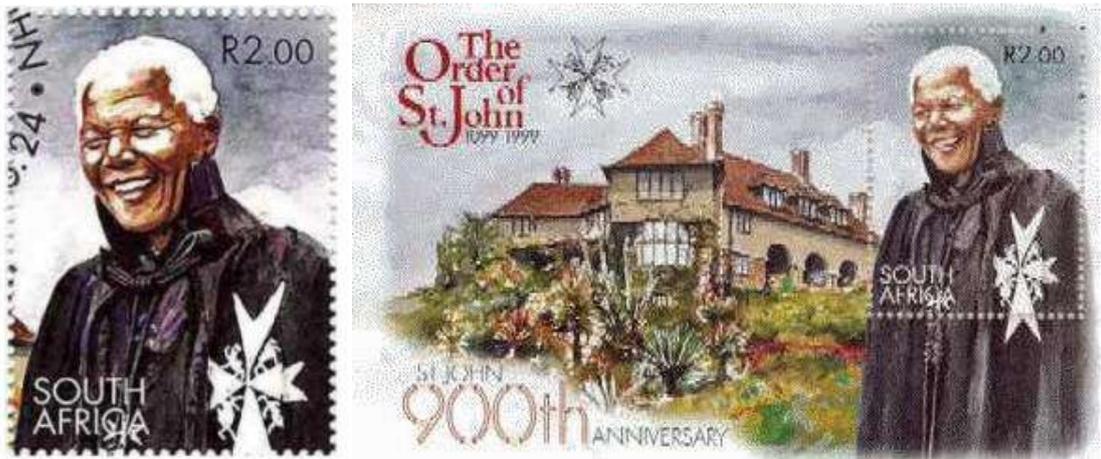


Figure 35: Nelson Mandela in his Garderobe. Post Office stamp dated 2000 commemorating the 900th Anniversary of The Order of Saint John.³⁹¹



Figure 36: Pres Nelson Mandela and Archbishop Desmond Tutu who initiated the phrase “rainbow nation’ in reference to South Africans.³⁹²

³⁹¹ Shelton, Drake (August 14, 2012) *The Jesuit Inspired Boer Genocide in South Africa*. Louisville, KY. Available at: <http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism> and <http://2.bp.blogspot.com/6BtC3QnHcE/UzqPY1K6rnI/AAAAAAAAI9Q/M588ijL-QR4/s1600/order+of+st+john.jpg>

³⁹² Nelson Mandela Knight of Malta. Available at: <https://ebolainfo2014.wordpress.com/2015/02/27/knights-of-malta-expected-and-unexpected-members/>



Figure 37: President Thabo Mbeki was made a Knight of the Most Venerable Order of the Hospital of Saint John of Jerusalem in a colourful investiture ceremony held in St George's Cathedral in Cape Town on Thursday.³⁹³

These photos of Nelson Mandela, former president Mbeki and the iconic Desmond Tutu tell the whole hidden story of South African politics. Here, the Roman Catholic Vatican's Sovereign Military Order of Malta, a.k.a. the Masonic Order of St. John of Jerusalem.³⁹⁴



Figure 38: Proud new Freemasons. Meshak Amisi and Reneoue Kortjaas in the Freemason's Hall in Parktown, Johannesburg, wearing some of the regalia of the brotherhood. *Image: Masi Losi*³⁹⁵

³⁹³ IOL (May 10, 2007) Mbeki IS a Knight of St John Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/mbeki-is-a-knight-of-st-john-352454>

³⁹⁴ Vermeulen, Riette *Defending God's Truth in Church doctrine and Political History*. Available at: https://www.unbannedbiblepublications.com/index_files/Page37043.htm

³⁹⁵ Ho Ufrieda Times Live (October 22, 2017) *Meet the millennial Freemasons of Joburg*. The secretive brotherhood society of Freemasonry is trying to lure new blood – as long as it's male. Available at:

4. CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT

4.1 Previous Constitutions and Related Political Development

Several constitutions existed prior to the current incarnation.

- The 1910 Constitution granted independence to South Africa from Britain. Thirty white male delegates proportionate to the white population of the four colonies drafted the constitution. Their proposal was passed by both houses of the British parliament. The South African Act received Royal assent on September 20, 1909. Only whites were entitled to serve in the new Union parliament. Cape Town would host the parliament; Pretoria was elected to be the administrative capital and Bloemfontein the seat of the Appellate Division of the Supreme Court.

Simultaneously, and in direct reaction to the intended formation of the Union of South Africa and the constitutional preparation, the South African Convention (SANC), forerunner of the ANC met in 1908-1909. The SANC was unsuccessful to prevent the inauguration of the Union on May 31, 1910. The South African Native National Congress (SAMNC) founded in 1912 amended their name to the African National Congress in 1923. The ANC transformed into a mass movement during the 1940’s. In 1952 the ANC launched a Defiance Campaign which resulted in the dramatic increase of their membership. The Freedom Charter adopted in 1955 committed the organisation to a South Africa for all. The ANC, the oldest political organisation until the organisation was banned in 1960 in the aftermath of the Sharpeville massacre. The Nobel Peace Prize for non-violent protest was awarded to Albert Luthuli in 1960, shortly after, Nelson Mandela in close relationship with the South African Communist Party adopted a strategy of armed struggle and launched their military wing

<https://www.timeslive.co.za/sunday-times/lifestyle/2017-10-21-meet-the-millennial-freemasons-of-park-town/>

Umkhonto weSiswe (MK). The period of sabotages began after December 1961.

- The 1961 Constitution constituted South Africa a republic. Jan Smuts understood the English-speaking South Africans allegiance to Britain and the Commonwealth. HF Verwoerd began to advocate the ideal of a Republic during World War II. After the war, DF Malan prioritised the consolidation of the National Party and propagated a Republic to be decided upon after a referendum by whites. The envisaged Republic would be democratic, Christian and promised equality between Afrikaans and English-speaking white people. Verwoerd gained support after the Sharpeville incident and Macmillan’s wind of change speech. The result of the referendum of October 1960 favoured the establishment of a Republic with a majority of 74 580 votes (52%). The Republic of South African was established on Union Day, May 31, 1961, with CR Swart, former Minister of Justice the first elected President. Political rights and participation were provided for whites only.
- The 1983 Constitution established a tri-cameral parliament. PW Botha reformed the constitution to include Coloured and Indian South Africans in two separated houses of Parliament: A House of Representatives for the Coloured- and a House of Delegates for Indian South Africans. The exclusion of Black South Africans fuel township revolt. The failure of the tricameral parliament to resolve the crisis contributed FW De Klerk’s decision to negotiate with the African National Congress and other black political organisations. The ANC and other organisations were unbanned in 1990 and formal negotiations commenced with the ruling National Party. The tricameral parliament dissolved in December 1993, prior to the first general election in 1994.
- The first interim constitution was drafted by a Multi-Party Negotiating Forum.

4.2 Development of the Current Constitution

The Constitution is generally associated with the establishment of the first democratic elected government after the historic unbanning of the ANC and other organisations and the release of Mr Nelson Mandela. This is indeed true, but it is not so simplistic. The South African constitution is the culmination of lobby groups and protest actions over decades. The notion embedded in the Bill of Rights can be traced to ANC documents dated in the 1920's and the Freedom Charter drafted by the ANC in 1955.

Following the unbanning of the ANC and other organisations, the Convention for a Democratic South Africa, CODESA was established to facilitate negotiations and the establishment of a new South African government. The first democratic negotiations between the government, ANC and other South African parties commenced on December 20, 1991.

On October 25, 1991, ninety-two organisations united in their opposition to apartheid gathered in Durban to form the Patriotic Front. The Front deliberated over the negotiation process and the mechanism and technicalities of transition and a changeover of political leadership.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa (CODESA), under the chairmanship of the judges Michael Corbett, Petrus Shabot and Ismail Mahomed, began with a plenary session on December 20, 1991, almost two years after the unbanning of political parties and the release of Nelson Mandela.

Nineteen groups were represented at CODESA, including the South African government, the National Party, the African National Congress, the Inkatha Freedom Party, the Democratic Party, the South African Communist Party, the South African Indian Congress, the Coloured Labour Party, the Indian National People's Party and Solidarity Party, and the leaders of the nominally independent bantustans of Transkei, Ciskei, Bophuthatswana and Venda.

Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr. Pik Botha, allegedly a prominent Freemason was, with several other alleged Freemasons included in the negotiating team of the National Party Government. Mr Mandela, Mr Mbeki and several others allegedly were also Freemasons.

The author noted how history was repeated: The peace negotiations between Britain and Afrikaner leaders at Vereeniging after the Boer War also accommodated Freemasons on both sides of the negotiation table, as was the case at the peace negotiations at Codesa. South Africa is one of the few African countries that has never had a coup d'état.

The first multiparty Transitional Executive Council (TEC) responsible to manage South Africa's transition to democracy was legislated in September 1993. Two months later, the interim Constitution was approved. On February 2, 1994 President F.W. de Klerk announced the first elections to be held on April 27, 1994.

Developed by the 1994 Parliament in terms of the interim Constitution (Act 200 of 1993) and promulgated by President Nelson Mandela on December 18, 1996. The Constitution came into effect on February 4, 1996.

Nelson Mandela was elected the first Black South African President by the National Assembly on May 9, 1994 and inaugurated as Head of State the next day. According to the Interim Constitution, a Government of National Unity (GNU) was formed. The representation in cabinet for the IFP, NP and ANC were determined in proportion to the number of seats each political party won in the elections. Cyril Ramaphosa, the ANC Secretary-General was elected to head the Constitutional Assembly. F. W. de Klerk and Thabo Mbeki were appointed Deputy Presidents. The IFP leader, Chief Mangosuthu Buthelezi, was appointed Minister of Home Affairs. South Africa resumed its seat in the General Assembly of United Nation (UN) and was admitted into Organisation of African Unity (OAU).

The adoption of the South African Constitution on May 8, 1996 celebrated the beginning of a new democratic South Africa.

South African is a parliamentary republic, a constitutional democracy with a three-tier government with an independent judiciary. The South African President is both head of state as well as head of the government. The Constitution hold supreme authority over the executive, legislature, and judiciary. Elections are held every five years to elect National and Provincial and Local governing structures. The national, provincial, and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority, defined in the Constitution as "***distinctive, interdependent and interrelated***".

It the authors observation that a renewed Afrikaner Nationalism is growing amongst Afrikaans speaking people. This observation must be evaluated against the fact that Afrikaner traditions, language and culture were protected in the pre-1994 government. Historical dates for example April 6 commemorating the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape, October 10, the birthday of President Paul Kruger and December 16 honoured God's intervention in the Bloedrivier (Blood river) Battle between Boer Afrikaners and the Zulus.

These and other important dates in the Christian calendar were set aside and declared national holidays. Government preserved the Afrikaner culture and tradition. In itself, it is not essentially wrong for any government to protect and enhance culture and tradition.

In fact, it is the authors opinion that governments in general have the responsibility to protect and build the cultures of the people. The essence of the matter is not *if* a government should be involved in cultural and traditional matters, it is the transparency, discrimination or inequality in governments actions that is of importance.

No other cultural group, black or white enjoyed the honour of public holidays to commemorate their history and culture or sacred dates. The Greek, Portuguese, Jewish, etc. and all the black nations had to organise their festivities, religious days and almost sacred historical dates on own initiative. The South African heterogenic society with multitudes of languages and cultures complicates the

governments involvement in the enhancement and protection of cultures and languages.

The twelve official public holidays, of which 50% commemorates political-historical dates, reflects the high value the government and the South African society place on historical events leading to the first democratic election and the fall of white minority rule. Where the previous government accommodated dates important for the history and culture of the white Afrikaans minority, the new government shifted the focus.

It can also be argued that all South Africans should commemorate the struggle and history to end the unfair, unjust, unbiblical white majority rule. This argument implies that all South Africans can equally relate to the 6 political-historical public holidays and the events it celebrates.

This is very distant from the truth. White South Africans, although once optimistic with regards to the promises of a non-racial democratic South Africa are evaluating the past 25 years of ANC rule and the following results cannot be ignored:

- Downscaling of international credit rating
- Poor literacy regardless the successful completion of school career due to the lowered pass rate to 30% and the intimidating reaction to difficult tertiary exams and a demand to pass examinations.
- “Fees must fall” violence on campuses.
- Crime index. Violent Crime and everyday Crime. The economic value of private security industry
- Violent drug related crimes
- Farm murders
- Discrimination in legislation
- State looting and corruption and the culture of bribery
- Quotas in sport and culture
- Illiteracy in the workplace

- Incompetency in all government departments
- Re-newed Black consciousness and the establishment of organisations such as the BFLF³⁹⁶
- Discrimination against Afrikaans as the language of the oppressor.
- Dignity of Parliament defiled.
- State capture
- White culture is put equal to racism
- Afrikaans is equal to racism
- Colonialism
- Entitlement

5. THE CURRENT SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION: THE SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA, 1966. Act NO. 108 OF 1996

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa was adopted on May 8, 1996 and amended on October 11, 1996 by the Constitutional Assembly. President Nelson Mandela signed the Constitution on December 10, 1996 in Sharpeville. It was promulgated on December 18, 1996 and came into effect on February 4, 1997. The adoption of the Constitution implied that everything, by law or by conduct, inconsistent with the Constitution invalid and unlawful. The Constitution encompasses fourteen chapters and seven schedules addressing specific topics.

The pre-amble supposedly states the foundational truth, or perhaps it defines a hope not yet achieved. A forecast of a possible future reality.

The pre-amble of the constitution of South Africa and The South African Constitution, acknowledged as the one of the world’s most progressive constitutions and honoured for the emphasis on human rights, lay the foundation

³⁹⁶ BFLF – Black First Land First

for liberal legislations with spiritual implications. It is therefore imperative to evaluate the spiritual impact of the constitution.

“Constitution encompasses everything, by law or by conduct, inconsistent with the Constitution invalid and unlawful”

5.1 The Content of the Constitution of South Africa

With reference to the Constitution, President Ramaphosa commented as follows on December 7, 2018:³⁹⁷

We recognise that whether it is, access to land or the provision of basic services, we have to give expression to the rights of our people as entrenched in our Bill of Rights.

For a Constitution to be relevant, it has to live and breathe.

It is neither static nor sacrosanct.

It can, and indeed it must be, responsive to the circumstances and conditions of the day – while remaining true to the principles and values that underpin it.

On 2 February 1990 F. W. de Klerk stood before parliament to make the traditional opening speech and did something no other South African head of state had ever done: he truly began to dismantle the apartheid system and lay the groundwork for a democratic South African. In dramatic fashion, he announced the lifting of the bans on the ANC, the PAC, the South African Communist Party and thirty-one other illegal organisations, the freeing of political prisoners incarcerated for non-violent activities, the suspension of capital punishment, and the lifting of various restrictions imposed by the State of Emergency. “The time for negotiation has arrived he,” he said.³⁹⁸

Political parties were given a specified time to register, and only 19 political parties registered. The 1994 elections marked the end of Apartheid in South Africa. The country-wide elections were held on 27 April 1994 and were observed by a 60-member Commonwealth Observer Group (COG) under the leadership of a former Prime Minister of Jamaica, Michael Manley.³⁹⁹

³⁹⁷ CASAC Council for the advancement of the South African Constitution. Available at: <http://www.casac.org.za/>

³⁹⁸ Mandela, Nelson (1994) *Long Walk to Freedom. The Autobiography of Nelson Mandela*. Randburg, South Africa. Macdonald Purnell (Pty) Ltd. P. 546

³⁹⁹ The South African General Elections. Available at: <http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/south-african-general-elections-1994>

The constitution contains 14 chapters with 243 articles and 7 schedules addressing specific topics:

Proclamation: The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 <i>One Law for One Nation</i>		
Preamble		
Chapter 1	Founding Provision	Article 1-6
Chapter 2	The Bill of Rights.	Article 7 to 39
Chapter 3	Co-operative Government.	Article 40 – 41
Chapter 4	Parliament.	Article 42-82
Chapter 5	The President and National Executive	Article 83-102
Chapter 6	Province	Article 103-150
Chapter 7	Local Government	Article 151-164
Chapter 8	Courts and Administration of Justice	Article 165-180
Chapter 9	State Institutions Supporting Constitutional Democracy	Article 181-194
Chapter 10	Public Administration	Article 195-197
Chapter 11	Security Services.	Article 198 - 210
Chapter 12	Traditional Leaders	Article 211 - 212
Chapter 13	Finance	Article 213-230
Chapter 14	General Provisions	Article 231-243
Schedule 1	National Flag	
Schedule 2	Oaths and Solemn Affirmations	
Schedule 3	Election Procedures	
Schedule 4	Functional Areas of Concurrent National and Provincial Legislative Competence.	
Schedule 5	Functional Areas of Exclusive Provincial Legislative Competence	

Schedule 6	Transitional Arrangements. Including Annexures A-E
Schedule 7	Laws Repealed
Index	

5.2 Constitution’s Proclamation: One Law for One Nation

**The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. Act 108 of 1996
One law for one nation**

Comment: The Constitution proclaims South Africa’s population as “one nation”. This proclamation is echoed by President Cyril Ramaphosa with reference to the Constitution:⁴⁰⁰

The values it espouses – of equality, freedom and dignity – bind us together as the universal fellowship of humanity. They commit us to building a world free of oppression and discrimination. The Declaration is an implicit rejection of movements, ideologies and doctrines that seek to divide us.

It is a rejection of racism, sexism, homophobia, xenophobia and all other forms of bigotry and prejudice.

Yet the diversity in tribes, nations, cultures, languages and especially religions, and the constant strife, and racism are contradictory to this statement. It is often noted that Mr Nelson Mandela, as well as his compatriots (“comrades”) who were either imprisoned with him or who returned from exile after 1992, no longer enjoy the admiration and respect as heroes and positive nation builders. Instead they are criticized for not being liberal enough.

⁴⁰⁰ The Council for the Advancement of the South African Constitution. Available at: <http://www.casac.org.za/>

5.3 Constitution’s Preamble

**The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
Constitution’s Preamble**

We, the people of South Africa,
Recognise the injustices of our past;
Honour those who suffered for justice and freedom in our land;
Respect those who have worked to build and develop our country; and
Believe that South Africa belongs to all who live in it, united in our diversity.
We therefore, through our freely elected representatives, adopt this Constitution as the supreme law of the Republic so as to –

- Heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- Lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law;
- Improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person; and
- Build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

May God protect our people;
Nkosi Sikelel’ iAfrica. Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso. (Sotho: Lord save our people)
God seën Suid Afrika. God bless South Africa.
Mudzimu thatuthedza Afurika. Hosi katekisa Afrika. (Shona: The Spirit that fills Africa)

Comment: Three aspects of importance for this research:

- The acknowledgement of the diversity of the South African population.

- The acknowledgement of fundamental human rights.
- The acknowledgement of a generic God. God is not defined or identified.

5.4 Chapter One: Constitutions Founding Principles

Article 1	Republic of South Africa
<p>1. The Republic of South Africa is one, sovereign, democratic state founded on the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) Human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedoms.(b) Non-racialism and non-sexism.(c) Supremacy of the constitution and the rule of law.(d) Universal adult suffrage, a national common voters roll, regular elections and a multi-party system of democratic government, to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.	

Article 2	Supremacy of Constitution
<p>2. This Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic; law or conduct inconsistent with it is invalid, and the obligations imposed by it must be fulfilled.</p>	

Article 3	Supremacy of Constitution
<p>3. (1) There is a common South African citizenship. (2) All citizens are—</p>	

- (a) equally entitled to the rights, privileges and benefits of citizenship;
and
 - (b) equally subject to the duties and responsibilities of citizenship.
- (3) National legislation must provide for the acquisition, loss and restoration of citizenship.

Chapter One: Founding Provisions

Republic of South Africa

1. The Republic of South Africa is one, sovereign, democratic state founded on the following values:
- (a) Human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedoms.
 - (b) Non-racialism and non-sexism.
 - (c) Supremacy of the constitution and the rule of law.
 - (d) Universal adult suffrage, a national common voters roll, regular elections and a multi-party system of democratic government, to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Supremacy of Constitution

2. This Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic; law or conduct inconsistent with it is invalid, and the obligations imposed by it must be fulfilled.

Citizenship

3. (1) There is a common South African citizenship.
- (2) All citizens are—
- (a) equally entitled to the rights, privileges and benefits of citizenship;
and

(b) equally subject to the duties and responsibilities of citizenship.

(3) National legislation must provide for the acquisition, loss and restoration of citizenship.

National anthem

4. The national anthem of the Republic is determined by the President by proclamation.

National flag

5. The national flag of the Republic is black, gold, green, white, red and blue, as described and sketched in Schedule 1.

Languages

6. (1) The official languages of the Republic are Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda, Xitsonga, Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa and isiZulu.

(2) Recognising the historically diminished use and status of the indigenous languages of our people, the state must take practical and positive measures to elevate the status and advance the use of these languages.

(3) (a) The national government and provincial governments may use any particular official languages for the purposes of government, taking into account usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the population as a whole or in the province concerned; but the national government and each provincial government must use at least two official languages.

(b) Municipalities must take into account the language usage and preferences of their residents.

(4) The national government and provincial governments, by legislative and other measures, must regulate and monitor their use of official languages.

Without detracting from the provisions of subsection (2), all official languages must enjoy parity of esteem and must be treated equitably.

(5) A Pan South African Language Board established by national legislation must—

(a) promote, and create conditions for, the development and use of—

- (i) all official languages;
- (ii) the Khoi, Nama and San languages; and
- (iii) sign language; and

(b) promote and ensure respect for—

- (i) all languages commonly used by communities in South Africa, including German, Greek, Gujarati, Hindi, Portuguese, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu; and
- (ii) Arabic, Hebrew, Sanskrit and other languages used for religious purposes in South Africa.

5.5 National Symbols Since 1994

In discussing the manifestation of spirituality in South Africa, the national symbols are of great significance. The National Anthem, Coat of Arms and National flag are intended to unite the diverse people of South Africa.

All state leaders engage in symbolic nation-building in order to foster a sense of national unity among all segments of the country's population. In new states, however, the flag, anthem, and other emblems are often contested by various ethnic and political groups. Instead of unifying the nation they divide it. There are, however, no inherent qualities in state symbols that prevent them from being accepted, and likewise, no particular design will in and of itself guarantee their success. The divisiveness vs. unifying potential of new state symbols is first and foremost a function of whom they are being associated with and how they are being exploited politically. The good news for nation-builders is that the time factor is on their side. This claim is substantiated through an analysis of conflicts over

national symbols in one new state (Bosnia), one newly reconfigured state (Russia) and one established nation-state (Norway).⁴⁰¹

5.5.1 The Current National Anthem

Article 4	National Anthem
<p>4. The national anthem of the Republic is determined by the President by proclamation.</p>	

This article explores the themes and ideologies associated with African national anthems. Anthems often reflect the Janus face of nationalism, that is, a looking to the future as well as the past, and they proclaim a number of dominant themes which fit into this dichotomy. Such themes include calls to awake, arise or work for the future progress of the nation, and praise for the already established, beloved land, its particularities, traditions and culture and thanks to God for having blessed the nation. As products of the late colonial period and the early days of independence the main themes in these anthems demonstrate strong links to anthems of the former colonial powers. In addressing and hailing the ‘people’, and being sung by ‘us’, the anthems culturally interpellated the subjects as members of the nation. However, most anthems are strongly gendered constructions clearly focussed on men, sons and brothers with only a few briefly acknowledging women as being part of the nation.⁴⁰²

	Translation
<p><i>Nkosi sikelel' iAfrika Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo, (isiXhosa) Yizwa imithandazo yethu, Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo. (Zulu)</i></p>	<p>Lord bless Africa May her glory be lifted high Hear our petitions Lord bless us, your children</p>
<p><i>Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso, O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,</i></p>	<p>Lord we ask You to protect our nation Intervene and end all conflicts</p>

⁴⁰¹ Kolst, Pal (August 16, 2006) National symbols as signs of unity and division. Available at: <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/01419870600665409?src=recsys>

⁴⁰² Kusack, Igor (August 17, 2006) African National Anthems: ‘Beat the drums, the red Lion has roared’. Available at: <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/13696850500448337?scroll=top&needAccess=true>

<p><i>O se boloke, O se boloke setjhaba sa heso, Setjhaba sa South Afrika - South Afrika. (Sesotho)</i></p>	<p>Protect us, protect our nation Protect South Africa, South Africa</p>
<p><i>Uit die blou van onse hemel, Uit die diepte van ons see, Oor ons ewige gebergtes, Waar die kranse antwoord gee, (Afrikaans)</i></p>	<p>Out of the blue heavens Out of the depths of our seas Over our everlasting mountain Where the echoing crags resound</p>
<p><i>Sounds the call to come together, And united we shall stand, Let us live and strive for freedom, In South Africa our land</i></p>	

In terms of the provisions of Section 248 (1) together with Section 2 of the Constitution 1993 (Act 200 of 1993) President Nelson Mandela proclaimed on April 20, 1994 that South Africa will have two national anthems, Nkosi Sikelel’ and the Call of South Africa. The two anthems were combined into a shortened version in 1996.

It is the only neo-modal national anthem in the world, by virtue of being the only one that starts in one key and finishes in another. The lyrics employ the five most populous of South Africa’s eleven official languages – isiXhosa, isiZulu, seSotho, Afrikaans and English.⁴⁰³

Nkosi Sikelel’ is a good example of the amalgamation of spirituality and patriotism, which is often found in anthems. Composed by a Methodist schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga in 1897, the original song was sung as a church hymn. It is generally accepted as a Christian hymn. The lyrics of the first stanza of the song were in Xhosa, sang as a hymn. Later on, the poet Samuel Mqhayi, added seven more verses to it, and in 1942, Moses Mphahlele published a Sesotho version of the same song. It became the anthem of political defiance against apartheid. The song was sung in anti-colonial movements throughout

⁴⁰³ National Anthem. South Africa – New York. Available at: <http://www.southafrica-newyork.net/consulate/anthem.html>

southern African countries to the extent that it was best known as the anthem of the African National Congress during the anti-Apartheid Movement of the 1970’s and 1980’s.

The author could not find any evidence to support allegations of a concealed adoration to Nkosi, eldest Son of Mina Mamo Wê, (the woman who climbed from a tree), and the first ancestor to Africans. This would imply ancestral worship, idolatry, forbidden by God.⁴⁰⁴

5.5.2 The South African Flag

Article 5	National Flag
5. The national flag of the Republic is black, gold, green, white, red and blue, as described and sketched in Schedule 1.	

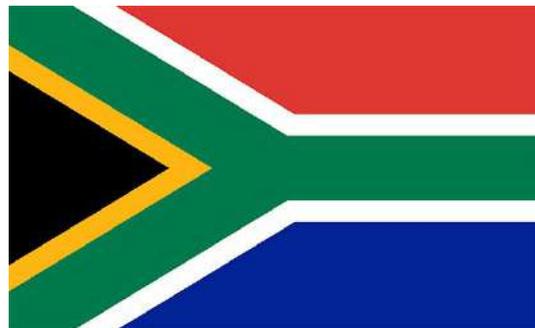


Figure 39: The South African Flag

“The yellow, black and green colours are found in the banners of the African National Congress, the Pan Africanist Congress and the Inkatha Freedom Party and are thus said to represent the country’s black population. The other three – red, white and blue – are displayed on the Dutch tricolour and the British Union flag and are said represent the country’s white population. The green pall (the Y-shape) is commonly interpreted to mean the unification

⁴⁰⁴ KJloko, Evelyn. BRIEFLY. Nkosi meaning: Exposing the true meaning of the word and whether it is linked to idolatry. Available at: <https://briefly.co.za/28763-nkosi-meaning-exposing-true-meaning-word-linked-idolatry.html>

of the various ethnic groups and the moving forward into a new united South Africa.’⁴⁰⁵

The following interpretation is also valid: Red symbolises bloodshed and sacrifices made in South Africa’s struggle for independence. White represent the Europeans as well as peace and harmony between the indigenous people and Europeans. Green symbolises fertility of the South African land. Yellow represent the mineral and natural wealth. Black represent the black population. Blue symbolises the blue skies and the boundless opportunities for South Africans. The Y represents the convergence of the diverse South African societies combining in unity.

Ironically, the indigenous people (Khoisan) are only symbolically recognised in the National flag and Coat of Arms, but not in terms of their race classification or their language.

5.5.3 Public Holidays

Currently South Africa accommodates 12 Public Holiday. (Public Holidays Act (Act No. 36 of 1994)⁴⁰⁶

The focus of these days are as follows:

- *Political Historical value 6 of the 12 days*

21 March	Human Rights Day	Commemorating the Sharpeville massacre
27 April	Freedom Day	Commemorates the first democratic election in 1994
16 June	Youth Day	Commemorates Soweto uprising in 1976

⁴⁰⁵ South African Flag. Available at <https://newsgk.com/SouthAfrica/Flag.php>

⁴⁰⁶ South African Public Holidays. Available at: <https://www.gov.za/about-sa/public-holidays>

9 August	Women’s Day	Commemorates the 1995 women march to the Union Buildings
16 December	Reconciliation day	Focus on Unity of Apartheid

Table 14: Political Historical Public Holidays

The previous constitution accommodated holidays restricted to the history of the Afrikaners. It excluded days of cultural importance of all other nationalities such as the Italian, Portuguese, German and of course the black nations.

- *Religious days: 2 Christian Holidays, the only religion recognised in this manner.*

Good Friday		Commemorates the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ
25 December	Christmas Day	Celebrates the birth of Jesus Christ

Table 15: Christian Public Holidays

- *4 Additional days*

1 January		New Year’s Day
28 March		Family Day
24 September		Heritage Day celebrating the diverse cultures
26 December		Good Will Day

Table 16: Additional Public Holidays

5.5.4 Additional: National Symbol Not in Constitution: The South African Coat of Arms

The National flag and National Anthem are included in the Constitution. The National Coat of Arms is NOT included in the constitution. The author is of the opinion that the Coat of Arms is inherent part of South Africa’s National

Symbolism and therefore found it appropriate to present a discussion of the Coat of Arms.

The coat of arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, designed by Iaan Bekker, was accepted on Freedom Day, the 27th of April 2000, replacing the old arms which had been used since 1910. This new coat of arms represents the change in South Africa to a democracy inclusive of all the citizens irrespective of skin colour.



Figure 40: South African Coat of Arms⁴⁰⁷

Coat of Arms Symbology: The Coat of Arms reflects several elements organized into two ovals, one on top of the other. Together the two ovals create the symbol of infinity.

Motto: At the base of the Coat of Arms the motto is written in the Khoisan language of the San people, meaning “Unity in diversity” or “Diverse people Unite”

⁴⁰⁷ South African Coat of Arms. Available at: <https://www.tripsavvy.com/symbolism-of-south-africa-coat-of-arms-1454387>

Symbols on the Lower or Foundation Oval:

- Elephant tusks on either side of the motto symbolises wisdom, strength, moderation and eternity, all of which are attributes associated with the mighty African elephant.
- Two ears of wheat symbolise fertility and represent the growth and development of the country's potential and nourishment of its people.
- The gold shield at the centre symbolize spiritual defence and national unity, a collective sense of belonging born from a national identity.
- Two Khoisan figures greeting one another on the shield symbolise the countries rich heritage and unity.
- The crossed spear and knobkierie (a traditional fighting stick) separate the lower oval from the upper oval. They represent defence and authority but are depicted lying down to symbolize peace and the end of conflict within South Africa.

The Upper of Ascendant Oval:

- King Protea at the centre of the upper oval is the South African National Flower, representing South African natural beauty and the flowering of the country's potential.
- The interlocking diamonds in the Protea mimic the patterns found on traditional crafts celebrating South Africa's creativity.
- The secretary bird head and wings stretch out to the skies. Known for its ability to hunt snakes the bird symbolises protection.

Known for eating snakes and for its grace in flight, the secretary bird on the Coat of Arms acts as a messenger of the heavens while simultaneously protecting the nation from its enemies.

It has god-like connotations, from its bright gold color to the upward spread of its wings, which symbolize protection and ascendance in equal measure.⁴⁰⁸

⁴⁰⁸ South African Coat of Arms. Available at: <https://www.tripsavvy.com/symbolism-of-south-africa-coat-of-arms-1454387>

The rising sun between the bird’s wings represent rebirth, life, knowledge and the dawn of a new era. The two ovals:

When considered as two parts of a whole, the secretary bird of the upper oval seems to be hatching from the shield of the lower oval. In this way, the Coat of Arms achieves its purpose of commemorating the birth of a brand-new nation.⁴⁰⁹

5.5.5 Alternative Interpretation of the South African Coat of Arms



Figure 41: Suggested Illuminati influence and symbology captured.⁴¹⁰

⁴⁰⁹ South African Coat of Arms. Available at: <https://www.tripsavvy.com/symbolism-of-south-africa-coat-of-arms-1454387>

⁴¹⁰ Illuminati in South Africa: Illuminati and Masonic Symbols in the South African Coat of Arms. (July 9, 2015) Available at: <http://christendtimeministries.com/illuminati-south-africa-illuminati-masonic-symbols-south-african-coat-arms/>

Article 6	Languages
<p>6. (1) The official languages of the Republic are Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda, Xitsonga, Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa and isiZulu.</p> <p>(2) Recognising the historically diminished use and status of the indigenous languages of our people, the state must take practical and positive measures to elevate the status and advance the use of these languages.</p> <p>(3) (a) The national government and provincial governments may use any particular official languages for the purposes of government, taking into account usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the population as a whole or in the province concerned; but the national government and each provincial government must use at least two official languages.</p> <p>(b) Municipalities must take into account the language usage and preferences of their residents.</p> <p>(4) The national government and provincial governments, by legislative and other measures, must regulate and monitor their use of official languages. Without detracting from the provisions of subsection (2), all official languages must enjoy parity of esteem and must be treated equitably.</p> <p>(5) A Pan South African Language Board established by national legislation must—</p> <p>(a) promote, and create conditions for, the development and use of—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(i) all official languages;(ii) the Khoi, Nama and San languages; and(iii) sign language; and <p>(b) promote and ensure respect for—</p>	

- (i) all languages commonly used by communities in South Africa, including German, Greek, Gujarati, Hindi, Portuguese, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu; and
- (ii) Arabic, Hebrew, Sanskrit and other languages used for religious purposes in South Africa.

5.6. Chapter Two of The Constitution: Bill of Rights

5.6.1 The Bill of Rights Goal

The notion of a bill of rights for South Africa can be traced back to an ANC document in the early 1920s. The Freedom Charter of 1955 carried the idea forward.⁴¹¹

The Bill of Rights sets out the fundamental rights of all South Africans:⁴¹²

- 1) the inalienable right to life,
- 2) equality,
- 3) human dignity and
- 4) privacy.

The Bill of Rights also states when rights may be limited.⁴¹³

The Constitution expects the South African Government to protect and promote the rights of every individual. It stipulates particularly under the bill of rights that:⁴¹⁴

1. Everyone is equal before the law and has the rights to equal protection and benefit of the law.

⁴¹¹ The Bill of Rights. Available at: <https://www.concourt.org.za/index.php/constitution/your-rights/the-bill-of-rights>

⁴¹² The Constitution of South Africa. Available at: <https://www.constitutionhill.org.za/pages/the-constitution-of-south-africa>

⁴¹³ Bill of Rights (Chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa). Available at: <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/legislation/bill-rights-chapter-2-constitution-republic-south-africa#7>

⁴¹⁴ Bill of Rights Chapter 2. Available at: <https://www.justice.gov.za/legislation/constitution/chp02.html>

2. Equality includes the full and equal enjoyment of all rights and freedoms. To promote the achievement of equality, legislative and other measures designed to protect or advance persons, or categories of persons, disadvantaged by unfair discrimination may be taken.
3. The state may not unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds, including race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth.
4. No person may unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds in terms of subsection (3) National legislation must be enacted to prevent or prohibit unfair discrimination.

Human rights are broadly divided into two categories:

- Civil and political rights
- Economic, social and cultural rights

First generation rights include civil and political rights such as basic rights to life, dignity, equality and privacy, fundamental freedoms such as freedom of expression, association, assembly, opinion, belief, religion and movement.

Second generation human rights accommodate social and economic features of life. Such as rights to access to food, water, housing, healthcare, social security, special rights of children and the right to education.

Third generation rights refer to the environment, development, culture and language.

Chapter Two of the Constitution contains the Bill of Rights states:

“This Bill of Rights is a cornerstone of democracy in South Africa”

This human rights charter protects fundamental human rights - political, socio-economic and civil rights of South Africans. Adherence to the Bill is compulsory to all legislation, including common law, and is binding on all branches of

government, including the national executive, Parliament, the judiciary, provincial governments and municipal councils. The unfair discrimination clause is also applicable to private persons. The Bill of Rights power is thus binding both vertically, from government downwards, as well as horizontally, between citizens and private bodies. It provides – not only the foundation for the constitution, but also the foundation for all activities of government and individual people.

The Bill of Rights impacted South African society tremendously. The liberty it provides to exercises any form of religion or spirituality is of importance for this research. The influence of the Bill of Rights on the South African society is much more far reaching than any other legislation.

5.6.2 Summary of the Content of the Bill of Rights

Article No	Key Fact
Article 7	Human Rights
Article 8	To whom the act applies to
Article 9	Right to Equality
Article 10	Right to Human Dignity
Article 11	Right to Life
Article 12	Freedom and Security of the person
Article 13	Slavery, Servitude and Forced labour
Article 14	Right to Privacy
Article 15	Freedom of Religion, Believe and Opinion
Article 16	Freedom of Speech and Expression
Article 17	Assembly, Demonstration, Picket, and Petition
Article 18	Freedom of Association
Article 19	Political Rights
Article 20	Citizenship

Article 21	Freedom of Movement and Residence
Article 22	Freedom of Trade, Occupation and Profession
Article 23	Labour Relations
Article 24	Environment
Article 25	Property
Article 26	Right of Access to Housing
Article 27	Right of Access to Health care, Food, Water, and Social Security
Article 28	Children’s Rights
Article 29	Education
Article 30	Language and Culture
Article 31	Cultural, Religious, and Linguistic Communities
Article 32	Access to Information
Article 33	Just Administrative Action
Article 34	Access to Courts
Article 35	Arrested, Detained, and Accused Persons
Article 36	Limitations on Rights
Article 37	State of Emergency
Article 38	Enforcing Rights
Article 39	Interpreting the Bill of Rights

Table 17: Summary of Bill of Rights

The Word of God does not oppose human rights. To the contrary, man was made in the image of God and is therefore inherent dignified and crowned to rule over God’s creation. God is also very clear in His commandment to love your fellow man like thyself, forgiveness and the defence of the rights of the poor and needy. Human rights become problematic when human rights ignore and override Godly principles. Recent media reports conveyed notions referring the Bible as the single most offensive document in the context of contemporary human rights,

especially with reference to LGBTQ (Lesbian, gay, bisexual, queer and intersex) rights.

Article 7	Rights
<p>(1) <i>This Bill of Rights is a cornerstone of democracy in South Africa. It enshrines the rights of all people in our country and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality, and freedom.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>The state must respect, protect, promote, and fulfil the rights in the Bill of Rights.</i></p> <p>(3) <i>The rights in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained or referred to in section 36, or elsewhere in the Bill.</i></p>	
<p>Summary: The cornerstone of the South African democracy affirming democratic values of human dignity, equality, and freedom.</p>	

Article 8	Application
<p>(1) <i>The Bill of Rights applies to all law, and binds the legislature, the executive, the judiciary and all organs of state.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>A provision of the Bill of Rights binds a natural or a juristic person if, and to the extent that, it is applicable, taking into account the nature of the right and the nature of any duty imposed by the right.</i></p> <p>(3) <i>When applying a provision of the Bill of Rights to a natural or juristic person in terms of subsection (2), a court –</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) <i>in order to give effect to a right in the Bill, must apply, or if necessary, develop, the common law to the extent that legislation does not give effect to that right; and</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(b) <i>may develop rules of the common law to limit the right, provided that the limitation is in accordance with section 36(1).</i></p> <p>(4) <i>A juristic person is entitled to the rights in the Bill of Rights to the extent required by the nature of the rights and the nature of that juristic person.</i></p>	

Article 9	Equality
<p>(1) Everyone is equal before the law and has the right to equal protection and benefit of the law.</p> <p>(2) Equality includes the full and equal enjoyment of all rights and freedoms. To promote the achievement of equality, legislative and other measures designed to protect or advance persons, or categories of persons, disadvantaged by unfair discrimination may be taken.</p> <p>(3) The state may not unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds, including race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth.</p> <p>(4) No person may unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds in terms of subsection (3). National legislation must be enacted to prevent or prohibit unfair discrimination.</p> <p>(5) Discrimination on one or more of the grounds listed in subsection (3) is unfair unless it is established that the discrimination is fair.</p>	
<p>The state may not unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds, including race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth.</p> <p>Affirmative action and fair discrimination are allowed and not recognised as “unfair</p>	

Application of this section brought about several changes to legislation:⁴¹⁵

a) Banning of prohibition of same sex relationships

Common law used to prohibit sodomy between two consenting adult men. This was found to be discriminative for it violated their rights, dignity and privacy. It was therefore unconstitutional.

South Africa's Constitution is the first in the world to prohibit unfair discrimination

⁴¹⁵ SAHO South African History Online. Why protect rights of gays and lesbians. Available at: <http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/why-protect-rights-gays-and-lesbians>

on the grounds of sexual orientation. It thereby guarantees equality for gay and lesbian people.

b) Same sex relationships recognition

The Aliens Control Act of 1991 was found to be unconstitutional in its discrimination not to acknowledge the benefits extended to “spouses” in same sex relationships.

Section 25(5) discriminated unfairly on the grounds of sexual orientation and marital status, and seriously limited rights to equality and dignity in a way that was not reasonable and justifiable.

The Court held Section 25(5) to be unconstitutional and decided that to read words into the statute would be better than to strike down the problematic section. The words "or partner in a permanent same-sex life partnership" needed to be added

c) Adoption of children by same sex partners and recognitions as parents

The Child Care Act confined joint adoption to married couples, custody and guardianship rights could be granted to one partner only.

The Constitutional Court found that the statutory provisions discriminated on the grounds of sexual orientation and marital status, and that the dignity of the first applicant had been infringed. The Court held that the legislation also infringed the principle that a child's best interests were paramount. It confirmed the order of constitutional invalidity.

d) Employer benefits to partners of same sex relationships

Satchwell vs the president of the Republic of South Africa

A High Court order had declared sections 8 and 9 of the Judges' Remuneration and Conditions of Services Act unconstitutional to the extent that they afforded benefits to the spouses of judges but not to their same-sex life partners.

The Constitutional Court found that the provisions unfairly and unjustifiably discriminated on the basis of sexual orientation. It ordered that sections 8 and 9 be read as according benefits not only to spouses of judges but also to permanent

same-sex life partners of judges where reciprocal duties of support had been undertaken,

- e) Recognition of parent status to un-biological parent to children in same sex relationships

J and B vs the Director-General of Home Affairs and Others (Case CCT 46/02)

This case concerned provisions of the Children's Status Act of 1987, which defined the status of children conceived by artificial insemination

The two applicants had been involved in a permanent same-sex partnership since 1995. In August 2001, the second applicant gave birth to twins conceived with sperm from an anonymous donor.

Both applicants wanted to be registered as the parents of the twins, but only the second applicant, as the "birth-mother", succeeded.

The Court ordered that the section be read to provide the same status to children born from artificial insemination to same-sex permanent life partners.

Article 10	Human Dignity
<i>Everyone has inherent dignity and the right to have their dignity respected and protected.</i>	

The author finds the involuntary subjection to initiation schools and involuntary an extreme violation of dignity and contrary to the spirit of the Constitution.

Article 11	Life
<i>Everyone has the right to life.</i>	

The author is of the opinion that the legalisation of abortions is a contradiction of this article. The incompetence of government to address the violent crime, murder and especially farm murders is an additional violation of the constitution.

Article 12	Freedom and Security of the Person
<p><i>(1) Everyone has the right to freedom and security of the person, which includes the right -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>(a) not to be deprived of freedom arbitrarily or without just cause;</i><i>(b) not to be detained without trial;</i><i>(c) to be free from all forms of violence from either public or private sources;</i><i>(d) not to be tortured in any way; and</i><i>(e) not to be treated or punished in a cruel, inhuman or degrading way.</i> <p><i>(2) Everyone has the right to bodily and psychological integrity, which includes the right -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>(a) to make decisions concerning reproduction;</i><i>(b) to security in and control over their body; and</i><i>(c) not to be subjected to medical or scientific experiments without their informed consent.</i>	

Article 13	Slavery, servitude and forced labour
<p><i>No one may be subjected to slavery, servitude or forced labour.</i></p>	

Article 14	Privacy
<p><i>Everyone has the right to privacy, which includes the right not to have -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>(a) their person or home searched;</i><i>(b) their property searched;</i><i>(c) their possessions seized; or</i><i>(d) the privacy of their communications infringed.</i>	

Article 15	Freedom of Religion, Belief and Opinion
<p>(1) <i>Everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>Religious observances may be conducted at state or state aided institutions, provided that -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) <i>those observances follow rules made by the appropriate public authorities;</i>(b) <i>they are conducted on an equitable basis; and</i>(c) <i>attendance at them is free and voluntary.</i> <p>(3) (a) <i>This section does not prevent legislation recognising -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(i) <i>marriages concluded under any tradition, or a system of religious, personal or family law; or</i>(ii) <i>systems of personal and family law under any tradition or adhered to by persons professing a particular religion.</i> <p>(b) <i>Recognition in terms of paragraph (a) must be consistent with this section and the other provisions of the Constitution.</i></p>	

Everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion. Religious observances may be conducted at state or state-aided institutions, provided that those observances follow rules made by the appropriate public authorities; they are conducted on an equitable basis; and attendance at them is free and voluntary.

This section does not prevent legislation recognising marriages concluded under any tradition, or a system of religious, personal, or family law; or systems of personal and family law under any tradition or adhered to by persons professing a particular religion.

Article 16	Freedom of Expression
<p>(1) <i>Everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) <i>freedom of the press and other media;</i>(b) <i>freedom to receive or impart information or ideas;</i>(c) <i>freedom of artistic creativity; and</i>	

<p><i>(d) academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.</i></p> <p><i>(2) The right in subsection (1) does not extend to</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>(a) propaganda for war;</i><i>(b) incitement of imminent violence; or</i><i>(c) advocacy of hatred that is based on race, ethnicity, gender or religion, and that constitutes incitement to cause harm.</i>
<p>Everyone (including the media) has the right to freedom of expression</p>

Article 17	Assembly, demonstration, picket, and petition
<p><i>Everyone has the right, peacefully and unarmed, to assemble, to demonstrate, to picket and to present petitions.</i></p>	

Article 18	Freedom of Association
<p><i>Everyone has the right to freedom of association.</i></p>	

Freedom of association by implication implies freedom of disassociation. The application of this freedom could be perceived to be discriminative and prejudice.

Article 19	Political Rights
<p><i>(1) Every citizen is free to make political choices, which includes the right</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a) To form a political party</i><i>b) To participate in the activities of, or recruit members for a political party, and</i><i>c) To campaign for a political party or cause</i> <p><i>(2) Every citizen has the right to free, fair and regular elections for any legislative body established in terms of the Constitution.</i></p> <p><i>(3) Every adult citizen has the right</i></p>	

- a) *to vote in elections for any legislative body established in terms of the Constitution, and to do so in secret, and*
b) *to stand for public office and, if elected, to hold office.*

Article 20	Citizenship
<i>No citizen may be deprived of citizenship.</i>	

Article 21	Freedom of Movement and Residence
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><i>1. Everyone has the right to freedom of movement.</i><i>2. Everyone has the right to leave the Republic.</i><i>3. Every citizen has the right to enter, to remain in and to reside anywhere in, the Republic.</i><i>4. Every citizen has the right to a passport.</i>	

Article 22	Freedom of Trade, Occupation and Profession
<i>Every citizen has the right to choose their trade, occupation or profession freely. The practice of a trade, occupation or profession may be regulated by law.</i>	

Article 23	Labour Relations
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><i>1. Everyone has the right to fair labour practices.</i><i>2. Every worker has the right</i><ol style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. to form and join a trade union;</i><i>b. to participate in the activities and programmes of a trade union; and</i><i>c. to strike.</i><i>3. Every employer has the right</i>	

- a. to form and join an employers' organisation; and*
- b. to participate in the activities and programmes of an employers' organisation.*
- 4. Every trade union and every employers' organisation has the right*
 - a. to determine its own administration, programmes and activities;*
 - b. to organise; and*
 - c. to form and join a federation.*
- 5. Every trade union, employers' organisation and employer has the right to engage in collective bargaining. National legislation may be enacted to regulate collective bargaining. To the extent that the legislation may limit a right in this Chapter, the limitation must comply with section 36(1).*
- 6. National legislation may recognise union security arrangements contained in collective agreements. To the extent that the legislation may limit a right in this Chapter, the limitation must comply with section 36(1).*

Article 24	Environment
<p><i>Everyone has the right</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and</i> <i>b. to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>i. prevent pollution and ecological degradation;</i> <i>ii. promote conservation; and</i> <i>iii. secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.</i> 	

Article 25	Property
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>1. No one may be deprived of property except in terms of law of general application, and no law may permit arbitrary deprivation of property.</i> <i>2. Property may be expropriated only in terms of law of general application</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. for a public purpose or in the public interest; and</i> <i>b. subject to compensation, the amount of which and the time and manner of payment of which have either been agreed to by those affected or decided or approved by a court.</i> <i>3. The amount of the compensation and the time and manner of payment must be just and equitable, reflecting an equitable balance between the public interest and the interests of those affected, having regard to all relevant circumstances, including</i> 	

<p><i>a. the current use of the property;</i> <i>b. the history of the acquisition and use of the property;</i> <i>c. the market value of the property;</i> <i>d. the extent of direct state investment and subsidy in the acquisition and beneficial capital improvement of the property; and</i> <i>e. the purpose of the expropriation.</i></p> <p><i>4. For the purposes of this section</i></p> <p><i>a. the public interest includes the nation's commitment to land reform, and to reforms to bring about equitable access to all South Africa's natural resources; and</i> <i>b. property is not limited to land.</i></p> <p><i>5. The state must take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to foster conditions which enable citizens to gain access to land on an equitable basis.</i></p> <p><i>6. A person or community whose tenure of land is legally insecure as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices is entitled, to the extent provided by an Act of Parliament, either to tenure which is legally secure or to comparable redress.</i></p> <p><i>7. A person or community dispossessed of property after 19 June 1913 as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices is entitled, to the extent provided by an Act of Parliament, either to restitution of that property or to equitable redress.</i></p> <p><i>8. No provision of this section may impede the state from taking legislative and other measures to achieve land, water and related reform, in order to redress the results of past racial discrimination, provided that any departure from the provisions of this section is in accordance with the provisions of section 36(1).</i></p> <p><i>9. Parliament must enact the legislation referred to in subsection (6).</i></p>
<p>No one may be deprived of property except in terms of law of general application, and no law may permit arbitrary deprivation of property. Property may be expropriated only in terms of law of general application for a public purpose or in the public interest; and subject to compensation, the amount of which and the time and manner of payment of which have either been agreed to by those affected or decided or approved by a court.</p>

Article 26	Housing
<p><i>1. Everyone has the right to have access to adequate housing.</i> <i>2. The state must take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to achieve the progressive realisation of this right.</i></p>	

3. No one may be evicted from their home, or have their home demolished, without an order of court made after considering all the relevant circumstances. No legislation may permit arbitrary evictions.

Article 27	Health Care, Food, Water, and Social Security
<p><i>1. Everyone has the right to have access to</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. health care services, including reproductive health care;</i><i>b. sufficient food and water; and</i><i>c. social security, including, if they are unable to support themselves and their dependants, appropriate social assistance.</i> <p><i>2. The state must take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to achieve the progressive realisation of each of these rights.</i></p> <p><i>3. No one may be refused emergency medical treatment.</i></p>	

Article 28	Children
<p><i>a) Every child has the right</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a) To a name and nationality from birth;</i><i>b) To family care and parental care, or to appropriate alternative care when removed from the family environment;</i><i>c) To basic nutrition, shelter, basic health care services and social services,</i><i>d) To be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation</i><i>e) To be protected from exploitive labour practices,</i><i>f) Not to be required or permitted to perform work or provide services that</i> <i>Are inappropriate for a person of that child’s age or</i> <i>Place at risk the child’s well-being, education, physical or mental health or spiritual, moral or social development</i><i>g) Not to be detained except as a measure of last resort, in which case, an addition to the rights a child enjoys under section 12 and 35, the child may be detained only for the shortest appropriate period of time, and has the right to be –</i> <i>Kept separate form detained persons over the age of 18 years,</i> <i>and</i>	

<p><i>Treated in a manner, and kept in conditions that take account of the child’s age</i></p> <p><i>h) To have a legal practitioner assigned to the child by the state and at state expense, in civil proceedings affecting the child if substantial injustice would otherwise result and</i></p> <p><i>i) Not to be used directly in armed conflict, and to be protected in times of armed conflict.</i></p> <p><i>b) A child’s best interest are of paramount importance in every matter concerning the child</i></p> <p><i>c) In this section “child “means a person under the age of 18 years.</i></p>
<p>In this section "child" defines a person under the age of 18 years</p> <p>Every child has the right</p> <p>to a name and a nationality from birth</p> <p>to family care or parental care, or to appropriate alternative care when removed from the family environment</p> <p>to basic nutrition, shelter, basic health care services and social services.</p> <p>to be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation</p> <p>to be protected from exploitative labour practices</p> <p>not to be required or permitted to perform work or provide services that are inappropriate for a person of the child’s age, or place at risk the child’s well-being, education, physical or mental health or spiritual, moral or social development.</p> <p>not to be detained except as a measure of last resort,</p> <p>to have a legal practitioner assigned to the child by the state</p> <p>or to be used directly in armed conflict</p> <p>A child's best interests are of paramount importance in every matter concerning the child.</p>

The author is of opinion that ‘Traditional Initiation Schools’ do not adhere to the protection of children according to this article.

Article 29	Education
<p><i>1. Everyone has the right</i></p> <p><i>a. to a basic education, including adult basic education; and</i></p>	

- b. to further education, which the state, through reasonable measures, must make progressively available and accessible.*
2. *Everyone has the right to receive education in the official language or languages of their choice in public educational institutions where that education is reasonably practicable. In order to ensure the effective access to, and implementation of, this right, the state must consider all reasonable educational alternatives, including single medium institutions, taking into account*
 - a. *equity;*
 - b. *practicability; and*
 - c. *the need to redress the results of past racially discriminatory laws and practices.*
 3. *Everyone has the right to establish and maintain, at their own expense, independent educational institutions that*
 - a. *do not discriminate on the basis of race;*
 - b. *are registered with the state; and*
 - c. *maintain standards that are not inferior to standards at comparable public educational institutions.*
 4. *Subsection (3) does not preclude state subsidies for independent educational institutions.*

Everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education; and
to further education, which the state, through reasonable measures, must make progressively available and accessible.
Everyone has the right to receive education in the official language or languages of their choice in public educational institutions where that education is reasonably practicable.
Everyone has the right to establish and maintain, at their own expense, independent educational institutions

Article 30	Language and Culture
<p><i>Everyone has the right to use the language and to participate in the cultural life of their choice, but no one exercising these rights may do so in a manner inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights.</i></p>	

Article 31	Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities
<p><i>(1) Persons belonging to a cultural, religious or linguistic community may not be denied the right, with other members of that community</i></p> <p><i>(2) The rights in subsection (1) may not be exercised in a manner inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights.</i></p>	
<p>to enjoy their culture, practise their religion and use their language; and</p> <p>Persons belonging to a cultural, religious, or linguistic community may not be denied the right, with other members of that community to form, join and maintain cultural, religious and linguistic associations and other organs of civil society.</p>	

Article 32	Access to Information
<p><i>1. Everyone has the right of access to</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. any information held by the state; and</i><i>b. any information that is held by another person and that is required for the exercise or protection of any rights.</i> <p><i>2. National legislation must be enacted to give effect to this right, and may provide for reasonable measures to alleviate the administrative and financial burden on the state.</i></p>	

Article 33	Just Administrative Action
<p><i>1. Everyone has the right to administrative action that is lawful, reasonable and procedurally fair.</i></p> <p><i>2. Everyone whose rights have been adversely affected by administrative action has the right to be given written reasons.</i></p> <p><i>3. National legislation must be enacted to give effect to these rights, and must</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. provide for the review of administrative action by a court or, where appropriate, an independent and impartial tribunal;</i><i>b. impose a duty on the state to give effect to the rights in subsections (1) and (2); and</i>	

c. promote an efficient administration.

Article 34	Access to Courts
<p><i>Everyone has the right to have any dispute that can be resolved by the application of law decided in a fair public hearing before a court or, where appropriate, another independent and impartial tribunal or forum.</i></p>	

Article 35	Arrested, Detained, and Accused Persons
<p><i>1. Everyone who is arrested for allegedly committing an offence has the right</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. to remain silent;</i><i>b. to be informed promptly</i><ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>i. of the right to remain silent; and</i><i>ii. of the consequences of not remaining silent;</i><i>c. not to be compelled to make any confession or admission that could be used in evidence against that person;</i><i>d. to be brought before a court as soon as reasonably possible, but not later than</i><ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>i. 48 hours after the arrest; or</i><i>ii. the end of the first court day after the expiry of the 48 hours, if the 48 hours expire outside ordinary court hours or on a day which is not an ordinary court day;</i><i>e. at the first court appearance after being arrested, to be charged or to be informed of the reason for the detention to continue, or to be released; and</i><i>f. to be released from detention if the interests of justice permit, subject to reasonable conditions.</i> <p><i>2. Everyone who is detained, including every sentenced prisoner, has the right</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. to be informed promptly of the reason for being detained;</i><i>b. to choose, and to consult with, a legal practitioner, and to be informed of this right promptly;</i><i>c. to have a legal practitioner assigned to the detained person by the state and at state expense, if substantial injustice would otherwise result, and to be informed of this right promptly;</i><i>d. to challenge the lawfulness of the detention in person before a court and, if the detention is unlawful, to be released;</i>	

- e. to conditions of detention that are consistent with human dignity, including at least exercise and the provision, at state expense, of adequate accommodation, nutrition, reading material and medical treatment; and
 - f. to communicate with, and be visited by, that person's
 - i. spouse or partner;
 - ii. next of kin;
 - iii. chosen religious counsellor; and
 - iv. chosen medical practitioner.
3. Every accused person has a right to a fair trial, which includes the right
- a. to be informed of the charge with sufficient detail to answer it;
 - b. to have adequate time and facilities to prepare a defence;
 - c. to a public trial before an ordinary court;
 - d. to have their trial begin and conclude without unreasonable delay;
 - e. to be present when being tried;
 - f. to choose, and be represented by, a legal practitioner, and to be informed of this right promptly;
 - g. to have a legal practitioner assigned to the accused person by the state and at state expense, if substantial injustice would otherwise result, and to be informed of this right promptly;
 - h. to be presumed innocent, to remain silent, and not to testify during the proceedings;
 - i. to adduce and challenge evidence;
 - j. not to be compelled to give self-incriminating evidence;
 - k. to be tried in a language that the accused person understands or, if that is not practicable, to have the proceedings interpreted in that language;
 - l. not to be convicted for an act or omission that was not an offence under either national or international law at the time it was committed or omitted;
 - m. not to be tried for an offence in respect of an act or omission for which that person has previously been either acquitted or convicted;
 - n. to the benefit of the least severe of the prescribed punishments if the prescribed punishment for the offence has been changed between the time that the offence was committed and the time of sentencing; and
 - o. of appeal to, or review by, a higher court.
4. Whenever this section requires information to be given to a person, that information must be given in a language that the person understands.
5. Evidence obtained in a manner that violates any right in the Bill of Rights must be excluded if the admission of that evidence would render the trial unfair or otherwise be detrimental to the administration of justice.

Article 36	Limitation of Rights
<p>1. <i>The rights in the Bill of Rights may be limited only in terms of law of general application to the extent that the limitation is reasonable and justifiable in an open and democratic society based on human dignity, equality and freedom, taking into account all relevant factors, including</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. the nature of the right;</i> <i>b. the importance of the purpose of the limitation;</i> <i>c. the nature and extent of the limitation;</i> <i>d. the relation between the limitation and its purpose; and</i> <i>e. less restrictive means to achieve the purpose.</i> <p>2. <i>Except as provided in subsection (1) or in any other provision of the Constitution, no law may limit any right entrenched in the Bill of Rights.</i></p>	
<p>The rights in the Bill of Rights may be limited only in terms of law of general application to the extent that the limitation is reasonable and justifiable in an open and democratic society based on human dignity, equality and freedom, taking into account all relevant factors</p>	

Article 37	State of Emergency
<p>1. <i>A state of emergency may be declared only in terms of an Act of Parliament, and only when</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. the life of the nation is threatened by war, invasion, general insurrection, disorder, natural disaster or other public emergency; and</i> <i>b. the declaration is necessary to restore peace and order.</i> <p>2. <i>A declaration of a state of emergency, and any legislation enacted or other action taken in consequence of that declaration, may be effective only</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. prospectively; and</i> <i>b. for no more than 21 days from the date of the declaration, unless the National Assembly resolves to extend the declaration. The Assembly may extend a declaration of a state of emergency for no more than three months at a time. The first extension of the state of emergency must be by a resolution adopted with a supporting vote of a majority of the members of the Assembly. Any subsequent extension must be by a resolution adopted with a supporting vote of at least 60 per cent of the members of the Assembly. A resolution in terms of this paragraph may be adopted only following a public debate in the Assembly.</i> <p>3. <i>Any competent court may decide on the validity of</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. a declaration of a state of emergency;</i> 	

- b. any extension of a declaration of a state of emergency; or
 - c. any legislation enacted, or other action taken, in consequence of a declaration of a state of emergency.
4. Any legislation enacted in consequence of a declaration of a state of emergency may derogate from the Bill of Rights only to the extent that
- a. the derogation is strictly required by the emergency; and
 - b. the legislation
 - i. is consistent with the Republic's obligations under international law applicable to states of emergency;
 - ii. conforms to subsection (5); and
 - iii. is published in the national Government Gazette as soon as reasonably possible after being enacted.
5. No Act of Parliament that authorises a declaration of a state of emergency, and no legislation enacted or other action taken in consequence of a declaration, may permit or authorise
- a. indemnifying the state, or any person, in respect of any unlawful act;
 - b. any derogation from this section; or
 - c. any derogation from a section mentioned in column 1 of the Table of Non-Derogable Rights, to the extent indicated opposite that section in column 3 of the Table.

Table of Non-Derogable Rights

1	2	3
Section Number	Section Title	Extent to which the right is protected
9	<i>Equality</i>	<i>With respect to unfair discrimination solely on the grounds of race, colour, ethnic or social origin, sex religion or language</i>
10	<i>Human Dignity</i>	<i>Entirely</i>
11	<i>Life</i>	<i>Entirely</i>
12	<i>Freedom and Security of the person</i>	<i>With respect to subsections (1)(d) and (e) and (2)(c).</i>
13	<i>Slavery, servitude and forced labour</i>	<i>With respect to slavery and servitude</i>

28	<i>Children</i>	<p><i>With respect to:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>subsection (1)(d) and (e);</i> - <i>the rights in subparagraphs (i) and (ii) of subsection (1)(g); and</i> - <i>subsection 1(i) in respect of children of 15 years and younger</i>
35	<i>Arrested, detained and accused persons</i>	<p><i>With respect to:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>subsections (1)(a), (b) and (c) and (2)(d);</i> - <i>the rights in paragraphs (a) to (o) of subsection (3), excluding paragraph (d)</i> - <i>subsection (4); and</i> - <i>subsection (5) with respect to the exclusion of evidence if the admission of that evidence would render the trial unfair.</i>

6. *Whenever anyone is detained without trial in consequence of a derogation of rights resulting from a declaration of a state of emergency, the following conditions must be observed:*

- a. *An adult family member or friend of the detainee must be contacted as soon as reasonably possible, and informed that the person has been detained.*
- b. *A notice must be published in the national Government Gazette within five days of the person being detained, stating the detainee's name and place of detention and referring to the emergency measure in terms of which that person has been detained.*
- c. *The detainee must be allowed to choose, and be visited at any reasonable time by, a medical practitioner.*
- d. *The detainee must be allowed to choose, and be visited at any reasonable time by, a legal representative.*
- e. *A court must review the detention as soon as reasonably possible, but no later than 10 days after the date the person was detained, and the court must release the detainee unless it is necessary to continue the detention to restore peace and order.*
- f. *A detainee who is not released in terms of a review under paragraph (e), or who is not released in terms of a review under this paragraph, may apply to a court for a further review of the detention at any time after 10 days have passed since the previous review, and the court must release the detainee unless it is still necessary to continue the detention to restore peace and order.*
- g. *The detainee must be allowed to appear in person before any court considering the detention, to be represented by a legal practitioner at those hearings, and to make representations against continued detention.*

- h. The state must present written reasons to the court to justify the continued detention of the detainee, and must give a copy of those reasons to the detainee at least two days before the court reviews the detention.*
- 7. If a court releases a detainee, that person may not be detained again on the same grounds unless the state first shows a court good cause for re-detaining that person.*
- 8. Subsections (6) and (7) do not apply to persons who are not South African citizens and who are detained in consequence of an international armed conflict. Instead, the state must comply with the standards binding on the Republic under international humanitarian law in respect of the detention of such persons.*

State of emergency is generally associated with conflict or war. The recent Covid-19 pandemic presented an excellent example of the power of the state to manipulate and dictate. Until recently, the practicalities associated with the possible manipulations to establish a one world government was unimaginable. The health crisis indicated the contrary.

Article 38	Enforcement of Rights
<p><i>Anyone listed in this section has the right to approach a competent court, alleging that a right in the Bill of Rights has been infringed or threatened, and the court may grant appropriate relief, including a declaration of rights. The persons who may approach a court are -</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>a. anyone acting in their own interest;</i><i>b. anyone acting on behalf of another person who cannot act in their own name;</i><i>c. anyone acting as a member of, or in the interest of, a group or class of persons;</i><i>d. anyone acting in the public interest; and</i><i>e. an association acting in the interest of its members.</i>	

Article 39	Interpretation of Bill of Rights
<p>(1) When interpreting the Bill of Rights, a court, tribunal, or forum</p> <p>(2) When interpreting any legislation, and when developing the common law or customary law, every court, tribunal or forum must promote the spirit, purport and objects of the Bill of Rights.</p> <p>(3) The Bill of Rights does not deny the existence of any other rights or freedoms that are recognised or conferred by common law, customary law or legislation, to the extent that they are consistent with the Bill.</p>	

5.6.3 Individual Rights Described and Protected

- i. **Rights**
- ii. **Application**
- iii. **Equality:** Discrimination are prohibited. In contradiction Affirmative action and fair discrimination are allowed.
- iv. **Human Dignity:** Individual dignity are to be respected and protected.
- v. **Life:** Individuals right to life.
- vi. **Freedom and security of the person:** Prohibition of detainment without trial, torture or cruel punishment and domestic violence.
- vii. **Slavery, servitude and forced labour:** Prohibition of slavery and forced labour.
- viii. **Privacy:** Prohibition of unauthorised house and possessions searches.
- ix. **Freedom of religion, belief and opinion:** The freedom to believe, follow and practice religion of choice.
- x. **Freedom of expression:** Freedom to express any viewpoint. (including the press)
- xi. **Assembly, demonstration, picket and petition:** Freedom to participate or organise peaceful demonstrations, picketing and the presentation of petitions.

- xii. **Freedom of association:** Freedom to associate with people according to own choice.
- xiii. **Political rights:** Freedom to support the political party of choice. Citizens 18 years and older has the freedom to vote and support any political party.
- xiv. **Citizenship:** Citizenship cannot be cancelled.
- xv. **Freedom of movement and residence:** Freedom to live anywhere in South Africa.
- xvi. **Freedom of trade, occupation and profession:** Freedom to choose any career of choice. Freedom to trade in any legal business opportunity.
- xvii. **Labour relations:** The right to membership to any trade union and the freedom to strike.
- xviii. **Environment:** The right to a healthy environment.
- xix. **Property:** Private property is protected. The government has the responsibility to provide access to proper housing.
- xx. **Housing**
- xxi. **Health care, food, water and social security:** The government has the responsibility to ensure access to food and water; health care and social security.
- xxii. **Children:** Children under the age of 18 have special rights including protection basic education, mother tongue education, and language.
- xxiii. **Education**
- xxiv. **Language and culture:** The right to language and culture of choice.
- xxv. **Cultural, religious and linguistic communities:** The right to enjoy culture; practice religion; and use of language.
- xxvi. **Access to information:** The right to any information which the government has.
- xxvii. **Just administrative action:** The right to fair actions by government.
- xxviii. **Access to courts:** The right to have access to a court, or a similar structure.
- xxix. **Arrested, detained and accused persons:** This right protects people who have been arrested, imprisoned or accused. The right to a lawyer and visitations from family members.

5.7 Organisations to Ensure the Implementation of the Bill of Rights.⁴¹⁶

5.7.1 Section 27

A public interest law centre that seeks to achieve substantive equality and social justice in South Africa. Guided by the principle and values in the Constitution, Section 27 uses law, advocacy, legal literacy, research and community mobilisation to achieve access to healthcare services and basic education. Section 27 aims to achieve structural change and accountability to ensure the dignity and equality of everyone.⁴¹⁷

5.7.2 The South African Human Rights Commission⁴¹⁸

Commissioners appointed by Parliament with the responsibility to ensure and observe human rights, to investigate, report on and take steps to prevent human rights violations. Their duties include assistance to victims of human right violations.

5.7.3 Department of Justice and Constitutional Development⁴¹⁹

Specialised “Equity Courts” within the Department of Justice to preside over equality disputes.

⁴¹⁶ It's Your Right Handbook FunDza Literacy Trust. Available at: <https://live.fundza.mobi/home/library/advice/its-your-right-handbook/contacts-general-rights-in-south-africa/>

⁴¹⁷ Section 27. Available at: <http://section27.org.za/>

⁴¹⁸ South African Human Rights Commission. Available at: www.sahrc.co.za

⁴¹⁹ Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. Available at: http://www.justice.gov.za/EQCact/eqc_main.html

5.7.4 Freedom of Expression Institute⁴²⁰

An independent organisation with the responsibility to ensure freedom of expression in South Africa. The authority includes censorship of media. Freedom of expression includes:

- i. Freedom of the press and other media.
- ii. Freedom to receive or impart information and ideas.
- iii. Freedom of artistic creativity and
- iv. Academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

5.7.5 The Open Society Foundation of South Africa (OSF-SA)⁴²¹

An independent organisation included in a network of Open Society Foundations, (OSF) operating in 11 southern African countries. OSISA focusses on enhancing “the values, institutions and practices of an open, non-racial and non-sexist, democratic, civil society”. It supports the rule of law and the right of people to hold differing opinions and ideas. It is included in Open Society Foundations network which includes these other African organisations: OSISA, OSIWA, and OSIEA.

5.7.6 Open Society Foundations⁴²²

The Open Society Foundations, founded by George Soros, are the world’s largest private funder of independent groups working for justice, democratic governance, and human rights.

⁴²⁰ Freedom of Expression Institute. Available at: <https://www.fxi.org.za/>

⁴²¹ Open Society Foundation of South Africa. Available at: <https://www.opensocietyfoundations.org/who-we-are>

⁴²² Open Society Foundations. Available at: <https://www.opensocietyfoundations.org/who-we-are>

OSISA: Open Society Initiative for South Africa⁴²³

OSIWA: Open Society Initiative West Africa⁴²⁴

OSIEA: Open Society Initiative East Africa⁴²⁵

5.7.7 Commission for Gender Equality⁴²⁶

A government commission with the aim to research, educate and develop policy with regards to gender equality. The commission also has the ability

5.7.8 Public Protector⁴²⁷

The Public Protector is an independent institution established in terms of section 181 of the Constitution, with a mandate to support and strengthen constitutional democracy. A supreme administrative oversight body, the Public Protector has the power to investigate, report on and remedy improper conduct in all state affairs. The Public Protector must be accessible to all persons and communities. Anyone can complain to the Public Protector.

5.7.9 Pan South African Language Board⁴²⁸

An initiative of Parliament to develop all languages (including Khoe, San and South African Sign Language) and to promote multilingualism. The board investigates claims with regards to language rights and campaigns to increase

⁴²³ The Open Society Foundation for Southern Africa. Available at: <http://osisa.org/>

⁴²⁴ The Open Society. West Africa. Available at: <http://www.osiwa.org/>

⁴²⁵ The Open Society for Eastern Africa. Available at: <https://www.osiea.org/>

⁴²⁶ Commission for Gender Equality. Available at: <http://www.cge.org.za/>

⁴²⁷ The Public Protector. Available at: <http://www.pprotect.org/>

⁴²⁸ PAN South African Language Board. Available at: <http://www.pansalb.org/index.html>

public awareness regards to language equality.

5.7.10 National Youth Commission⁴²⁹

A government organisation obligated to investigate and address needs and challenges and opportunities of young people.

5.8 Other Chapters Impacting on the Spirituality or Spiritual Character of South Africa

Of interest of this research is the

- a) Chapter Nine: Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities and Linguistic Communities. Article 185-186
- b) Chapter Nine: The Commission for Gender Equality. Article 187
- c) Chapter Twelve: Traditional leaders. Article 211-212

5.8.1 Chapter Nine: Commission for the Promotion and Protection of The Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities and Linguistic Communities

The Constitution states the following:

⁴²⁹ National Youth Commission. Available at: <http://home.intekom.com/nyc/>

Chapter Nine	State Institutions supporting Constitutional Democracy	Article 181
Establishing of governing principles		
<p><i>The following state institutions strengthen constitutional democracy in the Republic:</i></p> <p><i>(a) The Public Protector.</i></p> <p><i>(b) The South African Human Rights Commission.</i></p> <p><i>(c) The Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities.</i></p> <p><i>(d) The Commission for Gender Equality.</i></p> <p><i>(e) The Auditor-General.</i></p> <p><i>(f) The Electoral Commission.</i></p> <p><i>(2) These institutions are independent, and subject only to the Constitution and the law, and they must be impartial and must exercise their powers and perform their functions without fear, favour or prejudice.</i></p> <p><i>(3) Other organs of state, through legislative and other measures, must assist and protect these institutions to ensure the independence, impartiality, dignity and effectiveness of these institutions.</i></p> <p><i>(4) No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of these institutions.</i></p> <p><i>(5) These institutions are accountable to the National Assembly, and must report on their activities and the performance of their functions to the Assembly at least once a year.</i></p>		

<p>Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities</p> <p>Functions of Commission 185.</p> <p>(1) The primary objects of the Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities are—</p>

(a) to promote respect for the rights of cultural, religious, and linguistic communities.

(b) to promote and develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance, and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities, on the basis of equality, non-discrimination and free association; and

(c) to recommend the establishment or recognition, in accordance with national legislation, of a cultural or other council or councils for a community or communities in South Africa.

(2) The Commission has the power, as regulated by national legislation, necessary to achieve its primary objects, including the power to monitor, investigate, research, educate, lobby, advise and report on issues concerning the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities.

(3) The Commission may report any matter which falls within its powers and functions to the South African Human Rights Commission for investigation. (

4) The Commission has the additional powers and functions prescribed by national legislation.

Composition of Commission 186.

(1) The number of members of the Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities and their appointment and terms of office must be prescribed by national legislation.

(2) The composition of the Commission must— (

a) be broadly representative of the main cultural, religious and linguistic communities in South Africa; and

(b) broadly reflect the gender composition of South Africa

5.8.2 Chapter Nine: The Commission for Gender Equality. Article 187

The Constitution states the following:

Chapter Nine:	Functions of Commission for Gender Equality.	Article 187.
<p>(1) The Commission for Gender Equality must promote respect for gender equality and the protection, development, and attainment of gender equality.</p> <p>(2) The Commission for Gender Equality has the power, as regulated by national legislation, necessary to perform its functions, including the power to monitor, investigate, research, educate, lobby, advise and report on issues concerning gender equality.</p> <p>(3) The Commission for Gender Equality has the additional powers and functions prescribed by national legislation.</p>		

Chapter Twelve	Traditional leaders.	Article 211-212
<p>Recognition</p> <p>211. (1) The institution, status and role of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.</p> <p>(2) A traditional authority that observes a system of customary law may function subject to any applicable legislation and customs, which includes amendments to, or repeal of, that legislation or those customs.</p> <p>(3) The courts must apply customary law when that law is applicable, subject to the Constitution and any legislation that specifically deals with customary law.</p>		

Role of traditional leaders

212. (1) National legislation may provide for a role for traditional leadership as an institution at local level on matters affecting local communities.

(2) To deal with matters relating to traditional leadership, the role of traditional leaders, customary law and the customs of communities observing a system of customary law—

(a) national or provincial legislation may provide for the establishment of houses of traditional leaders; and (b) national legislation may establish a council of traditional leaders.

The National House of Traditional Leaders is a body composed of delegates from Provincial traditional Houses. The mission is to:⁴³⁰

- Represent traditional leadership and their communities;
- Advance the aspirations of the traditional leadership and their communities at national level
- Advance the plight of provincial houses of traditional leaders, traditional leadership and their communities at national government level;
- Participate on international matters that have to do with custom, traditions and matters of common interest and influence government legislative processes at national level.

The mandate of the House is to: ⁴³¹

- promote the role of traditional leadership within the constitutional dispensation;
- promote nation-building;
- promote peace, stability and cohesiveness of communities;

⁴³⁰ National House of Traditional Leaders. Available at: <https://nationalgovernment.co.za/units/view/135/national-house-of-traditional-leaders>

⁴³¹ National House of Traditional Leaders. Available at: <https://nationalgovernment.co.za/units/view/135/national-house-of-traditional-leaders>

- develop, preserve and promote culture and traditions of communities;
- consider Parliamentary Bills referred to it by the Secretary;
- participate in intergovernmental structures and advise the national government and make recommendations on any matter that the government may require.

Traditional leaders in SA parliament:⁴³² The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government. The author acknowledges the fact that traditional leaders represent authority, power and influence originating from traditional belief systems – including superstition.

5.9 The Relationship Between the Constitution and Other Laws

The Constitution is the highest law in the land. All other laws must abide by the Constitution. Other laws are divided into

5.9.1 Statutes (Laws or Acts) Developed by Government

- Acts are originated by national parliament
- Ordinances are originated by provincial legislatures
- By-Laws are originated by Municipal or Local governments.

⁴³² <https://www.gov.za/about-government/government-system/traditional-leadership>

5.9.2 Common Law

- Often unwritten laws not originated by any government.
- Based on Roman Dutch law

5.9.3 Customary Law

(1) Unwritten laws applicable to specific cultures and ethnic groups.

EXAMPLE Mary Sibiya’s husband dies. There is a customary law that says women can’t inherit land from their husbands who have died. Mary is told by her husband’s eldest son that he owns the land now that his father is dead. Mary wants to take her case to court because she thinks it is unfair. In this situation the court would look at the customary law and at what the Constitution says. If it thinks the customary law goes against Mary’s right to equality and non-discrimination then it will say the customary law is invalid.

5.9.4 Legislation with a spiritual impact

The author considers the following legislations to have a spiritual impact:

The Film and Publications Act, 1996	The Constitution protects and legalise adult pornography.
Choice of Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996	The provisions in the Choice Act ¹ allowing consent to a termination of pregnancy by girls of any age are not affected by the Child Care Act 3 or the Children's Act

South African School Act, 1996	The promotion of education of all religions and simultaneously restricts Christian education.
The National Gambling Act, 1996 and the Lotteries Act, 1997	The legalisation of gambling and the establishment of a national lottery.
Capital Punishment and the Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1997	The absence of strong law enforcement resulted in the increase of repeated offenders.
Domestic Partnership and Homosexual Marriage Act, 1994	The legalisation of homosexual relationships and acceptance that homosexual relationships are equal to heterosexual relationships.
Education Laws Amendment Act, 1999	Parent and provincial influence on education policies are limited. The Act allow children to proceed with abortions without the consent of their parents.
Broadcasting Act, 1999	The Act increases the operational challenges and approvals for Christian radio stations. It did though, it forbid the broadcasting of explicit sex related images.
Promoting of Equality and Prevention of Unreasonable Discrimination Act, 2000	Limits the rights and freedom of religion in an effort to protect the rights of minority groups like the homosexual community.

Firearms Control Act, 2000	Restriction of the right to obtain firearms for self-defence and protection.
Judicial Officer’s Amendment Act, 2003	The Act allows homosexual marriages and also allows legalise heterosexual relationships not formalised in marriage.
Alternation of Sex Description and Sex Status Act, 2003	The Act allows the alteration of gender description of individuals in the National Populations Register whose sex organs have been amended resulting in a ‘sex-change’.
Sexual Offences Amendment Bill	The age of consensual to sexual intercourse was amended from 19 to 16 for boys. Consensual homosexual or heterosexual experimentation is included and the age might be amended to between 12 to 16 years.
Decriminalisation of Prostitution	The possible decriminalisation of prostitution is in process.
End of Life Bill	The proposed Bill introduces the active voluntary euthanasia by means of a lethal agent. Thus, suicide with medical assistance.

Legalising of Homosexual Marriages in 2006	Provide equal rights to homosexual marriage partners compared to heterosexual marriage partners.
Children’s Act	The Act allows children from 12 years to access contraception without parental consent. .It also legalises same sex marriage couples to adopt children. Corporate punishment by parents are abolished
Civil Union Act 17 of 2006 vs the Civil Union Amendment Bill	Section 6 allows State marriage officers to refuse – on grounds of conscience, religion and belief, to solemnise same-sex marriages. This right of refusal was included in the Civil Union Act to protect individual constitutional right to religious freedom. According to the new Amended Bill this right of refusal will no longer be available.

6. CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the author addressed the questions posed in the Prolegomena.

6.1 ***The question that begs asking is, whether the reality of alleged secret societies in South Africa is indeed fact, or mere fiction of conspiracy theorists?***

The chapter discussed the impact of secret societies in the history of South Africa from the early voyages of the Portuguese sponsored by the Templars. The

establishment of the refreshment station in the Cape was sponsored by Freemason Dutch East India Company. The presence of various secret societies and especially the establishment of the various Freemason lodges was duly discussed. Evidence of contemporary Freemasons indicated the continues impact these organisations has. The Afrikaner Broederbond, functions on the same principles of secrecy, favouritism, and manipulation. Members of various organisations had, throughout the history of South Africa a pivotal role in the political and constitutional development.

6.2 *Is religious freedom a result of the current international acclaimed constitution?*

The ‘religious-history’ of South Africa reflect a society where freedom of religion always has been a privilege for South Africans. The Witchcraft Aft of 1957 was the only legislation restraining religious practice because of the possible harm the practice thereof could hold for human and animals. Media evidence did however indicate that the state does not enforce this legislation. Individuals experience physical injury and ailments, and loss of possessions, and property. No evidence could be found of official religious persecution. The freedom to worship God and to practice the communion of the Saints are often taken for granted.

6.3 *“The God of the Bible belongs to the White man” – how applicable is this in the South African multi ethnical context?*

The research provided evidence to the contrary. Christianity in South Africa accommodates and estimated 80% of the population.

In South Africa, hair, and the way African women prefer to style is both personal and political. Christine Qunta⁴³³ relates hair with the **“obvious manifestation of oppression but especially the colonisation with the African mind and the**

⁴³³ Qunta, Christine (2016) *Why we are Not a nation*. Cape Town: Seriti sa Sechaba Publishers NPC. P. 97

malignant outcomes of that occupation.” Dominating Western hairstyles reminds of the slave-trade and the fact that black women lost autonomy of the bodies as well as the perception of ‘inferior’ and ‘superior’ races. A crude example was the naked exhibition of Sarah Baartman by Cezar and Dunlop⁴³⁴ to display her typical Khoikhoi body shape - described by President Thabo Mbeki as barbaric. The author agreed with Pres Mbeki and acknowledged the negative impact the hair debate has on nation building in South Africa. It is however important to note that it is not only a white towards black issue. Ngūgĩ wa Thiong’o⁴³⁵ article in the Sunday Independent (2012)

A multibillion industry in the world is built around the erasure of Blackness – and its biggest clients are affluent Black middle classes in Africa and the world.

The author was aware of the notion and accusations between black people whereby those who adapt to western hairstyles, western pronunciation of English etc. is considered to be ‘not black enough’. Discrimination in South African is thus not restricted to different races, but also between members of the same race. One can argue that this specific discrimination is between cultures (western vs African) within the same race.

The author speculated with regards to the ‘Africaness’ of religion and spirituality in comparison to the ‘Africaness’ of culture. If the assimilation of western fashion and language (Culture) evokes resentment, the same could be applied to the assimilation of Christianity – if Christianity is perceived as Western, or the adoration of a white God’.

⁴³⁴ Qunta, Christine (2016) *Why we are Not a nation*. Cape Town: Seriti sa Sechaba Publishers NPC. P. 102

⁴³⁵ Qunta, Christine (2016) *Why we are Not a nation*. Cape Town: Seriti sa Sechaba Publishers NPC. P. 97

6.4 **How does the economic well-being of Africa affect the spirituality?**

In addition to extremely poor economic growth, additional Covid-19 challenges,⁴³⁶ and an un-employment rate of 30.8% (reported in the third quarter of 2020), an estimated 1 million⁴³⁷ young people finished school in December 2021. A majority will be added to the unemployed statistics. Regardless of these negative statistics, an estimated 4.2 million Africans migrated to South Africa (mid-year 2019)⁴³⁸, mainly in pursuit of economic opportunities. This statistic is significant for this research for South African spirituality is expanded by other Africans. Spirituality encompasses the amalgamation of more than one faith system and also the amalgamation of faith and culture. The South African population comprises of a several tribes, cultures and nations and religions. It is often impossible to detangle religion or spirituality from culture. The integration of spirituality in all aspects of life is evident in the impact it has on all aspects of life and society.

--ooOoo--

⁴³⁶ Deloitte Insights (November 18, 2020): Over the past few years, South Africa’s ongoing struggle with weak growth, rising unemployment, negative GDP per capita growth, and mounting public debt has been no secret. Before the COVID-19 pandemic struck, real GDP growth forecasts to 2022 were near 1%, due to, *inter alia*, persisting structural challenges and ongoing electricity supply woes. Recessionary pressures were acute. In fact, in March 2020, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) lowered the annual GDP growth rate estimate to only 0.2% for 2019, sending the economy in a technical recession, given two consecutive quarters of negative growth during the end of that year. COVID-19 has changed the already-challenging economic outlook for the worse, while further exposing deep structural divides in the economy. South Africa has had some of the world’s strictest lockdown restrictions in place since the end of March 2020, as the country prioritised its response to the health crisis by aiming to save as many lives as possible.

This prioritisation saw South Africa face an almost unique situation in its history—economic activity faced a systemwide shock from both supply and demand sides. Economic activity came to a complete halt for a number of weeks in the second quarter across many sectors, playing out dramatically in the economic data: Real GDP dropped by 51% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) in Q2 of 2020 (or –17.2% in nonannualised year-on-year terms), after a 1.8% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) contraction in Q1. Available at: <https://www2.deloitte.com/za/en/insights/economy/emea/africa-economic-outlook.html>

⁴³⁷ Sobuwa, Yolisha (30 October 2020) Sowetan Live. Available at: <https://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-10-30-more-than-1-million-pupils-ready-to-start-2020-matric-exams/>

⁴³⁸ Migration Data Portal. Migration Data in the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Available at: <https://migrationdataportal.org/regional-data-overview/southern-africa>

**“Truth is not merely what we are thinking, but also why, to
whom, and under what circumstances we say it.”**

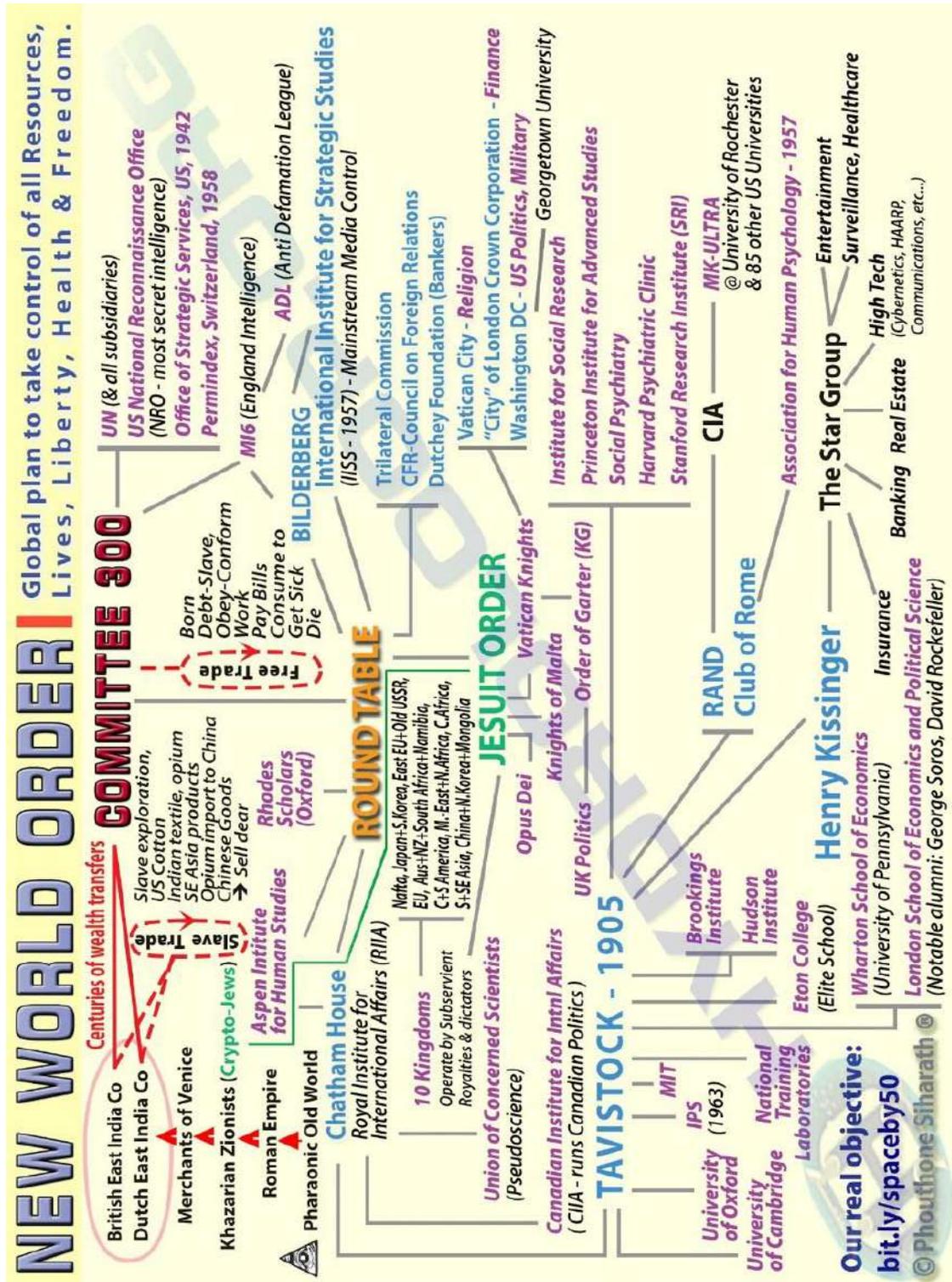
- Havel, Vaclav. 1985

7. ADDENDUM

7.1 An interpretation of World Political and Economic Power



7.2 Diagram depicting the New World Order



7.3 New World Order



7.4 Alternative Interpretation of the South African Coat of Arms

The rising sun?
Sun worship religion. Central and significant to paganism.
It also symbolizes illumination/ knowledge. The knowledge stolen from our ancestors.

The secretary bird?
NO! NO! NO! its actually the Phoenix rising from the ashes

The Protea Flower?
If you look closely you can actually see a pyramid. The apex of the pyramid is red and pyramid shaped. the red pyramid is the all seeing 'hidden' eye of lucifer or it represents the ruling oligarchy/elite.

Spear and Knobkerrie?
Symbolizes authority and defense. The brotherhood will do anything in their power to protect and eliminate any threat to their organization or agenda

wheat?
Virgo the virgin...(not sure).. check this-----> (source: Wikipedia)

human figures shaking hands?
Looks like a masonic handshake to me. Handshake of the brotherhood of death. United under one agenda.

The shield?
Protector of the 'secret' agenda of the brotherhood/illuminati from the ignorant society

Sepal?

Pentagram!

motto?
!ke e: /xarra //ke = diverse people unite = unite again to build a new Babylon = new world order= one religion= one government= one ruler. etc

"A standard symbol for witches, freemasons, and many other pagan or occult groups. To witches, it represent the four basic elements (wind, water, earth and fire) plus a pantheistic spiritual being such as Gaia or Mother Earth"

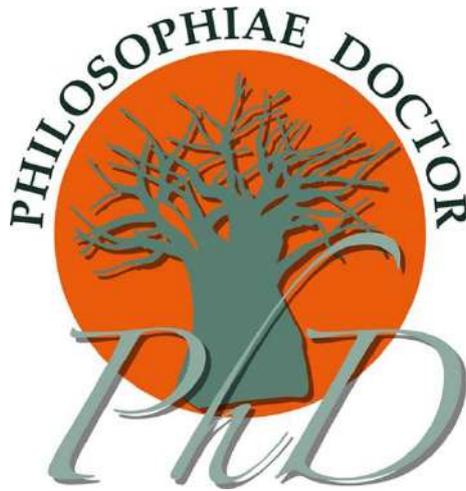
"Used in occult rituals to direct forces or energies. Often represents satanism, the horned god or various expressions of contemporary occultism, especially when a goat-head is superimposed on the inverted pentagram within a "sacred" circle"
<http://www.crossroad.to/Books/symbols1.html>

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

THE MANIFESTATION OF SPIRITUALITY
IN CONTEMPORARY SOUTH AFRICA WITH EMPHASIS
ON THE IMPACT THEREOF ON THE
SOCIAL, ECONOMIC AND POLITICAL ENVIRONMENT

Chapter Five



Chapter Five

The Manifestation of Spirituality in Contemporary South Africa With Emphasis on the Impact Thereof on the Social, Economic and Political Environment

1. INTRODUCTION

Spirituality in South Africa is a complex conglomeration of faiths and religions accommodating a variety of Christian perspectives as well as non-Christian faiths. An overview of the history of various religions discovered evidence of Hinduism as early as 2000 years ago¹. Aspects of Khoi-Khoi and San religion is portrayed in art spread over vast areas of South Africa. Migrating Bantu speaking people, colonialism and the slave trade contributed to the establishment of various religious systems.

In addition to extremely poor economic growth with additional Covid-19

¹ Tellinger, Michael & Heine, Johan. (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers. P.33

challenges,² and an un-employment rate of 30.8% (reported in the third quarter of 2020), an estimated 1 million³ young people finished school in December 2021. The majority will be added to the unemployed statistics. Regardless of these statistics, an estimated 4.2 million Africans migrated to South Africa (mid-year 2019)⁴, mainly in pursuit of economic opportunities. This statistic is significant for this research for the South African spirituality is expanded by other Africans. In an interview with Johannes Sebese, he confirmed how his sister – a practising and successful sangoma and traditional healer – was cursed by a stronger Zimbabwean sangoma to succumb as a result of a stroke

Spirituality encompasses the amalgamation of more than one faith system and also the amalgamation of faith and culture. The South African population comprises of several tribes, cultures and nations and religions. It is often impossible to separate religion or spirituality from culture. The integration of spirituality in all aspects of life is evident in the impact it has on all aspects of life and society.

² Deloitte Insights (November 18, 2020): Over the past few years, South Africa's ongoing struggle with weak growth, rising unemployment, negative GDP per capita growth, and mounting public debt has been no secret. Before the COVID-19 pandemic struck, real GDP growth forecasts to 2022 were near 1%, due to, *inter alia*, persisting structural challenges and ongoing electricity supply woes. Recessionary pressures were acute. In fact, in March 2020, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) lowered the annual GDP growth rate estimate to only 0.2% for 2019, sending the economy in a technical recession, given two consecutive quarters of negative growth during the end of that year. COVID-19 has changed the already-challenging economic outlook for the worse, while further exposing deep structural divides in the economy. South Africa has had some of the world's strictest lockdown restrictions in place since the end of March 2020, as the country prioritised its response to the health crisis by aiming to save as many lives as possible. This prioritisation saw South Africa face an almost unique situation in its history—economic activity faced a systemwide shock from both supply and demand sides. Economic activity came to a complete halt for a number of weeks in the second quarter across many sectors, playing out dramatically in the economic data: Real GDP dropped by 51% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) in Q2 of 2020 (or – 17.2% in nonannualised year-on-year terms), after a 1.8% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) contraction in Q1. Available at: <https://www2.deloitte.com/za/en/insights/economy/emea/africa-economic-outlook.html>

³ Sobuwa, Yolisha. (October 30, 2020) *More than 1 million pupils ready to start 2020 matric exams*. Sowetan Live. Available at: <https://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-10-30-more-than-1-million-pupils-ready-to-start-2020-matric-exams/>

⁴ Migration Data Portal. Migration Data in the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Available at: <https://migrationdataportal.org/regional-data-overview/southern-africa>

2. RELIGIOUS FREEDOM PROTECTED BY THE SOUTH AFRICAN CONSTITUTION

The 1996 South African Constitution's Bill of Rights and Charter of Religious Rights and Freedom elevated human rights and made provision for freedom of religion and prohibit discrimination of any kind - religion included.

Religious freedom is not restricted to the "freedom to worship" in church, mosque, or synagogue. It should also accommodate the liberty to live, speak, act, conduct business, and associate with people of choice. The liberty to structure business or act in a professional environment according to religious and cultural convictions is supposed to be available to individuals and organisation and is, safeguarded against the domination of government or individuals.

Plurality of religions and religious legal systems are protected by the South African Constitution in sections 9(3), 15(1) to (3), 30, 31, 18 and 234. Section 7(3) of the Constitution obligates government to respect, protect and promote the rights contained in the Bill of Rights. The Bill of Rights also provide religious groups the privilege to limit certain rights of their members in compliance with the conditions set out in the Constitution.⁵ Spiritual liberty in two applications are worth mentioning.

The Witchcraft Suppression Act No. 3 of 1957, approved by the Union of South Africa still remains valid, aiming to provide for the suppression of the practice of witchcraft and similar practices. The author questioned the application or interpretation of the Act given the evidence of witchcraft. (Refer to the media evidence provided.) The Act commenced on February 22, 1957 and the only amendment was approved in 1997 (Section 1 amended by Abolition of Corporal Punishment Act No. 33 of 1997). The 1957 Act stipulated corporal punishment with a whip for the first case of an offence. The South African Pagan Rights

⁵ Constitution of South Africa. Section 36. Available at: https://www.gov.za/documents/constitution/chapter-2-bill-rights?gclid=Cj0KCQiAgomBBhDXARIsAFNyUqNDXpfpj5Pb8ZZGnoa3lNvhwlP8sThqGdPzNatxGQ9fekAroS2wDGcaAliuEALw_wcB#36

Alliance and the Traditional Healers Organisation requested an investigation of the constitutionality of the Act in 2007. The minister of Justice and Constitutional Development approved a South African Law Reform Commission to review the legislation.

And secondly, the registration of South Africa's first Satanic Church - founded by Reverend Riaan Swiegelaar and Dr. Adri Norton. The founders commented as follows⁶:

- The church is not affiliated with any Satanic movements or churches and it does not worship the Devil.
- Members of the congregation, who wish to invite family members during rite of passage ceremonies such as Satanic weddings, Satanic naming ceremonies, were allowed to and there is a remote Bible study open to the public.
- Negativity received thus far came as no surprise as a result of misconceptions and a lack of understanding.
- There is no worship in Satanism and we do not believe in the Devil or Satan as a Being that exists. Unfortunately, many people will hold these misconceptions as truth as they fear questioning their own beliefs regarding Satanism will lead to damnation.”
- We chose to register an official organisation to promote and educate on legitimate Satanism.
- We had also had enough of Satanism continuously being blamed for people's criminal behaviour and we wanted to create a platform from where we could do this while creating a sense of community to fellow Satanists.
- South Africa is unique in the fact that the constitution guarantees religious equality. We feel that there are very few satanic organisations in the world

⁶ Nxumalo, Lethu (June 28, 2020) *SA's first Satanic church to be fully functional by September in Ballito*, KZN. IOL News. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/kwazulu-natal/sas-first-satanic-church-to-be-fully-functional-by-september-in-ballito-kzn-50049977>

because other countries do not afford their citizens the religious freedom, we have here in South Africa.

2.1 South African Charter of Religious Rights and Freedoms

South African Charter of Religious Rights and Freedoms was publicly endorsed at a ceremony on October 21, 2010 in the presence of the Honourable Justice Dikgang Moseneke, Deputy Chief Justice of South Africa.

The Religious Rights and Charter was drafted over several years by a Continuation Committee of academics, religious leaders, government commissioners and international legal experts in consultation with all the major religions in South Africa, human rights groups and media bodies and the major religions in South Africa. Ninety-one leaders, representative of religious, academic, legal and media organisations as well as international advisors endorsed the Charter. The signatories⁷ included the following:

- i The Jewish religion
- ii 24 Christian denominations
- iii Muslim Judicial Council
- iv Israeli Community
- v Jami'atul 'Ulama (the Council of Muslim Theologians)
- vi Hindu faith (the Arya Samay SA)
- vii Hindu Co-ordinating Council
- viii Sri Sathya Sai Baba Council
- ix Tamil Federation
- x National Spiritual Council of the Baha'is of South Africa
- xi African traditional religion
- xii African independent churches

⁷ Coertzen, Pieter (2014) *Constitution, Charter and Religions in South Africa*. African Human Rights Law Journal (2014) 1 AHRLJ 126-141

- xiii National Commission for Culture
- xiv Language and Religion; women's organisations
- xv Youth movements
- xvi Education desk of the Dutch Reformed Church
- xvii the Griekwa National Council
- xviii the Griekwa Independent Church
- xix the Commission for Religious Freedom of the Evangelical Alliance of South Africa
- xx the Evangelical Alliance of Southern Africa
- xxi Trans World Radio
- xxii media production houses
- xxiii the Christian Network
- xxiv the Jesuit Institute
- xxv the Elected School of Amadlosi; and
- xxvi the Interdenominational Ministries.

The organisations of these signatories represent approximately 10,5 million of the total South African population of approximately 52 million.⁸

2.1.1 South African Council of Churches (SACC)

Founded in 1968, the South African Council of Churches (SACC)⁹ became a spearhead of anti-apartheid activity. A succession of outspoken general secretaries helped make the SACC one of the foremost opponents of apartheid during the years when political organisations were banned.

With 23 full and observer members, the Council focus to unite denominations in providing a platform where leaders of member organisations can voice concerns

⁸ Coertzen, Pieter (2014) *Constitution, Charter and religions in South Africa*. African Human Rights Law Journal (2014) 1 *AHRLJ* 126-141

⁹ South African Council of Churches (SACC). Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v02730/051v03004.htm>

about injustice and violence. Key leaders of the SACC around the country have been detained, banned, brought to trial and even, in some cases, killed. In 1988 the SACC building in downtown Johannesburg was bombed and so extensively damaged that the organisation had to move to new premises.

The SACC has played an important role in helping promote negotiations - even though a strong lobby within the delegates at recent conferences called for this role to be replaced by the 'prophetic' role of denunciation which the SACC played for many years. It also has a strong involvement in voter education and the promotion of democracy and has helped facilitate a series of ecumenical peace monitors.

2.1.2 African National Healers Association

Founded in 1989, the Traditional Healers Organization ("The THO"), is an independent, non-profit, non- statutory, professional organization for Traditional Health Practitioners. Membership amounts to over thirty-nine thousand (39 000) Traditional Health Practitioners with networks in some parts of Africa. The THO focus on the preservation of traditional healing and customs throughout Africa. They claim to be the true custodians of culture and belief. The website describes their objectives as follows:

- The setting -and maintaining of mandatory standards of traditional healing in South Africa through cultural heritage.
- Establishing a working relationship with private organisations and companies with the like-minded objective of promoting traditional medicine and traditional healing in South Africa.
- To develop and manage knowledge-and management systems in South Africa.

The following organisations are members:¹⁰ Africa Aloe, African Traditional Medicine association, Department of Agriculture, forestry and Fisheries, Ditlareng Ro Fola, ECD Practitioners, Esbie Group Projects, Ethnomedicine Practitioners association of SA, Gauteng Traditional and Faith Medical Practitioners, House of Aloes, Hypnotherapy & Ethnopsychology Association of South Africa, Ikgala Traditional Health Practitioners, Indalo Institute (Research on African Traditional Medicine). Indigenous Knowledge of South Africa Trust, Ithongo Institute of Traditional Healing, Kara Heritage Institute, Mphutungwane Consulting Services, National Traditional Healers Union, National Unitary Professional Association for Traditional Health Practitioners of SA, Nemore, Pelongwe Wellness Retreat and Spa, Phande Rabangoma Herbal Clinic (Pty) Ltd, Phuti Ya Bokone Indigenous Health Practice, SABS Commercial Soc Ltd, Shoprite Checkers (Pty) Ltd., Traditional Healers Organisation, Traditional Medicine System Organisation, Tshwane Traditional Healers, Tshwane University of Technology, Usizo Lwanamuhla Community HIV and AIDS Consultation, Vuthsilo Traditional Healers Forum, Vutshilo Traditional Healers Forum. Xhayimpi Institute, Zifozonke and Traditional Healers Association.

The organisations are listed to confirm the author's observation pertaining to their member organisations which is inclusive of:

- National, regional, and local organisations.
- Government and Private Sector
- Academic research institutions

This is evident of the enormous support the 'industry' of traditional healing holds as well as the fact that the 'industry' is organised and managed – contrary to the general image held by non-black South Africans.

¹⁰ Traditional Healers Organisation. List of Members. Available at: https://www.sabs.co.za/Business_Units/Standards_SA/SABSTAN/STANDARDS_DEVELOPMENT/Membership/M1097.PDF

2.1.3 South African Pagan Rights Alliance (NPC)

‘Pagan’ was derived from the Latin ‘pagani’ meaning ‘rural’ and ‘pagus’ meaning ‘country-district, used to describe rural civilians of Rome in the early fourth century who had not converted to Christianity.

South African Pagan Rights Alliance (SAPRA), a religious organisation established in 2008. In terms of section 5 of the Civil Union Act No. 17 of 2006, members are authorised as religious marriage officers to solemnise both same-sex and heterosexual marriages. SAPRA is a participating member of the Witchcraft and Human Rights Information Network (WHRIN).¹¹ The website described the organisational goal as follows:

The South African Pagan Rights Alliance (NPC) offers free, practical assistance on basic legal issues, including social welfare, employment disputes, infringement of and discrimination against personal legal and constitutional rights, and provides referrals to formal legal representation where necessary.¹²

2.2 Customary vs Roman-Dutch Law

The status and recognition of the South African demographics of religious and ethnic pluralism were dramatically transformed after the endorsement of the new Constitution. African Traditional Religions and customary law received equal status as the Roman-Dutch law, previously the only recognised judiciary system.

The result of this decision impact several additional legislations e.g.:

¹¹ The Witchcraft & Human Rights Information Network is an international organisation promoting awareness of human right violations due to witchcraft practices. Available at: <http://www.whrin.org/mission/>

¹² SAPRA. Available at: <https://paganrightsalliance.org/about-sapra/>

2.2.1 Labour Law: Basic Conditions of Employment Act No. 75 of 1997 and the Traditional Health Practitioners Act No. 22 of 2007

The mentioned legislation stipulates legal study leave for religious purposes including initiations (rite of passage, traditional healer/sangoma training and initiations in the craft etc.) and recognition of Traditional healer medical certificates for sick leave privileges.

2.2.2 The Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council

The Health Professions Act 1974 initiated the Health Professions Council.¹³ The council was inaugurated in February 2013 and the Traditional Health Practitioners Act (May 2014) confirmed the Council's authority. The Council is a professional body established by Parliament, with delegated authority to register practitioners to issue medical certificates within the framework of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act. The South African Medical Journal confirmed the traditional health practitioner's authority to issue medical certificates.¹⁴

2.2.3 Traditional Health Practitioners Act, Act No. 22 of 2007

The Act was Gazetted on January 10, 2008 (No. 30660). The Act aims to achieve the following:

To establish the Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council of South Africa, to provide for a regulatory framework to ensure the efficacy, safety and quality of traditional health care services; to provide for the management

¹³ Owen, Salmon. (2020) *Laws Regulating the Practice of all Health Practitioners. Law Made Simple – Compliance for Business, Citizens and for our Government*. Available at: <https://lawfulliving.co.za/book/text/health--health-practitioners.html>

¹⁴ Tshehla, Boyane. SAMJ Vol 105, No. 4 (2015) *Traditional health practitioners and the authority to issue medical certificates*. Available at: <http://www.samj.org.za/index.php/samj/article/view/9217>

and control over the registration, training and conduct of practitioners, students and specified categories in the traditional health practitioners profession, and to provide for matters connected therewith.¹⁵

The Act confirms the constitutional recognition given to traditional healers given the fact that in contrast to conventional scientific, traditional healing is not supported by scientific research. The Act defines traditional health practice as follows:

The performance of a function, activity, process, or service based on a traditional philosophy that uses indigenous African techniques and principles that include traditional medicine or practice, including the physical or mental preparation of an individual for puberty, adulthood, pregnancy, childbirth, and death.

In total, there were about 190 000 such practitioners in 2007. Spiritual or faith healers, at least equally if not more prevalent and important than are traditional health practitioners in South Africa, were not included.¹⁶

The Act acknowledges the following Traditional Health Practitioners

- herbalists (*izinyanga* or *amaxhwele*),
- diviners (*izangoma* or *amagqirha*),
- traditional surgeons (*iingcibi*) who mainly do circumcisions, and
- traditional birth attendants (*ababelethisi* or *abazalisi*).

Traditional healers are allowed to issue valid medical certificates if they are registered with the Traditional Health Practitioners Council of South Africa. This confirmed their recognition as health professionals in the South African law. Employers are thus obliged by law to accept medical certificates issued by a Sangoma, Igqirha, or Ngake.¹⁷ Registered healers are allowed to practice

¹⁵ Traditional Health Practitioners Act. Act No. 22 of 2007. Government Gazette, January 10, 2018. Available at: http://us-cdn.creamermedia.co.za/assets/articles/attachments/11034_tradhealpraca22.pdf and https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201409/a22-07.pdf

¹⁶ Peltzer, Karl (August 25, 2009) *Traditional health practitioners in South Africa*. The Lancet Comment. Volume 374, Issue 9694, P. 956-957, September 19, 2009. Available at: [https://www.thelancet.com/journals/lancet/article/PIIS0140-6736\(09\)61261-7/fulltext](https://www.thelancet.com/journals/lancet/article/PIIS0140-6736(09)61261-7/fulltext)

¹⁷ Freedman, Lianne (October 13, 2017) *Traditional healer (Songoma) medical certificates*. BusinessBrief, an African-based content forum. Available at: <https://www.bbrieff.co.za/2017/10/13/traditional-healer-sangoma-medical-certificates/>

medicine, excluding treatment of terminal illnesses such as HIV/AIDS and cancer, according to Jonker.¹⁸

Application example: Case Law Kievits Kroon Country Estate (Pty) Ltd vs Mmoledi and Others (2014) All SA 636 (SCA):¹⁹

Ms. Mmoledi, a chef de partie at Kievits Kroon Country Estate, applied for five weeks unpaid leave in order to finalise her qualification as a Sangoma. The request was declined because the **“high pressure environment”** at the estates three kitchens could not afford her absence.

Ms. Mmoledi presented two letters from Mrs. Agnes Mamoreroa Masilo who confirmed that Mmoledi was **“diagnosed to have premonitions of ancestors”** and that she will receive treatment for a specified time period to **“complete her initiation school final ceremony to become a traditional healer.”** Kievits Kroon Country Estate declined the application for leave regardless the letters.

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA), Labour Court, Labour Appeal Court and eventually the Supreme Court of Appeal were all in consensus that the employer (Kievits Kroon Country Estate) should not have declined leave and should not have dismissed the letter from the Sangoma (Mrs. Agnes Mamoreroa Masilo) motivating the employee’s application for leave.

¹⁸ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her ‘sangomahood’ through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria.

¹⁹ Freedman, Lianne (October 13, 2017) *Traditional healer (Songoma) medical certificates*. BusinessBrief, an African-based content forum. Available at: <https://www.bbrieff.co.za/2017/10/13/traditional-healer-sangoma-medical-certificates/>



Figure 1: The default interpretation of a sangoma is often a traditional person in sangoma-attire sitting on the floor of a mud hut. Contemporary sangomas are often also modern, literate, qualified individuals working in professional environments. Lerato Khambule is a sangoma and sales administrator at a security company. Regardless her sangoma-power, she was afraid to report rape to the SA Police Service. This illustrates the different levels of authority in a spiritual realm.²⁰

²⁰ Daily Sun (August 22, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *I'm afraid to open case*

My ex-lover used muthi on me!

By LETHABO KHAMBULE

ACCORDING to Eunice Shibambu, her ex-boyfriend used muthi on her and it nearly killed her.

The 49-year-old from Roodepoort, Mogale City, said she dated the man for almost a year until she was admitted to hospital in 2017.

Eunice said when she first met her ex-boyfriend, he seemed perfect.

But it wasn't long before she started becoming suspicious. Eunice, who worked for an insurance company, said he often asked her for money.

"He stopped coming to see me during the day and only wanted us to meet at his house at night. There was muthi at his house, but it didn't bother me much because different people have different beliefs," she said.

"But as things continued, he started demanding I use the muthi. He would rub my feet with it. That's when I tried to call it quits, but he refused."

Eunice said on the night she was admitted to hospital, her boyfriend gave her what he claimed was holy water.

"I had hip pains and he offered me holy water. A short while later, I started having unbearable stomach cramps and I begged him to take me to hospital. He left me there and didn't visit me or call to check up on me."

Eunice said doctors didn't know what was wrong with her.

"I called him and said I'd open a case against him because he was trying to kill me. But he just laughed.

"He said there was nothing I could do about muthi. But with prayer, I recovered."

When the SunTeam contacted the man, he said Eunice was a liar.

"I broke up with her because she was very disrespectful, calling me names and swearing at me," he said.

Sangoma Joseph Dungamnzi said the use of muthi was common in relationships.

"People are evil. They use all kinds of muthi on their partners. While others use love portions, others lock their partners not to find love elsewhere," he said.

Eunice Shibambu says she survived muthi because of prayer.

Photo by
Lethabo
Khambule

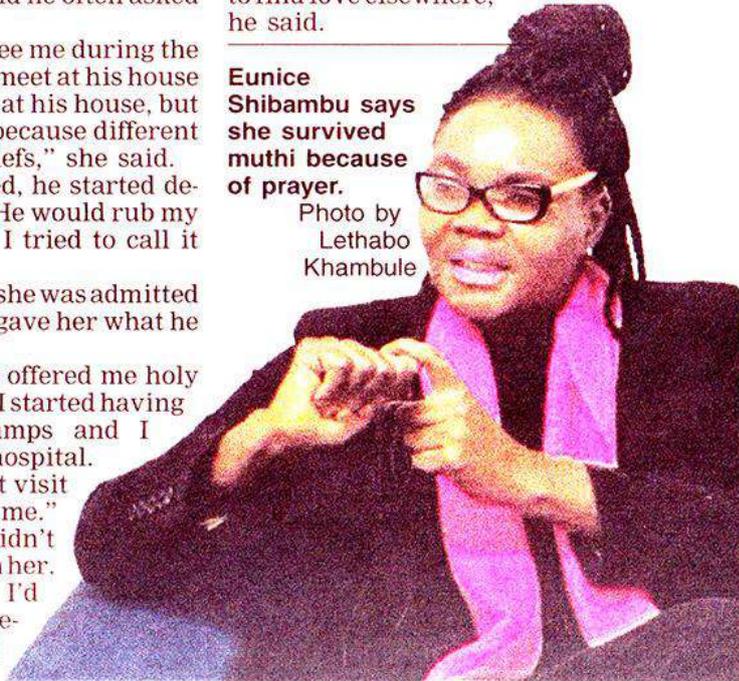


Figure 2: Traditional spirituality is not limited to the illiterate or uneducated. Individuals in professional careers accepts traditional spirituality incorporated as a reality of life. Eunice Sjobambu works at an Insurance Company. Holy water and muti was used to curse her. She overcame by prayer. This article provided evidence that Christians or people of faith can be cursed. Discernment and knowledge of spiritual warfare and the power in the Name of Jesus Christ is the only avenue to be set free.²¹

²¹ Daily Sun (July 13, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *My ex-lover used muthi on me!*

2.2.4 The International Labour Organization (ILO)

The International Labour Organization (ILO)²² defined Traditional Medicine Practitioners as follow:

Traditional medicine practitioners treat human mental and physical sickness by herbs, medicinal plants and other techniques traditionally used in the community, and believed to cure and heal by assisting or stimulating nature, and advise on methods to preserve or improve health and well-being.

Traditional Medicine Practitioners tasks include the following:

- (a) treating sickness and injuries using herbs, medicinal plants, insects, and other traditional techniques used in the community believed to cure and heal by assisting or stimulating nature;***
- (b) advising community and individuals on proper diet and behaviour to preserve or improve health and well-being;***
- (c) performing related tasks;***
- (d) supervising other workers.***

Examples of the occupations includes:

- ***Healer, drugless treatment***
- ***Healer, herbal***
- ***Healer, village***
- ***Naturopath***

2.2.5 The South African Skills Development Act

South Africa uses a 'Organising Framework for Occupations' referred to as OFO Codes to categorise all recognised occupations. This classification is applied to capture all occupations according to a code, in order to catalogue, determine hierarchical levels of responsibilities, skills, and knowledge within an organisation. The codes accommodate spirituality as follows:

²² ISCO International Standard Classification of Occupations. (September 18, 2004) 3241. Traditional Medicine Practitioners. International Labour Organization. Available at: <https://www.ilo.org/public/english/bureau/stat/isco/isco88/3241.htm>

OFO Code	Job Classification
2017-223105	Traditional African Medicine Practitioner
	Diagnoses, assesses and treats patients
	Specialisations:
	Sangoma Diviner
	Inyanga Herbalist
	Traditional Birth Attendant
	Traditional Surgeon
2017-233106	Traditional Chinese Medicine Practitioner
	Diagnoses, treats and prevents physical
	Specialisations:
	Oriental Medicine Practitioner
	Chinese Herbal Medicine Practitioner
	Sangoma
	Chinese Medicine Practitioner
	Herbalist (Chinese)
	Unani Practitioner

Table 1: OFO Codes

3. RELIGIONS AND SPIRITUALITY PRESENT IN CONTEMPORARY SOUTH AFRICA

3.1 South African Population

The available statistics indicated the following:

	2011 Census²³	Stats SA's 2019 Mid-year Estimation Total SA Population 57.73 million²⁴	
Black People	79,2 %	47 443 259	80.7%
White People	8,9 %	4 652 006	7.9%
Coloured People	8,9 %	5 176 750	8.8%
Indian Asian People	2,5 %	1 503 007	2.3%
Other	0,5 %		0.3%

Table 2: South African Population

Authors note:

The census included Indian, Chinese, Japanese and other Oriental people in the same category. According to Stats SA 2019 mid-year estimation the Coloured population exceeded the White population for the first time in the history of South Africa.

The 1950 Population Registration Act classified South African Chinese as 'coloured'. The Constitutional Court ruling in 2008 determined the South African Chinese community to be classified as 'black' in terms of the Employment Equity Act and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment in order to benefit the community in terms of Affirmative Action legislation. This is an indication of the complexity of the South African populous.

With reference to languages, the available statistics indicated the following:

²³ Census 2011 Population. Available at: <https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P03014/P030142011.pdf>

²⁴ South African Population. Available at: <http://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P0302/P03022019.pdf>

	2011 Census ²⁵	Stats SA's Community Survey 2016 ²⁶	Distribution of language in South Africa 2018 ²⁷	
			Outside Household	Inside Household
IsiZulu	22.7%	24.6%	25.1%	25.3%
IsiXhosa	16%	17%	12.8%	14.8%
Afrikaans	13.5%	12.1%	9.7%	12.2%
Sepedi	9.1%	9.5%	9.7%	10.1%
SeTswana	8%	8.8%	9.4%	9.1%
English	9.6%	8.3%	16.6%	8.1%
SeSotho	7.6%	8%	7.8%	7.9%
XiTsonga	4.5%	4.2%	2.4%	3.6%
SiSwati	2.5%	2.6%	2.6%	2.8%
TshiVenda	2.4%	2.4%	2.2%	2.5%
isiNdebele	2.1%	1.6%	1.3%	1.6%
Other			0.5%	1.9%
Khoi, Nama and San Languages			0.1%	0.1%
				57,73 m

Table 3: Distribution of South African Languages²⁸

²⁵ Census 2011 Languages. https://unstats.un.org/UNSD/demographic/sources/census/wphc/South_Africa/ZAF04-Census2011.pdf

²⁶ South African Languages 2016. Available at: <https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/pocketguide/03-South%20Africa%27s%20People-1718.pdf>. Official Guide to South Africa 2017/18 South Africa People

²⁷ <https://www.statista.com/statistics/1114302/distribution-of-languages-spoken-inside-and-outside-of-households-in-south-africa/>

²⁸ South Africa Yearbook 2018/19 Land and its people. African Zion Christian churches. <https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/yearbook/yb1919-1-Land-and-its-People.pdf>

3.2 South African Religions

Parrinder distinguished the three so called “living religions in Africa” as Traditional African Religion, Christianity, and Islam. In addition, the author also recognises Hinduism, Judaism, New Age as main religions.

The author evaluated Buddhism as a minor but relevant faith. The growing number of Chinese residents and especially the rapid expansion of Chinese commerce and the South African international trade relations with China implies that the various Chinese religious affiliations demands recognition.

The 2001 census²⁹ reported the following pertaining to Christianity:

79,8 percent of the population profess that they are followers of a form of Christianity. Among the Christian population,	
Roman Catholics	8.9%
Methodists	7.4%
Pentecostal churches	7.3%
Reformed churches	7.2%
Anglicans	3.8%
Lutherans	2.5%
Presbyterians	1.9%
Congregational churches	1.4%
Other churches	12%
African independent churches have a membership of 40,8 percent of the total Christian population.	

Table 4: Religion: Christianity

²⁹ Census 2001 Religion. Available at: <http://www.statssa.gov.za/census/census2001/primarytables/RSAPrimary.pdf>

The majority of South Africans affiliated to Christianity (79.8%). This included all denominations as well as the African Independent Churches. The independent African Zion Christian churches predominate, being the faith of 15.3% of the total population, and 19.2% of all Christians.³⁰

According to the 2016 Stats SA's Community Survey 43 423 717 South Africans indicated that they adhere to the Christian faith. African Independent Churches represent 40.8% of the reported Christian faith and an additional 12% of people associated with religion aligned with the Traditional African Faith.

3.2.1 Roman Catholicism in South Africa

Roman Catholic seafarers erected crosses along the South African coastline in the 1400's and in doing so established Roman Catholic presence in South Africa. Portuguese Roman Catholic Church is acknowledged as one of the major Christian denominations internationally and in South Africa (Census 2011). The author found it imperative to disclaim the opinion that the Roman Catholicism is not considered to be a Christian denomination. To substantiate the opinion, the following comparison is presented:³¹

³⁰ South Africa Yearbook 2018/19 Land and its people. African Zion Christian churches. <https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/yearbook/yb1919-1-Land-and-its-People.pdf>

³¹ (i) Krämer, Klaus (April 21, 2019) *The main differences between Catholics and Protestants*. DW.com. Available at: <https://www.dw.com/en/the-main-differences-between-catholics-and-protestants/a-37888597>;

(ii) *Myths about Indulgences*. Catholic Answers. Available at: <https://www.catholic.com/tract/myths-about-indulgences>

(iii) Del Rosario, Mikel (January 28, 2014) *7 Key Differences Between Protestant and Catholic Doctrine*. Available at: <https://voice.dts.edu/article/7-key-differences-between-protestant-and-catholic-doctrine-del-rosario-mikel/>

Roman Catholicism	Christianity
Roman Catholic traditions and declarations are recognised as supplementary to the Bible.	The Bible as defined by Luther is accepted as “Sola Scripture”. The only accepted, authoritative and true Word of God.
The Roman Catholic Old Testament includes the 7 additional books. ³²	The Protestant Old Testament contains 39 books. Luther and the Reformists were not convinced of the original Hebrew script of seven of these books and therefore they were removed.
“Catholic” implies an “all embracing Church”. Thus, it appeared that they are perceived to be the only true church worldwide.	Church emerged from the Reformation. “Evangelical” meaning “according to the gospel” recognising a variety of denominations as Christian.
The Pope is recognised as the successor of Peter, head of the church and appointed by Jesus. The unbroken chain of succession justifies the Papal assertions.	According to Christianity, the papal is dogma and a contradiction to Biblical teaching.
Beginning with the Pope, the continuous chain delegates authority. The Sacrament of the Holy Orders bestows sacramental	Recognises the five-fold ministry (Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastors and Teachers according to Ephesians 4:11-13 ³³) and the office of

³² (i) Coffman, Elesha. (August 8, 2008) *Why are Protestant and Catholic Bibles different?* Available at: <https://www.christianitytoday.com/history/2008/august/why-are-protestant-and-catholic-bibles-different.html>; and

(ii) Dittmer, Damian (June 12, 2018) *Why did Martin Luther take 7 books out of the Bible?* Available at: <https://www.quora.com/Why-did-Martin-Luther-take-7-books-out-of-the-Bible>

³³ Ephesians 4:11-13 (NKJV) And He Himself gave some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some pastors and teachers, for the equipping of the saints for the work of ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ, till we all come to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to a perfect man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ;

authority to bishops, priests, and deacons to rule over ordinary people.	King, Priest and Prophet. (Hebrews 1:1-3 ³⁴) and the duty of Elders and Deacons (Titus 1:5 ³⁵)
Consubstantiation: The Holy Communion, once consecrated by the Priest, is believed to become the body and blood of Christ. Non-Catholics are not allowed to partake in communion.	The bread and wine only symbolise and commemorate the body and blood of Jesus Christ. Every believer is allowed to part take in communion.
Seven solemn rites or sacraments. baptism, confirmation, the Eucharist, matrimony, penance, holy orders, and extreme unction.	Only two sacraments. (Baptism and communion) are considered to be Biblical.
Roman Catholic Liturgy celebrates Mary and Jesus' relationship. Mary, mother of Christ is revered as the mother of all Christians. ³⁶	Mary is not at all recognised as a holy person. Jesus Christ is the only salvation for sin. Continues indwelling of the Holy Spirit means a constant relationship and immediate and direct prayer communication with God. Mother and child worship are found in Babylon, old-Germany, Scandinavia, India and Sumerians. And in Egypt (Isis and Horus). was Mary, mother of Jesus Christ received as the Queen of

³⁴ Hebrews 1:1-3 (NKJV) God, who at various times and in various ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets, has in these last days spoken to us by *His* Son, whom He has appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the worlds; who being the brightness of *His* glory and the express image of His person, and upholding all things by the word of His power, when He had by Himself purged our sins, sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

³⁵ Titus 1:5 (NKJV) For this reason I left you in Crete, that you should set in order the things that are lacking, and appoint elders in every city as I commanded you—

³⁶ Catechism of the Catholic Church. Available at: http://www.vatican.va/archive/ccc_css/archive/catechism/p123a9p6.htm

	Heaven. Prayers are believed to be conveyed through Mary. ³⁷
Pope Pius IX declared Mary without sin by a decree in 1854. ³⁸	All humans are born with a sinful nature. Only Jesus Christ was without sin.
Pope Pius XII confirmed the sinless ascension of Mary ³⁹	Not considered Biblical
Veneration of Saints as holy individuals. Prayers are believed to be conveyed through holy saints.	The Triune God; Father, Son and Holy Spirit the only Holy deity worthy of adoration. Continues indwelling of the Holy Spirit means a constant relationship and immediate and direct prayer communication with God.
Justification is a process, depending by the grace received by participating in the church.	Christians are justified only because of Christ's sinless death and not by participation in church activities. It is single act. Sanctification is a continues process of conformity to become more Christ-like.
Indulgence: The remission before God of temporal punishment due to sins whose guilt has already been forgiven. The church is authorised to 'temporal punishment for sin'. ⁴⁰	Indulgence was one of the main disagreements Martin Luther had with the Roman Catholic Church. It was

³⁷ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Râdâh Ministries. P. 11

³⁸ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Râdâh Ministries. P. 12

³⁹ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Râdâh Ministries. P. 13

⁴⁰ (i) *What are indulgences*. Catholic Straight Answers. Available at: <https://catholicstraightanswers.com/what-are-indulgences/>

Indulgences reduce time in purgatory.	rejected by the reformist and found to be unbiblical. ⁴¹
Members are motivated to pray the Rosary Confraternity of prayers in devotion of Mary at least once a week. ⁴² The Rosary focus on the incidents in the life of Jesus and Mary. ⁴³	Christianity is founded on relationship with God. Relationship is not confined to prescribed text. The Bible criticise vain repetition of words. (Matthew 6:7 ⁴⁴) Prof. Dr. Brand also reminded of the origin in Japan Buddhism, Tibet, and India. ⁴⁵
Purgatory: ⁴⁶ The Catechism of the Catholic Church (CCC) 958 and 1032 confirms prayers for the departed to assist them and to contribute to their intercession for the living. ⁴⁷	Protestant Christianity rejects Purgatory.

Table 5: Catholic vs Christianity

(ii) *Myths about Indulgences*. Catholic Answers. Available at: <https://www.catholic.com/tract/myths-about-indulgences>

⁴¹ Zucker, Dr. Steven & Harris, Dr. Beth (2012) *An introduction to the Protestant Reformation*. Available at: <https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/world-history/renaissance-and-reformation/protestant-reformation/a/an-introduction-to-the-protestant-reformation>

⁴² *The Rosary*. Catholic Answers. Available at: <https://www.catholic.com/tract/the-rosary>

⁴³ *The Rosary*. Rosary Center & Confraternity. Available at: <https://www.rosarycenter.org/homepage-2/the-rosary-confraternity/>

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Râdâh Ministries. P. 12

⁴⁴ Matthew 6:7 (NKJV) And when you pray, do not use vain repetitions as the heathen *do*. For they think that they will be heard for their many words.

⁴⁵ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Râdâh Ministries. P. 12

⁴⁶ What is Purgatory? The place where departed souls go to prepare to fully enter the presence of God. Fr. Saunders confirmed nothing unclean will enter the presence of God in Heaven. Most people die with venial sins or other transgressions lingering on their souls. Catholicism's hold the belief of a living communion between the living members and departed members who are in the glory of Heaven or who are yet being purified after their death. Douglas, Cathi (March 22, 2019) *What is Purgatory?* Available at: <https://occatholic.com/what-is-purgatory/>

⁴⁷ Tan, Michelle (November 2, 2020) *Why Catholics Pray for the Dead?* The Catholic News. Available at: <https://catholicnews.sg/2020/11/02/why-catholics-pray-for-the-dead/>

3.2.2 Christianity in Africa

South Africa was considered the most missioned region in the world in the 19th century.⁴⁸ This statement should not create the impression that Christianity is foreign to Africa and introduced by European colonial expansions. Ancient Alexandria, Egypt, and the Carthage in Proconsular Africa (Current Tunisia) were familiar with Christianity. The church of Alexandria was the first to translate the Bible into Greek and officially brought Christianity to Ethiopia in the middle of the fourth century.⁴⁹

According to legend, Christianity was brought from Jerusalem to Alexandria on the Egyptian coast by the apostle Mark in 60 A.D. Christian communities in North Africa can be considered as some of the earliest in the world, and at the time considered to be the religion of dissent against the expanding Roman Empire. Christianity was declared the official religion by the Ethiopian King Ezana in the 4th century and for the Roman Empire by Emperor Constantine in 312.⁵⁰ The Portuguese arrived in Sub-Sahara Africa in the 15th century, establishing Roman Catholic presence. Christianity, like Islam, brought about change in Africa. It confirmed the power of some and negated the power of others.

An abbreviated history of denominations presented in South African society is presented in a similar order of size according to membership portrayed in the 2011 census.

3.2.2.1 African Independent Churches (AIC)

The African Independent Church (AIC) should be distinguished from African

⁴⁸ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

⁴⁹ Gibellin, Rosino (1994) *Paths of African Theology*. New York: Orbis Books. P. 9

⁵⁰ The Story of Africa. Available at: https://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/africa/features/storyofafrica/index_section8.shtml

Traditional Religion (ATR). The AIC inherently believes that the ultimate fulfilment of Christianity is only possible from an African perspective. It is the practice of Christianity in the context of African customs, rituals and believes constituted on a cultural foundation.

ATR is often clan-based and includes fundamentals such as creation myths, ancestor veneration, rituals, sacred places, moral codes, and the principle of Ubuntu⁵¹. Sangomas and Inyangas are prominent figures.⁵²

According to the 2011 census, African independent churches count for 40,8% of the total Christian population. Most of the AIC churches are Zionists, Apostolic or Pentecostal. In addition, given the broader population of South Africa, it would be reasonable to assume a large percentage of all English-speaking churches consist of Black South Africans.

This statistic is not available because churches do not differentiate membership based on race. It would therefore not be possible to estimate the percentage of Black Christian South Africans incorporated in main denominations. This would also be inappropriate if the differentiations are not presented in all four official groups. (Coloured, Indian, Black, and White), and secondly, Christianity should not draw any differentiation of people, especially based on race.

Gibellini⁵³ criticized the emphasis on 'African', or African Theology because of the prominence to the location (Africa) as well as culture, religions, and civilizations. He demanded the right to disassociate from these sub-texts in discussing or debating the truth of Christianity. He did however, acknowledged that **"all**

⁵¹ Broodryk, Johann Dr. (2007) *Understanding South Africa – The uBuntu way of living*. Publiself Publishers. Waterkloof, Pretoria: P.60, 110. Ubuntu: The African concept of humanness, Pan African loyalty to Africa. Ubuntu includes eight basic values: Compassion, forgiveness, responsibility, honesty, self-control, love and perseverance.

⁵² Elion, Barbara & Strieman, Mercia (2002) *Clued up on Culture. A Practical Guide for All South Africans*. Camps Bay: One Life Media CC. P. 37

⁵³ Gibellini, Rosino (1994) *Paths of African Theology*. New York: Orbis Books. P. 10

theology is culturally and socially situated.⁵⁴

Although 80% of the South African population claims to be Christian it is important to evaluate this broad definition of Christianity. It questioned limited success in educating the church on true Biblical principles in contrast to the incorporation of cultural practices such as ancestral worship. Christianity and African religions achieved a synthesis in their dual existence. Many African Christians are living a juxtaposed life where they are essentially Christian on the one hand and on the other hand essentially traditionally African. African Independent Churches represent 40.8% of the reported Christian faith.

The renewed focus on the re-establishment of African identity and black consciousness movements impacted the development of black churches under the banner of the AIC, the African Independent/Indigenous/Initiated Churches.

Although the growth of the AIC is no longer politically motivated after the 1994 election, it is suggested that the membership now exceeds membership of mainline churches and denominations.

African Independent Churches were founded by Africans for Africans in our special African situations. They have all African membership as well as all African leadership. Some were founded by Africans in reaction to some feature of the Christianity of missionary societies; most were founded among those people who had known Christianity the longest. (Appian-Kubi 1979:117)⁵⁵⁶

- The AIC has exclusively African membership.

This statement highlighted the debate on the definition of 'African'. In this instance African accommodates only Black Africans. White South Africans,

⁵⁴ Gibellin, Rosino (1994) *Paths of African Theology*. New York: Orbis Books. P. 19

⁵⁵ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

⁵⁶ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

descendants from Europe, are not included as being African. Regardless the fact that they have a history of 300 years on African soil.

- The theology and doctrine vary widely. Christianity is included in many, whilst others accommodate a more animistic ritual.
- Informal homes (Shacks), open spaces, homes, or shelters are accommodated as places of worship.

Research done by the University of Pretoria acknowledged the difference between Indigenous and Independent churches within the AIC. Indigenous Churches resembles a complete exodus from anything related to Christianity in favour of traditional African religions compared to the Independent Churches who retained some elements of Western or missionary Christian churches.



Figure 3: Google maps street view image of site visited by author: Circular church and prayer spaces alongside a road North of Pretoria is a typical Independent Indigenous church. Mr. Reuben Makhubo confirmed during an interview and site visit that only men are allowed to attend this sanctuary. For this reason, the author did not trespass to take photos and had to rely on Google Street Maps: Street View.⁵⁷

The AIC successfully transformed the traditional concept of fear for the ancestors and replaced it with a sense of love, respect, and positive sentiments. The

⁵⁷ Google Street Map: John Vorster Road, Pretoria. Available at: <https://goo.gl/maps/TVdAtLJuKGw7JfuA6>

emphasis of their function as mediators between the believers and God assist in the dilution of fear.

The AIC accommodates three categories based on origin:

- The Ethiopian cluster of churches inspired by similar churches in the United States. Although they made significant contributions to the African liberation movement in reaction to political oppression, they resemble more of the doctrines of mainline religions compared to the other two groups.
- The Zionist originated from contact with the Christian Catholic Church based in Illinois and especially Zion City established by John Alexander Dowie.
- John Lake and Thomas Hezmalhalch of the Apostolic Faith Church in the USA played a significant role in the establishment of the third group, the Apostolic API's. Glossolalia was emphasised in their teachings. Evidence of their influence are found in almost 80% of the AIG churches which added "Zion" to their names. The Zionist and Apostolic movements accommodated more African culture and religion compared to Ethiopian Churches, to the extent that some AIG churches prefer to distance themselves from called "Zionist" because some Zionist churches excelled to embrace African religions to the extent that they have little resemblance to Christianity.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) is a result of these developments. The ZCC accommodates ancestral worship and does not impose restrictions on members with regards to sacrifices to ancestors.

The AIC' churches assimilated the traditional African customs and rites. Theron identified the following as "manifestations of divine guidance":

that the faithful possess the Holy Spirit, exorcism of demonic forces, healing practices and the ability to interpret dreams. Water baptism resembles traditional ritual cleansing rites and is considered to strengthen the bonds

of fellowship among the congregation members. It is also regarded as a form of protection for faithful followers. These Africanised concepts, customs and rites have resulted in a Christianity with a distinctive African fingerprint.⁵⁸

Fellowship, and the community of caring are underlined by the African concept of “Ubuntu”. It is considered as a contributing factor for the decline in membership in mainline churches compared to the constant growth of the AIC churches.

This sense of ubuntu and brotherhood within the AIC’s is one of the reasons why ancestor veneration remains a significant element in these churches.⁵⁹

The assimilation of African religion suggest that African religious leaders prioritised African indigenous traditions and culture above the Biblical principles. This also portray the close relationship between culture and religion. The pluralistic integration of Christian truths such as the working of the Holy Spirit and faith healing are often combined with ancestral worship. This syncretism provided individual members the freedom to participate in rituals according to their own discernment and conviction.

The argument that available Bible study tools generally depict Western cultural contexts and the consequent unfamiliarity experienced by some African cultures is also valid. The author noted the delicate balance between contextualising the Bible according to the original cultural context and accommodating African tradition in extrapolating Biblical truths, especially with reference to Bible study tools. Dr. John Jusu⁶⁰ presented the example of an African preacher presenting the analogy of a vending machine as per his study guide. This was a foreign concept to his villagers, only reachable by foot. The second example pertains to the interpretation of idolatry described in Isaiah 44. Western interpretation refers

⁵⁸ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

⁵⁹ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

⁶⁰ *5 Reasons Why Context Matters in Biblical Resources*. Oasis International Ltd. Available at: https://oasisinternational.com/content/uploads/2019/10/5ReasonsWhyContextMatters_v3.pdf

to abstract images such as sport, money, beauty etc. In an African context idolatry and fetishes are more concrete – even Bibles are used as a charm. The concept of a god manifesting power through a physical object is prevalent. The Africa Study Bible (ASB) noted the following:

“Some people talk about God as if he can be influenced in the same way that African traditional religions used fetishes to try to influence their deities.... Our God is fully free and sovereign, and no ritual, object, or incantation has any influence over his actions. The thing that merits his attention is when we call to him in earnest prayer”.



Figure 4: This article illustrates the juxta relationship between the profession of a Inyanga (Traditional healer) while being a church member— African Traditional Spirituality and Christianity.⁶¹

⁶¹ Daily Sun (July 9, 2019) Vilakazi, Zimbili. *The Zombies taught Sizwe not to steal*.

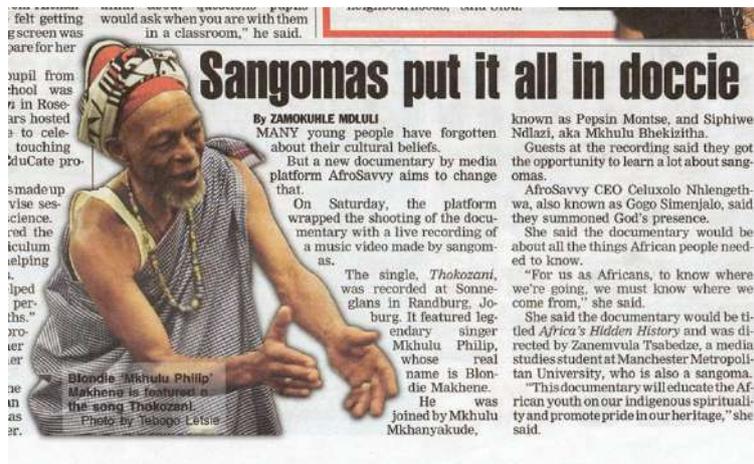


Figure 5: Juxta between acknowledging God and Traditional African Spirituality. The Sangoma acknowledged God in the promotion of culture. This article also acknowledged the renewed emphasis on 'blackness', African culture or the renewed African Nationalism.⁶²



Figure 6: Integration of spirituality portrayed in the same newspaper publication: Christians worshipping God in spite of rain, the commitment of parents to initiation schools to perform the tradition 'rite of passage, Muthi power, Witchcraft-Vutha fire" and services of Sangomas. Gobela Grace identified the three most popular requests by clients: 'killing partners over money or cheating, eliminating colleagues over positions at work and ukuthwala ('calling money) for quick money and wealth.⁶³

⁶² Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Sangomas put it all in doccie*.

⁶³ Various newspaper articles from the Daily Sun Newspaper on December 9, 2019.

3.2.2.2 An Abbreviated History of the Methodist Church in South Africa

In Southern Africa, several churches claim Wesleyan affiliations. This study accommodated an abbreviated historic reflection pertaining to the denomination called the Methodist Church of Southern Africa (MCSA). This Wesleyan group is the largest Methodist denomination in Southern Africa.⁶⁴

- 1795 Earliest record of Methodist presence among the British soldiers at the Cape
- 1806 Methodist chapel build by soldiers near Table Mountain.
- 1814 Rev. J. McKenny, first missionary appointed in response to an appeal from British soldiers. He was refused permission to preach and relocated to Ceylon.
- 1816 Rev. Barnabas Shaw and his wife established the first mission station by at Leliefontein, Namaqualand.
- 1820 Rev. William Shaw gathered his first congregation at Salem, then at Grahamstown later that year, and other areas along the Eastern Cape coastline.
- 1823 Revs Samuel Broadbent and Thomas Hodgson established the first mission station in the then Transvaal, at Makwassie
- 1830 Shaw planed sex more stations between the Fish and Umzimvubu Rivers
- 1834 Shaw bought land in Somerset West and accommodated emancipated slaves

⁶⁴ Bentley, W. (2014) Methodism and transformation in South Africa: 20 years of constitutional democracy. HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies 70(1), Art. #2673, 8 pages. Available at: <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/2673/5397>

- 1834 Shaw published his Xhosa grammar concord, critical to the understanding of the language
- 1842 Rev. James Archbell expanded Methodist to Natal
- 1846 A Methodist station established at Warmbaths
- 1859 J.W. Appleyard translated the Bible into Xhosa
- 1861 First church built.
- 1865 Grahamstown District Meeting accepted five African candidates for the ministry
- 1867 Land is bought at Driefontein, northwest of Pietermaritzburg. And there began a ministry of lay evangelism which opened the way for expansion into northern Natal.

Natal was the mission to Indians who were imported as indentured labourers from 1861. Rev. Ralph Stott, fluent in Tamil, reached Durban in 1862. He spent seventeen years in ministry that bore little fruit at the time but laid the foundations of a small but faithful Christian community.

- 1883 Rev. John Kilner, a secretary of the Missionary Society in South Africa responsible for formation of the Transvaal District, as an Affiliated Conference, the acceptance of seventy-five candidates for the African ministry and the decision to form a South African Conference. The conference received full independence in 1927

Member increases:

21 993 in 1883

10 1393 in 1917

120 658 in 1910

largest increase was of African members:

18 582 in 1883,

83 766 in 1917 and

98 223 in 1930

- 1885 The premier Methodist foundation was Healdtown, selected by Governor Sir George Grey as the site of an industrial training school. It became a teacher training centre and, in the 20th century the high school where Nelson Mandela completed his schooling
- 1888 School at Indaleni has provided not only schooling for African children but also a training college to train teachers. Prestigious Methodist schools in the area are Epworth, a school for girls, built by a group of Methodists in Pietermaritzburg
- 1921 Kearsney College for boys built by Sir Leigh Hullett in 1921.
- 1930 149 African members of whom 5 were in retirement.
- 1958 The Church declares that "it is the will of God for the Methodist Church that it should be one and undivided, trusting to the leading of God to bring this ideal to ultimate fruition, and that this be the general basis of our missionary policy."
- 1964 The first Black President of Conference, Rev. Seth Mokitimi, takes office.
- 1967 - Peter Storey, superintendent minister at the Inner-City Methodist
1971 Mission in Cape Town, 'launched *My brother and me*, a pioneering diversity training programme for blacks and whites in South Africa, in order to integrate the first white members into the District Six congregation'⁶⁵

⁶⁵ Mtshiselwa, Ndikho (2016) *Two hundred years of Methodism! A black theological inquiry into the heritage of Methodism in Southern Africa 1816-2016*. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1017-04992016000300007&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

- 1968 The United Methodist Church was created in 1968 with the merging of the Evangelical United Brethren Church and the Methodist Church. This brought together both White and African- American congregations (Bloom and Gilbert). The United Methodist Church is organized by the General Conference, the Judicial Council, and the Council of Bishops. There is no single leader; all groups work together (Bloom and Gilbert).⁶⁶
- 1976 The first woman, Rev. Constance Oosthuizen, is Ordained to the Ministry of Word and Sacraments.
- 1981 Obedience 81, we search our hearts for what the Lordship of Jesus Christ means. The assembly is brought to repentance for wounds inflicted on each other by our insensitivity, bitterness and fear.
- 1982 Rev. Dr. M. Stanley Mogoba becomes the first Black Secretary of Conference.
- 1986 The powerful Malihambe (Let it Spread) Home Mission programme is born and begins to make a significant impact on Circuits in the Connexion
- 1988 Conference appoints its first 3-year term Presiding Bishop, Rev. Dr. M. Stanley Mogoba. The MCSA received back, members, Ministers and churches of the United Methodist Church the Transkei which had broken away ten years prior.
- 1993 The Journey to a New Land conference takes place as a Connexional Conversation which became the foundation of some new thinking and new structures in the Church. The Federal Theological Seminary which had formed Clergy for Churches in

⁶⁶ *Apartheid & the Methodist Church*. The Anti-Apartheid Movement in North Texas. Available at: <https://blog.smu.edu/theanti-apartheidmovementinnorthtexas/history/apartheid-the-methodist-church/>

Southern Africa over many decades with great distinction, closes at the end of 1993.

- 1948 - Conference was consistent in its opposition to the policy of
1994 Apartheid
- 1995 The Connexion appoints its first Lay President, Mr. Zandile Jakavula.
- 2000 Rev. Purity Malinga becomes Bishop of the Natal Coastal District, the first woman in the Methodist Church of Southern Africa to hold this office
- 2005 The first Mission Congress takes place, leading to a Mission Charter
- 2008 Opening of the Seth Mokitimi Theological Seminary in Pietermaritzburg.
- 2015 - 40 years of ordaining women to the ministry of word and
2016 sacrament
- 2016 - Celebrated our heritage and 200 years of Methodism in Southern
2017 Africa
- 2017 - Declared the year of Unity remembering the 1958 statement of
2018 Conference. A decade as Methodists, One and Undivided.

The United Methodist Church was also vocal about South Africa's human rights abuses and were concerned for the people of South Africa.

Methodism is well known in the South African context, especially in the rural areas. It is known for its progressive role in building communities and

facilitating processes, which on the one hand exposed injustice, but also served as instruments of communal healing and reconciliation.⁶⁷

According to Storey, the system of apartheid was synonymous to sin since the apartheid system inflicted injustice and pain on other people.⁶⁸

Storey's valuable contribution to Methodism in Southern Africa is embodied in his call for transformation and justice. He viewed the church as an agent of transformation and justice. Therefore, it is important to highlight Storey's conviction that at the heart of the unity of black and white people was the call for justice. The call for unity is inseparable from the pursuit of transformation and justice for all human beings.⁶⁹

The contribution of Makgatho in the legacy of Methodism in South Africa is noteworthy. Not only did he oppose the oppression of black people who were on the periphery of society, he also affirmed the dignity and value of all human beings, and more importantly of black South Africans, including the women.

3.2.2.3 An Abbreviated History of the Pentecostal Churches in South Africa⁷⁰

The Assemblies of God (AOG), the Apostolic Faith Mission (AFM), and the Full Gospel Church of God (FGC) are Pentecostal Churches accommodating 75% of

⁶⁷ Bentley, W. (2014) *Methodism and transformation in South Africa: 20 years of constitutional democracy*. HTS Theologiese Studies/Theological Studies 70(1), Art. #2673, 8 pages. Available at: <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/2673/5397>

⁶⁸ Mtshiselwa Ndikho (2016) *Two hundred years of Methodism! A black theological inquiry into the heritage of Methodism in Southern Africa 1816-2016*. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1017-04992016000300007&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

⁶⁹ Mtshiselwa Ndikho (2016) *Two hundred years of Methodism! A black theological inquiry into the heritage of Methodism in Southern Africa 1816-2016*. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1017-04992016000300007&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

⁷⁰ Frahm-Arp, Maris (October 3, 2018) *Pentecostalism, Politics, and Prosperity in South Africa*. Available at: <https://www.mdpi.com/2077-1444/9/10/298/htm#B35-religions-09-00298>

the South African Black Population, according to Allan Anderson's⁷¹ research done in 1998. It also includes new Pentecostals and 'Charismatic' churches associated with previous 'white-dominated' churches such as the International Fellowship of Christian Churches (IFCC), the Zion Christian Church, the St. Engenas Zion Christian Church, the St John Apostolic Faith Mission, and the Nazareth Baptist Church.

A fundamental finding in Anderson's research indicated Pentecostalism inclusiveness of Christian fundamentalism and especially of interest for this research, the African religion, and the ZCC church in particular.⁷²

Pentecostalism inclusiveness of African religion and popular artefacts and their emphasis on the doctrine of the Spirit contributed to their growth into a major feature of South African Christianity. In addition, increased urbanization could also have contributed to the growth.

This finding pertaining to growth correlated with research twenty years later, done by Maria Frahm-Arp⁷³ in 2018. Her research found the Pentecostal Charismatic Evangelic (PCE) Christianity as the fastest growing religious movement in South Africa. She founded her research on sermons and interviews with 97 pastors based in Johannesburg.

The apartheid government policy of 'non-interference' in the affairs of Black churches provided the opportunity for the ZCC (Zion Christian Church) to operate independently since their registration in 1943. Participation in trade unions and civic associations were primary avenues to express political convictions

⁷¹ Anderson Allan, (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham. Available at: <http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>

⁷² Anderson Allan, (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham. Available at: <http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>

⁷³ Frahm-Arp, Maris (October 3, 2018) *Pentecostalism, Politics, and Prosperity in South Africa*. Available at: <https://www.mdpi.com/2077-1444/9/10/298/htm#B35-religions-09-00298>

compared to lesser direct involvement in politics. A 1992 survey indicated 45% support for the ANC.

Participation of the Pentecostal and Zionist churches at the Truth and Reconciliations Commission⁷⁴ empathized not only their credibility in the South African context, but also their significance in the life of South Africans. Lekganyane (ZCC) attended but did not participate in person.

Unlike the other churches, the bishops' spokesperson did not confess past failings, but expressed concern about the violence and crime in the nation and asked for the temporary return of the death penalty.⁷⁵

This request reflects their Biblical justification of the death penalty.

Both the IFCC and the AFM made representations to the TRC on behalf of Pentecostal and Charismatics who 'hid behind their so-called spirituality while closing their eyes to the dark events of the apartheid years'.⁷⁶

Isak Burger and Frank Chikane jointly accepted responsibility for the past and the apartheid agony. Political resistance manifested in the 'Black' Pentecostal churches demanded recognition of leadership. Chikane, former General Secretary of the South African Council of Churches (SACC) is as a prominent Pentecostal leader who fought against apartheid within and outside church structures. Political resistance was also evident in the following:

- 50% of signatories in The Evangelical Witness⁷⁷ of 1986 were Pentecostals.

⁷⁴ Truth and Reconciliations Commission (TRC) was established by the Government of National Unity with the purpose to reconcile South Africans with reference to violence and human right violations during Apartheid. Available at: <https://www.justice.gov.za/trc/>

⁷⁵ Anderson Allan, (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham. Available at: <http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>

⁷⁶ Anderson Allan, (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham. Available at: <http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>

⁷⁷ The Evangelical Witness: A document developed by Concerned Evangelicals in reaction to the political conservatism in Evangelicalism.

- The Relevant Pentecostal Witness⁷⁸ as a reminder of the non-racial origins of the Pentecostal movement.
- The Rustenburg Declaration of 1990⁷⁹
- The independent Pentecostal Tshwane Christian College provided shelter for white students expelled from white campuses as a result of participation in anti-apartheid actions.

The new cluster of churches functioned in loose associations defined by similar emphases along with a continuum of prosperity teaching. Prosperity encompasses abilities prosperity, progress prosperity and miracle prosperity.

Many forms of African Pentecostalism have liberated Christianity from the foreignness of European cultural forms. A sympathetic approach to African life and culture, fears and uncertainties, and an engagement with the African world of invisible forces, have been major attractions of these churches to people oriented to a world of both evil and good spirits. This is accentuated in the South African Black townships today, where rapid urbanization and industrialization have thrown people into a strange, impersonal, and insecure world where they are left groping for a sense of belonging.⁸⁰

The author perceived this finding of Anderson as reflective of the adaptability of the Pentecostal Church. The author also judges inclusiveness of any culture, (including, but not restricted to the traditional African culture) in addition to Biblical principles, to be equal to false teaching and idolatry. Culture may never be incorporated in the principles of God's Word. Prideful elevation of culture is idolatry. The author aligned with the firm viewpoint of Reverent Africa Mhlophe⁸¹ who stated:

You cannot privatize God or claim to have some knowledge about Him that is not confirmed by Scripture. The Bible is God's revelation of Himself.

⁷⁸ The Relevant Pentecostal Witness: A document focusing on the Pentecostal stance against apartheid. Available at: <https://www.strasbourg-institute.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Relevant-Pentecostal-Witness.pdf>

⁷⁹ The Rustenburg Declaration: A document by the National Conference of Church Leaders held in South Africa in November 1990, calling for the end of Apartheid and the creation of a democratic society. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/archive/rustenburg-declaration>

⁸⁰ Anderson Allan, (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham. Available at: <http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>

⁸¹ Mhlophe, Afrika (2013) *Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestors*. Belville: Salt Publishers. P. 17

Although God has also revealed Himself through nature, the Bible remains His primary revelation.

Frahm-Arp's research (2018) disagreed with Anderson. She stated the four fundamental key characteristics of the Johannesburg Pentecostals churches who participated in her research:

- Openness to engage with the Holy Spirit, including prophetic gifts.
- They are born again, acknowledging Jesus Christ as saviour.
- An understanding of the Kingdom of God vs the Kingdom of Satan, including the reality of the manifestation of demons.
- They rejected ancestor veneration and demanded that members distance themselves from their African heritage.

The author noted a possible progression in the pure administering of the Word of God between the studies of Anderson and Frahm-Arp.

According to Anderson, the Zambian Pentecostal President Chiluba's proclamation of Zambia as a 'Christian nation' in 1991 encouraged their resolve that by the power of the Spirit they could substantially mobilize the invisible forces of the Spirit to occupy and manifest the Kingdom of God.

This was confirmed by with an interview that the author conducted with Zambian pastor Beatrice Kavui Kawatu in 2019. She elaborated on the fact that Zambia has been declared a Christian nation. National days of prayer and fasting replaced ancestor veneration which almost disappeared from the public space. Individuals who are still follow this belief proceed 'almost in secrecy'.

3.2.2.3.1 An Abbreviated History of the Apostolic Faith Mission in South Africa

In a country humiliated and impoverished by the Anglo-South African War of 1899-1902, a spiritual awakening became evident in 1908. As no existing

church welcomed the revival in their ranks, God used John G. Lake and Thomas Hezmalhalch to start a new movement, the AFM in May 1908. Because of the openness to the work of the Holy Spirit and a strong missionary focus, the movement grew with leaps and bounds.⁸²

The Pentecostal Revival came to Africa very early in this century. Many believe that Andrew Murray, that grand old preacher and writer of the Dutch Church in South Africa paved the way for the Pentecostal Revival. His teachings on prayer, divine healing and the Holy Spirit made many hearts hungry.⁸³

The AFM of SA is included in the classical Pentecostal Movement, originated in the 20th century. It is considered to be the oldest Pentecostal Church in South Africa, and currently the largest with 1.4 million members. It is also considered to have been the fastest growing denomination of Christianity in South Africa.⁸⁴

- 1806 Revival in the Dutch Reformed Church laid the foundation for the Apostolic Movement.⁸⁵
- 1874 Second revival led to the 1876 Dutch Reformed Church Synod to appoint a Commission for Special Evangelical Services. Rev. Andrew Murray and Rev. Servaas Hofmeyr were requested to undertake evangelical journeys.⁸⁶
- 1908 American missionaries John G. Lake, Thomas Hezmalhalch and A. Lehman arrived in South Africa. The AFM movement began with the first meeting in Doornfontein, Johannesburg.

⁸² History of the Apostolic Faith Mission of South Africa. Available at: <https://afm-ags.org/about-us/history-of-the-afm/>

⁸³ Atter, Gordon Francis (1962) *"The Third Force": A Pentecostal Answer to the Question So Often Asked by Both Our Own Young People and by Members of Other Churches: "Who are the Pentecostals?"* Ontario: The College Press P. 53

⁸⁴ Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 96. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>

⁸⁵ Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 96. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>

⁸⁶ Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 105. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>

- 1913 Le Roux elected president of the AFM
- The AFM contributed to the establishment of the African Initiated Church.
- As the AFM adopted the "daughter churches" approach to missions from the Dutch Reformed churches, eventually the AFM was divided into four main groupings: the white parent church, a large black church, a coloured church and an Indian church.⁸⁷
- 1943 The AFM distanced itself from the black Zionist movement with its distinctive taboos and dress and began looking to the Dutch Reformed heritage and respectability.⁸⁸
- 1945 Elders and deacons introduced
- 1950's- Referred to as the fourth Afrikaans Church due to close relationship
1960's with the Dutch Reformed Church – regardless multiracial contingent.
- 1955 Close relationship with Afrikaner Nationalism with the vice-president Gerrie Wessels election as a National Party Senator.
- 1958 The church divided into Pinkster Protestante Kerk. (Pentecostal Protestant Church), October 10, 1958, recognised as the official constitution date.

Van der Merwe Burger⁸⁹ made the interesting observation that the majority of the

⁸⁷ Clark, M.S. (2005) `Two Contrasting Models of Mission in South Africa: The Apostolic Faith Mission and the Assemblies of God'. *Asian Journal of Pentecostal Studies* 8(1). PP. 144-145.

⁸⁸ Maxwell, David (1999) *Historicizing Christian Independency: The Southern African Pentecostal Movement, c. 1908-60*. *The Journal of African History*: Cambridge University Press. 40(2), 243-264. P. 252. Available at: <https://www.cambridge.org/core/journals/journal-of-african-history/article/abs/historicizing-christian-independency-the-southern-african-pentecostal-movement-c-190860/417C6788EA70524299783876D1C1AFA5>

⁸⁹ Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 144. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>

AFM initial members were white, Afrikaans speaking South Africans – the ‘Poor Whites’ after the Boer War. He is of the opinion that the English-speaking South Africans were financially less effected by the war. Poorer communities associated with the church more in comparison with more affluent communities. Prime Minister Hertzog complimented the church for two major contributions to the history of South Africa; the upliftment of the poor white community and the reconciliation between Afrikaners and British.⁹⁰

Van der Merwe Burger credited the Zionist as the organisation who contributed the most in establishment of the Apostolic Faith Mission. Specific reference is made to research done by Bengt Sundkler titled “Zulu Zion” (1948) and “Bantu Prophets in South Africa” (1961). Three individuals who were specifically influential were Johannes Buchler, Daniel Bryant, and P.L le Roux.

The current president, Pastor M.G. Mahlobo elaborated as follows:

The AFM can be distinguished by two inseparable characteristics: The baptism in the Holy Spirit and the Great Commission. We received the Holy Spirit and His power to be missional. (Acts 1:8) That’s why we refer to our assemblies as apostolic communities and our members as apostolic agents. Towards the year 2020, we endeavour to inspire and mobilise our whole church to take the whole gospel to the whole world.⁹¹

3.2.2.3.2 Pentecostal Revival in the Indian Community⁹²

Concentrated in Natal, with a few in Transvaal and Cape, are more than 80 congregations of the Bethesda group of churches. The majority of Indian members (35 000) comprises of one third of the Christian Indian community. They

⁹⁰ Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 148. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>

⁹¹ The Apostolic Faith Mission of South Africa. Available at: <https://afm-ags.org/>

⁹² Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) *Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans*. University of South Africa. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents. P. 257/P. 2 - P. 261/P. 6

are an independent denomination in their own right with local and international associations.

Prior to Bethesda founding in 1931, the missionaries of the Anglican, Methodist, and Roman Catholic churches restricted their ministries to educational and social upliftment programmes and the provision of medical service during 1880-1890 in the midst of an anti-Indian sentiment in South Africa.

In 1922 John Alexander Rowlands, a Quaker⁹³ evangelist and businessman from Bristol, England, arrived in Pietermaritzburg. He established the Natal Trading Milling Company and established a relationship with the Full Gospel Church, one of three biggest Pentecostal denominations in South Africa. Rowlands and Ebenezer Theophilus, an Indian greengrocer and kindred spirit in commitment to holiness and piety, found the churches in Pietermaritzburg restrictive. As a result, they established the "The United Pentecostal Mission of Natal". The first service was conducted on July 17, 1925. Due to racial segregation, it was mostly attended by Indians.

Evangelism in the Indian barracks led to rapid growth and new believers travelled to Pietermaritzburg to be baptised. Baptists, Anglican, and Methodist members also joined his church. Rowlands affiliated his new church with the Full Gospel Church in South Africa. A.H. Cooper ordained Rowlands a minister on November 13, 1931. Rowlands held his first baptismal service on the banks of the Umgeni

⁹³ Quaker Movement: (i) The Religious Society of Friends, also referred to as the Quaker Movement, was founded in England in the 17th century by George Fox. He and other early Quakers, or Friends, were persecuted for their beliefs, which included the idea that the presence of God exists in every person. Quakers rejected elaborate religious ceremonies, didn't have official clergy and believed in spiritual equality for men and women. History.com Editors (October 8, 2019) *Quakers*. A&E Television Networks. Available at: <https://www.history.com/topics/immigration/history-of-quakerism>

(ii) Quaker Movement in South Africa: It is speculated that the first members on South African soil were whale catchers who visited Table Bay around 1800. Smaller groups gathered for worship as they numbers increased. Assistance were rendered with Emily Hobhouse Reports in the concentration camps during the second Boer War. Reports were communicated directly to the London Parliament in 1901. Official recognition in South Africa were received in 1946. *Quakers in South Africa*. Ancestor South Africa. Available at: <https://www.ancestors.co.za/quakers-in-south-africa/>

River on March 20, 1932.

In 1933 the church moved into its first 'temple' – a large shop in Grey Street. Bethesda Temple was the first of several 'temples' in the Natal Indian settlements. Twice yearly 'campaigns' were held lasting a week each. At the peak of the revival in the 40's, a few campaigns lasted more than 100 days. Service attendances increased between 1933 and 1968. Zeal and enthusiasm after basic Bible education resulted in the establishment of new Bethesda congregations across Natal. ***"The revival flame had been constantly fanned by persecution, but there has been no looking back"***, according to Rowlands.⁹⁴ Campaign services included three services a day, with 24h prayer chains, followed by large baptise services – often as many as 300 per service.⁹⁵ By 1956 over 50 branches across Natal and Zululand had been established.

Although Rowlands was the visionary whilst the actual evangelistic work was done by the individual members. Pillay described it as a ***"mission by Indians to Indians"***⁹⁶ Rowlands initiated over 200 "Gospel Campaigns" in the first 21 years of Bethesda. Sermons were known to end with an invitation to the congregation to 'commit' or 're-dedicate' themselves to Christ. The author is of the opinion that his success is partially due to the fact that Indian cultural identity (music and dress code) and love for India were embraced.

In 1921, 63% of all Indians in South Africa were native to South African, the number increased to 82% in 1936. Indian language of Tamil, Telegu and Hindi

⁹⁴ Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) University of South Africa. Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) *Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans*. University of South Africa. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents. P. 260/P. 5

⁹⁵ Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) *Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans*. University of South Africa. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents. P. 26/P. 6

⁹⁶ Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) *Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans*. University of South Africa. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents. P. 261/P. 6

were included in short homilies.

3.2.2.4 An Abbreviated History of the Reformed Churches: Protestantism

3.2.2.4.1 Significant Dates Prior to the Arrival of Christianity in the Cape

1177 Petrus Waldes from the South of France translate the Bible to French. He initiates a society of lay preachers to spread the gospel.

14th Century John Wiclif, an Oxford professor in Theology translated the Bible from Latin into English. He rejected the Roman Catholic teachings and in return the Roman Catholic rejected him in 1382.

Johannes Hus, professor in Theology at the University of Prague propagated Wiclif's views. The Roman Catholic Church condemn him to be burned at the stake.

15th Century Savonarola, an Italian monk from Florence criticized the Roman Catholic Church. In reaction he was tortured, hanged and burned in 1598

Geert Grote initiated the "Broeders des Gemenen Levens" – smaller Bible study groups propagating a pious lifestyle of dedication to Christ. The created to opportunity to teach the Gospel of Christ in their mother tongue Dutch.

Wessel Gansfort, a member of the Broeders des Gemenen Levens travel to spread the gospel. He was called 'Lux Mundi' (Light of the World) and was highly regarded by Luther.

- 1483-1546 Martin Luther
- 1484-1531 Huldreich Zwingli
- 1504-1575 Heinrich Bullinger
- 1509-1564 Johannes Calvin
- 1515-1572 John Knox
- 1618-1619 Dordrecht Synod

Dordrecht Synod's resolutions is the foundation of the South African Churches. Kriel and Gardener⁹⁷ presented the positive results from the synod as follows:

- Bible Translation
- The Truths of the Reformation were formalised in three articles:
 - ✓ The Belgium Confessions
 - ✓ The Heidelberg Catechism
 - ✓ The Dordrecht Confession of Faith

3.2.2.4.2 The Development of the Three Main Afrikaans Churches⁹⁸

- 1652 Jan van Riebeeck arrived in the Cape
- 1688 French Huguenots arrived in the Cape
- 1795 Napoleon war. Britain annexed the Cape
- 1802 Treaty of Amiens. Cape returned to Dutch rule
First minister, J.A. de Mist arrive.
- 1806 Final Britain

⁹⁷ Kriel, L.M. & Gerdener, G.B.A. (1924) *Kerkgesiekiedenis vir ons volk*. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, Beperk, Drukkers en Uitgewers. P. 104

⁹⁸ D'Assonville, V.E. (1980) *Kerkgeskiedenis in 30 lesse*. Promedia Publikasies. P.

- 1824 First Synod in the Cape
- 1937 Cape Synod (Reformed Church) reprimand the Boers pertaining to the pending departure from the Cape.⁹⁹
- The Graaf Reiniet Ring restricted ministers to present the Baptism and Communion to the trekkers. Fundamentally they placed the trekkers under disciplinary /censorship.¹⁰⁰
- 1938 Groot Trek depart to the interior
- 1846 Name of the Reformed Church in the Cape formally changed to the “Nederduitsch Gereformeerde Kerk Genootskap” (Dutch Reform Church)
- 1838 – Cape Church provided no ministry to the Groot Trek Boers.
1846
- 1847 Reverent Erasmus Smit arrived to minister to the Boers in Natal
- 1847 Cape Dutch Reform church decided to send a minister once a month to the Free State after Sir Harry Smith colonised the Free State. The Free State was once again under the Jurisdiction.
- 1849 Reverent Andrew Murray permanently to Bloemfontein (Free State) appointed by Sir Harry Smith.
- 1854 Free State Independence. The Nederduitsch Gereformeerde became the official denomination. The Free State government responsible for the salaries of the ministers.¹⁰¹
- 1853 The Transvaal Boers Professor still had no ministers. Rev. Lutz (Netherland) arranged for reverent Dirk van der Hoff to be sent to the Transvaal Boers.

⁹⁹ D’Assonville, V.E. (1980) *Kerkgeskiedenis in 30 lesse*. Promedia Publikasies. P. 91

¹⁰⁰ Spoelstra B. Dr. (1975) *Beknopte Kerkgeskiedenis vir Katkisasie*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege. P. 90

¹⁰¹ Spoelstra B. Dr. (1975) *Beknopte Kerkgeskiedenis vir Katkisasie*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege. P. 91

- 1853 Political independence of the Transvaal also implied independence from the Cape with regards to Church affiliation. The Transvaal Boers agreed to accept the 'Nederduitse Hervormde Kerk' as the Transvaalse Staatskerk (Official State Church.) (In contrast to the Nederduitsch Gereformeerde State Church of the Cape)
- 1853 Two Afrikaans Churches existed: The Cape 'Nederduitsch Gereformeerde Kerk' and the 'Nederduits Hervormende Kerk' as the Transvaal Staatskerk
- 1858 First seminary of the Nederduitsch Gereformeerde in Stellenbosch¹⁰²
- 1858 Nederduitse Hervormde Kerk officiated as the official Church of the Transvaal Republic.¹⁰³
- 1859 A third Afrikaans Church: Gereformeerde Kerk founded at Rustenburg. Rev. Dirk Postma the first minister.
- 1865 First Synod in Natal represented by 4 churches Pietermaritzburg, Ladysmith, Weenen, and Greytown.
- 1869 Gereformeerde Theological School opened in Burgersdorp. The Gereformeerde Church was the only church who did not receive Government financial assistance. Members contributed to open and sustain the school which relocated to Potchefstroom in 1956.
- 1886 The Nederduits Hervormde Kerk and Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk in Transvaal amalgamated. Nederduitse Hervormde

¹⁰² Kriel, L.M. & Gerdener, G.B.A. (1924) *Kerkgesiekiedenis vir ons volk*. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, Beperk, Drukkers en Uitgewers. P. 146

¹⁰³ Kriel, L.M. & Gerdener, G.B.A. (1924) *Kerkgesiekiedenis vir ons volk*. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, Beperk, Drukkers en Uitgewers. P. 149

churches not in agreement with the amalgamation continued under their original name.¹⁰⁴

3.2.2.5 An Abbreviated History of the Anglican Church in South Africa

The Anglican Church of Southern Africa is an independent Church included in the Anglican Communion. The Anglican Communion originated in Britain and spread with colonialism and organised missions. The Anglican Church of South Africa Province is the oldest in Africa. It now comprises of 29 dioceses in South Africa. It includes the Foreign and Commonwealth Office (St. Helena and Tristan da Cunha), Mozambique (Lebombo and Niassa), the Republic of Namibia, the Kingdom of Lesotho, the Kingdom of Swaziland and Angola.

The Church is a member of the World Council of Churches, the South African Council of Churches and the All African Council of Churches.¹⁰⁵

- 1795 Military Chaplains accompanied British soldiers to the Cape
- 1806 The first Anglican Worship meeting in Cape Town. Robert Gray the first bishop consecrated.
- 1821 William Wright, the first missionary called the Society of the Propagation of the Gospel arrived in the Cape. He opened a school in Wynberg.
- 1821 Francis Owen sent to the Royal residence of the Zulu King Dingane. Owen witnessed Dingane's massacre of the Voortrekkers on December 16, 1838.

¹⁰⁴ Spoelstra B. Dr. (1975) *Beknopte Kerkgeskiedenis vir Katkisasie*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege. P. 94

¹⁰⁵ Anglicans Online: South Africa. Available at: <http://anglicansonline.org/world/za.html>

- 1847 First Bishop appointed with the establishment of the Anglican Diocese of Cape Town. It included the Cape, the Free State, Natal and the Island of St Helena.
- 1853 Bishop Robert Gray appointed as the Metropolitan (Archbishop) of South Africa.
- 1870 Churches organised in self-governing Province of the Anglican Communion.
- 1982 Name of church changed to Church of the Province of Southern Africa
- 1985 Desmond Tutu elected as Bishop of Johannesburg 1986-1986
- 1986 Desmond Tutu elected as Archbishop of Cape Town 1986-1994
- 1996 Desmond Tutu chairman of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission¹⁰⁶
- 2006 Name of church changed to Anglican Church of Southern Africa

3.2.2.6 An Abbreviated History of the Lutheran Church in South Africa¹⁰⁷

Lutheranism in South Africa developed from two main sources; firstly, from the work of Lutheran missionaries that ultimately led to the establishment of

¹⁰⁶ Truth and Reconciliation Commission was established by the Government of National Unity to address human right violations and related atrocities of the apartheid. The TRC was affirmed with the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act No. 34 of 1995. Available at: <https://www.justice.gov.za/trc/> Tutu proposed that the TRC adopt a threefold approach: the first being confession, with those responsible for human rights abuses fully disclosing their activities, the second being forgiveness in the form of a legal amnesty from prosecution, and the third being restitution, with the perpetrators making amends to their victims. Allen, John (2006). *Rabble-Rouser for Peace: The Authorised Biography of Desmond Tutu*. London: Ebury Digital, Penguin Books. P. 344

¹⁰⁷ (i) Garaba, Francis and Zarvedinos, Annalise. (2014). *The Evangelical-Lutheran Church in South Africa: An introduction to its archival resources held at the Lutheran Theological Institute (LTI) Library, and the*

indigenous Lutheran churches and, secondly, from Lutheran settler congregations of German and Scandinavian background that also became independent Lutheran churches.

A total of ten different "Lutheran" mission societies engaged in mission work in Southern Africa. Five were from Germany, four from Scandinavia and one from America. Five main streams were the Rhenish Mission Society (RMS), Berlin Mission Society (BMS), the Norwegian Mission Society (NMS) and the Finnish Mission Society (FMS).

The Berlin missionaries in South Africa, particularly Merensky, Knothe, Trümpelmann, Schweltnus and Eiselen, contributed to the study of African languages, producing Bible translations and hymnals. It was at Botshabelo that the missionary R.F. Gustav Trümpelmann, with the invaluable assistance of his student, Abraham Serote, translated the Bible in Sepedi or North Sotho. The publication in 1904 by the British and Foreign Bible Society of this combined effort was the first complete Bible in an indigenous language.¹⁰⁸

- 1652 German Lutherans arrived in the Cape with permission to participate in the services of the Dutch Reformed Church but not to establish their own Lutheran churches.
- 1736 Mission work by the Moravian church in South Africa commenced
- 1804 First Congregation in the Cape.¹⁰⁹
- 1829 The Rhenish Mission Society (RMS) commenced with work in the Cape and later expanded to the German colony of South West Africa.

challenges facing this archive (Part One). *Missionalia*, 42(1-2), pp. 5-28. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0256-95072014000100002

(ii) Winkler, Harald E. (1989) *The divided roots of Lutheranism in South Africa: a critical overview of the social history of the German-speaking Lutheran missions and the churches originating from their work in South Africa*. Thesis. University of Cape Town. Available at: <https://open.uct.ac.za/handle/11427/15881>

¹⁰⁸ South African History Online. Botshabelo (April 18, 2019) Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/place/botshabelo>

¹⁰⁹ Spoelstra B. Dr. (1975) *Beknopte Kerkgeskiedenis vir Katkisasie*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege. P. 81

- 1834 The first missionaries of the, the Berlin Mission Society (BMS) arrived and established a mission station in Bethany in Orange River Sovereignty. With the expansion of the British Cape Colony to the east and the establishment of the Colony of Natal, mission work was started among the Tswana, the Xhosa and the Zulu peoples.
- 1844 The Norwegian Mission Society (NMS) commenced with work in Zululand, dividing into the Schreuder Mission in 1873 which was in turn taken over by the American Lutheran Mission (ALM) of the American Lutheran Church in 1927.
- 1854 The Finnish Mission Society (FMS) started among the Ovambo and Kavango in northern South-West Africa (Namibia)
- 1857 The missionaries of the Hermannsburg Mission Society (HMS) with members from farming and fairly poor backgrounds and the HMS aligned focus on rural areas. Work among the Zulu people in Natal commenced and expanded to the Tswana in the Transvaal Boer Republic in 1857.
- 1888 Founding of Congregations associated with the Berlin mission. the German Evangelical Lutheran Congregation (Friedenskirche). Other congregations in the Transvaal followed. The Berlin Mission their pastors. The BMS-supported German Lutheran congregations, (both in Natal and the Transvaal), formed the German Evangelical Lutheran Synod.
- 1854 Founding of the Hermannsburg Mission. The first mission station, Hermannsburg, became the first German Lutheran congregation. Other congregations followed in the Natal midlands (such as Harburg, Wartburg, New Hanover) and also in Northern Natal and in the Transvaal in the region of the Tswana mission (Kroondal, near Rustenburg, was established in 1896.)

- 1890/ Founding of the Congregations of Scandinavian Descent:
1900/ Descendants of the 19th century Scandinavian (mainly farmers,
1882 seamen, storekeepers, carpenters and wagon-builders) settled in South Africa. Pastoral services were rendered the mission societies (the CSM and NMS). Limited Scandinavian Lutheran settler congregations were established in Durban (1890), Johannesburg (1900) and Marburg (1882). All of these became English-speaking and later joined either ELCSA (Evangelical Lutheran Churches in Southern Africa) or ELCSA
- 1910 The Co-operating Lutheran Mission (CLM)
- 1949 Lutheran Publishing House produced Zulu-language catechisms and hymnbooks, and a common liturgy.
- 1950 Medical missions undertaken by the Lutherans in Natal. Lutherans operated ten mission-run hospitals.
- 1953 Formation of the Council of Churches on Lutheran Foundation (CCLF) that encompassed most synods of the Lutheran missions in the whole of South Africa
- 1960 Commencement of an Indian Committee
- 1964 Formation of the United Evangelical Lutheran Church in Southern Africa (UELCSA), comprising of the four white Lutheran settler churches - ELCSA-Transvaal, ELCSA-Hermannsburg, ELCSA-Cape and the DELK in SWA. The main aim: cooperate in establishing theological training facilities for an indigenous clergy.
- 1966 Formation of the Federation of Evangelical Lutheran Churches in Southern Africa (FELCSA). FELCSA included Lutheran churches from South Africa (also the Moravian church) as well as from Namibia, Zimbabwe, Botswana, and Malawi. The Council of Churches on the Lutheran Foundation united the Lutheran churches regarding

doctrine, but not organisationally and, with this aim in mind, FELCSA took over from the CCLF.

- 1967 CCLF affiliated churches comprised of 12 Lutheran churches, 8 mission bodies, and 2 Moravian churches. The CCLF loosely linked the churches and gave them a common doctrinal basis: affirmation of the Holy Scripture, the three ecumenical creeds, and the Lutheran Reformation texts, the Augsburg Confession and the Formula of Concord as foundational to their faith.
- 1981 Due to the overlap of congregations in Natal traditionally linked with the Berlin Mission and the Hermannsburg Mission, the two regional churches - ELCSA-Transvaal and ELCSA-Hermannsburg – united to form the ELCSA N-T

Lutheranism in South Africa developed from two main avenues; firstly, from the work of Lutheran missionaries that ultimately led to the establishment of indigenous Lutheran churches. Secondly, from independent Lutheran churches from Lutheran settler congregations of German and Scandinavian origin.

A total of ten different "Lutheran" mission societies engaged in mission work in Southern Africa. Five were from Germany, four from Scandinavia and one from America:

- The Rhenish Mission Society (RMS) commenced with work in 1829 in the Cape Colony and later expanded to the German colony of South West Africa.
- The Norwegian Mission Society (NMS) commenced with work in 1844 in Zululand, dividing into the Schreuder Mission in 1873 which was in turn taken over by the American Lutheran Mission (ALM) of the American Lutheran Church in 1927.
- The missionaries of the Hermannsburg Mission Society (HMS) with members from farming and fairly poor backgrounds aligned focus on rural areas. Work

among the Zulu people in Natal commenced in 1854 and expanded to the Tswana in the Transvaal Boer Republic in 1857.

- The Finnish Mission Society (FMS) started in 1854 among the Ovambo and Kavango in northern South-West Africa (Namibia)

3.2.2.7 An Abbreviated History of the Presbyterians Church in South Africa

The Presbyterian Church of Southern Africa (PCSA) originated amongst Scottish soldiers and Settlers who arrived after 1820. The Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa (RPCSA) was founded at the Lovedale Mission in Alice by Scottish missionaries intended for the indigenous African people. The two churches amalgamated in 1999 into the Uniting Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa (RPCSA).

1806 Britain sent Argyle and Sutherland Highlanders Regiment to the Cape as an occupying force.¹¹⁰

1812 Presbyterian minister Rev. George Thom from Scotland arrived in the Cape. He was introduced to the 93rd Scottish regiment initiative who formed a Calvinist society. Thom proceeded to form a congregation of the Presbyterian Church. The church was called "The Church of Christ" to accommodate members not originally affiliated with the Presbyterian church.

1820 Thomas Pringle formed a congregation and erected a church building in Glen Lynden, Eastern Cape.

¹¹⁰ Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa. Artefacts.co.za. Available at: http://www.artefacts.co.za/main/Buildings/style_det.php?styleid=1070

- 1821 Glasgow Missionary Society sent its first missionaries to work in the Eastern Cape.
- 1823 Eastern Cape Lovedale Mission opened under leadership of Rev. Dr. James Steward
- 1823 A presbytery was formed. The churches expanded rapidly in the Eastern Cape Front. The church divided into Kaffraria, Mankazana and Transkei.¹¹¹
- 1823 Rev. John Ross joined the Lovedale missionary.¹¹²
- 1824 Rev. Thorn's church re-established. The Church building completed in 1827.
- 1829 Church of St. Andrew, a district Presbyterian Church officiated in Cape Town.
- 1850 Presbyterian Church of Natal. Rev. William Campbell, from Scotland ordained in 1851.
- 1870/
1868 Additional churches in the SA interior after the discovery of diamonds in the Northern Cape and Gold in Transvaal.
- 1873 A general synod accepted that there was no scriptural ground for remaining an exclusively black church.¹¹³
- 1875 Mzimba was ordained and inducted to a charge in the Presbytery of Kaffraria at Lovedal

¹¹¹ Pillay, J. (2016). *Presbyterian Indians in South Africa*. HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies, 72(1), 7 pages. Available at: <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/3402/7928>

¹¹² Duncan, Graham (2009) *350 Years Reformed in South Africa: The contribution of the Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa*. Hervormde Teologiese Studies. 59. 10.4102/hts.v59i1.649. P. 47. Researchgate.net. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/45681439_350_Years_Reformed_in_South_Africa_The_contribution_of_the_Reformed_Presbyterian_Church_in_Southern_Africa. P. 47

¹¹³ Presbyterian Church of Africa. World Council of Churches. Available at: <https://www.oikoumene.org/member-churches/presbyterian-church-of-africa>

1897 Unification of a number of independent colonial congregations into the Presbyterian Church of South Africa.¹¹⁴

1897 First General Assembly in Natal organised by Rev. John Smith. The assembly consisted of the presbyteries of Cape Town, Natal, and the Transvaal; the white congregations of the Synod of Kaffraria (Free Church of Scotland) and the presbytery of Adelaide (United Presbyterian Church of Scotland); and the two independent congregations at Port Elizabeth and Kimberley. As this church expanded and included work in the countries north of South Africa, its name was also expanded to the Presbyterian Church of Southern Africa.¹¹⁵

The Free Church of Scotland favoured a single Presbyterian church containing all races and constitute parts of the mission. An independent black church hoped for greater influence in black communities given the political climate at the time.

1898 Presbyterian Church of Africa founded by Rev. James Phambani after he broke away from the Free Church of Scotland as a result of a disagreement between the black and white clergy.¹¹⁶

1907 The Synod of Kaffraria agreed to the formation of a black church¹¹⁷

¹¹⁴ Duncan, Graham (2009) *350 Years Reformed in South Africa: The contribution of the Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa*. Hervormde Teologiese Studies. 59. 10.4102/hts.v59i1.649. P. 47. Researchgate.net. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/45681439_350_Years_Reformed_in_South_Africa_The_contribution_of_the_Reformed_Presbyterian_Church_in_Southern_Africa. P. 48

¹¹⁵ Pillay, J. (2016). *Presbyterian Indians in South Africa*. HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies, 72(1), 7 pages. Available at: <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/3402/7928>

¹¹⁶ Presbyterian Church of Africa. World Council of Churches. Available at: <https://www.oikoumene.org/member-churches/presbyterian-church-of-africa>

¹¹⁷ Duncan, Graham (2009) *350 Years Reformed in South Africa: The contribution of the Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa*. Hervormde Teologiese Studies. 59. 10.4102/hts.v59i1.649. P. 47. Researchgate.net. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/45681439_350_Years_Reformed_in_South_Africa_The_contribution_of_the_Reformed_Presbyterian_Church_in_Southern_Africa. P. 49

Indian Congregations ¹¹⁸	
1953	First Missionary to Indian people
1958	First Indian Congregation at Merebank
1961	Indian Congregation at Northdale
1971	Indian Congregation at Tulgaat
1977	Merebank Indian congregation founded the Phoenix congregation. Others followed.
1999	Amalgamation of the various division as stated above.

3.2.2.8 An Abbreviated History of the Baptist Church in South Africa

The Baptist Union of South Africa's focus remains on regional affairs and less on National affairs. Autonomous churches functions within the following Regional associations: Baptist Northern Association (BNA - essentially the old Transvaal), Western Province Baptist Association (WPBA), Baptist Association of the Northern Cape (CABC), Border Baptist Association (BBA), Eastern Province Baptist Association (EPBA), Free State Baptist Association (CABC), Kwa-Zulu Natal Baptist Association (NBA).

1820	British Settlers arrived in the Cape. Eleven individuals associated with the Wesleyans. William Miller led the first worship gathering in Salem.
1832	William Davies, first ordained pastor sent by the Baptist Missionary Society arrived in the Cape.

¹¹⁸ Pillay, J. (2016). *Presbyterian Indians in South Africa*. HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies, 72(1), 7 pages. Available at: <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/3402/7928>

- 1834 Construction for the first church commenced in Grahamstown but was stopped due to conflict.
- Several Baptist Churches emerged in the Eastern Cape.
- 1850 Carsten Langhein and other German settlers migrated to the Cape.
- 1861 Carsten Langhein founded a congregation in Grahamstown.
- 1873 "Baptist Sustentation Fund" for home missions established to encourage the expansion to the South African interior.
- 1876 A Baptist Church founded in Cape Town. Charles Haddon Spurgeon the first pastor.
- 1876 German Baptist Assembly meeting in Hamburg appointed Carl Hugo Gutsche to service in South Africa. He built 25 churches in the Eastern Cape over a period of 25 years.
- 1877 Formation of the Baptist Union of South Africa
- 1888 The first Johannesburg Church founded after the discovery of gold
- Indian
- 1892 South African Baptist Missionary Society (SABMS) for Gospel outreach to the indigenous peoples
- 1894 South African Baptist magazine was established;
- 1898 Baptist Union existed of 3 033 "European" members and 172 "Native" members
- 1902 Rev. T. Rangiah arrived from India to introduce Baptism to the Indian labourers on the sugar plantations in Natal. The initial work was done independently from the Baptist Union.
-

- 1918 Baptist Union existed of 50156 "European" members and 4 185 "Native" members
- 1923 Rev. T. Rangiah from Natal applied to become a member of the Baptist Union and the Indian Baptist Association affiliated with the SABMS.
- 1928 Ernest Baker founded the "Baptist Bible School" funded from his personal contribution. The school lapsed in 1932.
- 1951 Baptist Theological College registered in Johannesburg.
- 1973 A branch of the College opened in Cape Town. The Cape Town Baptist Seminary
- 1973 Black pastors trained at the Baptist Bible Institute, Fort White near King William's Town.
- 1976 The Baptist Union amended affiliation with the South African Council of Churches from "Member" to "Observer". The Union never held membership or affiliation with the World Council of Churches.
- 2020 The denomination census indicated 562 churches and 36 711 members.

3.2.2.9 An Abbreviated History of the Congregational Churches

To oppose the perceived abuse of power by the State Church, the Congregational Churches were established in England during the Sixteenth Century. The Church recognize Jesus Christ as its head and the Holy Bible as the autonomous authority on all matters. The Separatists aimed to:

- Create a church based on the New Testament Church model.
- Appoint own ministers.
- Avoid the incorporation of elaborate garments and rituals.
- Replace the 'Book of Common Prayers' with earnest prayers of believers.
- Seek democratic life and organisation, simplicity and faith, intellectual freedom to follow the dictates of conscience enlightened by the Holy Spirit.
- Implement education equality, evangelistic purpose, missionary zeal, social passion, non-sectarian fellowship and unselfish devotion to the Kingdom of God.

Robert Brown defined the church as follows:

".. a company or number of believers which by a willing covenant made with their God, are under the government of God in Christ, and keeps is laws in one Holy Communion."

The United Congregational Church of Southern Africa (UCCSA – One Church in Five Countries) is member of the World Communion of Reformed Churches. The UCCSA developed from two strands: the London Missionary Society (LMS) and the American Board Missionaries (ABM). The UCCSA was officially founded in 1967. The United Congregational Church of South Africa (UCCSA) is a united transnational church, geographically located in the following countries: Botswana, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Zimbabwe.¹¹⁹

1799 Dr. Theodorus van der Kemp arrived in the Cape. (LMS) and establish the London Missionary Society in South Africa.

1801 First and established the first congregation. (LMS)

1817 Scottish missionary Robert Moffat arrived in South Africa. (LMS)¹²⁰

¹¹⁹ United Congregational Church of Southern Africa. Available at: <https://www.sasynod.org.za/about-sa-synod/history.html>

¹²⁰ School of Theology. History of Theology. Moffat, Robert (1795-1883) Pioneer Missionary and linguist in Southern Africa. Available at: <http://www.bu.edu/missiology/missionary-biography/l-m/moffat-robert-1795-1883/>

- 1835 Dr. Philip, superintendent, invited the American Board missionaries (ABM). Daniel Lindley and Newton Adams arrived in 1835.
- 1835 Founding of the Bantu Congregational Church of the American Board
- 1840 Moffat published the New Testament in Tswana¹²¹.
- 1841 Dr. David Livingstone arrived in Kuruman. (LMS)¹²²
- 1845 Livingstone married Mary Moffat, daughter of Robert Moffat
- 1859 The SMS mission near Bulawayo established as a result of a remarkable friendship between Moffat and Tswana king Mzilikazi.
- 1859 The Congregational Union of South Africa was founded.
- 1859 Moffat publish the complete Bible in Tswana in Kuruman
- 1967 The UCCSA founded
- 1967 United with the Bantu Congregational Church (ABCFM) to form the United Congregational Church of Southern Africa.¹²³
- 1972 The South African Association of the Disciples of Christ merged with the UCCSA.
- 2001 The Assembly in Windhoek decided to restructure the denomination. The Regions/Synod in South Africa formed a Synod.
- 2002 The inaugural Synod Conference took place in the Roselane United Congregational Church in Uitenhage. The South Africa Synod consists of 11 Regions

¹²¹ School of Theology. History of Theology. Moffat, Robert (1795-1883) Pioneer Missionary and linguist in Southern Africa. Available at: <http://www.bu.edu/missiology/missionary-biography/l-m/moffat-robert-1795-1883/>

¹²² Inspiring Men of the Faith. (2008) Ohio: Barbour Publishing Inc. P. 116

¹²³ World Council of Churches. United Congregational Church of Southern Africa. Available at: <https://www.oikoumene.org/member-churches/united-congregational-church-of-southern-africa>.

3.2.3 Other Religions

Religion	Percentage of population	Stats SA's Community Survey 2016
African Traditional Religion	12%	2 454 887
Hindu	1.3%	561 268
Islam	1.1%	892 685
Judaism	0.2%	49 470
Buddhism	0.1%	24 808
Bahatism		6 881
Atheism		52 598
Agnosticism		32 944
No religious affiliation/belief		5 964 892
Other		1 482 210

Table 6: Other Religions

In 2008, Stats SA embarked on a series of consultations to determine which questions would be included in the 2012 census. The question on religion was low on the list of priorities and as a result it was not included in the census.¹²⁴

In April 1997, Kauuova¹²⁵ indicated 17,7% of South Africans affiliated to Traditional African Religions. He did not specify whether this percentage was in relation to the total population of South Africa or in relation to the religious component of the population. He emphasized the complexity of the South African people:

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population.

¹²⁴ Census 2011 FAQ. Available at: http://www.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=3859

¹²⁵ Kauuova, W.R (1997) *The Religions of Southern Africa: A Synopsis of their basic beliefs*. Institute for Reformational Studies Series 1.1 Study Pamphlet 352

Thorpe¹²⁶ motivated the validity of recognising Traditional African Religions as a religion based on the definition of religion:

Beliefs and practices which arise from events and experiences of a mystical nature.

The expression “Traditional” is used to distinguish between religious orientations of African people and other religions also present on the continent of Africa. It does not imply that the traditional religions are archaic and therefore static. Thorpe highlight the fact that Traditional African Religions were dynamic even before the arrival of Christianity and Islam:

It seems safe to conclude that, like religious alignments throughout the world, African religions were shaped by outside historical forces, such as interactions with others due to migrations and warfare and by internal religious pressure from such people as prophets or healers, who were thinkers and leaders in their communities.¹²⁷

Traditional African Religion (ATR) used in the plural acknowledges the diversity of religious approaches across the African continent. For the sake of this study, the singular is used focussing on the uniform and generic character and beliefs that distinguish African religions from other primal or South African religions. It is important to note and to acknowledge the diversity of religions within African cultures.

Parrinder¹²⁸ acknowledged Christianity and Islam as Traditional African Religions due to their long history on the continent. The author presented evidence of Hindu altars discovered by Michael Tellingner in Chapter One. According to this evidence, it seems that Hinduism provides the earliest evidence of religion in Southern Africa although not recognised by Parrinder.

¹²⁶ Thorpe, S.A. (1991) *African Traditional Religions: An introduction*. University of Pretoria, Pretoria: Sigma Press (Pty) Ltd. P. 6

¹²⁷ Thorpe, S.A. (1991) *African Traditional Religions: An introduction*. University of Pretoria, Pretoria: Sigma Press (Pty) Ltd. P. 3

¹²⁸ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 8.

Although Olupona¹²⁹ did not comment directly on this viewpoint, he referred to Christianity in particular as a Western or modern religion or faith. He excluded Christianity and Islam in his definition of Traditional African religions. Parrinder defended his view that Christianity should be considered an African religion by stating the following.¹³⁰

- Christianity provides the oldest documented history.
- The vast expansion of Christianity across Africa in modern times
- The Independent African Church movement
- Christianity is replacing traditional religion in many areas. Often simultaneously with Islam.
- The acceptance of Christianity as Ethiopia's official state religion provided evidence of Christianity's true African faith.

Islam gained influence from North Africa into western Sudan and into the tropics and therefore affected the older tropical religions whilst Christianity expanded from Egypt to Ethiopia. Christianity also arrived on African soil during the colonial period.

Islam sustained uniformity although it tolerated several African customs. The numerous religious orders that have flourished in all areas of African Islam is noteworthy. Their ability to seize holy places from older religions indicates the Islamic influences.

In addition to the influences of major religions such as Christianity and Islam, traditional Religions often accommodated beliefs such as animism¹³¹ fetishism¹³²

¹²⁹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation.

¹³⁰ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. PP. 10-11.

¹³¹ "Animism" - A doctrine that the vital principle of organic development is immaterial spirit. Merriam-Webster.com Dictionary, Merriam-Webster. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/animism>

¹³² "Fetishism" - Veneration and use of natural or prepared material objects (fetishes) imbued with special potency (mana) for purposes of averting evil effects or acquiring values. Noss, David S. and Grangaard, Blake R. (1990) *A History of the World's Religions*. London: Routledge.

or polytheism¹³³ Although it is arguably included, Parrinder note that ***none is adequate as descriptive of the whole field, and all can be applied to many religious beliefs and practices in other parts of the world.***¹³⁴

3.2.3.1 An Abbreviated History of Hinduism in South Africa¹³⁵

The research took note of the evidence presented by Dr. Tellingner¹³⁶ (Chapter Three) with regards to the remains of Hindu temples found in Mpumalanga. These temples arguably provided evidence of Hinduism as one of the oldest religions or faith practices in South Africa. In addition, the research presented the following documented abbreviated history of Hinduism in South Africa.

The 19th century colonial demand for cheap labour resulted in the relocation of an estimated 1.3 million Indian contract labourers from primarily British Colonies of Mauritius, Jamaica, British Guiana, Trinidad, St Lucia, Suriname, Fiji, Granada and Natal.

A total of 152,184 Indian indentured workers were brought to Natal between 1860 and 1911: (62% men, 25% women, and 13% children under thirteen). Tamil and Telegu speakers from Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh in South India comprised of 60%, the remaining were from Bihar and Uttar Pradesh in the north. More than 80% were Hindu, 15% were Muslim, and a smaller number of Christians were included.

The significant diversity of beliefs and practices among Hindus, that characterize

¹³³ “Polytheism” - the doctrine of or belief in more than one god or in many gods. Dictionary.com. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/polytheism>

¹³⁴ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 8.

¹³⁵ Vahed, Goolam & Lal, Vinay (2013) *Hinduism in South Africa: Caste, Ethnicity, and Invented Traditions, 1860-Present*. Journal of Sociology and Social Anthropology. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/270051071_Hinduism_in_South_Africa_Caste_Ethnicity_and_Invented_Traditions_1860-Present [accessed Dec 13 2020].

¹³⁶ Tellingner, Michael & Heine, Johan (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers P.

Hinduism, also manifested in South Africa. The early Hinduism practiced in Natal was largely the more orthodox form known as Sanathanism, focussing on the communal and homebased worship of the traditional Hindu deities. 'Neo-Hinduism', consisting of reform movements which arose in India during the 19th century was also practiced later.¹³⁷

Labour migration mostly accommodated individuals, contributing to their challenges to replicate lives left behind in India. To their advantage, recruits originating from particular regions shared similar religious beliefs and cultural practices.

The 1906 African Chronicle confirmed the unavailability of Hindu teachers. Fundamentals of Hinduism were taught with family prayers, ceremonies, festivals and readings from the Ramayana, Mahabharata, and Bhagavad Gita. Festivals unified communities and an avenue to increase religious devotion with emphasis on particular deities. Swami Shankeranand played a significant role in establishing institutional Hinduism between 1908-1912. He propagated Hindu consciousness compared to an Indian consciousness. The recognition of Diwali as the premier festival is evident of his success. (Diwali is not the focus of the Fiji Hindu ritual calendar).

Mohandas K. Gandhi (1893-1914) also highlighted the distinction between Hindus, Indian Muslims and Christians. He established the Natal Indian Congress in 1894 to challenge racial restrictions. Rapid urbanisation of Indians resulted in urban poverty, formation of education and social welfare institutions, and increasing state hostility.

An agreement between the South African, Indian, and Imperial governments in 1927 introduced a system of voluntary repatriation. The policy failed due to a lack

¹³⁷ Clasquin, M. (1997). *The Lotus in the Lion's Den: Hinduism in Pretoria*. *Journal for the Study of Religion*, 10(1), 77-110. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/44945331>

of interest. The 1936 census indicated 81% of Indians as Hindu.

The land struggle culminated in a passive resistance campaign by Indians between 1946 and 1948. Simultaneously, increased tension between Indians and Africans (1940's) culminated in a three-day conflict between Africans and Indians in January 1949, leaving 142 dead and 1087 injured. This indicated the depth of antagonism that Africans felt against Indians in a climate where they competed for scarce economic resources. Hindus and Muslims lived in harmony in equally poor conditions and government made no effort to improve their living conditions. Hindu, Muslims, and Christians unified in the public sphere.

Increasing Indian conversions to Pentecostal Christianity and the establishment of the Bethesda Temple in the 1930's had a significant influence in the Natal Indian community.

The National Party intensified social, political, and economic segregation, but did recognise Indians as permanent citizens in 1948. Expansions of educational opportunities and economic mobility impacted on the form and practice of Hinduism. Segregation was consolidated after 1948 through the Group Areas Act whereafter thousands of Indians were relocated to two large townships of Chatsworth and Phoenix. Indian communities advanced progressively by utilising renewed education opportunities. In Pretoria, the entire Indian population were relocated to Laudium by 1970's. Lotus Gardens later developed as an additional residential area.

Important trends during this period included the continued growth of institutional religion among Hindus, the expansion of Hindu reformist activities, and the attraction of Pentecostal Christianity. One important development was known as a process of "Sanskritisation" (the giving up of oral-based religious practices in preference for worship forms that include the use of the Sanskrit language and its texts in worship).

Ongoing encounters with colonialism influenced Indian reformists conceptions of religion in proposing new forms of Hinduism. This also influenced South Africa's Hindu practices where some Hindu's converting to Christianity and others embraced new streams of Hinduism. Three major phases of Indian Hinduism influenced Hindus in South Africa.

The first was the influence of the AryaSamaj from the turn of the 20th century; a second influence was the neo-vedantic movements from the 1940's (Ramakrishna Centre and Divine Life society); while the third important influence was the charismatic guru- based sects and movements from the 1970's onwards, such as Sai Baba and Hare Krishna.

- 1860- 152 184 Indian people from India in 384 ships¹³⁸
1911
- Three classes of Hindus - the "free" merchant class Hindus who had arrived in South Africa at their own expense, the previously indentured but later free Hindus who typically manned shops and logistics, and the "non-free" indentured class of Hindus whose residence and movement was controlled because he or she was contracted property. The first two classes of Indian Hindus prospered and became wealthy, and were increasingly seen as economic threats by European merchants by late 1880's.
- 1869 The first South African Hindu temple build in Durban. Hindus in South Africa came from different regions of India and spoke different languages, the temples and social life among Hindus remained diverse and fragmented
- 1875 Tamil Hindus temple on Umbilo River in Durban
- 1902 Pretoria Tamil League founded¹³⁹

¹³⁸ Chetty, K. Ship List 1860-1911 <https://scnc.ukzn.ac.za/doc/SHIP/shipndx.html>

¹³⁹ Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P.

3.2.3.2 An Abbreviated History of Islam in South Africa

Muslim refugees fleeing from persecution in the Arab peninsula brought Islam to Africa. A military invasion under command of the Muslim Arab General, Amr ibn al-Asi followed after the death of the prophet Mohammed in 639. Islam spread west from Alexandria in North Africa and along the East Coast with the trade routes of Persian Gulf and Oman. Unlike Christianity, Islam accommodated traditional values such as polygamy. During the early centuries Islam gained both trade routes and gold-producing areas in Sub-Saharan Africa.¹⁴⁰

The history of Islam in South Africa is integrated with the history and people of the Bo-Kaap.¹⁴¹ Artisans and holy Sufis were imported to address the labour deficit in the early Cape. The Bo-Kaap is recognised as the birth of Islam in South Africa. Religious freedom was granted by the Dutch governor of Indonesia in 1642 and 1657 in anticipation of the Indonesian people that might be brought to the Cape.¹⁴²

The first mosque, the 'Shafi'¹⁴³ Auwal Mosque in Dorp Street is the oldest formal Islamic place of worship in South Africa (1795), followed by Long Street mosque sanctified in 1820. The Bo-Kaap hosts ten mosques, seven of which are still in use. Land selected or donated for a mosque is considered holy ground. This land cannot be sold, returned, transferred, inherited, or estranged in any way – imperative within the South African context where communities were often forcefully removed and resettled.

Cape Muslims pay homage to approximately 25 saints and holy men buried in

¹⁴⁰ The Story of Africa: Islam. Available at: https://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/africa/features/storyofafrica/index_section7.shtml

¹⁴¹ Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. Coverpage

¹⁴² Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 53

¹⁴³ Shafi is one of the four schools of religious law within Sunni Islam. Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers. P. 64

kramats (tombs) around Cape Town. Three holy men are buried at the Tana Baru Cemetery:

- Tuan Guru aka Abdullah ibn Kado Abdus Salaam, originally a prince from the island of Tidore, was imprisoned at Robben island for 13 years after allegedly collaborating with the English against the Dutch. Before his release he distributed handwritten copies of the Qur'an, which proved to be significant for the establishment of Islam in the Cape. He also became the first Imam of South Africa's first mosque.
- Tuan Sayeed Alawie, originally from Mokha in Yemen was brought to the Cape as a political prisoner. He delivered food and Islamic teaching to the slaves.
- Tuan Nuruman arrived as a slave in the Cape in 1779. He was renowned for his extraordinary oracle and the power to heal.

3.2.3.3 An Abbreviated History of Judaism in South Africa¹⁴⁴

The first Jews only arrived after the British occupation of Cape Town in 1806. The Jewish population is estimated at 52 300, compared to the 75 555 reflected in the 2001 census. (The 2011 census did not accommodate religion). Four in five Jew's reside in either Johannesburg or Cape Town. Comprised of primarily Ashkenazi Jews, with a smaller Sephardic population (including several thousand Israelis), the South African Jewish community portray themselves as affluent and well educated, featuring prominently in all aspects of public life. They also pride themselves in their active anti-apartheid contributions to establish a new

¹⁴⁴ (i) History of Judaism in South Africa. Jewish Virtual Library. Available at: <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/south-africa>; and (ii) Saunders, Christopher and Southey, Nicholas (2000) Historical Dictionary of South Africa Second Edition. Scarecrow Press. P. 95-96

democracy. The South African Jewish Board of Deputies (SAJBD) is the major representative council.¹⁴⁵

A survey conducted in 2020 determined the following: 74% feel at home in South African, and 61% are satisfied with their life there. Around 90% consider unemployment, government corruption and crime levels to be major problems in the country; 57% point to anti-Israel sentiment and 31% to antisemitism.¹⁴⁶

- 1497 Jewish scientists and cartographers in Portugal contributed to the success of Vasco da Gama's voyage which led to the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope
- 1652 Jewish merchants in Holland were associated with the Dutch East India Company, which established the white settlement at the Cape. Jewish names appear in the early records of the Cape.
- 1804 Jewish settlement began only after the introduction of complete religious tolerance under the Batavian Republic
- 1806 Enterprising Jewish individuals then began to arrive, mainly from Germany and the British Isles
- 1814 The first congregation founded in Cape Town
- 1860 Jews in the Cape numbered a few hundred families in a white population of something over two hundred thousand, there were two main centres of Jewish settlement in the colony, the older in Cape Town and environs, and the other in the eastern region, mainly in Grahamstown, *Port Elizabeth and district, and Graaff Reinet. Individuals – itinerant traders and storekeepers, with a few

¹⁴⁵ Judaism in South Africa. World Jewish Congress. Available at: <https://www.worldjewishcongress.org/en/about/communities/za>

¹⁴⁶ New survey of Jews in South Africa CLEAR SIGNS OF VITALITY AND RESILIENCE DESPITE DEMOGRAPHIC DECLINE. (April 23, 2020) Kaplan Centre Jewish Studies. Available at: <http://www.kaplancentre.uct.ac.za/kaplan/news/2020/jews-of-south-africa-2020>

professional men – had also penetrated into the more remote inland areas. Though small in number, they made a significant contribution to the economic advancement of the country and to its social and civic life.

- 1869 The discovery of diamonds and gold respectively marked the and turning point in the economic and political history of South Africa.
1886 Jewish immigrants who began to arrive from Eastern Europe in the 1880's

❖ Growth of the Jewish community reflected in new congregations

- 1875 Kimberley
1876 Bloemfontein
1883 Oudsthoorn
1883 Durban
1887 Johannesburg
1890 Pretoria

❖ Growth of the Jewish community reflected in population

- 1900 Jewish population estimated at 25 000
1904 The official census declared 38 000 Jews
Prior to 1890 The majority of Jewish immigrants came from Britain, and in lesser numbers from Germany. Thereafter, the influx of "Russian" Jews (as the East European Jews were officially designated)
1906 The status of Yiddish language officially accorded recognition in the Cape Immigration Law. This provision was also incorporated after Union in the basic Immigration Act of 1913.
1936 537 German Jewish refugees from Germany on board a chartered boat, the Stuttgart resulted in a major agitation and precipitated the

enactment of the "Aliens Act" of 1937. This law gave plenary powers to an Immigrants Selection Board, which was required, among other considerations, to apply the criterion of "assimilability." The number of Jewish refugees from Germany then dropped considerably, the total between 1933 and 1940 being approximately 5,500.

Post 1940 Lodges of the Hebrew Order of David, the Zionist and Young Israel Societies, the branches of the Union of Jewish Women, the *B'nai B'rith Lodges, the Ex-Servicemen's organizations, the *Reform movement in religious life, Jewish social and sports clubs and, since the early 1990's, communal security organizations.

1961-1974 Helen *Suzman, the sole representative of the Progressive Party in the South African Parliament

1961-1974 Within the ranks of the anti-apartheid liberation movements, Jews were likewise disproportionately involved, whether as academics, trade unionists, political organizers, or within the armed wings of the liberation groups. Many of these were jailed, including Denis Goldberg, who was convicted alongside Nelson Mandela and other leading black opposition figures at the famous Rivonia Trial in 1964. Many more were compelled to go into exile, where they continued to be active in anti-apartheid activities in places like London and Lusaka in Zambia. Some returned after the unbanning of the various liberation movements in 1990 and several of these, amongst them Joe Slovo, Ronnie Kasrils, Ben Turok, and Gill Marcus, played an important role in the subsequent process of transition to multiracial democracy.

1966 29 Orthodox congregations and four Reform temples in Johannesburg and 12 Orthodox congregations and two Reform temples in Cape Town

2004 51 Orthodox congregations in Johannesburg and three Reform temples

❖ Jewish Population growth

1880	Jewish population estimated at 4 000
1890	Jewish population estimated at 10 000
1900	Jewish population estimated at 25 000
1904	Census 38,101
1911	Census 46,919
1918	Census 58,741
1921	Census 62,103
1926	Census 71,816
1936	Census 90,645
1946	Census 104,156
1951	Census 108,498
1960	Census 114,762
1970	Census 118,200
1980	Census 117,963
1991	Census 91,925
2001	Census 71,800

The Union of Orthodox Synagogues of South Africa (UOS) accommodates all Orthodox congregations in South Africa. It consists of just under 100 synagogues

(including many shtiebels¹⁴⁷) and claims a membership enrolment of approximately 20,000 families.

The Zionist movement

- 1897 Few Hovevei Zion societies present in South Africa
- 1989 An association of Zionist societies in the Transvaal, formed convened a countrywide conference which led to the creation of the South African Zionist Federation, the first all-national Jewish body.
- 1905 The first all-South African Zionist conference
- 1916 The first South African Jewish Congress was held in Johannesburg convened jointly by the Zionist Federation and the Board of Deputies in order to mobilize public opinion for the Jewish claim to Palestine.
- 1948 200 of South African Jews settled in Israel
- 1948 War of Liberation, men and women who had served in the South African forces during World War II went to the defence of the Jewish state. Stream of volunteers again left for Israel in the 1956 Sinai crisis, at the time of the Six-Day War in June 1967, and in the 1973 Yom Kippur War
- 2004 18,000 of South African Jews settled in Israel

¹⁴⁷ Shtiebel is the Yiddish diminutive form for *shtub*, which means house. IT commonly refers to a small, informal house of prayer. *What is a "Shtiebel"?* Chabad.com. Available at: https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/4091052/jewish/What-Is-a-Shtiebel.htm

3.2.3.4 An Abbreviated History of Buddhism

The history of Buddhism in South Africa is not well documented due to the general perception that Buddhism is foreign. As late as 1970, Professor HAD du Toit questioned whether Buddhism should be considered a religion. He argued that God and the concept of sin were absent in its 'theology'.

The first note of Buddhism in South Africa referred to six Thai monks, passengers on a Portuguese shipwrecked near Agulhas in 1686. Indian, Japanese and Chinese migrants to the Cape in the 16th century established Buddhism. The European contingent in the Cape originally included only fourteen women. Marriages between Europeans and Asian "free blacks" were inevitable. Although some partners adopted Christianity, the presence of Buddhism was prevalent in death and burial rituals. Separate Chinese graves in 1787. The 'New Statutes of Batavia' propagated by Governor De Mist mentioned Chinese cemeteries and death and burial rituals.

The Cape Times (April 13, 1889) referred to Asian workers as 'cultured' people whose lives reflected the teachings of the 'divine Buddha'.

The 394 Buddhists reported in the 1911 census increased to 12487 in 1921. The 'Overport Sakya Buddhist Society' was established under leadership of Rajaram Dass and 26 families in 1917. The organisation grew to 100 families by 1920. The arrival of Chinese, Japanese mineworkers from 1904 slightly contributed to Buddhism numbers.¹⁴⁸

The 1970 census reported 1409 black African Buddhist. The 1980 census did not categorise Buddhism separately.

Characteristically, the ethnic divisions indicative of census-taking in South Africa enumerated 594 Black Buddhists as Zulu-speaking; 384 as Xhosa; 28 as Swazi;

¹⁴⁸ Meiring, Piet G.J. Prof. (1996) *Suid-Afrika, land van baie godsdienste/South Africa, a world of religions*. South Africa. Kagiso. P. 85

22 as South Ndebele; 8 as Ndebele; and 21 as "Other-speaking African Buddhists."

In 1970, for example, a Theravadin based Buddhist retreat was inaugurated at Ixopo, in the Natal Drakensberg, to further Vipassana meditation practice. At Nieu Bethesda, in the Sneeuwberg, a "new house of prayer" was established in 1981 for Buddhists inclined towards Tibetan Tantra. And in Somerset West, under the Helderberge, a centre was formed to focus on Korean Chogye Son (Zen) practice. In 1991, 2391 people indicated Buddhist affiliations.

The Nan Hau Temple temple, on the outskirts of Bronkhorstspuit in Gauteng is the largest in Africa. It includes a seminary and is also an excellent, economical venue for getaways in Gauteng offering spiritual retreats, workshops, and conferences. Land was donated to the Fo Guang Shan order by the Bronkhorstspuit City Council and building of the temple began in October 1992. Funds were provided by the order and the large Taiwanese community in South Africa. Fo Guang Shan means "Buddha's Light Mountain" and refers to a Chinese Mahayana Buddhist monastic order founded in Taiwan in 1967 by Venerable Master Hsing Yun. The order promotes humanistic Buddhism and aims to make this philosophy and way of life relevant in the world. The Chinese Buddhist Centre developed as an educational and cultural complex with an ethos to engage with and assist communities. Work includes prison outreach and charity work.

The main shrine is outstanding, everything within has meaning and aims to offer enlightenment to those who visit. The village encompasses an entire suburb where the streets also have Chinese street names. The huge temple complex is elaborately decorated with giant golden Buddha statues, colourful gates and sculptures of Chinese dragons.¹⁴⁹

¹⁴⁹ Nan Hua Buddhist Temple. Available at: https://www.inyourpocket.com/johannesburg/nan-hua-buddhist-temple_133205v and ABOUT NAN HUA BUDDHIST TEMPLE Available at: <https://www.sa->

4. AFRICAN TRADITIONAL RELIGION

African traditional religion or Indigenous African religions are synonyms in referring to the subject of indigenous faiths of Africa. Both names are debated and critique are voiced in propagating for the recognition of Islam and Christianity as 'traditional' due their extended history in Africa. Religion in the singular also assumes the existence of generic expression of faith whereas religions in the plural embodies the reality of variety. 'Primal' or 'indigenous' might suggest the uneducated status of these 'congregation' members.

4.1 Sui Generis¹⁵⁰ Phenomenon vs Anthropologist Holistic Approach

In comparing the methodology of scholars of religion and anthropologists, David Westerlund¹⁵¹ translated the principle of *sui generis* to be the predominant phenomenon of scholars of religion. In principle, the intrinsic value of religion legitimises the study thereof to be independent from its cultural context. Anthropologists on the other hand favour the study of African religion in a limited cultural context, restraining religion to the social function, reducing it to a mere epiphenomenon.

The Anthropologist method therefore values the social function of the African veneration of their ancestors whilst students of religion value the religious role and impact. Faith in, and recognition of God in African religions is also often neglected in Anthropology.

venues.com/things-to-do/gauteng/nan-hua-buddhist-temple/ and Nan Hua Buddhist Temple Available at: https://www.gauteng.net/attractions/nan_hua_buddhist_temple_bronkorspruit/

¹⁵⁰ Sui Generis: constituting a class alone: unique, peculiar. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sui%20generis#synonyms>

¹⁵¹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 16.

4.2 Method and Theory

With reference to African Religion, two investigating models were identified:

- Phenomenological-anthropological model

Field work-based materials and a critical appraisal of the materials from phenomenological and anthropological perspectives. The phenomenological investigative procedure includes Morphological phenomenology¹⁵² and Hermeneutical Phenomenology¹⁵³.

- Anthropology of religion

The branch of anthropology concerned with religious phenomena and data and the functional and symbolic analysis of religious phenomena.

Research pertaining to African religion should include both methods of investigation to accommodate the history of religions in context of character, qualities and meaning on the one hand whilst simultaneously accommodating research pertaining to the manifestation of religion in a socio-cultural content inclusive of art, music and cultural life.

Parrinder¹⁵⁴ disagreed by stating that social customs such as initiations, weddings or coronations do not necessarily hold religious value. He did however acknowledge that social and political changes inevitably effected religions in Africa resulting in the decline of external forms of traditional religions. "Internal" religious attitudes remained, and many people have clung to traditional rituals and beliefs. The author's research indicated the opposite, social customs frequently accommodate spiritual values.

¹⁵² Morphological phenomenology: The classification of various types and structures that arise from an examination of the data.

¹⁵³ Hermeneutical Phenomenology The essence of meaning residing tacitly within the situation of the phenomenon. Hermeneutical Phenomenology is a descriptive science and it circumvents assessing the religious values of the data being analysed opposed to theological focus of dogma and defining what is considered to be the truth.

¹⁵⁴ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 9

4.3 The Place in History

Recognition of historical development of the religious phenomena to its present manifestation. Mircea Eliade¹⁵⁵ elaborated stating the following:

The ultimate goal of the historians of religion is not to point out that there exist a certain number of types or patterns of religious behaviour, with specific symbologies and theologies, but rather to understand their meanings. And as such meanings are not given once and for all, are not petrified in the respective religious patterns, but rather are open, in the sense they change, grow and enrich themselves in a creative way in the process of history.

The history of South African religions is inextricably incorporated in the political history - overshadowed by apartheid and the tremendous impact it had on all spheres of life, specifically spirituality, and therefore on all aspects of society. The study acknowledged spirituality as the determining factor for all aspects of life.

4.4 Resilience and Adaptability

The process whereby the macrocosm worldview within a typical traditional African religion of a Supreme deity substitutes the microcosm worldview implies that lesser deities or lesser spirits are confined to influencing daily lives of local communities. Increased trade, modern communication technology, social, educational, and political changes resulted in the microcosm becoming progressively less influential and the macrocosm increasingly more dominant.

The second significant modification of traditional African Religions manifests in the religious syncretism found in the so-called IAC (Independent African Churches).

¹⁵⁵ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 30

In this process of religious acculturation, elements of the new religions and the old tradition are fused together to produce forms of religious syncretism

156

4.5 Homogeneity of African Traditional Religions

Westerfund was of the opinion that the reference to ***“African Traditional Religion”*** and ***“African Religion”*** in the singular can be interpreted in a ***“Christian theological perspective”***.¹⁵⁷ He acknowledged the need for transcultural spiritual unity with emphasis on similarities. E.G. Parrinder¹⁵⁸ highlighted homogeneity in the religious sphere and a need to prioritise resemblances with Africans rather than differences.¹⁵⁹ E.B. Idowu¹⁶⁰ agreed by recognising a ***“common Africanness about the total culture and religious beliefs and practices of Africa.”***

Jacob Olupona¹⁶¹ agreed with Parrinder and Idowu and affirmed that central themes presides in all religious traditions, irrespective of locality. The misconceptions of a diverse African tradition result in the conclusion that it represents different things to different ethnic groups. This contributes to the fact that studies of African traditional religions remained indistinct and vague to many people. He presented two additional reasons:

- ***The oral culture of the religions could not withstand the influence of Christianity and Islam. The beliefs, doctrines, and rituals of these two monotheistic religions filtered into the remnant of the traditional religion, they have changed the perspective of people.***

¹⁵⁶ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 32

¹⁵⁷ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 19

¹⁵⁸ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 9

¹⁵⁹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 16

¹⁶⁰ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 16

¹⁶¹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 26

- **Western thought and ideas influenced the study and interpretation of African traditional religions.**

The author agreed with the notion to find and focus on similarities, but also gave credit to the intrinsic variety and multiplicity of African people and the absence of a central tradition. The inadequacy of documented traditions and the reliance on oral transferrals complicate the identification of commonalities.

Mtuze¹⁶² observed an interesting dichotomy of Western religion and a commonality of African spirituality in referring to the lack of spirituality of missionaries and colonialists. The author is of the opinion that this contrast might still be prevalent between Africans and European descendants and that it distinctly contributes to the diversity of South African societies.

The following central themes in African religion were identified:

4.5.1 Cosmology

The use of term cosmology dates to 1730, and the scientific application to post World War II. Etymologically, cosmology derives from the Greek words 'cosmos' (universe), logos (word).¹⁶³ It implies the science of the universe or worldview. Religion used as an avenue to define a worldview, provides a sense of purpose

¹⁶² Mtuze, P.T. (October 1999) Hidden presences in the spirituality of the Amakhosa of the Eastern Cape and the impact of Christianity on them. Submitted in partial fulfilment for the Master's degree in Theology (Spirituality). Department of Religion and Theology. Rhodes University. Available at: <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/145053771.pdf>

¹⁶³ The term cosmology can be traced to the 1730's, although its appearance in a scientific sense dates from only after the Second World War. The *logos*, which is the root of 'logy', means 'an account', so that, as a preliminary working definition, cosmology is simply 'an account of the cosmos'. The primary Latin equivalent of the Greek *Kosmos* is *Universus*, from *Unus verto*, or 'changing into one', thereby suggesting unity. We can divide the definitions of cosmology into two: the scientific and the anthropological. Anthropological cosmologies are based on the proposition that ideas about the cosmos are integral part of human cultural and social systems. Campion, Nicolas (June 7, 2017) *The Importance of Cosmology in Culture: Contexts and Consequences*. Trends in Modern Cosmology, Abraao Jesse Capistrano de Souza, IntechOpen. Available at: <https://www.intechopen.com/books/trends-in-modern-cosmology/the-importance-of-cosmology-in-culture-contexts-and-consequences>

and direction that enables people to interpret life, this is often included in cosmology interpretations. As such, Metuh¹⁶⁴ maintained that cosmology fundamentally addresses the place and relationship of man within the world or universe and that it is inseparable from the spiritual or religious. Nicolas Campion's¹⁶⁵ definition of Anthropological cosmology is found to be applicable in discussing the generic African interpretation of God, man, and creation:

Anthropological cosmologies are based on the proposition that ideas about the cosmos are integral part of human cultural and social systems.

Culture being the historically inherited system inclusive of patterns and meanings embodied in symbols, a system of inherited conceptions expressed in symbolic forms by means of which men communicate, perpetuate, and develop knowledge and attributes to life.¹⁶⁶

4.5.1.1 God (Creator), Man and Spirits

God, the Supreme Being, is the greatest power of all, the strong one, who possesses life and strength in himself, and from whom every creaturely force is derived. Few- if any African peoples have been without belief in the supreme Creator, and even where that belief has been influenced by Islam or Christianity the original idea may still be traced.

God is experienced as an all-pervading reality. He is the constant participant in the affairs of human beings. Scholars who study religion in Africa tell us that all African societies have a belief in God. This paper aims at an in-depth study of these beliefs.

¹⁶⁴ Kanu, Kechukwu Anthony (July 2, 2013) *Filosofia Theoretica: Journal of African Philosophy, Culture and Religions*, Volume 2, Issue 2. Ages 50-555. Available at: <https://journals.co.za/content/filosofia/2/2/EJC170271>

¹⁶⁵ Campion, Nicolas (June 7, 2017) *The Importance of Cosmology in Culture: Contexts and Consequences*. Trends in Modern Cosmology, Abraao Jesse Capistrano de Souza, IntechOpen. Available at: <https://www.intechopen.com/books/trends-in-modern-cosmology/the-importance-of-cosmology-in-culture-contexts-and-consequences>

¹⁶⁶ Geertz, Clifford (1973) *The Interpretation of Cultures*. New York: Basic Books. P. 89.

African peoples do not consider God to be a man, but in order to express certain concepts, they employ languages and images about God as an aid to their conceptualization of him whom they have not seen and about whom they confess to know little or nothing.¹⁶⁷

Africans in general believe in a supreme God, as portrayed by the various translations:

Zulu	:	UNkulunkulu or Umvelinqangi ¹⁶⁸
Xhosa	:	Uthixo
Sesotho	:	Molimo
Shona	:	Mwari
Tsonga	:	Tilo ¹⁶⁹

Man is created the pinnacle of creation. The combination of strength and intellect provides the strategy to outsmart oppressors. Religion remains the apex of wellbeing for it provides the foundation for relationship and communion with God and other powers.

Foundational to the understanding of Traditional African Religions is the concept of dual horizontal and vertical axes and the implication of power. The horizontal accommodates animistic beliefs and the vertical acknowledges the divinity of the creator. The concept of power is referred to as the **“vital force” according to Temples and “Dynamism.”**¹⁷⁰

Prayers, invocations, spells, and magic concern the intensification or reduction of power. Misfortune, disease, and witchcraft are responsible for the decline in

¹⁶⁷ Sophia: An African Journal of Philosophy (2009) *The concepts of God in African traditional religion*. African Journals Online. Vol. 12 No. 1 (2009). Available at: <https://www.ajol.info/index.php/sophia/article/view/81625>

¹⁶⁸ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her ‘sangomahood’ through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 13

¹⁶⁹ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her ‘sangomahood’ through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 13

¹⁷⁰ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 26

power. The most fortunate has the most power. All beings have power, although different in nature. Power fluctuates among humans, between the divine and human, good and evil, plant and animal. Mankind lives in relation to others and to nature and this implies that powers act upon one another. The most privileged are perceived to have more power.

Power is not restricted to man only. Man, divine beings, animals, and plants have power that influences each other. **"Animism"**¹⁷¹ is generally accepted, the central belief in a Supreme Being and in the departed ancestors, should not be interpreted as a narrow animistic belief.



Figure 7: The article demonstrated the African comprehension of the spirit world: Faith in God and recognition of the existence of evil spirits.¹⁷²

¹⁷¹ Animism. A belief that every being and object possess a soul (Anima). Dictionary.com. Available at: <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/animism>

¹⁷² Daily Sun (July 17, 2020) *Doctors won't see it*

Alex Kagame¹⁷³ provided insight into the concept of the supreme God with reference to the four concepts in the semantics of the root word “*ntu*”.

Muntu is the human being (plural Bantu), Kintu the thing, Hantu stands for place and time, and Kuntu for modality. Ntu is the cosmic force itself, the power in which Being and other beings are joined together. Temples call God the “great Muntu”, the powerful person and force from which all other beings flow. Muntu is not merely a force, but it has intelligence and might be described as Mind or a neuter supreme consciousness like the Hindu Brahman.

In elaborating on the concept of a Divine Being, Alexis Kagame¹⁷⁴ shed light with the explanation of four basic concepts:” Ntu” is the omnipotent and powerful cosmic force, the God from which all things emanate. “Mantu” is the human being, “Bantu” the plural. “Kintu” refers to an object and “Hantu” represents time and place. These forces operate individually as well within a specific hierarchy.

The relation of these powers can be depicted in a pyramid with Ntu at the apex. The supreme all powerful Ntu validate the other forces by the power he determines to delegate or reduce. The two sides of the pyramid represent the next in seniority: other gods/ nature gods on the one side and ancestors on the other side. The baseline represents lower magical powers – magic, medicine and witchcraft. Mantu/man is positioned in the middle of the pyramid or triangle who seeks harmony with all sides and the apex for the powers influences all spheres of life – life, family and work. Powers extend to nature for animals hold power which could be gained.

¹⁷³ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 27.

¹⁷⁴ Ngedu, Isaiah Adujo Ph.D. (2014) *Beyond the Four Categories of African Philosophy*. Department of Philosophy, Federal University, Lafia-Nasarawa State. International Journal of African Society Cultures and Traditions Vol.2, No.3, pp. 10-19, December 2014. Available at: <http://www.eajournals.org/wp-content/uploads/Beyond-The-Four-Categories-of-African-Philosophy.pdf>

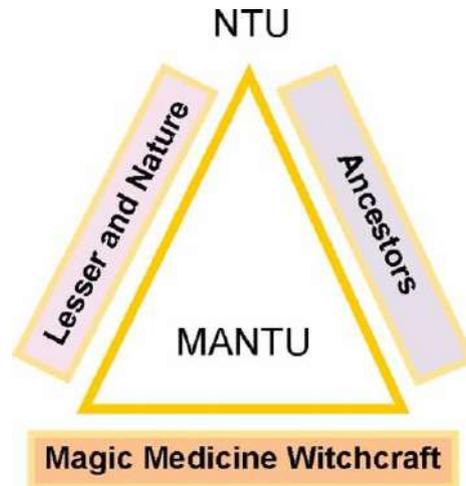


Figure 8: Ntu.

The first man obtained their power from Ntu and delegated it through the descendants or bloodlines. They may be ancestors or gods, who are either ancient heroes or more purely nature spirits, but all are powers related to men.¹⁷⁵

Mantu/man is believed to be unsurpassed in all creation, most intelligent and consisting of a body as well as a spirit – believed to be the breath of God. Man is dependent on Ntu and other powers. Religion therefore is critical to sustain his welfare. Man's power can reduce but can also increase through magic and other aids (poaching).

Man's community exist of the living as well as the departed family members, also referred to as the 'living dead'. The power of the departed might return to strengthen or protect an individual or clan. Entities do not only exist, but also act

Mtuzé¹⁷⁶ made an interesting analogy in comparing African religion to ancient Israel. Western civilization and spirituality tend to implement a rigid demarcation between the secular and the sacred, the natural and the supernatural. African religion has no clear demarcation between the spiritual and the secular. Africans,

¹⁷⁵ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 27

¹⁷⁶ Mtuzé, P.T. (October 1999) *Hidden presences in the spirituality of the Amakhosa of the Eastern Cape and the impact of Christianity on them*. Submitted in partial fulfilment for the Master's degree in Theology (Spirituality). Department of Religion and Theology. Rhodes University. <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/145053771.pdf>

like the Hebrews, have an immanent view of God. The distinction between God and creation is not as strongly defined as in Western spirituality.

In African tradition, as in ancient Israel, life belongs to God who "summons it into being, strengthens and preserves it". Religion in this context is not something peripheral, a leisure time activity, but it is a way of life. It impinges upon every aspect of human living. The world therefore cannot be divided into sacred and secular spheres, because the spiritual is experienced everywhere. Rather, the distinction is between good and evil spirits.

African worship does not include a variety of gods or certain objects. It does recognise the presence of God in natural phenomena. Tension arises between the concepts of 'God in certain things' and 'God in isolation'. African spirituality is basically panentheistic¹⁷⁷ and not pantheistic¹⁷⁸.

4.5.1.2 African Philosophy of Being

Basic and fundamental philosophy of life, power and consciousness prevails. An appreciation of human worth, an awareness and resistance to the exploitation of people, continuation of traditions of the past and contribution to new traditions.¹⁷⁹

4.5.1.3 Transcendence of the Sacred

This subject remains a major discourse in African religion. It includes a belief in a Supreme deity as well as in a multitude of deities with reduced authorities, although they are not necessarily worshipped.

Relevant to the debate is the relation between *religion as theory* compared to

¹⁷⁷ Panentheistic religions involve believing that God is a part of the universe as well as transcending it. Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/pantheistic>

¹⁷⁸ Pantheistic religions involve believing that God is in everything in nature and the universe. Collins Dictionary. Available at: <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/pantheistic>

¹⁷⁹ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 28

religious activities. Theology, defined as man's discourse with God has as its primary objective to define and conceptualise the essence of the discourse and faith in God for the followers to comprehend. This process involved an intellectual and written development and acknowledgement of religion as an experimental phenomenon due to the fact that religion is "**essentially pre-theoretical**". The experience of many religions preceded written text. Religious experience therefore preceded religious intellectual discourse.

This is especially relevant to Traditional African Religions. Olupona¹⁸⁰ distinguished the following African experience:

- **God is divine and sacred.**
- **The sacred and the profane tend to be symmetrical.**
- **The ordinary human experience is mimetic of the transcendence and the sacred.**

Eric Voegelin¹⁸¹ described societies with these experiences as "**a society symbolized as a cosmos**" where the whole of the human existence is grounded in "**and expressed by means of a cosmological myth.**"

Cosmological expression is neither a theory nor an allegory. It is the mythical expression of the participation, experienced as real, of the order of society in the divine being that also orders the cosmos.¹⁸²

4.5.1.4 Ancestral Veneration

Africa Mhlophe¹⁸³ defined the concept as following:

Many Africans revere their dead and hold to the belief that the dead do not really die, but continue to direct and influence the affairs of those they left

¹⁸⁰ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 28

¹⁸¹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 28

¹⁸² Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 28

¹⁸³ Mhlophe, Afrika (2013) *Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestors*. Belville: Salt Publishers. P. 13

behind on earth. The dead are believed to be capable of influencing a person's life in a positive or negative way.

Thus, ancestral veneration originates from the premise that the souls of the departed may return to the living and influence lives, that it is possible to communicate with the departed and lastly that it is possible to influence the destiny of the departed. It implies an interdependent synergy between the living and the departed – also referred to as the living dead.

A unique juxtaposition between Christianity and traditional African religion exist in Africa, South Africa included. Ancestral veneration has been assimilated into Christianity with great ease, in both rural and urban and educated and less educated societies. Africanised Christianity propagate the recognition of Christ as the Supreme Ancestor.

Ancestor worship is the almost universal religion of Africa. Though Islam has conquered north Africa and Christianity (as the world sees it) has conquered the rest, through it all is the power of ancestor worship. It is common knowledge that the African preachers of the leading denominations consult witch doctors. The most popular denominations openly combine Christianity with ancestor worship, much as Roman Catholicism combined idolatry and Christianity in centuries past.184

This study differentiates between the dead and ancestors. The dead is an open category of all people who have died. Ancestors are divided into two categories: the corporate embodies a group's royal and chiefly ancestors,¹⁸⁵ the founders of a kinship group, of a community and even a nation.¹⁸⁶ In this sense the King or Chief appeals to the ancestors on behalf of the nation. Annual ceremonies sometimes include sacrifices to honour previous leaders with a dedicated animal

¹⁸⁴ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria.

¹⁸⁵ Fortes, Meyer. *Some Reflections on Ancestor Worship in Africa*. From African Systems of Thought – studies presented and discussed at the third International African Seminar in Salisbury, December 1960 Fortes, Meyer & Dieterlen, Germaine (1960) pages 122-142. Available at: http://www.era.anthropology.ac.uk/Era_Resources/Era/Ancestors/fortes2.html

¹⁸⁶ Choon Sup Bae, Van der Merwe, P.J. (2008) *Ancestor worship – is it Biblical*. Herv. teol. stud vol.64 n.3 Pretoria Jul./Sep. 2008 Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222008000300009

sacrifice for each of the ancestors recognised. (Refer to 5.10.5: Cyril Ramaphosa and ANC leadership consulted with ancestors for the sake of the nation.)

In the domestic category a family lineage acknowledges ancestors by name. Married women are incorporated in the line of their husband's ancestral lineage by right of marriage and parenthood. ¹⁸⁷

The purpose of the veneration would be to influence or oblige the departed kin to bestow good will in the spiritual as well as the material. The social function and ceremonies intrinsic to the phenomenon include specific religious acts and anticipations. Yet, in contrast to several authors, Jonker¹⁸⁸ is of the opinion that ancestor spirits, are not to be worshipped, but communicated to.



Figure 9: The frontpage headline read: "I poked his widow, now dead man wants to kill me".

Married women are sometimes incorporated in their husband's ancestral lineage. The departed husband became an ancestor to his widow. In this report, the departed husband's spirit did not approve her new relationship. ¹⁸⁹

¹⁸⁷ Fortes, Meyer. V. Some Reflections on Ancestor Worship in Africa. From: Fortes, M. & Dieterlen, G. (1950) *African Systems of Thought*. Oxford University Press. Pages 122-142. Available at: http://www.era.anthropology.ac.uk/Era_Resources/Era/Ancestors/fortes2.html

¹⁸⁸ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 33

¹⁸⁹ Daily Sun (June 4, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Dead man wants to kill me!*

In the article for Truth Magazine Paul K. Williams¹⁹⁰ described how the African people find it impossible to communicate to the supreme God. The deceased transcends to the land where God lives. The spirit of the deceased then has the opportunity to influence the supreme God and simultaneously influence those still living on earth. He compared the relationship of the deceased with God to the relationship the Roman Catholic Saints have with God. Williams¹⁹¹ elaborated on the definition of ancestral worship as follows:

Ancestor worship involves religious beliefs and practices consisting of prayers and offerings to the spirits of dead relatives. Ancestor worship is found in many cultures all across the world. Prayers and offerings are made because it's believed the spirits of ancestors live on in the natural world and are thus able to influence the futures and fortunes of the living relatives. Ancestors' spirits are also thought to act as mediators between the living and the Creator.

In the review to the book '*Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestor*' by Afrika Mhlophe, Dr. D.J. Petersen¹⁹² referred to people active in ancestor worship as "***captive people***". He was of the opinion that ancestral worship is one of the reasons why Africa is referred to as the "***dark continent.***"

4.5.1.4.1 Ancestor Veneration: Archaeological Evidence of Phenomena

Excavations provided evidence of ancestor worship at sites in the Near East in Jericho dating to the 7th century before Christ. Ancient Greek and Roman cultures also accommodated this practice as well as the Chinese, Japanese, and Native American religions.

¹⁹⁰ Williams, Paul K. (May 16, 1991) *Ancestor Worship: The Religion of Africa*. Guardian of Truth XXXV: 10. PP. 300-301. Truth Magazine. South Africa. Available at: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume35/GOT035143.html>

¹⁹¹ Williams, Paul K. (May 16, 1991) *Ancestor Worship: The Religion of Africa*. Guardian of Truth XXXV: 10. PP. 300-301. Truth Magazine. South Africa. Available at: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume35/GOT035143.html>

¹⁹² Mhlophe, Afrika (2013) *Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestors*. Belville: Salt Publishers. P. 9

4.5.1.4.2 Ancestor Veneration: Religion of Fear

Williams¹⁹³ observed believers fear of offending or disappoint their ancestors. To restore perceived spoiled relationships, sangomas often recommend a sacrifice (cow, goat, or chicken). This could be an expensive burden. (Refer to 6.9) Elderly people, soon to be ancestors, are treated with obligatory respect to ensure their favour once departed to the other world.

4.5.1.4.3 Ancestor Veneration: Cultural Variations

The diversity of culture and ethnicity is discussed in Chapter Three. The important recognition of cultural diversity opposing to the assumption that the black population is a homogeny group was also discussed. Recognition of cultural diversity is relevant in discussing the phenomena of ancestral worship. A study done at the University of Pretoria confirmed the Nguni, Sotho, Venda, and Tsonga as the four major cultural groups and the varied approaches to ancestor veneration:¹⁹⁴

It is interesting to note that although there are significant differences in terms of social organisation which have a bearing on the practise of ancestor worship between the different groups, there is also common ground in the general function and significance of ancestors.¹⁹⁵

Ephirim-Donker¹⁹⁶, author, traditional king and professor demonstrated ancestor veneration as pragmatic, systematic, theological, teleological, soteriological with

¹⁹³ Williams, Paul K. (May 16, 1991) *Ancestor Worship: The Religion of Africa*. Guardian of Truth XXXV: 10. PP. 300-301. Truth Magazine. South Africa. Available at: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume35/GOT035143.html>

¹⁹⁴ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

¹⁹⁵ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

¹⁹⁶ Ephirim-Donker, Anthony. (July 2012) *African Religion Defined. A Systematic Study of Ancestor Worship among the Akon*. Maryland: University Press of America. P. 160

the inclusion of trained clergy and elders as mediators. Prescribed rites, rituals, formulas, precepts for ritual efficacy, and festivities of honour with music and dances to provoke ancestors requires recognition.

The relevance of rituals was confirmed in the author's interview with qualified teacher Joeey Mokgapa. She confirmed that traditional beer is a prerequisite for communication with ancestor in her family. After the birth of her daughter, she brewed beer for a ceremony to introduce her daughter and to ask for their protection and guidance.

4.5.1.4.4 The Impact of Urbanisation in Ancestor Veneration

The impact of urbanisation involving the destruction of traditional patriarchal family structures, and the absence of the communal sense of belonging contributed to the renewed enforcement of the practice. Urbanisation left many black South Africans isolated, motivating them to establish a familiar sense of identity and community.

Chidester (1992:13) suggests that it is entirely possible that the ancestors provided that frame of reference in a strange and alien world which seemed to be particularly hostile to anything African. One can therefore argue that ancestor worship served a unifying function and, in a sense, constituted a form of defiance against white oppression which frowned upon the traditional practices and marginalised Black South Africans. Hence, Chidester (1992:13) points out that ancestor worship assumed a more urgent character in the nineteenth century and served as a spiritual anchor which seemed to secure the traditions and nation itself which appeared to be threatened and destabilised under European rule.¹⁹⁷

Research done by Bae¹⁹⁸ further suggested:

¹⁹⁷ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

¹⁹⁸ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

- A new black identity and new self-awareness arose during Apartheid. This coincided with antipathy towards Western Christianity.
- Ancestral worship provided a means of unified resistance to the urban displacement and white domination.
- Resistance movements propagated the return to African roots and tradition, culture and religion in an attempt to re-claim a sense of African identity in a Westernised cultural society. The revival of group identity and African consciousness accompanied a renewed interest and adherence to African culture, especially ancestral veneration.
- Traditional practices in Ancestral worship like animal sacrifices had to adapt to urban spaces.
- Ancestral worship is still practiced by many in a more modernised manner.

4.5.1.4.5 Ancestor Spirits Contribution to the Understanding of Two Kingdoms

The living dead governs African people's existence and provide meaning to their lives. God and ancestral spirits represent all that is life affirming, creative and in essence good. In contrast, opposing evil spirits threatens vitality, stability, and unity. The tension between God and benevolent spirits and opposing malevolent spirits impact and control life.

4.5.2 African Ethics and Morality

The African philosophy explained above has resulted in a profound conviction of the wickedness of witches, sorcerers, and others who intend to harm the life and health of people, prevent prosperity in business, farming and family life. Bareness

and childbirth are included in the understanding of prosperity. Religion prescribes morality. The Creator sanctifies order and ethics.

In traditional African societies, polygamy was often a tribal custom (and not immoral). A man might have a chief wife and a subordinate wife or wife's, all recognised as lawfully married. Men could have as many wife's as he could afford. It is practised in varied degrees by different tribes. Financial affordability is the determining factor.¹⁹⁹ Culture and spirituality is inseparable. Polygamy is not only a cultural integration, but also a spiritual integration.



Figure 10: Polygamy is not rare in African societies. The author once again alerted to the fact that African (black) nations should not be regarded as generic or homogenic. Mixed relationships are not unique, it is however unique for a white woman to agree to a polygamist relationship with three other wives to her husband. The traditional labola and marriage was not approved by the bride's family.²⁰⁰

¹⁹⁹ Mtuze, P.T. (October 1999) *Hidden presences in the spirituality of the Amakhosa of the Eastern Cape and the impact of Christianity on them*. Submitted in partial fulfilment for the Master's degree in Theology (Spirituality). Department of Religion and Theology. Rhodes University. Available at: <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/145053771.pdf>

²⁰⁰ Daily Sun (July 9, 2020) Phungula, Willem. *Mlungu's s'Tembu Love!*

4.5.3 Art as an Expressions of Spirituality

Two challenges exist in the study of ancient African beliefs and religion. Firstly, the diversity of the multi-cultural African people. Identifying and evaluating generic beliefs could address this challenge but also deny uniqueness in individuals. Secondly, the complete absence of any literature.

In the absence of a written language, art developed as the primary means to record thoughts and feelings.

If there are no scriptures, however, there is a great deal of artistic expression, which is the indigenous language of African belief and thought. This is Africa's own visible and tangible self-expression, and a great deal of it is concerned with religion. Knowledge of religion therefore throws light upon the interpretation of art, and the art illuminates the religion. Hence it can be claimed that African art provides a kind of scripture of African religion, for it is its expression from within.²⁰¹

According to Olaomo Azeez²⁰² worship is the primary purpose of African art, excluding pottery and textiles for domestic use. Art mirror the supernatural, nature, as well as the activities of man and the life cycle from birth to death. Motherhood and the mystery of life is often a central theme. Art could be evaluated as sacrosanct literature.

4.5.3.1 Paintings

The oldest known art are paintings and engravings on walls of caves and shelters dated from the mid-sixth millennium B.C. to the first millennium B.C. These

²⁰¹ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 21

²⁰² Azeez, Alaomo A. (December 2010) *Global Journal of Human Social Science*. Indigenous Art and Religion in Africa. Available at: https://globaljournals.org/GJHSS_Volume10/6-Indigeneous-Art-and-Religion-in-Africa.pdf

paintings contain images of animals, hunting, the supernatural, social ceremonies as well as the arrival of the horse and camel to the continent.²⁰³

J.D. Lewis-Williams²⁰⁴ distinguished the interpretation of rock art in three approaches: the aesthetic, the narrative and the interpretative approaches. The aesthetic portrays animals in particular detail of posture and movement. The narrative portrays daily life, customs, and traditions of the group. The interpretative reflects beliefs and deals with the trance dance and the spiritual experiences of the shaman which provide a deeper insight into rock art. The complexity involves varied meanings and symbolic associations. Small detail can change the whole meaning of the picture. Objects are represented in the paintings, but an interpretation cannot be based on recognisable features alone.

4.5.3.2 Sculptures

Terracotta, bronze, and mud are found to be the main mediums used. Bronze heads included imagery of serenity and the opposite pictures of old age, suffering and disease. Sculptures depicting mythology included imagery of the chameleon, ram, dog, elephant, bull, monkeys, birds, reptiles, and especially the owl. Mud and clay sculptures portrays God, people, and animals. Noteworthy is the fusion of Christian imagery alongside the imagery of traditional beliefs. This provided significant and expressive evidence of the infusion of Christian and traditional African religions.

The earth mother goddess, Ala, usually with a child is often depicted. Opposing Ala is the storm god Amandi-oha and a water goddess Ekunochie. Worshippers

²⁰³ Martin, Phyllis M. and O'Meara, Patrick (1977) *Africa*. Bloomington and London: Indiana University Press. P. 229

²⁰⁴ Lenka Tucek, L. T. (2001) *The meaning of South African rock paintings*. Term Paper, Grade: 1 (A). Available at: <https://www.grin.com/document/20049>

are more often depicted than gods. The presence of gods is rather portrayed in symbols such as axes, metals, snakes, pots, and plants.

The supreme being, regardless of specific cultures and different names, is never portrayed in sculptures. The author noted the 'coincidental' resemblance with Exodus 20:4²⁰⁵ where God forbid the worshipping of any sculpture images.

4.5.3.3 Wooden Masks

Wooden masks of animals, humans, mythical creatures etc. are a common form of art. They are produced within tribal societies and expresses specific beliefs revered to by the society or tribe. It often depicts deities or ancestors and is believed to channel spirits when worn by ceremonial dancers. As such, it is used to represent and communicate with the supernatural.²⁰⁶

Wooden masks are religious whether they are naturalistic, formal or abstract. They represent the dead or attendant spirits in their rituals, or "secret societies" connected with the dead or serving to suppress witchcraft. Impassive or terrifying, distorted or abstract, the masks powerfully demonstrate the awesomeness of the dead as well as the convictions that death is not the end. They are made to be worn by people who impersonate the dead, their bodies usually being covered with robes beneath the masks, and they must not be spoken of as human beings but as spirits."²⁰⁷

4.5.3.4 Music, Dance and Drums

Music, dance, and drums remains primary African art and are associated with religious practice. Rhythm distinguishes music for religious purposes. June

²⁰⁵ Exodus 20:4 (NKJV) You shall not make for yourself an image in the form of anything in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the waters below. You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, punishing the children for the sin of the parents to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me.

²⁰⁶ Religious Art in Africa. Available at: <https://courses.lumenlearning.com/boundless-arthistory/chapter/religious-art-in-africa/>

²⁰⁷ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 20

Dickie²⁰⁸ from the University of Kwa-Zulu Natal recounted the Shembe church practice of incorporating traditional patterns of Zulu music in their worship and their claims that conversion to Christianity is possible without culture.

Parrinder²⁰⁹ explained how the secular and religious dances are integrated; the religious dances hold social value because several people participate and secular dances in turn cannot be separated from the spiritual for both embrace the superior life force or vital energy which is the supreme value of life. The sacred and profane cannot be separated. Dance express life and the continuity of the past and the present and the future.

4.5.3.5 Toyi-toyi

Contemporary South Africa recognises and associates toyi-toyi with aggressive and often destructive protest. In contrast Dr. Broodryk²¹⁰ described the dance as a loose, non-aggressive play-like group dance performed in a happy spirit and mood. The author investigated the possible ulterior meaning of the dance and discovered that it symbolises the triumph of spirit through song and dance.

In modern South Africa the toyi-toyi is the war dance of black South Africans, which dates back to the Mau Mau people in Kenya, who rose against the English colonialists. From protests to celebrations, the chants capture the emotions of joy, pain, encouragement, heartbreak and solace. Toyi-toyi is a powerful and infectious statement, by which the oppressed may voice their grievances to the government.²¹¹

²⁰⁸ Dickie, June F. (2017) Scriptura 116 (2017) Singing the Psalms: Applying Principles of African Music to Bible Translations. P. 1-16. Available at: https://www.academia.edu/37600474/Singing_the_Psalms_Applying_Principles_of_African_Music_to_Bible_Translation?email_work_card=view-paper

²⁰⁹ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited. P. 21

²¹⁰ Broodryk, Johann Dr. (2007) *Understanding South Africa – The uBuntu way of living*. Publiseff Publishers. Waterkloof, Pretoria. P.136

²¹¹ Nevitt, Liza. *Toyi-toyi*. Available at: https://www.capetownmagazine.com/whats-the-deal-with/toyi-toyi/125_22_17384

In reporting for the BBC Melissa Twigg²¹² made the following remarks with reference to the power of the Toyi-toyi dance in South Africa.

Dance in South Africa escalated from an emotional expression to a political and liberation expression. The Toyi-toyi dance in particular is a rhythmic, stomping movement that elevated protest to something bewitching.

The dance is intrinsically included life celebrations e.g., weddings, birthdays etc. Contrasting other dances, the toyi-toyi is not associated with any single tribe. This, along with the acknowledgement of its unifying power in political, labour, and other protest actions, along with the expression of joy at celebrations, earned the dance the reference as South Africa's 12th official language.

4.6 Additional Fundamental Spiritual Practices and Concepts

4.6.1 Voodoo

Prof. Dr. Brand²¹³ defined Voodoo (Wodu, Vodun, Vodoum) as an animistic religion founded in West Africa. Vodun derives from Vodou, meaning spirit or deity. It is believed that divinities or spirits control and manipulate nature and natural forces are animated. Communication is possible in a subconscious trance or ecstatic state. Gbédoto is the divine origin of the universe. The divine power, the universe, created itself and perpetually recreates itself anew.

The Universal Life Church²¹⁴ differentiated between Voodoo and Hoodoo. The former is interpreted as an actual religion with rituals, leaders, teachers, and representatives. The latter is not a religion and has no organizational structure or documented dogma. It is practiced by individuals with magic powers or African

²¹² Twigg, Melissa (November 13, 2018) *Is this South Africa's 12th Official language?* Available at: <http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20181112-is-this-south-africas-12th-official-language>

²¹³ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Voodoo and Witchcraft*. Pretoria. Radah Ministries.

²¹⁴ Voodoo vs. Hoodoo: What is the difference? (October 28, 2019) Universal Life Church. Available at: <https://www.ulc.org/ulc-blog/voodoo-vs-hoodoo-whats-the-difference>

folk magic, aided by talismans, roots, herbs, crystals, animal parts etc. Kevin Meares²¹⁵, Director at Delaware Valley Demonology Research also confirmed Voodoo as a religion – a collection of densely related religions originated in the slave trade. Meares defined hoodoo as a folk tradition of magic, and although the practices might be associated with black magic, it should not be associated to be the same. Caleb Erb²¹⁶ summarised the difference in stating that Voodoo is a religion, and the magic they use is called Hoodoo.

According to Kwena Makgamatha²¹⁷ the Voodoo religion of the Caribbean is not practiced in South Africa. He identified “another form of what is supposedly evil magic” as witchcraft – also referred to as ‘baloi’ in Sotho and ‘ubuthakatho’ in the Nguni languages. According to him the term ‘voodoo’ is generally not used in South Africa.

The Sunday Times (June 7, 2014)²¹⁸ reported on the increase of vampirism, spiritual intimidation, voodoo and other harmful religious practices in South African schools. The particular article narrated the suspected sacrifice of two schoolgirls as a result of their alleged unwillingness to partake in rituals. The newspaper reported:

Stevens, who calls herself a prophet, described the George Khosa school as a “hub for harmful religious practices”. Stevens said altars where initiation ceremonies were believed to be taking place were found on the school’s premises. With the female cloak rooms being a common spot. It was here that girls reported performing abortions and drinking blood, as well as making sacrifices “for strengthening.”

²¹⁵ Meares, Kevin (November 17, 2018). *Is voodoo black magic?* Available at: <https://www.quora.com/Is-voodoo-black-magic>

²¹⁶ Erb, Caleb (November 16, 2020) *What is the difference between voodoo and witchcraft?* Available at: <https://www.quora.com/What-is-the-difference-between-voodoo-and-witchcraft>

²¹⁷ Makgamatha, Kwena (October 2, 2018) *Is voodoo true in South Africa?* Available at: <https://www.quora.com/Is-voodoo-true-in-south-Africa>

²¹⁸ Sunday Times/Times Live. (June 7, 2014) Cornelius, Jerome. *Harmful religious practice and occult on the rise in SA.* Available at: <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2014-06-07-harmful-religious-practice-and-occult-on-the-rise-in-sa/>



Figure 11: Evidence of Voodoo practice in South Africa.²¹⁹



Figure 12: Blood appearing on the floor – the author was not able to categorise this occurrence between voodoo, magic, or witchcraft. The phenomena is disturbing and emphasises the prominence of blood.²²⁰

²¹⁹ Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Mabunda, Ntsako. *Dolls hang from tree.*

²²⁰ Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Lebuso, Sthembiso and Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Bleeding House Horror: I saw blood coming from the floor!*

4.6.2 Witchcraft²²¹

In contrast to Voodoo, witchcraft is not considered to be a religion. Although witchcraft and traditional African religions are often equated, it is important to note that it is not the opinion of the research that witchcraft and African Traditional Religions are equivalent, or that African Traditional Religions inevitably includes, or even approve witchcraft practices. The contrary is closer to the truth.

Basically, it is the belief that certain people, chiefly women, have the power of changing themselves into other forms, when they prey on the bodies and souls of their enemies or even their relatives.²²²

Godwin²²³ clarified the phenomena by stating that although the terminology witchcraft, divination and sorcery are often used interchangeable to describe witchcraft, the latter is satanic power - Satan's strategy to impose his will on emotions, behaviours and circumstances through curses and spells. Divination is defined as fortune telling and a method Satan uses to influence people through their anxiety to know the future. Sorcery involves power projected to manifest through objects such as amulets, charms, potions, drinks, fetishes, drugs and even music. In addition to the mentioned phenomena, he also added Idolatry. He exposed rebellion as the root of witchcraft manifesting through manipulation, domination and intimidation and stubbornness is identified as the root of idolatry.

Paul includes witchcraft and idolatry in describing works of the flesh in his letter to the church in Galatians:

Now the works of the flesh are evident, which are: adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lewdness, idolatry, sorcery, hatred, contentions, jealousies, outbursts of wrath, selfish ambitions, dissensions, heresies,

Galatians 5:19-20 (NKJV)

²²¹ Refer to Chapter Two, Point Four: Occultism)

²²² Parrinder, Geoffrey (1967) *African Mythology*. London: Paul Hamlyn Ltd. P. 92

²²³ Godwin, Rick (1977) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*. Lake Mary, Florida: Creation House. P. 2

Godwin²²⁴ defined “bewitchment” as:

the power to mislead, using spells and hexes. The Greek word literally means to “to smite or mislead with the eye.”

Manipulation functions covertly via guilt and fear whereas domination, proceeding from manipulation controls via condemnation and threats of rejection.

Witchcraft is not included in the “freedom of religion” charter of the South African Constitution. To the contrary, it is forbidden according to the 1957 “Witchcraft Act”.

	shall be guilty of an offence and liable on conviction—
	(i) in the case of an offence referred to in paragraph (a), in consequence of which the person in respect of whom such offence was committed, has been killed or where the accused has been proved to be by habit or repute a witch-doctor or witch-finder, to imprisonment for a period not exceeding twenty years or to a whipping not exceeding ten strokes or to both such imprisonment and such whipping;
	(ii) in the case of any other offence referred to in the said paragraph, to one or more of the following penalties, namely, a fine not exceeding five hundred pounds, imprisonment for a period not exceeding ten years and a whipping not exceeding ten strokes;
	(iii) in the case of an offence referred to in paragraph (b), (c) or (d), to a fine not exceeding two hundred and fifty pounds or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding five years or to both such fine and such imprisonment;
	(iv) in the case of an offence referred to in paragraph (e), to a fine not exceeding one hundred pounds or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding two years.
Presumption.	2. Where any person in respect of whom an offence referred to in paragraph (a) of section one was committed, is killed it shall be presumed until the contrary is proved, that such person was killed in consequence of the commission of such offence.
Repeal of laws.	3. The laws mentioned in the Schedule to this Act are hereby repealed to the extent set out in the fourth column of that Schedule.
Short title.	4. This Act shall be called the Witchcraft Suppression Act, 1957.

Figure 13: Witchcraft Act: Union Gazette Extraordinary, No. 3. 22nd February, 1957²²⁵

²²⁴ Godwin, Rick (1977) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*. Lake Mary, Florida: Creation House. P. 53

²²⁵ Union Gazette Extraordinary, No. 3. 22nd February 1957 Available at: https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201505/act-3-1957.pdf

The Act has since been related to the Animal Protection Act No. 71 of 1962.²²⁶ The only amendment to the Act was published in 1997 to accommodate the new legislation pertaining to corporal punishment: Punishment described in Section (i) and (ii) as “a whipping not exceeding ten strokes” needed to be aligned with the Abolition of Corporal Punishment Act, 1997:

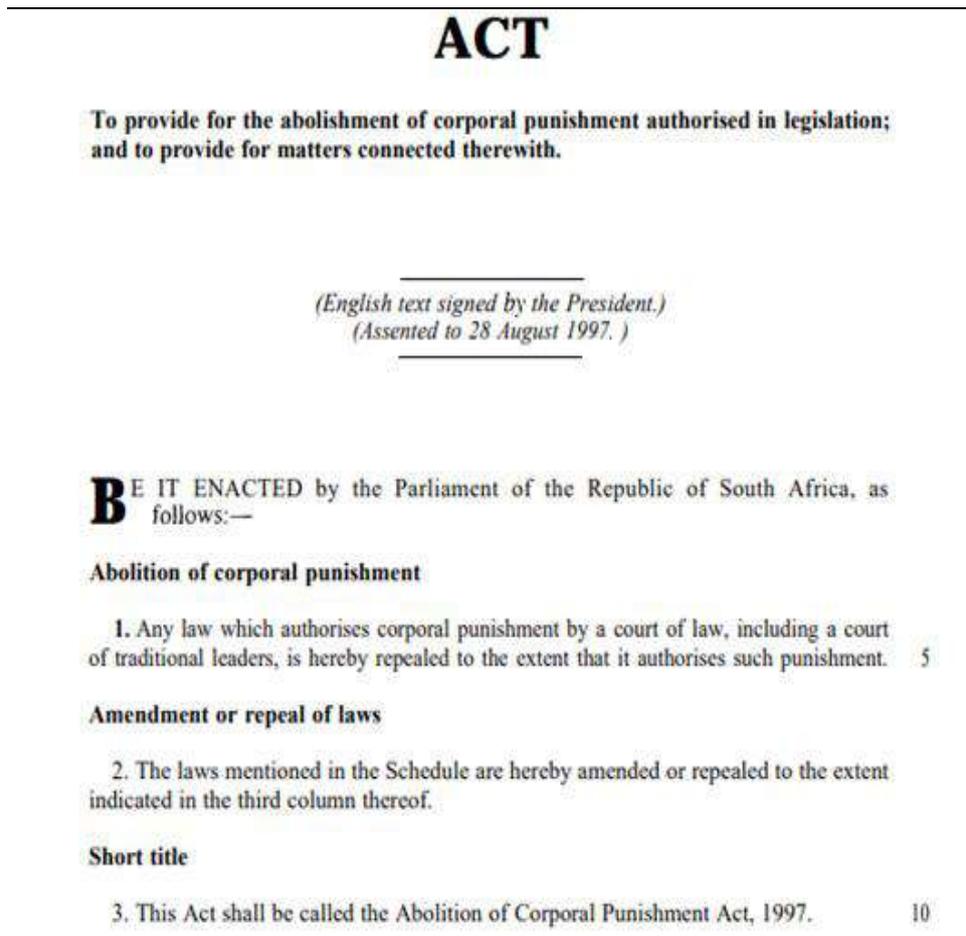


Figure 14: Abolition of Corporal Punishment Act, 1997²²⁷

²²⁶ Animal Protection Act No. 71 of 1962. Act to consolidate and amend the laws relating to the prevention of cruelty to animals. Available at: https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201505/act-71-1962.pdf

²²⁷ Republic of South Africa Government Gazette Vol 387 Cape Town, September 5, 1997. No. 18256. Available at: https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201409/a33-97.pdf



Figure 15: The SA Police Service and the Judiciary often do not persecute transgressors of the Witchcraft Act. In desperation and frustrated by lawlessness community kgotla/lekgotla (public meeting, community council/traditional law court) act as judge, jury, and executors of judgements. The home of the alleged murder's grandmother was set alight.²²⁸



Figure 16: Witchcraft often uses personal items to curse an individual – this article reported the use of a G-string as well as animal bones to curse.²²⁹

²²⁸ Daily Sun (May 18, 2020) Sebola, Joshua. *Dead teens body parts missing*

²²⁹ Daily Sun (July 25, 2018) Kgalalele, Tlhoalele. *G-string muthi bad luck*



Figure 17: Both articles deal with witchcraft sacrifices: human and animal. The skull of the very dog killed are used to combat the presence of the Tokoloshe and to prevent further attacks.²³⁰



Figure 18: The award-winning vocalist Mara Louw faith in God but it did not prohibit efforts of witchcraft to 'steal her luck'.²³¹

²³⁰ Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) Michaels, Modiri. Dog's skull keeps tokoloshe away! Abd Masipa, Ntebatse. *Burnt human sacrifice found at river*

²³¹ Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Mara's muthi headache!*

4.6.3 Magic and Sorcery²³²

According to Parrinder²³³ **“magic is the practice of making charms to help or to harm people, so the good magician, medicine man or doctor, is a respected figure.”**

Prof. Dr. Brand²³⁴ described the phenomena as a means “to influence the course of event by compelling the agency of spiritual being, or by bringing into operation some occultic controlling principle of nature. Prof. Dr. Brand identified two dimensions of ‘One’s Own Power’ and ‘Power from Other Beings.’

“Own Power” comprises of the ability to operate principles of nature by own physic energy in order to accomplish specific purposes for personal benefit. The latter expand beyond personal psychic power and consciously invoke aid of other beings. This include necromancy, spiritism, sorcery and mediumship.

Parrinder²³⁵ defined the sorcerers as **“bad magicians who operate in secret and hated by fellow men.”** Godwin²³⁶ described sorcery as **“the method used to project power through objects such as amulets, charms, potions, drinks, fetishes, drugs and even music”.**

According to Jonker²³⁷ day sorcerers causes harm to people with whom they are in conflict. Night sorcerers, believed to be indiscriminately evil, operate on fear. It is believed that they use cursed medicines and objects to cause harm.

²³² Refer to Chapter Two, Point Four: Occultism)

²³³ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1967) *African Mythology*. London: Paul Hamlyn Ltd. P. 92

²³⁴ Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Voodoo and Witchcraft*. Pretoria. Radah Ministries.

²³⁵ Parrinder, Geoffrey (1967) *African Mythology*. London: Paul Hamlyn Ltd. P. 92

²³⁶ Godwin, Rick (1977) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*. Lake Mary, Florida: Creation House. P. 2

²³⁷ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her ‘sangomahood’ through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 30



Figure 19: Sangomas uses a variety of objects for divination.²³⁸

4.6.5 Sangoma and Traditional Healers

African traditional healing is intertwined with cultural and religious beliefs and is holistic in nature, focusing on the physical, psychological, spiritual, and social aspects of individuals and communities.²³⁹

Recognised for their influence in primarily African communities, 'Sangoma (also known as diviners) and Traditional Healers' (herbalist or inyanga) are familiar in all language and cultural societies, revered or avoided with fear. Reliance on ancestral spirits for diagnoses is a common aspect. Varied interpretations and

²³⁸ Daily Sun. (July 22, 2019) Mgidi, Emily. *Needles are my bones!*

²³⁹ Lange, Gill (February 7, 2018) *Different types of Healers in South Africa*. Available at: <https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/different-types-healers-south-africa/>

categories were identified:

- Jonker²⁴⁰ identified destructive and evil (wizards and witches), diagnosticians or diviners (sangomas and smellers), therapists (medicine men and herbalists) and specialists (rainmakers and disease specialists). These categories sometimes overlap.
- The Traditional Health Practitioners Act No. 22 of 2007 accommodates herbalists (*izinyanga* or *amaxhwele*), diviners (*izangoma* or *amagqirha*), traditional surgeons (*iingcibi*) who mainly do circumcisions, and traditional birth attendants (*ababelethisi* or *abazalis*).
- Friedman²⁴¹ referred to the Sangoma, Igqirha, or Ngake.
- The World Health Organisation (WHO)

Someone who is recognized by the community in which he or she lives as competent to provide health care by using vegetable, animal and mineral substances and certain other methods based on the social, cultural and religious background as well as the prevailing knowledge, attitudes and beliefs regarding physical, mental and social well-being and the causation of disease and disability in the community.

The World Health Organisation defines traditional medicine as follows:

The sum total of all knowledge and practices, whether explicable or not, used in diagnosing, preventing or eliminating a physical, mental or social disequilibrium and which rely exclusively on past experience and observation handed down from generation to generation, verbally or in writing” and “ health practices, approaches, knowledge, and beliefs incorporating plant, animal and mineral based medicines, spiritual therapies, manual techniques and exercise, applied singular or in combination, to treat, diagnose and prevent illnesses or maintain well-being.²⁴²

Primary in the contextualisation of Sangomas and Traditional Healers is the discourse of Western and alternative traditional medicine and the concept of

²⁴⁰ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her ‘sangomahood’ through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 2

²⁴¹ Freedman, Lianne (October 13, 2017) *Traditional healer (Songoma) medical certificates*. BusinessBrief. Available at: <https://www.bbrief.co.za/2017/10/13/traditional-healer-sangoma-medical-certificates/>

²⁴² Mokgobi, M.G. (November 18, 2015) *Understanding traditional African healing*. Available at: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4651463/>

healing. African Traditional Religion remains fundamental in key concepts such as medicine/muti, patients, consultation, culture, 'throw the bones', rituals, and ancestors.



Figure 20 : This article illustrated specific areas of expertise within the broader sangoma phenomena. Sangoma Ivy Visage specialises in the area of vutha (fire). The article also demonstrated various levels of authority and rival curses inspired by jealousy.²⁴³

4.6.5.1 The Calling of a Traditional Healer and Sangomas

Traditional healers 'calling to sangomahood' manifest by means of dreams or illness. The illness appears to be incurable until the candidate surrenders to the calling and report for training. The 'chosen' ones are normally following in a family

²⁴³ Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Nebatse. *Vutha shocks sangoma!*

lineage, the 'sangomahood' is bestowed by ancestors unto chosen individuals. The existing or older family sangoma or healer is often aware of the calling before it is revealed to the 'new' individual. In addition to the recurring sickness, the 'calling' is confirmed by other sangomas or prophets.

The duration varies between 12 to 24 months during which the trainee lives with the educator. Graduation includes an initiation ceremony.

In some cases, training even occurs under water and is given by a crocodile (Ngubane, 1977).²⁴⁴



Figure 21: The article confirmed the observance to a 'calling' as Traditional Healer. It is often wrongfully perceived to be a 'calling' or 'anointing from God' and the manifested power of the Holy Spirit. Thapelo Ramakokobo sends his father Elias to do the "work of God". It also illustrated that there is no age restriction for this calling and the significance of water.

"Thapelo sends his dad to the river, koppie (hill) or bush to bathe and pray for people." "I can play while he's washing people in the river" he said.²⁴⁵

²⁴⁴ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 29

²⁴⁵ Daily Sun. (October 7, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. *Young Thapelo heals the sick*.



Figure 22: This article confirmed a number of significant facts: people can be cursed by muti sprinkled on pathways, people believe witches can fly at night, sangomas specialises in specific areas (fighting tokoloshes and evil spirits and to heal). Sangomas are called and trained. Individuals often become ill until they adhere to the calling.²⁴⁶

4.6.5.2 Anthropological Interpretation of Sickness and Healing

Culture and religion influences patients' experiences of illnesses and diseases. The interdependence of African people with ancestral spirits is fundamental to their health. Causes for illness are sought on a spiritual level. Night and day sorcerers are believed to be able to cause ailment.

In addition, ancestors may withdraw protection when they are dissatisfied with the conduct of the individual. Continued sacrifices to the departed ensures good will which includes good health. Disapproval of the ancestors might result in illness and diseases. As such, ancestors are distinctly incorporated in the diagnose process.

²⁴⁶ Daily Sun. (September 20, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse and Moretsi, Sammy. *Leave my broom alone!*

4.6.5.3 Anthropological Diagnoses Methodology

Interdisciplinary aspects of culture and religion are incorporated in the physiological or biological science of diagnoses.

From this perspective, the human body is understood as a product of social and cultural processes, and of biology and is, therefore, simultaneously totally biological and totally cultural. These concerns are identical with sociological and historical approaches that adopt a social constructionist perspective (Guarnaccia, 2001).²⁴⁷

Contrary to Western practice where the patient relates symptoms to the medical practitioner, African traditional healers often rely on revelations from ancestor spirits to communicate symptoms of the illness to the patient. In contrast to Western medical diagnoses, African healers are able to answer questions such as 'why me' or 'why now' according to the revelation received from the ancestors.

Diagnoses accommodate natural and unnatural causes for diseases. Unnatural includes the spiritual, supernatural, or magical. Jonker²⁴⁸ identified the following unnatural causes of illness:

- Wizards and witches practicing black magic through spells.
- Evil spirits responsible for natural disasters.
- Dissatisfied ancestors.
- Ancestors who feel neglected.
- Destructive spirits (Wanton spirits) who died with a grudge against society.
- Jealousy or hatred from other people.
- A contravention of what is perceived to be forbidden.

²⁴⁷ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 14

²⁴⁸ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 31

- Ignorance towards rituals pertaining to 'polluted' states which includes birth, death, breast-feeding, menstruation and sexual intercourse.

The result of these unnatural causes can include serious conditions such as congenital malformations such as hair lip, spina bifida, Siamese twins, dwarfs, and albinos, cancer, barrenness, miscarriage, and death.

There are more than 50 conditions that traditional healers deal with, which range from skin problems to stomach ulcers. They also deal with five cultural-bound syndromes for which biomedicine has few answers, namely ancestral wrath, spirit possession, sorcery, defilement and neglect of cultural rites (Pretorius, 1999)²⁴⁹

Diagnoses rely on a combination of holistic approaches combining biology, religion, social and supernatural factors. Engagement with ancestors in a triangular meditation (ancestor, healer, and patient) to reveal the diagnoses remains the primary methodology. The healer acts as a medium to communicate with the spiritual.

4.6.5.4 Anthropological Interpretation of Medicine: Muti²⁵⁰ and Herbal Medicine

African societies accommodate two parallel avenues of Western and the alternative or traditional African medicine. African healing methodology also accommodates the spiritual. Jonker exposed how the Western and African healing often combines in stating that an estimate of 1% of trained nurses are

²⁴⁹ Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 32

²⁵⁰ Muti: A Zulu word meaning medicine. Medicine, not according to Western interpretation but relating to medicine manufactured in a traditional manner, believed to hold supernatural power. The ingredients could include a combination of leaves, roots, herbs, seawater, animal and human body parts etc. The Muti is prepared by traditional healers for application externally (rubbed on the skin or applied to wounds) as well as for consumption. Muti is strongly associated with ancestor veneration and the casting of spells. African "Muti murders" (October 11, 2013). Available at: <http://alterreddimensions.net/2013/african-muti-medicine-murders-hospitals-sell-body-parts-murderers-harvest-organs-from-live-victims-witch-doctors-black-magic-spells>

also trained traditional healers. Her study was done in 2007. New research to determine a possible increase is not available.

The possible integration of the two concepts in the curricula of medical studies is currently debated. Holdstock²⁵¹ supported the integration of the two methodologies:

Before all else, science must be comprehensive and all-inclusive. It must accept within its jurisdiction even that which it cannot understand or explain, that which cannot be measured, predicted, controlled or ordered.

Natural causes of sickness are treated with herbal medicine. Unnatural causes for the ailment are a result of sorcery or dissatisfied ancestors.

4.6.5.4.1 Muti (Muthi)

For centuries, Africans have relied on traditional medicine called Muti. Muti is often associated with witchcraft although this assumption is not correct. Deriving from the Zulu word 'umuthi', meaning 'tree', muti is primarily herbal medicine consisting of herbs, tree bark, and other plant parts. In an interview with Jeanne, a qualified traditional healer, confirmed Muti as primarily herbal medicine. It sometimes incorporates animal parts, but never blood or human flesh. 'Recipes' for herbal mixtures and guidance with regards to herbal treatment is also available on a 'application' for smart phones. Traditional healers often rely on ancestral spirits to reveal a specific ailment and the appropriate muti-medicine.

'Bad muthi' is muti affiliated to witchcraft and contains animal parts (hair, skin, claws, organs). Specific animals are believed to hold specific powers. The nose of a hyena, the skull of vulture, snakeskin, chameleons, baboon claws to name a few.

²⁵¹ Holdstock, T.L. (1979) *Indigenous healing in South Africa: a neglected potential*. South African Journal of Psychology, 9 (3/4). P. 123



Figure 23 : Confirmation of the use of animals to curse as well as the fact that sangomas curse one another.²⁵²

4.6.5.4.2 Human Organs for Muti and Muti Murders

The human body is believed to present special power. Most South Africans are acquainted with the terminology “Muti murder”. It is associated with superstition, myths, cruelty, and witchcraft. Jeanne confirmed that the ‘safe’ herbal medicine sometimes contains animal but it does not contain human flesh. Muti is also associated with witchcraft and black magic. These muti-mixtures might also contain human flesh.

A case study published in 2009 (Trafficking Body Parts in Mozambique and South Africa)²⁵³ confirmed the following:

- One in Five people in rural areas has had first-hand experience of a human body part being ‘harvested’ by muti-killings.
- Male genitals, breasts, hearts, fingers and tongues are the most common. Heads, female genital organs, breasts, ears, eyes, hands, legs, lungs, guts,

²⁵² Daily Sun (August 1, 2017) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Rats ate my bones!*

²⁵³ IOL. (January 16, 2010) Bailey, Candice. Muti killings is a way of life in rural areas. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/muti-killings-is-a-way-of-life-in-rural-areas-470603>

skin, arms, jaws, lips and fingers are also used. The different body parts vary in power and application.²⁵⁴

- 27 of 72 accounts relating to the trafficking of body parts mentioned in the report. were from South Africa.



Figure 24: Remains of aborted babies found buried in a Sangoma property confirmed the belief that fetuses possesses strong power to enhance the effect of muti.²⁵⁵

Albino²⁵⁶ body parts are believed to hold supernatural healing power resulting in increasing murders. In addition, it is also believed that sex with an albino woman will cure HIV/Aids. This superstition increases albino women's fear of being raped.²⁵⁷

²⁵⁴ Thenga, Khalirendwe (2019) The motive of South African male muti murder offender. A case study. University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. Available at: <http://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/handle/10539/28339>

²⁵⁵ Daily Sun. (November 22, 2018) Moagi, Christopher. *Yard of Horrors!*

²⁵⁶ Albinism is a congenital disorder resulting in complete or partial absence of pigment in skin, hair and eyes. Affected people have white skin and hair, and in some cases, reddish eyes. The condition can lead to vision loss, extreme sun-sensitivity and psychological issues stemming from embarrassment. India Today (June 8, 2016). *Why Albinos are being abducted, mutilated, raped and killed in Africa*. Available at: <https://www.indiatoday.in/who-is-what-is/story/albino-killed-in-malawai-africa-body-parts-superstition-12967-2016-06-08>

²⁵⁷ *Why Albinos are being abducted, mutilated, raped and killed in Africa*. (June 8, 2016) India Today. Available at: <https://www.indiatoday.in/who-is-what-is/story/albino-killed-in-malawai-africa-body-parts-superstition-12967-2016-06-08>



Figure 25: Photo taken by the author in Polokwane, Limpopo. Advertisements for 'safe abortions' are common in South Africa. It is the opinion of the author that the remains of these 'back street abortions' are often used for muti purposes.²⁵⁸



Figure 26 : Desperate harvesters of body parts did not kill the victim in an effort to take her heart. Specific organs holds specific powers. Sangomas do not necessarily provide the needed ingredients. The acquisition thereof remains the responsibility of the clients.²⁵⁹

²⁵⁸ Photo taken by Author in Polokwane, Limpopo.

²⁵⁹ Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killers wanted my heart!*

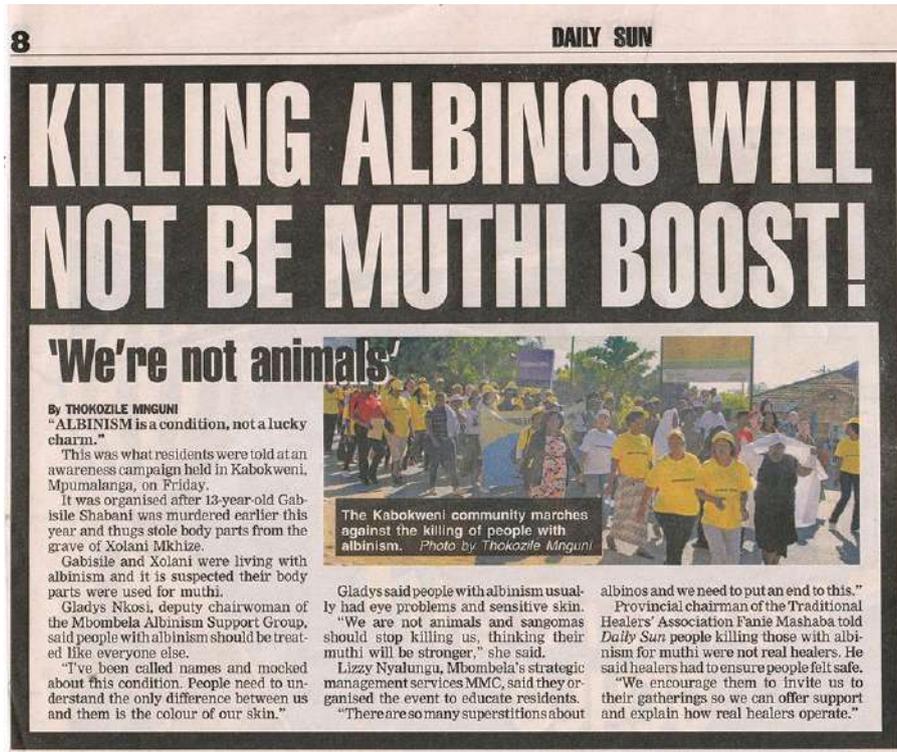


Figure 27: Murder inspired by the superstition of the enhanced power of muti if it contains albino body parts.²⁶⁰



Figure 28: Specific awareness campaigns in order to address superstition and the threat to people with Albinism.²⁶¹

²⁶⁰ Daily Sun. (June 11, 2018) Mnguni, Thokozile. *Killing Albinos Will Not Be Muthi Boost!*

²⁶¹ Daily Sun. (November 20, 2018) Mali, Bamako. *I'm a Human Being!*



Figure 29: Tongues, breasts, nipples, and reproductive organ (punani) are believed to hold specific power²⁶²



Figure 30: Nipples are believed to enhance the power of muti²⁶³

²⁶² Daily Sun. Tlhoale, Kga lalelo. *Chopped up for R50k!*

²⁶³ Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killed for her nipples!*



Figure 31: Genitalia are believed to holds great power as a Muthi ingredient, regardless of if fact that the 'victim' was murdered or already diseased. ²⁶⁴

Communities are often traumatised by ritual killings or muthi murders. Witchdoctors are powerful individuals and communities are afraid to report such murders. It is important to note that most sangomas do not include human flesh in their medicine muti.

²⁶⁴ Daily Sun. (September 25, 2020) *Part of Mkhulu's penis cut off!*

4.6.6 The Significance of Water

Water not only holds symbolic, cultural, or natural value, but also spiritual significance. Aquatic spirits under rulership of Leviathan; Prince of the West in Satan's organisation were discussed at length in Chapter two. Some sangomas claim that they survived extensive period under water where they met the snake that lives in water. Lumka Madolo²⁶⁵ explained the significance of water in her family:

Having a family full of abantu abamhlophe (people with a calling to become traditional healers), playing near the river was a dangerous game. As a result, my mother always used to tell me, and stress the fact, that I was not allowed to swim – whether in a river, dam or sea on school tours. It was believed that abantu abamhlophe would get pulled beneath the water in order to join their ancestors – and emerge as a Sangoma after a number of months underwater – if they do not accept the calling.

Reference to water in this Chapter:

Paragraph no.	
1.2.3	Holy water used in rituals reported in article titled: 'My ex-lover used muthi on me
2.2.2.1	"Water used for cleansing rites and to enhance fellowship
6.5.3.2	Sculptures often portray the water goddess Eku
3.6.5.1	Under-water training of Sangoma's
3.6.5.1	Water rituals reported in article titled Young Thapelo heals the sick.
5.5.2	Isivivane at the Freedom Park represents water

²⁶⁵ Madolo, Lumka. (March 11, 2019) *My second calling to the river*. Available at: https://www.wwf.org.za/our_news/our_blog/my_second_calling_to_the_river/

5.5	Water significant for cleansing and healing
6.10.1	Water is recognised as one of the five spirit forces
7.1	Water mixed with blood is used in rituals
7.7.1	Traditional Healers prohibited to collect 'living water' from waterfalls due to the lockdown regulations included in the 2020 Covid-19 restrictions.

Table 7: Referrals to water

Traditional water healers received recognition with their inclusion in the Vaal Environmental Justice Alliance (VEJA). Spiritual water users were previously excluded in official environmental and water management project.²⁶⁶

5. KINGDOM CULTURE – A BIBLICAL EVALUATION

5.1 Life After Death

The belief that spirits of the deceased reside on earth and influence the lives of others are not scriptural.

But there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, full of sores, who was laid at his gate, desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table. Moreover, the dogs came and licked his sores. So it was that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels to Abraham's bosom. The rich man also died and was buried. And being in torments in Hades, he lifted up his eyes and saw Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. "Then he cried and said, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame.' But Abraham said, 'Son, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things; but now he is comforted and you are tormented. And besides all this, between us and you there is a

²⁶⁶ Tsabalala, Mduduzi. () VEJA. A publication of the Vaal Environmental Justice Alliance and the South African Water Caucus. Available at: https://static1.squarespace.com/static/5a7859a10abd0477ecb31301/t/5c682793085229f28763c017/1550329819579/Water-and-Tradition_With-Ackn.pdf

great gulf fixed, so that those who want to pass from here to you cannot, nor can those from there pass to us.’ “Then he said, ‘I beg you therefore, father, that you would send him to my father’s house, for I have five brothers, that he may testify to them, lest they also come to this place of torment.’ Abraham said to him, ‘They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them.’ And he said, ‘No, father Abraham; but if one goes to them from the dead, they will repent.’ But he said to him, ‘If they do not hear Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded though one rise from the dead.’

Luke 16:20-31 (NKJV)

So, we are always confident, knowing that while we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord. For we walk by faith, not by sight. We are confident, yes, well pleased rather to be absent from the body and to be present with the Lord.

2 Corinthians 5:6-10 (NKJV)

And as it is appointed for men to die once, but after this the judgment,

Hebrews 9:27 (NKJV)

Then I saw a great white throne and Him who sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away. And there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, standing before God, and books were opened. And another book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged according to their works, by the things which were written in the books. The sea gave up the dead who were in it, and Death and Hades delivered up the dead who were in them. And they were judged, each one according to his works. Then Death and Hades were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And anyone not found written in the Book of Life was cast into the lake of fire.

Revelations 20:11-15 (NKJV)

5.2 Intermediary

Jesus Christ was born from the virgin Mary. He lived a sinless life, he was persecuted and crucified for our sins, buried in a grave, resurrected by God, seen by a multitude of witnesses, ascended into heaven, and sits now at the right hand of the Father where He intercedes on the behalf of those who have placed their

faith and trust in Him (Acts 26:23²⁶⁷; Romans 1:2-5²⁶⁸; Hebrews 4:15²⁶⁹; 1 Peter 1:3-4²⁷⁰).

Thus, there is only one Mediator between God and man, and that is God's Son, Jesus Christ (1 Timothy 2:5-6²⁷¹; Hebrews 8:6²⁷², 9:15²⁷³, 12:24²⁷⁴).

The Roman Catholic faith also accommodates Mary as intercessor to God.

5.3 Worship

Exodus states it boldly that no other god besides the Triune God should be worshipped.

“You shall have no other gods before Me.

“You shall not make for yourself a carved image—any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth; you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. For I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing mercy to thousands, to

²⁶⁷ Acts 26:23 (NKJV) that the Christ would suffer, that He would be the first to rise from the dead, and would proclaim light to the *Jewish* people and to the Gentiles.”

²⁶⁸ Romans 1:2-5 (NKJV) which He promised before through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures, concerning His Son Jesus Christ our Lord, who was born of the seed of David according to the flesh, *and* declared *to be* the Son of God with power according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead. Through Him we have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith among all nations for His name,

²⁶⁹ Hebrews 4:15 (NKJV) For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but was in all *points* tempted as *we are*, yet without sin.

²⁷⁰ 1 Peter 1:3-4 (NKJV) Blessed *be* the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to His abundant mercy has begotten us again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, to an inheritance incorruptible and undefiled and that does not fade away, reserved in heaven for you,

²⁷¹ 1 Timothy 2:5-6 (NKJV) For *there is* one God and one Mediator between God and men, *the* Man Christ Jesus, who gave Himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time,

²⁷² Hebrews 8:6 (NKJV) But now He has obtained a more excellent ministry, inasmuch as He is also Mediator of a better covenant, which was established on better promises.

²⁷³ Hebrews 9:15 (NKJV) And for this reason He is the Mediator of the new covenant, by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions under the first covenant, that those who are called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.

²⁷⁴ Hebrews 12:24 (NKJV) to Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling that speaks better things than *that of* Abel.

those who love Me and keep My commandments.

Exodus 20:3-6 (NKJV)

5.4 Ancestral Veneration vs Biblical Principle

African traditional beliefs and Christianity uniquely juxtaposed in terms of the vastly opposed doctrines of Christianity on the one side and the assimilation of African traditional doctrine on the other. Christianity in its pure Biblical doctrine condemns ancestral worship, yet several African communities have assimilated the practice of ancestral worship into their practice of Christianity.

Wanamaker²⁷⁵ (1997:281) points out that South Africa can be regarded as a unique cultural melting pot where fundamentally different religions such as African traditional religions and Christianity co-exist and compete to convert people to its beliefs, practices and behaviour patterns.

Dr. Floyd McClung²⁷⁶ states in the foreword to the same book:

“God made the nations. Some of the aspects of African cultures needs to be redeemed, to be submitted to the loving authority of God, the creator and redeemer of humankind.”

The Bible is not a treatise on Western culture, or a defence of African culture, but it presents a third way, what we may call: kingdom culture where God rules and the teaching of God’s Word is the truth that judges whether a culture is fulfilling its intended purpose, or not.

The South African constitution’s high emphases on human rights make provision for this assimilation and the intense sensitivity with regards to what can be perceived as discrimination, creating a hesitance to criticize this integration of doctrines.

Referring the Dr. McClung’s statement, the study deemed it necessary to

²⁷⁵ Bae, Choon Sup (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>

²⁷⁶ Mhlophe, Afrika (2013) *Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestors*. Belville: Salt Publishers. P. 7

investigate the principles of God's word to evaluate the "status of a kingdom culture where God rules" pertaining to the religious doctrine.

Diviners and sorcerers were thought to be able to contact the dead. This is expressly forbidden.

"You shall not permit a sorceress to live.

Exodus 22:18 (NKJV)

'You shall rise before the grey headed and honor the presence of an old man, and fear your God: I am the Lord.

Leviticus 19:32 (NKJV)

There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, or one who practices witchcraft, or a soothsayer, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer, or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead.

Deuteronomy 18:10-11 (NKJV)

Now Samuel had died, and all Israel had lamented for him and buried him in Ramah, in his own city. And Saul had put the mediums and the spiritists out of the land.

1 Samuel 28:3 (NKJV)

Therefore, do not listen to your prophets, your diviners, your dreamers, your soothsayers, or your sorcerers, who speak to you, saying, "You shall not serve the king of Babylon." For they prophesy a lie to you, to remove you far from your land; and I will drive you out, and you will perish.

Jeremiah 27:9-10 (NKJV)

6. SPIRITUAL IMPACT IN THE POLITICAL SOCIETY

"In South Africa, as in other parts of Africa like Zimbabwe Ghana, and Nigeria, religions appear to be of prime importance not only on the level of private experience and inner belief but also with regard to the sphere of politics and public affairs, thus thwarting a typically modernist vision of society as differentiated into separate compartments, one of them being religion"²⁷⁷

²⁷⁷ Meyer, Birgit (2010). *Pentecostalism and globalization*. In A. Anderson, M. Bergunder, A. Droogers, & C. van der Laan (Eds.), *Studying Global Pentecostalism: Theories and Methods*. Berkeley: University of California Press. Available at: <https://research.vu.nl/en/publications/pentecostalism-and-globalization> PP. 113–130

The influence of nationalism cannot be overlooked either. The harmonization of different African religions is in accordance with important political goals. In the light of current political and religious conditions in pluralist African countries, it is not difficult to understand the fairly strong position of religious studies.²⁷⁸

In countries where national unity and not, as in South Africa, the unity of the “tribes” is the stated goal, the unifying perspective of comparative research on African religions may serve a more or less explicit political function. The civil religions which exist in religiously pluralist African countries, albeit as unofficial phenomena, are based on the unifying elements in African religions as well as in Christianity and Islam.²⁷⁹

6.1 Jezebel in Politics

6.1.1 Biblical Introduction to Jezebel in the Old Testament

And as if it were not enough for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, he even married Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal king of the Sidonians, and then he proceeded to serve and worship Baal.

1 Kings 16:31

Surely there was never one like Ahab, who sold himself to do evil in the sight of the LORD, incited by his wife Jezebel.

1 Kings 21:25

And you are to strike down the house of your master Ahab, so that I may avenge the blood of My servants the prophets and all the servants of the LORD shed by the hand of Jezebel.

2 Kings 9:7

Now, O son of man, set your face against the daughters of your people who prophesy out of their own imagination. Prophecy against them

Ezekiel 13:17

²⁷⁸ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 19

²⁷⁹ Olupona, Jacob K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation. P. 19

6.1.1.1 Biblical Narrative: Jezebel and Ahab

After the death of King Solomon, the ten northern tribes of Israel refused to submit to his son, Rehoboam, and revolted. From this point on, Israel divided into two kingdoms, the Northern Kingdom (Israel, with Ephraim and Samaria as capital) and the Southern Kingdom (Judah, with Jerusalem as capital). A litany of ineffective and disobedient kings portrays the history of both kingdoms.

Omri, king of the North introduced the syncretic worship introducing Baal in combination with the custom adherence to Yahweh. (1 Kings 16:25²⁸⁰) Ahab, Son of King Omri, seventh King of Israel. Ahab, is described as stubborn, capricious, dishonest, cruel, unstable, unreliable and weak, rather clever²⁸¹ and wicked like no-one before him. (1 Kings 16:30²⁸²) Ahab married Jezebel, daughter of King Ethbaal of Phoenicia, to affirm a political alliance between two nations.

1 Kings 21:25²⁸³ mentions how his wife 'stirred him up' – how he 'sold himself' and allowed her to manipulate him. Derek Prince²⁸⁴ is of the opinion that he made a bargain with Satan, and in doing so, he became a type of the antichrist. He aligned with Satan for the sake of more power.

Jezebel, meaning "without cohabitation"²⁸⁵, implies that she refuses to "live together" or "cohabit". Although the Bible never acknowledges her title as 'queen', she was married to the King and therefore several literatures accept her title.

²⁸⁰ 1 Kings 16:25 (NKJV) Omri did evil in the eyes of the LORD, and did worse than all who *were* before him.

²⁸¹ Prince, Derek (2017) *Spiritual Warfare for the End Times*. United Kingdom. Derek Prince Ministries International. P. 140

²⁸² 1 Kings 16:30 (NKJV) Now Ahab the son of Omri did evil in the sight of the LORD, more than all who *were* before him.

²⁸³ 1 Kings 21:25 (NKJV) But there was no one like Ahab who sold himself to do wickedness in the sight of the LORD, because Jezebel his wife stirred him up.

²⁸⁴ Prince, Derek (2017) *Spiritual Warfare for the End Times*. United Kingdom. Derek Prince Ministries International. P. 141

²⁸⁵ Frangipane, Francis (1991) *Discernment Series. The Jezebel Spirit*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications. P. 8

Jezebel was a fanatical devotee and worshipper of Baal and embodied the first manifestation of the spirit of Jezebel. Ahab erected a temple adjacent to the palace for her to worship Baal and the mother goddess Asherah along with 850 Baal and Asherah prophets who accompanied her to Israel.²⁸⁶ As Ahab represented a type of the antichrist, so did she represent the false church.

Baal was the principal god of Babylonians, also known as Marduk, Bel and Shamash. Usually represented by a sun image and animal forms. Baal's wife and mother goddess are known as Ishtar in Babylon, Astarte in Greece and Rome, and Nina in Nineveh.²⁸⁷ Baal worship, was prominently characterized by lascivious rites, extravagant orgies, child-sacrifice, worship of man-made idols and images, and the visibility of temples on high places.²⁸⁸

King Ahab did not resist Jezebel's validation of Baal worship in Israel, including the murder of God's prophets in the process. Ahab was not a weak governor, yet Jezebel wielded increased power over him to the extent that she was in control, ruling the people. This (Jezebel) spirit succeeded to have millions of Hebrews all but seven thousand faithful individuals, bow before Baal. They forsake their covenant with God, destroyed the sacred altars and murdered God's prophets (1 Kings 19:14-18²⁸⁹).

The spirit almost succeeded in destroying an entire nation. Jezebel manipulated her husband, took control, reigned by fear, witchcraft, and intimidation. The

²⁸⁶ Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand Râdâh Academy and School of Discipling Conference Notes: Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. P. 13

²⁸⁷ Luci-Atienza, Charissa & Cahiles-Magkilat, Bernie (2019) *Ahab and Jezebel's conjugal reign*. Manila Bulletin. Available at: <https://mb.com.ph/2019/09/08/ahab-and-jezebels-conjugal-reign/>

²⁸⁸ Luci-Atienza, Charissa & Cahiles-Magkilat, Bernie (2019) *Ahab and Jezebel's conjugal reign*. Manila Bulletin. Available at: <https://mb.com.ph/2019/09/08/ahab-and-jezebels-conjugal-reign/>

²⁸⁹ 1 Kings 19:14-18 (NKJV) And he said, "I have been very zealous for the LORD God of hosts; because the children of Israel have forsaken Your covenant, torn down Your altars, and killed Your prophets with the sword. I alone am left; and they seek to take my life." Then the LORD said to him: "Go, return on your way to the Wilderness of Damascus; and when you arrive, anoint Hazeal as king over Syria. Also you shall anoint Jehu the son of Nimshi as king over Israel. And Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abel Meholah you shall anoint as prophet in your place. It shall be that whoever escapes the sword of Hazeal, Jehu will kill; and whoever escapes the sword of Jehu, Elisha will kill. Yet I have reserved seven thousand in Israel, all whose knees have not bowed to Baal, and every mouth that has not kissed him."

spiritual and political power combined with witchcraft of Jezebel versus the weak character of Ahab provided an opportunity for the forces of Satan to conquer Israel.

Elijah warned Ahab that God will withhold dew and rain (1 Kings 17:1²⁹⁰) and expected Ahab to repent for Baal, the false god of rain and fertility.

6.1.1.2 Biblical Narrative: Elijah vs Jezebel

Elijah, (meaning “my God is Yahweh [God]”)²⁹¹ was the principal of the school of prophets, previously attended by hundreds of prophets. As a result of Jezebel’s vendetta, he was the only remaining Godly prophet. Simultaneously, Jezebel entertained and accommodated 850 Baal and Asherah dignitaries, daily dining at her table in the palace, the seat of government while she silenced the voice of the prophetic. Jezebel opposed Elijah’s warning as follows:

- Towards Godly prophets: She murdered them and silenced the prophetic voice;
- Towards sincere repentance: pride and self-righteousness oppose and prevents repentance.
- Towards humility: opposed with pride and control.
- Towards prayer and worship: spiritual adultery and witchcraft

Elijah and Jezebel were juxtapose to each another:

- Jezebel worshipped Baal; Elijah worshipped God;
- Jezebel was a foreign woman; Elijah was a native man;
- Although the Bible does not call her queen, she held monarchic power, Elijah held prophetic power;

²⁹⁰ 1 Kings 17:1 (NKJV) And Elijah the Tishbite, of the inhabitants of Gilead, said to Ahab, “As the LORD God of Israel lives, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, except at my word.”

²⁹¹ Ahab and Jezebel: Abuse of Power. Available at: https://absg.adventist.org/pdf.php?file=2007:3Q:ER:PDFs:ERQ307_11.pdf

- Elijah was ruthless towards evil and spoke Godly anointed Words; Jezebel who was violently opposing righteousness, filled with witchcraft and words of deceit;
- She threatens and manipulate but eventually dies; Elijah manipulated and paralyzed with fear but are eventually he is the victor.

The combined political or governing/political power of the King, and the supernatural witchcraft power of Jezebel was extremely powerful. The extent of Jezebel's power is not only evidenced in the fact that she could murder all the Godly prophets, but also in Elijah's fear when he fled to beyond Israel's territory. Her spirit of manipulation remained authoritative, even until after King Ahab and her sons were killed. Jehu, the subsequent God appointed King, (1 Kings 19:16²⁹²) needed to take control of the spirit by killing Jezebel's son Joram, the self-appointed new king, and Jezebel before his rule could be established (2 Kings 9:30-37²⁹³).

When Joram saw Jehu, he asked, "Have you come in peace, Jehu?" "How can there be peace," he replied, "as long as the idolatry and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel abound?"

2 Kings 9:22 (NIV)

Elijah challenged the 400 prophets of Baal and the 450 prophets of Asherah to a duel to demonstrate the power of their gods. Elijah and the prophets prepared sacrifice altars. Elijah challenged them as follows:

²⁹² 1 Kings 19:16 (NKJV) Also you shall anoint Jehu the son of Nimshi as king over Israel. And Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abel Meholah you shall anoint as prophet in your place.

²⁹³ 2 Kings 9:30-37 (NKJV) Now when Jehu had come to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it; and she put paint on her eyes and adorned her head, and looked through a window. Then, as Jehu entered at the gate, she said, "Is it peace, Zimri, murderer of your master?" And he looked up at the window, and said, "Who is on my side? Who?" So two or three eunuchs looked out at him. Then he said, "Throw her down." So they threw her down, and some of her blood spattered on the wall and on the horses; and he trampled her underfoot. And when he had gone in, he ate and drank. Then he said, "Go now, see to this accursed woman, and bury her, for she was a king's daughter." So they went to bury her, but they found no more of her than the skull and the feet and the palms of her hands. Therefore they came back and told him. And he said, "This is the word of the LORD, which He spoke by His servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, 'On the plot of ground at Jezreel dogs shall eat the flesh of Jezebel; and the corpse of Jezebel shall be as refuse on the surface of the field, in the plot at Jezreel, so that they shall not say, "Here lies Jezebel." ' ' "

Then you call on the name of your gods, and I will call on the name of the Lord; and the God who answers by fire, He is God.” So, all the people answered and said, “It is well spoken.”

1 Kings 18:24 (NIV)

After twelve hours with no response from their gods, Elijah began to mock their gods.

And so it was, at noon, that Elijah mocked them and said, “Cry aloud, for he is a god; either he is meditating, or he is busy, or he is on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened.”

1 Kings 18:27 (NKJV)

At nightfall, Elijah had his opportunity to act according to the challenge. He prayed over his sacrifice.

Then the fire of the Lord fell and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood and the stones and the dust, and it licked up the water that was in the trench. Now when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces; and they said, “The Lord, He is God! The Lord, He is God!”

1 Kings 18:38-39 (NIV)

Immediately after this miracle, Elijah ordered the execution of the 850 Baal and Asherah prophets. Jezebel reacted with witchcraft and a demonic attack towards Elijah to the effect that he became paralysed with fear and fled into the desert. The ‘spirit of Jezebel’ haunted Elijah.

6.1.1.3 Biblical Reference of Jezebel in the New Testament

But I have a few things against you, because some of you hold to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to place a stumbling block before the Israelites so they would eat food sacrificed to idols and commit sexual immorality.

Revelations 2:14 (BSB)

Nevertheless I have a few things against you, because you allow that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, to teach and seduce My servants to commit sexual immorality and eat things sacrificed to idols

Revelations 2:20 (NKJV)

Instead, we should write and tell them to abstain from food polluted by idols, from sexual immorality, from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood.

Acts 15:20 (NKJV)

You must abstain from food sacrificed to idols, from blood, from the meat of strangled animals, and from sexual immorality. You will do well to avoid these things. Farewell."

Acts 15:29 (NIV)

No, but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God. And I do not want you to be participants with demons.

1 Corinthians 10:20 (NIV)

6.1.2 Ahab and Jezebel Application to South Africa

6.1.2.1 Deliberate Witchcraft Focusses on Leaders and Influential Men

The Jezebel spirit, even though referred to as female, is transgender. The spirit is not restricted to women only but is more often attracted to the female psyche. It has a sophisticated ability to manipulate without physical force. Wealthy men and men in leadership are particularly targeted and often fall prey to this spirit. Every sexual perversion and immorality are usually included in the arsenal of weapons, but 'control' always remains the main priority. Control is inseparable from leadership, as such, Jezebel always strategized not only to 'attack' leadership, but to penetrate leadership for the sake of manipulative control.

Jezebel oils advertisements and product information provides evidence pertaining to Jezebel witchcraft aiming to entice and surmount affluent and influential men.



Figure 32: Jezebel oil: Jezebel Root Man Trap oil.²⁹⁴



Figure 33: Mama Africa Jajja, native healer and spell caster.²⁹⁵

²⁹⁴ Jezebel oil: Jezebel Root Man Trap oil. Available at: <https://victoriaslists.com/index.php?page=item&id=18331>

²⁹⁵ Original Jezebel Root for Attracting Men with Money/Wealth/Business Available at: <https://services2673.wordpress.com/2019/04/12/original-jezebel-root-for-attracting-men-with-money-wealth-business-27736847115-south-africa-zimbabwe-zambia-uganda-kenya-ghana-tanzania-mali-guinea-d-r-congo/>

Mama Africa Jajja advertisement stated the following:

Published April 12, 2019

JEZEBEL ROOT FOR ATTRACTING MEN WITH MONEY +27736847115 SANDTON, PRETORIA, LENASIA, KEMPTON PARK South Africa

Ad ID: 18331

Published date: April 9, 2019

Location: South Africa, South Africa, South Africa, South Africa

Magical Use:

- **Attracts men with money**
- **Attract luck and success**
- **Cursing**
- **Controller of mind & body**
- **Money Draw**
- **Others will be generous toward one who carries jezebel root.**

The jezebel root (*Iris foliosa*) is an old traditional hoodoo root that is very powerful in assisting with financial affairs, as this root was named after Queen Jezebel in the Bible, and often referred to as the Queen Elizabeth Root, also known as blue flag for another botanical name. The actual root has its own "ashes" (power) like many roots do, and this is most beneficial if you are in any type of business of your own, financial endeavors, transactions, etc. This is also an excellent oil to use for hexing as the history states this is the "Curse of the Jezebel" and will remove all negativity away very powerfully from you as well to obtain your goal. This is a female root, which generates ashes especially towards men in general, so this will be most alluring to the male and if you keep the root close to you. Call Mama Africa Jajja: +27736847115 or E-mail: mamaafricajajja@gmail.com



Figure 34: "Jezebel root for prostitutes and business South Africa"²⁹⁶

²⁹⁶ Jezebel Root for Prostitutes & Business South Africa, Uganda – Boipatong. Available at: <https://za.loozap.com/jezebel-root-for-prostitutes-business-south-africa-uganda-boipatong/2344940.html>

JEZEBEL ROOT JEZEBEL ROOT is used in a curse and also by prostitutes to attract customers. To Draw Trade, dress and oil a JEZEBEL ROOT with Follow Me Boy Oil and your own Sexual Fluids every day for 7 days, then keep it in your purse to bring you submissive clients who give generous tips. To work the Curse of Jezebel, hold a JEZEBEL ROOT in your left hand for 2 hours, or while you burn a black candle on the enemy's name, or from sunrise to sunset. Remain completely silent and think of your enemy the whole time. When the time is up, place the root in a jar of your own Urine and put the lid on. Speak aloud your curse, naming the enemy, then carry the jar to a river or to the ocean, throw it in using your left hand, turn, walk away, and do not look back. We make no claims for JEZEBEL ROOT, and sell as a Curio only. FOR MORE INFORMATION CALL MAMA AFRICA JAJJA OR E-MAIL:²⁹⁷

6.1.2.2 Jezebel in the Media

Frangipane²⁹⁸ argued that if the total amount of demons did not change, (there was no increase in the number of demons), compared to the total amount of people who increased from three million to more than five billion, one could consider the extent of spiritual warfare to decrease. The opposite is true, the scale of warfare has increased. Frangipane presented Revelation 12 as foundational scripture with regards to the current battle between the Kingdom of Light and the Kingdom of darkness.

So the serpent spewed water out of his mouth like a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away by the flood.

Revelation 12:15 (NKJV)

Water symbolising words are flowing from the Satan's mouth. In the modern context, words also include visual images, media, and technology. Frangipane²⁹⁹ elaborated:

"In our information-filled, entertainment-oriented world, even minor demons can exercise major influence simply by possessing the scrip writers and producers of movies and television. Indeed, Satan has always been the

²⁹⁷ Jezebel Root for Prostitutes & Business South Africa, Uganda – Boipatong. Available at: <https://za.loozap.com/jezebel-root-for-prostitutes-business-south-africa-uganda-boipatong/2344940.html>

²⁹⁸ Frangipane, Francis (1991) *Discernment Series. The Jezebel Spirit*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications. P. 9

²⁹⁹ Frangipane, Francis (1991) *Discernment Series. The Jezebel Spirit*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications. PP. 10, 11

prince of the power of the air. But we should realise that the power of the air is not merely the wind, we see that in our world this power unique includes the electronic airwaves which carry radio and television signals.”

Jezebel reigns in the entertainment industry and equal to the church of Thyatira (Revelations)³⁰⁰ the spirit is just as active today, capturing faithful men and women. The secret manipulation of the international and local media is already discussed.

6.1.2.3 The Application of the Influence of the Jezebel Spirit Pertaining to ANC Government

The author identified the following similarities between King Ahab’s reign and the governance of the ANC as a possible result from the influence of the Jezebel spirit.

Ahab’s Reign	ANC’s Governance
Killed God’s prophets / prophetic voice	Hate speech bill aim to silence the prophetic voice
Closed the prophetic school / education	Religious education in schools / Hate speech Bill

³⁰⁰ Revelations 2:18-29 (NIV) “To the angel of the church in Thyatira write: These are the words of the Son of God, whose eyes are like blazing fire and whose feet are like burnished bronze. I know your deeds, your love and faith, your service and perseverance, and that you are now doing more than you did at first. Nevertheless, I have this against you: You tolerate that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophet. By her teaching she misleads my servants into sexual immorality and the eating of food sacrificed to idols. I have given her time to repent of her immorality, but she is unwilling. So I will cast her on a bed of suffering, and I will make those who commit adultery with her suffer intensely, unless they repent of her ways. I will strike her children dead. Then all the churches will know that I am he who searches hearts and minds, and I will repay each of you according to your deeds. Now I say to the rest of you in Thyatira, to you who do not hold to her teaching and have not learned Satan’s so-called deep secrets, ‘I will not impose any other burden on you, except to hold on to what you have until I come.’ To the one who is victorious and does my will to the end, I will give authority over the nations - that one ‘will rule them with an iron sceptre and will dash them to pieces like pottery’ - just as I have received authority from my Father. I will also give that one the morning star. Whoever has ears, let them hear what the Spirit says to the churches.

Accommodated Baal in the seat of government (Palace). Poor governance and greed.	Accommodate false religions in Parliament. Poor governance and greed
Spiritual adultery	Spiritual adultery
Child sacrifice	Abortion

Table 8: Similarities between King Ahab’s reign and the governance of the ANC

6.1.2.3.1 Silencing the Prophetic Voice

Prophet (Strong’s No. 4393 from pro “forth” and “phemie,” to speak”).³⁰¹ A prophet is a mature, anointed proclaimer who speak a divine message to encourage, strengthen, give direction, or warn the Church of God. (Joel 2:28)³⁰² It can also include information with regards to the future. A prophet is considered an interpreter of the divine will of God – God’s spokespersons. Peter confirms the inspiration of the Holy Spirit in the operation of prophecy. (2 Peter 1:21)³⁰³ The Bible is the final authority on all matters of faith and contains everything needed to receive salvation in Christ. The Bible however does exhaust God’s revelation of His love and compassion to give direction to the church and to individuals. (John 16:12-13)³⁰⁴ The prophetic is also included in the five-fold ministry according to Ephesians 4: Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastor/Teachers and Missionaries.

Jezebel is credited for being the first radical feminist. She propagated much more

³⁰¹ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 1405.

³⁰² Joel 2:28f. (NKJV) And it shall come to pass afterward That I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh; Your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, Your old men shall dream dreams, Your young men shall see visions.

³⁰³ 2 Peter 1:21: (NKJV) for prophecy never came by the will of man, but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.

³⁰⁴ John 16: 12-13 (NKJV) “I still have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. However, when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth; for He will not speak on His own authority, but whatever He hears He will speak; and He will tell you things to come.

than equal rights and that calls for equality in remuneration etc. Jezebel was extremely radical, much like the radical feminism that we see in our society today.”³⁰⁵This thesis already compared child sacrifice rituals in Baal religious practices with abortion and the “Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act No. 92 of 1996.”

The author was of the opinion, that with the threat of the great international reset, world health pandemics such as the recent Covid and political turmoil, the church is in desperate need of the prophetic voice to interpret and proclaim the Will of God. With an estimation exceeding 200 000 abortions in South Africa, potential future prophets are murdered and the voice of the prophetic (and the manifestation of the five-fold ministry office bearers) cancelled.

In addition, the prophetic voice with the aim of proclaim Biblical principles could be regarded as ‘hate-speech’ according to the Hate Speech and Equality Act (definition of hate speech in the equality act is broader than the definition in the constitution. The equality clause has been ruled unconstitutional and referred back to Parliament.)

Regulation of Religion is already in discussion for the past four years in South Africa. Licencing of every religious practitioner, every place of worship will be enforced with then CRL: Rights Commission (Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic communities)³⁰⁶ Regulation of Religion. Motivation for the Act is found in the abuse of people including money laundering, inhumane expectations due to false prophecies and sex trafficking. Although several cases of misconduct validate the need for this act, it could also restrict the operations of the anointed prophets of God.

³⁰⁵ Hamilton Strategies. Available at: <https://hamiltonstrategies.com/evil-agenda-of-radical-and-militant-pro-abortion-feminists-is-the-wicked-spirit-of-jezebel-at-work-says-author-dr-michael-brown/Audio>. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ixBTmC1qXC0>

³⁰⁶ CRL is an independent chapter nine institution in South Africa. The SA Constitution mandates the commission for the promotion and protection of the rights of cultural, religious, and linguistic communities. Act of 2002.

Distinction between regulation of religion in the real sense and what the Government want to do to actually and effectively decide who may and who may not actually be religious practitioner. There is a narrative which says that pastors, religious leaders sharlotons are actually using religion and abusing people and therefore we need to regulate who is allowed to do this because there are true churches and then there is cult like churches. The question is who decide which is which and who is who.

-Michael Swain interview on Kingfisher FM (November 18, 2020)³⁰⁷

The author interprets a non-verbal prophetic proclamation in the conduct business and implementation of faith-based principles, whether Jewish, Islam, Christian etc. The allowance of prayer time and holy days are examples of this business practice. The author is of the opinion that business conduct is an extension of an individual's religious conviction, an abstract 'prophetic voice' for religious principles. Currently, liberty to conduct business on Christian principles are potentially under siege as demonstrated by the legal procedures launched against the wedding venue 'Beloftebos'³⁰⁸ (Promise forest). The owners do not accommodate homosexual marriages in their Christian based venue. Growing international liberal criticism describe the Bible as offensive to human rights.

6.1.2.3.2 Closing the Prophetic School

Ahab annihilated education in the Word and Godly principles by allowing the murder of the prophets. Elijah, head of the school of prophets was the only prophet who survived Jezebel's raid. The South African government has not

³⁰⁷ By For SA (November 18, 2020) *Kingfisher FM Interview: Update on Regulation of Religion* (Audio). Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/audio-kingfisher-fm-interview-update-on-regulation-of-religion/>

³⁰⁸ The South African Human Rights Commission has instituted legal proceedings against Beloftebos for the alleged discrimination against LGBT people by refusing – on grounds of their Biblical conviction that marriage is between a man and a woman. Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/beloftebos-case-will-test-our-constitutional-protections/> (ii) According to court papers filed at the Equality Court sitting in the Western Cape High Court, Megan Watling and Sasha-Lee Heekes, want Beloftebos owners Andries and Coia de Villiers to pay for the impairment of dignity, pain and suffering as a result of unfair discriminating against them. Petersen, Tammy (September 17, 2020) *Same-sex couple seek R2m in damages from Beloftebos wedding venue which turned them away* Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/same-sex-couple-seek-r2m-in-damages-from-beloftebos-wedding-venue-which-turned-them-away-20200917>

accepted any official religion, they are considering several legislations confronting and limiting faith-based education and curricula. Faith based education is in jeopardy whether Christian, Jewish, Muslim, etc.

- The Western Cape Education Department (WCED) recently published guidelines on Gender identity and Sexual Orientation in Public schools.

“the express purpose of the Guidelines to “promote gender identity and gender expression”

- Daniela Ellerbeck, Legal Advisor, FORSA ³⁰⁹

- In the ‘Ogod’ case the Johannesburg High Court on June 27, 2017 determined that it is illegal for a public school to promote a specific religion.³¹⁰

(i) To promote or allow its staff to promote that it, as a public school, adheres to only one or predominantly only one religion to the exclusion of others; and

(ii) To hold out that it promotes the interests of any one religion in favour of others.

- Christian doctors are manipulated to conduct abortions. Abortion is associated with Baal child sacrifices. (Legalisation of abortion: Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Amendment Act 2005)
- Legislation of same sex marriages (Civil Unions Bill 2006)
- Lowering of Age of Sexual consent from 16 to 12. (Sexual orgies = sexual)

6.1.2.3.3 False Religion in the Seat of Government

The Jezebel spirit is known for her fierce independence and compelling ambition.

³⁰⁹ For SA (July 6, 2020) Ellerbeck, Daniela. *WC Education Department Pushes Transgenderism in Public Schools*. Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/wc-education-department-pushes-transgenderism-in-public-schools/>

³¹⁰ By For SA (August 8, 2017) *Update in ‘OGOD’ Case: Schools Decide NOT to Appeal* Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/update-in-ogod-case-schools-decide-not-to-appeal/>

(ii) By For SA (June 28, 2017) *BREAKING NEWS: Court Says Public Schools May Not Promote A Particular Religion*. Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/breaking-news-court-says-public-schools-may-not-promote-a-particular-religion/>

Jezebel always control, manipulate, dominate, and practice witchcraft.³¹¹ If it seems that if peace and servanthood prevail, it is purely to disguise strategies to dominate.

Elijah conveyed God's response to the collaboration of corrupt political governance and manipulating witchcraft. God expected repentance. Elijah provided evidence of God's almighty power, he did not only prophesy but demonstrated the power of God. Prince³¹² concluded as follows:

Elijah's ministry is specifically related to a situation where political power is usurped and then abetted by satanic spiritual power in an attempt to destroy God's people and to overthrow God's Kingdom.

The author is of opinion that the alignment of corrupt and weak political governance with Satanic forces is evident in South Africa currently. Anarchy demonstrated in murder, crime, arson, unprecedented corruption, even animal abuse, gender violence, rape, hate, destruction of property etc cannot be anything but Satanically motivated, the manifestation of the demonic strongholds of hate, racism and anarchy. Poor political leadership provides ample opportunity for lawlessness. Elijah's ministry is specifically aligned to this combined political and satanic power attempting to destroy God's Kingdom. Dr. Arno van Niekerk's³¹³ verbalised

"The country has chosen to follow the 'Way of Cain' for decades now; the way of lawlessness, licentiousness, immorality, and transgression – the path of destruction. South Africa has become a breeding place for a legion of injustices and for a shocking array of immoralities."

³¹¹ Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand Râdâh Academy and School of Discipling Conference Notes: Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. P. 1

³¹² Prince, Derek (2017) *Spiritual Warfare for the End Times*. United Kingdom. Derek Prince Ministries International. P. 144

³¹³ Van Niekerk, Arno Dr. (2016) *Enough! What is the plan?* Cape Town: Hope 2 Overcome. P. 35

6.1.2.3.4 Spiritual Adultery

Ahab did not proclaim Baal worship to be Israel's official religion, but he did allow Jezebel to promote her Phoenician religion at the expense of the God of Israel - the one true God. The ANC government did not officiate any particular religion. They are however constitutionally obligated to recognise all religions and as such welcome all religions in all spheres of government. Several examples of legislation apposing religion freedom and Christianity in particular leads to suspicion with regards to the government's commitment to uphold freedom of religion.

6.1.2.3.5 Murder

“Evil Agenda of Radical and Militant Pro-Abortion Feminists Is the Wicked Spirit of Jezebel at Work”

- Author Dr. Michael Brown³¹⁴

The ten commandments in Exodus 20 protect the sanctity of human life. The current manifestation of the Jezebel spirit not only annihilate the future prophetic voices, but boldly ignore the extremely specific Godly law. God is exalted for His grace and mercy, yet God's judgement and vengeance for spoiled innocent blood should never be ignored. Genesis 4³¹⁵ is the first reference to the 'cry of innocent blood' referring to Cain's murder of Abel.

God's concern with innocent blood is also portrayed in the book of Deuteronomy where Priests of towns are ordered to prepare a offering for the unknown found murdered to redeem the shedding of blood to find atonement for the innocent

³¹⁴ Brown, Michael Dr. (2019) *Evil Agenda of Radical and Militant Pro-Abortion Feminists Is the Wicked Spirit of Jezebel at Work*, Says Author Dr. Michael Brown. Hamilton Strategies. Available at: <https://hamiltonstrategies.com/evil-agenda-of-radical-and-militant-pro-abortion-feminists-is-the-wicked-spirit-of-jezebel-at-work-says-author-dr-michael-brown/> (Audio). Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ixBTmC1qXC0>

³¹⁵ Genesis 4:10 (NKJV) And He said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground.

blood. In comparison, the blood of an estimated 200 000 unborn babies cry to God for justice. God is not ignoring this terrible sin. Genesis to Revelation relates to the blood of the righteous crying out for God's vengeance. Innocent blood pollutes the South African soil. South Africa are guilty before the all-knowing, all-powerful God.

6.1.3 The Consequences of a National Head of State's Sin

The national consequence of a King's or ruler's sin was already demonstrated in the reign of King David: His sin weakened his power as king. The unified nation was divided into the North and the South, and a plague slayed 70 000 men in three days. King Ahab's sin effected his governance, the church of the time (prophets), and the nation as a whole when God withheld rain and dew according to His warning.

In South African the consequence of sin (greed and corruption) and incompetence (poor governance often due to idleness) of the South African government divides the South African people. Blame shifting (colonialism, racism, and apartheid) for countless occasions of underperformance deepens race-based distrust and hate. In following the example of the highest office bearers, corruption is multiplied in all spheres of government, private business and all levels of the society. The author compares President Ramaphosa with King Ahab, generally accepted as captured by the Jezebel spirit.

King Ahab	President Ramaphosa
Both was familiar with the Word of God / Godly principles.	

Both had forsaken God	
Both received a prophetic word	
Evidence at hand indicates both rejected the prophetic word	
Both allowed spiritual adultery in the seat of governance	
Both had power to secure the prophetic school and prophetic voice	
Ahab was familiar with the Principles of Yahweh.	President Ramaphosa was chairman of the Student Christian Movement at the University of the North (Turfloop) in 1974.
Ahab forsaken his faith for the sake of Baal and Ashtoreth	The thesis <i>does not claim</i> that President Ramaphosa forsook his faith. It does state that evidence of the fruit of the Spirit ³¹⁶ is lacking. Secondly, in allowing the traditional Praise singer the president gave preference to tradition and culture above Christian values.
Elijah, a prophet visited Ahab to deliver a prophetic word or warning	Angus Buchan delivered a prophetic word or warning.
Ahab forsook the prophetic word	No evidence is available that President Ramaphosa adhered to the prophetic call.

³¹⁶ Galatians 5:22-23: But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control.

Allowed adultery in seat of governance	Allowed praise singer. Not reference to individual convictions protected in constitution, but with reference to himself. Could have invited a Godly pastor/prophet but chose a traditional praise singer.
Ended the prophetic ministry	Legislation hate speech/poster
Ended Biblical education	Legislation religion teachings in schools.

Table 9: King Ahab vs President Ramaphosa

6.1.4 Knowledge of the Word of God

Ahab was a Jew, son of Omri, King of 10 tribes of Israel was not unfamiliar with the faith of his ancestors.

President Ramaphosa is not unfamiliar with the Word of God. He served as the chairman of the Student Christian Movement at the University of the North in 1974.³¹⁷ Yet, belonging to the Venda tribe of the Rain Queen. Renewed allegiance to her reign and his political agenda proclaiming a new era.

6.1.5 Forsaking the Word of God

The author re-iterated the important statement that this thesis does not claim that President Cyril Ramaphosa denounced Christianity. No proof exists. This thesis also does not make any related allegation. The question with regards to

³¹⁷ Cyril Matamela Ramaphosa. South African History Online. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/cyril-matamela-ramaphosa>

Presidents Ramaphosa's loyalty to Godly principles is purely based on the lack of evidence found in evaluating the fruit of the Spirit according to Galatians 5.³¹⁸

The author finds no proof of deliberate nation building but adequate proof of instilling racial tension. Blaming Apartheid for the ANC poor governance of 26 years, not recognising the farm murder pandemic to name but two. Apart from corruption in President Zuma's reign that is currently being investigated by the Zondo Commission, President Ramaphosa's current government does not seem to respect or fear his viewpoint on corruption given the large scale of tender fraud during the Covid-19 pandemic.

6.1.6 Prophetic Visitation

King Omri sinned more than the kings before him and Ahab sinned more than his father. God is righteous and just in His judgement of sin. He always provides opportunity to repent and is quick to forgive and change circumstance. God allowed a famine and drought to plunder the land. True to His character, God send Elijah to give Ahab the opportunity to repent for the adultery. Manipulated by Jezebel, Ahab did not adhere.

Just as God had send a prophet to Ahab with a warning, God also sent a prophet to Cyril Ramaphosa with a warning. Angus Buchan³¹⁹ delivered a prophetic word to President Ramaphosa during the 'It's Time' Prayer meeting held in Pretoria on October 27, 2019, at Rhino park on the outskirts of Pretoria:

"His excellence, Mr. Cyril Ramaphosa, I have a word for you sir.

³¹⁸ Galatians 5:22-23 (KJV) But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

³¹⁹ Gateway News. Viljoen, Andre (October 29, 2018) *Angus Buchan delivers word from the Lord to President Cyril Ramaphosa*. Available at: <https://gatewaynews.co.za/angus-buchan-delivers-word-from-the-lord-to-president-cyril-ramaphosa/>

I am so sorry you could not make it today. I would have loved to pray for you on this platform in front of all these people.

But I've got a word for you sir, a very serious word, and also for your government...our government. I want you to hear this very, very clearly because I believe it is from God. And it is with fear and trembling I bring you this word, Sir.

In 2 Chronicles Chapter 15 and verse 2: The Lord is with you, while you are with Him. If you seek Him, He will be found by you.

But Sir, if you forsake Him, He will forsake you. I want to say, excellence, you cannot serve two masters." You've either got to implement this book, in this nation, or you have to listen to all the voices that are talking to you out there. Mr. Ramaphosa, if you are going to please all the voices out there you are going to fail. You will not succeed.

But if you are going to implement the word of God and if you are going to stand up in parliament and in public meetings and say: 'Thus says the Lord', then you will be the next president of South Africa in 2019.

The choice is yours. Jesus says Matthew 12 verse 30 — He who is not for Me is against Me. He who does not gather with me scatters abroad...

"So you may not put Jesus with all the other gods. He is not an idol. He is alive. He is here and He wants to help you. But you need to acknowledge him and this country will be truly saved. Thank you, Sir,"

6.1.7 Ignorance Towards the Prophetic Word Spoken

At this point in time there is limited to no evidence that President Ramaphosa adhered to God's warning delivered by the prophetic message.

6.1.8 Spiritual Adultery in the Seat of Governance

Freedom of religion is a constitutional right securing individuals and elected members of parliament freedom to pray according to their conscious. President Ramaphosa also has the liberty to accommodate either Christianity or traditional

African religion. By choice, he allowed traditional praise singers in the opening ceremony of parliament. He could have chosen to honour God, but he chose to honour African Traditional Religion evoking ancestral spirits. As per previous chapters, only two Kingdoms exist, the Kingdom of God or the Kingdom of darkness.

President Ramaphosa gave prominence to culture over Biblical principles in allowing the traditional praise singer in opening the SONA (State of the Nation Address) in 2019. This cultural ceremony encompasses the spiritual, the author therefor compared it with spiritual adulatory in the seat of governance. Ahab allowed Baal prophets to dine at his table and find residence in his palace.

6.1.9 Good Governance Forsaken

Evidence of good governance is rare in contemporary South Africa. The Zondo commission is in process of evaluating evidence of state capture. President Jacob Zuma is avoiding testimony through cumbersome legal processes. Limited state capture arrests, and limited successful prosecutions or sentencing are recorded. The new 2020 Covid-19 tender corruption bares evidence of the continued corruption of politicians and government officials.

Two avenues need attention: investigation and prosecution of trespassers for previous corruption and state capture and secondly, implement strong leadership and procedures to stop new corruption. Neither were implemented.

Myburg³²⁰ identified 'secondary' operational tactics of manipulation, aggression, anger, hate, bitterness, arrogance, deceit and confusion to path the way for power abuse, corruption, violence, murder, and finally compromising the primary judicial

³²⁰ Myburg, Marina (2009) *A Profound Study on the Jezebel Spirit: An investigation of its Modus Operandi for Deceiving and Manipulation the Comprehensiveness of the Human Being*. Master of Ministry in Theology. P. 91

systems to accommodate the shames and corruption of many government officials. The author is of opinion that Myburg's elaboration describes the current circumstances in South Africa. Utterly corrupt South African government with crime and anarchy out of control showing total ignorance of the principles of good governance. Greed is perceived to be the root of corruption and money laundering. Jezebel manipulated her husband to ignore all rules of good government.

- Ahab murdered to gain ownership of a vineyard. Greed and murder.
- Ahab allowed the murdering of the prophets in self-righteousness and disregard for human life.

6.1.10 Spiritual Authority in the Parliament

Dr. Pearl Kupe³²¹ elaborated on the significance of spiritual gates and the 2016 prayer initiatives in Parliament:

Gates carry a special significance. Traditionally, discipline, justice, and business were conducted at the gates. Whoever possesses these gates therefore determines the economy and governance of a city and nation. This was the basis for a meeting we held in the Old Assembly in Parliament in Cape Town in March 11, 2016, which I had the privilege of hosting under the direction of Apostles Chuck Pierce and Emmanuel Kure, international leaders of Global Spheres international ministry under the theme "Securing the Land". Political, business, and spiritual leaders from all over the nation & neighbouring SADC nations attended. The meeting was followed up by prophetic prayers in three directed areas, Cape Town (Parliamentary Capital), Pretoria (Administrative capital), and Johannesburg (Economic capital) of South Africa. Within weeks, it was gratifying to see and witness change in the form of landmark rulings being made against some high-ranking individuals and exposure of "state capture" issues.

³²¹ Kupe, Dr. Pearl (August 15, 2018) Joy! Digital Christian Portal. God's Perfect Plan for South Africa. Available at: <https://www.joydigitalmag.com/words-of-wisdom-post-category/pearl-kupe/>

The 2016 prayer initiatives were repeated in 2018 with Isaiah 66:8³²² as directive. The meeting was hosted in the Good Hope Chamber and was convened by Dr. Pearl Kupe and Apostle Linda Gobodo. The Ordained Pastor and Chief Justice, Judge Mogoeng was one of the keynote speakers. Judge Mogoeng, appointed by President Zuma in 2017 is well known for his outspoken Christianity and support for Israel. He boldly incorporates his faith in the execution of his duties, for example:

- He presented the Bible to President Ramaphosa moments after his inauguration. Ramaphosa tweeted a photo of the Bible with Isaiah 6:8³²³. The verse echoed the president's call to "thuma mina" (Zulu translation of 'send me').
- During the first Parliamentary session after the general elections in 2019 and the Presidential inauguration, Judge Moegoeng provided time for silent prayer. He reminded members that prayer is not is not a **"meaningless ritual, but a meaningful one"**. He requested members of parliament to pray specifically for solutions for corruption, unemployment, and crime. (See figure below)

The liberty to practice his Christian faith was not appreciated by all. Donaldson Dladhla voiced his hope for a future sangoma or inyanga-judge. The significance of this occurrence is as follows:

- South Africans are well acquainted with spirituality and the freedom to express their faith – Christianity as well as traditional African spirituality. (also refer to the praise singer in parliament)
- Spirituality is incorporated in all spheres of life, and by both highly educated and illiterate.

³²² Isaiah 66:8 (NIV) Can a country be born in a day or a nation be brought forth in a moment?

³²³ Isaiah 6:8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: "Whom shall I send, And who will go for Us?" Then I said, "Here *am* I! Send me."

- The highest authoritative assembly accommodates a variety of spiritualities. The impact of the recognition of spiritual entities in the office of governance is understood by many South Africans: Acknowledging and submission to the Kingdom of Light or the alternative.

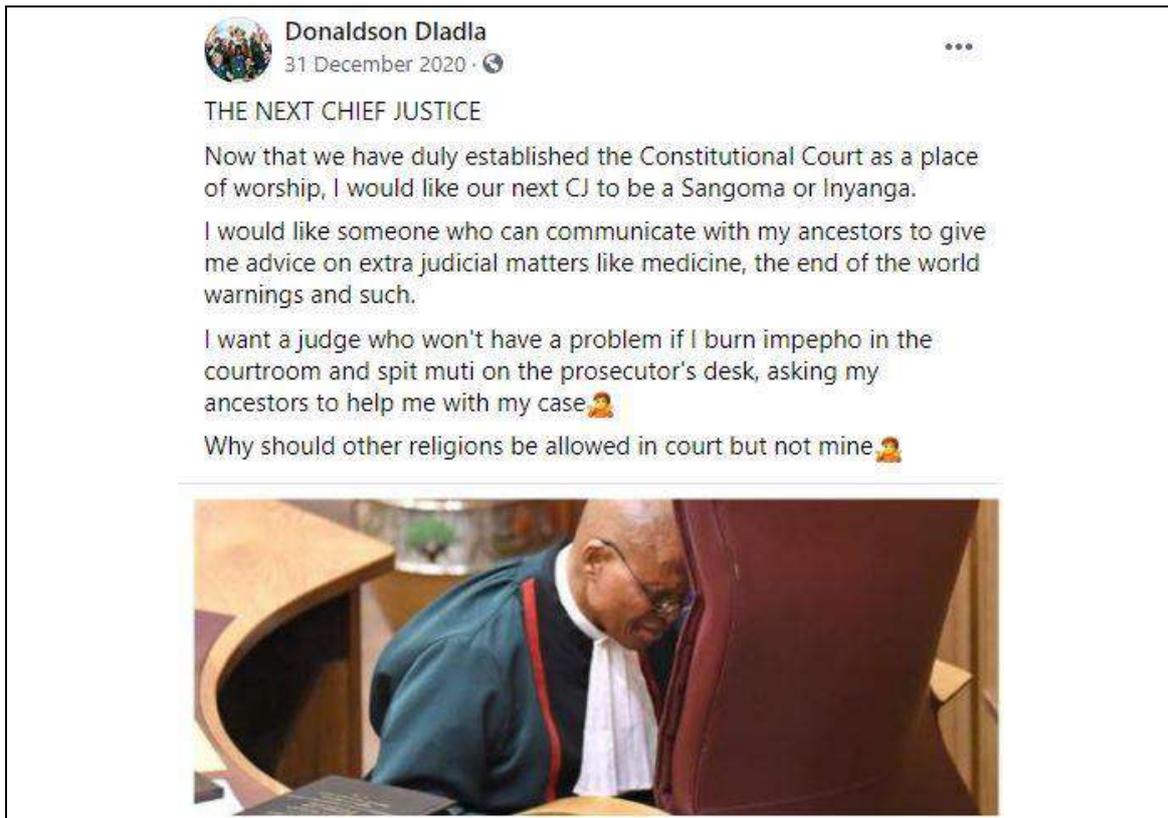


Figure 35: Facebook post by Donaldson Dladla. December 31, 2020. The photo portrayed Chief Justice Moegeng Moegeng kneeling for prayer during the swearing-in ceremony of 400 members the Sixth Democratic Parliament on May 28, 2019 ³²⁴

6.2 Broederbond Political Manipulation

In an article in the Sunday Times on March 8, 1964, Mrs. Janie Malherbe³²⁵, wife

³²⁴ Dladla, Donaldson. (December 31, 2020) The next Chief Justice. Facebook. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/search/top?q=sangoma%20for%20chief%20justic>

³²⁵ Myburg, Marina (2009) *A Profound Study on the Jezebel Spirit: An investigation of its Modus Operandi for Deceiving and Manipulation the Comprehensiveness of the Human Being*. Master of Ministry in Theology. P. 89

of South Africa's war-time Director of Military Intelligence and herself a Captain in Military Intelligence during the war, described the forces which had been at work in the Broederbond during the thirties:

“This terrifying, octopus-like grip (a term often used to describe the Jezebel Spirit’s practices) on the South African way of life was made possible by reorganising the Broederbond on the pattern of Hitler’s highly successful Nazi state, complete with fuehrer, gauleiters, group and cell leaders, spread in a sinister network over the whole of South Africa. This was initially planned by a high-ranking Nationalist and two Stellenbosch students who were sent to Germany, at Nazi expense, to study the Nazi cell system.”

6.3 Ossewa Brandwag

Myburg³²⁶ evaluated the Ossewa Brandwag as follows:

“The character of the Nationalist Party underwent a considerable change during the years of wandering in the wilderness. It became more bitter, more exclusive, more aggressive (all characteristics of the Jezebel Spirit) - and it gained steadily in strength all the time.”

One thing though that link the Illuminati directly to the Jezebel Spirit is the employment of a spirit of confusion, a spirit of fear, a deceiving spirit and murdering spirits. Also, very specific character traits of the Jezebel spirit are self-worship, pitting one against another and creating a “perfect” surrounding. All these character traits, and many more, are openly manifested throughout the whole sector of Illuminati, not only focusing on specific countries, but aiming on Society worldwide!

Robey Leibrand authored an oath every recruit for Weissdorn needed to sign in their own blood. The oath was totally binding. Myburg stated³²⁷:

To “bind my person forever through my signature”, signing with one’s own blood is nothing else than witchcraft. The Jezebel Spirit was much at work in the Ossewa Brandwag as rebellion is at the top agenda of this organization. Furthermore, spirits of bloodshed and murder is common

³²⁶ Myburg Marina (2009) *A Profound Study on the Jezebel Spirit: An investigation of its Modus Operandi for Deceiving and Manipulation the Comprehensiveness of the Human Being*. Master of Ministry in Theology. P. 88

³²⁷ Myburg, Marina (2009) *A Profound Study on the Jezebel Spirit: An investigation of its Modus Operandi for Deceiving and Manipulation the Comprehensiveness of the Human Being*. Master of Ministry in Theology. P. 88

manifested throughout the history of the OB. In the end, worshipping people, namely Hitler and Leibbrandt, distort the focus from worshipping God the Father. Once again, the Ossewa Brandwag (although it is rooted in Hitler) is a pure example of how Jezebelic activity infiltrated the generational roots of South African culture.

6.4 The Relation of Religion or Spirituality and Nationalism: Afrikaner Nationalism a Pseudo Religion

6.4.1 Interpretation of Afrikaner vs Boer

The thesis briefly explored the relationship between nationalism and religion with particular reference to 'Afrikaner nationalism', also described as 'Boer nationalism'. The thesis acknowledges the decisive interpretation of some differentiating between 'Afrikaner' vs 'Boer' - supporters of an independent Boer territory and self-governance. Most research material accepted Afrikaner and Boer in reference to a nation as synonymous.

Apart from an article by Prof. Fransjohan Pretorius³²⁸ for the BBC, the author has not found a differentiation or acknowledgement of the two 'nations' in any research materials except on the Volkstaat³²⁹ website of the 'Boers'³³⁰, the 'Boer Republicans', propagators for the acknowledgement of the Boer nation as a minority nation and their right to independence and self-governance. The 'Boers' dissociated (2020) themselves from the 'Afrikaner' on the following grounds:

³²⁸ Pretorius, Fransjohan Prof. (March 29, 2011) *The Boer Wars*. BBC History Archived. Available at: http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/british/victorians/boer_wars_01.shtml

³²⁹ Volkstaat. Volk translated to 'Nation', 'Staat' implies 'An independent state'. Thus, 'Self-governance' or independence for the Boer nation.

³³⁰ Volkstaat.net. The "volkstaat" is the state of the only white volk on the African continent: the Boervolk (the Boer nation). This website is designed to promote the independence of Boer nation. Freedom is also self-determination for peoples. Available at: <http://www.volkstaat.net/>

6.4.1.1 British Imperialism Support

The Cape Dutch, supporters of Britain are in some communities not recognised as Boers. The Cape Rebels, the inhabitants of the British Cape Colony who supported the Boers and joined in battle on the side of the Boer Republics against English imperialism, were Boers from the Cape frontier and not the Cape Dutch or Cape Afrikaners.

During the last decade of the 19th century the governor of the Cape complained to the Colonial Secretary in London about the problems caused by the irreconcilability between the English, Afrikaners and Boers in the Cape Colony. The English were loyal to the Crown. The Afrikaners were also loyal to the Crown but they persisted in demanding that there 'primitive form of Dutch' be recognised as a language. The Boers were pointedly antagonistic towards the Crown. And this was after ninety years of British rule. On the other hand, until the advent of the mine magnates, the British immigrants to the Z.A.R. and the Free State were quite happy to be assimilated in the local population.³³¹

6.4.1.2 Geographical Origin of the Boer

The Boer people were not born in the Cape, but on the Cape frontier. Descendants of the first Europeans (who arrived after 1652) relocated to the North and East to be the first migrating pastoralists who left the towns of Cape Town, Stellenbosch, Franschhoek, and the Paarl. Due to their nomadic and pastoral lifestyle they were called the Trekboers, or Trekkers. (Trek, to relocate)

The town of Swellendam which was established in 1745 was the first town the Dutch East India Co. set up within the Cape frontier in an attempt at controlling the Boers and this town would be one of the first Boer Republics established in 1795 when a number of the frontier Boers declared republics and rebelled against the Dutch power.³³²

³³¹ Van Tonder, Robert (1977) *Boerestaat*. 'Boere and 'Afrikaners'. The historical perspective. Volkstaat.net. Available at: http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1342:boers-and-afrikaners-boerestaat-robot-van-tonder&catid=77:boersandafrikaner&Itemid=136

³³² The Cape Frontier: Birth place of the Boer Nation (July 6, 2010). Volkstaat.net. Available at: http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1220:0607201001eng&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168

6.4.1.3 Boer Language

According to the Volkstaat webpage (www.volkstaat.net), the 'Boeretaal' (Boer Language) and Afrikaans are not the same. The Boere-language is accepted as the language developed on the Eastern Border of the Cape Colony from where the Groot Trek departed. Historians classified the language as 'Eastern Border Afrikaans' or 'Cape Frontier Afrikaans'. The Groot Trek departed from the Cape Frontier. Afrikaans were the language developed and spoken by the Cape Dutch. Dutch remained the written language of the Boers/Boer Afrikaans for some time. The editor of the 'Republican Trekker Volk'³³³ clarified the difference as follows:

Dutch was NEVER the spoken language of the Boers as the Boers developed their own dialect of what was later termed Afrikaans. The Boers certainly adopted [& created their own dialect] the emerging lingua franca developing at the Cape which was significantly influenced by Malay and Portuguese. The Cape Dutch did take control of Afrikaans & standardize it which did include removing certain words from the Boer dialect & "Dutchifying"

After 1910, in an attempt to unite the whites in South Africa into one nation, politicians coined the terminology of English-speaking and Dutch-speaking Afrikaners. By 1925 it was decided that the written version of the spoken language had become sophisticated enough to replace Dutch as an official language. It was then officially dubbed 'Afrikaans'. The whites were subsequently referred to as English-speaking and 'Afrikaans'-speaking Afrikaners. In general usage this was soon simplified to the 'English' and 'Afrikaners' – two distinct and the primary white nations in South Africa.

6.4.1.4 Colonials vs Born in Africa

The Boer and the Boer culture did not originate in Europe, but in Africa. Although

³³³ Boer language, Afrikaans, Nederlands: differences. A question for Ron. (December 17, 2011) Volkstaat.net. Available at: http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1218:boer-language-afrikaans-nederlands-differences-a-question-for-ron&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168

most of their ancestors did in fact arrive from Europe, it is significant to keep in mind that they were employed by (servants) of the VOC. At some point they were granted their freedom. When the 300 French Huguenots and German Protestants protestant refugees arrived, the foundation of the Boer nation was already set. The Boer nation is an amalgamation of the Dutch, French Huguenots refugees and German Protestant refugees.

Further dispelling the erroneous colonial notion of their origins: The Boers have even been referred as the “White tribe of Africa” in the past and some Bantu groups did in fact recognize them as a tribe during the era of the Great Trek.³³⁴

6.4.1.5 Leadership

Voortrekker leaders were a unique combination of European style and African Chiefdoms. The Voortrekkers migrated in family clans following a specific elected leader. It would thus be more accurate to refer to Boer Nationalism instead of Afrikaner Nationalism.

Van Jaarsveld is one of many historians who did not differentiate between Afrikaner and Boer in his conclusion that the Afrikaners did not develop as an individual race with a unique culture during the first 150 years of Dutch and English rule in the Cape. His statement that the Afrikaners perceived the Cape as a colony of their Dutch motherland in the early 19th century is reflecting on the Cape Afrikaner. His evaluation of their ‘self-awareness’ born as a result of the long-term conflict and the experience of oppression projected by the English rule, is applicable on the Boers. At the time of the Groot Trek a new sentiment with regards to nationality developed. Netherland as ‘motherland’ was replaced by the Cape. The Trek implied that they – with their physical relocation, disassociated

³³⁴ The Boers were not colonials. (July 27, 2010). Volkstaat.net. Available at: http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1219:2707201001eng&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168

with the only 'motherland', implying that they did not need to pledge loyalty to any motherland, nor have any responsibilities towards any authority.

The Dutch-Africans (Boer) were reliant on themselves. Van Jaarsveld³³⁵ was of the opinion that this period captured the moment where the identity of Dutch-Afrikaners was replaced by a new identity of Afrikaners, detached from the Dutch association, and especially a disassociation with colonialism. The emigrants of the Groot Trek were referred to as 'Trekker' or 'Voortrekker'.³³⁶ Van Jaarsveld made the correct conclusion but neglected to identify them as Boer's.

6.4.2 A New Afrikaner Identity is Born

The relocation and occupation of some parts of the interior encompassed a combination of conflicts as well as negotiations with black tribes on the one hand and survival in untamed nature and wild animals. In these circumstances, an identity of Boer pioneers developed. In addition, confrontation with black tribes enforced their consciousness of their identity (white), language (Afrikaans) and religion (Christian/Protestant).

Their identity was grounded in Africa – the victory at Blood River³³⁷ confirmed their sense of belonging to Africa, having earned the right to be on African soil. The later conflict with England to prevent their imperialistic expansion to the newly

³³⁵ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 8

³³⁶ Trekker referring to emigrant. 'Trek' the Afrikaans word for relocation. Voortrekker original referred to those emigrants who left the Cape first - the Trichardt group in particular. Voortrekker became the generic term for all the emigrants relocating to the interior of South Afrika. The monument build in their honour is also named the 'Voortrekker Monument'.

³³⁷ Blood River victory Battle of Blood River in 1838. A battle between the Boer Voortrekkers under leadership of Andries Pretorius and the Zulu army of Dingane. The Zulu army of approximately 10 000 men attacked the Boers. About 3000 Zulus died in the battle. Three men were wounded in the Voortrekker forces. The Boer Commando made a vow to commemorate December 16th in thanksgiving remembering the deliverance God provided.

found Boer Republics also re-affirmed their new identity.

By 1874, the Cape Afrikaners who did not join the Groot Trek realised that the Trekkers replaced Britain as priority role player with themselves, the Boer-Afrikaners in a new context of South Africa, independent from Britain.

6.4.3 Aspired Independence Founded in the Boer Republics

Cultural and national awareness was born from the ambition of an independent Boer Republic, opposed to the British imperialists who reminded them of the British dominance of the Dutch language and other prejudicial treatment they had endured.

A national consciousness developed founded on common experiences of English persecutions, conquests, and annexations of the Boer Republics. Wallace Mills³³⁸ is of the opinion that the British annexation of the Zuid Afrikaansche Republic (ZAR) was the most important event to stimulate Boer Nationalism. The first Boer War (Freedom war) enforced a common national consciousness and Boer Nationalism in the Free State, Cape as well as Natal.

Van Jaarsveld³³⁹ define the core of Boer nationalism as the dredged sum of memories of the past and a hope of a future, strongly centred on their history; in essence the conflict between Boer³⁴⁰ and Brit. The fact that the Boers had to fight England with no international allies strengthened their sense of nationalism and self-reliance, contributing to a self-centeredness and exclusive Boer vision and interpretation of the history of the land - with themselves the main role-players.

³³⁸ Mills, Wallace G. *Origins of Afrikaner Nationalism*. History 322.0. South Africa. Saint Mary's University: Canada. Available at: http://smu-facweb.smu.ca/~wmills/course322/11Afrikaner_natm.html

³³⁹ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 10

³⁴⁰ 'Boer' meaning farmer. Also used as a synonymous for 'Afrikaner'.

With no allies, hero's, and leaders such as Retief, Potgieter and Pretorius were found in own ranks.

6.4.4 Afrikaner Boer Hero's and Monuments

The untamed land conquered, the development of fertile ground for farming and hardships endured with sicknesses and conflicts with black tribes resulted in patriotism and a love for the land. As the British onslaught intensified, so did the Boer nationalism. This is evident in the public holidays of Dingaan's day (Afrikaner victory over the Zulus) and Majuba (Afrikaner victory over the English) honouring historic events since 1881. President Paul Kruger birthday were added (1895) as well as Kruger statue (1896) and the Paardekraal (1883), a monument to celebrate the re-birth of the South African Republic, Piet Retief remembrance (1889) and for Louis Trichardt in Lourenço Marques (1895), the Jameson raid (1896) Naauwpoort (1898). In 1891 A.W.J. Pretorius was buried for a second time in the Pretoria Graveyard and in 1893 and a tombstone was erected for President T.F. Burger.

In addition, monuments, historic buildings, biographies, historic festivals, literature, poetry, lyrics, art, culture, political speeches reflected Afrikaner nationalism. One additional example is the National military training base named Rob Heights after a British Commander-in-Chief during the Anglo Boer War. The Nationalists changed the name to Voortrekker Heights to pay homage to the Voortrekkers.

6.4.5 The Religious Statement of the Voortrekker Monument



Figure 36: Voortrekker Monument³⁴¹

One of the first successes of the Broederbond³⁴², the Voortrekker Monument is a one the most remarkable and commemorative buildings. Erected on a hill to the southwest of Pretoria, the Monument was designed to make a territorial, historical, cultural, and religious statement. Hennig Klopper³⁴³, first Chairman of the Broederbond highlighted their success as follows:

“The symbolic trek and its Monument gave an emotional impetus to the Afrikaner Nationalism that had far-reaching consequences. “Without the trek, the Nationalist government would never have come to power as early as 1948”.

During the display of the first model of the envisaged Monument at the 1936

³⁴¹ Jansen, Lizette (April 16, 2020) Voortrekker monument graded as Historical venue. Available at: <https://vtm.org.za/en/2020/04/16/voortrekker-monument-graded-as-historical-venue/>

³⁴² Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 10

³⁴³ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 10

Empire Exhibition in Johannesburg, architect Gerard Moerdyk³⁴⁴ (1890-1958), Associate of the Royal Institute of British Architects, in his explication of the design, confirmed that the fundamental idea of the building was entrenched in religion. He gave a thorough explanation with regards to the spirituality of design:

“The mere stature of the Monument was framed to denote a spiritual and sacred association. It is a 'beautiful shrine', he said, placed within the spacious wall of a laager of wagons.”

'Since our people is par excellence a religious people', the Voortrekker Monument is, in terms of the Vow before the Battle of Blood River (December 16, 1838), consequently 'a temple, secluded from the hustle and bustle of daily life and bold in structure, as was the Voortrekker ancestors' (Argitek 1938:31).

As a building, the Voortrekker Monument must therefore attempt to replicate 'the whole spirituality, or mood, state of mind, disposition and history of the Afrikaner. The (Abraham) altar-sarcophagus is located deep in the heart of the building. It is the concentric point in which the major trajectories converge to mushroom in the majesty of the Monument high on a hill near Pretoria. In this way, the architect brought together religious motives, the magnificence of the building and a nationalist interpretation of history.

The trajectory related to the Christian religion and spirituality of the Afrikaner as embodied in the (transubstantiated) sarcophagus-altar is, however, deep-seated in the initial (non-Christian) trajectory discussed, namely the ancient archetypes of the Egyptian religious architecture created by religious practices. This remarkable interlacement of religious traditions was made possible by the text chosen as inscription on the central altar of the building. Annually, on December 16th at noon, the penetrating sunray falling downwards from the upper domes of the building highlights these words. Undoubtedly, the main 'spiritual' feature of the building. Amidst hundreds of thousands of Afrikaners, the laying of the cornerstone on December 16, 1938 carried a distinctively religious, and in particular national, Christian character. It involved the full participation of the three main Afrikaans reformed churches.³⁴⁵ The Government, and therefore Prime Minister Hertzog, withdrew in impeccable style from the proceedings following a sordid public dispute, refusing to sing 'God Save the King' (the official

³⁴⁴ Brits, Dolf (2018) The religious statement of the Voortrekker Monument as a site of Afrikaner memory: Origin, composition and reception. *Herv. teol. stud.* vol.74 n.3 Pretoria. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222018000300050&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

³⁴⁵ Brits, Dolf (2018) *The religious statement of the Voortrekker Monument as a site of Afrikaner memory: Origin, composition and reception.* *Herv. teol. stud.* vol.74 n.3 Pretoria. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222018000300050&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

anthem) at the intended official state ceremony.³⁴⁶ It was transformed to an Afrikaner cultural-religious event.³⁴⁷

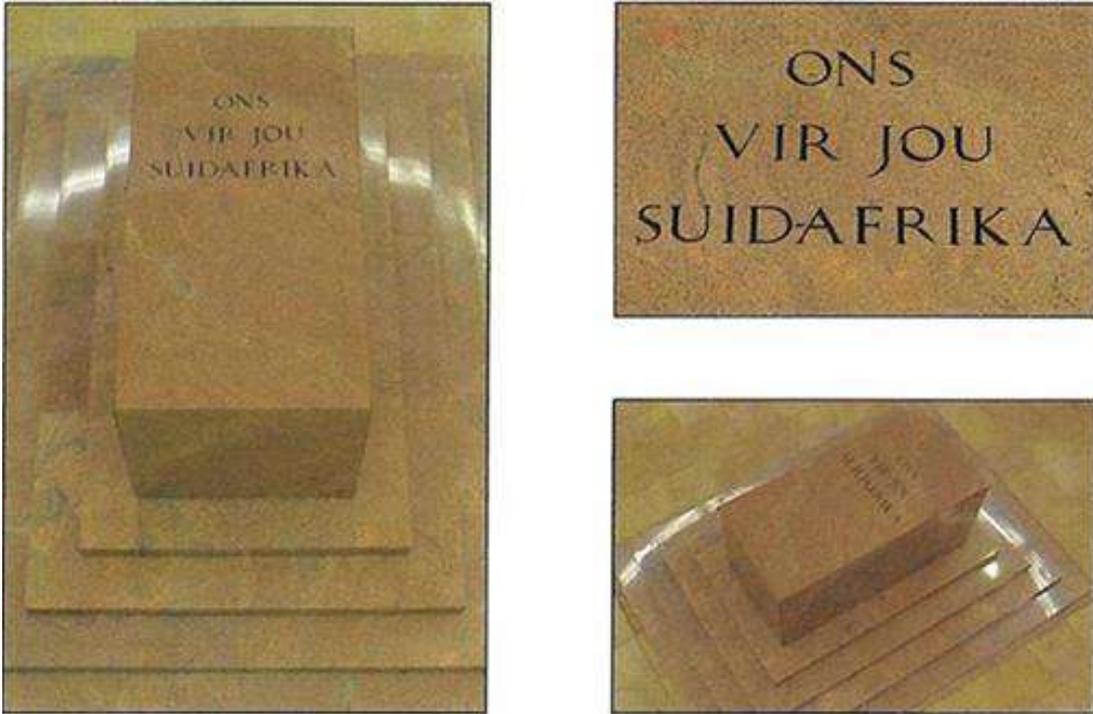


Figure 37: Cenotaph on ground level of the Voortrekker Monument³⁴⁸

The Cenotaph³⁴⁹ is designed as the sacred centre of the building and serves as a reminder to the descendants of the Groot Trek and their sacrifices. A Biblical altar is the underlying motif for the design. Litnet reflects an Academic report of

³⁴⁶ Brits, Dolf (2018) The religious statement of the Voortrekker Monument as a site of Afrikaner memory: Origin, composition and reception. *Herv. teol. stud.* vol.74 n.3 Pretoria. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222018000300050&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

³⁴⁷ Brits, Dolf (2018) The religious statement of the Voortrekker Monument as a site of Afrikaner memory: Origin, composition and reception. *Herv. teol. stud.* vol.74 n.3 Pretoria. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222018000300050&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en

³⁴⁸ Cenotaph. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/Voortrekkermon/photos/a.151975777102/10153691051972103/?type=3>

³⁴⁹ Cenotaph: Originates from Greek meaning empty grave. This cenotaph is the symbolic resting place of Piet Retief and the Voortrekkers who died on their Groot Trek journey. Available at: <https://vtm.org.za/en/voortrekker-monument/#:~:text=.,Cenotaph,died%20during%20the%20Great%20Trek.>

Aton van Vollenhoven³⁵⁰:

Together with the celebrations on December 16, 1949, when the monument was inaugurated, Afrikaner nationalism reached a peak. This date was selected to coincide with the commemoration of the Battle of Blood River, the importance of which was emphasised by the shining of sun rays through the roof of the monument on a cenotaph with the words “Ons vir jou Suid-Afrika” (We for you South Africa).

Addressing the Afrikaner nation on December 16, 1949 with the inauguration of the Voortrekker Monument, D.F. Malan³⁵¹ confirmed the so-called pseudo-religion of Afrikaner Nationalism.

“Back to your people. Back to the highest ideals of your people, back to the pledge that has been entrusted to you for safe-keeping, back to the altar of the people on which you must lay your sacrifice and, if it is demanded of you, also yourself as a sacrifice, back to the sanctity and inviolability of family life, back to the Christian faith, back to church; back to your God.”

(Note: Authors emphasis to highlight nationalism connectedness with religion.)

In describing the significance of the Voortrekker monument in the paradigm of Afrikaner nationalism, Harrison³⁵² used the following vocabulary indicative of a spiritual undertone:

- It has become a where the *faithful come for inspiration*.
- It will *arouse the pride* of belonging to a nation of heroes.
- It will *arouse and strengthen* a love for the county for whose sake so much was *sacrificed*.
- It will *strengthen a faith in God* in whom the people trust.
- To this *Afrikaner temple* busloads of children came

³⁵⁰ Van Vollenhoven, Anton (July 19, 2017) *The changing meaning of the Voortrekker Monument: heritage gain or heritage loss?* Available at: <https://www.litnet.co.za/changing-meaning-voortrekker-monument-heritage-gain-heritage-loss/>

³⁵¹ Hopkins, Pat (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement. The Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 38-39

³⁵² Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 10

Author comment: God's Word is explicit. Trust in God alone. Honour God alone. All the honour, all the glory belongs to God. Pride was the first and great sin and reason for man's downfall. Whether an individual or a nation or a tribe, the principle stands firm: God hates a prideful spirit.

6.4.6 Afrikaans Language

The importance of Afrikaans, the spoken language developed from Dutch is evident in the formation of the organisation 'Society of True Afrikaners'³⁵³ (Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners) in 1875 with the aim to promote Afrikaans as language: **"to stand for our Language, our Nation and our Land."**³⁵⁴ They composed a National Anthem, emphasising loyalty to God, their land and their language.

6.4.7 Education: History Syllabus

In 1886, the National Assembly (ZAR)³⁵⁵ approved the development of school history syllabus to emphasize the history of the Boer as "a matter of the highest priority." The Groot Trek and Anglo Boer war needed to be central themes. Theal, a Canadian historian was contracted to prepare the history syllabus. His work 'De Volkstem' (The Voice of the Nation) 1896 was pro-boer, pro-white, anti-

³⁵³ Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners (Association of Real Afrikaners/Society of True Afrikaners). (November 29, 2010) A hugely influential secret association formed in Paarl in 1875 to protect and promote the use of Afrikaans and the rights of Afrikaners (Afrikaans-speaking citizens) in the face of British Anglicization policies. The members were all prominent in the community. ESAT. Available at: https://esat.sun.ac.za/index.php/Genootskap_van_Regte_Afrikaners. KasiNomics
Thompson, L.M. (1962). Afrikaner Nationalist Historiography and the Policy of Apartheid. *The Journal of African History*, 3(1), The society was the precursor of the Afrikaner Bond. P. 126. Retrieved September 13, 2020, Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/179803>.

³⁵⁴ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 50

³⁵⁵ ZAR: Zuid Afrikaansche Republic. A Boer republic in the boundaries of the old Transvaal.

missionary, anti-imperialism and anti-black. He held the British imperialism, black tribes, and missionaries responsible for the fate of the Afrikaner. By 1899 a strong history inspired nationalism was noticeable with a strong anti-colonial and anti-imperialism tone. Dingaan's day and Majuba became the two anchors.

Reverent Jan Brink³⁵⁶ made the following remarks at a Reformed Church synod in 1902 with regards to the relevance of the subject history in school curricula:

“Onze geskiedenis is de kern van ons volksbestaan. Zij is te duur met bloed en tranen gevorm dat men zou toelaten dat zij niet behoorlijk aan het opkomend geslacht onderwezen wordt. Naast de Bijbel, moet de geskiedenis geleerd worden ... Laat onze geskiedenis ons heilig zijn ... zonder geskiedenis is ons volk zonder ruggegraat”.

Afrikaner Nationalism was entrenched in school 'History' curricula aimed to instil and enhance the Afrikaner nations pride, loyalty, and patriotism. A debate arose again in 1954-55 when 'History' as subject in schools was converted from compulsory to voluntary. The fear of a decline in patriotism and Afrikaner consciousness and even a fear of national suicide was verbalised. Van Jaarsveld³⁵⁷ quoted the Hansard of 1957³⁵⁸ where a member of the National Assembly asserted that 'history, second to Biblical studies, remains the most important aspect to ensure that the nation of South Africa remains on the right road' (Author's translation for "Naas godsdiens is geskiedenis een van die magtigste faktore wat die volk van Suid-Afrika op die regte pad lei"). The author noted the inclination of the speaker that the 'Afrikaner' is the only nation in South Africa.

Contrary to the Afrikaner Nationalism, the English-speaking population criticised the disproportionate emphasize of Afrikaner nationalism and the Afrikaner

³⁵⁶ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die histories skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 17

³⁵⁷ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die histories skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 18

³⁵⁸ Hansard 19, (Fifth sitting of the eleventh Parliament), 3-6-12957, column 7339.

contribution to the South African history and the minimised and distorted reflection of the English-speaking South Africans contribution. The English nation was portrayed as foreigners and enemy of the Afrikaner. J.S. Fotheringham³⁵⁹ described the curriculum as follows:

“As a powerful instrument of policy driving our two European sections further apart every year”

As recently as 1983, F.W. Thorpe³⁶⁰ reported in the ‘The Star’ Newspaper

“Instead of building on the greatness of Louis Botha and Jan Smuts, these narrow-minded vengeful people reverted to the Voortrekkers and the Boer War, dredging up events from the past to incite friction. Bitterness and hatred were fermented. Afrikaans and English children have been separated in schools and universities and fed on a diet of Boer War concentration camps, the burning of farms, the ridiculous stories of powdered glass in the camp food. The historical value of long past events has been boosted to illustrate Afrikaner superiority, while English contribution to South Africa might well have not existed. ... The Government now has to repair the damage of the last 30 years as their toughest job is to convince the ordinary South Afrikaner that he is not chosen by God to rule South Africa and that the English way of life, the English interpretation of Christianity and English education and culture have just as much to commend them as have the Afrikaans, also that the English contribution to South Africa has been just as great as the Afrikaans and in some fields very much greater.

Buthelezi³⁶¹ referred to the **Afrikaner myths of white superiority and God given right to acts of blatant exploitation**,³⁶² whilst Ebrahim Salie³⁶³ mentioned a **“divinely guided Afrikaner community, with a Divine right to dominate”**

³⁵⁹ Rand Daily Mail. (September 3, 1957) Report on the South African Council of Education.

³⁶⁰ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 18-19

³⁶¹ Mangosuthu Buthelezi. Zulu Chief, founder and leader of the Inkatha Freedom Party. A political party originally home to predominantly Zulu supporters.

³⁶² Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 25

³⁶³ Salie, Ebrahim. *An Analysis of the Voortrekker Monument*. Available at: https://www.academia.edu/29815075/An_Analysis_of_the_Voortrekker_Monument

6.4.8 Religious Assimilation

6.4.8.1 The Groot Trek and Association with Israel

The Groot Trek was perceived as a religious-civil revelation of history, and Dingaan's day a political-religious ritual.³⁶⁴ The Groot Trek in protest against the British rule in the Cape to establish an independent Boer Republic was associated with the Israel journey from the slavery of Egypt to the promised land. The Boer trek included warfare with interior non-Christian tribes and nations in coherence with the history of Israel's journey. The journey to the land promised by God for the Afrikaner is a Godly nation, a chosen nation.

Van Jaarsveld³⁶⁵ noted how the Boer's association with the Old Testament Israel elevated Boer Nationalism to a religious reality: the belief of the higher calling bestowed to the Boer, strengthened by their aspiration for freedom, independence and separated and individual identity. As such the Boer history reflected their aspirations and struggles for freedom and the English remained guilty in opposing the Boer dream, portrayed as murderers, oppressors, dishonest, greedy, and a heartless enemy. Memories of Slagtersnek³⁶⁶ and

³⁶⁴ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 22

³⁶⁵ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 13

³⁶⁶ Slagtersnek Rebellion December 15, 1815. Frederik Bezuidenhout owned a farm east of the Cape Colony. After reports surfaced that he was allegedly mistreating one of his Khoikhoi laborers, he was summoned to appear in a magistrate's court. After failing to make an appearance, an attempt was made to arrest him. Bezuidenhout fled to a nearby cave where he was later discovered and shot. The fact that he was shot by a Coloured soldier was said to be part of the reason that Bezuidenhout's brother, Hans, wanted to take revenge for his brother's death. Hans and his neighbor Hendrik Prinsloo planned an uprising against the British colonial government as they believed that the British favored Black and Coloured farmers over Afrikaner farmers. Burghers (farmers) in the surrounding areas were pressurized into joining this rebellion as Hans was said to have threatened them with death. On November 18, this rebel group met with the forces of the military commander at Slagtersnek. Twenty rebels surrendered, but Hans refused to do so. He died while resisting arrest. Those involved in the rebellion were tried in Uitenhage landdrost court on December 15, 1815. One of the rebels was reprieved by Lord Charles Somerset but the others, Cornelis Faber (43), Stefanus Cornelis Botma (43), his brother Abraham Carel Botma (29), Hendrik Frederik Prinsloo (32) and Theunis de Klerk, were sentenced to death. The remaining rebels were acquitted or banished. The execution of these rebels is as being a sore point with many Afrikaners and was cited as one of the reasons for the Great Trek. A monument in memory of the rebels was erected in 1919. Slagtersnek Rebellion/Rebellion 15

Boomplaats³⁶⁷ battles and the encircling of Transvaal with British territory reaffirmed the British as the enemy of the Boer.

6.4.8.2 The Battle of Blood River Covenant with God³⁶⁸

Remembrance of the Voortrekker/Afrikaner miraculous victory over the Zulus in 1838 in answer to prayer, remains key date in the history of the Afrikaner. The Afrikaners totally outnumbered by the Zulu's vowed to honour the day as a sabbath should God favour them in victory. This was interpreted as a holy war between the Christian Afrikaner and the gentile Zulus. Harrison³⁶⁹ described the date as "the focal point of the whole of the sacred history", "the day of the Covenant" and the occupation of Natal the "promised land".

December 1815. Geni.com Available at: <https://www.geni.com/projects/Slagtersnek-Rebellie-Rebellion-15-Dec-1815/14935>

³⁶⁷ The battle of Boomplaats is, relatively speaking, one of South Africa's least known battles. Nevertheless, there are no less than three monuments commemorating this battle; two in Cape Town and one on the farm Boomplaats, near the Trompsburg-Jagersfontein main road. The battle was a direct consequence of the personal and precipitate action of Sir Harry Smith, who, on February 3, 1848, declared the area between the Orange and the Vaal Rivers, British - the so-called Orange River Sovereignty. The white burghers of the area resented this declaration and they called on Commandant-General Andries Pretorius to help them to regain their independence. In June 1848, Pretorius marched with a thousand men to the Orange River to confront Sir Harry Smith. This commando evicted the British Resident, Major Warden, and his small garrison from Bloemfontein. Sir Harry Smith crossed the Orange River with about 1 200 troops as well as 200-250 Griquas under Andries Waterboer and Adam Kok. The governor was under the delusion that the Boers would not attack his forces, but the Boer Commando, whose numbers had by then declined to between 300 and 500, retreated and decided to ambush him at the farm Boomplaats. On August 29, 1848, a sharp engagement lasting about four hours took place, with the Boers retreating to Winburg and Smith marching on to Bloemfontein and restoring the British authority. Bradlow, Frank R. (1997) *MEMORIALS OF THE BATTLE OF BOOMPLAATS* August 29, 1848. Military History Journal Vol 10 No 5 - June 1997. Available at: <http://samilitaryhistory.org/vol105fb.html>

³⁶⁸ The Battle of Blood River: Seven months after the Zulu king Dingane murdered Piet Retief and his delegation who negotiated the purchasing of land, and Dingane's subsequent attack on the Voortrekker delegation killing men, women, children and Khoi servants, the Voortrekkers counter attack under leadership of Andries Pretorius. The Voortrekkers made a covenant with God to provide them victory and in return the Voortrekkers will commemorate the day as a Sabbath. About 3000 Zulu warriors were killed, colouring the river red with their blood. The Voortrekkers suffered three wounded. The victory enabled the Voortrekkers to take control of Natal.

³⁶⁹ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. PP. 15, 17, 21

“It offers the perfect symbol for the Afrikaner Nationalist view of South Africa today – a gallant, God fearing country surrounded by evil forces. It is the theme of countless politicians’ speeches over December 16th.”³⁷⁰

Faithfull Afrikaners commemorate the Covenant with God every year, many visit the actual battle site for solemn ceremonies as well as cultural festivals. The Covenant reads as follows:

Here we stand before the Holy God of heaven and earth, to make him a vow that if he will protect us and deliver the enemy into our hands, we will observe this day each year as a day of thanksgiving, like a sabbath. And we will also enjoin our children to take part with us for all the coming generations. For the honour of His name shall be glorified and the glory of the victory shall be given to Him.

It presented the perfect symbol for the Afrikaner Nationalist view of South Africa – a gallant, God fearing country surrounded by evil forces. For many years, it remained the theme of countless political speeches at commemorative gatherings.”³⁷¹

The vow of Blood River was often (mis)used to elevate the Afrikaner to a ‘covenant nation’, a ‘chosen nation, called and appointed by God’. Requests to declare December 16th (Dingaan’s day) a public holiday with a ‘Sabbath status’ failed in 1894 (presented to Paul Kruger’s House of Assembly) as well as in 1925 (presented to General Hertzog). DF Malan approved the request in 1952.

6.4.8.3 The History of the Boer was a ‘lijdensgeschiedenis’³⁷²

The C.N.J. du Plessis³⁷³ referred to the continues oppression of the English and the fact that the Afrikaner was responsible to tame the interior of South Africa,

³⁷⁰ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 18

³⁷¹ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 18

³⁷² Dutch word referring to a history of suffering and hardship.

³⁷³ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. PP. 14-15

and as such it became their fatherland bought by Boer blood and suffering. The Boer's became an independent nation, although with descendants off the Dutch and the French, with a destiny determined by God.

The Boer's carried the Republican spirit of the Voortrekkers and were united by the love of their mother tongue (Afrikaans) and perceived new fatherland, South Africa. After the first Boer war³⁷⁴ and the Second Boer War³⁷⁵ 1899 – 1902, with restored British control, renewed Boer nationalism emphasised language, Christian religion, and history. Jan Brink³⁷⁶ wrote

“onze geskiedenis is de kern van ons volksbestaan. Zij is te duur met bloed en tranen gevorm dat men zou toelaten dat zij niet behoorlijk aan het opkomend geslacht onderwezen wordt. Naast de Bijbel, moet de geschiedenis geleerd worded. Laat onze geschiedenis ons heilig zijn ... sonder geschiedenis is ons volk zonder ruggegraat”

The emphasis on the Boer's history overshadowed political actions until 1961. He is of the opinion that the Afrikaner history became a cult. In reaction to the emphasis of Afrikaner history syllabus, F.W. Thorpe wrote a letter to the Star Newspaper in 1983.

“The Government now has to repair the damage of the last 30 years as their toughest job is to convince the ordinary Afrikaner that he is not chosen by God to rule South Africa and that the English way of life, the English interpretation of Christianity and English education and culture have just as much to commend them as have the Afrikaans, also that the English contribution to South Africa has been just as great as the Afrikaans and in some fields very much greater”.

The Afrikaner history was portrayed to have a **‘holy centre’**. From this viewpoint, Biblical terminologies and religious concepts were transferred to the Afrikaner.

³⁷⁴ The Anglo Boer War was fought by Britain and her Empire against the Boers. The Boers were comprised of the combined forces of the South African Republic and the Republic of the Orange Free State. The Boer Republics declared war on 11th October 1899 and the conflict ended on 31st May 1902, a duration of 2 years and 8 months. *Boer War 1899-1902*. AngloBoerWar.com. Available at: <https://www.angloboerwar.com/boer-war>

³⁷⁵ Second Boer War

³⁷⁶ Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery. P. 17

Concepts such as **'rebirth' (- of a nation), resurrection (- of a nation), martyrs, (boer war hero's) nations altar's and holy ground.** According to Van Jaarsveld concepts such as **'je me souviens' (I remember) and 'notre maitre le passé' (our master, our history)** also applies to the Afrikaner.³⁷⁷

The Afrikaner religion was deeply entrenched into, and inseparable from its history, and just as valuable. *Religion* was inseparable from Afrikaner nationalism. Van Jaarsveld³⁷⁸ refers Afrikaner's **'pseudo religion'**³⁷⁹. The Afrikaner associated with the Old Testament Israel in the perception of a **Godly chosen nation. A God-covenant nation. The Groot Trek**, second significant historical event after the arrival of Van Riebeeck, was associated with the **Israelites journey to the promised land. A God given land. Rightfully occupied according to the promise of God.** The Groot Trek was a **religious-civil act of a chosen people.**

Dr. Mills³⁸⁰ from the Saint Mary's University added two influences advancing Boer Nationalism in 1930:

- 1) Coming to power of the National Socialist Workers Party in Germany in 1933.
- 2) Centenary Celebrations for the Great Trek—1937-39

More than one hundred thousand people attended the ceremony when the foundation stone was laid in the 1938 centenary of the original trek. Hundreds of Afrikaners joined the celebrations by joining the centenary trek from the Cape to Pretoria.

³⁷⁷ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die histories skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede.* Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 24

³⁷⁸ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die histories skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede.* Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 25

³⁷⁹ Pseudo Religion. A generally pejorative term applied to a non-mainstream belief system or philosophy which is functionally similar to a religious movement. *Pseudoreligion.* Definitions.com. Available at: <https://www.definitions.net/definition/Pseudoreligion>

³⁸⁰ Mills, Wallace G. *Later Afrikaner Nationalism.* History 322.0. South Africa. Saint Mary's University: Canada. Available at: http://smu-facweb.smu.ca/~wmills/course322/14bLater_natm.html

Afrikaners came together in an emotional pilgrimage to pay tribute to their ancestors. It was the biggest gathering even known in South Africa. The tribe was united as never before.³⁸¹

It has been recognised as a turning point in Afrikaner nationalism and contributed greatly to swinging Afrikaner support from Hertzog, who was now in the United Party, towards Malan's Purified National Party. Events reached an emotional fever pitch at the 100th anniversary of the Battle of Blood River, December 16, 1938. Malan made a famous speech on the exact site. As he emphasised, what was happening was not simply a celebration of events 100 years before; it was a mobilisation for the present and future. Malan talked about the New Great Trek of Afrikaners (Boer's) into the cities and of the new struggles for survival that Afrikaners (Boer's) were engaged in there. The new struggles, he argued, were just as dangerous to life-and-death as those faced by the Voortrekkers.

6.4.8.4 Ossewa Brandwag

The Ossewa Brandwag (OB), meaning "Ox-wagon Sentinel"³⁸² was established during the commemoration of this 'Great Trek'. An anti-British, pro Germany organization in South Africa during the World War II with membership of 300 000³⁸³, including future prime ministers John Vorster and P.W. Botha.³⁸⁴ An intellectual leadership with anti-British and pro Germany sentiment and a goal to re-establish the old Boer Republics, or at least re-instate independent governance. This emotional nationalism was reinforced with the commemoration

³⁸¹ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 9

³⁸² Dickens, Peter. *P.W. Botha "Mein Kampf shows the way to greatness for South Africa" – The Ossewabrandwag*. The Observation Post. South African Modern Military History. Available at: <https://samihistory.com/tag/pw-botha/>

³⁸³ O'Malley, Padraig. *The Leader of the Ossewa Brandwag*. O'Malley The Heart of Hope: Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v02730/051v02996/061v03000.htm>

³⁸⁴ Dickens, Peter. *P.W. Botha "Mein Kampf shows the way to greatness for South Africa" – The Ossewabrandwag*. The Observation Post. South African Modern Military History. Available at: <https://samihistory.com/tag/pw-botha/>

of the Groot Trek. As cultural movement it aimed to establish and promote Afrikaans, Afrikaner religion (Christianity), -culture, - tradition, -material interest and patriotism. Afrikaner women, with the famous actor and intellectual Anna Neethling Pohl played a significant role in the success of the organisation, especially with the conveying of secret and coded messages. In June 1940 Pohl and 10 000 women delivered 150 000 telegrams of women across South Africa to Smuts. Marx³⁸⁵ identified three factors that brought about a mass movement of Afrikaner Nationalism:

- i) The 1938 centennial anniversary of the 'Great Trek' (the migration of Boers to the interior) infused the Republican ambition.
- ii) Unified objection against participation with Allied forces in World War II. Germany supported the two Boer Republics in their war against Britain, supplying them with some money, arms and artillery – but mostly with sympathy.

After the war, Botha himself with De la Rey and de Wet, had gone to Germany to accept £80,000 the German people had collected for the Boers. Harrison³⁸⁶ reported as follows:

And Botha knelt down before the man who presented the money and thanked him. Yet he was the man who declared war on German forces in South West. Botha and Smuts joined South African committed support to Britain. Remembering the brutality of England in the Boer Wars (Scorched Earth and Concentration Camps³⁸⁷) and the support from Germany.

- iii) The OB, strongly republican-minded, was evidence of the surging Afrikaner Nationalism in the centenary year of the Great trek.

³⁸⁵ O'Malley, Pdraig. *The Leader of the Ossewa Brandwag*. O'Malley The Heart of Hope: Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v02730/051v02996/061v03000.htm>

³⁸⁶ Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 61

³⁸⁷ Concentration camps: British prisoners of war camps. Boer women and children were capture from their farms and brought to the camps. Twenty thousand of the Twenty-six thousand Boers who died in the camps were younger than sixteen years. Harrison, David (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers. P. 37

Albert Blake³⁸⁸ made the distinction that the Afrikaners were not supportive of the Nazi's but were sympathetic towards Germany. Emphasis on Afrikaner Nationalism overruled support of Nazi ideology. Increased reports of the Nazi's cruelty resulted in the disassociation with Germany.

A minority and radical militant group, the Stormjaers (Storm Troops), developed within the OB. They were responsible for acts of sabotage in South Africa during the war in protest against British support in the War. After WWII the OB gradually faded from the political scene when the majority members realised the only effective means of achieving the republican ideal would be through the political party system.

Johannes Frederik Janse van Rensburg³⁸⁹ made the following press releases:

“The aim of the Ossewabrandwag is to found a one-party, authoritarian and disciplined state wherein the people will not be allowed to say, write or do as they please to the detriment of the People and the Government.” (Eastern Province Herald, May 29, 1942)

"The Ossewa Brandwag is of the opinion that a German victory is an obvious condition for and Afrikaner republic to come into existence. Liberation can happen only as a result of a German victory.” (Die Vaderland, August 8, 1942)

Afrikaner nationalism inspired a political ideology of Apartheid implemented as national policy in 1948. The author summarised the elevated Afrikaner nationalism as idolatry, an elevated self-worth and self-centeredness. A misinterpretation of the Word of God and a wrong application in the association with Israel as the God-chosen people.

The Author was of the opinion that the Afrikaner Nationalism and white supremacy overshadowed and influenced Christianity and Christian principles,

³⁸⁸ Blake, Albert (2018) *Wit Terroriste: Afrikaner-Saboteurs in die Ossewabrandwagjare*. Cape Town: NB-Uitgewers Available at: <https://www.litnet.co.za/wit-terroriste-afrikaner-saboteurs-in-die-ossewa-brandwag-albert-blake/>

³⁸⁹ O'Malley, Padraig. *The Leader of the Ossewa Brandwag*. O'Malley The Heart of Hope: Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory Available at: <https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/031v02424/041v02730/051v02996/061v03000.htm>

especially with reference to relationships with fellow South Africans. Segregation, apartheid, and policies such as inferior education provided to Black South Africans was Biblically motivated. Some Afrikaners founded their clarification of race relations and separate development on their Biblical interpretation.

At van Wyk³⁹⁰ noted that Afrikaner Nationalism had **“yet to prove its durable political supremacy for it was challenge on all fronts – religious, cultural, educational, economic and political.”** In response the author argued that the Afrikaner has certainly lost their political supremacy, but this loss and the renewed discrimination towards the Afrikaner and oppression evident in farm murders gave birth to a noticeable re-birth or renewed revitalisation of Afrikaner Nationalism. This is evident in the Afrikaans music industry and a wide variety of musicians with a flood of lyrics reflecting the Afrikaner, their faith, their land, and their history.

6.5 Architecture and Monuments

Architecture not only capture spirituality in concrete, but it is also a valuable communicator of the history of spirituality. The South African Architectural Record³⁹¹ dated 1927 expressed how architecture is considered as art, especially with reference to the fourteenth, fifteenth and sixteenth century. The author assumes that the 17th 18th and 19th century is excluded only because the article was written prior and that the same argument remains valid. As such, architecture among other attributes, expresses and capture spirituality and aesthetically

³⁹⁰ Van Wyk, At (1991) *The Birth of a New Afrikaner*. Cape Town. Human and Rousseau. P. 70

³⁹¹ *The Craft of the Smith*. The South African Architectural Record Vol XII. No. 48. (December 1927) Available at: <http://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/bitstream/handle/10539/18854/Journal%20of%20SAAI-December-1927-001-jpeg.pdf?sequence=4&isAllowed=y>

presents art. Moore³⁹² also connected nationhood with architecture:

There can be no true conception of nationhood, of citizenship, divorced from a policy of pegging out claims for posterity. The instinctive good sense and patriotism of the people at large must be reflected in a city's memorials: that is, in its buildings, for they are the vital memorials of the tenacity and endurance of the race, its courage and devotion to duty; its strength and resource; its standard of citizenship. And it is in this standard of citizenship; this civic pride, that the cardinal conditions and features of national life reside, and from which spring the glorious traditions of citizenship, involving a true conception of greatness, and the wider interest of humanity.

The author presented two dynamic and apposing spiritual influences in South African architecture as evidence to the argument that architecture encompasses spirituality. Freemasonry symbolism is found in several a wide variety architecture, for example early Dutch Reform Churches, the Voortrekker monument etc. The Freedom Park presents excellent evidence of African Spirituality.

Freemasonry was central to many developing communities within South Africa from the days of early settlers into the country. Carmichael's³⁹³ research revealed the presence of Freemasonry in several small towns across South Africa:

Most town centres have a Masonic Hall alongside the church and built of the same stone, a symbol of the strong link of those who attended the Lodge and worshiped in the church.

6.5.1 Voortrekker Monument

Refer to discussion 6.4.5 of the Chapter.

³⁹² *The Craft of the Smith*. The South African Architectural Record Vol XII. No. 48. (December 1927) Available at: <http://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/bitstream/handle/10539/18854/Journal%20of%20SAAI-December-1927-001-jpeg.pdf?sequence=4&isAllowed=y>. P. 5

³⁹³ Carmichael, Thomas A (2003) *A Christian meeting with other world religions through a dialogue withing the Freemasonry*. Dissertation submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Art in Theology. University of Pretoria. Available at: <https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/29366/Complete.pdf?sequence=3&isAllowed=y>

6.5.2 Freedom Park

The museum and monument erected to honour the many who contributed to South Africa's liberation. Freedom Park is a national and international tribute to, and advocate of, liberty, diversity and human rights; it inspires reconciliation and nation-building; encourages reflection on our past to improve our present and build our future as a united nation; and, contributes to better understanding and co-operation among nations and peoples.

Isivivane is respected as a sacred space – the spiritual resting place for those who played a part in the freedom and liberation of South Africa. Inclusive of all faiths and religions, it invites South Africans to celebrate their shared spirituality and heritage. It symbolises the spirituality of the continent. The concept of “umsamo”³⁹⁴ inspired Isivivane.

To infuse Isivivane with a sense of sanctity, representatives from various religions and beliefs performed the necessary rites and rituals to ensure a spiritual haven which all South Africans can call their own. As a sign of respect, we ask that all visitors remove their shoes when entering Isivivane. This tradition of removing shoes when entering a spiritual space is also drawn from our continent's spirituality, where individuals would remove their shoes and cleanse their hands before entering the umsamo.³⁹⁵

Isivivane (pyramid, literally “throw your stone upon the pile) holds four key components namely Lesaka, the boulders, Lekgotla (public meeting, community council or traditional law court), water and trees.

Lesaka (kraal) and eleven stone boulders circling the holy place. The boulders provided by the nine provinces, with two boulders representing the Government and international community positioned in a circular shape provide a resting place

³⁹⁴ Umsamo. A traditional spiritual space in every household. Available at: https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html

³⁹⁵ Isivivane. (IsiZulu and IsiXhosa). Available at: https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html

of the spirits of the heroes of the liberation struggle. A special ceremony invited the spirits of their commemorative holy place:

This occurred through performing Cleansing and Healing and Return of Spirits ceremonies in areas of conflict nationally, continentally and internationally. As part of the Return of Spirits ceremonies, soil from areas where conflicts occurred was also brought to the Lesaka as part of the process of laying the spirits to rest.³⁹⁶



Figure 38: Freedom Park, Lesaka with boulder stones.³⁹⁷



Figure 39: Freedom Park Interfaith celebration at Lesaka³⁹⁸

³⁹⁶ Freedom Park. A heritage destination. Available at: https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#

³⁹⁷ Lesaka and Boulders. Available at: <https://www.visitshwane.co.za/gallery/gallery-freedom-park/>

³⁹⁸ Freedom Day Interfaith Prayer. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/pics-freedom-day-celebrations-1850726>

The Lekgota, a semi-circle surrounding a Umlahlankose tree (Buffalo thorn) in represent the African political tradition of meetings and village assemblies. Water is significant in cleansing and healing.

Water points have been stationed at both Isivivane's exits so that visitors can wash their hands when leaving. Various communities in Africa practice this tradition as a sign of leaving a sacred area.³⁹⁹

The Isivivane (pyramid) surrounds by Umlahlankosi trees donated by the nine provinces.

Traditionally, the branches of these trees were used as a medium to transport the spirits of the departed from the gravesite or place of death to the home of the deceased. These trees symbolize one of the mediums through which the spirits of South Africa's fallen heroes and heroines have been brought to Isivivane.⁴⁰⁰

6.5.3 Freemason Lodge De Goede Hoop

In 1772 the Masonic Order established its first lodge in the Cape under a warrant obtained from the Grand Lodge National of the Netherlands. The Temple was consecrated on July 7, 1803 by Advocate J.H. de Mist, Commissioner of the Cape, who was also Deputy Grand Master National of the Netherlands.

A banqueting hall was added next to the Lodge During the 1840's. This housed Cape Parliament made use of the building between 1854 and 1884 whilst the present House of Assembly was completed. This helps illustrate the close relationship between the South African Government and Freemasonry.

In February 1892 the Lodge, together with its banqueting hall, was gutted by fire. The building was rebuilt, and was consecrated in April 1893, while its banqueting

³⁹⁹ Waterpoints at Isivivane circle. Available at: https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#

⁴⁰⁰ Umlahlankosi (IsiZulu) at Isivivane circle. Available at: https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#

hall was converted to a theatre and was used as such until 1916 when it was acquired by the Government. It was declared a National Monument on September 6, 1968.⁴⁰¹



Figure 40: The entrance of the De Goede Hoop Freemason Temple⁴⁰²



Figure 41: Interior of the Temple. View from the West.⁴⁰³

⁴⁰¹ SAHO South African History Online. Lodge de Goede Hoop, Stal Square, Cape Town. Available at: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/place/lodge-de-goede-hoop-stal-square-cape-town>

⁴⁰²The Grand Lodge of South Africa. De Goede Hoop Temple – Cape Town. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/811/de-goede-hoop-temple-cape-town/>

⁴⁰³ The Grand Lodge of South Africa. De Goede Hoop Temple – Cape Town. Available at: <https://www.grandlodge.co.za/811/de-goede-hoop-temple-cape-town/>

6.5.4 Dutch Reform Church Building Architecture



Figure 42: Groote Church Pulpit.⁴⁰⁴



Figure 43: Groote Church ⁴⁰⁵

⁴⁰⁴ The Groote Kerk pulpit. Available at: <http://capetownhistory.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/09/Pulpit-NG-s.jpg>

⁴⁰⁵ Groote Kerk at Adderley Street. Available at: <http://www.cape-town.photos/image/4833-groote-kerk-at-adderley-street/>



Figure 44: Ds. Fleck (1781-1820) Freemason sign with hand on heart chakra and hand on table⁴⁰⁶



Figure 45: Ds. Van der Spuy, first minister born in South Africa. He did not come from Europe. (Groote Kerk 1746-1753). His grave is behind NG Moedergemeente in Stellenbosch. Triangle, two everlastings flames. Sun worship sign with right hand and left hand on book.⁴⁰⁷

⁴⁰⁶ You Tube.com (January 3, 2012) *Die vals Priesterdom: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (deel2)* Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FyvHF84A2VQ>

⁴⁰⁷ You Tube.com (January 3, 2012) *Die vals Priesterdom: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (deel2)* Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FyvHF84A2VQ>

6.6 Political Parties and Organisations with Religious Orientated Manifesto's

48 Political Parties participated in the 2019 National and Provincial election.⁴⁰⁸

The following 4 has a specific religious affiliation:

	Political Party Name		Religious affiliation	Total Votes	% Votes	No of Seats
1	Freedom Front +	FF+	Christian	414 864	2.38%	10
2	African Christian Democratic Party	ACDP	Christian	146 262	0.84%	4
3	African Transformation Movement	ATM	Christian SA Council of Messianic Churches	76 830	0.44%	2
4	Al Jama-ah		Islamic	31 468	0.18%	1
Total received				669 424	3.84%	17
Total election result				17 437 379	66.15%	400

Table 10: Religious Political Parties

A total of fourteen political parties are represented in Parliament. The list above indicates four of the fourteen parties are affiliated to a specific religion, three affiliated to Christianity and one to Islam.

The following list reflect political parties and organisations with possible religious affiliation registered with the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC). These

⁴⁰⁸ Political Parties (2019 Election) Available at: <https://www.elections.org.za/NPEDashboard/app/dashboard.html>

parties have no representation in Parliament. The possible religious affiliation is a conclusion based in the interpretation of their name, logo, or slogan. Manifestos were not available for several listed organisations.

- Aboriginal Khoisan. (A.K.S.) (Indigenous religion)
- African Muslim Party (AMP) (Muslim)
- African Christian Alliance-Afrikaner Christen Alliansie (ACA) (Christen) *
- African Community & Faith Party (ACF) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- African Covenant (ACO) (Christen) *
- African Nazareth Democratic Movement (ANDM)⁴⁰⁹ aligned with the Shembe Nazareth Church (Christian) *
- African Cristian Alliance (Christen) *
- African Transformation Movement (ATM)⁴¹⁰ (Variety of religious groups)
- Afrikaanse Kleurling Bewustheid Party (AKBP) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Afrikaanse Republiekeinse Party (ARP) (Christian) *
- Afrikaner Eenheidsbeweging (AEB) (Christian) *
- Afrikaner Selfbeskikking Party (AFRSP) (Christian) *
- All things are possible (ATAP) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Alliance for Democracy and Prosperity (ADP) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Boerestaat Party (BP)⁴¹¹(Christian) *
- Christelike Unie (CU) (Christian) *
- Christen Party/Christian Party (CP) (Christian) *

⁴⁰⁹ African Nazareth Democratic Movement (ANDM). (May 14, 2008). *Shembe move into politics*. Aligned with the Shembe Nazareth Church, aligned with the Shembe Nazareth Church, was originally formed in 2003 by members of the Nazareth Baptist Church (Shembe). Now it has decided to open its membership to all Christians. Sowetan Live. Available at: <https://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/2008-05-14-shembe-move-into-politics/>

⁴¹⁰ African Transformation Movement (ATM) is a South African political party formed to transform South Africa to a better society that upholds and lives by the values of Peace, Ubuntu, Transformation, Servant Leadership, and Accountability. ATM is the coming together of religious groups, kingdoms, ordinary citizens of this beautiful country. Available at: <https://www.atmovement.org/>

⁴¹¹ Boerestaat Party. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/Boerestaat-Party-858737494186070/>

- Christen Protestante Party van Suider Afrika (CPP) (Christian) *
- Christian Ambassadors Political Party (CAPP) (Christian) *
- Christian Champion Party (CCP) (Christian) *
- Christian Democratic Alliance (CDA) (Christian) *
- Christian Democratic Party (CDP) (Christian) *
- Christian Democrats (CD) (Christian) *
- Christian Front (CF) (Christian) *
- Christian Political Movement (CPM) (Christian) *
- Christians of South Africa (COSA) (Christian) *
- Coloured Voice (CV) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Eenheid Boere Stabiliteit (EBS) (Christian) *
- Gay and Lesbian Alliance (GLA)
- Gay, Lesbian and Handicapped Congress (GLHC)
- God's People's Party (GPP) (Christian) *
- Independent Christian Congress (ICC) (Christian) *
- Indigenous Democratic Revolution (IDR) (Indigenous religion)
- Insindiso Salvation Christian Voice Organisation (ISCVO) (Christian) *
- Khoisan Aboriginal and Others Movement (KAOM) (Indigenous religion)
- Khoisan Kingdom and All People (KKAAP) (Indigenous religion)
- Khoi-San Kingdom of RSA (KKORSA) (Indigenous religion)
- Khoisan Revolution (KSR) (Indigenous religion)
- Kingdom Covenant Democratic Party (KCDP) (Christian) *
- Light of the Nation Christian Party (LNCP) (Christian) *
- Movement of God (MMG) (Christian) *
- National Communist Congress (NCC)
- National Religious Freedom Party (NRFP) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Peace and Justice Congress (PJC) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- Rising of Sons Christian Party (ROS) (Christian) *
- Sion Kingdom and Priesthood Everlasting (SKAPE) (Christian) *
- South African Communist Party (SACP)

- South African Religious Civic Organisation (SARGO) (Religious affiliation unknown)
- The South African Region of Independent Churches (SARIC) (Christian) *
- Ubuntu Party (UBUNTU) (Other: Founder and Leader Michael Telling. Main message is titled Unity Consciousness)⁴¹²
- United Christian Democratic Party (UCDP) (Christian) *

The author concluded the following after evaluating the list:

- South Africans is a deeply religious nation.
- Christianity, indicated as the largest religious group, is also portrayed in the fact that 30 organisations are probably founded on Christian principles.

6.7 Multi-party Democracy and Ancestral Veneration

The author was actively involved in voter-democracy training (in several black suburbs, especially Soweto) prior to the first general election in 1994. President FW de Klerk legalised the ANC and other political organisations in February 1990. Four years of intense political negotiations followed, including educational programmes to introduce the intricacies of a general election. Illiterate first-time voters in particular needed to be accommodated with political party logo's as the only means of party identification. The author recalls specific attention to educate the concept of 'secret ballots' and 'secret voting'. The greatest concern was the fact that nothing is secret for ancestors and they will always know who the individual voted for. The author is of the opinion that voting patterns in later elections could also have impacted by the conviction that ancestors expect loyalty to the ANC and would not look favourably on the individual who dare to divert

⁴¹² UBUNTU Liberation Movement. Available at: <http://www.ubuntuparty.org.za/p/about.html>

his/her vote. This could be a contributing factor for the unwavering support the ANC received regardless grave corruption and poor service deliveries.

The author also noted the newspaper article describing a ritual to appease the ancestors. Mr. Roelf Meyer, Minister of Constitutional Affairs. Sangomas slaughtered a goat in a ceremony to notify ancestors of the 'new peace' between black and white. The goat's gall bladder was dripped over minister Meyer's hair, and rubbed into his hands and arms. The ancestor ceremony was concluded with the drinking of traditional sorghum beer. Mr. Joshua Nxumalo is quoted in the article saying if the ceremony were not honoured, the possibility exist that Minister Meyer could have been struck by lightning.



Figure 46: Article in Volksblad Newspaper (1994) reported on the ceremony in Soweto to notify ancestors of the new era of peace between black and white South Africans.⁴¹³

⁴¹³ Volksblad. (July 21, 1994) *Vredesbloed vloei vir Roelf in Soweto*

6.8 Apartheid - A Biblical Predicament

Christianity, comprising of an estimated 84% of South Africans, hold the potential to unite a diverse and divided nation. The history of Christianity unfortunately does not reflect this potential unity.

The Dutch Reformed Church, the largest of the Calvinist Churches came to be known as the “official church” of the National Party during the apartheid era. With the conversion of black South Africans to Christianity, churches were confronted by racial separation and segregation legislations. Some black churches demanded separate congregations. In 1881, the Dutch Reformed Mission Church established a coloured church, and the NGK in Africa for black South Africans in 1910. An Indian Dutch Reformed Church was established in 1951.

Some view the white churches as custodians to protect social and cultural uniqueness, associated with Biblical principles. Critique towards apartheid in the 1970's and 80's escalated among Dutch Reformed clergy made effort to ameliorate the unbiblical principles of apartheid. Several church leaders like Reverend Beyers Naude criticized the government's policies. He transitioned from his white-only church to a black Dutch Reformed Church.

Ordinary church members were not necessarily in agreement. The South African Catholic Defence League formally condemned political interference and denounced school integration. Black Anglican Church leaders became leaders in antiapartheid movements whilst with Anglican leaders did not support political participation. The Methodist Church with primary black members participated more vigorously in the antiapartheid movement although members did not support the methods and was fearful of political scrutiny.

The South African Council of Churches (SACC) became the coordination body to coordinate religious alliances. Anglican Desmond Tutu, leader of the SACC publicly voiced opposition towards the government.

The opposing view was apparently voiced by the Christian League of Southern Africa who rallied support of the governments apartheid's policies. Members consisted of the Dutch Reformed and other churches who argued Biblical support for apartheid policies.⁴¹⁴ The author could not verify this information.

F.W.C. Naser⁴¹⁵ presented an argument to legitimise Apartheid with biblical evidence. The author included a short reference to his viewpoint to illustrate the spiritual foundation for his dogma and political viewpoint. The author evaluated his viewpoint as fundamentally wrong and a misinterpretation of the Biblical truth. He argued as follows:

- The Jews rejected (From the tribes of Jude and Benjamin) Jesus whereupon God rejected them and accommodated Israel (the southern ten tribes). Jews are descendants for Jude and Benjamin.
- The Western civilizations (white people) are descendants from Israel.
- These descendants are 'God's people', also called Israel.
- Skin colour is a result of sin.
- All people are not created equal
- Christianity is found among the 'white' nations and never in black or 'yellow' nations.
- God disapproves of intercultural marriages.
- Noah's flood was sent by God as a result of mixed relationships between the righteous Seth and the unrighteous Cain – the father of the dark-skinned nations.

6.9 The Phenomena of Praise Singers

A tradition African cultural practice has been included in the State of the Nation

⁴¹⁴ Religion and Apartheid. Available at: <http://countrystudies.us/south-africa/53.htm>

⁴¹⁵ Naser F.W.C. (1973) *Apartheid Wat Sê die Skrif?* Vereeniging: F.W.C. Naser

Address (Sona) since the birth of democracy is *Imbongi*, the praise singer. He or she is considered as a scene-setter and has become the mainstay of successive State of the Nation Addresses. Although our Parliament is based on the Westminster tradition, *Imbongi* has guaranteed that the Sona is an African event in an African Parliament. The praise singing gives 'Africanness' pride in the prominence of the acknowledgement.

Tim Modise⁴¹⁶ described the phenomena as follows:

A man in traditional attire reciting traditional poetry before a king or president or other dignitary. PS has been part of Africa folk law for centuries and has been used to share history from one generation to the other.

Jessica Mpangeni,⁴¹⁷ world renowned praise singer and artist added the following: Praise singing is recognised as genre of poetry. It is performed at any celebration, from official state to weddings or family gathering. It is associated with story-telling genre. The artist has to have a profound message relevant for the time. Praise singers educate and release a prophetic word revealing things to come. They inspire artist and creativity.

Praise poetry is deeply rooted in African culture and is practised to praise the character of kings and chiefs as well as to call upon and give thanks to past kings.

During the 2019 SONA (State of the Nation) address, President Cyril Ramaphosa allowed the Bradley Sitter to introduce him in this traditional, but unbiblical and therefore ungodly manner.

Bradley Van Sitters⁴¹⁸ is a praise artist and an Assistant Linguistic Lecturer at UCT. He is a member of the Aboriginal/Xarra Restorative Justice Forums'

⁴¹⁶ You Tube.com (August 12, 2016) Tonight, with Tim Modise/Jessica Mpangeni – African Praise singer. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4ZmPEf0E4dU>

⁴¹⁷ You Tube.com (August 12, 2016) Tonight, with Tim Modise/Jessica Mpangeni – African Praise singer. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4ZmPEf0E4dU>

⁴¹⁸ Cele, Sam (June 25, 2019) Available at: <https://www.ecr.co.za/shows/partycentral-mike-vee/khoisan-praise-singer-on-how-it-felt-to-usher-the-president-in-at-sona-2019/> Khoisan praise singer on how it felt to usher the President in at SONA 2019

language commission at UCT. He co-facilitates the Khoekhoegowab language course and has taught weekend classes in communities across the city. The actual audio-visual recording is available on YouTube.⁴¹⁹ Khoekhoegowab was the original language spoken by the first inhabitants of the Cape and is the most populous and widespread of the Khoisan languages. Today, there are 200 speakers of language in the Northern and Western Cape, 150 000 speakers in Namibia and only 200 in Botswana, according to the Western Cape cultural affairs department.



Figure 47: Bradly Sitter, Khoisan Praise singer at the 2019 SONA (State of the Nation Address)⁴²⁰

The translation of the praise introduction is as follows:⁴²¹

⁴¹⁹ Khoisan praise singer makes history at SONA. Available at: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CGgvO-NCFns>

⁴²⁰ News24. (June 25, 2019) Watch: People expected too much of me – Khoisan praise singer. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/watch-people-expected-too-much-of-me-khoisan-praise-singer-20190624>

⁴²¹ Etheridge Jenna (June 21, 2019) *South Africa: Here's What Khoisan Praise Singer Said At SONA*. Available at: <https://allafrica.com/stories/201906210078.html> and News24 (June 25, 2019) Watch: People

"At some point, I left my body and was literally watching myself."

**Language of our fore-parents,
Language of my mother,
My language.**

Welcome to //Hui!Gaeb (Cape Town)

Our leader, welcome.

Creator bless the words of this leader so it can strengthen us. Let the name of the Creator Tsui//Goatse be lifted high.

We honour, we are in praise and we are thankful that the Creator carried us through the day. Please guard over us during the night.

Creator help us to unite for our heritage.

Creator bless our coming in and bless our going out. Bless everything that is said and bless everything that is heard. Bless us in our journey to inherit the Kingdom of the Heavens.

Bless us all.

Van Sitters called out the names of important people in his culture, such as Krotoa⁴²².

If allowed, he would have preferred to burn imphepho (traditional incense). "[Ramaphosa] allowing for the first time for the language to be heard at SONA, that says a lot. The mood shifted in the place. I could feel there was definitely ancestral workings happening there. People felt touched. It was powerful."⁴²³

Buzetsheni Mdletshe⁴²⁴ is the official praise singer of Zulu monarch King Goodwill Zwelithini, a since 2001.

"The praise names of the old kings never change. You always introduce the king with the praise names of the kings who once sat on his throne,"

expected too much of me - Khoisan Praise singer. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/watch-people-expected-too-much-of-me-khoisan-praise-singer-20190624>

⁴²² Krotoa. A young Khoi girl adopted by Jan and Marian van Riebeeck. Krotoa (known as Eva to the Dutch and English settlers) was the niece of Autshumao, a Khoi leader and interpreter to the Dutch. He was known as Harry or Herry first by the English and then by the Dutch). In 1662 Krotoa became the first indigenous Southern African to be baptised a Christian. Krotoa (Eva) worked as a servant for Maria van Riebeeck. Krotoa established herself as interpreter and negotiator between the Dutch and the Khoi-khoi. Available at: Krotoa (Eva) <https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/krotoa-eva>

⁴²³ News24 (June 25, 2019) Watch: People expected too mc of me – Khoisan praise singer. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/watch-people-expected-too-much-of-me-khoisan-praise-singer-20190624>

⁴²⁴ Sunday Times (October 15, 2018) Bhengu, Lwandile. *When the spirits move him: Meet the Zulu king's praise singer*. Available at: <https://select.timeslive.co.za/news/2018-10-15-when-the-spirits-move-him-meet-the-zulu-kings-praise-singer/>

“Once he is done speaking, you can then sit him down with his own praises and could also add something about what you saw during the journey,” he added. When I sing the praises it’s like a sangoma who is entered by the spirit of ancestors. A spirit needs to enter you. Anyone can read the praises in books, but you need to have that gift that is given to you by the spirits that guide your praises,”

6.10 ANC’s Discourse on Religion

Gerald West investigated the discourse of religion within the ANC, with special reference to Thabo Mbeki Biblical referrals in his 2006 Nelson Mandela Lecture and the ANC’s National Conference in 2007.

6.10.1 Nelson Mandela Lecture 2006

In President Mbeki oral rendition, he referred to:

- Religion as the primary resource to build the South Africa’s New Jerusalem
- The Book of Proverbs in the Holy Bible’s precedence over elements of the notion of ‘ubuntu’.
- Guidance in Proverbs in South Africa’s relations with neighbouring countries: “not to devise evil”.
- Proverbs 6:6-11⁴²⁵, Genesis 3:19⁴²⁶, John 1:1⁴²⁷, and Matthew 4:4⁴²⁸.
- The transformation of the economic RDP (Reconstruction and

⁴²⁵ Proverbs 6:6-11 (NKJV) Go to the ant, you sluggard! Consider her ways and be wise, Which, having no captain, Overseer or ruler, Provides her supplies in the summer, *And* gathers her food in the harvest. How long will you slumber, O sluggard? When will you rise from your sleep? A little sleep, a little slumber, A little folding of the hands to sleep— So shall your poverty come on you like a prowler, And your need like an armed man.

⁴²⁶ Genesis 3:19 (NKJV) In the sweat of your face you shall eat bread Till you return to the ground, For out of it you were taken; For dust you *are*, And to dust you shall return.”

⁴²⁷ John 1:1 (NKJV) In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

⁴²⁸ Matthew 4:4 (NKJV) But He answered and said, “It is written, ‘Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God.’ ”

Development Programme) to a moral RDP of the soul – with the intention to improve the human condition accommodating of a spiritual dimension.

- John 1:1 (In the beginning was the Word) in association with “Man must eat before he can think” (Marx) and “I think, therefore I am” (Descartes). The Bible acknowledges the combined need for bread and soul, body and mind/Word.

“We must therefore say that the Biblical injunction is surely correct, that “Man cannot live by bread alone” (Matthew 4:4) and therefore that the mere pursuit of individual wealth can never satisfy the need immanent in all human being to lead lives of happiness”

-President Thabo Mbeki⁴²⁹

With this speech, Mbeki returns religion to the public realm, but it is not the ‘prophetic’ form of religion envisaged by the Kairos Document of the 1980’s, a form of religion that engages the political and economic dimensions of society. Instead, Mbeki embraces a form of Evangelical Christianity, that the Kairos Document referred to as “Church Theology” (Kairos Theologians 1986), in which the focus of religion is the realm of morality, narrowly construed as personal morality.

-Gerald West⁴³⁰

6.10.2 ANC 52nd National Conference Polokwane 2007

Thabo Mbeki’s speech initiated the ANC’s discussion document on religion, prepared by the ANC Commission of Religious Affairs, titled “*RDP of the Soul*”. The discussion document was tabled at the Polokwane National Conference (December 2007). **“The conference prompted the new era in the ANC’s**

⁴²⁹ West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 46. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

⁴³⁰ West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 47. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

⁴³⁰ Van Wyk, Ilana (May 2019) *Jacob Zuma’s shamelessness: Conspicuous Consumption, Politics and Religion*. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/332900762_JACOB_ZUMA'S_SHAMELESSNESS_CONSPICUOUS_CONSUMPTION_POLITICS_AND_RELIGION

deployment of religion in the public domain.”⁴³¹ Concepts included:

- Morality included individual responsibility as well as systems – especially economic system.
- Any one religion should not be dominating others.
- Fundamentalist forms of Christianity demonised Islam and in the process harmed Christianity as well.
- Western oppressive values are not accommodating enough of ‘ubuntu’ principles.
- Commonalities that characterise ‘prophetic’ religion across various traditions.
- Encouraging South Africans to continue with the ‘new’ struggle to evolve a new society through compassion, cooperation, and commitment. This needs to include an economy that release spiritual values into secular life.

West summarised the underlying message in “**that and RDP of the soul is necessary because of the damage inflicted historically, intuitionally, and physically by western forms of knowledge and practice.**”⁴³²

The document concludes by stating:

The ANC is not a religious organisation, it fully supports the Constitutional policy of freedom of religion, it has no policy of interference with those whose religious policies are not its own. But the ANC has a major responsibility to spell out the dangers when people promote organisations which are opposed to the spiritual or material development of our people, whatever religious credentials they may claim. The ANC is deeply involved in South Africa’s struggle to renew and develop her soul.⁴³³

⁴³¹ West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 48 Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

⁴³² West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 50. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

⁴³³ West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 50 Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

6.10.3 President Jacob Zuma Ordained as Honorary Neo Pentecostal Minister

President Jacob Zuma presented himself as a religious man – a Christian aligned to the Pentecostal movement.

His robust applications of the Bible were widely criticised. One such comparison was with reference to himself and the newly established COPE Party: he implicitly associated himself with Jesus and COPE with the donkey referring to the narrative of Jesus entering Jerusalem. Zuma said “the people were waiting for the Son of Man (Zuma/ANC) who was on the donkey (COPE). The donkey mistakenly thought the people were cheering him.

President Zuma's remarks during a visit to the Rhema Church in 2009 also deserve some comments. Zuma -

- Confirmed the ANC's commitment to religious freedom.
- Reminded the congregation that the ANC roots is found in Christianity: ***“The ANC practically derived its moral vision from the church amongst other sources”***
- Referring to Exodus 3, he compared the Exodus from Egypt with the liberation struggle of the church. Moses and Aaron inspired many and confirmed God's allegiance to the poor and suppressed.
- Zuma motivated greater collaboration with faith-based organisations” in the areas of health, education, rural development, the fight against crime, the creation of jobs, and the strengthening of democracy.
- He concluded with a confirmation of the ANC's (and his) conviction of the power of prayer and urged the congregation to pray for peaceful elections.

On March 24, 2009, President Zuma visited the KwaZulu Natal Progressive Professional Forum where he stated:

You would have seen us visiting various churches and meeting with religious groupings. We are doing this to deepen partnerships with interfaith forums to promote social education for moral regeneration, religious tolerance, social cohesion and development.

The fact that President Zuma accepted an invitation to the Easter service of the International Pentecost Church might reflect his personal conviction – according to West.⁴³⁴ He is also of the opinion that vocabulary such as the reference to the Holy Spirit as “The Comforter”, and ‘I feel blessed’ demonstrate some familiarity with this form of Christianity.

Van Wyk⁴³⁵ discussed the continuous media reports pertaining to South Africa’s ex-President Jacob Zuma’s-

debt, his sexual appetites, the financial burden of four (current) wives and 22 children accustomed to the high live (Sowetan Live 2016), and the family’s tastes in expensive cars (Van Onselen 2012a). The media has also been fascinated by the presidential family’s ‘big fat’ weddings and the close ties that Zuma has with the (extravagant) Swazi and Zulu royal houses (Huigen 2017). Apart from his private extravagances, the ex-president was also profligate with the public purse while in office.

- Regardless the above, the author find it astonishing that the independent charismatic Ntuzuma Full Gospel Community church north of Durban ordained Jacob Zuma as honorary pastor in May 2007.⁴³⁶ At the time he was vice president to President Thabo Mbeki.
- The South African public is familiar with Zuma’s boasting about God and his statements of God’s divine support.
- In the run-up to the April 2009 general elections, Zuma visited several Neo Pentecostal Churches, including Rhema Bible Church.

⁴³⁴ West, G. (2010). *Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 57. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>

⁴³⁵ Van Wyk, Ilana (May 2019) *Jacob Zuma’s shamelessness: Conspicuous Consumption, Politics and Religion*. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/332900762_JACOB_ZUMA’S_SHAMELESSNESS_CONSPICUOUS_CONSUMPTION_POLITICS_AND_RELIGION

⁴³⁶ Makhaye, Chris (May 6, 2007) *Church lauds Zuma as honorary pastor*. IOL. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/church-lauds-zuma-as-honorary-pastor-351656>

- Zuma applied the analogy of Moses' inspired leadership and the prosperous result for those led by Moses to the land of milk and honey.
- Zuma also attended South Africa's largest church (ZCC). From the pulpit Zuma used Biblical verses to make veiled swipes at his enemies.
- Regardless of deteriorating support at support at public meetings such as Mandela's funeral rally, Bishop Pires blessed Zuma at a packed Ellispark stadium.
- Zuma called on Christians to pray creating a sense of sincerity and trustworthiness.



Figure 48: The picture of President Zuma is taken in court. Regardless ordainment as a honorary neo-Pentecostal minister, he amalgamates Christianity and the veneration of forefathers.⁴³⁷

⁴³⁷ Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) *Like father, like son ...*

6.10.4 Christian Support for the ANC

The question can duly be asked: “Why do a corrupt ANC Government continually retain support if 84.2% of South Africans belong to the Christian faith? The majority support for a corrupt ANC government is retained from Christians. This could constrain a spiritual crisis. South Africans cast their votes in full knowledge of the corruption of leaders, poor service delivery resulting in increasing poor living conditions. According to Graig Bailie⁴³⁸ the disjuncture suggests a failure of professing Christians to exercise their faith according to Biblical principles in matters of politics. He provided the following reasons for this phenomenon:

- The ANC is regarded as the instrument that ended Apartheid. Potsho Pilane⁴³⁹ is of the opinion that South Africans regard the ANC as their ‘saviour’ who will rescue them from poverty in the same manner as they were rescued from Apartheid.
- ANC leaders, Zuma in particular, portray themselves as ‘chosen by God’ and best suited to serve as God’s conduit to the vulnerable.
- Public support of Zuma by leaders of large congregations affirmed Zuma’s religious claims.

Barbara Bomanie⁴⁴⁰ argued that politics has always been incorporated in African Independent Churches:

A holistic interpretation of African Christianity that treats politics, like other aspects of the realities of religious communities, as integral to religious discourse. Politics is not now, nor was it during the apartheid era, divorced from the religious sphere in the everyday lives of church members. Local

⁴³⁸ News 24. (April 2, 2019) Bailie, Craig. Christianity and politics: Has the South African Church negated its responsibility. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/columnists/guestcolumn/christianity-and-politics-has-the-church-negated-its-responsibility-20190402>

⁴³⁹ News 24. (April 2, 2019) Bailie, Craig. Christianity and politics: Has the South African Church negated its responsibility. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/news24/columnists/guestcolumn/christianity-and-politics-has-the-church-negated-its-responsibility-20190402>

⁴⁴⁰ Bompani, B. (2008). *African Independent Churches in Post-Apartheid South Africa: New Political Interpretations*. Journal of Southern African Studies, 34(3), 665-677. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40283174>

religious communities vitally sustain broadly held popular expectations of obtaining the as yet unrealised benefits of social justice and full citizenship that were the promise of the liberation struggle. Space is thereby opened up to move beyond seeing politics exclusively in terms of direct opposition to or support for government policies and institutions, and to register the political nature of activities such as Sunday worship, group Bible study, and weekday evening prayer meetings.

6.10.5 President Cyril Ramaphosa Ancestral Guidance

The author found it unnecessary to expand on the 2018 ‘The Mercury’ report – it is self-explanatory. The only comment worthy is the fact that God called the President to return to Him. If this article should be the only criteria of evaluation, it would be surmised that the President did not adhere to God’s call:

ANC President Cyril Ramaphosa yesterday described the governing party as having been “Down and out” and requiring ancestral intervention. He was explaining the decision by the ANC Top 6 national officials in their first meeting to visit the graves of the party’s former presidents and other key leaders. ANC leaders are scheduled to visit Nelson Mandela’s grave in Qunu “to draw wisdom”.⁴⁴¹

6.11 Islam in South African Politics

Three socio-political events – one on the international and two on the national level – played a central role with regard to the politicisation of the Muslim organisations: the Islamic revolution in Iran in 1979 and the implementation of the tri-cameral parliament in 1983 with elections of 1984 and the subsequent formation of the United Democratic Front (UDF), a nation-wide umbrella body for both religious and secular groups and organisations engaged in the anti-apartheid struggle. This parliament provided three separate houses for whites,

⁴⁴¹ The Mercury (January 10, 2018) Sidimba, Loyiso and Feketha, Siviwe. Top six look to ancestors for guidance. Available at: <https://www.pressreader.com/south-africa/the-mercury-south-africa/20180110/281586650993316>

“coloureds” and “Indians”, the black population was entirely excluded. Muslims – being classified either as “Indians” or as “coloured” according to apartheid ideology – were obliged to take a decision, i.e. either to participate in the elections or to boycott them. However, boycotting the tri-cameral parliament was not necessarily equivalent with affiliation to the UDF. The topic of whether or not to ally with other opposition groups and to pursue a purely Islamic fight created a lot of controversies and deepened the fragmentations within the Muslim organisations.⁴⁴²

6.12 Witchcraft in Politics



Figure 49: With the aim of intimidating the mayor of Saldanha Bay, the head of a sheep, dead birds, and a living Tortoise with a red ribbon around his neck were placed on the porch of the Mayors house. These items were meticulously chosen.⁴⁴³

⁴⁴² Günther, Ursula (July 19, 2018) *Islam in South Africa: Muslims' Contribution to the South African Transition process and the Challenges of Contextual Readings of Islam*. AL Mesbar Studies & Research Center. Available at: <https://mesbar.org/islam-in-south-africa-muslims-contribution-to-the-south-african-transition-process-and-the-challenges-of-contextual-readings-of-islam/>

⁴⁴³ Beeld. (August 23, 2016) Feliz, Jason. *Burgermeester kry gru-vonds in bebloede laken*.

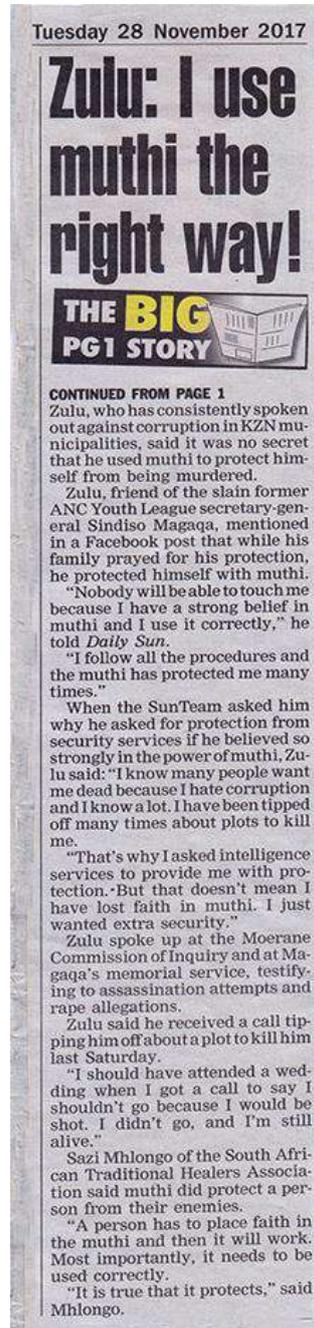


Figure 50: ANC Your leader and anti-corruption activist relied on muti 'to protect himself from being murdered'. The author also noted the multi spirituality in one family when the article stated that his family prays for this protection whilst he has a strong belief in the correct use of muti.⁴⁴⁴

⁴⁴⁴ Daily Sun. (November 28, 2017) *My muthi stops killers!*

7. SPIRITUALITY IN THE ECONOMIC SOCIETY

7.1 Economic Impact of the Marikana Disaster

Marikana Platinum mine labour strike originated from personal financial grievances with regards to remuneration disputes. The strike escalated to a National disaster. The South African government proposal of R450 000 compensation for the widows of the 34 miners is challenged by a claim of R2m per family.⁴⁴⁵ Negotiations are not finalised. Chapter Two presented evidence with regards to the faith the mine workers placed in the muti provided by a sangoma. It is the authors opinion that the muti sadly failed to protect them. It did however grant them a false sense of being untouchable and from this stance they became more militant and aggressive.

In addition to the compensation to the families, the media reported on the possible additional national economic impact.

GDP fell 0,6% in the first quarter compared with the final three months of last year, when it expanded 3,8%. Mining production output slumped 24,7%, the biggest quarterly drop since the second quarter of 1967. The strike also hurt output in manufacturing, which makes up about 15% of the economy locally and about 40% of global production of the precious metal, which is used for catalytic converters in vehicles and is a key source of hard currency for South Africa. Industries such as petroleum, basic chemicals and iron ore were also directly affected.

-Saijil Singh, lead analyst. Coface Trade Credit Insurance⁴⁴⁶

Government also took steps to reassure foreign investors that the shooting was an unfortunate but isolated incident Regardless of the outcome of the Farlam Commission, these events have been regarded as a turning point for industrial relations in South Africa. Immediate reactions to the strike have

⁴⁴⁵ IOL (August 16, 2019) Sidimba, Loyiso. *Seven years and still no justice for the Marikana families.* Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/seven-years-and-still-no-justice-for-marikana-families-30855183>

⁴⁴⁶ Singh, Saijil (July 18, 2014) *Effects of the Mining Strike on the South African Economy.* Mining Review South Africa. Available at: <https://www.miningreview.com/industry-insight/effects-of-the-mining-strikes-on-the-south-african-economy/>

included suggestions of the need for mass retrenchments, closure of shafts and more mechanisation.

-LEXOLOGY⁴⁴⁷

7.2 South Africa's Healthcare Contribution to the GDP

South Africa implement a two-tiered healthcare system including the public health care system and the private health care system. The healthcare industry absorbs 9% of the GDP in 2017. This is 4% higher than the WHO's recommended spending in the socioeconomic status⁴⁴⁸ and a 16% increase from 2016.⁴⁴⁹ South Africa is the largest economy in Africa and budgeted R200 billion on national and provincial health programmes in 2018/19.⁴⁵⁰

7.2.1 Prayer and Fasting for South Africa

In an interview Pastor Beatrice Kavui Kawatu recounted how Christian communities in Zambia regularly include South Africa in organised days of fasting and prayer motivated by their reliance on South Africa for (western) medical treatment.

⁴⁴⁷ Cavvadas, Dimitri (Fasken) (December 27, 2012) *Marikana – the causes and wider implications and lessons for the mining industry in Africa*. Lexology. Available at: <https://www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx?g=cb5d7b8e-e10c-45e8-b92f-89bc031ee5cc>

⁴⁴⁸ South Africa Healthcare, Market Overview. Africa Health Industry Insights. Available at: https://www.africahealthexhibition.com/content/dam/Informa/africahealthexhibition/en/2020/pdf/AFH19_Industry_Insights-SA_MARKET_REPORT.pdf

⁴⁴⁹ Macrotrends. South Africa Healthcare Spending 2000-2020. Available at: <https://www.macrotrends.net/countries/ZAF/south-africa/healthcare-spending>

⁴⁵⁰ UNICEF 2018/19 Health Budget Brief South Africa. Available at: <https://www.unicef.org/esa/sites/unicef.org.esa/files/2019-03/UNICEF-South-Africa-2018-Health-Budget-Brief.pdf>

7.2.2 Traditional Medicine Accommodated in Western Medical Practices Pharmaceutical Retail

This Traditional medicine entered the Western Pharmaceutical industry in availing products in the western pharmaceutical industry. It is also particular interesting to note that the photos were taken in the Eastern suburbs of Pretoria.

- It provided evidence to the spiritual Integration of previous ‘white’ suburbs
- Traditional medicine is not restricted to rural areas which could be argued to be more illiterate. City dwellers in the East of Pretoria are assumable literate with professional careers.



Figure 51: African Traditional medicine in Pretoria East pharmacy.⁴⁵¹

7.2.3 Traditional Medicine Incorporated in Social Media

All aspects of social media are incorporated in the marketing and consultation services in the industry.

⁴⁵¹ Author's own pictures.

1	Westford Leprosy Hospital	Leprosy hospital	West of Church Square
2	Kalafong Hospital	Hospital	West of Church Square
3	Laudium Hindu Temple	Religion Pagan	West of Church Square
4	Jewel Islam Mosque	Religion Pagan	West of Church Square
5	Valhalla	War	West of Church Square
6	Fountains Southern Entrance to Pretoria	Water	South of Church Square
7	Voortrekker Monument	Afrikaner monument/ Shrine	South of Church Square
8	Fort Klapperkop	War	South of Church Square
9	Fountains Valley Catholic Convent	Religion	South of Church Square
10	Correctional Services (Prison)	Prison	South of Church Square
11	Freedom Park	Political Pagan Rituals	South of Church Square
12	SAPS Training College	Law	West of Church Square
13	Weskoppies Psychiatric hospital	Hospital	West of Church Square
14	Marieamman Hindu Temple	Religion Pagan	West of Church Square
15	Heroes Acre Cemetery	Cemetery. War. Grave plundering happens frequently	West of Church Square
16	Union Buildings	Political. Government Administrative headquarters	North of Church Square
17	Cemetery	Cemetery	West of Church Square
18	Wonderboom	1 "Magic Tree" Superstition	North of Church Square

Table 11: Pretoria points of entrance

The author noted the following:

The establishment of Pretoria had Church Square as the centre of town.

The Southern “gate” accommodates natural water fountains and several war related museums as well as the Military Headquarters and prison.

The Northern “gate” accommodates the “magic Wonderboom tree” and the Political headquarters at the Union Buildings.

The Eastern “gate” also accommodates natural water fountains. (N4)

What the author found most interesting is the Western “gate”. Several ‘establishments’ associated with death and sickness are located west of Church Square, including several cemeteries, hospitals (Leprosy, Psychiatric and normal hospitals). The South African Police Service Training College is also found here.

The economic development and city planning of the City of Pretoria occurred to the East and not the West. Several super large shopping centres, universities and other academic and research institutions, affluent neighbourhoods, etc all developed east of original city centre at Church Square.

7.4 South Africa’s Crime Rate and the Private Security Industry Contribution to the Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

From the standpoint that only two kingdoms exist, the author concluded that the current unnatural high levels of crime, and especially violent crime (armed robberies with the intend to harm, rape, murder, etc) has an evil origin.

The precise identity of the spiritual instigators of crime, whether a spirit of racism, -anarchy, -hate, is debatable. The fact remains, the Kingdom of Light opposes the Kingdom of Darkness. The fact that South Africa is rated as the fifth most dangerous country internationally provided evidence to support the assumption

that the occurrence of crime is unnatural or supernaturally high. South Africa trails Afghanistan, Gabon, Venezuela, and Liberia.

To further rub salt in the wounds, Gallup also polled participants on how safe they feel walking alone at night. South Africa tanked this round as well, taking its place in the bottom four – tied with Venezuela – as just 29% of people would take a solo journey on foot in our country once the sun goes down.⁴⁵⁵

The monetary consequence of this pandemic, reported the following with regarding the private security and guarding industry:

- Indicated as one of the country's largest employers
- February 2020 valued the industries worth at R45 billion.⁴⁵⁶



Figure 53: Regardless, the general fear or apprehensiveness towards Sangomas, they are not excluded from crime. "Dummies" (mannequins) are placed on the premises of the Sangoma for protection. Clients also make use of smaller dolls in their vehicles to protect them from

⁴⁵⁵ The South African.com (November 23, 2020) Head, Tom. *The South African Revealed: South Africa is in the world's top five most dangerous countries*. Available at: <https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/is-south-africa-dangerous-to-visit-where-rank-worst-countries-safety/>

⁴⁵⁶ Security Focus Africa (February 24, 2020) *SA's Multi-billion Rand Guarding Industry in 2020: Following Global Trends*. Available at: <https://www.securityfocusafrica.com/2020/02/24/sas-multi-billion-rand-guarding-industry-in-2020-following-global-trends/>

accidents. Sangoma Mahlabe Zulu recognised evil spirits from whom protection are required, indicating discernment of the reality of the Kingdom of Light and Kingdom of Darkness. Ironically, her own practice also operates in the Kingdom of Darkness.⁴⁵⁷



Figure 54: Sangomas are not excluded from falling victim to crime. Their spirituality is vital in combatting crime and the pivotal in protection and retribution. ⁴⁵⁸

7.5 Halal Industry in South Africa

In contradiction to the relatively small Muslim population in South Africa, and the smallest in the world, the Halal Industry is responsible for trade and business opportunities in a variety of industries, especially the food, pharmaceutical, personal care, cosmetics, and tourism. South Africa is the leading producers of Halal products worldwide.⁴⁵⁹

Statistics (2012) indicated the value of the South African Halal industry exceeding \$2 billion in value. It comprises 25% of the African continents' GDP. The highly

⁴⁵⁷ Daily Sun (October 23, 2018) Mahopo, Zoë. *Dummies of Fear!*

⁴⁵⁸ Daily Sun (November 12, 2018) Khambule, Lethabo. *Ancestors bust thugs!*

⁴⁵⁹ IOL Online. ANA Reporter (July 26, 2019) *Growth of Halaal industry in Africa creates trade and business opportunities*. Available at: <https://www.iol.co.za/business-report/economy/growth-of-halaal-industry-in-africa-creates-trade-and-business-opportunities-29893179>

advanced Halal certification programmes are considered to be a major reason for these economic achievements.⁴⁶⁰

7.6 Spiritual Tourism

Religion-tourism mostly accommodates Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism and Baha'ism. Categories are delineated as religious tourists and religious motivated tourist. Centres of spiritual power are visited by devotees and seekers of enlightenment. This category prefers not to be called tourists, but rather pilgrims or traveller.

The connection between religion and tourism transcends geographical and sociological emphases and involves an interpretative approach seeking alternative and multiple meanings.⁴⁶¹

7.6.1 Spiritual Retreats in South Africa⁴⁶²

Several Tourism Agencies emphasise the rich variety of South Africa's tourism attractions that holds spiritual value. The Sacred Site Foundation of Southern Africa (SSFSA)⁴⁶³ defined 'sacred sites' as spaces used by people for metaphysical and cultural rituals of religion that shaped humankind's evolution. Their key objective is the promotion and protection of ancient sacred sites. Registered as a non-profit organisation they focus on Table Mountain, Western

⁴⁶⁰ Shaw Smith, Peter (July 30, 2012) South Africa: The Halal Kingdom. Available at: <https://gulfbusiness.com/south-africa-the-halal-kingdom/>

⁴⁶¹ Collins Kreiner, Noga and Wall, Geoffrey (2015) *Tourism and Religion: Spiritual Journeys and Their Consequences*. Chapter 34. Vol. 2: 689-707. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/275232525_Tourism_and_Religion_Spiritual_Journeys_and_Their_Consequences

⁴⁶² 9 Top South African Spiritual Retreats: Available at: <https://mycradock.co.za/09/9-top-south-african-spiritual-retreats/> ii) 10 top South African spiritual retreats. Available at: <https://mycradock.co.za/09/9-top-south-african-spiritual-retreats/>

⁴⁶³ Liprini, Dean. Sacred Site Foundation of South Africa. Available at: <https://sacredsitesfoundation.co.za/what-is-a-sacred-site/>

Cape, and specific sites country wide, including Namibia and Botswana. 'SacredSitesSouthAfrica' Facebook Page⁴⁶⁴ provides ample information.

Several spiritists identified 'energy centres' at Table Mountain, Three Rondawels⁴⁶⁵ in Mpumalanga, and the Magaliesberg (mountain) in the North West province to be significant.

Stone Circle Tours with Michael Tellingier as tour guide visits the ancient ruins, (the largest concentration of ancient ruins on Earth), Adam's and the Giant Footprint.

Spiritual attractions also include conjunction of ley-line. Table Mountain is believed to be one of the planets twelve most powerful ley-line- or energy centres, radiating magnetic, electric, or spiritual energy. Each of the main centres or "spinner wheels" are believed to contain special properties representing the four elements vital to the earth's wellbeing. Table Mountain is believed to be the earth wheel, producing, and sending nurturing energy and light. The air wheel is found between Egypt and Mount Olives, Lake Rorpounamu in New Zealand radiate love and the Haleakale Crated in Hawaii is believed to present muscular energy.⁴⁶⁶

Another ley-line tourist attraction is the tranquil town McGregor in the Western Cape. McGregor is supposedly one of two places in the world to lie directly on ley lines and is therefore considered a sacred site with natural energy.⁴⁶⁷

⁴⁶⁴ Sacred Site Facebook Page. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/SacredSitesSouthAfrica/>

⁴⁶⁵ Three Rondawels: Three round mountain tops with slightly pointed tops, very similar to the traditional round or oval African homestead mad with local materials called rondawel. They are also called 'Three sisters.' Available at: <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionsmpl/three-rondawels.htm>

⁴⁶⁶ The Sacred Mountain. Available at: https://www.tablemountain.net/blog/entry/the_sacred_mountain

⁴⁶⁷ About McGregor. Available at: <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/mcgregor.php>

A very popular tourist attraction in Soweto⁴⁶⁸ is the Oppenheimer Gardens,⁴⁶⁹ with the prominent Oppenheimer tower and the Credo Mutwa cultural museum. Several indigenous trees (aloes, cabbage, wild olives, coral, blumbago, honeysuckle and canary creeper) are used by local traditional healers for the ingredients of their medicines.

The Tower⁴⁷⁰, in the centre of the garden was built in honour of Sir Ernest Oppenheimer - mine magnate and major contributor to housing development in Soweto. The Tower, consisting of 49 stairs that scale its height, with bricks from demolished Soweto homes as a result of forced removals during apartheid.

Credo Mutwa is internationally recognised Zulu shaman⁴⁷¹, artist, poet, traditional healer, and diviner. He apparently predicted the Aids pandemic and the Twin Tower attacks in 2001 and the assassination of Chris Hani and the ousting of President Thabo Mbeki. His personal and political messages in captured in the cultural village with sculptures and buildings, presenting an outpouring of his creative and spiritual vision from 1974 -1986. The exhibition includes a collection of warriors, chiefs, 'tokoloshes', creations deities, and aliens inspired by African art, cosmology and culture. Khayalendaba, (the place of stories) the exotic representation of his tribal homestead, are believed to house ancestral spirits.⁴⁷²

⁴⁶⁸ Soweto, a syllabic abbreviation for South Western Township. The establishment is linked with the discovery of gold in 1885. Within 4 years, Johannesburg developed into the second largest city of South Africa. More than half the population was black, including high numbers of migrant labourers. Soweto was developed as a racial segregated residential area. Available at: https://www.soweto.co.za/html/i_overview.htm

⁴⁶⁹ Oppenheimer Gardens. Available at: <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionsga/oppenheimer-gardens.htm>. ii) Available at: About Credo Mutwa Cultural Village. Available at: <https://www.sa-venues.com/things-to-do/gauteng/credo-mutwa-cultural-village/>

⁴⁷⁰ The Biblical significance of a tower: A Tower resembles self-worship, or the love of self -which is arrogance and pride. The love of self is described by cedars, oaks, mountains, hills and towers that are high and lifted up. Available at: <http://www.biblemeanings.info/Words/Housing/Tower.htm>

⁴⁷¹ Shaman: A person believed to achieve various powers through trance or ecstatic religious experience. Available at: <https://www.britannica.com/topic/shamanism>

⁴⁷² Credo Mutwa Cultural Village. Available at: <https://www.nightjartravel.com/cultural/credo-mutwa-cultural-village>

The author could not determine the collective monetary value of tourism focussing on spirituality. To present evidence of the variety of the industry, the top retreats were listed:

- Emoyeni Retreat, Magalies Mountain: Based in Buddhist principles, seeks to foster mindfulness and 'loving kindness'.
- Blue Butterfly Retreat, Welbedacht Nature Reserve: Chanting, meditation and yoga.
- Bodhi Khaya Retreat, Gansbaai: Yoga overlooking the Atlantic Ocean.
- Satori Farm Eco Retreat, Natal: Seek to enhance connection to nature.
- Nalanda Ayurvedic Centre, Greyton: Presents short courses derived from traditional Indian Ayurvedic healing system.
- Little Samadhi Karoo Retreat, Little Karoo: Yoga Retreat
- Bijlia Cana Wilderness Retreat, Prince Albert: Holistic treatments include shiatsu and reiki, reflexology and crystal therapy to balance 'electromagnetic energy.'
- Gaia – Healing Holidays, Montague. Devoted to esoteric pursuits such as crystal healing, EFT (Emotional Freedom Technique) and Thai yoga massage.
- Hearth and Soul Eco Farm, Stanford: Yoga, walking, reading and meditation.
- Buddhist Retreat Centre: A variety of programs, courses and facilities.
- The Satyagraha House, Johannesburg: Residential home of Mohandas Gandhi.
- Temenos Retreat, McGregor: The name is derived from the Greek word for 'sacred space'.
- Cleopatra Mountain Farmhouse, Drakensberg: Khoisan rock art tours to discover their spirituality.
- Several Hindu, Jewish, Christian, Roman Catholic, and Muslim sites are regularly visited.

7.6.2 Islam Inflates the Cape Tourism Industry

The Global Muslim Travel Index (GMTI) has ranked Cape Town as one of the Top 10 international non-Muslim countries.⁴⁷³ Cape Town received a total of 81 834 tourists from the United Arab Emirates, whilst Turkey had only 9 620 and Doha 8542. A project worth \$220bn to enhance Muslim tourism was announced in 2018. The Western Cape City Management announced strategies to benefit from the Muslim tourism international projects.⁴⁷⁴

Halal Tourism South Africa⁴⁷⁵ confirmed the importance of the Muslim community in Cape Town. Muslim owned guesthouses, restaurants, and the rich Muslim history of the Cape attract tourism around the globe. Some of the attractions includes the two oldest Mosques, (Auwal Mosque, built in 1794, and the Palm Tree Mosque, established in 1807) and a number of Kramats, known collectively as the Circle of Saints or the Ring of Kramats.⁴⁷⁶

7.7 False Christianity Exploit a Dysfunctional Government

R.W. Johnson⁴⁷⁷ forensic analysis of the state of the South African nation identified a vacuum at a centre where morality, family life, and social conscience

⁴⁷³ Thompson, Andrew (June 12, 2018) Culture Trip. *Why Cape Town is high on the Bucket Lists of Muslim Travellers*. Available at: <https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/why-cape-town-is-high-on-the-bucket-lists-of-muslim-travellers/>

⁴⁷⁴ Magubane, Khulelani. (October 15, 2018) News 24: Cape Town, Western Cape to enhance multi-billion halal tourism sector. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/fin24/companies/travelandleisure/cape-town-western-cape-to-enhance-multi-billion-halaal-tourism-sector-20181015>

⁴⁷⁵ Halal Tourism Electronic Media Release. (April 14, 2019) *The World's Friendliest Muslim Destination in the World*. Available at: <https://www.halaltourism.co.za/the-worlds-friendliest-muslim-destination-in-the-world/>

⁴⁷⁶ Cape Town for the Muslim Traveller. Available at: <https://www.capetown.travel/cape-town-for-the-muslim-traveller/>

⁴⁷⁷ Johnson, R.W. (2015) *How Long Will South Africa Survive? The Looming Crisis*. London: Hurst (also: Cape Town, Jonathan Ball, 2015).

interact. He surmised that the society scarred with corruption, precarious healthcare, and widespread violence implies a spiritual crisis for South Africans.

Tenderpreneurs,⁴⁷⁸ and an inflated public sector (the average of Government expenditure on public sector in BRICS countries is 25% compared to South Africa's 40%) result in insurmountable strain on the South African economy and a great disparity between the 'have's and the 'have not's'.

Charismatic pastors and cult personalities often exploits emotionally and economic vulnerable people. Vulnerable people are often desperate for supernatural intervention. Terry Tastard⁴⁷⁹ labelled these churches as "independent and evangelical", their pastors.

Pentecostal churches become centres of power, positioned as 'self-help' centres supporting worshippers to access NGO⁴⁸⁰ assistance to overcome poor governance and aid young people unlikely to secure employment.

This vulnerability may explain the emphasis on exorcism that characterizes the new charismatic churches. In addition to the economic uncertainty, South Africa is one of the most violent societies in the world, with over 17,000 murders annually. Exorcism confronts and helps worshippers come to terms with their fears. The obvious is also true, namely that adherents are often seeking a way forward by joining with others looking for a better way of life, based on the Christian message. ⁴⁸¹

⁴⁷⁸ Tenderpreneur: A neologism in vogue South Africa. A politically well-connected individual who assist to secure tenders and services at a very prosperous commission rate. The content of the tender or services are supplied in part, or not at all, or at inflated prices. Tastard, Terry (February 28, 2017) *Christianity & Crisis in South Africa Today*. Providence: Journal of Christianity and American Foreign Policy. Available at: <https://providencemag.com/2017/02/christianity-crisis-in-south-africa-today/>

⁴⁷⁹ Tastard, Terry (February 28, 2017) *Christianity & Crisis in South Africa Today*. Providence: Journal of Christianity and American Foreign Policy. Available at: <https://providencemag.com/2017/02/christianity-crisis-in-south-africa-today/>

⁴⁸⁰ NGO. Non-Government Organisation

⁴⁸¹ Tastard, Terry (February 28, 2017) *Christianity & Crisis in South Africa Today*. Providence: Journal of Christianity and American Foreign Policy. Available at: <https://providencemag.com/2017/02/christianity-crisis-in-south-africa-today/>

7.8 Animal Sacrifices to the Ancestors Monetary Value

There are three basic tenets of a proper sacrifice. First, there must be the correctly chosen beast, secondly there must be beer brewed before the slaughter day and thirdly, there must be frankincense. It is done to remind the offspring of the errors of their ways. Health and ill health are held in a state of fine balance through this bond of friendship between the living and the dead.⁴⁸²

Most South Africans are familiar with countless goats, seemingly not belonging to specific owners roaming roads of rural communities. This is sometimes also noticeable in large townships. Kwa-Zulu Natal annually imports 300 000 goats from Namibia and Botswana, which are sold for R2000-R3000. Alcock also reported on offers from Saudi Arabia to provide one million goats annually.

To illustrate the financial implication of ancestral sacrifices, G.G. Alcock⁴⁸³ evaluated the poor community of Msinga in Kwazulu-Natal:

An estimated 70% of households owns goats: 25 840 households collectively own approximately 362 793 goats. None of these holds any commercial value as it not sold. Ceremonial sacrifices include the following: four goats for every birth, engagement, and marriage, (estimated at 1000 per month), and three goats for every death (estimated at 1200 per month). Fines for civil cases at the tribal courts are also paid in goats. In total, an estimated minimum of 24 000 goats are slaughtered annually, valued at R28 million.

This example does not calculate the slaughtering of oxen which occurs two years after the funeral of a departed family member. This ceremony (akubuyisa in Zulu) marks the transition of the departed spirit from a shadow (izithunzi) to an ancestor

⁴⁸² Jonker, Ingrid (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria. P. 23

⁴⁸³ Alcock, G.G. (2015) *KasiNomics*. Fourways: Tracey McDonald Publishers. P. 163

(amadhlozi).⁴⁸⁴ Animals are slaughtered for blood sacrifices required by the ancestors. Certain quarters of the animal are then cooked and presented for the ceremony and celebration.

The author emphasized that it is offensive to refer to departed persons as 'deceased', or 'the person who died'. African culture perceives the departure as a transition, a 'passing on' or 'passing over' and do not appreciate the notion that the departed is dead.



Figure 55: Article gave evidence of the perceived power of black chickens.⁴⁸⁵

⁴⁸⁴ Elion, Barbara & Strieman, Mercia (2002) *Clued up on Culture. A Practical Guide for All South Africans*. Camps Bay: One Life Media CC. P. 39

⁴⁸⁵ Daily Sun (September 22, 2020) *I don't want to part of evil practises*



7.9 Spirituality Impacting Personal Finances



Figure 56: The article was titled “Haunted by a Hungry ghost”. The spiritual entity ruins the family household budget. “It takes food and things we really need, like money.” A sangoma confirmed the house is haunted and as such confirmed that spiritual entities are often confined to a specific territory. The family sought advice from sangomas and prophets, acknowledging the African spiritual authority as well as the supposedly authority of Christian prophets.⁴⁸⁶

⁴⁸⁶ Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *Haunted by one hungry ghost*



Figure 57: Not everybody have the courage to consult Sangomas. Muti was placed on the doorstep to entice fear to cause the lady to relocate and abandon her home. Whoever used the muti probably aimed to claim the property.⁴⁸⁷



Figure 58: The Tokoloshe stole books and vandalised the home. The extraordinary high unemployment rate is directly associated with education. Stolen books and the rampage of torn curtains, food spillage and general vandalism by a Tokoloshe implies tremendous economic consequences.⁴⁸⁸

⁴⁸⁷ Daily Sun. Mgidi, Emily. *Sangoma advises Shila to act fast*

⁴⁸⁸ Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. *Family's tokoloshe hell!*



Figure 59: Faith in Sangomas convince people to make decisions with financial implications. Phumelela Jacob resigned from employment on advice from 'sangoma'. The fact that the sangoma was apparently not authentic, does not nullify the complete trust and faith in their rulings.⁴⁸⁹

7.10 Spirituality in Retail

7.10.1 Territorial Spiritual Impact on the Johannesburg Shopping Centres

Dr. Edward Yusuf Mitole⁴⁹⁰ article titled "Johannesburg's Black magic Circle of Consumption" provided profound insight in the reality of-

- Black Magic as phenomena and the deliberate planning thereof – it is not coincidental.

⁴⁸⁹ Daily Sun. (November 12, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma ruined my life!*

⁴⁹⁰ Mitole, Dr. Edward Yusuf (June 17, 2019) *Johannesburg's Black Magic Circle of Consumption*. Available at: Johannesburg's Black Magic Circle of Consumption – Uncensored Opinion

- The power of magic manifesting in a territorial area and according to spiritual leylines.

While researching on these contradictions, I came across a fascinating article written by an occult practitioner in which he postulates that: with all our four “gates” better known as the gate shopping centres, having been built along ley-lines the completion of the Mall Of Africa, which is positioned true north of Johannesburg, closes off and crowns a perfect five pointed star [pentagram] to create the Johannesburg Black Magic Circle Of Consumption. In this magic circle, Mall of Africa forms the spirit or northern crown of the matrix, while Sandton, Rosebank and Hyde Park represent the heart and soul [or PENTAGON] centre to complete the consumption trap.

The result is all the people within this area and those who come into it are under the spell of the five forces of spirit, earth, wind, fire and water, which in this case are being channelled to drive greed and fruitless consumption in the conurbation. We can refer to this as black magic or white occult witchcraft.

- The magic also influences the drug industry, corruption, murder and prostitution.
- South Africans are lured into the circle over long distances. The claim is made that Johannesburg attract more visitors than pyramids in Cairo, the ancient scrolls of Mali and the Victoria Falls in Zimbabwe.

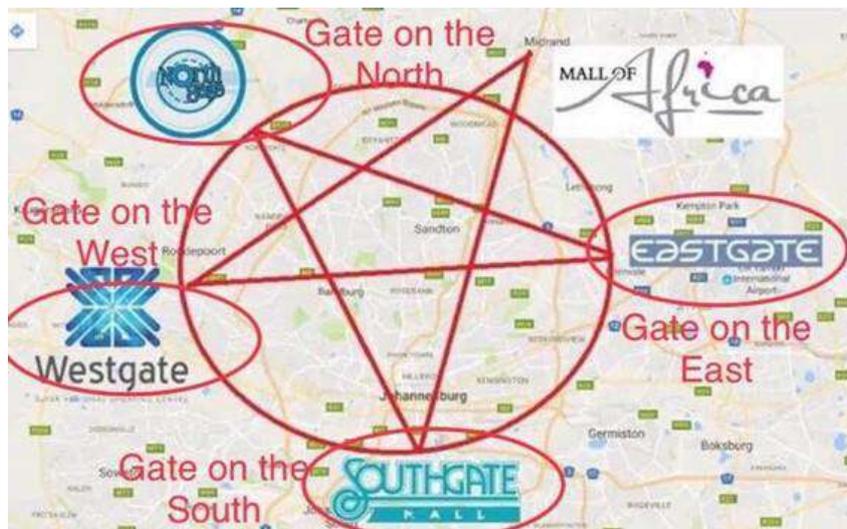


Figure 60: The so-called black magic circle of consumption of Johannesburg.⁴⁹¹

⁴⁹¹ Mitole, Dr. Edward Yusuf (June 17, 2019) *Johannesburg's Black Magic Circle of Consumption*. Available at: <https://uncensoredopinion.co.za/johannesburgs-black-magic-circle-of-consumption/>

7.10.2 Formal Retail and Consultation Services

Traditional African medicine industry successfully participate the in the retail shelf-space competition. Participation in structured retail implies rent, rates and taxes etc.- contributions to the economy.



Figure 61: African Traditional medicine claim abundant shelf space in a pharmacy, Pretoria East.⁴⁹²



Figure 62: Muti shop
(Photo taken by author in Klerksdorp City Centre, North West Province)⁴⁹³

⁴⁹² Photo taken by author

⁴⁹³ Photo taken by author



Figure 63: Muti shop
(Photo taken by author in Klerksdorp City Centre, North West Province)⁴⁹⁴

The Traditional African medicine industry and Sangoma services accommodates a variety of business aspects such as supply chain management, consultation, products, training, examination, marketing, etc. to create revenue.

DR. MUSA
INYANGA WE ZINTU ZONKE ENKING ZONKE
082 487 1942

1. Ukhulis ubudoda.....Ho Hodis Botona -R300
2. U^o Khuphelisa Ubuthakathi.....Ho Fedisa Boloji-R120
3. Ukhuvuka Umzimba.....Ruruga Mmelo Le Maoto-R50
4. Amaswa / Amabhadi.....Madimabe-R80
5. Ukhubuyisa Isithandwa.....Ho Hgulisa Moratuwa-R70
6. Ukhuhlula Amatyala.....Ho Hlola Molaong-R220
7. Ukuvimbela Amasela.....Ho Thibela Boshodu-R190
8. Ushukela Ne Ep.....Ho Hloka Mosebetsi-R170
9. Ukungafumani Msebenzi.....Ho Hloka Mosebetsi-R90
10. Ukunyusulwa Emsebenzini.....Ho Phahamiswa Mosebeting
11. Ukunqinisa Urnuzi Wakho.....Ho Tilsa Lelapa Lahao-R12
12. Ukungazali.....Mathata Apelehi-R90
13. Ukuwina Ilotto Ne Khasino.....Mo Hapa Lotto Le Casino-F
14. Ukulisa Hips Na Mablele.....Ho Hodisa Hips+ breasts-R200
15. Ukubiza Amakhastama.....Ho Hopa Bareki Le Hohodisa Kdwebo-R20
16. Amalanga Amaningi Kalulu.....Matsatsi Amagatha Haholo-R110
17. Izinto Zo Kuthambisa.....Creams-R100
18. Ukurwisa Ubufazi.....Ho Tilsa Bosadi-R200
19. Tb Ne Hiv & Aids.....Tb Ne Hiv & Aids-R180
20. Inkinga Zo Kungabinamali.....Mathata Ha Ho Hloka Tnyelete-R110

CALL FOR APPOINTMENT
CELL: 082 487 1942

MALCOLM PRINTERS @ 0604422951

DR. MUSA
TRADITIONAL HERBALIST & SPIRITUAL HEALER
082 487 1942

WE USE HERBS TO TREAT & SOLVE THE FOLLOWING

SEXUAL PROBLEMS

- BRING BACK LOST LOVER AND MAKE STRONG LOVE
- GET MARRIED QUICKLY
- TROUBLED RELATIONSHIP
- BE LIKED AT WORK
- ATTRACT MEN & WOMEN
- DO YOU WANT TO STOP DIVORCE FROM YOUR PARTNER

OTHER PROBLEMS & DISEASES

- WIN COURT CASES & GET HIM OUT OF JAIL.....R500
- WIN LOTTO.....R200
- PASS EXAMS.....R100
- CUSTOMER ATTRACTION.....R170
- PROMOTION AT WORK.....R170
- PREGNANCY PROBLEMS.....R140
- LACK OF STRENGTH IN THE BODY.....R50
- SWOLLEN BODY.....R30
- HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE.....R190
- HIV SYMPTOMS.....R70
- DIABETES.....R300
- CHASE AWAY TOKOLOSHE.....R190
- BEWITCHED PEOPLE.....R500
- BAD LUCK.....R170
- PIG LICE.....R60

CALL FOR APPOINTMENT
CELL: 082 487 1942

MALCOLM PRINTERS @ 0604422951

Figure 64: Dr. Musa advertisement included a cost schedule. In addition, the advertisement printing and distribution expenditure contribute to the economy.⁴⁹⁵

⁴⁹⁴ Photo taken by author

⁴⁹⁵ Pamphlet handed out at traffic light as advertisement.

7.10.3 Informal Retail/Trade

The Informal trade create revenue but traders are probably tax exempt. Other economic aspects such as rent, salaries, product supply management etc are probably included and as such contribute to the economy.



Figure 65: Traditional Healer (Photo taken by author North West Province)
*Special reference to tokoloshe.*⁴⁹⁶

⁴⁹⁶ Traditional Healer (Photo taken by author North West Province)



Figure 66: Photo taken by author. Sangoma and muti advert along the side of the road. North West Province. Recognition to the powers available from the mountains. The relevance of 'high places' is discussed in Chapter Two.⁴⁹⁷



Figure 67: Photo taken by author. Sangoma muti advertisement along the side of the road. North West Province. The author highlighted the provision of legal assistance. Not in the representation, but to secure a positive outcome by means of witchcraft.⁴⁹⁸

⁴⁹⁷ Photo taken by author. Sangoma and muti advert alongside of road.

⁴⁹⁸ Photo taken by author. Sangoma muti advertisement alongside of road.

7.11 General Remarks Pertaining the Impact of Spirituality on Finances



Figure 68: Sangoma advertisements for assistance to “win tenders” are common. The author took this photo in Polokwane. Ignored tender procedures to favour tenderpreneurs might be more than ordinary fraud and corruption. It might be a result of these powers.⁴⁹⁹



Figure 69: The use of magic to increase personal finances is often called “calling money” or as per this advertisement, “magic wallet”.⁵⁰⁰

⁴⁹⁹ Photo taken by author in Polokwane.

⁵⁰⁰ Photo taken by author in Polokwane.



Figure 70: Jealousy of clients/patients and the income it generates is often a motivation for sangomas to curse one another. Fire came from Sangoma Nonkululeko's wardrobe and onto her bed before destroying her home. She relies on her ancestors and her smell to identify her herb-medicine.⁵⁰¹



Figure 71: 'Nando's', a Chicken fast food advert portraying similar layout and wide variety of promises and services well known in sangoma adverts. The fact that the franchise had the liberty to portray the African sangoma practice in an advert indicated how common and generalised the sangoma practice is in the South African society.⁵⁰²

⁵⁰¹ Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma sees with her hands*.

⁵⁰² Pamphlet handed out at traffic light as advertisement.

7.12 Modern Technology – Social Media Use in Sangomahood

The sangoma has formidable Twitter and Instagram followings, as well as a YouTube channel on which she breaks down complex esoteric intelligence to laypeople in a language and style relatable to their everyday experiences of love, sex, money and more.

-Known online as Noksangoma, aka Johannesburg-based Nokulinda Mkhize (31)⁵⁰³

- Contemporary Sangomas are also qualified professional people holding corporate careers.

Thabiso Siswana (24) balances sangomahood alongside her job as a corporate administrator at one of the country's most influential banks.⁵⁰⁴

8. SPIRITUALITY IN THE SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT

8.1 Rites of Passage (Life Cycle)

A rite is a formal act or procedure that is prescribed or customary in religious ceremonies. The most common rites of passage take place at: birth, puberty into adolescence, marriage, and death. Each of the four stages marks a transition from one stage of life into another. The individual has the right or choice or obligation to mark a significant passage accordingly.

Rites of passage represent significant new phase in the journey of the individual's life cycle. Each phase represents an important turning point, which is frequently marked by ritualised ceremony to celebrate and affirms the individual's spirit in the new phase.

⁵⁰³ Mail & Guardian. (July 25, 2016) Staff Reporter. *@Noksangoma explains the five types of spirits you may not have known about.* Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2016-07-25-digital-sangoma-noksangoma-gives-five-types-of-spirits-you-may-not-have-known-about/>

⁵⁰⁴ The Mail & Guardian. Staff Reporter (April 5, 2013) *The new generation of sangomas.* Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2013-04-05-00-the-new-generation-of-sangomas/>

Every passing stage - birth, initiation, marriage and death - the young and the old, man and woman, the community and the individual - each recognises its interdependence on the other and on nature.

Rites of passage mark the changing status of an individual. Examples of what rituals might include is presented. It is important to note that the actions are not by default true and valid.



Figure 72: This article confirms a few facts: legal and illegal initiation schools exist, deaths are recorded annually, boys often need to be hospitalised, initiation schools are scheduled in a specific season, the authority of traditional leaders is still recognised parallel to three levels of the 'official political system' with democratically elected representatives.⁵⁰⁵

⁵⁰⁵ Daily Sun. (July 3, 2018) Zweni, Ziyanda. *Another initiate's life cut short*.

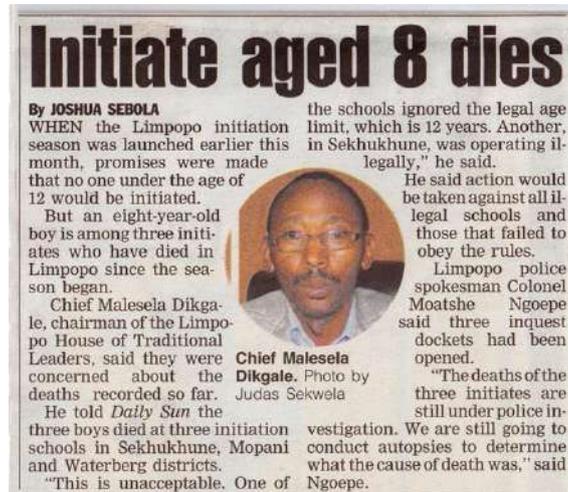


Figure 73: The article confirms the age restriction for male initiation schools (12 years), annual deaths and a specific season for Initiation schools.⁵⁰⁶

Examples of what a rite could entail:

Marriage: A sangoma, sprinkling water mixed with chicken blood and invoking the blessings of the ancestors. The father of the bride gives a cow to his daughter which will be the cow of her ancestors. Whenever she wishes to commune with the ancestors of her family she can talk with the cow. It will not be killed or mistreated. It is a holy cow.

One of the huts of the family is dedicated to the ancestors. In the back is a small area filled with ashes. This is a special place for communing with the ancestors.

Death: The family of the deceased will enquire pertaining to the cause of death. After throwing the bones the sangoma finds that a close neighbour "witched" the person and caused his death.

Funeral: All friends and family are expected to be present. Individuals absent create suspicion that they might have collaborated in the causing the death. The transition to the new status of ancestor is a significant rite of passage.

⁵⁰⁶ Daily Sun. (June 27, 2019) Sebola, Joshua. *Initiate aged 8 dies*

Adolescence: This is probably the most well-known rite of passage and a good example of legislative protection for culture and spiritual affairs.

The Labour Act and Basic Conditions of Employment Act as well as the Education Act grant permission for young men and women to attend “initiation schools” and subsequently be absent from school or employment for the duration of the initiation – two weeks to two months or more.

The initiation school for boys normally entails a period of education into manhood. During this time the boys and their educators stay in remote areas. The process is also referred to as the ‘mountain school’. Initiates are sworn to secrecy and as such the content of the education programmes are not known. Circumcision is always included.



Figure 74: “Graduates” of the Initiation School transitioned from boys to men. The author was witness to the problematic consequence of the graduation of boys to men where a mother had to urgently consult with a local chief to have her boy send home before graduation. She was concerned that he will not complete his Secondary (High) School as “men do not go to school”. Being considered a “man” she would have forfeited her authority to force him to attend school.⁵⁰⁷

⁵⁰⁷ Daily Sun. (July 9, 2018) Mthimunya, Bongani and Zweni, Ziyanda. *Safely Back Home as Men!*

Mr. Makubo confirmed during an interview that families often discriminate against men who did not attend the initiation schools. These individuals are often not allowed to eat with the men of the family, treated as a second-rate male and as such have to eat and socialise with the women.



Figure 75: Jonathan decided to attend the Xhosa initiation school after he was not allowed to share a meal with the men because he did not attend the initiate rite. He was not recognised as a man.⁵⁰⁸



Figure 76: Although the 'Initiation Schools' / Rite of passage for boys are more frequently included in public domain discussion, initiation rites for girls are also important and ignorance thereof can result in a curse.⁵⁰⁹

⁵⁰⁸ Daily Sun. (July 2, 2018) Sisulu, Mbulelo and Zweni, Ziyanda. *I like Xhosa ways!*

⁵⁰⁹ Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Mashilo, Noko. *Her powers come from Mkhulu.*

Joeje Mkgapa revealed the motivation for her non-attendance of the initiation rite to celebrate her transition to adulthood: The ZCC Church her father belongs to does not approve of initiation rites. Attendance is considered a serious offence of Church regulations and members who allow this practice in their households are thus disciplined and banned from church attendance for one year.

Interestingly, this same church amalgamates ancestral veneration with Christianity. Miss Mkgapa also brewed traditional beer in a ritual to introduce her daughter to her ancestors. This provided evidence that culture and spirituality is not only inseparable, but importantly that the interpretation and application vary greatly. It would be a great misinterpretation to assume that 'black culture' or African traditional spirituality is generic.

8.2 HIV/Aids⁵¹⁰

The total number of persons living with HIV in South Africa increased from an estimated 4,64 million in 2002 to 7,97 million by 2019.

Year	Number of AIDS related deaths*	Percentage of AIDS related deaths
2017	132 544	25%
2018	129 677	24.2%
2019	126 805	23.4%

Table 12: HIV/AIDS statistics 2017-2019

The statistics is profound given the traditional and superstitious approach to

⁵¹⁰ Official Guide to South Africa 2017/18 South Africa People. Available at: [https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/pocketguide/03-South%20Africa% 27s% 20People-1718.pdf](https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/pocketguide/03-South%20Africa%20People-1718.pdf)

healing. 'Muti' or rituals prescribed by sangomas and traditional healers often find preference before Western medicine. The research does not deny the healing properties of herbal or Traditional African medicine. Spiritual rituals, "cleansing" rituals, sacrifices and the following are strongly condemned.

- Sex (Rape) of a baby cures HIV/Aids.
- Sex (Rape) with a virgin cures HIV/Aids
- Sex (Rape) of an Albino woman cures HIV/Aids

Among the theories advanced to explain the phenomenon is the apparently accepted myth that sex with a virgin cleanse one of HIV/AIDS. But that has ignited a renewed controversy over whether the folk tale alone is behind the sexual assaults against children that in some cases have been literally babies.⁵¹¹

Incidence of baby rape is not new. When a nine-month-old baby was raped in South Africa in 2001, a myth had emerged showing that sex with a baby was a means of curing HIV/Aids. What became known as the "virgin myth" was among several speculations about what would account for high incidence of infant rape.⁵¹²



Figure 77: Government HIV/Aids information campaigns⁵¹³

⁵¹¹ Radio Free South Africa. (April 15, 2016) *Focus on the virgin myth and HIV/AIDS*. Available at: <https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/focus-virgin-myth-hivaids/>

⁵¹² The Conversation (June 29, 2015) *Explainer: behind the scourge of child rape in South Africa*. Available at: <https://theconversation.com/explainer-behind-the-scourge-of-child-rape-in-south-africa-43436>

⁵¹³ Radio Free South Africa (April 15, 2016) *Focus on the virgin myth and HIV/Aids*. Available at: <https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/focus-virgin-myth-hivaids/>

Child raped to 'cure' HIV+ dad

Two-year-old's mother says police have not kept her abreast of case

LEBOGANG MALE
Writing a world of us

A SOMETHING was allegedly raped. His two-year-old daughter is having it said that him of HIV/AIDS.

The chilling evidence is part of a police investigation into the rape of the child on February 3.

As the struggle to secure the child's mother, Mkhosi, has accused the police of trying to stall the case by not reporting her on the progress.

"It has been two months since my child was raped but I don't know if he is still in custody or if he was released on bail. If he was released on bail, why was I never informed? Why was I never told?" she asked recently.

None of the girl's rape took place in the town of the death of a two-year-old girl from Polokwane Village near the town of Limpopo last week. She was allegedly raped by her father's close friend.

In Soweto, Mkhosi said she was living in fear of her 20th son because he had been receiving treatment from a traditional healer.

Shocking statistics

- Rape victims: girls to 100
- Oxfam: 60000 US \$03
- Top Gender Action: 600 US \$00
- People Opposing Women Abuse (Powell): 200 US \$00

According to statistics provided by traditionally healing Grand Mkhosi, a woman is raped every 10 seconds in South Africa.

He estimated that only one in four women reporting rapes, and that only 10 percent of perpetrators of rape are convicted.

perpetrator's friends.

"His sister keeps calling me, accusing me of spreading lies about her brother and wanting to destroy his life. I have to do for her brother and sister Mkhosi at the clinic, but I can't go because I'm scared because his family has been



SOOTHING HAND: This two-year-old girl, allegedly raped by her father who has HIV, is cuddled by her mother at their home in Soweto yesterday.
Picture: Enoch Makhosi

the clinic," she said.

Mkhosi added that she regretted not taking the man's statements seriously last year when he asked her if she knew that having sex with a virgin could cure HIV/AIDS.

"I thought he was joking. I asked him where he would get a virgin now when he said even a child could cure it," she recalled.

Despite the man being HIV/AIDS positive, Mkhosi said she laughed off and dismissed his statements "as a joke" until she had a premonition

that the man would one day rape their child - then 30 months old - but dismissed her feelings.

Her 19-year-old son said when, on February 3, she discovered their daughter had been raped.

The man had not the same idea of about 200, he said his daughter at her house, saying he was going to buy her some food and supplies at a nearby supermarket. He brought her back that evening.

"The girl kept crying, especially when she returned to school. She pointed at her

private parts, saying her father had hurt her. When I checked, I saw that she had cuts around her private parts," Mkhosi said.

When she reported the matter to Mkhosi police station the next day.

"After making a statement, the police accompanied her to Mkhosi's (Traditional Care Centre at the Mkhosi-Sheepwag) Academic Hospital, where the rape was confirmed. The man was then arrested."

Mkhosi said she did not know anything from the investigating officer until March 20.

When another police officer came to see someone else had taken over the case.

"I have never heard anything from the new police officer," she said.

A police spokesman, Captain Mkhosi Mkhosi, said the case was still back to Mkhosi's Mkhosi.

"The investigating officer removed the dossier from the previous investigating officer only last week. He does not know if the suspect is still in jail," Mkhosi added.

The clinical director of the South West Open, Dr Mkhosi

Chama, said more education was needed to dispel the myth that having children or having sex with a virgin was a cure for HIV/AIDS.

"It's ridiculous to think that when you are infected, waiting a virgin or a virgin is going to take away the infection."

"It's nothing more than a spiritual offering," Chama said.

Chama's colleague Dr Gaining, Linda Conrad, agreed.

"It's dangerous to think that having a child or a virgin will cure HIV/AIDS."

"It's the realisation

Figure 78: Child rape newspaper article.⁵¹⁴

'Sangomas can help fight HIV/Aids'

By CHRISTOPHER MOAGI
TRADITIONAL medicine can be an alternative to western medical treatment.

This is according to the Ekurhuleni manager of the HIV/Aids unit, Thabiso Peo.

But he strongly advised patients to avoid mixing the two forms of medication as it may weaken their effectiveness.

Peo said some medicines counteract each other.

"It is advised that those who are on chronic medication should avoid mixing it with traditional medicine.

"This will allow the proper monitoring of the medication."

The city's health and social development department has formed a committee where traditional healers are trained in basic HIV/Aids policies and precautions.

"The committee wants to ensure that traditional healers identify symptoms of illnesses that need medical attention, and promote early detection and treatment of preventable illness.

"We also want to dispel myths by bogus practitioners who claim to cure HIV/Aids and advise people to stop taking their treatment," added Peo.

Sangoma Elizabeth Bass said they often have workshops with western doctors. Here they discuss the issues around the treatment they

each use.

"Some HIV-positive patients don't want to take pills every day.

"They must be allowed to explore the traditional route because we also have medication we can give them to boost their immune system," she said.

8/19/2018

Figure 79: Amalgamation of Western and Traditional medicine: Although treatment is not legally allowed, Sangomas is trusted to cure HIV and Aids.⁵¹⁵

⁵¹⁴ Seal, Lebogang (August 12, 2012) *Police won't speculate on the motive of Ceres child rapist*. Praag. Available at: <http://praag.org/?tag=hivaids>

⁵¹⁵ Daily Sun. (September 5, 2018) Moagi, Christopher. *Sangomas can help fight HIV/Aids*.

Traditional Health Practitioners Act No. 22 of 2007 allows registered Traditional Healers to practice medicine, excluding treatment of terminal illnesses such as HIV/AIDS and cancer. This does not prohibit people to follow the traditional route for treatment.

8.3 Spirituality Impact on Nature

Honorary Game Ranger Willem reported how poaching in the Kruger National Park extend far beyond the Rhino poaching reported in the media. Poaching also includes several animals according to the requirements from Sangomas and traditional healers. Animals targeted include Hyenas, Blue Wildebeest, Vultures, snakes, baboons and Chameleons. Owls are associated with witchcraft and elephants and are seen as the carriers of ancestor spirits.

The Ekurhuleni Municipality initiated an 'Owl Project' (2013) in the Madelakufa squatter camp in Tembisa to combat a plague of rats. Unfortunately, some of the owls were decapitated due to a common belief among residents that the nocturnal birds are associated with witchcraft. Branden Murray⁵¹⁶ of the Owl Rescue reported as follows:

The organisation had received dozens of photos, letters and e-mails from concerned bird lovers reporting abuse or cruelty towards the owls released into townships.

8.4 Spirituality Manifesting in Sport

Kick off Football News bulletin⁵¹⁷ reported on SAFA (South African Football

⁵¹⁶ Motsai, Emelia (October 13, 2013) *'Evil' owls under attack by residents*. The Citizen. Available at: <https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/256766/owl-project-not-all-wise/>

⁵¹⁷ KickOff (October 11, 2011) *Safa in sangoma scandal*. Kickoff.com. Available at: <https://www.kickoff.com/news/articles/south-africa-news/categories/news/news/sangoma-claims-that-safa-owes-him-money/533990>

Association) delayed payment to a Sangoma hired to 'bless' the Bafana Bafana (South African National Soccer Team).

It is alleged that SAFA secretly hired the sangoma, S'bonelo Madela from Ulundi, ahead of the match versus France during the 2010 World Cup. Bafana won 2-1, but were knocked out in the first round. Madela apparently demanded R100 000 initially for his services, but eventually lowered the fee to R60 000. It would appear SAFA reneged on the deal and only paid the sangoma R10 000 for the muti deal and Madela has now repeatedly threatened SAFA, claiming Bafana will never win another match until the SAFA top brass settle the debt.

The following conclusions are drawn:

- 'Sangoma Power' is incorporated in all aspects of life.
- Faith in-, and payment for 'Sangoma Power' is not restricted to individuals.
- Sangomas can withhold the discharging of the 'prosperity' if payment is not received in full.

8.5 The 'Tokoloshe' Phenomenon

The name "Tokoloshe" is well-known amongst all South African cultures. It is common practice for African people to lift their bed to sleep elevated from the floor in order to be unreachable for the Tokoloshe. In an interview with a trained sangoma she confirmed the following perceived facts – it is not known if anybody has ever seen the "Tokoloshe".

- Always male in gender, and dangerous
- According to general myth about 1.5 meters in length.
- Represent and cause bad luck, harm, illness, or even death.
- Night terrors are a sign of his presence or visitation.
- Work independent in the sense that he is not necessarily sent by a sangoma or witch.

- Travel and operate restricted to the night.
- He can decide to reside in one room for any period of time.

Social behaviour is adapted in fear of a possible Tokoloshe visit: the only remedy to ensure that one is untouchable is to sleep on elevated beds. Bricks and empty paint containers are frequently used to elevate beds. The Tokoloshe does not have the ability to jump and because of his limited height, it is believed that he would not be able to reach an individual sleeping too high to reach.

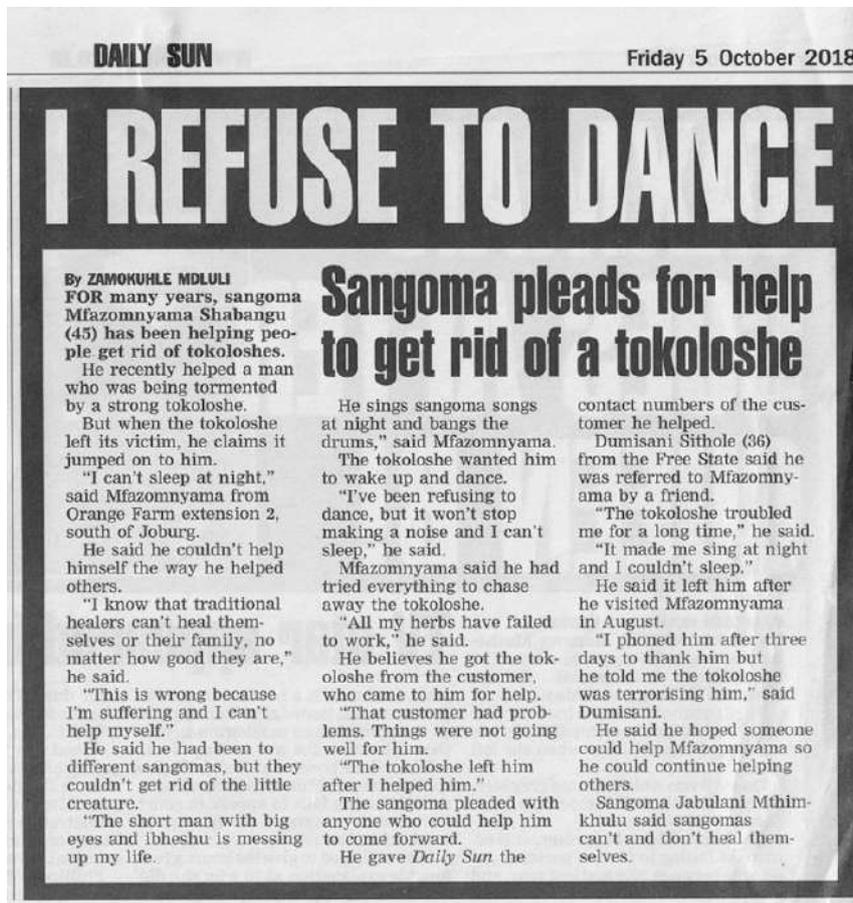


Figure 80: Spiritual authority varies. Sangoma Mfazomnyama Shabangu, confirmed traditional healers cannot heal themselves or their families. After helping a man tormented by a Tokoloshe, the Tokoloshe retaliated and "jumped on to him".⁵¹⁸

⁵¹⁸ Daily Sun (October 5, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *I Refuse to Dance*.



Figure 81: The manifestation of a Tokoloshe is not imagination. His appearance is described as hairy, he recognised his name, he has a voice and a warm breath, and he has the ability to eat – to the extent that additional food needs to be budgeted.⁵¹⁹

8.6 Spirituality Impact Relationships and Individuals

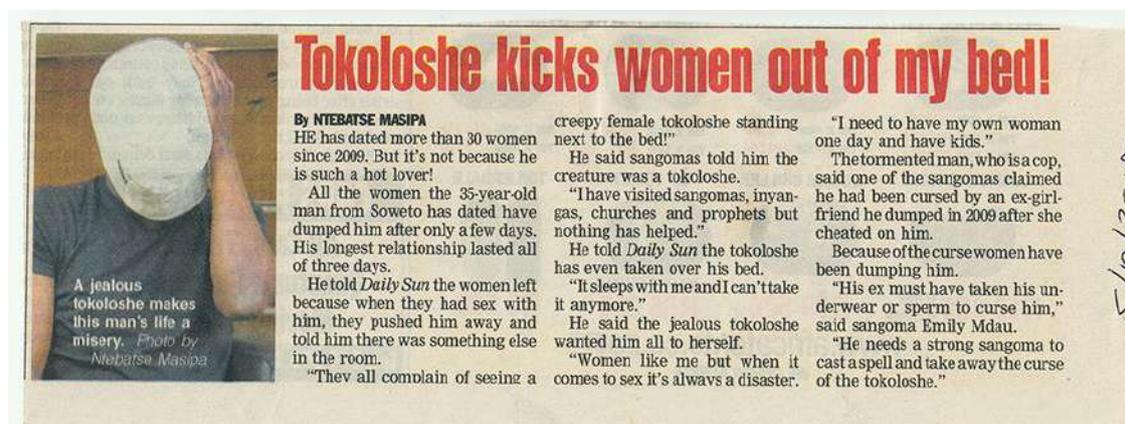


Figure 82: A creepy female Tokoloshe as a result of a curse by an ex-girlfriend. It is suspected that she used underwear or sperm to curse him. This is a rare reference to a Tokoloshe as female. The victim (policeman by profession) also claim that the creature had intercourse with him. (Succubus and Incubus discussed in Chapter Two)⁵²⁰

⁵¹⁹ Daily Sun. (February 2020) Michaels, Modiri. *Tokoloshe wants my pap!*

⁵²⁰ Daily Sun. (October 5, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Tokoloshe kicks women out of my bed!*



Figure 83: The Sangoma ruling pertaining to a life partner was accepted. This gives evidence to their authority in individual life's.⁵²¹



Figure 84: Sangomas are familiar with the spiritual world and the reality of evil spirits. Gabela Maria Mangena specialises in muti to 'lock marriages'. This provide evidence of the fact that Sangomas specialised is specific areas, equal to medical doctors, counsellors, psychiatrists etc.⁵²²

⁵²¹ Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Dumped by his ancestors.*

⁵²² Daily Sun. (July 31, 2019) Mgidi, Emily. *Sangoma locks cheaters!*



Figure 85: The impact of the inhumane and brutal violence in order to 'harvest' body tissue for muthi is multi-dimensional. Possible psychologically as a result of the trauma, fear has a spiritual root, physical development as a disabled person and the educational and economical success could be jeopardised given the limited aid for under privileged families in South Africa.⁵²³



Figure 86: Witchcraft muthi incorporated into murder. Although the victim was not killed by the muthi, it was used as warning about her expected death allegedly planned by the wife of the victim's boyfriend.⁵²⁴

⁵²³ Daily Sun. (November 6, 2019) Khosa, Tlangelani. *How they took my leg!*

⁵²⁴ Daily Sun (December 27, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *G-string curse, then death.*

ROYAL HERBS INTERNATIONAL
DR AZAMU & DR .KIDDA
FREE CHECK UP

1. Bring Back Lost Lover In A Short Time
2. Penis Enlargement (Big , Long & Strong)
3. Women And Men Who Want Babies
4. Take More Rounds During Sex
5. Control Early Ejaculation
6. Get Promotion At Work
7. Remove Bad Luck & Give You Good Luck
8. Protection Of Homes , Work & Cars
9. Bring Back Stolen Property
10. Do You Want To Find A Job?
11. Solve Financial Problems
12. Win Court Cases
13. Stop Family Misunderstandings
14. Pass Exams & Interviews
15. Make Your Lover To Love You Alone
16. Drop & STI's Treatment
17. Hips & Breasts Enlargement
19. Women With Menstruation Pains
20. Body Pains, Legs , Chest & Back Pains

Find The Doctor At:
House no. 19171 Tsamaya Road
Next to Eerstefabrieke
Station opp Engene Garage
MAMELODI

WORKING HOURS
24/7

CALL:072 116 5576

TRADITIONAL HEALER
DR AZAMU & DR .KIDDA
FREE CHECK UP

Having Consulted Several Doctors But They Dis appointed Me,
I Went To Dr. Azamu: And He Healed Me With A
Magic Stick. I Now Solved My Financial Problems.
SWARTZ MARIE (DURBAN)

I Nearly Divorced My Husband After Being Married. His Penis
Was Small & No Erection Dr Azamu Treated Him
With In 7 Days . His Erection Become Very Strong.
MRS KHAN NAIDOO (CAPE TOWN)

My Penis Was Very Small, I Was Shy To Propose Love To Awoman
I Was Scared They Will Laugh At Me. I Used Dr Azamu Herbs
And In 7 Days My Penis Grew Bigger.
SBU MTHEMBU (SOWETO)

MANHOOD , POWER & ENLARGEMENT
BIG STICK
Penis Enlargement
1. Size (length & Thickness)
2. Power (hard & Strong)
3. Stop Early Ejaculation

4. MAKE MORE ROUNDS & BOOST SEXUAL FEELINGS
100% GUARANTEED RESULTS

Find The Doctor At:
House no. 19171 Tsamaya Road
Next to Eerstefabrieke
Station opp Engene Garage
MAMELODI

WORKING HOURS
24/7

CALL:072 116 5576

Figure 87: Dr. Azamu and Dr. Kidda provide treatment and solutions for a variety of personal, relationship and financial problems: contesting the unemployment problem, career promotions, education, combatting crime and a variety of personal and relationship solutions.⁵²⁵

The concept of same-sex women sangomas with ancestral wives (unyankwaba).

“Through the same-sex sangoma project I have found that although same-sex relationships within ancestral marriages between women are supposed to be taboo, some modern sangomas are using these marriages to have secret sexual relationships in rural areas. In urban areas some of them are being more public about their same-sex relationships.

-Nkunzi Nkabinde⁵²⁶

⁵²⁵ Pamphlet handed out at traffic light as advertisement.

⁵²⁶ Mail & Guardian. (June 6, 2018) Staff Reporter. *Legacy of a lesbian sangoma*. Available at: <https://mg.co.za/article/2018-06-06-legacy-of-a-lesbian-sangoma/>

8.7 Amalgamation of Spirituality and 'Western Medicine'



Figure 88: Superstition re muti and body parts is not restricted to the illiterate. A qualified medical examiner was found guilty of harvesting body parts.⁵²⁷

⁵²⁷ Daily Sun. (July 22, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *10 Years for Dr Evil!*



Figure 89: Author interview with Sangoma Jeanne Potgieter. She confirmed her training was conducted and qualification confirmed without her participation in any blood, animal or human muti preparation lessons. She specialises herbal medicines and also incorporate Western medicine when the herbal treatment is unsuccessful.⁵²⁸

8.7.1 Covid-19 Strategies

President Ramaphosa received severe criticism for ignoring traditional medicine in combatting Covid-19 pandemic. Thuli Nhlapo⁵²⁹ from City Press reported as follows:

This week marked a very sad chapter in the history of our democratic South Africa. President Cyril Ramaphosa shunned ancient African healing knowledge, African medicine and traditional healers when he addressed the nation on the escalation of measures to combat the Covid-19 coronavirus pandemic.

What about the healers who need to frequent rivers, beaches, waterfalls and forests to stay healthy? This is because, in all the measures put in place for the national lockdown, Western medicine was prioritised. According to the World Health Organisation, traditional medicine is the first source of healthcare for about 80% of the people in developing countries.

IT's difficult to fathom that any African employed in the highest office in the land could be so narrow-minded on spiritual matters to the point of

⁵²⁸ : Author interview with Sangoma Jeanne.

⁵²⁹ Nhlapo, Thuli. (March 29, 2020) City Press. Ramaphosa's failure to acknowledge role of sangomas in Covid-19 fight. Available at: <https://www.news24.com/citypress/voices/ramaphosas-failure-to-acknowledge-role-of-sangomas-in-covid-19-fight-20200329>

presenting to the public a president who is blatantly disrespectful to his own forefathers.

8.7.2 Muti Assisting Childbirth



Figure 90: Muti to enhance labour kills babies.⁵³⁰



Figure 91: Muti to enhance labour kills babies.⁵³¹

⁵³⁰ Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Childbirth muti kills 380 babies.*

⁵³¹ Sowetan. (July 5 2018).Mahopo, Zoe. *Concoctions lead to hundreds of babies dying in hospital*



Figure 92: Visitors deliver muti (concoctions) to patients in accordance with their belief that labour will be enhanced. The practice does not stop regardless numerous deaths.⁵³²

⁵³² Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Mystery tonic in maternity ward*



Figure 93: Traditional medicine to assist childbirth is accused to cause neonatal and maternal deaths.⁵³³

9 CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the author addressed the questions posed in the Prolegomena.

9.1 **Why is it imperative for the average South African to take note of, or understand the spiritual reality?**

A society divided by race and culture resulted in fragmented experiences of religion and spirituality. Institutionalised prejudice eliminated the possibility of

⁵³³ Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Locals express their belief in herbal cures*

finding common spiritual ground. For instance, Indian South Africans are perceived to be either Hindu or Muslim. Yet, the first Pentecostal revival was in the Indian Community of Natal.

The research, and personal experience provided evidence that Christians are not automatically acquitted from the impact of curses and evil works. To the contrary, Satan and his entourage hate God and therefore every Christian. Christians often falls victim due to a lack of knowledge or hidden sin that provides a entrance point for Satan to exhort.

9.2 *Would the assumption that ‘spirituality’ in politics and the economy and are “pursued by black South Africans” be true?*

The assumption was found to be not true. The complex composition of the South African population stretches beyond race, culture, and language. The diversity of religions is fundamentally entrenched in all South African societies, rural and urban alike. The perception that Christianity was introduced to Africa during colonial expansions of mainly European power nations denies early Christianity in Africa. The church of Alexandria translated the Bible into Greek and was responsible to expand Christianity to Ethiopia to name but two examples of early African Christianity. In addition, research done by Michael Tellingier provided evidence of early Hindu worship. Arab traders probably introduced Islam. Khoi and San are acknowledged as the first (and only) indigenous peoples had individual spirituality.

9.3 *Are Christians free from the influence of negative spiritual influences.?*

Ampul evidence was provided of the spiritual discourse and the application of what is believed to be fundamental spiritual truths. Advertisements of ‘Sangoma’ services include the judiciary, personal finances, personal relationships, health,

general wellness etc. Evidence indicated that spiritual influences on the political, economy, and social spheres are not restricted to any particular culture, language group, nation, tribe, culture, urban or rural societies. It is a general, South African phenomena. Although Christians would not normally render Sangoma services, they might fall victim to these spells e.g., the outcome of a lawsuit, possible career promotions etc. It is very evident that ignorance or lack of knowledge with regards to the power of witchcraft do not safeguard anybody, Christians included. With integrated societies (education, neighbourhoods, workspaces etc.) previous segregation of religions and cultures disappeared. It is also noteworthy to comment that the greater percentage of domestic workers in homes of white and Indian households are familiar to and have easy access to sangomas and their supernatural power. The profession of or calling of a Sangoma is no longer restricted to black South Africans. The author or also noted advertisements portray images of black and white clients (patients).

The manifestation of spirituality in politics are not restricted to superstition and ancestor veneration. The author is of the opinion that exaggerated nationalism is equal to idolatry, rooted in pride – the origin of all sin and thus a spiritual attribute. Prejudice and discrimination, even an attempt to find Biblical evidence is unbiblical. The history of the Afrikaners, their emphasis on leaders, accomplishments, language, and the manipulation of history curricula relates to spirituality in the close relation between religion and nationalism. In addition, the alleged spiritual positioning of ‘economic hubs’ such as shopping centres and town planning developments as portrayed in the map of Tshwane, also extend ‘economic-spirituality’ beyond black South Africans.

--ooOoo--

10. ADDENDUM

The same articles is presented in a larger format.



Figure 94: The default interpretation of a sangoma is often a traditional person in sangoma-attire sitting on the floor of a mud hut. Contemporary sangomas are often also modern, literate, qualified individuals working in professional environments. Lerato Khambule is a sangoma and sales administrator at a security company. Regardless her sangoma-power, she was afraid to report rape to the SA Police Service. This illustrates the different levels of authority in a spiritual realm.⁵³⁴

⁵³⁴ Daily Sun (August 22, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *I'm afraid to open case*

My ex-lover used muthi on me!

By **LETHABO KHAMBULE**

ACCORDING to Eunice Shibambu, her ex-boyfriend used muthi on her and it nearly killed her.

The 49-year-old from Roodepoort, Mogale City, said she dated the man for almost a year until she was admitted to hospital in 2017.

Eunice said when she first met her ex-boyfriend, he seemed perfect.

But it wasn't long before she started becoming suspicious. Eunice, who worked for an insurance company, said he often asked her for money.

"He stopped coming to see me during the day and only wanted us to meet at his house at night. There was muthi at his house, but it didn't bother me much because different people have different beliefs," she said.

"But as things continued, he started demanding I use the muthi. He would rub my feet with it. That's when I tried to call it quits, but he refused."

Eunice said on the night she was admitted to hospital, her boyfriend gave her what he claimed was holy water.

"I had hip pains and he offered me holy water. A short while later, I started having unbearable stomach cramps and I begged him to take me to hospital. He left me there and didn't visit me or call to check up on me."

Eunice said doctors didn't know what was wrong with her.

"I called him and said I'd open a case against him because he was trying to kill me. But he just laughed.

"He said there was nothing I could do about muthi. But with prayer, I recovered."

When the SunTeam contacted the man, he said Eunice was a liar.

"I broke up with her because she was very disrespectful, calling me names and swearing at me," he said.

Sangoma Joseph Dungamzi said the use of muthi was common in relationships.

"People are evil. They use all kinds of muthi on their partners. While others use love portions, others lock their partners not to find love elsewhere," he said.

Eunice Shibambu says she survived muthi because of prayer.

Photo by
Lethabo
Khambule



Figure 95: Traditional spirituality is not limited to the illiterate or uneducated. Individuals in professional careers accept traditional spirituality incorporated as a reality of life. Eunice Sjobambu works at an Insurance Company. Holy water and muthi was used to curse her. She overcame by prayer. This article provided evidence that Christians or people of faith can be cursed. Discernment and knowledge of spiritual warfare and the power in the Name of Jesus Christ is the only avenue to be set free.⁵³⁵

⁵³⁵ Daily Sun (July 13, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *My ex-lover used muthi on me!*



Figure 96: Google maps street view image of site visited by author: Circular church and prayer spaces alongside a road North of Pretoria is a typical Independent Indigenous church. Mr. Reuben Makhubo confirmed during an interview and site visit that only men are allowed to attend this sanctuary. For this reason, the author did not trespass to take photos and had to rely on Google street maps street view.⁵³⁶

⁵³⁶ Google Street Map: John Vorster Drive, Pretoria

The zombies taught Sizwe not to steal!

By ZIMBILI VILAKAZI

SOON, Sizwe Mkhize will be sleeping peacefully once more!

This is after inyanga Mambeluhlaza Magwaza forgave him for stealing R7 000 from his indumba in Mariannhill, west of Durban, KZN, last month.

Sizwe told *Daily Sun* last week that after he stole the money, he was unable to sleep because it felt as if he was being choked by zombies.

He said the zombies demanded that he return the money.

Magwaza said he forgave Sizwe because although he was an inyanga, he was a spiritual person and a church member.

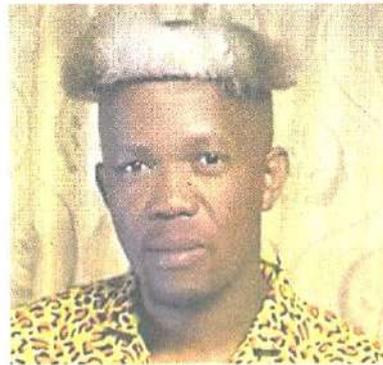
"I consulted my ancestors and they told me that in order for the zombies to leave him alone, he must get R200 worth of R1 coins, wrap them in a white cloth and throw them into the sea at night," said Magwaza.

He said it made him angry that Sizwe had stolen the money.

"I only saw the money was gone from the indumba after he left. I asked everyone at home if they had taken the money, but they all said no. I called Sizwe and he denied taking the money. So I went back to the ancestors to deal with the thief," he said.

"I hope he has learnt his lesson."

Sizwe said he's grateful that Magwaza has given him an easy



Inyanga Mambeluhlaza Magwaza has forgiven Sizwe Mkhize.

INYANGA ZOMBIE REVENGE!
Sizwe must pay back the money or die

Daily Sun, 3 July

task.

"I'll do as he says so that I can get my life back."

He had told *Daily Sun* he used the money for his basic needs.

His brother, Nkosinathi (41) said: "The family is happy that he is forgiven. We will make sure that we help him do what Magwaza told him to do."

Figure 97: This article illustrates the juxta relationship between the profession of a Inyanga (Traditional healer) while being a church member— African Traditional Spirituality and Christianity.⁵³⁷

⁵³⁷ Daily Sun (July 9, 2019) Vilakazi, Zimbili. *The Zombies taught Sizwe not to steal*.

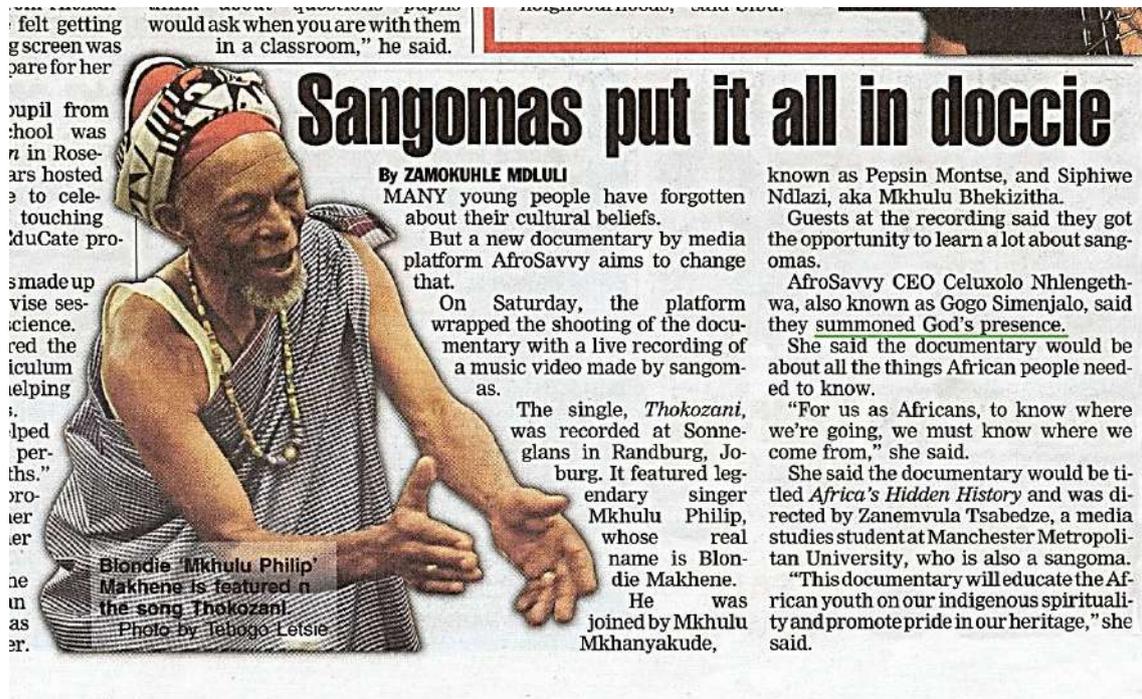


Figure 98: Juxta between acknowledging God and Traditional African Spirituality. The Sangoma acknowledged God in the promotion of culture. This article also acknowledged the renewed emphasis on 'blackness', African culture or the renewed African Nationalism.⁵³⁸

⁵³⁸ Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Sangomas put it all in doccie*.



Figure 99: Integration of spirituality portrayed through various articles in the same newspaper publication: Christians worshipping God in spite of rain, the commitment of parents to initiation schools to perform the tradition 'rite of passage, Muthi power, Witchcraft-Vutha fire' and services of Sangomas. Gobela Grace identified the three most popular requests by clients: 'killing partners over money or cheating, eliminating colleagues over positions at work and ukuthwala ('calling money) for quick money and wealth.⁵³⁹

⁵³⁹ Daily Sun (December 09, 2019) Various articles

2020/07/17

'Doctors won't see it'

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1
WORK OF TOKOLOSHE?"

The panic and confusion among the friends and family of maskandi star Mthandeni "Igcokama Elisha" Manqele is very real.

He felt better in the mornings, he told *Daily Sun*, but he felt sick at night.

He said when the illness attacked, his body got very hot and he started shaking uncontrollably, but his feet went cold.

Many among his family and his fans believe there's darkness at work.

The *Iskorokoro Sami* singer has been forced to move from Joburg back to his home in eMdlletsheni in KwaHlabisa, northern KZN, to recover.

A number of people thought he had the coronavirus, but his manager Simphiwe Masondo told *Daily Sun* it was definitely not the virus.

"We're all confused by the illness," said Simphiwe.

"He doesn't have corona symptoms.

"He's always tired and can't sleep at night.

"We've been trying to get help from doctors for more than a week, but his condition hasn't changed.

"During the day, everything is fine but the illness attacks him at night."

They'd tried prayer but were so far not winning the war against a seemingly evil illness.

"Mthandeni believes in God. He has hope that he'll beat this.

His family are God-fearing people and praying with him," said Simphiwe.

He said there were no plans to go beyond doctors and prayer.

Maskandi star Phumlani "Imfezemnyama" Khumalo, who recently worked with Mthandeni on a Covid-19 song released last month, told *Daily Sun* it pained him that his colleague was sick.

"He called and said he's sick and can't sleep. I wish him a speedy recovery," he said.

"He's a talented musician and easy to work with. We flowed when we recorded the song."

Imfezemnyama said Mthandeni assured him he doesn't have the dreaded virus.

"He must recover and come back," said Phumlani.

Legendary maskandi artist, Mandla "Shwi" Xaba of Shwi NoMtekhala duo, wished Mthandeni a speedy recovery.

"He's a young talented musician with a bright future. We're not ready to lose him," he told *Daily Sun*.

"I worked with him on a song a few years back and he was amazing."

But traditional healer Sazi Mhlongo said: "These are symptoms of a tokoloshe attack."

"Doctors will not be able to see it.

"They will say he has heart disease.

"He must consult traditional healers before it's too late."



Figure 100: The article demonstrated the African comprehension of the spirit world: Faith in God and recognition of the existence of evil spirits.⁵⁴⁰

⁵⁴⁰ Daily Sun (July 17, 2020) *Doctors won't see it*

And he's been dumped! **THE BIG PGI STORY**

**CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1
THAT DEAD MAN WANTS
ME DEAD!**

Bongani Thwala (35) from Jabulani in Soweto said when he had sex with the woman in 2016 his life changed, and not for the better.

"Her husband died in May 2016. She was still in mourning when we had sex and her husband was angry and sent bad luck my way," said Bongani.

He said the trouble started only two months later.

"I was on my way to see her one night in July 2016 when I was attacked by a gang of thugs. They accused me of being a thief," he said.

"They beat me up and left me lying on the street, thinking I was dead. I woke up and went home heavily injured."

He said in February 2017 he lost his job.

"I became poor. My money just disappeared. I have never

experienced that before," he said.

In February this year he was walking with the same woman near Jabulani Mall when he was hit by a car and spent weeks in hospital.

"It was a serious accident. I'm lucky I survived," he said.

He told *Daily Sun* he returned home and in April, although he was still on crutches, he decided to walk to the shops because he had spent a long time indoors.

"I went to buy bread but I didn't ever get to the shop," he said.

He said he was hit by a car again and found himself back in hospital.

"This time I was sure I was dying but luckily I survived.

"I spent another two weeks in hospital. I feel as if more bad luck is coming my way and this time I might not make it," he said.

And now Bongani has suffered the final insult.

The woman has decided to dump him.

"She no longer loves me. She has seen other men who are not broke and injured like me.

"I don't care about that, all I want is for this death trap to leave me," he said.

He said he needed someone who could get rid of his bad luck once and for all.

"I've been told that it's the dead man who wants me dead for sleeping with his wife.

"I need serious help," he said.

Bongani's ex-woman did not answer her cellphone.

Sangoma Jabulani Mthimkhulu said Bongani should thank his ancestors by slaughtering a goat.

"If it wasn't for the ancestors he would be dead by now. He also needs a powerful sangoma to take him to the river to have him cleansed."

Figure 101: The frontpage headline read: "I poked his widow, now dead man wants to kill me". Married women are sometimes incorporated in their husband's ancestral lineage. The departed husband became an ancestor to his widow. In this report, the departed husband's spirit did not approve her new relationship.⁵⁴¹

⁵⁴¹ Daily Sun (June 4, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Dead man wants to kill me!*



Figure 102: Polygamy is not rare in African societies. The author once again alerted to the fact that African (black) nations should not be regarded as generic or homogenic. Mixed relationships are not unique, it is however unique for a white woman to agree to a polygamist relationship with three other wives to her husband. The traditional labola and marriage was not approved by the bride's family.⁵⁴²

⁵⁴² Daily Sun (July 9, 2020) Phungula, Willem. *Mlungu's s'Tembu Love!*



Figure 103: Evidence of Voodoo practice in South Africa.⁵⁴³

⁵⁴³ Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Mabunda, Ntsako. *Dolls hang from tree.*



'I saw blood coming from the floor!'

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1
said the terrified Matibi.

The 54-year-old Matibi from Sebokeng, Vaal, was preparing for work yesterday morning when she ended up running away from blood chasing her.

When the SunTeam arrived at the house there was already a crowd of neighbours standing outside, but none of them brave enough to go inside.

The man of the house, David Skosana (55), opened the gate.

"I felt as if my spirit was leaving me as I entered the house," said SunMan Zamokuhle Mdluli.

SunMan Sthembiso Lebuso said: "The smell of blood was everywhere. I could feel my hair standing on end."

There were splashes of blood everywhere, from the stoep to

the kitchen, to the dining room and the bedroom. Some of the clothes and the furniture also had red smears over them.

Matibi said: "I had just got out of bed when blood, coming from the floor, started jumping around my feet. I jumped and moved away but the blood followed me to every room. That's how all rooms ended up stained."

"The blood only stopped following me when I went outside.

I was scared that if this blood caught me, something horrible would have happened to me."

Matibi's partner David said he was out getting groceries when he got a call to come home.

"When I got there, the blood had stopped following Matibi. She was standing outside, shaking.

"This is scary," he said.

He said he believed it was witchcraft. He said he inherited the house from his late father. I'd say someone wants us out, but no one has troubled us."

Matibi and David said they needed a sangoma to cleanse their house.

"Right now we are even afraid to go inside," they said.

Sarah Malebo (29), a neighbour who rushed to the house when she heard the screaming, said she saw Matibi jumping out of the door as if something was chasing her.

"When I looked inside there was blood all over. This is black magic," said neighbour Mbali Mhlongo (46).

Sangoma Jabulani Mthimkhulu said the family needed a powerful sangoma to strengthen their home.

THE BIG PGI STORY

Figure 104: Blood appearing on the floor – the author are not able to categorise this occurrence between voodoo, magic, or witchcraft. The phenomena is disturbing and emphasize the prominence of blood.⁵⁴⁴

⁵⁴⁴ Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Lebuso, Sthembiso and Mdluli, Zamokuhle. Bleeding House Horror: I saw blood coming from the floor!

2020/5/19

Dead teen's body parts missing

By JOSHUA SEBOLA

MISSING Morongwa Marakalala's partially burnt body was found on Sunday.

Residents of Silvermine Village, outside Bochum in Limpopo, had been frantically searching for the 14-year-old for two weeks.

She was last seen with her 18-year-old lover.

Following Morongwa's disappearance, villagers suspected the boyfriend. The home of the lover's 63-year-old gogo was set alight last Monday.

Family member Power Marakalala (36) said Morongwa was murdered and her body later dumped on the mountain.

"We were still searching when the body was discovered on the mountain nearby by community members.

"Her body was partially burnt. The upper part was covered in black plastic and the bottom exposed.

Some body parts were missing!

Power said cops helped with the search for only two days.

Brigadier Motlafela Mojapelo said a murder case was opened, and provincial



commissioner Lieutenant-General Nneke Ledwaba had instructed investigators to waste no time in hunting down the killers.

"We also warn community members not to take the law into their own hands, but to help the police investigation," he said.

Anyone with information about the suspects can contact Warrant Officer Albert Manaka on 082 414 6634, CrimeStop on 08600 10111, or their nearest cop shop.

Last Wednesday, police arrested 13 suspects between the ages of 18 and 32 for arson after a house belonging to an old woman accused of evil deeds was set alight.

They were denied bail, but will make a formal application in the Senwabarwana Magistrates Court on Thursday.



Relative Power Marakalala says the family is suffering following Morongwa's disappearance and death.

Photo by Joshua Sebola

Figure 105: The SA Police Service and the Judiciary often do not persecute transgressors of the Witchcraft Act. In desperation and frustrated by lawlessness community kgotla/lekgotla (public meeting, community council/traditional law court) act as judge, jury, and executors of judgements. The home of the alleged murder's grandmother was set alight.⁵⁴⁵

⁵⁴⁵ Daily Sun (May 18, 2020) Sebola, Joshua. *Dead teens body parts missing*

Kagiso's haunted by the curse

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1

And now the curse that had been haunting Kagiso Molekwa (46) is no more. A prophet dug up what looked like a G-string, bottles with muthi and animal bones that had been hidden in his yard in zone 1, GaRankuwa, Tshwane.

This is after Kagiso's nephew saw a story in *Daily Sun* about a prophet helping another family.

They tracked down the prophet and called on him to use his powers to intervene.

The prophet told Kagiso the things found in his yard were causing him bad luck. Kagiso told *Daily Sun* that he had been suffering for five years.

"I couldn't ever keep a woman by my side. A fight would start and the woman would be no more," he said.

"All I did was drink away my sorrows every day and I stopped cleaning my place. Even my friends stopped visiting.

He said his tenant died mysteriously in the yard last year and he couldn't work anymore.

"When I tried to clean the yard my right shoulder became swollen."

Kagiso said he didn't even sleep in the house as he believed something was haunting him.

"When I tried to sleep I heard disturbing sounds so I slept at other people's homes."

Kagiso's nephew, Oupa Molekwa (41), told the *People's Paper* they found the prophet they had seen in the article.

"Before we could even tell him about our problems he told us everything that had happened and said there was muthi buried in the yard."

He said the prophet led them straight to a spot in Kagiso's yard where he unearthed the woman's underwear, small bottles of muthi and animal bones.

"It was clear that these things had been buried in my yard a long time ago."

He said they would wait and see if there were changes after the prophet's ritual.

Oupa said: "I'm ready to move in with my uncle and stop renting."

Prophet Jacob confirmed he had dug up muthi at the Mokoena home.

"The muthi was buried many years ago," he said.

He said whoever buried those things wanted bad things to happen to Kagiso.

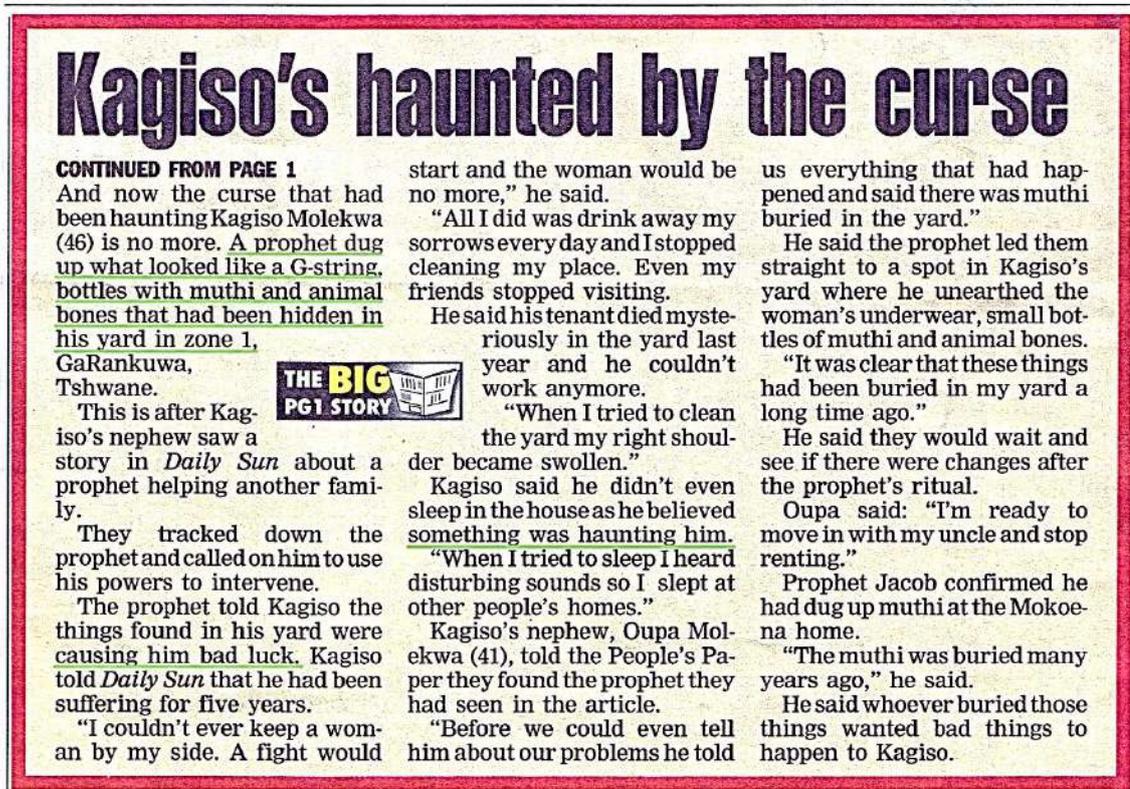


Figure 106: Witchcraft often uses personal items to curse an individual – this article reported the use of a G-string as well as animal bones to curse.⁵⁴⁶

⁵⁴⁶ Daily Sun (July 25, 2018) Kgalalelo, Tlhoalele. *G-string muthi bad luck*



Mary-Ann Orlein (left) and Grant Isaacs say this skull protects them. Photo by Modise Tau

Dog's skull keeps tokoloshe away!

By MODIRI MICHAELS
GRANT Isaacs and his girlfriend, Mary-Ann Orlein, can now sleep peacefully. They claim a tokoloshe in the form of an old woman with one leg had been terrorising them in their shack on a plot outside Bloemfontein for seven years. The couple lost their dog, Chaowa, a year ago. Now they say Chaowa's skull is protecting them from the evil tokoloshe. The couple believe that their dog was killed by the creature, since they found it with its intestines missing. Grant said they took the dog's remains to a sangoma, who told them to hang its skull among other animal skulls in front of their shack. "We did not sleep peacefully for years. I used to hear something running on top of our roof, giggling. "When I went outside to investigate I saw a short, hairy old woman with one leg running away," said Grant. "I did not believe in tokoloshes as I am Indian, but my girlfriend suggested we see a sangoma after our dog died, and I now believe there is evil." He said it seemed as if the creature had disappeared since he hung the skull in front of their shack. "I believe my dog's spirit is fighting for us," Grant said. Mary-Ann said she used to date a sangoma before she met Grant. "He used to threaten to curse me if I left him. I believe the creature was sent by him, as he did not want me to see other men," said Mary-Ann. She said they consulted a sangoma after she learned he had moved to another province and could not ask him to stop his evil deeds. "Even though my boyfriend and I sleep peacefully, our eight-month-old baby boy is still troubled by the creature. "He cries for no reason at midnight," she said. Sangoma Kingsley Maboa said: "A tokoloshe can be chased away by an animal skull that has been worked with muti. The family need to cleanse their yard."

By NTEBATSE MASIPA
THE spot next to the river is well known as a place where all kinds of people come to perform rituals. On Monday night, residents nearby saw a ball of fire as flames rose into the dark next to the Blesbok river. And the next morning horror greeted the day as another visitor to the river stumbled upon a burnt human sacrifice!

Not far from the remains of the man were a live chicken, two eggs put in a small hole, two R10 notes, a doll and sangoma clothes. Residents said it looked as if the man had been necklaced. His body was burned and his shoes and trousers were lying nearby. Residents of Etwatwa, Daventryton in Ekurhuleni told the People's Paper strange things happened next to the river. "People gather there at night.



Left: Sangoma clothes and a live chicken (right) were found next to the body of an unknown man. Photos by Phineas Khoza

"We often don't know what they do. Today a body has been found," said a resident. "This makes us all scared. Strange things happen around us and we may end up being victims one day," said residents. Gina Mohlala, who made the gruesome discovery, said she had gone to get water to take to her church. She screamed and went to the nearby house to get help. "The man had been killed in a cruel way and I was traumatised by the sight. I'll never go back there again." Captain Johannes Ramphora of Springs cop shop confirmed the murder. He said cops were looking for the relatives of the man. "Anyone who might have a missing relative or has information that could lead to the arrest of the suspects is asked to contact 08600 10111 or visit the Springs Police Station," he said.

24/8/2018

Figure 107: Both articles deal with witchcraft sacrifices: human and animal. The skull of the very dog killed are used to combat the presence of the Tokoloshe and to prevent further attacks.⁵⁴⁷

⁵⁴⁷ Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) Michaels, Modiri. Dog's skull keeps tokoloshe away! Abd Masipa, Ntebatse. *Burnt human sacrifice found at river*

www.dailysun.co.za

MARA'S MUTHI HEADACHE!



Mara Louw says she won't entertain the muthi incidents in Soweto. Photo by Lerato Maduna

Evil beer bottles found at her mum's house



Black muthi and a container were found at the gate of Mara's parents' home. Photo by Trevor Kunene

By ZAMOKUHLE MDLULI
MARA Louw has been staying with her mum ever since recovering from surgery. But it has turned out to be quite an eventful time. The famous singer and actor has decided to do some renovations at her parents' house in Mzimbhlophe, Soweto. She built a wall, installed doors and repainted the house. That seems to have attracted some unwanted attention. Last Sunday her daughter, Lerato Louw, found two beer bottles filled with what looked like black muthi at the gate. She emptied the bottles down the drain, but the next day there was another bottle at the gate, also filled with what looked like muthi. Once again, Lerato threw the bottle

away. Then on Thursday night, neighbours saw a young woman, singing and dancing, putting something on the gate of Mara's mum's house. She also left a closed container with a stone on top of it. She was confronted by the neighbours and they called Mara. "She said she had been sent to take my luck," Mara told the SunTeam. Neighbours wanted to teach the woman a lesson, but she was saved by a neighbour who begged them not to give her a beating. Mara told *Daily Sun* she was at her parents' house because the stairs at her own home made things difficult because of her hip replacement. "I grew up here and I like spending time at my parents' house. Why would someone decide to cast a spell on me?

"Maybe this is a person who was just playing," she said. She said she had never used muthi in her life. "Everything I have is through God. That is why I will not entertain this," she said. Sangoma Jabulani Mthimkhulu said that even if Mara and her family did not believe in witchcraft, they should sometimes get a traditional person to strengthen their home so that people who try their luck do not succeed.

Figure 108: The award-winning vocalist Mara Louw faith in God but it did not prohibit efforts of witchcraft to 'steal her luck'.⁵⁴⁸

⁵⁴⁸ Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Mara's muthi headache!*



Figure 109: Sangomas uses a variety of objects for divination.⁵⁴⁹

⁵⁴⁹ Daily Sun. (July 22, 2019) Mgidi, Emily. *Needles are my bones!*

www.dailysun.co.za

7

Sangoma Ivy Visagie said a mystery fire ate her indumba. Photo by Phineas Khoza



VUTHA SHOCKS SANGOMA!

By NTEBATSE MASIPA

SANGOMA Ivy Visagie (54) is well-known for being able to block vutha. But last Wednesday she was left shocked when vutha hit her indumba and her shack.

She told *Daily Sun* when her clients are about to be attacked by vutha she is able to warn them about it.

"But this time I didn't see it coming.

"I was sitting in the yard when the fire started.

"I knew it was vutha but I couldn't understand how I

missed it.

She said the fire burnt most of her things, including some of her muthi.

"The room does not even have electricity and the fire happened during the day," she said.

Ivy suspects the fire could have been sent by a rival who is seeing her business grow.

"I believe some of the sangomas in the area are unhappy to see so many people coming to my indumba."

She warned whoever had sent vutha to her indumba

that they would feel the heat.

"I'm going to speak to my ancestors and they will make them pay," she said.

Daily Sun spoke to some of her relatives who confirmed they were sitting with her outside when the fire started.

"We thought it was a joke but when we jumped up to see what was happening, part of the room was engulfed in flames," said Maria Visagie.

A friend, Dinah Moyo, said she was shocked.

"I've never seen anything like this before," she said.

Figure 110 : This article illustrated specific areas of expertise within the broader sangoma phenomena. Sangoma Ivy Visage specialises in the area of vutha (fire). The article also demonstrated various levels of authority and rival curses inspired by jealousy.⁵⁵⁰

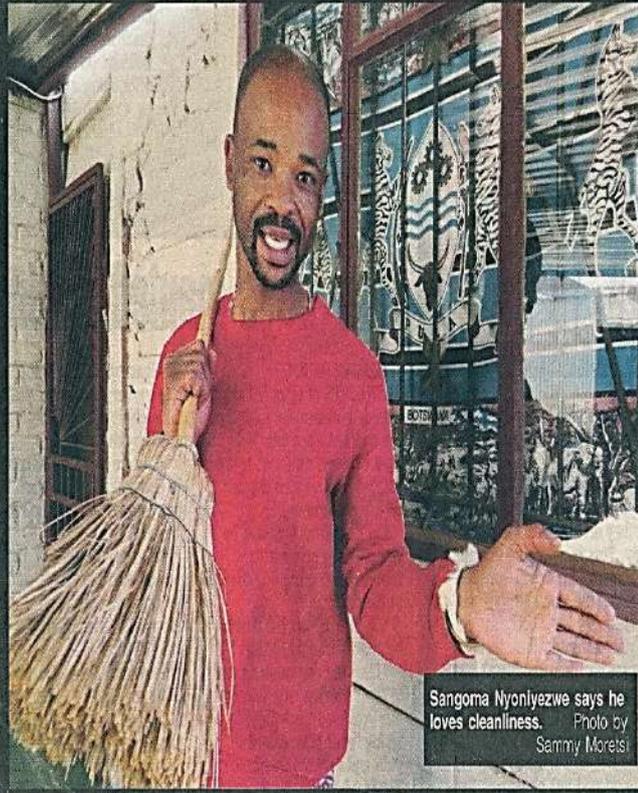
⁵⁵⁰Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Nebatse. *Vutha shocks sangoma!*

Thursday 20 September 2018

www.dailysun.co.za

3

LEAVE MY BROOM ALONE!



Sangoma Nyonyezwe says he loves cleanliness. Photo by Sammy Moretsi

Sangoma's tired of silly stories

By NTEBATSE MASIPA and SAMMY MORETSI

HE'S a clean guy and he likes a clean yard.

But many residents are walking wide circles around sangoma Nyonyezwe and his broom.

That's because the sangoma, whose real name is Amos Sephiri (35) from Uptown section in Bekkersdal, west of Joburg, sweeps his yard and the pavement in front of his house, first thing in the morning, every day of the week.

Residents told *Daily Sun* he spreads muthi when he sweeps the pavement and sometimes sprinkles water where they walk.

"We have stopped walking on the pavement," said a suspicious resident.

"Maybe he's using the same broom to fly at night and we don't want to catch bad luck."

Nyonyezwe said people must stop thinking every

sangoma or invanga is a witch.

"I love cleanliness," he said. "My job is to heal people and not to harm them. This is silly. You can't use a broom to fly. People believe silly stories."

He said he specialised in fighting tokoloshes, evil spirits and diseases.

He was trained as a sangoma in 2016.

"I didn't get into this work because I wanted to. I got sick and my ancestors told me I must do as they commanded to get healed," he said.

Nyonyezwe was an accounting manager at a government department before he became a sangoma.

"I had to quit my job to follow the calling.

"I don't regret the decision. I love being a sangoma more than anything else.

"This was meant for me," he said.

Figure 111: This article confirmed a number of significant facts: people can be cursed by muthi sprinkled on pathways, people believe witches can fly at night, sangomas specialises in specific areas (fighting tokoloshes and evil spirits and to heal). Sangomas are called and trained. Individuals often become ill until they adhere to the calling.⁵⁵¹

⁵⁵¹ Daily Sun. (September 20, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse and Moretsi, Sammy. *Leave my broom alone!*

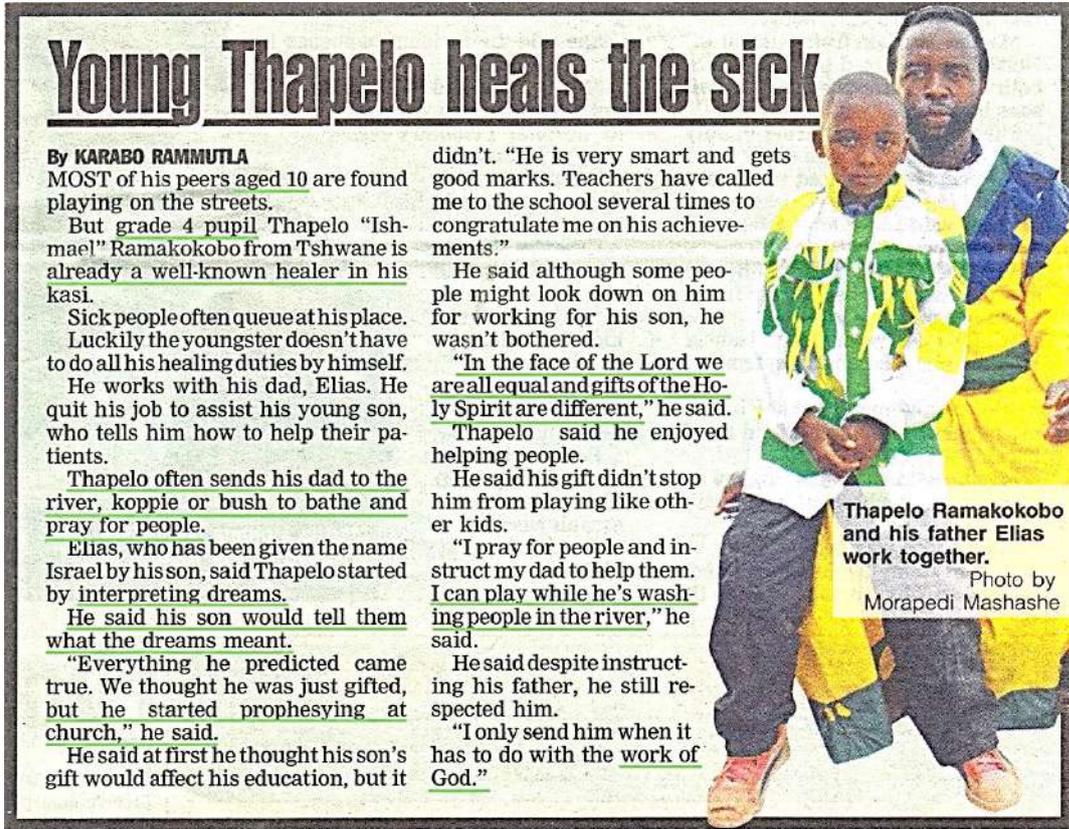


Figure 112: The article confirmed the observance to a 'calling' as Traditional Healer. It is often wrongfully perceived to be a 'calling' or 'anointing from God' and the manifested power of the Holy Spirit. Thapelo Ramakokobo sends his father Elias to do the "work of God". It also illustrated that there is no age restriction for this calling and the significance of water. "Thapelo sends his dad to the river, koppie (hill) or bush to bathe and pray for people." "I can play while he's washing people in the river" he said.⁵⁵²

⁵⁵² Daily Sun. (October 7, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. *Young Thapelo heals the sick*.



Figure 113 : Confirmation of the use of animals to curse as well as the fact that sangomas curse one another.⁵⁵³

⁵⁵³ Daily Sun (August 1, 2017) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Rats ate my bones!*

YARD OF HORRORS!

The residents of Phumula stood in the scorching sun to see what cops would find in the sangoma's yard.

By CHRISTOPHER MOAGI
A CROWD gathered in the scorching sun as police dug around in the sangoma's yard.

They peeped over each other's shoulders as they huddled underneath umbrellas to get some shade, curious to know despite the scorching sun. But in an instant their prying eyes were filled with horror.

Emerging from the dry, dusty earth, cops found the remains of dead babies!

The gruesome find was made in Phumula near Leondale in Ekurhuleni yesterday.

According to the police, the suspect, a woman aged 43 who is a sangoma but is not registered in the area, was helping another woman to perform illegal abor-

Sangoma behind bars

tions.

Ekurhuleni West cluster spokesman Captain Andre de Jager said they received information from the community and officers were sent to the house. "The unit from the victim identification centre of the police was at the scene after information was gathered that foetal remains had been buried inside the sangoma's property.

"The remains were recovered and will be sent for forensic analysis," he said.

De Jager said the suspect was arrested and detained at Alberton cop shop. She will be charged with concealment of birth.

"The suspect will appear in the Palm Ridge magistrate court soon," he said.

Sangoma Dungamanzi was shocked to hear of the incident.

He told the People's Paper: "Under no circumstances are sangomas allowed to perform abortions. Women who need to have an abortion should always be referred to hospitals."

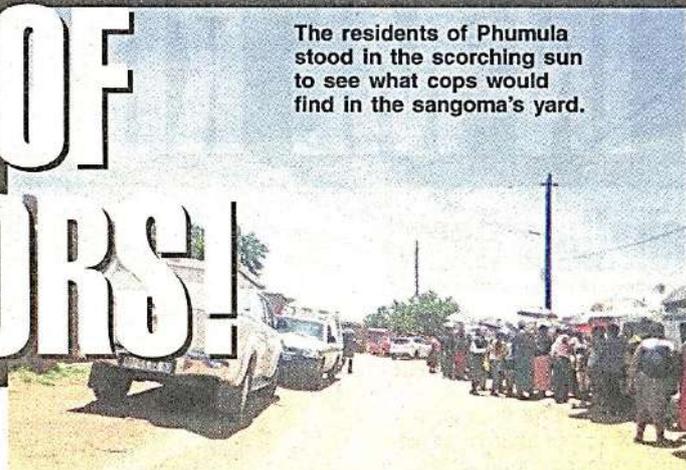


Figure 114: Remains of aborted babies found buried in a Sangoma property confirmed the belief that fetuses possess strong power to enhance the effect of muthi.⁵⁵⁴

⁵⁵⁴ Daily Sun. (November 22, 2018) Moagi, Christopher. *Yard of Horrors!*

KILLING ALBINOS WILL NOT BE MUTHI BOOST!

'We're not animals'

By THOKOZILE MNGUNI

"ALBINISM is a condition, not a lucky charm."

This was what residents were told at an awareness campaign held in Kabokweni, Mpumalanga, on Friday.

It was organised after 13-year-old Gabisile Shabani was murdered earlier this year and thugs stole body parts from the grave of Xolani Mkhize.

Gabisile and Xolani were living with albinism and it is suspected their body parts were used for muthi.

Gladys Nkosi, deputy chairwoman of the Mbombela Albinism Support Group, said people with albinism should be treated like everyone else.

"I've been called names and mocked about this condition. People need to understand the only difference between us and them is the colour of our skin."



The Kabokweni community marches against the killing of people with albinism. Photo by Thokozile Mnguni

Gladys said people with albinism usually had eye problems and sensitive skin.

"We are not animals and sangomas should stop killing us, thinking their muthi will be stronger," she said.

Lizzy Nyalungu, Mbombela's strategic management services MMC, said they organised the event to educate residents.

"There are so many superstitions about

albinos and we need to put an end to this."

Provincial chairman of the Traditional Healers' Association Fanie Mashaba told *Daily Sun* people killing those with albinism for muthi were not real healers. He said healers had to ensure people felt safe.

"We encourage them to invite us to their gatherings so we can offer support and explain how real healers operate."

Figure 115: Murder inspired by the superstition of the enhanced power of muthi if it contains albino body parts.⁵⁵⁵

⁵⁵⁵ Daily Sun. (June 11, 2018) Mnguni, Thokozile. *Killing Albinos Will Not Be Muthi Boost!*

I'M A HUMAN BEING!
Singer fights for albinos

BAMAKO, MALI
SINGER and activist for people living with albinism, Salif Keita, has dedicated a benefit concert to a five-year-old girl who was killed in Mali in May.

The Saturday night concert in Fana came after a meeting he organised on Friday for the protection of people living with albinism.

Over 100 politicians, diplomats and people living with albinism attended the meeting.

Keita said they were being persecuted and ridiculed in Mali and African countries, with violence often increasing around elections.

The activist said they are born the same and have the same rights as everyone else.

Rights groups have warned of the risk of more attacks in Tanzania, which has just begun campaigning for the coming elections.

Politicians have been accused of buying body parts for witchcraft and lucky charms.

UN experts said 76 people living with albinism in Tanzania have been murdered since 2000, with their body parts selling for about \$600 (about R8 400) and entire bodies fetching \$75 000 (about R1million).

Kenyan politician Isaac Mwaura, who has albinism, said after Tanzanian gangs carried out kidnappings in his country, he is caring for two children rescued from them.

"Africa has had a long history of racism, but we work to stop that. Albinos are black people with white skin," he said when he met Keita.

Keita said he hoped that by speaking out and by playing his music, he could send a message to stop the attacks, which often target kids.

"When people hear me on the microphone and see me on the camera, that has an impact.

"I show I'm a complete human being, just like everyone else. Just like everyone else, albinos need to be loved and seen as normal people." - NEWS24

TRIPOLI, LIBYA
AUTHORITY against violence against migrant children and torture. They were

TOP OF THE WORLD

Famous musician Salif Keita organised a benefit concert on Saturday for five-year-old girl who died in May.
Photo by Tebogo Letsie

Amongst Heba Moraynasty Interr was a clear-skinned person. No one should be held in face torture. Libya renounces African migrants in EU

Figure 116: Specific awareness campaigns in order to address the superstition and threat to people with Albinism.⁵⁵⁶

⁵⁵⁶ Daily Sun. November 20, 2018) Mali, Bamako. *I'm a Human Being!*



Figure 117 : Desperate harvesters of body parts did not kill the victim in an effort to take her heart. Specific organs holds specific powers. Sangomas do not necessarily provide the needed ingredients. The acquisition thereof remains the responsibility of the clients.⁵⁵⁷

⁵⁵⁷ Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killers wanted my heart!*



Figure 118: Tongues, breasts, nipples, and reproductive organ (punani) are believed to hold specific power⁵⁵⁸

⁵⁵⁸ Daily Sun. Tlhoale, Kga lalalo. *Chopped up for R50k!*

KILLED FOR HER NIPPLES!



From left: Mum Nonfuxo Mhlekwana and aunts Node Bhiva, Priscilla Zweni, Philiswa Nogudliwa and Nowongile Memani are in mourning.

By NTEBATSE MASIPA

NOLUVUYO Mhlekwana (27) died last Friday after she was stabbed in the neck and her nipples cut off.

"When we examined Nolvuyoyo's body, the nipples were missing," her aunt Node Bhiva (49) said.

"We don't know what those killers wanted to do with them."

She said they wanted the people responsible to face the full might of the law.

"My niece is now going to be buried with some of her body parts missing."

Nolvuyoyo from Kagiso extension 13, west of Joburg, attended her niece's birthday party hours before she



Nolvuyoyo Mhlekwana's body was found last Friday.

Nolvuyoyo dies after party

was killed.

"After the party, Nolvuyoyo went to the tavern, and the next morning a relative called to say they had found her and she was badly hurt. "I rushed to the scene but she was already dead."

Captain Solomon Sibiya confirmed nipples had been removed from a body found lying next to the tavern's toilet.

He said no one had been bust and cops were looking for the suspects.

"Her friend identified her at the scene

and her family was called."

Sibiya said investigations would show if Nolvuyoyo was raped before she was murdered.

Anyone with information must call Kagiso detectives at 011 696 9059 or CrimeStop on 08600 10111.

Sangoma Khosi Dlamini told *Daily Sun* nipples can be used in muthi, either to attract women or to attract business.

"It's dried, mixed with muthi and put in a lotion. Once applied on the face and body it is used to attract women.

"If it's taken from a woman who's recently given birth or is breastfeeding, it's used for fertility."

Figure 119: Nipples is believed to enhance the power of muthi⁵⁵⁹

⁵⁵⁹ Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killed for her nipples!*

Part of mkhulu's penis cut off!

2020/09/25

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1

Mkhulu Kwepileni Mtsokoba (74) died on 16 September from diabetes.

When his body was removed from his home in Daveyton, Ekurhuleni, his body parts were intact.

But his family went to the mortuary to wash his body on Wednesday and found his private parts had been mutilated.

Mbonisi Mtsokoba said his dad was certified dead at his home by paramedics. The body was collected by the local mortuary in Etwatwa, Ekurhuleni.

The owner of Hlokomelang Mortuary, Jobe Radebe, told *Daily Sun* he requested the owner of Mavutha Funeral Parlour in Etwatwa to store the body, so the family could easily access the body.

His mortuary is in Sebokeng.

"I can confirm a part of the penis had been cut off," said Radebe.

"Wedon't know who did it. I want the family to allow us to take the body to forensics to determine which object was used."

But the family said keeping the body for a long time would cost them money they don't have.

"We wish this could be done faster because preparations for the funeral are almost complete," said Mbonisi.

We're planning to take the body to his last resting place in the Eastern Cape."

Mbonisi said it looked as if a sharp object was used.

A case was opened at Etwatwa Police Station.

They wanted to give their elder a decent funeral.

"I don't think my father will find peace unless we find the truth," said Mbonisi.

"The people who did this must tell the family where they took his parts.

"My dad was a good man. He didn't deserve to be violated."

mostly boost businesses.

"The dead person feels violated and the family have to do a cleansing ceremony," he said.

"They have to do ukuphahla and tell him he's going to his resting place without the parts lost. That way he won't haunt anyone."

Joyce Goge, a manager at Mavutha Funeral Parlour, said they were waiting for a pathology report to explain what had happened and clear their name.

Sergeant Khen-sani Mathebula of Etwatwa cop shop confirmed that a case was opened

and transferred to a unit that dealt with body parts.

Johan Rousseau of the Funeral Industry Reformed Association said: "There's no regulatory organisation and some culprits go without being punished."

Rousseau said body parts can be used for muthi and sold in the black market.



Figure 120: Genitalia is believed to holds great power as a Muthi ingredient, regardless of if fact that the 'victim' was murdered or already diseased. ⁵⁶⁰

⁵⁶⁰ Daily Sun. (September 25, 2020) *Part of Mkhulu's penis cut off!*



Figure 121: Article in Volksblad Newspaper (1994) reported on the ceremony in Soweto to notify ancestors of the new era of peace between black and white South Africans.⁵⁶¹

⁵⁶¹ Volksblad. (July 21, 1994) *Vredesbloed vloeï vir Roelf in Soweto*

DUMPED BY HIS ANCESTORS!



REJECTED: Thembi Madondo had a great relationship with her man.
Photo by Zamokuhle Mdluli

Lover's heart broke into a million tiny pieces

By ZAMOKUHLE MDLULI
JOSEPH COULD talk of nothing other than being married to his Thembi.
And Thembi couldn't wait to say "Yes" when he finally popped the question.

BUT THE ANCESTORS HAVE SLAPPED A BIG CONTINUED ON PAGE 2



Like father, like son . . .

Former president Jacob Zuma was seen chuckling with his son Duduzane during his appearance at the Randburg Magistrates Court in Joburg yesterday.
Photo by Deaan Vivier

See story on page 5

Figure 122: The picture of President Zuma is taken in court. Regardless ordainment as a honorary neo-Pentecostal minister, he amalgamates Christianity and the veneration of forefathers.⁵⁶²

⁵⁶² Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) *Like father, like son ...*



Figure 123: With the aim to intimidate the mayor of Saldanha Bay, the head of a sheep, dead birds, and a living Tortoise with a red ribbon around his neck were placed on the porch of the Mayors house. These items were meticulously chosen.⁵⁶³

⁵⁶³ Beeld. (August 23, 2016) Feliz, Jason. *Burgermeester kry gru-vonds in bebloede laken*.



Figure 124: ANC Your leader and anti-corruption activist relied on muthi 'to protect himself from being murdered'. The author also noted the multi spirituality in one family when the acritical stated that his family prays for this protection whilst he has a strong belief in the correct use of muthi. ⁵⁶⁴

⁵⁶⁴ Daily Sun. (November 28, 2017) *My muthi stops killers!*

DUMMIES OF FEAR!

Sangoma has muthi guards

By NTEBATSE MASIPA and SAMMY MORETSI
THUGS who think they can rob this sangoma or take cars from his yard can forget about it.

That's because sangoma Mahlabe Zulu has no less than three security guards protecting him and his family.

But his protectors are not men of flesh and blood, but three dummies that have magic muthi inside!

Sangoma Mahlabe said each of the three dummies had its own duty.

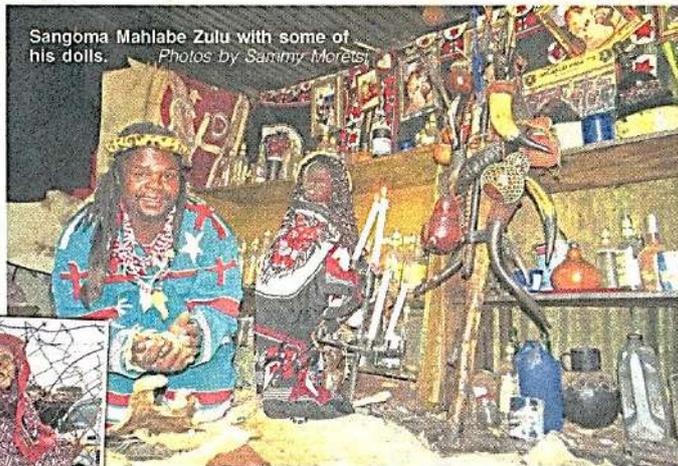
One dummy is for guarding his cars, another is for scaring thugs at the gate and one stays inside his indumba.

During the day, they look like normal mannequins, but at night they turn into scary creatures.

"These dummies are like security guards. Thugs and bad people don't dare come near my house," he said.

The dummy standing next to his cars wears a reflector. He named it Somhlolo and said it performed miracles at night,

Sangoma Mahlabe Zulu with some of his dolls. Photos by Sammy Moretsi



hence the name.

"At night, my family sleep peacefully. I don't fear that my cars will be stolen," he said.

Daily Sun spoke to residents in the area who said they feared going too close to the sangoma's yard at night.

"We hear that those dolls are more than just dolls." The sangoma said he wasn't keeping the dolls to himself.

"People come to ask for the same and I help them," he said.

He said most of his customers are those looking for help to secure their cars. "It's a well-known fact that you need to be protected when driving as there are many evil spirits around."

"These dummies have also helped people haunted by tokoloshes."

He said most of his clients preferred small dolls to put in their cars to protect them from having accidents.

Figure 125: Regardless, the general fear or apprehensiveness towards Sangomas, they are not excluded from crime. "Dummies" (mannequins) are placed on the premises of the Sangoma for protection. Clients also make use of smaller dolls in their vehicles to protect them from accidents. Sangoma Mahlabe Zulu recognised evil spirits from whom protection are required, indicating discernment of the reality of the Kingdom of Light and Kingdom of Darkness. Ironically, her own practice also operates in the Kingdom of Darkness.⁵⁶⁵

⁵⁶⁵ Daily Sun (October 23, 2018) Mahopo, Zoë. *Dummies of Fear!*

Monday 12 November 2018

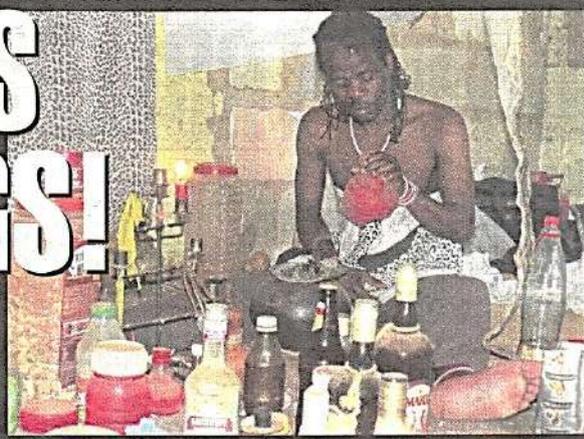
www.dailysun.co.za

ANCESTORS BUST THUGS!

Tsotsis are no match for muthi

Sangoma
Thandabangoma
Myeza shows the
SunTeam how he
burned muthi to
help bust the thugs.

Photo by
Sammy Moreisi



By NTEBATSE MASIPA and SAMMY MOREISI
THE two thugs stole from a sangoma and thought no one had seen them.

But Thandabangoma Myeza (42) was peeping through the window and watching as they fled.

Thandabangoma immediately burned madubula muthi, asking the ancestors to bust them.

Within minutes the thugs were caught and moored by vigilant community members.

The thugs were saved by cops and taken to hospital, where they're fighting for their lives.

The happy sangoma from Spooktown in Bekkersdal said he was grateful to the ancestors.

He said he was able to recover all the items the thugs had stolen from his

shack, as well as an exhaust pipe that had been removed from his car.

Thandabangoma said he was in bed when the thugs broke into his yard.

"I woke up and peeped through the window. I saw two men running away," he said.

"I didn't want to chase them but went to my indumba to burn the madubula and other muthi."

Thandabangoma said within seconds he got answers.

"Thugs shouldn't steal from sangomas because they're inviting bad luck.

"Look at these thugs. They're in hospital now and in pain and will soon be in jail," said Myeza.

Residents said they were tired of being harassed by thugs.

They told *Daily Sun* they saw two

people running and gave chase.

"We caught up with them and they confessed to have stolen the goods," said Ananius Mlambo.

"The residents became angry and in no time they were surrounded and beaten with everything people could find.

Another resident said: "They must thank the cops for saving them because they were going to die."

Bekkersdal police spokeswoman Sergeant Linki Lefakane told *Daily Sun* a case of theft and possession of stolen property was opened.

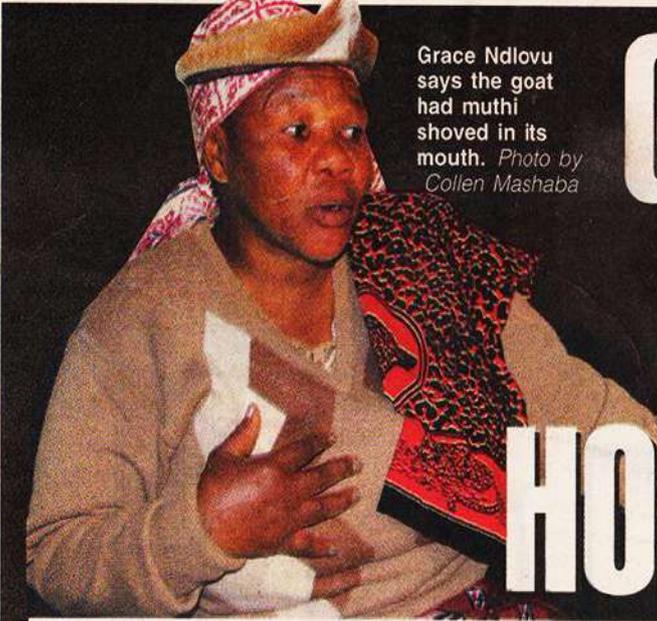
She said two suspects, aged 18 and 30, were admitted to Leratong Hospital.

But Lefakane urged communities to stop taking the law into their own hands.

Figure 126: Sangomas are not excluded from falling victim to crime. Their spirituality is vital in combatting crime and the pivotal in protection and retribution. ⁵⁶⁶

⁵⁶⁶ Daily Sun (November 12, 2018) Khambule, Lethabo. *Ancestors bust thugs!*

Tuesday 3 July 2018 www.dailysun.co.za



Grace Ndlovu says the goat had muthi shoved in its mouth. Photo by Collen Mashaba

GOAT'S HEAD HORROR!

By LETHABO KHAMBULE
HER daughter was usually the one who swept the yard.

But on Sunday morning sangoma Grace Ndlovu decided to take the broom and do the work herself.

As she was sweeping, a small piece of horn sticking up from the ground behind her ndumba caught her eye.

And when she got a shovel and dug, she made a horror find of a dead goat's head!

"To my surprise I dug out a black goat's head," said the well-known sangoma from Lawley, south of Joburg.

"It was still fresh and it's clear it was buried the night before."

Sangoma Grace told *Daily Sun* a black goat was used for witchcraft.

She said her ancestors led her to the buried goat, which had muthi shoved in its mouth.

Along with other sangomas, they immediately performed rituals and burnt it.

Sangoma Grace said the night before the discovery, her family members weren't feeling well.

She said this was an act of jealousy because of her gift for helping people.

She has been practising as a sangoma since 1983. She said something of this nature had never happened to her.

"I'm not scared of the people who plot evil against me because I'm gifted to fight it," said Grace.



The goat's head found in Grace's yard.

Figure 127: Goats are not only valuable for ancestral sacrifices, but also for witchcraft. The author noted that black (black goats, black chickens) are also indicative of power. Mr Makhubo also confirmed that physical features such as blue eyes of a Husky and especially if the colour of the any animal's eyes vary, is perceived as powerful muthi.⁵⁶⁷

⁵⁶⁷ Daily Sun. (July 3, 2018) Khambule, Lethabo. *Goat's head horror!*



Figure 128: Article gave evidence of the perceived power of black chickens.⁵⁶⁸

⁵⁶⁸ Daily Sun (September 22, 2020) *I don't want to part of evil practices*

'Ghost's trying to ruin the family'

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1
ghost for the past year.

The family rented a back room before they bought the house a year ago.

"It comes for dinner," said a 38-year-old woman in the family.

"It eats our food and gets angry when there is not enough."

The 45-year-old mother of the children said the spook is very aggressive.

"It slams doors and knocks things over. It makes a noise on the roof. When we sleep it moves the pots and kitchen cupboards. It finishes our groceries and money and then disappears."

One of the kids in the house said he had seen the ghost.

"I was coming from the toilet to join the family in the dining room when I saw the ghost of a woman in the way. I screamed

and ran away," said the child.

The mother said after the incident she saw the ghost in her dreams.

"It comes in the form of people that we know or scary creatures," she said.

The family of five moved into the house in Protea Glen, Soweto last year.

The mum said they are really struggling.

"My son is doing badly at school and my daughter feels as if she is being choked at night. My throat is also sore. It feels as if I am being choked. It's really bad when there isn't any food in the house."

She said she has had problem getting a job but her 25-year-old daughter, an accountant, bought the house.

"We have never prayed this hard before," she said.

The mother's sister said the hungry ghost can't bully the family into leaving the house.

"We have been to many sangomas and prophets but this thing won't leave us alone. We need help," she said.

The family recently consulted sangoma Mkhulu Khubeka.

He said the house is haunted by an evil spirit which wants to ruin their lives.

"It keeps taking and taking because it wants them to suffer," he told *Daily Sun*.

Sangoma Joseph Dungamazi recommended a strong inyan-ga.

He said: "The family is haunted by the restless spirit of the ghost.

"It takes food and takes things they really need, like money and food."



Figure 129: The article was titled "Haunted by a Hungry ghost". The spiritual entity ruins the family household budget. "It takes food and things we really need, like money." A sangoma confirmed the house is haunted and as such confirmed that spiritual entities are often confined to a specific territory. The family sought advice from sangomas and prophets, acknowledging the African spiritual authority as well as the supposedly authority of Christian prophets.⁵⁶⁹

⁵⁶⁹ Daily Sun (July 15, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *Haunted by one hungry ghost*

Sangoma advises Shila to act fast!

By EMILY MGIDI

SHILA Singo (45) told *Daily Sun* that sometimes on Thursday mornings there's a knock at the door, but when they open the door there's nobody there.

And they find muthi on the doorstep.

The family from Alexandra, Joburg, said they fear bad things might happen.

Shila said before they started getting the visits, her pastor told her he had seen someone coming into her yard on a Thursday and taking the imprints of her footsteps.

Shila doesn't remember the dates, but the first incident happened in February, in April, and then last Thursday.

Then there was more muthi on Sunday, 7 July, and the latest one was on Thursday, 11 July.

She said sometimes the muthi was surrounded by matchsticks.

"I'm a person who prays, but I'm shaken by this," she said.

"I have a son whose faith might not be as strong as mine, and I need to protect him."

Shila's brother Richard (37) said he'd do everything in his power to make sure they catch whoever is leaving the muthi.

"My sister is scared of going to sangomas, but I'm willing to go to protect her," he said.

Sangoma Joseph Dungamanzi rolled the bones and told *Daily Sun* the muthi was placed by someone who doesn't live far from Shila. He said this was a plan to make her move out of the house.

"This problem can be fixed but she needs to consult a sangoma fast."



Shila Singo says she finds muthi on her doorstep every Thursday. Photo by Muntu Nkosi

Figure 130: Not everybody have the courage to consult Sangomas. Muthi was placed on the doorstep to entice fear to cause the lady to relocate and abandon her home. Whoever used the muthi probably aimed to claim the property.⁵⁷⁰

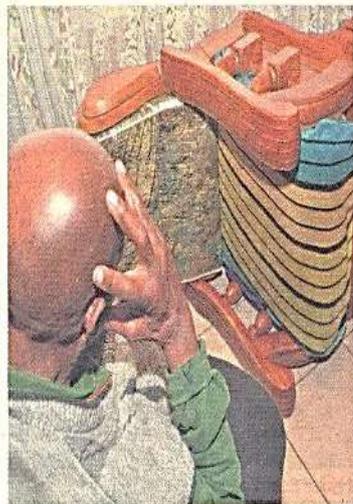
⁵⁷⁰ Daily Sun

Thursday 6 September 2018

DAILY SUN

5

FAMILY'S TOKOLOSHE HELL!



Madala Richard Rahlogo is even scared to sit on his favourite chair because the tokoloshe turns it upside down and he falls. Photos by Morapedi Mashashe

It wants to use our house as a den

By KARABO RAMMUTLA

THE FAMILY couldn't explain the disappearance of their granddaughter's school books.

But that was only the beginning of a life of hell for the Rahlogo family.

They did not know that a tokoloshe was taking over their house!

Madala Richard Rahlogo (72) said it has been a month of hell since the tokoloshe arrived at their house in Mamelodi East, Tshwane.

"My granddaughter needed her books to do her homework and we all searched everywhere without any luck," he said.

He said the tokoloshe overturned the chair he was sitting on and he fell to the floor.

Then the unseen creature started ripping down the curtains.

"We ran outside into the street in terror," he said. "Then we realised that whatever was vandalising our house was responsible for stealing the books as well."

Since then, the creature tears down curtains, spills food and sprinkles soap powder on beds.

He said they called a sangoma to come and help them but she ran away. "The sangoma was beaten. She ran for her life, leaving some of her stuff behind."

He said they were advised to ask prophets for help since the sangoma could not help. "The prophet came with water but as soon as he put it



The bin has to be emptied every night or the family finds rubbish spilled all over the kitchen.

down the tokoloshe took over.

"It sprinkled us with that water and threw the Bible outside."

"Maybe Sun Readers can help us. I'm a pensioner and I've spent all my money on sangomas and prophets."

Prophet Makgonatjohle Seaparo said the family needs to be cleansed.

He said the tokoloshe wants to use their house as its den.

Figure 131: The Tokoloshe stole books and vandalise home. The extraordinary high unemployment rate is directly associated with education. Stolen books and the rampage of torn curtains, food spillage and general vandalism by a Tokoloshe implies tremendous economic consequences.⁵⁷¹

⁵⁷¹ Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. Family's tokoloshe hell!

12/11/2018

3



Phumelela Jacob wants the law to take its course so that she can get her hard-earned cash back. Photo by Lulekwa Mbadamane

'Sangoma ruined my life!'

By BUZIWE NOCUZE
SHE quit her job after a fake sangoma convinced her to do so.

He ran away with her life savings.

But as fate would have it, the man recently walked into the supermarket where Phumelela Jacob (41) worked.

"It is God's way. I know this man thought he would never see me again. But that's why I called the police," said Phumelela, from Philippi East in Cape Town.

She said the man from Malawi ruined her life last year when he conned her out of R375 000.

He promised to double the money.

"I wanted to start a business and I saw his number in one of the local newspapers. I called and met him.

"He told me to resign from work so he could double my money," said Phumelela.

She said she followed his instructions and resigned.

The con man visited Phumelela at her house, where he took R6 800 and mixed it with eggs and locked it in a box.

Once Phumelela's pension was paid out, she contacted the man.

She said they went to Promenade Mall in Mitchell's Plain to withdraw the money.

"When we arrived at the bank, he had a dirty white plastic bag where we put all my money.

"We then went back to my house where he dropped me off, saying he had to take the money to the beach to the ancestors," she said.

"That man planned everything carefully."

Captain Siyabulela Vukubi from Harare police confirmed that a 38-year-old suspect had recently been arrested.

The man appeared in the Khayelitsha Magistrates Court last Monday on charges of theft under false pretences.

He remains in custody.

Figure 132: Faith in Sangomas convince people to make decisions with financial implications.

Phumelela Jacob resigned from employment on advice from 'sangoma'. The fact that the sangoma was apparently not authentic, does not nullify the complete trust and faith in their rulings.⁵⁷²

⁵⁷² Daily Sun. (November 12, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma ruined my life!*

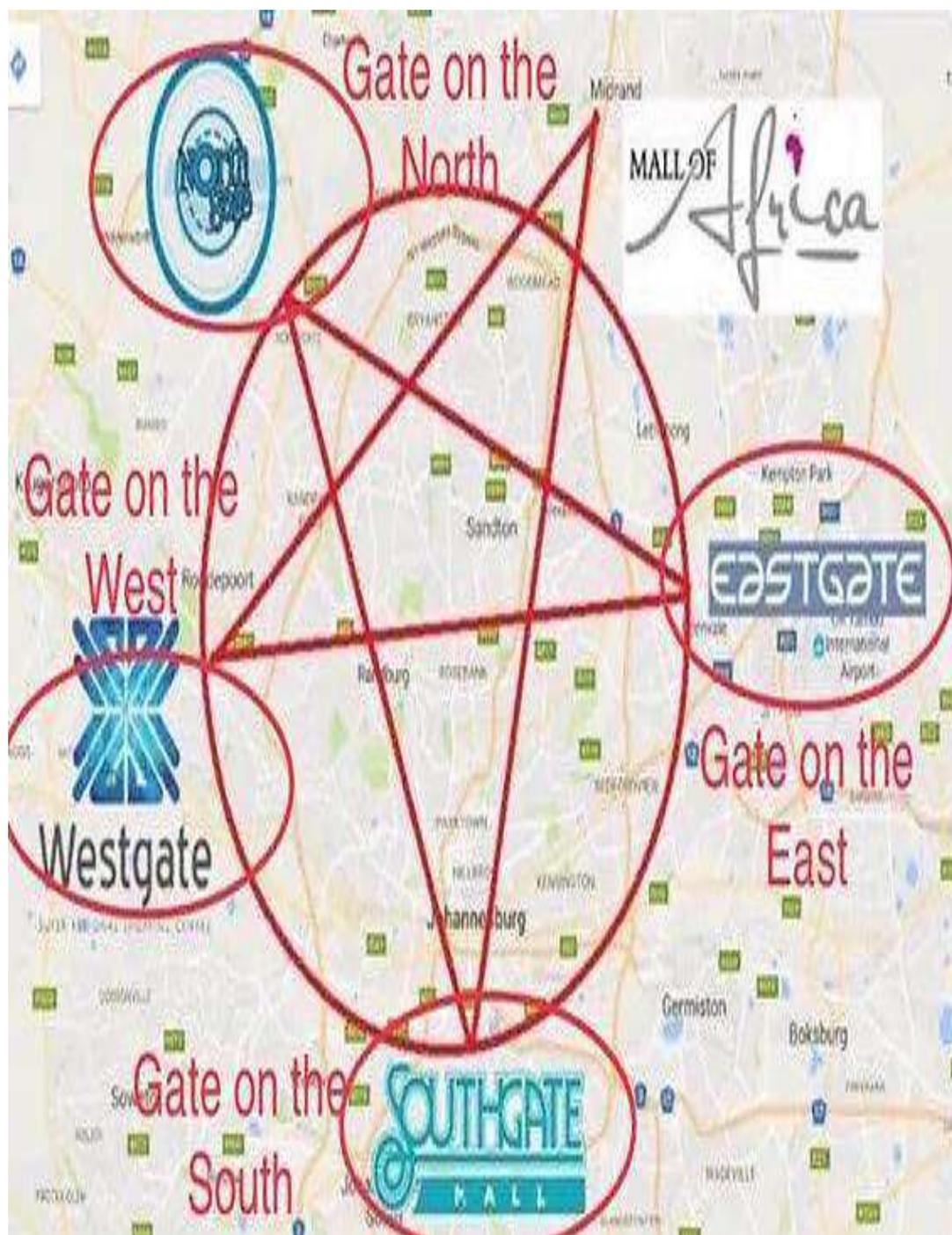


Figure 133: The so-called black magic circle of consumption of Johannesburg.⁵⁷³

⁵⁷³ Mitole, Dr. Edward Yusuf (June 17, 2019) *Johannesburg's Black Magic Circle of Consumption*. Available at: <https://uncensoredopinion.co.za/johannesburgs-black-magic-circle-of-consumption/>



DR. MUSA
INYANGA WE ZINTU ZONKE ENKING ZONKE
082 487 1942

1. Ukhulis ubudoda.....Ho Hodis Botona -R300
2. Uⁿ Khuphelisa Ubuthakathi.....Ho Fedisa Boloyi-R120
3. Ukhvuvuka Umzimba.....Ruruga Mmele Le Maoto-R50
4. Amaswa / Amabhadi.....Madimabe-R80
5. Ukhubuyisa Isithandwa.....Ho Hgutlisa Moratuwa-R70
6. Ukhuhlula Amatyalala.....Ho Hlola Molaong-R220
7. Ukuvimbela Amasela.....HoThibela Boshodu-R190
8. Ushukela Ne Bp.....Ho Hloka Mosebetsi-R170
9. Ukungafumani Msebenzi.....Ho Hloka Mosebetsi-R90
10. Ukunyusulwa Emsebenzini.....Ho Phahamiswa Mosebeting
11. Ukuqinisa Umuzi Wakho.....Ho Tiisa Letapa Lahao-R12
12. Ukungazali.....Mathatha Apelehi-R90
13. Ukuwina Ilotto Ne Khasino.....Mo Hapa Lotto Le Casino-F
14. Ukulisa Hips Na Mablele.....Ho Hodisa Hips+ breasts-R200
15. Ukubiza Amakhastama.....Ho Hopa Bareki Le Hohodisa Kdwebo-R20
16. Amalanga Amaningi Kalhulu.....Matsatsi Amagatha Haholo-R110
17. Izinto Zo Kuthambisa.....Creams-R100
18. Ukuwina Ubufazi.....Ho Tiisa Bosadi-R200
19. Tb Ne Hiv & Aids.....Tb Ne Hiv & Aids-R180
20. Inkinga Zo Kungabinamali.....Mathata Ha Ho Hloka Tnyelete-R110





CALL FOR APPOINTMENT
CELL: 082 487 1942

MALCOLM PRINTERS @ 0604422951



DR. MUSA
TRADITIONAL HERBALIST & SPIRITUAL HEALER
082 487 1942

WE USE HERBS TO TREAT & SOLVE THE FOLLOWING

SEXUAL PROBLEMS

- BRING BACK LOST LOVER AND MAKE STRONG LOVE
- GET MARRIED QUICKLY
- TROUBLED RELATIONSHIP
- BE LIKED AT WORK
- ATTRACT MEN & WOMEN
- DO YOU WANT TO STOP DIVORCE FROM YOUR PARTNER

OTHER PROBLEMS & DISEASES

- WIN COURT CASES & GET HIM OUT OF JAIL.....R500
- WIN LOTTO.....R200
- PASS EXAMS.....R100
- CUSTOMER ATTRACTION.....R170
- PROMOTION AT WORK.....R170
- PREGNANCY PROBLEMS.....R140
- LACK OF STRENGTH IN THE BODY.....R50
- SWOLLEN BODY.....R30
- HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE.....R190
- HIV SYMPTOMS.....R70
- DIABETES.....R300
- CHASE AWAY TOKOLOSHE.....R190
- BEWITCHED PEOPLE.....R500
- BAD LUCK.....R170
- PIG LICE.....R80





CALL FOR APPOINTMENT
CELL: 082 487 1942

MALCOLM PRINTERS @ 0604422951

Figure 134: Dr. Musa advertisement included a cost schedule. In addition, the advertisement printing and distribution cost contribute to the economy.⁵⁷⁴

⁵⁷⁴ Pamphlet handed out at traffic light as advertisement.

Sangoma sees with her hands

By **BUZIWE NOCUZE**

SANGOMA Nonkululeko may have lost her eyesight, but that has not stopped her from healing people.

"My ancestors show me the herbs. I also feel them with my hands and smell them with my nose and I know which I must use to help my patients," said Alicia Fuma (67) from Barcelona, Lower Crossroads in Cape Town.

She started losing her eyesight due to diabetes four years ago and doctors have not been able to help her.

"At first I was stressed. I did not know how I would continue to heal people without seeing them and the herbs that I mix," she said.

"But my ancestors helped me and I know what to do."

Sangoma Alicia lives with her daughter after her house was attacked by vutha three weeks ago.

"The fire came out of the wardrobe and onto my bed. Whoever sent that fire knows that I can't see, but they did not know how strong my ancestors are."

She said people living with a disability should stop feeling sorry for themselves and do things for themselves.

"It is important to get used to new situations. I could easily have forgotten about my calling after I went blind, but I did not do that," she said.

She uses a small corner in a room where she sleeps to store her herbs.

"I lost everything in the fire, including my beads and sangoma clothing. Now I am working in my daughter's house. There are kids here and the space is too small. I wish someone could help me fix my house," she said.

Her daughter, Nontsikelelo Fuma (42), said they could not clean up her mother's house because the police told them not to touch anything.

"They have not returned since the fire and the police tape is still cordoning off the scene," she said.



Alicia Fuma lost her eyesight, but still knows which muthi to use. Insert: Zandile Fuma in Alicia's burnt house.

Photo by Lulekwa Mbadamane

6/9/2018

Figure 135: Jealousy of clients/patients and the income it generates is often a motivation for sangomas to curse one another. Fire came from Sangoma Nonkululeko's wardrobe and onto her bed before destroying her home. She relies on her ancestors and her smell to identify her herb-medicine. ⁵⁷⁵

⁵⁷⁵ Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma sees with her hands*.

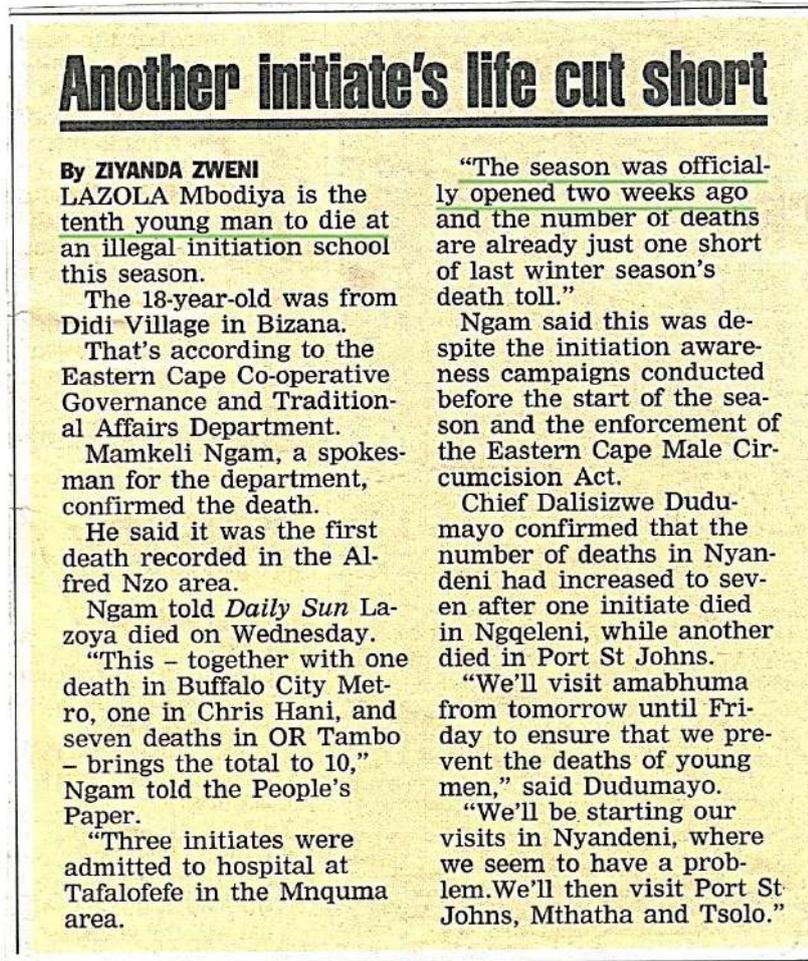


Figure 136: This article confirms a few facts: Legal and illegal initiation schools, deaths are recorded annually, several boys need to be hospitalised annually, initiation schools are diarised in a specific season, the authority of traditional leaders are still recognised parallel to three levels of 'official political system' with democratically elected representatives.⁵⁷⁶

⁵⁷⁶ Daily Sun. (July 3, 2018) Zweni, Ziyanda. Another initiate's life cut short.

Initiate aged 8 dies

By **JOSHUA SEBOLA**

WHEN the Limpopo initiation season was launched earlier this month, promises were made that no one under the age of 12 would be initiated.

But an eight-year-old boy is among three initiates who have died in Limpopo since the season began.

Chief Malesela Dikgale, chairman of the Limpopo House of Traditional Leaders, said they were concerned about the deaths recorded so far.

He told *Daily Sun* the three boys died at three initiation schools in Sekhukhune, Mopani and Waterberg districts.

"This is unacceptable. One of the schools ignored the legal age limit, which is 12 years. Another, in Sekhukhune, was operating illegally," he said.

He said action would be taken against all illegal schools and those that failed to obey the rules.

Limpopo police spokesman Colonel Moatshe Ngoepe said three inquest dockets had been opened.

"The deaths of the three initiates are still under police investigation. We are still going to conduct autopsies to determine what the cause of death was," said Ngoepe.



Chief Malesela Dikgale. Photo by Judas Sekwela

Figure 137: The article confirms the age restriction for male initiation schools (12 years), annual deaths and a specific season for Initiation schools.⁵⁷⁷

⁵⁷⁷ Daily Sun. (June 27, 2019) Sebola, Joshua. Initiate aged 8 dies



Figure 138: “Graduates” of the Initiation School transition from boys to men. The author was witness to the problematic consequence of the graduation of boys to men where a mother had the urgently consult with a local chief to have her boy send home before graduation. She was concerned that he will not complete his Secondary (High) School as “men do not go to school”. Being considered a “man” she would have forfeited her authority to force him to attend school.⁵⁷⁸

⁵⁷⁸ Daily Sun. (July 9, 2018) Mthimunya, Bongani and Zweni, Ziyanda. *Safely Back Home as Men!*

Monday 2 July 2018

www.dailysun.co.za

I LIKE XHOSA WAYS!

Jonathan learnt a lot in the bush

By MBULELO SISULU and ZIYANDA ZWENI
WITH the deaths of abakhwetha hanging over the initiation season, it's a surprise to find someone like Jonathan Paulin (18) at bush school.

Jonathan, whose mum is Xhosa but whose dad is white, has been going through the ancient rite of passage to become a man since the past few days.

Asked how he convinced his parents, he told *Daily Sun*: "I reminded them it wasn't circumcision that killed the initiates but only those who didn't know how to do it."

Jonathan from Mdantsane NU7 in East London said he was determined to prove that circumcision wasn't meant to kill abakhwetha.

He told the *People's Paper*: "I used to visit my mum's family during school holidays and made friends with Xhosa guys.

"One day, I saw my friends eating delicious meat during a traditional function but wasn't allowed to join them because I was not circumcised.

"They called me a boy."
Jonathan said he then decided to become circumcised like them.

"I decided to do it the Xhosa way because I like this culture and its traditions.



Initiate Jonathan Paulin with his uncle, Madoda Bekwa. Photo by Mbulelo Sisulu

"I told my father that nothing bad would happen to me. He was very happy to see me healthy when he visited."

He said initiation school taught him a lot.

"I now know how a real man should behave.

"Apart from that, I ate delicious meat, the right leg of a goat, intsonyama.

"I am very happy to be a man. Now other men won't chase me away from traditional functions.

"At home, I sleep on a comfortable bed but I don't miss it because I'm happy here. I even adopted the name of my mother's clan. Now I am Leta Mntakwende," he said.

Jonathan's uncle, Madoda Bekwa (43)

told *Daily Sun* his nephew spoke to him about wanting to go to initiation school.

"He is very respectful and behaves.

"His surgeon nurse Vuyani Maqethuka never complained about him," he said.

On Saturday, Jonathan will go home a man.

■ Meanwhile, Eastern Cape Traditional Affairs spokesman Mankeli Ngam confirmed that the initiation death toll in the Eastern Cape has risen to nine since the season started two weeks ago.

The latest deaths in Ngqeleni are those of Sonwabile Ntshaqa of Ngamnye Village and Thandisizwe Nkununtu from Mnyameni.

Figure 139: Jonathan decided to attend the Xhosa initiation school after he was not allowed to share a meal with the men because he did not attend the initiate rite. He was not recognised as a man.⁵⁷⁹

⁵⁷⁹ Daily Sun. (July 2, 2018) Sisulu, Mbulelo and Zweni, Ziyanda. *I like Xhosa ways!*

HER POWERS COME FROM MKHULU



Lilly fixes women's problems

By NOKO MASHILO

LILLY Ngwenya has the solution for a cold punani.

The 45-year-old woman from Forest Hill, Joburg said she helped women who couldn't make their men happy in bed.

"These problems start at an early age. When girls become young women, there must be a ceremony or ritual to introduce them to adulthood.

"If this doesn't happen, the girls will have problems when they are older," said Lilly.

She said the same thing happened to boys. Dineo Phala (39) from Katsieng, Ekurhuleni said she knew she had a problem but she blamed her man when he left her.

"I came to see Lilly who told me my parents didn't perform a ceremony for

me when I entered adulthood. Today, my man is back and we are fine," said Dineo.

A 26-year-old woman said she didn't believe in sangomas but her difficulties landed her at Lilly's door.

"She worked her magic on me and I am fine now," she said.

Born in Hammarsdale, KZN, Lilly had a calling to become a sangoma when she was three years old.

"I was shown a necklace with a cross that belonged to a mkhulu. I got my powers from him," said Lilly.

She said because of her powers she never struggled at school.

"I had a clear understanding of every subject.

"I passed my diploma in teaching at Mpumalanga College of Education easily," said the primary school teacher.

Figure 140: Although the 'Initiation Schools' / Rite of passage for boys are more frequently included in public domain discussion, initiation rites for girls are also important and ignorance thereof can result in a curse.⁵⁸⁰

⁵⁸⁰ Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Mashilo, Noko. *Her powers come from Mkhulu*.

'Sangomas can help fight HIV/Aids'

By CHRISTOPHER MOAGI
TRADITIONAL medicine can be an alternative to western medical treatment. This is according to the Ekurhuleni manager of the HIV/Aids unit, Thabiso Peo. But he strongly advised patients to avoid mixing the two forms of medication as it may weaken their effectiveness.

Peo said some medicines counteract each other. "It is advised that those who are on chronic medication should avoid mixing it with traditional medicine. "This will allow the proper monitoring of the medication."

The city's health and social development department has formed a committee where traditional healers are trained in basic HIV/Aids policies and precautions. "The committee wants to ensure that traditional healers identify symptoms of illnesses that need medical attention, and promote early detection and treatment of preventable illness. "We also want to dispel



Gogo Elizabeth Bass says just like western medicine, sangomas have effective medication to boost the immune system and slow down the loss of CD4 T-cells that the virus destroys.

myths by bogus practitioners who claim to cure HIV/Aids and advise people to stop taking their treatment," added Peo.

Sangoma Elizabeth Bass said they often have workshops with western doctors. Here they discuss the issues around the treatment they

each use. "Some HIV-positive patients don't want to take pills every day. "They must be allowed to explore the traditional route because we also have medication we can give them to boost their immune system," she said.

5/9/2018

Figure 141: Amalgamation of Western and Traditional medicine: Although treatment is not legally allowed, Sangomas is trusted to cure HIV and Aids.⁵⁸¹

⁵⁸¹ Daily Sun. (September 5, 2018) Moagi, Christopher. *Sangomas can help fight HIV/Aids*.

DAILY SUN

Friday 5 October 2018

I REFUSE TO DANCE

By ZAMOKUHLE MDLULI

FOR many years, sangoma Mfazomnyama Shabangu (45) has been helping people get rid of tokoloshes.

He recently helped a man who was being tormented by a strong tokoloshe.

But when the tokoloshe left its victim, he claims it jumped on to him.

"I can't sleep at night," said Mfazomnyama from Orange Farm extension 2, south of Joburg.

He said he couldn't help himself the way he helped others.

"I know that traditional healers can't heal themselves or their family, no matter how good they are," he said.

"This is wrong because I'm suffering and I can't help myself."

He said he had been to different sangomas, but they couldn't get rid of the little creature.

"The short man with big eyes and ibheshu is messing up my life.

Sangoma pleads for help to get rid of a tokoloshe

He sings sangoma songs at night and bangs the drums," said Mfazomnyama.

The tokoloshe wanted him to wake up and dance.

"I've been refusing to dance, but it won't stop making a noise and I can't sleep," he said.

Mfazomnyama said he had tried everything to chase away the tokoloshe.

"All my herbs have failed to work," he said.

He believes he got the tokoloshe from the customer, who came to him for help.

"That customer had problems. Things were not going well for him.

"The tokoloshe left him after I helped him."

The sangoma pleaded with anyone who could help him to come forward.

He gave *Daily Sun* the

contact numbers of the customer he helped.

Dumisani Sithole (36) from the Free State said he was referred to Mfazomnyama by a friend.

"The tokoloshe troubled me for a long time," he said.

"It made me sing at night and I couldn't sleep."

He said it left him after he visited Mfazomnyama in August.

"I phoned him after three days to thank him but he told me the tokoloshe was terrorising him," said Dumisani.

He said he hoped someone could help Mfazomnyama so he could continue helping others.

Sangoma Jabulani Mthimkhulu said sangomas can't and don't heal themselves.

Figure 142: Spiritual authority varies. Sangoma Mfazomnyama Shabangu, confirmed traditional healers cannot heal themselves or their families. After helping a man tormented by a Tokoloshe, the Tokoloshe retaliated and "jumped on to him".⁵⁸²

⁵⁸² Daily Sun (October 5, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *I Refuse to Dance*.

'Ukutya' can't stand rice!

THE BIG PGI STORY

CONTINUED FROM PAGE 1

END TO HIS MISERY AND LEARNT TO LIVE WITH THE CREATURE.

Even when the tokoloshe demanded he serve him a meal, he did it.

But now the hairy creature, which Nkathalelo has named Ukutya, only wants pap and nothing else.

Nkathalelo said it klaps him if it doesn't get pap.

"I get a beating and hear a voice whispering 'ukutya' with warm breath the moment I forget to dish up for the creature," he said.

Nkathalelo said he now had to budget for an extra bag of mealie meal monthly for "Ukutya".

"The tokoloshe loves pap and doesn't eat rice or bread. It attacked me last Sunday when I dished up rice.

"I feel someone beating me in my sleep if I forget or am tired of cooking pap, but it goes away when I leave pap on the floor. I don't know who I have hurt to be cursed with this evil, hairy creature," he said.

The 41-year-old from Hostel One kasi in Mangaung, Free State, said the tokoloshe followed him everywhere.

"The problem started back home in the Eastern Cape. Five years ago I moved to the Free State hoping the creature would not follow me.

"I've spent about R17 000 consulting different sangomas and inyangas. I even went to different churches hoping to scare the tokoloshe away with holy water," he said.

He said one night four months ago, he decided to dish up for the tokoloshe and left the food on the floor.

"That night I slept peacefully and woke up to an empty plate. My life is better, now that I've found a way to keep the tokoloshe at bay," he said.

Nkathalelo lives with his lover (35).

She said they'd been together for three years and she lost count of the number of times she had left him because of this curse.

"I was confused when he first woke up in the middle of the night, claiming something was beating him up. But only he could see it and I couldn't.

"I was at the point of dumping him before he got the solution to dish up for the tokoloshe.

"I come from a family that doesn't believe in these things, but I've now experienced something weird.

"I'm just happy we can have a peaceful night without him waking us up."

Sangoma Mamoya Rakauoane said Nkathalelo will never find peace even if he dishes up for the tokoloshe.

"The tokoloshe might cause more problems for him in the future and might even chase away his partner," said Rakauoane.

"He needs a sangoma who knows how to get rid of a tokoloshe.

"It's a process, but the curse can be destroyed."

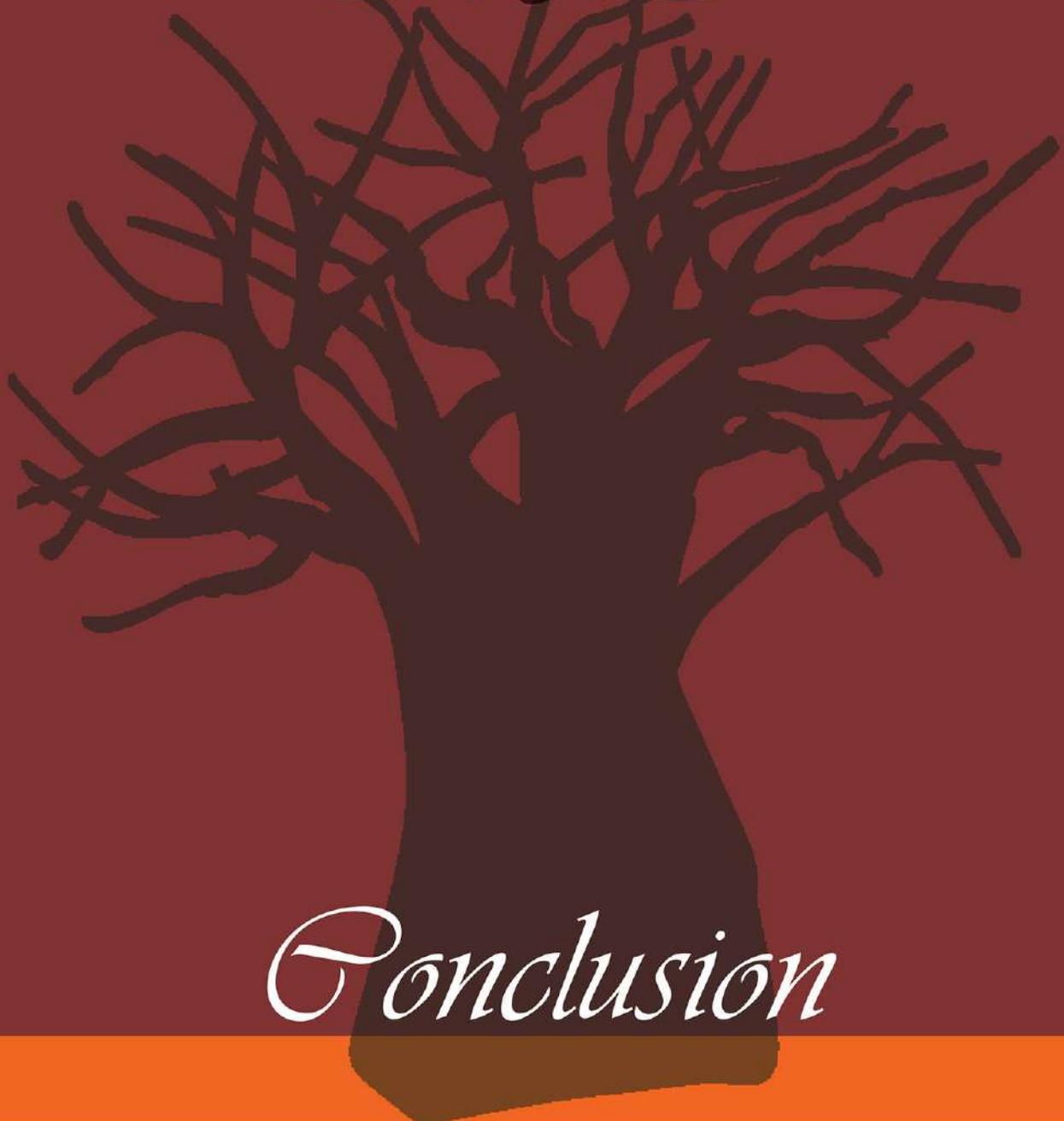
18 Feb 2020

Figure 143: The manifestation of a Tokoloshe is not imagination. He's appearance is described as hairy, he recognised his name, he has a voice and a warm breath, and he has the ability to eat – the extend that additional food needs to be budgeted.⁵⁸³

⁵⁸³ Daily Sun. (February 2020) Michaels, Modiri. Tokoloshe wants my pap!

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD



Conclusion



CONCLUSION

1. INTRODUCTION

Amidst a multi-spiritual and multi-religious South African society, the absolute truth of One God has not changed. God the Father, Jesus Christ, Son of God and the Holy Spirit.

Amidst the freedom of religion provided by the Confession of Human Rights in the South African Constitution, and the multiple faiths as a result of this liberty, the absolute truth of eternal life-giving faith in Jesus Christ remains unchanged.

Amidst the multi-ethnic society of South Africa, the absolute truth of the creation of man has not changed. God created man in His image: Spirit, soul, and body. Regardless the appearance of man, God created man in His image as a spiritual being with whom to have uninterrupted communion.

The human race originated with Adam and Eve. (Genesis 3:20¹), followed by the

¹ Genesis 3:20 (NKJV) And Adam called his wife's name Eve, because she was the mother of all living.

sons of Noah (Genesis 9:19²), all nations, races and tribes came forth from one bloodline. The four main blood groups are universal in all nationalities. One God created all nations. (Malachi 2:10)³ Amidst the complexity of a multi-ethnic, multi-cultural, and multi-linguistic South African society, the absolute truth of only two nations is the reality one needs to admit. The first nation, the “Covenant nation” of God: those who have heard the Gospel of Christ and accepted the truth of His atonement and salvation. The second nation, those of have heard – but rejected the Gospel of Christ.

Division of the South African population is thus not founded in ethnicity, ethnography, or linguistics, but on spirituality. Reborn, Spirit-filled believers in Christ and the non-believers.

Each of these two nations comprise of all the tribes, nations, cultures, and languages present in South Africa. Division is made by one factor only: the blood of Jesus Christ. The sacrificial death of Christ. The blood of Christ is the perfect and only sin offering to atone all sins. As a result, the covenant people have a right standing before God in a restored relationship with Him through the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

The non-covenant nations of South Africa also comprise of all the tribes, nations, cultures, and languages and especially of all the religions and faith groups that reject Jesus Christ.

Thus, the only two nations in South African are described as followers of Christ and non-followers of Christ, believers and non-believers, or Christians and non-Christians.

Ethnicity is a valid phenomenon in the Bible. Within the nation of Israel, tribes existed, but from the viewpoint of only two nations, the emphasis of nationalism

² Genesis 9:19 (NKJV) These three *were* the sons of Noah, and from these the whole earth was populated.

³ Malachi 2:10 (ESV) Have we not all one Father? Has not one God created us? Why do we deal treacherously with one another By profaning the covenant of the fathers?

and cultural pride should disappear. Pride is the origin of sin and as such a culture may never receive a greater emphasis than the Word and principles of God. The uniqueness of every tribe, nation, culture, and language is evident. God created their distinctiveness and bestowed a redemptive gift upon nations. It is the elevated nationalism born from pride and the result of discrimination founded on race that is ungodly. It is imperative to affirm that in Jesus Christ no division of nationalities exists. God does have a concern for nations, but one nationality is not prioritised above the other. (Acts 10:28)⁴

Then Peter opened his mouth and said: "In truth I perceive that God shows no partiality. But in every nation whoever fears Him and works righteousness is accepted by Him.

Acts 10:34-35 (NKJV)

Paul confirmed this in Colossians 3:11. In Jesus Christ all believers are united in one blood.

Do not lie to one another, since you have put off the old man with his deeds, and have put on the new man who is renewed in knowledge according to the image of Him who created him, where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcised nor uncircumcised, barbarian, Scythian, slave nor free, but Christ is all and in all.

Colossians 3:9-11 (NKJV)

And He has made from one blood every nation of men to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined their preappointed times and the boundaries of their dwellings, so that they should seek the Lord, in the hope that they might grope for Him and find Him, though He is not far from each one of us;

Acts 17:26-27 (NKJV)

The validity of a preferred emphasis and interpretations of the South African history and the debate with regards to birth right, and 'African-ness' also deteriorates with the reality of the existence of only two groups of South Africans. A specific historical perspective and emphasis normally seeks to promote one

⁴ Acts 10:28 (NKJV) Then he said to them, "You know how unlawful it is for a Jewish man to keep company with or go to one of another nation. But God has shown me that I should not call any man common or unclean.

race of culture above the other.

Jesus Christ is the primary enemy of Satan. Satan hates everything about Jesus Christ; His Divinity, His position as Son of God, His sinless nature, His authority, the atonement and salvation He provides for all of mankind, His victory over death, His eternal reign. Because of Jesus Christ, Satan hates every believer and aims to prevent the gospel of Christ and salvation at all cost.

Satan divided the angelic host by convincing a third of the angels to support his revolted against God. He divided God's Kingdom and declared war with the established of his kingdom to oppose God. Satan was responsible for division between God and man. Lastly, Satan brought about division between men. He did not create or establish race and cultures, but he instigate division based on ethnography, ethnicity, and languages. His division is advanced and succeeds to divide people within homogenic communities and families. Satan despises and opposes every Godly principle such as peace, forgiveness, unity, and above all, it opposes love.

One of Satan's tactics is the emphasis he projects on culture and its elevated priority with the aim to oppose Biblical principles. Another tactic is disguised in human rights and the over emphasis on human rite violations. Society at large are intimidated (also forbidden by law) to condemn unbiblical behaviours. New legislations are promulgated to protect and elevate human rights. The Bible is perceived as the primary source instigating human right violations.

After being deceived by Satan, the first Adam sinned and imprisoned humankind in sin. Jesus Christ (second Adam) sacrificial death was the complete atonement for sins and perfect salvation. By His blood man can be justified and reunited with God.

The reality of the war between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan is thoroughly presented in Chapter Two. The most contentious statement this thesis made is probably the view that these two Kingdoms are the only two available

options. There is no middle neutral ground. God did not accommodate various religions in an effort to be inclusive of human rights. Jesus boldly stated:

I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one come to the Father except through Me.

John 14:16 (NKJV)

It also would not make reasonable sense that Christ would pay the ultimate price, endure unhuman suffering to offer eternal salvation and justification in vain if eternal life would be possible via other avenues.

Media reports illustrated the integrated relationship between culture/customs and spirituality. Spirituality enhances the significance of participation in specific customs. and also, the compromised spiritual negative results for non-compliance. Culture and integrated spirituality are also evident in the incorporation of African culture and spirituality in Christianity. The dogma was adapted by Africans to accommodate their “African-ness”, a renewed black consciousness.

In addition to the historic evidence of the arrival of a multitude of cultures, the research presented evidence of the current complex ethnicity as a contemporary phenomenon. Every ethnic group claim their historic right to be acknowledged as equal citizens with equal recognition of language, culture, and religion. Some narrow the right to be recognised as South Africans to skin colour stating European descendants, (colonialist) are intruders and have no right to claim South Africa as home. But skin colour does not imply homogeneousness. Regardless a renewed Black Consciousness and the so-called Black Pride, diversity among the black nations are thrive. This emphasis the Governments ignorance of the Khoisan. Although they are generally accepted as aboriginal South Africans, their language and ethnicity are ignored. The fact that the government included them in them in the national symbol is in the authors opinion a means to patronise them. Their language as well as two Khoisan figures are included in the emblem, thus portrayed twice.

Yet, they are only categorised as ‘coloured’, their unique ethnicity ignored and recognition denied. Their language is also not an official language.

The research provided evidence of the non-static divisions of the various cultural and language groups. Cross pollination effected all South Africans – race, language, religion, and culture. It can be summarised by stating that ‘nobody in South Africa is as white as they think they are, and nobody is as black as they think they are.’”

The South African Human Rights charter received international applause for the emphasis on human rights. In the process of accommodating everybody the constitution recognised the legality of foreign (in a Biblical sense) gods, including the Church of Satan. Although the witchcraft act forbids witchcraft, media reports provided abundant evidence that South Africans are not protected. Muti murders and abortions provide human body tissue for witchcraft purposes.

2. (re)SOLUTION FOR SOUTH AFRICA

2.1 Return to God South Africa!

“South Africa is in crisis” is the perceived general consensus among South Africans. Difference between the Multi religious, -linguistic, -cultural, -ethnic, etc. groups is fundamental in inducing conflict, mistrust, resentment and even hate. The author is of the opinion that only one solution exists for the multiple challenges of South Africa: return to God South Africa! Christ alone holds the key to resolving tension and hostilities – not only some, but completely.

Know the truth and the truth shall set you free

John 8:31 (NKJV)

The manifested ‘Truth’ is Jesus Christ and the manifested Word of God is Jesus Christ. To know the truth equates to knowledge of the gospel of Christ. The

gospel nullifies every prejudice and every claim of superiority for all men are equal in their fallen state and spiritual need of salvation. Christ is the common solution.

If My people who are called by My name will humble themselves, and pray and seek My face, and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin and heal their land. Now My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to prayer made in this place.

2 Chronicles 7:14-15 (NKJV)

The following interpretation pertaining to South Africa is presented:

“My people”

Covenant people who accepted Jesus Christ as Lord and saviour.

“Called by My name”

Jesus Christ became sin and paid the price for all of mankind. Not all will accept His gift of salvation, regardless the fact that it is available for all.

“Humble”

Co-inside with repentance and is the opposite of pride. Both are key factors in South Africa. Nationalism is perceived to disguise self-righteousness and pride.

“Pray and seek my face”

Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, being watchful to this end with all perseverance and supplication for all the saints

Ephesians 6:18 (NKJV)

- Pray always (Colossians 4:2⁵)
- Incorporate all types of prayer (1 Timothy 2:1-4⁶)

⁵ Colossians 4:2 (NKJV) Continue earnestly in prayer, being vigilant in it with thanksgiving;

⁶ 1 Timothy 2:1-4 (NKJV) Therefore I exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks be made for all men, for kings and all who are in authority, that we may lead a quiet and

- Pray in the Spirit (Acts 2:4⁷)
- Be watchful and vigilant. (Colossians 4:2⁸)
- Persevere (Galatians 6:9⁹)
- Pray for fellow believers (Romans 8:27¹⁰)

Prayer includes ‘Fervent Prayers’

Acts 18:25¹¹ describe Apollos as ‘fervent in spirit’. Fervent signifies ‘inflamed by the Holy Spirit, passionate, zealous, energetic, and emotional. Fervent prayers of the righteous avails much. (James 5:16¹²)

Prayer includes “Seeking God’

God promise that those who search and seek for Him, will not be disappointed. To seek God is an earnest, desperate, intense, and determined pursuit to know God. It requires diligence and discipline to study God’s Word and unhindered time to pray.

Prayer includes Intercession (Supplication)

The victor in the heavenlies ultimately determines the course of history. Baxter described supplication as appeals, requests or petitions and intercession requests on behalf of someone or in response to someone’s actions. Intercession

peaceable life in all godliness and reverence. For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Savior, who desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.

⁷ Acts 2:4 (NKJV) And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

⁸ Colossians 4:2 (NKJV) Continue earnestly in prayer, being vigilant in it with thanksgiving;

⁹ Galatians 6:9 (NKJV) And let us not grow weary while doing good, for in due season we shall reap if we do not lose heart.

¹⁰ Romans 8:27 (NKJV) Now He who searches the hearts knows what the mind of the Spirit *is*, because He makes intercession for the saints according to *the will of God*.

¹¹ Acts 18:25 (NKJV) This man had been instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in spirit, he spoke and taught accurately the things of the Lord, though he knew only the baptism of John.

¹² James 5:16 (NKJV) Confess *your* trespasses to one another, and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The effective, fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much.

for self, family, town, government, and nation will determine the course of history. Through intercession and intervention God's plans and purposes are established. God sought one man to intercede for Jerusalem, to come before God on behalf of Jerusalem. (Ezekiel 22:30¹³) This scripture is particularly significant for this research for the evidence it provides that God requires repentant intercession for our cities to avoid His judgement.

“And turn from their wicked ways”

Repentance: Personal and corporate sin grant Satan legal right to exploit people. If South Africans strive to be a united nation before God, repentance is an absolute prerequisite. Repentance as one nation implies that all races in sincerity repent for the combined sin of Apartheid, corruption, violent crimes including farm murders, discrimination, racism, etc. There should not be a distinction between 'white' and 'black' sin. A unified nation implies a shared position of guilt, shared sin and sincere repentance.

Wicked ways in the author's opinion includes,

- All types of idolatry.

Idolatry is trespassing the first commandment. God forbade any and all other gods. (Exodus 20:3¹⁴). This includes pride and self-righteousness.

- Abortion

Life begins with conception. Abortion equates to murder. In addition, it equates to human rights being exalted above God and Godly principles.

- Amalgamation of customs and alternative faiths with Christianity

¹³ Ezekiel 22:30 (NKJV) So I sought for a man among them who would make a wall, and stand in the gap before Me on behalf of the land, that I should not destroy it; but I found no one.

¹⁴ Exodus 20:3 (NKJV) “You shall have no other gods before Me.

God describes Himself in the ten Commandments as a jealous God. (Exodus 20:5)¹⁵. God 's love is evident in the sacrifice of His Son to reconcile Himself with man in the restoration of the original relationship. God expect full devotion. Lukewarm, partially committed worship and all forms of idolatry reflects a rejection of God's love.

- Opposing Israel. God loves Israel. (1 Kings 10:9)¹⁶ God blesses those who bless Israel and in return curses those who curse Israel.

“I will bless those who bless you; And I will curse him who curses you; And in you all he families of the earth shall be blessed.”

Genesis 12:3 (NKJV)

- Pride. The root of over emphasised nationalism resulting in racism.
- Covetousness and envy. The root of corruption and dishonesty.
- Wrath. Some races in South Africa were legally discriminated against in the past, and others experience legalised discriminated now. Previously disadvantaged groups and current disadvantage groups Anger and hate and results in the desire to take revenge.
- Sloth. 'Dysfunctional' is the common description of every Government Department and several semi-state organisations such as Eskom, Prasa, SABC etc. Although nepotism resulted in low skill levels and inadequate qualifications, laziness is perceived to play a significant role in the dysfunctional organisations and the deteriorated infrastructures.

“Then I will hear from heaven”

¹⁵ Exodus 20:5 (NKJV) Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

¹⁶ 1 Kings 10:9: (NKJV) Blessed be the Lord your God who delighted in you to set you on the throne of Israel; because the Lord loved Israel forever, therefore He made you king, to do justice and righteousness.

God the Father sits on His throne in the third heaven with Jesus seated next to Him, (2 Corinthians 12:2)¹⁷. From this vantage point, Jesus intimately knows the Father's heart and makes intercession for us. (Romans 8:34)¹⁸

“And I will forgive their sin”

God's forgiveness of sin as a result of sincere repentance is evident in the account of Jonah and Nineveh. God shows not partiality. His grace and forgiveness are bestowed equally upon nations. (Acts 10:34-35)¹⁹

“And heal their land”

Evidence is already eminent of God's faithfulness. During the presidency of President Zuma, state capture and the enormous levels of corruption were hidden and covered. President Zuma was replaced. The Zondo Commission is attempting to unravel the web of corruption and lies. Every newspaper report on corruption is a victory of God's faithfulness to heal the land. A shift in civil government is a sign of God's intervention.

“Now My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to prayer made in this place”

God does not adhere to the prayers of the sinful but takes His eyes are on the righteous and His ears are inclined to adhere to their prayers. (1 Peter 3:12)²⁰

¹⁷ 2 Corinthians 12:2 (NKJV) I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago—whether in the body I do not know, or whether out of the body I do not know, God knows—such a one was caught up to the third heaven.

¹⁸ Romans 8:34 (NKJV) Who is he who condemns? It is Christ who died, and furthermore is also risen, who is even at the right hand of God, who also makes intercession for us.

¹⁹ Acts 10:34-35 NKJV) Then Peter opened *his* mouth and said: “In truth I perceive that God shows no partiality. But in every nation whoever fears Him and works righteousness is accepted by Him.

²⁰ 1 Peter 3:12 (NKJV) For the eyes of the Lord are on the righteous, And His ears are open to their prayers; But the face of the Lord is against those who do evil”

2.2 Knowledge of Godly Principles

The unqualified departure point in finding solutions for South Africa is knowledge of God. No political party or organised civil society organisations hold the solution for South Africa for the core of the crisis is spiritual: the abandonment of God and His Word manifested in Jesus Christ. Therefore, the solution for South Africa is spiritual – the return to God and His Word manifested in Jesus Christ. It is the manifested war between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan.

Spiritual knowledge equates to spiritual weapons, including knowledge of God, knowledge of the enemy's strategies and tactics, and knowledge of the believer's authority and biblical principles. The author summarised the required knowledge as follows:

2.2.1 Atonement and Justification by the Blood of Jesus Christ

Revelations 12:11²¹ ***And they overcome him by the Blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they loved not their lives unto death***

Sin separated man from God. The Blood of Christ provided an acceptable sacrifice for sin. The legality of separation due to sin and a required offering to restore relationship is provided. Those who accept His blood offering is restored and reconciled with God in Christ. Christ blood is the agency for cleansing, forgiveness, and redemption. The sacrifice for atonement. Through faith in the blood of Jesus Christ man is justified. The wages of sin are death. The blood of Christ restores eternal life but also provide continues triumph over sin.

²¹ Revelations 12:11 (NKJV) And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death.

2.2.2 Prophecies for South Africa

A key to pursue fulfilment of a destiny on earth is found in prophecy. It has the potential to unlock redemptive gifts and destiny of an individual, a city or a nation. A prophetic word communicates God's intent by declaring, decreeing, or imparting the mind and heart of God. It exhorts and motivate.²² God provided numerous prophetic promises for South Africa, casting hope and not condemnation. The prophecy given by Prophet Chuck Peirce is also applicable to South Africa:

There is a destiny to fulfil. There is more than just grace to endure our circumstances until the Lord call us to Himself. And God does have a wonderful plan for our temporal existence that will flow into our eternal communication with Him.²³

Prophecy is the supernatural ability to receive revelation from God and to communicate it to people in understandable language.²⁴ Prophecies encourage, instruct, edification, exhortation, and comfort men according to 1 Corinthians 14:3²⁵. Five possible benefits from prophecies:

- Convict the unsaved of sin and unbelief
- Could discern and portray an individual's true spiritual condition
- Could reveal and convince of the sin.
- Could convince to repent and worship God.
- Could cause the acknowledgement of the presence of God in their mists.
- Covenant not expired
Adam and Eve's blood sacrifice to find clothing to cover their sin before

²² Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 15

²³ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P. 26

²⁴ Pettergrew, Larry (Second Edition) (2001) *The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit.* Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications. P. 164

²⁵ 1 Corinthians 14:3 (NKJV) But he who prophesies speaks edification and exhortation and comfort to men.

God. Noah was the first to present a sacrificial blood offering to God. It is the first reference to covenant in the Bible. (Genesis 8:20-21²⁶)

- Time of Deception and ignorance

Knowledge is empowerment. The lack of knowledge leads to downfall. (Hosea 4:6)²⁷ Ignorance of the spiritual realm is a major contributor to believers' ineffectiveness, according to Dr Ferrell.²⁸ Ignorance results in passivity and powerless contributors in the fight against evil. God warns with regards to ignorance of the spiritual gifts and idolatry. (1 Corinthians 12:1²⁹) The Truth (Holy Spirit) will guide, teach, reveal and equip believers for a time such as this to be effective in the Kingdom of God and in the battle against evil strategies. (John 8:32³⁰, John 16:13³¹)

2.2.3 Understand Timeline: Jewish Calendar

The Hebrew or Jewish Calendar started at the time of creation. The current 2020/2021 equates to the Hebrew calendar year of 5781. The transition of 5779 (-79) to 5780 (-80) has specific prophetic meaning in the dawning of a new era, a shift in God's timeline.

The changing times are signposts for the fulfilment of God's eternal plan. Chuck

²⁶ Genesis 8:20-21 (NKJV) Then Noah built an altar to the LORD, and took of every clean animal and of every clean bird, and offered burnt offerings on the altar. And the LORD smelled a soothing aroma. Then the LORD said in His heart, "I will never again curse the ground for man's sake, although the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth; nor will I again destroy every living thing as I have done.

²⁷ Hosea 4:6: (ESV) My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being priest for Me; Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children.

²⁸ Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P. 14

²⁹ 1 Corinthians 12:1 (NKJV) Now concerning spiritual gifts, brethren, I do not want you to be ignorant: You know that you were Gentiles, carried away to these dumb idols, however you were led.

³⁰ Acts 8:32 And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free."

³¹ John 16:13 However, when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth; for He will not speak on His own authority, but whatever He hears He will speak; and He will tell you things to come.

Pierce³² described the new season a 'Kingdom shift'. A transition from earth to Kingdom advancement with a "great clash of Kingdoms".

2.2.4 It Is Time for War

Dr Ferrell³³ is of the opinion that not all Christians are called for frontline warfare. Those called for high level warfare should not be ignorant in their approach but realise the importance to be protected and the need for training to be effective. This does not exempt ordinary Christians from being attacked by evil forces.

Therefore, every Christian, without exception should be effective in combatting evil. The armour is not set aside for specific individuals, and the devil – roaring like a lion (1 Peter 5:8)³⁴ is not attacking only some. No differentiation is made. Therefore, the call for warfare is central to the gospel, everybody is called for warfare, although some might be anointed to operate on a higher level against principalities and territorial jurisdictions.³⁵

2.2.5 Word of Testimony

Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

Revelation 19:10 (NKJV)

And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death.

Revelations 12:10-11 (NKJV)

³² Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead.* Minnesota: Chosen Books. P.38

³³ Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P. 3, 7

³⁴ I Peter 5:8 (NKJV) be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

³⁵ Ferrell High level Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition).* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries. P.73

Testimony implies a true witness or account of events. The power of audible accounts of victories God provided enhance personal and fellow believer's faith. It is also powerful in reminding the enemy of God's ultimate power and reign. The victory God provided to the Afrikaners outnumbered by the Zulu army in Battle of 'Blood river on December 16, 1838 is revered in thanksgiving by many Afrikaners. It is a very controversial political debate because of the fact that it was a white-black battle and God adhered to the outcry of the Afrikaners.

Every election, but especially the first democratic election in 1994 provides content to praise and worship God. The transition to a new government was peaceful as a result of God's favour after millions of South Africans united in prayer. In every election political tension could have resulted in bloodshed. God's faithfulness to the fervent prayers of believers should be a constant testimony of God's goodness.

2.2.6 Fear

South Africa's numerous challenges is evident from the research and includes violent crime, corruption, idolatries, etc. The monetary value of private security companies was presented. South Africans should be mindful of the deadly effect of fear. The enemy uses fear to oppress and specifically to paralyse believers.

Spoken words reinforce thought patterns and neuro pathways developed by thoughts of hopelessness and despair. The power of the spoken word is thoroughly presented. In contrast to fear-filled neuro pathways, God commands a sound mind to be prosperous.

For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and of love and of a sound mind.

2 Timothy 1:7 (NKJV)

South Africa's "brain drain" – the immigration of qualified specialists and artisans to find refuge in communities less plagued by crime and violence is a sad

testimony of fear and hopelessness. This phenomenon bankrupts the country from expertise needed to address the numerous challenges – especially in the medical and engineering industries.

A relationship with God counter's fear. Confession of God's promises and testimonies of God's power cancel fear. According to Romans 8³⁶, believers received a Spirit of adoption opposed to a spirit of fear.

2.2.7 Sheep and Goat Nations

South Africans should take cognisance of the warning in the book of Matthew differentiating between the 'sheep and goat nations.' God make a clear distinction between faithful God fearing and unfaithful Godless nations. The faithful sheep nations will inherit the kingdom prepared by God from the foundation of the world. (Matthew 25:31-34)³⁷

2.2.8 Communion

Communion celebrates and proclaim the accomplishment and victory of Jesus Christ on the Cross. The bread represents Jesus's broken and pierced body and the wine represents His blood as a perfect atonement and sin offering. South Africans should educate themselves with regards to the power and victory

³⁶ Romans 8:15-17 (NKJV) For you did not receive the spirit of bondage again to fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption by whom we cry out, "Abba, Father." The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, then heirs—heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ, if indeed we suffer with *Him*, that we may also be glorified together.

³⁷ Matthew 25:31-34 (NKJV) When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats: And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.

available in daily communion. The association with the victory of Christ, and especially the proclamation of God's love for mankind.

2.2.9 Five-Fold Ministry

The fivefold ministry of Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastors/teachers and Missionary still holds specific relevance in contemporary South Africa. In addition, hospitality, celibacy and martyrdom is equally relevant in a society that tends to focus to celebrate the individual's rights and freedom to make moral decisions according to worldly standards.

2.2.10 Do Not Be Rebellious

God is very decisive in 1 Samuel 15:23³⁸. The corrupt South African government and state capture created a scenario where many South African are agitated and rebellious against the government. Rebellion could be a powerful demonic stronghold in the minds of people.

2.2.11 Priest and Prophetic Ministries

The Biblical duty of Priests was to intercede for the nation and to offer sacrifices as atonement for the nations sin. The Biblical duty of the Prophetic was to declare the will of God, to reprimand and warn kings and nations. The author is convinced that Christians are called to operate in both ministries. They have the obligation to constantly intercede for the nation, to repent for collective sin South Africa.

³⁸ 1 Samuel 15:23 (NKJV) For rebellion *is as* the sin of witchcraft, And stubbornness *is as* iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the LORD, He also has rejected you from *being* king.”

Simultaneously they have the obligation to voice concern in an effort to correct. The voice of concern in this sense by no means include complaining with no purpose. Several organisations are positioned to voice concern and intervene to correct actions of government and the general decay of the South African society. This is impossible without spiritual authority bestowed by Jesus Christ and manifested by the Holy Spirit. The ancient truth of strength in numbers remains valid in these instances. Organisations rely on expertise provided by volunteer's representative of a variety of industries.

2.3 Defence Tactics: Battle Plan – Know Weapons of Combat

2.3.1 Submit to God

God promised that submission will cause the Devil to flee. (James 4:7³⁹) This promise remains valid for South Africans today.

2.3.2 Jesus Assistance in War

Hebrews 4:16⁴⁰ narrates Jesus invitation to believers to come “boldly” – with confidence to find grace in time of need.

2.3.3 Angelic Help

South Africans should take note of the facts that besides personal authority in Jesus Christ, angels are mighty warriors sent by God to assist mankind. God

³⁹ James 4:7 (NKJV) Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.

⁴⁰ Hebrews 4:16 (NKJV) Let us therefore come boldly to the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

commanded a countless number of angels under Michael's direction in this age-old battle against the forces of evil. In John's account of the end of time, Jesus returns to earth accompanied by Michael and his angels, and Satan is cast into the depths of hell. Until that time, South Africans should be encouraged in knowing that these mighty angels are their companions in this battle to protect them and to usher in God's Kingdom.

2.3.4 The Name of Jesus Christ

The Name of the Lord is a strong tower. (Proverbs 18:10⁴¹). Dr Olukoya⁴² confirmed the name of Jesus Christ authoritative over a satanic attack – unless sin render prayers to be ineffective.

2.3.5 Weapon of the Blood of Jesus

The Blood of the Lamb is the primary weapon against the accusations and war from Satan. The Blood of Christ, the perfect lamb, the final and complete atonement for all sin overrule every accusation of the Satan. The blood offer established an unassailable bond with the sovereign God, preventing Satan to separate believers from God.

The Blood of Christ protects believers in the same manner as the blood of the lamb on the doorposts protected God's people from the angel of death before their departure from Egypt.

⁴¹ Proverbs 18:10 (NKJV) The name of the LORD *is* a strong tower; The righteous run to it and are safe.

⁴² Olukoya, D.K. (2001) *Power Against Dream Criminals*. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries. P.160

2.3.6 Armour

- Gird waste with truth / Belt of truth (Ephesians 6:14)
- Breastplate of righteousness (Ephesians 6:14)
Covers all the vital organs and spirit. The significance is described in Matthew 15:19⁴³ and Proverbs 4:23⁴⁴
- Shoes of the preparation of the gospel of peace (Ephesians 6:15)
Roman soldier shoes were fitted with spikes to assist them to stand firm in battle. The analogy highlights the firm stance to convey the gospel of Christ.
- Shield of faith (Ephesians 6:16).
Shield is translated from the Greek 'thureos'⁴⁵, meaning a door-like shield covering almost the entire body. Soldiers could align their shields to rise up a 'wall of shields' to protect them. The shield of faith accommodates individual faith or corporate / combined faith with other believers to hide from the arrows of the enemy.
- Helmet of salvation (Ephesians 6:17)
The helmet protects the entire head, mind, and emotions. The importance of thought processes is discussed. Satan project feelings of condemnation etc. Therefore, the Bible warns to walk in the spirit and not in the flesh. (Romans 8:1)⁴⁶ Jesus was crucified on Golgotha – the place of the skull. The first priority in conflict is to protect the mind, the place of the skull, for in a person's thought patterns and neuro pathways lies the bondage or the potential liberty for victory. To have the 'mind of Christ'⁴⁷ remains the

⁴³ For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies.

⁴⁴ Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV) Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it *spring* the issues of life.

⁴⁵ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 162

⁴⁶ Romans 8:1 (NKJV) *There is* therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who do not walk according to the flesh, but according to the Spirit.

⁴⁷ 1 Corinthians 2:16 (NKJV) For "who has known the mind of the LORD that he may instruct Him?" But we have the mind of Christ.

ultimate goal.

- Sword of spirit (Ephesians 6:17)

The sword is the first purely defensive weapon included in the armour of God. Hebrew 4:12 elaborates on the power of the sword. Revelation 1:16⁴⁸ confirms the sword to be the Word of God by using the analogy of a sword from Jesus' mouth. The Word penetrates all aspects of human life.

The application of the sword as the powerful word of God was illustrated by Jesus when tempted by Satan. In all three instances Jesus quoted Scripture to rebuke Satan.⁴⁹ Neither Jesus nor Satan questioned the authority of the Word of God.

All prayer (Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit (Ephesians 6:18)

2.3.7 Watchmen

Watchmen is responsible to identify approaching danger and to alarm the military forces to act. Spiritual guardsmen (often prophets) are responsible to be alert and alarm approaching spiritual dangers.

⁴⁸ Revelation 1:16 (NKJV) He had in His right hand seven stars, out of His mouth went a sharp two-edged sword, and His countenance *was* like the sun shining in its strength.

⁴⁹ Matthew 4:1-11 (NKJV) Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil. And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He was hungry. Now when the tempter came to Him, he said, "If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread." But He answered and said, "It is written, 'Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God.'" Then the devil took Him up into the holy city, set Him on the pinnacle of the temple, and said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, throw Yourself down. For it is written: 'He shall give His angels charge over you,' and, 'In *their* hands they shall bear you up, Lest you dash your foot against a stone.'" Jesus said to him, "It is written again, 'You shall not tempt the LORD your God.'" Again, the devil took Him up on an exceedingly high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. And he said to Him, "All these things I will give You if You will fall down and worship me." Then Jesus said to him, "Away with you, Satan! For it is written, 'You shall worship the LORD your God, and Him only you shall serve.'" Then the devil left Him, and behold, angels came and ministered to Him.

2.4 Understand Biblical Principles: Offence Tactics

2.4.1 As a Nation: Fast

Fasting is a powerful weapon in spiritual warfare. The Bible provide numerous examples of fasting for personal and especially for national breakthrough. In suggesting resolutions for South Africa, the following examples illustrate fasting for the nation of Israel.

- Moses fasted when he awaited instructions for Israel. (Exodus 34:27-28⁵⁰)
- Israel fasted for the return of God's glory to their nation. (1 Samuel 7:3-6⁵¹)
- Esther and the nation prayed to seek the King's mercy. (Esther 4:15-17⁵²)
- Ezra fasted for protection and guidance before he and the exiled Israelites journeyed back from Babylon to Jerusalem. (Nehemiah 1:1-11⁵³)

⁵⁰ Exodus 34:27-28 (NKJV) Then the LORD said to Moses, "Write these words, for according to the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel." So he was there with the LORD forty days and forty nights; he neither ate bread nor drank water. And He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Commandments.

⁵¹ 1 Samuel 7:3-6 (NKJV) Then Samuel spoke to all the house of Israel, saying, "If you return to the LORD with all your hearts, *then* put away the foreign gods and the Ashtoreths from among you, and prepare your hearts for the LORD, and serve Him only; and He will deliver you from the hand of the Philistines." So the children of Israel put away the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and served the LORD only. And Samuel said, "Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to the LORD for you." So they gathered together at Mizpah, drew water, and poured *it* out before the LORD. And they fasted that day, and said there, "We have sinned against the LORD." And Samuel judged the children of Israel at Mizpah.

⁵² Esther 4:15-17 (NKJV) Then Esther told *them* to reply to Mordecai: "Go, gather all the Jews who are present in Shushan, and fast for me; neither eat nor drink for three days, night or day. My maids and I will fast likewise. And so I will go to the king, which *is* against the law; and if I perish, I perish!" So Mordecai went his way and did according to all that Esther commanded him.

⁵³ Nehemiah 1:1-11 (NKJV) The words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah. It came to pass in the month of Chislew, *in* the twentieth year, as I was in Shushan the citadel, that Hanani one of my brethren came with men from Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews who had escaped, who had survived the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem. And they said to me, "The survivors who are left from the captivity in the province *are* there in great distress and reproach. The wall of Jerusalem *is* also broken down, and its gates are burned with fire." So it was, when I heard these words, that I sat down and wept, and mourned *for many* days; I was fasting and praying before the God of heaven. And I said: "I pray, LORD God of heaven, O great and awesome God, *You* who keep *Your* covenant and mercy with those who love *You* and observe *Your* commandments, please let *Your* ear be attentive and *Your* eyes open, that *You* may hear the prayer of *Your* servant which I pray before *You* now, day and night, for the children of Israel *Your* servants, and confess the sins of the children of Israel which we have sinned against *You*. Both my father's house and I have sinned. We have acted very corruptly against *You*, and have not kept the commandments, the statutes, nor the ordinances which *You* commanded *Your* servant Moses. Remember, I pray, the word that *You*

- Jehoshaphat proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah when he received word of the combined attack from the Moabites and Ammonites. (2 Chronicles 20:4⁵⁴)

From these case studies, the author identified the common denominator the fact that every fast had a specific purpose. The nation called unto God for liberation and help in specific circumstances. South Africa desperately needs God's liberation.

In addition, the following Biblical examples provided guidance and instruction:

- Jacob commanded his household to put away their false gods, wash and change their garments before they built an altar to God. (Genesis 35:1-4⁵⁵)
- In response to the exhortation of Samuel, the people put away their false gods and prepare their hearts to serve the only true God. (1 Samuel 7:3-6⁵⁶)
- King Asa removed the Sodomites and all their false gods out of the land –

commanded Your servant Moses, saying, 'If you are unfaithful, I will scatter you among the nations; but if you return to Me, and keep My commandments and do them, though some of you were cast out to the farthest part of the heavens, yet I will gather them from there, and bring them to the place which I have chosen as a dwelling for My name.' Now these *are* Your servants and Your people, whom You have redeemed by Your great power, and by Your strong hand. O Lord, I pray, please let Your ear be attentive to the prayer of Your servant, and to the prayer of Your servants who desire to fear Your name; and let Your servant prosper this day, I pray, and grant him mercy in the sight of this man."

⁵⁴ 2 Chronicles 20:4 (NKJV) So Judah gathered together to ask *help* from the LORD; and from all the cities of Judah they came to seek the LORD.

⁵⁵ Genesis 35:1-4 (NKJV) Then God said to Jacob, "Arise, go up to Bethel and dwell there; and make an altar there to God, who appeared to you when you fled from the face of Esau your brother." And Jacob said to his household and to all who *were* with him, "Put away the foreign gods that *are* among you, purify yourselves, and change your garments. Then let us arise and go up to Bethel; and I will make an altar there to God, who answered me in the day of my distress and has been with me in the way which I have gone." So they gave Jacob all the foreign gods which *were* in their hands, and the earrings which *were* in their ears; and Jacob hid them under the terebinth tree which *was* by Shechem.

⁵⁶ 1 Samuel 7:3-6 (NKJV) Then Samuel spoke to all the house of Israel, saying, "If you return to the LORD with all your hearts, *then* put away the foreign gods and the Ashtoreths from among you, and prepare your hearts for the LORD, and serve Him only; and He will deliver you from the hand of the Philistines." So the children of Israel put away the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and served the LORD only. And Samuel said, "Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to the LORD for you." So they gathered together at Mizpah, drew water, and poured *it* out before the LORD. And they fasted that day, and said there, "We have sinned against the LORD." And Samuel judged the children of Israel at Mizpah.

- including his own grandmother. (1 Kings 15:11-15⁵⁷)
- Jehu exterminated all Baal worshippers and their temples. (2 Kings 11:17-20⁵⁸)

Be not deceived, God is not mocked. (Galatians 6:7⁵⁹). When approaching God in prayer and fasting whilst holding on to idolatry will not be successful. The author extends a warning: pride was Satan's original sin. The exaltation of any idea or concept – including national pride, emphasized nationalism – both black and white, is idolatry.

The author perceives the lack of fasting in many contemporary churches as evident of the enemy's success to de-edify the practice – knowing the power and breakthrough associated with fasting.

2.4.2 As a Nation: Thanksgiving, Praise and Worship unto God

***Enter into His gates with thanksgiving,
And into His courts with praise.
Be thankful to Him, and bless His name.***

Psalms 100:4 (NKJV)

⁵⁷ 1 Kings 15:11-15 (NKJV) Asa did *what was* right in the eyes of the LORD, as *did* his father David. And he banished the perverted persons from the land, and removed all the idols that his fathers had made. Also he removed Maachah his grandmother from *being* queen mother, because she had made an obscene image of Asherah. And Asa cut down her obscene image and burned *it* by the Brook Kidron. But the high places were not removed. Nevertheless Asa's heart was loyal to the LORD all his days. He also brought into the house of the LORD the things which his father had dedicated, and the things which he himself had dedicated: silver and gold and utensils.

⁵⁸ 2 Kings 11:17-20 (NKJV) Then Jehoiada made a covenant between the LORD, the king, and the people, that they should be the LORD's people, and *also* between the king and the people. And all the people of the land went to the temple of Baal, and tore it down. They thoroughly broke in pieces its altars and images, and killed Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. And the priest appointed officers over the house of the LORD. Then he took the captains of hundreds, the bodyguards, the escorts, and all the people of the land; and they brought the king down from the house of the LORD, and went by way of the gate of the escorts to the king's house. Then he sat on the throne of the kings. So all the people of the land rejoiced; and the city was quiet, for they had slain Athaliah with the sword *in* the king's house.

⁵⁹ Galatians 6:7 (NKJV) Do not be deceived, God is not mocked; for whatever a man sows, that he will also reap.

Psalm 100 describes the two successive stages in approaching God as thanksgiving and praise. Thanksgiving leads believers into God's gates and praise leads believers into His courts. From here, believers have access to God.

Praise (Hebrew verb Halal, "praise with a loud voice") in its primitive meaning imply "to cause to shine".⁶⁰ Coming from this verb, the noun 'tehillah⁶¹ refer to a celebration, a lauding of someone praiseworthy, or exaltation of God, song of admiration. Halal is also the root from which "hallelujah" is derived – a command to offer praise. Worship⁶² (shachah⁶³) means to bow down before someone in an act of adoration and submission.

Psalm 95 confirms the stages of thanksgiving and praise but add the third stage of worship. The thanksgiving and jubilant praises of verses 1 and 2, are followed by the motive for the praises in verses 3, 4, and 5. Verses 6 elevates to worship.

***Oh come, let us sing to the Lord!
Let us shout joyfully to the Rock of our salvation.
Let us come before His presence with thanksgiving;
Let us shout joyfully to Him with psalms.
For the Lord is the great God,
And the great King above all gods.
In His hand are the deep places of the earth;
The heights of the hills are His also.
The sea is His, for He made it;
And His hands formed the dry land.
Oh come, let us worship and bow down;
Let us kneel before the Lord our Maker.***

Psalm 95:1-6 (NKJV)

"But the hour is coming, and now is, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth; for the Father is seeking such to worship Him".

John 4:23 (NKJV)

⁶⁰ Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. 765 and P.599

⁶¹ Strongs #8416. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P.839

⁶² Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers. P. 838

⁶³ Strongs #7812

God reveals Himself in His Word. The degree of knowledge of God through His Word is equivalent to a nation's desire to worship God. A desire born from man's spirit involves all of man's senses (spirit, soul, and body), a direct and intimate adoration and communication with God.

Exodus 23:15⁶⁴ determines that **“none shall appear before God empty handed”**. In Psalm 96 the Psalmist reminds of a primary condition in approaching God:

Bring an offering and come into His courts.

Psalm 96:8 (NKJV)

A nation obeying God's Word is an offering of obedience, a manifestation of worship acceptable to God.

Man was created by God for His pleasure and fellowship. A life pleasing to God is the first act of worshipping God. The fundamental reason for praising God is because He is worthy of all praise. (Psalm 18:3⁶⁵) Motivated by pride Satan wishes to be worship. Revelation describes the conflict in worship of God versus worship of Satan.

Then I saw another angel flying in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach to those who dwell on the earth—to every nation, tribe, tongue, and people— saying with a loud voice, “Fear God and give glory to Him, for the hour of His judgment has come; and worship Him who made heaven and earth, the sea and springs of water.

Revelation 14:6-7 (NKJV)

So they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, “Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him?”

Revelations 13:4 (NKJV)

⁶⁴ Exodus 23:15: NKJV) You shall keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread (you shall eat unleavened bread seven days, as I commanded you, at the time appointed in the month of Abib, for in it you came out of Egypt; none shall appear before Me empty);

⁶⁵ Psalm 18:3 (NKJV) I will call upon the LORD, *who is worthy* to be praised; So shall I be saved from my enemies.

Frangipane⁶⁶ and Chuck Pears⁶⁷ both confirmed the association of warfare with worship. Every individual engaging in warfare must first be a worshipper of God. God's army is an army of worshipping warriors.

The power of praise is illustrated in the imprisonment of Paul and Silas. (Acts 16:25-26⁶⁸) They audibly praised God in the midst of their circumstances. With a supernatural earthquake they were delivered. Praise broke the chains of bondage.

Praise and worship literally transform the atmosphere as God comes down to inhabit the worship of His people (Psalm 22:3⁶⁹) The presence of God is manifested in praise and worship, a distinct manifestation of His rule and Kingship. This does not imply a short visitation; God's presence abides in believers and deliver them from the enemy. Satan compete for the thrown of God. Worship enthrone God and establish His victory. Praise and worship South Africa's cities, neighbourhoods, farms, etc. will establish God's presence in this land as His Kingship is established in the praise of His people.

2.4.3 As a Nation: Stay True to the Word of God

The amalgamation of the Word of God with traditional religions is an abomination. Satan deceived people and prohibits true salvation. It is also the authors opinion that the elevation of culture is idolatry. The Word of God may never be amended to incorporate specific customs such as initiation schools and ancestor veneration.

⁶⁶ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. West Sussex: New Wine Press. P. 87

⁶⁷ Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books. P.30

⁶⁸ Acts 16:25-26 (NKJV) But at midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the prisoners were listening to them. Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened and everyone's chains were loosed.

⁶⁹ Psalm 22:3 (NKJV) But You *are* holy, Enthroned in the praises of Israel.

2.4.4 Words and Confessions Creates Strongholds

casting down arguments and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ

2 Corinthians 10:5 (NKJV)

Whatever a person belief to be true, becomes his/her truth. Satan is a master to manipulate though patterns by repeatedly affirming the same thought. This supposed truth becomes a stronghold in the mind of an individual and his/her final conclusion. Where a man's mind goes, the man follows. Thought determines reality. Thoughts of despair, poverty, etc progress to the spoken word and finally progress to the manifestation of the lie.

Terry Law⁷⁰ described the mind as the number one battleground between Christians and Satan.

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

The author warned of words spoken in times of turbulence. It once was said, a congregation has the pastor they deserve and a country has government they deserve. Constant criticism and humour at the expense of leaders are not Biblical. The attitude while in the wilderness determine the duration of the stay.

2.4.5 Casting Out Demons

Jesus demonstrated power and authority to cast out demons to set the captives free. (Luke 11:20⁷¹). Jesus also reminded His disciples not to rejoice in their

⁷⁰ Law, Terry (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House. P.158

⁷¹ Luke 11:20 (NKJV) But if I cast out demons with the finger of God, surely the kingdom of God has come upon you.

authority over demons, but to rejoice because of their salvation. (Luke 10:20⁷²)

2.4.5.1 Authority vs Power

Mark 5:30⁷³ accounts the instance of a women healed after touching the seam of Jesus' robe. Several accounts are also found where Jesus laid hands on individuals to heal them. Power, also translated as 'virtue'⁷⁴ from the Greek 'dunamis' used in Acts 1:8⁷⁵. This power is the inward power of the Holy Spirit, also recognised as the anointing of the Holy Spirit, released through hands. The power of God can be felt when the anointing of the Holy Spirits manifest.

Authority, however, is released through words. Jesus spoke with authority. (Matthew 7:28-29⁷⁶). The Roman Centurion understood the divine and supernatural authority of Jesus' words. (Matthew 8:8⁷⁷) With authoritative words, Jesus cast out demons. The Kingdom of Darkness recognised Jesus' comprehensive authority. Demons did not argue and could not resist Jesus' command.

The essential fact remains that Jesus already completely defeated Satan and all his power forever.

⁷² Luke 10:20 (NKJV) Nevertheless do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rather rejoice because your names are written in heaven."

⁷³ Mark 5:30 (NKJV) And Jesus, immediately knowing in Himself that power had gone out of Him, turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched My clothes?"

⁷⁴ Stone, Perry (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group. P. 169

⁷⁵ Act 1:8 (NKJV) But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."

⁷⁶ Matthew 7:28-29 (NKJV) And so it was, when Jesus had ended these sayings, that the people were astonished at His teaching, for He taught them as one having authority, and not as the scribes.

⁷⁷ Matthew 8:8 (NKJV) The centurion answered and said, "Lord, I am not worthy that You should come under my roof. But only speak a word, and my servant will be healed.

2.4.5.2 The Authority to Bind and Loose

In Matthew 18⁷⁸ Jesus' bestowed the same authority to believers to bind and forbid evil works, and to loosen or permit. Authority manifest through the believer's words.

2.5 Lessons From Similar Circumstances in the Bible

2.5.1 Esther

The book of Esther is included in the five 'megillots' or scrolls read every year at specific Jewish holy days.⁷⁹ Esther and Song of Solomon are the only books of the Bible that do not mention the name of God. Esther and Mordecai were carried away from Jerusalem in captivity to Babylon. God allowed the captivity as judgement of Israel abandonment of God's word and principles. In 479BC Esther was chosen as queen to King Ahasuerus, also known as Xerxes. Esther did not avail her Jewish nationality. The King promoted Haman as superior above all the governance officials. Haman sought to destroy all the Jews and convinced the King to decree the killing of all Jews. Esther gave notice to her fellow Jews in Susa too fast for a period of three days in preparation for her intervention with the King. She was only allowed to appear before the King if summonsed by him. Esther found favour with the King and averted the destruction of the Jews.

Application

God's judgement and the subsequent captivity of His people did not annul His

⁷⁸ Matthew 18:18 (NKJV) "Assuredly, I say to you, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.

⁷⁹ The five books are Song of Solomon read during Passover, Ruth read during Pentecost, Lamentations read at the 9th of Av commemorating the destruction of the Temple, Ecclesiastes read at the feast of Tabernacles and Esther read at the feast of Purim. Deeper Look Bible Study Notes. Day, Dr. Chuck.

mercy and willingness to rescue. Esther was familiar with the power of prayer and fasting. Esther appeared before the King to intercede for her nation. South African are guilty before God for trespassing numerous Biblical principles. This guilt does not cancel God's love and mercy. Fast and prayer should pave the way for believers to enter into God's presence to plead for God's intervention in the South Africa.

2.5.2 Nineveh

God sent the prophet Jonah to Nineveh, capital of Assyria. with a message of God's wrath as a result of the cities sin. Knowing God's mercy, Jonah attempted to avoid his mission. Eventually he proclaimed God's judgement of the destruction of the city in 40 days. In reaction to his warning, a mass repentance of the city dwellers followed and as expected, God had mercy and the destruction was repealed. On several occasions, South African prophets gathered people to pray for the nation.

Application

The principle of Godly prophets to warn or encourage a nation is still valid. South Africa should investigate prophetic messages and act accordingly. God always react in mercy and forgiveness towards sincere repentance. South Africa should constantly seek the face of God in sincere repentance.

3. COMMAND FOR SOUTH AFRICA

3.1 The Great Command

In 2021, the commission is as valid as it was when Jesus first commanded it.

Jesus did not intend to make a good and valid suggestion. It is a command in no uncertain terms.

And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age." Amen.

Matthew 28:18-20 (NKJV)

Culture, race, ethnicity, nothing invalidates the command. The end of the world is imminent. The time is not known. Politicians do not hide the One World Order but propagate the false advantages from public podiums. This enhance the urgency to spread the gospel of Christ.

Integrated in Christianity is the mission to spread the gospel of Christ. Madison Cawthorne,⁸⁰ newly elected member of the United States Congress recently said ***"If you're not wanting to lead somebody to Christ, then you're probably not really a Christian."***

3.2 Seek God and Be Transformed

South Africans need to seek the Lord and be transformed to the mind of Christ. ***"The Father is more concerned with the coming forth of His Son in our lives that He is in defeating Satan."***⁸¹ It commences as an individual journey and commitment. From here it can proceed to be a powerful and significant instrument to bring about God's about plan for the South African nation.

But we all, with unveiled face, beholding as in a mirror the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from glory to glory, just as by the Spirit of the Lord.

⁸⁰ Melendez, Pilar (November 16, 2020) *Newly Elected GOP Congressman Madison Cawthorne Has Tried to Convert Jews to Christianity*. Daily Beast. Available at: <https://www.thedailybeast.com/newly-elected-gop-congressman-madison-cawthorn-has-tried-to-convert-jews-to-christianity>

⁸¹ Frangipane, Francis (1991) *Discernment Series. Discerning of Spirits*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications. P. 23

2 Corinthians 3:18 (NKJV)

The ultimate purpose of all aspects of spirituality, warfare, worship and all aspects mentioned above, is not to seek victory over circumstances, but excel believers into Christlikeness. To be consumed by the nature of Christ remains the ultimate goal.

The path to get to know a person is to spend time with the individual. The same principle is applicable to know God. Get to know God by spending time with God. Time in Word, time in prayer, time in worship etc. Study Scriptures where God reveals Himself.

For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to be conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the firstborn among many brethren.

Romans 8:29 (NKJV)

3.3 Pursue in Battle Against Evil Only With Holy Spirit Guidance

Regardless of the desperate and challenging times, the author cautioned believers not to be ignorant in their pursuit of warfare in own strength and abilities. They will be defeated and discouraged. Spiritual discernment is the grace to evaluate and see what is in the supernatural or spiritual. Love born discernment:

And this I pray, that your love may abound still more and more in knowledge and all discernment, that you may approve the things that are excellent, that you may be sincere and without offense till the day of Christ, being filled with the fruits of righteousness which are by Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God.

Philippians 1:9-11 9 (NKJV)

To be able to discern, one has to listen and hear God's voice, to hear His voice implies the recognition of His voice, to recognise His voice implies to be familiar with His voice, to know God. To stand in relationship with God.

3.4 Do Not Judge

Do not judge according to appearance, but judge with righteous judgment.”

John 7:4 (NKJV)

Matthew 7:1-5⁸² warn believers not to judge, not to be condescending. South Africa has great disparities with regards to literacy, spirituality, financial status, etc. South Africans, particular believers need to be conscious that Christ’s goal is to save, not to judge.

Jesus’s emphasis is summarised in Matthew:

Hypocrite! First remove the plank from your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother’s eye.

Matthew 5:7 (NKJV)

The word of God is powerful to instruct and teach.

All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness,

2 Timothy 3:16 (NKJV)

but the people who know their God shall be strong, and carry out great exploits.

Daniel 11:32b (NKJV)

So he answered, “Do not fear, for those who are with us are more than those who are with them.” And Elisha prayed, and said, “Lord, I pray, open his eyes that he may see.” Then the Lord opened the eyes of the young man, and he saw. And behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha.

2 Kings 6:16 (NKJV)

⁸² Matthew 7:1-5 (NKJV) “Judge not, that you be not judged. For with what judgment you judge, you will be judged; and with the measure you use, it will be measured back to you. And why do you look at the speck in your brother’s eye, but do not consider the plank in your own eye? Or how can you say to your brother, ‘Let me remove the speck from your eye’; and look, a plank *is* in your own eye? Hypocrite! First remove the plank from your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother’s eye.

4. TAKE ACTION SOUTH AFRICAN: CORPORATELY RETURN TO GOD

4.1 20th July 2008 - Loftus Versfeld

The author attended the event with an estimated 70 000 people in a united prayer meeting in Pretoria at Loftus Versfeld.

Buchan, instead of telling people to kill or die for a cause, asked that they forgive each other, adopt a more moralistic approach to family and observe religion. He spoke of the ability to change a nation for the better. For this, people crammed into a sports stadium and broke attendance records.⁸³

During this event the following declaration was proclaimed. In reference to the eternal validity of the spoken word, the declaration remains valid and powerful in the spiritual realm.

A National Declaration for South Africa:

We, the Christian people of South Africa in humble submission to Almighty God, declare that:

- i. We will serve the Triune God and Him alone withal out hearts, minds and actions.
- ii. We will honour and obey God's Word, the Bible, and align South Africa with His standard.
- iii. We will be a God-fearing nation who recognises Jesus Christ as highest authority – the King of king and the Lord of lords.
- iv. We will be led by the Holy Spirit in all decisions and be empowered by His supernatural power.
- v. We will raise our children in the ways of the Lord and serve Him together as families.

⁸³ Trapido, Michael (July 20, 2008) *Buchan and Tutu are Madiba's birthday presents*. Mail & Guardian. Available at: <https://thoughtleader.co.za/traps/2008/07/20/angus-buchan-and-archbishop-tutu-are-madibas-birthday-presents/>

- vi. We will advance God's Kingdom in all spheres of society.
- vii. We will make sure that Jesus Christ, the Saviour of the world, is the Cornerstone of our nation.
- viii. We will love and respect all the people of South Africa with the love of Christ, and through our forgiveness, bring healing and unity in God's diversity.
- ix. We will be committed to righteousness and justice as instructed by the Word of God.
- x. We will be nation builders who restore the walls of South Africa through Godly transformation.

Created in the image of the living God, we choose to lead through serving and good stewardship to fulfil the potential and promises God has given to our rainbow nation. This to the glory of Almighty God alone! Your Kingdom come;
Your will be done in South Africa.

To declare in faith is to prophecy and to commit to do what you've declared.

4.2 *It's Time - Bloemfontein*

On April 22, 2017 it was an enormous privilege to unite with more than a million South Africans in Bloemfontein at the 'It's Time' event to pray for the nation.⁸⁴ The event was organised in response the Isaiah 66:8 and 2 Chronicles 7:14

***Who has heard of such a thing? Who has seen such things?
Can a land be born in one day?
Or can a nation be brought forth in a moment?
As soon as Zion was in labor, she also brought forth her sons.***

Isaiah 66:8 (AMP)

and My people, who are called by My Name, humble themselves, and pray and seek (crave, require as a necessity) My face and turn from

⁸⁴ Buchan, Angus (2017) *It's Time*. Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers. P.18

their wicked ways, then I will hear [them] from heaven, and forgive their sin and heal their land.

2 Chronicles 7:14 (AMP)

Audio visuals are available at the following addresses. The author encourages South Africans to visit these web addresses to be reminded of the miracles and promises of God. It is impossible not to be encouraged in faith and hope for the future of South Africa.

- ICYMI: Thousands flock to pray with Angus Buchan in Bloemfontein:
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GBNjqVzxJQ8>
- It's Time Bloemfontein April 22, 2017:
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MlvLZuJfM24>
- Masses attend It's Time pray meeting outside Bloemfontein
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bxuJaFxOIEE>

4.3 Its Time Pretoria, October 27, 2018

Following the first event in Bloemfontein, the author attended the second national prayer event on the outskirts of Pretoria. An estimated 2 million people interceded for God's restoration of South Africa. The author suggests readers to visit the website, and those who attended the event to re-visit the footage to stir their faith anew. Video footage is available at:

- Biggest Christian Prayer gathering in the history of South Africa - IT'S TIME PRETORIA – October 27, 2018
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XSTfBS7bBeE>
- It's Time Pretoria October 27, 2018 (highlights)
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2PhkUt8MF5g>

4.4 Appose Passivity

Several organisations and initiatives are launched on Biblical principles with great success to rebuild South Africa. The author supports the following initiatives and believes they have the ability to contribute to the establishment of a God-fearing South Africa and a spiritual transformation of the South Africa. The author supports the following.

4.4.1 ProjectSA, Bringing Hope, Healing and Restoration⁸⁵

Initiated by Dr. Arno van Niekerk⁸⁶, and in collaboration with Dr. Pearl Kupe⁸⁷, ProjectSA is a national strategy for Kingdom transformation. An Action plan to make South Africa flourish in all areas. It brings together a network of nation builders committed in a unified front to rebuild South Africa.

- Calling the Nehemiah's to rebuild the walls in communities.
- Calling the Josephs, good financial stewards to build a storehouse for the nation.
- Calling the Esther's and Davids, leaders with a Kingdom mindset to step forward and bring down the gigantic challenges facing South Africa.

The author attended several of Dr. Kupe's conferences and are convinced that God is using her in a powerful manner to rebuild South Africa. She was instrumental in organising several multi denominational prayer meetings in

⁸⁵ ProjectSA. Available at: <https://projectsa.solutions/>

⁸⁶ Dr. Arno van Niekerk: Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) International Economics. Senior Lecturer at the University of the Free State. Author of *Enough SA / Genoeg SA*.

⁸⁷ Dr. Pearl Kupe: LLB, Bachelor of Laws degree from University of Botswana (in conjunction with Edinburgh University), and her LLM, Masters of Law (Advanced Labour Law), (with distinction) and PGD in dispute Resolution (with distinction) from the University of Cape Town. Dr. Pearl Kupe is also a certified Business coach qualified through the University of Berkley, USA.

Parliament, Pretoria as the administrative capital and Sandton as South Africa's economical hub.

4.4.2 Kingdom Nation: Uniting South Africa in Christ⁸⁸

The organisation describes a Kingdom Nation as having a clear calling, purpose, and destiny in Christ. A Kingdom nation stands on four pillars of love, (1 John 4:16)⁸⁹ Righteousness (Matthew 6:33)⁹⁰, Faithfulness (Galatians 5:22)⁹¹ and Justice (Matthew 12:18)⁹². The vision is to restore the walls of South Africa through Godly transformation through servant leadership and good stewardship. Focus areas are business, (Deuteronomy 8:18)⁹³, Government (Psalm 22:28)⁹⁴, Church and education (1 Thessalonians 5:11)⁹⁵.

The author attended the launch of the organisation and witnessed 200 Christian leaders proclaiming their commitment to rebuild South Africa. The declaration is available as an addendum.

4.4.3 Christian Consensus in South Africa⁹⁶

The overwhelming response to a Christian Consensus in SA early in 2019, has unified Christian voices, and triggered a huge awakening among God's

⁸⁸ Kingdom Nation Uniting South Africa in Christ. Available at: <https://kingdomnation.co.za/>

⁸⁹ 1 John 4:16 (NIV) And so we know and rely on the love God has for us.

⁹⁰ Matthew 6:33 (NIV) But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.

⁹¹ Galatians 5:22 (NIV) But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, forbearance, kindness, goodness, faithfulness

⁹² Matthew 12:18 (NIV) Here is my servant whom I have chosen, the one I love, in whom I delight; I will put my Spirit on him, and he will proclaim justice to the nations.

⁹³ Deuteronomy 8:18 (NIV) But remember the Lord your God, for it is he who gives you the ability to produce wealth, and so confirms his covenant, which he swore to your ancestors, as it is today.

⁹⁴ Psalm 22:28 (ESV) For kingship belongs to the LORD, and he rules over the nations

⁹⁵ 1 Thessalonians 5:11 (ESV) Therefore encourage one another and build one another up, just as you are doing

⁹⁶ Christian Consensus. Available at: <http://greatawakeningsa.co.za/#DECLARATION>

people. For perhaps the first time our history, Christians are uniting in all our diversity to bring true change in the nation. On 27 April 2019 thousands of Christians took part in Jesus Marches across the country, declaring it True Freedom Day (in Christ). At 80% of the population, Christians are the vast majority. The Christian Consensus serves to unify and mobilise believers to become part of the solution in South Africa. All spheres of society are targeted. For instance, before the Elections we have engaged with political leaders to present the Christian Consensus to them and requested them to unite on Biblical grounds. It enabled Christians to say to politicians what they want to vote for, as encapsulated in the 10 Points of the Consensus. Momentum now continues, focussing on other sectors of society as well to establish a righteous nation with a righteous government. We, the people, are ready to transform South Africa to make the Word of God its solid foundation. It's time for action!⁹⁷

Consensus includes the following:

- Zero tolerance for crime
- Accountable leaders elected by the people
- Peace, not war
- Leadership that honours God
- Laws that glorify God
- Biblical family values
- Sanctity of Life
- Inclusive and productive economy
- High-quality education to all
- Religious freedom and constitutionalism

4.4.4 FOR SA (Freedom of Religion South Africa) for Faith and Freedom⁹⁸

A non-profit, legal advocacy organisation dedicated to upholding the rights to religious freedom conferred by the South African Constitution. This includes

⁹⁷ Christian Consensus. Available at: <http://greatawakeningsa.co.za/#DECLARATION>

⁹⁸ FOR SA: Available at: <https://forsa.org.za/>

parental rights and the autonomy of religious organisations to determine doctrine and the regulation of internal affairs without the interference of government.

The author followed the organisation advocacy with relation to several legislations impacting Christianity. The document library is available at: <https://forsa.org.za/resources/document-library/>

5. A FINAL WORD

The thesis provided ample evidence of the manifestation of spirituality in political, cultural, and economic South African environments. The conclusion reiterated the fact that the crisis hour of South Africa is primarily a spiritual crisis and therefore South Africa is in dire need of a spiritual solution which is only available in Jesus Christ. God's love for mankind was prevalent in creation and especially in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. This thesis reminded South Africans of God's love and also of the fact that they can be more than conquerors.

Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

As it is written:

"For Your sake we are killed all day long; We are accounted as sheep for the slaughter."

Yet in all these things we are more than conquerors through Him who loved us. For I am persuaded that neither death nor life, nor angels nor principalities nor powers, nor things present nor things to come, nor height nor depth, nor any other created thing, shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

Romans 8:35-37 (NKJV)

The author is convinced that God's plan for South African conveyed by His prophets are under siege and under severe attack by Satan with the goal to counter God's Kingdom plan. It is the hour for Christians to take note of their responsibility to part take in the spiritual battle between the Kingdom of Light versus the Kingdom of Darkness. From this conviction the author attended and

support several Godly ordained initiatives to put prayer into action. The author invites fellow believers to continue in prayer for love, unity, peace and the manifestation of God's plan and a God-fearing government to act according to Biblical principles.

Knowing God implies doing what pleases Him. The ultimate goal for all South Africans is to become like God Himself.

“You have heard that it was said, You shall love your neighbor and hate your enemy.’ But I say to you, Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, so that you may be sons of your Father who is in heaven. For he makes his sun rise on the evil and on the good, and sends rain on the just and on the unjust. For if you love those who love you, what reward do you have? Do not even the tax collectors do the same? And if you greet only your brothers, what more are you doing than others? Do not even the Gentiles do the same? You therefore must be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

Matthew 5:43-48 (ESV)

And by this we know that we have come to know Him, if we keep His commandments.

And by this we know that we have come to know him, if we keep his commandments. Whoever says “I know him” but does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in him, but whoever keeps his word, in him truly the love of God is perfected. By this we may know that we are in him: whoever says he abides in him ought to walk in the same way in which he walked.

1 John 2:3-5 (ESV)

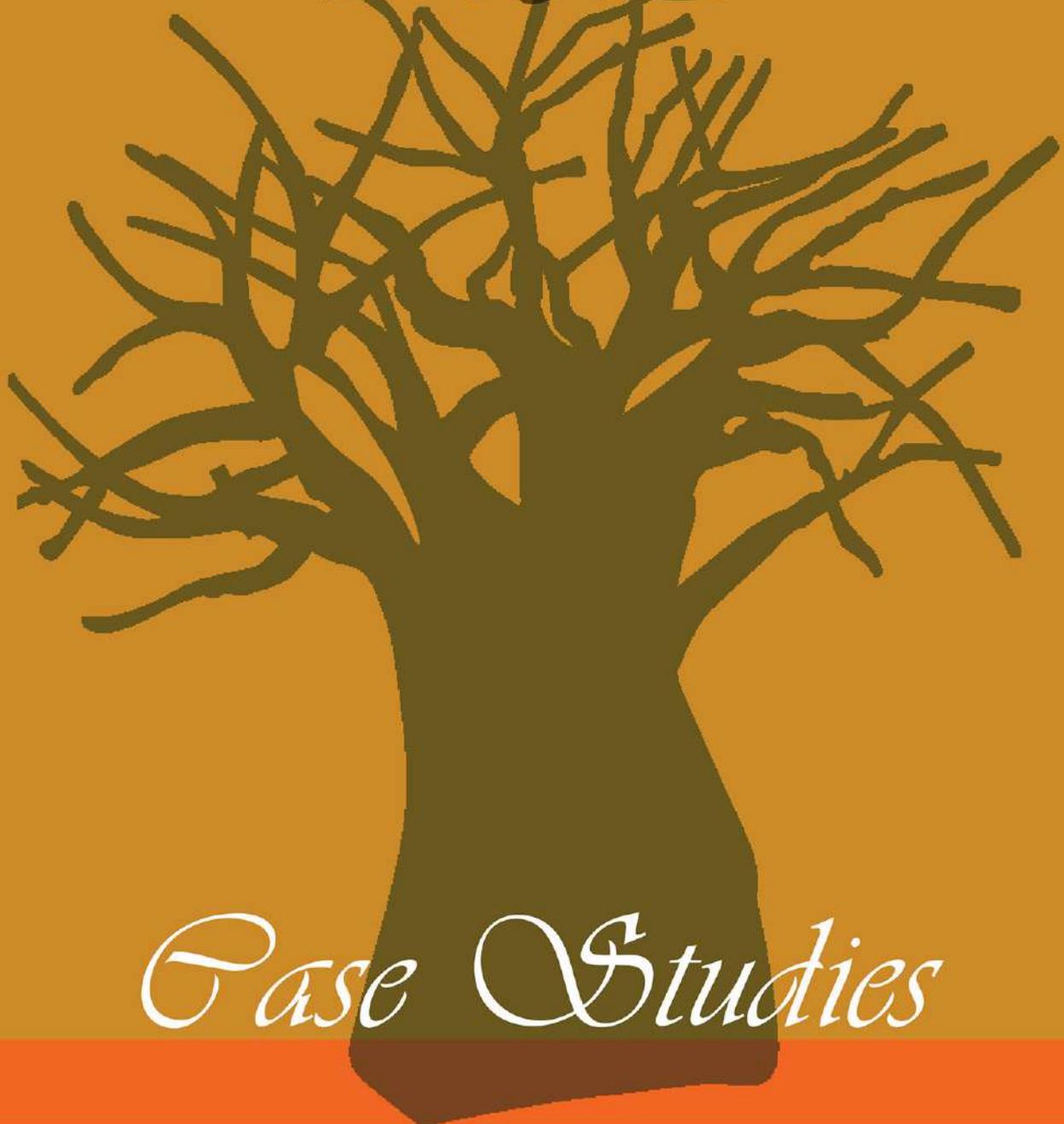
--ooOoo--

“Therefore God also has highly exalted Him and given Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, and of those on earth, and of those under the earth, and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.”

- Philippians 2:9-11 (NKJV)

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD



Case Studies



CASE STUDIES

1. INTRODUCTION

The earliest evidence of the existence of mankind portrayed art as a mechanism to convey messages, including collective and/or individual ideologies. In primitive societies art portrayed generic topics such as hunting, nature, agriculture, superstition, and spirituality. Art developed over millennia and civilizations, using the art-mediums available and were inventive, in form, technique and genres. Messages relevant to the time during which the artist lived and the communication with - and regarding - to the supernatural and messages from one generation or civilization to the next were captured in art. The message contained in artistic expression transcends words and language and translates into messages that cannot be articulated, whether or not written language exist or not, or for that lack of appropriate lexicon in a particular language to adequately transmit a message for full comprehension.

The authors opinion above is echoed by Hans Wilhelm when he stated:

Art broadens our horizon as it draws us into details of life and show us the richness of Creation in paintings, music, literature, dance, architecture and many many other artistic ways of expression. Art can connect us with divinity, something larger than ourselves. It can reawaken our compassion for others and for ourselves.¹

1.1 Art and Spirituality/Supernatural

Spirituality is not defined nor restricted by religion, doctrine or creeds. Leesa Fanning, contemporary art curator is of the opinion that **believers, agnostics and nonbelievers alike are capable to experience a sense of the transcendental through art.**² Huey-Heck and Kalnin agree and compliment the influence of religion and spirituality on art by stating **that religion and spirituality have made the deepest impact on art throughout history, and this is certainly the result of the fact that throughout history, man has continuously sought to express himself through art and religion.**

2. CASE STUDY NO. 1: SPIRITUALITY IN THE ART OF DR. ESTHER MAHLANGU



Figure 1: Dr. Esther Mahlangu³

¹ Wilhelm, Hans. (May 24, 2019) *Art and Spirituality*. Available <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cZU8mfSad9E>

² Fanning, Leesa. (June 7, 2018) *Encountering the Spiritual in Contemporary Art*. Available at: <https://www.leesafanning.com/book>

³ Dr. Esther Mahlangu. Available at: <https://www.facebook.com/esthermahlanguart/>

2.1 Introducing Dr. Mahlangu

Ndebele people are included in the Nguni group of people along with the Zulu, Xhosa and Swazi. During the 16th century the Ndebele people migrated from KwaZulu Natal⁴ to the northern and northern-east parts of Transvaal, eventually called KwaNdebele. Esther Mahlangu, born in 1935 on a farm outside Middleburg was the first of nine children. Two subtribes of Manala and Ndunza are included in the Ndebele nation.

Taught by her mother and grandmother she learned the traditional Ndebele wall painting and beadwork as a child and became an expert in executing murals as a teenager, using a widening range of paint colours that emerged in the 1940s. She recalls:

She recalls, "Every single afternoon when they went to have a nap, I'd try to paint. I got into trouble every day until eventually they realized that in my heart I wanted to paint."⁵

She married and had three sons. Between 1980 and 1991 she lived and worked at the Botshabelo Historical Village, an open-air museum of Ndebele culture. In 1986, French researchers discovered her work whilst documenting traditional art internationally. On invitation to France she created murals for an exhibition of international contemporary art, the *Magiciens de la Terre* ('Magicians of the World').⁶ In 1989 she returned to France where she painted a house in front of thousands of spectators. She also decorated a wall inside the Angoulême Museum of Fine Arts and showed her work at other locations in France.

In 1990 she began to paint murals for public venues in Johannesburg and elsewhere in South Africa, soon followed by locations in Europe and the United

⁴ The Characteristics of the Ndebele art. Available at: <http://afroculture.net/ndebele-art-the-characteristics-of-the-ndebele-art/>

⁵ Esther Mahlangu South African most famous artist. Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/yjeanmundelsalle/2019/06/07/esther-mahlangu-one-of-south-africas-most-famous-artists-perpetuates-traditional-ndebele-painting/#4b0138561501>

⁶ A national treasure, Dr. Esther Mahlangu. Available at: <https://www.w24.co.za/PopCulture/Entertainment/Arts/a-national-treasure-she-is-dr-esther-mahlangu-continues-to-be-south-africas-pride-at-the-age-of-83-20181113>

States. Her work appeared in exhibitions in more than a dozen countries. Mahlangu was the first person to transfer the traditional Ndebele style of mural painting to canvas. 1991 marked her initial collaboration with BMW where she was asked to paint a BMW Art Car.



Figure 2: Dr. Esther Mahlangu seen in her BMW 525i⁷ 'Art Car' at the British Museum 2016⁸

True to her art, she painted her geometric patterns on a BMW 525i in 1991, becoming the twelfth artist and first woman to take part in the BMW Art Car Project after figures such as Andy Warhol and Roy Lichtenstein.⁹ In 1994 the

⁷ Chabalala, Faith (July 25, 2019) Solomon Star. *Dr Esther Mahlangu – South Africa's Treasure*. Available at: <https://solomonstar.live/dr-esther-mahlangu-south-africas-treasure/>

⁸ Mason, Petra (September 8, 2016) *The Art Woman: Dr Esther Mahlangu's Ndebele Art Renaissance*. Available at: <https://www.wantedonline.co.za/art-design/2017-02-10-the-art-woman-dr-esther-mahlangu-ndebele-art-renaissance/>

⁹ The first Esther Mahlangu BMW art car, a 1991 BMW 525i. Image: Motorpress. Available at: <https://www.businessinsider.co.za/here-is-why-esther-mahlangu-stays-a-pop-icon-after-so-many-years-2018-4>

BMW 521i also became the first African art car to be exhibited at the National Museum of Women in the Arts in Washington DC. Mahlangu became the first non-Western and female designer of art cars.¹⁰ 25 years later, in 2016 BMW commissioned Dr. Mahlangu again to paint the interior panels of a BMW Individual 7 Series. This one-of-a-kind was auctioned at the Frieze Art Fair in London, October 2017.¹¹

In the years following she exhibited her work around the globe, from Mexico to Switzerland to Australia. Mahlangu's work is featured in collections in South Africa, the United States, Japan, Germany, France and elsewhere. With the goal of preserving her cultural heritage, Mahlangu started an art school at her home in Mabhoko (Weltevreden) in the KwaMhlanga district in Mpumalanga Province. Her curriculum includes the skill of mixing of pigments the art of painting straight lines, free-handed and without sketches, using fingers or chicken feathers.

Her awards include the South African government's Order of Ikhamanga,¹² silver class, in 2006, as well as the Mpumalanga Arts and Culture Award, an award from the French Ministry of Culture, two awards from Radio Ndebele and others from South Africa and abroad. City Press reported that Dr. Esther was conferred with an honorary doctorate from the University of Johannesburg for her legacy as a cultural entrepreneur and educator. The article notes that she received recognition for her artistic flair and striking Ndebele patterns.¹³

In 2016, Belvedere Vodka and John Legend assigned Dr. Mahlangu to design the labels for a limited range of Belvedere Vodka bottles for HIV in Africa

¹⁰ Esther Mahlangu a pop icon after many years. Available at: <https://www.businessinsider.co.za/here-is-why-esther-mahlangu-stays-a-pop-icon-after-so-many-years-2018-4>

¹¹ Who is Esther Mahlangu. Available at: <https://joburg.co.za/who-is-esther-mahlangu/>

¹² Presidential award for her "Excellent contribution to the development of the indigenous Ndebele arts." Available at: <https://www.w24.co.za/PopCulture/Entertainment/Arts/a-national-treasure-she-is-dr-esther-mahlangu-continues-to-be-south-africas-pride-at-the-age-of-83-20181113>

¹³ Presidential award for her "Excellent contribution to the development of the indigenous Ndebele arts." Available at: <https://www.w24.co.za/PopCulture/Entertainment/Arts/a-national-treasure-she-is-dr-esther-mahlangu-continues-to-be-south-africas-pride-at-the-age-of-83-20181113>

campaign.¹⁴

In 2017, she collaborated with Dr. Makaziwe Mandela, eldest daughter of Mr Nelson Mandela, to unveil a series of artworks The Melrose Gallery in Johannesburg she created in 2004 in partnership with President Mandela.¹⁵



Figure 3: Mahlangu's collaboration with Nelson Mandela: painting on prints of drawings that he had done¹⁶ (Photo courtesy of the Melrose Gallery)

2.2. Dr. Mahlangu's Art Explained

Ndebele paintings, predominantly done by women, is describe as a form of *self-expression of individuality and sense of self-worth*.¹⁷

¹⁴ Esther Mahlangu Artwork. Available at: <https://www.themelrosegallery.co.za/portfolio/esthermahlangu/>

¹⁵ Esther Mahlangu Artwork. Available at: <https://www.themelrosegallery.co.za/portfolio/esthermahlangu/>

¹⁶ Mun-Delsalle, Y-Jean (June 7, 2019) Esther Mahlangu, One of South Africa's Most Famous Artists, Perpetuates Traditional Ndebele Painting. Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/yjeanmundelsalle/2019/06/07/esther-mahlangu-one-of-south-africas-most-famous-artists-perpetuates-traditional-ndebele-painting/?sh=4a730e3e1501>

¹⁷ Esther Mahlangu a pop icon after many years. Available at: <https://www.businessinsider.co.za/here-is-why-esther-mahlangu-stays-a-pop-icon-after-so-many-years-2018-4>



Figure 4:¹⁸ Dr. Esther Mahlangu at Work.¹⁹

Ndebele art is recognised by

- Geometric and symmetrical abstract painting and murals.
- Design elements composed of rectangle, triangle, chevron and diamond shape

Marina Cashdan noted Dr. Mahlangu's 'superhuman precision' in drawing lines without the help of a ruler and free hand painting. She applies thick black lines before adding vivid Ndebele colours using a delicate chicken feather instead of a paintbrush.²⁰

Colour for earlier work was retrieved from natural pigments that she made herself and cow dung, limited to yellow, white, ochre, black and red hues. In later works acrylic paint presented an entirely new colour palette. She notes:

"Acrylic paints have allowed me to use many more colors than I could have with natural pigments,"²¹

¹⁸ Mun-Delsalle, Y-Jean (June 7, 2019) *Esther Mahlangu, One of South Africa's Most Famous Artists, Perpetuates Traditional Ndebele Painting*. Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/yjeanmundelsalle/2019/06/07/esther-mahlangu-one-of-south-africas-most-famous-artists-perpetuates-traditional-ndebele-painting/?sh=4a730e3e1501>

¹⁹ Esther Mahlangu's gift to the World: The Geometry of Now. Photo credit and courtesy of Melrose Gallery. Available at: <https://theartmomentum.com/esther-mahlangu/>

²⁰ Who is Esther Mahlangu? Available at: <https://joburg.co.za/who-is-esther-mahlangu/>

²¹ Esther Mahlangu one of South Africa's most famous artist: Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/yjeanmundelsalle/2019/06/07/esther-mahlangu-one-of-south-africas-most-famous-artists-perpetuates-traditional-ndebele-painting/#4b0138561501>

2.3. Conclusion: The Spiritual Context

Numerous international accolades confirm the aesthetic value of Dr. Esther's art. The question the author posed: Does the theory of spirituality in art, or the reflection of spirituality in art apply to her work? Notwithstanding extensive media coverage and international appreciation and love for her unpretentious work, spirituality or spiritual inspiration and/or reflection is not apparent and therefore annotations are scarce. The author presented two arguments to address the question at hand.

The first application the author made was with reference to the relation of spirituality in the art and design of Dr. Mahlangu is found in her – and in the Ndebele art at large – recognition of the Ndebele 'rite of passage'. The spirituality of various 'rite of passage' in different life-stages are discussed in chapters four and five.

The elaborately-painted patterns and graphic elements composed of rectangle, triangle, chevron and diamond shapes heralded news of important life events such as a birth, death, wedding or a boy heading off to initiation school. "When you get married, you paint your first house," Mahlangu relates. "It's very important to have straight lines and not zigzag lines because your family members will come and look. If your lines are perfectly straight, then you are a very good wife and can look after your family."²²

The author concurs with Gabriel E Idang from the University of Uyo, Nigeria that although social values can be interpreted as beliefs and practices of a particular society, these social practices in an African context and society, cannot be separated from religious, moral, and political values.²³

Professor Jacob Olupona was also in agreement affirming that *religion*, even though the term does not describe the African spirituality for it implies separation between culture, society and environment, motivates everything in traditional

²² Esther Mahlangu one of South Africa's most famous artist: Available at: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/yjeanmundelsalle/2019/06/07/esther-mahlangu-one-of-south-africas-most-famous-artists-perpetuates-traditional-ndebele-painting/#4b0138561501>

²³ Idang, Gabriel E. (2015) *African culture and values*. Phronimon. Pretoria. v. 16, n. 2, P. 97-111. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1561-40182015000200006

African societies; including politics, art, marriage, well-being and health, diet, dress, finances and death. He summarised the impact of African spirituality as follows:²⁴

“African spirituality simply acknowledges that beliefs and practices touch on and inform every facet of human life, and therefore African religion cannot be separated from the everyday or mundane.”

If we lose traditional African religions, we would also lose or continue to seriously undermine the African practice of rites of passage.

- Houses are decorated while the young boys who come of age are attending two weeks initiation ceremonies. During this time young ladies of the tribe need to decorate their own houses.
- The colourful decorations also announce births, weddings and deaths.
- Rite of passage for young women getting married is the painting and decorating of their first house. Family members inspect the work evaluating straight lines. Zig-zag patterns are not allowed. Straight lines reflect a ‘good wife’ and the ability to nurture a family.

The second argument alluded to the referral of ‘sacred geometry and practices’ made in ‘The Art’ magazine.

Even at the age of eighty-three the iconic artist still continues producing work and creative interpretation of the sacred geometry and practices of Ndebele and African culture.²⁵

Bruce Rawless²⁶ described sacred geometry as follows:

In nature, we find patterns, designs and structures from the most minuscule particles, to expressions of life discernible by human eyes, to the greater cosmos. These inevitably follow geometrical archetypes, which reveal to us the nature of each form and its vibrational resonances. They are also symbolic of the underlying metaphysical principle of the inseparable relationship of the part to the whole. It is this principle of oneness underlying all geometry that permeates the architecture of all form in its myriad

²⁴ The Spirituality of Africa. Available at: <https://news.harvard.edu/gazette/story/2015/10/the-spirituality-of-africa/>

²⁵ Art Times. South Africa’s leading visual arts publication. Rondebosch. June 2019. P. 55

²⁶ Sacred geometry. Available at: <http://www.fractal.org/Bewustzijns-Besturings-Model/Sacred-Geometry.htm>

diversity. This principle of interconnectedness, inseparability and union provides us with a continuous reminder of our relationship to the whole, a blueprint for the mind to the sacred foundation of all things created.

In addition, Tokenrock²⁷ website presents the following:

The term sacred geometry describes the geometrical laws which create everything in existence. It unites the mind and the heart, spirit and matter, science and spirituality. Everything in nature is made up of patterns, structures, and designs from the smallest atom to the infinite universe

According to Krystleyez²⁸ sacred geometry included

- Universal language of light, sound, colour, vibrations, relationship and form
- Canon of harmony, order, unity, truth, perfection and beauty
- Holographic blueprint or map for creation.

In closure, Beathur Mgoza Baker²⁹ reflected:

Her life defies chronology and her talent, defies the conventions of the Western art as a truly African articulation of our collective cultural heritage.”

In South Africa we embrace her as a national treasure, a wise elder and passionate, committed ambassador who has captivated the interest and imagination of the world with her gift, and her beautiful understanding of how art is central to our cultural identity as human beings

3. CASE STUDY NO. 2: THE ALTERNATIVE AFRIKAANS MUSIC MOVEMENT’S IMPACT OR REFLECTION ON SPIRITUAL ASPECTS OF AFRIKANER NATIONALISM PSEUDO RELIGION

Jim Kalin, and Lois Huey-Heck commented on art in the Modern era as follows:

In modern times, artists have become completely independent from societal ideologies, and instead of communicating the realities of life, artwork has

²⁷ Sacred geometry explained. Available at: <https://www.tokenrock.com/explain-sacred-geometry-76.html>

²⁸ Sacred geometry. Available at: <https://www.krystleyez.com/sacred-geometry-introduction>

²⁹ Art Times. South Africa’s leading visual arts publication. Rondebosch. June 2019. P. 55

become a means for the artist to communicate personal ideologies and spiritual themes through visual and other elements.³⁰
“Voëlvry³¹ was the Boere³²-Woodstock. It was a significant movement in every social, political, cultural and musical sense of the word”

– Max du Preez³³

The discussion concentrated on a group of young Afrikaans musicians with Ralph Rabie (alias Johannes Kerkerrel³⁴) as their lead singer - unofficial frontrunner of the so-called Alternative Afrikaans Music Movement (Alternatiewe Afrikaanse Musiek beweging) and their 1989 nationwide music tour called “Voëlvry”.

The group became the voice of their generation – young, white, Afrikaners. A spontaneous emancipation of the Afrikaner youth from the structures of authoritarian and patriarchal culture. Organised by the ‘Vrye Weekblad’³⁵ and Shifty Records, the ‘Voëlvry’ tour featured, among others, Johannes Kerkerrel and the ‘Gereformeerde Blues Band’³⁶, André Letoit, Bernoldus Niemand alias James Phillips and his band ‘Swart Gevaar’³⁷.

³⁰ The spirituality of art. Available at: <https://www.spiritualityandpractice.com/arts/reviews/view/27756/the-spirituality-of-art>

³¹ Voëlvry. The name was adopted for the Alternative Afrikaans Musical tour. The word combined two Afrikaans words – Voël (Bird) and Vry (free). Combined, the two words adopt new meaning – “outlawed”. It can also be translated as “free as a bird”. Available at: <http://mobile.wiredspace.wits.ac.za/bitstream/handle/10539/12051/Final%20copy%20Report.pdf?sequence=1>

³² Boere: Directly translated as ‘Farmers’. Recognised alternative name for Afrikaans speaking white South Africans. Descendants of European immigrants to the Cape Colony. Most of them became farmers. After the Groot Trek inland, they also settled to farm. Also called Afrikaners.

³³ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. Coverpage

³⁴ Johannes Kerkerrel: Directly translated as “Johannes Church Organ”

³⁵ Vrye Weekblad: Directly translated as ‘The Independent Weekly Paper’. An anti-establishment, uncensored and independent weekly newspaper.

³⁶ Gereformeerde Blues Band: The Name of the Band of which Johannes Kerkerrel was the leader and lead singer. Directly translated as ‘The Reformed Blues Band’. Reformed is meant to reflect on the Dutch Reformed Church of South Africa.

³⁷ Swart Gevaar: Directly translated as ‘Black Danger’. ‘Swart Gevaar’, was the term used during apartheid to refer to the perceived security threat of the majority black African population to the white South African government and the white minority population. Available at: <https://open.uct.ac.za/handle/11427/27305>

3.1 Historical Background Pertaining To Their 'Patriachal Culture' And Pseudo-Religious Nationalism (Refer To The Thesis Elaboration On Afrikaner Nationalism A Pseudo Religion)

South African historian JA van Jaarsveld's³⁸ definition and interpretation of Afrikaner Nationalism (religious-historic nationalism, enjoying a similar loyalty as a cult) and the Afrikaner's interpretation of the South African history was instrumental in the author's argument relating to the spiritual impact of the Alternative Afrikaans Music Movement.

The birth of the ideal of an exclusive Afrikaner nation in 1912-14 was associated with the victory of the National Party. In 1913 T.B. Muller developed *the Afrikaner Nationalist statement of faith* whereby he depicted the Afrikaner as an organism and product of both the African environment and the Afrikaner's history. The history accommodates their consciousness as a *white race* born from the conflict with the native black nations and the consciousness as a *separate nation* born from the conflict with the English.

J. Alberts suggested that the history of South Africa is – to a great extent – the history of the Afrikaner. (1941). C.G.W. Schumann agreed in his conclusion that the history of South Africa is the history of the unification of a nation. (1945)³⁹

At van Wyk also highlighted the religious relation to the Afrikaners in his reference '*Christian Afrikaner Nationalism*⁴⁰'. Religious lexicon was applied to historical events such as the victory at Bloedrivier declaring the day to be recognised as a Sunday, a *political-religious* (almost Holy) day. Along with the Groot Trek, the two Anglo-Boer Wars was deeply entrenched in the Afrikaner pseudo religion.

³⁸ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 17

³⁹ Van Jaarsveld, F.A (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg, Perskor-Boekdrukkery P. 21

⁴⁰ Van Wyk, At (1991) *The Birth of a New Afrikaner*. Cape Town. Human and Rousseau. P. 69

3.2 Possible Spiritual Components Of The Movement

3.2.1 Perceived Mockery of Church Conveyed in the Name Gereformeerde Blues Band (Reformed Blues Band) and Johannes Kerkerrel (John Church Organ)

“Gereformeerde” translated to “Reformed” has a strong resemblance or association with the broader Protestant Christianity of the Afrikaner. Reference to the church or any particular aspect of the church was intended as sincere criticism of a political and social system believed to be unrighteous but approved and defended by the church. Because of the Afrikaans church justification of state policies, the Dutch Reformed church per se was mocked. Authorities and Afrikaner patriotists experienced this as rebellious mockery against Afrikaner Nationalism.

The name of the band parodied the Calvinistic Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk, which was enormously powerful in apartheid South Africa.

The ‘Blues’ part of the name was explained by Kerkerrel as such, “If you grow up in this country you get hit by Calvinism, whether you like it or not, whether you’re black or white or English or whatever, Calvinism hits you, you go through the system. That’s the sort of blues we’re talking about, blues of growing up in this society here”.⁴¹

Its social and cultural impact was undoubtedly significant. It certainly helped undermine the unholy traditional Afrikaner culture of respect for authority and older people. It boosted Afrikaans language like few events before it, and that a few years before Afrikaans lost its privileged official status. And it proved that Boere can rock in their taal, after all. Viva Calvinism, viva!⁴²

This movement was mainly perceived as fundamentally opposing political and social injustices and had a specific and deliberate impact on the dogma, ethics, and religion of the mainstream churches.

“I knew right away there that this was a sort of turning point, that Afrikanerdom would never be quite the same after this.”

⁴¹ An overview of the Gereformeerde Blues Band. Available at: <https://johanneskerkerrel.com/overview-of-the-gbb/>

⁴² Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 8

Fortysomethings point to Voëlvry as the time they started realising that there was more to Afrikaans and being an Afrikaner than Christian National Education, fighting on the border and authoritarian finger-wagging politicians. Voëlvry helped liberate Afrikaans from the clammy paws of the Broeders and other grey-shoed ooms of Afrikaner nationalism, the kultuurkoeke, the dominees and Bles Bridges. Voëlvry was the Boere-Woodstock. It was a significant movement in every social, political, cultural and musical sense of the word.⁴³

The stage name chosen by the Ralph Rabie, Johannes Kerkerrel (directly translated to John Church Organ), was also perceived to show a double spiritual mockery. John was perceived to refer to John, a disciple of Jesus, although it could have only been mocking the perceived 'loyal to Afrikaner Nationalism' man since 'Johannes' is a very prominent Afrikaner first name. Church organ as the main music instrument of the Afrikaans churches was seen as an extended mockery of the Afrikaans Church. The author is of the opinion that the band did not mock Christianity or God per se, but the Church as extension of the Apartheid regime.

Van Wyk⁴⁴ noted that all the members of the National Party were Christians. The author speculates that all the Afrikaans speaking members of Parliament were not merely Christian, but members of the three main Protestant Afrikaans Churches, mainly the Dutch Reformed Church which also had a close relationship with the Broederbond. Van Wyk⁴⁵ recalled church council debates which included Apartheid principles; ***"The Dutch Reformed Church is the Nationalist Party at prayer."***

Spiritually inspired worship or Christian music are commonly categorised in the genre of 'Gospel' music. Rock music, the genre of this group, or the genre of Blues also captured in their name, was a very 'tongue in cheek' but deliberate mockery of the Afrikaans Church in general.

⁴³ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 6

⁴⁴ Van Wyk, At (1991) *The Birth of a New Afrikaner*. Cape Town. Human and Rousseau. P. 91

⁴⁵ Van Wyk, At (1991) *The Birth of a New Afrikaner*. Cape Town. Human and Rousseau. P. 17

The thesis presented the argument that this music movement opposed and fiercely criticised the South African authorities, Apartheid policies and Afrikaner Nationalism. The latter was entrenched in Protestantism, and the Afrikaner nationalism is described as a pseudo religion. (refer to discussion of Afrikaner Nationalism). The movement automatically was perceived as mocking Christianity, the Dutch Reformed Church and Protestantism - sacred in Afrikaner Nationalism.

3.2.2 Protest Lyrics in Afrikaans

The history of Afrikaans as language is undetachable from the liberation history of the Afrikaners and 'sacred' Afrikaner Nationalism. Afrikaans is embedded in the 'holy culture' of the Afrikaner. The 1828 proclamation of English as the only official language in the Cape Colony needs to be recognized as a major contributing factor to the anti-Britain sentiment and contributing to the Groot Trek. Frustrated with English Education and the refusal of permission to teach their children in Afrikaans as their mother tongue, the first Afrikaans private school was established in September 1903. Condemnation of the authorities automatically included criticism of Protestantism. The musicians did not intent to dis-associate with Afrikaans per se although Afrikaans language is included in the Afrikaner Nationalism as Pseudo-religion, seen as a 'holy' language. With reference to the impact the musicians had on Afrikaans, Max du Preez⁴⁶ wrote:

“It boosted Afrikaans language like few events before”

The Bible was translated and published in Afrikaans in 1933. Prior to 1933 the practice of the Afrikaner religion was restricted to Dutch. The Bible was only available in Dutch and Ministers from the Netherlands ministered in Dutch only. The Afrikaans Bible was received with great joy. The status of Afrikaans as the

⁴⁶ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 8

language of the Bible, of prayer and worship must be highlighted. It projected a 'holiness' towards the language fitting into the 'Pseudo-religion' of Afrikaner Nationalism.

The Broederbond established the (FAK) Federasie van Afrikaanse Kultuurverenigings (Federation of Afrikaans Cultural Associations) in 1929 with the purpose to promote Afrikaans. One of the primary goals was to define music fitting and proper for Afrikaner Nationalism. In his book, *Voëlvry The Movement*, P. Hopkins⁴⁷ are of the opinion that this 'approved music' was strongly influenced by Nazi thinking.

"Most commonly, volksvriendelike (friendly to the nation/appropriate) included ritualised 'traditional' music that celebrated the volk's (nations) history, boere music, a form particularly signifying the farm, and rural society, and the popular 'lekkerliedjie' (nice song), which, according to I Byerly in Mirror, Mediator and Prophet, is a 'bland form of easy-listening with lyrics cantered around flora, fauna and geographical locations'. Allied to the Afrikaner nationalist projects, these musical forms were almost entirely without dissent, controversy or criticism of that project"

3.2.3 Afrikaans Transformed in the Rock-genre

In contrast to the approved mainstream Afrikaans music genres and lyrics, the Voëlvry movement chose rock as the genre to convey alternative lyrics. It is speculated how the Broederbond through Afrikaans cultural front organisations prescribed the lyrics and melodies of Afrikaans music with the aim of promoting Afrikaans Nationalism. To achieve their goal to rule South Africa, it was necessary ***"to take spiritual control of all major Afrikaner organisations."***⁴⁸

One of the body's (Broederbond) major programmes was to define what music belonged to Afrikaans and what was alien. In this they were strongly influenced by Nazi thinking.⁴⁹

⁴⁷ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 35

⁴⁸ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 35

⁴⁹ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 34

3.2.4 Rebellion Against Authority

The Afrikaner culture instilled conservative Christian family values of respect of elders, teachers, church and state. Fundamentally, all authority. At the time of the musical movement it was unfamiliar for Afrikaans speaking young people to question authority, nevertheless, protest against or question it. Christian-cultural principles were challenged. The president of the country for many Nationalist was a Godly chosen leader, yet the band had no respect for P.W. Botha and the obscure song about him became very popular. Apartheid policies were fiercely criticised. Biblical justification of Apartheid implied the questioning of Biblical, Protestant principles.

Its social and cultural impact was undoubtedly significant. It certainly helped undermine the unholy traditional Afrikaner culture of respect for authority and older people.⁵⁰

3.2.5 Perceived Mockery of Traditional Values

Re-writing traditional Afrikaans lyrics were perceived as revolt against the previous Broederbond approved lyrics to enhance Afrikaner Nationalism - Pseudo religion according to van Jaarsveld. One such song is a love song “Al lê die berge nog so blou” (Translated to “Even though the mountains are still blue). The alterations of the lyrics reflected a homosexual relationship. This was extreme and perceived as blasphemous: A public admission of homosexuality. confronted traditional Christian values, or explicit Biblical principles. Homosexuality was judged as sin according to Biblical principles and secondly, it confronted the stereo type Christian Afrikaner muscular man.

Lyrics also included subjects important (“holy”) in Afrikaner history. One such item is the Ossewa (Ox wagon). As previously discussed, the Groot Trek was the second most important event in Afrikaner history and related to the Israelites

⁵⁰ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvry The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 8

journey to their 'Holy Land.' The vehicle who transported the Afrikaners to their freedom, protected them on the way and the centre of family life during the journey was the ox wagon. A pseudo religious reverence exists towards the ox wagon.

This new style ossewa was the symbolic 1980's vehicle in which thousands of disaffected Afrikaner youth broke free and drove away from the laager and their parents. The motorised oxwagon in which they could embark on a journey of discovery away from the suffocating myth of a chosed people in a la-la land of braaivleis, rugby and sunny skies. Away from the reality of totalitarianism, war, states of emergency and ostracization. Away across the Rubicon on a Boere Blues Great Trek to a brighter future. And it rocked.⁵¹

The title referenced the statement made by Marie Antoinette and equated the situation in South Africa where the white population lived in relative luxury while the country's black citizens were consigned to a life as serfs and poverty, to that of France prior to the revolution.⁵²

The African Nationalism, protected by law in the previous regime, resulted in Afrikaners individual's comfort and apathy to protect and preserving Afrikaner history and tradition. No other nationality had their historic or religious days declared public holidays. Neither the Black nations, nor the Jewish, Portuguese, Greek or any other nationality apart from the white Afrikaners/Boers were accommodated in the official recognition of their spiritual and cultural heritage.

Afrikaners lost the privilege after 1994. Yet, renewed Afrikaner nationalism is currently noticeable as a result of enhanced racial conflict, the renewed revival of black consciousness, fierce criticism towards white South Africans, economic exclusion, and job reservation through legislation. Antagonism fuelled by the opinion of some that all whites must return to Europe advanced a renewed Afrikaner patriotism. Awakened Afrikaner patriotism including the love of the land, the right to be South African, pride to be an Afrikaner, love of Afrikaans and pride in Afrikaner heritage is noticeable.

⁵¹ Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvy The Movement That Rocked South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press. P. 14

⁵² An overview of the Gereformeerde Blues Band. Available at: <https://johanneskerkorrel.com/overview-of-the-gbb/>

These aspects reflect in contemporary Afrikaans music. Lyrics reflecting the right to own land or the love of the land are fiercely criticised. To the extent that some artists are banned by the South African official Broadcast Cooperation and art festivals. The author is of the opinion that these lyrics successfully reminds Afrikaners of what was once sacred (Van Jaarsveld's pseudo religion) in the Afrikaner history. Lyrics honouring Afrikaner war heroes from the Anglo Boer War are popular amongst young people. The fact the previous South African flag was recently officially declared 'hate speech' by the Constitutional Court enhance the antagonism towards black consciousness. Sentiment for the flag, as is the case with national emblems, runs very deep in Afrikaner patriotism. The flag accepted after the Unification of South Africa in 1961 portrays freedom from Britain and Boer independence. In addition, the flag is also closely associated with the South Africa-Angola war – a deeply emotional time in the history of South Africans.

Despite being largely fought in neighbouring states, the South African Border War had a phenomenal cultural and political impact on South African society. The country's apartheid government devoted considerable effort towards presenting the war as part of a containment programme against regional Soviet expansionism and used it to stoke public anti-communist sentiment. It remains an integral theme in contemporary South African literature at large and Afrikaans-language works in particular, having given rise to a unique genre known as grensliteratuur (directly translated "border literature").⁵³

3.3 Conclusion

With the renewed antagonism towards white South Africans, and Apartheid the scapegoat for a failed state and a dysfunctional government resulted in a renewed awakening of Afrikaner Nationalism. South Africans willingness to embrace a new South Africa and the rainbow nation are now ostracised and discriminated against. For the first time in decades, Afrikaner Nationalism features in Afrikaans music. Lyrics of Afrikaner war heroes like De la Rey, the land and Afrikaans, almost everything that defines Afrikaner/Boer are now again

⁵³ South African Border War. Available at: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_African_Border_War

prominent in music lyrics. To the extent that several artists are banned from art festivals due to outspoken pro-Afrikaner sentiments, wrongly perceived as racism. Everything associated with support of the Afrikaner culture is (absurdly) automatically associated with racism, including sport, music, etc. Support of any culture does not inevitably imply discrimination against another.

Larry Culliford commented on the sacred and religious elements in art

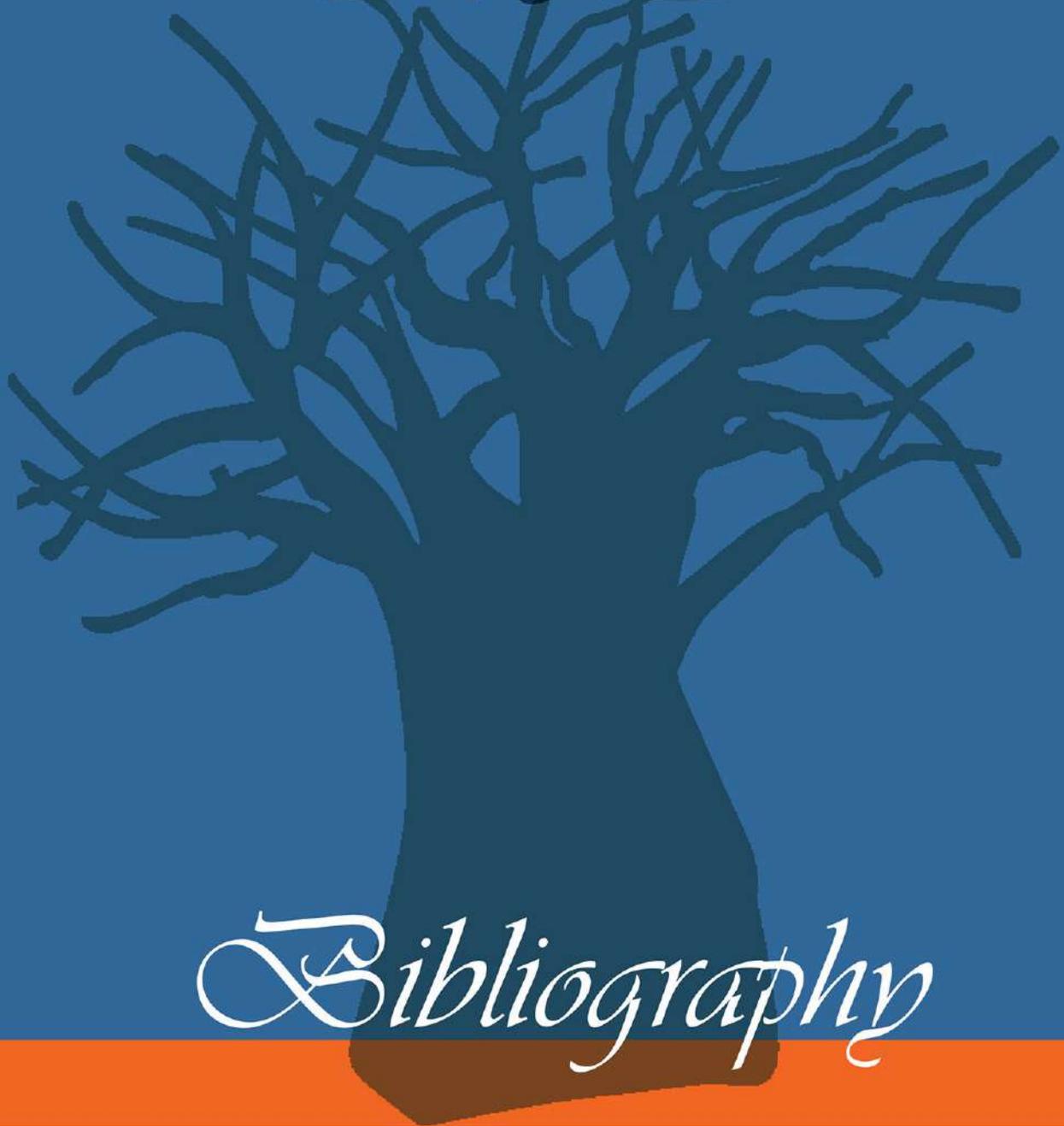
Sacred does not have to mean religious, although it might; but I would include, for example, any music capable of releasing something profoundly emotional — some sadness, perhaps, or great joy — that has been imprisoned hitherto by excessive attention to worldly concerns and the busy pursuit of secular activities.⁵⁴

--ooOoo--

⁵⁴ Spirituality and art. Available at: <https://www.psychologytoday.com/us/blog/spiritual-wisdom-secular-times/201712/spirituality-and-art>

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD



Bibliography



Bibliography

1 BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Alcock, G.G. (2015) *KasiNomics*. Fourways: Tracey McDonald Publishers.
 2. Allen, John. (2006). *Rabble-Rouser for Peace: The Authorised Biography of Desmond Tutu*. London: Ebury Digital, Penguin Books.
 3. Ames, Gerald and Wyler, Rose. (1958) *First Day of the World*. USA: Harper & Row Publishers Incorporated.
 4. Anders, Max. (1995) *Jesus: Knowing Our Savior (We Believe Series)*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc..
 5. Anderson, Jeff. (2015) *Divine Applause*. Colorado: Multhoman Books.
 6. Atter, Gordon Francis. (1962) *"The Third Force": A Pentecostal Answer to the Question So Often Asked by Both Our Own Young People and by Members of Other Churches: "Who are the Pentecostals?"* Ontario: The College Press.
 7. Batchelor, Mary. (1993) *Opening up the Bible*. Pretoria: J.L. van Schaik Publishers.
 8. Batchelor, Peter. (1993) *People in Rural Development. Revised and Enlarged Edition*. Channel Islands: Guernsey Press Ltd.
-

9. Baxter, Mary K. and Lowery, T.L. Dr. (2006) *A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
10. Berkhof, Louis. (1951) *The Kingdom of God*. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans.
11. Blanchard, Ken. (1994) *We Are the Beloved*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House.
12. Blavatsky Helena P. (1972) *Isis Unveiled. Secrets of the Ancient Wisdom Tradition, Madam Blavatsky's First Work*. USA: Theosophical Publishing House.
13. Bletzer, June G. (1986) *The Donning International Encyclopedic Psychic Dictionary*. Norfolk: Donning.
14. Booker, Richard. (1987) *Jesus in the Feasts of Israel. Restoring the Spiritual Realities of the Feasts to the Church*. Shippenburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc..
15. Booyesen, J.J. and Smit, P. (1981) *Swart Verstedeliking, Proses, Patroon en Strategie*. Pretoria: Tafelberg Uitgewers.
16. Bosco, Andrea. (2017) *The Round Table Movement and the Fall of the 'Second' British Empire (1909-1919)*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Cambridge Scholars Publishing Lady Stephenson Library.
17. Bouwer, André J. (2014) *Slawe Huis*. Apex Publishers.
18. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War*. Pretoria, RSA: Print and Book Binding Solutions.
19. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Spiritual Warfare: Bloodline Curses and Deliverance*. Pretoria. Radah Ministries.
20. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling. Chapter Two*. Pretoria. Radah Ministries.
21. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Conference Material. *Voodoo and Witchcraft*. Pretoria. Radah Ministries.
22. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2005) *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Master Degree. Calvary University.
23. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity-involving the Theodicy of Darkness*. Philosophiae Doctor. Calvary University.
24. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Conference: Die Skeppingsdoel van God soos gesien in menslike seksualiteit*. Conference Research material.

25. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategie*. South Africa: Radah Ministries.
26. Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. (2009) *Spiritual War and Warfare. Manual 1*.
27. Brander, Pat; Cardenas, Carmen; Gomes, Rui; Taylor, Mark; De Vicente Abad, Juan. (1995) *All Different All Equal. European Youth Campaign against Racism, Xenophobia, Anti-Semitism and Intolerance*. Strasbourg: European Youth Centre Youth Directorate.
28. Bright, William R. (1975) *The Great Commission Prayer Crusade Prayer Handbook*. Johannesburg: Campus Crusade for Christ.
29. Brits, Jacob P. (1995) *Concise Dictionary of Historical and Political Terms*. London: Penguin Books.
30. Broodryk, Johann. (2007) *Understanding South Africa. The uBuntu way of living*. Waterkloof: uBuntu School of Philosophy.
31. Bryson, Bill. (2004) *A Short History of Nearly Everything*. London: Transworld Publishers.
32. Bucbeck, Mark I. (1997) *Raising Lambs among Wolves. How to protect your children from the influence of evil*. Cumbria, United Kingdom: Alpha an imprint of Paternoster Publishing.
33. Buchan, Angus. (2012) *The Mighty Men Journey*. Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.
34. Buchan, Angus. (2017) *It's Time*. Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.
35. Buchanan, Alex. (1991) *Explaining Prophecy*. England: Sovereign World Limited.
36. Burger, Isak. (2017) *In Gees en Waarheid*. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
37. Bureau for Information. (1990) *Address by the State President, Mr FW de Klerk, DMS, at the Opening of the Second Session of the Ninth Parliament of the Republic of South Africa*. Pretoria: Government Printer.
38. Bureau for Information. (1991) *Address by the State President, Mr FW de Klerk, DMS, at the Opening of the Third Session of the Ninth Parliament of the Republic of South Africa*. Pretoria: Government Printer.
39. Buro vir Ekonomiese Navorsing insake Bantoe ontwikkeling (Benbo). *Swart Verstedeliking in Suid Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor.
40. Buro vir Inligting. (1990) *Die Presidentsraad*. Pretoria. Staatsdrukker.

41. Cafasso, St. Joseph. (1971) *The Priest the Man of God: His dignity and Duties*. Illinois: Tan Books and Publishers.
42. Calbom, Cherie. (2017) *The Juice Lady's Guide to Fasting*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group.
43. Cameron, Trehwella; Spies, S.B. (1986) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika in Woord en Beeld*. Kaapstad: Human & Rosseau (Edms.) Bpk.
44. Changuion, Louis; Steenkamp, Bertus. (2012) *Disputed Land. The historical Development of the South African Land Issue, 1652-2011*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.
45. Clasquin, M.; Lubbe, G.J.A. Prof. & Steyn, H.C. Dr. (1998) *Comparative Religious Studies: Introduction to the Religions of the World*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
46. Cloete, J.J.N. (1985) *Parliaments of South Africa*. Pretoria: J.L. van Schaik (Pty) Ltd.
47. Collins, O. (1999) *Complete Christian Classics Volume One*. Wales, Great Britain: Creative Print and Design, Ebbw Vale.
48. Conner, Kevin J. (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. Portland, Oregon: Bible Temple Publishing.
49. Cronje, Frans. (2017) *A Timetraveller's Guide to South Africa in 2030*. Cape Town: NB Publishers.
50. D'Assonville, V.E. (1980) *Kerkgeskiedenis in 30 lesse*. Promedia Publikasies.
51. De Klerk, F.W. (1998) *Die Laaste Trek 'n Nuwe Begin Die Outobiografie*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk.
52. De Klerk, W.J. (1991) *FW de Klerk. Die Man en Sy Tyd*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
53. De Lange, Susan F.M. Dr. (2012) *Expounding Deliverance from Biblical Perspective Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria.
54. De Vaux, Roland. (1973) *Ancient Israel. Its Life and Institutions*. London: Darton, Longman & Todd Ltd.
55. Devega, Jessica L.T. & Guarkee, Christine O. (2012) *Alles wat jy wil weet, maar nie gedink het jy kan vra nie*. Tuine: Struik Christelike Boeke.
56. De Villiers, Hugo and Erasmus, B.P.J. (1982) *Die Presidentsraad van Suid-Afrika*. Pretoria: Staatsdrukker.

57. De Villiers, Pierre R. Dr. (1996) *Flying Saucers: Fact or Fiction*. South Africa: P.R. de Villiers.
58. Dey, Chuck Dr. (2019) *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered October 12, 2019.
59. Dey, Chuck Dr. (2020) *Deeper looking Bible Study*. Lecture notes. Delivered February 1, 2020.
60. Dickason, Fred C. (1975) *Angels Elect & Evil*. United States of America, Chicago: Moody Press.
61. Du Pisani, J.A. (1990) *John Vorster en die verlig/verkrampstryd*. Bloemfontein: Universiteitsdrukkery, UOVS.
62. Du Plessis, P.G. (2008) *Fees van die Ongenooides*. Kaapstad: Tafelberg Uitgewers.
63. Dupont-Summer, A. (1955) *The Jewish sect of Qumran and the Essenes: New studies on the Dead Sea scrolls*. London: United Kingdom: Macmillan.
64. Du Preez, Max. (2005) *Oranje Blanje Blues: Vrye Weekblad, 88-94 'n Nostalgiese Trip*. Kaapstad: Zebra Press.
65. Du Toit, A.B. Prof. (1996) *Die werking van die Heilige Gees*. Lesings aangebied by die Predikantekursus van die Natalse Sinode.
66. Eckhardt, John. (2017) *Moving in the Apostolic*. Bloomington: Chosen Books.
67. Editorial. (1996) *Black Concentration Camps during the Anglo-Boer War*. Bloemfontein: War Museum.
68. Elion, Barbara & Strieman, Mercia. (2002) *Clued up on Culture. A Practical Guide for All South Africans*. Camps Bay: One Life Media CC.
69. Engraft, M.C. (2008) *The Rhythm of Life*. Menlo Park: Engraft Management Consulting CC.
70. Ephirim-Donker, Anthony. (July 2012) *African Religion Defined. A Systematic Study of Ancestor Worship among the Akon*. Maryland: University Press of America.
71. Eyerman, R.; Jamison, A. (1988) *Music and Social Movements, Mobilizing Traditions in the Twentieth Century*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
72. Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *The Dark Secret of G.:A.:O.:T.:U.:*. Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries.

73. Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *High Level Warfare. Safe from Counterattacks. (3rd Edition)* Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries.
74. Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Shippensburg: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc..
75. Ferrell, Ana Mendez Dr. (2011) *Iniquity*. Florida: Ana Mendez Ferrell Inc..
76. Floor, L. Dr. (1997) *Hy wat met die Heilige Gees doop*. Pretoria: NG Kerkboekhandel.
77. Fohrer, Georg. (1976) *Introduction to the Old Testament*. London: S.P.C.K..
78. Forster, Roger. (1994) *Explaining Fasting*. Kent: Sovereign World Limited.
79. Foundation for Christian Living Series. *Warfare Discovering the Reality of the Unseen World*. Colorado Springs: NavPress.
80. Frangipane, Francis. (1977) *Discerning of Spirits*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications.
81. Frangipane, Francis. (1991) *Discernment Series. Discerning of Spirits*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications.
82. Frangipane, Francis. (1991) *Discernment Series. The Jezebel Spirit*. Cedar Rapids: Arrow Publications.
83. Frangipane, Francis. (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. West Sussex: New Wine Press.
84. Franklin Miller, T. (1949) *The Life and Teachings of Jesus*. Indiana: The Warner Press.
85. Furstenberg, Jaap Prof. (1994) *Gedoop met die Heilige Gees*. Wellington: Bybelkor.
86. Geertz, Clifford. (1973) *The Interpretation of Cultures*. New York: Basic Books.
87. Gibellin, Rosino. (1994) *Paths of African Theology*. New York: Orbis Books.
88. *Gids vir Besoekers aan die Parlement*. Kaapstad: Parlement van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika.
89. Giliomee, Herman & Mbenga, Bernard. (2007) *Nuwe Geskiedenis van Suid Afrika*. Cape Town: Tafelberg Uitgewers.
90. Gispén, W.H. Dr. (1977) *Bybelse Ensiklopedie (Tweede Hersiene Uitgawe)*. Cape Town: Die Vereigde Protestantse Uitgewers (Edms.) Bpk. Onder Redaksie van Gispén W.H. Prof. dr.; Oosterhoff, B.J. Prof. dr.; Ridderbos, H.N. Prof. dr.; Van Unnik, W.C. Prof. dr.; Visser, P. Ds..

91. Godwin, Rick. (1977) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*. Lake Mary, Florida: Creation House.
92. Green, Lawrence G. (1969) *Harbours of Memory*. Cape Town: Howard Timmins.
93. *Grondwetlike Riglyne: 'n Nuwe Bedeling vir Blankes, Kleurlinge en Indiërs*. Pretoria: Staatsdrukker.
94. Groothuis, D.R. (1986) *Unmasking the New Age*. Ontario, Canada: Intervarsity Press.
95. Groot Trek-vrouekomitee (1987) *Die Groot Trek Gedenkboek 1938 – 1988*. Pretoria: De Jager-HAUM Uitgewers.
96. Haasbroek, Danie. (2001) *Die Wonder van Jesus in die Ou Testament*. Pretoria: DH Trust.
97. Hagin, Kenneth E. (1992) *A Commonsense Guide to Fasting*. USA: RHEMA Bible Church.
98. Hamcock, Graham. (1996) *Fingerprint of the Gods. A quest for the beginning and the end*. London, Mandarin Paperbacks.
99. Harrison, David. (1987) *The White Tribe of Africa. South Africa in Perspective*. Johannesburg: Southern Book Publishers.
100. Hawford, Jack W. (1991) *Spirit Filled Life Bible NKJV*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
101. Hayes, Norvel. (1997) *You have Authority*. Oklahoma: Harrison House Inc..
102. Heath, Vivienne. (2018) *Leef Lig. 40 dae na 'n gesonder liggaam, siel en gees*. Tygervallei: Struik Christian Media (Edms) Bpk.
103. Heim, Joanne. (1997) *Warfare. Discovering the Reality of the Unseen World*. Colorado Springs: NavPress.
104. Heimbichner, Craig. (2005) *Blood on the altar. The Secret history of the World's Most Dangerous Secret Society*. Idaho, USA: Independent History & Research.
105. Heyns, J.A. (1992) *Inleiding tot die Dogmatiek aan die hand van die Nederlandse Geloofsbelydenis*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery.
106. Hitchcock, Mark. (2009) *Cashless*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
107. Hodgson, Janet. (1982) *The God of the Xhosa. A Study of the origins and development of the traditional concepts of the supreme being*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.

108. Hopkins, Marilyn. (2007) *The Knights Templar. Their history and mystical connections*. Rochester, Kent: Grange Books.
 109. Hopkins, Castell. (1902) *The Life of King Edward VII*. Germany.
 110. Hopkins, P. (2006) *Voëlvy The Movement. The Rocked*. South Africa. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
 111. Huch, Larry. (2006) *10 Curses that Block the Blessing*. United States of America: Larry Huch Ministries.
 112. Hughes, Selwyn (2001) *Walking in the Spirit*. Cape Town: Struik Christian Books Ltd.
 113. Hugo, P. & Kotze, H. (1983) *Suid-Afrika: Oorlewing in Politieke Perspektief*. Braamfontein: Jonathan Ball Uitgewers.
 114. Hunt, Dave. (1996) *In defence of the Faith. Biblical Answers to Challenging Questions* Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
 115. Iyengar, B.K.S. (2005) *Light on Life*. London, Rodale International Ltd.
 116. Johnson, R.W. (2015) *How Long Will South Africa Survive? The Looming Crisis*. London: Hurst (also: Cape Town, Jonathan Ball, 2015).
 117. Jones, Tiffany Fawn. (2012) *Psychiatry Mental Institutions and the Mad in Apartheid South Africa*. USA: Routledge Publishers.
 118. Joyce, Peter. (1990) *The Rise and Fall of Apartheid. The Chronical of a divided society as told through South African Newspapers*. Cape Town: Struik.
 119. Joyce, Peter. (2000) *Suid Afrika in die 20ste eeu een honderd jaar in oënskou*. Cape Town: Struik.
 120. Kauffmann, D.T. (1967) *Dictionary of Religious Terms*. Fleming H. Revell Co..
 121. Kauffmann, Walter. (1976) *Religions in Four Dimensions*. New York: Reader's Digest Press.
 122. Kauuova, W.R. (1997) *The Religions of Southern Africa: A Synopsis of their basic beliefs*. Institute for Reformational Studies Series 1.1 Study Pamphlet 352. PU for CHE.
 123. Keller, Werner. (1956) *The Bible as history Archaeology confirms the Book of Books*. London: Hodder and Stoughton Limited.
 124. Kleynhans, W.A. (1987) *SA Algemene Verkiesingmanifeste. SA General Election Manifestos 1910 – 1981*. Pretoria: Sigma Press.
-

125. Koen, Gerhard. (1994) *Kwelvrae en Reguit Antwoorde*. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
126. Koestler, Arthur. (1976) *The Thirteenth Tribe*. UK: Last Century Media.
127. Kotze, J.C. (1993) *In Their Shoes*. Kenwyn: Juta & Co. Ltd.
128. Kraft, Charles H. (1979) *A study in Dynamic Biblical Theologizing in Cross-Cultural Perspective*. Maryknoll, New York: Orbis Books.
129. Kriel, L.M. & Gerdener, G.B.A. (1924) *Kerkgesiekiedenis vir ons volk*. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, Beperk, Drukkers en Uitgewers.
130. Kroeze, J.H. Prof. Dr. (1962) *Koning Hiskia*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege-Pers Beperk.
131. Larson, Bob. (1999) *Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
132. Latsky, Johan M. Dr. (1959) *Die Antieke Wêreld van die Nuwe Testament*. Johannesburg: Elata-Drukkers (Edms) Bpk.
133. Law, Terry. (1994) *The Truth about Angels*. Orlando, Florida, US: Creation House.
134. Lawson, LeRoy. (1973) *Victory in Jesus*. Cincinnati Ohio: The Standard Publishing Company.
135. Leadbeater, Charles W. 33° (2017) *The Hidden Life in Freemasonry*. India: The Theosophical Publishing House.
136. Leaflet: *Old Testament Prophecies of the First Coming of Yeshua*.
137. Leman, Kevin Dr. & Pentak, William. (2004) *The Way of the Shepherd*. Michigan: Zondervan.
138. Lentin, Antony. (2009) *Jan Smuts Man of courage and vision*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball Publishers.
139. Le Roux, Philippus D. (1989) *Studies in die dinamika van kennis deur openbaring*. Brooklyn: Publication Scan (Edms) Bpk.
140. Le Roux, Philippus D. (1991) *Die Heerlikheid Herwin*. Pretoria: Sigma-pers (Edms) Bpk.
141. Le Roux, Philippus D. (1997) *Die Heilige Gees in aksie vandag. Deel I*. Kaapstad: ABC Bookdrukkers.
142. Le Roux, Philippus D. (1997) *Die Heilige Gees in aksie vandag. Deel II*. Kaapstad: ABC Bookdrukkers.

143. Le Roux, Philippus D. (1997) *Die Heilige Gees in aksie vandag. Deel III*. Kaapstad: ABC Bookdrukkers.
144. Lewis C.S. (1997) *Mere Christianity*. London: HarperCollins Publishers.
145. Liardon, Roberts. (1985) *A Call to Action. Killing Giants and Subduing Kingdoms*. Oklahoma: Harrison House Inc.
146. Lockyer, Herbert. (1973) *All the Doctrines of the Bible*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishing House.
147. Lutzer, Erwin W. (2005) *The Da Vinci Deception*. Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.
148. MacDonald, Michael. (2006) *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
149. MacGregor, Scott. (2005) *The Rise and Fall of the Antichrist*. Thailand: Aurora Production AG.
150. Mackey, Albert G. (2005) *The History of Freemasonry*. New York: Gramercy Books.
151. Mackey, Albert G. (1925) *Encyclopaedia of Freemasonry and Its Kindred Sciences. Volume 1*. Chicago, New York, & London, 1925: The Masonic History Company
152. Maimela, Simon & König, Adrio. (1998) *Initiation into Theology. The Rich variety of Theology and Hermeneutics*. Pretoria: J.L. van Schaik Publishers.
153. Malan, J.S. Prof. (1991) *Israel in die Eindtyd*. Alberton: Basuin Uitgewers.
154. Malan, Pieter W. (2012) *An Expose of the Designs of the Pinnacle of Secrecy in World-Power-Structures*. Pretoria.
155. Mandela, Nelson. (1987) *No Easy Walk To Freedom*. Harare: Zimbabwe Publishing House (Pvt) Ltd.
156. Mandela, Nelson. (1994) *Long Walk to Freedom. The Autobiography of Nelson Mandela*. Randburg, South Africa. Macdonald Purnell (Pty) Ltd.
157. Marais, Willie Dr. (1997) *Die Christelike Doop*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
158. Marais, Willie. (1995) *Gelouter deur Lyding*. Pretoria: Aktuapers (Edms) Bpk.
159. Marrs, Jim. (2001) *Rule by Secrecy. The Hidden History That Connects the Trilateral Commission the Freemasons and the Great Pyramids*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers.

160. Marrs, Texe. (2005) *Codex Magica: Secret Signs, Mysterious Symbols, and Hidden Codes of the Illuminati*. United States: Rivercrest Publishing.
161. Martin, Phyllis M. and O'Meara, Patrick (1977) *Africa*. Bloomington and London: Indiana University Press.
162. Marx, Anthony W. (1998) *Making Race and Nation. A Comparison of the United States, South Africa, and Brazil*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
163. Matisonn, John. (2016) *God, Spies and Lies*. Vlaeberg: Ideas for Africa (Pty) Ltd.
164. Maxwell, John C. (2002) *Running with the Giants*. New York: Faith Words.
165. Mbiti, John S. (1997) *African Religions and Philosophy*. London: Heinemann Educational Books Ltd.
166. McAnally, Bryan. (2010) *Life after Death & Heaven and Hell*. Cape Town: Struik Christian Books.
167. McDonald, Marlize Dr. (2016) *Intimacy with the Triune God and its consequences in dealing with the destruction of Satan's vices through Spiritual, demonic and territorial warfare throughout the history of humankind*. (PhD) St. Clements Private Swiss University.
168. McDowell, Josh. (1999) *Evidence That Demands a Verdict*. Nashville. Thomas Nelson Publishers Inc..
169. Mc Loud, W. Dr. (1898) *Akteurs in die laaste drama. 'n Studie van Openbaring 13 en 17*. Die Wilgers: WS Mc Loud.
170. Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2001) *Alles omtrent die opkomende antichristelike orde*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief.
171. Mc Loud, W. Dr. (2002) *Perspektief op wêreldgebeure aktualiteitsblad*. Die Wilgers: Perspektief.
172. Mc Loud, W.S. (1992) *Die Jode Samesweerders of Volk van God*. Pretoria: Sigma Press (Edms) Bpk.
173. Meiring, Piet Prof. (1996) *Suid-Afrika, land van baie Godsdienste*. Pretoria: Kagiso Uitgewers.
174. Meyer, Joyce. (1995) *Battlefield of the mind*. New York: Faith Words.
175. *Mind the // gap. Devotional Journal* (2018). Lyttleton: Hope House Church.
176. Mitchell, Edwin and Jody. (1991) *The Two Headed Dragon of Africa*. USA: Joshiah Publishing

177. Mhlophe, A. (2013) *Christianity and the Veneration of Ancestors*. Belville: Salt Publishers.
 178. Miller, Darrow L. (2001) *Discipling Nations, The Power of Truth to Transform Cultures*. Seattle: YWAM Publishing.
 179. Möller, F.P. Dr. (2017) *Ken U Bybel*. Braamfontein: Evangelie Uitgewers.
 180. Morgan, Garry R. (2012) *Understanding World Religions in 15 minutes a day*. Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers.
 181. Morley, Jacqueline. (1998) *Look & Wonder Gods & Goddesses*. Belgium: The Salariya Book Company Ltd.
 182. Morris, Leon. (1988) *The Cross of Jesus*. Kent: The Paternoster Press.
 183. Mostert, W.P; Oosthuizen, J.S. and Hofmeyr, B.E. (1991) *Demografie – die Studie van Menslike Bevolkings*. Pretoria: RGN-Uitgewers.
 184. Muller, C.F.J. M.A. D.Phil. (1977) *Vyfhonderd Jaar Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
 185. Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc..
 186. Murray, Andrew. (1996) *The Holiest of All*. Pittsburgh, USA: Whitaker House.
 187. Mutwa, Vusamazulu Credo P. P. (1996) *Song of the Stars: The Lore of a Zulu Shaman*. Barrytown, Limited University of Michigan.
 188. Myburg, Marina. (2009) *A Profound Study on the Jezebel Spirit: An investigation of its Modus Operandi for Deceiving and Manipulation the Comprehensiveness of the Human Being*. Master of Ministry in Theology.
 189. Nasionale Party. (1993) *Nasionale Party Beleid*. Pretoria.
 190. National Peace Convention. (1991) *National Peace Accord*. Arcadia: Minit Print.
 191. Nattrass, Gail. (2017) *A short history of South Africa*. Jeppestown: Media 24.
 192. Ncube, Glen Dr. (October 2019) *Contested, but difficult to ignore. Africa in Fact*. Issue 51 (Oct-Dec 2019). Rosebank: Good Governance Africa.
 193. Nelson, Felicitas H. (2000) *Talismans and Amulets of the World*. New York: Sterling Publishing Company Inc..
 194. Nesor, F.W.C. M.Sc. *Die Opraping*. Vereeniging, Prestige Kunsdrukkery.
 195. Nesor, F.W.C. (1955) *Apartheid. Wat sê die Skrif*. Vereeniging, F.W.C. Nesor.
 196. Noss, David S. and Grangaard, Blake R. (1990) *A History of the World's Religions*. London: Routledge.
-

197. Odendaal, Arthur. (2014) *Kragtige Gebede. Hoe om die Woord te bid*. Cape Town: Lux Verbi.
198. Olukoya, D.K. Dr. (1998) *Limiting God*. Lagos, Nigeria: Mountains of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
199. Olukoya, D.K. (2001) *Dealing with Hidden Curses Professional*. Lagos, Nigeria: Mountains of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
200. Olukoya, D.K. (2001) *Power Against Dream Criminals*. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries.
201. Olukoya, D.K. (2002) *Deliverance: God's Medicine Bottle*. Lagos, Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries.
202. Olukoya, D.K. (2003) *Breakthrough Prayers for Business Professional*. Lagos, Nigeria: Mountains of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
203. Olukoya, D.K. (2005) *Symptoms of Witchcraft Attacks*. Lagos, Nigeria: Mountains of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
204. Olupona, J.K. (Edited) (1991) *African Traditional Religions in Contemporary Society*. New York: International Religious Foundation.
205. Owens, D.W. (2014) *Mysteries of the Supernatural*. Virginia Beach: 4th Dimension Press.
206. Paris, Edmond. (1982) *The Secret History of the Jesuits*. Ontario, California: Chick Publications.
207. Parrinder, Geoffrey. (1967) *African Mythology*. London: Paul Hamlyn Ltd.
208. Parrinder, Geoffrey. (1969) *Religion in Africa*. London: The Pall Mall Press Limited.
209. Paul, O.O. (2010) *My Hatred for Christ and Christianity*. London: Christ Banner Creative Production Ltd.
210. Paul, O.O. (2013) *Expository Study Book on Witchcraft in the Church (Their Marks & Missions)*.
211. Pauw, Jacques. (2017) *The President's Keepers. Those keeping Zuma in power and out of jail*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
212. Pawson, J. David & Peck, Andy. (2007) *Unlocking the Bible*. London: Harper Collins Publishers.
213. Penn-Lewis, Jessie. (1995) *Stryd teen die bose*. Alberton: Basuin Uitgewers.
214. Pettegrew, Larry. (Second Edition) (2001) *The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit*. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications.

215. Pick, F.L. and Knight, G.N. (1969) *Pocket History of Freemasonry*. London: Muller.
216. Pierce, Chuck D. (2016) *A Time to Triumph. How to win the war ahead*. Minnesota: Chosen Books.
217. Pretorius, Fransjohan. Editor. (2014) *A History of South Africa from the Distant past to the present day*. Pretoria: Protea Hook House.
218. Pretorius, H.L. (1987) *Reflecting on Mission in the African Context*. Bloemfontein: Pro Christo Publication.
219. Pretorius, P.J. Adv. (1996) *Volksverraad. Die geskiedenis agter die geskiedenis*. Mosselbaai: Libanon Uitgewers.
220. Price, Simon and Kearns, Emily. (2003) *The Oxford Dictionary of Classical Myth & Religion*. New York: Oxford University Press Inc..
221. Prince, Derek. (1970) *Expelling Demons*. Baldock: DPM-UK.
222. Prince, Derek. (1973) *Shaping History Through Prayer and Fasting*. Christchurch: Derek Prince Ministries.
223. Prince, Derek. (1988) *Vas bring vernuwing. Vir Liggaam en Gees*. Pretoria: Bet-El Uitgewers.
224. Prince, Derek. (1992) *The Destiny of Israel and the Church*. Milton Keynes: Word Publishing.
225. Prince, Derek. (1998) *They Shall Expel Demons*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books.
226. Prince, Derek. (August 2003) *Foundational Teaching from Derek Prince Ministries: The Indispensable Word*. Charlotte, North Carolina: Derek Prince Ministries.
227. Prince, Derek. (2006) *Lucifer Exposed. The Devil's plan to destroy your life*. Baldock: Derek Prince Ministries-International.
228. Prince, Derek. (2006) *Blessing or Curse. You can choose*. United Kingdom: Derek Prince Ministries-International.
229. Prince, Derek. (2008) *Prophetic Guide to the End Times*. Grand Rapids: Chosen Books.
230. Prince, Derek. (2010) *Prayers and Proclamations*. North Carolina: Derek Prince Ministries-International.
231. Prince, Derek. (2013) *Pulling Down Strongholds*. Baldock: DPM-UK.
232. Prince, Derek. (2014) *Spiritual Warfare*. Baldock: DPM-UK.
233. Prince, Derek. (2012) *Rules of Engagement. Preparing for Your Role in Spiritual Battle*. Minnesota: Chosen Books.

234. Prince, Derek (2017) *Spiritual Warfare for the End Times*. United Kingdom. Derek Prince Ministries International.
235. Prophet, Elizabeth Clare. (2000) *Fallen Angels and the Origins of Evil*. Corwin Springs, Montana: Summit University Press.
236. *Psalms Gesange*. (1978). Kaap: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
237. Pye, Michael. (2015) *The Edge of the World. How the North Sea made us who we are*. United Kingdom: Penguin Books.
238. Queenborough, Lady (Edith Starr Miller), (1933) *Occult Theocracy*. Los Angeles California: The Christian Book Club of America.
239. Qunta, C. (2016) *Why we are not a nation*. Cape Town: Seriti and Sechabe Publishers.
240. Rhodes, Ron. (2010) *The Topical Handbook of Bible*. Eugene, Oregon: Prophecy Harvest House Publishers.
241. Rhodes, Ron. (2010) *The Topical Handbook of Bible Prophecy*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
242. Rice, John R. (1969) *The Second Coming of Christ in Daniel*. Murfreesboro: Sword of the Lord Publishers.
243. Richards, Larry. (1998) *Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Inc..
244. Richmond, Barbara. (1996) *Jewish Insight in the New Testament*. Florida: Thunderbird Press.
245. Ridpath, John Clark. (1885) *Cyclopaedia of Universal History Volume 8*. Jones Brothers.
246. Roberts Liardon. (1997) *School of the Spirit. Operating Powerfully in the Spirit Realm*. Florida: Creation House.
247. Rodee, Anderson & Christol. (1957) *Introduction to Political Science*. Japan: Tosho Printing Co., Ltd.
248. Roland, Paul. (2012) *Nazis and the Occult*. London: Arcturus Publishing Limited.
249. Roos, S.G. (1979) *Geestelike Weerbaarheid teen Ideologiese Terrorisme*. Cape Town: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
250. Ross, Hugh Ph.D. (1979) *Genesis Een 'n Wetenskaplike Perspektief*. California: Wiseman Productions.

251. Rothmund, Antje; Angst, Doris; Farrar, Mark and Mouna, Asma. (1996) *All Different All Equal Domino*. Strasbourg: Council of Europe.
252. Saunders, Christopher and Southey, Nicholas. (2000) *Historical Dictionary of South Africa Second Edition*. Scarecrow Press.
253. Schaeffer, F (1989) *Met die leë hande van geloof*. Pretoria: Dibukeng.
254. Schirmer, Peter. (1981) *Die Beknopte Geïllustreerde Ensiklopedie van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Central News Agency (Pty) Ltd.
255. Schnoebelen, W. & Schnoebelen, S. (1994) *Blood on the Doorposts*. Chino: Chick Publishers.
256. Scholtz, A.H.M. (1996) *Vatmaar*. Goodwood: Nasionale Boekdrukkery.
257. Scholtz, J.J.J. (1988) *Vegter en Hervormer. Grepe uit die toesprake van PW Botha*. Kaapstad: Tafelberg-Uitgewers Beperk.
258. Setiloane, G.M. (1986) *African Theology. An Introduction*. Braamfontein: Skotaville Publishers.
259. Shank, Steve. (1995) *First Steps of Faith. Exploring your new life in Christ*. Gaithersburg: People of Destiny International.
260. Sheikh, Bilquis & Schneider, Richard. (1991) *I dared to call Him Father*. Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.
261. Sheldrake, Rupert. (2012) *The Science Delusion, Freeing the spirit of enquiry*. Croydon, CPI Group (UK) Ltd.
262. Sherman Dean. (1990) *Spiritual Warfare For Every Christian. How to live in victory and retake the land*. Seattle: Ywam Publishing.
263. Shlain, L. (1998) *The Alphabet versus the Goddess. The conflict between Word and Imange*. United States of America: Viking Penguin.
264. Shriner, Sherry. (2005) *Bible Codes Revealed. The Coming UFO Invasion*. USA: iUniverse Inc.
265. Sinode van die Gereformeerde Kerk in Suid-Afrika (1976) *Die Heidelbergse Kategismus Boek II*. Potchefstroom: Calvyn Jubileum – Boekefonds.
266. Slabbert, Frederik Van Zyl. (2006) *Duskant die Geskiedenis*. Kaapstad: NB-Uitgewers (Edms.) Beperk.
267. Smal, Adam. (1974) *Kitaar my kruis*. Kaapstad: H.A.U.M..
268. Smit, M.M. Ds. (1973) *Bewaar ons van die bose*. Umtata, Trankei: Christelike Lektuurmaatskappy.

269. Smit, M.M. (1981) *Die vrylating van gevanges*. Pretoria: Dieper Lewe Uitgewers.
270. Smit, P & Booysen, J.J. (1981) *Swart Verstedeliking. Proses, patroon en strategie*. Kaapstad: Tafelberg Uitgewers Beperk.
271. Smith, Oswald J. (1999) *The Challenge of Missions*. Georgia: Operation Mobilization Literature Ministry.
272. Spoelstra B. Dr. (1975) *Beknopte Kerkgeskiedenis vir Katkisasie*. Potchefstroom: Pro Rege.
273. Stander, Hennie. (1999) *30 Dae om die Bybel beter te verstaan*. Vanderbijlpark: Carpe Diem Boeke.
274. Stander, H.F.; Louw, J.P. (1990) *Gebruike en Gewoontes in die Bybel*. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
275. Stead, W.T. (1902) *The Last Will and Testament of Cecil John Rhodes with Elucidatory Notes*. London: William Clowes and Sons Limited.
276. Steiger, N. and Lipson, J. (1985) *Self Care Nursing: Theory and Practice*. Brady Communications, Bowie, Maryland.
277. Stenger, V.J. (2009) *Quantum Gods*. New York: Prometheus Books.
278. Stevenson, Angus. (2010) *Oxford Dictionary of English (3rd Edition)*. New York: Oxford University Press.
279. Steytler, Klaas. (2000) *Ons Oorlog*. Kaapstad: Tafelberg Uitgewers Beperk.
280. Stoker, H.G. Dr. (1995) *Die Jehovah-Getuies 'n Onchristelike kulte?* Potchefstroom: Departement Sentrale Publikasies.
281. Stone, Dereck F. (1997) *Christentoeriste in Bybellande. 'n Gids vir Pelgrims*. Pretoria: J.L. van Schaik Uitgewers.
282. Stone, Perry. (2011) *Purging your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma Media/Charisma House Book Group.
283. Strobel, Lee. (2005) *Die Saak vir 'n Skepper*. Kaapstad: Struik Christelike Boeke.
284. Strong, C.F. (1930) *Modern Political Constitutions*. London: Sidgwick & Jackson.
285. Strydom, Lauritz. (1964) *Rivonia Masker Af!* Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers.
286. Stutley, Margaret and James. (1977) *Harper's Dictionary of Hinduism: Its Mythology, Folklore, Philosophy, Literature, and History*. New York: Harper & Row Publishers.
287. Subritzky, Bill. (1991) *How to Cast out Demons and Break Curses*. NZ Blockhouse Bay, Auckland: Dove Ministries.

288. Sumrall, Lester. (1993) *The Names of God. God's character revealed through His Names*. Springdale: Whitaker House.
289. Sumrall, Lester Dr. (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance. God's Power & Authority over Principalities & Powers*. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing.
290. Tellingier, Michael. (2008) *Slave Species of God: The Story of Humankind from the Cradle of Humankind*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers.
291. Tellingier, Michael & Heine, Johan. (2009) *Adam's Calendar: Discovering the Oldest Man-Made Structure on Earth*. Johannesburg: Zulu Planet Publishers.
292. Tellingier, Michael & Heine, Johan. (2009) *Temples of the African Gods. Decoding the Ancient Ruins of Southern Africa*. Waterval Boven: Zulu Planet Publishers.
293. The Navigators (1997) *Warfare. Discovering the Reality of the Unseen World. Foundation for Christian Living Series*. Colorado Springs: NavPress Publishing Group.
294. *The Upper Room January-February 2013* (2013). Parow: CTP Printers.
295. Thomas, I.D.E. Dr. (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy. Satan's Last Assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House.
296. Thorne, Russ. (2011) *Spiritual Tattoos*. London: Apple Press.
297. Thorpe, S.A. (1991) *African Traditional Religions*. University of Pretoria, Pretoria: Sigma Press (Pty.) Ltd.
298. Tolle, Eckhart. (2005) *A New Earth. Awakening to your life's purpose*. London: Penguin Books.
299. Towns, Elmer L. (1996) *Fasting for Spiritual Breakthrough. A Practical Guide to Nine Biblical Fasts*. Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers.
300. Unger, Merrill F. (1998) *The Student Bible Commentary*. United Kingdom: Candle Books.
301. Vamosh, Miriam Feinberg. (2004) *Daily Life at the time of Jesus*. Israel: Palphot Ltd.
302. Van Aswegen, H.J. (1989) *Geskiedenis van Suid-Afrika tot 1854*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk.
303. Van der Merwe, P.J. and Ligthelm, J.H. (1982) *Eksamenhulp. Vrae en Modelantwoorde. Geskiedenis st. 10 (Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis)*. Pretoria: De Jager-HAUM Uitgewers.

304. Van der Waal, Gerhard-Mark. (1986) *Van Mynkamp tot Metropolis*. Melville: Chris van Rensburg Publikasies (Edms) Beperk.
305. Van der Walt, B.J. Prof. (1983) *God se wil*. Instituut vir Reformatoriese Studie, studiestuk No. 185, Potchefstroom: Potchefstroomse Universiteit vir CHO.
306. Van der Walt, B.J. Prof. (red) (1986): *Onderskeiding van die Geeste*. Instituut vir Reformatoriese Studie, Potchefstroom: Potchefstroomse Universiteit vir CHO.
307. Van Der Walt, Ronell Dr. (2016) *Freedom Through Deliverance Pertaining to Bloodlines, Oppression, the Gutter of Lies, Sin, Shame, Guilt and Unbelief Leading the Body of Christ into Apostolic Counselling*. Pretoria.
308. Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1973) *Nuwe Geïllustreerde Geskiedenis st. 8*. Johannesburg: Perskor.
309. Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Paul Kruger Simbool van 'n volk*. Roodepoort: CUM Boeke.
310. Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1982) *Van Van Riebeeck tot P.W. Botha. 'n Inleiding tot die Geskiedenis van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery.
311. Van Jaarsveld, F.A. (1984) *Geskiedenisideologie en die historiese skuldvraagstuk. Omstrede Suid Afrikaanse Verlede*. Johannesburg: Perskor-Boekdrukkery.
312. Van Niekerk, Arno Dr. (2016) *Enough! What is the plan?* Cape Town: Hope 2 Overcome.
313. Van Niekerk, J.G. (1974) *Operbaringsgeskiedenis. 'n Handleiding vir Bybelstudente*. Johannesburg: Perskor Uitgewery.
314. Van Rooyen, Jan J. (1988) *Ever New. National Party Governs 40 Years*. Cape Town: National Party Federal Council.
315. Van Vuuren, Hennie. (2018) *Apartheid Guns and Money: A Tale of Profit*. Glasgow: Bell & Bain Ltd.
316. Van Wyk, At. (1991) *The Birth of a New Afrikaner*. Cape Town: Human and Rousseau.
317. Van Wyk, J.H. (1998) *Etiëk in Eenvoud*. Noordburg: Potchefstroomse Teologiese Publikasies.
318. Vaque, Klaus D. (1990) *Verraad teen Suid-Afrika*. Groenkloof: Varama Uitgewers.
319. Walker, James K. (2007) *The Concise Guide to Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.

320. Warren, Rick. (2002) *The Purpose Driven Life*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan.
321. Warren, Rick. (2012) *What on Earth am I here for?* Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan.
322. Watson, Stephanie Editor. (2006) *The Mechanisms of Genetics: An Anthology of Current Thought*. New York: The Rosen Publishing Group Inc..
323. Wead, Dough. (2004) *All the Presidents' Children*. New York: Atria Books.
324. Wegener, G.S. (1991) *In die begin was die Woord*. Human & Rousseau (Edms.) Bpk.
325. Wessels, André. (1998) *Die Militêre Rol van Swart Mense, Bruin Mense en Indiërs Tydens die Anglo-Boereoorlog (1899-1902)*. Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepubliek.
326. White, Lew. (2001) *Fossilized Customs. The Pagan Sources of Popular Customs*. Paulshof: Qodesh Publishers.
327. Whyte, Peter. (1992) *Come out of her My People*. Waltloo: Promedia Publications (Pty) Ltd.
328. Wilkinson Robyn & Kragolsen-Kille, Astrid. (2006) *Bo-Kaap: Inside Cape Town's Malay Quarter*. Cape Town: Struik Publishers.
329. Williams, Dick. (1974) *Die Dinge Daarbo*. London: C.P.A.S. Publications.
330. Williams, Geoffrey. (1971) *African Designs from Traditional Sources*. Toronto: Dover Publications, Inc..
331. Zacharis, R. (2002) *Jesus teenoor ander gode*. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewers Maatskappy.
332. Zapiro, Jonathan. (2017) *Hasta la Gupta, baby!* Auckland Park: Jacana.
333. Zukav, G. (1991) *The Seat of the Soul. An inspiring vision of humanity's spiritual destiny*. United Kingdom: Rider.

2 PERIODICALS

1. Allison, Stephen H. and Malony, H. Newton (1991) *Filipino Psychic Surgery: Myth, Magic, or Miracle?* Journal of Religion and Health, Spring.

2. Asimov, Isaac (1982) *Free Inquiry, Spring*. New York: Council for Secular Humanism.
3. Basinger, David (1992) *Divine Omniscience and the Soteriological*.
4. *Problem of Evil: Is This Type of Knowledge God Possesses Relevant?* Religious Studies 28, PP. 1-18.
5. Benner, David G. (1985) *Christian Psychotherapy: The State of the Art*, in *Journal of Psychology and Christianity*, Dec.
6. Benoit, Pierre (1983) *Pauline Angelology and Demonology: Reflexions on the Designations of the Heavenly Powers and on the Origin of Angelic Evil*, *Religions Studies Bulletin* 3: 1-18.
7. Brooke, Tal (1994) *A Brief Look at John Bradshaw*, in *SCP Journal*, Vol. 18, No.3.
8. Davis, William C. (1999) *Does God Know the Future?* *Modern Reformation* 8:5, PP. 20–25.
9. Draper, Paul (1989) *Pain and pleasure: An evidential problem for theists*. *Noûs* 23. PP. 331-332.
10. Erlandson, Doug (1991) *A New Perspective on the Problem of Evil*. *Antithesis*, Vol. 2, No. 2. Covenant Community Church of Orange County.
11. Graham, H. (1993) *Twelftree, Jesus the Exorcist: A Contribution to the Study of the Historical Jesus*, *WUNT* 2.54. Tübingen: Mohr; Siebeck. PP. 217-24.
12. Griffin, David (1993) *Why Demonic Power Exists: Understanding the Church's Enemy*, *LIT* 28: 224.
13. Hiers, Richard H. (1974) *Satan, Demons, and the Kingdom of God*, *Scottish Journal of Theology* 27: 40-41.
14. Humphries, Robert H. (1982) *Therapeutic Neutrality Reconsidered*, in *Journal of Religion and Health*.
15. Jaffe, Dennis T. and Bresler, David E. (1980) *The Use of Guided Imagery As an Adjunct to Medical Diagnosis and Treatment*, in *Journal of Humanistic Psychology*, Fall 1980, Volume 20, No.4.
16. Mackie, J.L. (1955) *Evil and Omnipotence*. *Mind*, Volume 64. P. 200.
17. Mettinger, T.N.D. (1985) *Fighting the Powers of Chaos and Hell – Towards the Biblical Portrait of God*, *ST* 39.
18. McClaine, Shirley (1987) *Interview*, *Time Magazine*. December 7. PP. 64-66.
19. McCloskey, H.J. (1960) *God and Evil*. *Philosophical Quarterly* 10. P. 97.

20. Montgomery, J. Warwick (1974) *Exorcism: Is it for Real? Christianity Today*.
21. O'Brien, P. (1992) *Principalities and Powers: Opponents of the Church*, *ERT* 16, No.4: 353-84.
22. Peterson, Michael L. (1978) *Christian Theism and the Problem of Evil*. *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 21. PP. 35-46.
23. Recker (1971) *Satan: In the Power of Dethroned? CTJ* 6: 133-55.
24. Reichenbach, Bruce (1980) *The Inductive Argument from Evil*. *American Philosophical Quarterly* 17. PP. 221-27.
25. Rohr, Richard (1989) *Prayer as a Political Activity*, *Radical Grace* 2/2, March-April: 2.
26. Rowan, John (1993) *The Real Self and Mystical Experiences*, in *Journal of Humanistic Psychology*, Spring 1983, Volume 23, No. 2.
27. Rowe, William L. (1991) *Ruminations About Evil*. *Philosophical Perspectives* 5. P. 72.
28. Sabourin, L. (1974) *The Miracles of Jesus II: Jesus and the Evil Powers*, *BTB4*, No.2: 115-75.
29. Sennett, James F. (1993) *The Inscrutable Evil Defense Against the Inductive Argument from Evil*. *Faith and Philosophy* 10. PP. 220-29.
30. Settle, T.W. (1978) *A Prolegomenon to Intellectually Honest Theology*. *The Philosophical Forum* 18:1. PP. 136-140.
31. *The Voice of Freemasonry in the Nation's Capital*, Volume 36, Number 3, 2019. (https://www.dcggrandlodge.org/uploads/6/9/5/4/6954862/voice_2019_issue_03-final.pdf)
32. *Union Gazette Extraordinary*, No. 3. 22nd February 1957. (https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201505/act-3-1957.pdf)
33. Watts, Rikki (1997) *Isaiah's New Exodus and Mark*, *WUNT* 2.88. Tübingen: Mohr; Siebeck. PP. 137-82.
34. Wink, W. (1978) *The 'Elements of the Universe' in Biblical and Scientific Perspective*, *Zygon* 13, No. 3: 225-48.
35. Zika, Bill. *Meditation and Altered States of Consciousness: A Psychodynamic Interpretation*, in *Journal of Psychology and Christianity*, Volume 3, No. 3.

3 SUGGESTED & ADDITIONAL READING

1. Anderson, Neil T. (1996) *Spiritual Protection for Your Children*. Ventura, CA: Regal Books.
2. Anderson, Neil T. (1996) *Steps the Freedom in Christ*. Ventura, CA: Gospel Light.
3. Anderson, Neil T. (1995) *Helping Others Find Freedom in Christ*. Ventura, CA: Regal Books.
4. Anderson, Neil T. (1993) *Daily in Christ*. Oregon: Harvest House.
5. Anderson, Neil T. (1993) *Living Free in Christ*. Ventura, CA: Regal Books.
6. Anderson, Neil T. (1993) *Walking in the Light*. Nashville, Tennessee: Nelson.
7. Anderson, Neil T. (1991a) *Walking Through the Darkness*. San Bernardino, CA: Here's Life.
8. Anderson, Neil T. (1991b) *Released from Bondage*. San Bernardino, CA: Here's Life.
9. Anderson, Neil T. (1991c) *The Seduction of Our Children*. Eugene, OR: Harvest House.
10. Arnold, C. (1987) *The 'Exorcism' of Ephesians 6:12 in Recent Research: A Critique of Wesley Carr's View of Evil Powers in First Century AD Belief*, *JSNT* 30: 71-87.
11. Atwood, M.A. (1985) *Hermetic Philosophy and Alchemy*. New York: Julian Press.
12. Augsburger, David W. (1986) *Pastoral Counseling across Cultures*. Philadelphia: Westminster.
13. Avis, J.M. (1985) *The Politics of Functional Families Therapy: A Feminist Critique*. *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy*, 11: 127-138.
14. Baars, Conrad (1979) *Feeling and Healing Your Emotions*. Plainfield, NJ: Bridge Publishing.
15. Backus, William (2000) *What Your Counselor Never Told You*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House.
16. Backus, William (1996) *The Healing Power of a Christian Mind, How Biblical Truth Can Keep You Healthy*. Minneapolis: Bethany House Publishers.
17. Backus, William & Chapien Marie (2000) *Telling Yourself the Truth*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House.

18. Baer, Randall N (1989) *Inside the New Age Nightmare*. Lafayette, Louisiana: Huntington House.
19. Baigent, M. *The Messianic Legacy*. England: Cori Books.
20. Bailey, F. (1979) *The Spirit of Masonry*. London: Lucis Press.
21. Bain, Lisa J. (1991) *Attention Deficit Disorder*. New York: Dell Publishing.
22. Baker, H.A. (1973) *Visions Beyond the Veil*. Springdale, PA: Whitaker House.
23. Baldwin, Carol L. (1988) *Friendship Counselling: Biblical Foundations for Helping Others*. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan.
24. Bandstra, A.J. (1964) *The Law and the Elements of the World: An Exegetical Study in Aspects of Paul's Teaching*. Kampen, The Netherlands: J. H. Kok.
25. Bard, Mortan and Sangrey, Dawn (1986) *The Crime Victim's Book, 2nd ed.* New York: Brinner / Mazel.
26. Basham, Don and Leggett, Dick (1974) *The Most Dangerous Game*. Don W. Basham Publications.
27. Bass, Ellen & Davis Laura (1988) *The Courage to Heal*. New York: Harper and Row.
28. Bateson, G. (1972) *Steps to an Ecology of Mind*. New York: Ballantine.
29. Becker, Robert O. and Selden, Gary (1985) *The Body Electric: Electromagnetism and the Foundations of Life*. New York: William Morrow.
30. Beker, J.C. (1980) *Paul the Apostle*. Philadelphia: Fortress.
31. Bennett, Rita (1987) *Making Peace with Your Inner Child*. Old Tappan, NJ: Fleming H. Revell.
32. Bennett, Rita (1984) *How to Pray for Inner Healing*. Old Tappan, NJ: Fleming H. Revell.
33. Bennett, Rita (1982) *Emotionally Free*. Old Tappan, NJ: Fleming H. Revell.
34. Bentley, Steve (1991) *A Short History of PTSD: From Thermopylae to Hue*. The Veteran, January.
35. Benyakar et al. (1989) *The Collapse of a Structure: A Structural Approach to Trauma*. Journal of Traumatic Stress, No. 2: 437.
36. Best, E (1965) *The Temptation and the Passion, Society for New Testament Studies Monograph Series, No. 2*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
37. Browning, D.S. (1987) *Religious Thought and the Modern Psychologies: A Critical Conversation in the Theology of Culture*. Philadelphia: Fortress.

38. Caird, G.B. (1976) *Paul's Letters from Prison*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
39. Campbell, Ron G. (1999) *Free from Freemasonry*. Ventura, CA: Regal Books.
40. Cargal, T.B. (1994) *Seated in the Heavlies: Cosmic Mediators in the Mysteries of Mithras and the Letter to the Ephesians*, SBLSP, ed. E.H. Lovering. Atlanta: Scholars Press.
41. Carnes, Patrick (1992) *Out of the Shadows: Understanding Sexual Addiction*. Minneapolis: CompCare Publishers.
42. Carson, Robert C.; Butcher, James N & Coleman James C. (1988) *Abnormal Psychology and Modern Life, 8th ed.* New York: HarperCollins.
43. Chanderler, Russell (1989) *Understanding the New Age*. Milton Keynes, England: Word.
44. Christoph, Henning; Oberländer. Hans (1996) *Voodoo: Secret Power in Africa*. Taschen, New York.
45. Cobb, John B. (1965) *A Christian Natural Theology*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press.
46. Cobb J.B. and Griffin, D.R. (1976) *Process Theology: An Introductory Exposition*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press.
47. Daniélou, Jean (1973) *Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture*, ed. Trans. John A Baker. Philadelphia: Westminster Press.
48. Driver, Tom F. (1991) *The Magic of Ritual*. San Francisco: Harper.
49. Dunn, J.D.G. and Twelftree, G.H. (1980) *Demon-Possession and Exorcism in the New Testament*, *Churchman* 94, no.3:211-15.
50. Fascher, E. (1949) *Jesus und der Satan*, *Hallische Monographien* 11. Halle: Max Niemeyer.
51. Garrett, S.R. (1989) *The Demise of the Devil: Magic and the Demonic in Luke's Writings*. Minneapolis: Fortress.
52. Grundmann, W. (1932) *Der Begriff der Kraft in der Neutestamentlichen Gedankenwelt*, *BWANT* 8. Stuttgart: Kolhammer.
53. Griffin, David Ray (1976) *God, Power, and Evil: A process Theodicy*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press.
54. Gunther, J.J. (1973) *St Paul's Opponents and Their Background: A Study of Apocalyptic and Jewish Sectarian Teachings*, *NovTSup* 35. Leiden: Brill.
55. Hiers, R. (1974) *Satan, Demons and the Kingdom of God*, *SJT* 27: 35-47.

56. Homey, S.L. (1995) *'To Him Who Overcomes': A Fresh Look at What 'Victory' Means for the Believer According to the Book of Revelation*, *JETS* 38: 193-201.
57. Hooker, M.D. (1983) *Angels and Principalities by W. Carr*, *JTS* 34: 606-9.
58. Kruse, H. (1977) *Das Reich Satans*, *Bib* 58: 29-61.
59. Kelsey, M. (1972) *Encounter with God: A Theology of Christian Experience*. Minneapolis: Bethany Fellowship.
60. Langton, E. (1949) *The Essentials of Demonology*. London: Epworth.
61. Leivestad, R. (1954) *Christ the Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New Testament*. London: SPCK.
62. McAlpine, T.H. (1991) *Facing the Powers: What Are the Options?* Monrovia, California: MARC.
63. Pagels, Elaine (1995) *The Origin of Satan*. New York: Random House.
64. Schubert, M. Ogden (1978) *Evil and Belief in God: The Distinctive Relevance of a 'Process Theology,' Perkins Journal* 31: 32-33.
65. Schwiezer, E. (1988) *Slaves of the Elements and Worshipers of Angels: Gal 4:3, 9 and Col 2:8, 18, 20*, *JBL* 107: 455-68.
66. Stewart, J.S. (1951) *On a Neglected Emphasis in New Testament Theology*, *SJT* 4.
67. Stoffer, D. (1992) *The Problem of Evil: An Historical Theological Approach*, *ATJ* 24.
68. Webber, R.E. (1986) *The Church in the World: Opposition, Tension or Transformation?* Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan.
69. Wink, W.W. (1984) *Union Seminary Quarterly Review* 39: 146-50.
70. Yates, R. (1977) *Jesus and the Demonic in the Synoptic Gospels*, *Irish Theological Quarterly* 44: 39-57.

4 ACADEMIC PAPER'S

1. Anderson, Allan. (September 11, 2000) *Pentecostals and Apartheid in South Africa during Ninety Years 1908-1998*. University of Birmingham.
(<http://www.pctii.org/cyberj/cyberj9/anderson.html>)

2. Bae, Choon Sup & Van der Merwe, P J. (2008). *Ancestor worship: is it Biblical?*. HTS Theological Studies, 64(3), 1299-1325.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222008000300009&lng=en&tlng=en)
3. Bae, Choon Sup. (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the Challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry. The Challenge of Ancestor Worship in Africa*. Chapter 3. University of Pretoria.
(<https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/02chapter3.pdf?sequence=3>)
4. Bam, Onke. (2019) *Advantage line: Contextualizing the transformation debate of rugby in South Africa*. MSocSci History (Coursework) Mini-Dissertation. Department of Historical and Heritage studies.
(<https://www.afronerd.co.za/differences-similarities-khoi-san-people/>)
5. Bentley, W. (2014) *Methodism and transformation in South Africa: 20 years of constitutional democracy*. HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies 70(1), Art. #2673, 8 pages.
(<https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/2673/5397>)
6. Brits, Dolf. (2018) *The religious statement of the Voortrekker Monument as a site of Afrikaner memory: Origin, composition and reception*. Herv. teol. stud. vol.74 n.3 Pretoria.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222018000300050&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en)
7. Carmichael, Thomas A. (2003) *A Christian meeting with other world religions through a dialogue withing the Freemasonry*. Dissertation submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Art in Theology. University of Pretoria.
(<https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/29366/Complete.pdf?sequence=3&isAllowed=y>)
8. Carr, E. (July 2014) *Rebirthing: the transformation of personhood through embodiment and emotion*. University of Adelaide School of Social Science.
(<https://digital.library.adelaide.edu.au/dspace/bitstream/2440/86481/8/02whole.pdf>)

9. Choon, Sup Bae. (August 2007) *Ancestor Worship and the challenges it poses to the Christian Mission and Ministry*. Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree Philosophiae Doctor (PhD) in the Faculty of Theology University of Pretoria.
(<https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/25045/Complete.pdf?sequence=10&isAllowed=y>)
10. Choon Sup Bae, Van der Merwe, P.J. (2008) *Ancestor worship – is it Biblical*. *Herv. teol. stud* vol.64 n.3 Pretoria Jul./Sep. 2008
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0259-94222008000300009)
11. Chou, Vivian. (April 17, 2017) *How Science and Genetics are Reshaping the Race debated of the 21st Century*. Harvard University Medical School.
(<http://sitn.hms.harvard.edu/flash/2017/science-genetics-reshaping-race-debate-21st-century/>)
12. Christopher, A.J. (2011) *The Union of South Africa censuses 1911-1960: an incomplete record*. *Historia* [online]. 2011, vol.56, n.2 [cited 2020-08-03], PP. 01-18.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001&lng=en&nrm=iso. ISSN 2309-8392.)
13. Cooper, Alan Amos. (1980) *The origins and growth of Freemasons in South Africa 1772 – 1876*. A Thesis presented for the Degree Masters of Arts in the University of Cape Town.
(https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/18082/thesis_hum_1980_cooper_alan_amos.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y)
14. Cooper, Alan Amos. (1983) *The Effects of Political, Economic and Social Events on the Order of Freemasons in South Africa, With Some Reference to the – Movement for the Formation of a United Grand Lodge, 1772 – 1961*. PhD. Stellenbosch University Stellenbosch P. 9.
(<https://scholar.sun.ac.za>)
15. Dickie, June. (2017) *Singing the Psalms: Applying Principles of African Music to Bible Translations*. *Scriptura* 116 (2017:1), pp. 1-16
(https://www.academia.edu/37600474/Singing_the_Psalms_Applying_Principles_of_African_Music_to_Bible_Translation?email_work_card=view-paper)

16. Duncan, Graham. (2009) *350 Years Reformed in South Africa: The contribution of the Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa*. Hervormde Teologiese Studies. 59. 10.4102/hts.v59i1.649. P. 47. Researchgate.net.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/45681439_350_Years_Reformed_in_South_Africa_The_contribution_of_the_Reformed_Presbyterian_Church_in_Southern_Africa)
17. Evers, Dirk. (2016). *Combinatory Christology*. HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies, 72(4), 1-10.
(<https://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v72i4.>)
18. Garaba, Francis and Zarvedinos, Annalise. (2014). *The Evangelical-Lutheran Church in South Africa: An introduction to its archival resources held at the Lutheran Theological Institute (LTI) Library, and the challenges facing this archive (Part One)*. Missionalia, 42(1-2), pp. 5-28.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0256-95072014000100002)
19. Gottschalk Keith. (May 1, 2019) *The Conversation. Academic rigour, journalistic flair. Race still colours South Africa's politics 2 years after apartheid's end*. Political Scientist. University of the Western Cape.
(<https://theconversation.com/race-still-colours-south-africas-politics-25-years-after-apartheids-end-115735>)
20. Gumede, William. (September 19, 2019) *Why corruption killed dreams of a better South Africa*. Universiteit of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg.
(<https://www.wits.ac.za/news/latest-news/opinion/2019/2019-09/why-corruption-killed-dreams-of-a-better-south-africa.html>)
21. Günther, Ursula. (July 19, 2018) *Islam in South Africa: Muslims' Contribution to the South African Transition process and the Challenges of Contextual Readings of Islam*. AL Mesbar Studies & Research Center.
(<https://mesbar.org/islam-in-south-africa-muslims-contribution-to-the-south-african-transition-process-and-the-challenges-of-contextual-readings-of-islam/>)
22. Hausmann Muela, Susanna; Muela Ribera, Joan; Mushi, Adhiel K. (2000) *The paradox of the cost and affordability of traditional and government health services in Tanzania*. Oxford University Press.
(<https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/85222263.pdf>)

23. Hofmeyr, Jan-Hendrik, 1910-1948. *The J.H. Hofmeyr Papers*
(<http://www.historicalpapers.wits.ac.za/?inventory/U/Collections&c=A1/I>)
 24. Howden J.W. (1992) *Development and psychometric characteristics of the spirituality assessment scale*. Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Texas Woman's University, Denton, Texas.
 25. Jonker, Ingrid. (2006) *A study of how a songoma makes sense of her 'sangomahood' through narrative*. Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Masters of Arts (Counselling Psychology). University of Pretoria.
 26. Kaplan Centre Jewish Studies. (April 23, 2020) *New survey of Jews in South Africa Clear Signs of Vitality and Resilience Despite Demographic Decline*.
(<http://www.kaplancentre.uct.ac.za/kaplan/news/2020/jews-of-south-africa-2020>)
 27. La Croix, Sumner. (March 2018) *The Khoikhoi Populations, 1652-1780: A Review of the Evidence and Two New Estimates*. Working Paper No.18-2 University of Hawaii.
(https://www.economics.hawaii.edu/research/workingpapers/WP_18-02.pdf)
 28. Luyt, Kathryn. (2014) *Minor Dissertation submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Arts. University of Cape Town. Gay Language in Cape Town: A study of Gayle – attitudes, history and usage*.
(https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/item/6868/thesis_hum_2014_luyt_k.pdf)
 29. Masubelele, M.R. (2009) *Missionary Interventions in Zulu Religious Practices: The Term for the Supreme Being*. *Acta Theologica Supplementum* 12. P. 63.
(<http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/at/v29s12/07.pdf>)
 30. Meyer, Birgit. (2010) *Pentecostalism and globalization*. In A. Anderson, M. Bergunder, A. Droogers, & C. van der Laan (Eds.), *Studying Global Pentecostalism: Theories and Methods* (pp. 13-130). Berkeley: University of California Press.
(<https://research.vu.nl/en/publications/pentecostalism-and-globalization>)
 31. Mills, Wallace G. *Later Afrikaner Nationalism*. History 322.0. 14b. South Africa. Saint Mary's University: Canada.
(http://smu-facweb.smu.ca/~wmills/course322/14bLater_natm.html)
-

32. Mills, Wallace G. *Origins of Afrikaner Nationalism*. History 322.0. 11. South Africa. Saint Mary's University: Canada.
(http://smu-facweb.smu.ca/~wmills/course322/11Afrikaner_natm.html)
 33. Mtshiselwa Ndikho. (2016) *Two hundred years of Methodism! A black theological inquiry into the heritage of Methodism in Southern Africa 1816-2016*.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S1017-04992016000300007&lng=en&nrm=iso&tlng=en)
 34. Mtuze, P.T. (October 1999) *Hidden presences in the spirituality of the Amakhosa of the Eastern Cape and the impact of Christianity on them*. Submitted in partial fulfilment for the Master's degree in Theology (Spirituality). Department of Religion and Theology. Rhodes University.
(<https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/145053771.pdf>)
 35. Munyai, A.S. (2016) *The Tenacity of African Traditional Religion in Venda Christianity: A missional Investigation*. Submitted in fulfilment of the degree Philosophiae Doctor. Faculty of Theology, Department of Science of Religion and Missiology. University of Pretoria. P. 26.
(https://repository.up.ac.za/bitstream/handle/2263/61193/Munyai_Tenacity_2016.pdf?sequence=1)
 36. Ngale, S.J. (2011) *From Tsonga to Mocambicanidade: Civil Religious Dynamics in Mozambiqan Nationalism*. Thesis presented for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. University of Cape Town. P. 64.
(https://open.uct.ac.za/bitstream/handle/11427/12264/Ngale_SJ.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y)
 37. Pillay, Gerald J. (1991) *Bethesda Temple Among Indian South Africans*. University of South Africa.
(https://www.jstor.org/stable/1580825?read-now=1&seq=2#page_scan_tab_contents.)
 38. Pillay, J. (2016). *Presbyterian Indians in South Africa*. HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies, 72(1), 7 pages.
(<https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/3402/7928>)
 39. Rakotsoane, F. L. C. (1996). *Religion of the ancient Basotho with special reference to "water snake"*. (Thesis). University of Cape Town, Faculty of Humanities, Department of Religious Studies.
(<https://open.uct.ac.za/handle/11427/17493>)
-

40. Salie, Ebrahim. *An Analysis of the Voortrekker Monument*.
(https://www.academia.edu/29815075/An_Analysis_of_the_Voortrekker_Monument)
41. Shimoni, G. (1977). *Jan Christiaan Smuts and Zionism*. *Jewish Social Studies*, 39(4), 269-298.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/4466970>)
42. Steiner, Rudolf. (October 2, 1916) *The Templars*. Lecture given in Dornach. Authorised Translation from the German Notes.
(<https://wn.rsarchive.org/GA/GA0171/19161002p01.html>)
43. Thenga, Khalirendwe. (2018) *The motive of South African male muti murder offender, a case study*. University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg.
(<http://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/handle/10539/28339>)
44. Van der Merwe Burger, Isak, Schalk. (May 1987). *Die Geskiedenis van die Apostoliese Geloof Sending van Suid-Afrika (1908-1958)*. Thesis (DDiv). University of Pretoria. P. 105.
(<https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/61356>)
45. Van Niekerk, B. (2018) *Religion and spirituality: What are the fundamental differences?* *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies* 74(3), 4933.
(<http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/hts/v74n3/03.pdf>)
46. Van Vollenhoven, Willem J and ELS, Christo J. (2013) *The human rights paradox of lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender students in South African education*. *De Jure* (Pretoria) 2013, vol.46, n.1, pp.263-284. ISSN 2225-7160.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S222571602013000100015)
47. Van Wyk, Ilana. (May 2019) *Jacob Zuma's shamelessness: Conspicuous Consumption, Politics and Religion*.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/332900762_JACOB_ZUMA'S_SHAMELESSNESS_CONSPICUOUS_CONSUMPTION_POLITICS_AND_RELIGION)
48. Vernon, Gillian Dr. (2016) *1109 Shipwreck survivors in South-East Africa, 1552-1782: Contrasting Fortunes*. Centre for Extra-Mural Studies, University of Cape Town.
(http://www.summerschool.uct.ac.za/shipwreck_survivors)

49. Verslag van de Volkstelling, 1890. (Staatsdrukker, Pretoria, 1891).
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001#25a)
50. Verslag van den Census, 1890. (C. Borckenhagen, Bloemfontein, 1890).
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0018-229X2011000200001#24a)
51. Winkler, Harald E. (1989) *The divided roots of Lutheranism in South Africa: a critical overview of the social history of the German-speaking Lutheran missions and the churches originating from their work in South Africa*. Thesis. University of Cape Town.
(<https://open.uct.ac.za/handle/11427/15881>)

5 JOURNALS

1. Autton N. (1980) *The hospital chaplain*. Nursing (Add-on Journal) 12 (16), P. 697-699.
2. Azeez, Alaomo A. (December 2010) *Indigenous Art and Religion in Africa*. Global Journal of Human Social Science.
(https://globaljournals.org/GJHSS_Volume10/6-Indigeneous-Art-and-Religion-in-Africa.pdf)
3. Bompani, B. (2008). *African Independent Churches in Post-Apartheid South Africa: New Political Interpretations*. Journal of Southern African Studies, 34(3), 665-677.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/40283174>)
4. Bradlow, Frank R. (1997) *Memorials of the Battle of Boomplaats August 29, 1848*. Military History Journal Vol 10 No 5 - June 1997.
(<http://samilitaryhistory.org/vol105fb.html>)
5. Cavendish, Richard. (March 2002) *The Treaty of Amiens*. Published in History Today. Volume 52, Issue 3.
(<https://www.historytoday.com/archive/months-past/treaty-amiens>.)
6. Chetty, K. *Ship List 1860-1911*
(<https://scnc.ukzn.ac.za/doc/SHIP/shipndx.html>)

7. Christopher, Anthony J. (June 16, 2010) *A South African Domesday Book: the first Union census of 1911*. South African Geographical Journal Volume 92 of 1992, issue 1.
(<https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/03736245.2010.483882>)
8. Clark, M.S. (2005) *Two Contrasting Models of Mission in South Africa: The Apostolic Faith Mission and the Assemblies of God*. Asian Journal of Pentecostal Studies 8(1). PP. 144-145.
9. Clasquin, M. (1997). *The Lotus in the Lion's Den: Hinduism in Pretoria*. Journal for the Study of Religion, 10(1), 77-110.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/44945331>)
10. Coertzen, Pieter. (2014) *Constitution, Charter and Religions in South Africa*. African Human Rights Law Journal (2014) 1 AHRLJ 126-141
11. Collins Kreiner, Noga and Wall, Geoffrey. (2015) *Tourism and Religion: Spiritual Journeys and Their Consequences*. Chapter 34. Vol. 2: 689-707.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/275232525_Tourism_and_Religion_Spiritual_Journeys_and_Their_Consequences)
12. Gill, Sam. (1994) *The Academic Study of Religion*. Journal of the American Academy of Religion, vol. 62, no. 4, 1994, pp. 965–975.JSTOR.
(<https://www.jstor.org/stable/1465226?seq=1>)
13. Guttmacher, Sally; Kapadia, Farzana; Te Water Naude, Jim and De Pinho, Helen. (1998) *Abortion Reform in South Africa: A case study of the 196 Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act*. Guttmacher Institute. Volume 24, Issue 4. December 1998.
(<https://www.guttmacher.org/journals/ipsrh/1998/12/abortion-reform-south-africa-case-study-1996-choice-termination-pregnancy-act>)
14. Harris, K.L. (2017) *BEE-ing Chinese in South Africa: a legal historic perspective*. Fundamina (Pretoria). 2017, vol.23, n.2, PP. 1-20. ISSN 2411-7870.
(<http://dx.doi.org/10.17159/2411-7870/2017/v23n2a1>.)
15. Hay, Milton W. *Principles in building spiritual assessment tools*. American Journal of Hospice Care Sept/Oct, 25–31
(<https://journals.sagepub.com/doi/abs/10.1177/104990918900600514?journalCode=ajha>)

16. Holdstock, T.L. (1979) *Indigenous healing in South Africa: a neglected potential*. South African Journal of Psychology, 9 (3/4). P. 123
17. Kanu, Kechukwu Anthony. (July 2, 2013) *The Dimensions of African Cosmology*. *Filosofia Theoretica: Journal of African Philosophy, Culture and Religions*, Volume 2, Issue 2. Ages 50-555.
(<https://journals.co.za/content/filosofia/2/2/EJC170271>)
18. Knoetze, J.J. (June 7, 2009). *African spiritual phenomena and the probable influence on African families*. Article published in the Journal 'In Luce Verbi. Oases Publishing.
(<https://indieskriflig.org.za/index.php/skriflig/article/view/2505/5879>)
19. Leshoai, Thabiso. (2019) *Africa: The transatlantic slave trade. A painful story*. The Journal of Good Governance. Africa in Fact. Issue 51. October – December 2019 P. 49
(<https://gga.org/a-painful-history/>)
20. Lobakeng R. *The Democratic Alliance visiting Israel; taking lessons from the oppressor or offering an ear?* UNISA Institute of Global Dialogue.
(<https://www.igd.org.za/infocus/11791-the-democratic-alliance-visiting-israel-taking-lessons-from-the-oppressor-or-offering-an-ear>)
21. Lorenz, Chris. (March 2009) *Scientific Historiography. A Companion to the Philosophy of History and Historiography*. Chapter 35, P. 393.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/290899154_Scientific_Historiography)
22. Mark; Dyson, Jane; Cobb, Mark; Forman, Dawn. (December 26, 1997) *The meaning of spirituality: a literature review*. Vol 26 Journal of Advanced Nursing.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/227785159_The_meaning_of_spirituality_a_literature_review)
23. Maxwell, David. (1999) *Historicizing Christian Independency: The Southern African Pentecostal Movement, c. 1908-60*. The Journal of African History: Cambridge University Press. 40(2), 243-264. P. 252.
(<https://www.cambridge.org/core/journals/journal-of-african-history/article/abs/historicizing-christian-independency-the-southern-african-pentecostal-movement-c-190860/417C6788EA70524299783876D1C1AFA5>)

24. Merrington, P. (1997) *Masques, Monuments, and Masons: The 1910 Pageant of the Union of South Africa*. Theatre. Journal 49(1), 1-14.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/3208421>)
25. Mokotso R.I. (2015) *Syncretism of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity: Gateway to the syncretistic teaching of Basotho traditional religion and Christianity in Lesotho schools*. Academic Journals: African Journal of History and Culture. P. 159
(<https://academicjournals.org/journal/AJHC/article-full-text-pdf/F4E357753819>.)
26. Monteiro-Ferreira, A. (January 2005) *Re-evaluating Zulu Religion: An Afrocentric Analysis*. Journal of Black Studies Vol 35, No. 3 P. 359.
(https://www.jstor.org/stable/40034764?seq=13#metadata_info_tab_contents)
27. Negedu, Isaiah Adujo Ph.D. (2014) *Beyond the Four Categories of African Philosophy*. Department of Philosophy, Federal University, Lafia-Nasarawa State. International Journal of African Society Cultures and Traditions Vol.2, No.3, pp. 10-19, December 2014.
(<http://www.eajournals.org/wp-content/uploads/Beyond-The-Four-Categories-of-African-Philosophy.pdf>)
28. Njoh, A. J. (2008). *Colonial Philosophies, Urban Space, and Racial Segregation in British and French Colonial Africa*. Journal of Black Studies, 38(4), PP. 579–599.
(<https://doi.org/10.1177/0021934706288447>)
29. Peltzer, Karl. (August 25, 2009) *Traditional health practitioners in South Africa*. The Lancet Comment. Volume 374, Issue 9694, P. 956-957, September 19, 2009
([https://www.thelancet.com/journals/lancet/article/PIIS0140-6736\(09\)61261-7/fulltext](https://www.thelancet.com/journals/lancet/article/PIIS0140-6736(09)61261-7/fulltext))
30. Petrus, T. S., & D. L. Bogopa. (2007). *Natural and supernatural: Intersections between the spiritual and natural worlds in African witchcraft and healing in reference to Southern Africa*. Indo-Pacific Journal of Phenomenology, 7(1).
31. Pickles, C. (2014) *Approaches to pregnancy under the law: a relational response to the current South African position and recent academic trends*. South Africa Legal Institute. De Jure Law Journal.
(<http://www.saflii.org/za/journals/DEJURE/2014/2.html>)
32. Retief, Piet. (1837) *Manifesto of the Emigrant Farmers* Grahamstown Journal (February 2, 1837), in G. W. Eybers, ed., Select Constitutional Documents

- Illustrating South African History, 1795–1910. New York: Negro Universities Press (1918): 143–45.
(<https://www.oxfordfirstsource.com/view/10.1093/acref/9780199399680.013.0163/acref-9780199399680-e-163>)
33. Sobiecki, Jean-Francois J-F. (2014) *The intersection of culture and science in South African traditional medicine*. Indo-Pacific Journal of Phenomenology. On-line version ISSN 1445-7377.
(http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S144573772014000100006)
34. Sophia: An African Journal of Philosophy (2009) *The concepts of God in African traditional religion*. African Journals Online. Vol. 12 No. 1 (2009).
(<https://www.ajol.info/index.php/sophia/article/view/81625>)
35. *The Craft of the Smith*. The South African Architectural Record Vol XII. No. 48. (December 1927)
(<http://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/bitstream/handle/10539/18854/Journal%20of%20SAAI-December-1927-001-jpeg.pdf?sequence=4&isAllowed=y>)
36. Thompson, L.M. (1962). *Afrikaner Nationalist Historiography and the Policy of Apartheid*. The Journal of African History, 3(1), P. 126.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/179803>.)
37. Tshehla, Boyane. (2015) *Traditional health practitioners and the authority to issue medical certificates*. SAMJ Vol 105, No. 4
(<http://www.samj.org.za/index.php/samj/article/view/9217>)
38. Vahed, Goolam & Lal, Vinay. (2013) *Hinduism in South Africa: Caste, Ethnicity, and Invented Traditions, 1860-Present*. Journal of Sociology and Social Anthropology.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/270051071_Hinduism_in_South_Africa_a_Caste_Ethnicity_and_Invented_Traditions_1860-Present [accessed Dec 13 2020]).
39. Van-Helten, J. (1982). *Empire and High Finance: South Africa and the International Gold Standard 1890-1914*. The Journal of African History, 23(4), 529-548.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/182040>)
-

40. West, G. (2010). Jesus, Jacob Zuma, and the New Jerusalem: Religion in the Public Realm between Polokwane and the Presidency. *Journal for the Study of Religion*, 23(1/2), 43-70. P. 46.
(<http://www.jstor.org/stable/24763997>)

6 NEWS ARTICLES

1. 702. Radio interview. *One suicide every hour in south Africa*.
(<http://www.702.co.za/articles/318667/one-suicide-every-hour-in-south-africa>)
2. 702. Radio. (June 2, 2017) *EFF says stands by Palestine in a bid to isolate and boycott Israel*.
(<http://www.702.co.za/articles/2790411/eff-says-stands-by-palestine-in-a-bid-to-isolate-and-boycott-israel>)
3. Agence France-Presse: South Africa. (August 21, 2012) Conway-Smith, Erin. *Striking miners 'thought they were invincible' after taking 'muti'*.
(<https://www.pri.org/stories/2012-08-21/south-africa-striking-miners-thought-they-were-invincible-after-taking-muti>)
4. All Africa. (June 21, 2019) Etheridge, Jenna. *South Africa: Here's What Khoisan Praise Singer Said At SONA*.
(<https://allafrica.com/stories/201906210078.html>)
5. Beeld. (August 23, 2016) Feliz, Jason. *Burgermeester kry gru-vonds in bebloede laken*
6. Biz Community. (June 19, 2019). Tourism Month. News South Africa. *Cape Town Tourism looks to Muslim travel to boost local tourism*
(<https://www.bizcommunity.com/Article/196/806/192006.html>)
7. Biznews. (December 9, 2020) Nathan Melani. *Maria Ramos replaces Pityana at AngloGold Ashanti*
(<https://www.biznews.com/sa-investing/2020/12/09/maria-ramos-anglogold-ashanti>)
8. Black First Land First. (November 2017) *EFF march to Israeli embassy is fake*.
(<https://blf.org.za/2017/11/02/eff-march-to-israeli-embassy-is-fake/>)

9. Bronberger. (November 17, 2011) *Johanna Brandt: Siener, skrywer en baas spioen*.
(https://www.bronberger.co.za/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1337:johanna-brandt-siener-skrywer-en-baas-spioen&catid=50:toeka-se-dae&Itemid=76)
10. Business Tech. (December 28, 2019) *South Africa has some of the heaviest drinkers in the world*.
(<https://businesstech.co.za/news/lifestyle/332909/south-africa-has-some-of-the-heaviest-drinkers-in-the-world/2019/12/28>)
11. Business Tech. (January 24, 2020) *Corruption in South Africa – nobody cares*
(<https://businesstech.co.za/news/government/368032/corruption-in-south-africa-nobody-cares/>)
12. Buzz South Africa. (May 21, 2020) Nedu, Raymond. *Top 10 Corruption Scandals in South Africa*
(<https://buzzsouthafrica.com/here-are-the-top-10-corruption-scandals-in-south-africa/>)
13. Charisma News. (2018) Hardin K. *America just erected a Gateway to Demonic Darkness*.
(<https://www.charismanews.com/opinion/73474-america-just-erected-a-gateway-to-demonic-darkness>)
14. Corruption News. (July 3, 2020) *MFMA Report: Officials continue to squander municipal millions*.
(<https://www.corruptionwatch.org.za/mfma-report-officials-continue-to-squander-municipal-millions/>)
15. Daily Beast. (November 16, 2020) Melendez, Pilar. *Newly Elected GOP Congressman Madison Cawthorne Has Tried to Convert Jews to Christianity*.
(<https://www.thedailybeast.com/newly-elected-gop-congressman-madison-cawthorn-has-tried-to-convert-jews-to-christianity>)
16. Daily Maverick. (April 1, 2013) Munusamy, Ranjeni. *The blood of Chris Hani and the eternal damnation of Clive Derby-Lewis*.
(<https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2013-04-10-the-blood-of-chris-hani-and-the-eternal-damnation-of-clive-derby-lewis/>)

17. Daily Maverick. (October 3, 2014) Poplak, Richard. *The Company Man: Trevor Manuel marries the Rothschilds*.
(<https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2014-10-03-the-company-man-trevor-manuel-marries-the-rothschilds>)
18. Daily Maverick. (September 20, 2017) *Open Secrets. Declassified: Apartheid Profits - Who killed Dulcie September?*
(<https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2017-09-20-declassified-apartheid-profits-who-killed-dulcie-september/>)
19. Daily Maverick. (March 1, 2019) Merten, Marianne. *State Capture wipes out third of SA's R4. Trillion GDP – never mind the lost in trust, confidence, opportunity*.
(<https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2019-03-01-state-capture-wipes-out-third-of-sas-r4-9-trillion-gdp-never-mind-lost-trust-confidence-opportunity/>)
20. Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Sangomas put it all in doccie*.
21. Daily Sun. Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Mara's muthi headache!*
22. Daily Sun. Tlhoale, Kga lalelo. *Chopped up for R50k!*
23. Daily Sun. (August 8, 2014) *Tokoloshe vutha terror!*.
(<https://www.politicsweb.co.za/news-and-analysis/tokoloshe-vutha-terror--daily-sun>)
24. Daily Sun. (March 30, 2016) *Tokoloshe tracker in my bum!*
(<https://www.politicsweb.co.za/news-and-analysis/tokoloshe-tracker-in-my-bum--daily-sun>)
25. Daily Sun (August 1, 2017) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Rats ate my bones!*
26. Daily Sun. (September 23, 2017) Sun Defender. *Is Polygamy legal in SA?*
(<https://www.dailysun.co.za/SunDefender/is-polygamy-legal-in-sa-20170923>)
27. Daily Sun. (November 28, 2017) *My muthi stops killers!*
28. Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Mabunda, Ntsako. *Dolls hang from tree*.
29. Daily Sun (February 8, 2018) Lebuso, Sthembiso and Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Bleeding House Horror: I saw blood coming from the floor!*
30. Daily Sun (June 4, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Dead man wants to kill me!*
31. Daily Sun. (June 11, 2018) Mnguni, Thokozile. *Killing Albinos Will Not Be Muthi Boost!*
32. Daily Sun. (July 2, 2018) Sisulu, Mbulelo and Zweni, Ziyanda. *I like Xhosa ways!*
33. Daily Sun. (July 3, 2018) Khambule, Lethabo. *Goat's head horror!*

34. Daily Sun. (July 3, 2018) Zweni, Ziyanda. *Another initiate's life cut short.*
35. Daily Sun. (July 9, 2018) Mthimunye, Bongani and Zweni, Ziyanda. *Safely Back Home as Men!*
36. Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) Michaels, Modiri. Dog's skull keeps tokoloshe away! Abd Masipa, Ntebatse. *Burnt human sacrifice found at river*
37. Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) *Like father, like son ...*
38. Daily Sun. (August 24, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *Dumped by his ancestors.*
39. Daily Sun. (September 5, 2018) Moagi, Christopher. *Sangomas can help fight HIV/Aids.*
40. Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. *Family's tokoloshe hell!*
41. Daily Sun. (September 6, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma sees with her hands.*
42. Daily Sun. (September 20, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse and Moretsi, Sammy. *Leave my broom alone!*
43. Daily Sun. (October 5, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Tokoloshe kicks women out of my bed!*
44. Daily Sun (October 5, 2018) Mdluli, Zamokuhle. *I Refuse to Dance.*
45. Daily Sun. (October 7, 2018) Rammutla, Karabo. *Young Thapelo heals the sick.*
46. Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killers wanted my heart!*
47. Daily Sun. (October 11, 2018) Mashilo, Noko. *Her powers come from Mkhulu*
48. Daily Sun. (October 23, 2018) Mahopo, Zoë. *Dummies of Fear!*
49. Daily Sun. (November 12, 2018) Nocuze, Buziwe. *Sangoma ruined my life!*
50. Daily Sun (November 12, 2018) Khambule, Lethabo. *Ancestors bust thugs!*
51. Daily Sun. (November 20, 2018) Mali, Bamako. *I'm a Human Being!*
52. Daily Sun. (June 27, 2019) Sebola, Joshua. *Initiate aged 8 dies*
53. Daily Sun. (July 9, 2019) Vilakazi, Zimbili. *The Zombies taught Sizwe not to steal.*
54. Daily Sun. (July 13, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *My ex-lover used muthi on me!*
55. Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Vutha shocks sangoma!*
56. Daily Sun. (July 15, 2019) Masipa, Ntebatse. *Killed for her nipples!*
57. Daily Sun (July 15, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *Haunted by one hungry ghost*
58. Daily Sun. (July 31, 2019) Mgidi, Emily. *Sangoma locks cheaters!*
59. Daily Sun. (July 22, 2019) Mgidi, Emily. *Needles are my bones!*
60. Daily Sun. (July 22, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *10 Years for Dr Evil!*
61. Daily Sun. (August 22, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *I'm afraid to open case*

62. Daily Sun. (November 6, 2019) Khosa, Tlangelani. *How they took my leg!*
 63. Daily Sun (December 27, 2019) Khambule, Lethabo. *G-string curse, then death.*
 64. Daily Sun. (February 2020) Michaels, Modiri. *Tokoloshe wants my pap!*
 65. Daily Sun (July 9, 2020) Phungula, Willem. *Mlungu's s'Tembu Love!*
 66. Daily Sun (July 17, 2020) *Doctors won't see it*
 67. Daily Sun (September 22, 2020) *I don't want to part of evil practices*
 68. Daily Sun. (September 25, 2020) *Part of Mkhulu's penis cut off!*
 69. East Coast Radio. (June 25, 2019) Cele, Sam. *Khoisan praise singer on how it felt to usher the President in at SONA 2019.*
(<https://www.ecr.co.za/shows/partycentral-mike-vee/khoisan-praise-singer-on-how-it-felt-to-usher-the-president-in-at-sona-2019/>)
 70. Eyewitness News. (2012) *James Holmes: American mass murderer responsible for the 2012 Aurora Colorado shooting in which 12 people were killed and 70 injured.*
(<https://ewn.co.za/Topic/James-Holmes>)
 71. Eyewitness News. (July 20, 2019) Dlulane, Bonga. *Zuma there were some within ANC who wanted to kill Hani*
(<https://ewn.co.za/2019/07/20/zuma-there-were-some-within-anc-who-wanted-to-kill-hani>)
 72. Eyewitness News. (January 2, 2020) Theletsane Winnie. *Some of the femicide cases that made headlines in 2019.*
(<https://ewn.co.za/2020/01/02/femicide-cases-that-made-headlines-in-2019>)
 73. For SA. (June 28, 2017) BREAKING NEWS: *Court Says Public Schools May Not Promote A Particular Religion.*
(<https://forsa.org.za/breaking-news-court-says-public-schools-may-not-promote-a-particular-religion/>)
 74. For SA. (August 8, 2017) *Update in 'OGOD' Case: Schools Decide NOT to Appeal*
(<https://forsa.org.za/update-in-ogod-case-schools-decide-not-to-appeal/>)
 75. For SA. (October 24, 2019) Swain, Michael. *Controversial Sex-Ed Content to be Rolled out in Public Schools, Revealed*
(<https://forsa.org.za/press-release-controversial-sex-ed-content-to-be-rolled-out-in-public-schools-revealed/>)
-

76. For SA. (April 20, 2020) Ellerbeck, Daniela. *Legal Advisor for FOR SA. Hate Speech – Where do we stand?*
(<https://forsa.org.za/hate-speech-where-do-we-stand/>)
 77. For SA. (July 6, 2020) Ellerbeck, Daniela. *WC Education Department Pushes Transgenderism in Public Schools.*
(<https://forsa.org.za/wc-education-department-pushes-transgenderism-in-public-schools/>)
 78. For SA. (November 18, 2020) Kingfisher FM Interview: *Update on Regulation of Religion (Audio).*
(<https://forsa.org.za/audio-kingfisher-fm-interview-update-on-regulation-of-religion/>)
 79. Gateway News. (October 29, 2018) Viljoen, Andre. *Angus Buchan delivers word from the Lord to President Cyril Ramaphosa.*
(<https://gatewaynews.co.za/angus-buchan-delivers-word-from-the-lord-to-president-cyril-ramaphosa/>)
 80. Halal Tourism. (April 14, 2019). Electronic Media Release. *The world's friendliest Muslim destination in the world.*
(<https://www.halaltourism.co.za/the-worlds-friendliest-muslim-destination-in-the-world/>)
 81. India Today. (June 8, 2016) *Why Albinos are being abducted, mutilated, raped and killed in Africa.*
(<https://www.indiatoday.in/who-is-what-is/story/albino-killed-in-malawai-africa-body-parts-superstition-12967-2016-06-08>)
 82. IOL. (August 24, 2000) Freemasons remember their Harry Oppenheimer.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/freemasons-remember-their-harry-oppenheimer-48047>)
 83. IOL. (May 6, 2007) Makhaye, Chris. *Church lauds Zuma as honorary pastor.*
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/church-lauds-zuma-as-honorary-pastor-351656>)
 84. IOL. (May 10, 2007) *Mbeki IS a Knight of St John.*
(<https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/mbeki-is-a-knight-of-st-john-352454>)
-

85. IOL. (January 16, 2010) Bailey, Candice. *Muti killings is a way of life in rural areas*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/muti-killings-is-a-way-of-life-in-rural-areas-470603>)
86. IOL. (March 25, 2013) News. *Marikan muti man killed*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/marikana-muti-man-killed-1491221>)
87. IOL. (November 12, 2014) Maromo, Jonisayi. *Mpofu rubbishes Marikan muti claims*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/mpofu-rubbishes-marikana-muti-claims-1779322>)
88. IOL (Independent Online) (October 13, 2015) Ngubane, Sphelele. *Dutch Reformed Church's radical gay ruling*
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/kwazulu-natal/dutch-reformed-churchs-radical-gay-ruling-1928889>)
89. IOL Online. (July 26, 2019) ANA Reporter. *Growth of Halaal industry in Africa creates trade and business opportunities*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/business-report/economy/growth-of-halaal-industry-in-africa-creates-trade-and-business-opportunities-29893179>)
90. IOL. (August 16, 2019) Sidimba, Loyiso. *Seven years and still no justice for the Marikana families*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/politics/seven-years-and-still-no-justice-for-marikana-families-30855183>)
91. IOL. (June 28, 2020) Nxumalo, Lethu. *SA's first Satanic church to be fully functional by September in Ballito, KZN*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/kwazulu-natal/sas-first-satanic-church-to-be-fully-functional-by-september-in-ballito-kzn-50049977>)
92. IOL. (July 4, 2020) African News Agency Reporter. *South Africans being badly let down by local government, says SAHRC after audit outcomes*.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/south-africans-being-badly-let-down-by-local-government-says-sahrc-after-audit-outcomes-50388947>)
93. Joy! Digital Christian Portal. (August 15, 2018) Kupe, Pearl Dr. *God's Perfect Plan for South Africa*.
(<https://www.joydigitalmag.com/words-of-wisdom-post-category/pearl-kupe/>)

94. Kick Off. (October 11, 2011) Kickoff.com. *Safa in sangoma scandal*.
(<https://www.kickoff.com/news/articles/south-africa-news/categories/news/news/sangoma-claims-that-safa-owes-him-money/533990>)
 95. Mail & Guardian. (July 20, 2008) Trapido, Michael. *Buchan and Tutu are Madiba's birthday presents*.
(<https://thoughtleader.co.za/traps/2008/07/20/angus-buchan-and-archbishop-tutu-are-madibas-birthday-presents/>)
 96. Mail & Guardian. (April 5, 2013) Staff Reporter. *The new generation of sangomas*.
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2013-04-05-00-the-new-generation-of-sangomas/>)
 97. Mail & Guardian. (November 26, 2013) Maromo, Jonisayi. *Marikana Commission: Strikers used muti, believed they were invincible*.
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2013-11-26-marikana-commission-strikers-used-muti-believed-they-were-invincible>)
 98. Mail & Guardian. (July 25, 2016) Staff Reporter. *@Noksangoma explains the five types of spirits you may not have known about*.
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2016-07-25-digital-sangoma-noksangoma-gives-five-types-of-spirits-you-may-not-have-known-about/>)
 99. Mail & Guardian. (June 6, 2018) Staff Reporter. *Legacy of a lesbian sangoma*.
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2018-06-06-legacy-of-a-lesbian-sangoma/>)
 100. Mail & Guardian. (March 9, 2019) *Who owns the Reserve Bank?*
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2019-03-09-00-who-owns-the-reserve-bank/>)
 101. Mail & Guardian. (April 9, 2019). Oneko S, Schwikowski M. *Israel and South Africa: 'A downgraded relationship?*
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2019-04-09-israel-and-south-africa-a-downgraded-relationship/>)
 102. Mail & Guardian. (March 26, 2020) Sosibo, Kwanele. *Credo Mutwa: Defying the sting of death*.
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2020-03-26-credo-mutwa-defying-the-sting-of-death/>)
 103. Mail & Guardian. (April 13, 2020) Jacob, Sean. *Chris Hani's Political Legacy*
(<https://mg.co.za/article/2020-04-13-chris-hanis-political-legacy/>)
 104. Manila Bulletin. (2019) Luci-Atienza, Charissa & Cahiles-Magkilat, Bernie. *Ahab and Jezebel's conjugal reign*.
(<https://mb.com.ph/2019/09/08/ahab-and-jezebels-conjugal-reign/>)
-

105. Newsweek. (November 13, 1995) Woodward, Kenneth L. *Do We Need Satan?*
(<https://www.newsweek.com/do-we-need-satan-181030>)
106. News 24. (November 8, 2012) *Marikan men queued for muti – police*
(<https://www.news24.com/SouthAfrica/News/Marikana-men-queued-for-muti-police-20121108>)
107. News 24. (March 19, 2013) *Chris Hani, Jesuits, the Pope and Mugabe.*
(<https://www.news24.com/news24/MyNews24/Chris-Hani-Jesuits-the-Pope-and-Mugabe-20130319>)
108. News 24. (June 8, 2014) *Parliament's secret temple revealed.*
(<https://www.news24.com/SouthAfrica/News/Parliaments-secret-temple-revealed-20140608>)
109. News 24. (October 15, 2018) *Magubane, Khulelani. Cape Town, Western Cape to enhance multi-billion halal tourism sector.*
(<https://www.news24.com/fin24/companies/travelandleisure/cape-town-western-cape-to-enhance-multi-billion-halaal-tourism-sector-20181015>)
110. News 24. (April 2, 2019) Bailie, Craig. *Christianity and politics: Has the South African Church negated its responsibility.*
(<https://www.news24.com/news24/columnists/guestcolumn/christianity-and-politics-has-the-church-negated-its-responsibility-20190402>)
111. News 24. (June 25, 2019) Watch: *People expected too much of me - Khoisan Praise singer.*
(<https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/watch-people-expected-too-much-of-me-khoisan-praise-singer-20190624>)
112. News 24. (March 29, 2020) Nhlap, Ntuli. City Press. *Ramaphosa's failure to acknowledge role of sangomas in Covid-19 fight.*
(<https://www.news24.com/citypress/voices/ramaphosas-failure-to-acknowledge-role-of-sangomas-in-covid-19-fight-20200329>)
113. News 24. (September 17, 2020) Petersen, Tammy. *Same-sex couple seek R2m in damages from Beloftebos wedding venue which turned them away.*
(<https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/same-sex-couple-seek-r2m-in-damages-from-beloftebos-wedding-venue-which-turned-them-away-20200917>)

114. Parent24.com. Mamacos, Elizabeth (October 30, 2019) *Are the new Comprehensive Sexuality Education lesson plans really too much?*
(<https://www.parent24.com/Learn/Learning-difficulties/is-the-new-sexuality-education-curriculum-really-too-much-20191030>)
115. Praag. (August 12, 2012) Seal, Lebogang. *Police won't speculate on the motive of Ceres child rapist.*
(<http://praag.org/?tag=hivaid>)
116. Rand Daily Mail. (September 3, 1957) *Report on the South African Council of Education.*
117. Ravi Zacharias. *Christian View of Homosexuality.*
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nPYRXop7aPA>)
118. Ravi Zacharias: RZIM. *Just a thought podcast. Honor Your Parents.*
(<https://www.rzim.org/listen/just-a-thought/honor-your-parents>)
119. Ravi Zacharias: RZIM. *The Beginning of Words*
(<https://www.rzim.org/read/a-slice-of-infinity/the-beginning-of-words>)
120. Religion News Service. (March 14, 2013) Bell, Caleb K. *Why the first Jesuit pope is a big deal.*
(<https://religionnews.com/2013/03/14/why-the-first-jesuit-pope-is-a-big-deal/>)
121. Reuters.com. (January 7, 2008) Pullella, Philip. *Jesuits gather in Rome to elect new "black pope".*
(<https://www.reuters.com/article/us-religion-jesuits-idUSL0646796520080107>)
122. SA News.com. South African Government News Agency. (July 2018). *SA's illegal abortion rate alarmingly high.*
(<https://www.sanews.gov.za/south-africa/sas-illegal-abortion-rate-alarmingly-high>)
123. South African.com (March 28, 2020) Simpson, Mike. *Junk Status: Moody's downgrade hits South Africa at 'worst possible time'.*
(<https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/finance/moodys-junk-status-south-africa-economy-28-march-2020/>)
124. Sowetan Live. (May 14, 2008) *Shembe move into politics.*
(<https://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/2008-05-14-shembe-move-into-politics/>)

125. Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Childbirth muthi kills 380 babies.*
126. Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) Mahopo, Zoe. *Concoctions lead to hundreds of babies dying in hospital*
127. Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Mystery tonic in maternity ward*
128. Sowetan. (July 5, 2018) *Locals express their belief in herbal cures*
129. Sowetan Live. (October 30, 2020) Sobuwa, Yolisha. *More than 1 million pupils ready to start 2020 matric exams.*
(<https://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-10-30-more-than-1-million-pupils-ready-to-start-2020-matric-exams/>)
130. Sunday Independent. (November 2012) *The Wicked Problem of Corruption.*
(<https://www.iol.co.za/sundayindependent/the-wicked-problem-of-corruption-1425534>)
131. Sunday Times. (October 15, 2018) Bhengu, Lwandile. *When the spirits move him: Meet the Zulu king's praise singer.*
(<https://select.timeslive.co.za/news/2018-10-15-when-the-spirits-move-him-meet-the-zulu-kings-praise-singer/>)
132. The Citizen. (October 13, 2013) Motsai, Emelia. *'Evil' owls under attack by residents.*
(<https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/256766/owl-project-not-all-wise/>)
133. The Citizen Newspaper. (March 2, 2018) *'Doom Prophet' sentenced*
(<https://citizen.co.za/news/news-cns/1842103/doom-prophet-sentenced/>)
134. The Citizen. (May 8, 2018) Watson, Amanda *'Coloured' classification was 'bloodless genocide' – Khoi, San.*
(<https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/1917678/coloured-classification-was-bloodless-genocide-khoi-san/>)
135. The Citizen. (December 28, 2019) *Factsheet: South Africa's crime statistics for 2018/19*
(<https://citizen.co.za/news/south-africa/crime/2178462/factsheet-south-africas-crime-statistics-for-2018-19/> 2019/12/28)
136. The Guardian. (November 22, 2017) Gill, Martha. *What is the Illuminati?*
(<https://www.theguardian.com/commentisfree/2017/nov/22/what-is-illuminati-google-autocomplete>)

137. The Guardian. (February 4, 2018) *Freemasonry explained: a guide to the secretive society.*
(<https://www.theguardian.com/uk-news/2018/feb/04/freemasonry-explained-guide>)
138. The Mercury. (January 10, 2018) Sidimba, Loyiso and Feketha, Siviwe. *Top six look to ancestors for guidance.*
(<https://www.pressreader.com/south-africa/the-mercury-south-africa/20180110/281586650993316>)
139. The South African.com. (June 25, 2020) Head, Tom. *SA Satanic Church has 'famous fans'- and they plan to pen new branches.*
(<https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/offbeat/satanic-church-south-africa-who-famous-members-tv-where-new-branches-open/>)
140. The South African.com. (November 23, 2020) Head, Tom. *The South African Revealed: South Africa is in the world's top five most dangerous countries.*
(<https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/is-south-africa-dangerous-to-visit-where-rank-worst-countries-safety/>)
141. The Times of Israel. (June 12, 2018) *Johannesburg suspends councilwoman for saying the city is a 'friend of Israel.'*
(<https://www.timesofisrael.com/johannesburg-suspends-councilwoman-for-saying-city-is-a-friend-of-israel/>)
142. The Times of Israel. (October 13, 2018) *Pik Botha, apartheid-era South-African foreign minister, dies at 86.*
(<https://www.timesofisrael.com/pik-botha-apartheid-era-south-african-foreign-minister-dies-at-86/>)
143. The Witness. (July 22, 2018) Kanyile, Nokuthula. *A new breed of techo-savvy sangomas.*
(<https://www.news24.com/witness/news/a-new-breed-of-techno-savvy-sangomas-20180722>)
144. Times Live. (June 7, 2014) Cornelius, Jerome. *Harmful religious practice and occult on the rise in SA.*
(<https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2014-06-07-harmful-religious-practice-and-occult-on-the-rise-in-sa/>)
-

145. Times Live. (October 22, 2017) Ho Ufrieda. *Meet the millennial Freemasons of Joburg. The secretive brotherhood society of Freemasonry is trying to lure new blood – as long as it's male.*
([https://www.timeslive.co.za/sunday-times/lifestyle/2017-10-21-meet-the-millennial-freemasons-of-park town/](https://www.timeslive.co.za/sunday-times/lifestyle/2017-10-21-meet-the-millennial-freemasons-of-park-town/))
146. Times Live. (June 5, 2019) Nkanjeni, U. *Only 8% of South Africans speak English at home.*
(<https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2019-06-05-only-8-of-south-africans-speak-english-at-home-report/>)
147. Times Live. (June 24, 2020) Bhengu, C. *SA Satanic Church on rituals, worshipping the devil & religious tolerance.*
(<https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-06-24-sa-satanic-church-on-rituals-worshipping-the-devil--religious-tolerance/>)
148. Volksblad. (July 21, 1994) *Vredesbloed vloei vir Roelf in Soweto*

7 LIST OF SOUTH AFRICAN ACT'S

1. Animal Protection Act No. 71 of 1962
2. Black Economic Empowerment Act 35 of 2003
3. Broad-based Black Economic Empowerment Act 53 of 2003
4. Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996
5. Education Laws Amendment Act (No.48 of 1999)
6. Employment Equity Act No. 55 of 1998
7. Films and Publication Act, (No. 65 of 1996)
8. Lotteries Act (No. 57 of 1997)
9. National Gambling Act, 1996 (No. 33 of 1996)
10. Native (Urban Areas) Act of 1923
11. Native Trust and Land Act, 1936
12. Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (PEPUDA or the Equality Act, Act No. 4 of 2000)

13. Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998. Customary Marriages in South Africa: Understanding the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998.
14. Restitution of Land Rights Act 22 of 1994 and Land expropriation without compensation bill aims to amend Section 25 of the Constitution.
15. South African History Online. Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998. Customary Marriages in South Africa: Understanding the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998.
16. Traditional Health Practitioners Act. Act No. 22 of 2007.
17. Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act No. 34 of 1995. Truth and Reconciliation Commission.

8 INTERVIEWS

Interviews was not conducted with the aim to find conclusive evidence as a result of scientific questionnaires, but only to assist in the interpretation of culture and spirituality. As a result of the nine official languages with additional dialects, it was also necessary to find linguistic and translation assistance.

1. Kwalata, Cynthia. Born Ndebele but initiated into the Xhosa nation after her marriage. Elder and advisor her family. Professional Short-Term Insurance Specialist. Commentator of culture and spirituality in societies.
2. Mthimunye, Tembe. Born Ndebele but will be initiated into her future husband Xhosa family. Qualified Attorney. Commentator of culture and spirituality in societies.
3. Makgopa, Joeye. Pedi (North Sotho) Student leader and Qualified educator of Secondary School Afrikaans second language.
4. Makhubo, Linda Reuben. Zulu. Political activist, Community leader, Accredited South African Tour guide. Fluent in all 9 South African languages as well as Mandarin.

5. Du Toit, Jan. Afrikaner, World Traveller, Director of International Training Academy, amateur historian and cultural researcher. Tour guide to the giant footprint, Mpumalanga.
6. Sibongile, Shabangu. Ndebele. Culture consultant.
7. Sebese, Johannes. Brother to sangoma cursed due to jealousy. She had a wide cliental but passed away after she suffered a stroke.
8. Radebe, Florence. Pedi (North Sotho). Christian. Qualified medical caretaker with experience in the amalgamation of traditional and Western medicine.
9. Letsoalo, Caroline. Christian. Qualified medical caretaker with experience in the amalgamation of traditional and Western medicine.
10. Jeanne. Afrikaans speaking white female. Qualified and ordained Sangoma.
11. Durand, Johan Coloured male. Member of Parliament, Amateur historian and Cultural expert.
12. Ngwenya, Koos. Translation assistant.
13. Van Schaik, LH. Emeritus Reverent from Reformed Church South Africa.
14. King of the Khoisan currently camping at the Union Buildings. Interview in particular with reference to their protest and their demands to government.

9 INTERNET RESOURCES

1. /Kaggen.
(http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.html)
2. 2 Ways Jesus is the Word of God: Revelation and Logos.
(<https://blog.logos.com/2019/06/2-ways-jesus-is-the-word-of-god-revelation-and-logos/>)
3. 5 Reasons Why Context Matters in Biblical Resources.
(https://oasisinternational.com/content/uploads/2019/10/5ReasonsWhyContextMatters_v3.pdf)
4. 5 Scriptural points to help you understand the trinity.
(<https://www.crosswalk.com/faith/bible-study/5-scriptural-points-to-help-you-understand-the-trinity.html>)

5. 7 Key Differences Between Protestant and Catholic Doctrine.
(<https://voice.dts.edu/article/7-key-differences-between-protestant-and-catholic-doctrine-del-rosario-mikel/>)
6. 7 Ways to Worship God in Spirit and in Truth.
(<https://blog.kcm.org/7-ways-worship-god-spirit-truth/>)
7. 9. Moses and the Exodus (Exodus 1-15).
(<https://bible.org/seriespage/9-moses-and-exodus-exodus-1-15>)
8. 9 Questions about the Illuminati you were too afraid to ask.
(<https://www.vox.com/2015/5/19/8624675/what-is-the-real-illuminati>)
9. 9 Top South African Spiritual Retreats.
(<https://mycradock.co.za/09/9-top-south-african-spiritual-retreats/>)
10. 31 Scriptures About the Power of Your Words.
(<https://www.kcm.org/real-help/spiritual-growth/believe/31-scriptures-about-the-power-your-words>)
11. 100 000-Year-Old Ruins of South Africa.
(<https://projectyourself.com/blogs/news/100-000-year-old-ruins-of-south-africa>)
12. A Body of Divinity.
(<https://www.ccel.org/w/watson/divinity/cache/divinity.pdf>)
13. A Brief History of the Jesuits.
(<http://faculty.fairfield.edu/jmac/sj/briefsjhistory.htm>)
14. A brief word about the Jesuits.
(<https://sj.org.za/about-us/>)
15. A Call for Discernment. Part 2 of 3.
(<http://www.ondoctrine.com/2mac0017.htm>)
16. A History of the Rothchild Family.
(<https://www.investopedia.com/updates/history-rothschild-family/>)
17. A Lefty Reunion.
(<https://www.newyorker.com/magazine/1996/05/13/a-lefty-reunion>)
18. A New Perspective on the Problem of Evil.
(<http://cspar181.uah.edu?RbS/JOB/de.html>)
19. A short history of the South African region.
(<https://sj.org.za/about-us/a-short-history/>)

20. A Timeline of Catholicism in South Africa.
(<https://www.scross.co.za/2018/06/a-timeline-of-catholicism-in-south-africa/>)
21. About McGregor.
(<https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/mcgregor.php>)
22. About Witchcraft.
(<https://occult-world.com/menu-witchcraft/about-witchcraft/>)
23. Adam's Calendar: Oldest Megalithic Site in the World?
(<https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-africa/adam-s-calendar-oldest-megalithic-site-world-003160>)
24. African Bushmen.
(http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.html)
25. African Economical Insight
(<https://www2.deloitte.com/za/en/insights/economy/emea/africa-economic-outlook.html>)
26. African Languages.
(https://africanlanguages.com/south_africa/place_names.html)
27. African "Muti murders".
(<http://alterreddimensions.net/2013/african-muti-medicine-murders-hospitals-sell-body-parts-murderers-harvest-organs-from-live-victims-witch-doctors-black-magic-spells>)
28. African National Anthems: 'Beat the drums, the red Lion has roared'.
(<https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/13696850500448337?scroll=top&needAccess=true>)
29. African Praise singer - Jessica Mpangeni.
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4ZmPEf0E4dU>)
30. African Transformation Movement (ATM).
(<https://www.atmmovement.org/>)
31. Afrikaans.
(<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Afrikaans>)
32. Afrikaner Bond emblem.
(<https://www.afrikanerbond.co.za/>)

33. Afrikaner Broederbond.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv02730/05lv03188/06lv03190.htm>)
 34. Ahab and Jezebel: Abuse of Power.
(https://absg.adventist.org/pdf.php?file=2007:3Q:ER:PDFs:ERQ307_11.pdf)
 35. Alchemy.
(<https://occult-world.com/alchemy/>)
 36. Alice Bailey & Master Djwhal Khul: A Satanic Communion. Illuminati.
(http://www.conspiracyarchive.com/NewAge/Alice_Bailey.htm)
 37. All hail the “Rain Queen” of South Africa.
(<https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/young/all-hail-the-rain-queen-of-south-africa-71209>)
 38. An intro into Discordianism.
(<https://www.learnreligions.com/discordianism-95677>)
 39. An introduction to the Protestant Reformation.
(<https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/world-history/renaissance-and-reformation/protestant-reformation/a/an-introduction-to-the-protestant-reformation>)
 40. An Introduction to the Study of the Danube Script.
(<https://www.archaeomythology.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/01/2008-vol4-intro1.pdf>)
 41. An uncomfortable truth. South Africa and weapons: a dirty history.
(<https://gga.org/an-uncomfortable-truth/>)
 42. Ancestor Worship: The Religion of Africa. Guardian of Truth.
(<http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume35/GOT035143.html>)
 43. Ancient Wisdom: Ley Lines.
(<http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/leylines.htm>)
 44. Anglicans Online: South Africa.
(<http://anglicansonline.org/world/za.html>)
 45. Anthropology.
(<http://anthropology.iresearchnet.com/ethnology/>)
 46. Antinomy.
(<https://www.vocabulary.com/dictionary/antinomy>)
-

47. Apartheid & the Methodist Church. The Anti-Apartheid Movement in North Texas.
(<https://blog.smu.edu/theanti-apartheidmovementinnorthtexas/history/apartheid-the-methodist-church/>)
48. Appendix: A Tentative Roster of the Milner Group.
(<https://info.publicintelligence.net/MilnerGroup.pdf>)
49. Aquifer.
(<https://digitalatlas.cose.isu.edu/hydr/concepts/gwater/aquifer.htm#:~:text=An%20aquifer%20is%20a%20body,basalts%20also%20make%20good%20aquifers>)
50. أَرَابِيْسِي أَفْرِيكَانْسُ Arabiese-Afrikaans.
(<https://web.facebook.com/groups/315839365501589>)
51. Are the Ten Lost Tribes of Israel Ever Coming Back?
(https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/1701071/jewish/Are-the-Ten-Lost-Tribes-Ever-Coming-Back.htm)
52. Ariton.
(<http://occult-world.com/demons/ariton/2019/12/27>)
53. Are all Chinese people defined as black?
(<http://www.econoserv.co.za/are-all-chinese-people-defined-as-black/>)
54. Asherah.
(<http://www.piney.com/Asherah.html>)
55. Asherah pole.
(<https://www.gotquestions.org/Asherah-pole.html>)
56. Asmodee, Asmodeus or Asmodai (Hebrew: Ashmedai).
(<https://genies.fandom.com/wiki/Asmodeus>)
57. Asmodeus.
(<https://touchofgod.org/asmodeus-destroyer-men/>)
58. "Association of Real Afrikaners" (Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners).
(https://esat.sun.ac.za/index.php/Genootskap_van_Regte_Afrikaners)
59. Azazel.
(<https://mythology.net/demons/azazel/>)
60. Azazel (Scapegoat).
(<http://www.jewishencyclopedia.com/articles/2203-azazel>)
61. Bacchus.
(<https://www.cuttingedge.org/news/n2323.cfm>)

62. Bacchus.
(<https://www.learnreligions.com/bacchus-roman-god-2562627>)
 63. Balobedu rain queen returns.
(<https://www.enca.com/south-africa/rain-queen-returns>)
 64. Banks owned by the Rothschild family.
(<http://africanagenda.net/list-of-banks-owned-by-the-rothschild-family/>)
 65. Baphomet.
(<https://ascensionglossary.com/index.php/Baphomet>)
 66. Baphomet.
(occultopedia.com)
 67. Basotho Religion.
(<https://welovebasotho.weebly.com/religion.html>)
 68. Bechuana.
(<https://www.thefreedictionary.com/Bechuana>)
 69. Behind the Masonic Symbols: The Cornerstone.
(<https://www.freemason.com/behind-the-masonic-symbols-the-cornerstone/>)
 70. Below the Salt.
(<https://www.zigzag.co.za/featured/below-the-salt/>)
 71. Benevolent Love.
(<https://craigbrianlarsen.com/gods-benevolence/>)
 72. Bible Commentaries. Biblehub.com: Leviticus 7.
(<https://biblehub.com/commentaries/ellicott/leviticus/17.htm>)
 73. Bible Commentaries. Biblegateway.com: Leviticus 7.
(<https://www.biblegateway.com/passage/?search=Leviticus+17&version=NKJV>)
 74. Biblical Hermeneutics Who are the morning stars in Job 38:7?
(<https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/706/who-are-the-morning-stars-in-job-387>)
 75. Bible Hub 266. Hamartia.
(<https://biblehub.com/greek/266.htm>)
 76. Bible translated into North Sotho.
(<http://www.bibles.co.za/history/>)
 77. Bigotry defined. MacMillan Dictionary.
(<https://www.macmillandictionary.com/dictionary/british/bigotry>)
-

78. Bill of Rights (Chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa).
(<https://www.westerncape.gov.za/legislation/bill-rights-chapter-2-constitution-republic-south-africa#7>)
79. Bill of Rights Chapter 2.
(<https://www.justice.gov.za/legislation/constitution/chp02.html>)
80. Black Empowerment criteria for Government COVID-19 relief funds.
(<https://www.lexafrica.com/2020/05/bbbee-criteria-for-government-relief-funds-in-the-covid-19-crisis/>)
81. Boer language, Afrikaans, Nederlands: differences. A question for Ron.
(http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1218:boer-language-afrikaans-nederlands-differences-a-question-for-ron&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168)
82. Boer War 1899-1902.
(<https://www.angloboerwar.com/boer-war>)
83. Boerestaat. 'Boere and 'Afrikaners'. The historical perspective. Volkstaat.net
(http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1342:boers-and-afrikaners-boerestaat-robort-van-tonder&catid=77:boersand-afrikaner&Itemid=136)
84. Boerestaat Party.
(<https://www.facebook.com/Boerestaat-Party-858737494186070/>)
85. Book of Changes.
(http://www.links2theoocult.co.uk/dictionary_b.htm#bookofchanges)
86. Breaking Masonic Curses.
(<https://www.freedom-ministries.com/catalog/derek-robert-products/-workbook-breaking-the-chains-of-freemasonry-by-derek-robert-breaking-masonic-curses-worldwide-postage-included-779.html>)
87. Breaking the Shackles of Demonic Bondage Demonic Spirits Portals, Wormholes Star-gates.
(<https://miracleinternetchurch.com/wp-content/uploads/bsk-pdf-manager/2020/03/2-Breaking-the-Shackles-of-Demonic-Bondage.pdf>)
88. Bretton Woods System and 1944 Agreement.
(<https://www.thebalance.com/bretton-woods-system-and-1944-agreement-3306133>)

89. Bride.
(<https://www.christianity.com/wiki/church/the-church-is-the-bride-of-christ.html>)
90. Bushmen Rock Painting.
(https://www.123rf.com/photo_23869322_bushmen-san-rock-painting-drakens-berg-mountains-south-africa.html)
91. CANRAD: Centre for the Advancement of Non-Racialism and Democracy.
(<https://canrad.mandela.ac.za/What-we-do>)
92. Cape Town for the Muslim Traveller.
(<https://www.capetown.travel/cape-town-for-the-muslim-traveller/>)
93. Catechism of the Catholic Church.
(http://www.vatican.va/archive/ccc_css/archive/catechism/p123a9p6.htm)
94. Cambridge Dictionary. Anthropology.
(<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/anthropology>)
95. Cambridge Dictionary. Culture.
(<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/culture>)
96. Cambridge Dictionary. Nation.
(<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/nation>)
97. CASAC Council for the advancement of the South African Constitution.
(<http://www.casac.org.za/>)
98. Cenotaph.
(<https://www.facebook.com/Voortrekkermon/photos/a.151975777102/10153691051972103/?type=3>)
99. Cenotaph: Originates from Greek meaning empty grave.
(<https://vtm.org.za/en/voortrekker-monument/#:~:text=-,Cenotaph,died%20during%20the%20Great%20Trek>)
100. Census 2001 Religion.
(http://www.statssa.gov.za/census/census_2001/primary_tables/RSAPrimary.pdf)
101. Census 2011 FAQ.
(http://www.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=3859)
102. Census 2011 Languages.
(https://unstats.un.org/UNSD/demographic/sources/census/wphc/South_Africa/ZAF04-Census2011.pdf)

103. Census 2011 Population.
(<https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P03014/P030142011.pdf>)
 104. Census in brief (2011).
(https://unstats.un.org/unsd/demographic/sources/census/wphc/South_Africa/ZAF04-Census2011.pdf)
 105. Channelling: What is channelling?
(<https://www.crimsoncircle.com/Library/What-is-Channeling>)
 106. Chris Hani Timeline.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/thembisile-chris-hani-timeline-1942-2003>)
 107. Christian Consensus.
(<http://greatawakeningsa.co.za/#DECLARATION>)
 108. Christianity & Crisis in South Africa Today.
(<https://providencemag.com/2017/02/christianity-crisis-in-south-africa-today/>)
 109. Christology.
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/Christology.html>)
 110. Christophany.
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/theophany-christophany.html>)
 111. Church of Satan.
(<https://www.churchofsatan.com/>)
 112. Clairvoyance.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/c/clairvoyance.htm>)
 113. Coat of Arms.
(<https://www.grandlodge.co.za/yearbooks/GLSA2016.pdf>)
 114. Collins Dictionary. Bantu.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/bantu>)
 115. Collins Dictionary. Culture.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/culture>)
 116. Collins Dictionary. Enchanted.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/enchanted>)
 117. Collins Dictionary. Exegesis.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/exegesis>)
 118. Collins Dictionary. Hamartiology.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/hamartiology>)
-

119. Collins Dictionary. Incest.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/incest>)
120. Collins Dictionary. JHVH (also known as Tetragrammaton).
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/tetragrammaton>)
121. Collins Dictionary. JHVH: Old Testament variants of YHVH.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/jhvh>)
122. Collins Dictionary. Monism.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/monism>)
123. Collins Dictionary. Monolith.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/monolith>)
124. Collins Dictionary. Nation.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/nation>)
125. Collins Dictionary. Panentheistic.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/pantheistic>)
126. Collins Dictionary. Race.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/arms-race>)
127. Collins Dictionary. Tribe.
(<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/tribe>)
128. Commission for Gender Equality.
(<http://www.cge.org.za/>)
129. Computer generated view of the Adam's Calendar site.
(<http://www.ancient-wisdom.com/africaadamscalendar.htm>)
130. Conjuration.
(<https://bible.knowing-jesus.com/words/Conjure>)
131. Consolidation of media. Provinces and assistancies, Jesuits World Order 10 Kingdoms.
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/09/provinces-and-assistancies.html>)
132. Constitution of South Africa. Section 36.
(https://www.gov.za/documents/constitution/chapter-2-bill-rights?gclid=Cj0KCQiAgom-BBhDXARIsAFNyUqNDXpfpj5Pb8ZZGnoa3INvhwIP8sThqGdPzNatxGQ9fekAroS2wDGcaAliuEALw_wcB#36)

133. Constitution of the Grand Lodge of South Africa.
(https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view)
 134. Constitutional Court of South Africa.
(<https://www.concourt.org.za/index.php/constitution/your-rights/the-bill-of-rights>)
 135. Coram Deo.
(<https://www.coramdeoassociation.org/meaning-of-coram-deo/>)
 136. Coram Deo.
(<https://www.latin-is-simple.com/en/vocabulary/phrase/345>)
 137. Countries and Cultures: Lesotho.
(<https://www.everyculture.com/Ja-Ma/Lesotho.html>)
 138. Cracking the Symbol Code: The Heretical Message within Church and Renaissance Art.
(https://books.google.co.za/books/about/Cracking_the_Symbol_Code.html?id=PNP9CwAAQBAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=kp_read_button&redir_esc=y#v=onepage&q&f=false)
 139. Cradle of Humankind.
(https://www.places.co.za/html/cradle_of_humankind.html)
 140. Credo Mutwa Cultural Village.
(<https://www.nightjartravel.com/cultural/credo-mutwa-cultural-village>)
 141. Credo Mutwa Cultural Village.
(<https://www.sa-venues.com/things-to-do/gauteng/credo-mutwa-cultural-village/>)
 142. Crime against women in South Africa.
(<https://www.justice.gov.za/vg/femicide/docs/201806-CrimeStats.pdf>)
 143. Culture Explainer. Race and ethnicity: How are they different?
(<https://www.nationalgeographic.com/culture/topics/reference/race-ethnicity/>)
 144. Culture Trip. Why Cape Town is high on the Bucket Lists of Muslim Travellers.
(<https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/why-cape-town-is-high-on-the-bucket-lists-of-muslim-travellers/>)
 145. Curse.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/e/execration.htm>)
 146. Cursing 101: The 3 Types of Curses You Need To Know.
(<https://thetravelingwitch.com/blog/2016/12/21/quick-curses>)
-

147. CYPISA.
(<https://www.cypsa.org.za/cck/stop-cse-in-south-african-schools>)
148. Day of Atonement.
(<http://www.jewish-encyclopedia.com/articles/2093-atonement-day-of>)
149. Defending God's Truth in Church doctrine and Political History.
(https://www.unbannedbiblepublications.com/index_files/Page37043.htm)
150. Defining Culture, Heritage and Identity.
(<http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/defining-culture-heritage-and-identity>)
151. Demonology: The Doctrine of Fallen Angels.
(<https://www.biblestudytools.com/topical-verses/archangel-gabriel-in-the-bible/>)
152. Denel.
(<http://www.denel.co.za/about-us/company-profile>)
153. Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.
(http://www.justice.gov.za/EQCact/eqc_main.html)
154. Derek Prince Radio Ministry. DPM – USA *God revealed in His Names. Elohim.*
(https://www.derekprince.org/Articles/1000136690/DPM_USA/Media/Radio_15/DPLR_15_Archives/God_Revealed_in/God_Revealed_in.aspx)
155. Derek Prince Teaching letters: *Spirit, Soul and Body*
(<http://derekprince.me/resources/free-teaching-letters/>)
156. Detailed meaning of the six global symbols on the Global Peace Pole.
(<http://www.global-emergency-alert-response.net/GPPsymbols.html>)
157. Diagram depicting the Trinity.
(<https://bible-quran.com/monotheism-trinity/>)
158. Dictionary.com. Animism.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/animism>)
159. Dictionary.com. Australopithecus.
(<http://www.dictionary.com/browse/australopithecus>)
160. Dictionary.com. Bantu.
(<http://www.dictionary.com/browse/bantu>)
161. Dictionary.com. Commander in Chief.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/commander-in-chief>)
162. Dictionary.com. Hate Speech.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/hate-speech>)

163. Dictionary.com. Henotheism.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/henotheism>)
164. Dictionary.com. Hybrid.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/hybrid>)
165. Dictionary.com. Kraals.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/kraal>)
166. Dictionary.com. Polytheism.
(<https://www.dictionary.com/browse/polytheism>)
167. Dictionary.com. Tribe.
(<http://www.dictionary.com/browse/tribe>)
168. Die Boer en die verraad in sy midde – die hele geskiedenis en die hele waarheid.
(<http://kvbnuusblad.blogspot.com/2012/03/hierdie-is-n-redelike-lang-stuk-om-te.html>)
169. Die vals Priesterdome: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (Deel 1).
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N8vna9NKekD>)
170. Die vals Priesterdome: Vrymesselary onder SA Kerkleierskap (Deel 2).
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FyvHF84A2VQ>)
171. Difference Ethnicity vs Race.
(https://www.diffen.com/difference/Ethnicity_vs_Race)
172. Differences and similarities between Khoi and San people.
(<https://www.afronerd.co.za/differences-similarities-khoi-san-people/>)
173. Different types of Healers in South Africa.
(<https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/different-types-healers-south-africa/>)
174. Discordianism is the religion for these screwed-up times, and Principia Discordia reveals it here for your enlightenment, confusion and entertainment.
(<https://www.goodreads.com/book/show/89937>)
175. Disgracing Water Spirits.
(<https://www.facebook.com/notes/teik-chuan-giam/disgracing-water-spirits/113647082065567/>)

176. Distribution of languages spoken inside and outside of households South Africa 2018.
(<https://www.statista.com/statistics/1114302/distribution-of-languages-spoken-inside-and-outside-of-households-in-south-africa/>)
177. Divination.
(<https://occult-world.com/divinations/>)
178. Divination Practices and Occultic Games.
(<https://jashow.org/articles/divination-practices-and-occult-games/>)
179. Divination Types. E Sword.
(<http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/divinationtypes.htm>)
180. Divine Supernatural Realms. Underwater Kingdom of the Devil. Mermaids-Human Hybrids and Demons.
(<https://adivineencounter.weebly.com/underwater-kingdom-of-satan.html>)
181. Dowsing.
(<https://www.equip.org/article/dowsing/>)
182. Dowsing. All about spirituality.
(<https://www.allaboutspirituality.org/dowsing.htm>)
183. Dr. Medi Illuminate Agent.
(<https://www.joinilluminati.co.za/about-us/>)
184. Dutch East-India Company.
(<http://www.unesco.org/new/en/communication-and-information/memory-of-the-world/register/full-list-of-registered-heritage/registered-heritage-page-1/archives-of-the-dutch-east-indiacompany>)
185. Early history - San and Khoi-Khoi.
(<https://www.kapstadt.de/suedafrika/geschichte/fruehgeschichte-san-und-khoi-khoi>)
186. Ecological Implications of Water Spirit Beliefs in South Africa: The Need to Protect Knowledge, Nature, and Resource Rights.
(https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p027/rmrs_p027_148_154.pdf)
187. EFF Banner.
(<https://southafricatoday.net/media/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/Honeymoon-is-over-for-White-people-in-South-Africa.jpg>)
-

188. Effects of the Mining Strike on the South African Economy.
(<https://www.miningreview.com/industry-insight/effects-of-the-mining-strikes-on-the-south-african-economy/>)
189. Egyn. Occult-world.com.Arton.
(<http://occult-world.com/demons/ariton/>)
190. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Afrikaner -Broederbond
(<https://www.britannica.com/topic/Afrikaner-Broederbond>)
191. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Aleister Crowley.
([https://www.britannica.com/biography/Aleister-Crowley.](https://www.britannica.com/biography/Aleister-Crowley))
192. Encyclopaedia Britannica. De Beers S.A. South African Company.
(<https://www.britannica.com/topic/De-Beers-SA>)
193. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Hylomorphism.
([https://www.britannica.com/ topic/hylomorphism](https://www.britannica.com/topic/hylomorphism))
194. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Oceania.
(<https://www.britannica.com/place/Oceania-region-Pacific-Ocean>)
195. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Rene Descartes French mathematician and philosopher.
(<https://www.britannica.com/biography/Rene-Descartes>)
196. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Sir Ernest Oppenheimer, South African Industrialist.
(<https://www.britannica.com/biography/Ernest-Oppenheimer>)
197. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Sodom and Gomorrah.
(<https://www.britannica.com/place/Sodom-and-Gomorrah>)
198. Encyclopaedia Britannia. Targum (Aramaic: "Translation," or "Interpretation").
(<https://www.britannica.com/topic/Targum>)
199. Encyclopaedia Britannia. Treaty of Amiens 1802.
(<https://www.britannica.com/event/Treaty-of-Amiens-1802>)
200. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Tribe.
(<https://www.britannica.com/topic/tribe-anthropology>)
201. Enduring Word. Ezekiel 28 – Against Satan, King of Tyre.
(<https://enduringword.com/bible-commentary/ezekiel-28/>)
202. Enki and the creation of humankind.
(<http://ancientmysteries.gayla-groom.com/enki-and-the-creation-of-humankind/>)

203. Eschatology.
(<https://www.vocabulary.com/dictionary/eschatology>)
 204. Ethnic Group.
(https://www.sciencedaily.com/terms/ethnic_group.htm)
 205. Ethnic Group.
(<https://www.thesaurus.net/ethnic>)
 206. Ethnicity.
(<https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/psychology/ethnicity>)
 207. Ethnicity vs. Race.
(www.diffen.com/difference/Ethnicity_vs_Race)
 208. Ethnology and Ethnography in Anthropology.
(<https://hraf.yale.edu/teach-ehraf/ethnology-and-ethnography-in-anthropology/>)
 209. Evidence That Demands a Verdict.
(https://archive.org/details/The_New_Evidence_That_Demands_a_Verdict_Josh_McDowell/page/n219/mode/2up 9)
 210. Evil.
(<https://biblehub.com/hebrew/7451b.htm>)
 211. Evil. Catholic Encyclopedia.
(<http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/05649a.htm>).
 212. Evil Agenda of Radical and Militant Pro-Abortion Feminists Is the Wicked Spirit of Jezebel at Work.
(<https://hamiltonstrategies.com/evil-agenda-of-radical-and-militant-pro-abortion-feminists-is-the-wicked-spirit-of-jezebel-at-work-says-author-dr-michael-brown/>)
 213. Experts question study claiming to pinpoint birthplace of all humans.
(<https://www.sciencemag.org/news/2019/10/experts-question-study-claiming-pinpoint-birth-place-all-humans>)
 214. Explainer: Behind the scourge of child rape in South Africa.
(<https://theconversation.com/explainer-behind-the-scourge-of-child-rape-in-south-africa-43436>)
 215. Explorations in Ethnicity and Social Change among Zulu-speaking San Descendants of the Drakensberg Mountains, KwaZulu-Natal.
(<https://ukzn-dspace.ukzn.ac.za/handle/10413/2202>)
-

216. Facts about the Eland.
(<https://haydensanimalfacts.com/2015/05/11/5-interesting-facts-about-giant-eland/>)
217. Fairy.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/f/fairy.htm>)
218. Familiar Spirit
(<https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/familiar-spirit/>)
219. Femicide.
(<https://www.thesouthafrican.com/news/how-many-women-killed-south-africa-femicide/>)
220. Fingo; Amafengu.
(<http://xhosaculture.co.za/history/amamfengu/>)
221. First Commandment: Exodus 20:1-6. Freedom of religion, belief and opinion. Article 16 of The Bill of Rights.
(<https://constitutionallawofsouthafrica.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/Chap41.pdf>)
222. First Fruit.
(<https://get.tithe.ly/blog/first-fruit>)
223. First South African Grand Master.
(<http://www.grandlodge.co.za/in-the-beginning/>)
224. Focus on the virgin myth and HIV/Aids.
(<https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/focus-virgin-myth-hivaids/>)
225. FOR SA:
(<https://forsa.org.za/>)
226. Foundational Statement. Ligonier Ministries.
(<https://www.ligonier.org/about/who-we-are/what-we-believe/>)
227. Freedom Charter.
(<https://theconversation.com/south-africas-freedom-charter-campaign-holds-lessons-for-the-pursuit-of-a-fairer-society-141316>)
228. Freedom Day Interfaith Prayer.
(<https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/pics-freedom-day-celebrations-1850726>)
-

229. Freedom of Expression Institute.
(<https://www.fxj.org.za/>)
230. Freedom Park.
(<https://www.brandsouthafrica.com/people-culture/arts-culture/freedom-park>)
231. Freedom Park: Celebrating Peace.
(<https://www.brandsouthafrica.com/people-culture/arts-culture/freedom-park>)
232. Freedom Park. A heritage destination.
(https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#)
233. Freemason Grand Lodge.
(<http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>)
234. Freemason History.
(<http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>)
235. Freemasonry in South Africa Prior to 1863.
(<https://philotecton.org/analects/freemasonry-in-south-africa-prior-to-1863>)
236. Freemason symbols and emblems: Eye of Providence.
(<https://www.gettyimages.com/detail/news-photo/the-pyramid-and-the-all-seeing-eye-symbols-used-in-the-news-photo/525515034>)
237. Freemasonry and the Anglo-Boer War.
(<https://www.glsa23.co.za/freemasonry-and-the-anglo-boer-war>)
238. Freemasonry in Netherland. Orde van Vrijmetselaren onder het Grootosten der Nederlanden.
(http://www.stichtingargus.nl/vrijmetselarij/ovo_en.html)
239. Freemasonry Part 2.
(<https://trumpetcall.co.za/dvds/freemasonry-part-2>)
240. French Huguenots.
(<https://www.hugenoet.org.za/huguenots.htm>)
241. Gaining Perspective on Territorial Spirits.
(<https://www.lausanne.org/content/territorial-spirits>)
242. Gender Innovations in Science, Health & Medicine, Engineering, and Environment. Race & Ethnicity.
(<https://genderedinnovations.stanford.edu/terms/race.html>)

243. General South African History Timeline: 1500s.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/general-south-african-history-timeline-1500s>)
 244. Geography of South Africa.
(https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_South_Africa)
 245. Gnomes.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/g/gnomes.htm>)
 246. God and the Problem of Evil.
(<http://www.geocities.com/mnapologetics/art12.htm>).
 247. God in Three Persons: A Doctrine We Barely Understand.
(<https://www.christianity.com/god/trinity/god-in-three-persons-a-doctrine-we-barely-understand-11634405.html>)
 248. God is a Spiritual Being but what does that even mean?
(<https://derekzrismawy.com/2015/06/04/god-is-a-spiritual-being-but-what-does-that-even-mean/>)
 249. God Revealed in His Names.
(https://www.derekprince.org/Articles/1000136690/DPM_USA/Media/Radio_15/DPLR_15_Archives/God_Revealed_in/God_Revealed_in.aspx)
 250. God's Perfect Plan For South Africa.
(<https://www.joydigitalmag.com/words-of-wisdom-post-category/pearl-kupe/>)
 251. Good Hope.
(<https://www.vendeeglobe.org/en/news/16383/good-hope>)
 252. Goth Subculture Spirituality and Unique Visual Aesthetics.
(<https://www.atmostfear-entertainment.com/opinions/movements/goth-subculture-spirituality-unique-visual-aesthetics/>)
 253. Government Gazette, (January 25, 2018).
(https://www.sastatecapture.org.za/uploads/Terms_Of_Reference.pdf)
 254. Grand Lodge Constitution.
(https://drive.google.com/file/d/1SXRY7byp4OKYsb__gG3EZblaGz0A6PxP/view)
 255. Grand Lodge South Africa Coat of Arms.
([https://www.grandlodge.co.za/year books/GLSA2016.pdf](https://www.grandlodge.co.za/year%20books/GLSA2016.pdf).)
-

256. Graphology – Understanding a Personality from Handwriting.
(<http://futurescopes.com/divination/graphology/2314/graphology-understanding-personality-handwriting/>)
257. Graphology. Links2theOccult: Divination.
(<http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/graphology.htm>)
258. Great Trek Map.
(https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/30/Great_Trek_map_full.png)
259. Groote Kerk at Adderley Street.
(<http://www.cape-town.photos/image/4833-groote-kerk-at-adderley-street/>)
260. Guide to the 2014 South-African Election.
(<https://welections.wordpress.com/guide-to-the-2014-south-african-election/race-ethnicity-and-language-in-south-africa/>)
261. Haplogroup L0.
([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haplogroup_L0_\(mtDNA\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haplogroup_L0_(mtDNA)))
262. Hasidic Jews.
(<https://www.gotquestions.org/Hasidic-Judaism.html>)
263. Hate Speech Rules Under International Law.
(<http://www.law-democracy.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/07/10.02.hate-speech.Macedonia-book.pdf>)
264. Hebrew Voice #30 – Nehilim and Demons in the Book of Enoch.
(<https://www.nehemiaswall.com/hebrew-voices-nephilim-and-demons-in-enoch>)
265. Hermeneutics.
(<https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/social-sciences/hermeneutics>)
266. Historiography.
(<https://uri.libguides.com/historiography>)
267. History of Judaism in South Africa.
(<https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/south-africa>)
268. History of the Apostolic Faith Mission of South Africa.
(<https://afm-ags.org/about-us/history-of-the-afm/>)
269. Host country South Africa. University of Pretoria.
(<https://www.up.ac.za/pme43/article/2715045/host-country>)

270. How much Water is there on earth?
(https://www.usgs.gov/special-topic/water-science-school/science/how-much-water-there-earth?qt-science_center_objects=0#qt-science_center_objects)
271. How should I understand the concept of the Father God?
(<https://www.gotquestions.org/Father-God.html>)
272. How the Basotho Blanket became the brand identity of the nation.
(<https://www.wantedonline.co.za/art-design/2017-02-01-how-the-basotho-blanket-became-the-brand-identity-of-a-nation/>)
273. How to join Illuminate.
(<https://joinilluminatiams.com/>)
274. <https://www.facebook.com/frik.vanwyk.16/posts/2662134347399161>
275. Hypostasis.
(<https://www.wordnik.com/words/hypostasis>)
276. "I am who I am". Desiring God.
(<https://www.desiringgod.org/messages/i-am-who-i-am>)
277. Illuminati membership.
(<https://www.joinilluminati.co.za/illuminati-freemasons/>)
278. International Labour Organization.
(<https://www.ilo.org/global/about-the-ilo/lang--en/index.htm>)
279. Incorruptible: The story of the murders of Dulcie September, Anton Lobowski and Chris Hani.
(<https://spotlight.africa/2018/04/05/review-incorruptible-the-story-of-the-murders-of-dulcie-september-anton-lubowski-and-chris-hani>)
280. Incubus.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/i/incubus.htm>)
281. Indentured labour from South Asia (1834-1917).
(<https://www.striking-women.org/module/map-major-south-asian-migration-flows/indentured-labour-south-asia-1834-1917>)
282. Indian Ocean Trade Routes.
(<https://www.thinglink.com/scene/712732665165381634>)
283. Indus script (also Harappan script).
(<http://www.crystalinks.com/indus.html>)
-

284. Informing the Community about: Freemasonry.
(<http://static1.squarespace.com/static/55caa035e4b06e41a4a1e1fe/t/55e1fa21e4b09e1859638333/1440872993198/masonry-info.pdf>)
285. International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs.
(<https://www.iwgia.org/en/south-africa/722-indigenous-peoples-in-south-africa.html>)
286. Interpol launches Global Policing Goals.
(<https://www.interpol.int/News-and-Events/News/2018/INTERPOL-launches-Global-Policing-Goals>)
287. Introduction into Chinese Astrology,
(<https://witcheslore.com/astrology/chinese-astrology/introduction-to-chinese-astrology/340/>)
288. Irdeto.
(<https://irdeto.com/>)
289. Isivivane. (IsiZulu and IsiXhosa).
(https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html)
290. Isivivane circle.
(https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#)
291. Is this South Africa's 12th Official language?
(<http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20181112-is-this-south-africas-12th-official-language>)
292. Is voodoo black magic?
(<https://www.quora.com/Is-voodoo-black-magic>)
293. Is voodoo true in South Africa?
(<https://www.quora.com/Is-voodoo-true-in-south-Africa>)
294. It's Your Right Handbook.
(<https://live.fundza.mobi/home/library/advice/its-your-right-handbook/contacts-general-rights-in-south-africa/>)
295. Jacobite rebellion.
(<https://www.historyextra.com/period/georgian/10-things-you-probably-didnt-know-about-bonnie-prince-charlie-and-the-jacobites/>)
296. Jahbulon.
(<http://grahamhancock.com/phorum/read.php?2,378302,378748>)
-

297. Jesuits.
(<https://www.jesuits.org/our-work/justice-and-ecology/take-action-2/civic-engage-ment/>)
298. Jesuits are the Illuminate and in charge of the New World Order? Conspiracy theories.
(<https://skepticroview.com/2018/05/03/jesuits-are-the-illuminati-and-in-charge-of-the-new-world-order-conspiracy-theories/>)
299. Jesuits in Africa.
(<https://www.oxfordhandbooks.com/view/10.1093/oxfordhb/9780199935420.001.0001/oxfordhb-9780199935420-e-56>)
300. Jesuits South Africa. A brief word about the Jesuits.
(<https://sj.org.za/about-us/>)
301. Jesuits to admit women: Who will be the first female Jeannies?
(<https://the anchoress.com/jesuits-to-admit-women-who-will-be-the-first-female-jeannies/>)
302. Jewish midrash.
(<https://www.learnreligions.com/what-is-midrash-2076342>)
303. Jewish Virtual Library. Ancient Jewish History.
(<https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/the-cult-of-moloch>)
304. Jewish Virtual Library. Modern Jewish History: The Spanish Expulsion. (1943)
(<https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/the-spanish-expulsion-1492>)
305. Jezebel oil: Jezebel Root Man Trap oil.
(<https://victoriaslists.com/index.php?page=item&id=18331>)
306. Jezebel Root for Prostitutes & Business South Africa, Uganda – Boipatong.
(<https://za.loozap.com/jezebel-root-for-prostitutes-business-south-africa-uganda-boipatong/2344940.html>)
307. Johanna Brand (1976-1964) 'n Historiese perspektief oor die kontroversiële lewe van Johanna Brandt.
(<https://repository.up.ac.za/handle/2263/60431>)
308. Johannesburg's Black Magic Circle of Consumption.
(<https://uncensoredopinion.co.za/johannesburgs-black-magic-circle-of-consumption/>)
-

309. John Adams.
(<https://tabublog.com/2017/07/27/what-famous-men-had-to-say-about-the-jesuit-order/>)
310. John Vorster Road, Pretoria.
(<https://goo.gl/maps/TVdAtLJuKGw7JfuA6>)
311. J.P. Morgan.
(<https://www.abc.net.au/local/stories/2007/08/24/2014195.htm>)
312. J.P. Morgan.
(<https://www.jpmorgan.com/country/US/en/jpmorgan>)
313. J.P. Morgan.
(<https://www.history.com/topics/19th-century/john-pierpont-morgan>)
314. J.P. Morgan Documentary: How One Man Financed America
(<https://www.bing.com/videos/search?q=jp+morgan&view=detail&mid=477328BBB8F3A2A92E91477328BBB8F3A2A92E91&FORM=VIRE>)
315. Judaism in South Africa.
(<https://www.worldjewishcongress.org/en/about/communities/za>)
316. Julius Malema groomed to become the Illuminate's next chosen dictator in South Africa.
(<https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/julius-malema-groomed-become-illuminatis-next-chosen-dictator-south-africa/>)
317. Kaaps.
(<https://www.capetownmagazine.com/kaaps>)
318. Kaapstad bekendstelling van Innie Shadows.
(<https://www.litnet.co.za/video-kaapstad-bekendstelling-van-innie-shadows-deur-olivia-m-coetzee/>)
319. Kabbalah.
(<https://www.jstor.org/topic/kabbalah/?refreqid=excelsior%3A6fc4c23f1181cc15d9890f028cc4562c>)
320. Kali.
(<https://www.ancient.eu/Kali/>)
321. Key legislation in the formation of Apartheid.
(<https://www.cortland.edu/cgis/suzman/apartheid.html>)
-

322. Khoisan praise singer makes history at SONA.
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CGgvO-NCFns>)
323. Kindness. Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology – Kindness.
(<https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/kindness/>)
324. King James I (1603-1625).
(<https://www.britroyals.com/kings.asp?id=james1>)
325. Kingdom Nation Uniting South Africa in Christ.
(<https://kingdomnation.co.za/>)
326. Knights Templar Priests. The Order in South Africa.
(https://www.dglsanorth.org.za/lodge_Histories/History_of_the_KTP_Order_in_South_Africa.pdf)
327. Knowing the Father. Study notes Outline.
Three tape series 4090 The Fatherhood of God. Derek Prince Ministries–
International
328. Knowing the population.
(http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=595)
329. Krotoa.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/krotoa-eva>)
330. Land expropriation without compensation.
(https://www.gov.za/speeches/joint-constitutional-review-committee-adopts-report-expropriation-land-without-compensation?gclid=CjwKCAjwxev3BRBBEiwAiB_PWJQR1DGWAuEENx0muQL0F9TXIMaTdoW1nQroPnXuCNTfb0OBw8nPuBoC6GgQAvD_BwE)
331. Laws Regulating the Practice of all Health Practitioners.
(<https://lawfulliving.co.za/book/text/health--health-practitioners.html>)
332. Lemba tribe in South Africa has Jewish Roots, genetic tests reveal. World Jewish Congress.
(<https://www.worldjewishcongress.org/en/news/lemba-tribe-in-southern-africa-has-jewish-roots-genetic-tests-reveal>)
333. Lesaka and Boulders at Freedom Park.
(<https://www.visittshwane.co.za/gallery/gallery-freedom-park/>)
334. Leviathan.
(<https://occult-world.com/leviathan/>)
-

335. Leviathan.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/l/leviathan.htm>)
336. Lexico.com. Animism.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/animism>)
337. Lexico.com. Australopithecus.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/Australopithecus>)
338. Lexico.com. Curse.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/curse>)
339. Lexico.com. Homo ergaster.
(https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/homo_ergaster)
340. Lexico.com. Homo habilis.
(https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/homo_habilis)
341. Lexico.com. Humanoid.
(<https://www.lexico.com/definition/humanoid>)
342. Lexico.com. Imam.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/imam>)
343. Lexico.com. Marikana.
(<https://www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx?g=cb5d7b8e-e10c-45e8-b92f-89bc031ee5cc>)
344. Lexico.com Race.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/race>)
345. Lexico.com. Sanskrit.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/sanskrit>)
346. Lexico.com. Superstition.
(<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/superstition>)
347. Ley Lines.
(<http://www.vortexhunters.com/what-is-a-ley-line.html>)
348. Ley Lines and The Connection To Adverse Spiritual Phenomena.
(<https://supernaturalmagazine.com/articles/ley-lines-and-the-connection-to-adverse-spiritual-phenomena>)
349. LGBTQI: Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Queer or Questioning and Intersex.
(<https://acronyms.thefreedictionary.com/LGBTQI>)
-

350. Liberal South African media and the great man's cultural marxist antagonists.
(<https://www.amazon.co.uk/Hendrik-Frensch-Verwoerd-Greatest-Minister/dp/1717041426>)
351. Linking the Illuminati & SARB
(<https://www.theforumsa.co.za/forums/showthread.php/4192-Linking-the-Illuminati-SARB/page2>)
352. Links 2 TheOccult A Dictionary of the Occult.
(http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/dictionary_f.htm)
353. Linton Rock Art Panel.
(<https://archaeology-travel.com/friday-find/linton-panel/>)
354. Linton Rock Art Panel.
(http://www.onsetimages.com/english/SouthAfrica/city/CapeTown/Iziko/iziko_LintonPanel_03a.htm =_)
355. Living In Between: The Chinese in South Africa.
(<https://www.migrationpolicy.org/article/living-between-chinese-south-africa>)
356. Living Passages. The 7 Churches of revelation, their struggles and strengths.
(<https://livingpassages.com/7-churches-of-revelation/>)
357. Lodge locator.
(https://portal.grandlodge.co.za/public_lodges/search?q=&d=3)
358. Magersfontein and Masonry.
(https://www.grandlodge.co.za/wpcontent/uploads/2019/03/The_Square_and_Compasses_No_86_March_2019.pdf)
359. Mammon.
(<https://www.gotquestions.org/what-is-mammon.html>)
360. Manchurian Candidate.
(<https://encyclopedia2.thefreedictionary.com/Manchurian+Candidate>)
361. Map of Africa.
(<https://walleigh.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/south-africa-location-map-in-africa.gif>)
362. Map of South Africa.
(http://www.nationsonline.org/oneworld/map/za_provinces_map2.htm)
363. Map of the first Boer Republics.
(<https://za.pinterest.com/pin/329818372688120984>)
-

364. Mapungubwe Gold Rhino Image.
(<https://www.shentonsafaris.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/Mapungubwe-rhino.jpg>)
365. Marshall Plan, 1948.
(<https://history.state.gov/milestones/1945-1952/marshall-plan>)
366. Marshall Plan.
(<https://www.history.com/topics/world-war-ii/marshall-plan-1>)
367. Masonic Study Series Volume 2, Issue 8.
(<http://members.wisc-freemasonry.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/MSS-The-Lions-Paw-February-2017.pdf>)
368. Meaning of motto.
(<http://mason33.org/content/africa/grand-lodge/index.html>)
369. Medical Definition of Hippocratic Oath.
(<https://www.medicinenet.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=20909>)
370. Meet the man who started the Illuminati.
(<https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/magazine/2016/07-08/profile-adam-weishaupt-illuminati-secret-society/>)
371. Meet the only Jesuit women in history.
(<https://aleteia.org/2017/08/28/meet-the-only-jesuit-woman-in-history/>)
372. Mercy Seat.
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/mercy-seat.html>)
373. Merriam-Webster Online.
(<http://www.m-w.com>)
374. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Ancestor Worship.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ancestor%20worship>)
375. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Animism.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/animism>)
376. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Archaeological.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/archaeology>)
377. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Bantu.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/Bantu>)
378. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Bigotry defined.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bigotry>)
-

379. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Culture.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/culture>)
380. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Esoteric.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/esoteric#other-words>)
381. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. mtDNA.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/mitochondrial%20DNA>)
382. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Myriad.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/myriad>)
383. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Nation.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nation>)
384. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Race.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/thesaurus/race.>)
385. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Soothsayer.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/soothsayer>)
386. Merriam Webster Dictionary. Sui Generis: constituting a class alone: unique, peculiar.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sui%20generis#synonyms>)
387. Merriam-Webster Dictionary. Tritheism.
(<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/tritheism>)
388. Messianism.
(<http://www.oxfordbibliographies.com/view/document/obo-9780195393361/obo-9780195393361-0233.xml>)
389. Messianism, Jewish Messianism.
(<https://www.encyclopedia.com/environment/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/messianism-jewish-messianism>)
390. Migration Data Portal. Migration Data in the Southern African Development Community (SADC).
(<https://migrationdataportal.org/regional-data-overview/southern-africa>)
391. Milner Group Membership List.
(<https://publicintelligence.net/milner-group-membership-list/>)
392. Milner Group Membership List.
(<https://info.publicintelligence.net/Milner Group.pdf>)

393. Modjadji – The Rain Queen.
(<https://nationalmuseumpublications.co.za/modjadji-the-rain-queen/>)
394. Monotheism.
(<https://www.learnreligions.com/what-is-monotheism-4079967>)
395. Muti.
(<http://alterreddimensions.net/2013/african-muti-medicine-murders-hospitals-sell-body-parts-murderers-harvest-organs-from-live-victims-witch-doctors-black-magic-spells>)
396. Myths about Indulgences.
(<https://www.catholic.com/tract/myths-about-indulgences>)
397. Myths Encyclopedia. Myths and Legends: Gilgamesh.
(<http://www.mythencyclopedia.com/Fi-Go/Gilgamesh.html>)
398. Narrative Research.
(atlasti.com/narrative-research/)
399. Narrative Research.
(<https://www.google.co.za/search?q=narrative+research&oq=nar&aqs=chrome.2.69i57j0l5.5173j0j7&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8>)
400. Nation.
(<http://www.businessdictionary.com/definition/nation.htm>)
401. National Anthem. South Africa – New York.
(<http://www.southafrica-newyork.net/consulate/anthem.html>)
402. National House of Traditional Leaders.
(<https://nationalgovernment.co.za/units/view/135/national-house-of-traditional-leaders>)
403. National Institutes of Health. Office of Equity, Diversity, and Inclusion. Communities. Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender – What’s the difference?
(<https://www.edi.nih.gov/blog/communities/lesbian-gay-bisexual-transgender-%E2%80%93-what%E2%80%99s-difference>)
404. National symbols as signs of unity and division.
(<https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/01419870600665409?src=recsys>)
405. National Youth Commission.
(<http://home.intekom.com/nyc/>)
-

406. Nebula.
(<https://spaceplace.nasa.gov/nebula/en/>)
407. Necromancy.
(<https://occult-world.com/divinations/necromancy/>)
408. Nelson Mandela Knight of Malta.
(<https://piratesandmercs.wordpress.com/2015/03/01/knights-of-malta-expected-and-unexpected-members/>)
409. Nelson Mandela, Thabo Mbeki, Desmond Tutu all Freemasons. Discerning the World.
(<https://www.discerningtheworld.com/2014/11/19/nelson-mandela-freemason/>)
410. New World Order.
(<https://messagia.files.wordpress.com/2013/06/nwo-chart.gif>)
411. New World Order or Occult Secret Destiny?
(http://www.conspiracyarchive.com/NewAge/New_World_Order.htm)
412. Nongqawuse.
(<http://pzacad.pitzer.edu/NAM/presxhos/writers/nongqawu/nongqawuS.htm>)
413. Occult World. Fairies
(<https://occult-world.com/mythological-creature/fairies/>)
414. Oceans around south Africa.
(<https://www.google.co.za/search?q=oceans+around+south+africa&oq=oceans+aroun+&aqs=chrome.1.69i57j0l5.6071j0j7&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8>)
415. Official Guide to South Africa 2017/18.
(<https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/pocketguide/03-South%20Africa%20People-1718.pdf>)
416. Olive Schreiner, (1855-1920).
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/olive-schreiner>)
417. OM (Ω) Omega.
(<https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/alpha-and-omega.html>)
418. Open Society Foundation of South Africa.
(<https://www.opensocietyfoundations.org/who-we-are>)
419. Oppenheimer Gardens.
(<https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionsga/oppenheimer-gardens.htm>)
-

420. Order of the Temple of Solomon: Direct Continuation of the Original Knights Templar from 1118 AD.
(<https://www.knightstemplarorder.org/knights-templar/>)
421. Original Jezebel Root for Attracting Men with Money/Wealth/Business.
(<https://services2673.wordpress.com/2019/04/12/original-jezebel-root-for-attracting-men-with-money-wealth-business-27736847115-south-africa-zimbabwe-zambia-uganda-kenya-ghana-tanzania-mali-guinea-d-r-congo/>)
422. Oxford Dictionaries. Ethnography.
(<https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/ethnography>)
423. Oxford Dictionaries. Nation.
(<https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/nation>)
424. Oxford Dictionaries. Race.
(<https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/race>)
425. Oxford Dictionaries. Tribe.
(<https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/tribe>)
426. Paimon.
(<https://demonsanddemonolatry.com/demon-of-the-day-king-paimon/>)
427. Palaeontology.
(<https://www.nationalgeographic.org/encyclopaedia/palaeontology/>)
428. PAN South African Language Board.
(<http://www.pansalb.org/index.html>)
429. Pan-Africanism.
(<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/pan-africanism>)
430. Panspermia.
(<http://www.panspermia-theory.com/>)
431. Panspermia hypothesis.
(<http://www.astronomy.com/newsobserving/>)
432. Papal Bull.
(https://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Papal_bull)
433. Pedi.
(http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_pedi.html)
434. Pentecostalism, Politics, and Prosperity in South Africa.
(<https://www.mdpi.com/2077-1444/9/10/298/htm#B35-religions-09-00298>)
-

435. Philosophy of Religion. Wikipedia Encyclopedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philosophy_of_religion).
436. Piet Retief Declaration.
(https://www.zoutpansberger.co.za/articles/history_streets/38046/2016-08-01/11-the-secret-story-that-started-with-piet-retief)
437. Political Parties (2019 Election).
(<https://www.elections.org.za/NPEDashboard/app/dashboard.html>)
438. Political poster displayed at the North West University.
(<http://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/wp-content/uploads/2016/03/Kill-Boer-European-Knights-Project.jpg>)
439. Pontus Maximus: The head priest of the Roman state religion.
(<https://www.unrv.com/culture/pontifex-maximus.php>)
440. Portugal. The Golden Age.
(<https://portugal.com/portugal/information/history/discoveries-golden-age>)
441. Portugal: The Knights of Christ.
(<http://www.lundyisleofavalon.co.uk/templars/tempic051.htm>)
442. Prehistory Workshop.
(<http://archaeosoup.com/prehistory/>)
443. Presbyterian Church of Africa. World Council of Churches.
(<https://www.oikoumene.org/member-churches/presbyterian-church-of-africa>)
444. Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa.
(http://www.artefacts.co.za/main/Buildings/style_det.php?styleid=1070)
445. President Cyril Ramaphosa attends coronation ceremony of Queen of Balobedu.
(www.gov.za)
446. President Cyril Ramaphosa keynote address.
(<http://www.casac.org.za/>)
447. Problem of Evil. Wikipedia Encyclopedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philosophy_of_religion).
448. ProjectSA.
(<https://projectsa.solutions>)
449. Providing Biblical Tools for Effective Spiritual Warfare.
(<https://witcheslore.com/astrology/chinese-astrology/introduction-to-chinese-astrology/340/>)

450. Provinces and assistancies, Jesuits World Order 10 Kingdoms.
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/09/provinces-and-assistancies.html>)
 451. Pseudoreligion. Definitions.com.
(<https://www.definitions.net/definition/Pseudoreligion>)
 452. Psychic Diagnosis The free dictionary.
(<https://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/psychic+diagnosis>)
 453. Publications & Events. Covid-19: South African Government Financial Assistance.
(<https://www.whitecase.com/publications/alert/covid-19-south-african-government-financial-assistance-measures>)
 454. P.W. Botha. “Mein Kampf shows the way to greatness for South Africa” – The Ossewabrandwag.
(<https://samilhistory.com/tag/pw-botha/>)
 455. Q.4. *What is God?* The Westminster Shorter Catechism.
(<https://matt2819.com/wsc/>)
 456. Q. 16. *Did all mankind fall in Adam’s first disobedience?* The Westminster Catechism
(<https://matt2819.com/wsc/>)
 457. Quakerism.
(<https://www.history.com/topics/immigration/history-of-quakerism>)
 458. Quakers in South Africa. Ancestor South Africa.
(<https://www.ancestors.co.za/quakers-in-south-africa/>)
 459. Race in South Africa: Colonialism, Segregation, and Apartheid.
(<https://gilmanprogram.wordpress.com/2018/08/02/race-in-south-africa-colonialism-segregation-and-apartheid/>)
 460. Racial classification under Apartheid.
(<https://www.thoughtco.com/racial-classification-under-apartheid-43430>)
 461. Reasons Why Context Matters in Biblical Resources.
(https://oasisinternational.com/content/uploads/2019/10/5ReasonsWhyContextMatters_v3.pdf)
 462. Religion and Apartheid.
(<http://countrystudies.us/south-africa/53.htm>)
 463. Religion Defined and Explained.
(<https://www.palgrave.com/gp/book/9780333538418#>)
-

464. Religion in South Africa.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Religion_in_South_Africa)
465. Religious Art in Africa.
(<https://courses.lumenlearning.com/boundless-arthistory/chapter/religious-art-in-africa/>)
466. Rene Descartes (1596-1650).
(<https://www.biography.com/scholar/rene-descartes>)
467. Republic of South Africa Government Gazette Vol 387 Cape Town, September 5, 1997. No. 18256.
(https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201409/a33-97.pdf)
468. Returning the Rosetta Stone to Egypt.
(https://za.pinterest.com/pin/AXHbJ-ZBvfHiDVTssnMrH3yOMEW5TssNjDM7P2RSopTbBO2CHkh4ndg/?nic_v2=1a3W7EmQm)
469. Rex Deus Treasure.
(<https://crusaderhistory.wordpress.com/2018/12/11/knights-templar-rex-deus-treasure/>)
470. Rijksmuseum 1602 Trade with the East: VOC.
(<https://www.rijksmuseum.nl/en/rijksstudio/timeline-dutch-history/1602-trade-with-the-east-voc>)
471. Rhodes: Closet gay man who hatched a secret society to promote empire?
(<https://theconversation.com/rhodes-closet-gay-man-who-hatched-a-secret-society-to-promote-empire-53850>)loud
472. Robert Mugabe.
(<https://www.biography.com/political-figure/robert-mugabe>)
473. Rothschild Family Shield Motto “Concordia Integritas Industria”.
(<https://flowofwisdom.files.wordpress.com/2014/06/screen-shot-2014-06-09-at-1-03-01-pm.png>)
474. Round Table.
(<https://canadianpatriot.org/2015/04/11/cecil-rhodes-the-roundtable-movement-and-eugenics/>)
475. Sacred Site.
(<https://www.facebook.com/SacredSitesSouthAfrica/>)
-

476. Sacred Site Foundation of South Africa.
(<https://sacredsitesfoundation.co.za/what-is-a-sacred-site/>)
477. Sacred Sites South Africa.
(<https://sacredsites.co.za/sacred-site-research/sunpath-diamond-light-grid-phenomena-in-southern-africa/>)
478. Sacred Sites Southern Africa. Unveiling the Ancient Mysteries at the tip of South Africa.
(<https://sacredsites.co.za/sacred-site-research/sunpath-diamond-light-grid-phenomena-in-southern-africa/>)
479. San Eland.
(<https://fineartamerica.com/featured/san-eland-1-weston-westmoreland.html>)
480. San Hunters.
(<https://thisisafrica.me/botswana-diamond-mine-opens-san-land/>)
481. San people.
(http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_bushmen.htm)
482. SAPRA Website.
(<https://paganrightsalliance.org/about-sapra/>)
483. Satanism
(<https://www.history.com/topics/1960s/satanism>)
484. Satanology: The doctrine of Satan.
(<https://www.biblestudytools.com/topical-verses/archangel-gabriel-in-the-bible/>)
485. Satanology: The Doctrine of Satan.
(<http://www.arielcontent.org/dcs/pdf/mbs077m.pdf>)
486. Scientology. A Religion in South Africa. VIII. Scientology in South Africa
(<https://www.scientologyreligion.org/religious-expertises/scientology-a-religion-in-south-africa/scientology-in-south-africa.html>)
487. Section 27.
(<http://section27.org.za/>)
488. Sephiroth.
(<https://www.wordnik.com/words/sephiroth>)
489. Serpent Power.
(<https://jashow.org/articles/serpent-power/>)
-

490. Seven Churches of Revelation Bible Study.
(<https://davidjeremiah.blog/seven-churches-of-revelation-bible-study/>)
491. Shaman
(<https://www.britannica.com/topic/shamanism>)
492. Shechinah Glory.
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/shekinah-glory.html>)
493. Shipwrecks along South Africa's Coast (September 8, 2014).
(https://www.roomsforafrica.com/art/shipwrecks_south_africa_coast)
494. Siener van Rensburg: Visions of the Future.
(<https://www.radiofreesouthafrica.com/siener-van-rensburg-visions-future/>)
495. Sigils.
(<https://www.ancient-symbols.com/sigil.html>)
496. Sister Cities of the World. Sister cities of Pretoria.
(<http://en.sistercity.info/sister-cities/Pretoria.html>)
497. Slagtersnek Rebellion/Rebellion, 15 December 1815.
(<https://www.geni.com/projects/Slagtersnek-Rebellion-15-Dec-1815/14935>)
498. Some Reflections on Ancestor Worship in Africa.
(http://www.era.anthropology.ac.uk/Era_Resources/Era/Ancestors/fortes2.html)
499. Sons of God.
(<https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/706/who-are-the-morning-stars-in-job-387>)
500. Soul travel: What is soul travel?
(<https://www.quora.com/What-is-soul-travel>)
501. South Africa.
(https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Africa)
502. South Africa: The Halal Kingdom.
(<https://gulfbusiness.com/south-africa-the-halal-kingdom/>)
503. South Africa - Coat of Arms.
([https://www.crwflags.com/fotw/flags/za\)coa.html](https://www.crwflags.com/fotw/flags/za)coa.html))
504. South Africa Healthcare, Market Overview. Africa Health Industry Insights.
(https://www.africahealthexhibition.com/content/dam/Informa/africahealthexhibition/en/2020/pdf/AFH19_Industry_Insights-SA_MARKET_REPORT.pdf)

505. South Africa Healthcare Spending 2000-2020.
(<https://www.macrotrends.net/countries/ZAF/south-africa/healthcare-spending>)
 506. South Africa still hasn't won LGBTQ+ equality. Here are 5 reasons why.
(<https://www.weforum.org/agenda/2018/11/south-africa-road-to-lgbtq-equality/>)
 507. South Africa Yearbook 2018/19 Land and its people.
(<https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/yearbook/yb1919-1-Land-and-its-People.pdf>)
 508. South African Coat of Arms.
(<https://www.tripsavvy.com/symbolism-of-south-africa-coat-of-arms-1454387>)
 509. South African Committee says legislation must be drafted to regulate churches.
(<https://www.polity.org.za/article/sa-committee-says-legislation-must-be-drafted-to-regulate-churches-2018-10-30>)
 510. South African Council of Churches (SACC).
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv02730/05lv03004.htm>)
 511. South African Council of Churches.
(<http://sacc.org.za/about/>)
 512. South African Flag.
(<https://newsgk.com/SouthAfrica/Flag.php>)
 513. South African Government. World Suicide Prevention Day 2020.
(<https://www.gov.za/WorldSuicidePreventionDay2020>)
 514. South African History Online. Afrikaner Broederbond.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/afrikaner-broederbond>)
 515. South African History Online. Botshabelo.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/place/Botshabelo>)
 516. South African History Online. Cyril Matamela Ramaphosa.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/cyril-matamela-ramaphosa>)
 517. South African History Online. Defining the term "Bantu".
(<http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/defining-term-bantu>)
 518. South African History Online. European missionaries in southern African: The role of the missionaries.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/european-missionaries-southern-africa-role-missionaries>)
-

519. South African History Online. History of Muslims in South Africa: 1652 – 1699.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/archive/history-muslims-south-africa-1652-1699-ebrahim-mahomed-mahida>)
520. South African History Online. Indian South Africans.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/indian-south-africans>)
521. South African History Online. Lodge de Goede Hoop, Stal Square, Cape Town.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/place/lodge-de-goede-hoop-stal-square-cape-town>)
522. South African History Online. Marikana Massacre.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/marikana-massacre-16-august-2012>)
523. South African History Online. Ndebele.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/ndebele>)
524. South African History Online. Norman Levy. The Broederbond.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/broederbond-norman-levy>)
525. South African History Online. Portuguese navigator Bartholomew Dias erects the first stone cross on the South African Coast.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/dated-event/portuguese-navigator-bartholomew-dias-erects-first-stone-cross-south-african-coast>)
526. South African History Online. Robert Mugabe.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/people/robert-gabriel-mugabe>)
527. South African History Online. The Afrikaner Bond.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/afrikaner-bond>)
528. South African History Online. The Rustenburg Declaration.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/archive/rustenburg-declaration>)
529. South African History Online. The South African General Elections.
(<http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/south-african-general-elections-1994>)
530. South African History Online. The War.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/war>)
531. South African History Online. Tswana.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/tswana>)
532. South African History Online. Why protect rights of gays and lesbians.
(<http://www.sahistory.org.za/article/why-protect-rights-gays-and-lesbians>)

533. South African Human Rights Commission.
(www.sahrc.co.za)
534. South African Languages 2016.
(<https://www.gcis.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/resourcecentre/pocketguide/03-South%20Africa%27s%20People-1718.pdf>)
535. South African Medical Association.
(<https://www.samedical.org/>)
536. South African Population.
(<http://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P0302/P03022019.pdf>)
537. South African Public Holidays.
(<https://www.gov.za/about-sa/public-holidays>)
538. South African Reserve Bank.
(<https://www.resbank.co.za/Pages/default.aspx>. Shareholders list.)
539. Soweto.
(https://www.soweto.co.za/html/i_overview.htm)
540. Spain's Attempt to Atone for a 500-Year-Old Sin.
(<https://www.theatlantic.com/international/archive/2019/09/spain-offers-citizenship-sephardic-jews/598258/>)
541. Spiders as Spiritual Guides.
(<https://www.druidry.org/library/animals/spiders-spiritual-guides>)
542. Spirit.
(<https://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/spirit/>)
543. Spirit Portraits.
(<https://www.josephshiel.com/spirit-portraits.html>)
544. Spiritual authorities in high places – three heavens.
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gMK54lTHqoM>)
545. Spiritual Fitness Guide.
(<https://fliphtml5.com/hpef/myll/basic>)
546. Spiritual Fitness Guide.
(<http://bootsandbible.info/sf/Spiritual-Fitness-Guide.pdf>)

547. Spiritual guide or Guru.
(https://www.spiritualresearchfoundation.org/spiritual-practice/spiritual-paths/what-isspirituality/?gclid=Cj0KCQiAyKrxBRDHARIsAKCzn8zkr01dvqxbkrcl3Sydl9euJrD6s9kt_CC0noghAjcucy5n8zRbtwaAiUcEALw_wcB)
548. Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Book 4: - Spiritual Warfare: Winning the Daily Battle with Satan.
(<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html>)
549. Spiritual Warfare Book 1: A Major Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Alert.
(<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html>)
550. Spiritual Warfare Book 2: Modern Myths about Satan and Spiritual Warfare.
(<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/spiritual-warfare-book2/>)
551. "Spirituality" What does it mean and is it of any use?
(https://www.academia.edu/33910690/Spirituality_What_does_it_mean_and_is_it_of_any_use?auto=download)
552. Starbucks Logo.
(<https://www.forbes.com/sites/ronaldholden/2017/03/04/mermaid-siren-princess-how-the-starbucks-logo-evolved/#56cb31f058bd>)
553. State Capture.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/325777788_Theoretical_analysis_of_state_capture_and_its_manifestation_as_a_governance_problem_in_South_Africa)
554. Stichomancy.
(<http://skepdic.com/stichoma.html>)
555. Strong's Concordance: #1139: daimonizomai: to be possessed by a demon.
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1139.htm>)
556. Strong's Concordance: #1210: deó: to tie, bind.
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/1210.htm>)
557. Strong's Concordance: #2669: kataponeó: to wear down.
(<http://biblehub.com/greek/2669.htm>)
558. Strong's Concordance: #3056: Logos (log-oss) A transmission of thought, communication, a word of explanation, an utterance, discourse, divine revelations, talk, statement, instruction, an oracle, divine promise, divine doctrine, divine declaration.
-

- (www.e-sword.net)
559. Strong's Concordance: #4202: porneia: fornication.
(<https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4202.htm>)
560. Strong's Concordance: #4203: porneuó: to commit fornication.
(<https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4203.htm>)
561. Strong's Concordance: #4204: porné: a prostitute.
(<https://biblehub.com/str/greek/4204.htm>)
562. Strong's Concordance: #5332: Pharmakeus / Pharmacia.
(<https://biblehub.com/str/greek/5332.htm>)
563. Strong's Concordance: #G26: Agape.
(www.e-sword.net)
564. Strong's Concordance: #G756: Archomai.
(www.e-sword.net)
565. Strong's Concordance: #G940: baskainó: to *malign*, that is, (by extension) to *fascinate* (by false representations): - bewitch.
(www.e-sword.net)
566. Strong's Concordance: #G1140: daimonion: an evil spirit, a demon.
(www.e-sword.net)
567. Strong's Concordance: #G2315: Inspiration of God.
(www.e-sword.net)
568. Strong's Concordance: #G3316: Mediator.
(www.e-sword.net)
569. Strong's Concordance: #G3613: oikētērion: a dwelling place.
(www.e-sword.net)
570. Strong's Concordance: #G4151: pneuma: wind, spirit.
(www.e-sword.net)
571. Strong's Concordance: #G4436: Divination Puthōn. (poo'-thone) The name of the regions where Delphi, the seat of the famous oracle, a Python, that is (by analogy with the supposed diviner there) inspiration (soothsaying): divination.
(www.e-sword.net)
572. Strong's Concordance: #G4992: Salvation.
(www.e-sword.net)
573. Strong's Concordance: #H136: The Lord.
-

- (www.e-sword.net)
574. Strong's Concordance: #H259: One: echad: one.
(www.e-sword.net)
575. Strong's Concordance: #H410: EL: God, in pl. gods.
(www.e-sword.net)
576. Strong's Concordance: #H430: God: elohim: God, god.
(www.e-sword.net)
577. Strong's Concordance: #H433: God: eloah: God, god.
(www.e-sword.net)
578. Strong's Concordance: #H1933: Exist: hava': breathe to *breathe*; to *be* (in the sense of existence): - be, X have.
(www.e-sword.net)
579. Strong's Concordance: #H1934: Breath.
(www.e-sword.net)
580. Strong's Concordance: #H1961: I am: hayah: to fall out, come to pass, become, be
(www.e-sword.net)
581. Strong's Concordance: #H2403: Sin: An offence (sometimes habitual sinfulness).
(www.e-sword.net)
582. Strong's Concordance: #H3068: Jehovah: YHVH: the proper name of the God of Israel.
(www.e-sword.net)
583. Strong's Concordance: #H3173: One.
(www.e-sword.net)
584. Strong's Concordance: #H5307: Naphal: to fall, lie.
(www.e-sword.net)
585. Strong's Concordance: #H7303: Spirit.
(www.e-sword.net)
586. Strong's Concordance: #H7700 (טש) shêd shade. a *daemon* (as *malignant*): - devil.
(www.e-sword.net)
-

587. Strong's Concordance: #H8163 (שָׂעִיר שָׂעִיר) *śâ'îyr śâ'ir*, *saw-eer'*, *saw-eer*. From H8175; *shaggy*; as noun, a *he goat*; by analogy a *faun*: - devil, goat, hairy, kid, rough, satyr.
(www.e-sword.net)
588. Strong's Dictionary: #H2449: Wisdom: Chokmâh, (khok-maw) (in a good sense): Skillful, wisom, wisely, wit.
(www.e-sword.net)
589. Strong's Dictionary: #3308: Beauty: Yophi, (yoh-fee) Beauty, splendour, brightness, fairness, perfect in physical form, flawless in symmetry.
(www.e-sword.net)
590. Strong's Dictionary: #3845: Transgression: Parabaino. Abandoning a trust, departing, stepping aside, overstep, violation, rebellion, aberration, apostacy, disobedience, deviation from an original and true direction.
(www.e-sword.net)
591. Succubus.
(<https://www.occultopedia.com/s/succubus.htm>)
592. Sufi Islam.
(<https://www.dw.com/en/sufi-islam-what-you-need-to-know/a-41532401>)
593. Sumerian Anunnaki.
(https://www.mysterypile.com/anunnaki.php?gclid=Cj0KCQjw-O35BRDVARIsAJU5mQVCUIcAmWvYQH_jHvXzn8ky02n60Qf2HRPgQuqgDs a0 ZgqOzxYIP0caAhjPEALw_wcB)
594. Sumerian Civilization.
(<https://www.history.com/news/9-things-you-may-not-know-about-the-ancient-sumerians>)
595. Sumerian tablets.
(<https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/ancient-art-civilizations/ancient-near-east1/the-ancient-near-east-an-introduction/a/cuneiform>)
596. Sumerians Anunnaki Anakim Anak.
(<https://www.tapatalk.com/groups/ancientlosttreasures/sumerians-anunnaki-anakim-anak-t4676.html>)
-

597. Swazi – religion and Expressive Culture.
(<https://www.everyculture.com/Africa-Middle-East/Swazi-Religion-and-Expressive-Culture.html>)
598. Swaziland.
(<https://thereadersroom.org/2019/06/23/read-around-the-world-swaziland/>)
599. Swaziland Political Parie Unite in Bid to End Absolute King's Power.
(<https://allafrica.com/stories/201911120553.html>)
600. Swazi people.
(<https://www.alamy.com/stock-photo/swazi-cultural-village.html>)
601. Symbolism of the Corner Stone.
(<https://theeducator.ca/symbolism-of-the-corner-stone/>)
602. Table Tipping: More than just spirit communication.
(<https://www.llewellyn.com/journal/article/2284>)
603. Taglock: Cursing 101: Any item connecting the spell to the individual e.g. hair, photos, nails, saliva.
(<https://thetravelingwitch.com/blog/2016/12/21/quick-curses>)
604. Talmud.
(<https://www.myjewishlearning.com/article/talmud-101/>)
605. Tanakh.
(<https://www.myjewishlearning.com/article/hebrew-bible/>)
606. Ten fascinating facts about the Marshall Plan.
(<https://blog.oup.com/2018/03/ten-fascinating-facts-marshall-plan/>)
607. Territorial Spirits: Some Biblical Perspectives.
(<https://frame-poythress.org/territorial-spirits-some-biblical-perspectives/>)
608. The 7 Archangels and Their Meanings.
(<https://www.beliefnet.com/inspiration/angels/galleries/the-7-archangels-and-their-meanings.aspx>)
609. The 7 “I Am” Statements of Jesus Explained.
(<https://faithisland.org/bible/the-7-i-am-statements-of-jesus-explained/>)
610. The 11 languages of South Africa.
(<https://southafrica-info.com/arts-culture/11-languages-south-africa/>)
611. The 2009 UNESCO Framework for Cultural Statistics (FCS).
(<https://unstats.un.org/unsd/statcom/doc10/BG-FCS-E.pdf>)
-

612. The accidental invention of the Illuminate conspiracy.
(<https://www.bbc.com/future/article/20170809-the-accidental-invention-of-the-illuminati-conspiracy>)
613. The Afrikaner Broederbond.
(https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9XG3FcP_NG0)
614. The Afrikaner Broederbond: The most shocking is the relationship between the AB and the Rothschild family.
(<http://stopwhitegenocideinsareports.blogspot.com/2016/03/video-afrikaner-broederbond-most.html>)
615. The Anglo-American Establishment. From Rhodes to Cliveden.
(<https://www.transcend.org/tms/wp-content/uploads/2015/12/ed-The-Anglo-American-Establishment.pdf>)
616. The Apostolic Faith Mission of South Africa.
(<https://afm-ags.org/>)
617. The Aquarian Conspiracy.
(<https://www.encyclopedia.com/science/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/aquarian-conspiracy>)
618. The Being of God.
(<https://www.apuritansmind.com/the-attributes-of-god-by-c-matthew-mcmahon/the-being-of-god-by-thomas-watson/>)
619. The Biblical significance of a tower.
(<http://www.biblemeanings.info/Words/Housing/Tower.htm>)
620. The Big book of Mysteries.
(https://books.google.co.za/books/about/The_Big_Book_of_Mysteries.html?id=VI6cBYj7rDMC&printsec=frontcover&source=kp_read_button&redir_esc=y#v=onepage&q&f=false)
621. The Bill of Rights.
(<https://www.concourt.org.za/index.php/constitution/your-rights/the-bill-of-rights>)
622. The Black Pope, Head of the Jesuits, And the Grey Pope Head of the Bloodline Families, Also Rule from the Vatican.
(<https://www.newyork.org/government/the-black-pope-head-of-the-jesuits-and-the-gray-pope-head-of-the-bloodline-families-also-rule-from-the-vatican>)
-

623. The Boer Wars.
(http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/british/victorians/boer_wars_01.shtml)
624. The Boers were not colonials.
(http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1219:2707201001eng&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168)
625. The Cape Frontier: Birth place of the Boer Nation.
(http://www.volkstaat.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1220:0607201001eng&catid=107:articles&Itemid=168)
626. The changing meaning of the Voortrekker Monument: heritage gain or heritage loss?
(<https://www.litnet.co.za/changing-meaning-voortrekker-monument-heritage-gain-heritage-loss/>)
627. The Constitution of South Africa.
(<https://www.constitutionhill.org.za/pages/the-constitution-of-south-africa>)
628. The Council for the Advancement of the South African Constitution.
(<http://www.casac.org.za/>)
629. The Cult of Moloch.
(<https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/the-cult-of-moloch>)
630. The Danube Valley civilization.
(<https://www.ancient-origins.net/ancient-places-europe/danube-valley-civilisation-script-oldest-writing-world-001343>)
631. The day we saw the Angels.
(<https://www.guideposts.org/inspiration/angels/the-day-we-saw-the-angels>)
632. The Death of Chris Hani: An African misadventure.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv03370/05lv03422.htm>)
633. The Destruction of the Cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
(<https://www.reconstructingjudaism.org/dvar-torah/destruction-cities-sodom-and-gomorrah>)
634. The Early History of South Africa. Ndebele.
(<http://isejarah.fib.unair.ac.id/wp-content/uploads/2017/09/THE-EARLY-HISTORY-OF-SOUTH-AFRICA-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf>)
-

635. The erasure of Dulcie September.
(<https://africasacountry.com/2019/08/the-erasure-of-dulcie-september>)
636. The Evidential Argument from Evil.
(http://www.infidels.org/library/modern/nicholas_tattersall/evil.html)
637. The Evidential Problem of Evil.
(<http://www.iep.utm.edu/e/evil-evi.htm>)
638. The fairest Cape: Die ampere Britse kolonie aan die Kaap.
(<https://eensgesind.com/the-fairest-cape-die-ampere-britse-kolonie-aan-die-kaap/>)
639. The first cross erected by Bartholomew Dias.
(<https://www.sahistory.org.za/dated-event/portuguese-navigator-bartholomew-dias-erects-first-stone-cross-south-african-coast>)
640. The Forgotten Lessons of the Marshall Plan.
(<https://www.strategy-business.com/article/08203?gko=4209e>)
641. "The Goddess Durga: The Mother of the Hindu Universe."
([learnreligions.com/goddess-durga-1770363.](http://learnreligions.com/goddess-durga-1770363/))
642. The Grand Lodge History.
(<http://www.grandlodge.co.za/>)
643. The Grand Lodge of South Africa.
(<https://www.grandlodge.co.za/history/>)
644. The Grand Lodge of South Africa.
(<https://glsa23.wordpress.com/2015/07/09/the-grand-lodge-of-south-africa/>)
645. The Grand Lodge of South Africa. De Goede Hoop Temple – Cape Town.
(<https://www.grandlodge.co.za/811/de-goede-hoop-temple-cape-town/>)
646. The History of the House of Rothchild.
(<https://highlander.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Andrew-Hitchcock-The-History-of-the-House-of-Rothschild.pdf>)
647. The Holy Royal Arch Knight Templar Priests and Order of Holy Wisdom.
(http://knighttemplarpriests.com/?page_id=14)
648. The Humanity of Christ. Basic Christian Doctrine 28. Faith Bible Church
(<http://www.faithbibleonline.net/basic-christian-doctrine/>)
-

649. The Illuminate and the Council on Foreign Relations One-World-Government Conspiracy and The Protocols of the Learner Elders of Zion.
(<http://jahtruth.net/illumin.htm>)
650. The illustrated declaration of Arbroath.
(<https://andrewbarr.com/arbroath2020/>)
651. The Importance of Cosmology in Culture: Contexts and Consequences.
(<https://www.intechopen.com/books/trends-in-modern-cosmology/the-importance-of-cosmology-in-culture-contexts-and-consequences>)
652. The Indian Community in SA.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv03370/05lv03414.htm>)
653. The Jesuit Inspired More Genocide in South Africa.
(<http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism>)
654. The Jesuit Order of the Holy Roman Empire.
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/06/the-jesuit-order-of-holy-roman-empire.html>)
655. The Jesuit Vatican New World Order.
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/08/the-jesuit-vatican-new-world-order.html>)
656. The Jesuit Vatican Power.
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/08/the-jesuit-vatican-new-world-order.html>)
657. The kenosis - What is it?
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/kenosis.html>)
658. The Khoi-Khoi and the San.
(<http://learn.e-limu.org/topic/view/?t=242&c=45>)
659. The Khoisan God, Rastas and Lay Lines.
(<https://voicemap.me/tour/cape-town/lower-cableway-station-audio-guide/sites/the-khoisan-god-rastas-ley-lines>)
660. The Leader of the Ossewa Brandwag.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv02730/05lv02996/06lv03000.htm>)
661. The main differences between Catholics and Protestants.
(<https://www.dw.com/en/the-main-differences-between-catholics-and-protestants/a-37888597;>)
-

662. The Marshall Plan – Global Strategy and Foreign Humanitarian Aid.
(<https://www.intechopen.com/books/globalization-approaches-to-diversity/the-marshall-plan-global-strategy-and-foreign-humanitarian-aid>)
663. The meaning of “Culture”.
(<https://www.newyorker.com/culture/cultural-comment>)
664. The meaning of South African rock paintings.
(<https://www.grin.com/document/20049>)
665. The meaning of spirituality: a literature review.
(https://www.researchgate.net/publication/227785159_The_meaning_of_spirituality_a_literature_review)
666. The Meaning of the Parable of the Fig Tree.
(<https://www.christianity.com/jesus/death-and-resurrection/holy-week-and-passion/why-did-jesus-curse-the-fig-tree.html>)
667. The Ministry of Angels.
(<http://www.angelfire.com/sc3/wedigmontana/Angels.html>)
668. The Nature of God: Elohim
(<https://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Topical.show/RTD/cgg/ID/2117/Idolatrous-Religious-Influence.htm>)
669. The next Chief Justice. Facebook
(<https://www.facebook.com/search/top?q=sangoma%20for%20chief%20justic>)
670. The Occult Dictionary
(http://www.links2theoccult.co.uk/dictionary_f.htm)
671. The Open Society for Eastern Africa.
(<https://www.osiea.org/>)
672. The Open Society Foundation for Southern Africa.
(<http://osisa.org/>)
673. The Open Society. West Africa.
(<http://www.osiwa.org/>)
674. The Order of the Death’s Head.
(<http://olivianus.thekingsparlor.com/concerning-roman-catholicism>)
675. The Origin and Spread of Evil.
(http://home1.gte.net/rmerino/03_Fall.htm)
-

676. The Origin of the Baphomet, or Why Goats are Satanic.
(<https://www.spiritualsatanist.com/essays/satanism/baphomet-why-goats-are-satanic.html>)
677. The origin of the name Hottentot
(<https://www.jstor.org/stable/719230#?seq=1>)
678. The origin of the word “Hottentot”
(<https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/02561751.1935.9676356>)
679. The Problem of Evil.
(<http://www.uvm.edu/~phildept/pereboom/PE.html>).
680. The Problem of False Prophets in Africa.
(<https://www.lausanne.org/content/lga/2019-11/problem-false-prophets-africa>)
681. The Public Protector.
(<http://www.pprotect.org/>)
682. The real 13 Illuminati families
(<http://www.seawapa.co/2014/05/the-real-13-illuminati-families.html>)
683. The Real Story of Angels & Demons.
(<https://www.newdawnmagazine.com/articles/enoch-the-watchers-the-real-story-of-angels-demons>)
684. The Relevant Pentecostal Witness
(<https://www.strasbourg-institute.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Relevant-Pentecostal-Witness.pdf>)
685. The Rosary.
(<https://www.catholic.com/tract/the-rosary>)
686. The Rosary.
(<https://www.rosarycenter.org/homepage-2/the-rosary-confraternity/>)
687. The Rosetta Stone
(https://za.pinterest.com/pin/108508672255580136/?nic_v2=1a3W7EmQm)
688. The Sacred Mountain.
(https://www.tablemountain.net/blog/entry/the_sacred_mountain)
689. The Scientology Religion in South Africa.
(<http://www.scientologyreligion.org/religious-recognitions/south-africa.html>)
690. The secret of masonic handshakes.
(<https://freemasoninformation.com/2017/03/the-secret-of-masonic-handshakes/>)
-

691. The shipwreck that forever changed South Africa.
(<http://www.bbc.com/travel/story/20200113-the-shipwreck-that-forever-changed-south-africa>)
692. The shocking state of mental health in South Africa.
(<https://www.sacap.edu.za/blog/management-leadership/mental-health-south-africa/>)
693. The Spirit of Pride AKA Leviathan.
(<https://www.replenishedhope.com/post/2016/06/19/the-spirit-of-pride-aka-leviathan>)
694. The Spirit of Vagabond
(<https://instituteoflove.net/struggles/the-spirit-of-vagabond>)
695. The status of witchcraft in the workplace
(<http://www.hrpulse.co.za/editors-pick/234686-the-status-of-witchcraft-in-the-workplace>)
696. The Steps of Freemasonry.
(https://lh3.googleusercontent.com/ljauCKhj5i_)
697. The Story of Africa.
(https://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/africa/features/storyofafrica/index_section8.shtml)
698. The Story of Africa: Islam.
(https://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/africa/features/storyofafrica/index_section7.shtml)
699. The Sunburn Queen.
(<https://jacana.co.za/our-books/sunburnt-queen-the/>)
700. The Tokoloshe Will Kill You In Your Sleep/South African Lore.
(<https://designinglife.biz/tokoloshe-south-african-lore/>)
701. The true history of the conspiracy theories about the Knights Templar.
(<https://qz.com/1777098/the-source-of-the-knights-templar-mythologies/>)
702. The Trinity in Scripture.
(<https://www.adventistbiblicalresearch.org/sites/default/files/pdf/trinscript.pdf>)
703. The United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime Homicide Statistics.
(<http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/homicide.html>)
-

704. The Voortrekker Monument.
(<https://www.reformationsa.org/index.php/history/385-the-voortrekker-monument>)
705. The Voortrekker Monument in Pretoria.
(<https://visitstothepark.files.wordpress.com/2012/08/voortrekker-monument-082.jpg>)
706. The Water in You: Water and the Human Body.
(https://www.usgs.gov/special-topic/water-science-school/science/water-you-water-and-human-body?qt-science_center_objects=0#qt-science_center_objects)
707. The World's Friendliest Muslim Destination in the World.
(<https://www.halaltourism.co.za/the-worlds-friendliest-muslim-destination-in-the-world/>)
708. Theodicy. Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/TheoDicy>)
709. Theophany.
(<https://www.compellingtruth.org/theophany-christophany.html>)
710. Theopneustos.
(<https://warrenapologetics.org/articles-the-bible/2017/2/27/theopneustos>)
711. Theosophy. Wikipedia Encyclopedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theosophy>).
712. These are the most-spoken languages in South Africa 2019.
(<https://businesstech.co.za/news/business/319760/these-are-the-most-spoken-languages-in-south-africa-in-2019/>)
713. These Supernatural Lines Supposedly Connect the Universe Through Monuments and Landforms.
(<https://allthatsinteresting.com/ley-lines>)
714. Three Rondawels.
(<https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionsmpl/three-rondavels.htm>)
715. Tithe.
(<https://get.tithe.ly/blog/first-fruit>)
716. Tower of Babel.
(<http://www.israel-a-history-of.com/tower-of-babel.html>)
-

717. Toyi-toyi.
(https://www.capetownmagazine.com/whats-the-deal-with/toyi-toyi/125_22_17384)
718. Traditional African religions.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/African_Traditional_Religion)
719. Traditional healer (Songoma) medical certificates.
(<https://www.bbrief.co.za/2017/10/13/traditional-healer-sangoma-medical-certificates/>)
720. Traditional Healers Organisation. List of Members.
(https://www.sabs.co.za/Business_Units/Standards_SA/SABSTAN/STANDARD_S_DEVELOPMENT/Membership/M1097.PDF)
721. Traditional Leadership.
(<https://www.gov.za/about-government/government-system/traditional-leadership>)
722. Traditional Medicine Practitioners. International Labour Organization.
(<https://www.ilo.org/public/english/bureau/stat/isco/isco88/3241.htm>)
723. Treason Trail.
(<https://dsae.co.za/entry/treason-trial/e07300>)
724. Tree of Life on Map of Africa.
(<http://vortexmaps.com/africa-grid-map.php>)
725. Tribalism.
(https://www.chabad.org/parshah/article_cdo/aid/298072/jewish/Tribalism.htm)
726. Trumpet Call. Freemasonry Part 2.
(<https://trumpetcall.co.za/dvds/freemasonry-part-2>)
727. Truth and Reconciliation Commission.
(<https://www.justice.gov.za/trc/>)
728. Truth and Reconciliation hearings. Assassinations.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02167/04lv02264/05lv02267/06lv02268/07lv02269.htm>)
729. Tsonga colourful clothes and their meaning.
(<https://mixo.wordpress.com/2016/06/01/i-am-tsonga-our-colourfully-clothes-and-their-meaning/>)
-

730. Tswana - Religion and Expressive Culture.
(<https://www.everyculture.com/Africa-Middle-East/Tswana-Religion-and-Expressive-Culture.html>)
731. Tswana culture, people, food, language, traditions, ceremony, dance and traditional attire.
(<https://briefly.co.za/30383-tswana-culture-people-food-language-traditions-ceremony-dance-traditional-attire.html>)
732. Tutelary deity.
(https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tutelary_deity)
733. *Types of Spirituality*. Happier Human.
(<https://www.happierhuman.com/types-spirituality/>)
734. UBUNTU Liberation Movement.
(<http://www.ubuntuparty.org.za/p/about.html>)
735. uMkhonto we Siswe.
(<https://omalley.nelsonmandela.org/omalley/index.php/site/q/03lv02424/04lv02730/05lv02918/06lv02983.htm>)
736. Umlahlankosi (IsiZulu) at Isivivane circle.
(https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html#)
737. Umsamo.
(https://www.freedompark.co.za/virtual_tour/tour/isivivane.html)
738. Understanding the Nephilim and their Role in Bible Prophecy.
(<https://escapeallthesethings.com/nephlim-bible-prophecy/>)
739. Understanding traditional African healing.
(<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4651463/>)
740. UNICEF 2018/19 Health Budget Brief South Africa.
(<https://www.unicef.org/esa/sites/unicef.org.esa/files/2019-03/UNICEF-South-Africa-2018-Health-Budget-Brief.pdf>)
741. Unitarianism.
(<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitarianism>)
742. US Mission to the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.
(<https://nato.usmission.gov/our-relationship/about-nato/>)
-

743. Vagabond.
(<https://www.scribd.com/doc/32151775/The-Curse-of-the-Vagabond-and-Why-Does-Deliverance-Take-So-Long>)
744. Valea, Ernest (2005) The Problem of Evil in World Religions.
(<http://www.comparativereligion.com/evil.html>).
745. Venda.
(http://www.krugerpark.co.za/africa_venda.html)
746. Venda Village.
(<https://andrejfourie.files.wordpress.com/2012/06/venda.jpg>)
747. Volkstaat.
(<http://www.volkstaat.net/>)
748. Voodoo doll.
(https://www.brown.edu/Departments/Joukowsky_Institute/courses/13things/7393.html)
749. Voodoo vs. Hoodoo: What is the difference?
(<https://www.ulc.org/ulc-blog/voodoo-vs-hoodoo-whats-the-difference>)
750. Voortrekker monument graded as Historical venue.
(<https://vtm.org.za/en/2020/04/16/voortrekker-monument-graded-as-historical-venue/>)
751. Vulnerability of youth in the South African labour market.
(<http://www.statssa.gov.za/?p=13379>)
752. Water Spirits: Unmasking demonic spirits associated with the wrong use of water as a source of power. (Part 2). By C.N. Nyathi.
(<https://www.chronicle.co.zw/water-spirits-unmasking-demonic-spirits-associated-with-the-wrong-use-of-water-as-a-source-of-power-part-2/>)
753. Were the sons of God in Genesis 6 fallen angels? Who were the Nephilim? By Dr. P. Gentry.
(<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qKtHwc3mMY8>)
754. What are indulgences?
(<https://catholicstraightanswers.com/what-are-indulgences/>)
755. What Does It Mean to Be a Spiritual Person?
(https://www.huffingtonpost.com/margaret-paul-phd/what-does-it-mean-to-be-a_12_b_8855220.html)
-

756. What does the Bible say about Compassion?
(<https://www.compassion.com/poverty/what-does-the-bible-say-about-compassion.htm>)
757. What does the Bible say about the origin, nature, and role of angels? By Wayne Jackson
(<https://www.christiancourier.com/articles/1582-what-does-the-bible-say-about-the-origin-nature-and-role-of-angels>)
758. What is a nation?
(<https://www.globalpolicy.org/nations-a-states/what-is-a-nation.html>)
759. What is a “Shtiebel”?
(https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/4091052/jewish/What-Is-a-Shtiebel.htm)
760. What is a spiritual portal? By Amanda Linette Meder
(<https://www.amandalinettetmeder.com/blog/2013/12/16/what-is-a-spirit-portal>)
761. What is Anthropology? Boston University. Arts & Science. Anthropology.
(<https://www.bu.edu/anthrop/about/what-is-anthropology/>)
762. What is channelling? Mediumship versus Channelling:
(<https://www.ask-angels.com/spiritual-guidance/channeling/#3>)
763. What is Darwin’s Theory of Evolution?
(<https://www.livescience.com/474-controversy-evolution-works.html>)
764. What is Grace? By Justin Holcomb.
(<https://www.christianity.com/theology/what-is-grace.html>)
765. What is Metaphysics.com Metaphysical Healing.
(<https://whatismetaphysics.com/metaphysical-healing/>)
766. What is Polytheism? By Don Stuart.
(https://www.blueletterbible.org/faq/don_stewart/don_stewart_303.cfm)
767. What is Purgatory?
(<https://occatholic.com/what-is-purgatory/>)
768. What is Religion? How do you define Religion? By Vexen Crabtree.
(http://www.humanreligions.info/what_is_religion.html)
52. What is Sociology?
(<https://sociology.case.edu/what-is-sociology/>)
-

53. What is Sociology?
(<https://sociology.unc.edu/undergraduate-program/sociology-major/what-is-sociology/>)
769. What is Spirituality?
(https://www.spiritualresearchfoundation.org/spiritual-practice/spiritual-paths/what-isspirituality/?gclid=Cj0KCQiAyKrxBRDHARIsAKCzn8zkr01dvqxbkrcl3Sydl9euJrD6s9kt_CC0noghAjcucy5n8zRbtwaAiUcEALw_wcB)
770. What is Spirituality? A personal exploration. By Dr. Maya Spencer.
(<https://www.rcpsych.ac.uk/docs/default-source/members/sigs/spirituality-spsig/what-is-spirituality-maya-spencer-x.pdf?sfvrsn=f28df052>)
771. What is Spirituality? Reach Out.com
(<https://www.ideas.org.au/uploads/resources/550/What%20Is%20Spirituality.pdf>)
772. What is Talmud.
(https://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/3347866/jewish/What-Is-the-Talmud-Definition-and-Comprehensive-Guide.htm)
773. What is the difference between grace and mercy? By P. Wiljaya.
(<https://www.christianity.com/wiki/christian-terms/what-is-the-difference-between-grace-and-mercy.html>)
774. What is the difference between race and ethnicity? By Emma Bryce.
(<https://www.livescience.com/difference-between-race-ethnicity.html>)
775. What is the difference between race and ethnicity?
(www.pbs.org/race/000_About/002_04-experts-03-02.htm)
776. What is the difference between Sin and Iniquity? A Bible Study. (July 2015).
(<https://www.patheos.com/blogs/christiancrier/2015/07/23/what-is-the-difference-between-sin-and-iniquity-a-bible-study/>)
777. What is the difference between voodoo and witchcraft?
(<https://www.quora.com/What-is-the-difference-between-voodoo-and-witchcraft>)
778. What is Kaaps?
(<http://capeafrikaans.blogspot.com/p/what-is-kaaps.html>)
779. What the Python Spirit Really Wants. By J. Clair.
(<http://www.charismamag.com/blogs/the-plumb-line/21396-what-the-python-spirit-really-wants>)
-

780. White Genocide in South Africa.
(<http://stopwhitegenocideinsareports.blogspot.com/2016/03/video-afrikaner-broederbond-most.html>)
781. Who are the Jesuits?
(<https://sj.org.za/who-are-the-jesuits>)
782. Who are the Jesuits, exactly?
(<https://www.economist.com/the-economist-explains/2013/03/19/who-are-the-jesuits-exactly>)
783. Who are the morning stars in Job 38:7?
(<https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/706/who-are-the-morning-stars-in-job-387>)
784. Who are the Tribes of Judah? Jewish Voice (2018) The ten tribes of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Manasseh, Issachar, Zebulun, Ephraim, Dan, Asher, Naphtali and Gad.
(<https://www.jewishvoice.org/read/blog/who-are-tribes-judah>)
785. Who are the Tribes of Judah? Jewish Voice (2018) The two tribes of Judah: Judah and Benjamin.
(<https://www.jewishvoice.org/read/blog/who-are-tribes-judah>)
786. Who form part of the Charismatic Movement.
(https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Orania,_Northern_Cape#Religion)
787. Who is ARNSA?
(<https://www.arnsa.org.za/home>)
788. Who is God? The Question. (2020)
(<https://www.allaboutgod.com/who-is-god-c.htm>)
789. Who is Lord Robin Renwick Julius Malema's Handler from London?
(<https://blackopinion.co.za/2016/04/13/who-is-lord-robin-renwick-julius-malemas-handler-from-london/>)
790. Who/what is Baphomet?
(<https://www.gotquestions.org/Baphomet.html>)
791. Who is the Holy Spirit?
(<https://www.derekprince.org/Publisher/File.aspx?ID=1000048746>)

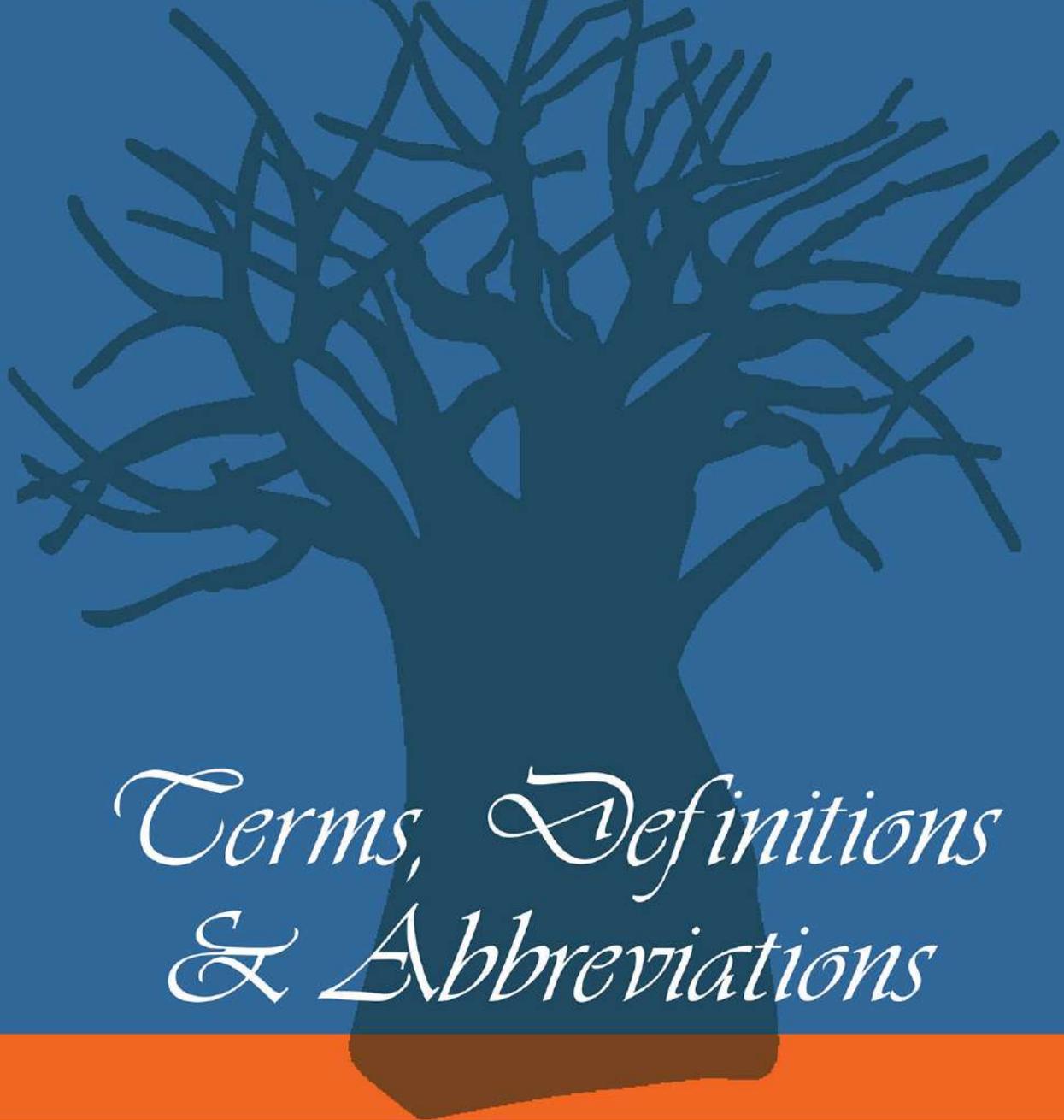
792. Who qualifies as “Black” in terms of the B-BBEE Act – No set criteria to determine racial classification?
(<https://serr.co.za/who-qualifies-as-black-in-terms-of-the-b-bbee-act-no-set-criteria-to-determine-racial>)
793. Who runs the world?
(http://i572.photobucket.com/albums/ss166/LIVETOLOVE_/Mobile%20Uploads/FB_IMG_1491161595671.jpg?width=200&height=200&crop=1:1,smart)
794. Who was Cape Town’s Cecil Rhodes?
(<https://theculturetrip.com/africa/south-africa/articles/who-was-cecil-rhodes/>)
795. Who were the Jacobites and what did they want for Scotland? (April 24, 2018) University of Dundee.
(<https://www.dundee.ac.uk/humanities/news/2018/article/who-were-the-jacobites-and-what-did-they-want-for-scotland-public-lecture.php>)
796. Why are Protestant and Catholic Bibles different?
(<https://www.christianitytoday.com/history/2008/august/why-are-protestant-and-catholic-bibles-different.html>)
797. Why Catholics Pray for the Dead?
(<https://catholicnews.sg/2020/11/02/why-catholics-pray-for-the-dead/>)
798. Why did Martin Luther take 7 books out of the Bible?
(<https://www.quora.com/Why-did-Martin-Luther-take-7-books-out-of-the-Bible>)
799. Why is Robert Mugabe visiting the Vatican?
(<https://newrepublic.com/article/88416/robert-mugabe-vatican-catholic-pope-zimbabwe>)
800. Why Pope Francis’ presence at the World Council of Churches matters.
(<https://www.americamagazine.org/faith/2018/06/20/why-pope-francis-presence-world-council-churches-matters>)
801. William Shakespeare. Hamlet. Hamlet to Horatio.
(<http://www.shakespeare-online.com/quickquotes/quickquotehamletdreamt.html>)
802. Wit Terroriste: Afrikaner-Saboteurs in die Ossewabrandwagjare.
(<https://www.litnet.co.za/wit-terroriste-afrikaner-saboteurs-in-die-ossewabrandwag-albert-blake/>)
-

803. Witchcraft & Human Rights Information Network.
(<http://www.whrin.org/mission/>)
804. World Health Organization.
(<https://www.who.int/about>)
805. Xenophobic attacks South Africa 2019
(<https://www.hrw.org/news/2019/09/13/south-africa-punish-xenophobic-violence>)
806. Zoomorphic, Zoomorphism.
(<https://literarydevices.net/zoomorphism/>)

--ooOoo--

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD



*Terms, Definitions
& Abbreviations*



Terms and Definitions

Adultery

Sexual intercourse between a married individual and another individual, not his or her spouse.

Affirmative action

A policy of preferential treatment to certain groups in a society on the grounds that they were victims of discrimination or were disadvantaged in the past, mostly as a result of government policies.

African Charter

(1948) A statement by the South African Prime Minister D.F. Malan on September 1, 1948 explaining his Africa policy. According to this policy, South Africa would render assistance to Africa south of the Sahara;

African Trans-formation Movement (ATM)

A South African political party formed to transform South Africa to a better society that upholds and lives by the values of Peace, Ubuntu Transformation, Servant Leadership, and Accountability. ATM is the coming

together of religious groups, kingdoms, ordinary citizens of this beautiful country.

Afrikaans

Afrikaans could be considered an indigenous language since it originated from all the languages present in the Cape after Van Riebeeck's arrival. Afrikaans mainly developed from Dutch spoken by the early Dutch Settlers, but accommodated words and phrases from the Khoi-Khoi, Malay, isiXhosa, and other Black languages, as well as Portuguese, German, French and English.

Afrikaner- Broederbond

English Afrikaner Brotherhood, South African secret society composed of Afrikaans speaking Protestant, white men over the age of 25. Although its political power was extensive and evident throughout South African society for many decades, its rituals and membership—by invitation only—remained secret.

Afrikaners

The descendants from various European nationalities stationed at the Cape. The Afrikaners were the first new indigenous nation in South Africa. Also called the "Boers" or "Boer Afrikaners". The name is still valid today referring to mainly Afrikaans speaking people descendants from the first Europeans stationed at the Cape Colony. The Afrikaner Nation is one of several nations included in the South African population.

Afrikaners

Term applied to white South Africans, mostly descendants of Dutch and Huguenot colonists, whose home language was to become Afrikaans.

Afrikaner Volksfront (AVF)

Right-wing umbrella organisation working towards the ideal of uniting conservative *Afrikaners*. Formed in May 1993, the AVF has been led by former security force generals, but the *Conservative Party* (CP) is strongly represented in its executive.

Afrikaner Volkswag (AV)

Far-right cultural organisation established in 1984 to promote the idea of a separate Afrikaner state (*volkstaat*). The AV, led by a former chairman of the *Afrikaner Broederbond*, Professor Carel Boshoff, was seen as a

counterpoise to the Broederbond. Some right-wing members of the AV broke away in 1990 to establish the Afrikaner-Kultuurbond.

Afrikaner Weerstand Beweging (AWB)

Militant, far-right organisation established in 1973. As a *paramilitary* organisation, it has a resemblance to the *Nazi* party in Germany. Established to oppose government policy of abandoning racial *discrimination*, it originally favoured the Verwoerdian ideal of partition, but later advocated a separate *nation-state* (volkstaat) for the Afrikaner. By the early 1990s the AWB under the leadership of Eugene Terre'Blanche had been implicated in various acts of sabotage and its Wenkommando had a membership of approximately 20 000~

Albinism

A congenital disorder resulting in complete or partial absence of pigment in skin, hair and eyes. Affected people have white skin and hair, and in some cases, reddish eyes. The condition can lead to vision loss, extreme sun-sensitivity and psychological issues stemming from embarrassment.

Amandla

Zulu for 'power is ours'. Slogan used by supporters of the *African National Congress*, *Black Consciousness* movements and *Inkatha*.

Amulet

An object said to have magical power.

Anakim

Meaning the "long-necked men" were the most feared inhabitants of Canaan. The description in the book of Joshua gives clear evidence that these giants were not limited in numbers and occupied vast areas, (in particular mountains) and several cities. Joshua 11:21,22 And at the time Joshua came and cut off the Anakim from the mountains, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab, from all the mountains of Israel, Joshua utterly destroyed them with their cities. None of the Anakim were left in the land of the children of Israel, they remained only in Gaza, in Gath and in Ashdod.

Ancestral veneration (Ancestor worship)

The custom of venerating deceased ancestors who are considered still a part of the family and whose spirits are believed to have the power to intervene in the affairs of the living

Angel of the light

A spirit who presents a gospel other than what is found in the Bible.

Angelology

The study of angels

Anglo Boer War

Was fought by Britain and her Empire against the Boers. The Boers were comprised of the combined forces of the South African Republic and the Republic of the Orange Free State. The Boer Republics declared war on 11th October 1899 and the conflict ended on 31st May 1902, a duration of 2 years and 8 months

Animism

A belief that every being and object possess a soul (Anima)

Animism

A doctrine that the vital principle of organic development is immaterial spirit

Animism

The attribution of a living soul to plants, inanimate objects, and natural phenomena. The belief in a supernatural power that organises and animates the material universe.

Ankh

The Ankh is the most recognised symbol of ancient Egypt representing eternal life and knowledge.

Anthropology

The science of human beings; especially the study of human beings and their ancestors through time and space and in relation to physical character, environmental and social relations, and culture.

Anthropology

The study of the human race, its culture and society, and its physical development.

Anti- Apartheid Movement

International movement against South Africa's racial policies, based in London. Founded in 1959, it consistently influenced world opinion against *apartheid*, supported *sanctions* against the country, encouraged firms to quit South Africa, and promoted attempts to expel the country from international organisations.

Antinomy

Two apparent mutually exclusive truths presented simultaneously. A contradiction between two statements that seem equally reasonable. The noun originates from the Latin and Greek word 'antinomia', meaning 'contradiction in law'. Synonym for Paradox, Aversion

Apartheid

The official government policy of *racial segregation* through legislation, applied in South Africa. Apartheid was a rigid form of segregation, which was refined by Afrikaner ideologists in the 1930s and 1940s. Apart from social and political segregation in the 'white' areas, the policy also provided for separate *homelands*, where Africans would have the opportunity to exert political rights. The policy was adopted by the 'Purified' *National Party* (NP). Supported by the most influential Afrikaans papers and Afrikaner cultural and economic movements, the NP used apartheid as a slogan in the general election of 1948. Becoming the ruling party after this election, it applied the policy systematically during the following decades. In 1959 legislation provided for the creation of independent *Bantustans* (later called homelands and eventually *national states*). Ten national states, of which four became fully 'independent', were established by the end of the 1980s. The constitutional negotiations after February 1990 resulted in the abolition of apartheid, and the *transitional constitution* of November 1993 provided for the reincorporation of the homelands into South Africa.

Apparition

An appearance of a disembodied spirit or ghost form.

Apocrypha

The apocrypha is a selection of books which were published in the original 1611 King James Bible. These apocryphal books were positioned between the Old and New Testament (it also contained maps and genealogies). The apocrypha were a part of the KJV for 274 years until being removed in 1885 A.D. A portion of these books were called deuterocanonical books by some entities, such as the Catholic church.

Aquifer

A body of permeable rock which can contain or transmit groundwater.

Aquinas, Thomas

“A medieval scholar who was called the “angelic doctor” because he wrote about angels so much.”

Arabic- Afrikaans

The white population living in the Cape claim to be the originators of Afrikaans, however, the coloured Muslim community was the first to elevate Afrikaans to a written language, using Arabic alphabet. The settlers spoke Afrikaans but the written language remained Dutch. Muslim leaders translated sections of the Koran in Afrikaans to be used for theological studies. Prof. van Selms initiated the term “Arabies-Afrikaans” (Arabic Afrikaans).

Archaeo logical

1) The scientific study of material remains (such as tools, pottery, jewellery, stone walls, and monuments) of past human life and activities. 2) remains of culture of a people.

Ariton

Sometimes also known as Egin or Egyn, this demon’s name likely derives from the Greek word arhreton, which Mathers defines as meaning ‘secret’ or ‘mysterious’. According to both Mathers and Agrippa, Ariton’s equivalent in Jewish lore is the demon Azael. He is attributed with the power to discover hidden treasure. He knows the past, present and future, and can cause people to have visions. He can make spirits appear and take any form. And he can also give familiars. He is reputed to have power to revive people from the dead. He reveals identities of thieves, gifts people with the power of flight, and can make warriors manifest to protect his charges.

Notably, a demon with the name Ariton appears as the spirit of Saturn in several works.

Ark of the Covenant

Hebrew Aron Ha-berit, in Judaism and Christianity, the ornate, gold-plated wooden chest that in biblical times housed the two tablets of the Law given to Moses by God. The Ark rested in the Holy of Holies inside the Tabernacle of the ancient Temple of Jerusalem and was seen only by the high priest of the Israelites on Yom Kippur, the Day of Atonement.

Art

Basic definition of Art:

- Fine Art (includes drawing, painting, sculpture and printmaking),
- Visual Art (includes fine arts, certain contemporary arts e.g. installation and performance, and decorative art),
- Decorative art (includes architecture, industrial-design, fashion/furnishings-design, interior-design etc.) and
- Crafts (broadly synonymous with decorative arts.)

Asherah pole

An Asherah pole was a sacred tree or pole that stood near Canaanite religious locations to honor the pagan goddess Asherah, also known as Astarte.

Asmodee

Also *Asmodeus* or *Asmodai*. A king of demons mostly known from the deuterocanonical Book of Tobit, in which he is the primary antagonist.

Asmodeus

Originates from Persian mythology. He is the queen of lust. Also known as Abaddon, Apollyon, and Beelzebub (Satan). Asmodeus Spirit is a sexual unclean spirit and destroyer spirit of death. He has three heads, those of an ogre, a ram, and a bull, all sexually licentious creatures; having the feet of a cock, another sexually aggressive creature; and having wings and the tail of a serpent. He rides on a dragon and breathes fire. Asmodeus is a chief astrologer of hell and oversees the gambling houses in hell. He is a very busy Demon. Asmodeus is a Day Demon, he is among the legions of Amayon and rules 72 legions of spirits Asmodeus carries the title "King of the Demons"

Assegai

African spear.

Association of Real Afrikaners

A hugely influential secret association formed in Paarl in 1875 to protect and promote the use of Afrikaans and the rights of Afrikaners (Afrikaans-speaking citizens) in the face of British Anglicization policies. The members were all prominent in the community.

Astral

Astral projection is the practice of willfully disconnecting your mind or soul from your body and travelling around in a parallel spiritual realm called “the astral realm”.

ATKV

Afrikaanse Taal- en Kultuurvereniging.

Austral-opithecus

A fossil bipedal primate with both ape-like and human characteristics, found in Pliocene and Lower Pleistocene deposits (c.4 million to 1 million years old) in Africa. ‘Bipedalism - the ability to walk upright on two legs - evolved in the ape-like Australopithecus at least 4.5 million years ago while they also retained the ability to travel through the trees.’

Azanian People’s Liberation Army (APLA)

Military wing of the *Pan Africanist Congress* (PAC). Formed in 1986, APLA was trained by the Chinese and some African countries. It remained inactive until 1990 when it started a campaign to kill white civilians and policemen, apparently because the police were regarded as lax in stopping the killings of Africans in the townships.

Azanian People’s Organisation (AZAPO)

Small *Black Consciousness* movement established in May 1978, whose roots are to be found in the *South African Students’ Organisation* of Steve Biko. Supporting socialist principles, it has a following among African workers, but also among *intellectuals*. AZAPO did not take part in boycott actions in the 1980s, but consistently opposed negotiations with the *National Party* government.

Azazel

Was one of heaven's angels, a gloriously beautiful man with wings on his back. When he sympathized with Satan, he was cast down to earth and became one of the "fallen angels"

Baasskap

Afrikaans for 'masterhood'. Control by whites over other racial groups in South Africa.

Babel

Derived from the Hebrew balal, which means 'mixed up' or 'confused'. The Babylonians later interpreted 'Bable' to mean 'the gate to the god'

Babylonian Captivity

The exile of the Jews in Babylon after Jerusalem was captured by Nebuchadnezzar.

Bacchus

The Demon of addictions, such as [on] drugs, smoking, and alcohol.

Bacchus

Bacchus was a Roman agricultural god who was associated with the harvest — particularly that of grapevines. The son of Jupiter by a human woman, Bacchus was said to wander the world educating people about the delightful wines that could be made from grapes.

Bafokeng

Fokeng. One of the earliest *Sotho* speaking people who were displaced by the *Nguni* invaders during the *Difaqane*.

Balfour Declaration

(1926) Formulation of the status of the British *dominions* agreed upon at the 1926 Imperial Conference. Britain and the dominions were defined as 'autonomous Communities within the British Empire, equal in status, in no way subordinate one to another in any aspect of their domestic or external affairs, though united by a common allegiance to the Crown and freely associated as members of the *British Commonwealth of Nations*'. This declaration was statutorily affirmed by the *Statute of Westminster* in 1931.

Bantu

Originally a term to describe the group of languages used by Africans in central and *southern Africa*, it also referred to the negroid peoples who speak Bantu. In the 1950s the government of South Africa adopted the term to denote blacks in general and it was used officially until 1978 although it had derogatory connotations for most Africans.

Bantu (Bantoe)

Black South Africans were at times officially called "Bantus" by the Apartheid regime. New legislation and documents from the South African government have replaced "Bantu" with "Black" due to the former word's derogatory connotations. Outside Southern Africa the term is still widely used as a term for the Bantu-speaking peoples.

Bantu

According to Credo Mutwa, Bantu derives from Abantu from the Sumerian goddess A'NTU, meaning ABA'NTU. A Sumerian goddess who loved the ABZU – Southern Africa, home of all the gold.

Bantu Education Act

(1953) Legislation to separate the education system for Africans. Designed by H.F. Verwoerd, this Act formed one of the pillars of *apartheid*. African children were to receive an education which would be in line with the African people's *culture*, but the control of the system remained in the hands of the government, particularly its Bantu Affairs Department. Opponents of the government rejected the system as being inferior to white education and although improvements were brought about in the wake of the *Soweto Uprising* of 1976, disparities still existed in the early 1990s. However, after the election of the *Government of National Unity* in April 1994, these were being addressed under one department of national education.

Baphomet

The god of magic and intricacy involving all deceptions and trickery causing sexual misery. He is the accepted universal symbol for Satan. He is portrayed as a winged creature with a pentagram behind his goat's head and a man's torso with both male and female genitals.

Basotho

Former spelling: Basuto. Sesotho-speaking inhabitants of Lesotho (Basutoland before independence). The Basotho became unified largely through the efforts of their first *paramount chief*. Moshoeshoe. He brought together thousands of people mainly from the Koena clan of Sutu after they had fled from Shaka in the 1820s. After that various political and military interactions with the British and the *Boers* took place before Basutoland became a *High Commission Territory*.

Bastards

Term used in the 18th century for the offspring of sexual intercourse between whites and people of colour.

Basters

Afrikaans for 'bastards'. Afrikaans-speaking Namibian community living in the Rehoboth area. The Rehoboth Basters are descended mainly from *Afrikaners* and Javanese and Malayan slaves.

Batavian Republic

The restored Dutch Cape government following the Peace/Treaty of Amiens (March 25, 1802) whereby Britain returned the colony to the Dutch. The treaty temporarily ended hostilities between France and Great Britain during the French Revolution. It implied the end of the French Revolutionary Wars. After a short period of peace, the Napoleon Wars began.

Battle of Blood River

Seven months after the Zulu king Dingane murdered Piet Retief and his delegation who negotiated the purchasing of land, and Dingane's subsequent attack on the Voortrekker delegation killing men, women, children and Khoi servants, the Voortrekkers counter attack under leadership of Andries Pretorius. The Voortrekkers made a covenant with God to provide them victory and in return the Voortrekkers will commemorate the day as a Sabbath. About 3000 Zulu warriors were killed, colouring the river red with their blood. The Voortrekkers suffered three wounded. The victory enabled the Voortrekkers to take control of Natal.

Battle of Boomplaats

Relatively speaking, one of South Africa's least known battles. Nevertheless, there are no less than three monuments commemorating this

battle; two in Cape Town and one on the farm Boomplaats, near the Trompsburg-Jagersfontein main road. The battle was a direct consequence of the personal and precipitate action of Sir Harry Smith, who, on February 3, 1848, declared the area between the Orange and the Vaal Rivers, British - the so-called Orange River Sovereignty. The white burghers of the area resented this declaration and they called on Commandant-General Andries Pretorius to help them to regain their independence. In June 1848, Pretorius marched with a thousand men to the Orange River to confront Sir Harry Smith. This commando evicted the British Resident, Major Warden, and his small garrison from Bloemfontein. Sir Harry Smith crossed the Orange River with about 1 200 troops as well as 200-250 Griquas under Andries Waterboer and Adam Kok. The governor was under the delusion that the Boers would not attack his forces, but the Boer Commando, whose numbers had by then declined to between 300 and 500, retreated and decided to ambush him at the farm Boomplaats. On August 29, 1848, a sharp engagement lasting about four hours took place, with the Boers retreating to Winburg and Smith marching on to Bloemfontein and restoring the British authority.

Beauty

Yophi, (yoh-fee) Strongs Dictionary #3308: Beauty, splendour, brightness, fairness, perfect in physical form, flawless in symmetry. Derived from the verb yaphah, 'to be beautiful, lovely, fair and graceful.'

Bechuana

A member of the Bantu, Tswana speaking people.

Bigotry

Obstinate or intolerant devotion to one's own opinions and prejudices: the state of the mind is a bigot. Also defined as the practice of having very strong and unreasonable opinions, especially about politics, race or religion, confusing and refusing to consider other people's opinions.

Bill of Rights

A stipulation in the *constitution* of many countries which protects fundamental civil liberties of people, such as freedom of worship, speech, of the press, etc. In Britain the term refers to the Act of 1689 which embodied the Declaration of Rights presented by the *House of Commons* to William and Mary before they replaced James II on the throne. It made illegal the suspension of laws without parliament's consent as well as the levying of

money by royal prerogative, and the maintenance of a standing army in peacetime. It guaranteed, among other rights, freedom of speech and the right to petition a sovereign. South Africa's *transitional constitution*, which was accepted in November 1993, has provided for a Bill of Rights.

Black Consciousness

A movement formed in the late 1960s by Steve Biko in reaction to white *racism* and white liberal paternalism. *Black Consciousness* drew on the *Black Power* movement of the USA as well as black theology, and aimed at excluding whites from all its activities.

Black economy

Underground economic activity which is unrecorded. Usually it involves casually employed workers who are not registered, or transactions in industry which are made in cash without receipts, in order to avoid the payment of income tax.

Black Sash

Liberal organisation of South African white women established in 1955 to protest against the violation of the *constitution* during the 'Coloured' franchise issue. It has continued to foster the interests of Africans, including advice on practical matters such as contracts, housing, pensions. In addition, it has voiced its opinion on matters such as land reform, detention without trial, gender discrimination, and played a significant role in the formation of the *End Conscription Campaign* in 1983.

Bloemfontein Convention

(February 23, 1854) Treaty signed by British Special Commissioner Sir George Clerk and the inhabitants of the territory between the Orange and Vaal Rivers, granting the territory its independence. The Republic of the Orange Free State thereupon came into being.

Body of Christ

The phrase "the Body of Christ" is a common New Testament metaphor for the Church (all those who are truly saved). Collective name for believers in Christ. Christians.

Boer

Boer is the Afrikaans translation for 'farmer'. The 'Boers' were pioneer farmers (often on the borders) of the Cape colony. Their occupation was transformed to become synonym with their nationality. It would thus be restrictive to refer to them as the "Cape Farmers". The farmers (occupation) is the ancestors of the 'Boer' or Afrikaner nation. They were white and Afrikaans speaking. In contemporary South Africa the EFF (Economic Freedom Fighters) slogan "kill the Boer" is not restricted to Afrikaans speaking white farmers, although it is included in the meaning. It encompasses a much wider hate and motivation to murder white South Africans, regardless of their occupations as farmers, and regardless their language whether it is English or Afrikaans. The slogan aims inclusively at all white South Africans, descendants from Europe who, in their view, stands guilty of the colonialization of Africa.

'Boer'

Meaning farmer. Also used as a synonymous for 'Afrikaner'.

Boer

Directly translated to farmer does not refer to the occupation of farming but to the mainly Afrikaans speaking white (European descent) section of the South African population.

Boere-weerstandsbeweging (BWB)

Far-right Afrikaner organisation. The BWB was formed in 1991 after a purge in the *Afrikaner Weerstandsbeweging*. Led by Andrew Ford the BWB organised in cells and has been associated with a number of bombings.

Boers

Although 'boer' means 'farmer' in Afrikaans, historically the word refers to the descendants of Dutch or Huguenot colonists, who inhabited the interior of the country from the 18th century. By the 19th century the term was used synonymously with 'Afrikaner', and in the course of the 20th century 'Afrikaner' replaced 'boer'.

Boer War

The British tactics during the Boer War resulted in 30 000 homes/farms and 40 towns burned and destroyed. Countless deaths to livestock whilst

women and children, black and white were taken to concentration camps, resulting in the death of 41 570 women and children.

Breath

Strong's #H1934 (hâvâh) (*hav-aw'*) meaning to exist, that is, be or become, come to pass.

BRICKS

BRICS is the acronym for an association of five major emerging national economies: Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa. Originally the first four were grouped as "BRIC" (or "the BRICs"), before the induction of South Africa in 2010

Bride

Bride of Christ. A metaphor describing the church as the bride of Christ.

Broederbond

Formerly in South Africa, a secret society of Afrikaner Nationalists committed to securing and maintaining Afrikaner control over important areas of government.

Buddhism

Religion widely practised in Asia. Founded in the 6th century B.C., by Siddharta Gautama, Buddhism denies the existence of a universal god, but believes that ethics and discipline will bring about liberation.

Bushmen/San

Hunter- gatherers of *southern Africa*. The nomadic San who are short-statured peoples with a distinct 'click' language, are descendants of the *Stone Age* peoples and were the early inhabitants of southern Africa. They are also called 'Bushmen' or Sonqua Hottentots by whites. Today they are found mostly in the Kalahari Desert of Botswana and Namibia.

Bywoner

A white tenant farmer who possesses no land.

Cadre

A core group of trained or qualified people (especially military or political) appointed to organise or establish another operation or group.

Calvinism

: Branch of *Protestantism* founded by John Calvin (1509-64). Calvinism in its purest form rejects all doctrines not found in the Bible. It is especially known for its predestination doctrine - those 'elected' go to heaven; the rest are lost.

Cape of Good Hope

Name given by the Portuguese explorers in the 15th century to the headland forming a peninsula between Table Bay and False Bay in Cape Town. In the period 1795- 1910 the name 'Cape' referred to the British colony extending to the Orange River and the Natal border. After 1910 the Cape Province was a province of South Africa.

Cape rebels

People who lived in the Cape, but gave military support to the Boer Republics during the *South African War* (Second Anglo-Boer War) of 1899-1902.

Capitalism

The economic and political system in which industry and trade are owned and controlled by private individuals or groups.

Case Study

Researcher Robert K. Yin defines the case study research method as an empirical inquiry that investigates a contemporary phenomenon within its real-life context; when the boundaries between phenomenon and context are not clearly evident; and in which multiple sources of evidence are used.

Causation

Any speech that can cause violence or incite hatred

Cenotaph

Originates from Greek meaning empty grave. The cenotaph is the symbolic resting place of Piet Retief and the Voortrekkers who died on their Groot Trek journey.

Chamber of Mines

Representative of mining interests and mouthpiece of the mining houses. The Chamber of Mines has played a controversial role in the history of labour relations, traditionally being at loggerheads with *trade unions* because of its policy of keeping labour costs as low as possible. It strongly opposed *sanctions* against South Africa in the 1980s.

Channeling

Similar to spiritualism, channeling (trance channel) is a New Age practice whereby spirit being, ascended masters, deceased humans, or animal spirits allegedly communicate important messages by temporarily entering the body and controlling the voice of a host (channel or medium).

Charming or Enchanting

The employment of magic, attempts to use spirit power.

Charterist

An adherent to the fundamental principles of the *Freedom Charter*. Charterists have been found primarily in the ranks of the *African National Congress* (ANC), *Congress of South African Trade Unions* (COSATU) and the *United Democratic Front* (UDF). Contrary to Africanists who stress the more exclusive role of black people in liberating themselves, the Charterists have upheld particularly the principle of multiracialism.

Chiefdom

A group of clans over which a chieftain (chief) is head or leader.

Chieftain

The leader of a clan (tribe).

Christian

One who professes belief in the teachings of Jesus Christ, Disciple of Jesus Christ.

Christian Institute (CI)

Christian movement opposing the policy of *apartheid*, and aiming to promote dialogue and reconciliation in South Africa. Founded by Beyers

Naude in 1963, the CI became more *radical* in the 1970s, sympathising, for instance, with the black theology movement. It was banned in 1977.

Christianity

An individual who has repented for his or her sin, and through personal conviction and faith, received Jesus Christ as the Son of God and Saviour and Lord.

Christianity

An individual who has repented for his or her sin, and through personal conviction and faith, received Jesus Christ as the Son of God and Saviour and Lord.

Christology

Christology is composed of the words Christ, referring to Jesus, and ology, meaning "the study of." The word Christology, therefore, deals with the study of Jesus Christ.

Christophany

Is applicable only to Christ. "The appearance of Christ., but are distinct from Christ's incarnation and his subsequent appearance in that form."

Clairaudience

A spiritualist faculty for hearing voices not normally heard.

Clairsentience

A spiritualistic diagnosis of diseases apart from science.

Clairvoyance

Discerning of things not normally present to the senses.

Clairvoyance

Meaning 'clear seeing' in French, the term denotes to supernatural sight. The ability to perceive objects, locations, events or people not noticeable with normal senses.

Coalition

An alliance of political groups, mostly for short-term purposes such as election agreements. In modern politics coalition are often formed when no single party is able to obtain a majority of votes.

CODESA

Convention for a Democratic South Africa. Negotiating forum to produce a new constitutional dispensation for South Africa. Established by the end of 1991, all political parties with proven support were represented, but the *Conservative Party (CP)*, *Azanian People's Organisation*, *Pan Africanist Congress (PAC)* and far-right groups decided not to take part. In the following year CODESA reached a deadlock when the *Inkatha Freedom Party* did not attend the second plenary session because the *Zulu King* was not awarded full status as negotiator. Multiparty constitutional negotiations were resumed in March 1993, with the CP, PAC, *Afrikaner Volksunie* and *kwaZulu* government attending the conference. See *multiparty negotiations*.

Colonialism

European conquest and exploitation of territories in America, the East and Africa, starting about 1500. The term is associated with *imperialism*.

'Coloured'

Term used to describe those people in South Africa whose origins are to be found in the 18th-century intermixing of whites, slaves and *Khoisan* peoples. Their home language is predominantly Afrikaans.

Coloured Advisory Council (CAC)

Advisory body consisting of 'Coloured' people established by the Smuts government in 1943. Many 'Coloured' people were strongly opposed to this body and to the possibility of a separate department of coloured affairs being created. They went so far as to set up an organisation, the *Anti-Coloured Affairs Department*, which affiliated with the *All-African Convention (AAC)* to form the *Non-European Unity Movement (NEUM)*.

Coloured People's Congress (CPC)

Organisation of 'Coloured' people to protest against racial discrimination in the 1950s and 1960s. Succeeding the *Franchise Action Committee* in 1953 as the *South African Coloured People's Organisation (SACPO)*, its name was changed shortly afterwards to *Coloured People's Congress*. The CPC

campaigned against the government's attempts to remove the 'Coloured' voters from the common voters' roll. It also formed part of the *Congress Alliance* and took part in the Congress of the People in 1955. The CPC was banned in 1960, and some of its members in exile later joined the *Pan Africanist Congress*.

Coloured Persons' Representative Council (CRC)

Political body set up by the government to represent the 'Coloured' voters. From its inception in 1968 the CRC, which consisted of elected and nominated members, was unacceptable to the majority of the 'Coloured' voters. Not only did many reject it as part of the *apartheid* structure, but its powers were also too limited to achieve meaningful reform. It was abolished in 1980.

Commander in Chief

The supreme commander of the armed forces, nation or, sometimes, of several allied nations.

Committee of Ten

Local body established in June 1977 to administer Soweto. Following the *Soweto Uprising* in 1976 the Soweto Urban Bantu Council, a government creation, became moribund and the Committee led by Dr. Nthato Motlana aimed at taking over its functions. A campaign against government proposed community councils resulted in the detention of Committee members; however, the elections for the Soweto Community Council were boycotted, whereupon the leaders were released.

Communism

The system of society based on the theories of Marx and Engels which emphasises common ownership of the means of production. Each member of the community should work for the common benefit according to his/her capacity and should receive according to his/her needs. It holds the belief that private ownership should be abolished.

'comrades'

Young militants in the African townships of South Africa who mostly supported the *United Democratic Front* in the 1980s.

Concentration camp

A prison where prisoners of war or political prisoners are kept, usually under deprived conditions. For example, the prison camps introduced by the British during the *South African War* for the confinement of Afrikaner women and children. Concentration camps were also used by the Nazis in Germany and occupied Europe to imprison political and ideological opponents.

Concentration camps

British prisoners of war camps. Boer women and children were captured from their farms and brought to the camps. Twenty thousand of the Twenty-six thousand Boers who died in the camps were younger than sixteen years.

Congress of South African Trade Unions (COSATU)

The largest trade union federation in South Africa with over 1,3million members in 1993. Formed in November 1985 with a membership of 450 000 and 34 affiliated unions, it functions independently from political parties, but had a close relationship with the *United Democratic Front*, which has been continued with the *African National Congress*. Throughout the late 1980s and early 1990s it has been involved in several workers' actions, including stayaways. In accordance with emergency regulations in 1988, COSATU's political actions were prohibited, but these restrictions were lifted in 1990. It formed an alliance with the African National Congress and the *South African Communist Party* before the 1994 general elections.

Conjuration

A magic incantation or spell. The performance of something supernatural by means of a magic incantation or spell

Conservative Party (CP)

(1982 - 2004) Far-right party established in 1982 by *Nationalists* who supported many of the principles of the *Herstigste Nasionale Party*, especially that of partition, but did not break away in 1969. *Aksie Eie Toekoms* and the *National Conservative Party* were incorporated into the new party. It has made remarkable progress, particularly among *Afrikaners*, since the mid-1980s, despite the fact that it has received no financial support from big business and has had no support from any influential press group. After the general election of 1987 it replaced the Progressive Federal Party as the official opposition in the *House of Assembly*. The CP was dealt a severe blow by FW de Klerk's initiatives after 1990. Dissension within the

party followed, resulting in a breakaway by five MPs who established the Afrikaner Volksunie. This organisation fostered the idea of a smaller Afrikaner state. The CP did not take part in the general election of April 1994.

Constellation of southern African states

Part of P.W. Botha's twelve-point plan, announced in 1979, as a national (or total) strategy for the political and economic survival of South Africa. The constellation of *southern African* states would have meant the creation of an economic and political alliance of economically interdependent, anti-Marxist states, linked by a range of economic projects. The alliance was to include South Africa, the *homelands*, Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, while the later inclusion of *Zimbabwe-Rhodesia*, Zaire, Namibia, Zambia and Malawi was envisaged. Nothing came of the plan because the *Frontline States* formed their own economic alliance, the *Southern African Development Co-ordination Conference* (SADCC), partly to lessen the economic dependence of countries of the region on trade with South Africa.

Constitution

The fundamental laws or principles on which a *state* is governed, specifying the system of government and determining the relations of the legislature, *executive* and judiciary to one another and to the citizens. Most countries have written constitutions. Organisations also have constitutions, defining their aims and membership, and stipulating procedures and rules.

Constitutional Court

The highest court for constitutional matters. In terms of the *transitional constitution* of 1994, the Constitutional Court will evaluate legislation, determining whether or not it is in conflict with the *Bill of Rights*. It is also authorised to keep an eye on government actions. The composition of the court must reflect the interests of all South Africans, and not all members need to be judges.

Coram Deo

Pronounced CORE-um DAY-oh is a Latin phrase, which literally means "before the face of God."

Coram Deo

A phrase from Christian theology which summarizes the ideas of Christians living in the Presence of, under the authority of, and to the honour of God.

Cosmology

Study of the order of the universe.

Cosmology

The term cosmology can be traced to the 1730's, although its appearance in a scientific sense dates from only after the Second World War. The logos, which is the root of 'logy', means 'an account', so that, as a preliminary working definition, cosmology is simply 'an account of the cosmos'. The primary Latin equivalent of the Greek Kosmos is Universus, from Unus verito, or 'changing into one', thereby suggesting unity. We can divide the definitions of cosmology into two: the scientific and the anthropological. Anthropological cosmologies are based on the proposition that ideas about the cosmos are integral part of human cultural and social systems.

Coven

A community of witches: 6 males, 6 females and 1 High Priest

Covenant

An agreement found in the Bible between God and His people in which God makes specific promises and demands.

Cradle of Humankind

Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site: The Fossil Hominid Sites of Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Kromdraai and Environs, known as the Cradle of Humankind, were declared a World Heritage Site on December 2, 1999. The Cradle of Humankind covers an area of over 47 000 hectares of privately owned land north west of Johannesburg and is home to over 17 000 residents. In 2005, two other highly significant sites, Makapan and Taung were listed as serial sites together with the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (COH WHS). Together, these are the Fossil Hominid sites of South Africa.

Credo Mutwa

Renowned South African sangoma and Zulu traditional healer. Author & artist.

CRL Rights Commission

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities is an independent chapter nine

institution in South Africa. The SA Constitution mandates the commission for the promotion and protection of the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities. Act of 2002.

Culture

A term which, in the human sciences, broadly defines the way of life of a society or group. Culture includes language, beliefs, thoughts, behaviour, traditions, rituals, customs, music, literature and art. Anthropologists and sociologists in particular use culture as a key concept in examining and analysing societies.

Cuneiform

A Latin term literally meaning “wedge-shaped”— dates to sometime around 3400 B.C. In its most sophisticated form, it consisted of several hundred characters that ancient scribes used to write words or syllables on wet clay tablets with a reed stylus. The tablets were then baked or left in the sun to harden.

Curse

A curse (also called execration) is any manner of adversity thought to be inflicted by any supernatural power (such as a spell, a prayer, an imprecation, an execration, magic, witchcraft, a god, a natural force, or a spirit).

Noun

1. A denunciation invoking a wish or threat of evil or injury.
2. Something or someone believed to bring bad luck: hex, hoodoo.
3. A cause of suffering or harm: affliction, bane, evil, ill, plague, scourge, woe.

Curse

A solemn utterance intended to invoke a supernatural power to inflict harm or punishment on someone or something”

Dakar

In July 1987 a delegation of around 55 South Africans representing a broad political spectrum met with some members of the African National Congress (ANC) in Dakar, Senegal. It was the largest meeting on African soil between "inside" South Africans and members of a then exiled movement in the midst of civil strife. The ANC for the first time in public committed itself to a

negotiated settlement to end the political conflict in South Africa. The meeting was initiated by Dr. Frederik van Zyl Slabbert, an astute politician (and statesman), then directing the Institute for Democracy in South Africa (IDASA) and the conference was hosted by President Diouf of Senegal.

Deity

A god or goddess (in a polytheistic religion), or anything revered as divine. A goddess is a female deity.

Democracy

A form of government in which political power resides in all the people and is exercised by them directly or is given to elected representatives.

Democratic Alliance

Official opposition political party in South Africa. The Democratic Alliance governed the City of Johannesburg at the time of the statement after their political victory in the previous Local Government Elections.

Democratic Party (DP)

Founded in April 1989 as a result of the fusion of the Progressive Federal Party, the *Independent Party* and the *National Democratic Movement*, in conjunction with a group of liberal Afrikaner *intellectuals*. The establishment of this party meant that the white parliamentary opposition to the left of the government was regrouped into one single party. The DP, which stood for full *democracy* and a negotiated political settlement in South Africa, attracted 20 per cent of the white vote in the 1989 general elections. In the general election of 1994, the party only attracted 1,7 per cent of the national poll, obtaining seven seats in the *National Assembly*. It failed to secure a substantial following at the provincial level. See also *Progressive Party (1959-89)*.

Demonology

The doctrine of Fallen Angels.

Demon

Spiritual beings at enmity with God. Also, Angels of the Devil destined for ultimate destruction. A powerful evil spirit that works for Satan. Demons can sometimes control people. Nevertheless, Jesus has power over demons.

He can make them come out of people. (Mark 1:21-28; Mark 9:14-29; Acts 16:16-18; Ephesians 6:10-18).

Demonology

The study of demons

Danube Script

The rise of early agrarian communities in the valley of the Danube and its hinterland produced innovative technologies. In the course of this process, sign use consolidated and assumed the character of an organized form of notation. This transition to writing marks the first experiment of its kind in world history. The experiment with writing technology in South eastern Europe produced an original writing system which is addressed here as the “Danube script,” and the cultural horizon in which it originated is referred to as the “Danube civilization.”¹ These terms are synonyms with the earlier terminology, “Old European script” and “Old Europe,” coined by Marija Gimbutas

Danube Valley Civilization

One of the oldest civilizations known in Europe. It existed from between 5,500 and 3,500 BC in the Balkans and covered a vast area, in what is now Northern Greece to Slovakia (South to North), and Croatia to Romania (West to East). During the height of the Danube Valley civilization, it played an important role in south-eastern Europe through the development of copper tools, a writing system, advanced architecture, including two storey houses, and the construction of furniture, such as chairs and tables, all of which occurred while most of Europe was in the middle of the Stone Age. They developed skills such as spinning, weaving, leather processing, clothes manufacturing, and manipulated wood, clay and stone and they invented the wheel. They had an economic, religious and social structure. One of the more intriguing and hotly debated aspects of the Danube Valley civilization is their supposed written language. While some archaeologists have maintained that the ‘writing’ is actually just a series of geometric figures and symbols, others have maintained that it has the features of a true writing system. If this theory is correct, it would make the script the oldest written language ever found, predating the Sumerian writings in Mesopotamia, and possibly even the Dispilio Tablet, which has been dated 5260 B.C.

Declaration of Arbroath

The Declaration of Arbroath, also known as the Declaration of Scottish Independence, was a diplomatic letter from the Scots to the Pope in 1320, calling for Scotland to be recognised as an independent kingdom against English claims of over lordship. It is thought to be one of the earliest written arguments for popular sovereignty and one of the most significant statements of nationhood in Europe. The Declaration is one of the primary foundation stones of Scottish identity, but its influence is international. In 2016 the Declaration was also awarded 'Memory of the World' status by UNESCO World Heritage.

Denel

South African State-Owned Aerospace and military technology conglomerate established in 1992.

'Die Afrikaanse Patriot'

Newspaper which was the mouthpiece of the *Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners*. Established in 1876, it was instrumental in the organised promotion of Afrikaner *culture*.

Discordianism

The religion for these screwed-up times, and Principia Discordia reveals it here for your enlightenment, confusion and entertainment.

Difaqane/Mfecane.

The Nguni word mfecane means "crushing". This shows how serious the upheaval among the Bantu-speaking groups in southern Africa was during the 1820s. The Sotho people call it the difaqane or lifaqane, which mean "forced migration" and "hammering". Some tribes were scattered, others completely destroyed and new groups formed.

Divination

Synonym for Fortune-telling.

Doctrine

A system of beliefs and may denote both the act of teaching and that which is learned.

Doctrine

“Doctrine” means “something taught, teachings, instructions: the principle of religion that are taught; or more literary, “to teach the substance.”

Dowsing

See Rhabdomancy (Water witching).

Durga

In Hinduism, the goddess Durga, also known as Shakti or Devi, is the protective mother of the universe. Durga means ‘a fort’ fitting her militant nature. She is worshipped as the goddess of strength. She has between 8 and 18 arms and hold a symbolic object in each hand.

Dutch

The language used at the Cape until 1820 when it was replaced by English as the official language. It was also the official language of the Boer republics until they lost their independence in 1902. With the establishment of the *Union of South Africa* in 1910 Dutch again became an official language (with English), but was replaced by Afrikaans in 1925.

Dutch East-India Company

Founded in 1602 and liquidated in 1795. Was the largest and most impressive of the early modern European trading companies operating in Asia. Trade with the East: Also known as VOC (Verenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie). The company was a combination of commercial organisations in various cities of Holland and Zeeland. It was the first public company to issue negotiable shares and it developed into one of the biggest and most powerful trading and shipping concerns.

Enki

Enki. Sumerian tablets refer to the first “Holy Trinity” originated between the gods Anu, and his two sons Enlil and Enki. Enki controlled the gold mining.

Enlil

Enlil took control of the upper world and Enki, the winged serpent and creator god took control of the underworld south of the equator, called Abzu. The land producing the gold.

Epistemology

The study of knowledge

Eschatology

Comes from the Greek *eskhatos*, meaning "last," which makes sense given that this branch of theology is preoccupied with the study of the last part of life or death. More specifically, eschatology involves four elements or "last" things: death, judgment, heaven and hell. It's an examination of the ultimate destiny of mankind.

Esoteric

Designed for or understood by the specially initiated alone.

ESP

Extra Sensory Perception is a sense or senses beyond the normal five (taste, touch, smell, sight, hearing) that give knowledge.

Ethnography

The study and systematic recording of human cultures; also, a descriptive work produced from such research. The scientific description of peoples and cultures with their customs, habits, and mutual differences

Ethnography

Esotericism: Refers to knowledge reserved for a small group; it derives from the Greek word *esotero*, meaning "within," or "inner." The word *esoteric* implies inner spiritual knowledge held by a limited circle. In short, the word means: Hidden knowledge.

Evangelical Witness

A document developed by Concerned Evangelicals in reaction to the to the political conservatism in Evangelicalism

Exegesis

An exegesis is an explanation and interpretation of a piece of writing, especially a religious piece of writing, after very careful study.

Exorcism

Casting out of spirits.

Exorcism

Commanding, in the name of Jesus, a demon to come out of an individual, a house, or wherever the demon happens to be. Exorcism is accomplished by the Spoken word in the name of Jesus, through the power of the Holy Spirit.

Fagan Commission

The Native Laws Commission under the chairmanship of H.A. Fagan, a former Minister of Native Affairs. Appointed in 1946, it presented a report in February 1948 about the implications of the influx of Africans into the cities during the Second *World War*. Basically, the commission concluded that the urban Africans were there to stay, that *migrant labour* would continue, and recommended that urban Africans should administer their own affairs and that the *pass laws* should be applied more leniently.

FAK

Federasie van Afrikaanse Kultuurvereniginge.

Familiar Spirit

Sorcerers or necromancers, who professed to call up the dead to answer questions, were said to have a "familiar spirit"

Farlam Commission

A commission appointed by the South African government under leadership of Judge Farlem to investigate the actions taken by the South African Police Service and the deaths that occurred during the Marikana strike.

Federation of South African Women

Non-racial women's organisation established in 1954. It launched various mass demonstrations against the racial policies of the *National Party* government and some of its leaders were banned.

Femicide

Stats SA defines femicide as: "The intentional killing of females (women or girls) because they are females."

Feminism

Movement which stands for political, social and economic equality between men and women. Although there were campaigners for women's rights in the 19th and early 20th centuries, the feminist movement only really gained momentum after the *Second World War*.

Fetishes

Spiritual embodiment in a natural object e.g. stone, tree, doll etc.

Fetishism

Veneration and use of natural or prepared material objects (fetishes) imbued with special potency (mana) for purposes of averting evil effects or acquiring values.

First Commandment

Exodus 20:1-6 I am the Lord your God, who has brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. You shall have no other gods before Me. "You shall not make for yourself any idol, or any likeness (form, manifestation) of what is in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the water under the earth [as an object to worship]. You shall not worship them nor serve them; for I, the Lord your God, am a jealous (impassioned) God [demanding what is rightfully and uniquely mine], visiting (avenging) the iniquity (sin, guilt) of the fathers on the children [that is, calling the children to account for the sins of their fathers], to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing graciousness *and* steadfast lovingkindness to thousands [of generations] of those who love Me and keep My commandments

First Fruit

God pronounced the principle. Deuteronomy 26:2; Leviticus 23:10. To give a tithe means that you give a tenth of your income to your church. Tithes are generally given throughout the entire year. A First fruits offering is something different. First fruit offerings are typically an annual gift to the church done at "harvest time."

First "Holy Trinity"

Sumerian tablets refer to the first "Holy Trinity" originated between the gods Anu, and his two sons Enlil and Enki. Enki controlled the gold mining. Enlil took control of the upper world and Enki, the winged serpent and creator

god took control of the underworld south of the equator, called Abzu. The land producing the gold.

First World

A term which broadly describes developed, non communist countries. Although there is no uniform opinion on the status of various 'developed' countries, usually the countries of Western Europe and North America, plus Japan, Australia and New Zealand are regarded as First World countries.

Fornication

Sexual intercourse between two unmarried individuals.

Free- burghers

Whites at the Cape who were given permission to leave the service of the *Dutch East India Company* and were given farming land in 1657 to provide food for passing ships.

Freedom Alliance (FA)

A loose political alliance which consisted of the *Afrikaner Volksfront*, the *Conservative Party*, the *Inkatha Freedom Party*, and the *Bophuthatswana* and Ciskei governments. The Alliance, formed towards the end of 1993, opposed the *National Party* and *African National Congress* because it believed that these two parties had a predetermined agenda at the *multiparty negotiations* at the World Trade Centre. Some Alliance members favoured *federalism*, others confederalism, but they all strongly opposed a unitary state.

Freedom Charter

The document adopted by the Congress of the People on June 26, 1955 in Kliptown, Soweto. The meeting brought together several organisations and individuals allied to the liberation movement of the African National Congress. (ANC). It included a vision for social justice and economic order. Its demands included a non- racial, democratic government, equal opportunities for all, *nationalisation* of banks, mines and heavy industries, and the redistribution of land.

Freedom Front (FF)

Right-wing political party promoting the idea of an Afrikaner volkstaat. The FF was established by General Constand Viljoen to facilitate participation in

the 1994 general election by the *Freedom Alliance*. When the *Inkatha Freedom Party* and far-right hardliners within the *AfrikanerVolksfront* refused to take part in the elections, Viljoen decided to proceed with the FF and participate on his own. He was subsequently joined by a number of prominent *Conservative Party* members. In the elections of April 1994, the FF obtained 2,17 per cent of the votes on a national level, as well as very limited representation in the provincial assemblies.

Freemasons

International secret society with considerable influence. During the 18th and 19th centuries it was associated with *radical* movements in Europe, which brought Freemasonry into conflict with the Roman Catholic Church and with state authority in some countries. In recent times the organisation has been mainly involved in charity work.

French Huguenots

The Huguenots who arrived at the Cape of Good Hope at the end of the 17th century, consisted of only a fraction of the large-scale Protestant flight from France after the revocation of the Edict on Nantes in 1685. As early as 1671 the first Huguenot refugee, Francois Villion (later Viljoen), arrived at the Cape. In 1686 the brothers Guillaume and Francois du Toit arrived. After the mainstream of Huguenots arrived during 1688 – 1689, they comprised approximately one sixth of the free burgher population, after which individual arrivals continued sporadically until the termination of the state subsidised emigration in 1707.

Fundamentalist

A person who believes in the literal inspiration of the Bible, or, in the case of *Islam*, one who believes in strict observance of Islamic law. Fundamentalism has become a significant political and social force in the 20th century. In the USA fundamentalism stresses the infallibility of the Bible not only in moral issues, but also as literal historical record. Radical Islamic fundamentalism has become an important factor in the *Middle East* conflict.

Gatekeepers

A tutelary (*/ˈtʊtl̩.ɛri/* or */ˈtjʊtl̩.ɛri/*) (also tutelar) is a deity or spirit who is a guardian, patron, or protector of a particular place, geographic feature, person, lineage, nation, culture, or occupation. The etymology of "tutelary" expresses the concept of safety, and thus of guardianship.

Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners (GRA)

Organisation founded in 1875 'to stand for our language, our nation and our land'. The Genootskap acquired a printing press and published the first newspaper in Afrikaans.

Geomancy

A method of divination that interpret markings on the ground or the patterns formed by tossed handfuls of soil, rocks, or sand.

Gilgamesh

Best-known and most popular hero in the mythology of the ancient Near East, Gilgamesh was a Sumerian* king who wished to become immortal. Endowed with superhuman strength, courage, and power, he appeared in numerous legends and myths, including the Epic of Gilgamesh.”

Gnomes

Dwarf like, creatures who live underground and guard treasures and precious minerals. Only visible by clairvoyants. Rosicrucianism accepted them as elemental spirits dwelling in the bowels of the earth

Gnosticim

From the Greek word “gnosis”, meaning “Knowledge” or “science”. The system of thought or belief is a complex religious movement that surfaced in the second century. By the end of the century, Gnosticism divided into separate sects.

Government of National Unity

The first post-*apartheid* government of the country. Elected by general vote in the first democratic elections in the history of the country, the government is based on a system of *proportional representation* in accordance with a *transitional constitution*. Thus, minority parties have been given representation on the cabinet and in the vice- presidency, as well as in other government structures. The first president, Nelson Mandela, has the assistance of two executive deputy presidents, Thabo Mbeki and FW de Klerk.

Graphology

Understanding a Personality from Handwriting.

Griqua

Collective term for the groups of *Khoikhoi* and other people of mixed descent who left the Cape Colony and settled along the Orange River in the late 18th century.

Griqualand West

Area in the Northern Cape. It was occupied by the Griquas after 1803, annexed by the British in 1871 and incorporated into the Cape in 1880.

Groot Trek

Groot Trek the Afrikaans expression meaning The Great Journey or Great Exodus referring to the White Afrikaners' (Farmers translated as Boer's) migration to the South African interior.

Groot Trek

10 000 Afrikaners journeyed to the interior in protest British oppression with the aim to establishment of independent rule.

Group Areas Act

(1950) A cornerstone of the *apartheid* policy. The Act provided for separate areas for each race group in cities, towns and villages, and prohibited occupation or ownership of property in those areas by members of other race groups. The Act was removed from the statute books by F.W. de Klerk's government in June 1991.

Handsuppers

Boer surrenderers to the British forces during the *Anglo-Boer War* (1899-1902).

Hansard

The official reports of parliamentary debates in Britain and South Africa. Named after Luke Hansard, who printed the House of Commons Journal in the 1770s.

Haplogroup

Haplogroup L0 is a human mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) haplogroup.

Hasidic Jews

Are Orthodox, although they differ from Orthodox Jews in some respects. The word Hasidic comes from the Hebrew word *chesed*, meaning “lovingkindness.” The Hasidim are literally “those who do good deeds for others.” They are known for their separated living, their devotion to a dynastic leader, their exuberant, joyful worship, and their distinctive dress. Hasidic Jews believe that prayer and acts of lovingkindness are means of reaching God. Hasidic philosophy is less ritualistic than other branches of Judaism, and it places a greater emphasis on emotion, warmth, and inclusiveness.

Heeren Sewentien

Heeren XVII or Gentlemen Seventeen was the name for the board of directors of the Dutch United East India Company (VOC), founded in 1602.

Helpmekaar

Afrikaner movement started in 1917 with the aim of relieving the financial debts of Afrikaner rebels who were fined after their participation in the *Afrikaner Rebellion* of 1914.

Henotheism

1) the worship of a particular god, as by a family or tribe, without disbelieving in the existence of others. 2) ascription of supreme divine attributes to whichever one of several gods is addressed at the time.

Hermeneutical Phenomenology

The essence of meaning residing tacitly within the situation of the phenomenon. Hermeneutical Phenomenology is a descriptive science and it circumvents assessing the religious values of the data being analysed opposed to theological focus of dogma and defining what is considered to be the truth.

Hermeneutics

The study of the principles and methods of interpreting the text of the Bible.

Hermeneutics

Refers to the theory and practice of interpretation, where interpretation involves an understanding that can be justified

Hertzog Bills

Legislation on African land and voting rights. First introduced in 1926, it became law in 1936-37 in altered form. Through his 1926 bills, JBM Hertzog aimed at removing the Cape Africans from the common voters' roll but giving them union-wide representation through a representative body; he also wished to add to the land allocated to Africans under the *Land Act* of 1913; and, thirdly, he intended to extend political rights of 'Coloureds' to the northern provinces, but later dropped the bill. Unable to obtain a two-thirds majority (required by the *constitution*) in both houses of parliament for his legislation, Hertzog only managed to promulgate the Representation of Natives Act and the Native Trust and Land Act in 1936. The first Act removed the Africans in the Cape Colony from the common voters' roll and placed them on a separate roll to elect three white representatives to parliament and two to the Cape Provincial Council. Africans in the rest of South Africa were to elect four whites to represent them in the Senate. A *Natives Representative Council* with advisory powers only was to be set up. The second Act provided for an additional six million hectares of land for Africans.

Het Volk

Political movement in the Transvaal founded in 1905 by Louis Botha. Its principal aim was to promote self-government for the former Boer republics and it followed a policy of conciliation to foster good relations between *Afrikaners* and English speakers. When self-government was attained, the party won the first general election in the Transvaal in 1907.

Hinduism

India's main religion originating more than 4 000 years ago. Hinduism is not a personal religion, and the individual forms part of a whole. Hindus believe in a global spirit, Brahman, in which all processes of life are embodied. The main gods are Brahma the Creator, Vishnu the Preserver and Siva the Destroyer.

History

A chronological record of significant events (as affecting a nation or institution) often including an explanation of their causes. A branch of knowledge that records and explains past events.

Historiography

The historiography (general descriptor) of a topic is the sum total of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past and current historians. An analysis of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past historians.

Homo ergaster

An extinct hominid that is believed to have spread from Africa to Europe and Asia about 2 million years ago and appears to have survived in Asia to at least 150,000 years ago

Homo habilis

An extinct hominid that is the earliest and most primitive known member of the human genus Homo, living in Africa between about 2.3 and 1.4 million years ago.

Homo sapiens

The primate species to which modern humans belong; humans regarded as a species.

Humanoid

Having the appearance and character resembling that of a human.

Huguenots

French Protestants in the 16th century. Persecuted by Francis I and Henry II, the Huguenots survived an attempt to exterminate them in 1572 as well as in the religious wars during the following 30 years. In 1598 they were granted religious freedom under the *Edict of Nantes*, but when Louis XIV revoked the measure, 400 000 emigrated. Some 180 Huguenots were settled in the western Cape near Stellenbosch in 1689.

Humanists

Renaissance scholars, students of man.

Human Rights Commission

Independent organisation which gathers and publishes information about violation of human rights. It came into being in 1988 after the banning of some anti-apartheid organisations, including the Detainees Parents' Support Committee, and has taken over some of their functions.

Hybrid

The offspring of two animals or plants of different breeds, varieties, varieties, Historiography: The historiography (general descriptor) of a topic is the sum total of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past and current historians. An analysis of the interpretations of a specific topic written by past historians. Amanda Izenstark How to create a Historiography: Historiography: Definitions. species, or genera, especially as produced through human manipulation for specific genetic characteristics. b.) a person or group of persons produced by the interaction or crossbreeding of two unlike cultures, traditions etc. c) anything derived from heterogeneous sources, or composed of elements of different or incongruous kinds. d.) a word composed of elements originally drawn from different languages, as television, whole components come from Greek and Latin.

Hylomorphism

From Greek *hylē*, “matter”; *morphē*, “form”, in philosophy, metaphysical view according to which every natural body consists of two intrinsic principles, one potential, namely, primary matter, and one actual, namely, substantial form.

Hypostasis

Noun Philosophy The substance, essence, or underlying reality. Noun Any of the persons of the Trinity.

Ideology

Ideas on which a theory about society is based, e.g. *apartheid*, *fascism*, or *communism*.

International Labour Organization (ILO)

The only tripartite U.N. agency, since 1919 the ILO brings together governments, employers and workers of 187 member states, to set labour standards, develop policies and devise programmes promoting decent work for all women and men.

Imam

The person who leads prayer in a mosque. A title of various Muslim leaders.

Imphepho

Traditional incense. The flowers of the everlasting family *Helichrysum*, is an important and widely used plant as a ritual incense in South African traditional medicine. The dried flowers and stems are often burnt by diviners to invoke the ancestral spirits while practicing divination for clients.

Impi

Plural: izimpi. *Sindebele* word for a military force or expedition.

Incantation

A Spell or charm used in or as a part of magic ritual.

Incest

Sexual intercourse by members of the same family.

Incubus

A male demon that has sexual intercourse with humans.

Indaba

Plural: izindaba. *Nguni* term for a meeting to discuss an important matter. The word is widely used in *southern Africa*.

Indus script

Also Harappan script, refers to short strings of symbols associated with the Indus Valley Civilization, in use during the Mature Harappan period, between the 26th and 20th centuries B.C. In spite of many attempts at decipherments and claims, it is as yet undeciphered. The underlying language is unknown, and the lack of a bilingual makes the decipherment unlikely pending significant new finds.

Inkatha

Originally a *Zulu* cultural organisation that had gone out of existence, it was revived by Mangosuthu Buthelezi in 1975. It refused to accept independence for *KwaZulu*, but was committed to peaceful means of attaining a non-racial *democracy* in South Africa. Inkatha has a strong ethnic base and promotes *Zulu* aspirations. Its leader has been regarded as a moderate who opposed *sanctions* against the country and is a proponent of the free market system. The cordial relationship between Inkatha and the

African National Congress (ANC) came to an end in the late 1970s and since then bitter conflict has prevailed between Inkatha, the *UDF*, and then the ANC. In August 1990 the organisation was transformed into a political party, the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP). The IFP rejected the draft *constitution* of a new political dispensation because it did not ensure sufficient powers to regions. It also walked out of negotiations at an early stage, but eventually decided, at the last moment, to take part in the general election of April 1994. Although it gained 10,5 per cent of the vote at national level, its support proved to be ethnically based and limited to KwaZulu/Natal. In the latter province, the IFP gained a majority in the provincial assembly.

Inkosi

Plural: amakosi. *Nguni* term for 'ruler' or 'king'. It is also used in the following instances: (1) as a respectful form of address to an important person; (2) as a reference to an employer or superior; (3) as a reference to Christ.

Institute for Democracy in South Africa (IDASA)

Established in November 1986 by F. van Zyl Slabbert and Alex Boraine, it was originally called the Institute for a Democratic Alternative for South Africa. Its most important aim is to create a democratic *culture* in South Africa, and in the process educate people to accept full *democracy*. IDASA has also been involved in facilitating negotiations between diverse political groups, and organised talks between South African groups and the *ANC* in the late 1980s.

Irdeto

World leader in digital platform security. Irdeto protects platforms and applications for video entertainment, video games, connected transport, connected health and LoT connected Industries.

ISCOR

Iron and Steel Industrial Corporation. Established in 1927 as a public utility through the initiative of the Hertzog government.

Isivivane

A sacred space – the spiritual resting place for those who played a part in the freedom and liberation of South Africa. Inclusive of all faiths and religions, it invites South Africans to celebrate their shared spirituality and heritage.

Islam

One of the most important world religions, founded by the prophet Mohammed in the 7th century. Its adherents are known as Moslems, or Muslims, or Mohammedans. Mohammed's visions and teachings are recorded in the *Koran* (or Quran). The two main branches of Islam are the Sunni (who are the majority) and the Shi'ite (Shia) who are found in Iran, Iraq, Lebanon, and Bahrain. Islam, whose followers are growing in the *Third World*, embraces all facets of life, making it more than just a religion.

Jacobite rebellion

The Stuarts had reigned in Scotland for centuries, and the Jacobites craved the reinstatement of the Stuart male line. The rebellion was a reaction to the union of Scotland and England in 1707.

Jacobites

The Jacobite movement emerged from the overthrow of the Catholic king, James VII of Scotland and II of England, in favour of his Protestant daughter and son-in-law, Mary II and William of Orange, during the 'Glorious' revolution of 1688-89. Jacobites (named after the Latin for James, Jacobus) sought to restore James and his heirs to the British and Irish thrones.

Jahbulon

The Secret name for god in Freemasonry

Jameson Raid

Cecil John Rhodes launched an unsuccessful invasion of the Transvaal after the discovery of gold. He incorporated the assistance of the foreign gold diggers to stage an uproar. The raid was named after Doctor Leander Starr Jameson who led the army band into the Boer republic as a sign for the raid to commence.

Jesuits

Members of the Roman Catholic religious order, the Society of Jesus. It was founded by Ignatius Loyola in 1540, and its main objectives were educational work, the elimination of heresy, and missionary work among the heathen.

Jewish Midrash

In Judaism, the term Midrash (plural Midrasham) refers to a form of rabbinic literature that offers commentary or interpretation of biblical texts. A Midrash (pronounced "mid-rash") may be an effort to clarify ambiguities in an ancient original text or to make the words applicable to current times. Ariela Pelaia. What Does the Term "Midrash" Mean?

Justification

To pronounce, accept and treat as righteous, and not liable, and, on the other hand, entitled to all privileges due to those who have kept the laws.

JHVH

Also known as Tetragrammaton. The Hebrew name for God revealed to Moses on Mount Sinai (Exodus 3), consisting of the four consonants YHVH (or YHWH) and regarded by Jews as too sacred to be pronounced.

Kabbalah

A mystical body of law based on occult interpretation of the Old Testament.

'kaffir'

Offensive word for African, once widely used by whites in southern Africa. The word originates from the Arabic 'kafir' ('infidel') and was probably adopted by Portuguese explorers from east African Muslim people. It was then adopted by Dutch and English-speaking people in southern Africa.

'Kafir'

The word 'kafir' is derived from the Arabic term for an infidel unbeliever. In the mid-nineteenth century it had not yet acquired the highly pejorative connotations associated with the term in the twentieth century.

Kali

The Hindu of death, time, and doomsday and is often associated with sexuality and violence but is also considered a strong mother-figure and symbolic of motherly-love. Kali also embodies shakti - feminine energy.

Kenosis

From the Greek word (New Testament) meaning 'to empty' Jesus emptied Himself.

Khoi-khoi

Or Khoi. Pastoralists who inhabited the Cape in the 17th century. They called themselves 'Khoikhoi' ('men of men'), but were known to whites as *Hottentots*. Smallpox claimed the lives of large numbers of Khoikhoi, and those who survived were integrated into the 'Coloured' group, while others moved into Namibia.

Khoisan

A name used by anthropologists for the Khoikhoi and San together, where, as a result of interaction between the groups, no clear distinction could be made between them.

Knobkierie

Stick with a knobbed head, sometimes used as a weapon.

Konrad Adenauer foundation

The Konrad-Adenauer-Stiftung (KAS) is a political foundation, closely associated with the Christian Democratic Union of Germany (CDU). Freedom, justice and solidarity are the basic principles underlying the work of the Konrad-Adenauer-Stiftung (KAS).

Kraals

Enclosures for livestock in southern Africa.

Labola/Lobola

Known to many as a "bride-price" or bride-worth" and to some extent as a "down payment" or "dowry" but in the African culture, it is a ritual that brings two families together

Labola or Lobolo

Also called a bride-price or bride-worth is a payment to the parents of a young women to secure her hand in marriage. The price is negotiated between the two families. The price is determined in terms of cattle e.g. an educated woman is worth more. The price in cash is calculated according to the value of the cattle agreed upon.

Lobola

In southern Africa, an African custom by which a bridegroom's family makes a payment in cattle or cash to the bride's family shortly before the marriage

Labour Party (LP)

(1965 - 1994) Political party which drew its main support from the 'Coloured' people. With the inception of a *Coloured Persons' Representative Council (CRC) in 1968*, the LP used this institution as a forum to promote its objectives: to oppose all forms of racial *discrimination*, and to create an alliance of 'black people' of South Africa. When it became the ruling party in the CRC it campaigned for the abolition of that institution, which was eventually realised in 1980. Its decision to take part in the *tricameral* parliament after 1983, with the idea of enforcing further constitutional reform, cost it support from the 'Coloured' community. The party's influence further declined after the unbanning of the *ANC* and other liberation movements, and it was finally disbanded in September 1994. See *South African Labour Party*

Land Expropriation without compensation

Implies the amendment of section 25 of the South African Constitution to allow government to expropriate land and property without compensation to the current owner and holder of the title deed. The African National Congress, The Economic Freedom Fighters and the National Freedom Party all voted in favour of the report to the Joint Constitutional Review Committee (JCRC) tabled November 15, 2018.

Latin Vulgate

A Latin translation of the Bible authorised and used by the Roman Catholic Church.

Levitation

The rising of physical bodies into the air, object floating; supernatural power that overcomes gravity.

Ley Lines

'Ley', 'lea' - 'A clearing'. 'Heilige Linien' to the Germans 'Fairy paths' to the Irish, 'Dragon Lines' to the Chinese, 'Spirit Lines' to Peruvians and 'Song Paths' to the Australian Aborigines - and so on around the world.

Liberalism

In general, a political and social philosophy advocating individual freedom, a form of government that is representative, progress and reform, and the protection of civil liberties. In South Africa the term has acquired an additional meaning, namely to foster the interests of the Africans and to work for a more just society.

Liberation

(1) The attainment of equal rights or full social or economic opportunities for a particular group. (2) The release of a country from occupation by an enemy. (3) The attainment of national independence.

Lijdensgeschiedenis

Dutch word referring to a history of suffering and hardship.

Local Government

A system of administration for small political units such as counties, towns, etc. Local governments form part of the national political framework of a country but do not have the same powers as states in a *federation*. Local authorities handle matters such as traffic regulation, parks and recreation, local health services.

Logos

Defined as 'Word'. Logos (log-oss) Strong's #3056: A Transmission of thought, communication, a word of explanation, an utterance, discourse, divine revelations, talk, statement, instruction, an oracle, divine promise, divine doctrine, divine declaration.

Magi Magi, Magic, Magician

Priestclass of Medes and Persians, offered sacrifices, interpreted dreams, and omens, and acquainted with all modern and ancient arts of spiritism.

Magic

An extraordinary power or influence seemingly from a supernatural force. Thus, it is achieving worldly aims through supernatural means.

Magna Carta

A charter of liberty signed 1215 by King John of England guarantee the right of people. Often seen as the beginning of the rule of law in England.

Magog

The demonic strongman ruling over communistic countries

Mammon

The word *mammon* comes from the Greek word '*mammonas*'. Similar root words exist in Hebrew, Latin, Aramaic, Chaldean and Syriac. They all translate to "money, wealth, and material possessions. In biblical culture the word *mammon* often carried a negative connotation. It was sometimes used to describe all lusts and excesses: gluttony, greed, and dishonest worldly gain. Ultimately, *mammon* described an idol of materialism, which many trusted as a foundation for their world and philosophy. While the King James Version retains the term *Mammon* in Matthew 6:24, other versions translate the Greek as "money," "wealth," or "riches."

Manchurian Candidate.

The idea of programming a hypnotically conditioned, drug-controlled assassin to kill was born in a novel and a motion picture. The *Manchurian Candidate* is a novel by Richard Condon, first published in 1959. It is a political thriller about the son of a prominent U.S. political family who is brainwashed into being an unwitting assassin for a Communist conspiracy. It is a summary of a conspiracy theory, not a statement of fact. James Gregory played the title role in the 1962 film *The Manchurian Candidate*, in which a political candidate is brainwashed by Communists to become an unwitting assassin. Are some killers, such as Lee Harvey Oswald, types of "Manchurian candidates"?

Mangosuthu Buthelezi

Zulu Chief, founder and leader of the Inkatha Freedom Party. A political party originally home to predominantly Zulu supporters.

Manifestation

Is a revealing of a demon.

Medium

An occultist who is indwelt bodily as a dwelling place for spirits.

Mercantilism

Economic policy of most European governments from the 16 to 18 centuries. A period signifying the establishment of national states. The policy aimed to create prosperity and power through strict control over gold and trade. Trade were managed by a system of tariffs to achieve the maximum export potential whilst import was limited. Industrial development remained a focus point.

Mercy Seat

An object, a type of lid or covering, made of pure gold, that rested on the top of the Ark of the Covenant. It represented the Holy presence of God and associated with the day of Atonement in the Old Testament. What was the mercy seat on the Ark of the Covenant? The mercy seat symbolised God's throne.

Mesmerism (Hypnotism)

Essentially healing diseases by charms or rituals.

Messianism, Jewish Messianism

The term messianism denotes a movement, or a system of beliefs and ideas, centred on the expectation of the advent of a messiah (derived from the Hebrew *mashiah*, "the anointed one.")

Metaphysics

Study of knowledge and order of the spirit world; forces beyond our normal five senses.

Mfengu

Fingo. Amafengu. Are Bantu people, originally closely related to the Zulu people, but now often considered to have assimilated to the Xhosa people whose language they now speak. Historically they achieved considerable renown for their military ability in the frontier wars. The name amaMfengu means "wanderers". The Fingo nation (like the Bhaca, Bhele, Hluvi and Zizi) was formed from the tribes that were broken up and dispersed by Shaka and his Zulu armies in the Mfecane wars.

Middle Ages

A term which came into use in the 17th century for the period A.D. 400-1500 in European history, i.e. between the decline and fall of the western Roman

Empire and the fall of Constantinople to the Turks. The period was characterised by monasticism, the *Crusades*, *Gothic art*, *feudalism* and Islamic supremacy in learning, and it ended with the decline of Christendom and the beginning of the *Renaissance*.

Mishna

The Jewish oral law passed on from rabbi to rabbi and finally codified 200 A.D.

Molech

A Pagan god

Monism

The doctrine that the person consists of only a single substance, or that there is no crucial difference between mental and physical events or properties.

Monolith

A very large, upright piece of stone, especially one that was put in place in ancient times.

Monotheism

The word originates from the Greek 'monos', meaning 'one' and 'theos' meaning 'god'. Monotheism is a religion or belief system involving a single God that is omnipresent, omniscient, ultimately good. Christianity, Judaism, Islam and Sikhism.

Morphological phenomenology

The classification of various types and structures that arise from an examination of the data.

mtDNA

An extranuclear double-stranded DNA found exclusively in mitochondria that in most eukaryotes is a circular molecule and is maternally inherited — abbreviation mtDNA.

Multiparty Negotiations

Negotiating forum to establish a new constitutional dispensation following the deadlock reached by CODESA in 1992. In March 1993 negotiations were resumed at the World Trade Centre, Kempton Park, with 26 parties present. These included the *Conservative Party*, the *Pan Africanist Congress*, the kwaZulu government, the Afrikaner Volksunie and traditional leaders. The *Inkatha Freedom Party* later joined in, but *AZAPO* refused to take part. In November 1993 an agreement was reached about the most important constitutional issues. See *CODESA; transitional constitution*.

Muslims

Followers of Islam.

Muti (Muthi)

A Zulu word meaning medicine. Medicine, not according to Western interpretation but relating to medicine manufactured in a traditional manner, believed to hold supernatural power. The ingredients could include a combination of leaves, roots, herbs, seawater, animal and human body parts etc. The Muti is prepared by traditional healers for application externally (rubbed on the skin or applied to wounds) as well as for consumption. Muti is strongly associated with ancestor veneration and the casting of spells. African "Muti murders"

Myriad

Ten thousand.

Narrative Research

A term that subsumes a group of approaches that in turn rely on the written or spoken words or visual representation of individuals. These approaches typically focus on the lives of individuals as told through their own stories.

Nama

People of Namibian and Cape origin. They speak Nama, a *Khoisan* language.

Narrative

Analysis of Qualitative Data - Design and Method

Natal astrology

The system of astrology based upon the concept that each individual's personality or path in life can be determined by constructing a natal chart for the exact date, time, and location of a person's birth.

Natal Indian Congress (NIC)

Radical political organisation opposing racial *discrimination*. Established in 1894 by Mahatma Gandhi, it originally promoted the interests of middle-class Indians, but in the course of the 20th century it became increasingly involved in opposing *segregation* and *apartheid*. Together with the *Transvaal Indian Congress*, the NIC formed the *South African Indian Congress* in 1920 which became part of the *Congress Alliance* in 1952. Having been moribund for a period of time, it was revived in 1971 to fill the place of the South African Indian Congress which had been severely constrained by the government. Since the 1980s the NIC has been allied to the *UDF* and *ANC*.

Nation

A term which usually refers to a body of people associated with a particular territory and who, in most cases, are of common descent, language and history, and form a society under one government. There are, however, various deviations from this definition - for example, people who differ as far as historical development, cultural background or language are concerned, although sharing a common country; or people of common descent who are dispersed, such as those Chinese not living within the boundaries of China.

National Assembly

One of the two houses of parliament established in accordance with the *transitional constitution* which was accepted in November 1993. The National Assembly has 400 members, elected by *proportional representation*. Half of them are elected on a national ballot, and the other half on a regional basis.

National Convention

Gathering of delegates in 1906-09 from the four colonies that drafted a *constitution* for the *Union of South Africa*. The delegates from the four colonies dealt with key issues, such as form of government, official language, *franchise* and a capital. There were differences regarding the franchise issue and that of a capital, and both were resolved by means of

compromise. It was decided that the existing systems in the colonies would continue under Union, although parliament would consist of whites only. Regarding the capital, the decision was that Pretoria would be the administrative capital, Cape Town the parliamentary capital, while Bloemfontein would be the seat of the appellate division of the Supreme Court.

National Forum

Umbrella organisation fostering the ideals of *Black Consciousness*. Through the initiatives of the *Azanian People's Organisation*, the Forum was formed in 1983, consisting of representatives of more than 100 black organisations. It rejected the 1983 constitution, but was also opposed to the *African National Congress* because of its commitment to multiracialism and its ties with *communism*.

National Intelligence Service (NIS)

Intelligence advisory body to the government consisting of a network of informers both inside and outside the country.

Nationalism

(1) The feeling (sometimes exaggerated) of belonging to a group united by common racial, linguistic and historical ties, and usually identified with a particular territory. (2) *Ideology* which regards the *nation-state* as the ideal form of political organisation.

National Party (NP)

Political party established in 1914 to promote JBM Hertzog's 'two stream' policy and that of 'South Africa first'. Having ruled in coalition with the *South African Labour Party* from 1924-33, *coalition* and *fusion* with the *South African Party* followed. DF Malan and his followers opposed fusion and re-established the NP (known as the 'Purified' NP). Two major objectives were a *republic* and total separation of races, contrary to Hertzog's *segregation* policy which they saw as a failure. Assisted by the *Afrikaner Party*, the NP came into power in 1948. During the following decades it implemented *apartheid*, a policy built on segregation and refined by Afrikaner ideologists, in all spheres of South African life. The result was increasing internal resistance which was met by repressive measures, as well as international isolation. In 1961 its second objective was attained when South Africa became a republic. After 1966 it began to reform its racial policy without changing the basic structures of apartheid; it also attempted to improve

international relations, especially with Africa. This caused a party split in 1969 and again in 1982, when ultra-conservatives broke away. A new *constitution*, accepted in 1983, provided for 'Coloured' and Indian houses in parliament, but subsequent resistance by Africans, violence and economic decline, largely contributed to the decision by F.W. de Klerk in February 1990 to unban all banned organisations and enter into negotiations with all South African political groups with a view to a new political dispensation. In the general election of April 1994, the NP obtained 20,4 per cent of the national vote which gave the party 82 seats in the *National Assembly*. At the provincial level, it only managed to gain control of the Western Cape, having obtained substantial 'Coloured' support in that province.

National Peace Accord

Agreement to establish peace in the country, signed on September 14, 1991 by all significant political organisations. Three main bodies, the National Peace Committee, the National Peace Secretariat, and the National Peace Commission, were created in order to facilitate the accord. Up to the end of 1993 the accord had not been able to stem the general violence, especially in Natal/KwaZulu and the East Rand townships.

National Union of Mineworkers (NUM)

Union of African mineworkers and a founder member of the *Congress of South African Trade Unions* (COSATU). Founded in 1982, the NUM was the first union for mineworkers since the disintegration of the *African Mineworkers' Union* after the 1946 strike by African mineworkers. Under the leadership of Cyril Ramaphosa, its general secretary at the time, the NUM has grown considerably challenged the *Chamber of Mines* on various issues, including wages, mine safety, and *migrant labour*. In 1986 the NUM had a membership of over 360 000. Following a large strike in 1987, which weakened the NUM, the trade union has become more moderate.

Native

A person who in fact is or is generally accepted as a member of any aboriginal race or tribe of Africa.

Natives Land Act

(1913) Legislation to regulate land possession in South Africa. It stipulated that Africans could not acquire land outside the existing reserves and non-Africans could not obtain land within the reserves. In terms of the Act the land available to Africans comprised only 7 per cent of the total area of the

country, and the Act envisaged additional land. The Beaumont Commission, appointed to investigate the matter, indeed made recommendations as to where additional land could be found, but its recommendations were only implemented in 1936, providing for much less land than originally allocated by the commission.

Natives Urban Areas Act

(1923) Legislation to provide for segregated residential areas for Africans in urban areas controlled by municipalities. The original bill provided for full property rights but this was not incorporated into the final act. The Act was amended in subsequent years mainly to tighten control over African influx into urban areas.

NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization)

An international alliance that consists of 30 member states from North America and Europe. It was established at the signing of the North Atlantic Treaty on April 4, 1949

NATO Member nations

Albania, Belgium, Bulgaria, Canada, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Montenegro, the Netherlands, North Macedonia, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Turkey, United Kingdom, and the United States.

Nazareth Democratic Movement

Aligned with the Shembe Nazareth Church. Was originally formed in 2003 by members of the Nazareth Baptist Church (Shembe). Now it has decided to open its membership to all Christians.

Ndebele

Matebele; Matabele. One of the two major groups of Africans in *Zimbabwe*. A *Nguni* people, the Ndebele were part of the *Zulu*, before Mzilikazi, a general of Shaka, moved westward with some followers. The Ndebele eventually settled in *Southern Rhodesia* (now Zimbabwe) from where Mzilikazi and his son, Lobengula, undertook several raids into southern Zambia. In 1888 the *British South Africa Company* (BSAC) signed the *Rudd Concession* with Lobengula, thereby obtaining the mineral rights of the territory, and when Lobengula died in 1894 without a successor, the BSAC effectively took control of the region.

Nebula

A *nebula* is a giant cloud of dust and gas in space. Some *nebulae* (more than one *nebula*) come from the gas and dust thrown out by the explosion of a dying star, such as a supernova. Other *nebulae* are regions where new stars are beginning to form. For this reason, some *nebulae* are called “star nurseries. Available at: <https://spaceplace.nasa.gov/nebula/en/>

Necklace

A tyre soaked in petrol, forced over a person’s head and shoulders and set on fire in order to bum the person to death. The method has been used in South Africa particularly in the 1980s and mainly by Africans to punish alleged government ‘collaborators’ or ‘informers’.

Necromancy

The summoning of conjuring of the dead for divination, prophecy, or magical purposes

Neo-Hinduism

Consisting of reform movements which arose in India during the 19th century was also practices later

Nephilim, Rephaim or Anakim

Children of the sons of God

New Covenant

The New Covenant of the New Testament entails God’s promise to forgive sin in order to restore fellowship with those who accept His offer. Jesus Christ is the mediator of the New Covenant and his death the foundation for the promise.

Nguni

One of the main ethno-linguistic groups of *Bantu* peoples in *southern Africa*. The Nguni migrated south from the area north of the Limpopo River in the 15th century along with the Sotho peoples. The Nguni mostly settled in the region east of the Drakensberg Mountains

Nkosi Sikelel’ iAfrika.

Xhosa for ‘God bless Africa’. National anthem of the Transkei and Ciskei and also used by the *African National Congress*. Together

with 'Die Stem van Suid Afrika' 'Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika' became the national anthem of South Africa after the inception of a democratic government in May 1994.

Occult

"secret, not divulged," from L. *occultus* "hidden, concealed, secret." It is to "cover over, conceal," "to hide." Meaning, "not apprehended by the mind, beyond the range of understanding" is from 1540s.

Oceania

Collective name for the islands scattered throughout most of the Pacific Ocean. The term, in its widest sense, embraces the entire insular region between Asia and the Americas. A more common definition excludes the Ryukyu, Kuril, and Aleutian Islands and the Japan archipelago.

OM (Ω)

(i) Telling's definition: "Vibrational frequency or ohm shape. The horseshoe shape is often depicted as one of the six syllables of OM. The OM is regarded as the prime sound of creation, because of its vibrational frequency."

(ii) Omega is the 24th and late letter in the Greek alphabet.

(iii) Alfa (A) and Omega (Ω) are Christian symbols representing God as used in the book of Revelations. It is also interpreted as a paraphrase of Isaiah 44: where Jesus stated "I am the first and the last, apart from me there is no God. (NKJV).

Ontology

Study of forces beyond the five senses – spiritual existence.

Oracle

"Speaking Place". A revelation of message from supernatural through a medium.

Organisation of African Unity (OAU)

Umbrella organization consisting of African countries. Established in May 1963 and based in Addis Ababa, the main aims of the OAU have been to promote African unity, eradicate *colonialism*, emancipate still dependent territories, and improve political, cultural and economic conditions in Africa.

Ossewa-Brandwag (OB)

Afrikaans; English: 'Oxwagon Sentinels'. Afrikaner national-socialist organisation established in 1938 and inspired by the revival of *Afrikaner nationalism* resulting from the commemoration of the *Great Trek*. Growing in numbers, and claiming to represent the Afrikaner in all walks of life, the OB clashed with DF Malan in 1941, and thereafter became alienated from the *National Party*. The defeat of Germany in the *Second World War* largely contributed to its disintegration in the late 1940s.

Other Tongues

The experience of 'glossolalia'. A term derived from the Greek 'glossa' (tongue) and 'Laleo' (to speak). It functions as a sign of the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit, affirming His abiding presence and assuring the believer of an invigorated living witness. 1) Human language unknown to the speaker but known by others. 2) "Tongues of Angels" (1 Corinthians 13:1) also refers to supernatural beings.

Paimon

A Great King, and very obedient unto LUCIFER. He appeared in the form of a Man sitting upon a Dromedary with a Crown most glorious upon his head. This Spirit can teach all Arts and Sciences, and other secret things. He can discover unto thee what the Earth is, and what holdeth it up in the Waters; and what Mind is, and where it is; or any other thing thou mayest desire to know. He giveth Dignity, and confirmed the same.

Palaeontology

The study of the history of life on Earth as found on fossils of plant, animals (including human), fungi, bacteria and single cell organisms.

Pan-Africanism

A belief that people from Africa and their descendants (= younger related people) should be united, or a movement to achieve such unity.

Pan-Africanism

Movement for political unity in Africa. Since the first pan-African congress in 1900, the movement has been largely inspired by the Jamaican Marcus Garvey and black Americans, notably WEB Du Bois. Various other conferences followed (1919, 1921, 1923, 1927 and 1945). The first conference to be held in Africa was the one in Accra in 1958. As African

countries have attained independence, the *Organisation of African Unity* has become the most important instrument for the expression of pan-Africanism.

Pan Africanist Congress (PAC)

African liberation movement and political party. The PAC was established in 1959 by ANC members who were opposed to co-operation with any organisation which included whites. It has also been committed to *social democracy*. Banned in 1960, it went underground and established a military wing, *Poqo*, which subsequently became involved in acts of *terrorism*, including murder. As an organisation in exile, the PAC was overshadowed by the ANC as far as support from the international world was concerned. It was unbanned in 1990, and since then its military wing, the *Azanian People's Liberation Army (APLA)* has launched attacks on white civilians, although the PAC has committed itself to peaceful negotiations regarding a constitutional settlement in South Africa. It participated in general election of April 1994 but received only 1,2 per cent of the national vote.

Panentheistic religions

Involve believing that God is a part of the universe as well as transcending it.

Panspermia

A Greek word that translates literally as "seeds everywhere". The panspermia hypothesis states that the "seeds" of life exist all over the Universe and can be propagated through space from one location to another. Some believe that life on Earth may have originated through these "seeds". Mechanisms for panspermia include the deflection of interstellar dust by solar radiation pressure and extremophile microorganisms traveling through space within an asteroid, meteorite or comet.

Panspermia Hypothesis

The panspermia hypothesis suggests life began on Earth when the "seeds" of life, already present in the universe, arrived here from space. How did these seeds, or microbes, get here? Proposed transport methods include meteorites, comets, and spacecraft.

Pantheism or Naturalism

The universe itself is god.

Papal Bull

Papal bull is a special kind of patent or charter issued by a pope. It is named after the seal (bullae) that is appended to the end to authenticate it.

Parapsychology

PSI - Especially study of demonic activity.

Pass laws

Laws aimed to restrict movement. A pass is a identity document which needed to be available for inspection all the time. The pass specified the areas the individual was allowed to travel in or through. Movement without the pass/identity document implied trespassing the law.

Pedi

Bapedi. *Sotho* group that settled in the Steelpoort River Valley in the 18th century and established its power in the region. Temporarily disrupted by the *Mfecane*, its power was revived under Sekwati and later Sekhukhune. By the 1870s it controlled considerable parts of eastern Transvaal. When Transvaal *Afrikaners* began to encroach on territory which the Pedi claimed, armed conflict followed. The Transvaal commandos were unable to subjugate the Pedi, but their independence was ended in November 1879 by the British.

People's Education

A model of education which is seen by those opposed to so-called 'Bantu education' as an alternative education system in a post-apartheid South Africa.

Pharmakeus/Pharmacia

Strong's #5332: pharmakeus (pronounced far-mak-yoos') from pharmakon (a drug, i.e. spell-giving potion); a druggist ("pharmacist") or poisoner, i.e. (by extension) a magician: -sorcerer.

Phenomenology

The study of the development of human consciousness and self-awareness as a preface to or a part of philosophy.

The focus of phenomenologic inquiry is what people experience in regard to some phenomenon or other and how they interpret those experiences. A

phenomenological research study is a study that attempts to understand people's perceptions, perspectives and understandings of a particular situation (or phenomenon).

Philosophy

(from Greek, by way of Latin, *philosophia*, "love of wisdom") The critical examination of the grounds for fundamental beliefs and an analysis of the basic concepts employed in the expression of such beliefs. Philosophical inquiry is a central element in the intellectual history of many historical civilizations.

Physiognomy

The assessment of a person's character or personality from their outer appearance, especially the face.

Pneuma

Wind, spirit (πνεῦμα) pneuma, pnyoo'-maj. A current of air, that is, breath (blast) or a breeze, by analogy or figuratively a spirit that is, (human the rational soul, (by implication)Vital principle, mental disposition, etc. or (superhuman) an angel, daemon, or (divine) God, Christ's spirit, the Holy Spirit: -ghost, life, spirit, (-ual, -ually), mind.

Poor Whites

White *Afrikaners* who were landless as a result of land shortage, the uneconomical subdivision of farms, and the destruction brought about by the *South African War*. In towns and cities, where they fled in an attempt to find employment, they found it impossible to compete for unskilled and semi-skilled jobs with Africans who were prepared to maintain a much lower standard of living. The *Pact* government introduced measures to relieve their plight, whilst many poor whites found employment in the manufacturing sector. By the end of the 1930s the poor white problem was largely solved.

Polytheism

The word originates from 'poly' meaning 'many' and 'theism' meaning 'god'. Polytheism is the worship of many gods. Mormons and Hindus fall in this category.

Polytheism

The doctrine of or belief in more than one god or in many gods.

Pontus Maximus

The head priest of the Roman state religion.

Precognition

Foreknowledge of the occurrence of events which cannot be inferred by present knowledge.

Pro-choice

Advocates the legal right of a woman to choose whether or not she will have an abortion.

Projection

Partial or complete separation of soul and soul travel.

Proportional Representation

An electoral system which ensures that the minority votes are not totally lost, and that each party will be given a number of seats in proportion to the number of votes its candidates receive.

Protestantism

One of the main divisions of Christianity. Basically, the term applies to that part of Western Christianity which does not acknowledge the authority of the Pope and emphasises Christians' responsibility to God rather than to the Church and its sacraments.

Pseudo Religion

A generally pejorative term applied to a non-mainstream belief system or philosophy which is functionally similar to a religious movement.

Psychology

The science of mind and behaviour. The mental or behavioural characteristics of an individual or group b: the study of mind and behaviour in relation to a particular field of knowledge or activity.

Purgatory

The place where departed souls go to prepare to fully enter the presence of God. Nothing unclean will enter the presence of God in Heaven. Most people die with venial sins or other transgressions lingering on their souls. Catholicism's hold the belief of a living communion between the living members and departed members who are in the glory of Heaven or who are yet being purified after their death.

Quaker Movement

The Religious Society of Friends, also referred to as the Quaker Movement, was founded in England in the 17th century by George Fox. He and other early Quakers, or Friends, were persecuted for their beliefs, which included the idea that the presence of God exists in every person. Quakers rejected elaborate religious ceremonies, didn't have official clergy and believed in spiritual equality for men and women.

Quaker Movement South Africa

It is speculated that the first members on South African soil were whale catchers who visited Table Bay around 1800. Smaller groups gathered for worship as they numbers increased. Assistance were rendered with Emily Hobhouse Reports in the concentration camps during the second Boer War. Reports were communicated directly to the London Parliament in 1901. Official recognition in South Africa were received in 1946.

Racial segregation

A policy of separating people. In South Africa various forms of segregation were applied from the 17th century, but it was only in the 20th century that segregation was used in a systematic way by means of legislation. Segregation was the racial policy of all the governments from 1910 to 1948, before the *National Party* government started to carry out its *apartheid* policy.

Racism

Also racialism. A doctrine or belief that differences among human races determine cultural or individual achievements. The idea is often held that some races are superior to others, or that it is justifiable to treat people differently according to their racial origins.

Redemption

'Apolutrosis': A release secured by the payment of a ransom, deliverance setting free. The word in secular Greek described a conqueror releasing prisoners, a master ransoming a slave, and redemptions from an alien's yoke. In the new Testament it designates deliverance through Christ from evil and the penalty of sin. The price paid to purchase that liberation was His shed blood.

Referendum

The procedure whereby a decision on a specific political issue is referred to the electorate for settlement by direct vote.

Refugees

People who have fled from danger, resulting mostly from religious or political persecution or war. The term was originally applied to the French Protestants who went to England after the revocation of the *Edict of Nantes* in 1685. Today, the term refers to all people who are forced to leave their country as a result of war or oppression. In 1951 the *United Nations* established the office of the High Commissioner for Refugees.

Religion

While theology refers primarily to the knowledge of God's truth, religion denotes the practice of it.

Region of Death

The dwelling place of those who have departed from this life.

Remonstrantie

Jan van Riebeeck came equipped with a document called the 'Remonstrantie', drawn up in the Netherlands in 1649, which was a recommendation on the suitability of the Cape for this VOC project.

Rene Descartes (1596-1650)

French mathematician and philosopher. called the father of modern philosophy. He is known for one of the best-known quotations in philosophy: "Cogito, ergo sum" ("I think, therefore I am").

Republic

A state not governed by a king, e.g. the Republic of South Africa.

Republic of Natalia

Area bordered by the Black Umfolosi, the Drakensberg and the Umzimvubu which was declared a *republic* by the *Voortrekkers* in Natal in 1838. In 1843 Britain annexed the area.

Rex Deus Treasure

Titus, son of Emperor Vespasian campaigned in Judea, besieged and almost destroyed Jerusalem in 70AD. The Jewish Elders hid their treasures and fled to Europe where many married into noble families. Twenty-four became patriarchs, known as the “Rex Deus” families. The original knights of the nine Knights Templar were either born or related to the Rex Deus families.

Rhodomancy

Dowsing or Water witching. A method whereby a dowser uses a special device called a divining rod to locate water, minerals and other underground material. Dowsing in modern times is also used to determine the gender of unborn babies. Also used to locate people, objects or substances and to diagnose illnesses.

Robben Island

Small island near Cape Town, widely known for many years as a maximum security prison. Originally the island was utilised as a penal settlement, later as an infirmary, and in the 1940s as a defence post for the Cape Town harbour. In 1965 the Prisons Department took control of it and political prisoners were kept on the desolate island. Until the early 1990s many eminent African nationalist leaders, including Nelson Mandela, Robert Sobukwe, Govan Mbeki and Walter Sisulu, were imprisoned there.

Rivonia Trial

(1963-64) Trial of *Umkhonto we Sizwe* leaders, following a raid by the *security police* on the headquarters of the organisation in Rivonia in July 1963. In June 1964 Nelson Mandela, who had been arrested before the Rivonia raid, and other *African National Congress* and *Transvaal Indian Congress* leaders were found guilty of planning and committing acts of sabotage and conspiracy to overthrow the government. Five of the ten

accused, including Mandela and Walter Sisulu, were sentenced to life imprisonment.

Rustenburg Declaration

A document by the National Conference of Church Leaders held in South Africa in November 1990, calling for the end of Apartheid and the creation of a democratic society.

San/Bushmen

Hunter-gatherers of *southern Africa*. The nomadic San who are short-statured peoples with a distinct 'click' language, are descendants of the *Stone Age* peoples and were the early inhabitants of southern Africa. They are also called 'Bushmen' or Sonqua Hottentots by whites. Today they are found mostly in the Kalahari Desert of Botswana and Namibia.

Sanathanism

Focusing on the communal and homebased worship of the traditional Hindu deities

Sand River Convention

Agreement in 1852 between the British authorities and the Voortrekkers, which declared the Voortrekkers north of the Vaal River free from British control. In the following year the *South African Republic*, the Boer republic which existed until 1900, came into being.

Sangoma

Traditional healer of Africa

Sanskrit

An ancient Indo-European language of India, in which the Hindu scriptures and classical Indian epic poems are written and from which many northern Indian (Indic) languages are derived.

Sanskritisation

The giving up of oral-based religious practices in preference for worship forms that include the use of the Sanskrit language and its texts in worship.

Satan

Means "adversary." Satan is the enemy of God. He wants to destroy everything God has created. He is also called "the devil" (James 4:7), "the evil one" (1 John 5:18-19), "the prince of this world" (John 14:30) and "the god of this age" (2 Corinthians 4:4). Satan brought evil into the world.

Satanism

Worship of or religious allegiance to Satan.

Satanology

The doctrine of Satan.

Scientology

A set of religious beliefs created by science fiction writer L. Ron Hubbard. Scientologists believe that people are immortal alien beings (called THETANS) who have forgotten their true nature and are trapped on earth in a human body. Scientologists believe that each thetan has lived numerous past lives, both on earth in our physical bodies, and on other planets. Scientologists also believe that by undergoing a series of classes and teachings (called AUDITING by the church), people can free themselves of their human form and reclaim their true selves.

Scorched-earth policy

The act of an army destroying everything in an area such as food, buildings, or equipment that could be useful to an enemy.

Seance

A meeting of spiritists or spiritualists at which people attempt to make contact with the dead, especially through the agency of a medium.

Self determination

The right of a *nation* or people to choose its own form of government.

Separate development

A term coined by H.F. Verwoerd to qualify the policy of *apartheid*. In Verwoerd's view, it also meant that each group had the opportunity to develop separately according to its particular nature and requirements.

Sephiroth

In the cabala, the first ten numerals, as attributes or intelligences and emanations of the Deity, compared to rays of light, and identified with Scripture names of God.

Septuagint

The Greek Translation of the Old Testament originally written in Hebrew.

Shafi

One of the four schools of religious law within Sunni Islam.

Shaman

A person believed to achieve various powers through trance or ecstatic religious experience.

Sharpeville

African township near Vereeniging (Gauteng). On March 21, 1960 an *anti-pass* demonstration by members of the *Pan Africanist Congress* was counteracted by undisciplined police action that resulted in the death of 69 Africans. Following this incident and protest marches in other parts of the country, the government declared a *state of emergency* and banned the *African National Congress* and the Pan Africanist Congress. World opinion severely condemned the racial policies of South Africa after the incident and a temporary economic slump prevailed.

Shechinah Glory

The Hebrew expression for the presence of God dwelling on earth.

Shtiebel

The Yiddish diminutive form for shtub, which means house. IT commonly refers to a small, informal house of prayer.

Sigils

Ancient-Symbols.com Sigil is a Latin term which refers to a type of pictorial signature of a demon. However, its modern usage, this term is applied in the context of chaos magic that symbolizes the magician's desired outcome. These symbols were designed for magical purposes in allowing a small proportionate of people to create strong magical talismans.

Sister Cities International

What is a Sister City? A sister city, or state relationship is a broadbased, long-term partnership between two communities in two countries. A relationship is officially recognized after the highest elected or appointed official from both communities to sign off on an agreement to become sister cities.

Skokiaan

Alcoholic beverage which is popular in African townships. It is usually brewed from fermented cereals, to which potent ingredients such as tobacco or methylated spirits added.

Slagtersnek Rebellion

December 15, 1815. Frederik Bezuidenhout owned a farm east of the Cape Colony. After reports surfaced that he was allegedly mistreating one of his Khoikhoi laborers, he was summoned to appear in a magistrate's court. After failing to make an appearance, an attempt was made to arrest him. Bezuidenhout fled to a nearby cave where he was later discovered and shot. The fact that he was shot by a Coloured soldier was said to be part of the reason that Bezuidenhout's brother, Hans, wanted to take revenge for his brother's death. Hans and his neighbor Hendrik Prinsloo planned an uprising against the British colonial government as they believed that the British favored Black and Coloured farmers over Afrikaner farmers. Burghers (farmers) in the surrounding areas were pressurized into joining this rebellion as Hans was said to have threatened them with death. On November 18, this rebel group met with the forces of the military commander at Slagtersnek. Twenty rebels surrendered, but Hans refused to do so. He died while resisting arrest. Those involved in the rebellion were tried in Uitenhage landdroos court on December 15, 1815. One of the rebels was reprieved by Lord Charles Somerset but the others, Cornelis Faber (43), Stefanus Cornelis Botma (43), his brother Abraham Carel Botma (29), Hendrik Frederik Prinsloo (32) and Theunis de Klerk, were sentenced to death. The remaining rebels were acquitted or banished. The execution of these rebels is as being a sore point with many Afrikaners and was cited as one of the reasons for the Great Trek. A monument in memory of the rebels was erected in 1919.

Slavery

At the Cape slaves were used on a large scale from the late 1650s. They came to the Cape as the result of organised importations from Delagoa Bay

and Madagascar in the 18th century, but were also brought as individuals in VOC ships from the East Indies. By the end of the century there were approximately 17 000 slaves at the Cape. Scarcity of labour during the first British occupation (1795-1803) and the Batavian Republic (1803-06) resulted in further importation. The British act which provided for the abolition of slavery in 1807 practically ended slavery at the Cape. When claims for compensation were submitted in the mid 1830s, there were 38 427 slaves at the Cape.

Sociology

A social science that studies human societies, their interactions, and the processes that preserves and changes them. It does this by examining the dynamics of constituent parts of societies such as institutions, communities, populations, and gender, racial, or age groups. Sociology also studies social status or stratification, social movements, and social change, as well as societal disorder in the form of crime, deviance, and revolution.

Sodom and Gomorrah

Notoriously sinful cities in the Biblical book of Genesis, destroyed by “sulfur and fire” because of their wickedness (Genesis 19:24). Sodom and Gomorrah along with the cities of Admah, Zeboiim, and Zoar (Bela) constituted the five “cities of the plain,”

Soothsayer

A person who predicts the future.

Solidarity

Political party for Indians established before the election of the *House of Delegates* in 1984. Its aims basically accorded with those of the *National People's Party* and it likewise enjoyed little support among Indians. After the 1989 elections it became the ruling party in the House of Delegates.

Sorcery

A form of magic which attempts to control or direct spirits.

Sotho

(1) A group of *Bantu* languages spoken by Africans in the interior of South Africa. (2) Bantu-speaking peoples of Africa. The Sothos are divided into

the Northern Sotho (among whom are the *Bapedi*), the Western Sotho (or *Tswana*) and Southern Sotho (among whom are the residents of Lesotho).

Soul travel

Similar to astral projection; in that a person leaves the body and travel to other locations called the 'astral plane' under guidance of a spirit guide or master. A 'silver cord' is said to form a connection with the physical body.

South Africa Act

(1909) Act of Union. Act by the British government which brought the *Union of South Africa* into being on May 31, 1910.

South African Bureau of Racial Affairs

Established on the initiative of the *Afrikaner Broederbond* in 1948, SABRA in subsequent years promoted by means of research and the organisation of congresses the idea of cordial race relations through *separate development*. It played a meaningful part in the development of the *apartheid* policy in the 1950s. In later years it turned against the *National Party's* policy of power sharing with 'Coloureds' and Indians, and by the late 1970s increasing numbers of right-wing *Afrikaners* associated themselves with SABRA.

South African Congress of Trade Unions

Umbrella trade union organisation. SACTU was established in 1955 to mobilise the African workers following the decision by the *Trade Union Congress of South Africa* (TUCSA) to accept only members of registered *trade unions*, which excluded Africans. Holding the view that trade unions should also be involved in politics, SACTU took part in the *Congress Alliance*. By the early 1960s, 46 unions were affiliated to SACTU and it had a membership of over 50 000 people of all races. Since the 1970s SACTU has operated underground, but has not managed to obtain as much support as during the first ten years of its existence.

South African Council of Churches (SACC)

Co-ordinating church organisation. Founded in 1968, the SACC has attempted to form closer ties between different denominations, but also played a significant part in providing a platform for church leaders to speak against political and social injustice and violence. It also encouraged the

negotiation process which started in 1990. In the period 1968-89 many of its leaders were detained or banned.

South African Indian Council

Administrative body for Indians set up by the government in 1964 as the National Indian Council and later renamed South African Indian Council. Originally consisting of nominated members only, in 1974 it was reconvened with half the members being nominated and the rest elected by Indians who were themselves elected members of official local Indian bodies. The institution was no success, mainly because there was a serious lack of credibility and recognition among the Indians themselves. As a result of a successful anti-SAIC campaign organised by the *Natal Indian Congress*, only ten per cent of the Indian voters cast their votes in the 1981 SAIC election. With the implementation of the 1983 *constitution*, the SAIC was incorporated into the *House of Delegates*.

South African Institute of Race Relations (SAIRR)

Politically independent body to promote contact and understanding between the different races in South Africa. Founded in 1929 with funds from the Carnegie Corporation and Phelps Stokes Fund, the SAIRR has traditionally been a liberal organisation which tried to influence governments to impose liberal reforms. It has also operated a scientific research unit which publishes information on various aspects of South African society.

South African Native Convention

Joint meeting of representatives of Africans from all the self-governing colonies in South Africa held in March 1909. Reacting to the draft *constitution* of Union, it accepted the principle but held Britain responsible for ensuring equal rights for whites and Africans and regarded the *colour bar* in the draft constitution as unacceptable.

South African Party (SAP)

1910-34. Established in 1910 through the amalgamation of three parties after the achievement of Union, the party stood primarily for the Botha-Smuts conciliation policy. It suffered a serious setback when Hertzog broke away in 1914 because of his view that the SAP's policies would not safeguard the Afrikaner's future. Amalgamation with the *Unionist Party* in 1921 temporarily saved the SAP, but the mineworkers' strike of 1922, together with other problems (mainly economic ones), caused its fall in

1924. In 1933 a *coalition* with Hertzog's *National Party* was formed and in the next year the two parties fused, forming the *United Party*.

Soweto

Soweto, a syllabic abbreviation for South Western Township. The establishment is linked with the discovery of gold in 1885. Within 4 years, Johannesburg developed into the second largest city of South Africa. More than half the population was black, including high numbers of migrant labourers. Soweto was developed as a racial segregated residential area.

Spiritism

The belief that the mediumistic phenomena is caused by spirits.

Spiritualism

Spiritism is a religious context.

Spiritual guide or Guru

A Guru is a person who is a Saint at the spiritual of 70% or above. According to Spiritual science, a person who is an authority in the field of Spirituality is known as a Guru. SSRF uses a scale between 1 and 100% to describe spiritual level. 1% would refer to the spiritual level of an inanimate object, while 100% would refer to the pinnacle of spiritual growth for a person, which is Self-Realisation or being one with God. The average spiritual level of a person in the present times is 20%.

Squatting

(1) The occupation of property without permission, lease or payment of rent.
(2) In the South African context, the term is mostly used to denote the African people in rural areas who lived on white-owned land and often had permission to cultivate the land. It also refers to people who build temporary shelters in urban areas.

State Capture

State capture, essentially parasitic plundering of public resources.

Stichomancy

Fortune telling by randomly selecting lines or passages from books, including the Bible.

Stone Age

The early period of human history prior to the Bronze and Iron Ages and characterised by the use of stone implements and weapons. The Stone Age is divided into the Early or Palaeolithic, the Middle or Mesolithic, and the New or Neolithic. The people of the Early Stone Age were hunters; those of the New Stone Age began to cultivate land and make pottery.

Succubus

A demon assuming female form for purpose of sexual relations.

Sufi Islam

Sufism is mystical and ascetic form of Islam.

Sui Generis

Constituting a class alone: unique, peculiar.

Sumerian Anunnaki

Ancient Sumerian texts define the Anunnaki as "those who from heaven to Earth came" described as royal blood descending from the heavens and in certain contexts, the fallen angels or Nephilim. The ancient Sumerians sometimes described these deities as proprietors of mineral extractions from Earth, using the human race to replenish invaluable resources on the angel's home planet according to some researchers. Anunnaki were a heavenly council of seven, which may be interpreted as the first known written record referencing organized sons of god. By historical accounts, the Anunnaki were the Gods and Goddesses who met occasionally in the heavens to indirectly determine the fate of mankind if by no fault of their own.

Sumerian Civilization

The origins of Sumerian civilization in Mesopotamia are still debated today, but archaeological evidence indicates that they established roughly a dozen city-states by the fourth millennium B.C.

Sumerian Tablets

Cuneiform, the earliest writing dates back to around 3,000 B.C.E. and was probably invented by the Sumerians, living in major cities with centralized economies in what is now southern Iraq. Writing, the recording of a spoken language, emerged from earlier recording systems at the end of the fourth

millennium. The first written language in Mesopotamia is called Sumerian. Most of the early tablets come from the site of Uruk, in southern Mesopotamia, and it may have been here that this form of writing was invented.

Super- naturalism

God or gods exist distinct and apart from the universe.

Superstitions

A widely held but unjustified belief in supernatural causation leading to certain consequences of an action or event, or a practice based on such a belief.

Swazi

Part of the *Nguni*-speaking peoples in *southern Africa*. The Swazi kingdom was established by Sobhuza after the *Mfecane* and named after his successor Mswati, who ruled from 1840-75. The Swazis' country, Swaziland, was a British *High Commission Territory* from 1902 until it became independent in 1968.

Taglock

Any item connecting the spell to the individual e.g. hair, photos, nails, saliva.

Talisman

Divining by charms.

Tanakh

An acronym referring to the traditional Jewish division of the Bible into the Torah (Teaching), Nevi'im (Prophets) and Ketuvim (Writings). Hebrew Bible: Torah, Prophets and Writings.

Targum

Aramaic: "Translation," or "Interpretation", any of several translations of the Hebrew Bible or portions of it into the Aramaic language.

Tenderpreneur

A neologism in vogue South Africa. A politically well-connected individual who assist to secure tenders and services at a very prosperous commission

rate. The content of the tender or services are supplied I part, or not at all, or at inflated prices.

Terrorism

Strategy by *activists* to achieve political ends by creating fear through bombing, assassination, kidnapping and other violent methods. Usually civilian people and institutions, and not the military or the police, are the main targets.

Tswana

Western branch of the *Sotho*, living in the Northern Cape, North West Province and Botswana (formerly Bechuanaland). The Tswana people, who constitute the largest part of the population, are divided into eight separate 'merefe' (tribes). In 1966 the Tswana north of the Molopo River received their independence from Britain, whereas those within the borders of South Africa became part of the national state *Bophuthatswana*, which became 'independent' in 1977, but was reincorporated into South Africa in 1994.

The Cult of Moloch

The Cult of Moloch. Evidence concerning Moloch worship in ancient Israel is found in the legal, as well as in the historical and prophetic literature of the Bible. In the Pentateuch, the laws of the Holiness Code speak about giving or passing children to Moloch (Leviticus 18:21, 20:2–4) and the law in Deuteronomy speaks of "passing [one's] son or daughter through fire" (18:10). Although Moloch is not named in the Deuteronomy passage, it is likely that his cult was the object of the prohibition.

The Relevant Pentecostal Witness

A document focusing on the Pentecostal stance against apartheid.

Theology

A Study of religious faith, practice, and experience; especially the study of God and of God's relation to the world.

Theology

"Theology" means the study of God, of religious doctrines and of matters pertaining to Divinity." The word derives for two Greek words: "Theos" meaning "God" and "Logos" meaning "Word, or Discourse". Theology is a systematic and logical arrangement of certified facts relating to God and His

Word presented in an orderly and logical manner. While theology refers primarily to the knowledge of God's truth, religion denotes the practice of it.

- **Biblical Theology:** Biblical theology traces the progress of truth through the Books of the Bible, seeing the various manners in which each of the writers presented important doctrines.

- **Dogmatic Theology:** This branch deals with dogma as set forth and formulated in church creeds. The difference between dogma and doctrine should be noticed:

- Dogma is man's statement of a truth set forth, as in a creed.
- Doctrine is God's revelation of truth as found in the Scriptures.

- **Exegetical Theology:** "Exegesis" means "to lead out, to guide out, to draw out". In theology it refers to the analysis and interpretation of Scripture. Exegetical theology is concerned with Biblical languages, Biblical archaeology, Biblical introduction and Biblical hermeneutics.

- **Historical Theology:** Historical theology traces Biblical history, church history, and the history of doctrine.

- **Pastoral or Practical Theology:** Pastoral or practical theology deals with pastoral work, Christian education, church administration etc. Its goal is the practical application of theology in the regeneration, edification and education of man.

- **Systematic Theology:** Systematic theology concerns itself with the orderly arrangement into topics of the doctrines concerning God, Man, Angels, Sin and Salvation. It is a systemization of the major fundamental doctrines of Bible theology.

Theophanies/ Christophanies

The manifestation of Jesus Christ as an angel referred to in scripture as "the Angel of Lord". Richard add "human form."

Theophany

The appearance of God in various forms.

Three Rondawels

Three round mountain tops with slightly pointed tops, very similar to the traditional round or oval African homestead mad with local materials called rondawel. They are also called 'Three sisters.'

Tithe

To give a tithe means that you give a tenth of your income to your church. Tithes are generally given throughout the entire year.

Tower

The Biblical significance of a tower: A Tower resembles self-worship, or the love of self -which is arrogance and pride. The love of self is described by cedars, oaks, mountains, hills and towers that are high and lifted up.

Trance

Form of ESP: Greek "a condition in which consciousness and all natural senses are withheld" the soul becomes susceptible only to a particular vision.

Transgression

Parabaino. Abandoning a trust, departing, stepping aside, overstep, violation, rebellion, aberration, apostacy, disobedience, deviation from an original and true direction. In order to go his own way. Judas abandoned his position of service as one of the Twelve.

Treason Trail

A series of judicial hearings which took place from December 1956 to March 1961, after a charge of high treason had been brought against a number of left-wing political figures accused of committing or promoting politically-motivated sabotage; any one of these hearings, especially the final trial of the thirty accused. Of 156 people arrested in this connection during December 1956, 91 were charged, but only 30 were tried. During the trial, one of the accused died and one fled the country; the others were acquitted, and charges against the remaining 61 were dropped.

Treaty-of- Amiens-1802

The treaty was signed by Britain, France, Spain and the Batavian Republic (Netherland) achieving peace for one month during the Napoleon war.

Treaty of Amiens

A peace treaty that temporarily ended ware between France and Britain during the French revolutionary wars, signed on March 25, 1802 at Amiens France.

Trekboer

An Afrikaans translation referring to farmers (boere) that relocate or move (trek) from time to time when needed to find new pastures etc.

Trekker

Referring to emigrant. 'Trek' the Afrikaans word for relocation. Voortrekker original referred to those emigrants who left the Cape first - the Trichardt group in particular. Voortrekker became the generic term for all the emigrants relocating to the interior of South Afrika. The monument build in their honour is also named the 'Voortrekker Monument'.

Trekkers

A reference to the White Afrikaner/Boer people who participated in the Groot Trek/Great journey, -migration, -exodus.

Trinity

The believe in one living and true God who is the Creator of heaven and earth; who is eternal, almighty, unchangeable, infinitely powerful, wise, just and holy. The one God eternally exists in three Persons: The Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit; and that these three are one God, co-equal and co-eternal, having precisely the same nature and attributes, and worthy of precisely the same worship, confidence, and obedience. Matthew 3:16, 17; Matthew 28:19, 20; Mark 12:29; John 1:14; Acts 5:3, 4; II Corinthians 13:14.

Tritheism

The doctrine that the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit are three distinct Gods.

Tritheism

Worship of three separate Gods.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission

Was established by the Government of National Unity to address human right violations and related atrocities of the apartheid. The TRC was affirmed with the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act No. 34 of 1995.

Twisters and turners

Distort communication between individuals and the message of the Bible. The content and intention of the mention are corrupted between the sender

and receiver resulting in two messages, one sent, and another received. The true content is corrupted.

Twisters and Turners

A spirit with the power to bind the minds and sub-consciousness of people, invading thoughts and dreams through Ctuluh, the dream master.

Ubuntu

Ubuntu: The African concept of humanness, Pan African loyalty to Africa. Ubuntu includes eight basic values: Compassion, forgiveness, responsibility, honesty, self-control, love and perseverance.

Ufology

The study of existence -Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand

Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK)

'Spear of the Nation' The military wing of the ANC established in 1961 following the banning of the African National Congress and the *Pan Africanist Congress* by the government. Nelson Mandela was its first commander-in-chief. Umkhonto launched a guerrilla war against the state through sabotage, attacks on police stations, policemen, and state witnesses. In 1963 its leaders were captured in Rivonia and during the trial that followed several top leaders were sentenced to life imprisonment. In exile, MK allied itself with other liberation organisations such as *ZAPU*, whilst intensifying the armed struggle in the 1970s and 1980s. After the unbanning of the organisation in 1990, many MK cadres who returned from exile found life difficult, since the ANC was unable to support them financially and jobs were scarce. After the 1994 elections, MK was absorbed into the new National Defence Force.

uMkhonto we Siswe.

Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the nation) was the military wing of the African National Congress (ANC). Founded December 16, 1961 by the ANC and SACP as the answer to the political, social and economical oppression against blacks by the South African Apartheid regime. The MK carried out numerous bombings of military, industrial, civilian and infrastructural sites. Notable among these is the January 8, 1982 (to coincide with the 70th anniversary of the formation of the ANC) attack on the Koeberg nuclear

power plant in Cape Town. Umkhonto we Sizwe was officially disbanded on August 1, 1990.

Umsamo

A traditional spiritual space in every household.

Union Federal Party

(1953) Short-lived Natal-based party which broke away from the *United Party*. Fearing the growing power of the *National Party* and the prospects of a republican form of government, the party was in favour of greater powers for provinces so that Natal English-speakers would remain in control of their own affairs.

Union of South Africa

Official name of South Africa in the period 1910-1961. The Union of South Africa was established in terms of the *South Africa Act* of 1909. In the following year the two British colonies of Natal and the Cape were united with the two former Afrikaner (Boer) Republics, Transvaal and Orange Free State. Together, they formed the provinces of the Union of South Africa. In 1960 a *referendum* was held by the Verwoerd government on the issue of a *republic*. Those in favour of a republic won the referendum and a long-cherished Afrikaner ideal was fulfilled. In May 1961 the Union of South Africa became the Republic of South Africa, and shortly afterwards the country withdrew its membership of the Commonwealth.

Unitarianism

A Numerical number one God.

Unitarianism

From Latin *unitas* "unity, oneness", from *unus* "one" is a Christian theological movement named for its belief that the God in Christianity is one person, as opposed to the Trinity (*tri-* from Latin *tres* "three") which in many other branches of Christianity defines God as three persons in one being: the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Unitarian Christians, therefore, believe that Jesus was inspired by God in his moral teachings, and he is a savior, but he was not a deity or God incarnate.

Unsaved

Individuals not adhering to the Christian faith. Non-Christians. Individuals who do not accept Jesus Christ as their Lord and Saviour. Ignorance or unbelief with regards to Jesus's love and His sacrifice to reconcile man with God. Jesus Christ is the only pathway to eternal life. Opposite of Ephesians 2:8: For by grace are you saved through faith.

Vagabond

Translated from the Hebrew word Nuwa (Strongs #5128), a fugitive, to wonder up and down; Hebrew word Nuwd (Strongs # 4022) to stroll, to wonder about. The Webster Dictionary defines the vagabond as a person moving from place to place without a fixed home, a wanderer; of relating to or characteristic of a wanderer, leading an unsettled, irresponsible, or disreputable life.

Vagabond Spirit

Cain's sin of murdering his brother caused a curse from God to come upon him. In the New Living Translation of the Bible, the curse that God spoke over Cain is as follows: 'No longer will it yield abundant crops for you, no matter how hard you work! From now on you will be a homeless fugitive on the earth, constantly wondering from place to place.' Genesis 4:12

Venda

(Bavenda) (1) Former homeland for the Venda people in the Northern Transvaal near the South Africa- Zimbabwe border. It became 'independent' from South Africa in 1979, but was never recognised as such outside South Africa. (2) *Bantu*-speaking people, who retained close relations with African people in *Zimbabwe*.

Verkramptes/ Verligtes

Afrikaans terms which mean 'narrow-minded ones' and 'enlightened ones'. An Afrikaner academic, Professor W. J. de Klerk, gave the name 'verkramptes' to ultra-conservative Afrikaner *Nationalists*, and 'verligtes' to more progressive Afrikaners favouring changes in the government's racial policies. The 'verkramptes' opposed mixed sport, large-scale immigration, the exchange of diplomats with black African states, and rapprochement with English-speakers. Some 'verkramptes' established the *Herstigste Nasionale Party* in 1969, others who stayed in the *National Party* founded

the *Conservative Party* in 1982, while some joined more *radical* right-wing Afrikaner organisations.

Vierkleur

The flag of the *South African Republic* which consisted of four colours: red, white, blue and green.

Volk

People, nation.

Volkstaat

Volk translated to 'Nation', 'Staat' implies 'An independent state'. Thus, 'Self-governance' or independence for the Boer nation.

Volkstaat

The "Volkstaat" is the state of the only white volk on the African continent: the Boervolk (the Boer nation)

Voortrekkers

Official name of the farmers who migrated to the interior on the Groot Trek.

Water Witching

See Rhabdomancy (or Dowsing).

Wicca

The cult to practice Witchcraft.

Wildcat Strike

The term is used to describe a strike action undertaken by unionized workers without union leadership's authorization, support or approval. It is also referred to as an 'unofficial strike.'

Witch

A male or female who uses occultic powers for what they consider good or evil ends.

Witchcraft & Human Rights Information Network

An international organisation promoting awareness of human right violations due to witchcraft practices

Wizard

One devoted to black magic or sorcery

World elections

Elections, referendums and electoral sociology around the world. Race, Ethnicity and Language in South Africa

Xenophobia

An aversion or hostility to, disdain for, or fear of foreigners, people from different cultures, or strangers. Fear or dislike of the customs, dress, etc., of people who are culturally different from oneself:

Xhosa

Nguni people who settled in the Transkei. The original Xhosa clan probably settled at the Kei River around 1600, from where some of the chiefdoms migrated further south and west.

Xhosa

Xhosa denotes to the people or tribe as well as to their language.

Zoomorphic, Zoomorphism

Is a derivative of the Greek words *zōon*, which means “animal,” and *morphē*, which means “form,” or “shape.” It is a literary technique in which animal attributes are imposed upon non-animal objects, humans, and events; and animal features are ascribed to humans, gods, and other objects.

Zuid Afrikaansche Republic

A Boer republic in the boundaries of the old Transvaal.

Zulu

Northern *Nguni* group of Natal and KwaZulu.

Zulu Language

The Zulu language, one of the African Bantu languages, is accepted as spoken by the Zulu people

--ooOoo--



Abbreviations

BIBLE ABBREVIATIONS

AMP	: Amplified Bible
ASB	: African Standard Bible
BSB	: Berean Study Bible
CBS	: Christian Standard Bible
CEV	: Contemporary English Version
CJB	: Complete Jewish Bible
ESV	: English Standard Version
GW	: God's Word
ISV	: International Standard Version
KJV	: King James Version
MSG	: The Message
NASB	: New American Standard Bible
NIV	: New International Version
NKJV	: New King James Version
NLT	: New Living Translation
PHILLIPS	: New Testament in Modern English J.B. Phillips
SFLB	: Spirit Filled Life Bible

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS

AACC	: All African Council of Churches
ABZU	: The land of the FIRST people in Southern Africa
ACA	: African Christian Alliance-Afrikaner Christen Alliansie

ACDP	: African Christian Democratic Party
ACF	: African Community & Faith Party
ACO	: African Covenant
A.D.	: Anno Domini (Latin for “in the year of the Lord”)
ADP	: Alliance for Democracy and Prosperity
AEB	: Afrikaner Eenheidsbeweging
AFM	: Apostolic Faith Mission of South Africa
AFRSP	: Afrikaner Selfbeskikking Party
AIC	: African Independent Churches
AIDS	: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
AKBP	: Afrikaanse Kleurling Bewustheid Party
AKS	: Aboriginal Khoisan.
ALM	: American Lutheran Mission (ALM)
AMORC	: The Ancient and Mystical Order Rosæ Crucis
AMP	: African Muslim Party
ANC	: African National Congress
ANCYL	: African National Congress Youth League
ANDM	: Nazareth Democratic Movement
AOG	: Assemblies of God
APLA	: Azanian People’s Liberation Army
APO	: Africans People Organisation
ARNSA	: The Anti-Racism Network of South Africa
ARP	: Afrikaanse Republiekeinse Party
ATAP	: All things are possible
ATKV	: Afrikaanse Taal- en Kultuurvereniging.
ATM	: African Transformation Movement
ATR	: African Traditional Religion
AV	: Afrikaner Volkswag
AVF	: Afrikaner Volksfront
AWB	: Afrikaner Weerstand Beweging
AZAPO	: Azanian People’s Organisation
B.C.	: Before Christ
B-BBEE/BEE	: Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment
BBA	: Border Baptist Association
BFLF	: Black First Land First
BibleSA	: Bible Society of South Africa
BMS	: Berlin Mission Society
BP	: Boerestaat Party
BBSDP	: Black Business Supplier Development Program
BWB	: Boere-weerstand beweging
CABC	: Baptist Association of the Northern Cape

CABC	: Free State Baptist Association
CAC	: Coloured Advisory Council
CANRAD	: Centre for the Advancement of Non-Racialism and Democracy.
CAPP	: Christian Ambassadors Political Party
CAPS	: Curriculum Assessment Policy Statement
CASAC	: Council for the advancement of the South African Constitution.
CCC	: Catechism of the Catholic Church
CCC	: CitiConnect Communications
CCLF	: Council of Churches on Lutheran Foundation
CCMA	: Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
CCP	: Christian Champion Party
CD	: Christian Democrats
CDA	: Christian Democratic Alliance
CDP	: Christian Democratic Party
CF	: Christian Front
CI	: Christian Institute
CLM	: Co-operating Lutheran Mission
COH	: Cradle of Humankind
COPE	: Congress of the People
CODESA	: Convention for a Democratic South Africa
COSA	: Christians of South Africa
COSATU	: Congress of South African Trade Unions
CP	: Christen Party/Christian Party
CP	: Conservative Party
CPC	: Coloured People's Congress
CPM	: Christian Political Movement
CPP	: Christen Protestante Party van Suider Afrika
CPS	: Centre for Political Studies
CRC	: Coloured Persons' Council
CRL Rights Commission	: Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Rights Commission
CSE	: Comprehensive Sex Education
CTLDC	: The Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims
CU	: Christelike Unie
CV	: Coloured Voice
CYPSA	: Concerned Young People of South Africa
DA	: Democratic Alliance
DP	: Democratic Party
DEIC	: Dutch East India Company
DRC	: Dutch Reformed Church
EBS	: Eenheid Boere Stabiliteit

EFF	: Economic Freedom Fighter
ELCSA	: Evangelical Lutheran Churches in Southern Africa
EPBA	: Eastern Province Baptist Association
ESP	: Extra-Sensory Perception
ETI	: Employment Training Initiative
ESAT	: Encyclopaedia of South African Theatre, Film, Media & Performance
FA	: Freedom Alliance
FAK	: Federasie van Afrikaanse Kultuurvereniginge
FELCSA	: Federation of Evangelical Lutheran Churches in Southern Africa
FF	: Freedom Front
FGC	: Full Gospel Church of God
FMS	: Finnish Mission Society
FTSE	: Financial Times Stock Exchange
GLA	: Gay and Lesbian Alliance
GLHC	: Gay, Lesbian and Handicapped Congress
GNU	: Government of National Unity
GPP	: God's People's Party
GRA	: Genootskap van Regte Afrikaners
HIV	: Human Immunodeficiency Virus
HMS	: Hermannsburg Mission Society
ICC	: Independent Christian Congress
IDASA	: Institute for Democratic Alternatives in South Africa (later known as Institute for Democracy in South Africa)
IDR	: Indigenous Democratic Revolution
IEC	: Electoral Commission of South Africa
IFCC	: International Fellowship of Christian Churches
IFNASA	: Indigenous First Nation Advocacy South Africa
IFP	: Inkatha Freedom Party
ILO	: International Labour Organization
ISCVO	: Insindiso Salvation Christian Voice Organisation
IWGIA	: International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs
JCRC	: Joint Constitutional Review Committee
KAOM	: Khoisan Aboriginal and Others Movement
KCDP	: Kingdom Covenant Democratic Party
KKAAP	: Khoisan Kingdom and All People
KKORSA	: Khoi-San Kingdom of RSA
KSR	: Khoisan Revolution
KZN	: Kwa Zulu Natal
LGBTQI	: Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, Queer or Questioning and Intersex

LNCP	: Light of the Nation Christian Party
LP	: Labour Party
LSD	: Lysergic Acid Diethylamide
MCSA	: Methodist Church of Southern Africa
MK	: Umkhonto we Siswe (underground armed wing of the ANC)
MMG	: Movement of God
mtDNA	: Mitochondria DNA
NBA	: Kwa-Zulu Natal Baptist Association
NATO	: North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NCC	: National Communist Congress
NGO	: Non-Government Organisation
NIC	: Natal Indian Congress
NIS	: National Intelligence Service
NMS	: Norwegian Mission Society
NNP	: New National Party
NP	: National Party
NRFP	: National Religious Freedom Party
NUM	: National Union of Mineworkers
FO	: Organising Framework for Occupations
OAU	: Organisation of African Unity
OB	: Ossewa Brandwag
OIC	: Organisation of Islamic Cooperation
OOBE	: Out-of-Body Experience
OTO	: Ordo Templi Orientis
PAC	: Pan Africanist Congress
PANSALB	: PAN South African Language Board.
PAYE	: Pay as you earn
PCE	: Pentecostal Charismatic Evangelic
PCSA	: Presbyterian Church of Southern Africa
PEPUDA	: Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act
PJC	: Peace and Justice Congress
PK	: Psychokinesis
PRASA	: Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa
PSI	: Parapsychology
RDP	: Reconstruction and Development Programme
RMS	: Rhenish Mission Society
ROS	: Rising of Sons Christian Party
RPCSA	: Reformed Presbyterian Church in Southern Africa
SAA	: South African Airways
SABC	: South African Broadcasting Corporation
SABMS	: South African Baptist Missionary Society

SACAP	: The South African College of Applied Psychology
SACC	: South African Council of Churches
SACP	: South African Communist Party
SACTWU	: South African Clothing and Textile Workers' Union
SADAG	: South African Depression and Anxiety Group
SAHO	: South African History Online
SAIRR	: South African Institute of Race Relations
SAJBD	: South African Jewish Board of Deputies
SANDF	: South African National Defence Force
SAOU	: South African Teachers' Union
SAPRA	: South African Pagan Rights Alliance
SAPS	: South African Police Service
SARS	: South African Revenue Service
SARGO	: South African Religious Civic Organisation
SARIC	: The South African Region of Independent Churches
SASOP	: The South African Society of Psychiatrists
SIU	: Special Investigating Unit
SKAPE	: Sion Kingdom and Priesthood Everlasting
SLP	: Scripted Lesson Plan
SLSW	: Strategic-level spiritual warfare
SMC	: Silva Mind Control
SONA	: State of the Nation Address
SSFSA	: Sacred Site Foundation of Southern Africa
SSRF	: Research Foundation Spiritual Science
SWHP	: SACTWU Worker Health Programme
THO	: Traditional Healers Organization
TK	: Telekinesis
UBUNTU	: Ubuntu Party
UCDP	: United Christian Democratic Party
UDF	: United Democratic Front
UELCSA	: United Evangelical Lutheran Church in Southern Africa, comprising of the four white Lutheran settler churches - ELCSA-Transvaal, ELCSA-Hermannsburg, ELCSA-Cape and the DELK in SWA.
UNESCO	: United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
UOS	: Union of Orthodox Synagogues of South Africa
USA	: United States of America
VOC	: Verenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie or Dutch East India Compagnie
WCC	: World Council of Churches
WGBI	: World Government Bond Index
WHO	: World Health Organisation

WHRIN	: Witchcraft and Human Rights Information Network
WPBA	: Western Province Baptist Association
WPPS	: World Peace Prayer Society.
ZAR	: Zuid Afrikaansche Republic.
ZCC	: Zion Christian Church

--ooOoo--

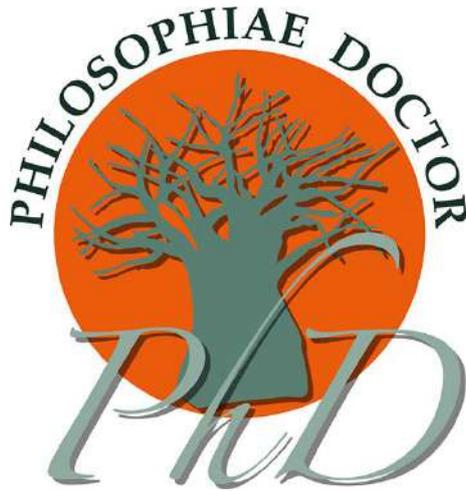
“Nobody talks so constantly about God as those who insist that there is no God.”

- Brown, Heywood. (1939)

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

PhD

*List of Tables
& Figures*



LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES

TABLES

Chapter 1

Table 1	How Christ became flesh	117
Table 2:	Prophecies of Jesus Christ	123
Table 3:	The seven feasts	124
Table 4:	Prophetic applications	126
Table 6:	Holy Spirit Person	151
Table 8:	Biblical accounts of angelic intervention	179
Table 9:	Difference between Spirit, Soul and Body	194
Table 10:	Biblical names of Satan	229
Table 11:	Function or purpose of Satan's name	231
Table 12:	Animal like representation of Satan	233

Chapter 2

Table 1:	Principalities/Princes According to Occultism and Egyptian Mythology	292
Table 2:	Prince of North	294
Table 3:	Successes of Abbadon	301
Table 4:	Prince of South	303
Table 5:	Successes of Leviatan	306
Table 6:	Global symbols on the Global Peace Pole	389
Table 7:	Biblical reference: Serpent	402
Table 8:	Biblical reference: Scorpion	402
Table 9:	Biblical reference: Adder	403
Table 10:	Biblical reference: Dragon	403
Table 11:	Biblical reference: Leviatan	404
Table 12:	Biblical reference: Beast	404
Table 13:	Biblical reference: Satan	405
Table 14:	Biblical reference: Devil	405
Table 15:	Biblical reference: Viper	406
Table 16:	Biblical reference: Serpent	406
Table 17:	Divination in the Bible	429
Table 18:	Sorcery in the Bible	432
Table 19:	Witchcraft in the Bible	438
Table 20:	Sacrifices to gods	441
Table 21:	God's original four-fold curse	476
Table 22:	God bless Nation of Israel	482
Table 23:	Top ten corruptions scandals identified by the trade union Solidarity	514
Table 24:	7 Detestable sins	516
Table 25:	Additional sins	519

Table 26:	Sins of the churches	521
-----------	----------------------------	-----

Chapter 3

Table 1:	Early inhabitants timeline	551
Table 2:	Early inhabitants timeline continued	552
Table 3:	Early Stone Age	556
Table 4:	Middle Stone Age	557
Table 5:	Late Stone Age	559
Table 6:	1500's Chronology	654
Table 7:	1600's Chronology Overview	655
Table 8:	Origin of slaves	660
Table 9:	Slave statistic's	661
Table 10:	1700's Chronology	666
Table 11:	1800's Chronology	672
Table 12:	1900's Chronology	694
Table 13:	2000's Chronology	700
Table 14:	Four primary ethnic language classifications	709
Table 15:	Race Definition One: Collins Dictionary	715
Table 16:	Race Definition Two: Oxford Dictionary	716
Table 17:	Race Definition Three: Merriam-Webster Dictionary	716
Table 18:	Ethnic Group Definition One: Science Daily	725
Table 19:	Ethnic Group Definition Two	725
Table 20:	Ethnic Group Definition Three	726
Table 21:	Ethnic Group Definition Four	726
Table 22:	Culture Definition One – Merriam Webster Dictionary	729
Table 23:	Culture Definition Two – Collins Dictionary	731

Table 25:	Culture Definition Five – Edward Burnett Tylor, 1871, British Social Anthropologist	732
Table 26:	Culture Definition Six – United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) (2002)	732
Table 27:	Tribe: Definition One: Cambridge	734
Table 28:	Tribe: Definition Two: Merriam Webster Dictionary	734
Table 29:	Tribe: Definition Three: Oxford Dictionary	736
Table 31:	Tribe: Definition Five: Collins Dictionary	736
Table 32:	Nation: Definition One: Cambridge	738
Table 33:	Nation: Definition Two: Cambridge.....	739
Table 34:	Nation: Definition Three: Business Directory	739
Table 35:	Nation: Definition Four: Global Policy.....	740
Table 36:	Nation: Definition Five: Merriam Webster Dictionary	741
Table 37:	Nation: Definition Six: Collins Dictionary.....	742

Chapter 4

Table 1:	Freemasonry in South Africa 1600 – 1699	819
Table 2:	Freemasonry in South Africa 1700 - 1799	821
Table 3:	Freemasonry in South Africa 1800 - 1899	825
Table 4:	Freemasonry in South Africa 1900 - 1999	848
Table 5:	Combined record of Lodges in 1875	860
Table 6:	2000- Current	864
Table 7:	Grand Lodge South Africa	865
Table 8:	Grand Lodge South Africa Southern Division	866
Table 9:	Grand Lodge South Africa Northern Division	867
Table 10:	Grand Lodge South Africa Central Division	867

Table 11:	Grand Lodge South Africa Eastern Division	868
Table 12:	Grand Lodge South Africa Eastern Cape Division	868
Table 13:	Overview of the Illuminate/Rothchild	910
Table 14:	Political Historical Public Holidays	971
Table 15:	Christian Public Holidays	971
Table 16:	Additional Public Holidays	971
Table 17:	Summary of Bill of Rights	979

Chapter 5

Table 1:	OFO Codes	1038
Table 2:	South African Population	1039
Table 3:	Distribution of South African Languages	1040
Table 4:	Religion: Christianity	1041
Table 5:	Catholic vs Christianity	1046
Table 6:	Other Religions	1088
Table 7:	Referrals to water	1151
Table 8:	Similarities between King Ahab's reign and the governance of the ANC	1167
Table 9:	King Ahab vs President Ramaphosa	1175
Table 10:	Religious Political Parties	1213
Table 11:	Pretoria points of entrance	1237
Table 12:	HIV/AIDS statistics 2017-2019	1264

FIGURES

Chapter 1

Figure 1:	An example of an ‘open church’ alongside John Vorster Rd (R80) West of Pretoria. The informal church is structured with specific rules – one of which is that women is not allowed	58
Figure 2:	Diagram depicting the Trinity	78
Figure 3:	2019 10 17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga Author at Giant footprint and penta-star symbol	250
Figure 4:	2019-10-17 District Lothair, Mpumalanga Author and friends at a stone altar at the sight of the Giant footprint and penta-star symbol	251

Chapter 2

Figure 2:	Freedom Park, Pretoria	390
Figure 3:	Ley Lines Tree of Life on Map of Africa from Bethe Hagens and Wm. S. Becker	395
Figure 4:	Sunpath “Diamond Light Grid” Phenomena in Southern Africa	395
Figure 5:	Starbucks Logo	412
Figure 6:	Red-carpet designs claimed to be inspired by the marine kingdom	412
Figure 7:	Queen Modjadji	413
Figure 8:	Sabelo collecting of sea water (with sand) to be sold	417

Chapter 3

Figure 1:	Map of South Africa	546
Figure 2:	Map of Africa (re: see Addendum)	548

Figure 3:	The location of Adam’s Calendar: Mpumalanga, on top of a plateau just above the town of Kaapse Hoop, overlooking the Barberton valley – Mpumalanga	561
Figure 4:	Adam’s Calendar Kaapsehoop Mpumalanga	562
Figure 5:	Rodney Hale’s plan of Adam’s calendar with alignment as they were in 11500 BC	563
Figure 6:	Ancient stone circles. Mpumalanga, South Africa	564
Figure 7:	Ancient Stone circles: Mpumalanga, South Africa	564
Figure 8:	Golden Rhino discovered at the ruins of Mapungubwe	567
Figure 9:	Symbol of the South African Medical Association	572
Figure 10:	Symbol Enki and the Creation of Humankind	572
Figure 11:	Rosetta stone: Three different scripts. Image one Image two	574
Figure 12:	San Family	588
Figure 13:	San Hunters	588
Figure 14:	The Linton Panel	590
Figure 15:	A giant Eland	591
Figure 16:	San rock art Eland	591
Figure 17:	Photo taken by Author at the Union Building – The Official Seat of Government where King Khoisan and several Khoisan members camp in protest for the Government ignorance towards them. They are not recognised as an individual race but classified as coloured. Their language, although represented on the official land, no recognition as an official language. What is important is the mud-image of the Holy Eland. The author are not sure if is significant for the antelope to face West	594
Figure 18:	Bushmen San Rock Painting	595
Figure 19:	Khoi-Khoi Family	598
Figure 20:	Khoi-Khoi hunters	598

Figure 21:	Khoi-Khoi and San (Khoisan) and Bantu speaking migrated from North Africa whilst Europeans settled from the South	603
Figure 22:	The Southward migration of the black people and where they settled in Southern Africa	610
Figure 23:	An estimation of where the black tribes settled. This could have been the situation in South Africa with the arrival of the Europeans in 1652. (re: see Addendum)	611
Figure 24:	Swazi women	614
Figure 25:	Swaziland, the smallest independent country in Africa (re: see Addendum) .	614
Figure 26:	Traditional Zulu men	617
Figure 27:	Traditional Ndebele women in front of traditional Ndebele home decorations	621
Figure 28:	Traditional Xhosa women	624
Figure 29:	Blankets are the Basotho National Identity. “Kobo ke bophelo” meaning ‘Blankets it life’, an example of colonial legacy adopted and transformed. Legend has it that the first blanket was given to King Moshoeshoe in 1860. When he requested British protection, he described it as Queen Victoria’s ‘Spreading her blanket’ of protection over the Basotho nation	630
Figure 30:	They are popular in the country due to their Tswana dance, their unique Setswana names, and the gorgeous Tswana wedding dresses	636
Figure 31:	North Sotho in traditional ceremony	638
Figure 32:	Tsonga women in traditional colourful attire	640
Figure 33:	Venda Villa.....	644
Figure 34:	Indian Ocean Trade Routes	649
Figure 35:	Expansion of the Cape borders from 1670 to 1779 when the Fish River became the eastern border and the white farmers came into contact with the Xhosa tribes	667
Figure 36:	The period of the Difaqane	677

Figure 37:	Map indicating the different Voortrekker departures (re: see Addendum)	684
Figure 38:	South African population	701
Figure 39:	Minister in the presidency Jeff Radebe is seen meeting with the group of Khoi-San who have been living on the lawns of the Union Buildings, December 13, 2017 to have their demands of cultural recognition addressed. Picture: Jacques Nelles	702
Figure 40:	Arabic-Afrikaans Alphabet: Arabic letters for phonetically representing Afrikaans	707
Figure 41:	The Nguni and Sotho language groups represent the largest percentage of the South African population. Nguni collectively accommodates Bantu-speaking people originating from the Negroid racial group of Africa. Nguni is divided between two major groups of Northern Nguni and Southern Nguni	710

Chapter 4

Figure 1:	Official heraldic coat of arms of the Government of the Templar Order as a non-territorial Principality and sovereign subject of international law	782
Figure 2:	Order of the Knight Templar Priest South Africa	785
Figure 3:	Photo of John Adams (1735-1826; 2nd President of the United States)	785
Figure 4:	Diagram illustrating a theory pertaining to the possible hierarchy of alleged Jesuit power	791
Figure 5:	An interpretation of the Jesuit authority in the World esoteric organisations .	792
Figure 6:	An interpretation of World Political and Economic Power	804
Figure 7:	Abraham van der Weijde	821
Figure 8:	Sir Christoffel Brand	824
Figure 9:	Three independent Boer Republics	834

Figure 10:	Minute 45:47 and 45:49	840
Figure 11:	Masonic Handshake example	840
Figure 12:	Anchor and Ark taken from Freemason Information.com	841
Figure 13:	Afrikaner Bond emblem	853
Figure 14:	Well-known Freemason emblem	854
Figure 15:	Organisations and Companies allegedly associated with the Afrikaner Broederbond	854
Figure 16:	Organisations and Companies allegedly associated with the Afrikaner Bond, Johann Rupert, Koos Becker and NM Rothchild.....	856
Figure 17:	Voortrekker monument Cornerstone	858
Figure 18:	The Coat of Arms - Grand Lodge of South Africa	861
Figure 19:	South African Coat of Arms	862
Figure 20:	Freemason architecture. Dutch Reformed Church Building right and Freemason lodge left	873
Figure 21:	St Helena monument	875
Figure 22:	Sarel Cilliers (R) and his grave. (L)	875
Figure 23:	Dr. Medi Illuminate Agent	878
Figure 24:	How to join Illuminate	878
Figure 25:	Diagram illustrating the manipulation of mainstream media by six media monopolies	903
Figure 26:	Rothschild Family Shield Motto “Concordia Integritas Industria”	904
Figure 27:	The Steps of Freemasonry divided in the Scottish and York Rites	910
Figure 28:	Diagram illustrating the hierarchy of the Illuminate. The Council of 13, the 13 families and bloodlines listed above. It also illustrate the Illuminate as the elevated levels above the York and Scottish Freemasonry Rites	911
Figure 29:	These are the real World power structures. The three most powerful men in the world are Jesuit priests. The order of their power is as follows: First,	

	“the Black Pope” and Jesuit Superior General; secondly, former Black Pope and Jesuit Superior General; and lastly, “the White Pope” and Vicar of Christ/Vicar of Horus Pope. The current Pope is the first pope who is openly a member of the military order of the Society of Jesus. These arch criminals under bloody oaths rule the world on behalf of Satan, “the god of this world” (II Corinthians 4:4)	912
Figure 30:	Diagram depicting the New World Order	913
Figure 31:	Political poster displayed at the North West University	919
Figure 32:	Official EFF Banner displaying black hate towards whites	920
Figure 33:	Nelson Mandela and Freemason hand signs	924
Figure 34:	New World Order	940
Figure 35:	Nelson Mandela in his Garderobe. Post Office stamp dated 2000 commemorating the 900th Anniversary of The Order of Saint John	950
Figure 36:	Pres Nelson Mandela and Archbishop Desmond Tutu who initiated the phrase “rainbow nation’ in reference to South Africans	950
Figure 37:	President Thabo Mbeki was made a Knight of the Most Venerable Order of the Hospital of Saint John of Jerusalem in a colourful investiture ceremony held in St George’s Cathedral in Cape Town on Thursday	951
Figure 38:	Proud new Freemasons. Meshak Amisi and Reneoue Kortjaas in the Freemason’s Hall in Parktown, Johannesburg, wearing some of the regalia of the brotherhood. Image: Masi Losi	951
Figure 39:	The South African Flag	969
Figure 40:	South African Coat of Arms	972
Figure 41:	Suggested Illuminati influence and symbology captured	974

Chapter 5

- Figure 1: The default interpretation of a sangoma is often a traditional person in sangoma-attire sitting on the floor of a mud hut. Contemporary sangomas are often also modern, literate, qualified individuals working in professional environments. Lerato Khambule is a sangoma and sales administrator at a security company. Regardless her sangoma-power, she was afraid to report rape to the SA Police Service. This illustrates the different levels of authority in a spiritual realm 1035
- Figure 2: Traditional spirituality is not limited to the illiterate or uneducated. Individuals in professional careers accepts traditional spirituality incorporated as a reality of life. Eunice Sjobambu works at an Insurance Company. Holy water and muti was used to curse her. She overcame by prayer. This article provided evidence that Christians or people of faith can be cursed. Discernment and knowledge of spiritual warfare and the power in the Name of Jesus Christ is the only avenue to be set free 1036
- Figure 3: Google maps street view image of site visited by author: Circular church and prayer spaces alongside a road North of Pretoria is a typical Independent Indigenous church. Mr. Reuben Makhubo confirmed during an interview and site visit that only men are allowed to attend this sanctuary. For this reason, the author did not trespass to take photos and had to rely on Google Street Maps: Street View. 1050
- Figure 4: This article illustrates the juxta relationship between the profession of a Inyanga (Traditional healer) while being a church member– African Traditional Spirituality and Christianity. 1053
- Figure 5: Juxta between acknowledging God and Traditional African Spirituality. The Sangoma acknowledged God in the promotion of culture. This article also

	acknowledged the renewed emphasis on 'blackness', African culture or the renewed African Nationalism	1054
Figure 6:	Integration of spirituality portrayed in the same newspaper publication: Christians worshipping God in spite of rain, the commitment of parents to initiation schools to perform the tradition 'rite of passage, Muthi power, Witchcraft-Vutha fire" and services of Sangomas. Gobela Grace identified the three most popular requests by clients: 'killing partners over money or cheating, eliminating colleagues over positions at work and ukuthwala ('calling money) for quick money and wealth	1054
Figure 7:	The article demonstrated the African comprehension of the spirit world: Faith in God and recognition of the existence of evil spirits.....	1111
Figure 8:	Ntu.....	1113
Figure 9:	The frontpage headline read: "I poked his widow, now dead man wants to kill me". Married women are sometimes incorporated in their husband's ancestral lineage. The departed husband became an ancestor to his widow. In this report, the departed husband's spirit did not approve her new relationship.	1117
Figure 10:	Polygamy is not rare in African societies. The author once again alerted to the fact that African (black) nations should not be regarded as generic or homogenic. Mixed relationships are not unique, it is however unique for a white woman to agree to a polygamist relationship with three other wives to her husband. The traditional labola and marriage was not approved by the bride's family.....	1122
Figure 11:	Evidence of Voodoo practice in South Africa.	1129
Figure 12:	Blood appearing on the floor – the author was not able to categorise this occurrence between voodoo, magic, or witchcraft. The phenomena is	

	disturbing and emphasises the prominence of blood.....	1129
Figure 13:	Witchcraft Act: Union Gazette Extraordinary, No. 3. 22 nd February, 1957	1131
Figure 14:	Abolition of Corporal Punishment Act, 1997	1132
Figure 15:	The SA Police Service and the Judiciary often do not persecute transgressors of the Witchcraft Act. In desperation and frustrated by lawlessness community kgotla/lekgotla (public meeting, community council/traditional law court) act as judge, jury, and executers of judgements. The home of the alleged murder’s grandmother was set alight	1133
Figure 16:	Witchcraft often uses personal items to curse an individual – this article reported the use of a G-string as well as animal bones to curse	1133
Figure 17:	Both articles deal with witchcraft sacrifices: human and animal. The skull of the very dog killed are used to combat the presence of the Tokoloshe and to prevent further attacks	1134
Figure 18:	The award-winning vocalist Mara Louw faith in God but it did not prohibit efforts of witchcraft to ‘steal her luck’	1134
Figure 19:	Sangomas uses a variety of objects for divination	1136
Figure 20 :	This article illustrated specific areas of expertise within the broader sangoma phenomena. Sangoma Ivy Visagie specialises in the area of vutha (fire). The article also demonstrated various levels of authority and rival curses inspired by jealousy.....	1138
Figure 21	The article confirmed the observance to a ‘calling’ as Traditional Healer. It is often wrongfully perceived to be a ‘calling’ or ‘anointing from God’ and the manifested power of the Holy Spirit. Thapelo Ramakokobo sends his father Elias to do the “work of God”. It also illustrated that there is no age restriction for this calling and the significance of water. “Thapelo sends his dad to the river, koppie (hill) or bush to bathe and pray for people.” “I can play while he’s washing people in the river” he said	1139

Figure 22:	This article confirmed a number of significant facts: people can be cursed by muti sprinkled on pathways, people believe witches can fly at night, sangomas specialises in specific areas (fighting tokoloshes and evil spirits and to heal). Sangomas are called and trained. Individuals often become ill until they adhere to the calling	1140
Figure 23 :	Confirmation of the use of animals to curse as well as the fact that sangomas curse one another	1144
Figure 24:	Remains of aborted babies found buried in a Sangoma property confirmed the belief that fetuses possesses strong power to enhance the effect of muti	1145
Figure 25:	Photo taken by the author in Polokwane, Limpopo. Advertisements for 'safe abortions' are common in South Africa. It is the opinion of the author that the remains of these 'back street abortions' are often used for muti purposes	1146
Figure 26 :	Desperate harvesters of body parts did not kill the victim in an effort to take her heart. Specific organs holds specific powers. Sangomas do not necessarily provide the needed ingredients. The acquisition thereof remains the responsibility of the clients	1146
Figure 27:	Murder inspired by the superstition of the enhanced power of muti if it contains albino body parts	1147
Figure 28:	Specific awareness campaigns in order to address superstition and the threat to people with Albinism	1147
Figure 29:	Tongues, breasts, nipples, and reproductive organ (punani) are believed to hold specific power	1148
Figure 30:	Nipples are believed to enhance the power of muti	1148
Figure 31:	Genitalia are believed to holds great power as a Muthi ingredient, regardless of if fact that the 'victim' was murdered or already diseased	1149
Figure 32:	Jezebel oil: Jezebel Root Man Trap oil	1163

Figure 33:	Mama Africa Jajja, native healer and spell caster	1163
Figure 34:	Jezebel root for prostitutes and business South Africa”	1164
Figure 35:	Facebook post by Donaldson Dladla. December 31, 2020. The photo portrayed Chief Justice Moegeng Moegeng kneeling for prayer during the swearing-in ceremony of 400 members the Sixth Democratic Parliament on May 28, 2019	1181
Figure 36:	Voortrekker Monument	1190
Figure 37:	Cenotaph on ground level of the Voortrekker Monument	1192
Figure 38:	Freedom Park, Lesaka with boulder stones	1208
Figure 39:	Freedom Park Interfaith celebration at Lesaka	1208
Figure 40:	The entrance of the De Goede Hoop Freemason Temple	1210
Figure 41:	Interior of the Temple. View from the West	1210
Figure 42:	Groote Church Pulpit	1211
Figure 43:	Groote Church	1211
Figure 44:	Ds. Fleck (1781-1820) Freemason sign with hand on heart chakra and hand on table	1212
Figure 45:	Ds. Van der Spuy, first minister born in South Africa	1212
Figure 46:	Article in Volksblad Newspaper (1994) reported on the ceremony in Soweto to notify ancestors of the new era of peace between black and white South Africans	1217
Figure 47:	Bradly Sitter, Khoisan Praise singer at the 2019	1221
Figure 48:	The picture of President Zuma is taken in court. Regardless ordainment as a honorary neo-Pentecostal minister, he amalgamates Christianity and the veneration of forefathers	1228
Figure 49:	With the aim of intimidating the mayor of Saldanha Bay, the head of a sheep, dead birds, and a living Tortoise with a red ribbon around his neck were placed on the porch of the Mayors house. These items were	

	meticulously chosen	1231
Figure 50:	ANC Your leader and anti-corruption activist relied on muti ‘to protect himself from being murdered’. The author also noted the multi spirituality in one family when the acritical stated that his family prays for this protection whilst he has a strong belief in the correct use of muti	1232
Figure 51:	African Traditional medicine in Pretoria East pharmacy	1235
Figure 52:	Perceived spiritual influence in the city planning and development of Pretoria	1236
Figure 53:	Regardless, the general fear or apprehensiveness towards Sangomas, they are not excluded from crime. “Dummies” (mannequins) are placed on the premises of the Sangoma for protection. Clients also make use of smaller dolls in their vehicles to protect them from accidents. Sangoma Mahlabe Zulu recognised evil spirits from whom protection are required, indicating discernment of the reality of the Kingdom of Light and Kingdom of Darkness. Ironically, her own practice also operates in the Kingdom of Darkness	1239
Figure 54:	Sangomas are not excluded from falling victim to crime. Their spirituality is vital in combatting crime and the pivotal in protection and retribution	1240
Figure 55:	Article gave evidence of the perceived power of black chickens	1248
Figure 56:	The article was titled “Haunted by a Hungry ghost”. The spiritual entity ruins the family household budget. “It takes food and things we really need, like money.” A sangoma confirmed the house is haunted and as such confirmed that spiritual entities are often confined to a specific territory. The family sought advice from sangomas and prophets, acknowledging the African spiritual authority as well as the supposedly authority of Christian prophets	1249
Figure 57:	Not everybody have the courage to consult Sangomas. Muti was placed on	

	the doorstep to entice fear to cause the lady to relocate and abandon her home. Whoever used the muti probably aimed to claim the property	1250
Figure 58:	The Tokoloshe stole books and vandalised the home. The extraordinary high unemployment rate is directly associated with education. Stolen books and the rampage of torn curtains, food spillage and general vandalism by a Tokoloshe implies tremendous economic consequences	1250
Figure 59:	Faith in Sangomas convince people to make decisions with financial implications. Phumelela Jacob resigned from employment on advice from 'sangoma'. The fact that the sangoma was apparently not authentic, does not nullify the complete trust and faith in their rulings	1251
Figure 60:	The so-called black magic circle of consumption of Johannesburg	1252
Figure 61:	African Traditional medicine claim abundant shelf space in a pharmacy, Pretoria East	1253
Figure 62:	Muti shop	1253
Figure 63:	Muti shop	1254
Figure 64:	Dr. Musa advertisement included a cost schedule. In addition, the advertisement printing and distribution expenditure contribute to the economy	1254
Figure 65:	Traditional Healer (Photo taken by author North West Province)	1255
Figure 66:	Photo taken by author. Sangoma and muti advert along the side of the road	1256
Figure 67:	Photo taken by author. Sangoma muti advertisement along the side of the road. North West Province. The author highlighted the provision of legal assistance. Not in the representation, but to secure a positive outcome by means of witchcraft	1256
Figure 68:	Sangoma advertisements for assistance to "win tenders" are common. The author took this photo in Polokwane. Ignored tender procedures to favour tenderpreneurs might be more than ordinary fraud and corruption. It might	

	be a result of these powers	1257
Figure 69:	The use of magic to increase personal finances is often called “calling money” or as per this advertisement, “magic wallet”	1257
Figure 70:	Jealousy of clients/patients and the income it generates is often a motivation for sangomas to curse one another. Fire came from Sangoma Nonkululeko’s wardrobe and onto her bed before destroying her home. She relies on her ancestors and her smell to identify her herb-medicine	1258
Figure 71:	‘Nando’s, a Chicken fast food advert portraying similar layout and wide variety of promises and services well known in sangoma adverts. The fact that the franchise had the liberty to portray the African sangoma practice in an advert indicated how common and generalised the sangoma practice is in the South African society	1258
Figure 72:	This article confirms a few facts: legal and illegal initiation schools exist, deaths are recorded annually, boys often need to be hospitalised, initiation schools are scheduled in a specific season, the authority of traditional leaders is still recognised parallel to three levels of the ‘official political system’ with democratically elected representatives.	1260
Figure 73:	The article confirms the age restriction for male initiation schools (12 years), annual deaths and a specific season for Initiation schools	1261
Figure 74:	“Graduates” of the Initiation School transitioned from boys to men	1262
Figure 75:	Jonathan decided to attend the Xhosa initiation school after he was not allowed to share a meal with the men because he did not attend the initiate rite. He was not recognised as a man	1263
Figure 76:	Although the ‘Initiation Schools’ / Rite of passage for boys are more frequently included in public domain discussion, initiation rites for girls are also important and ignorance thereof can result in a curse	1263
Figure 77:	Government HIV/Aids information campaigns	1265

Figure 78:	Child rape newspaper article	1266
Figure 79:	Amalgamation of Western and Traditional medicine: Although treatment is not legally allowed, Sangomas is trusted to cure HIV and Aids	1266
Figure 80:	Spiritual authority varies. Sangoma Mfazomnyama Shabangu, confirmed traditional healers cannot heal themselves or their families. After helping a man tormented by a Tokoloshe, the Tokoloshe retaliated and “jumped on to him”	1269
Figure 81:	The manifestation of a Tokoloshe is not imagination. His appearance is described as hairy, he recognised his name, he has a voice and a warm breath, and he has the ability to eat – to the extent that additional food needs to be budgeted	1270
Figure 82:	A creepy female Tokoloshe as a result of a curse by an ex-girlfriend. It is suspected that she used underwear or sperm to curse him. This is a rare reference to a Tokoloshe as female. The victim (policeman by profession) also claim that the creature had intercourse with him. (Succubus and Incubus discussed in Chapter Two)	1270
Figure 83:	The Sangoma ruling pertaining to a life partner was accepted. This gives evidence to their authority in individual life’s	1271
Figure 84:	Sangomas are familiar with the spiritual world and the reality of evil spirits. Gobela Maria Mangena specialises in muti to ‘lock marriages. This provide evidence of the fact that Sangomas specialised is specific areas, equal to medical doctors, counsellors, psychiatrists etc	1271
Figure 85:	The impact of the inhumane in and brutal violence in order to ‘harvest’ body tissue for muthi is multi-dimensional. Possible psychologically as a result of the trauma, fear has a spiritual root, physical development as a disabled person and the educational and economical success could be jeopardised given the limited aid for under privileged families in South Africa	1272

Figure 86:	Witchcraft muti incorporated into murder. Although the victim was not killed by the muti, it was used as warning about her expected death allegedly planned by the wife of the victim's boyfriend	1272
Figure 87:	Dr. Azamu and Dr. Kidida provide treatment and solutions for a variety of personal, relationship and financial problems: contesting the unemployment problem, career promotions, education, combatting crime and a variety of personal and relationship solutions	1273
Figure 88:	Superstition re muti and body parts is not restricted to the illiterate. A qualified medical examiner was found guilty of harvesting body parts	1274
Figure 89:	Author interview with Sangoma Jeanne Potgieter. She confirmed her training was conducted and qualification confirmed without her participation in any blood, animal or human muti preparation lessons. She specialises herbal medicines and also incorporate Western medicine when the herbal treatment is unsuccessful	1275
Figure 90:	Muti to enhance labour kills babies	1276
Figure 91:	Muti to enhance labour kills babies	1276
Figure 92:	Visitors deliver muti (concoctions) to patients in accordance with their belief that labour will be enhanced. The practice does not stop regardless numerous deaths	1277
Figure 93:	Traditional medicine to assist childbirth is accused to cause neonatal and maternal deaths	1278
Figure 94:	The default interpretation of a sangoma is often a traditional person in sangoma-attire sitting on the floor of a mud hut. Contemporary sangomas are often also modern, literate, qualified individuals working in professional environments. Lerato Khambule is a sangoma and sales administrator at a security company. Regardless her sangoma-power, she was afraid to report rape to the SA Police Service. This illustrates the different levels of	

	authority in a spiritual realm	1281
Figure 95:	Traditional spirituality is not limited to the illiterate or uneducated. Individuals in professional careers accepts traditional spirituality incorporated as a reality of life. Eunice Sjobambu works at an Insurance Company. Holy water and muthi was used to curse her. She overcame by prayer. This article provided evidence that Christians or people of faith can be cursed. Discernment and knowledge of spiritual warfare and the power in the Name of Jesus Christ is the only avenue to be set free	1282
Figure 96:	Google maps street view image of site visited by author: Circular church and prayer spaces alongside a road North of Pretoria is a typical Independent Indigenous church. Mr. Reuben Makhubo confirmed during an interview and site visit that only men are allowed to attend this sanctuary. For this reason, the author did not trespass to take photos and had to rely on Google street maps street view	1283
Figure 97:	This article illustrates the juxta relationship between the profession of a Inyanga (Traditional healer) while being a church member– African Traditional Spirituality and Christianity	1284
Figure 98:	Juxta between acknowledging God and Traditional African Spirituality. The Sangoma acknowledged God in the promotion of culture. This article also acknowledged the renewed emphasis on 'blackness', African culture or the renewed African Nationalism	1285
Figure 99:	Integration of spirituality portrayed through various articles in the same newspaper publication: Christians worshipping God in spite of rain, the commitment of parents to initiation schools to perform the tradition 'rite of passage, Muthi power, Witchcraft-Vutha fire" and services of Sangomas. Gobela Grace identified the three most popular requests by clients: 'killing partners over money or cheating, eliminating colleagues over positions at	

	work and ukuthwala ('calling money) for quick money and wealth	1286
Figure 100:	The article demonstrated the African comprehension of the spirit world: Faith in God and recognition of the existence of evil spirits	1287
Figure 101:	The frontpage headline read: "I poked his widow, now dead man wants to kill me". Married women are sometimes incorporated in their husband's ancestral lineage. The departed husband became an ancestor to his widow. In this report, the departed husband's spirit did not approve her new relationship	1288
Figure 102:	Polygamy is not rare in African societies. The author once again alerted to the fact that African (black) nations should not be regarded as generic or homogenic. Mixed relationships are not unique, it is however unique for a white woman to agree to a polygamist relationship with three other wives to her husband. The traditional labola and marriage was not approved by the bride's family	1289
Figure 103:	Evidence of Voodoo practice in South Africa	1290
Figure 104:	Blood appearing on the floor – the author are not able to categorise this occurrence between voodoo, magic, or witchcraft. The phenomena is disturbing and emphasize the prominence of blood	1291
Figure 105:	The SA Police Service and the Judiciary often do not persecute transgressors of the Witchcraft Act. In desperation and frustrated by lawlessness community kgotla/lekgotla (public meeting, community council/traditional law court) act as judge, jury, and executers of judgements. The home of the alleged murder's grandmother was set alight.	1292
Figure 106:	Witchcraft often uses personal items to curse an individual – this article reported the use of a G-string as well as animal bones to curse	1294
Figure 107:	Both articles deal with witchcraft sacrifices: human and animal. The skull of the very dog killed are used to combat the presence of the Tokoloshe and	

	to prevent further attacks	1294
Figure 108:	The award-winning vocalist Mara Louw faith in God but it did not prohibit efforts of witchcraft to 'steal her luck'	1295
Figure 109:	Sangomas uses a variety of objects for divination	1296
Figure 110:	This article illustrated specific areas of expertise within the broader sangoma phenomena. Sangoma Ivy Visage specialises in the area of vutha (fire). The article also demonstrated various levels of authority and rival curses inspired by jealousy	1297
Figure 111:	This article confirmed a number of significant facts: people can be cursed by muthi sprinkled on pathways, people believe witches can fly at night, sangomas specialises in specific areas (fighting tokoloshes and evil spirits and to heal). Sangomas are called and trained. Individuals often become ill until they adhere to the calling	1298
Figure 112:	The article confirmed the observance to a 'calling' as Traditional Healer. It is often wrongfully perceived to be a 'calling' or 'anointing from God' and the manifested power of the Holy Spirit. Thapelo Ramakokobo sends his father Elias to do the "work of God". It also illustrated that there is no age restriction for this calling and the significance of water. "Thapelo sends his dad to the river, koppie (hill) or bush to bathe and pray for people." "I can play while he's washing people in the river" he said	1299
Figure 113:	Confirmation of the use of animals to curse as well as the fact that sangomas curse one another	1300
Figure 114:	Remains of aborted babies found buried in a Sangoma property confirmed the belief that fetuses possess strong power to enhance the effect of muthi	1301
Figure 115:	Murder inspired by the superstition of the enhanced power of muthi if it contains albino body parts	1302
Figure 116:	Specific awareness campaigns in order to address the superstition and	

	threat to people with Albinism	1303
Figure 117 :	Desperate harvesters of body parts did not kill the victim in an effort to take her heart. Specific organs holds specific powers. Sangomas do not necessarily provide the needed ingredients. The acquisition thereof remains the responsibility of the clients	1304
Figure 118:	Tongues, breasts, nipples, and reproductive organ (punani) are believed to hold specific power	1305
Figure 119:	Nipples is believed to enhance the power of muthi	1306
Figure 120:	Genitalia is believed to holds great power as a Muthi ingredient, regardless of if fact that the 'victim' was murdered or already diseased	1307
Figure 121:	Article in Volksblad Newspaper (1994) reported on the ceremony in Soweto to notify ancestors of the new era of peace between black and white South Africans	1308
Figure 122:	The picture of President Zuma is taken in court. Regardless ordainment as a honorary neo-Pentecostal minister, he amalgamates Christianity and the veneration of forefathers	1309
Figure 123:	With the aim to intimidate the mayor of Saldanha Bay, the head of a sheep, dead birds, and a living Tortoise with a red ribbon around his neck were placed on the porch of the Mayors house. These items were meticulously chosen	1310
Figure 124:	ANC Your leader and anti-corruption activist relied on muthi 'to protect himself from being murdered". The author also noted the multi spirituality in one family when the acritical stated that his family prays for this protection whilst he has a strong belief in the correct use of muthi	1311
Figure 125:	Regardless, the general fear or apprehensiveness towards Sangomas, they are not excluded from crime. "Dummies" (mannequins) are placed on the premises of the Sangoma for protection. Clients also make use of smaller	

	dolls in their vehicles to protect them from accidents. Sangoma Mahlabe Zulu recognised evil spirits from whom protection are required, indicating discernment of the reality of the Kingdom of Light and Kingdom of Darkness. Ironically, her own practice also operates in the Kingdom of Darkness	1312
Figure 126:	Sangomas are not excluded from falling victim to crime. Their spirituality is vital in combatting crime and the pivotal in protection and retribution	1313
Figure 127:	Goats are not only valuable for ancestral sacrifices, but also for witchcraft. The author noted that black (black goats, black chickens) are also indicative of power. Mr Makhubo also confirmed that physical features such as blue eyes of a Husky and especially if the colour of the any animal's eyes vary, is perceived as powerful muthi	1314
Figure 128:	Article gave evidence of the perceived power of black chickens	1315
Figure 129:	The article was titled "Haunted by a Hungry ghost". The spiritual entity ruins the family household budget. "It takes food and things we really need, like money." A sangoma confirmed the house is haunted and as such confirmed that spiritual entities are often confined to a specific territory. The family sought advice from sangomas and prophets, acknowledging the African spiritual authority as well as the supposedly authority of Christian prophets	1316
Figure 130:	Not everybody have the courage to consult Sangomas. Muthi was placed on the doorstep to entice fear to cause the lady to relocate and abandon her home. Whoever used the muthi probably aimed to claim the property	1317
Figure 131:	The Tokoloshe stole books and vandalise home. The extraordinary high unemployment rate is directly associated with education. Stolen books and the rampage of torn curtains, food spillage and general vandalism by a Tokoloshe implies tremendous economic consequences	1318

Figure 132:	Faith in Sangomas convince people to make decisions with financial implications. Phumelela Jacob resigned from employment on advice from 'sangoma'. The fact that the sangoma was apparently not authentic, does not nullify the complete trust and faith in their rulings	1319
Figure 133:	The so-called black magic circle of consumption of Johannesburg	1320
Figure 134:	Dr. Musa advertisement included a cost schedule. In addition, the advertisement printing and distribution cost contribute to the economy	1321
Figure 135:	Jealousy of clients/patients and the income it generates is often a motivation for sangomas to curse one another. Fire came from Sangoma Nonkululeko's wardrobe and onto her bed before destroying her home. She relies on her ancestors and her smell to identify her herb-medicine	1322
Figure 136:	This article confirms a few facts: Legal and illegal initiation schools, deaths are recorded annually, several boys need to be hospitalised annually, initiation schools are diarised in a specific season, the authority of traditional leaders are still recognised parallel to three levels of 'official political system' with democratically elected representatives	1323
Figure 137:	The article confirms the age restriction for male initiation schools (12 years), annual deaths and a specific season for Initiation schools	1324
Figure 138:	"Graduates" of the Initiation School transition from boys to men	1325
Figure 139:	Jonathan decided to attend the Xhosa initiation school after he was not allowed to share a meal with the men because he did not attend the initiate rite. He was not recognised as a man	1326
Figure 140:	Although the 'Initiation Schools' / Rite of passage for boys are more frequently included in public domain discussion, initiation rites for girls are also important and ignorance thereof can result in a curse	1327
Figure 141:	Amalgamation of Western and Traditional medicine: Although treatment is not legally allowed,.....	1328

Figure 142:	Spiritual authority varies. Sangoma Mfazomnyama Shabangu, confirmed traditional healers cannot heal themselves or their families. After helping a man tormented by a Tokoloshe, the Tokoloshe retaliated and “jumped on to him”	1329
Figure 143:	The manifestation of a Tokoloshe is not imagination. He’s appearance is described as hairy, he recognised his name, he has a voice and a warm breath, and he has the ability to eat – the extend that additional food needs to be budgeted	1330

Case Studies

Figure 1:	Dr. Esther Mahlangu	1376
Figure 2:	Dr. Esther Mahlangu seen in her BMW 525i ‘Art Car’ at the British Museum 2016	1378
Figure 3:	Mahlangu's collaboration with Nelson Mandela: painting on prints of drawings that he had done (Photo courtesy of the Melrose Gallery)	1380
Figure 4:	Dr. Esther Mahlangu at Work	1381

--ooOoo--

A Call to Praise the Lord for His Righteousness.

A Psalm.

***O sing to the Lord a new song,
For He has done marvellous and wonderful things;
His right hand and His holy arm have gained the victory for Him.
The Lord has made known His salvation;
He has [openly] revealed His righteousness in the sight of the nations.
He has [graciously] remembered His lovingkindness and His faithfulness to
the house of Israel;
All the ends of the earth have witnessed the salvation of our God.
Shout joyfully to the Lord, all the earth;
Shout [in jubilation] and sing for joy and sing praises.
Sing praises to the Lord with the lyre,
With the lyre and the sound of melody.
With trumpets and the sound of the horn
Shout with joy before the King, the Lord.
Let the sea thunder and roar, and all the things it contains,
The world and those who dwell in it.
Let the rivers clap their hands;
Let the mountains sing together for joy and delight
Before the Lord, for He is coming to judge the earth;
He will judge the world with righteousness
And the peoples with fairness.***

Psalm 98:1-9 (Amplified Bible)

Editing Certificate

I hereby certify that I have examined and edited the thesis completed by

ALIDA ELIZABETH AUCAMP EISELEN

for

St. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY LAUSANNE

and entitled

EXPOUNDING THE SPIRITUAL DIVERSITY IN THE

SOUTH AFRICAN CULTURES

PERTAINING TO THE INFLUENCE IT HAS ON THE ECONOMIC,

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL BEHAVIOUR

The English in the thesis was examined and, where appropriate corrected to comply with generally accepted academic norms. The editing in no way affected the meaning or detail of the work which remains true to the original prepared by the author.

Signed at Hillcrest this 2nd day of June, 2021



R.J. Ettershank

CFP., ACIS (retired) Advanced post Graduate Diploma in Financial Planning (UFS)

Academic Editor

16 Brittany,

Le Domaine,

100 Acutts Drive,

Hillcrest 3610.

KwaZulu-Natal

.P.O.Box 1429, Kloof 3640

eMail: robert@financialwisdom.co.za

Website: www.financialwisdom.co.za



St Clements Private Swiss University

2nd Floor, Rue du Petit-Chêne 38, 1003, Lausanne, Switzerland
E-mail: scu@cbcl.ch



Radah Academy

Faculty of Theology
CB-Mentoring

Pretoria
Republic of South Africa

Tel : +27 83 782 9641
E-mail : profconnie@radah.co.za

A CERTIFICATE OF EDITING

To Whom It May Concern:

This is to certify that the accompanying Philosophiae Doctor Degree Document,
"EXPOUNDING THE SPIRITUAL DIVERSITY IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN CULTURES PERTAINING TO THE INFLUENCE IT HAS
ON THE ECONOMIC, POLITICAL AND SOCIAL BEHAVIOUR.", executed by Alida Elizabeth Aucamp Eiselen was completely
edited linguistically, etymologically, as well as graphically.

Editor: Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand

*Doctor of Philosophy in Theology (Summa Cum Laude), Doctor of Philosophy in Divinity (Cum Laude), D Litt in Creative Ministry Theology,
Doctor of Philosophy in Interdisciplinary Studies, MTh (Magna Cum Laude)*

22/9/21.

Date

President / Director: Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand

*Doctor of Philosophy in Theology (Summa Cum Laude), Doctor of Philosophy in Divinity (Cum Laude)
D Litt in Creative Ministry Theology, Doctor of Philosophy in Interdisciplinary Studies, MTh (Magna Cum Laude)*